

Jo: Pacher Medicina uniuersalis; *prim. 10^o*
Praxis
Or
A generall Practise of Physicke:

Wherein are contained all inward and outward parts of the body,
with all the accidents and infirmities that are incident vnto them,
euen from the crowne of the head to the sole of the foote;

Also by what meanes (with the help of God) they may be remedied:
very meete and profitable, not only for all Physitions,

Chirurgions, Apothecaries, and Midwiues,
but for all other estates whatsoever.

The like whereof as yet in english
hath not beene
published,

Compiled and written by the most famous and learned
Doctour *Christopher Wirtzung*, in the Germane
tongue, and now Translated into English, in diuers
places corrected, and with many ad-
ditions illustrated and
augmented,

By

IACOB MOSAN Germane, Doctor
in the same facultie,



LONDINI,
Impensis Georg. Bishop.

1598.



To the Reader.



S the true scope of all actions and indu-
cements ought chiefly to tend to the glory
of God, and to the good and common
utility of many: so are these men wor-
thy of great praise and commendation,
who not regarding their private gain
or glory, have laboured their wits, and spent their studies,
in composing, translating, and publishing in our vulgar
tongue either their own works, or such learned writings
of others, as they thinke most necessary for the publique
weale; imitating therein the most famous Authors of
auncient and moderne age: namely such as *Hippocrates*,
Galen, *Auicenna*, *Paracelsus*, and others, that have in their
native tongues opened and revealed to posterity the very
depths and secrets of that excellent arte of Physick: which
as it is more auncient, more necessary, more profitable,
and more pleasant, then any other arte or knowledge
whatsoever (except the knowledge of true felicity:) so
it may boldly be said (though not without apprehension
of griefe) no arte more falsified nor more abused in these
dayes, as well by the presumptuous intermedling of au-
dacious and vnskilfull persons; as for lack of good and
wholesome writings in english for the instruction and safe
direction of all those that have not alwayes a good and
learned Physitian at hand. Therefore (gentle Reader)
that you may the better auoyde these and such like mis-
chievous inconueniences, heere is presented to your
view the learned worke of that worthy Physitian *Chri-
stopher Wirtzung*, first written and published by him-
selfe in the high Dutch or Germane language, where-
in it hath bene more often printed there, then any
other Worke of like nature: Afterwardes translated

To the Reader.

into the low Dutch or Flemish tongue, by *Carolus Battus* Doctor in Physicke, whose iudgement and experience, the City of *Dort* in *Holland* doth willingly acknowledge: and now likewise englished for the publike benefit of our countrey, by *James Mose* Doctor in Phisicke. What paines and labour hath beene taken in the translating, it is referred to your owne fauourable censure, after you shall haue perused and made tryall of it. Only this for the present may with your good fauour be boldly added out of the testimonies of men learned and skilfull in this facultie, that there is not published in our english tongue the like worke, wherein the whole body of Physick is so succinctly, so absolutely, or so artificially digested and compiled. For whether you consider the matter therein deliuered, or the manner of the deliuey it selfe, which as it is altogether profitable, so is it easie and methodicall, descending from the head to the foote, shewing all manner of diseases incident to each part of our body, and setting downe first the causes from whence they spring, secondly the signes and tokens whereby they are knowne, and thirdly, the remedies and helps whereby they may be cured and eased. There is no doubt but when you haue indifferently perused and heedfully noted the same, you will not only concurre in iudgement with others, but also accept in all kindnes the worke it selfe, and make such fauourable construction of the good indeuors of those that haue laboured for your preservation, as your selfe would looke to be rewarded withall in the like.

Farewell.

¶ The Contents of this Booke in
generall.

*This present Worke, or practice of Physick, is divided
into nine partes.*

The first part is a very necessary introduction, which is marvellous needefull for this whole Worke, and is subdivided into eleven Chapters, and 25. §.

Page 1.

THE first Chapter, speaketh of the manifold miseries and calamities of mankinde. *ibidem.*

* The second Chapter, sheweth the causes of mans miserie and wretchednes. 3

* The third Chapter, declareth the necessitie, profit and prayse of Physick. 4

* The fourth Chapter, maketh a diuision of the whole worke. 5

* The fift Chapter sheweth how all manner of rootes, barks, hearbs, flowers, fruits, and such like may be gathered. 6

* The sixt Chapter is of the preparation of some things for Physick. 8

* The seuenth Chapter, 1. §. hath a generall rule to be obserued in purging. 17

The 2. §. teacheth what persons shall abstaine from purging, and the impediments thereof. *ibid.*

The 3. §. declareth what is to be obserued in and after the taking of a purgation. 18

* The eight Chapter, 1. §. maketh mention of Phlebotomy in generall. 20

The 2. §. is of the causes that prohibite phlebotomy. 21

The 3. §. at what time and in what signe a vaine is to be opened. *ibid.*

The 4. §. is an admonition to those that let others blood. 22

The 5. §. what is to be done before, in, and after the letting of blood. 23

The 6. §. what vaine ought in euery disease to be opened. 24

The 7. §. of the head vaine *Cephalica*. *ibid.*

The 8. §. of the lyuer vaine *Basilica*. *ibid.*

The 9. §. of the median or middle vaine. 25

The 10. §. of the arme pit vaine called *Axillaris*. *ibid.*

The 11. §. of the Spleene vaine or *Salua-*

tella.

The 12. §. of the Hip vaine. *ibid.*

The 13. §. of the wombe vaine. *ibid.*

The 14. §. of the hamme or knee vaine. 26

The 15. §. of the vaine in the forehead. *ibid.*

The 16. §. of the eye vaines. *ibid.*

The 17. §. of the vaine in the temples of the head. *ibid.*

The 18. §. of the vaine vpon the nose. *ibid.*

The 19. §. of the vaines in the lips. *ibid.*

The 20. §. of the vaines of the almonds or kernels in the throte. *ibid.*

The 21. §. of the vaines vnder the tongue. *ibid.*

Pag. *ead.*

The 22. §. of the vaines in the neck. 27

* The ninth Chapter, of cupping. *ibid.*

* The tenth Chapter, of the diminishing of blood by horseleaches. *ibid.*

* The eleuenth Chapter, of the fixe not naturall things called of the Physitions *Res non naturales*. 28

* The twelfth Chapter, of all the weights and measures which commonly are vsed in Physick. 29

The rest of this booke is diuided into
eight partes : whereof

The first conteyneth the Head, with all the partes thereof to the very necke, as face, haire, beard, scull, brayne, nose, eares, lips, mouth, toong, teeth, speech, &c. with all such accidentes as are incident vnto them, and their appropriate remedies. 30

THE first Chapter speaketh of the paine in the head. *ibid.*

The 1. §. of the causes of headach. 31

The 2. §. sheweth the signes of a hot headach, that proceedeth from choler. *ibid.*

The 3. §. of the paine in the head with agues, and laske or flux of the belly. 33

The 4. §. heate of the head with melancholy. 34

The Contents of this Booke.

The 5. §. headach proceeding from empti- nes of the stomack.	35	The 4. §. the tryall when a plaister is sodden enough.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. of <i>Cephalaa</i> , and <i>Hemicrania</i> , cer- taine paines of the head.	<i>ibid.</i>	* The fifth Chapter, the face, a part of the head.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 7. §. of headach of the sunne or of south winds.	36	The 1. §. of all staines or spots in the face.	57
The 8. §. of headach that commeth of drun- kenness.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. of the rednes of the face.	58
The 9. §. of headach proceeding of a stroke or fall.	37	The 3. §. for all white pusshes of the face.	<i>ibid.</i>
* The second Chapter treateth of the paine of the head that is caused by cold.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. for to make a cleane face.	59
The 1. §. sheweth the manner of purging in this infirmitie.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 5. §. for congealed bloud after any blowes remayning.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. is of needful for a cold and rheu- matick head.	42	The 6. §. how to make a good colour.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. teacheth the order of dyet for the cold paine of the head.	43	* The sixt Chapt. of the eyebrowes, eyelids, with all that appertaineth vnto them.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. of outward brusings of the head.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 1. §. of the swelling of the eyelids.	60
The 5. §. sheweth what doth conuey the me- dicines to the head.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. of the itching and smarting of the eyelids.	62
The 6. §. hath diuers kinds of <i>Oxymel</i> .	44	The 3. §. of clefts in the eyelids.	63
The 7. §. of the purging syrupe of Roses.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. of warts vpon the eyelids.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 8. §. of Barly water.	45	The 5. §. of the inuersion of the eyelids, when the inward red flesh appeareth out- wardly.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. of <i>Manus Christi</i> with Pearles.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 6. §. of the consolidation or growing together of the eyelids.	64
* The third Chapter, of the haire of the head.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 7. §. of the nethermost eyelid, which pricketh the apple of the eye.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. to cause the haire to grow, and to colour it.	46	The 8. §. of the falling out of the haire in the vndermost eyelids.	65
The 2. §. of the dying of the haire in gene- rall.	<i>ibid.</i>	* The seuenth Chapter of the eyes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. gray haire, how to hinder them.	Pag.	The 1. §. of the paine of the eyes in generall.	66
The 4. §. to take away haire.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. of the corners of the eyes and their diseases.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. of diuers defaults of the haire.	48	The 3. §. of the disease in the eyes called <i>Ophthalmia</i> .	67
The 6. §. of baldnes and falling out of the haire.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. of the rednes of the eyes.	68
The 7. §. of the scales of the head, beard, and eye browes.	49	The 5. §. of hot eyes.	69
The 8. §. to driue away lice and vermine.	50	The 6. §. of itch and scabs of the eyes.	70
The 9. §. the lousy euill <i>Phthiriasis</i> , a mise- rable sicknes.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 7. §. watering or running eyes.	71
The 10. §. of the bad sore, scurfe or scall of the head and such like.	51	The 8. §. sore eyes with or without matter.	74
The 11. §. of the skin of the head.	54	The 9. §. of <i>Agylops</i> a certaine swelling be- tweene the nose and the corner of the eye.	Pag.
* The fourth Chapter, of the skull of the head.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 10. §. of blemishes or spots in the eyes.	77
The 1. §. of the compression of the skull in yong children.	55	The 11. §. of the fistula in the corner of the eye.	79
The 2. §. of the fracture of the skull.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 12. §. of gnats and flies that seeme to swarme before the eyes.	80
The 3. §. of the skinnes or tunicles of the braines called <i>Dura</i> , and <i>Pia mater</i> when they be perished.	56	The 13. §. of the skin of the eyes.	83
		The 14. §. of the mists and clowdes of the eyes.	85
		The 15. §. of disperision and contraction of the eye beames or sight.	<i>ibid.</i>
		The 16. §. of the extuberation of the eyes as if they would fall out.	86
		The 17. §. of eyes that be burnt.	87
		The	

The Contents of this Booke.

The 18. §. when any is stroken in or vpon the eyes.	87	The 1. §. of the memory.	118
The 19. §. if any thing be fallen into the eyes.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. of the giddines of the head, and infirmitie of the braines.	121
The 20. §. how to cure the diminishing, feeblenes and darknes of the eyes	<i>ibid.</i>	The 3. §. of franticknes, madnes or doting, and such like infirmities.	124
The 21. §. of those that after the rising of the sunne can see nothing at all, or very little.	91	The 4. §. of <i>Delirium</i> , doting, and childishnes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 22. §. when one is waxen almost blinde.	Pag. 92	The 5. §. of <i>phrenitis</i> , or franticknes with an ague.	125
The 23. §. of squintnes.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 6. §. for to bring the sick to sleepe and rest.	128
The 24. §. Hydromel, hony water how to make and vse the same.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 7. §. of <i>Mania</i> , another kind of franticknes, which we commonly call madnes.	Pag. 130
* The 8. Chapter, of the nose.	93	The 8. §. of <i>Melancholia</i> or <i>Dementia</i> , a wonderfull madnes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of obstruction, or stopping in the nose.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 9. §. of the Palsie in generall.	134
The 2. §. of vlcers in the nose.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 10. §. of the sleeping disease, <i>lethargus</i> , <i>veternus</i> , <i>Torpor</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. obstruction or stopping in childrens noses, without any other infirmitie.	95	The 11. §. of numbnes and astonishing, which is <i>stupor</i> , and <i>congelatio</i> , whereon dependeth <i>tremor</i> , which wee call trembling.	Pag. 136
The 4. §. impostumations of the nose.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 12. §. of the shaking palsiey.	137
The 5. §. of the canker in the nose.	97	The 13. §. for the resolution of the sinewes for dead palsiey.	139
The 6. §. of the murre.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 14. §. of the convulsion of the mouth through the palsiey.	145
The 7. §. of the excessiue bleeding at the nose.	98	The 15. §. of the cramp and convulsion of the sinewes by the palsiey.	147
The 8. §. enfeeble or lost smelling.	100	The 16. §. of the Hag or Mare <i>Ephialtes</i> , and <i>incubus</i> .	150
* The ninth Chapter, of the eares.	103	The 17. §. of the falling sicknes called <i>Epilepsia</i> .	151
The 1. §. paine of the eares in generall.	104	The 18. §. of the Apoplexy or dead palsiey.	Pag. 159
The 2. §. of the noyse and hissing in the eares.	106	* The thirteenth Chapter, of the mouth, and all that appertayneth vnto it.	161
The 3. §. impostumes and sores in the eares.	108	The 1. §. of putrifactions and exulcerations in the mouth.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. of outward sores of the eares.	111	The 2. §. of the swollen Almonds.	163
The 5. §. of the bleeding at the eares	<i>ibid.</i>	The 3. §. of a stinking mouth and breach.	Pag. <i>ead.</i>
The 6. §. of little wormes that growe in the eares, and that do creepe into them outwardly, and such like.	112	The 4. §. a gargarisme for all infections of the mouth.	164
The 7. §. obstruction or stopping of the eares through inward and outward causes.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 5. §. of the paller, and the falling downe thereof.	166
The 8. §. if any thing be gotten into the eares from without.	113	The 6. §. of the tongue.	167
The 9. §. of the deminishing of hearing.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 7. §. of the gummes, and mandibles.	Pag. 173
* The tenth Chapter of the lips.	115	The 8. §. of the teeth.	176
The 1. §. of the chops or clefts in the lips.	<i>ibid.</i>	* The foureteenth Chapter, of the voyce.	Pag. 185
* The 11. Chapter, of the beard.	116	The 1. §. of hoarsenes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. for the growing of the beard.	Pag. <i>ead.</i>	The 2. §. how to make a cleare voyce.	186
The 2. §. of the falling out of the beard.	Pag. <i>ead.</i>		
* The 12. Chapter, of the braynes, and all that concerneth them.	<i>ibid.</i>		

The Contents of this Booke.

The second part of this practise of
Physicke, containeth the
Breast. 187.

T He first Chapter of the neck.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of <i>Bronchocele</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. if one haue something sticking in his throte.	189
The 3. §. when a horseleach taken in drinke remayneth sticking in the throte.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. of the Squinancy or swelling in the throte.	190
The 5. §. of the squinancy or paine in the throte through heate.	191
The 6. §. of payne in the throte through phlegma and cold taking.	193
The 7. §. of the vlcers of the throte.	194
* The 2. Chapter of all rheumes and fluxions in generall.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of rheumes that proceede of cold.	195
Pag.	195
The 2. §. of hot rheumes.	201
The 3. §. of rheumes with agues.	202
The 4. §. if the rheume woulde not passe through the nose.	203
* The third Chapter, of the formost part of the breast <i>Thorax</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of womens breasts, milke, and of their diseases.	204
The 2. §. of the ouermuch growing and hanging downe of the breasts.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of milke in generall.	205
The 4. §. of want and scarcety of milke.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. against the superfluitie of milke.	206
The 6. §. for the clotted or congealed milke in the breasts.	207
The 7. §. of the hardnes and inflammation of womens breasts.	208
The 8. §. of the tumor or swelling of the breasts.	209
The 9. §. of the impostumation of the breasts.	Pag.
Pag.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 10. §. of the canker in the breast.	210
The 11. §. of the fistula in the breast.	211
The 12. §. of the clefts or chops in the nipples.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 13. §. what the haire on the breasts doth signifie.	<i>ibid.</i>
* The fourth Chapter, of the back in generall.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of the paine in the back.	212
The 2. §. of the crooked back.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of the shoulder blades.	215
The 4. §. of the ribs.	216
The 5. §. of the pleurisie <i>Pleuritis</i> , a sickness	

with great pricking in the side.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. of the pleurisie of heate and bloud.	
Pag.	217
The 7. §. of the pleurisie of <i>Cholera</i> .	220
The 8. §. of the pleurisie of <i>Phlegma</i> .	221
The 9. §. of the pleurisie of <i>Melancholia</i> .	222
The 10. §. of the bastard pleurisie.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 11. §. when the pleurisie sheweth it selfe outwardly.	223
The 12. §. when the pleurisie taketh a woman with childe.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 13. §. rules for such as are recovered of the pleurisie, that they fall not into it againe.	224
The 14. §. certaine seuerall remedies against the cold pleurisie.	<i>ibid.</i>
* The fift Chap. of the Lights or Lungs.	225
The 1. §. of the cough.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. of the rheume or catarrhe which falleth vpon the lights.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. what is commodious for the obstructed lights.	227
The 4. §. remedies for the cough.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. against all dry coughs.	228
The 6. §. of a moyst and cold cough.	229
The 7. §. of an old cough.	231
The 8. §. what is good for coughing vp of phlegme.	232
The 9. §. of a short panting breath.	233
The 10. §. of the sixe not naturall things, called <i>res non naturales</i> , whereto is also added a rule of dyet for the pursuenees.	234
The 11. §. of the breast oppressed with phlegme.	236
The 12. §. of the right pursuenees with a sore old cough, through tough phlegme in the breast, which is called with one worde <i>Asthma</i> .	238
The 13. §. of certayne excellent things in generall.	240
The 14. §. of shortnes of breath through <i>Cholera</i> .	241
The 15. §. of the shortnes of breath through Melancholy.	242
The 16. §. of the shortnes of breathing or pursuenees through winde.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 17. §. of the spetting of bloud through some disease of the lights.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 18. §. for a broken vaine in the lights or breast.	245
The 19. §. for congealed bloud.	246
The 20. §. comfortable things in and after the spetting of bloud.	247
The 21. §. of the infection of the Lights which is called <i>Peripneumonia</i> .	248
The	

The Contents of this Booke.

The 22. §. of the anguiss in the lights, which is called <i>Emphyema</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>
The 23. §. of the consumption <i>Phthisis</i> , a disease of the Lights.	250.
The 24. §. of the sinking breath in <i>Phthisis</i> , or the consumption.	256.
* The 6. Chapter, the most pretious part of mans body.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of the fainting of the hart in generall.	258
The 2. §. of <i>Syncope</i> , the great swooning.	Pag. 260
The 3. §. of the beating or panting of the hart.	263
The 4. §. of the panting of the hart through heate.	264
The 5. §. of the panting of the hart through cold.	268
The 6. §. of the panting of the hart through a bad stomack or appetite.	271
The 7. §. of the panting of the hart through frighting.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 8. §. of heauines a disease of the hart.	<i>ibidem.</i>
The 9. §. of the griping of the hart.	272

The third part of this booke of Phisick conteyneth the Belly. 273.

T He first Chapter of the Nauell.	<i>ibid.</i>
The second Chapter of the members of generation in generall.	274
The 1. §. of the tumors in the groyne, and other such like diseases.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. of the priuities or secrets in particular.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of the vnnaturall erection of the yarde, called <i>Priapismus</i> , and <i>Satyrismus</i> .	Pag. 275
* The third Chapter, of the Testicles and Cods, and of sundry ruptures.	276
The 1. §. of the vppermost Herny or rupture which hapneth aboue the cod.	277
The 2. §. of ruptures that fall downe into the cods.	280
The 3. §. of the rupture through winde.	281
The 4. §. of the waterish rupture <i>Hernia aquosa</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. of the rupture through bloud and phlegme.	282
The 6. §. of the fleshy rupture.	283
The 7. §. of the rupture which is caused of broken vaynes, called <i>Varicosa</i> .	284
The 8. §. of the terrible rupture called <i>Burris</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>

The 9. §. of the rupture whereby the bowels do fall into the Cods.	285
The 10. §. of the ruptures of children.	286
The 11. §. for to keepe vp the matter that it descend no more.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 12. §. for to stay the reuerfion of the rupture that it come not againe.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 13. §. the order of life or dyet.	287
* The fourth Chapter, of the testicles or stones.	288
* The fift Chapter, of womens priuy members.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of the inflammation of the place with swellings.	289
The 2. §. of the clefts of this place.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of the vlceration in the priuities of women.	290
The 4. §. when any body catcheth any sore through carnall copulation.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. for to make a woman to be as narrow as a mayden.	<i>ibid.</i>
* The sixt Chapter, of the spermatieall fluxe or the running of the raynes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of the fluxe of seede, or running of the raynes through heate.	291
The 2. §. of the fluxe of sperme or running of the raynes through cold.	293
The 3. §. of the fluxe of sperme or seede in the sleepe.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. of what and whereby naturall sperme or seede will be most augmented.	294
* The seuenth Chapter, of barrennes in generall.	295
The 1. §. for to help and preferre or hasten fruitfulness.	296
The 2. §. of barrennes through heate.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of barrennes through drouth.	297
The 4. §. of barrennes through fatnes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. of barrennes through colde and moysture.	298
The 6. §. for to comfort the retentive vertue of the wombe.	299
The 7. §. of barrennes through repletion of the body, and obstruction of the termes or flowes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 8. §. for to further fruitfulness in man and woman.	300
* The eight Chapter, of the Raynes, and their payne.	301
* The ninth Chapter, of the buttocks.	302
* The tenth Chapter, of the arsegut or fundament in generall.	302
The 1. §. of the going out, or hanging downe of the arsegut, <i>Procidencia ani</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>

The Contents of this Booke.

The 2. §. of the relaxation or slackning of the arsegut.	303.	The 18. §. of the other kinde of <i>Dysenteria</i> , or bloudie fluxe.	358.
The 3. §. of the impostume of the arsegut.	304.	The 19. §. of all bloudy fluxes in generall.	359.
The 4. §. of the Piles called <i>Hemorrhoides</i> . <i>ibi.</i>		The 20. §. of the constipation or binding in the bodie.	360.
The 5. §. to staunch the bleeding of the Piles.	306.	The 21. §. of the straying or vnsatiable desire of going to stoole, which is called <i>Tenasmus</i> .	366.
The 6. §. how the Piles are to be opened.	309.	The 22. §. of paine in the stomacke in generall.	367.
The 7. §. against the paine of the Piles.	310.	The 23. §. of the paine in the stomack without impostumation through heate.	368.
The 8. §. of the Piles which are called <i>Verrucales</i> .	312.	The 24. §. of the paine of the stomack without impostumation through cold.	369.
The 9. §. of the Piles that do hang far out.	<i>ibi.</i>	The 25. §. of the payne in the stomacke through winde.	<i>ibi.</i>
The 10. §. of the apostumes in the arsegut.	314.	The 26. §. of the swelling or puffing vp of the stomack.	372.
The 11. §. of the clefts in the fundament that are called <i>Rhagades</i> .	315.	The 27. §. of the payne in the stomacke through <i>Phlegma</i> .	<i>ibi.</i>
The 12. §. of the fistula and cancre in the arsegut.	316.	The 28. §. of the payne at the stomacke through <i>Melancholia</i> .	373.
The 12. §. of the itch in the arsegut.	317.	The 29. §. of the payne in the stomacke through a hot impostume.	374.
* The 12. Chapter, of the inward members of the third part.	<i>ibi.</i>	The 30. §. of the impostumes of the stomack which be of a cold nature.	375.
The 1. §. of the stomack in generall.	<i>ibi.</i>	The 31. §. of the exulcerations in the stomacke.	376.
The 2. §. of the neck and mouth of the stomack.	318.	The 32. §. of the stinking breath through the exulceration of the stomacke.	377.
The 3. §. to preferue and keepe a good digestion of the stomack.	320.	The 33. §. of the schirrositie of the stomack.	378.
The 4. §. of the debilitie of the stomacke in generall.	323.	The 34. §. of the hickcough in generall.	<i>ibi.</i>
The 5. §. of a weake stomack through cold.	324.	The 35. §. of the vnsatiable hunger in generall.	381.
The 6. §. of the debilitie of the stomacke through heate.	332.	* The 12. Chapter, of the Luer.	384.
The 7. §. of the debilitie of the stomacke through drought.	334.	The 1. §. of the infections of the liuer in generall.	385.
The 8. §. of the scalding in the throate, and of the hartburning.	<i>ibi.</i>	The 2. §. of the obstruction of the liuer in generall.	<i>ibi.</i>
The 9. §. of inappetency, or lost appetite, and whereby it be remedied.	<i>ibi.</i>	The 3. §. of the oppilation or obstruction of the liuer through heate.	386.
The 10. §. of the wambling and loathing of meate.	337.	The 4. §. of the obstruction of the liuer through cold.	389.
The 11. §. of wambling or vomiting through weakenes of the stomacke.	338.	The 5. §. of a Schirrous liuer.	392.
The 12. §. of parbraking or vomiting, with the laske or scouring.	340.	The 6. §. of a cold liuer without obstruction.	<i>ibi.</i>
The 13. §. of the flux, laske, or scouring by stoole.	343.	The 7. §. of the impostumation of the liuer.	393.
The 14. §. of the laske <i>Lienteria</i> , of <i>Cholera</i> and heate.	344.	The 8. §. of the laske or scouring through weakenes of the liuer.	394.
The 15. §. of the laske <i>Diarrhaa</i> .	347.	The 9. §. of diuers things which be very cominodious for all infections of the liuer.	395.
The 16. §. of the skowring which proceedeth of the lyuer and stomacke.	351.		The
The 17. §. of the laske <i>Dysenteria</i> , called the red fluxe.	352.		

The Contents of this Booke.

The 10. §. of the thirst through drouth and heate of the liuer	<i>ibid.</i>	* The sixteenth Chapter, of the Kidneyes.	439.
The 11. §. of the yellow Iaudies, a sickness of the liuer.	396	The 1. §. of the payne in the Kidneyes thorough cold and moysture.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 12. §. of the Dropisie in generall.	400	The 2. §. of the paine of the Kidneyes thorough wind.	441
The 13. §. of the Dropisie <i>Anasarca</i> .	401	The 3. §. of the obstructed Kidneyes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 14. §. of the dropisie <i>Ascites</i> .	402	The 4. §. of the payne in the Kidneyes thorough heate and drithes.	442
The 15. §. Sweating is very good for all Dropisies.	403	The 5. §. how to assuage the pain in the Kidneyes.	443
The 16. §. of the dropisie <i>Tympanites</i> .	506	The 6. §. of an hard impostume in the Kidneyes.	444
* The 13. Chapter, of the Gall.	407	The 7. §. of impostumes and vlcers in the Kidneyes.	445
* The 14. Chapter, of the Milt or Spleene.	408.	The 8. §. of the impostumation in the Kidneyes through heate.	456
The first §. of the obstruction of the Spleene with heate and an ague.	409	The 9. §. of impostumes in the Kidneyes thorough colde.	451
The 2. §. of the impostume of the Spleene	411.	The 10. §. of the exulceration in the Kidneyes.	<i>ibid.</i>
The third §. of an obstructed Milt without ague, yet with paine.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 11. §. of pissing of blood.	452
The 4. §. of the hardnes or <i>Schirrus</i> of the Spleene.	412	The 12. §. if any man pisse matter.	449
The 5. §. of <i>Melancholia</i> and moysture of the Spleene.	418	The 13. §. of outward vlcers of the kidneyes.	450.
The 6. §. how the melancholicke blood is to be purged.	419	The 14. §. the order of dyer.	451
* The 15. Chapt. of the bowels or guts,	420	* The seuenteenth Chapter of grauell, sand, or stone of the Kidneyes and of the bladder.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of the paine and griping of the guts in generall.	421	The 1. §. for to hinder and restrain the ingendering and growing of the grauell and stone.	452
The 2. §. of the vppermost paine and griping of the guts, <i>Iliaca passio</i> , the which the common man calleth <i>Colica</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. to let the growing of the stone.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of the paine or griping in the guts, which is called <i>Colica</i> .	422	The 3. §. against the payne of the grauell.	454.
The 4. §. of the difference of these paines in the guts	423	The 4. §. of those things that expell grauell, and breake the stone.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. of the paine in the guts, thorough obstruction or binding in the body.	424	The 5. §. when one cannot hold his water.	462.
The 6. §. of the paine in the guts through slime and <i>Phlegma</i> .	<i>ibid.</i>	The 6. §. of the effluxion of the vrine through colde.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 7. §. of the paine in the guts through winde.	426	The 7. §. of the effluxion of the vrin through heate.	463
The 8. §. for all manner of paine in the belly	428.	* The eighteenth Chapter, of the Bladder.	465.
The 9. §. of the payne in the guts through anie impostumes or other affections of the bowels.	429	The 1. §. of the retention of vrine in generall	<i>ibid.</i>
The 10. §. of the pain in the bowels through heate and <i>Cholera</i> .	430	The 2. §. of the paine which is caused by the retention of the vrine.	466
The 11. §. of the paine in the belly mixt with grauell.	431	The 3. §. of the stopping of the vrine thorough the debilitie of the vertue retentive	467.
The 12. §. of the pain in the bellies of yoong children.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. of the retention of vrine through fals, or blowes.	469
The 13. §. of the Wormes in the belly.	432		The
The 14. §. of the wormes <i>Ascarides</i> , which doe keepe in the arsegut.	438		

The Contents of this Booke.

The 5. §. of the retention of vrine, through some obstruccion of the conduit.	470	The 5. §. of the order of dyet for women with childe	504
The sixt §. of the hot and scalding vrine.	471.	The 6 §. of the strange longings of women with childe	505
The 7. §. if any one be forced against his will to make his water.	472	The 7. §. of the vomiting in women with childe	506
The 8. §. of the excoriation of the bladder, and of the necke of the same.	473	The 8. §. when a childe is weake in the Mo- thers wombe	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. of the impostume of the bladder or necke of the same.	474	The 9 §. of mischances and vntimely births pag.	508
* The nineteenth Chapter, of the Matrice or wombe.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 10. §. how a mischance is to be preuen- ted or hindered	509
The first §. of the termes or flowers in womē in generall.	476	The 11. §. how a dead child is to be expelled out of the mothers body	511
The 2. §. howe to preferre and moue the termes or flowers in women.	477	The 12. §. a preparation for an easie child birth and deliuary	512
The 3. §. how that the excessiue course of the flowers are to be stopped.	484	The 13. §. when the throwes doe not conti- nue in bearing women	514
The 4. §. of the Whites or the white fluxe in women.	488	The 14. §. of the perillous and hard child- birth in generall	515
The 5. §. of the suffocation or ascension of the Matrice.	489	The 15. §. when a woman cannot be deliue- red of a child	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. of the dascension or falling downe of the Mother or wombe.	491	The 16. §. of the Secundine or afterbirth, and how the same is to be expelled	516
The 7. §. of the paine in the Mother or <i>Ma- trix</i> through winde.	493	The 17. §. howe the afterthrowes are to be eased	517
The 8. §. of the paine in the Mother through cold.	494	The 18. §. for the excessiue flood after birth pag.	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. of the paine in the Mother through heate.	495	The 19. §. of the superabundance of milke pag.	518
The 10. §. of the contraction of the mother or the necke of the same.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 20. §. of diuers other accidents after birth	<i>ibid.</i>
The 11. §. of the <i>Schirrui</i> or hardnes of the Mother.	<i>ibid.</i>		
The 12. §. of the impostume in the Mother or in the necke of the same.	<i>ibid.</i>	The fourth Part or booke, contayneth all <i>the outward partes with all their accidents</i> <i>and infections, and it is deuided into nine</i> <i>Chapters, and 35. §.</i>	519
The 13. §. of the Canker and vicer of the Wombe or <i>Matrix</i>	498		
The 14 §. of an vnnaturall birth called <i>Mola</i> pag.	500	The first Chapter and first §. of the Armes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 15. §. what things are good for the <i>Ma- trix</i>	501	The 2. §. of the Arme pits	<i>ibid.</i>
* The twentieth Chapter, of all that con- cerneth the fruitful and child bearing wo- men	502	The 3. §. of the hands	520
The first §. to know whether a woman bee with childe or not	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. for to keepe the hands cleane	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. to knowe whether a woman bee with childe of a boy or a girle	503	The 5. §. for to perfume handes and gloues pag.	521
The 3. §. of those things which be most com- monly perceiued in women with childe pag.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 6. §. for scabbed hands	<i>ibid.</i>
The fourth §. at what time and in what ma- ner the childe groweth in the Wombe pag.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 7. §. of Chaps in the hands	<i>ibid.</i>
		The 8. §. for itchy or scabby hands	<i>ibid.</i>
		The 9. §. of the fingers	522
		The 10. §. of the numbnes of the fingers, whether it be in part or in the whole	<i>ibid.</i>
		The 11. §. when the fingers are numbed through some bruses	523
		The 12. §. of the Felon or Ancome in the fin- gers	524
		The	

The Contents of this Booke.

The 13. §. of the nayles on the fingers and toes	524
* The second Chapter of the legs and feete pag.	ead.
The 1. §. of the knees	525
The 2. §. of the Shins	ibid.
The 3. §. of the feete	526
* The third Chapt. of the pain in the ioints in general	527
The 1. §. of the Gout in generall, <i>Gutta</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	
* The fourth Chapter, of the gout in the ioints <i>Arthritis</i>	529
* The fifth Chapter of the gout in the hands <i>Chiragra</i>	531
* The sixth chapter, of the gout in the Hips <i>Ischia</i> , which we commonly call <i>Sciatica</i> , pag.	ead.
The 1. §. of the paine in the Hips or <i>Sciatica</i> through heate	533
The 2. §. of the paine in the hips or <i>Sciatica</i> through cold	ibid.
* The 7. chapt. of some accidents which this paine of the hips doth cause	536
The 1. §. of the eluxation of the ioints	ibid.
The 2. §. of the exenuated and withered lims pag.	537
The 3. §. of the extenuated or withered members in generall	539
The 4. §. of hardnes of the ioints	540
* The eighth Chapter, of the Gout in the feete, or <i>Podagra</i>	ibid.
The 1. §. how that the <i>Podagra</i> is to be prevented	541
The 2. §. of diuers other meanes wherby one may be freed from the Gout	542
The 3. §. how that the hot <i>Podagra</i> is to be purged	543
The 4. §. of the cold Gout or <i>Podagra</i> , and of his paine	545
The 5. §. an especiall and well approoued remedy for the Gout	546
The 6. §. the direction for the Gout sent to <i>Charles</i> the Emperour	ibid.
The 7. §. when any one doth goe but ill after the Gout of the feete	547
The 8. §. what things they be that conueigh other medicines towards the ioints	ibid.
* The ninth Chapter, of the outward accidents of the ioints and outward members pag.	548
The 1. §. of strained members	ibid.
The 2. §. of the fractures of bones	549
The 3. §. of the putrifaction of the bones, pag.	550
The fourth §. here follow now some especial	

thinges for the payne of the ioynts	ibid.
The 5. §. of the vnsefsiblenes, shaking and numbnes of the members	551

The fift part or booke of all the partes of mans body, that are disperfed ouer all the same, as the skin which couereth the whole body, the vains, the blood, the flesh, bones & sinews with many other accidents, as heat, coldnes, Phlegma, Melancholia, fatnes, leannes, firent and such like, and it is deuised into 21. Chap. and 84. §.

The first Chapter of the Skin	552
The first. §. of the inward causes which harme the skin	ibid.
The 2. §. of the Wartes	553
The 3. §. of the Measles, Redgum, and small Pockes in generall	ibid.
The 4. §. of the Measles	554
The 5. §. of the small Pockes	ibid.
The 6. §. of another sort of smal Pockes which be called the Swine pockes	555
The 7. §. of the cleauing or chaps of the skin pag.	556
The 8. §. of the itch of the skin	ibid.
The 9. §. of scabs or scurfes on the skin	ibid.
The 10. §. of Tumors	559
The 11. §. of botches, byles, and other hard swellings	560
The 12. §. of the Rose a certaine impediment called <i>Erysipelas</i>	562
The 13. §. of the swelling of the groyns, armpits, and eares	563
The 14. §. of the Carbuncle or Plague sore, a perillous swelling	564
The 15. of all maner of olde vlcers and old sores	ibid.
The 16. §. of a stinking & running vlcir,	566
The 17. §. of the broken vaines called <i>Vari-ces</i>	567
* The 1. chapt. 1. §. of depascent vlcers in generall	568
The 2. §. of the Fistula	ibid.
The 3. §. of the corroding vlcir called the <i>Herpes</i>	570
The 4. §. of the hard tumor <i>Schirrus</i>	571
The 5. §. of the Canker	ibid.
The 6. §. for the heat and inflammation of the vlcers	573
* The 3. chapter of the Pockes, and of the lamenes which is caused thereby	574
The first §. an order and cure of the auncient Phistions	ibid.
The	

The Contents of this Booke.

The 2. §. how to decoct <i>Guaiaicum</i>	576	The 12. §. whē a wounded mēber is lamed, <i>ib.</i>	
The 3. §. another maner to heal the Poxe, <i>ib.</i>		The 13. §. to cause the flesh to grow in wounds.	
The 4. §. the third cure of the poxe	577	pag.	601
The 5. §. the fourth cure of the Poxe	578	The 14. §. of that which causeth the skin to grow	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. for the pockes that haue continued long	580	* The 8. Chapter, of the cicatrices and spots of the skin	<i>ibid.</i>
The 7. §. if there be great paine with it, <i>ibid.</i>		The 1. §. of the moles or markes that childrē be borne withall	602
The 8. §. of the Byles in the poxe	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. of red spots through heate	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. for all open sores in the poxe,	581	The 3. §. of spots which come by fals	<i>ibid.</i>
The 10. §. for the scales & other spots	<i>ibid.</i>	The fourth §. of spots by stripes or fals	<i>ibid.</i>
* The fourth Chapt. of the Leprosie	582	* The 9. Chapter, of inward things which spread themselues ouer all the body	603
The 1. §. of meanes and medicines against the Leprosie	584	The 1. §. of the bones	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. an order of dyet	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. of <i>Napra</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of sleeping and waking	586	* The 10. Chapt. of 3. kinds of vaines in generall	604
The 4. §. of letting of blood	<i>ibid.</i>	The 1. §. of the blood vaines	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. for to expell the matter of this sickness by vrine	588	The 2. §. of the Arteries	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. wherwith the mouth & other parts are to be washed	<i>ibid.</i>	The 3. §. of the blood	605
The 7. §. wherby the blood in the Leprosie shalbe clenfed	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. wherby the blood may be clenfed	606
The 8. §. to cōsume the remanēt matter	589	The 5. §. how the abundant bleeding is to be staunched	607
The 9. §. what is to be vsed for the scales	590	The 6. §. how to let out superfluous blood	pag. ead.
The 10. §. to strengthen the hart, the liuer, and the braines in the Leprosie	591	* The 11. Chapter of the naturall warmth of mans body	<i>ibid.</i>
The 11. §. what concerneth the skin	<i>ibid.</i>	The 1. §. of vnnaturall heat	608
The 12. §. of the actual & potēcial cautery, <i>ib.</i>		* The 12. Chapt. of the sweat in general	609
The 13. §. what is requisite for euery sorte of Leprosie	<i>ibid.</i>	The 1. §. wherby sweat is prouoked	610
The 14. §. of the bad vicer <i>Cacoēthe</i>	592	The 2. §. of the sweat-bath and others	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 5. chapter, of outward infections and woundings of the skin	<i>ibid.</i>	* The 13. Chapt. of the sinewes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of burning or scalding with fire, hot water, & of the burning with gūpowder	<i>ib.</i>	The 1. §. of hurt and wounded sinewes	612
The 2. §. of the burning with gunpowder	594	The 2. §. for the paine	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. for all scales of burning	<i>ibid.</i>	The 3. §. whē the sinewes be resolued and limber	613
* The 6. Chapter, for to draw splinters and thornes out of the skin	595	The 4. §. for sinewes that be shrunk, or for the cramp of the sinewes	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 7. Chapter, of wounds and al that cōcerneth them	<i>ibid.</i>	* The 14. Chapt. of the flesh and muscles, or Lacerts	615
The 1. §. for to stanch blood	<i>ibid.</i>	* The 15. Chap. of the fat of mans body	616
The 2. §. of the clotted blood in the body	pag. 596	The 1. §. of the troublefomnes of fatnes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of the stitching of the wounds	<i>ibid.</i>	* The 16. Chapt. for great leannes	617
The 4. §. of fresh wounds	597	* The 17. Chapt. of wearifomnes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. many kinds of vulneral potions	<i>ibid.</i>	* The 18. Chapt. of sleepe	618
The 6. §. of the plaisters for thrusts & wounds	pag. 598	The 1. §. what hindreth sleepe	<i>ibid.</i>
The 7. §. of vulneral salues	599	* The 19. Chap. of paine	619
The 8. §. to draw matter out of the wounds	pag. 600	* The 20. Chapt. of <i>Phlegma</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. of the taints	<i>ibid.</i>	* The 21. Chapt. of cold diseases	621
The 10. §. for foule flesh	<i>ibid.</i>		
The 11. §. to stanch the <i>Synonia</i>	<i>ibid.</i>		

The sixt part containeth those diseases
which concerne the whole body: and it hath
21. Chapt. and 47. §.

The 1. Chap. of alagues in generall *ibid.*
The

The Contents of this Booke.

* The 2. Chap. of the one dayes ague called <i>Ephe-mera</i>	623	plague	668
* The 3. Chapt. of the continuall ague, <i>Continua</i> , in generall	627	The 1. §. of the ague in the plague	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. of the ague that is cōtinuall, <i>Continua</i>	628	The 2. §. of the signes whereby this sicknes is known	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. the order of diet in time of hot agues	<i>ibid.</i>	The 3. §. by what means the patient is prouoked to sweat	669
The 3. §. Common rules for agues	629	The 4. §. how to comfort those that are infected with the plague	670
The 4. §. of cōmon things for hot agues	630	The 5. §. what is to be done after swearing	672
The 5. §. of the loathing of meat in thē that be affailed with the ague	631	The 6. §. another regiment when any one is infected with the plague	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. for the thirst in hot agues	<i>ibid.</i>	The 7. §. how to purge those that are infected with the plague	673
The 7. §. of purging and such like	632	The 8. §. of the vnnaturall heate in the plague	<i>ibid.</i>
The 8. §. for the vomiting in the agues	<i>ibid.</i>	The 9. §. for the vnſatiable and great thirst	674
The 9. §. for the losse of sleepe	<i>ibid.</i>	The 10. §. of the bitternes in the mouth	<i>ibid.</i>
The 10. §. to relieue thē that be sick of the ague	<i>ib.</i>	The 11. §. of the want of appetite to meat	<i>ibid.</i>
The 11. §. for the relief & cōforting of the sicke patient	633	The 12. §. of the weakenes and sleepines	675
The 12. §. ordinances for all those that be recovered of a long sicknes	<i>ibid.</i>	The 13. §. of the binding in the body	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 4. Chap. of the halfe third dayes ague, called <i>Hemitritea</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 14. §. of the losse of sleepe	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 5. Chapt. of the tertian ague	634	The 15. §. when a plague sore appeareth	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 6. Chap. of the counterſeit & baſtard tertian, that is a falſe third daies ague	637	The 16. §. when as there is no plague sore perceiued	678
* The 7. Chap. of the burning Feuer, <i>Cauſon</i>	638	The 17. §. for letting of blood in the plague	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 8. Chapt. of the ague which is called <i>Synochus</i>	640	The 18. §. the gouernment of life in the plague	679
The 1. §. of the ague <i>Synochus</i> with putrified blood pag.	641	The 19. §. of a conuenient ayre for the plague	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. of the order of dyet	<i>ibid.</i>	The 20. §. how they ſhall gouerne themſelues, that eſcape this ſicknes	680
* The 9. Chap. of the quoridiā ague, <i>Quotidiana</i>	642	* The 17. Chap. an exhortation for thē that keepe theſe patients	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 10. Chap. of the quartain ague, <i>quartana</i>	643	* The 18. Chapt. of the Scuruie, <i>Scorbuticus Morbus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 11. Chapter, of the Conſumption or Ethicke <i>Hellica</i>	646	* The 19. Chap. of the deteſtable ſicknes Drunkennes	681
The 1. §. of the ague <i>Hellica</i> , with a pain in the breſt <i>Empyema</i> and <i>Phibiſi</i>	649	* The 20. Chapt. of frighting and feare	683
* The 12. Chap. of the ague <i>Marasmoda</i>	651	* The 21. of trembling	684
* The 13. Chap. of long lingering agues	652	* The 22. Chap. of the impediments that come of falſ	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 14. Chapt. of ſwellings after the ague	<i>ibid.</i>		
* The 15. Chap. of the Plague	653	The ſeuenth part and booke ſpeaketh of ſome kinds of poyſons, Plants, Mettals and Beaſts, and it is diuided into 4. Chap. and 4. §.	685
The 1. §. of the cauſes of the plague	<i>ibid.</i>		
The 2. §. of the ſignes of the plague to come	<i>ibid.</i>	The 1. Chap. 1. §. of all thoſe things that are good againſt poyſon	686
The 3. §. how to prevent the plague	654	The 2. §. an exhortation for al thoſe that are afraid to be poyſoned	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. how the healthy are to be kept and preſerued from the infection of the plague	<i>ibid.</i>	The 3. §. when any body perceiueth that he hath taken poyſon	687
The 5. §. how their dwellings ought to be	656	The 4. §. the ſignes when one is poyſoned	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. what exerciſe to be vſed in the plague	658	* The 1. Chap. of the venomous plants and ſuch like	688
The 7. §. of the ſleepe in this ſicknes	<i>ibid.</i>	* The 3. Chap. of the venomous Mettals and ſuch like	693
The 8. §. of purging and letting of blood	659	* The 4. Chapt. of the venims that come of beaſts, Pag.	694
The 9. §. of the motions of the mind	<i>ibid.</i>		The
The 10. §. of bathes and other cōmon cauſes	<i>ibid.</i>		
The 11. §. how one ſhall gouerne himſelfe without doores	660		
The 12. §. <i>Præſeruatina</i> , or præſeruatues that defend men from the plague	662		
* The 16. Chap. when any are infected with the			

The Contents of this Booke.

The eighth part and booke containeth diuers kindes of remedies, to wit, *Electuaries, Potions, Conserues, Confects fruits, Flowers, Roots, and other Plants, Trociskes, Oyles, Syrupes, and iuices, vitall waters, Aromaticall wines, and such like, which otherwhiles hath been mentioned: It is parted into 19. Chapters, and many §. all which are needeles to be recited: but we will onely rehearse them that be most needfull, with their Chapters,*

The 1. Chap. the Confection of <i>Calmus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. how to make Veriuiue for the Kitchen, and for Phisicke	706
* The 2. Chapter, of the artificiall Baulme, which may be vsed in steed of the right <i>Balsamum</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	
The 1. §. of Beere	707
* The 3. Chapt. of the Claret wine, Hypocras, and of herbed wines	708
The 1. §. of Clisters and their vse,	709
The 2. §. of confectioned seedes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. of the confectioned spices, peeles, rootes, and such like	710
* The 4. Chapt. of preferued fruits, flowers, and other things	711
The 1. §. how to preferue Elecampane rootes, <i>ibid.</i>	
The 2. §. how to preferue blacke Cherries,	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. Conserue of Eiebright	712
The 4. §. Conserue of Betony	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. how to preferue the rootes of the greater Pimpernell	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. how to preferue Peares after two waies	<i>ead.</i>
The 7. §. how Oranges are to be preferued	713
The 8. §. Conserue of Burrage	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. how that <i>Calmus</i> is to be preferued	714
The 10. §. how that Citrons are to be preferued	<i>ib.</i>
The 11. §. how that Citron peeles are to be preferued	<i>ibid.</i>
The 12. §. how Bayberries be preferued	<i>ibid.</i>
The 13. §. Conserue of Fumitory	<i>ibid.</i>
The 14. §. how the conserue of the fruit of the wild Rose tree is to be made	715
The 15. §. how that Abrecockes are to bee preferued	<i>ibid.</i>
The 16. §. Conserue of Elderne berries	<i>ibid.</i>
The 17. §. how that Ginger is to be preferued	<i>ibid.</i>
The 18. §. how that Raspes are to be preferued	716
The 19. §. how the conserue of Hyssope is to bee made	<i>ibid.</i>
The 20. §. of the Conserues of Lauander and of Spikenard	<i>ibid.</i>
The 21. §. how to preferue the Eryngus rootes,	<i>pag.</i>
The 22. §. Conserue of Marierom	<i>ibid.</i>
The 23. §. Conserue of Baulme	<i>ibid.</i>

The 24. §. how that Nutmegs are to be confectioned	<i>ead.</i>
The 25. §. Conserue of Gilloflowers	718
The 26. §. how Walnuts are preferued	<i>ibid.</i>
The 27. §. Conserue of Buglosse	<i>ibid.</i>
The 28. §. how Apples are preferued	<i>ibid.</i>
The 29. §. Conserue of Pyony	719
The 30. §. how to preferue Peaches	<i>ibid.</i>
The 31. §. how to make Conserue of Prunes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 32. §. how that Quinces and other things are to be preferued	720
The 33. §. Conserue of Roses	722
The 34. §. Conserue of Rosemary	723
The 35. §. to preferue the rootes of all red Beetes	<i>ead.</i>
The 36. §. Conserue of Sage	<i>ibid.</i>
The 37. §. how Sloes are to be preferued	<i>ibid.</i>
The 38. §. Conserue of Cowslips	724
The 39. §. Conserue of water Lillies	<i>ibid.</i>
The 40. §. Conserue of Violets	<i>ibid.</i>
The 41. §. Conserue of the flowers of Cicory	<i>ibid.</i>
The 42. §. how red Cherries are preferued	725
The 43. §. how that ripe and vnripe Grapes are to be preferued	<i>ibid.</i>
The 44. §. of that which commonly keepeth all fruits fresh	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 6. Chapt. of the Golden and Vitall waters, and elixirs of life	726
* The 7. Chap. of Hand-waters	728
The 1. §. for to make Maycheeses	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. how to make Wafers of Sugar	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. Hony water, <i>Hydromel</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 8. Chapt. for to make Iuleps	729
* The 9. Chapt. for to take spots out of all clothes	<i>ead.</i>
The 1. §. Spice cakes which be excellent good	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 10. Chap. hereafter follow Confections, <i>ibid.</i>	
The 1. §. <i>Confectio Anacardina</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. <i>Antidotum Hamagogum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. <i>Electuarium de Baccis lauri</i>	730
The 4. §. <i>Benedicta laxatina</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. <i>Bezoartica</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. <i>Electuarium de Calamintha</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 7. §. Confection of Cassie after three waies	<i>ibid.</i>
The 8. §. <i>Electuarium de Castoreo</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. <i>Catharticum imperiale</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 10. §. <i>Catholicon</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 11. §. <i>Electuarium de Cineribus</i>	731
The 12. §. <i>Electuaria varia de Cytoniis</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 13. §. <i>Electuarium de corticibus Aurantiarū</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 14. §. <i>Electuarium Ducis</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 15. §. <i>Electuarium de Epithymo</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 16. §. <i>Electuarium de Gallia</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 17. §. <i>Confectio Hamech</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 18. §. <i>Hiera picra simplex</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 19. §. <i>Hiera logodon</i>	732
The	

The Contents of this Booke.

The 20. §. <i>Hiera Pachij Ruffini</i>	732	The 18 §. oyle of wild Cucumbers	744
The 21. §. <i>Electuarium Indum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 19. §. oyle of <i>Euphorbium</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 22. §. <i>Electuarium lenituum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 20. §. oyle of Foxes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 23. §. <i>Electuarium de Lepore combusto</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 21. §. oyle of Lillies	<i>ibid.</i>
The 24. §. <i>Laticians Almanforis</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 22. §. oyle of Hempseede	<i>ibid.</i>
The 25. §. <i>Electuarium de Manna</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 23. §. oyle of the kernels of Abrecocks	745
The 26. §. <i>Electuarium ad melancholiam</i>	733	The 24. §. oyle of Elderne flowers	<i>ibid.</i>
The 27. §. <i>Micheleta</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 25. §. oyle of Saint Iohns woort	<i>ibid.</i>
The 28. §. <i>Mitbridatium</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 26. §. <i>Oleum Irinum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 29. §. <i>Electuarium oculista</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 27. §. oyle of Cherry-kernels	<i>ibid.</i>
The 30. §. <i>Electuarium de olivano</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 28. §. oyle of Melilot	<i>ibid.</i>
The 31. §. <i>Electuarium de ono</i>	734	The 29. §. oyle of Cresses	<i>ibid.</i>
The 32. §. <i>Electuarium Diaphœnicon</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 30. §. oyle of Copper	<i>ibid.</i>
The 33. §. <i>Philonium</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 31. §. oyle of Gourd feedes	746
The 34. §. <i>Electuarium Diaprunis</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 32. §. oyle of Linseede	<i>ibid.</i>
The 35. §. <i>Electuarium de Psyllio</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 33. §. oyle of white <i>Sesamum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 36. §. <i>Electuarium de Raphano sylvestri</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 34. §. oyle of Linnen cloth	<i>ibid.</i>
The 37. §. <i>Electuarium regium</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 35. §. the oyle of Bay	<i>ibid.</i>
The 38. §. <i>Electuarium de succo Rosarum</i>	735	The 36. §. oyle of Mace	<i>ibid.</i>
The 39. §. <i>Diasatyron</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 37. §. oyle of the feedes and flowers of Pop-	<i>ibid.</i>
The 40. §. <i>Electuarium de Scoria Ferri</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	pie	<i>ibid.</i>
The 41. §. <i>Electuarium de Sebesten</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 38. §. oyle of sweete Almonds	<i>ibid.</i>
The 42. §. <i>Dia Sena</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 39. §. oyle of Marierom gentle	747
The 43. §. <i>Theriaca Magna</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 40. §. oyle of Malticke	<i>ibid.</i>
The 44. §. <i>Theriaca Diacessaron</i>	736	The 41. §. oyle of <i>Narcissus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 45. §. <i>Triphera</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 42. §. oyles of Mirtles	<i>ibid.</i>
The 46. §. <i>Electuarium vite</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 43. §. oyle of Mints	<i>ibid.</i>
The 47. §. of Leigh	<i>ibid.</i>	The 44. §. oyle of Motherwoort	<i>ibid.</i>
The 48. §. for to make excellent Spice or Sugar	<i>ibid.</i>	The 45. §. oyle of Nutmegs	<i>ibid.</i>
Cakes	<i>ibid.</i>	The 46. §. oyle of Cloues	<i>ibid.</i>
The 49. §. <i>Lochilohot</i>	738	The 47. §. oyle of Walnuts	748
* The 11. Chap.	<i>ibid.</i>	The 48. §. oyle of Pepper	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. Almond milke	739	The 49. §. oyle of Peache kernels	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. <i>Mannu Christi</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 50. §. oyle of Quinces	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. for to counterfeit Marrow of bones	<i>ibid.</i>	The 51. §. oyle of Rue	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. <i>Medicamen de Turbith</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 52. §. oyle of Earth wormes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 5. §. <i>Melicraton</i>	740	The 53. §. oyle of Priuet	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. of Meade, a common drinke	<i>ibid.</i>	The 54. §. oyle of Rubarbe	<i>ibid.</i>
* The 12. Chap.	741	The 55. §. oyle of Roses	749
The 1. §. oyle of Poplar buds	<i>ibid.</i>	The 56. §. oyle of Saffron	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. oyle of <i>Mandragora</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 57. §. oyle of <i>Sandaraca</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. oyle of Amber	<i>ibid.</i>	The 58. §. oyle of Sulphur	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. artificiall Baulme	742	The 59. §. oyle of blew Flowerdeluce	750
The 5. §. Sallet oyle, or oyle of Oliues	<i>ibid.</i>	The 60. §. oyle of Scorpions	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. oyle of Behen	<i>ibid.</i>	The 61. §. oyle of water Lillies	<i>ibid.</i>
The 7. §. oyle of <i>Pyretrum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 62. §. oyle of Mustard seede	<i>ibid.</i>
The 8. §. oyle of Beuercod	<i>ibid.</i>	The 63. §. oyle of Spikenard	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. oyle of Lead	<i>ibid.</i>	The 64. §. oyle of Antimony	751
The 10. §. oyle of Penniroyall	743	The 65. §. oyle of Steele, or oyle of Iron	<i>ibid.</i>
The 11. §. oyle of Purslaine	<i>ibid.</i>	The 66. §. Roche or Peter oyle	<i>ibid.</i>
The 12. §. oyle of Cammomill	<i>ibid.</i>	The 67. §. oyle of Terbentine	<i>ibid.</i>
The 13. §. oyle of Capers	<i>ibid.</i>	The 68. §. oyle of Violets	<i>ibid.</i>
The 14. §. oyle of Costus	<i>ibid.</i>	Oyle of Ireas	<i>ibid.</i>
The 15. §. oyle of Dill	<i>ibid.</i>	The 69. §. oyle of Vitriol, or of Copperas	752
The 16. §. oyle of Eggs	744	The 70. §. of the oyle of Wheate	<i>ibid.</i>
The 17. §. of oyle of Annys	<i>ibid.</i>	The 71. §. oyle of Iuniper berries	<i>ibid.</i>
		The	

The Contents of this Booke.

The 72. §. oyle of Willow leaues	752	The 25. §. Pillula de Opopanaco	758
The 73. §. oyle of Argal	753	The 26. §. Pillula pestilenciales sine Ruffi	ibid.
The 74. §. oyle of Wormewood	ibid.	The 27. §. Pillula de Quinque generibus Mirobalano-	ibid.
The 75. §. oyle of Tiles	ibid.	rum	ibid.
The 76. §. Oxyraton	ibid.	The 28. §. Pillula de Rhabarbaro	ibid.
The 77. §. Oxyssel simplex	ibid.	The 29. §. Pillula de Sandaraca	ibid.
The 78. §. Oxyssel compositum	ibid.	The 30. §. Pillula de Sarcocolla	ibid.
The 79. §. Oxyssel Scyllinum	ibid.	The 31. §. Pillula de Serapino	ibid.
The 80. §. Oxyrrhodinum	ibid.	The 32. §. Pillule sine quibus esse nolo	ibid.
The 81. §. Oxyfacchara	ibid.	The 33. §. Pillula stomachica	ibid.
* The 13. chapter	ibid.	* The 14. Chap.	ibid.
The 1. §. Emplastrum album coctum	754	The 1. §. Hony of Roses	ibid.
The 2. §. Apostolicon plaister	ibid.	The 2. §. Vineger of Roses	759
The 3. §. Emplastrum de Baccis lauri	ibid.	The 3. §. Vineger of Rue	ibid.
The 4. §. Basilicon	ibid.	* The 15. Chap.	ibid.
The 5. §. a plaister for the Rupture	ibid.	The 1. §. Egyptiacum	ibid.
The 6. §. the plaister Ceroneum	ibid.	The 2. §. Salve of Agrippa	ibid.
The 7. §. Diachilon	ibid.	The 3. §. Salve of Alabaſter	ibid.
The 8. §. the plaister de Galbano	ibid.	The 4. §. Unguentum album	ibid.
The 9. §. Gratia Dei plaister	ibid.	The 5. §. Unguentum de Alibaa	ibid.
The 10. §. Emplastrum Grisei de lapide Calaminari	ibid.	The 6. §. Unguentum Anodinum	ibid.
The 11. §. Hyssopi cerotum sine Philagry	ibid.	The 7. §. Unguentum mundificatum de Apio	ibid.
The 12. §. Emplastrum de Meliloto	ibid.	The 8. §. Unguentum Apostolorum	760
The 13. §. Emplastrum de Muscagimibus	755	The 9. §. Unguentum Arogon	ibid.
The 14. §. Emplastrum Oxycroceum	ibid.	The 10. §. vnguentum de Artanisa	ibid.
The 15. §. Emplastrum de Pelle Arietis	ibid.	The 11. §. vnguentum de Cerussa	ibid.
The 16. §. Emplastrum de Radicibus	ibid.	The 12. §. Unguentum Citrinum	ibid.
The 17. §. the plaister of Saunders	ibid.	The 13. §. Unguentum Comitisse	ibid.
The 18. §. the blacke plaister	ibid.	The 14. §. Salve for scabs	ibid.
The 19. §. Sparadrapon	ibid.	The 15. §. vnguentum infrigidans Galeni	ibid.
The 20. §. Emplastrum viride	ibid.	The 16. §. Unguentum Martianum vel Martialis	ibid.
* The second part of this chap. speaketh of Pills	ibid.	The 17. §. Unguentum Mercuriale	ibid.
The 1. §. Pillula de Agarico	ibid.	The 18. §. vnguentum Nerninum	ibid.
The 2. §. Pillula Agregatiue	ibid.	The 19. §. Unguentum nibili	ibid.
The 3. §. Pillula Elephangina	756	The 20. §. Unguentum pectorale	ibid.
The 4. §. Pillula de Aloe lota	ibid.	The 21. §. Pomada, Pomadoes	761
The 5. §. Pillula Azaiareib	ibid.	The 22. §. Unguentum Pompholiges	ibid.
The 6. §. Pillula Aurea	ibid.	The 23. §. vnguentum Populeonis	ibid.
The 7. §. Pillula de Edellio	ibid.	The 24. §. vnguentum Rosatum	ibid.
The 8. §. Pillula benedicta	ibid.	The 25. §. vnguentum Sandalinum	ibid.
The 9. §. Pillula Cochia	ibid.	* The second part of this Chapt. of Sief.	ibid.
The 10. §. Pillula de Cynaglossa	ibid.	The 1. §. Sief album Rafis	ibid.
The 11. §. Pillula de Esporbio	ibid.	The 2. §. Sief de Fellibus	ibid.
The 12. §. Pillula fetida	ibid.	The 3. §. Sief de Memithe	ibid.
The 13. §. Pillula de Fumo terra	ibid.	The 4. §. Sief de Plumbo	ibid.
The 14. §. Pillula de Hermodactylis	757	The 5. §. Sief de Rosis	ibid.
The 15. §. Pillula de Hiera simplici	ibid.	The 6. §. Sief de Thure	ibid.
The 16. §. Pillula de Hiera composita	ibid.	The 7. §. Sief viride	ibid.
The 17. §. Pillula de Hiera cum Agarico	ibid.	* The third part of this Chapt. of Syrupes	762
The 18. §. Pillula Iliaca	ibid.	Of the Syrupes and Iuices in generall	ibid.
The 19. §. Pillula Inde	ibid.	The 1. §. Syrupus de Absinthio, that is of Worme-	ibid.
The 20. §. Pillula de lapide Armeno	ibid.	wood	ibid.
The 21. §. Pillula de lapide Lazuli	ibid.	The 2. §. Syrupus de Acetosa, of Sorrell	ibid.
The 22. §. Pillula lucis	ibid.	The 3. §. Syrupus Acetosus, of Vineger	ibid.
The 23. §. Pillula Masticine	ibid.	The 4. §. Syrupus Acetosus compositus, also of Vine-	ibid.
The 24. §. Pillula de Mezereo	ibid.	ger	ibid.
			The

The Contents of this Booke.

The 5. §. <i>Syrupus Acetosus de Citionis</i> , which is of flower Quinces	762	The 48. §. <i>Syrupus rosatus solutivus</i> , purging Syrupes of Roses	769
The 6. §. <i>Syrupus Acetosus Diarrhodon</i> , that is of Vineger and of Roses	763	The 49. §. <i>Syrupus de rosis albis</i> of white Roses,	<i>ibid.</i>
The 7. §. <i>Syrupus de Acetositate Citri</i> , of the iuice of Citrons	<i>ibid.</i>	The 50. §. <i>Syrupus sapor Regum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 8. §. <i>Syrupus de Agrestia</i> , of Veriuiice	<i>ibid.</i>	The 51. §. <i>Syrupus de Stechade</i> , of Stechas flowers	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. <i>Syrupus de Aurantiis</i> , of Oranges, <i>ibid.</i>		The 52. §. <i>Syrupus de Thymo</i> , of Thyme	<i>ibid.</i>
The 10. §. <i>Syrup. de Artemisia</i> , of Mugwort, <i>ibid.</i>		The 53. §. <i>Syrupus violarum</i> , of Violets	<i>ibid.</i>
The 11. §. <i>Syrup. de Berberis</i> , of Berberies, <i>ibid.</i>		*The fourth part of this Chapt. of the Species and of Losings.	770
The 12. §. <i>Syrup. de Betonica</i> , of Betony, <i>ibid.</i>		The 1. §. <i>Species de Ambra</i> , of Amber	<i>ibid.</i>
The 13. §. <i>Syrupus Byzantinus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. <i>Species de Aniso</i> , of Annis	<i>ibid.</i>
The 14. §. <i>Syrupus de Boragine</i> , of Burrage, 764		The 3. §. <i>Species de Anibus</i> , of Rosemary	<i>ibid.</i>
The 15. §. <i>Syrupus de Buglossa</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. <i>Species aromaticum rosarum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 16. §. <i>Syrup. de Calamintha</i> , of field Mints, <i>ibid.</i>		The 5. §. <i>Species de Calamintha</i> , of field Mints, <i>ibid.</i>	
The 17. §. <i>Syrupus Capillorū Veneris</i> , or of May-den haire	<i>ibid.</i>	The 6. §. <i>Species de Capparis</i> , of Caper rootes, pag.	771
The 18. §. <i>Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhubarbaro</i> , of Cicorie	<i>ibid.</i>	The 7. §. <i>Species de Caryophyllis</i> , of Cloues	<i>ibid.</i>
The 19. §. <i>Syrupus de Citionis</i> , of Quinces	<i>ibid.</i>	The 8. §. <i>Spec. de Cinnamomo</i> , of Cinamom	<i>ibid.</i>
The 20. §. <i>Syrupus de Citra</i> , of Citrons	<i>ibid.</i>	The 9. §. <i>Species Cordiales</i> , for the hart	<i>ibid.</i>
The 21. §. <i>Syrupus de Corticibus Citri</i> , of Citron Peeles	765	The 10. §. <i>Spec. Diacostu</i> , of Costus roots	<i>ibid.</i>
The 22. §. <i>Syrup. de Cucurbita</i> , of Gourds	<i>ibid.</i>	The 11. §. <i>Species de Croco</i> , or Crocoma, of Saffron	<i>ibid.</i>
The 23. §. <i>Syrupus de Endinia</i> , of Endiue	<i>ibid.</i>	The 12. §. <i>Species de Cumino</i> , of Comin	<i>ibid.</i>
The 24. §. <i>Syrupus de Epithymo</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 13. §. <i>Species de tragacantha</i> , of Dragagant pag.	772
The 25. §. <i>Syrup. de Eupatorio</i> , of Agrimony	<i>ibid.</i>	The 14. §. <i>Species Ducis</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 26. §. <i>Syrup. de Fumo terra</i> , of Fumitory, <i>ib.</i>		The 15. §. <i>Species de Galanga</i> , of Galangal	<i>ibid.</i>
The 27. §. <i>Syrupus de Glycyrrhiza</i> , of Licorice, <i>ibid.</i>		The 16. §. <i>Spec. de Gemmis</i> , of precious stones	<i>ibid.</i>
The 28. §. <i>Syrupus Granatorum</i> , of Pomegranates	766	The 17. §. <i>Species Hiera simplicis</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 29. §. <i>Syrupus de Hyssopo</i> , of Hyssope	<i>ibid.</i>	The 18. §. <i>Species de Ireos</i> , of Ireas	<i>ibid.</i>
The 30. §. <i>Syrupus de Ireos</i> , of Ireas	<i>ibid.</i>	The 19. §. <i>Species Insitini</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 31. §. <i>Syrupus de Iuinibus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 20. §. <i>Species de Lacca</i>	773
The 32. §. <i>Syrup. de Limonibus</i> , of Limons, <i>ibid.</i>		The 21. §. <i>Spec. latificantes</i> , & <i>latitia Galeni</i> , <i>ibid.</i>	
The 33. §. <i>Syrupus de Lupulo</i> , of Hops, 767		The 22. §. <i>Species liberantes</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 34. §. <i>Syrupus de Menta</i> , of Mints	<i>ibid.</i>	The 23. §. <i>Species lithontribon</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 35. §. <i>Syrup. de Myrto</i> , of Mirtle seed	<i>ibid.</i>	The 24. §. <i>Species de Margaritis</i> , of Pearls	<i>ibid.</i>
The 36. §. <i>Syrupus de Nymphaea</i> , of water Lillies	<i>ibid.</i>	The 25. §. <i>Species de Meniba</i> , of Mints	<i>ibid.</i>
The 37. §. <i>Syrupus de Papauere</i> , of Poppy heads	<i>ibid.</i>	The 26. §. <i>Species de Moschu</i> , of Muske	<i>ibid.</i>
The 38. §. <i>Syrupus de Persicis</i> , of Peaches	768	The 27. §. <i>Species Nere</i>	774
The 39. §. <i>Syrup. de Plantagine</i> , of Plantain	<i>ibid.</i>	The 28. §. <i>Spec. de Olibano</i> , of Frankincense, <i>ib.</i>	
The 40. §. <i>Syrupus de Pomis</i> , of Apples	<i>ibid.</i>	The 29. §. <i>Spec. de Papauere</i> , of Poppy seed	<i>ibid.</i>
The 41. §. <i>Syrup. de Portulaca</i> , of Purslaine	<i>ibid.</i>	The 30. §. <i>Spec. de Penidio</i> , of Sugar pennets	<i>ib.</i>
The 42. §. <i>Syrup. de Prassio</i> , of Horehound	<i>ibid.</i>	The 31. §. <i>Species de Paonia</i> , of Pyony	<i>ibid.</i>
The 43. §. <i>Syrupus de Pyris</i> , of Peares	<i>ibid.</i>	The 32. §. <i>Species Diaphaniconis</i> , of Dates	<i>ibid.</i>
The 44. §. <i>Syrupus de Radicibus</i> , of roots	<i>ibid.</i>	The 33. §. <i>Species Philanthropon</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 45. §. <i>Syrupus de Ribes</i> , of Ralpes	<i>ibid.</i>	The 34. §. <i>Species pliris Arcoticon</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 46. §. <i>Syrupus infusionis Rosarum</i> , of Roses, <i>ibid.</i>		The 35. §. <i>Spec. de Prassio</i> , of Horehound	<i>ibid.</i>
The 47. §. <i>Syrup. de Rosis siccis</i> , of dry roses	769	The 36. §. <i>Species Diarrhodon Abbatis</i> , of Roses	775
		The 37. §. <i>Species Electuarij de succo rosarum</i> , of Roses	<i>ibid.</i>
		The	

The Contents of this Booke.

The 38. §. <i>Species Rosata nouella</i>	775	The 24. §. <i>Trocisci de Violis</i> , of Violets	<i>ibid.</i>
The 39. §. <i>Species de Seminibus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 25. §. For to make writing Inke	<i>ibid.</i>
The 40. §. <i>Species Trisantalū</i> , of Saunders	<i>ibid.</i>	The 26. §. For to make cōmon Vernish	<i>ibid.</i>
The 41. §. <i>Species Trion pipereon</i> , of Pepper	776	The 27. §. of Painters Vernish	782
The 42. §. <i>Species Diaturbith</i> , of Turbith	<i>ibid.</i>	The 28. §. for to make odoriferous Vernish,	<i>ibid.</i>
The 43. §. <i>Species de Xyloaloe</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	✱ The 17. Chapter	<i>ibid.</i>
The 44. §. to make strong water	<i>ibid.</i>	✱ The 18. Chapr. of ail kindes of Wine	<i>ibid.</i>
The 45. §. <i>Spec. Bercholdi</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 1. §. of wine in generall	783
✱ The 16. Chapter	777	The 2. §. of sundrie natures of wine	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. <i>Decoctiones Aperitina</i> , Potions that	<i>ibid.</i>	The 3. §. of Must	<i>ibid.</i>
do deobstruē	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. of Wine cuiēt, or decocted wine	pag.
The 2. §. <i>Decoctio Epithymi</i> , of Dodder	<i>ibid.</i>	The 5. §. of burnt wine, or spirit of wine	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. <i>Decoctio fructuum</i> , a Potion of certain	<i>ibid.</i>	The 6. §. of Vineger	<i>ibid.</i>
fruits	<i>ibid.</i>	✱ The 19. Chapr. of herbed wines and such	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. <i>Decoctio pectoralis</i> , the pectorall por-	<i>ibid.</i>	like	<i>ibid.</i>
tion	<i>ibid.</i>	The 1. §. the wine of Elecampane roots	785
The 5. §. <i>Decoctio & infusio Senae</i> , a Potion of	<i>ibid.</i>	The 2. §. Eiebright wine	<i>ibid.</i>
Senecleaves	<i>ibid.</i>	The 3. §. Wine of whole Grapes	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. a water of mans blood	<i>ibid.</i>	The 4. §. Wine of Auence	<i>ibid.</i>
✱ The second part of this Chapter of certain	778	The 5. §. Betony wine	<i>ibid.</i>
powders for meate	778	The 6. §. Burrage wine	786
✱ The third part of this Chap. of Trocisks <i>ib.</i>	<i>ib.</i>	The 7. §. Wine of <i>Asarabacca</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 1. §. <i>Trocisci de Absinthio</i> , of Wormwood	<i>ib.</i>	The 8. §. wine of Frambois	<i>ibid.</i>
The 2. §. <i>Trocisci Adulphi</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 9. §. wine of Harts toong	<i>ibid.</i>
The 3. §. <i>Trocisci de Agarico</i> , of Agaricke	<i>ibid.</i>	The 10. §. the wine of Hyslope	<i>ibid.</i>
The 4. §. <i>Trocisci Alhandel</i> , of Coloquint	779	The 11. §. winter Cherry wine	787
The 5. §. <i>Trocisci Alkathungi</i> , of winter Cherries,	<i>ibid.</i>	The 12. §. Cherry wine	<i>ibid.</i>
	<i>ibid.</i>	The 13. §. Lauander wine	<i>ibid.</i>
The 6. §. <i>Trocisci de Berberis</i> , of Berberies	<i>ibid.</i>	The 14. §. of Malmsey	<i>ibid.</i>
The 7. §. <i>Trocisci de Bolo armeno</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 15. §. wine of Marierom	<i>ibid.</i>
The 8. §. <i>Trocisci de Camphora</i> , of Cāpher	<i>ibid.</i>	The 16. §. wine of Cinnamon	<i>ibid.</i>
The 9. §. <i>Trocisci de Capparis</i> , of Caper roots	<i>ib.</i>	The 17. §. Muscadel wine	788
The 10. §. <i>Trocisci de Carabe</i> , of Amber	<i>ibid.</i>	The 18. §. Wine of Gilloflowers	<i>ibid.</i>
The 11. §. <i>Trocif. de Celsidomia</i> , of Celandine	<i>ib.</i>	The 19. §. Wine of Buglosse	<i>ibid.</i>
The 12. §. <i>Trocisci de Corallis</i> , of Corall	780	The 20. §. wine that purgeth	<i>ibid.</i>
The 13. §. <i>Trocisci de Eupatorio</i> , of Agrymonie	<i>ibid.</i>	The 21. §. Wine of whole Grapes	<i>ibid.</i>
	<i>ibid.</i>	The 22. §. <i>Vinum punicum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
The 14. §. <i>Trocisci de Lacca</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 23. §. Rosemary wine	<i>ibid.</i>
The 15. §. <i>Trocisci de Myrrha</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 24. §. Wine of Sage	789
The 16. §. <i>Trocisci de Olubano</i> , of Frankinsence	<i>ibid.</i>	The 25. §. Wine of Clary	<i>ibid.</i>
	<i>ibid.</i>	The 26. §. Wine of water Lilly flowers	<i>ibid.</i>
The 17. §. <i>Trocisci de Rhabarbaro</i> ,	<i>ibid.</i>	The 27. §. Tamariske wine	<i>ibid.</i>
The 18. §. <i>Trocisci Diarrhodon</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	The 28. §. Wine of Wormewood	<i>ibid.</i>
The 19. §. <i>Trocisci de Rosis</i> , of Roses	<i>ibid.</i>	The 29. §. Wine of Zeduary	<i>ibid.</i>
The 20. §. <i>Trocisci de Santalis</i> , of Saunders	781	The 30. §. how that the infirmities of al wines	are to be amended
The 21. §. <i>Trocisci de Spica</i>	<i>ibid.</i>		790
The 22. §. <i>Trocisci de Spodio</i> , of Iuory	<i>ibid.</i>		
The 23. §. <i>Trocisci de terra sigillata</i>	<i>ibid.</i>		

The end of the Contents of this Booke.

A very meete and necessarie introduction, for the better
understanding of all such things as are handled in
 this present Practise of Phisicke.

The Contents of the Introduction.



The miserie of mans life caused by sinne, hath constrained vs to thinke on such meanes, by the which the diseases, that daily are incident vnto it, might be eased: which truly by the mercie of God, and Phisickes rule, at length haue bene found out. The profit and necessitie wherof together, are iust causes, why phisicke may thoroely be praised. And bicause the sicknesses are manifold, and the bodie of man also diuided into many and sundry parts and members, but principally into fouer: The Head, the Brest, the Bellie, and the externall or outward parts: Euerie maladie hath hir due remedie: also where, when, how, and in what sort euery remedie is to be gotten, gathered, and kept: like-

wise if any superfluitie were in it, how and what is to be separated from it, what regiment or order is to be observed in Purginge, Letting of blood, Cupping, or fastening of Woundes. Then is shewed the due and true vse of the Aire, of mouing, and quietnes: of waking and sleeping, of meate and drinke. At length also are expounded the weights and measures, which are vied in Phisicke.

Of the manifold miseries and calamities
 of mankind.

The first Chapter.



The innumerable miseries, calamities, dangerous diseases, and sores, which the life of man is daily and howlerly subiect vnto, hath euen from the beginning of the world, vntill this day, moued, nay rather constrained diuers learned men, to examine and trie whatsoeuer the earth and nature hir selfe hath yelded, by that meanes to finde cause for the disease and wretchednesse of mankind. Some philosophers there be, that wholly haue imploied and applied themselves, to amend and heale the infirmities of the minde, haue extolled vertue, aduanced honestie, and planted reason in the hart of man: they haue also set forth vice in a most vglye shape, so to feare men from it, and to induce them to leade an honest and vertuous life. But bicause all this was grounded onely vpon the reason of man, and altogether without a sure foundation, it hath pleased God of his infinite mercies to supplie the wants by his spirit in the holy scripture, and there to teach whatsoeuer is necessarie vnto a vertuous and honest life: yet is the nature of man by sinne so overtaken, so by the first fall ouerreached, so wrapped and rooted in iniquities, that at no time in him any goodnesse either is or may be found.

Others there are, that haue taken no lesse pains, in seeking out the meanes to cure and helpe the innumerable maladies, accidents, sicknesses, and sores of the bodie, and therefore are forced to trie and approue all the creatures of God, as Rotes, Herbes, flowers, fruites, stones, woods, mettals, all liuing beasts, yea euery element, each by himselfe, to finde out the hidden vertues and properties, and to knowe to what vse they might rightly be applied. This was the first finding and foundation of this noble science of phisicke, and hath bene from time to time by diuers and sundrie experiences of the olde Phisitions diligently obserued, truly taught and written: and at the last also imparted vnto vs, and shall be reserved vntill the end of the world.

The wretched-
ness of mans life.

Wretched-
ness of new
borne babes.

Of youth.

Olde age a
sickness of
it selfe.

And indeede, if we behold our owne wretchednesse, we shall evidently perceiue, that we in the whole course of our thort life in this world, are as it were swimming in a boysterous and bottomlesse sea, where waue vpon waue vncertainly couereth vs, and is ready to swallow vs vp: where we are tossed to and fro, not finding any place to rest our fote, or free our head from water: and albeit at length (with much adoe) we do from stormie seas arrive on thore; yet there we finde as many thistles and thornes, calamities and miseries about vs, which do pricke and plague vs on euery side, vntill our miserable flesh at the last returne (whence it began) to the dust and wormes meate. This it is, that the prophet *Esay* acknowledgeth, when he saith: what is man? *All flesh is grasse, and all the glorie thereof is as the flower of the field. Behold, the grasse withereth, and the flower falleth away, for the breath of the Lord bloweth on them. And David saith: What is man, that thou art so mindfull of him, and the sonne of man, that thou visitest him? Man is as it were nothing: his daies passe away like a shadowe.* With many such like sayings in diuers places of his *Psalmes*. And in very truth, if we rightly waigh our estate, what is our life (so long as we remaine on earth) moze than a continuall anguish and paine, labour, feare, sorrowe, and alas altogether troublefome? Behold our wretchednesse, even from the hower of our birth: we are brought forth not onely in perill and danger of our selues, but hazarding also our mothers life. But granting that happily we are borne, yet are we not able in any wise, or any way to helpe or aide our selues, but are as it were thrust headlong into an everlasting and terrible prison: for we are no sooner come to the world, but presently we are fettered and bound both hand and fote: then must we eate and drinke what others command, we must sleepe and awake when others will: there lie we wrapped in our owne filth, then do we abide paine in the belly, gnawing of the wormes, ache of the gums and teeth, neither can we (which is the greatest miserie of all) complaine and shew our paine and grieve, but lie weeping and wailing evermoze. Beside all this, how long creepe we vpon all fower, not hauing vse of leg or hand: how long liue we, before we chat or prate any whit at all: Thus without hand, without fote, without tong, yea without any ioint that doth his dutie aright, liue we (though not seeming to liue) some yeres together: and thus we spende Infancie in miserie. Afterwarde comming peradventure a little further, what followeth moze than stripes and blowes, brawlings and chydings of the parents, schoolmasters, and ouersiers, till at the last (if so it please God to preserve vs) we, with no small sorrow, care, and trouble of our parents, leaue childhode and enter into youth: But now alas with much trauell and paine being come to youthe estate, we are in ten thousands of perils both of bodie and soule: for now we growe wanton and lasciuious, stubborne and obdinate towards our parents, vicious and vngodly in the sight of God, as by experience daily we finde and see, and neede not any further proue. What sorrowes and cares after all these, bring mans yeres with them: great labour and paines taking do they againe require to maintaine himselfe, his wife, his children and familie to fede and finde them honestly and well, to supplie their wants, to esteeme of friends, to beware of enemies, and to take care for the Commonwealth. If then at length peradventure he come to any preferment, office, or gouernance in that place where he liueth, he is not onely constrained to set behinde and omit his owne affaires and businesse, but is hated also and equied of others, now sorroweth, now ioyeth for his countries estate, now with one thing, now with another troubled and vexed in minde. Furthermoze, the tumult and paines he taketh, resteth neither night nor day, otherwhyles called vpon for one matter, straightway for another, and then at the last reapeth his paines for his labour, and is rewarded with ingratitude, yea oftentimes he is endangered of goddes, of honour, of life and all. Thus with much trauell, with many perils, and with great paines gaineth he nothing but gray haire, and olde age. And to conclude, what is olde age else than a very sickness it selfe, feeble, weake, full of sorrowes, and an heape of cares, not regarded and esteemed of those that should most account of it? I will not rehearse here the temptations of sathan, verations and troubles in minde, pricking of the conscience, and many other heauie matters, which age is subiect vnto, but end with this, that the olde man goeth with one fote in the graue, and hath nothing moze surer than death at his doze. When we begin to bethinke with our selues, either what sicknesses we haue had & withstood, or what we haue seene in others, and what diseases we are subiect vnto, what strange, how diuers, and what incurable calamities, even from the hower of our birth, till our dying day are incident vnto vs, as leprosie, falling sickness, lamenesse, blindness, deafnesse, &c. Out of all which we may easily gather, and evidently see, that our thort

life

life is nothing else but a long dying day, in the which all miseries meete: This may wel be a iust cause to admonish vs to thinke vpon another home, which is promised and prepared for vs, of that most cunning phisition and sauour of our soules Christ Iesus, which we shall finde to be without all troubles or cares, without wants, and without end.

The second Chpster.

The causes of mans miseries and wretchednesse.



The reason of man (as alwaies it hath done euen from the beginning) seemeth to complaine greatly, that our nature should be subiect vnto so many infirmities, miseries and calamities: yea it doth as it were chide with God, and accuse him of tyrannie, for creating of man so wretched. And in very deede, a woefully minded man that neither acknowledgeth God, nor the cause of his naturall imperfections; might easily be brought, and carried away with such like opinions, and with great reason bewaile the infinite wretchednesse of mankind, seeing he findeth no creature on the face of the whole earth, that is bered with so many aduersities, but man onely: But contrariwise, they that are indued with the knowledge of God and godlinesse, will not accuse him of tyrannie that is most gentle, will not accuse him of euill, that hath created and made all things most perfect and good, nay that neuer could or would do harme. Adam was created in the beginning sound and whole, perfect, wise, absolute and without any blemish or spot whatsoever: but by disobedience, transgressing the commandement of God, in that he would without contradiction be made like vnto God, and knowe both good and euill, which he did of his owne stubborn head, and in despite and contempt of his creator: Wherewith hath he not onely brought and wrought vnto himselfe, but vnto all his posteritie after him, an euermolting mishap and infelicities, as a well worthy and deserued punishment for his and our misdoings together. Wherefore sinne is the first and onely cause of all our distresse, of all our sicknesses and heaviness here on earth: which hath brought vs to that estate, that after all our tumbling and paines taking, we must at the last, taste and take death as a merit and payment for our finnes.

The cause of mans wretchednesse.

This if a godly man consider with himselfe, and (as Saint Paule saith) sigheth for finnes sake, then doth he beare the crosse patiently, acknowledgeth it to be a fatherly warning and rebuke, vseth due and true meanes: first calleth to God euen from the bottome of his hart, committeth both his life and his death into his hands: Afterwards commeth vnto phisicke, the which it hath pleased God of his mercie to ordaine for the behoofe and neede of man, and hath taught it his seruants the phisitions: Also it is his will and pleasure, that we should vse his creatures in our necessitie, and giue him praise and thanks for them. And to the end the aforesaid meanes might the better be vset, he hath mercifully lent and sent vs the phisition and phisicke, and hath shewed vs a way, by which those meanes might best be wrought.

Christians beare their crosse with patience.

And to the end, this might in our native language be better published and shewed abroad, I thought good not to burie, but to imploy this little talent of mine, which for this end and purpose I haue receiued of God.

In which worke, my purpose and intent is, to begin and diuide the bodie of man orderly from the crowne of the head, and so descend downward from ioint to ioint till I come to the sole of the foote: and withall to shew, what infirmities every part and member is most subiect vnto: And lastly, how, and by what meanes they may be cured.

But seeing this cannot be done without phisicke and phisitions helpe: I thought it best, first to shew the iust dignitie and worthy praise of them both, before we go forward with our intent and purpose.

The third Chapter.

Of the necessitie, profit, and praise
of Physicke.

The neede
and praise
of physicke.



Seeing it hath pleased almighty God, that we should, with many infirmities of bodie, and with great and heauie troubles and vexations of minde, run on and continue this our race and pilgrimage on earth; and that we might preserve this lump of clay, sic and auoide those things that might harne it, take away the incident infirmities, and to keepe our bodies a pure habitation for God and his holy Spirit, as it pleaseth him to grant vs life: He hath also of his infinite mercie and godnesse created (as is aboue shewed) naturall and effectuall meanes, reuealed them, and in pittie, so bountifullly by the art of physicke imparted and communicated vnto man, that Iesus Sirach saith in this manner: Honour the Physicion with that honour that is due vnto him, because of necessitie: for the Lord hath created him; for of the most high cometh healing, and he shall receiue gifts of the King. The knowledge of the Physicion lifeth vp his head, and in the sight of great men he shall be in admiration: The Lord hath created medicines of the earth, and he that is wise will not abhorre them: was not the water made sweete with wood that men might knowe the vertue thereof? So he hath giuen men knowledge, that he might be glorified in his wondrous workes. And giueth therupon a good lesson well to be noted and kept, as that we should leaue off from sinne, and not faile in our sicknesse, that we should pray vnto God that he would heale vs, and afterwards giue place to the Physicion.

What greater praise also can we haue of physicke, than that onely example of Christ our Lord and Saviour: what else was his whole life, whilst he was amongst vs here vpon earth, but first, as it were a spirituall curing and healing of the soule, and afterward also of the bodie, shewing thereby that he was the true Physicion, the onely healer and helper both of bodie and soule of man: He made the blinde to see, the deafe to heare, the dumbe to speake, the lame to go, he clenched the lepers, staied the bloodie fluxe, which all physicions could not do, braue the diuels out of the possessed, and (to conclude) he raised the dead. Such expert and cunning Physicions after him were his Apostles: who oftentimes haue expounded this healing of the sicke, to be a shadow of our saluation, and myserie of his holy word, and a rule or pathway for the whole life of a Christian. Is not this a sufficient praise and commendation of this art?

The heathen and wise men heretofore, haue so esteemed of this great gift of God, that they haue not onely ascribed the art it selfe vnto the gods: but also haue reuerenced all those that were skilfull in it, with such honour, as was due vnto their gods; as we may reade of Apollo, Esculapius, Chiron, Machaon, Peon, and also Hippocrates.

Physicke is a
sure pawne.

If thou regard riches: what expert Physicion euer lacked wealth (as Galen testifieth) that respecteth and careth for it? Most true it is, that physicke is a most firme and sure pawne, that defendeth the possessor from extreme pouertie: An approued Physicion may go whither he will, euery where findeth he store of sicke and diseased people, and if peradventure some speake not well of him, yet others will, so that neuer he can want, where euer he be. Neither is there any vocation vnder the sunne, that is lesse hated and enuied, than the estate of a Physicion: for the greatest tyrant in the world, if he fall into an extremitie of sicknesse, and knowe a renowned Physicion, whom he hath euer hated and greatly iniured, his counsell wil he sicke in the time of his infirmite, forgetting all rancour and euill will, and laying aside all the iniuries that passed betwene them, yea he will commit both life and death into his hands, and afterward rewarde him honorably. A godly Physicion also may saue the soule of an vngodly and vicious man: for although he were neuer so wicked, that neuer had once thought on God, or his iudgement to come, and falling into a great sicknesse of bodie, very seldome seeketh for God, but sendeth onely for the Physicion of the bodie: who comming may very conueniently mixe spirituall physicke with his corporall medicines, admonish the diseased to repentance, to sorrow for his sinnes, and to leade a more righteous life hereafter: The sicke taketh his counsell kindly, assuring himselfe that

that it proceedeth from a good minde, and spoken by him that seeketh not onely to saue and prolong his life: but also, by Gods helpe, to cure him of his present infirmities. And indeede we finde by daily experience, that in such a case a goodly phisition more effecteth, than a good diuine or preacher: It is also an euery way for the phisition to obtaine the blessing of God, when he saith: Come ye blessed, inherite the kingdome of my father, which hath been prepared for you euen from the beginning of the world: for I haue been sicke, and you haue visited and comforted me, &c.

Phisicke is thus defined or described: Phisicke is an art, which doth no lesse maintaine health, than cure and take away sickness. The definition of Phisicke.

Phisicke is a supplying of that which is wanting, and a diminishing of that which aboundeth: If any one list to heare a longer and larger discourse of this, let him reade Galen in his booke *De Arte medendi*.

And albeit, that there haue bene some learned men heretofore, and peradventure yet are, that do seeme to scoffe and mocke at phisicke and phisitions: as *Cato*, *Plinie*, and the rest: yet let them say what they list, the art of phisicke shall vnto the end of the world well and worthily be esteemed and accounted. Neither needeth any one to be offended, for that there are many, that falsly vse and abuse the name and title of the phisition, thrusting themselves into phisicke, that neuer learned the art, neither studied or made any one thing in it: deceiuing all men vnder a colour of faire speeches, and flatterie, with costly apparell, with chaines of golde and iewels so bedeckt, and so adorne with euery costly thing, that many are induced to wonder at them. In Egypt were all phisitions very gallantly and well maintained, although they had but one particular remedie for one onely disease. A phisition (as *Homer* saith) is a man, that is to be esteemed as a great number of men: and *Seneca*, speaking in the commendation of phisicke saith, we brie of the phisition an inestimable treasure, namely, life and health of bodie: and we do daily finde by experience both in court and countrie, that there is not a more ample vocation, than that of phisicke: for certainly we see that euery one striveth to be a phisition: and no sooner can any one either be pricked with a pin, or stung with a Bee, yea scant bitten with a flea, but euery one straightwaies giueth his counsell, and as it were presenteth himselfe to be phisition for the aggrieved patient.

The fourth Chapter.

The diuision of this present worke.



We causes that haue induced me to compile and make this present booke, I haue partly shewed before: partly also intreated and very earnestly requested by such persons, whom I could not, and willingly would not, denie a greater matter than this was: as that I would comprehend in writing, not onely such things, as by long experience my selfe haue approued, but also whatsoever I had either seene, read, heard, or duly and truly obserued and noted, amongst the most expert and learned phisitions of all nations, as well the ancient as later writers. And that I would not onely write according to the common custome: *Fiat secundum artem*: but as much as is possible, and as neede shall require, adde also the preparation of euery remedie: for in this if a little error be once committed, a great displeasure and fault might easily insue, the operation of the medicine weakened, and oftentimes altogether lost and perished.

The diuision of the whole worke.

In fine, this whole worke was made, to the intent, that euery good householder in the time of sickness: hauing neither phisition nor Apothecaries nere him, or at least, none skilfull in that art, might himselfe knowe how to prepare and vse any medicine that might serue for his disease, or what he might as best and most send for at the Apothecaries for his purpose. In like sort also may he iudge of the properties and vertues of compounded or mixed medicines, as Electuaries, Symples, Pills, Powders, &c. and which of them in euery disease might rightly be applied and vled. Furthermore, I haue very diligently obserued and noted the iust doses, proportion, or quantitie of euery medicine that is at one time to be vled, and what things are to be avoided and shunned. And for this cause, haue I parted it into sixe treatises or parts, named and shewed diuers kindes of poisons, to the end that better heed might be taken in shunning them,

and if by some mischance they had bene taken inwardly, how to infringe and breake the force and violence of them. And albeit some things there be noted and set downe in this booke, which might seeme better to haue bene passed ouer in silence, yet was it done to such an end, that the deceits and knaueries, by which the common sort of people is oftentimes illuded, might be disclosed and betwailed, to teach them also to take heede hereafter of those that would deceine them, and onely to regard those things that are grounded on reason and skill.

All such things as are noted with Latine names, are either those that haue no English name as yet knowen, or else that are not growing here in England, but are commonly found at the Apothecaries.

The method we haue obserued in this booke, is according to the customes and orders of the ancient phisicall writers, who diuiding mans body into fouer generall partes, to wit, the Head, the Brest, the Belly, and the externall or outward partes: So also haue I diuided and cut this present worke into fouer bookes: The one for the head: the other for the brest: the third for the belly: and the fourth for the outward members: as at large in the beginning of euerie of them shall be shewed. Vnto these fouer first are adioined other fouer bookes and not without cause, for that the method and order I haue obserued, requireth and asketh no lesse, as shall be shewed hereafter.

The ancient Philosophers haue (as is already saide) for sundrie and very necessarie causes, diuided the bodie of man into fouer generall partes. The first part containeth the head, and stretcheth no further than vnto the necke: the second part hath the brest vnto the midriff, or to the lowermost short ribs: the third part is the belly, with all that is in it, euen vnto the hips: the fourth part are the outward members, as Armes, Hands, Thighes, Legs, Feet, &c. with all their particular parts and ioints. This very same method (if God of his infinite mercie giue me grace) do I purpose in this my worke to follow.

And this may suffice, to let vs see the wretchednesse of mans nature: the fountaines and causes of all infirmities, and also the necessitie, profit and praise of phisicke. But before I proceede any further in describing of diseases with their appropriate remedies, I thinke it were very mete and necessarie to giue a more clerer instruction in some points of phisicke, to the ende that such as shall vse this booke might haue the better vnderstanding in the preparing of medicines.

The first Chapter.

How all manner of Rootes, Barks, Herbes, Flowers, Fruits,
and such like may be gathered
and kept.

The best
time to ga-
ther rootes.



The best time and most conuenient to dig or plucke by rootes, according to some mens iudgement, is the harvest or Autumne, when the leaues do wither and fall away. Others suppose the spring time to be most mete for the same intent, when the herbe doth first begin to appeare and creepe forth of the ground: But the greatest and fittest obseruation in the gathering of them is this, to note the place or ground they growe in, the time when they are sappiest and fullest of iuice, and the vse, as either that we must needes haue them, or that we must haue them greene and fresh. We must endeavour also to haue them fresh new digged out of the ground, to wash them cleane, to separate the small hairens and lesser branches from the rote, to crop off the stalkes and tops, to cut away that which is rotten and worme eaten. All these rootes which are wooddie within, as of Fenel, of Cichorie, of Persly, &c. shall the hard and wooddie hart be taken out of. The biggest rootes must be split asunder, and afterwards dried in the shade and in open aire. And if it be moist and wet weather, they are to be put in a warme place, where no ill smoke cometh, with often turning them vpside downe. They must also be kept free from sunne, moisture, dust and smoke, and be hanged vp in such a place, where the winde and fresh aire may sometime come to them. The lesser rootes, as of Sparrage, Malerian, Arabacca are kept longer than a yeare, and continue of like force and vertue: The great and hard rootes, as of Bryonie, Gentian, and Aristologia, as also amongst the lesser, both

both kindes of *Niesewort* may well be reserved three yeres together, without any let or hindrance to their vertue: The rindes of the rootes being separated (as is aforesaid) from the innermost wooddie parts, shall in like sort be dried and kept.

As concerning herbes, it is the common opinion, that they ought to be gathered within thirty daies, as from the 15. of August unto the 15. of September. But seeing that some herbes do sooner come to their full perfection and growth, other some later: (which difference for the most part dependeth on the diuersitie of the countrie, or else of the ground and place where they growe) the best time of gathering them shall be either when they beare their flower, or when the leafe is at the biggest, and when they smell strongest and are best coloured. They must be dried in the shade, or else in a reasonable warme place, where neither dust nor smoke can come at them. They continue not in their full vertue and strength above one yere.

All manner of flowers shall be gathered when they are full blowen and wide open, while they be fresh and not withered, not when they haue lost their smell. Roses must be gathered when they begin to blowe, and as yet not full blowne: none of them all may be kept above one yere, except the flowers of Cammonil, and that is by reason they be naturally drie: The sweet smelling flowers are longest preserved and kept in bores of Lentill wood.

Concerning fruites, Nature it selfe teacheth vs, that they ought to be gathered or plucked from the tree, not bruising them, at such a time when they are at the ripest: those that haue stones in them, may haue the stones (if it so seme good) taken forth, afterwards thoroughly and well dried, or preserved and confected in honie or sugar, as is taught in the 8. part of this booke.

Seedes are ripest and of most vertue, when the fruits are full ripe, and when herbes are at their full growth, all dust shall be sifted or fanned from them, then bound vp in paper, which longest keepeth them good. Some seedes may be kept longer in their full vertue and strength, others must be new gathered euery yere, but easily it may be discerned by the taste, which of them hath lost his vertue, and which hath not.

Addition.

For the gathering of simples and their partes, there be almost as many mindes and diuersities of opinions, as authors that write of them. The one will haue them gathered when they beare their flower: the other before, or when the leafe is at the biggest, and they readie to haue flowers: the third sort, when they are but young and new come forth of the ground. Some do gather one and the selfesame herbe at sundrie times, as when it first springeth out of the earth, when it beareth his flower, and when it beareth seede: adding, that the first is for children and young folkes, the second for middle aged, and the last for oldemen. Other some woulde haue the leafe, the stalke, the roote, the flower and the seede each gathered and reserved apart, affirming each part of them to serue for sundrie vses. There are yet others, that gather all manner of herbes in their seuerall moneths, beginning the moneth still when the sunne entereth into one of the twelve celestially signes, saying, that euery herbe hath most vertue when it most flourisheth: some adde vnto this the full moone. But howsoeuer it be, this I knowe by experience, that not onely the diuersitie of the time in gathering them, in preparing and in reseruing them, but also the manifold vses of them, are iust causes of sundrie, nay, cleane contrarie effects and operations in them. For this I haue scene, that one and the selfesame simple being gathered at sundrie times in one and the selfesame place, shall purge and binde, which are quite contrarie effects. And therefore it is no maruell, if sometimes we misse of our expected purpose and hope, in not finding those vertues in the simples, that by Hippocrates, Galen, Dioscorides and others are ascribed vnto them, seeing they are of diuers men gathered without regarde of time or place, prepared without care, reserved and kept they passe not how nor how long. I remember, that as I travelled through the Dukedome of Brownswick, I heard of a woman that was very famous (in the towne there called Gosler) for womens diseases, but especially in staying and prouoking their menstruall fluxes: with whom when I had conferred about hir art, I found that it was one onely herbe,

but gathered at sundrie times. The reason of all these opinions and sundrie operations, because it is not our intent nor meaning here to recite them, we will defer them, till a more fit opportunitie be offered.

The sixth Chapter.

Of the preparation of some things for
Phisicke as followeth.

The prepara-
tion of
simples.



It is also very necessarie and convenient, to knowe the true preparation of diuers and sundrie things and simples, that are vsed in phisicke, and to take away, or diminish, or at the least correct that which is and might be hurtfull in them. For if this should not be done, they would oftentimes, by reason either of their sharpnesse or venomous nature, do a great deale more harme than good. Neither shall it be amisse, to shew and declare the nature and properties of the principall simples and drugs in phisicke.

What Aloes
Hepatica is.

Aloëparica is the iuice of a very sappie herbe, which groweth in the countries that lie eastward, and is in taste maruellous bitter. The best is that which glistereth, is light, cleere, like a liner, without sand or granel admixed, and as yet cleauing to the skin wherein it is brought. There is another kinde of *Aloes*, called *Aloes Caballinum*, which in colour is very blacke, and not vsed in phisicke.

The vertues
of the same.

Aloes is hot in the first, and drie in the thirde degree, purgeth gall or choler, and waterish steame. It is corrected two sundrie waies, as followeth.

This prepa-
ration.

Take of very fine powdered and sifted *Aloes*, as much as thou wilt, put twice as much raine water to it, stir and mire them well together, let it then rest all a night, that the sand, stones and other filth may fall to the bottome: in the morning after, straine of the clearest, couer it with a linnen cloth, and set it in the hot sunne, or in some other warme place till it be somewhat dried, then make little rowles of it.

The other manner of washing of *Aloes* is done with spices, thus: Take of *Aloes* (as aforesaid) powdered and sifted six ounces, of the sweet wood called *Cassia Ligneæ*, Spikenard of India, *Asarabacca*, sweete Cane, *Cubebes*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Cinnamon*, *Xylobalsami*, *Saffron*, *Gallick*, prepared *Lacca*: of each one ounce and a halfe. Boile all these together in a glasse or pot in water, vntill all the vertue be boiled out of the ingredients, and gone into the water: then straine it through a cloth: after this, dissolue your *Aloes* in this water, stirring it continually, and at the last straine and drie it as is aforesaid. This is called of the Apothecaries *Aloe Lota*, or washed *Aloes*, either with or without spices: of this may boldly without any danger be giuen a quarter of an ounce at once.

To make burned *Allum*.

How to calcine
Allum.

Take of the best *Allum*, as much as thou wilt, beate it not very small, put it into an earthen pot vpon a little cole of fire, boile it till it be thicke, white and light, and stir it well in the boiling, if it were not altogether drie: then take it out by peeces, and lay it in the hot fire, and it will be dried incontinently.

Ammonia-
cum.

Ammoniacum and such like gums, that cannot be beaten small, and are very vncleane, are clenched as followeth. Put strong vinegar vpon them, and let them melt together on the fire, straine and presse them through a strong linnen cloth, to separate peeces of wood, strawe, and whatsoever else is with it, let it afterwarde boile till it be thicke, powze it out on a stone that is beoyled, and make it vp as pleaseth thee best.

Oile of
olives.

Sallet Oil or *Oile of Olives*: it is oftentimes commanded to vse old oile of *Olives*: in place of which (if it be not to be had) thou shalt take one part of *Oile* and two partes of water, and let them boile together easily on the fire, till the *Oile* become as thicke as hony, and so vse it. Others adde more water to their oile, but that commeth all to one end.

Pitch.

Pitch is sometimes vsed in forme of powder, and is prepared on this manner: Take one part of *Pitch* and twenty partes of water, let them boile together in a great pot, till such time, as that the *Pitch* do no more smell as it was wont to do, and be molten againe together: then let fall

fall one or two drops vpon a colde stone, and if (it being colde) thou canst rub it to powder betwene thy fingers, it is sufficiently prepared. After the very same manner is also *Turpentine*, *Rosine*, and such like things prepared. *Turpentine. Rosine.*

Pearles shall be beaten very small, and searced thowow a latwne searce, then moule or grinde them on a moztar or marble stone with rose water, vntill thou finde or feele no sharpnesse or sandinesse betwene thy fingers, then let them drie in such a place where no dust can come at them: On this manner are all other pretious stones prepared. *Pearles. Pretious stones.*

Lead being burned to ashes is vsed to many purposes, and it is thus to be burned: Take as much *Lead* as thou wilt, put it in a little pipkin, and stop it very close, set it in a potters foynace, there let it glowe and burne whiles his pots be abaking, then let it cole: if it be not calcined or burned ynough, lute it and set it in the foynace againe, and so burne it till it be so fine as ashes. *Lead* is also washed and prepared thus: Take *Lead* and beate it in a leaden moztar, put raine water to it, and beate them both together a good while till the water begin to be very thicke, and troubled like puddle, straine this thowough a cloth very well, and let it drie in a warme place. *Lead calcined. Lead washed.*

Take *Bloodstone* which now is in vse at the Apothecaries, is the myne of *Quicksilver*, powder it, and searce it finely, then put it in a moztar, & powze cleere fresh water on it: stir them well together, and let it settle to the bottome, then powze away the foule water on the top, and put moze cleane water to it, and do as befoze, till it be cleane washed, but much better it is, to wash this stone with plantaine water. *Bloodstone.*

The preparation of *Bucks blood* is this: In the sommer time when the sunne is in the *Lion*, thou shalt then take a black bucke or hee goate, that is some thre or fower yeeres olde, keepe him by himselfe the space of thre weekes, & feede him with nothing else but these herbes, as *Smallege* (which is so good for the grauell, that of some for that cause it is called the hand of God) *Perisley*, *Wallowes*, *Dimpenell*, *Iuie of the oke*, *Paules Betonie*, *Sarifrage*: *Sarifrage of the wall*, and such like herbes with their rootes: Item *Strawberie leaues*, *Beane huskes*, the lesser branches of the vine: giue him these herbes one after another: Thou shalt also giue him red wine to drinke, but euery third day giue as much faire water as he is able to drinke. Now when he hath thus been fed thre weekes together, he shall at the first full mone be killed or sticke: The first blood shalt thou let passe away, and receiue that which is the middlemost or second, drie this in the sunne vntill thou canst powder it: or else if it cannot be done at the sunne, drie it in an ouen, and so reserue it in some drie place, &c. *Bucks blood.*

Those that take great delight in distillations, do feede the bucke with meate and drinke, as is befoze said, onely excepted that they giue him no water at all: They take ten pounds of this blood, and fine pounds of wine vineger that hath bene twice or thise distilled, one pound of salt, of *Radish*, of *Cicorie*, *Pimpinell*, of each of them thre ounces, *Valerian*, *Cichorie* rootes, *Ginger*, *Winter Cherries*, *white Amber*, *Sulphur viue* that hath been well washed in wine, *Cinnamon*, *Annis seeds*, *Fenell seeds*, *Commin seeds*, *Wilde Rape seeds*, *Perisley seeds*, of each two ounces: of the iuice of *Agramonie*, *Rue*, *Penniroiall*, and of *Paules Betonie*, of each fixe dragmes: These things being cut somewhat small, and well mixed together, they shall be put into a pot close luted and stopped, and buried in horse dung for one fortnight or thre weekes, then distilled in a glasse limbecke: The first water that distilleth is very cleere, and so sone as the colour of the water altereth, thou shalt change thy recipient or receiuer: this iterate in changing of recipients as often as thou seest the colour of that which distilleth to change. Others distill it all ouer together into one receiuer, and afterward reiterate or repeate their distillations twice or thise, till neither the taste nor the smell do offend them: In the first and second distillation ascendeth also some oile with the water, which shall be let alone with the liquoz: and albeit the liquoz do seeme nothing troubled or thicke, thou shalt not regarde that, for it is but so much the stronger. This liquoz and oile together, if it be kept close stopped, remaineth good and vertuous two or thre yeeres after the first making of it. Of this maiest thou giue at one time two dragmes, or halfe an ounce in wine or meade, against grauell and dropies befoze meate: it doth also wonderfully prouoke sweate. *The distillation of bucks blood.*

Bolus Armenus or *Bole Armenacke*, is a red stone or earth that is brought from *Armenia*: This hath an especiall vertue to purge melancholie: the waight of a crowne at once is sufficient, for it purgeth somewhat violently: but if it be washed, thou maiest exhibite the waight of two crownes at one time, for then purgeth it gently. *Bole Armenacke.*

Beate as much of this *Bole* as thou wilt, powze vpon it *Rhenish* or *French wine*, or faire water,

water, stir and mixe them well together, let it settle againe, powze of the humiditie of water, of wine, and put on fresh and stir it againe as before: this do as long as thy water commeth coloured from it, which will be some sixtene or twenty times: after this, wash it yet ten times with rose water. Some there be that do adde such things as do comfort and strengthen the hart, which in very dede is not to be misliked.

Camfire. Camfire will in no wise be beaten to powder, except it be rubbed and chafed in a mortar, in the which mortar hath first bene beaten some peece of part of an almon or almonds, according to the quantitie of Camfire, which thou wilt prepare.

Cassia. Cassia which is in the pipe, quill, or cane, is one of the best purging medicines, and is sufficiently known. The best pipes are chosen by waight, & in which the kernels do not rattle, which is a sure signe that the pith or marrow in them is succulent and moist, and nothing withered or dried. It is used on this manner: Take as many of the pipes as pleaseth thee, beate vpon them softly from one end to the other untill they rent or split asunder, take out all that is in it with a knife, into a hairen strainer, & lay it ouer a boiling pot of water, that the hot vapour may come to it: When the Cassia is reasonable warme, take off the hairen strainer or siene, hold it ouer a dish, and with a round pestell squise it thorough the strainer, and all the blacke pith will passe thorough and hang on the outside of the strainer, which thou shalt scrape off with a knife and keepe it: then set thy siene or strainer ouer the boiling water, as is aforesaid, and afterwarde squise it thorough againe as at the first. This worke shalt thou do againe so long, till no more pith passe thorough, and nothing but kernels remaine in thy strainer: this prepared Cassia is called by the Apothecaries *Cassia cribrata*.

Note, that when thou wilt vse this Cassia, it must alwaies be new taken out of the pipes: for being reserved out of the pipe, presently it waxeth sower, and especially in the sommer time. Of this strained Cassia maiest thou exhibite at one time one ounce, or one ounce and a halfe, in hot burning agues vnto children and women in childbed, to euerie of them more or lesse, as they are able to beare.

Also if thou wilt haue this Cassia to purge more effectually, then put either the blossomes or leaues of the Peach tree in the boiling water, before thou hold thy Cassia ouer the vapour of it. The vertue of Cassia is, to purifie and cleere the blood, to quench thirst, and to alay heate, being taken with Endiue water: also to purge the stomacke, to driue out choler and flegme without any danger: for it hath no sharpnesse or corobing vertue in it. In like sort it is very comfortable for the brest and liuer, and is very good for the kidneies, being mixed with the appropriate waters that driue out grauell, and beaten Licorise then ministred, it doth scower away the grauell, and hindreth the growing of the stone. It is used in a confection with Spanna, and it is also prepared for Clusters.

Coloquint. Coloquint is a very bitter apple, and is oftentimes sown in gardens for pleasure sake, yet it is found very seldome to be ripe. The vse of that which is brought vs. from Venice or other places, is this, and no otherwise. The innumerable white kernels being cast away, the rest shall be beaten very small, and sifted thorow a very fine searce, and so be brought to as fine a powder as possible may be: when it is wet, it swelleth as if it had neuer bene powdered: and for that cause it is straightly charged to be reduced into so fine a dust: for if neuer so little a peece should by chance remaine in the stomacke or guts, it would easily excoiate and hurt them, so that hereby the sinewes might take some harme, yea lamenesse and crampes ensue of it. The right preparation of it is this that followeth.

Take of the aforesaid fine powdered Coloquint two ounces and a halfe, rub it a great while with two ounces of oile of Roses, then take of the gum Tragacanth, of gum Arabecke, of Bdellium, of each of them ʒ. ss, skepe them in a little rose water untill they be dissolued: put of this mixture vnto the beaten Coloquint, and soyme little cakes of it, let them drie, beate them small againe, and fashion your cakes againe with the gum water, and keepe them: On this wise prepared are they more safe than the crude Coloquint, and are called *Throcisci Alandali*: To what end they be used in phisicke, shall be shewed hereafter.

This prepared Coloquint may be exhibited from ʒj. to ʒj. ss. ʒij. but it purgeth vehemently, it driueth the tough flegmaticall humors from the head and other partes.

Coloquint is supposed of some to be hot and drie in the second: of others, in the third degree.

Corall.

Corall both red and white is prepared in that manner as is aforesaid of the Pearles.

Coziander

Coziander seed being hurtfull vnto the bzaine, both by his hot nature and by his strong smell, is very profitable for many uses: ye shall correct it as followeth. Steepe it the space of twelue howers in good strong wine vinegar: afterward euaporate or drie away your vinegar from it in a warme place, then it is prepared. Black Coziander is the seede of *Nigella*, and is prepared as that aboue said. Coziander seedes.
Nigella seedes.

Dates both swete and sower do purge very easily, especially in hot diseases & great drythes: being prest close together as they are brought vnto vs, they are kept good a long time: you may minister of them from two ounces to sower at once. They neede no preparing or coryreting at all, so that they purge so gently, and can do no harme. Dates.

Gems or pretious stones are prepared as is also said of pearles.

Gems.

Horsleaches, the blood sucking water worme, shall be kept some daies in fresh water before they be used: putting a little blood and bzain into the water for their swode, then do they lose their venoime. Horsleaches.

Scoria ferri, the refuse of iron, shalt thou cast into faire water: wash it, and let it settle to the bottome, powze of the water from it vntill it remaine very cleane and pure, afterward put it in an earthen pot that is well leaded or glassed within: put as much vinegar to it, as will wet it onely, and not ouerflowe it: let them stand so both together the space of thirtie daies, in the meane while oftentimes stirring them: afterward moule or grinde them on a marble, as thou dost the pearles. Scoria ferri,
Refuse of
iron.

Polipodium, little ferne or polipodie doth willingly growe on olde wals and mossie stones, but the best groweth on oaks: it purgeth gall and slimie superfluities: it is somewhat hurtfull to the stomache, it is therefore coryrected with Annise seedes, fennell seedes, Cloues, Cumine seedes, and is administred either with hony water, or else with the water of grapes, and very seldome by it selfe alone. Polipodie.

Epithymus Dodder is used in many profitable medicines: the golde coloured and strong smelling Dodder is the best: sower bzagnes of it in powder, or at the most fire, drieth out melancholic and choler. It is almost neuer given by it selfe, but alwaies admired with other things, but specially it is sodden in drinks or potions, at which time thou maiest vse one ounce at once. It is put in last of all into the boiling potion. Dodder.

The iuice of wild Cucumbers (called in Greke *Elaterium*) is pressed out of the wild Cucumbers: the Physicians command that it should not be used, till it be two yeeres olde, it may be kept ten yeeres together, the older it is, the better: and when it is moistened it is like vnto milke: being put to the fire, it doth presently burne. It purgeth flegme, water, and all superfluous humidities most violently, and in like sort gall and choler also. It ought not to be used vnadvisedly, or without the counsell of a skilfull Physician, for that an error might be committed in a fewe graines. Elaterium.

Euphorbium, is a strange gum so called, amongst all the purging simples the strongest and hottest, very sharpe and biting on the tong, it seemeth to burne in the nostrills, and prouoketh neslings, it stoppeth the breath, as if it would choke one, if the dust of it be receined. Therefore great heed is to be given: for two or thre bzagnes of it is ranke poison. In extreme diseases of flegme and dropsies, when no other remedies will helpe, thou maiest vse it from sower graines vnto twelue, but no more: *Passicke* and *Spike* of India do greatly diminish his hurting qualitye. The ancient Physicians did minister it with meade or hony water. Euphorbium.

Sewets and marrowes of sundry beastes are prepared as followeth: first wash them cleane and often in colde water, then chop and melt them together with a little fire in a seuerall pot with boiling water and wine, or else with rose water: after this presse and straine them thorow a cloth, and keepe it in a vessell or pot of pewter in a colde place. The marrow must especially be taken out of the bones in the beginning of winter. Sewets.
Marrowes.

Iuozie is thus prepared: take of it in quantitie as thou please: cut it in thin chips, put them into a new pot, and stop him close with a pot lid that is vnbacked: put him into a potters furnace amongst other pots to be burned. When your pot is colde, take out your *Iuozie*, beate it to a small dust or powder, and searce it thorow a fine hairen searce: put it into a leaded or glassed pot, powzing as much rose water on it till it be cleane couered. Afterwardes, take for euerie twelue ounces of *Iuozie* halfe an ounce of Camfere: moule or grinde them on a marble together, and when it is hard like dowe, forme or make little square cakes of it called *Trochises*: keepe them Iuozie.

them in a glasse well stopped, that they lose not their smell. Note also, that if thy pot be not very closely luted and couered, that thy Iuorie cannot be burned white, and that it loseth a great deale of his vertue. This is vsed against all manner of poisons.

Hermoda-
cilis.

Hermodactylis, some suppose it to be our Daffodils, and indeed I do take it to be a kind of them, but the Greeks do call their *Hermodactylon*, *Ephemeron*, and *Colchicon*, of the place where it groweth. And although this roote may kill a man in one day (as also our Daffodils do excitate a fluxe or laske in the belly euen till the very blood do follow) yet hath it his vse, as in other places shall be shewed. This roote shall be digged vp out of the earth in the beginning of the sommer, and those that are sappiest and whitest within, shall be reserued. Those that are withered and soft, haue lost their vertue: such as growe in wet, watrish and lowe ground, are very venomous. And albeit, that they be very cleane and drie, yet shall they not be vsed in halfe a yere, and are very seldome in request. One dragma, or one dragma and a halfe at the most is sufficient at one time. Cinnamon, Ginger, Mastix, long Pepper do greatly correct their venomous qualitie: they are given in the vineger of Squils, home of Koles, or Drimel.

Harts horn.

Hartshorne is prepared as is aforesaid of Iuorie.

Lacca.

Lacca the gum or sap so called, do we not vse very often, notwithstanding that, we will not passe over hir preparation, which is as followeth: Take of Hartwort, of Senegreke, of each one ounce: boile them in a sufficient quantitie of water, vntill the fourth part be consumed, and that there remaine but ten ounces: being strained, put into this liqur eight ounces of the aforesaid *Lacca*, boile them together on a little fire, till the water become as red as blood, and all the best of the gum be dissolved in the water: then straine it thorow a cloth, and let your bloodie liqur boile in a glasse in water, till it become thicke vnto a sirupe, and more thicker and harder: make it vp into little cakes, and drie them.

Agaricus.

Agaricus, a kinde of well knownen Mushrome: the white, compacted light and soft, is alwaies the best: that which is hollow, full of holes and blacke, is reiected. The one is taken to be the male, and the other the female kinde: the best is at the first in taste swete, but presently afterwards very bitter. Being given by it selfe, one dragma or one dragma and a halfe, is ynough at once: but being boiled in drinks, or other decoctions, thou maiest vse halfe an ounce. It is hot in the first, and drie in the second degre. It doth purge tough flegme, and openeth all obstructions. When thou wilt administer it, thou shalt adde a little salt Gem and Ginger to it, also Drimel and home of Koles, by the which his venomous qualitie is very much delaired. The Apothecaries do diuersly prepare this *Agaricus*, as followeth: Take of it as much as thou wilt, cut it small, mole or rub it in a mortar (so it will not be beaten to powder) make it in forme of a doive with wine, in which ginger hath bene steeped eight or ten howers, and then make little cakes or Trochiscos of it. The other manner of preparing is this: Take Palmsey or Spuscabell fouer ounces, vineger of Squils three dragmes, white ginger two dragmes, Spike of India halfe a dragma, let them boile together with a soft fire: straine it, and stepe in this liqur three ounces of the beaten *Agaricus*: but not too fine powdered, and let it stand and drie very well, in a glassed pot: and when it is almost drie, make little cakes of it with the stime of Polipodie. They purge the head and the best of superfluous and stinking humidities, they are called at the Apothecaries *Trochisci de Agarico*.

Manna.

Manna may we call (as it is indeede) a dew of heauen, seeing that this pretious liqur falleth in the morning with the dew from heauen. This is now in great quantitie and very good brought vnto vs out of Calabria, situated beyond Italie. The best is that which is a little yellow, and somewhat perspicuous, or clere like Spalliche, in taste swete, and without any filth admired. This *Manna* is an easie, harmlesse, cooling and fine purging medicine, which may be given to women in childbed and to yong children, with distilled waters, or any broth of meate, from one ounce and a halfe vntill two ounces and more at once: when it is moulen in the waters on hot coles, straine it thorow a cloth, that all the uncleannesse might be separated. It needeth no correction, so it hath no venomous or bad qualitie at all with it.

Mirobalani.

Mirobalani, these are strange fruites, of the which there are fine sortes: of some of them are the rindes or barks dried: of others is the whole substance dried and brought vnto vs. All of them do purge and drawe tough flegme from the head: they drie the braine, &c. But euery one of them hath an especiall and seuerall vertue, which ought to be noted.

Cirini, these are yellow, hauing a thicke skin or rinde with a harde stone or stonie kernell.

They

They purge cholericke and hot humors.

Emblaci do comfort and drie the bzaine, and are confected or preserved.

Bellirici haue the same vertues with the first.

Kebuli are big, blacke and somewhat long, barke and of a Chestnut colour: the heaviest and thickest of rinde are the best. They purge flegme, and may also be preserved.

Indi, of these are the barkes onely brought vnto vs, which are in colour blacke, for which cause they are also called *Nigri*: they are waightie as the others also are: they do purge melancholie.

The powder of either of them by it selfe (which is not vsuall) may be given the weight of one dragma or twaine: they be commonly vsed with an admixtion of many things: with Almonds, Currants, fennell seedes, Spike of India, in the whay of goates milke, and the iuice of Sumptorie, they may very meetely be administered.

Peselewort, of this are two sortes or kindes, the white and the blacke, and it is concluded amongst Physicians, that the best time to gather them is the time of haruest: they purge both vpward and downward, and must therefore be very warily vsed: yea if it be possible it is good to refraine from them altogether. The whiter that one of them is, the better it is: it ought also to be soft, vnperished, and not so sharpe or biting on the tong. With this roote haue ancient Physicians done great marvels, and haue had many strange opinions of it, that it should strengthen memozie, sharpen the wit, and should be very commodious against the falling sicknesse. They compare it to a captaine, who placing his soldiers to the battell, is himselfe the first that forsaketh the field. Both of them may be vsed, but (as is aboue said) with great circumspection: for that they be venemous, as presently appereth in the digging of them vp: for if the sent of them chaunce to ascend into the face and nostrils of the digger, it both grievously disturbe his bzaine, and causeth both a great paine and swelling to follow: And for this cause shall they be digged vp in haste, and he that diggeth them shall stand with his backe to the winde, that the smell of them may not annoy him: and before he begin to dig he shall eat garliche, and drinke some wine. The white *Peselewort* purgeth very violently by vomit, and is not so hurtfull for beasts, as it is for man: of neither of them may be given aboue a dragma at a time, and that in no wise vnprepared, that the patient be not choked with it. It is corrected by the addition of pepper, Berley seede, Anniseed, Pariaene, and wilde spints.

The blacke *Peselewort* killeth horses, oren and hogs, and purgeth by stoule. In fine, these rootes may the ancient Physicians praise as highly as they list, yet it is forbidden that neither women nor olde men, nor children, nor men of a weake constitution, nor those that haue a short bzeth should in any wise vse them. To what other vses they are put, shall be shewed hereafter.

Opium is the iuice of a strange kinde of poppie dried, being too much vsed, it killeth by sleepe: *Opium*. it hath a strong and vnpleasant smell, which may be corrected as followeth: take a little paire of tongs, which is somewhat broad before, make it red hot, hold a little peece of *Opium* in it, and lay it doونه againe presently, and so do as much as thou wilt.

Rhabarbarum, *Rubarbe*, how far this pretious roote is esteemed aboue all other purging simples, shall openly appere in this booke. The best is that which is without, of a Chestnut and darkish colour, but commonly that which is brought vnto vs hath the rinde taken off, and is yelloe coloured. That is also commended which is reasonable heauie, in the breaking spongi-ous, and not hard, very red, with white specks, also that which hath yelloe spots, and in chewing coloureth like saffron. The preparation of it is very easie, for that it is so harmlesse that it may be vsed without any addition, yet do Physicians commonly vse to adde to euerie dragma of *Rubarbe* three or fouer graines of Spikenard, Squinanth, or sweete Cane, or Pistike, and most fittest with whay of goates milke: in the winter time with wine the weight of one dragma, or one dragma and a halfe being finely powdered; but steeped, two or three dragms, according to the state and abilitie of the patient.

The saps or iuices of herbs, flowers and rootes, for stripes and other compositions, are thus prepared: Presse out your iuice into an earthen pot, let it boile on the fire three or fouer bubbles; then let it settle from the fire, till all the thickest drosse be sunke to the bottome, poyze of the clearest from the top by inclination, which onely shall be reserved and vsed, casting away the vnpure settlings.

Wilde Saffron, or *Carthamus* is very offensive for the stomacke, and is hot in the thirde wild saffron degree.

degree. Of this is vsed the innermost part oꝝ kernell of the seede, it purgeth all superfluous humi-
dities, dysopies and flegme. It is giuen to the weight of halfe an ounce in barly water sodden,
and well expressed, but not without the admixtion of such things as do comfort the stomacke. It
is also vsed to other intents, as hereafter in this booke shall appere.

Scammony. Scammonie oꝝ *Scammonia*, is a strange iuice, and vsed in many compositions and purging
medicines, to increase and sharpen their purging qualitie: the best Scammonie is brought to vs
from Asia: when it is pꝑared, it is called *Diagridion*. It is giuen from sower grains vnto twelue
at the most in one day, oꝝ at one time. The best is discerned by that, that it is blacke, leane, oꝝ
not gummie, shining, & with many little holes, much like vnto bread; and as sone as it is tou-
ched with the tong, that presently becometh milkie white, not sharpe oꝝ biting, not sandie, not
heauie oꝝ weightie, and very brittle. In the second yeere is Scammonie in hir sower and most
vertue: afterward doth it decay, and wareth obsolete and olde. It is thus pꝑared: Take two
ounces of Scammonie, powder it very finely in a mortar, put a little oile of *Ireos* to it, to bring
it to the consistence of doive; then make hollow a Quince, in which thou shalt put thy Scam-
monie, and stop the hole with a peece of a Quince very close; wrap the Quince in doive, and let
it bake in an oven. Afterward take one ounce of yelow *Pyrobals*, steape them sower and
twenty howers in two ounces of the iuice of Quinces, setting it on warme ashes; then presse
them very hard thꝛow a cloth, mingle it with the Scammonie, & let it drie in a warme place.
Some men do admire some *Spallick* with it; others take nothing else but the iuice of Quinces:
but the former preparation is that which is commonly vsed.

Iuice of Sloses. The iuice of Sloses is euerie where taken and vsed likewise foꝝ the strange sap *Acatia*, yet it
doth not agree in all points with the vertues of *Acatia*. The true *Acatia* is the sap of the tree,
from which the gum Arabick is taken. Notwithstanding if any man would make a mixture
that might haue the same vertues with *Acatia*, *Valerius Cordus* doth teach it him thus: Take the
kernels of sower Dates, seede of Summach, of each one pound: bruse them, and put vpon them
thre oꝝ sower pintes of raine water: let them steape together sower and twenty howers, then
straine them thꝛow a cloth, boile that is strained till one thirde remaine, clarifie it with the
white of eggs, let it on the coles againe, and let it boile softly, till it be as thicke as the iuice of
Sloses, which then may boldly be vsed.

Brimstone. Brimstone is thus prepared: Melt thy Sulphur oꝝ Brimstone at the fire, then powze it
into the water of Lettice: this reiterate eight oꝝ nine times: when it is drie, beate it to powder.
This is commonly vsed to stop the blood, as hereafter shall be shewed.

Sene leaves. Sene leaves with the huskes and their seede is a common purgation foꝝ euerie man, foꝝ
that it purgeth all bad humors, and especially choler and flegme. Great store of it is brought
from Florence. It is also let in our gardens, but the very best is brought from Alexandria. The
huskes of them are of moze foꝛce and vertue than the leaues. Two dragmes of them in powder
is a sufficient dose at once: but either steaped oꝝ sod, an ounce is little ynough, as in this booke
shall appere. They are coꝛected with Ginger oꝝ salt Gem: and may be giuen in the decoction
of Borage, Buglosse, Violets, *Spallix*, Cloues, and Cardamonie, oꝝ else being powdered, may
any of these be admixed with them, and so exhibited.

White Mustard seede. White Mustard seede may in no wise be inwardly vsed, except it be first coꝛected as follow-
eth: Steape it one day and a night in good *Aqua vita*, and then euaporate oꝝ drie it away from
it: then powze vpon it fresh *Aqua vita*, that hath bene made of the best *Palmeley*, oꝝ of some
other strong wine with *Lanander* howers in it: then let it stand and soke as before, and after-
wards also euaporate: then is thy seede pꝑared. This seede may be made vp in Sugar, oꝝ
consented and so vsed, oꝝ by it selfe, but very little of it at once. It is very good to be mingled
with any stomachicall powder: it drieth vp all moistures of the braine, it helpeth the swimming
in the head, falling enill, and the dead palse: but vnprepared may it in no way be vsed.

Mezereon. Mezereon, of some *Spurge*, oꝝ *Chamelan*, of the Apothecaries *Coccognidion*. The ancient *Phl-*
sitions were wont to giue seuen oꝝ eight of the seedes of it, wrapped vp in a graine fig oꝝ date;
but experience doth teach vs, that thre of the seedes are sufficient ynough to purge the bodie.
Sops of bread may be vsed in stead of the figs oꝝ dates: foꝝ it is onely done to the intent, that
they by reason of their extreme heate should not harne the thꝛote. They also commaunded a good
draught of water to be presently drunke after them. But sith the vse of such medicines, which
are described foꝝ none other cause, than that we might knowe & shun them: let *Empericks* and
the

the outcasts of phisicke vse them.

Take the filings of Steele, cast them into faire water, rub them well betwene thy handes in the water, powze away the uncleane water from thy Steele remaining on the bottome: this washing reiterate so often, that the water come cleare from it. Then put the Steele into a well glassed earthen pot; powze strong wine vineger vpon it, as much as will onely moisten it and not couer it: let them so stand together thirtie daies, but in the meane while oftentimes stirring it; afterward beate it to powder, and mole it on a marle, as is before said of the pearles.

Turbith is the barke of a rose, and at the Apothecaries well knownen and very common, so that it is added vnto manie purging confections. It is thought to be a kinde of Wolfsbane. It is given in powder from one dragma vnto two at once; but being decocted, halfe an ounce euerie time. It purgeth flegme mightily. All his maliciousnesse is corrected by the addition of one third part of Ginger, and so, either with honie of Roses, or the water of grapes, exhibited. When it is vsed in powder, it must not be beaten very small.

Tutia, Tuttie is commonly vsed so; the ries, and in all kinde of infirmities where exsiccation is required: and is thus prepared; Make it red hot in a Goldsmithes crucible or melting cruse; then extinguish it in the vrine of a male childe: this reiterate the seventh time, afterwards also five times in fennell water: then powder it as thou didst the pearles. Item glove it, as is now said, five or sixe times, and euer cast it into rose water, and powder it as aboue. This is the common preparation of Tutia.

Wolfsliuer must be taken fresh out of the wolfe, and be washed with good warme wine: cut it into little peces, put it into a pot, and set it into a warme Bakers ouen: keepe it in a drie place well wazeped in wormwood, least the wormes do spoile it.

Efula is taken so; the rote onely at the Apothecaries. It is a strong purging rose, and ought not to be vsed vnadvisedly: being prepared, not aboue the weight of a dragma or lesse, as occasion serueth. There be seven kindes of it called *Tithymalus*, and are all moze fit to be vsed outward, than inward in the bodie. It purgeth choler and melancholie. Take either the bigger or the lesser rootes of Efula, keepe them sower and twenty howers in wine vineger, and let them drie againe. When thou wilt vse them, cut off and cast away all the haire and hard partes of them, and beate the rest to fine powder.

The same of *Palma Christi* or *Ricinus*, being purified, doth by his purging vertue vnto out choler and flegme. The ancient Physitions do command not aboue ten in number at once to be exhibited: but bicause they are very greatly hurtfull to the stomache, they shall in no wise be vsed: but in place of them, other things which are lesse hurtfull. There is a false opinion amongst the common sort of this *Palma Christi*, to wit, that if the seede in the gathering of it be plucked vpiward, it prouoketh vomit: if it be plucked downward, it should moue stoules; but howsoeuer they be gathered, by reason of their venemous and hurtfull qualitie, they may purge both vpiwards and downwards.

Laureole, *Daphnoidis* and *Laureola*, Laurell. These leanes haue a sharpe purging qualitie, to vnto out flegme and choler. Of the powder of them prepared may be taken from sower graines vnto sixe, and no moze: and with other spices and simples corrected, not aboue one dragma. There is nothing of it in vse, but onely the leanes: it is prepared by shaping of it sower and twenty howers in wine vineger, and then dried.

Sugar is vsed in many things, as hereafter in this booke may appere, but to boile it there be diuers and sundrie waies: and first of all shall be shewed, how the common and course Sugar must be seuered from his filth and dregs, and clarified so; sirupes, and other necessaries in phisicke.

Take (so; example) two pounds of common Sugar, put it into a certaine quantitie of water: set it on the fire vntill it be ready to boile or seethe: then haue in a readinesse the white of fine rise eggs, beaten to water with a little roe, and sprinkle them with thy roe into thy boiling Sugar: let it boile afterwards a pretie while, then doth the filth of the Sugar adioine himselfe to the whites of the eggs: then set it from the fire, and when it ceaseth boiling, take away the filth from it with a skimmer, boile it againe, besprinkle it, and skim it as before, so often, vntill thou finde it bright and cleare. For sirupes and other confections let this Sugar boile somewhat longer, let two or three drops of it fall on a cold stone, dip thy finger in them, and see if it do string or glewe or drawe out in a thred, which is a signe of a sufficient cature.

Manus Christi.
li.

For to make Sugar cakes of *Manus Christi*, the foresaid Sugar must boile yet longer: and if thou wilt knowe if it be sufficiently boiled for this thy purpose, take a little of it on spattens or skimmer, and throwe it from thee into the aire: if it lie very white and drie from it, then is it boiled ynough: set it from the fire, stirring it continually untill it begin to be stiffe or hard, then adde and mixe those things with it, which thou wilt: then very speedily cast it on a colde stone, whereupon a little flower hath bene cast or sifted before, least they should sticke or cleave fast to the stone.

Saccharum Penidium, called Sugar pennets, is best made of the whitest sugar that is brought from the yland of *S. Thomas*. Take of this (if thou canst tell how to worke it) from two untill five pounds at once, powre vpon it a good pretie quantitie of water, and if it be very vncleane, clarifie it as afoze, continue the boiling easily untill it begin to be thicke, and that it rise vp in great bubbles: then haue a spindle or the like little round sticke being wet with colde water, thrust it into the boiling Sugar about a fingers bredth, that some of thy Sugar may cleave to it, and coole it in colde water: if then it easily come from thy spindle or sticke, if it be reasonable hard, and if in the biting or chewing it sticke and cleave not to thy teeth, then it is ready to be wrought: Take it from the fire, let the bubbles settle themselves, powre it out vpon a stone or table, that is moistened all ouer with the oile of Oliues: when it is run flat or abroad, take vp the ends, corners, or edges of it, and throw them vpon the middelt of it: this continue, untill such time as it all do remaine in a heape or lumpe: then dip thy hands in fine flower least the Sugar sticke to them; hang or fasten the whole lumpe of Sugar vpon a strong hooke or crooked naile fastened in a wall, and drawe one part of thy Sugar towards thee about a cubits length: fasten the end in thy hand on the hooke againe, and pull againe; thus continue pulling and fastening, untill thy Sugar become very white. There must at the least be a couple to worke it, that the one being wearie, the other may go forward with it; besides that by reason of the great heate of the Sugar, it is not possible that one should do it well alone. Now when it wareth white and colde, thou shalt drawe it out in long ropes, and lay them on a table whereupon a little flower is sprinkled, and so make it vp in rooles. This whole worke must be done in haste: for otherwise the Sugar will waxe too harde, which notwithstanding, it is not spoiled: But if thou wilt bring it into Sugar pennets againe, it will be somewhat blacker than otherwise it would be.

This shall suffice at this present concerning the principall purging simples, and after what sort they are best prepared and corrected: and those things that haue as yet not bene spoken of, shall hereafter (as neede shall require) be shewed and intreated of at large.

Addition.

Succus rosarum, the iuice of Roses, or their infusion, purgeth choler gently, and cooleth withall. It may be giuen from one unto two ounces very safely.

Serum lactis, whey of milke or of cheefe, is a lenitive and laxative medicine, it doth also purge choler. It is exhibited from three unto five ounces.

Mechoaca (in English *Mechecan*) is an Indian roote of some called white *Rubarbe*. It may be taken in substance from two scruples unto one dragme with broth, wormwood wine, or sweete wine, as followeth: Take *Mechecan* one dragme, *Gentian* one scruple, *Cinnamon* ʒss. beate them into a fine powder, and exhibite it three howers before meales with wormwood wine. It purgeth flegme and waterish humors without any molestation or trouble unto the patient. It is giuen for the paine in the head, that hath continued long; for agues, for the collicke, for the drop sicke, and for the shortnesse of the breth.

Opopanax is the iuice of the herbe *Ferula*. The best is white within and yellow without, bitter, brittle, and of a strong sent. It is commonly giuen from one unto two dragmes. It euacuateth the grosse and tough flegme, that is inherent in the braine, nerues, brest and ioints.

Sagapenum is a certaine iuice or gum so called, of a darke yellow colour, white within and strong in taste. It may be giuen from halfe a dram unto a whole, with the water of Rue, or of *Elecampene*.

Elecampane. It doth in like manner purge grosse and tough humors. Both these gums are corrected with Mastick and Spica, &c. Taken out of Dioscorides, Mathiolus, Wekerus, and others.

The seventh Chapter. §.1.

A generall rule to be obserued in purging.

INASMUCH as the especiallest point in sanation is to unburden the bodie A rule for purging.
of man of abounding superfluities, and cleanse it of all corruption and vncleanesse; which indeede may be done, either by prescribing a moderate diet in meate and drinke, by leading a well ruled life, or rather, if in these any thing be wanting, by purgations: Wherefore it seemeth needfull here to set downe a generall rule, which euery man is to obserue and keepe, that purposeth to purge, as thus: We must haue a great regard of the nature of the disease, of the diseased, of his age, of the time of the yere, and such like: And where (as it is already said) all sicknesses and inward griefes do procede of corruption of the blood and bad humors (as in this our worke doth appere;) necessitie therefore doth require, that such superfluities and corruptions should be expelled and banished out of the bodie, which for the most part is perfected by drying or purging medicines, whereof now shall be mentioned. The best counsell therefore is, that not vnadvisedly, but very warily thou meddle with strong medicines. For as in all infirmities purgings are very needfull and profitable; so also the vse of bad and too strong purgations, is very hurtfull and dangerous. Wherefore, in sharpe and perilous diseases, shall the aduice of a learned phisition be asked, or else in his absence to chosse and vse things that are easie and safe, of which in this booke euery where maiest thou haue choise.

What persons shall abstaine from purging, and the impediments thereof. §.2.

AL such as vse a moderate diet, and eate nothing but that which engendzeth good blood, they haue no neede of any purgation.

Those that do abound in blood, may in like sort omit purging: but good it is for them to be let blood.

If any matter or bad humor do settle it selfe in the concauitie or hollownesse of the articles or ioints and is inherent, as in the Lepzie, and such like happeneth: In vaine it is also for them to purge; for if such humors be moued onely, and not wholly expelled, they might easly be draiuen to some noble and principall part of the bodie, whereby the diseased might be greatly weakened, and fall into a worse inconuenience than before.

In great heate or cold maiest thou not purge: for the heate diuideth and spreadeth the matter ouer all the bodie, and weakeneth greatly; at which time if thou purge, thou doest stir and moue the humor, and doest ouerthrowe the strength of nature. In great colde is the matter tough and thicke, and altogether vnapt for phisicke to worke vpon.

It is also forbidden in weake persons, whether their weakenesse procede from nature or some other accidentall cause, to purge strongly; although gentle purgations for their ease in some sort be allowed.

Hot and drie natures must forbear purgings: for all purging medicines for the most part are hot and drie; and by that meanes do they augment heate and drought, and hurt the bodie.

Very nice and daintie persons shall not take any strong purgation: for in them are the humors easly moued.

What persons are to reframe from purging.

In like sort might fat bodies, which commonly are but weak, by strong purgations incur the danger of sliding.

Young children and olde men shall shun purgations: and those also that labour much, and carie great burdens: for they are alwaies wearie, which is contrarie to all purgations.

What is to be obserued, in, and after, the taking
of a purgation. §. 3.

In, and af-
ter purging.



After the taking of a purge, is a moderate motion by and doونه, and stirring of the armes commodious, that the matter fall and remaine not all vpon an heape in the bodie. But if thou feare that thou shalt cast vp the purgation, thou shalt be at rest and quiet, till thy stomacke be staied.

If the purgation that thou hast taken be gentle and a little potion or drinke, thou shalt forbear to sleepe after it: but vpon hard or solide medicines, as Pills, Tabulats, and such like, is sleepe and rest granted, that by the inward and naturall heate the substance of the Pills might the sooner be dissolued and disperled.

The purgation being taken, it is not amisse to vse some softer thing after it, as a Pomogranate, vnripe grapes, Oranges, &c. For that strengtheneth the stomacke, that it draweth no ill humors to it, and it staieyth all the vomiting. It is also good after the taking of any purgation, to drinke a draught of whey or warme beere; it helpeth the operation of the medicine, and bulleth hir sharpnesse. It is also good to keepe the belly warme, least by force he drawe away the medicine from the stomacke. To this end is nothing more commodious, than warme water to set thy feet in: for that warmeth all the bodie. The belly may also be couered with a little bag, and some bran in it.

When the medicine beginneth to purge, it is not much amisse to moue the bodie somewhat: for by that motion descendeth it downwards, and all the harme or badnesse which the medicine hath with it, is thereby taken away: the motion helpeth also to expell the humors.

Whylest the medicine doth yet purge, thou shalt neither eate nor drinke, least it hinder the operation thereof. Notwithstanding if the patient cannot forbear so long, let him vse the broth of a hen, or some such like thing, or else the sirupe of Violets, to delay the heate of the stomacke; and to prelerue him from an ague. For a great quantitie of choler being drawen into the stomacke by reason of hunger, might easily cause such an accident, as might be very hurtfull for the diseased. Secondly, if a great hunger should ouertake him, he may boldly take a peece of a toast and dip it in good wine, or any such like liquors, but not so much in quantitie, that the medicine might be hindered of hir operation.

Sleepe, after the operation of the purge, is permitted: for as the purge doth weaken and distemper the bodie; so doth rest and sleepe strengthen it againe.

After thy sleepe thou shalt make but a small and easie meale: for considering that the naturall powers and vertues of the bodie be somewhat weakened, they might by too much and too hastie eating be quite ouerthrowen. So that this is a generall rule; The more the medicine hath purged, the lesse ought to be eaten after it.

The next day after purging, is good to bathe in warme water, if at the least the feeble estate of the patient do not dissuade from it. For thereby are the reliks that are left after purging moistened and digested, and it soupleth also the drie bodie.

On the third day shall a veine be opened: by the which the vapours (of the humours that were moued and expelled) are taken away, which otherwise would be no small hurt vnto the bodie. This shall suffice as concerning the rules and ordinances that ought to be obserued in purging.

An addition for the better and more expedite vnderstanding
of this Chapter.

Purging is an evacuation
of humours that abound
and molest one: where-
in is to be noted

Who	Are to bee purged, so wis, they that be	Full of corrupted humors Strong. Vsed vnto it.	} Not crude. First concocted.
	Not: as they that be	In health, without any bad humours, weake, women with childe, leane, not accustomed, of a drie com- plexion, olde, fat, troubled with the bloodie fluxe, or any laske, conuulsed, empiric of bodie, subiect to sowning, womē that haue their flowers, children, labourers, &c.	
How	The braine by the	Eies. Nose. Pallate.	
	Lungs Arteries of respiration	} by coughing.	
	Stomacke Connexe part of the liner Humours tending upwards	} by vomite.	
	Concaue part of the liner Humours descending	} by stoole.	
	Kidneies Wombe	} by } stoole. } } vrins.	
	How much	Age. Strength. Complexion. The disease. Time. Custome. Place of	habitation. infection.
When	} In the beginning } In the state or vigor } In the declination } The humours being concocted.		
With what in	Cholericke Flegmaticke Melancholicke	persons	With medi- cines that purge Choler. Flegme. Melancholic.

Of Phlebotomie in generall.

Phlebotomie.



The health of man is no lesse maintained, and being in decay restozed by right vse of phlebotomie, than by purging; and therefore ought it not at this present time to be passed ouer in silence. As concerning euery particular disease and causes of it, shall hereafter particularly be mention made. First, one that is in good health, needeth neither boring or cupping, nor the letting of blood: Also the phlebotomie is fruitlesse to such as haue so strong a nature, that (being ouerla-

den) is able to expell all superfluities, thozow naturall passages, as by bleeding at the nose, by the piles or hemorhoides, by the stowers in women, and such like: to such is nothing else to be done, but to aide nature in opening of those passages that she hath chosen to ease hir selfe by. But now might some man aske this question; Why, or for what cause is phlebotomie vsed? Whereunto may thus be answered: When the aboue named naturall euacuations haue not their course, then are there fower reasons why this letting of blood might be vsed. First, when blood aboundeth, as commonly in those that haue a hot liuer, full veines, a high colour and brow-nith, and are not too fat and corpulent: also in those that eate and drinke abundantly, liue at ease, and that vse meates that ingender much blood; which when nature cannot altogether digest, doth smother, rot, and corrupt in the veines: from which, dangerous and deadly diseases do insue. Wherefore, if phlebotomie be in due season adhibited, it hath these commodities with it: First, that the whole bodie, or the part affected, may moze surely by this meanes, than by administration of inward phisicke be eased. For in the letting of blood, being ruled by art, thou maiest drawe as little as thou wilt, and as much as seemeth needfull; which in purging can in no wise be done. For that which is taken into the bodie, that remaineth there, whether it be too much, or too little, whether it do good or euill. Furthermore, phlebotomie doth strengthen the braine, comfort the sight, warmeth the colde marrow in the bones, freeth the inward partes of many infirmities, staieeth vomiting, helpeth also oftentimes the fire or laze, cleareth the senses, restozeth sleepe, reuiueeth the spirits, because melancholie blood is by it diminished, cureth deafnesse, reduceth the lost voice, augmenteth the powers and vertues of all the bodie, by reason that it is by this meanes rid of superfluities. In the same sort also is anger delaid by it, because that choler or gall is by phlebotomie also diminished. The abundance of blood is knownen no lesse, by the thicknesse and troubled consistence of vrine, than by the signes befoze mentioned.

Secondly, although the blood be not inflamed, but onely superabounding, yet doth it cause greuous agues and other perillous diseases. Wherefore, whensoever we finde an inflammation and an abundance of blood, presently we open a veine. Also if any one euery morning about the dawning of the day doth vse commonly to sweate, it is a signe of a superfluitie in the veines.

Thirdly, where bad and cold blood is, there must a purgation pzeceede phlebotomie; otherwise, the good blood will be drawen forth, and the thicke, tough, and cold blood remaine in the veines.

Lastly, it is profitable at some times to be let blood not for any of the aforesaid causes, but onely that the blood might be led or drawen from the one veine into the other. For example: If a woman do ouerpasse the time, wherein she should haue hir stowers, then do we open the veine Sapha in the foote, thereby intending to drawe the blood downwards. Others comprehend all these particulars in these two points: namely, such ought to be phlebotomised, that abound in blood, and for that cause are very subiect vnto sicknesse. Secondly, that are full of bad humors, or that do abound in a corrupted masse of blood, and are diseased: Of all which points, & how euery veine shall be opened, we will moze at large speake hereafter, where we shall treate of euery sicknesse in particular.

Of the causes that prohibite or forbid
phlebotomie. §. 2.



We haue before shewed, what persons ought to be phlebotomised: also what pro- Causes that
fit this letting of blood causeth. Now we will declare what persons must for- hinder phle-
beare it, and what might hinder it. First, *Galen* commandeth, that no bodie be- botomie.
foze the 14. yere of his age, should be let blood: but his successors the latter
Phisitions, will that no man should haue a veine opened before the seuententh
yere: also those that are aboue seuentie yeres olde, should in no case meddle
with it: adding, that youth being hot and moist, doth consume much, and therfoze needeth much
blood for the sustenance of life. In like sort also haue olde men small store of good blood, but rather
great store of bad humours: where the letting of blood might take away the best blood and leaue
the worst behinde: Beside this, they are weake, and their strength doth daily decay. But those
that are of a middle age, from thirtie to fiftie, may most safely vse phlebotomie: for that they
neither incline to the one, nor to the other.

To those that are colde of complexion is phlebotomie forbidden, as also to such as dwell in
colde countries: for their blood lieth deepe in their bodies, is thicke, and vnapt to be educed. Also
where there is a great paine, shall it be omitted, except it were in a hot ague: and there shall so
much be drawen, that the patient do swoune, to the intent the whole bodie thereby might be
cooled, and the heate taken away.

Also it is not good presently after a bath to be let blood, nor after the vse of *Venerie*, nor after
any long lasting sicknesse, vnlesse the patient do abound in vncleane blood. Neither must any
one that hath overladen his stomacke with meate or drinke, and as yet is vndigested, vse phle-
botomie. They that are constrained to much vomiting of choler in the stomacke, must also for-
beare it, otherwise it will greatly weaken them.

Lastly, no man shall after much bleeding at the nose, or much bleeding of the hemoirhoides
or piles, or after great store of the flowers in women, be phlebotomised: for it will cast him
downe and weaken him: because the blood is the treasure of life.

At what time, and in what signe a veine ought
to be opened. §. 3.



Of the preservation of health, it is best to be let blood in Aprill or in May, because when phle-
at that time man doth most abound in blood: and it shall be done on the right botomie
side, either in the hand, arme or foote: for in these monethes, and in sommer also ought to
increaseth choler, which proceedeth from the liuer and gall, that both lie on the be vsed.

In haruest groweth melancholie blood: and then must the veine of the spleen
be opened on the left side, and in winter also.

In like sort it is ordained to be let blood for diseases of the hart in the spring, of the liuer in
sommer, of the spleen in haruest, and of the head in winter. And to the end it might more clearly
appere, at what speciall times phlebotomie may be vsed, it shall now be shewed from moneth
to moneth, which times are most conuenient, and which are not.

In Januarie shalt thou by no meanes be let blood, except necessitie constraineth thee, and that Januarie.
in diseases of the head.

In februarie, if necessitie require, maiest thou vse it.

In March, it is altogether forbidden.

In Aprill it is alwaies conuenient to open a veine, but not the median.

In May it is very good and conuenient, but not in legs nor foote.

In June (if neede require) thou maiest sometimes phlebotomise.

In Iuly it is hurtfull, by reason of the heate.

In August likewise, vnlesse it be towards the later end of the moneth.

In September it is as conuenient, as it was in Aprill or May.

februarie.

March.

Aprill.

May.

June.

Iuly.

August.

September.

October.
November.
December.

In October and November maiest thou also phlebotomise.

In December is phlebotomie prohibited, partly by reason of the extreme colde, partly also because at such time there is small store of blood in the bodie of man.

There is a great abuse among the common people committed, to looke for the signe in the Almanacke, and so where the mone resteth. They make also great difference, betwene the heighth and lownesse, drythe and moistnesse of the signes; also whether the mone be new or full, increasing or decreasing, and diuers things moze, which of some very superstitiously are obserued. Furthermoze, if the mone be in *Aries*, then it is forbidden to let blood in the head veine and vnder the tong. And if the mone be in *Taurus*, it is thought vnmete to open any veines in the necke, or to bore or cup about the necke or shoulders. When the mone is in *Geminus*, which rule the armes, and is supposed to be a hot and moist signe, the places gouerned are not to be touched. *Cancer* is cold and moist, where if the mone be, neither the hand nor the left arme ought to be touched. Because *Leo* is hot and drie, no phlebotomie is permitted concerning the hart. *Virgo* is thought to be a very bad signe, and to be colde and drie, and to rule the guts: at which time ought neither phlebotomie nor any purgation to be vsed, but all kinde of phisicke to be abandoned.

But I take it to be a great deale moze mete, that euerie phisition examine well the estate and manner of the diseased patient, and to iudge wisely thereof: and first to feele the pulses, and seeke out the infallible signes of the infirmitie, befoze he run vp to heauen to see the celestiall signes: for in sharpe and very hot diseases, there is no leisure to expect a good signe celestiall, but immediately to open a veine, and that so often reiterated, as neede shall require. But in such like infirmities must the counsell of an expert phisition be alwaies vsed: for if phlebotomie in the like extremities be not in time adhibited, life it selfe might oftentimes be indangered.

An admonition to those that let others
blood. §. 4.



All those that let others blood, must take great heed they enter not too deepe with their launcet, for feare of pricking an Arterie or sinew, because they are placed very nere, vnderneath and about the veines. And if a sinew be wounded or hurt, great danger is like to ensue, as *Spasmus*, great tumours and swellings, or other moze greuous accidents, and at the last a terrible and hard death, or at the least a resolution or lamenesse of the whole member so greued; for a wounded sinew is counted incurable, as at another time and place at large shall be shewed. Also if an Arterie be touched, then either gusheth forth that excellent blood of the hart, in which the soules of man resteth; or else *Simonie*, which very hardly will be stinted, because rest and quietnesse in all consolidations and healings are required; where indeede all Arteries are in continuall motion. But to stay the running of the *Simonie*, thou shalt haue very good and expert remedies in the first part of this booke. Notwithstanding it is sometime permitted to open an Arterie, but onely when the greatest neede requireth, that may be, because (as is already said) it can by no meanes be done without great danger. But because there is no such perill in the opening of some veines as is in others, let this instruction that followeth be diligently obserued.

Head veine
safe.

Median som
what dan-
gerous.

Inner veine
dangerous.

The Splene
veine.

Incision
great or
small.

The Cephalicall or head veine is without danger, for that there is neither Arterie nor sinew nere it.

The Median is somewhat perilous: for there lieth a sinew iust vnder it, which is to be regarded.

Basilica or inner veine is not without danger: for vnder it is placed both an Arterie and a sinew.

The Splene veine hath no other danger, but that it is small and hard to be pricked: and therefore shall the hand first be laid in warme water. But whatsoever is moze to be said of these and the like other veines, shall immediately hereafter be declared.

In this point all phisitions do agree, that wheresouer is great store, and very thicke and grosse blood, there must the incision be made the larger, that the vapours & bad blood might the better issue forth: for if it be not large ynough, then commeth forth the thin and subtile blood, and that which is grosse and bad remaineth behinde. But if the patients be very weake, then of
necessitie

necessitie must the issue be made the lesse, that their little strength be not ouerthrowen, and their vitall spirits let out.

What is to be done before, in, and after the letting of blood. §. 5.



Whensoeuer thou dost purpose to be let blood, vse some sower daies before meates that are subtil, light and easie of digesture, especially if thy blood be grosse, thicke and heauie, that thereby it be made thinner, moze flued and subtil, and so much the easier issue forth: neither is it amisse to bathe thy selfe two or thre daies before, but not on the day appointed for letting of blood. It is also good in the precedent daies to vse the sirupes of vinegar.

Note also, that thou be not phlebotomised presently after awaking out of thy sleepe, but rather two or thre howers after it, and when thou hast walked before. All the learned Phisitions also do counsell (although it be against the common custome) not to open any veine, the patient being fasting, or not hauing eaten a new laide eg, and drunke a good draught of wine vpon it; then to be let blood, and thre howers after to breake his fast againe: the cause whereof is, that when the stomacke hath taken a little sode, nature is most strong.

The member likewise, which is to be phlebotomised, ought first to be somewhat chafed and rubbed with warme clothes, that the humours thereby might be drawen thither. It is also not amisse to binde the member with a band: for that in like sort draweth the humours into the veines.

It befalleth oft in phlebotomie, that the blood by no meanes can be strenched or stopped: for the which thou shalt finde in the fift booke diuers approued remedies; but for the same is the powder of calcined or burned Vitrioll very highly commended, being cast vpon it.

If the patient chance to faint in the letting of blood, let him drinke a cup of good wine: for that reuineth the vitall spirits, strengtheneth the hart, and refresheth the blood. Use also for the same those things that do comfort the hart, which thou shalt finde in the second booke.

If the opened veine should swell and puffe vp, then boile Rue in the oile of Olives, and apply it to the veine. This also is very good to be used after cupping, if the place shoulde begin to rankle.

After the letting of blood the patient shall forbear sleepe at the least sixe howers, and not eat in the time aboue specified, that the humours now stirred and troubled in the bodie, might be settled againe in the meane while. Afterwards, let him vse light meates, abstaine from milke or any thing that is made thereof, and then at the last commit himselfe to sleepe. Lastly, he is not to vse any thing either inwardly or outwardly, but that might warme and comfort the bodie, and to follow that most learned man *Ioachim Camerarius*, who excellently and briefly obserued these rules after the letting of blood.

Prima terna die sit misso sanguine parca:

Lux a beat letis aucta secunda modis.

Tertia sed placida debetur tota quieti:

Quarta & quinta sibi mollius esse volunt.

Balnea sexta petit: mox septima colligit auras,

Fertq; vagos circum rura nemusq; pedes.

Octava amplexus dilectae coniugis: & qua

Ante fuit, vitam am restituisse solet: That is,

The first day not much meate be spent:

The second day to mirth be bent:

The third day vse thy rest and ease:

The fourth and fift eat what thou please:

The sixt day bathe in any case,

The senenth walke from place to place:

The eight maiest thou lie with thy wife,

And after liue thy wonted life.

What veines ought in euerie disease to be opened. §. 6.



Seeing that the bodie of man is euerie where full of veines, here shall now be shewed which of them ought to be opened for the ease of any one member, or for cure and helpe of any disease whatsoever. First therefore shall be noted, that phlebotomie may be vsed in diuers parts of the bodie, partly as the disease requireth, partly also according as the veines are apparent. Amongst others, there are fixe from the arme pit downward to the elbowe, with those on the hand, that may be opened. The first is called *Cephalica*, the head veine: the second *Basilica*, in Latine *Hepatica*, the liuer veine: the third *Mediana*, *Cardiaca*, *Corporalis*, *Nigra*, *maix*, and *Communis*, that is, the Median, hart, corpulent, blacke, mother and common veine. The fourth *Axillaris*, the veine of the arme pit: bicause in the armpit it most plainly appereth. The fift on the beginning of the hand, which now is no longer phlebotomised. The sixt is also on the outside of the hand betweene the little and the fourth fingers, which of the Philistions is called *Scelles*, *Splenetica*, *Saluatella*, that is, the spleene veine.

The lower partes of the bodie (as the legs and feete) haue thre speciall veines. The one *Ischiadica*, the hip veine: the other is *Sapha* or *Saphena*, the wombe veine: the third *Poplitea*, the knæ veine, which is the iust middle veine. They are the speciall veines that commonly are opened: of which, and others more, we will hereafter speake at large.

Of the Head veine *Cephalica*. §. 7.



This veine is also called *Humeralis*, the shoulder veine, bicause it easeth all the veines that are aboue and beneth the necke, whensoever it is opened. This veine being opened, it doth much helpe the headache called *Hemicrania*, madnesse, and such like, that procede of an extraordinarie heate. It beginneth to appere about the arme pits, and passeth along by the left arme.

To the end then that the reader might more clærely vnderstand and knowe, in what infirmities this veine may conueniently be opened, I will brieely rehearse out of other places of this our booke, and shew when it is vsually opened: as for example; in Headaches with agues, heate and flures: in tumors of the arme pits: in the paines, inflammations, and apostumations, with other impediments of the eies: in frensies or madnesse, in the night mare or hag: in all accidents of the mouth and throte: in all rheumes, in hot agues with an infection of the lungs. Where maiest thou perceiue and see manifestly, that this may iustly be called the head veine.

Of the Liuer veine *Basilica*. §. 8.

Amongst all others is this liuer veine *Basilica* the principallest, whose name is sufficiently knowen, both in Greeke and in English. This being opened, unburdeneth all the partes belowe the necke, as best, liuer, &c. of their superfluous blood, so that if any of these be any kinde of way diseased, it may by that meanes be recouered againe. It taketh hir beginning of the arme pit veine or *Axillaris*, and goeth downe to the elbowe. The diseases, in the which it is vsually phlebotomised, are these: In tumors of the eies, in vnr easurable blæding at the nose, in whetling or ringing of the eares, in extreme melancholie, in rheumes with heate and agues, and in all infirmities of the lungs, in broken veines or varices of the best, in the panting or beating of the hart, in great faintnesse, in ruptures, in blæding of the hemorrhoides, in barrennesse of women that procedeth of heate, in an obdurated or hardened liuer, in melancholie, in hot swellings of the stomacke, in obstructions of the vaine, in impostumes of the wombe, in the paine of the hips, in the goute, in wrenchings of the ioints, in broken veines, in great inflammations, in the poxe, and in the measles.

Of the Median or middle veine. §. 9.



This is for the most part of all our Phisitions and Chirurgions called by the Latine name *Mediana*: because it lieth betwene the abovesaid veines, and taketh his beginning also from them both. This being opened in all infirmities both most good, for that it easeth both the upper and the lower partes of the bodie; for which cause it is called *Vniuersalis*, the common veine, and not as some suppose, because it commeth from the hart. Here is to be obserued, that if the head veine or *Cephalica* should be opened, and it no where appereth; in stead of it the Median shall rather be vsed, than the Liuer veine: likewise if the Liuer veine be not seene, open rather the Median, than the head veine. As for example; this veine is conueniently opened in swollen eies, bleeding at the nose, outrageous melancholie, hot rheumes, panting of the hart, ruptures, to procure children in women of hot complexions, bleeding of the hemo:rhoides or piles, and to procure the flowers in women, &c. by which euerie skilfull man may guide himselfe.

Of the armpit veine *Axillaris*. §. 10.

The fourth veine is called (as is aforesaid) *Axillaris*: it is a branch of the great Liuer veine, called *Vena cava*, the hollow veine, which commeth from thence into the armes, and sheweth it selfe in the bending of the arme. It hath great correspondence with the head veine, as is already sufficiently shewed. After the same sort it is with the fist, which is on the end of the arme: so that all that hath bene said before, and which shall be said hereafter of the Splene veine, the very same may be said of these two.

Of the Splene veine or *Salustella*. §. 11.



The first principall veine lieth betwene the little and fourth fingers, on the outside of both hands. It is oftentimes opened, because it clenseth the splene, liuer and breast, cleareth the voice, preserveth the internall partes, but specially the stomache and mouth from all accidents whatsoever; easeth the paine of the hart, and taketh away all the superfluous blood of the before named inward partes. The later Phisitions make this distinction: they call this veine on the left hand *Splenetica*, the splene veine; and on the right hand *Salustella*: for this cause haue diuers opened that on the left side, letting it blode, till of it selfe it stancheth, supposing thereby to heale all infirmities of the splene. It is also opened in blood spittings, in obstructions of the splene, and in the French poxe. What on the right hand in infirmities of the liuer, in shaking palsies, in contractions of the mouth, in all manner of fitches, in the gout, in the pocks: and in fine, almost in all other diseases.

Of the Hip veine. §. 12.

After the description of the veines that are in the armes and hands, it followeth now to treat of the three principall veines apparent in the legs & fete. The first and uppermost of them is called in Greeke *Ischiadica*, and in English the hip veine. It is commonly opened vpon the left fote, thereby to drawe the blood downwards, and to ease all the maladies of the same side, of the kidneies, of the wombe, and such like: also to make the piles blode, to helpe the paine of the hip, to cease the raging of the gout, if it be opened hard by the little toe, although it specially appere vpon the ankle on the outside of the leg.

Of the wombe veine or *Saphena*. §. 13.

This commeth from the great liuer or hollow veine, and descendeth from the foreside of the leg downe to the inward ankle, where it very manifestly appereth: for the which cause also it is called *Manifesta*, the apparent or manifest veine, otherwife *Saphena*, and not *Saphena*. This is especially opened, to drawe the blood downwards, from the priue partes of

of man, from the wombe in women, in soze eies, in madnesse, in the pallie, in the night mare, falling euill, blood spittings, womens flowers, and barrennesse of them, in the suffocation of the matrix, or the rising vp of the wombe or mother, in the goute, and in the plague.

Of the ham or knee veine. §. 14.



This also is a Median or middle veine, which descendeth downwardes shew the calfe of the leg into the foote, as the Median of the arme doth into the hand: and it is moze mete to be opened to the aforesaid infirmities, than either the hip or wombe veine, bicause it is nêrer adiacent to the wombe with hir annexed partes than either of them, and therefore draweth with moze force.

Of the veine in the forehead. §. 15.



In the midst of the forehead is also a very apparent vein, which vsually was opened in all parts of the hinder part of the head & necke, although it haue continued very long; also in all paines of the eies: but first of all ought the head veine to be opened. It is also vled in the frensie, night mare, and pallie.

Of the veins of the eies. §. 16.

These little veins appere in the corners of the eies, hard by the nose vpwards toward the forehead. They are commonly opened in inflammations of the eies: but first of all open the veine of the head.

Of the veine in the temples of the head. §. 17.



In the temples of the head are veins, which some men do counsell to be opened in the paine of the eies, if the same procede of hot humors or windynesse, as is before said. But it is not without great danger, bicause there is an arterie hard by it which easily may be felt. The same may be said of the veins behind the eares, which also are very commodiously opened in great paines of the head, as *Hemicrania*, in a continuall paine and swimming in the head. But *Auicenna* supposeth, that such as vse it, thereby are made barren or vnfruitfull.

Of the veine vpon the nose. §. 18.

In like manner also is there a veine vpon the nose close by the forehead, which may be opened: but first must a towell or napkin be tied hard about the necke and throte, that the veine may swell or puffe vp, and be the better sene.

Of the vaines in the lips. §. 19.

These are opened in all putrifactions and rottings of the gums, and many other infections of the mouth: but not before the head veine.

Of the veins of the almonds or kernels in the throte. §. 20.

Here be folwer of these veins apparent, the which being opened, helpe very greatly in all rheumes and deflurions, as also in the toothache, but it is not good to open them, but when the rheume beginneth to fall.

Of the veins vnder the toong. §. 21.

Vnder the toong also are some veins, which in dangerous diseases may well be opened, and especially in the squinancie, and in all other stegmaticall tumors of the throte, in the night mare, and all maladies of the toong.

Of the veines of the necke. §. 22.

To conclude, there be certaine veines in the necke called of the Arabians *Guingedes*, which usually were opened in the beginning of the leprosie, in the paine of the throte, called *Angina*, in shortnesse and oppression of the bresth, impostumes of the lungs, in affections of the spleene and sides. Thus ending this Chapter of the opening of all kinde of veines: we will treat of boring or cupping, which also is greatly commended in phisicke.

The ninth Chapter.

Of Cupping.

This is the second meanes whereby the abundance of blood in mans body is diminished. *Galen* did so highly esteeme of it, that he termeth it a pretious helpe, and commendeth it in many diseases, but especially where flegme and windinesse doth excede. We ascribeth vnto it the attraction of humors, ceasing of paine, diminishing of flegme, dissipation of windynesse, to prouoke hunger, to withdraue and to stay rheumes, & to stanch bleeding. We aduise also to vse it in a great paine of the belly proceeding of winde, as the most true and present remedie, namely, to fasten a great bore or cup on the place pained, and often to renew it: for thereby is the winde maruellously drawen forth and dissipated: and not onely so; but for the hardnesse and other accidents of the spleene, but without picking or opening of the skin. But note, that this boring or cupping ought not to be vsed, except the patient haue first of all thoroughly bene purged: otherwise it both drawe the superfluous humiditie, which lieth deepe vnderneath, outward to the skin. These bores also are not to be set iust vpon the place affected, but hard by it thereabout, that by them the matter might be dissipated and withdrawen. As for example; if a woman had too many of hir flowers continuing, the cups or bores shall be set vpon hir breasts. In too much bleeding at the nose, vpon the nauell, and so in moze other places contrarie still to the course of the blood, or else vpon the veines, whence the cause proceedeth: likewise to prouoke or moue the termes in women, the cups shall be fired vpon the thighes: in soze eies, behinde in the necke, as in many places in this booke shall be shewed. Thus much for the cupping without opening the skin.

But if thou wilt open the skin also, as commonly is vsed in diuers partes of the bodie, and especially in any hard tumor or *Schyrrius*, or other swellings with a great dissention and paine: in like manner when thou wilt drawe the peccant matter from the infected place to another: as to remoue headache, the cups are fired on the caues of the legs with opening of the skin: which also is done if the termes or flowers in women be staied, and in such like other accidents, as hereafter in this booke at large shall appere.

The tenth Chapter.

Of the diminishing of the blood by Horfleaches.

The third meanes whereby the blood is drawen forth of the bodie, is that blood sucking water worme, which the ancient Physicians by their experience for the helpe of man haue found out. These Horfleaches are of diuers and sundrie colours, some black, some red, some greenish, and of many other colours. They are all of them somewhat venomous, but especially those that be partie coloured with greene stripes, big, and line in striking poles, which altogether are to be auoided. Others that appere in May, and most of all about none, abide in other poles and waters where also they are taken: How to prepare them for to vse, hath bene shewed in the six Chapter.

Before they be fastened, the place must first be well chafed, with water moistened, and well scratched with the nailes: then take they the better holde. When they are fast, annoint the place with

with warme oile that it cole not : and if they be fired to either hands oꝛ fixe, then put that part into lukewarme water, wheron they be fastened: but if they dꝛaue oꝛ sucke not strong ynough, clip off a little pce of their tailes, that the blood may passe thow them; soꝛ they will not leane sucking soꝛ all that, vnlesse a little salt oꝛ a few ashes be cast vpon their heads, oꝛ that they be stricken on the head with a little wand oꝛ rod, oꝛ that they be burnt with a ware candle. After they be fallen off, thou shalt fasten a boꝛe oꝛ cup vpon the same place, to dꝛaue out the remaining blood and venome, oꝛ else moisten it with a warme sponge: and if it continue blēding, cast some meale on it, and lay shēpes woll dipped in oile vpon that, oꝛ some other thing; as in the fift part of this booke is taught how to stanch blood.

Here is also to be obserued, that these Hoꝛleaches do not dꝛaue the blood out of the inward partes of the bodie, but onely that which lieth in the flesh thereabout, so that they can onely be vsed in place of boꝛes, and especially in blacke melancholie blood, which by nature they onely suck forth. And this is all the difference betwēne the vse of them and of cups.

In the application oꝛ fastening of Hoꝛleaches, they must be put into a quill, reede oꝛ cane, that they take hold of no other place, but where they should.

It is furthermore well knowen, that great stoꝛe of superfluous humidities are expelled by baths, sweate, rubbing, vomiting and such like: but bicause these things must be altered, augmented and diminished according to the estate of the person, great haꝛde ought to be giuen, what here and there in this booke is spoken of them.

The eleuenth Chapter.

Of the sixe things not naturall, called of the Phisitions

Res non naturales.



The cause why we make no mention of these sixe things is, soꝛ that by them a generall rule of the life is to be obserued: but most of all in the time of sicknesse, when euerie one, according as necessitie requireth, is taught what oꝛder is to be kept in euerie of them.

The first is aire, to wit, what aire ought to be elected, what to be refused, and if neither of these may be, by what meanes to correct it.

The second is mouing oꝛ motion, which is not a little to be regarded, bicause some diseases require much mouing, others little, and some none at all.

The third is slepe and watching, which is of no lesse account, than motion.

The fourth is fulnesse and emptinesse, which teacheth what oꝛder is to be followed in meate and dꝛinke, as also in hunger and abstinence: the meanes also to restore that which either is wanting in the one, oꝛ in the other.

The fift, the accidents oꝛ motions of the minde, as anger, feare, gladnesse, sorrow, loue, hatred, &c. which oftentimes cause great change and alteration both in sicknesse and in health.

The sirt is meate and dꝛinke, which is mēte soꝛ euerie disease, which vnmete. Of the which in euerie particular disease, seuerall instructions shall be giuen: this generall rule presupposed, that no man diseased shall ouerlade his stomacke with meate oꝛ dꝛinke, except it were to vomit it vp againe. It is also better to eate thꝛice a day and a little at once, than but twise abundantly.

If of all these things thou wilt haue a moꝛe iust explication, loke in the second part of the bookesing and stopping of the vꝛeth, by the which thou maiest also rule thy selfe in other infirmities.

Furthermore whatsoeuer might be said of the fower complexions oꝛ humoꝛs in mans body, as Blood, Choler, Flegme and melancholie, with their incompassed mixtures called *Intemperies*, which are eight fold, and what else doth appertaine vnto them, shall sufficiently as oppoꝛtunitie serueth, hereafter be declared.

The twelfth Chapter.

An explication of all the weights and measures which commonly are vsed in Phisicke.

There be two sortes of pounds : the common pound containeth sixtē ounces, but the phisicall pound hath but twelue ounces. It is abbreviated thus lib. but to auoide all errors, we haue set downe the worde pound : and where a phisicall pound was ment, there are twelue ounces specified.

An ounce containeth eight dragmes, which euery where is noted by the name ounce.

Halfe an ounce is fouer dragmes, which is noted by the Phisitions and Apothecaries with this marke \mathfrak{z} .ss. which might breed erroꝝ, and therefore do we set the name of halfe an ounce.

Dragma is the eight part of an ounce, which we write thus dragma oꝝ drag. least by the character some erroꝝ might be committed.

Scrupulus is the thirde part of a dragma, and shall be written after this manner, scruple oꝝ scrup.

Grannum a graine is the weight of a barlie coꝝne, whereof twenty do make one scruple : but because that barlie coꝝnes are bigger in one countrie than in another, thou shalt in steade of them vse pepper coꝝnes, and so take twenty of them foꝝ a scruple. This shall be noted by the name graine.

Manipulus is a handfull of herbes, flowers oꝝ seedes : and this shall be marked thus with an \mathfrak{M} . and halfe an handfull, which is called of the Apothecaries *Pugillus*, shall be noted thus, halfe \mathfrak{M} .

Measures of water, homie and such like liquoꝝs do we esteeme euery wine pint at eightē ounces.

Note also, that if thou happen to finde any vnknown name oꝝ word in this booke, either in Latine oꝝ English ; that thou shalt finde it in the table oꝝ *Index* at the end.

After all these instructions we will by Gods grace come to the principall, and beginning at the vppermost part of the bodie, that is the head, and descend downward to the foote.

The most high Phisition God our most deere father, through Iesus Christ our onely Sauiour, giue vs his blessing and grace to finish it.

The end of the Introduction.



The first part of this booke containeth the Head with all
the parts thereof, to the very necke, as Face, Haire, Beard,
 Scull, Braine, Nose, Eares, Lips, Mouth, Toong, Teeth,
 Speech, &c. with all such accidents as are incident
 vnto them, and their appropriate
 remedies.

The first Chapter.

Of paine in the Head.



Here are many paines of the head, by the Arabians commonly called *Soda*: which as they procede of diuers causes, so do they also differ in nature. They are deliuered vnto vs either in particular, proper, principall, or vniuersall affections, vnder which all the other are comprehended, as *Cephalalgia*, *Cephalæa*, *Hemicrania*, and *Congelatio*.

Of giddinesse of the head, falling euill, dead pallsie, and such like infirmities shall be spoken hereafter, where we intreate of the braine: for that these and diuers other diseases are caused for the most part of a debilitie and weaknesse of the braine.

Of all outward accidents, as blowes, bruises, wounds, and

fals on the head, shall be shewed in the Chapter of the braine pan or scull.

Cephalalgia. *Cephalalgia*, by the Grekes so termed, is such a disease, that almost affecteth the whole head: which sometimes is very violent, otherwhiles more tolerable, and either continueth long or passeth ouer speedily.

Cephalæa. *Cephalæa* is an intolerable headach, which (notwithstanding that it hath some communion with the afozenamed *Cephalalgia*) doth maruellously weaken all the powers of the head, and at sometimes ceaseth, seeming as though it would not returne againe, yet (in manner like vnto the falling sicknesse) by fits returneth with such violence, such noise in the eares, such beating in the forehead, such thrusting forth of the eies, and finally with such swelling by of all the veines of the head, that both hearing and sight thereby decaie: yea taketh diuers with that extremitie, that it seemeth vnto them, as if something did beate on the inside of their head with a hammer, and would rent and teare their head asunder. This ache sometimes commeth in the sinewes of the eies, and doth opilate and harne them greatly, and at the length induceth blindness altogether: and albeit, this affection of the head oft times groweth of a light and small cause, yet procureth it diuers times very heauie and grievous accidents.

Hemicrania. *Hemicrania* is also an headache, wherewith either the right or the left side, the backe or forepart of the head is infected: it taketh commonly the one side of the head, euen from the middle of the forehead, and so passeth thorow the boll or concavities of the skull to the very backe part of the head. It doth also very often so disease the eies, that it perissheth the sight of them: insomuch that this paine is so like to the aboue named *Cephalæa*, that *Galen* and many others do not onely describe them both together, but vse also one and the selfesame remedies for them both, as hereafter may appere.

Congelatio. The fourth kinde of headache is *Congelatio*, as it were a colde nummednesse: this proceeding from the backe part of the head taketh away all sense and feeling of the patient, and therefore it is not vnlike vnto that heauie and droulie disease *Leithargus*, and *Stuper*, wherein also the affected bodie is suddenly depriued both of sense and feeling.

Of the causes of headache. §. 1.

The common causes of headache in generall, are innumerable : as heate of the sunne, bathings, change of aire, a continuall south winde, a strong sent of spices, whether they be hot or cold by nature; also the smell of wine, drunkenesse, stinking meate, garlick, onions, mustard, strokes, or blowes, bruisinges or great motions of the braine, sleepe presently after dinner, much bleeding, worms in the eares, nostrils, or stomacke, choler in the stomacke, fumes and vapours out of the same, too much repletion of the stomacke, *Intemperies* or an unnaturall mixture of the humours, with many more, which for breuities sake we omit, and will treat of more necessarie matters. But for the most part (as hath already bene said) this paine in the head proceedeth of the intemperature of the lower humours, namely of blood, choler, flegme and melancholie. The physicians haue found out eight kindes of this intemperature with their appropriate and due remedies, as hereafter at large shall be shewed. As concerning the aches and paines of the head, we do diuide them into hot or cold aches, in which all others that we purpose to treat of, are comprehended, and so begin with the hot paines of the head.

The signes of a hot headache that proceedeth from choler. §. 2.

In this kinde of headache are these common signes, belching or breaking of winde vpward with lothsomnesse and thirst, drythe of the mouth, tongue, and nostrils. The paine is picking, sharpe, and rather in the right, than in the left side of the head, heate ouer all the bodie, but especially in the nostrils, no appetite, no sleepe, the pulses hartie and quick, the vrine reddish, the face yellow. The surest notes are, if the time of the yeare be hot and drie, the patient young, and hath vsed those things that procure heate and drythe.

The causes and signes then being knowen, now follow the first and especiallest meanes to ease it, namely in shunning those things that in any way might either procure or continue it, as hot wines, the sent of hot and strong things, the vse of meates hot in operation : then to begin (not onely in this, but in all other infirmities whatsoever) with the easiest remedies at the first, and most of all if this hot paine of the head be but new and of no continuance : at which time, to delay the heate, thou maiest safely vse these things that follow.

Applications, ointments, plaisters, lotions.

O*xyrhodinum* applied outwardly, is greatly commended, that is, oile of roses, water and vinegar of roses, of each a like quantitie : in this mixture, dip double linnen clothes, and lay them so cold and wet to the forehead, from one temple to another, and as often as it drieth, must it be refreshed againe : others make it stronger thus : Take of Rose water five ounces, of Pelliot water foure ounces, water of Spightshade two ounces, Wile of Roses one ounce and a halfe, Rose vinegar one ounce : vse it as the other before. These two compositions, by reason of the oile and vinegar of Roses which are in them, are called *Oxyrrhodina* : vnto which (if the heate be very extreme) thou maiest adde one dragma of Camfere. Also take the white of an eg well beaten, Rose water one ounce, water of Elder, and Fennell water, of each halfe an ounce, five small puts well beaten in a mortar, a little Saffron : Lay this to the forehead with wolle. Another that is more stranger : the water of the white water Lilie, water of Endine, of each three ounces, red, white, and yellow Saunders, or one of them, of each one dragma, beaten Rose leaues halfe a dragma, beaten Camfere halfe a dragma, mire them all together, and vse them as is aboue shewed. This coleth greatly, and easeth the paine of the head.

The

The ointment of Roses described by Mesues.



Take fresh oz new hogs grease, as much as thou wilt; wash it very often with warme water; afterwards with colde water: then take as many Roses in weight as thy grease waieieth, beate them both together in a mortar, let them so rest the space of seuen daies: then straine it throught a cloth, and beate as many Roses with thy grease as before, and so let them stand other seuen daies: straine them againe, and adde to thy grease, halfe the weight of the iuice of Roses, and the first part of the oile of swete Almonds, and boile them together vntill all the iuice be consumed, which thou shalt knowe thus: Put one oz two drops of it into the fire, where if it make no noise oz hissing like vnto water, then it is sufficiently boyled: then take it from the fire, stirring it continually with a wooden pestell, vntill it wareth stiffe and white: some adde a little *Opium* vnto it, to make it coole the more; but it is needlesse: for if it be necessarie, thou maiest adde it at all times afterward. This ointment is an especiall god remedie in *Cephalalgia*, and heate of the head, it staieth flegmaticall rheumes and flegmons, it mitigateth the canker, it is also good for the heate of the stomacke, liuer, kidneies, &c.

A cooling vnguent, *Infrigidans Galeni.*

Take two ounces of white oz virgine ware, melt it easily, and wash it often with faire water, and at the last with white vinegar: then adde vnto it fower ounces of the oile of Roses, which also hath bene washed as before. It may also be made vp in forme of a plaister oz *Ceratum*. It easeth both the heate of agues and of the head, being applied to the forehead and temples: it is also very good against the paine of the kidneies. If thou wilt vse it for paine of the head, melt it on a little fire, then wash it with vinegar and with the iuice of Plantaine and Nightshade, annoint the forehead with it, especially on those seames of the skull: then lay Wine oz willow leaues vpon it, and thou shalt finde great ease. To the same intent is the Poplar vnguent oz *Vnguentum Populeum* also vled, which is found readie made in all Apothecaries shops. Likewise take Rose leaues, Willow leaues, water Lillies, Gallowes, of each one handfull, boile them in water, and irrigate thy head with it. Also take Violets, Barlie beaten in a mortar, beaten Gourd seedes oz the bark of Gourds, Poppie heads, seedes of Hollihocke, Purslaine seedes, Lettice seedes, of each one handfull: boile them in water, and let the decoction being warme drop from on high vpon thy head. Note also that if necessitie and the violent paine should require stronger remedies, then vse the iuice of such herbes as are colde and drie, as of Plantaine, of Shepheards purse, of Nightshade, of Housleake, of Pomegranates, and in the greatest extremitie adde a little *Opium* vnto it, of Henbane: adding the iuice of Southernwood oz of Poppie vnto it, and applying them to the head as is aboue said. Here is also to be obserued, that these stupefactiue oz narcoticall things are not to be vled, but onely in the greatest extremities. Neither may any such cold remedies be adhibited to the backe part of the head, but only to the forehead. In fine, wherefoerer these & such like may be omitted, there are they not at all to be vled: notwithstanding if the extremitie be such that no other remedies would serue the turne, & any danger might ensue of any obstupefaction oz numming of any one part, this shall be sometimes vled: Take the wood of *Cassia* small beaten one dragme, mixe it with oile, and drop it into the eares and nostrils: and if peradventure the patient should lose both sense and feeling, then mixe halfe a dragme of Beuer Cob, a scruple of Saffron, and a little oile of Oliues oz rather oile of Chestnuts together.

Also make this emplasters: Take of the Wine buds, beate them smal, and adde as much oile of Roses and Barlie flower as shall suffice: then lay it plaister wise to the forehead: in the want of Wine buds take Housleake, oz the iuice of Nightshade, of Shepheards purse, oz of Lettice. Or else take yelow Saunders, Roses, water Lillies, of each halfe an ounce, Camfere one scruple, *Spica* of India halfe one scruple: wet them together with Rose water, boile them, and receiue the vapours at your nose throught a funnell: likewise take Roses, the blossoms of the Pomegranate tree, shels of Pomegranates, seedes oz berries of the Spittle tree, shels of Citrones, of each one dragme, Agarick as much; boile them in ly a little while, and wash the head with it.

This

This cooleth, drieth and strengtheneth the braines. Otherwise take Venice hard or cake Sopo, slice it small into a flat earthen pan, powze a good strong ley vpon it, couer it with a linnen cloth, and set it in the warme sunne, while the Sopo be molten: stir it oftentimes till the ley be euaporated or dried away, then put Rose water vpon it, and let it drie againe; this reiterate so often till the Sopo haue lost hir strong and vsauorie smell, and imbibe the swete smell of the Rose water. Take of this prepared Sopo one pound, white or yelowe Saunders, Roses, of each halfe one ounce, water Lillies two dragnes, Camfere one dragme, being all beaten to powder mixe them with the Sopo, and make it vp in little cakes, drie them, and reserue them for thy vse.

Of the paine in the head with agues, and laske or
fixe of the bellie. §.3.



Whereas this paine of the head is oftentimes cause of diuers other maladies, it shall not be amisse to describe that headache which raigned in the yeere of our Lord 1564. in Posbach, and in the whole Dukedome of the Palgraue of Rhene: at which time I compiled this present worke.

This paine began with a shivering colde, presently ensued an ague with a little heate, but with great drythe and thirst, which continued about one fortnight or more. It returned vnto diuers, after they had been cleere of it a moneth or twaine, and that twise or thise together: others were intolerably troubled in the head, and some so vehemently vexed with a fixe of the bellie without blood, that it could by no meanes be staied, yea they oftentimes very miserably perished with it.

For this headach were these remedies found very effectuell and good. First, if nothing do disswade from it, thou shalt open the head veine, especially if the patient be yong, full of blood, and be of bodie strong and able ynough to beare it. Children shall then purge with easie medicines, as *Cassia*, *Manna*, Sirupe of Roses, Sene leaues decocted with some coling herbes. The bigger sort shall be purged with sharpe pills and other purgations, if they haue no laske withall: and if nothing else could be had out of hand, thou shalt make this decoction or drinke: Take Sene leaues one ounce, Cinnamon, Annise and fennell seedes, Currans, of each as much as thou canst hold betwene two of thy fingers, Licorise the length of thy finger, if it be a thicke sticke take lesse of it, one fig, both cut small, swete Parioram, Rosemarie, as much as thou canst take vp betwene thy fingers, Sugar one ounce: boile them all in a quart of water, till halfe be consumed: of this giue to a childe to drinke two ounces, to an olde bodie sower ounces, to a strong bodie maiest thou boile halfe an ounce of Sene leaues with it. For women and children to be boyled on the shoulders and legs is very good, or to rub their arms and legs with warme clothes downwards. It is also good for them to bathe their feete in the decoction of Cammomils, Roses and Betonie. Wines of all sorts must be shunned in this infirmitie, and all things that are hot, as Spices, Onions, Garlike and such like: so daily drinke take two handfuls of Barly, Annise seedes halfe an ounce, Raisins one ounce and a halfe: boile these together in a pottle of water, till the Barly do burst: then ad 3. drag. of Cinnamon, grossely beaten, and let it boile a little, and so cole. Seeing then this sicknesse prouoketh thirst, thou maiest not altogether bar the diseased from any kinde of drinke, but let him take ynough of the prescribed decoction, with the sirupe of Roses, of Violets or of Citrones admired. Thou maiest also giue him the consue of the same flowers, with the water of Endiue, Succorie, Bozage and of Lettise, so that it doth comfort the hart. For his meate he shall commonly vse french Barly boyled with a hen in broth, beale, kids flesh, or stewed pynes, and such like light meates. But if a fixe or loosenesse in the bodie be adioined to the former infirmitie, the affected partie shall in any wise take great hede of such light and losing meates: and onely vse roasted beale, pullets roasted, and other small birdes, stewed Quinces, or any such like thing. And if he would haue any other meate dressed, it shall be done with filled water, which is made as followeth: Take as much faire water as thou wilt, set it on the fire, and cast a good pece of Steele into it, being made first red hot thre or fower times together: then let the water cole, and vse it as thou wilt. In like sort also maiest thou prepare water of iron, of gold, of siluer, and of stints so: the same purpose: thus is wine, the milke of a colu and of goates also steled.

But to come to our purpose againe : as long as this loosenesse of the bodie doth continue, thou shalt annoint the stomacke twice a day with the oiles of *Castor* and of *Quinces*. If it be about the time of the yere that *Sol* be ripe, take as many of them as you please, put them into a pot, and poyze boiling water vpon them; stop o: couer them very close: giue vnto the infirmed bodie thre o: fower of these a little before his meate: noting alwaies that in fower and twenty howers he vse not aboue twenty of them at the most.

Contrariwise, if the bodie be bound, thou shalt sake by all meanes thou maiest, to lose it: otherwise many vapours ascend by into the head, and there augment both the heate and the paine, yea oftentimes becaue the patient of his wits. Wherefore first of all thou shalt trie to open the bodie by suppositoies, which if they will not suffice, vse common *Clisters*, which here, after in the third part fo: the binding and stopping of the bodie are prescribed. Otherwise, if these do not please the, vse some cooling purgation, o: else that purging potion aboue described. There be aboue set downe many vnguents, Salues, and waters, but all are very good fo: the paine of the head. But in this kinde of headach, this remedie that followeth is expresse prescribed: Take of the water of *Lettice*, *Sightshade*, and of *Honlocke*, of each two ounces, water of *Cammomill* an ounce and a halfe, good strong vinegar one ounce, *Camfere* beaten fower graines: mixe them all togither, o: take *Rose water*, *Rose vinegar*, *Pelilot water*, *Betonie water*, of each, o: of as many as are to be had, what quantitie thou please, wet linnen clothes in them, and lay them to the forehead.

In this infirmite oftentimes is both the tong and throte very rawe and soze, by reason of the great heate: fo: the which loke the remedies that are set downe in the Chap. 13. §. 6. of this first part, fo: the infirmities and heate of the tong: and the gargarismes fo: the paine in the throte in the first Chapter of the second part.

The sirupe of *Pulberies* with *Plantaine*, *Knotgrasse*, and *Selseheale* waters admired, conduceth and helpeth very much: likewise, take the seede of *Quinces*, and the seede of *Flea wort*: then take a little sticke, and tie to the end of it a little *Scarlet* o: linnen cloth with one draigne of these seedes in it, steape it in the water of *Selseheale*: when thou wilt cleanse thy tong, rub it easily with that cloth so steaped: it clenseth, moisteneth, coleteth and healeth all the chaps o: clists in it.

To comfort the hart, vse *Manus Christi* with *Pearles*, conserve of water *Lillies*, *Pomegranates*, preferred *Citrons*, and others such like.

This binding water hath done very many much good: Take a hot wheaten lofe new taken out of the oven, take out all the crum of it, put a good quantitie of stealed water vnto it, with one ounce and a halfe of *Putnecs*, stop it close, and let it so stand one whole day in a warme place: then still of the water in a glasse *Lembecke*: giue of this to the patient euery morning two ounces, and let him fast two howers after it: two howers after his meate, giue him as much more, not forgetting first to warme it alwaies, and let him then fast till night. The third potion o: draught he shall take the next morning fasting (as before) after the same, this is not onely in this kinde of fire, but in all other fires experimented and approued. Note also, that if the fire be without heate, thou maiest take red wine in stead of the water: fo: then will it be of better force and vertue.

Heate of the head with melancholie. §.4.

This infirmite is described by these signes following: the paine is not so great as the former, but with a diness and sadness: the heate is moze eident in the left side of the face than in the right, it causeth disquietnesse, and albeit the sicke sometimes taketh rest, yet it is an vnaturall sleepe, it maketh the affected faint harted, fearfull and carefull, the colour of the face is red and blew, with a sower taste in the mouth if the patient be olde, if it be about the Autumne, then are the signes the surer. Thou shalt vse those remedies fo: this maladie which are prescribed against melancholie, as sufficiently shall appere hereafter. Also vse this *Clist*: Take *Pallowes*, *Violet leanes*, *Englosse*, *Fumitorie*, *Bian*, of each one *Polipodie*, *Epithymus* o: *Dodder*, of each one drag. boile them togither in a sufficient quantitie of water, take twelue o: sixtene ounces of this decoction, oile of *Oliues*, thre ounces. Stronger *Clisters* shalt

thalt thou finde elsewhere described. Thou maiest also make these or the like suppositoies: Take Coloquint, Salomoniacke, of each one dragme, Dre gall two dragmes, sodden or boiled honie thre ounces: make them reasonable thicke and long: they are very effectuall and strong.

Headach proceeding from emptinesse of the stomacke. §. 5.



It befallerh oftentimes, that this headach bereth many euery day, especially before they eate or drinke any thing, and presently after meales departeth: wherefore to auoide this emptinesse of the stomacke, thou shalt euery morning take one bit of bread dipped in vineger, or in the iuice of Pomegranates, or veriuice.

The order of diet in hot headaches.



Those that are troubled with a headache that proceedeth of heate, must altogether abstaine from wine, as hath bene already said, and not eate any flesh at all or very little: for both of them do ingender much blood. Their meate must be things colde by nature, as Lettise sodden and stewed, Spinage, Purslaine, Panadoes, broths, beere & bread sodden together, Apples, and Peares stewed, broths of beale, of hens, being sharpened with a little veriuice. Their drinke shall be small beere, whay of milke, Barly water, with a little of the iuice of Pomegranates or Limons.

Of Cephalaa and Hemisrania certaine paines of the head. §. 6.



If this headache do come with quicke and hastie puls, and with heate, then shall it seme good first of all to purge the bodie: and if the circumstances of the infirmitie permit it, the patient shall vse this lenitiue medicine, which is thus prepared: Take of the greater and lesser Endiue, Lettise, of each one handfull, Poppie heads, two ounces, seedes of Pelons, Courds, Cucumbers, and of Pompions, of each two dragmes, grossly beaten halfe an ounce: Violets, Roses, white and yeloto Saunders, of each two dragmes: boile them all in a sufficient quantitie of water, till the third part be consumed, then adde twelue ounces of Sugar, boile it to the consistence of a sirupe, and then clarifie it with the whites of eggs. Of this giue to the sicke one ounce and a halfe at once, with the water of Bozage, or Endiue, or Buglosse: vse this thre or fower times euery morning.

Because there is a great vse of sirupes in this booke, I will now shew and set downe the perfect order and way how to make and prepare them. First see thou haue fresh and clere water, with which thou wilt make thy sirupe: put into it those things first which are hardest, as rotes, woods and such like, let them boile as long as thou wouldest sethe a couple of eggs: then cast into it thy seedes grossly beaten, then thy herbes being cut, after them thy flowers and Currants: let them boile well together, that their strength may come forth, and if *Euphymus* be one of the ingredients, let it be put in last of all, and when it is sodden sufficiently, adde thy hony or sugar vnto it, and clarifie it with the whites of eggs, as hath bene taught in the Introduction, namely, in the clarifying of Sugar: after this manner maiest thou also deale in the purifying of honie.

But to come to the purpose againe; thou shalt note that if the choler be supple and thin, then shalt thou take sirupe of Endiue, of Violets, of water Lillies, of each thre drag. admixed with the aboue named waters: if the choler be grosse and thicke, then take in steade of the sirupes, the like quantitie of *Oxyaccharum compos.* *Rasis* counselleth to giue this purgation after it: Take Damaske Prunes ten drag. sower Dates one ounce: boile them in a sufficient quantitie of water: in this decoction steepe the rinde or barke of yelow Pirobalans two dragn. grossly beaten, the next day straine and presse out all the liquoz, and giue thre or fower ounces of it in the morning. Where boile Violets and water Lillies, of each one ounce, Stechas or French Lauander, two ounces, with halfe an ounce of Pirobalans: this alwaies giue at the first. They are both of them easie and safe purgations, for which cause also it is found good sometimes (according to

neede) to adde thre graines of *Diagridum* to them, or else to mire with them of the conserue of *Runes*, or of *Electuarium de succo Rosarum*, thre dragm. Also in stead of the foresaid potion or drinke, thou maiest vse this confection that followeth: Take of both the confectiōs before named, of each halfe an ounce, sirupe of water Lillies as much as sufficeth to mire them withall, and cast some Betonie rootes powdered and a little Sugar vpon it.

Likewise if thou hadst rather vse pills: Take two dragmes of Rhubarbe, Mastix one scruple, Scammonie halfe a dragme: make pills of them with the iuice of Rue, or with wine, and take a dragme at one time of them.

For the same purpose are solwer Dates approued to be an especiall good remedie, and may in this hot kinde of headache very safely and with very great effect be adhibited. But thou must take thre or solwer ounces of them at once, as thou maiest behold their description and vertues in our Introduction. This manner of purging is set for an example, which according to the circumstances both of the disease and of the diseased, may either be changed or vied at pleasure.

The bodie then being purged, the oile of Roses, or of water Lillies shall be dropped, or by some other meanes put into the patients nose, and let him smell to Camfere, Rose water, or the water of Violets. Or take oile of Violets, of Roses, of water Lillies of each halfe an ounce, Camfere thre graines: rub them well together, and put them into his nose.

In like sort also take oile of the seeds of Gourds, Willow leaues, and oile of Roses, and vse it as before: likewise in place of the foresaid oiles, thou maiest vse cooling herbes, as Nightshade, Houndsteeke laid to the forehead with towne and double linnen clothes. Also to the same end is womens milke mixed very well with the white of an eg, and so laid to the forehead especially approued: or let the patient bathe & rub his legs with the decoction of Wine leaues, water Lillies, Violets, Gourds, Cucumber, and Melon leaues; and if for all this the paine would still increase, thou maiest mire two or thre graines of *Opium* or Camfere with it, and often iterate the dropping of the oile of Willow leaues into the eares and nostrils: for this purgeth the head greatly. But see thou forget not that which before hath bene said of *Narcotics* and obstupefactiue things.

A swete ball for the headache approued: Take Violets, water Lillies, Willow leaues, Roses, of each one ounce, Camfere two graines, beate them all together, and binde them vp together in a fine peece of silke or linnen cloth, and wet it often with a little Rosewater. Others beate the foresaid simples into fine powder, and with molten waie make it vp in forme of a ball; but this is not so good. Many such like cooling bals are described in the treatise of the plague, in two diuers places of the first part, as well to recreate and restore the sicke, as to preserve the sound.

Headache proceeding of the sunne or south winde. §.7.

If the paine of the head be caused by the heate of the sunne, then may it easily be remedied with the aboue described *Oxyrrhodinum*, vnguent of Roses, the cooling vnguent of *Galen*, &c. And if those would not suffice, vse the iuices of the before named colde herbes. Also the oiles of Roses, of Violets, mire with them as much strong vineger, as thou takest of one of the oiles, beate them well together, dip a wollen cloth in it, and lay it where the paine is. Furthermore, the patient shall obserue and keepe the same diet that is aboue set downe in the Chapter of *Cephalalgia*: eate things light of digesture, abstaine from all things that might any way trouble or bere the head, and if neede require, to purge with cooling medicines, as aboue is already shewed.

Headache that commeth of drunkenesse. §.8.



Dif the disease that proceedeth from drunkenesse, shall be spoken hereafter: note we will onely intreate of headache without any other infirmities adioining with it. Perceiue it is at this present to recite any signes of this kinde of headache, for that euery thing is most euident, whether this paine take hir beginning of drunkenesse by wine or beere. The first remedie is to vomit; the second, to sleepe long, to cast it out, the broth of Colewortes, or of Betees a good quantitie being taken: also to drinke much cold water, and to eate solwer fruits; but the best meate is first of all to eate sodden Lentils, Colewortes and Bullets dyessed with veriuice or Limons. The patient

patient shall also smell to Roses or Camfere : let the uttermost partes of his bodie be rubbed, drinke wine delaid with water, and two daies after eate astringent and binding meates, with Pomegranates. The first day also shall it not be amisse to annoint the forehead and temples with the oiles of Roses, the next day with the oile of Cammomils or of Lillies : and if peradventure the paine as yet would not cease, he shall (as neede doth require) be purged, especially if any vapours ascend vp into the head. Likewise he may also vse this powder following : Take Colewort seedes, Barbarie seedes, Endiue seedes, Lentils, Roses, calcined or burnt Juozie, or Elephants tooth, of each two drag. make it into a very supple powder, giue of this two drag. at once, Camfere prepared, three graines, with the sirupe of Pomegranates or Citrons.

Headache proceeding of a stroke or fall. §.9.

If any one were hurt in the head by a stroke, a fall, or the throwing of a stone without any wound or breaking of the skin, or fracture of the skull, he shall first of all be let blood in the head veine, and after ward (if neede require) take a common Clister : and (if he haue not an ague) he shall be purged with *Pillula Cochia*. And first of all lay on his head being shauen, this that followeth : Take the shels and flowers of Pomegranates, the iuice of Sloes, *Hippocistis*, fine Bole, *Sanguis Draconis*, *Terra sigillata*, of each one drag. beate them all into powder, mire it with the whites of eggs, and lay it vpon the place affected or bruised. Or take the decoction of Roses, of Spittle seide, or of Willow leanes, applying it three or fower times a day : then take Dile Spirtles, and of Roses, of each one ounce, Spittle seedes, iuice of Sloes, *Hippocistis*, of each one dragma, mire them together with a little molten ware, and if there be no suffusion or congealed blood, annoint the place with it two or three daies together.

Thou maiest also make a pultis of Roses, Cammomill and Melilot flowers, adding a little fine Bole to it, and miring it with the oiles aboue named. If an ague be present, vse either colde or lukewarme things : also let him smell to coling things, as Violets, Camfere, Willow leanes, and Spittle leanes, &c.

The second Chapter.

Of the paine of the head that is caused by colde.

If the paine of the head procede of colde stegmaticke humours and continue long, then are these the signes : wearisomnesse of all the partes, and as if all the bodie were beaten and broken into peeces : the paine is not extreme, without any swelling or thirst, sleepinesse, much spetting at the mouth, much moisture at the nose : so such like humidities do daily increase in the diseased ; the face is alwaies palely coloured, and somewhat swollen, the eyes run, and the mouth is quite out of taste. In such colde headaches, must contrarie remedies be vsed, that is, warming and drying medicines. Also we must begin here likewise with the gentlest and easiest remedies first, as this example following sheweth : which alwaies must be holden in the mouth, chewing it continually, and casting forth the sime and spittle, which thereby is gathered. Take Mastix, Putmegs, Diptamer of Candie, Pepper, Stauesaker, Bellitorie of Spaine, Cubebs, Ginger, bound vp in a little cloth.

The manner of purging in this infirmitie. §.1.

Seeing that purging is very needfull in this kinde of headache, purge therefore both head and bodie in manner as followeth : Take Sage, Lauander gentle, Bayberies, Wilde Mint, Hyssope, Pariozam, swete Pariozam, Garden Mint, Calmus, of each one ℥. seedes of Fennell, Perley, Sparage, Endiue of each two dragmes : Raisins, *Nux Pinea*, seedes of Melons, of Pompions, of Gourds, and of Cucumbers, Roses, rootes of wilde Smallage, Annise seedes, of each halfe an ounce, Cubebs, Pionie seedes, Cloues, Putmegs, of each a dragma and a halfe,

halfe, Spikenard of India, Ginger, Cinnamon, Pepper, of each halfe a drag. boile these things in a sufficient quantitie of water, then presse out all the moisture from them, and boile it the second time with honie or Sugar to the consistence of a sirupe. This if thou wouldst haue to purge, adde vnto it seedes of wilde Saffron, Vermoadails, of each halfe an ounce, Agaricke five drag. Salt gem halfe one scruple, Turbit two drag: knit vp these together in a little bag, and boile them in the foresaid liquoꝝ. Afterwards sharpen thy sirupe with the vineger of Squils as followeth. Of this sirupe thou maiest giue one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces at once, mingled with good wine, or else with some other distilled waters that may serue to the same end, thre or fower daies continually together.

Oxymell of
Squils com-
position.

The composition of the vineger of Squils is as followeth: Take the Squil (called in Latine *Scilla*) take away the external shells from it, till thou come to the white: these white ones take of by themselves severally with thy hand, or else with a wooden spatting or knife, and not with iron, for that is hurtfull: also leaue out the hart, the innermost part of the Squill, and take onely the middle white shiuers of it: fasten all these on a thred, that the one touch not the other, and hang them vp to drie forty daies in a cole place and in the shade. But this way that followeth, is much better: Take away all the uttermost partes vntill thou come to the white: then wꝛap it vp in dowe, and bake it in an ouen: afterwards, part it in shiuers as before, and drie it as is already said. Take of this dried Squils as much as thou wilt, cut it into little peeces with a wooden or bone instrument, put fower times as much vineger vpon it in a glasse, and let it so continue forty daies in the sunne.

Having taken the foresaid potion as hath bene taught before, thou shalt giue him *Pillula Cochlie*. If thou wilt haue them strong, take two dragmes of them, Coloquint, *Bdelium*, of each one scrup. make them into pils with the water of Sage: of these giue but one drag. at one time, because they be very strong: to the same purpose likewise serue the pils *Alephangina*, *Anrea*, and Aloes prepared, being taken a drag. at once. But if the sicke would rather take a potion than these pils: Take Lauander gentle, flowers of Bozage and Buglosse, Currans, of each one ounce, Basil seede one drag. Agarick, Turbit, of each one drag. boile them in a sufficient portion of water, vntill there remaine about ten ounces, steape in this liquoꝝ one ounce and a halfe of the barks of *Spirobalans* called *Chebuli*, and set it so in warme ashes all one whole night: then presse it out hard, and giue thre ounces of it at once. Also take *Hiera picra*, Agarick, of each one drag. Lauander, Saffron, of each one scrup. Salt gem, two graines: mire them with some bꝛoth that putrengs and Sage hath bene boyled in. In like manner maiest thou vse this that followeth: Take honie of Roses, sirupe of Stechas, of each thre drag. Agaricke, Turbit, of each two scruples, *Spica*, thre graines, prepared Turpentine, halfe an ounce: beaten to powder all what thou canst beate, melt thy Turpentine in some hot bꝛoth, and when it is as cold that it may be drunken, mire the powders and sirupes with it, and giue it early in the morning. This must be either diminished or augmented in qualitie, according to the abilitie of the patient.

If the diseased can beare no kinde of phisicke, then vse this Clister: Take Gallowes, herbes *Mercurie*, Will, Rue, Bran, of each one handfull, boile them in a sufficient quantitie of water, take of Colatare twelue or sixtene ounces, mire with it of *Hiera picra*, of white Sugar, of each halfe an ounce or somewhat moze, Salt, two drag. oile of Will and Rue, of each one ounce and a halfe, and minister it warme.

Gargarismes also are very good for this malaladie, because they drawe forth a great deale of stinke and filthinesse from the head. Take Galtir, Calmus, Licorice, Currans, of each halfe an ounce, Bislope, Ireos, of each two drag. Bellitorie of Spaine, Sarisfrage, Ginger, Mustard seedes, of each one drag. beate them all together, and boile them in fresh water: vse it thre or fower times a day warme.

Some do counsell to take a vomit of Radish water and Oxymell, but it is not without some danger, for that it doth oftentimes greatly disturbe the head: otherwise it might do some good.

There are also diuers confections and Eiectuaries made for the same, which might warme and drie a cold and a moist braine: Take conserue of Roses two ounces and a halfe, conserue of Betonie one ounce and a halfe, greene Ginger halfe an ounce, Cinnamon one dragm. Cloues, Annise seedes, of each one dragme, beate and mire them all together: and if it be too drie, adde as much of the sirupe of Citrons vnto it, as shall suffice, or as much of any other sirupe. Of this exhibite enery morning the bignesse of a nut in quantitie.

Another

Another Eleetuarie of life. This is described by *Paulus Riccius*, head Phisition to the Empe-
pero2 *Maximilian*, and is very comfortable for the head, for it doth both warme and drie it. Take
Curranes six ounces, Licorice, two drag. boile these in the waters of Buglosse, Scabious, and
Betonie, of each twelue ounces; then straine it and presse out all the humiditie, in the which,
being yet warme, steepe 1. drag. of Kubarbe, Lauander 5. graines: being bound vp together in
a cloth, put them together in a pot, and stop it close, and boile it a good while in a kettle with wa-
ter, presse it out and put into it as much Kubarbe and Spike as before, letting them there re-
maine all a night, presse it out againe as before, and steepe in it the barks of Piobalans, to wit,
Chebuli, *Indi*, *Bellurici*, and yellow Piobalans, of each one ounce, *Emblci* two drag. boile them all
together, and straine them thozow a linnen cloth, then adde Sugar 6. ounces, Spanna 2. ounces,
and let it boile to the consistence of a sirupe: when it beginneth to cole, mingle in it Cinnamon
halfe an ounce, Cloues, Galingale, Putmegs, of each one drag. *Lignum Paradisi* halfe a dragme,
seeds of Fennell and Annise, of each halfe an ounce: mire them well together, and reserue it in
a gally pot. This following is likewise greatly commended for the same: Take conserue of
Betonie, thre ounces and a halfe, conserue of Sage two ounces and a halfe, conserue of Rose-
marie one ounce and a halfe, conserue of Bozage and Buglosse of each one ounce, of the foresaid
confection of life two ounces, Cinnamon two drag. preserved *Chebuli* halfe an ounce, preserved
Emblci two drag. six leaues of beaten golde, adde as much sirupe of Betonie as may suffice.
This confection also comforteth the hart: The right *Calamus Aromaticus* of the ancient Phis-
itions, as it is described in the beginning of the eight part of this present booke, taketh away all
cold headaches, and sharpeneth the wit.

*Paulus Ric-
cius Phis-
ition to the
Emperour
his Eleetua-
rie.*

*Calamus A-
romaticus.*

Another conserue which is greatly commended for this kinde of headach: Take Cinnamon
one ounce, Cubebs, Piobalans, *Chebuli*, and *Emblci* of each two drag. red Rose leaues, red
Saunders, red Cozall, of each one drag. Cardamonie, Pace, Cloues, Putmegs, of each halfe
a drag. Sugar 16. ounces, dissolue your Sugar in Rose water and Lauander water: boile it
till it be hard, and make it vp into a cake of *Mannu Christi*.

What vertues the confects of Coziander, Annise seeds, Fennell seeds, Commun seeds, bit-
ter Almonds, Wafelnuts, and such like haue to helpe, comfort and strengthen a colde bzaine, as
also how they keepe backe and hinder the fuming vapo2s that would ascend from the stomache
into the head, is at large declared in the eight part.

An especiall medicine of the ancient Phisitions for
the colde headache.



Wit the rootes of Hoseradish small, drie them and beate them into powder, giue of
this one spoonfull in wine or bzoth, and let him sweate in his bed very well, and
fast two howers after it. Let his meate be light of digesture, as pullets, and such
like. But I must needs mislike of this remedie, for that the Hoseradish is very
strong, and doth moze harme than good to the bzaine: neither seemeth it any way
conuenient to sweate vpon.

Certaine wines composed for the colde headache.



Take Rosemarie two ℥. Putmegs one ounce, dried Betonie 2. ounces, Cloues
two drag. being cut very small, put vpon them eight quarts of good Rhenish
wine, let them so stand together thre or fouer daies. For the weaknesse of the
stomache drinke a good draught of it in the beginning of thy meales: but for the
headach, at the latter end.

This wine is very good for a colde and moist bzaine, and hurtfull for yong
folks and hot complexions.

Another for the same: Take rootes of Buglosse one ℥. rootes of Cicorie halfe as many,
flowers of Buglosse, of Bozage, of Roses, of Rosemarie, Parts tong, of each halfe a ℥. boile
them in fouer quartes of wine the space that thou maiest boile an eg hard: let it cole, straine it,
and then take fouer quartes of wine moze, and steepe in it six Sage leaues, and as much Rose-
marie, long Pepper one ounce, Galingale one ounce and a halfe, Cloues, Cubebs, of each halfe

an ounce, Cardamonie two drag. Cinnamon, Currans prepared, Coziander seedes, of each one ounce: these things being well beaten, tie them in a cloth, and boile them with the wine, but not aboue twenty bubbles; then put both wines together in a little rundlet, and let the spices steape in them eight daies together, pressing them out once a day. If this wine be too strong for thy drinking (as it is most like to be) then mixe other wines therewithall before thou drinke it.

Of other Cephalicall herbes and spices, thou shalt finde a description in the eight part of this booke.

Hitherto we haue abundantly treated of colde headaches with their appropriate remedies internall: now because that outward applications oftentimes are of no lesse effect, than the inward medicines, I do purpose at this present to set downe diuers externall remedies.

Demanders
for the colde
headach.

A Puske ball for the same: Take *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, *Lignum Paradisi*, *Syrax Calamita* of each one drag. Cloues, Putmegs, Basil seedes, of each halfe a drag. Rose water with which a little Puske is dissolved, make it vp into a ball: if thou adde a small quantitie of Amber, it will be the better. Thou shalt finde diuers sortes of these swæte smelling bals in sundry places of this booke described.

These bals are made after this manner: Take a warme mortar and pestell, and put into it a little of the foresaid Rose water, with the *Laudanum* and *Mace*: stir them with the pestell together till they be molten, then mixe the other powders with them except the Puske & Amber, and make it vp in bals of what bignesse thou please: last of all, prick them full of little holes, but not very deepe, into the which thou shalt put the Puske and Amber mixed first with Rose water: then take some finely prepared cotton, wipe the morter with it, and wrap the swæte ball in it, or keape it in a little red peece of lincloth. It is also good to snuffe vp some of the foresaid powder into the nose, or else a little muske.

To perfume withall: Take Frankincense, wood of Paradise, *Passir*, Putmegs, *Syrax Calamita*, of each by it selfe, or of them all as much as thou wilt. Also take Frankincense, *Sandaracha*, wood of Paradise, of each a like quantitie: throwe it on glowing coles, and receiue the vapour or smoke.

The manner of making lyes and sopes for the same, with which the head being washed the braine is comforted, hir moisture dried, and hir ouermuch cold changed into swarmth, for which purposes thou shalt vse these things following: Take Roses, Sene leaues, Betonie, *Parioram*, *Agarick*, of each one drag. steape them in hot ly the space of sower or fine holwers: others first boile them in wine, and afterward mingle it with ly.

Take *Mace* three drag. *Stechas*, *Parioram*, of each one drag. blossomes of the wilde Vine, Roses, of each two drag. *Spica* one drag. cut them all into small peces, put them into a little bag, and then steape them in the ly: This comforteth the head, braine, and memorie, and helpeth also the swimming or gibbinesse of the head.

Also take Spike halfe an ounce, Lauander flowers, Roses, *Parioram*, Rosemarie, rootes of the blew flower de luce, of each two drag. cut them into peces, and being put into a bag steape them in ly, and wash thy head with it: this strengtheneth the braine, all the senses, and the memorie very much.

Also take wilde Vints, *Pep*, course *Parioram*, *Hyssope*, Bay leaues, of each sort two *℞*. Rosemarie blossomes, *Stechas*, Colde flowers of each halfe a *℞*. and sethe them in ly: take also *Parioram*, Sage, Camunomill, Bay leaues, *Stechas*, of each a *℞*. lay them in steape in the water of ly, as is aforesaid.

Washing
bals for the
cold paine
of the head.

Here folloiweth diuers sortes of washing bals very meete and necessarie for the colde, and humors of the head. Take Venice Sope, halfe a pound, bruiſe it and stampe it in a warme mortar with a hot pestell, and make it somewhat moist with Rose water, or Lauander water, vntill it be like vnto dowe, then beate one ounce of Ireos rootes, Cloues, Putmegs, Cinnamon, Cardamonie, *Stechas*, of each a drag. Roses, Basil, Rosemarie, Lauander blossomes, of each halfe a drag. all dried and beaten to powder, and then mingle the same with the dowe of the Sope, and take oile of Spikenard, and rubbing your hands therewithall, then make vp the bals.

Also prepare or dresse the Sope in like sort as before is mentioned, and then mingle therewithall these powders hereafter following, to wit, Lauander halfe an ounce, Roses, *Parioram*, Basil, of each a quarter of an ounce, Ireos 3. quarters of an ounce, *Benzoin*, *Syrax Calamita*, *Stechas*, of each a drag. Spike a quarter of an ounce, and mingle them with Rose water. Therewith
annoint

annoint the temples of the head, and it will giue a very swæte smell oꝝ fume, and comfort the head and bzaïne.

Also take of the foresaid Sope prepared in the like manner as befoze is specified, two ounces, and mire therewithall a quarter of an ounce of Agarick, Treos, Cloues, of each halfe a dragme, Camfere a scrup. Then make bals thereof in what soꝝt you desire them.

Also take Venice Sope fower ounces, Treos, Cloues, Betonie, of each thꝛee dragm. Parioꝝram, Papis, Galigan, *Lignum Aloes*, Ciperus, Calmus, Sandacha, of each a scruple, liquid Stirar a drag. and a halfe, Puske fower graines, then dꝛesse the Sope with Lauander water, as befoze is specified. Also heretofore in Chap. 1. §. 2. is mentioned how the strong smell of the Sope may be taken away and made very commodious and fit foꝝ vse to diuers purposes.

There is to be noted, that if the bals be foꝝ present vse, then are the bags hereafter mentioned, not needfull: but foꝝ the bags, you are to take dꝛie Betonie a ℥. Bozage, Pelilote, Pillet a little dꝛied in a pan, of each halfe an ounce, Rosemarie flowers, Stechas, of each a quarter of an ounce; make the bag so great, as the place of the griefe: and put the same therein, and lay it to the place where the griefe is. This following is stronger: Take dꝛie Betonie, Rue, of each halfe a ℥. Rosemarie blossomes, Stechas, of each an ounce, Basil seede, Rue, of each halfe an ounce: beate them in a mortar together, and put them in a little bag, and lay them to the head. Pillet scorched oꝝ dꝛied a quartern: the like quantitie of Salt, and also as much Cammomil, put them in a little bag, and lay them warme vpon the head: This is also very good.

Also: Take Stechas, Cammomil, wilde Pints, Parioꝝram, Bay leaues, of each a handful, Senz leaues, Cipus, Citron shels, of each two drag. Cubebs, Putmegs, Cloues, of each a drag. Papis, Spike of India, Cipus rotes, Calmus, of each two drag. beate these together in a mortar; then put the same into two little bags: and if thou wilt haue it warmer, then take Dones dung and Mustarde seede, of each thꝛee dragmes, Beuer cob, and *Euphorbium* of each a dragme.

Note also very specially, that neither Roses noꝝ other stopping things be put in the bags, neither are these plaisters following, in any wise seruiceable; and although they be strong, yet do they but hinder the diuiding of the matter. Therefore you shall not vse the bags in certaine howers after you haue washed it with the Sope befoze mentioned.

A powder foꝝ the head: Take Putmegs, Papis, Rosemarie, Cloues, Frankincense, Parioꝝram, Lauander, Stechas, of each a like quantitie, beate it small, and rub the head well therewithall vpon the seame of the head, and then couer and keepe warme the head with a cap, that the smell of the powders may the longer remaine.

Also take Betonie, Parioꝝram, Stechas, Roses, of each a ℥. Sage, Rue, course Parioꝝram, of each halfe so much, Rosemarie two drag. Citron shels one ounce, Barke of Frankincense, Myrhe, Frankincense, Mastix, *Sandaracha*, of each halfe an ounce, Cloues halfe a drag. beate them all into powder. This is very good foꝝ the moist oꝝ rheumatike head, to dꝛie it and to procure warmth.

Plaisters and salues: Take Aloes, Penmiroiall, Citron shels, wilde Pints, *Sandaracha*, Frankincense, of each halfe an ounce, oile of Roses one ounce, *Laudanum* sixe ounces, beate these small in a warme mortar, with a warme pestell, put thereunto sixe ounces of molten ware, the other being very small beaten, then spread it vpon leather, and couer it ouer with red Sarinet: this shalt thou lay vpon the head of the partie greued in the morning whilst he is fasting: this dꝛieth very strongly, warmeth the head, and comforteth the bzaines.

Another: Take of the best *Laudanum* two ounces, Papes, sixe drag. Pillet that is scorched oꝝ dꝛied, two drag. Turpentine and oile of Cammomil so much as shall be needfull foꝝ one plaister, and then vse the same as befoze is mentioned. Some take fower ounces of *Laudanum*, and Hozehound in the place of Pape.

This plaister following is very strong, and of great heate: Take Beuer cob, *Euphorbium*, Pepper, white Mustard seede, *Stirax Calamita*, Rue, Hozehound, of each a like quantitie: this beate all together with wine vntill it be like dowe, and thereof make cakes of a like weight, let them dꝛie. When you will vse them, rub them with oile of *Costus* (otherwise Balsam) oꝝ Cammomil oile vntill it be made fit foꝝ a plaister oꝝ a salue, then lay it vpon the soꝛthead: foꝝ it is very good foꝝ any olde oꝝ colde paine of the head, but lay it not vnto the soꝛthead onely, but also dꝛop some into the eares, and it will be very warme, and therfoꝝe I do not counsell you to take much

much thereof.

This is of special account: Treacle, or Spithivate, with the iuice of bzuised Spints, make it thicke as pay, and then annoint the forehead therewithall in the time of rest, and principally in *Hemicrania*, and where you finde the head most cold, there vse it ofteneft.

Also take the rootes of wilde Cucumbers, wormwood, of each two ℥. sethe them together with a soft fire, in three ounces of water, and as much common oile, vntill it be sodden to a third part. With this moisture rub the head till it be wet, and of the rest make a plaister, and lay it to the place of the paine.

Also take of the vsuall plaister Apostolicon fower ounces, make it soft with the oile of Cammomill, and then rub the place of the paine therewithall. Alwaies vnderstanding that the haire is to be first cut off very close.

Hereunto may also of the oile of Spikenard, of Costus, of Bener cod, of Cammomill, and Will be vsed of each a like quantitie, and then stamping all the foresaid herbes and rootes with them.

Addition.

The herbes and simples that are vsed in a colde headache are these: Iris Ilirica, oile of the wilde Olive, oile of Almonds, the seedes of the chass tree, bitter Almonds, Lana succida, water Mints, the iuice of Iuie leaues, Aloës, Mints, wilde Time, Melilot, the leaues of Baccharis, Rue, Scammonie, Annise, Dog Fennell, Git, the lesser Coniza, the yong leaues of Anagyris, Rhodia radix, Hippoglossa, Lawrell, iuice of the wilde Cucumbers, Galingale, Nardus Italica, Lavander, Valerian with the roote, Cinnamon, Cubebs, Muske, Stuet, Amber, oile of Baies, Mummie, Mastick, Agarick, water of Veruaine, Verbascum, Coloquint. For the heate and hot paine of the head, Priuet blossomes, drie Roses, Purslaine, the rootes of water Lillies, and of Rhodia, iuice of Poppie, the greater Honslecke, same or garden Nightshade, Vine leaues, mosse of trees and stones, oile of Priuet, iuice of Plantaine, of Lettice, Fabaria beaten, Henbane, Muscilage of Fleawort, Mandrake, all manner of Honslecke, white Saunders, the decoction of Sene, Camfere, &c. Some of these are vsed only inwardly, some only outwardly. & some also both waies, and for that cause they are not to be vsed without great circumspection.

Of needling for a colde and rheumatike head. §.2.



Any do aduise to prouoke needling, for to cleanse the braine and head thereby: but it is also to be doubted that the same will rather diskepper the head, so that it must prouidently be dealt with, as shall presently hereafter be exprest. Wherefore it is also needfull to speake somewhat of needling, which doth men much good or ill.

Needling, *Sternutatio*, is a motion of nature, or of the expulsive vertue to driue out all that hindreth the aire from the braines. Or, needling is a speciall motion of the braines expelling superfluous moisture or matter, and that thozow the helpe of the attracted aire, which driueth out the same speedily thozow the mouth and nose.

The causes of needling are sharpe things, as Dintons, Lillies, Belleboze, Pepper, Mustarde seedes, and such like, in smelling, eating and drauing them into the nose. To hold vp the nostrils against the sunne, to tickle in them with some sharpe things. But for moze safetie this is mine aduice, that needling be refrained as much as is possible, as also *Pierisum*, *Euphorbium*, and such like moe, and principally by themselves alone. In like manner, although the wilde Cucumber doth draue forcibly, yet notwithstanding it is a great deale too sharpe. But if it be found good aduice to vse needling, then are these compounded remedies hereafter following much safer and milder to cleanse the head and braines: Take Parieram one quarter of an ounce, Pigella seedes, Rosemarie flowers, of each one dragma, Clones two scruples; beate them small, and smell thereto.

Item take beaten Parieram one quarter of an ounce, *Pierisum* one scrup. Ginger one scrup. white Belleboze nine graines, and beaten all small together.

Item

Item take *Pieretrum* ten graines, *Betonie* a dzag. *Parieram* one dzag. and a halfe, and beate them all together.

Item take *Landanum*, *Pyrrhe*, *Amanacum*, white *Helleboze*, of each one dzag. *Frankincense*, *Euphorbium*, *Coziander*, *Ginger*, long *Pepper*, of each halfe a dzag. these beaten all to fine powder, it is very good for the colde murre.

Item take *Pieretrum*, blacke *Helleboze*, of each halfe an ounce, white *Helleboze*, *Beuer* cob, of each two dzag. *Parierom* halfe a dzag. beate them to powder: of this vse but a little, and not very often; for it is very strong.

Dile of *Spike* being put into the nose, both prouoke nesling. There may also be drawen vp into the nose two ounces of *Parieram* water, and afterwarde wash the forehead and face warme therewith.

For what end nesling is commodious or hurtfull, you shall perceiue here and there in this booke.

Lotions for the face. All Phisitions do commend for sundrie sicknesses, and also for colde ache in the head this lotion of the face: Take *Betonie*, *Roses*, *Elberne* flowers, *Cammomill*, *Parieram* and *Sage* of each fower handfull: sethe them together, and euery euening put the face deepe ynough therein, and so continue about halfe an hower therein: this may be kept good thre daies together.

If so be that the patient cannot sleepe he may vse this thre or fower times a weeke: Take *Cammomill*, *Pellilot*, *Violet* leaues, of each one handfull, water *Lillies*, halfe a handfull, *Poppie* heads broken in peces one ounce: sethe and vse them as before.

The order of diet for the colde paine of the head. §.3.

Strong wine is good, but not too much, to the end he do not disturbe the head: once in eight daies he must bathe and wash his head with the decoction of *Cammomill*, *Parieram*, and *Stechas*: or he may vse according to the importance of the sickness, one of the foresaid lyes or sopes: before meales is his head to be rubbed with warme clothes, and after meales take a little *Pharmalade*, thereby to hinder the vapours of the stomacke from ascending to the head, and prouoking of new paine.

Outward brusings of the head. §.4.

All outward brusings or wounds of the head, whereof is not onely caused great paine but also great perill of life, do belong chiefly to chirurgerie, notwithstanding where we shall hereafter discourse of the *Scull*, somewhat shall be spoken thereof.

What doth conuey the medicines towards the head. §.5.

We haue hitherto described many kindes of remedies and medicines that are mete for the hot, cold, and other paines of the head: but because the laxatiue and purging medicines through their owne power do not expell all humours (for which they be giuen) out of all members indifferently, without the addition of such things as may conuey their operation towards some certaine member the which one desireth to haue them to purge; therefore we will discourse here somewhat thereof. And that you may by example clereely vnderstand the same, then behold the *Drymel* that shall immediately be described: it prepareth or digesteth *flegmatike* humours indifferently as well in one member as in another. But if so be you mixe therewith *Putnugs*, *Pionie* seedes, or *Cubebs*, then doth it onely purge the head, and none other part of the bodie: and if you put thereto *Tamariccus* and *Caper* rotes, then doth it purge out of the milt, and so forth with all the rest. Now because we write here onely of the head, these are the principallest simples or herbes that do conduet the medicines towards the head: to wit, *Putnugs*, *Cubebs*, and *Pionie*, *Penniroiall*, *Pariozam*, *Balsam* wood and seedes, *Frankincense*, *Beuer* cob, *Landanum*,

dannum, Pelilot, the right Acorus, Lignum Aloes, Pyrrhe, Chamedris, Squils, Noces pinea, Spikenard, Gentian, Hyssope, Pepper and Sagapenum or Serapinum.

There are many things moe here and there discovered in this booke, which the diligent reader shall finde to be very mete for the headache.

Additions vnto the paine of the head.

For the forementioned paine of the head there are certaine things commemorated, that are commodiously and much vsed, & yet are not discovered how they should be prepared.

Thus, to the end the reader might be satisfied, we will here describe certaine of them and begin with *Oxymel*.

Diuers kindes of Oximel. §.6.



First we will begin with that which at the Apothecaries is called *Oxymel simplex*: for that it is made onely of honie and vineger: now for to make the same, take clarified honie fower ounces, powze thereto two ounces of clere water: sethe the same together, and scum it, vntill all the water be sodden away: put thereto two ounces of vineger, let it sethe together vnto a sirupe. This consumeth all tough slime and thicke humors, openeth all obstructions, clenseth the breast, and maketh an easie breathyng.

The second *Oxymel* is called at the Apothecaries *Compositum* or *Diureticum*. It is made in this manner: Take fennell rootes, and rootes of Smalage, of each two ounces, the seedes of Parsley, of Butchers bryme, of Sparage, of Smalage, and of fennell, of each an ounce: take out the core of the rootes, chop them, and sethe them in a quart of water vntill they be mellow, afterwards wzyng them out thozow a cloth, and adde to the decoction fyre ounces of sharpe vineger, twelue ounces of clenfed honie, let them sethe together vnto a sirupe. This is much stronger for all vses than the former: it doth attenuate all tough slimes, it driueth them out of the members, openeth the obstruction of the liuer, of the milke and of the kidneies, it expelleth the vyne and sweate.

The third *Oximel* is made of Squils called *Scyllinum*, or at the Apothecaries *Squilliticum*: for this, take vineger of Squils which is described before in the second Chapter §.1. against the cold paine of the head, fower ounces, clarified honie fyre ounces, and sethe it al together vnto a sirupe.

The fourth is *Oxymel Scyllinum compositum*, the which is thus made: Take the rootes of Smalage, of fennell, of each two ounces, the rootes of Parsly, of Butchers bryme, of Sparage, the seedes of Smalage, and of fennell, of each halfe an ounce: sethe them together in a quart of water vntill the rootes be mellow: vnto this decoction adde twelue ounces of vineger, of Squils, clarified honie 18. ounces, and then sethe it to a sirupe.

They are both very good to attenuate the tough slimes, to strengthen the stomacke, and to prouoke vyne: but the first is stronger to open all obstructions, and is speciall good against all quotidian and quartan agnes.

Purging sirupe of Roses. §.7.



Take a pound of red or damaske Rose leaues, put them into a pot with a narrow necke, powze thereon about thre times so much of hot clere water, let it stand so 8. or 12. howers couered very close, afterwards wzyng it hard out with thy hand, straine the liquoz clere thozow a cloth: then take againe fresh Roses as before, and powze the strained liquoz sethyng hot vpon it, let it stand as before; wzyng it out againe, and do this afterwards 8. or 12. times together (the oftener the better) and it will be the stronger in purging.

Lastly, wey all that strained iuice of Roses, and put halfe so much Sugar vnto it, and clarifie it with the white of an eg, vntill it be very clere: afterwards let it sethe to a sirupe. Some do stampe the Roses, that the vertue might come out the better.

Others do make it after this manner, as followeth: Take red or damaske Rose leaues two pound

pound and a halfe, pōwze thereon ten quartes of May deaw oꝝ clēre raine water made mētelv hot: let them infuse together in a warme place a whole day and a night stopt very close. The next day wꝛing it out hard: make the bꝛoth not seething, but onely mētelv hot: then pōwze it againe upon two pound of fresh Rose leaues: let them stand and steape, as before. The thirde time take one pound and a halfe of Roses; the fourth time one pound, and so the fift and sirt time: last of all, after the sower last times, take each time halfe a pound of Roses: afterwards, the liquoz be ing strained, put vnto thꝛe partes of it one part of Sugar: seethe it well, clarifying it vnto a sirupe. Of one of these sirupes may be giuen to a full growne person thꝛe, sower, oꝝ five ounces at one time: vnto a yong childe one ounce; vnto one of eight oꝝ nine yeres olde, two ounces, and further after the same rate, according to the greatnesse oꝝ smalnesse.

This sirupe doth quench the thirst and heate in all hot agues, it doth strengthen the stomacke and the hot liuer, defendeth the hart from all venom and stinch: therefore it is also good foꝝ the plague, and loseth very gently.

It is also prepared with Ruarbe and other things, according to the opinion of euery Physitian.

Barly water. §.8.

IT is ordained before, foꝝ the hot paine of the head, to giue vnto the sicke bodie Barlie water foꝝ his daily drinke, the which is prepared after diuers manners, but is commonly prepared thus: Take vnto a good deale of water one ounce of peēled Barlie, let it seethe vntill it bꝛeake. Some do steape it two oꝝ thꝛe howers before in clēre water. And albeit that such Barlie water haue small force; yet it is better than bare water, when the patient is forbidden to drinke wine.

There are also other things moe, according to the importance of the sicke person, put vnto it, as Pasticke, Barberies that do colour it like vnto wine. In like manner are also herbes, rootes, and all that one will, decocted therein.

Manus Christi with Pearles. §.9.

This cordiall Sugar is very very common, and is made thus: Take 12. ounces of the whitest Sugar, seethe it with Rose water like as is taught in our Introduction, afterwards when it beginneth to be colde, stir an ounce of prepared Pearles amongst it, and make Tabulates oꝝ *Manus Christi* of it. It is good foꝝ all faintnesse, hot agues, heauie fantasies and imaginations.

The Apothecaries do commonly not take moze than a dragma of Pearles vpon a pounce of Sugar, because men will not go to the cost thereof.

Without Pearles the Apothecaries do call it *Manus Christi simplex*, they decoct the Sugar with Rose water, without putting any thing else vnto it. It is made also with Violet water, Cinnamon water, and howsoeuer that one will haue them.

The third Chapter.

The Haire of the Head.

Euen as we haue discoursed of all kinde of paines of the head, so we will now begin certaine other things of the same in particular, and of that which maketh shew outwardly in the top of the head, to wit, the haire, the which groweth there of it selfe, garnisheth the head, decketh and couereth it. And although the same haire (like as the nails also) hath no other gouernment, but onely the growing and garnishing by nature: neuerthelesse it hath that secret in it, that shew his colour, his hardness, softnesse, finenesse, curling, euennesse, and other marks, it doth sufficiently giue knowledge how that the vaines which lie vnder it, are inclined: to wit, the colde, warmth, drythe, moisture, as also their mixed complexions, as colde and drythe, warmth and moisture, whereby it may be knowen what humoz oꝝ moisture doth most abound,

abound, or together ones haire also will quickly fall off or not. These weightie and other causes haue planted by nature in all men, specially in women, a carefulnesse to loke vnto, and maintaine it: the one with making it growe more or thicker than the other, to change the colour, to make it fall away, to keepe it cleane from all vermine, and to free and cleere it from all defaults. Because therefore that this is so greatly esteemed, it is requisite to prosecute our attempted method, and to write also somewhat thereof. And first of all, of those things which cause the haire to growe: afterwards, to take that alway which hindereth, or to drawe or plucke it out.

To cause the haire to growe, and to colour it. §. 1.



Al they that desire to haue their haire growe thicke and apace, are to annoint the place oftentimes with honie where they will haue it growe: also to make a ley of herbs (to wit, for yong maidens and women) who beare the name therof, *Gallstrichon*, faire haired, *Polstrichon*, much haire, *Capillus Veneris*, Venus haire.

And if any body haue a balde patch: Then take garden snailes pluckt out of their houses, *Doyleaches*, *Bees*, *Waspes*, Salt, of each a like quantitie; powne them not too hard one amongst another, put them into a glassed pot that is pitched beneath, and hauing a small hole, burie it the space of eight daies in warme horse dung, and receiue the moisture that doppeth out in another glasse bound vnder it: and annoint therewith the baldnesse, rubbing well the place first: wash the head with the decoction of vine, *Alomwood*, *Southernwood*, and of *Linsede* well parched: goates milke doth likewise make the haire growe faire. You shall also finde moe things hereafter in the description of the eie blowes, and of the beard.

Of the dying of the haire in generall. §. 2.

If any desire to dy the haire otherwise than it is growne by nature, then is this generally to be obserued: that he alwaies before wash the haire with ley made of Wine stocks, wherein a peece of Allume is dissolued: for the Allume maketh a preparatiue for to receiue all colours, as is well knownen to all Dyers.

Here do now follow certaine sortes of colours.

Yellow haire

Amongst Dutchmen there is no colour more highly commended than the gold colour or yellow, like as it was much esteemed of the Romanes: so that sometimes they dyed their beards and haire with golde; but these things following are also mete for this purpose.

Take the ashes of the Wine sticks, eight ounces, of Barley strawe two handfuls, of Licorice two ounces, sethe them together in a great quart of water; afterwards let it settle, and wash the head with this ley, and let it dye of it selfe.

Item take shauen Beechen wood, Gold flour, Venus or Maiden haire, of each one handfull, Licorice, halfe an ounce, Saffron one scrup. let this mollifie in ley, wash the head and let it dye of it selfe: also as often as one combeth him, he must wet the Combe therein.

Item take Willow leaues, white beaten Mustard seede, *Consolida Sarracenicæ*, broad Plantain, Water Cresses, Radishes, white Helleboe, Bryonie, Onions, of each halfe an ounce: cut them all in peeces, and let them sethe altogether a while in ley, temper one ounce of Honie amongst it, and then let it stand untill the hearbs doe putrifie: afterwards put moe fresh herbes therein, & sethe them with as much Honie as there is of the decoction, until it be thicke, and annoynt the place where you desire to haue the haire growe: but loke well to it that you touch no other haire with it, for it would be disordered thereby, but I aduise no man to vse much of this salve, for it is hurtful for the head.

Item in March take Poplar buds and sethe them with ley: Take also poisoned Colewort seede, temper it with the oyle of Walnuts like to a salve, and annoynt the head therewith.

Or take settle rootes, horse Radish, the gumme of the Birch, make it hot vpon the fier with the ley, and wash the head therewith. Juniper oyle annoynted thereupon after washing, will easily make yellowe haire to grow: But note that this oyle is hotte. This should also the fruit of the Beechen tree doe, being layd in ley.

Blacke haire

Blacke haire: Some that by nature haue blacke haire, doe diligently seeke to augment that colour: others will cloke therewith the mishapen haire, many will dy gray haire therewith, which

which to effect, they annoint it with the iuyce of Sage.

Burne Hasell nuts, as many as you please, in a luted potte, stamp them to powder, then make them into a salve with the tallowe of a Beare or Goate: this doth not only dy black, but maketh also the haire to growe.

Item take beaten Gall nuts six ounces, seethe them in nine ounces of Sallet oyle, as long as one would seethe an egge hard: afterwards wyng them out, mire amongst it pounde Mynt, burnt Virriol, Salt gem, of each one quarter of an ounce: let it seethe a good while together having washed the haire with the decoction of Whites and Elders flowers, then make it fatte with the foresaid oyle.

Item take the greene Shales of Walnuts, stamp them and seeth them, annoint the haire with it, and it will be as blacke as Pitch. For this also helpeth Cipers nuttes, Beane strawe, burnt Shales of Hasell nuttes, peeles of Pomegranates, vnbleekt Lime, Mynt, and oyle of Ruts.

For to make curled haire, take Gallowes layd in ley: if one would by his haire gray, then make ashes of the innermost barke of Iuie, and wash you often times therewith, or annoynt your haire with Badgers grease. Curled haire.

To hinder Gray Haires. S. 3.



In be graie, is onely proper to mans head, which commeth thowow the abatement of the naturall warmth, or thowow the ryoting life, whereby *Flegma* is encreased, and it is sometimes also caused aswell thowowe vnnaturall heate as cold: but if any be gray before his time, that commeth by vse of much fruit and fish: but to utter the trueth, the gray haires are none other then an Ensigne or banner for vs, that death planteth vpon our heads, signifying that it will shortly haue victorie ouer vs. But as there be many that would hide their age, and would rather be thought young men, then olde soles: So hath it been also found out, not how to turne away gray haires, but how to puenent the same whereof we will here write somewhat.

The chiefeest is the daily purging of flegme, and specially with vomits and clisters, for which are fit *Pillula Cocchie*, *Trisera Saracenica*. these pilles following.

Take Cloquint, Turbith, Aloe, of each a dragme, Fennel seede, Annis seedes, Berley seede, blacke prepared Velleboze and Pepper, of each halfe a dragme, Diagridion two scrup. make thereof a masse with the iuyce of Wormewood, take a drag. thereof at the most at one time, for they be strong: god haede is to be taken in this purging, that age for gray haires be not thereby taken away.

The ancient Phisitions do describe many things for puenenting gray haires, what is to be eaten, drunke, and refrained: also what is to be vled a whole yare in youth, and that one must eate snailles: so that it groweth me to enter into so needefulle a matter (when one would stay and puenent the course of nature) I will therefore be brieue. Annoint thy head with the oile of Vener cob, with the oile of a Beare, fresh oile of Roses, or oile of Mustard seede: all which are mete to puenent gray haire: or take the spleene of an olde dog, and rub the haire therewith. Also the oile of Mynt doth puenent gray haire.

Item take Cassell, seethe it in ley and vse it daily: scrape in the ley Myrtle leanes, Cipers nutts, Juniper wood cut, the barke of Firwood with the leanes, Gall nuts, and such like.

To take away haire. S. 4.



Take a pinte of wine, dostone twenty greene frogs therein, or as many as can be dostone therein, then set the pot forty daies in the warme sunne: afterwards straine it hard thowow a cloth, annoint the place therewith where you will take away the haire.

Make the place oftentimes moist with the iuyce of yelloin Lillies, which is wilde flower deluce. Take Ants eggs and rub the place therewith, wherein you would haue the haire taken away, it will fall off and growe no more againe. Item annoint the hairie place with the iuyce of Soloes, and it will make the hairie place balde and smooth.

Will you plucke out haire without breaking the skin? Then take six ounces of Turpentine, To plucke out haire.

set it on the fire in a new pot, and let it seethe somewhat; then powze it into a pan full of colde water, and stir it continually about with a wooden sticke vntill it run together. Then powze therein other fresh water, and plucke it with your fingers well from another, whereby it may be well washed; and do this so long, vntill it waxe faire and white: afterwards temper amongst it one ounce of beaten Pasticke in the foresaid pot, seethe it all together as before, and wash it also afterwards as before is done, and keepe it alwaies couered with water, and when you will vse it, powze out the water: let it melt with the fire, spread it on a cloth, and lay it no where but on the place whence you would haue the haire drawn out, and when it is colde (as it will be quickly) pull off the plaister with violence. Then will the skin remaine very white and bare of haire, then haue a peece of fresh larde readie, and therewith annoint the place, and then wipe it by and by away with a cloth: then will the skin be balde and smothe.

Of diuers defaults of the haire. §. 5.



The cunning and expert Physicians do reckon nine kindes of defaults of the haire: *Contorsio*, *Decoloratio*, *Quassatio*, *Fractio*, *Atrophia*, *Canicies*, *Alopecia*, *Defluxio* and *Ophiasis*. The first, *Contorsio*, is called a curling or intangling of the haire. The second, *Decoloratio*, a deformitie of the colour. The third, *Quassatio*, which is a splitting or cleaving asunder of the haire. The fourth, *Fractio*, a short breaking away of the haire, that it snappeth asunder. The fift is *Atrophia*, that is as much as a dying away or consuming of the haire for lacke of fode. The sixt is *Canicies*, when the haire before his due time become gray or white. The seuenth is *Alopecia* or *Area*, which is baldnesse or falling off of the haire. The eight is *Defluxio*, which is also a falling away of the haire, like as in them who lost their naturall heate, or recouer after a long continued sicknesse. The last is *Ophiasis*, which hath hir name of the snake: it is also a changing of colour not unlike to the others for it is partie colouring like to a snake.

Of baldnesse and falling off of the haire. §. 6.



Baldnesse and falling away of the haire is thre fold: as the falling off of the haire of the head, of the eiebrowes, and of the beard. Of the two last we will discourse in their place: here we will onely speake of the first falling away of the haire. The causes of the same are inflamed moistures, whereby the haire before was fed: which thowow inflammation thereof is taken away, as already hath bene rehearsed: for whensoever that it wanteth sustenance, the haire must of necessity die away, and fall off with his rootes, as may be sene in them that haue hot bzaines, and become bald betimes, and contrariwise women, children, and they that be gelded very seldome: Thus to speake of the meanes, The first pzoofe is whether the haire may be restored or not, to rub the balde place: & if it be not forthwith red, then is there no hope at hand: but if it wax red, then it is a signe that there is still some good blood, and therfore good hope also. And to come vnto it, first must good order of diet be obserued, to refraine strong wine, Bozage, reare eggs, & all that is light of digesture is commodious for him, and to drinke white, clere, and small wine, that is sweetish. Bathing and rubbing is very mete for this disease: if the person be full of blood, open the head veine, or that on the nose, or the veine behinde the eares, and also purge, if it be needfull, of whatsoeuer occasion it be, that the falling away of the haire happeneth. These meanes following are alwaies conuenient for it: Take *Euphorbium*, burnt Hasell nutshels, burnt Chestnut shels, Cresses seedes, Indie Spica, *Verbascum*, of each one drag. bitter Almonds with their pills burnt, one quarter of an ounce. make salve thereof with vine cuppe, oile of Radishes or Barberies.

Item take *Euphorbium*, wilde Rue, Bozeas, Mustard seed, Mugwort, of ech a like much; beat them all together and make thereof a salve with the iuice of Onions: let the head be rubbed vntill it be red, and then annointed therewith. Of such like remedies are many more described by the ancient Physicians: but omitting them, ye haue some here that are certaine and common.

Take Pigeons dung, burne it to ashes, then powze ley vpon it, and let him be washed therewith.

And Hasel nuts with the shels beaten smal, and tempered with Beares grease, is very good.

Dile

Oile of Eggs doth defend and keepe the falling out, and maketh the haire for to growe againe where it is fallen away. Forasmuch as the oile of Eggs is so good for this and for many other things more, it is needfull to teach here how to make the same.

The oile of Eggs and his vertue: Take hard sodden yolks of Eggs as many as you will: Oile of Eggs. breake them in peeces, and parch them in a pan vntill they ware ruddie, then shall you see oile run out. Then without ceasing must you stir them about, and then when they be thowoly parched, presse them hard thow a wollen cloth.

It is many times approued and found, that this oile doth not onely cause the haire that is fallen off to growe againe, but doth preuent and stay the haire from falling. It also healeth, and canseth all other itches and sores to heale.

Further, Take well salted Barly bread, burne it to powder, and temper it with Beares grease, and annoint your head therewith.

Item take a glowing stick in the ly wherewith you will wash you: vse it often, without any thing else therein.

Take Hirtle seedes and the leaues: seth them in water, and wash the head therewith.

All that is taught hereafter against the falling off of the haire in the eiebowes and the beard, is also mete for this purpose.

Of the scales of the head, of the beard and eiebowes. S. 7.

The Latinists do call the scales of the head *Furfures*, which is by an, wel known of all people, and are very common in all mens heads. They growe there thow a hot complexion, and when they abound much and aboue custome, then were they wont to be messengers of leprosie. They that haue them so excessive, do get them thow a licentious life, and sursetting in eating and drinkeing, thow incontinencie, strong wine, much vse of garlick, oinions, and mustard, whereby the blood is burnt to ashes.

For this must one begin with purging, like as in all drie itches shall be expressed. But if the person haue much blood, then is he to be let blood; if not, then are to be used nesting powders, gargarismes, and boring cups are to be set on the shoulders and necke, and afterwarde these things: Seth the Pallowes or Venus haire in water, wash therewith the head and face, and alwaies rub well the head; or boile Fennell seede, Licorice, Fleawort, Lupins, Hollibock rootes, take out the muscilage like as shall be taught hereafter, and temper them with the iuice of Spelons. Item take Puttre wood, or Putshels burnt to ashes, put them in the ly and wash you therewith. Item take Charuill, Southernwood, make a ly thereof with a little vineger. Item burne Hay flowers to ashes, and powze ly vpon it. Item take Elecampane rootes, and infuse them a good while in ly.

Or take Storks bill, let it seth in water, and foment well the scales therewith, that they be well frothed, and afterwards lay the herbes on the top of it, and they will weare away.

Will you yet haue stronger things? Then take the gall of a Bul, Coloquint, *Sal Alkali*, Boras, of each one drag. Galles, pilles of Pomgranats and their blossomes, of each one scrup. and temper them together.

Item take narrow Plantaine, Henbane seedes, and salt, of each a little, seth them in water and rubbe the scales therewith: The same doth also *Aqua vita* with Brimstone amongst it.

Heretofore in the second chapter &c. S. 1. you haue a bagge for ly, which beginneth, Take *Spica &c.* you may vse the same also for the scales, and put thereto two ounces of Dreng peels, whereof some of the white is cut away.

For to dralwe the Muscilage out of the seedes and rootes, the Apothecaries doe call the slime draiuen out of all seedes and rootes *Muscilagine*: It is much used in this matter, and is thus prepared.

Take rootes and seedes, choppe and stampe each according to the quality, seth them vntill the liqor be very slime and Muscilaginous: This being done, powze it altogether into a long bagge, that is piked beneath, and bind it hard to a staffe; afterwards take two little bozdes and fasten the said bagge betwene them, wzing it hard from aboue downewards, then runneth the slime or Muscilage out of it, receiue it in a cleane porrenger, & after this fashon wzing and roots. or presse out all the slime that will come forth.

Howe to make the slime or Muscilage of seedes and roots.

Lice.

This lothsome and (especially to children) troublesome worme, hath his most abode in the foresaid haire of the head, and they doe growe thzough moisture of the flesh, or (to speake properly) of a grosse and moist vapour that sunneth out at the pores, and thozow naturall warmth becommeth outwardly a Louse, and receiueth also a vitall spirit, and is altered into a little worme with sixe sate increasing and seeking their meate in the place of their generation: therefore are children and women moze plagued then men that are drie by nature, and be much lesse hurtfull to young children then to full growen persons, yet they haue this commoditie there-by, that they that haue most lyce, be wholly freed from the head ache.

Their cause.

The cause whence they are ingendred, may be ouermuch eating and small digesture, or eating of meates that be very moyst, as diuers fruits, and especially figges and Chestnuts: also ouermuch carnal copulation, vncleane clothes, and such as are worme ouer long.

Their reme-
dies.

Now that one may be rid of this vermin, annoynt the head with the broth of Salt fish, with the iuyce of Alehose, the iuyce of fumitorie mirt with Vinegar: take Gentian, and seeth it in ly, and wash the head therewith.

Take Bay berries, or (if you haue them not) the oyle of Bay, Vineger, pounded Bay berries, burnt Parts hony, seeth them together in water or ly, and wash the head therewith.

Salues. Take halfe a pound of Barrowes grease, mire and temper amongst it one ounce of Quicksiluer, and one ounce of the oyle of Bay, Licebane, and white Helleboze, of each halfe an ounce, Salgem one dragme, and a little Vineger: temper them altogether, and therewith annoynt the head, and put a kercher on the head, and in the morning wash the head with ly.

Another: Take Barrowes grease halfe a pound, beaten Liuer foure ounces, Molues bane, and white Helleboze rootes, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of Bay one ounce: temper amongst it one ounce and a halfe of quicksiluer so wel that one cannot see it, salt one dragme: vse a little thereof, so it is strong.

Item take vnprepared Coziander, seeth it in water, wash therewith the head, and all places where there are any Lice, and wash the clothes in like maner, it drineth away Lice and fleas: you may also trie the same with Coziander leaues.

Crabbe lice.

Against Crab lice you are to vse all the former things. They grow of a stinking matter, that nature expelleth thzough the hairie skinn: as in the eyebrowes, beard, and priuities: they are most plagued with them that eate many kinds of meates, vse sinall exercises, and much bathing: For to consume this vncleane matter, he is to be purged with *Pillula Cochia*, and to vse often times Gargarismes, with the sirupe of Vineger, & a little Mustard seede, and to wash the place with Allome water, and salt water, or that wherein Stauesacre is decocted.

Item take Stauesacre and Allome, of each one dragme, beate them together, temper it with honie, and annoynt therewith: Others doe take Salamoniack, Aloe and Boyras amongst it, and in stead of Honie, Vineger of Squils: also the white of a roasted egge is commended for it, wazpt vp in a cloth, and held as hot vpon the place as may be suffered. This being done thze or foure times, they will fall away.

Lice in chil-
drens sate.

Sometime yong children haue also lice growing in their sate. For them take new laide hen eggs, let them be sodden hard, cut the white in peeces in the breadth: beate then the yolkes, and with fine linnen rags lay it on the sate, and then the white vpon it, and so being well bound certaine howers, the lice will creepe to the white of the eg.

The lowsie euill, *Phthiriasis*, a miserable sicknesse. §. 9.

Euen as we haue written of the lice, so we will adioine thereto the Lowsie euill, which the Grecians do call *Phthiriasis*. This is a wonderfull & terrible sicknesse, that a man should be eaten vp with such baggage worms, & so bereft of his life. It happeneth that these worms do bzeede of moisture of a mans flesh, and begin commonly in the eyebrowes, and in some scabs, or among some scurfe therein when they do bzeake of themselves or are opened. When do lice creepe out, and so by little and little out of the whole body with such danger, that very skillfull Physicians haue enough to doe therewith, and yet neuertheless are these medicines following

ordayned

ordayned for the same : Take the iuice of Fumitorie, Borage, Germander, of each two ounces, *Mirabolani, Chebuli, Indi, Citrini*, of each fower scrup. blacke prepared Helleboe one quarter of an ounce, prepared Agaricke halfe an ounce, Aloe thre quarters of an ounce, *Euphyllum*, Sene leaues, rootes of Polipodie, of each one ounce : powne all that is to be pownded, and temper them with the iuice ; if it be too soft, let it drie, and forme a lump of masse, thereof take one drag, and make sixe pilles of it, of the which you are to take twice or thrice euery weeke, two at one time, an houre before supper.

Prepare this ly ensuing : Take Aristologie, Swines bread, of each halfe an ounce, of Gentian, *Rapontica*, of each thre drag. Centozie one quarter of an ounce, seth these things in ly, and wash therewith.

Item take Treos halfe an ounce, Squilles one ounce, Centozie halfe an ounce, Spittle seade one ounce, Cloues thre quarters of an ounce, bitter Almonds foure ounces, Vineger as much as is needfull : let them seth together stopt well in a glasse in water by a soft fier about the space of foure houres : afterwards wzing it out well, and with this oyle annoynte the pusses or scabs whence the Lice doe issue and breede.

A salve. Take Juniper berries pounded well, one ounce ; of Sallet oyle thre ounces, of white wine one ounce and a halfe : seth them together till the wine be consumed, afterwards wzing it out ; then take two ounces of Barrowes grease, Elecampane rootes rosted vnder the ashes, one ounce and a halfe, Litharge of gold one ounce, prepared Quicksiluer one ounce and a halfe, temper them and annoynt the scabbes therewith, but beware of the eyelids that you do not annoynt them therewith.

In this House euill is commanded to mortifie the quicksiluer as hereafter followeth : take wild fferne and the rootes thre lb. Limons and Oranges cut in peces of each thre drag. seth them in water vntill the third parte be consumed : afterwards straine it through a cleane cloth, and temper the quicksiluer well amongst it. There are other meanes more to kill the quicksiluer, like as hath bene shewed in the other salues for Lice.

Of the bad sore, Scurf or Scall of the head and such like. §. 10.



So thorough the vnnatural moysture of the head Lice doe growe : So doth there come thereof bad sores or scalles of the head, as is sene in children which are full of moysture : And although these scabbes are for the most parte alwaies an expulsion of nature, wherby children are cleared from other accidents and noysome diseases, for which cause they ought rather to be prouoked then healed : neuertheless heede must be taken, that this breaking out come not to growe olde, and to be changed into the bad sore or scall, the which is not to be holpen in people of yeares, nor yet in young children : therefore will we here write somewhat thereof.

Of a Scalde head.

This is a detestable disease, to wit, the sozenes or scalles of the head with scurf, spoyle and falling off of the haire, with much itche, stench, and lothsome mishape or ilfavourednes : The one sorte are drie, the other are moyst : neuertheless all are to be cured after one manner.

At the first doth this bad sore appeare small and little : but if they be not quickly looked vnto, then runneth it forth with from the one side of the head to the other, vntill the whole head be full : the causes are drie burnt humors, or moysture and putrified blood.

If it come onely of *Pblegma*, then yeldeth it moysture, wherof we will make further mention.

If it be drie and olde, then doe all the learned conclude vpon it, that it is incurable, and although it should heale in continuance of time, and thow much aduise, & with trouble, neuertheless must not one cease therefore : And to this ende are these things following acknowledged to be good for the same.

First it is needfull to begin the cure with a good order of dyet, wherein neuertheless there is no certaine order to be made, bicause that this disease is incident to yong children, albeit sometimes also to people in yeeres, wherein great difference is to be made. But generally to eschew all things which maketh heauie, melancholike, and slegmatike blood, wherof are many instru-

tions giuen in many places of this booke. First of all, a full grown man must alway apply himselfe as hereafter followeth.

Above all he must beware of strong and sharpe wines, and (as is said) from all melancholike meate, as chese, coleworts, salt flesh, and such like, and must rather vse them that be light of digestion, and make good blood, as fowles that haunt high grounds, reere eggs, Bozage, swete fish of fresh waters. He must also oftentimes purge, according as the person is, and as the sores be great and noisome.

If a mans age will permit it, and the patient be abounding in blood, which may be perceiued by the greatnesse of the veines, it is aduised to open the head veines in both armes, likewise the veines in the forehead and behinde the eares. Nevertheless some do suppose, that the two last mentioned veines are not often to be opened. To the ende one might recouer haire, for which this blood is requisite, vpon the places where it is red and raised, and sheweth bloodie, are hozle-leaches and boring cups to be set, and plaisters to be applied that do raise blisters, whereof shall be moze spoken in time. If there be any disease where haire groweth, there must it be shorne off twise a weeke, and alway before there be laid any salue vpon it, the haire must be cleane shorne away, and be also wel rubbed with course linnen, and afterwards annoint it ouer with the iuice of oinions or of radishes. These are now the beginnings of the cure.

First of all must the grosse burned moisture be attenuated and prepared for expulsion, the which is to be effected with *Oxymel* of Squils called *Compositum*, and is described in the second Chapter 5.6. for which also doth serue the sirupe of *Summitorie*. The melancholike and flegmaticke humors are to be purged with the pills *Cochia*; and if one haue strong folks in hand, he may vse therewith *Epithymum*, *Coloquint*, and prepared *Helleboze*: yet a man is alwaies to be aduised herein by a learned Physitian. And for example in a drie scall: Take prepared blacke *Helleboze* one drag. Sene leaues, *Epithymum*, of each one drag. *Agaricus* one drag, and a halfe. *Pasticke* one drag. Aloe halfe an ounce, make pills thereof with the iuice of *Smallage*, and giue thereof one drag, at one time.

But if the scall be moist, then purge with these pills following: Take *Cochia* one drag, and a halfe, *Epithymum* halfe a drag, make pills thereof for to vse at two times: or take *Agaricus*, *Coloquint* and *Pasticke*, of each one drag. Aloe halfe an ounce, temper them all together with the iuice of *Garlicke*, take one drag, at once. *Picrobalans*, *Chebuli* tempered with *Epithymo* and Sene leaues, are also mete for this.

Take of these remedies, of which we shall write, against both sortes of these scalls, and begin first with the least.

Summitorie, after what sort soener it be taken, doth much cleanse the blood, therefore it is to be vsed for this disease. Also wash the head with *woywood* wine: for that it drieth the moisture, and specially healeth the scalls, with the white scall or scurfe.

Annoint the scalls with oile of white *Lillies* mixed together with the oile of *Cammomill*.

Take the yolks of eggs, drie them well in swines grease, & put vnto it as much *Turpentine*, let them melt together: they drie very gently.

Take oile of *Roses*, *Juniper* oile, of each halfe an ounce, quick *Wymstone*, *Pigeons* dung, *Aer-digree*, of each 3 drag, a little way melt them together, it is very certaine and healing all scalls.

Take stamped *Lupins*, temper them in vinegar with *Barrowes* grease.

Take oile of *Bay* and *Meteale*, of each a like much, *Wassill* seede, one quarter of either of them, annoint the head, and lay leaues of this herbe vpon it. But it is too milde for the scall, and besides the *Wassill* seede is hurtfull to the head.

Take two handfulls of *Sage*, beate them small, temper them with salt, hogs grease and vinegar: let it sethe well, and annoint therewith the scall head euery other day. Vpon the day betwene both, it is very good to wash the head with the decoction of *Malloves* and *Dock* roots.

This salue is certaine and approued many times. Take butter which is burnt blacke, scote out of the chimney, and salt, of each a like much: stir them both well amongst the butter, vntill the butter be stiffe, and therewith annoint the scalls. And if it be not needfull euery day, then about the third day wash the head with a small ley, and doe this as often as is needfull: when the scurfe falleth away annoint the red place with this salue. Also this remedy following is much in vse: take pure *Turpentine* two ounces, and wash it well with cleare water, fresh butter one ounce wash well, halfe an ounce of small bzused salt, one *Dzenge* beaten al to peeces & woyng

working out hard, the yolkes of three new laied eggs, oile of Roses halfe an ounce; temper them altogether by a small fier. This is a certaine salve: It may be vsed for all Itches and scabs.

This salve following is exceeding sharpe, and therfore it is not to be vsed but at great neede, and for the most venomous scabs of the head.

Take two ounces and a halfe of Barrowes grease, oile of Bay, Ware, powdered Frankensence, of each an ounce, salt one quarter of an ounce, Quicksiluer mortified three dragmes: first melt the ware, oile of Bay, and grease by a small fier, and put one ounce of the iuice of Plantain and Fumitorie with it: let them boile till the iuices be consumed, then take it from the fier and temper with it the Frankensence and Quicksiluer, and stir it so long vntill that you see no more quicksiluer: it is then prepared: and you are to annoint this salve onely vpon the scall, and if you mixe halfe an ounce of Paste with it, it would make it the better.

Some haue another maner to heale the scall of the head, and doe first thus: first they cause the head to be shauen bald, afterwards they annoint it the space of three daies with oile of nuts, oile of Palma Christi seedes, and oile of Cammomill tempered together.

The fourth day doe they let the head to be picked in diuers places, that it may blæde: afterwards they let it be washed with the decoction of Fumitorie, Docke rootes, and of Cammomill; and afterwards they put into the same decoction Argall Squills, or Garlick: they seeke it altogether, and forthwith doe rub the head therewith, and drie it with hote clothes: and this they do twice or thrice a day for the space of three daies. The fourth day they wash it again with the former decoction, and then shoue off all the haire: if the skinne be not yet cleane, vse rubbing againe with the Argall, and continue it so long vntill the skinne bee thoroughly cleane, then annoint the head with the salve following: If you haue a woman to cure, then take a womans haire, if you haue a man, then take a mans haire, burne it in a pot of ashes, take therof an ounce, burnt haseell nuts one ounce and a halfe, the drags of sallet oile foure ounces, clarified honie three ounces, Pyrrhe one ounce and a halfe, Aloe halfe an ounce, Saffron three dragmes: temper them together vnto a salve. This preserueth the skinne, and permitteth not the moisture to putrifie vnder it, but maketh the haire to growe. But if it happen, that through this or any other salues the skinne is disordered, then must it be vsed no further, but with these decoctions following (which are much commended) it is to be washed, to wit, with the decoction of Willow leaues and Woodbine: for which these also are more requisite, Blites, Fumitorie, wild Time, Dock rootes, Sozrel, Stoicks bill, altogether, or which one can get, decocted or bathed therewith.

This following is a very good salve, not onely for the scalles of the head, but also for all other scabs and scurfs, itch, falling off of the haire, nits, and lice.

Take Galls, red Arsenick, Aristologie, of each 3. drag. Hemlock seedes, one quarter of an ounce, Sote of a chimney, Wymstone, bitter Almonds, Coloquint, Caper rootes, fig leaues, Elmctree leaues, Verdigrease, Plume Allume, *Steff memisha*, plaine Coegall, Pyrrhe, Aloe, Frankincense and Pitch, of each one drag. and a halfe, stampe all that is to be stamped, and temper it with vinegar: set it 8. daies or more in the sunne vntill it be well tempered, and then vse it.

In like maner this is highly commended, although the scall had continued many yeeres.

The blacke and white Helleboze, Wymstone viue, vitrioll, Golde litharge, vnleckt Lime, Shoemakers blacking, Aloe, Galls, Sote of the chimney, Load ashes, of each halfe an ounce, mortified Quicksiluer, Verdigrease, of each one quarter of an ounce, stampe all that is to be stamped: further take the iuice of Bozage, *Scabiose*, Fumitorie, Docke rootes, of each two ounces; mixe them altogether with three ounces of olde drags of sallet oile, and as much vinegar: let this seeth vpon a milde fier halfe an houre, and then temper the other things amongst it, and put an ounce of molten Turpentine amongst it, ware as much as is needfull for to make a salve. This is marvellous much commended for all scurfe and diseases of the skinne.

A sharpe ley. The ancient Physitians will make a cleane head with sharpe ley: but I cannot aduise, especially if one will often vse the same.

Take a pound of Argall beaten small, and binde it in a cloth, powze thereon a pinte of water, and let it lie so the space of halfe an houre; afterwards lay cloth and all in the fier, and so burne it three houres long, then beate it againe, and binde it by as before, and burne it 2. houres more: beate it to powder and put it in an Hipposas bag, powze the foresaid water vpon it, let it runne thorough fire or eight times, and make a ley thereof; it drieth vehemently, and hath almost the sharpenes of Blew Tartary.

Of the plucking away of the scall.

MAke nine caps of blew cloth or blew linnen, as big as the head is scallie: annoint it inwardly with molten Pitch and Rosen, and put it vpon the shauen head, and so leaue it thereon thre daies: afterwards plucke it off by force, and it will take away with it the haire and all the scurfe. But if there remaine any haire in it, then plucke them out with small mullets, and then wash the head with water (like as is said) wherein is decocted Sumitorie and Docke rotes, &c. And when it is drie, then set another cap vpon it: do as before, and so vntill nine times, afterwards vse one of the foresaid salues.

Of the skin of the head. §.11.

FOrasmuch as the foresaide scall hangeth most on the skin of the head, and the foresaide skin is not onely fastened to the head, but also to the whole bodie, couering it as with a clothing, and is laid vnder the haire as his ground: therefore are we somewhat admonished here, and afterwards occasioned once againe to write thereof in the first part.

The skin which couereth the head, is not of one kinde of nature: for this whence the haire groweth is hard, drie and thicke: the skin of the forehead, as much as it is without haire, hath his free motion: that which is vnder the eie cannot be separated but with great trouble, and hath no motion like as that of the forehead. The skin of the lips is a mixture of the skin of the muscles: so that they may be called with both the names. Thus much may suffice at this present time.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Scull of the head.

THIS name we will not onely haue *Cranium*, but also all the vppermost bones of the head to be vnderstood, whereof there be seuen commonly told, the which thowtow fine *Suturae*, which is sowings or conioying, very naturally are in each other knit together. But for the same one may looke into the *Anatomicos*: concerning this our purpose, the head is parted into sixe parts, whereof the first is *Frons*, the forehead, which is beginning from the eiebowes, till there where the haire beginneth on both sides enen vnto the eares, it is but one proper bone called by the Chirurgions and other mo *Coronalis*, like as men vse to weare on this place of the head the garlande. The second is fast by it couered with haire, they call it *Sinciput*, it is with vs the former part, and hath two bones which we call *Parietalia*, the side bones: they touch both of them the suture that passeth ouer the middle of the head, are thicke bozred thozough with small holes and weake. The third do they name *Occiput*, the hinder part of the head, the necke is a great strong bone with a great hole, where the first ioint *Vertebra* of the backbone hath his winding about. The fourth is *Vertex*, the crowne, the height, and middle, from which, as from a point or circle the haire doth spread abrode it selfe round about, but that which is betwene both the eares and eies be called *Tempora*, with vs the temples.

Lastly, is all that beginneth vnder the forehead and the eiebowes vnto the end of the chin, as eies, eares, nose, mouth, called *Facies*, that is, the face. These are now the outward parts of the head, which do also comprehend the bones, of which hereafter particularly mention shall be made.

As much as then concerneth the scull, that is outwardly after diuers manner of meanes bzuised and perished, as through stripes, fractures, wounds, and such like, which accidents do specially appertaine vnto Chirurgions, neuerthelesse we are minded to discourse somewhat thereof. And this for a beginning.

Of the compression of the scull in yong children. §.1.

It commeth to passe other whiles that new borne childzen haue their sculs doubled one ouer another or compressed, for which lay this plaister vpon it: Take Lode stone, Pumice stone, salt, of each a like much, brused small, and make with honie a plaister thereof.

Of the fracture of the scull. §.2.



When it is time after the first dressing to looke to the wound of the head, then take off the towle, couer the wound with a fine linnen cloth made wet in this *Aqua vita* following: Take *Aqua vita* made onely of wine one ounce, wherein put powdered Aloe and *Pyrrhe* of each one dragma. *Pastick* halfe a dragma. stop it fast: then strowe of the powder which is powdered together of the thre things vpon the wet cloth, couer it with another cloth, and annoint the wound rounde about with oile of Roses, couer the head gently with a linnen cap or kercher.

Item take womans milke that giueth sucke to a boy, wet a peece of silke therein, and couer the wound therewith, afterwards take the well bzaied white of an eg, put powdered Frankincense vnto it, spread it on a cloth, and lay it ouer the wound aboue vpon the first cloth which is made wet in the womans milke, and let it lie so thre daies; if the bzaines be quiet, then is it a good signe of life: afterwards dresse him with the blacke plaister or salue that shall hereafter follow; but if the wound stench not bleeding, then is this powder following maruellous good: Take Frankincense two drags. Aloe one drag. and therewith strowe the bleeding wound.

A water: Take Rosemarie with the flowers, Sage, Betonie, of each one ℥. steepe them 24. howers in good wine and distill it, put thereto *Pyrrhe* halfe an ounce, Aloe one ounce, Saffron ten grains, *Sarcocolla*, Frankincense of each one drag. This you are to keepe in a fast closed glasse vntill you haue neede to vse it.

After that the wound is dressed, and that it hath not bled much, some do aduise that the head veine is to be opened, and that is very truly aduised, that for all such wounds the head veine once at the least should be opened, and the patient purged: for it happeneth oftentimes, that the paine of the head, impostumation, or other mischaunces may thereby be hindered and prevented.

But to returne againe to the chirurgerie. It happeneth oftentimes that there befallth with it paine of the throte and of the almonds, for which is made this gargarisine.

Take *Pastick*, Frankincense, of each one drag. Plantaine, the iuice of Soloes, Acozne cups, of each one quarter of an ounce, Licorice an ounce, *Pieretrum*, Pomegranate pils, of each one quarter of an ounce. Seethe them together in a quart of sower red wine vntill the thirde part be sodden away, put thereto prepared *Bolus Armenus* halfe an ounce, burnt Allume one ounce and a halfe. Lay this plaister following then vpon it to heale it withall: Take oile of Roses eight ounces, oile of *Pastick* one ounce, thepes and calues setwet, of each 12. ounces, siluer li- tharge brused small 2. ounces, red Lead one ounce, and a pint of wine; then let this boile softly vntill it be browne or blacke. Then put thereto 4. ounces of Turpentine, *Pastick* two ounces, *Gummi Elenij* halfe an ounce, white Ware as much as is needfull for to make a plaister. This plaister is especiall good to cure a wound in the head, although one vsed nought else, yet is the wound oftentimes to be washed with warme water: and if it were wholly impostumated, then in stead of water vse wine, wherein *Pirtle* seedes and blokkomes of Pomegranates with a little Allume hath decocted.

Another plaister, which is also commended for good and to haue been approued: Take *Gummi Elenij* one ounce and a halfe, white Rosin two ounces, Ware two or thre ounces, oile of Roses two ounces and a halfe, Ammoniac one ounce, Turpentine one ounce and a halfe, make a plaister or salue of it: some adde Rie meale vnto it: others blacke Beane meale: the third sort beaten Plantaine seedes; some also vse wine in stead of oile.

A salue: Take white Rosin five drags, powdered Aloe halfe an ounce, oile of Roses and Ware In especiall as much as is needfull, let it melt by a milde fire; when it is cold, put thereto halfe an ounce of *Gummi Elenij*: with boiling may be made a tough plaister thereof. It draweth the matter out of the fracture of the scull.

The first part of the

Yet one more that is stronger: Take the vpright Balsame, or in steede thereof oil of Cloues, Bdellium, Ammoniacum, of each thre ounces, white Rosin, Gummi Elenij, of eche one ounce, Frankinsence, Pyrrhe, Sarcocolla, beaten small, of each one drag. and a halfe, oil of Roses two ounces, Make as much as is needfull: make a tough salve thereof, and sethe it in fower ounces of the iuice of Woodbinde vntill all the iuice be consumed.

Of the skins or tunicles of the braines, called *Dura*, and *Pia mater*, when they be perisht. §.3.



These two skins or tunicles that couer the braines vnder the skull, do the Grekes call *Meninges*, the vpmost is called *Dura mater*, the hard Mother, for that in comparison of the other it is very hard and full of holes where the vaines passe thow. *Pia mater*, the good Mother, is very spare and thinne: therefore also very dangerous if the same be wounded, for which these salues following are ordained and founde requisite.

Take Woodbinde, Betonie, Pimpernell, of each two ℥. Gummi Elenij, Dragon blood, of each thre quarters of an ounce: Sethe them together in two ounces of oil of Roses, and sufficient quantitie of red Wine, vntill all the moisture be consumed, wzing it out, and let it be colde, make it as thicke as you will with molten ware.

Or take Turpentine, Rosin, Make, of each one ounce, Frankinsence one quarter of an ounce, oil of Roses thre ounces, Gummi Elenij thre drag. Addir one quarter of an ounce, Betonie, Woodbinde, of each thre drag. These herbes must be sodden in red wine vntill all the moisture be sod away, afterwarde wzing it out, temper the other things with it, stirre it well about vntill it be a salve.

But if the skull onely be broken whether it be by falling, thowling, or beating, and a swelling withall: Then take Wormewood, Roses, Cammomil, of each one ℥. sethe them in red Wine and oil of Roses, as much as is needfull, temper a good quantitie of Beane meale with it, and so apply it.

Item: Take Wormewood, Cammomil, Melilote, of each one ounce, Sterchas, Betonie, Woodbinde, Bolus, Dragons blood, of each halfe an ounce, Barley meale two ounces, oyle of Roses as much as will suffice for a plaister or salve, yet if you would haue it hard, adde ware vnto it.

The triall when the Plaister is sodden inough. §.4.



If any will put iuices, wine or any other moisture in plaisters, then are you to let the iuice be sod away: and when they be sufficiently sodden, you shall knowe it hereby: let a drop or twaine fall vpon the fier, if it do not lisse as water is wont to do, then it is inough.

The fift Chapter.

The face a part of the head.



It is before declared in the beginning of the fourth Chapter, that in diuiding of the head the face is the first part beginning and ending from the eiebowes vnto the end of the chin, of which partes diseale we will now discourse.

As much as concerneth the face in generall, man hath purchased the same aboue all liuing creatures; for it cannot be said of any beast that it hath a face, *Faciem*, but onely of mankinde: and it is also to be wondred at, that nature hath planted so many parts in so small a compasse; for that there be eies that see and leade the whole bodie; a mouth that speaketh and taketh in meate for the sustentance of the whole bodie; a nose that smelleth, and can discern what is pleasant or vnpleasant in smell or sauour, that also doth discharge and vnburden the braines of all superfluous moistures

moisture; eares for to heare, whereby men may vnderstand one another; a beard for to distinguish one man from another; eiebristles to the garnishing and defence of the eies; chackes, whereby to manifest and shew their shamefastnesse, feare, peace, and friendship, as shall be more at large shewed hereafter: consequently, the face is a looking glasse of the minde, of the inward intention and vnreuealed thought. But we will not make long discourse thereof at this present, but onely to discourse of the diseases of the face, and how to cure them.

Of all staines or spots of the face. §. 1.



For to take away this disorder or misfiguring of the face may these remedies following be used: make a little cruse of dowe, as it were a small pasterie nextely thicke, put therein six ounces of Cerusse, make it fast on the top, that there shie no vapour out of it; let it stand so in an ouen the space of an hower, that it be not too hot: and when it is wahren colde, take it out and bruse it small, and put thereto a sufficient quantitie of Elderne water, and so set it in the sunne close stopp'd; stir it euery daie about fower or fife times, wash the face therewith fower or fife daies long, or as long as is needfull with a cloth which is wet therein. This is oftentimes approued.

Item take fresh roots of Salomons seale, beate and annoint it on the spots: or take Goates milke wherein Salomons seale rootes are decocted, and vse it as is aforesaide. The water of distilled Honie doth take them also away.

Maidens milke, *Lac Virginis*, the which the auncient Phisicians do so name, is a good and sure water, not onely for the staines in the face, but also for manie other diseases, as shall be hereafter more at large declared, and the same shall be prepared thus: Take halfe a pound of litharge of gold, beate it small, and put it into a pot, powze halfe a pint of vinegar vpon it, let it sethe a little: afterwards when it is settled, powze of the clere into another glasse and keepe it; you may preserve the litharge for to make a plaister with it afterwards.

Lac virginis,
or maidens
milke.

Secondly, take a good handfull of salt, put fower ounces of water vpon it; sethe it to the halfe, and keepe it also in a glasse by it selfe: whensoever you will vse it, then take thre partes of salt water, and one part of the foresaid vinegar, temper it well, then will it be as milke: will you haue this better, then put a little Rose water and *Sal Armoniack* vnto it. It is good for all scurfes: some do vse it in the eies also, but it is very sharpe, chiefly if one take *Sal Armoniack* with it.

Tristrams water.



Take 12. ounces of Nutmegs, Pace, Ginger, Graines, Cloues, of each halfe an ounce, Kubarbe one ounce, Beuer cod, Spikenard, of each halfe an ounce, oile of Bay two ounces, leaue the spices vnbeaten, powze to it fower quarts of wine, couer it close, and let it stand so the space of fower weekes, afterwards powze away the wine; powne all the spices to pay, and put it againe to the foresaide wine, let it stand well stopt thre daies, stir it well about: then distill it in hot water without sething, and preserve it well. Besides, that this water doth take away all spots of the face and of the bodie, there is ascribed more vnto it, these wonderfull vertues; to wit, some holden in the mouth taketh away the toothach. Also venison laid therein should continue good a yere and a day: also all manner of fruites and flowers laid therein do the like: a little thereof put into saint wine maketh the same fresh and quicke: a little drunke thereof doth breake all inward impostumes; it keepeth a man in good constitution, also the stomacke, the liuer, the milt, the lights, and the bowels: a cloth dipped therein put on wounds doth heale the same: it preserveth from all dead palfies: it drieth all moist and rheumaticke bzaines: if any drinke the same, or annoint the head therewith, it taketh away a sinking bzeth: also it keepeth one long youthfull if one drinke a little of it in the morning, as many times hath bene proued.

A salve for the spots: Take oile of Roses, vnguent of Roses, of each halfe an ounce, oile of Violets one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of Plantaine halfe an ounce, Pusilage of Fleawort, of Pallowes, of Violet leaues, of each one ounce and a halfe: let it sethe till the Pusilage be consumed, afterwards with molten ware make a salve thereof.

For the freckles which one getteth by the heate of the sunne: Take a little Allume beaten small, temper amongst it a well beaied white of an eg, put it on a milde fire stirring it alwaies about, that it waxe not hard: & when it casteth by scum then it is ynough, wherewith annoint the freckles the space of thre daies: if you will defend your selfe, that you get no freckles on the face, then annoint your face with the whites of eggs.

Of the rednesse of the face. §.2.



Take the whites of two eggs beaied well with Rose water, temper the iuice of Plantaine and of Dockes amongst it, of each a like much, afterwards 3. graines of small powdered Sublimate also mixed amongst it, annoint the rednesse with it.

Afterwards take about 8. ounces of vineger and Rose water, temper one quarter of an ounce of Brimstone amongst it, Allume one quarter of an ounce, let it sethe softly untill about one third part be sodden away, wash therewith the red face.

It is also good that the bad blood may be drawne out to set a horseleach or twaine to it, for it is found that the rednesse of the face and the pusshes can neuer be better taken away, than with this fastening of the leaches, but one must alwaies purge before hand.

A water: Take Sulfure vine halfe an ounce, Salt one drag. Camfere halfe a scruple, Rose water, the water of blew flower deluce, of each two ounces. Set it 14. daies well stoppt in the sunne, stir it oftentimes together, make a cloth wet in it, and therewith wash the face.

Another: Take one ounce of Ceruise, Balsick one quarter of an ounce, Myrre halfe a drag. let them be sifted thorow a lawne searce together, put them into a mortar, and powze thorow a little sallet oile and vineger, and with long stirring it about make a salve thereof.

For all white pusshes of the face. §.3.

For this is first of all good the water of broken Ceruise, with Elderne water which is described in the first §.

This salve may be also used for it.

Take shæpes seiwet, fresh marrow out of the stags bones, melt them together on the fire, and annoint the face therewith. Item take Camfere halfe a drag. grinde it small with thre ounces of Rose water, stir it often, and wash the face therewith.

For this is also highly commended, the oile of Spike, besides the good saour, it giueth the face a good colour.

With the white pusshes of the face, we do also vnderstand all scabs, blisters, and other spices of leprosie in the face, which the Grecians do call *Lichenas*, and the Latinists *Mentagram*: for that all such diseases do commonly appere with drie white scabs, and itching scurfe about the chin, the which doth at the length spred it selfe from thence ouer the whole bodie: for which these remedies following are very good.

The goates milke that commeth warme from the beaſt, the water of Liriconſanie, of each eight ounces, the whites of thre new laid eggs, which come warme from the nest, the cruſts of two warme white loaves, Salomons seale one ℥. Camfere halfe a drag. This shall be distilled together in ſixtying water, then temper the Camfere amongst it, and wash oftentimes the face therewith.

The face commeth also otherwhiles full of little red blisters, whence issueth a sharpe moisture mixt with blood, the which if it be not remedied in time, it will degenerate into the right leprosie, against which these meanes following are to be used.

Take water distilled of water snegs or of muscles, thre ounces, Ceruise washed with Varts tong water, one ounce and a halfe, the iuice of wilde Cucumbers, or the water thereof as much as is needefull, for to make a salve thereof: but this following is moze forcible.

Take *Sarcocolla*, Ceruise, Starch, that is steeped ſower daies in ley, of each thre ounces, all these are you to temper with the white of an eg: lastly, put thereto two graines of Muscu, and one drag. and a halfe of Camfere, make a salve thereof, and therewith annoint the face.

But

But this following is aboue all other to be commended: Take litharge of golde which is well decocted in vineger and well clenfed, buse it very small, and temper it with oile of Roses: but amongst all the rest this is to be noted for a rule, that the vse of this foresaid nointing is not to be done, but onely at the euening.

For to make a cleane face. §.4.



If any one haue a darke and sad countenance, he is to be purged with *Hierapiera*, afterwards he must euery morning fasting take Gentian, Wormwood, bitter Almonds, of each one drag. beaten small together with three ounces of Wormwood water certaine daies together: he is to wash the face oftentimes with vineger tempered with Rose water. This following is also very sure: Take Litharge of silver an ounce and a halfe, Sulfure viue halfe an ounce, Camfere halfe a drag. burnt Allume halfe an ounce, make a fine powder thereof: put thereto the water of Lillies and of Liriconfancie, of Beane blossoms, Salomons seale, of each one ounce and a halfe, keepe it in a close stoppt glasse, and when you will vse it stir it well about.

Item take Beanes as many as you will, keepe them all a night in sharpe vineger, take off the peeles and drie them in a warme place: beate them to powder, and put some of it in warme water when you will go to bed, and wash thy face therewith.

It is counsell'd for women, that if they will haue a well coloured face to eate oftentimes course Harierom: for this it is also good to drinke wine: for it maintaineth a liuely colour.

In like maner are much commended for this purpose the Aromaticall wines, that haue Rosemarie in them, not onely to be drunken, but to wash the face also with them. Betony infused a whole night in wine maketh a good colour.

For congealed blood after any blowes remaining. §.5.

TAke Comfrey, Daisie leanes, of each three ounces: Cammomill, Pelilot, of each one ounce: Beane meale two ounces: boile them together and beate it to growte, and when you will vse it adde oile of Roses to it: Item this following is very good, Take Comfrey, Daisie leanes of each three ounces, Cammomill, Pelilot of each two ounces, Saffron one drag. Beane meale foure ounces, fresh Butter two ounces, Fenegreke meale one ounce and a halfe, boile the rootes in water, beate them and make a plaster of it: this is very good for brused members with congealed blood, it suppleth and swageth the paine, put also Wormewood and Comin vnto it, of each one ounce, then hath it not his like.

How to make a good colour. §.6.

TAke the rootes of Cuccowpint, Ceruse of each halfe an ounce beaten small, mire them with Rose water and annoint the cheekes with it: or take of the lesser three leaved grasse beaten, rub the face therewith: it maketh a faire face and a clere skinne: It is also ascribed to the Epithimate that it should also beautifie the face, but young hote folkes are not to vse it.

The sixth Chapter.

Eiebrowes, Eielids, with al that appertaineth vnto them.



In the beginning of the description of the face in the fift chapter is shewed, that the same hath his enterance at the Eiebrowes: therefore doth the diuision of mans bodie require somewhat to be written of the same.

This is here especially to be noted, that prouident nature doth wonderfully defende the eyes, not onely with these, but also with other members moe from many kindes of externall accidents: for first there be *Cilia*, the haire of the lids placed on the edges of the vppermost and vndermost Eielids, which stand out before with hard and stiffe haire, whereby all small things, as flies, dust, and such like, that might fall into the eyes,

eyes should be therewith withstood: Afterwards are both the Eielids *Palpebra*, whereof the innermost standeth very fast, and the uppermost most swiftly moveth: so that it couereth the eye against all that might fall into it: they do thus preserve and keepe the eyes in the sleepe, they couer them from the Ayrie light, to the end that the whole bodie might the moze commodiously take rest: Thirdly, they haue aboue in the end of the forehead as is said, *Supercilia*, Eiebrowes set vpon a high bulke garnished with much haire, to the end that all things that might fall downe, and specially the sweate, which thow his salt nature might doe the eyes some harne, should be kept of these as it were with a bulwarke or fortresse: and in like sorte haue both the cheekes also two bunches in the midst of the two sides seperated and defended with the height of the nose, like as also the outsidies both of them with harde bones preserved and provided for, called of the Anatomists *Iugales*, the temples: So that the eyes are on euery side fortified that they might lie the surer in the depth: It is not needfull to speake moze ampler therof, but onely to discourse of those things which are conuenient for the healing of the maladies that are incident to those members.

Of the swelling of the Eielid. §. I.



Here doe fall many maladies into the eielids as swellings, impostumes, blednes and other mo, which maladies also often times with the falling away of the haire are augmented. But we will begin with the swelling, these haue many causes, first that the defluction of the eielids commeth of a grosse and tough humoz, their rednes, itch and smarte, make manifest, whereby they be eyulcerated, and the haire falling away by no meanes groweth againe, as long as this disease indureth, the which doth hurt the sight and the eyes. This patient first of all, if he be full of blood, is to haue a vaine opened, afterwards to prepare the matter with *Oxymel compositum* and sirupe of fumitorie, and afterwards to purge with these pills following: Take yellow Spiribolan barks halfe an ounce, Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Turbith one drag, Dragagant, Roses, Diagridion, Sene, the iuice of Fumitorie, temper them all together, and giue thereof one drag. at once or 4. scrup. They do purge the burnt matter and salt flegme: water baths are also very profitably for this, wherein Gallowes, Sozrell, Docks and Herueins are decocted, vsed oftentimes.

At night, lay this plaister following thereon: Take Endiue, Purslane, Priests crowne, of each a like much, beate them to pappe, and temper them with the white of an egge, and with a little oyle of Roses. You may also wet a cloth in the iuice of those hearbs, and so lay it thereon. Item, take sodden Lentiles, powze out the broth, dray them with a little Rose water, and lay it thereon like as the former. Or take Lentiles, Pomegranate pills, Roses, Sumack, of each one ounce: beate these together, and make a pappe thereof with Rose water: Make the eyes often moyst with stilled Rose water, or well water wherein Sozrell is decocted. Or do thus: Take Dandelion, Sozrell, Roses, Dock leaues, and Lentiles, of each a like much. Item, take prepared Sarcocolla, and bryse it in the iuice of Celendine, and annoint the eyes therewith, it is very good. The order of dyet is like, as hereafter in *Ophthalmia* shall be shewed. But if this defluction or rednesse of the eye lids be of long continuance, then must one let blood, and purge the oftner, and outwardly vse the stronger things, as this insuing, called *Sieff viride*: Take Merdigrease one drag, burnt Vitrioll one quarter of an ounce, Oypment, Seafoame, Salt peter, of each one scrup. Sal armoniac two scrup. Temper them together with the iuice of Rue, and annoynt it vpon the eye liddes. This is very good indeede to expell all such diseases: but it is very strong, and somewhat perillous to be vsed in the eyes, yet outwardly not at whit.

Sieff viride.

This following is somewhat milder. Take Merdigrease one drag, Dragagant three drag. Saffron and Pepper of each one drag. make it as thicke as hony with soluze Wine, and vse it as before.

Item, take white Wine, Rose water, of each two ounces, Aloe, Saffron, of each one drag. therewith wash the eye lids, take water wherein Sumack is decocted, Rose water, and white Wine, of each three ounces, Vitrioll, Merdigrease, and burnt Aloe, of each one drag. wash it cold therewith: or take Roses one quarter of an ounce, prepared Tutia three drag. Antimony, burnt Copper, of each halfe a drag. Wine fixe ounces, fennell water one ounce and a halfe: temper them, and wash the eyes therewith.

The

The other manner of swelling or distension of the eye lids and browes both come of subtle moisture or vapours. Also if there be something throwne into the eye, stong of Wasps, or perished through any other inconueniences : in like manner, if one rub the eyes with any strong herbs, as Nettles, Rue, Chula, &c. Also these accidents may proceede of a bad digesture of the stomacke, of ouermuch watching, or sleeping, like as it cometh to passe in the Lithargie, and also in the Dropsie.

Item, if the swelling be caused through stripes or hurt, then take the white of an egge brayed, temper it with Rose water, or Dyle of Roses, and lay vpon it as often as it is drye. Two or thre dayes after, put Cammomill in a little bag, and let it sethe in Wine, and wet the swollen eies therewith.

Item, if this swelling be caused thorough winde or vapors, then take pouned Spillet, and Cumin, of each a like much, make a plaister thereof with Fennell water, and lay a roasted Apple vpon it. You may also annoynt it with the iuyce of Sloes.

But if the swelling do come thorough the stinging of Wasps or Bees, then take Theriaca, Spithivate, or the confectiō of Triphera, tempered with a little Aloe brused with Rose water, and annoynt it therewith. Some do temper Salt gemme amongst it : You may reade further thereof afterwards in the seuenth part, of the stinging of Bees.

And if this swelling be caused thorough rubbing of hote hearbs or such like, annoynt it with Populeon, oile of Roses tempered with the white of an eg. For this also, the iuyce of Housleake tempered with oile of Roses, or with iuyce of Plantaine, making clothes wet therein, is good. If it be caused by much watching, then is sleepe requisite : and also for a bad digesture, to suffer hunger and thirst, &c. If the same be caused thorough cold, then take Asarabacca, Daffodill, of each halfe an ounce, prepared Tutia, and annoynt the swelling therewithall : there may also oile of Roses and white Ware be molten amongst it, that it may be like a salve. The third sort of swelling of these members, is like as it were a fatnesse, that sheweth it selfe thowout the browes, where the same aggrauateth and hindreth the lids that one cannot well open them. This distension is without paine, and if one presse his finger vpon it, then is the marke sene stand a good while afterward therein. The occasion of this is drie or grosse slime, and withall some moisture of the eies, if doth matter in the corners of the eies, that sticketh fast to the eyelids. But one must first trie to remedie it by fomentation, and to take for it the decoction of Wormwood, Cammomill, Fennell, Annise, and such like : afterwarde make a plaister of prepared Ammoniack or Diachylon, and some Salt Armoniack and Treas tempered amongst it : and if it will not away therewith, then is it certaine, that it proceedeth not of moisture or vapours, but of rottennesse : for which many strong things are to be vsed : for it will not easily be consumed, euen as you may apparantly perceiue, if you let water and it sethe together, that the water is much soner wasted than the fat. Therefore we are also to vse the things following, that are rehearsed hereafter in the first place of this distension.

Especially if the premises will not help, he is to purge like as is sayd in the first swelling or distension of the eye lids : but if so be that the water be subtile and fluxible with Choler, then is a Purgation to be tempered with yelloe Spirabolanes, and Woodbinde water : and also to let bloud if it be needefull. warme clothes wet with well water are also very good layd thereon : also to bathe otherwhiles : And when one goeth to bed, to lay vpon it the white of an egge brayed well. In the morning are the eyes to be fomented againe with warme water : if then the matter be grosse, and the swelling any thing bigge, then take Fenegræke, and Linseed, lay them to steape in womans milke, then wyng out the muscalage, but foment the eyes with warme water before, and lay the foresayd Pusilage vpon it : if there be then paine with it, annoynt the place with the fat of a hen. This doth also the Pusilage of Linseedes alone, tempered with a little Ware and oile of Roses, and laid thereon. This tough matter we must seeke to consume with the foresaid Collyzium of Tutia, Pepper, and such like, and therewith continue somewhat, because health cannot follow so sone after it. Where cometh also other whiles paine of the eyelids, which presseth none otherwise, than as if one were constrained to holde his eies shut. For which the Spithivate is very good laid vpon the eies and the forehead, and held in the mouth.

The fourth kinde of the swelling is called Hailstone, by reason of their hardnesse, which is not thowout like to the fat swelling, but onely in one place whether it be within or without the

the eyelids : for this is first to be sought to mellow it, as shall be hereafter taught. If this cannot be effected ; then if it may be come by outwardly, it is to be cut out.

The fift kinde receiveth hir name of the Warlie which it resembleth : for it is such a swelling of the eies that stretcheth him from one corner of the eie to the other, and is greatest in the middle, and smallest in the corners, and hath this difference with the afozenamed Hailestones, that they remaine hard thowout : but this not so, vnlesse it were so hardened thow long continuance of time.

For to cure this, the head veine is first to be opened and purged : afterwards, to lay vpon it *Opopanax* molten in Cammomill oile. Afterwards, a plaister made of prepared *Galbanum* and Warly meale, of each a like much, prepared with oile of Lillies, and laid thereon. For this is also very good, Vens greafe warme. The eies must be often bathed with warme water, wherein Warly and Cammomill is sod, and afterwards annointed with the blood of Pigeons, Turtles, or Partridges.

Another plaister : Take *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, of each halfe an ounce, Bozeas one drag. mire them together, and lay them vpon the eie. Or take frankincense and Myrrhe, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, Bozeas, Allume, Ware, of each one drag. the draggs of the oyle of Lillies as much as is needfull : melt therein the *Laudanum*, and ware, the rest temper and beate amongst it : vse this so long vntill it be all consumed.

Of the itch, and smarting of the eyelids. §. 2.



It is mentioned in the former diffension of swellings of the eyelids, that the same cometh with great itching and smarting, whereof we must speake moze at large. This hapneth oftentimes in the infusion of the eyes *Ophthalmia*. thorough salt and sharp Rheumes, whereof shall be hereafter discoursed, and also of Lice, whereof is before spoken in the third Chapter and 8. §. and shall immediatly hereafter follow in the discourse of the bwoies.

Otherwhiles this itch and smart doth procede of hote blood, or such like other moysture, and in case then the rubbing and scratching do come to it, then hath the humour the moze recourse thither, whence followe scabs and scurfe, not much differing from Wanne or Sawdust, which doth harden and continually smarteth. And although in the former swelling of the eyelids (as is sayd) there be good remedies declared, make also for this disease, yet neuerthelesse it is very needfull to speake somewhat moze thereof. If it do come thowout heate and rednesse, vse for it all that is there rehearsed : if it come of any sharp matter, purge as before in the first swelling is shewed, once euery moneth. Or purge with the whay of Goats milke, wherein is sodden *Epithymum*, in the which shall be steeped and wong out *Mirabolani*, *Chebuli* thre dragms. Annis seeds halfe a dragm. and if this be too much, then prepare these pills following : Take Aloe, Rubarb, of each one drag. Annis seeds halfe a drag. Diagridion two scrup. make pills thereof with the iuice of Summitorie, take thereof one drag. at the vttermoost at one time : afterwards open the vaines in the corners of the eye, and set boring cups behinde in the necke. Also vse either of these fementations for the eies, whereof hath bene spoken in many places of the diffension and swelling of the eyelids. Or take yellow Amber one quarter of an ounce, Pomegranat peeles, thre drag. temper them with hony, and annoynt the eyes with it where the itch is. Or take Sal Armoniac two drag. Aloe halfe an ounce, mire them together in a brasen mortar. But if the itch be not too great after the letting of blood and purging them, only foment the eyes with warme water wherein is decocted Pallowes, Docks, and Sozrell, with some Rose water put amongst it : or take white Wine thre ounces, Aloe one quarter of an ounce, annoynt the eyes therewith after the fomenting.

Item, take Butchers Broomesed, Purslan seeds, Lentiles, of each a like much, pound them all together, close it with the white of an egge and oyle of Roses : Sarcocolla tempered with the iuice of Celendine is alwayes very good for this purpose.

Of clefts in the eyelids. §. 3.

These clefts and infection of the eyelids are caused of heate, or of a sharp and salt humour, that falleth into the eyelids after the purging and letting of blood (whereof is sayd so oftentimes) Soothe pilles, and blossoms of pomegranats very soft, afterwards stamp them in Vineger, and therewith annoynt the eyelids certayne dayes together: and afterwards temper some Saffron and the yolke of an egge amongst it, and lay it vpon it: for it healeth much, like as doth also the *Sief de Thure*, which is approued for all rheume of eyes, and to be sought for in the Register.

Of warts vpon the eyelids. §. 4.

Of these there be two sortes: the one not very hard and without rankling, which is caused of Melancholike humours: the other hard like to a small Pulverie, standing commonly about the corner of the eyes: both of these must be cut or burnt, and afterwards things laid vpon it: which hereafter for the cure of the excrescence of flesh of the fistula & corners of the eye are discouraged. But of the warts shall be moze amply witten hereafter in the fift part.

Of the inuersion of the eyelids, where the inward red flesh appeereth outwardly. §. 5.

It appereth also that thorow the increafe of flesh the eyelids do turne, and the inside doth appere outwardly. There are two sortes of this: the one, when the eyelids being turned about, be red and soze, which is a kinde of scabbednesse: the other doth coner and hide the whole apple of the eye with red and moztely big veines: both of them are of long continuance, and hard to be healed. Therefore it is aduised, that at the very first there be somewhat laid vnto it: and although the cure of this disease haue the same intention, with all other formentioned infirmities of the eyes, yet neuerthelesse it is required for this disease, that if the partie be in health, he must purge with these pills: Take *Agaricus*, *Coloquint*, *Bdellium*, *Gastick*, of each one drag. Aloe halfe an ounce, Turbith one ounce and one quarter: make pills thereof with the iuice of Betonie, whereof you are to giue one drag. at once. Or take *Pillula aurea* two scruples, *Cochia* one scrup. make pills thereof, and fast fire holwers vpon it. But if one haue once purged, then is the head vaine to be opened betwene the thumbe and the forefinger, and in like manner in the forehead, and to set boring cups behinde in the necke. Allome boiled in white wine, and washed therewith, is also very good. Afterwards this plaister following shall be laide thereon: Take *Fenegreake* meale sixe ounces, *Cammonill*, *Roses*, one ounce of each, red wine as much as is needefull for to make a plaister, whereof take as much as you will vse at one time: temper amongst it the whites of two well beated eggs, and lay it vpon it. Afterwards you are eight daies one after another to vse this sirupe following: Take sirupe of *Roses* one ounce, sirupe of vineger *Compositum* halfe an ounce, *Fennell* and *Licorice* water, of each an ounce: after this must you by and by take the foresaid pills againe; and further then euery fift day once two holwers after supper, the inuerted eyelids are in the day time often to be annointed with the iuice of Smalage, and that enduring the space of eight daies. The next 8. daies afterwards, they are to be made moist softly with the water wherein *Sal Armoniack* is dissolved, and then being annointed with the foresaid iuices, lay this plaister following vpon it: Take the plaister *De Muscilaginibus* as hereafter it is described, one ounce, of Allome, Vitrioll, both burnt, of each one drag. melt this plaister with old wine, temper the powders amongst it into a tough plaister.

After the vse of this plaister and the foresayd water, then vse this powder following: Take Antimonie halfe an ounce, prepared Tutia, Orpiment, Bloodstone, Litharge of golde, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a very fine powder of it: This eateth away all the superfluous flesh, healeth the soze eyes, dyeth and taketh away the itch. But if it be too strong, then leaue out the Orpiment, and take only Verdigre two drag. Tutia three drag. Antimony halfe an ounce; but haue care of the apple of the eye. And if this disease war old, then it is needefull that this

scabbednesse

scabbednesse be rubb vntill it blæde, which may most commodiously be effected with figge leanes. The other must be opened with a lancet, with a hote iron, and the paine allwaged with the byayed white of an egge. But these are cures of cunning and expert Chirurgions, to whome only the same is to be referred: but this drying powder is not hère to be concealed, which is also discovered in other places: Take egge shels of very new layd egges, lay them the space of nine dayes in Vineger, dye them, and make thereof a subtile powder, and strowe it vpon the disease.

These sicke persons shall beware of all meates that fume into the head, as of all spices, mustard, strong wine, and eschew especially drunkennesse; but let them eate rere eggs, Spinage, fennel, Burrage, Parsley, young flesh, and drinke watred wine.

The other maner of inuersion of the eielids happeneth when the vpper most eielid shrinketh vp, or is drawen vp, so that it cannot couer the apple of the eie: we call it the Hares sleepe; it doth sometimes couer but one parte. Thirdly when the vppermost of the eielids cannot reach to the lowermost. But if it come by nature, then it is not possible to be holpen.

There cometh also otherwhiles a paine in the Ciebrowes, which wringeth soze (as if one were constrained to keepe them alway shut) soz which Spithivate is very good being spred vpon the eies, and on the forehead, and likewise some thereof holden in the mouth.

Of the Consolidation or growing together of the Eielids. §.6.



It happeneth otherwhiles, that after the taking off of the skin, or cutting off of the flesh in the corner of the eies (if it be not well looked vnto) that the eielids doe grow vnto the apple of the ey, or one fast to another, wherewith the whole eie is couered.

For to prevent this, must the eielids, which are not yet growen, be raised vp softly, and the place be annointed with a soft feather with the decoction of fennell and Carraway, then put in some of the white of an eg; doe this euery day two or thre times: now if there remaine any flesh; the fourth day are sharpe Collyria to be vsed, which hereafter are described in the eielids.

Of the nethermost Eielid which pricketh the Apple of the Eie. §.7.



Whether it cometh also to passe, that the Eielids doe alter their naturall course in growing, not growing right, but inwards: and because (as it hath been said) next to the Apple of the eie, they are very subtile, not sensible at all, they make the moze paine with their pricking: soz to amend this, these meanes following are to be vsed.

If there be but one or two haire, then take Psallick, Gummi Arabicum, make them somewhat moist, turne the eielids about, and annoint them therewith: If it will not be well therewith, then are the haire to be pluckt quite out, and you must burne the holes with a glowing needle, that it may not grow out againe. Or you may vse this salue following: take the iuice of the rootes of Southernwood, Pusilage of fleawort, a little vineger, & Camfere, annoint the same in the same hole. Item take Opium one graine, Psallick halfe a scrup. make it soft with a drop of Vineger, and annoint the hole therewith. Or take the blood and gall of a Wedgehog, Iron dross, of each a like much, make a flat cake like to a Lentil, or fish scale, and laie it on the place where the haire is drawen forth; that swageth the paine within the space of an houre, and it will not suffer haire to growe there any moze. Or take the rust of Iron, temper it with fasting spittle. In like sorte may also be poloned Ants eggs, and vsed. But amongst all is the plucking out and burning most surest.

If the haire be many that growe inward, then must one cut off the outer edges of the Eielids; so that the rootes of the haire be taken away, the which must be done by expert Chirurgions, otherwise must the eielids not be cut ouerthwart at any hand, soz that they could not growe together any moze.

Plaster de
Muscilaginib.

A plaster de Muscilaginibus, promised to be described in the 5. S. Take Fenegrake, Linseed, Holihock rootes, of each thre ounces: boile them, and draw out the slime or the Pusilage, besprinkle it besides with a little vineger, afterwards temper 3. ounces of small beaten lycharge of

of golde sodden softly with fire ounces of oile of *Sesamum*, and put thereto the foresaid lime, and then sethe it to a plaister oꝝ salue.

For falling off of the haire in the vndermost
cielids. §.8.

The falling off of the haire is of many sortes : whereof heretofore in the imperfecti-
ons of the haire are many things described in the third Chapter 6. §. and further in
the description of the beard shall be declared. The cause of the falling off of the haire
out of the lower cielids, is a sharpe salt matter, which consumeth the humoꝝ that
should feede the haire, and drieth away the rootes thereof, that they must fall away,
which is oftentimes seene by them that recouer of a soze sickness. It may also happen in the soze-
nesse and scabs of this place, as heretofore is sufficiently declared. Also experience doth teach vs,
that the haire do fall from the cielids of those that leade an vnchaste life. Also that the crab lice
do growe thereof is sufficiently declared before in the former Chapter 8. §. But if the cause of
all this be a sharpe, salt, smarting matter, let the bodie be purged, like as heretofore is specified
foꝝ the itch of the cielids, and so foꝝ the like in others.

But foꝝ a beginning, one must keepe a good oꝝder in eating and dzinking : afterwards make
this plaister : Take Hares dung, Bucks dung, of each one quarter of an ounce, burnt Harell
nuts thꝛee dzag. goates fat as much as is needfull foꝝ a salue, therewith annoint the cielids. Oꝝ
take Antimonie, burnt Pepper, of each one dzag. and walsh Lead halfe an ounce, Indie *Spica*.
Squinant, of each one dzag. and a halfe, burnt Date stones fve dzag. Goats and Beares fat, as
much as is needfull foꝝ a salue.

Item take Swallowes dung, Spice dung, of each halfe a dzag. burnt Date stones, Lasure
stones, of each one dzag. Indie *Spica* one scrup. make a salue thereof with clarified honie, and vse
it as the aforesaid.

If the falling off of the haire be caused of rednesse, smarting, oꝝ scurfe, then take a Pomegra-
nate, cut it in eight peeces, and sethe it in vineger vntill it be soft, and vnto growte oꝝ pap : after-
wards straine the iuice thꝛow a cloth, and vse it so long vntill it be thꝛow whole.

The seventh Chapter.

Of the Eies.

They are thus described : The eie is an instrument of the sight, whose na-
ture and complexion is moist, round, yet a little flattish, with seuen pan-
nicles and thꝛee humoꝝ complete and comoynded, the definition whereof
would here be too long to rehearse. These two members are accounted in
comparison of all the rest to be very small, yet notwithstanding so preti-
ous, that our Lord God hath planted marvellous things, and shewed his
poweꝝ and omnipotencie most excellently in them : whereof it is not here
needfull to write any moꝝe, yet it is not amisse to rehearse those things
which in the beginning of the first Chapter haue bene said of the face : to wit, that foꝝ the most
part all humane affections, inward desires, and cogitations of the hart, do most foꝝcibly appeere
in the eies. Foꝝ what is there, that the inward thoughts, will, and desires of the hart and the
minde could counterfeit moꝝe naturally, than these members : Foꝝ they shew thꝛow their rol-
ling about, looking downwards, sudden motions, winking, and other such like, mirth, soꝝrowe,
anger, hatred, and other affections of the hart. They do giue also sure knowledge of the secret
lusts : foꝝ there cannot be so many inclinations in the bꝛest of man, but there may be a signe
thereof discerned in the eies : so that one may iustly say, the eies are most true messengers of
the hart and of the minde. Of them haue the *Physiognomici* knowen the manifold nature of men,
and adiudged that the eies which stand so deepe in the head do see much sharper than they that
stand wide out. Those eies that stand far out (they say) do decipher a sole and light bzained per-
son : they say also, that the eies which do so twinkle and close the cielids so often, do alwaies
signifie fearful persons : contrariwise, they that hold the eies strong open, are stoute and invin-
cible,

cible, and such like moze, with which naturall causes the daily experience agræth. In fine, there is nothing moze costly, noz moze needefull in a lining body, then the sight: It is also amongst the motions of the body an onely thing, that maketh a difference betwene life and death. And this is sufficiēt in general to be said of the eies: we wil now come to their diseases & their cures.

Of the paine in the eies in generall. §.1.



Before that we doe come to the effect of the matter, these things are to be obserued in all paines of the eies: to wit, the nature of the patient, his age, the time of the yēre, the sicknesse he hath had before, and all other circumstances: So that all things, accordyng as occasion serueth, may be either augmented, diminished, or altered. In generall, it is alwaies good in all paines of the eies, that the patient doe keepe him in a darke place, free from aire and wind, lie high in the bed, so that the Rheume may not farrie in the eies, but may fall downe to the chækes: slepe is verie mete: for it consumeth and digesteth the matter. All beration is also to be eschewed, and all that may breede or bying any trouble to the head, as sorowe, anger, il sauour, and such like. Also to refraine much vnerie, to fede on light meates, to auoid strong sentis, as Mustard, Onions, Garlick, Beanes, nuts, wine, vineger, and all sowze meates. He must keepe himselfe very quiet, as long as the grieve of the eies indureth. This is now a generall and brieue declaration, bicause that we shortly hereafter (in the description of the Gnats, that seme to swarme before the eies) shall giue a longer and ampler instruction of the eies. What concerneth the letting of blood, purging, and other sortes of remedies, that shall particularly be taught in their proper places.

First some remedies are here described which may be vsed for all paines of the eies: and for that this is a generall rule, that as often times, and so long as the paine of the eies endureth, you shall lay thereon the white of an eg, bzaied together with oile of Roses: for it staieyth the course of the humors, and swageth all paines.

Item take the iuice of Celendine, and honie, of each a like much, beate them together by a soft fier: afterwards scum them, and annoint the eies therewith. The iuice of fennel and the iuice of Betonie is also very good for this purpose.

Item take broade Plantaine, Ciebright, fennel, sethe them together in a pot, and receiue the vapor into the eies.

Take a young Pigeon, open the vaines vnder the wings, and let the blood drop in your eies: but vse not this in the beginning (for it is too hot) but at the last when the course of the humors beginneth to abate. And you maie vse this following.

Take the blood of a Turtle doue, temper it with Rosewater, and put it into the eyes. This is many times approued for the paine of the eies. Others do only annoint their eyelids with it.

A verie good Collyrium, which diminisheth and discusseth the paine. Take prepared Turia, Camfere brused very small, of each one scruple, Rosewater one ounce, white Wine halfe an ounce, temper them well: when you will vse it stir it well about, and put a drop or twaine in the eie.

The white powder of Rasis for the eies.

Rasis his white powder which meruellously asswageth the paine. Take prepared Sarcocolla fine drag, Sief memithe (which is hereafter described) one ounce: temper it well with fennel water, or womans milke. But by reason that womans milke is often times vsed, therefore we wil admonish here that womans milke must not be vsed except it be very fresh: for it sowzeth very quickly, and loseth her force, whereby it might doe moze hurt then good.

Sief memithe

Sief memithe which is here and in other places mentioned, is thus prepared: Take the iuice of the strange herbe *Glaucium*, called by the Arabians *Memube*, *Chamedrios*, barkes of *Frankensence*, *Pyrrhe*, *Aloe*, *Sarcocolla*, burnt *Nitriol*, *Aristologi*, of each a like much: make this together into a most fine powder, and vse it like as is taught.

Of the corners of the Eies and their diseases. §.2.

First there groweth in the corners of the eies sometimes asmuch of the flesh, that the sight thereby is hindered. Contrariwise there cometh also sometimes such drying awaie or

con-

consumption, that they wholly ware soze, and alwaies run, so that the rude and unskillfull people doe deeme no other, then that it is a fistula. The cause of this growing is overmuch blood and moisture, as it also cometh to passe in diminishing of the eyelids, the same being not rightlie handled, the affluent humors make flesh to growe againe. The diminishing and abating is caused of drowth. The signes of both these are apparant to the sight: they are both almost incurable, but that there must be sharpe medicines vsed vnto them which the eyes cannot suffer, wherefore it is sharpely to be commanded to the vulgar *Occulists*, that they haue special care of their incisions and cauterisings in such perilous places.

For ease may one vse one of these remedies following, which are very meete for it, if the corners of the eyes do run much and impostumate.

For this, is the bodie first to be clesed, afterwards to be bathed euery day, and to sweate, but not too much: for that thereby should the moisture be drawen out of the bodie, and be consumed.

Afterward shall this powder be vsed oftentimes, made after the subtillest maner.

Take prepared *Tutia* one ounce and a quarter, red *Cozall*, yellow *Spirabolans*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Pepper* halfe a drag. strowe that in the corners: Or take prepared *Tutia* one drag. *Antimonie* halfe a drag. prepared *Pearles*, *Nihil*. red *Cozall*, of each one quarter of an ounce, burnt silke houses halfe a drag. make an impalpable powder thereof, it dyeth very strongly, and is also safe. Or take *Aloe*, *Acacia*, *Licium*. fine *Bolus*, *Gummi Arabicum*. of each one drag. This being powdered together, is to be mixed with the white of an eg, or dissolved *Dragagant*: afterwards annoint therewith the forehead and eyelids. Item take the iuice of *Honsiecke*, or *Sightshade*, and veriuice, of each one ounce: mire beaten *Acornes* amongst it, *Spyrhe*, fine *Bolus*, of each one drag. lay it on the eyes like as is said before.

Item take *Cipers* nuts, *Gummie*, *Dragon* blood, *Pasticke*, *Dragagant*, of each one quarter of an ounce, beate them small, and make with the white of an eg, or dissolved *Dragagant*, a salve of it.

Item wash the eyes oftentimes with raine water, wherein *Calnuts*, *Spirtle* seeds, fine *Bolus*, and *Cipers* nuts haue been decocted. These things are al good to drie back the moisture. Or take burnt *Spirabolans*, *Chebuli* stones beaten small, make with water of *Sintes* a *Collyrium* of them. Item take one drag. of *Tutia* steeped in *Spirtle* water and washen, white *Cozall*, burnt stones of *Chebuli*, *Butchers* browne seeds, *Calnuts*, *Aloe*, *Pastick*, *Frankincense*, *Opium*, of each one scrup. all beaten together after the smallest manner, make a powder, or temper it in water wherein *Gummi Arabicum* or *Dragagant* is dissolved.

Now because that in this *Collyrium*, as also in other mo medicines for the eyes, *Opium* is vsed: *Opium* not therefore must I here admonish that the same is not to be taken but in time of great extremitie. for it might easily happen, that whereas one meant to ease the paine, that the disease for euermore were made altogether incurable, yea that blindness might follow after it. Therefore are men to take good heede vnto this.

A plaister: Take *Laudanum*, *Amoniacum*. of each one ounce, *Pasticke* fine dragm. parted *Spillet* two ounces, beat it all small, make with *Cammomill* oile a plaister fower fingers broad, and one quarter of a yard long, the which lay vpon the seame of the scull.

Hereafter do follow many more remedies, which are also very good for it: but this present is prepared rather for the running corners of the eyes, for to drie them, and to stay the rheume.

Of the disease in the eyes called *Ophthalmia*. §. 3.

Some haue supposed that this Greeke word did generally signifie the paine in the eyes: but other haue defined it thus, *Ophthalmia* is an infirmitie that cometh in the eyelids and in the eyes, spreading it selfe so wide abroad, that it conereth the whole apple of the eye. Or, *Ophthalmia* is a hote disease, which only assaileth the eyes (after a naturall manner) through blood or *Choler*: or outwardly of corrupted matter, of cold *Rheumes*, or is caused of blood or vapours, and thereby whatsoever moisture is in the eye it is overheated: yet do all learned conclude with *Galen*. that it is *Flegme* of the eyes. Of this do also come other moistures, which the *Latinsk* do call *Lippitudinem*, that is, the blearnes of the eyes, which is caused of three speciall causes, like as is sayd at the first, to wit, of outward, and inward: Or outward, as the Sunne, smoke, dust, and such like: so match also the vnnaturall alteration of the

times, vse of vaporous meates, as Onions, Garlick, Mustard, strong compounded wines, cause the same. The inward causes are the afflure of certaine humors, be they mixt or not: but this infirmite of the eyes may be caused of the bloud, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, or *Melancholia*, of which signes we will here somewhat discourse.

Of Bloud.

If it procede of bloud, then are the eyes and their vaines pufft vp, red, the temples of the head do beate, the vppermost eyelids do swell, the eyes are moyst, yet with little paine: but with such moysture that in sleepe the eyes do bake to: for this doth also the time of the yeare auayle, as both the clerenes, youth, warme and moyst countrey, and meates that engender much bloud.

Of Cholera.

If it do come of *Cholera*, then is there pricking, burning, with great paine and swelling, not so red as aforesaid, but moyst and burning, that thereby also the apple of the eye is otherwhiles persifhed.

Of Phlegme.

If it procede of *Phlegma*, then is there a compression and ponderositie in the eyes with great paine, without heate or rednes, but some whitenes, and by reason of the great moysture, much sozenes and swelling.

Of Melancholic.

If it be caused of *Melancholia*, then is there also great ponderositie, with fallow colour, without rednes or compression: the eyes do not bake together in the sleepe, for that the Catarre or the Rheume is too drye. The Physicians do herein make more differences and signes, which are to be commended to the Philosophers. But this may suffice for our purpose and intention.

Nevertheless this is also to be noted, that these defluations, sozenes, or impostumations of the eyes (that befall for the most part in the corners of the eyes with a sharp salt Rheume which hath bene spoken of in the §.2.) are the beginning and true signes of this *Ophthalmia*. The corners of the eyes are foure, two besides the nose, which are the greatest, the other smaller. Whensoever then the *Ophthalmia* doth appeare in this place, occasioned of bloud: then must it be prevented with letting of bloud, be it in the headvaine, or other, in one, or both the armes, and let out much or little according to the abilitie of the patient. And if the matter were subtle and ran fast, one may also let him bloud in the temple of the head. In like manner, horseleaches applied to the forehead, and boring cups on the necke. But if all this will not help, there is to be made and applied on the top of the head vpon the *Sinistra Coronalis* a *Canterium*, whether it be potentiall or actual. Afterwards the patient is to be purged, and to vse no other outward meanes but to betake him to a good order of dyet. Now to procede to the especiall infirmities of the eyes or *Ophthalmia*, this shall be the first.

Of the rednes of the eyes. §.4.



This is caused outwardly of stripes, thrusts, concourse of bloud, superabundance of bloud in the vaines, which (as is sayd) spreadeth it abroad in the eyes. For this, it is aduised to open the head vaine on the contrary side, or at least to let boring cups vpon the shoulders: afterwards to purge. Further, to apply outward things which driue the matter backe againe. For this is first, the white of an egge brayed with womans milke, most highly commended and safe, a drop or twayne dropt into the eye. Or lethe a linseed and make a sponge wet in that decoction, and lay it warme on the eyes: but if this will not help much, then do in like manner with the decoction of *fenegreek* or of *Cammomill*.

Item, take the iuice of *fightshade*, temper it with the brayed white of an eg, and with oyle of *Roses*, make a cloth wet in it, and lay on the eie. Item, if the eyes be bloudshot, take the iuice of *wormewood*, bray it well with the white of an egge, and drop it into the eyes.

Take *Coriander*, lethe it in water, wyng it out with this decoction, make muscilage of *pleaburt*, temper it with fine *Bolus*, and lay it on the eyes with wet clothes.

Or make Cotton wet in the brayed whites of eggs with oile of *Roses*, and lay it to his forehead, eyes, and temples. Also you may temper amongst it fine *Bolus*, or *frankincense*, which you will.

But if the matter be subtle, then must one labour to discusse the bloud: for which end, you are to take young *Pigeons* or *Turtle* doves bloud, like as is taught before in the §.1. for that hath bene found many times to be good.

Item take *frankincense*, *Salgemma*, of each one drag. beate it small, and make it with womans milke into a *Collyrium*.

Lake

Take broad Plantaine water about one pint, small bzused Herdigrease one ounce, fine Bo-
lus, Dragon blood, of each halfe an ounce, Camfers one quarter of an ounce: distill this in a glas-
sen helme in seething water: it is not onely good for red eies, which are painfull, and for swollen
eie lids that haue long continued; but also to all soze stinking mouthes, and specially for all vices
rations of the pziue members.

Ulcerations
of the pziue
ties.

Item take Aloe three partes, Camfers one part, steepe them in Rose water, and vse it.

Radish water is also marvellous good for all rednesse of the eies. Take the water of Wer-
ueine, of Eyebright, of Parierom, of each halfe an ounce, fennell water one ounce, Camfers halfe
an ounce, the gall of a great Pickerell: temper and stir it all together, and vse it as the rest.

Item take prepared Tutia, prepared in piss and fennell water (like as is taught in the In-
troduction) halfe an ounce, of Pace three drag. of Camfers sixe graines, of Palmsey one small
pint: beate all these as small as may be, mire them together, and keepe it.

You haue also other preparations mo of this Tutia, like as there are twaine expessed in the Tutia prepa-
red. Introduction of this booke: but for the rednesse of the eies is this especially recommended: Take
halfe an ounce of Tutia, make it glowing, and quench it 15. times in Rose water: then bzuse it
small, and put vnto it one quarter of an ounce of Calamint stons, three cloues, halfe a pint of
Palmsey: mire all these together. These three Collyria are for all rednesse of the eies and other
things very highly commended of the ancient Phisitions.

Also to besume the eies with white amber, is much praised. Item take Vislope, Parierom,
Fenegræke, Cammomil, Pelilot, Roses, & such like: seethe them, & let the vapour go into the eies.

A plaister for the rednesse of the eies. Take Radish leaues well made cleane and washt, and
Currans, of each halfe an ounce, Pigeon dung ons quarter of an ounce: beate them well toge-
ther, and lay it thereon.

The same may also be done with powdered Willow leaues, and laid vpon it.

Salues. Take Tutia halfe an ounce, oils of Bay one quarter of an ounce, honie and vineger
of each a spoonefull, Camfers one drag. make a salue thereof, and therewith annoint the eielids.
This is also meete for inuerted eielids.

Eie salue called Nihil. Take prepared Tutia one quarter of an ounce, red Cozall one dragm.
Pearles 1. drag. Nihil albi 1. quarter of an ounce, Camfers halfe a scrup. Barrow grease 4. oun-
ces: temper it well, annoint of this salue the quantitie of a Coziander seede in the corner of the
eie, in the euening when you go to bed: it healeth the rednesse of the eie, and taketh away all
rheumes that fall into the eies. After this forme is the salue of Roses much commended, which
is described in the first Chapter and 2. §. wherof take one ounce, prepared Tutia 4. scrup. and an-
noint the eielids therewith.

Confected Chebul being eaten do withstand the rednesse of the eies, and defend the sight. In
like manner putmegs confected in hony.

Hotte Eyes. §. 5.



Dras much then as that there can be no rednesse of the eyes without heate,
therefore must we discourse somewhat thereof, and vse these remedies follo-
wing for it: Take the water of Eyebright, of fennell, of Celendine, of each one
ounce, prepared Tutia three scrup. prepared Sarcocolla and pearles, of each halfe
a drag. temper it together. This Collyrium is much in vse at Augusta.

Another. Take Kewe, fennell, Werueine, of each like much, stampe it, and
poure thereon Rose water and white Wine, so that the herbes be couered: let it stand a night,
afterwards distill it in a glassed helme and in water. Item, take prepared Sarcocolla halfe an
ounce, white Dragagante, Frankinsence, Iron dzosse Pearles, of each three drag. Indie Spica,
Siluer, and gold Litharge, of each one drag. and a halfe, Starch, Ceruise, of each one quarter of
an ounce, Tutia, three drag. bzuse this altogether vnto a small powder, make a dough thereof
with Rose water, afterwards make a small trociscs thereof, and let them drye: pound them
afterwards againe, and make them moyst with the iuice of Pomegranats, and dry them a-
gaine. Thirdly, make them moyst with the water of Nightshade like as before: put thereto
one drag. of Campher, white Sugar one drag. and a halfe. When ye will vse of it, stirre it with
Rose water, white of an egge, and womans milks: Take Aloe, Tutia, Hony, Sugar, Fens-
greake,

greek, fennell, of each a like much, seth them in Wine, and receive the vapoz, oz apply it vnto them; it is very good for the hot eyes. Item, take white Wine foure ounces, Aloe, *Scrapinum*, Spirthe, Sugar, fennell, of each one drag. let it seth moderately: this is also good for a *Collyrium*.

Take the water of fennell, of Cybright, of Celendine, of each halfe an ounce, *Scrapinum* one drag. dissolve this gumme, and temper it all together.

Item, take graine Agrimonie, stampe and temper it with the white of an egge: make toine wet therein, and lay it vpon the eyes.

To set boring cups on both shoulders, is also very commodious for this infirmitie, womans milke, letting of bloud, Roses and fennell, with *Tutia*: sodden fenegræke and egges sodden warme and layd vpon the eyes is also much commended.

Hot Blisters and pricking in the Eyes.



These are caused thozow moysturs which setteth it selfe in the white of the apple of the eye, and there ranckleth. The blisters are sometimes great, and sometimes small, white, red, darke, and also blacke with paine and pricking, according as the matter is. The deeper, the greater they be, and the more hurtfull and dangerous to be cured, because of the noblenes and tendernes of this member. But this in the beginning is alwayes good for it. Take *Licium*, Safron, of each halfe a drag. *Acatia* oz the iuice of Sloes one scrup. mixe this with Rose water, and drop a little in the eyes: he must also be let bloud, and purged. But this foresaid water for the eyes must be droppt into them with the white of an egge, and whilst the disease is in *Augmento*, oz the increase: then take fenegræke, Linseed, of each one quarter of an ounce, Spelilof one quarter of an ounce: seth it in faire water, and wash the eyes oftentimes therewith, let a drop thereof drop otherwhiles into the eyes, that ripeneth, draweth out the corruption, and swageth the paine. When as the blister is broken out, then heale it like other sores of the eyes. Item, take the fat of the fish *Tymalus*, and annoynt it on the apple of the eye: it is very strong, therefore it is better for horses then for men. But this following is moze surer, Take the crumme of white bread, make it wet in water: but it is stronger in womans milke, and lay it on, where it is dry make it wet againe, oz take a fresh.

This confection following is very good for all heate of the eyes, swelling, and pricking: Take Cybright, fennell, Cynamom, of each thre drag. long Pepper, Spints, Pace, Parierom, Meruine, *Calmus*, Rosemary, of each one drag. and a halfe, Sugar Benets thre ounces, white Sugar five ounces: with the Sugar seth these iuices following, of Roses, of Meruine, of each two drag. the iuice of fennell that is well clarified five ounces, the iuice of Celendine, of Rue, of each one ounce and a halfe: let them seth so thick as a sirrup, afterwards temper amongst it the rest well beaten.

Item take yong Endine, stampe and temper it with the oile of Violets, oz rather the oile of Roses: annoynt therewith the hote corners of the eyes and the eyelids: the same taketh alwaie the paine, and swageth the heate. If that will not helpe: take the meale of Lintels, Sumacke side, Roses, Pomegranate kernels, powdered together and tempered with vine *cayle*, vse this as the rest.

Item if this helpe not, then must the head baine in the forehead be opened, oz in the corners of the eyes, which you will; which doth doide away the sharp matter that setteth in the eyelids. In like maner purge alwaies with such medicines which spell the *Cholera*, and salt matter. It is also good to bathe otherwhiles, and to sweate moderately, whereby the sharpe defluxion is delaid: oz in stead of sweating maie you foment the eyes with a sponge made wet in luke warme water. Lastly, it is very good to wash the eyes with water of fennell, of Celendine, of Meruine, and of Cybright, mingled together one amongst another.

Itche and Scabs of the Eies. §.6.

These biting drye scabs of the eyes do otherwhiles manifest themselves on the lids of the eyes, so that one cannot forebare but to rub them, the which doth the eyes and face great hurt, making the same more hotter and redder.

This

This deflurion is a salt matter, which is sharpe and picking. Against this, he must first re-
fraine from rubbing of the eies, eate and drinke soberly, purge Choler, open the head veine, and
also lay thereon outwardly at the first fresh water or Rose water two or thre daies: after wards
he must foment and wath the eies with the decoction of Pallowes, Violet leaues, Celandine
and Merueine, or with Rose water also alone. If then of this or any other occasions there come
any swelling to it, then loke to that which is ordained for red and hot eies.

Watering or running Eies. §.7.



It is manifest, that the mattering of the eies doth procede of many occasions, as
of mirth, sorrow, weakenes of the retentive power, and superfluous moisture of the
baines that falleth vpon the eies; like as of thursts, stripes, sharpe winde, smoke,
cough, sharpe sauors of Onions, Saffron, &c. all the which doe perill the eies, so
that the eies do stand as if the eyelids were newly pluckt off, or that a Cataract had been couched
in them, or as if they had suffered any other disease, the which also happeneth if any body drinke
too much wine: wherefore that many may after wardes bewaile the miseries of drunkenness.
what concerneth the outward causes, those may be learned of the patient himselfe. But if this
running of the eies be caused thowoe any disease of the baines, and not through heate; then
doth the patient alwaies feele some heauie puffing vp of the baines in the forehead, and in the
temples of the head: and this deflure is for the most part alwaies augmented by the naxing.
This running or watering is very strong, falling as well into the eies as into the nose, with a
sharpenes in the throte. But if this deflurion be thorough heate, then is the humors so hote, that
thorough the heate it bites open the eyelids, which cause the haire to fall out of the eyelids, yea
that the heate may be perceiued, thowoe feeling with the handes. But if it come thowoe colde,
then are all thyngs contrary to all these that we haue now spoken of. Now the remedies of
these running eies be these.

They that be caused of outward causes, may be easily remedied, that is, by taking away of
the cause of this deflurion: but as much as doth concerne the inward causes where heate is the
cause, it is specially aduised, that the bodie be purged sometimes with Pills *Cochia, Aurea*, with
Succo Rosarum, or with pills of the fine kindes of Spirabolans. And it is not enough that this
and the letting of blood be once performed, but oftentimes; to wit, in the beginning, in the aug-
menting, and in the standing still of the disease, that thereby the sickness may bee thoroughly
holpen.

The order of Dyet.

For this must all drying things be vsed, and all moist attenuating meates and drinckes es-
chewed, like as Lentils, Coleworts, Lettice, Purcelain, salt fish and flesh, Spilke, Chase,
Onions, Scallions, Garlick, and all that smeth into the head: some forbid to eate in the
euening. When it is caused thorough heate he must smell to Roses, Saunders, Camfere, and
such coling things: like as also the Momanders are commodious for these causes, ordained in
the discourse of the Plague.

When the patient is purged, and the paine of the eies be yet in the beginning: then take (like
as is often times aduised at the first) the bzaied white of an eg, and drop a drop thereof in the eie.
Take also milke of a young woman which hath a daughter sucking vpon her, put it fresh into
the eie: or take two ounces of Rosemarie amongst it, then beat the white of an eg, and drop a
drop or two thereof in the eie.

Some do take onely fresh water mixt with vineger, and vse it as is rehearsed, specially after
bathing, and haue thereby found great amendement.

This is also much praised: Take vnripe Grapes, burne the same to ashes, buse them very
small, and blowe somewhat thereof into the eies: it drieth the running, and doth driue away the
rednesse.

Or take the lime of Fleawort, Quince kernels, or Dragagant one quarter of an ounce, the
white of an eg well bzaied, womans milke that hath a daughter sucking, halfe a drag. tempered
well; if the paine be very great, then drawe out the limes or Pusilage with water, wherein

before Poppie heads haue bene sodden. You may also vse *Sieff de Ros* which followeth hereafter.

Take fresh Rose leaues halfe an ounce, *Saffron*, *Spica of Indie*, *Gummi Arabicum* of each one quarter of an ounce, beate all small and make cakes thereof with raine water: and when you will vse them, then take one drag. thereof, and lay them to steape in the beaten white of an eg. This is speciall good in the beginning of the hot *Ophthalmia*: for it repelleth the matter backe, it consumeth and allwageth the paine. In like manner, is this also following much commended: Take washt Ceruse, prepared *Sarcocolla*, *Dragagant*, *Licinum*, *Acatia*, pils of Pomegranates and Frankincense, of each one drag. *Peasles*, *Opium*, of each halfe a scrup. and the iuice of Pomegranates (which is very cleere) as much as is needfull for to make cakes or troscises thereof when you will: then vse thereof. Then lay a drag. thereof to steape in Rose water; this hath a constringent vertue: it drieth and cooleth all hot humours: but when the paine is at the most, then temper among the foresaid medicines two or thre graines of *Opium*, or of *Sieff album*, called *Sieff Ros*.

Take washt Ceruse one ounce, *Gummi Arabicum* halfe an ounce, *Opium*. *Dragagant*, of each halfe a dragma: this must you bzuise very small, and temper it with the well bzaied white of an egge and womans milke. Take also the iuice of fennell well scummed one ounce and a halfe, Aloe two drag. and a halfe, a leafe of well beaten gold: temper them well, and afterwards put vnto it the waight of seuen graines of Frankincense: dissolue them in good white wine, and mixe them all together with fennell and Rose water: you must drop of this water twise a day in the eyes.

Item take good Aloe steeped in the iuice of fennell: put thereto the waight of ten graines of Frankincense burning therein, kindled at a candle, vse it as afoze.

Other waters moe: Take Rose water fower ounces, quench therein glowing golde, afterwards put thereto Aloe, Frankincense, *Pasticke*, Litharge of siluer, of each one drag. let it sethe vntill a third part be consumed: afterwards, straine it throzow a cloth, and vse it as it is needfull.

Item take Dragon blood, Aloe, *Sarcocolla*, of each halfe a drag. *Saffron*, Camfere, of each halfe so much, prepared *Tutia* one quarter of an ounce, bzuise it very small, and temper amongst it wine of Rutinegs fower ounces, and as much Rose water: also let it sethe in water in a glasse, vntill about thre parts be consumed: it drieth and healeth without any danger.

Item take Aloe, *Tutia*, horie, Rue, fenegrake, fennell; sethe it in wine: it is especiall good for all ouerhot eyes.

This water following is also very appropiate for the same disease: Take prepared *Tutia* 1. ounce, prepared Bloodstone one drag. Frankincense, *Pastick*, *Pepper*, of each halfe a scrup. fennell water, Cieright water, of each one ounce, Rose water and Violet water, of each two ounces, olde fine wine thre or fower ounces: put it into a glasse, and let it sethe in water euen to the halfe, afterwards straine it throzow a cloth.

A salve. Take the iuice of Rue, of Fromboyes oile, of *Pirtle*, of each one ounce: let it boile vntill all the iuice be sodden away: then luyng it throzow a cloth, and set it againe vpon the fire: mixe amongst it prepared *Saphire* halfe a dragm. *Iacint* one scrup. Antimonie one drag. burnt Copper one scrup. prepared *Tutia* thre drag. let it sethe softly with the foresaid fire: put thereto 3. drag. of *Mare* be it moze or lesse, accordingly as you desire to haue it hard: wherewith annoint the eyelids. This swageth the paine, staieyth all deflurions in the eyes, and taketh away the cause of them wonderfully.

In running and ouermoist eyes, take *Pyrrhe* halfe a drag. Bloodstone one drag. the vpper most spizgs of Fromboyes, and of the Rose tre, of each one ounce: sethe them together in a glasse in water vnto the halfe: afterwards straine it soyth thzough a cloth, and drop at least fower times a day one drop in the eyes. Secondly, the forehead and temples of the head are of tentimes, or at least against the euening, to be annointed softly with the iuice of Roses.

But if this rheume be but in his increasing, or in *Stau*, which is at the highest; then may be very freely put therein all the foresaid things, and chiefly womans milke (which is much commended for this) also temper *Dragagant* amongst it, and drop in them. In like manner take prepared *Tutia*, Camfere, of each a scrup. tempered with halfe an ounce of white wine. It drieth and swageth all paine. This is also very good, *Tutia* tempered in fennell water, in water of Celendine, of Rue, of *Mervaine*, and in Rose water, and a gall of a *Pickerell*, or a *Partridge* put thereto,

thereto, and the same kept in a Copper vessell, vntill it be to be vsed: or take prepared *Tutia* one quarter of an ounce, white Amber one drag. fennell and Rosewater, of each fower ounces, take also washt Ceruise one quarter of an ounce, prepared *Sarcocolla*, *Dragagant*, *Opium*, of each halfe a drag. *Gummi Arabicum*, Saffron, of each halfe a scrup. This being altogether beaten as final as may be, temper it with raine water, and let it drie. And when as you will vse it, mixe it with womans milke.

Here is to be noted, that raine water for all paine of the eyes is very meete, for that it is subtil.

But whensoever this *Ophthalmia* commeth to abate, then may bathing be vsed: or that which is more sure, seeke Cammomill & Pelilot in water, and make a sponge wet therein, wringing it out a little, and so hold it warme vpon the eye, and when it is cold to make it warme againe. Or take fresh Wormwood, *Lycium*, fenegreek of each 2. ounces, *Sarcocolla* one ounce and a quarter, the iuice of Celendine halfe an ounce, Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Saffron, Sea froth, of each one drag. seeke that which is to be sodden, in raine water vnto a pape, and temper amongst it all that is beaten, and lay it warme ouer the eyes. It is also very good to wash hands, face, and face oftentimes with the warme decoction of Wormwood, Pelilot, and of Cammomill. In like manner also is the yelow powder of *Rasis* in the declination of this desuxion much commendeb; which is thus to be made: Take *Sarcocolla* fine drag. Aloe, Saffron, *Lycium*, of each one dragm. Pyrrhe halfe a drag. make a powder thereof.

Bleared eyes of a colde cause.



If this desuxion or rheume come through colde, then at the first when it beginneth to fall, vse this confectiō: Take Indis *Spica* fine drag. *Agaricus* one drag. and a halfe, Cinnamon one ounce, Pasticke, as much as the waight of them all: also make a confectiō thereof with clarified honie, and vse thereof euerie day.

This patient is to smell vnto all warming and drying things, as *Opus*, Lauander, *Parierom*, Amber, *Betonie*, *Syrax Calamita*, and such like, as also vnto the pōmans that euery where in this booke are specified.

It is also very conuenient to chew and to eate a good deale of fennell seide euery morning. Likewise also Rue and Meruaine chewed, and the eyes annointed with the spetle.

If so be that the eyes be filled with cold moisture that floweth out of the braynes: for that is this following very good to be vsed. Take prepared Bloodstone one quarter of an ounce, Roses, burnt Ruoze, red and white Corall, Amber, yelow Pirabolans, of each one drag. the iuice of the sprigs of Fromboyes fower ounces, temper them together, and so keepe it well stopped: of this iuice put daily into the eyes, and annoint also the eyelids therewith. This doth drie the rheume marvellous much, and doth strengthen the eyes from taking any such moisture.

Or take the iuice of fennell, of Rue, of each one ounce, childrens vine halfe an ounce, Aloe three drag. let it seeke somewhat, and then straine it thozow a cloth, and put a drop of the same in the eye: it clenseth, drieth, and sharpeneth the sight.

Item take frankincense, Pasticke, Cipers nuts, Pyrrhe, Aloe, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Tutia*, *Sarcocolla*, of each one drag. and a halfe, Dragons blood, Sumach, Barberies, Roses, of each one scrup. make them to powder, or to trocisces with the iuice of fennell, and vse it with Rose water or fennell water.

Item rosse three apples, cleanse them of the pills and kernels, then temper them with the yolks of three new laid eggs, and then lay it warme to the eyes.

Item take *Acatia*, Dragons blood, of each one drag. fine Bolus one quarter of an ounce: this being beaten together, then make it to a plaister with the white of an egg, and lay it round about the eyes from whence the rheume doth come: you may lay it also vpon the forehead, and vpon the lids of the eye: but then you must leaue out the Bolus.

In winter time may one wash his eyes with the vine of a man childe and wine: in sommer with the vine and with Rose water: That drieth away the rheume, and pserueth the sight wonderfully.

This water following doth drie much the colde catarres: Take *Gummi*, the Puselage of fenegreake

Senegrake seedes, of each one quarter of an ounce, of prepared *Sarcocolla*, *Spicanardi*, *Pyrrhe*, *Cinnamom*, *Aloes*, *Beuer* eod, of each halfe a scrup. this powdered all together small and made up with womans milke.

This following drieth also much the deflurion: Take an ounce of *Tutia*, bzuise it very small in a mortar, put thereto 12 ounces of old fower wine, powze some upon it, and bzuise it well with the stamper: afterwards, powze wine upon it againe: afterwards let it sethe together in a Copper pan. When it is from the fire, then temper amongst it *Aloes* beaten small, one quarter of an ounce, put two or three drops thereof in the eies. When lie upon your backe the space of two howers. This discusseth the blood also in the eies, and taketh away all Sharpnesse, and biting rheumes.

In like manner if this deflurion do make much paine, then take vnwasht sheepes wool, burne it to ashes in a close stopt pot, bzuise it as small as may be, and mire it with the white of an eg: lay it on your forehead and on the temples of the head: This swageth the catarre very quickly, and abateth the paine.

Another. Take the fower iuce of a Pomegranate (sethe the same to the halfe, and scum it well) five ounces, *Sieff Memirbe*, *Aloe*, *Lycium*, *Saffron*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Hydromel* halfe an ounce, put them all together in a glasse stopt close: set the same the space of fower daies in the sunne, and vse it morning and euening: it is good and approued: it helpeth much the obscuritie of the eies.

A plaister. It is also profitable for such colde catarres, to haue a plaister laid upon the temples of the head. The same is to be made thus: Take *Aloe*, *Pyrrhe*, *Pirtle* leaues, *Acaria*, of each one drag. *Pasticke*, *Frankincense*, of each halfe a drag. beaten small together, make it to a plaister with the white of an eg, and lay it as is said on the forehead and temples of the head.

Another. Some do counsell for to take *Assa fetida* one ounce, *Pepper* one quarter of an ounce: melt and sethe the Gum in vineger vntill it be thicke, then stir *Pepper* amongst it, lay it ouer the eies: but haue god regard that there come none of it into the eie: it will stinke much, and is very dangerous for the eie. But there be other things that may be vsed for this purpose.

Of actuall cauterisation in the necke in all rheumes
of the head.

This hath oftentimes also bene more remembred, and is often vsed by the ancient Physicians, even as many Italian Physicians do aduise, that in these colde rheumes or deflurions, the necke is to be opened with an actuall or potentiall Cauterie, whereof diuers may be sought in the Register, and must be kept open about forty daies.

What is conuenient for purging.

That is to be effected with the pills *Cochia*, which be sharpened with the trociscs of *Albandali* also with the confection of *Hiera*, and such like. In the declination of the rheume through cold, bathing is very meete, to wash himselfe with vaine, to drinke wine moderately, to apply vnto it the foresaid sponge with the warme decoction of *Cammomill* & *Spelilot*.

Sore eies with or without matter. § 8.



These diseases do come commonly through outwarde occasions, as of pricking, striking, or any other manner of bzuising: in like manner, of inward causes, as hot, sharpe, and salt rheumes, which do eate in and perish the pannicles of the eies.

If then there be perceined great paine with pricking, beating, and with moist rheumes in the eies, and the eiebowes be fallen, the eies stand wide open, the white of the eie looking red, and that some whitenesse be seene upon the blacke: then is there an impostume growing, and indeede such accidents do verily require an expert Chirurgeon: for (as the common prouerbe is) there is no lessing with the eies. Therefore to this end and intent shall hereafter be presented and deliuered many good medicines: and we will first begin with things which

which are caused through inward sharpe Rheumes : It is to be noted, that the Impostume that commeth in the white of the eie, is not so much to be feared, as they that come vpon the star or blacke; for that they are the most dangerous. Amongst which, one is called the Canker, which commeth of melancholicke humors : and the signes be, that this Impostume doth shew it selfe with heate and heavines of the minde; the face and the eies are of a leaden colour : It maketh great picking paine in the eies, and in the temples of the head, on the side whereas the disease is. And if there be applied thereto anie hote things, then both the paine increase manifestly, the appetite to meate is lost, and all the face getteth another colour : Therefore when that is scene and perceiued, then must it be with all speede prevented. And first to begin with a necessarie letting of blood, and purging : The patient must be forbidden wine, and flesh, and speciallie swete wines. His meate must be coling hearbes, as Spinage, Lettice, Purcelane, Gourds : Endiue water must be his best drinke : much letting of blood (if the partie maie suffer it) is good. And if so be that the impostume do appeare very great, then is the patient to be let blood the more in the Median or in the Sappea, on the same side : afterwards in the liuer vaine, alwaies regarding the time of the yeere, and the patients abilitie. But if the Impostume be not so great, you may be content with the opening of the liuer vaine or Median onely : hereby will the Rheume be cut off, that it cannot fall any more into the eies.

For this are mete also boring cups set vpon the shoulders and higher, with picking : But if the matter be sharpe and biting, one must purge with Spirabolanes, manna, laxative iuices of fruits, and such like. Afterwards the patient must be caused to nose, and to gargarise, whereof you haue before in the second chapter and §. 2. good instruction, and shall haue hereafter in other more places. When as this is effected and done, you may vse of these medicines which you will. First there is *Sief album*, (not long since described in the 7. §.) tempered with womans milke. If it leaue beating, then it is a good token, and hope that the sozenes or paine will weare awaie without impostumation : but if it come to impostumate, then must it be clenfed with *Hydromel*, or honie of Roses, tempered with raine water, making a linnen cloth wet therin, and so laid on it. Secondly, with astringent things; as the *Sief de Thure*, which is forcible for all humors & deflusions of the eies. Thirdlie, with drying medicines; as with well prepared *Tutia*, and chiefe with the plaister of *Muscilaginibus*, which is describ'd in the first chapter, and in the end of the 7. §. Will you then haue some part of the Catarre repelled : Then put thereto the *Opusculage* of fleaworte, or of Quince kernels, the which must thre or foure times a daie be laid vpon the eies, mixed alwaies with *Sief de Thure* : to wit, as long as the matter cleaueth to the apple of the eie, and no longer.

A good salve. Take *Tutia* prepared in Rosewater halfe an ounce, fresh Swines grease one ounce, Starch thre quarters of an ounce : bruse it long in a mortar one amongst another : afterwards wash it thre times in the water of Nightshade, and annoint the forehead, the temples of the head, and the eyelids with it, without and within. This salve is marvellous good for all impostumate and running eies, as also for all paines of the eies, bloodshots, scabs, and wounds of the eies. Some doe vse also the maiden milke, or *Lac Virginie*, (which is described in the fifth chapter and the 1. §.) but it is somewhat sharpe in the eies.

If there be any sharpe Catarre that falleth into the eies; take warme white bread, scrape it in womens (or any other) milke, and laie it vpon the eies.

Item take a white loafe, cut slices thereof a finger thicke, laie them to scrape in Tellel water, and laie them on the eies.

Dile of burnt linnen is also very good for the impostumate eies, which is to be made as hereafter followeth.

Lae cleane and washed linnen clothes in a glasse helme, strawe potuned glasse vpon it : againe afterwards another laye of clothes, and glasse againe, vntill the helme be halfe full : afterward distill it in sand. Some doe burne it in gilt boules, and giue it for the plague. Item set the clothes on fire with a candle, laie them vpon an euen peece of iron, tinne, or siluer, and put them presently out againe. Then shall you alwaies find a drop of oile, the which take vp with a feather, and so gather it. This healeth marvellous wel the impostumation of the eies, taketh away the paine, and is good for the fistula and wounds in the eies.

Clarified Honie annointed in the corners of the eies doth heale all diseases.

This *Collyrium* following is aboue al measure much commended; a little of it being dropped often

often in the eye, for it healeth and strengtheneth the sight mightily.

A pretious
waſter for the
eyes.

Take Rue, Roſes, Endiue, Betony, Meruein, Venus haire, Agrimony, Cleuers, Silfoyle, Eyebright, Chamedrils, Wimpernell, Sage, of each two ℥. cut them ſmall, ſteape them a day and a night in good Wine: afterwards wꝛing them out, and ſpread them on a board that the moiſture may runne off: tenne houres afterwards beate them groſſe, and diſtill them in water, and keepe it ſtopt cloſe.

Item, take the iuice of Celendine one ounce, the iuice of Fennell one ounce and a halfe, Dre gall ſixe drag. and one ſcrup. Wolls gall thꝛe quarters of an ounce, prepared Tutia halfe an ounce, temper them altogether, this dyeth much the impoſtimate eyes.

Item, take Poppy leaues one ℥. Merueine, Eyebright, Fennell, Gallowes, Hollihocks, Cammonill, of each halfe a ℥. ſtampe and chop it to pay, mixe it with oyle of Roſes, make a cloth wet therein, and lay it ouer the eyes. It is a generall commandement, that whers one vſeth water for the eyes, you muſt binde it hard with twice double linnen, wherebꝫ the medicines applied ſhall not off thoꝝow neeſing, coughing, oꝛ any other ſtirring oꝛ motion of the head.

Impoſtumes of the eyes through outward occaſions.



If ſo be that the impoſtumes of the eyes be cauſed through any outward occaſion, as through thruſts, ſtrokes, and ſuch like, then are the deepe thruſts oꝛ prickes dangerous and moſt to be feared leaſt blindnes do enſue. But theſe meanes following are to be vſed for the ſame: Take vnpared Quinces, the kernels being taken out, beate them ſmall, and temper meale of Lentiles amongſt them, and a little hony, that there may be a plaſter made of them: lay the patient vpon his backe, and apply ſome thereof vpon his eye. Or take a whole Pomegranate, betwene ſower and ſwete; ſet it in a little Vineger, ſtampe it, and vſe it as befoꝛe. Item, take the yolks of a roſted egge, lay it with towe vpon the eye. Item, vſe alſo waters for the eyes that are drying and aſtringent, as hereafter ſolloweth: take pounded Bloudſtone that is nine times waſht in the vꝛine of a manchild oꝛ boy, one quarter of an ounce, Gummi Arabicum, Dragagant, burnt Copper, of each one drag. burnt and waſht Pumes ſtone, Opium, of each a ſcrup. Fennell water as much as is needefull for to foꝛme ſmall trociſces thereof: when you will vſe them, then ſteape them in white Wine. The eyes are alſo to be often waſhed with water wherein Roſes are decocted, oꝛ wel water tempered with Vineger and ſoure Wine: for this is alſo fit, Wine leaues, and if they cannot be had, then in the ſtead of them is the iuice of Shepherds purſe vſed, wherein burnt lead bzꝛuſed ſmall is to be tempered, alſo the iuice of Quince leaues, and Pedlar leaues, and then ſallad oile muſt be put amongſt it, and ſo lay it ouer the ſore eye.

A drying
and aſtrin-
gent Col-
lyrium.

Where the eyes do bake together in the ſleepe.

Take the iuice of Houſelocke, and annoynt the eyes therewith: it doth ſoke them ſoftly, and coole them.

Item, take iuice of Agrimony alone, oꝛ tempered with tꝛomans milke: alſo Roſe water, and other waters for to ſoke therewith the dyed matter of them.

Of *Egyleps*, a certaine ſwelling betweene the noſe and the corner of the eye. §. 9.

There cometh otherwhiles a ſmall impoſtume betweene the noſe and the corner of the eye, the which the Phyſicians call *Egyleps*. If the ſame be not holpen betimes, then doth it infect the bone. The Chirurgeons do heale the ſame in this manner; they cut bp the uppermoſt ſkinne, and wꝛing out the impoſtume which lyeth lockt in a little bladder, and cut it off as nere as may be, the reſt do they take away with an actual oꝛ potentiall Cauteꝛy. The ſame ſwelling doth ſettle it ſelfe otherwhiles in the length of the eye lids, yet both are to be holpen with Demeale, Wine, and Tutia tempered together in manner of a Salue.

Of

Of Blemishes or spots in the Eies. §.10.



These are of two speciall kinds; red, and white: The red are caused thorough blood, when there appeareth in the eie a red drop, or a darke (like as a congealed blood) which at times is also blacke: that is wont to be caused of blowes, falls, great labour, much weeping, and such like. In like manner also of inward causes as hath been said of *Ophthalmia*, and of red or ouer heated eies.

For this is also much commended, the blood of Turtle doves, wilde Pigeons, or (if one cannot haue them) of common house Pigeons being let blood vnder the wings, (like as is already rehearsed) and chiefly in the beginning, if one temper some fine *Bolus* amongst it, and the eies to be fomented with warme water wherein wilde Tyme, *Parozam*, fennel and Barley is decocted.

A water for the eies. Take the seede of Ameos, Comin, fennell rootes and the seedes sodden together, and a little *Salgemma* tempered amongst it: you shall often times let some thereof drop into the eies.

If it be needfull to vse any stronger thing for it, then take one quarter of an ounce of *Oypiment*, put eight ounces of water vnto it, stir it well about, & then let it settle: poure the water cleere from it, that no substance of the *Oypiment* run with it, and drop thereof in the eie. But god hede must be taken in the vse of this sharpe venim, that there follow no bad accident after it: therefore it is moze sure to vse this following.

Take prepared Bloodstone three drag, burnt Copper one quarter of an ounce, red Corall, Pearls, of each halfe a dragin, *Gummi Dragagant* of each two dragmes and a halfe, Pepper the waight of thirty graines, washt Ceruise one dragin, *Oypiment*, Dragon blood, Saffron, Amber, of each halfe a dragme; make a dough thereof with the blood of Turtle doves, of Pennes, or common Pigeons blood, and forme *Trocises* thereof about the waight of one dragme. When you will vse these, vse them in womans milke, and put a drop thereof in the eie.

It is also very good for the skinnes of the eies, whereof wee purpose to intreate hereafter. A plaister. Take Doves dung, make it with wine and vineger into a plaister, and applie it like warme vpon the eies.

Or take that which followeth which is moze certaine. Take Raisins, put out the stones, powne them, and put vineger to it, vse it as before.

Item take fresh Cheese matly salted, Radishes rosted in ashes, Helilot, Cammomil, of each one ounce, rosted Lilly rootes, meale of Lentils, Dragon blood, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron one quarter of an ounce: temper them all together with the bzaied white of an egge, vnto a plaister.

In like maner it is also good to foment the eies with the decoction of Coleworts, and the leaues thereof (sodden together in wine in manner of a plaister with Cammomil) laide vpon the eies.

Now concerning the white spots which doe come commonly after the Impostume of the eies. Of these some are thin, and some are thicke. But they that stand vpon the white and be thin, doe the sight no hurt: but those that are thicke, and lie vpon the apple of the eie, they remaine and are almost vnpossible to be healed, but to be somewhat eased, and rather in children then in aged folkes.

Now albeit that this is hardly effected without the manuell operation of an *Oculist*: yet neuerthelesse are these things verie good for it, and especially if the same be white and thin.

First of all he is to bath oftentimes in water, or at the leastwise to foment his face and eies so long with warme water, vntill the face be thoroughly red and sweating: and if that thereby be caused a rednes or paine of the eies, it is to be omitted certaine daies, and after wards begin againe. Also you may vse water wherein Mallowes, Hollihocke rootes, Oten strawe, Barley, Dyes, and chieslie fencgreek are decocted; for this is a certaine and approued receipt. After this fomenting, strowe this powder therein: take *Sarcocolla*, white Sugar, *Spuma maris*, of each a like much, and vse it verie small.

Item take Cuttle bone powdered small, and temper it with womans milke.

Take Swallowes dung, honie as much as is needfull, and if you will make it softe, mixe it with

with Fennell water. But the stoie of Tobias doth shewe that this medicine is especially perillous.

Take the eyes oftentimes moyst with fresh womans milke, but if you cannot get it, then vse the waters wherein Pallowes and Hollyhock rootes be decocted: afterwards you may put thereto the *Sieff de Thure*, the which you must prepare like as hereafter followeth.

Take Frankinsence five drag. *Ammoniaccum*, Sarcocolla, of each two drag. and a halfe, Saffron one drag. beate them all vnto an impalpable powder, and with the musculage of Fene- greake make it into trocisces: vse it with womans milke, it doth mundifie the eyes apparantly.

In like manner, the *Seiff de Plumbo* doth ingender flesh where there be small sores and spots, and it is thus made: Take burnt Lead, Antimony, prepared Tutia, burnt Copper, *Gummi Dragagani*, of each halfe an ounce, *Opium* 15. graines: make it very subtile, and forme Trocisces thereof with rayne water: It is very good for all diseases of the eyes, it clenseth and driueth the matter out of the eyes, when it is mixt with Rose water, it taketh away all manner of vnclean- nes out of the eyes, and stayeth the defluxion also, but preserveth especially the sight of the eye.

Item, take Litharge of silver brused very small, Comin, Barberies, Gallingall, Ginger, Aristology, Cloues, Nutmegs, of each one drag. beaten small, put a pint of Palmesley vnto it, or any other strong Wine: stirre it well about thre or foure dayes, afterwards strayne it thro: into a cloth into an other glasse, and preserve it well stopp'd, for it is good for all spots of the eyes, and also for all fractures of the bones, and it draweth the wounds together without stitching. First take water that droppeth from distilled honny two ounces, Sugarcandie one quarter of an ounce, drop it twice aday in the eyes. Sugarcandie is good for all diseases of the eyes, and for the sight. Rosemary water made vnder the earth is also very good for these blemishes of the eyes, the which some do thus prepare: Fill a glasse with Rosemary flowers, stop it with wax on the top, and bury it in the Dogdayes about halfe a foote deepe in the earth 40. dayes long, and then yeldeth it a water.

Vertues of
Sugarcan-
die.

Water of
Rosemary
for the eyes.

When the pearles or Velmes be new.



When the pearles or spots be new, there are foure kinds of waters to be vsed for them. First of all (as is sometimes admonished) let womans milke be drop- ped into it, and afterwards fine brused Cuttle bone blowne into the eyes. Secondly, take the iuice of Cozneroses and of Centoie, of each one ounce, honny two ounces. Thirdly, take Swallowes dung brused small and drye, halfe an ounce, honny as much as is needefull. For to make a dough, let it dry: take thereof one drag. and a halfe, Cybright water two ounces, temper them together, this is wonderfull, but (as is already sayd) perillous. Fourthly, take Cuttle- bone two drag. Sugar one drag. make a subtile powder therof, and let some of it be blowne into the eyes: But if the flecks be out, then are they to be somented with womens milke, or with the decoction of Hollyhock rootes, Pallowes, Barley or Dats strawe: afterwards this following is good. Take fresh egge shels, burne them a little, the dung of a grene Lizard, *Sphma maris*, Sar- cocolla, that hath lien certaine dayes in the iuice of Celendine, washt Ceruise, of each one drag. prepared Tutia, *Sagapenum*, Galbanum, of each halfe a drag. Cuttlebone, Ginger, of each one scruple, Rites gall two scruples, poune all that is to be pouned, and temper it with the water of Celendine.

For this serueth also the foresaid Rosemary water, which is made vnder the earth. Fourthly take Merdigreace one drag. Frankinsence two drag. Witrioll halfe a drag. *Sphma maris*, Celend- dine, Rue, Roses, Rosemary, of each one ounce and a halfe: seeth well the last foure, untill there remaine about foure ounces: mixe the other poulders with this decoction, and let it drye. Afterwards beate it againe, and temper it as before, do this foure times together. Lastly, make a subtile powder of it, and vse it vpon the pearles. It doth strengthen the sight, and taketh away the white pearles without payne: but if it be thick or old, so that none of these will help it, then is the last meane to take it away with the needle, which belongeth only to the manual operators or Occulists.

Of the Fistula in the corner of the Eie. §.II.



There be many Chirurgeons that describe these fistulaes amongst other vlcers of the eies: in which place, namely, in the fist part of this booke we shall describe their natures, and what vlcérations they be: but we will here onely write of this fistula, which is wont to appere in the corner of the eie. The causes of this are bad humours, and for the most part cold, which do a long time in this place settle themselves, putrifie, and lastly impostumate. The signes thereof are humours of the place: and if any wzing it, then it doth paine one: it is somewhat reddie, giueth afterwards greene matter; and it hap- peneth that it oftentimes hurteth the eyelids and the nose. But before that the fistula be tou- ched with any application of cauterie, the patient must be prescribed an order of diet, and must purge well. For diet: first, he must beware of all fat and strong saouring meates, of milke, moist fruits, Vinions, Garlick, Mustard, and all that is much salted. In like sort, all that may replenish the head with hot vapours, as Spices, sleepe immediately after meales, and doing violent exercise.

For to purge, one drag. of the pills of *Hiera Composita* is to be taken; Make fine or five pills thereof with the sirupe of *Calaminta*: If you will first vse preparatiues, then take of the foresaid sirupe one ounce, *Oximel Compositum* halfe an ounce, decoction of Space three ounces. Are you afraid of the heate of the liuer? Take some cooling things therewith, as Cicorie water, or any such like. One may vse fower of these potions in the space of eight daies; in the morning, and at the same time that the bodie is stopped. He is to take euery other day, or euery day, one pill of *Aloephangine* before meate, or washed Aloe. After the taking of these fower potions, these pills following are to be vsed *Pill. de Sarcocolla* two scrup. *Cochiarum* one scrup. make with the sirupe of Roses seven pills of them: afterwards you are to vse euery morning this *Collyrium* following: And after that, apply this plaister on the corner of the eie. Take prepared Antimonie, Frankincense, of each one scrup. prepared *Sarcocolla*, one drag. *Licium*, Dragon blood, burnt Zuorie, parched Dragagant, prepared Iron dross, of each three drag. Rue, Nightshade, and Celendine waters, of each one ounce; let this drie, vntill one may forme dowe thereof: when you will vse thereof, then dissolue it in the foresaid waters, and put two or three drops thereof in the eies.

For a plaister: Take Pommy, fine Bolus, the iuice of Sloes, Frankincense, *Hypocistis*, Balsicke, of each three drag. Acorne cups, Cipers nuts, Gals that are woymeaten, Alenglas, Dragagant, Gum, of each one ounce. The Alenglas must be dissolued in red vineger, and temper the other ingredients amongst it, and make thereof a plaister.

If it be then perceiued that the corner of the eie watereth; and if one wzing or presse vpon it, there come matter out of it: then it is a fistula, and the actuall cauterie is the best meane to heale it. For otherwise it is very vncertaine as *Rasis* writeth: he found this medicine first, that the fistula doth thereby cease certaine moneths that one would thinke the same to be thorough whole, and is thus prepared.

Take Aloe, Frankincense, *Sarcocolla*, Dragon blood, blossomes of Pomegranates, Antimonie, Allume, of each a like much, Merdigrease the fourth part of one of them, make a powder thereof: when it is then needefull, wzing the fistula so long, vntill it yelde matter. Lay the patient on the contrarie side where the fistula is not, and temper this powder with a little wo- mans milke, and drop a drop in it. Now, and a certaine season afterwarde one more, and so fower times one after another: let him lie the space of three howers. Do this the space of a weeke, and loke well to it that the fistula be wung out, and yelde no more corruption or matter.

Now although (as it is said) the accident is vncertaine to be healed, yet is there amongst all the rest, Rue, most highly commended for it. When that the fistula is made wet with the iuice of Rue, and wine of Pomegranates, and couered with a double cloth, also if the cause require to open the fistula so wide vntill one may see the bottome of the same, which may be effected with the drie roote of Gentian, Elderne Pitch, or with an iron. Secondly, the spongiouse flesh which lieth at the bottome, and is the right roote of the fistula, must be killed. The which must be effected with an actuall or potentiall cauterie. The cozzoline is made thus: Take Dyp- ment, Citrioll, *Cantarides* the heads and wings taken off, quicke Lime, Salatmoniack, Allom,

of each one scruple: beate them to powder, and make a dough thereof with the bzine of a man childe; let the same drie, and lay somewhat thereof euery morning in the fistula: this will cleanse it. Also you maie vse this following, which is also very good.

Take Ginger three dzag. Herbigrease one dzag. beate them small together, and sette them in halfe an ounce of vineger vntill it be thicke; annoint the taint with it, or that which you shal laie in the fistula.

Item take fresh Rue, Agrimony, Celendine, of each a dzag. beate them and sette them in five ounces of *Aqua vita*, or water of Rue, vnto the halfe; put some thereof euery day in the fistula, two or three times. Thirdly, it must be cleansed, which is to be effected with *Hydromel* and Rue water, and homie of Roses, or with some wine wherein Roses are sodden. Fourthly, for to cause the flesh to growe or incarnate; you shall take Aloe, Frankincense, *Sarcocolla*, steeped in fennel water, oile of Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, Ware as much as is needfull for a salve; one may put thereto one quarter of an ounce of Treos. In like maner Agrimony is highly commended, and Rue leaues, of each one dzag. decocted vnto the halfe in a pinte of wine, the same being wzong out, and vled euery day, like as is aforesaid.

If Gnats, Flies, or any such like thing seeme to swarme before the Eies. §.12.



This disease proceedeth of flegmaticke and melancholie humors which fall out of the bzaines into the eies, oppilating the sinewes of the sight more or lesse, according as the desluxion is tough, hard, thin, much, or little.

The phisicians doe call this accident *Cataractam*, as a cadent water. It doth some times proceede of a colde stomacke, or thorough some disease of the eies: but if it be caused of the stomacke, then is the danger not so great; for as soon as the occasion is taken away, then auoideth that which is caused thereof. But the other is much to be feared, and very needfull to be looked vnto, whilst it is yet time: but when it wareth old it is incurable by phisicke; and can by no meanes be holpen, but thorough the needle, and that is also vncertaine.

That which is caused from the stomacke, maketh befoze both the eies buzzing and flying, as if there were Gnats or somewhat else, that swarmed so befoze the eies; and that much more, if the stomacke be full, then when it is emptie. Also whensoever such fantasies doe continue, enduring befoze the eies the space of a moneth or twain without any alteration of the apple of the eie, or disclosing of any other signes; then may one assuredly iudge, that these diseases are caused of the stomacke: for this patient is a certaine order of diet to bee ordained, and he must purge with *Pillulis Cochis*.

But if this swarming of the Gnats or flies be onelie befoze one eie, and not to be wiped off; then maie it well be deemed that this disease cometh by reason of some moisture which lieth closed in the eies, especially if one see no darke thing in the eie: but if one perceiue any darke thing therein, then without all doubt the sinew of the eie is stoppt and obstructed. Nowe for to helpe this infirmitie, there is nothing more to be aduised then to begin with a good diet: first is heede to be taken, that the whole bodie, and especially the head be couered well, and kept warme: he must refraine all moist aire and dwelling, and not loke much into the water (specially where it is much stirred with the wind) he must oftentimes fasting rub and combe his head. He must bathe his face befoze supper with this decoction following: Take Bay leaues, Sage, Betonie, *Stechus*, *Pennirofal*, and such like, except Smalage and Will. Item let him be often times rubbed with warme clothes from the necke to the shoulders downewardes: after meate he must refraine from forcible exercise, and (if it be possible) he must abstaine three houres from wzing, and beware of all hard meate; but vse all that warmeth.

And to recite somewhat thereof in particular, well salted and raised bread is not amisse to be vled, wherein fennel seede or fennel powder is baked. Concerning fieshe, there is nothing more commodious, then sucking Weale, young Sputton, Roe deere, kids, and Hares. Of foules, young Hens, Pullets, Capons, young Pigeons, (and chieflie wilde ones, which haue a secret vertue to strengthen the bzaines) Wartridges, Snites, Fefants, and Quailles: the Blackbird is also permitted for this. Riuer fish are more wholesome then other: neuertheless other fish are tole.

tolerated measurably vsed and bꝛoiled, dꝛessed with Pepper, Ginger, Fennell, Annis seeds, Parsly, Mercurine, Eybꝛight, and Rue. One may eate egges after what manner he list: only so that they be not hard baked, sodden, or roasted. Further, Sugar, Honey, Meriuike, the iuce of Limons and Citrons, herbs of a warme nature, as Sage, all manner of Spints, Pennyroyall, Hyssop, & wilde Thyme, are all good. All kind of Rapes, al their seed consisteth both strengthen the sight. Of all fruits are allowed fresh Figgs, Almonds, roasted haseł Nuts, Pistacies, roasted Chestnuts, Cozans, Raysons, Salet oyle, Oyle of Walnuts, Oyle of swæte Almonds. These Spices following may be also vsed, as Pepper, Callingall, Cloues, Putmegs, Pace, Ginger, Synomom, Craynes, *Lignum Aloes*, Comin, fresh fennell, Eybꝛight strowed vpon his meate, or take halfe an ounce of Eybꝛight, one quarter of an ounce of Pace: and alwayes take one scrup. thereof befoze meate, for this hath ben found to haue oftentimes holpen them that had their sight blemished: Rue seede is also very good, and for them that haue this passion in the eyes, are the herbs, rootes, and seedes of Diony good, howsoeuer they be prepared for the taking. Also Treacle, and Pithydat, haue a speciall proprietie to put away the clouds, and all that swarmeth befoze the eyes. *Auenzoor* doth write, that all they which be burthened with the foze mentio- ned Catarracts, or dymmes, that if they loke earnestly into the eye of an Ass, thereby the desuri- on should be stayed: but if so be that this be true, it is a wonderfull worke of nature. This powder following may also be vsed for an approued thing, for many haue ben holpen thereby.

Take Eybꝛight with the flowers beaten small, Pace, of each an ounce and a halfe, silver mountayne thꝛe quarters of an ounce, Sugar foure ounces and a halfe: make a powder thereof.

It is also very good that one hold his face oftentimes ouer the vapoꝝ of the decoction of Celendine, Fennell, and Eybꝛight: but such like moe shall follow hereafter.

What these patients must refraine.



Every such patient must beware of those things that make great disturbance in the head, as anger, calling, crying aloud, raging, sorrow, stench, and from much wat- ching, because they much weaken the naturall heate. But he must oftentimes let blood, and vse boring cups. But as concerning his meate: there are hurtfull for him all still standing waters, seafish, and all fish which are taken in moyish waters, to be eaten ra- ther sodden then bꝛoiled if one should often eate of them, Crabs, Celes, Tenches is he viterly to forbear: also milke, and all that is dꝛest with milke, and he must not vse much Vineger but only outwardly. All herbs of cold and moyst natures, as Endiue, Wætes, Spinage, Purcelane, Lettice, Colcombers, Gourds, and chiefly Coleworts which darken the sight, are to be es- chued and left. Of all Rootes are chiefly forbidden Garlick, Onyons, Radishes. In like manner also all pottages (except red pease, which be called *Cichelings*) Rice, Wheate, and Bar- ley: all fruits which be swæte and colde, as Apples, Cherries, Pingles (whether they be con- fected or not) are to be refrained. And he must chiefly beware of all that which prouoketh na- sing, and the cough. There is nothing better for his drinke, then cleare Wine of a good taste, and that is metly strong, but a litle at once. But they that drinke no Wine, or haue no Wine, may vse from October vnto March this following: Take Merueine, Celendine, Rue, Eybꝛight, of each one quarter of an ounce, sethe them in twelue quarts of water, vntill the thirde part be consumed, put 14 pound of honny vnto it: sethe it againe vntill about the thirde part be sodden away, alway skimming it, then strayne it thꝛough a cloth, and kepe it stoped close in a pot. Now if the sicke person desire it, then may Wine (that is mette for the eyes) the fift or sixt part be tem- pered amongst it. By this drinke hath ben perceiued much amendment, and that in auncient folke who had a darke sight haue ben holpen therewith. Also *Hydromell*, which is honny water or mead, is much commended for this, without any addition. Euery one may deminish or in- crease the quantity of the honny euen as it pleaseth him best.

For as much as concerneth purging, which is exceeding needfull, he must know to direct him according to the time of the yeare, otherwise in winter then in sommer, otherwise in the spring of the yeare then in haruest, or fall of the lease, which were too long to rehearse at this present, and therefore we will recommend that to the Physicians. But there are to be commonly vsed *Pillula Cochie*, *de Sarcocolla*, sine quibus, *De hiera Composita*, *Lucis*, of the confections *Hiera Picra*, *Bene-*

dicta laxativa, & Hiera longodion. The Clifters are to be decocted with the common herbs, and tempered with one ounce of *Hiera*. further it is then commaunded to take in winter a pce of confected Ginger: in like manner also after dinner and supper to vse one of the tabulats follo- wing: Take *Spec. de Xyle*, Aloe thre draz. *Diacinamomi* one draz. white Sugar foure ounces, sethe them with fennell water, and cast Tabulates thereof, of a metly bignes.

And if he begin to perceiue any clearenes, he must in the beginning of March drinke of this decoction following foure ounces alwayes foure houres before meate in the moztning: first, take Ginger, white Pepper, *Calmus*, of each one draz. floures of Eyebright, Balsam wood, of each a quarter of an ounce, thre clenfed Hermodacils, stamp them all together, and sethe them in thre pints of water, vntill two parts be consumed. Secondly, take the iuice of fennell, common lye which is not sharp, of each two ounces, Tutia prepared with the bzine of a manchild one draz. and a halfe: set this the space of 20. dayes in the sunne, and vse it as shall be declared here- after. Thirdly, take iuice of Roses one draz. common lye, Eyebright water, of each one ounce, set it (as is said) in the sunne, and make the eyes therewith moyst euery moztning and euening two howres before meate: vse also the iuice of Roses alone, annoint therewith the forehead and the temples of the head.

Before supper he is to take all the spring time a quarter of an ounce of *Diacorum*. Fourthly, take Gall, Pasticke, sealed earth, the iuice of Sloes, of each one draz. *Sandaraca* one ounce, the iuice of Roses as much as is needfull to steape the same in: bray it altogether in a moztter vntill it be metely thicke: annoynt therewith alwayes euery third day when you go to bed, the forehead, and the temples of the head.

Fifthly take Pace, Eyebright, of each one draz. and a halfe, *Lignum Aloe* one quarter of an ounce, fennell, Comin, Amos, of each halfe a draz. Amber two scrup. Sethe this altogether in a pint of fennell water vnto the halfe: Take alwayes foure ounces at once tempered with Sugar: drinke thereof foure times a weeke, thre houres before meate:

In the sommer you are to vse this following euery moztning at the least euery second day, then must you chew (but not swallow) a pce of Pastick and *Cucubes*. Item, take fennell, Celendine, Rue, the iuice of Roses of each thre ounces, Sugarcandie, white Sugar, of each five ounces, Sugar pennets, foure ounces of fennell seide, Licorice, Violets, Roses, Eyebright, of each one ounce, Distaces thre draz. that haue bene steeped five dayes in Eyebright water, and be dyed againe: pound them all to powder. The Sugar is to be sodden vnto a sirrup so: to make a confedion thereof, and take thereof euery moztning about halfe an ounce. Secondly take the iuice of Werneine two ounces, the iuice of Roses, of fennell, water wherein Licorice hath ben sodden, of each two ounces, the gall of a Pickrell one draz. temper it, and set it 20. dayes in the sunne. This *Collyrium* is to be put once or twice into the eyes, before meate, or at least moisten them therewith, so: it is very good and sure.

In the beginning of haruest, and after purging, one must vse to chew sometimes *Calmus*, otherwhiles Nutmegs, Calingall, or as much *Agaricus* as the bignes of a beane: spew out the slime (as is sayd) and then vse the confedion with the salue of the forehead.

A plaister for the head, take cleane *Landanum* halfe an ounce, Rosen one quarter of an ounce, Celendine, *Lignum Aloes* of each one draz. Cloues halfe a draz. melt the two first in sharp Wine- ger, temper them afterwards with strong Wine, and let them all sethe thicke with the herbs: put the spice vnto it, and make a plaister thereof, and spread it on leather, couer it with red Syndall, make it that it be as large till it come ouer the eyes, this warmeth, dyeth moderately, and strengtheneth the bzaines. This powder following may also be strowed vpon the head, take *Lignum Aloes*, Eyebright, wild Time, Hyssop, Stechas, of each one draz. Pace thre quarters of an ounce, Violets one draz. and a halfe, pound each of them by themselves, and temper them well: thereof strowe vpon the head alwayes two houres after supper, on the top of the crowne about the waight of a scruple, and that once in thre or foure daies, the same helpeth much. Or take this powder following, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloues, Cardamome, of each halfe a draz. Amber, Eyebright, fennell, floures of Celendine, Roses, of each one scrup. Pace one draz. make there- of a fine powder, and vse it as before: but take not moze then five graines thereof at one time, and when you will strowe moze vpon it, then first brush off the former.

Item, winde small stamped *Parierom* in a pce of silke, and smell oftentimes thereto, fume also your head or hat oftentimes with *Lignum Aloes* ouer the fire.

There

There may also sometime be vsed drying head ley, whereof euery where many be discovered. Famous Phisicians doe also require to take euery moneth an ounce and thre quarters of *Hierapicra*, tempered with fennell water, and that without any feare; for that it is a gentle medicine. There may be taken euery moneth in the steede of the other, two scruples of the powder of Centorie, with fennell water, and fast fixe houres after it.

With the things that are to be doopt in, one must goe to worke very prouidently, and that not carelesly, but onely in great neede, and when the body is well clenfed. Amongst the same be these commended, which are also the least: Take the iuice of fennell well clenfed two ounces, let one drag. of *Salgemma* be dissolved therein, put thre or foure times a daie one drop thereof into the eie. Do take the iuice of fennell as it is, or that which is thicke one drag. bynise it in an ounce of the water of Ciebricht, vse it as before. For this are also good the galls of rauening birdes, and also of fefants, Partridges, and such like, which eate no flesh. This simple *Collyrium* following is very much commended: Take the gall of a Pickerell one quarter of an ounce, *Salgemma* halfe a scruple; let them melt together. In like maner this following: Take the fresh liuer of a sownd Bucke being washed, pick it well thorough, and fill it with long Pepper, fennell and Ciebricht powder, of each a like much: put it on a spit, and let it rost by a gentle fier, receiue the iuice that droppeth from it in a cleane pot, and vse it as a *Collyrium*.

Do take in the end of Aprill the iuice of fennell, stop it tight in a glasse, and let the same 15 daies in the sunne: afterwards straine it thorough a cloth, and temper Aloes vnto it six ounces, one ounce of *Lignum Aloes* beaten small: let it afterwards stand fiftene daies in the sunne, and straine it againe thorough a cloth, and vse it as is rehearsed already.

This following is also many times well approued. Take Swallowes heads, burne them to ashes in a couered pot; take one quarter of an ounce thereof, clarified homie thre ounces, the iuice of fennell one ounce; temper them all together in a glasse, stop them tight, and sethe them in water vnto the halfe: vse thereof morning and euening, and before and after meat, one drop.

Item burne fennell stalks to ashes, powre ley vpon it, wash therewith the eies and eyelids, for it is very good. It is likewise also good that each one vse his owne vyne, or that of a man childe.

Forasmuch then as for these diseases there be many kindes of remedies described: therefore may one chuse that which liketh him best, and to follow all that one findeth to doe good, for there are not so many described that they should altogether be vsed, but because that one might chuse thereof, and vse onely all that one may get most easilie.

Of the Skin of the Eie. §.13.



It is declared in the beginning, that out of olde Cataracts there doth easlie engender a skin, and the starre, which will take away the sight; whereof we now meane to write: there be therefore commonly two kindes of them discovered by the Phisicians; as the red and the white. The red doe the Arabians name *Seber*, which commeth of abundance of blood in the smal vaines of the eies, which doth spreade it selfe abroade ouer the whole eie, so that it seemeth to bee a red cloth; whereof insueth a great itch. The patient can abide by no meanes any light, or sunne, nor fire. This disease will be sometimes also (as is repozted) inherited from the parents, but it infecteth not any bodie else. It is grienous and tedious to be cured, if so be that the manuall operation be not vsed thereto. For this, one of the chiefest things is to leade an ordered life, to vse that which is good and to eschew that which is ill, like as is sufficiently shewed in the 12. §. and is mete for this purpose. For purging are the *Pillula Cochia* or such like requisite. Also for this is aduised to open the head vaine: And for the itch, to wash the eies with water where in Roses, Sorrel and Mallowes are decocted. Do you may prepare this powder: take fresh egshells, that haue been infused nine daies in vineger, afterwards sethe them a good space in the same vineger, drie them in the shadow, stampe and bryse the same: this powder is to be vsed oftentimes in the eies.

Some doe temper amongst it *Sarcocolla*, Aloe, Ginger, Gumme, of each the third part of the egshells, and make it with Ciebricht water vnto a *Collyrium*: It may be vsed in maner of a powder.

der, being beaten small.

Item take Ceruise which is washt nine times in Rose water, one drag, burnt Copper, Gummi Dragagant, prepared Sarcocolla, Beuer cod, Aloe, Frankincense, Opium, prepared Pearles, Camfere, of each a drag. temper this with the iuice of Celendine, make your hands fat with the oile of bitter almonds, and make trocisces thereof, the waight of halfe a dragm. Afterwardes dissolue one of them in fennell water, and when you will vse it, put some thereof into the eies: it clenseth them, and taketh away the skin from the eies.

Item make this powder following, which is good to take off the white skin when it is but new: the same is also good for running and soze eies. Take Ginger, Pepper, Mirabolani Indi, and of the yelloiw Spirabolans, of each fine drag. Aloes one drag. and a halfe, Cuttle bone three quarters of an ounce, Antimonie three drag. Cassia wood and Cloues, of each halfe an ounce: make all this vnto a subtil powder, and let it be blowen into the eies. And if so be that these foresaid things do not helpe, then must the skin be pluckt off: whereof it is not our meaning here to shew the manner.

Vogula.

Now as concerning the white skin of the eies, which the Physicians do call *Vogula*, which is a naile: for that it is likened to a naile of the finger, which is of nature betwene skin and flesh, and groweth from the corner of the eie towardes the middle of the same: Of these some be harde, and some be soft, yellowish, darkish and reddish, and haue some societie with the foresaid Sebell, whereof some be light, and others very hardly cured by manuell operation. They do growe out of all corners and sides of the eies, vntil that in part of in whole they couer the apple of the eie. The cause of this are many tough and thicke humors, like as one may see in horses, and fower footed beasts mo, which are fed with grosse fode. Now what one is to beware of in this sickness, hath bene before declared at large in the 12. S.

For this (like as also in all other) is very good the letting of blood and purging, with all other things which repell this descurion, for the beginning of the cure, like as is sufficiently shewed in the former instructions. Now henceforth we will go and discourse of the smallest and newest skins.

Take Pallowes, Cammomill, Hollihocke rotes, Linesæde, of each halfe a ℥. let it seethe well, and receiue the vapour into the eies: afterwards vse the *Collyrium* which is described before in the 8. S. and beginneth thus: Take beaten Bloodstone, &c.

Item take *Vinum Punicum*, put a good deale of Rue therein, and let it stand in a glasse the whole sommer in the sunne, drop thereof into the eies. The same doth drie away the new skin, and all darknesse of the eies. The iuice of Celendine, of Botes, of fennell, of Meruaine, each a part or mixed, being put into the eies, do take away the heate of the eies, and all darknes of the same.

Do take the flowers of Cicozie as many as you will, put them into a glasse stoppt, couer the glasse with thick dowe, put it then into an ouen. The water which runneth from these flowers, vse to the skin of the eies. This also may be approued: Take Juniper leaues, and the berries that growe thereon: distill water thereof, and put it into the eies. Item take fine honie, vsue some Camfere amongst it, and vse it as all the rest.

Break a fresh peece of Beuer cod in peeces, wherein you shall finde some moisture: temper this with wine, and put it into the eies.

For this is also good, great Ants brused in peeces, and made to pay with the fat of Dnailes, Myrrhe, and fennell water.

Take sixe graines of Pepper, and as much Allome, vineger one ounce, seethe it vnto the third part, and keepe it for daily vse.

Take Grasshoppers, but not the greene, nor them that be big, nor too little: binde them on a thred, and drie them in the sunne: then beate them to powder, binde them in a cloth, and lay it all night in wine, drop thereof into the eie: it is very sharpe. Others do but make a cloth wet therein, and so lay it vpon the eie, and that is surer. Some do vse Elderne pith.

Item take the innermost skins of the mawe of a Sparrowe, halfe an ounce, *Verbascum* seedes three drag. beat them very small, and make it into a salve with the oile of sweet almonds: afterwards take Merdigrease, white Vitrioll, Salarmoniacke, burnt Copper, of each halfe a scrup. long, white and blacke Pepper, greene earthen pottheards, *Sagapenum*, *Galbanum*, of each one dragme, Bucks gals one quarter of an ounce: Powne very small what is to be powdered, temper

temper them with some honie, and put of the iuice of *Parierom* or water vnto it, that thou maiest vse it for a *Collyrium*. There may many be found wherein the venom *Orpimentum* is put, the which I do not willingly rehearse; bicause that where any thicke and olde skin doth couer the eie, it is to be taken off with the needle, so that it is vnnecessarie to bere the eies with any such perilous things.

Of the mists and cloudes of the Eies. §. 14.



The Nebula (which is also called by reason of hir whitenesse *Albugo*) is diuers: *Nebula*.
it hath also other causes than the foresaid white eie skins. *Albugo*.

There be two sortes of these: the first is metely thicke, like the white of a sodden eg to loke vnto: the other is much subtiler, and is like to a cloud, and it is also easier to cure than the other: both procede through the desurion of moistures out of the head, and will be according to the nature of that moisture, thicke or subtile. There commeth also other whiles a third sort into the eies, as of some kinde of buse, or olde impostume, or of any blisters of the eies, which are a long time a curing.

Neuerthelesse it hath bene found, if yong children through the pocks do retaine any such cloudes, and the eies with the bodie be wahren greater; that the same cloudes do lessen in time. The thicke whitenesse is thus to be cured: Euerie morning fasting are the eies to be somented with cleere warme water, or with water of these herbes following, whereof we meane to vse the iuice: Take the iuice of cozne Roses, the iuice of Centorie, temper them together, or vse each by it selfe. Item take the dyed iuice of Celendine thre drag. Ameos one quarter of an ounce, make a powder thereof.

Item take white Sugarcandie, each put apart in the eie, is very good. Take *Pumice* stone, prepared *Sarcocolla*, *Aristologie*, white Sugar, of each a like much: make a powder therof. Cuttle bones alone, or tempered with one of the foresaid, are also very profitable: womans milke after the foresaid bones, milkt in the eies, and vsed often, mollifieth the white skins. This following is also highly commended: Take *Pumice* stones, Cuttle bones, prepared *Sarcocolla*, *Aristologie*, red Cozall, *Bozeas*, of each one drag. Sugarcandie thre quarters of an ounce, make thereof a subtile powder. Take the burnt shels of Sea crabs, prepared *Tutia*, and Sugar: beate them as small as may be. Pow to the end the eies may be clenfed, and the cloudes taken away, this hony following is to be put therein: Take clarified honie two ounces, the iuice of Centorie, the iuice of fennell, of each an ounce and a halfe, let it sethe somewhat, and scum it till it be cleere: drop thereof on the white cloude of the eie. Will you haue the honie moze sharpe? then put thereto thre drag. of *Bozeas*.

Take one part of Swallowes dung, Hony thre partes, temper them together: this will apparantly helpe, but it is sharp like as is said alreadie.

Dispersion, or contraction of the eye beames
or sight. §. 15.



Because that these parts or skinned of the apples of the eye (called *Ragadis* and *Vnea*) are sometimes disgregated through inward and outward occasions, so that they be stretched out euen to the white of the eye, whereby the sight is not a little hurt: It is therefore first to be marked, whether this disease be from the natiuitie, or procede of the great paine in the head, *Cephalaea*. If it be bozne with one, there is then small hope to haue it cured: But if it be caused through any other occasions, as falls, blowes, thrusts, many humors that disperse themselves abroade, or of some former impostume that hath not long bene past, then it is still to be holpen: first, by letting of blood in the head vaine on the contrary side where the disease is; afterwards through purging with the pilles of *Cochia*, and thowow a well gouernde diet. This is one of the best medicines, for it consumeth all humidities not only of the head, but also of the whole bodie. Afterwards one may make a plaister for it with fine Bolus, *Spittle* seede, of each halfe an ounce, Linsede beaten small two ounces, Rose water, and the iuice of *Barbaries*: or take *Pight* shade, *Plantaine*, the iuice of *Houllicke*, of each alike much, and lay it ouer the eies with a cloth.

Sieff de
fellibus.

Item, wet a cloth in Rosewater wherein *Tutia* hath bene infused, and lay it ouer the eies: for this is cauterization in the neck very much commended: but if this disgregation of the sight be small, then it will be easily cured with the *Sieff of Gals*, which hereafter shall follow, which is the said *Sieff of Gals*, or *de Fellibus* is thus prepared.

Take the gals of these afozenamed beasts, to wit, of Cranes, Pickrels, Bucks, Hobbies, Sparhawkes, or of any other rauening birds whatsoeuer, of each two drag. and a halfe, *Euphorbium*, *Coloquinte*, *Sagapenum*, of each one drag. melt the gumme, pounce that is to be pouned, and temper it with the gals, and with two ounces of the iuice of fennell, and vse it like any other *Collyrium*: It is also specially good for those that are pozeblinde, whereof shall be hereafter spoken.

But if the starre or beame of the eye be dispersed because it is hurt, there is then no great care to be taken, for the same is easily to be holpen: make this plaister following. Take beanes, and barly meale, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Roses halfe an ounce, the yolke of an egge, temper it well with the iuice of Endine, as much as is needefull.

Take Nightshade, Poulsake, and Rosewater, of each one ounce, and the white of an egge, make a cloth wet therein, and lay it vpon the eyes. For this is also good, the gall of a Buck, ashes of the burnt head of a Spagpye, of each a like quantitie, tempered with Honny, and the iuice of Celendine, and so layd vpon the eye: this is commended for a very approued receipt.

And if so be that the apple of the eye be contracted and ware smaller, it is then caused through drought: and although naturally the small apple of the eye be good, yet is the deminishing of the same very bad: for this are good moyst meates to be vled, to bath in swete waters, to vse oftentimes womans milke, and drop of the foresaid mildest *Collyrium* into the eyes.

Of the extuberation of the eyes, as if they would
fall out. §. 16.



This is caused through many occasions, as for that the head is full of humors, or that the eyes of themselves do swell through a full bodie, & otherwhiles through winde, and otherwhiles through some kinde of impostume, if there be much blood or siegne with it, whereof mention is before made in the 8. §. It may happen also that the sinewes of the muscles about the eyes are feeble and lamed through some superfluous humor of the head, like as it may well happen by reason of the great paine of the head, through extreme vomiting, and strong straining of going to stöle, of hard coughing, and of such like strong motions: and this hapneth especially in the dropfie, if it come through fulnesse of the bodie, then doth the patient feele a strong pricking and paine about the eyes: if through winde, then is the pricking not so strong, but rather contracting: if it come through much blood, that do the red vaines declare, with heate, *Cholera* maketh pricking and smarting. If this infirmite be new, then it is easily to be holpen (in case that it is not caused through the dropfie) and that onely through good government of diet. But if this infirmite be but small, then lay cotton on the eye and tye it to a linnen band: eate and drinke but little, sleepe much, and refraine from all labour. But if the griefe be much, and with great paine, open the head vaine, and purge with *Hiera* and with pills ordained in *Ophthalmia*. Set boring cups with picking on high vpon the shoulders, foment the eyes with wöll which is dipped in warme vinegar and water, or with water and vinegar wherein Pomegranat blossoms and peles gals and Sumach is decocted, and make the whole face wet therewith. And if therewith be great heate, then make a plaister of the herbe Shepherds purse, Plantaine, and Poulsake, and so applie it vpon the eye. But if it proceede through weakenes of the sinewes, then purge the head, vse Gargarismes, and the Salues that hereafter are taught in *Paralysi* and contraction of the mouth, make a fomentation of warme herbs, or this plaister: take Frankinsence, Mastick, Cipers nuts, and the leaues of each a like much beaten, tempered with oyle of Cammouill but if you will put some of the iuice of Slices vnto it you may.

Of

Of eyes that be burnt. §. 17.

If any bodie face be burnt, so that one haue feare of his eyes, and that they do swell, then take water of Merueine, steepe Quince kernels therein, wping the slime through a cloth, and annoynt the face therewith, and the eyelids: but loke for that which is witten befoze of white and red eyes, what cōleth all kindes of inflammations, or that is declared in the fist part.

When fouer any be stroken in or vpon the eye. §. 18.

Take pounced Myrmelwood, temper it with the bzaied white of an egge, and lay it ouer the eye.
Item, take the iuice of Merueine, the white of eggs well bzayed, lay it on the eyes with a wet cloth: loke also thereof in the 6. Chapter and the 1. §. of the humors of the eye lids.

If any thing be fallen into the eyes. §. 19.

If so be that the eye (through any thing that might fall therein) be bzused or perished, that must forthwith be holpen, to the end that it do not inueterate: for this it is aduised, to take fresh cleare water in the mouth, and spout the same into the sore eye so long, untill all that whatsoeuer be in it may be washed out.

Yet womans milke is more commodious, spouted into it out of the bzest. This may also be done with white Wine, for it causeth the eyes to runne better; and if one wping thereon, then commeth that which is fallen into it with more ease out of it againe.

Or take a peece of white Rosen, let it be made warme in the sunne, or after another manner, then draw it very softly on the apple of the eye, then doth it remaine hanging thereon.

This operation or power is attributed also vnto *Rubys* and *Saphires*: being stroked in the eies.
Roll the vpper eyelid about, and wipe it with a soft linnen cloth, then doth it remaine hanging on the cloth.

Item, take Betony, Celendine, Cybriht, Hyssop, Penniryll, of each alike, seethe them in metely water, and wash the eyes with this whilest that it is warme.

How to cure the deminishing, feeblenes, and darknes of the eyes. §. 20.

The sight is many times of some disease of the eyes (like as in *Ophthalmia* is declared) lessened, and also enfeabled, as the shining of the sunne, looking glasses, shining Copper, lightnings, fire, long darkenes, watching, the beholding of white things, like as when one walketh farre in the snowe, cold ayze, or that chalke, dust, or any things else come into the eyes, through much looking vpon small things, to let much blood, or that one doth it not if he be accustomed, also through an vnchast life. further, the eyes are much weakened with great laskes, great labour, odoriferous things, and specially the *Basilicon*. of which we are not to omit this admirable woork of nature, that is, if one eats too much of this, then will the sight be weakened, where notwithstanding the iuice thereof doopt into the eyes, doth strengthen the sight and dyeth vp the moisture.

These patients must beware of all grosse meates, as cheese, old flesh, colewozts: also from ouermuch eating and drinking, and from fasting. Also all such deminishing of the sight is cleansed through great paine of the head, swimming and great heate, which dyeth too much: also, through cold moistures which obstructeth the sinewes of the sight. There are three kindes of the weakenes of the sight, the first of all deminisheth, when a thing is sene vnperfect, and when it is thought to be lesse; the second kinde is a spoyled or corrupted sight, whereas one seeth any thing otherwise then it is, like as hapneth in the disease *Scotoma*. Thirdly, it is a contracted

sight, when one can discern nothing by the sight, like as in the blindness. For all these aforesaid infirmities, shall the patient first vse preparatiue potions, and purge with the *Pilles Cochia*, or *Stomachica*, and also vse Clusters, which drawe all humors downeward. Fennell seede vled in all meates, is speciall god, both before and after meate: then as it commonly hapneth, that the feeblenes of the eyes do procede of a bad full stomacke which doth cause many bad vapours in the head: then do the auncient Physicians aduise, that these sicke persons shall be caused to vomit, for that will dry and cleanse the stomacke from all bad corruptions and intolerable moystures. Also there be drying powders to be put into the eyes, whereof there be many before described. But if with this imperfection of the sight, there be an abatement or consumption of the bodie, like as one seeth in all those that recouer after a languishing sickness, they must be fed with good meate, for that if one be fasting or hungrie, the paine will be the greater and more forcible: Also he is to be let to sleepe wel, and giuen wine to drinke, to make the head oftentimes moyst with warme water, or to bath: but beware that he sweate not too much.

In the nose and eares is he to drop the oyle of swete Almonds, and besprinkle the eyes oftentimes with yong womans milke.

Hereafter do follow certaine medicines: first a gouernment of life, for that a good order of dyet is no lesse of importance for this, then it is in any other sickness. First of all one is aboute all the other foresaid things, to abstain from very cleare ayre, vnmeasurable venerie, reading small prints, or writings, &c. from going to sleepe with a full stomacke, from all salt and strong meates, from dronkenness, and all that replenisheth the head. If the cause be moysture, then is likewise to be feared bathing, much sleepe, letting blood, cupping, and vaporous meates, new Wine, Beanes, Pease and other pottages, Lettice, Vineger, and Radishes, much fish, peares, apples, and all moyst fruites, especially after meate. In like manner also moyst, darke, and mistie weather, smoke, winde, dust, moyst dwellings, going idle, vnleauened bread, old and grosse flesh, and all that maketh grosse blood. On the contrary side, there be many commodious things that strengthen the weake sight, as the sight of greene fields, trees, the pretious stone *Smaragdus*, greene glasse, greene linnen, and such like more, which are to be set before our eyes, to the end it may thereby be quickened. In like manner also all blew colours, and all other orient colours, as to looke into a Steele looking glasse, in the cleere water, gold, the starres of heauen, the pretious Saphir stone, floures of Burrage, of Cybright, and especially of Larks spurres which are chiefly commended.

Wine, and
conserue of
Cybright.

The like operations are ascribed vnto the Wine and the conserue of Cybright, and that not without reason, for that they be both forcible for to strengthen the sight, and to make it cleare and fresh, so that many old folks through the vse of these haue continued and strengthened their sight with them. They do also deopilate the obstruction of the Spill and Liner being dayly vled, they cleanse the stomacke, and withstand all agues that procede out of the stomacke, for what they serue else, and how they are to be prepared, the Register shall make mention. Wherefore hath the wine of Cybright also, and the conserue of the same, not their names in vaine: for they haue like power in strengthening of the sight, to drie the moistnes of the brains, and to cleere all darke sights.

The water
of the Em-
perour Fre-
dericke for
the sight.

Further it is very commodious, that one do keem well once a day, especially ancient folkes: youtthes are to wash their eyes often with fresh water, also to suffer hunger and thirst sometimes, and to drinke swete water. In like manner all that is mete for the strengthening of the memorie, is also very fit for the sight, as hereafter shall be shewed: and all that is accounted good for the five senses, as the sight, the hearing, smelling, tasting, and feeling. Clere faire aire is alwaies good, bread well raised, good wine soberly drunke, also light meate which fume not into the head: This is now sufficiently written of the order of diet. Now we will come to the medicines, and waters for the eyes. Here vnder is one which was ordained and made for the Emperour *Fredrick*, the third, the which vnto this present day is very highly commended, and is thus prepared: Take Betonie, Rue, Wervaine, Celendine, Cybright, Roses, all of them greene, of each five good handfuls, Aloe one ounce, long Pepper, Cloues, of each halfe a drag. Some also put thereto three handfuls of Woodbine, and the flowers. This being all chopped, is to be distilled through a glasse helme: drop thereof in the eyes, and annoint all the face therewith. Or take the iuice of Fennell and of Wervaine each by it selfe, or mixt amongst other, drop it into the eyes, lay it ouer them with a cloth, it taketh away the dimnesse. There is also described before in this Chapter and

and first S. a water for the eyes of Celendine decocted with honie, which is specially good for all darknesse of the eyes.

Another: Take fennell, Ciebright, and Rosewater, of each one ounce, *Sarcocolla*, *Tutia*, both prepared, Sugarcandie, of each one scrup. the gall of a Pickerell, fine leaues of beaten golde: put these together in a glasse, and let it seth awhile in hot water in a glasse, and vse it as a *Collyrium*. This pserueth the sight maruellously.

Item take Fenegræke, Hollihocke rootes, of each two ounces, cleanse them well, and let them seth well in clære water with a milde fire vnto the halfe: wring them out hard, and straine them thozough a cloth, tempered with Aloe, a quarter of an ounce, Sugarcandie, or Sugar of Roses one ounce, straine it with the Rose water thozough a cloth, and let it seth together vnto a sirupe: pserue it stopt close in a glasse, and vse it as other eie waters. Take prepared *Tutia* one drag, white Amber halfe a drag. Camfers halfe so much, fennell water and Rose water of each two ounces: temper them together. The water that is gathered of the vapour of hot bread maruellously clæreth dim eies: Take Rose water as much as you please, Sugarcandie as much also: Let it stande (befoze that you vse it) a certaine time in the sunne. All gals of rauening birds, as also of Partridges, of Buls, Hares, Wolves, Foxes, and aboue all the Bucks gall, both drie the eies and sharpen the sight. But one of these or moze must be decocted with much iuice of fennell, and clarified honie (once as much moze as the other) and dzopt into the eies. Take the gals of Partridges, Balsam oile, of each one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of Celendine one drag, temper and vse them as the other. The ancient phisitions haue highly praised this following: Take the iuice of Pomegranates which be neither sower nor swæte, two ounces: seth them in a siluer vessell vnto the halfe: then adde clarified honie one ounce, let it boile wel, straine it thzough a cloth, let it stand certaine daies in the sunne, and dzopt it into the eies. Item the iuice of sower and swæte Pomegranates, of each two ounces, set it in the sunne two monethes, then straine it, and temper thereto one drag, of Aloes, long Pepper halfe a drag. And if you desire it to be moze dzying and biting, put thereto one scrup. of Salarmoniacke. The older this is, the better.

Hereafter folloio certaine simples which strengthen the sight, as the iuice of roasted Onions tempered with honie dzopt into the eies, the braines of flitter mice or Bats tempered with honie and dzopt therein, the ashes of the same blowne into the eies especially in the beginning. Rue hath an especiall propertie in the eies, is good eaten, and the iuice of it tempered with the iuice of fennell and honie dzopt into them. Pyssope used in meate is also very meatesoz the sight, Kapes, and sodden yong Doves are very good, also their broth drunken: so are also Swaloloes and Paggies eaten, good for the strengthening of the sight, and the ashes of them tempered with honie, and put into the eies; Calmus rawe and confected is very meate, burnt Corall dziet and consumeth all moisture of the eies: *Scatia* strengtheneth and sharpeneth the sight, and expelleth the rednesse; Almonds are also very good. All odoriferous herbes, as Lauander, Rosemarie, Gilloflowers, Roses, and all pleasant smelling frutes, are good for the eies.

Pomanders. Take Rosemarie, Pep, Pariozam, Benniroyall, of each one drag, *Lignum Aloes*, Pariozam gentle and Pace, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Muscu Ambra*, of each two graines, make thereof a powder, binde it in a pæce of red silke, and smell oftentimes to it. They may also vse the same which haue the diseale of the Catarract, whereof is much admonished befoze.

The ancient phisitions were of opinion, if one annointed oftentimes the eyelids with Corall, pretious stones and golde, or did behold them, that it were to strengthen and clære the sight.

This powder following of *Rasi* is much commended for to strengthen the sight therewith: Take prepared *Tutia* ten drag, make this to passe with the fresh iuice of Pariozam gentle when it hath stood a night and be well settled: afterwards let it drie well, beate it againe, and put Cinnger vnto it, long and blacke Pepper, and Celendine, of each a drag, Salarmoniack halfe a drag, all beaten small, and made moist with the clære iuice of fennell. Let it drie againe, & so pserue it: when you will occupie it, then beate it vnto an impalpable powder, and put it into the eie.

This powder following is to be strowed vpon the head: Take Cloues, *Lignum Aloes*, *Betonica*, *Sandaraca*, burnt Juozie, *Syrax Calamita*, of each halfe a drag, make thereof a powder: strow all the head therewith. As oftentimes as you will vse it, then kembe the head befoze, to the ende the first may come off, afterwards vse twise a moneth when you go to slepe one quarter of an ounce

Pomanders
fit for a bad
sight.

The first part of the

ounce of the troscises of *Diambra*, holde them long in the mouth untill they do melt.

Item take Cumine which is steeped one night in vineger, and afterwarde dried, Annise seedes, prepared Coziander, of each three ounces, fennell seede five ounces: temper them all together. You may also let them be confited with Sugar, and vse it after meate: this strengtheneth the stomack, staith the vapors from gathering vpwards toward the head, and consumeth all colde matter in the stomacke and the head.

A powder to be vsed with meate.



Take Silver mountaine, Ginger, Cucubes, Clones, long Pepper, Nutmegs, the rootes of Celendine, Diptamer rootes, of each halfe an ounce, prepared Cumine, fennell seede, Annise seedes, flowers of Ciebright, with the leaues of each, three quarters of an ounce, prepared Coziander one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as you please: this is to be beaten small together and vsed daily in meate; it strengtheneth the sight, and defendeth against blindnesse.

This following is also to be obserued for a speciall meane that one must gargarise euery ten daies: two daies together in the morning and euening eight or ten times together. Take Parierom gentle one handfull, Licorise halfe an ounce, seethe them in a pint of water vnto the halfe: take a good cruise full thereof, temper amongst it one drag. and a halfe of *Hiera Picra*: gargarise with it (as is said) it is very requisite, but bitter.

After supper take one of these Tabulates: Take *Spec Diambra* one dragm. and a halfe, Ciebright, Celendine, fennell, Meruaine, of each one scrup. the seede of Rue, of Silver mountaine, of each halfe a drag. Sugar five ounces: seethe all these with Ciebright water, and cast Tabulates of it: lastly, take Rue, Celendine, Ciebright water, of each two ounces, fennell, and the iuice of Meruaine of each one ounce, the gall of a Pickerell three drag. *Lignum Aloes* beaten small halfe a drag. the seede of Rue, of Celendine, *Pariozam* gentle, of each one dragm. temper them with the foresaid water, stop it tight in a glasse, and sement it with dowe: afterwards set it in an oven where the bread is taken out, and let it stand a whole day therein. The next day take of the dowe againe, and set it the space of twelue daies in the sunne; afterwarde straine it thorough a tight cloth: but wring it not out, and keepe it in a stoppt glasse: whereof put euery morning and euening one drop in the eye, and lie vpon your backe: then shall you perceiue an apparent amendment of the sight.

Pillule, Pills.



Take white beaten Ciebright halfe an ounce, Carrowaie sodden in vineger and dried, *Pariozam* gentle three quarters of an ounce: *Lignum Aloes*, *Indie Spica*, of each one ounce, the seedes of Sorrell five scrup. temper them with the Julep of Roses, whereof you are to take at one time a halfe or a whole dragm. once in three or fouer daies in the euening when you go to bed.

Will you then make a powder thereof? put thereto prepared Coziander, Cinnamon and fennell, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as you please. This may you take after supper.

This following is a costly confection, and strengtheneth the sight, therefore it is called of *Montagnana*, *Electuarium Occuliste*, because it is very profitable for the abating of the sight which proceedeth through flegmatical humors: for besides that it strengtheneth the vaines, it ressozeth the lost sight againe; and maketh also the spirits of the sight subtiler and stronger.

The confection of Montagnana for a bad sight.

Take Silver mountaine seed, Ciebright, fennell and Cucubes, of each a drag. Cardamome, Spice, of each one dragm. and a halfe, the seede of Celendine, of Rue, of each one quarter of an ounce, Rosemarie one ounce, Annise seede, *Lignum Aloes*, Caroway, *Consolida Sarracemica*, of each halfe an ounce, Sugar or Honie, as much as is needefull for to make thereof a confection.

Another.

Take dried Betonie, Celendine, Ciebright, Hyssope, Penniropall, of each one drag. fennell, Silver mountaine, Annise, prepared Coziander, and *Pariozam* gentle seedes, Basil seedes, Cardamome,

Cardamome, Cinnamome, Ginger, Galingale, Putinegs, Cloues, long Pepper, *Lignum Aloes*, Spikenard, of each halfe a drag. preserved Citron pills three drag. conferues of Borage, of Rosemarie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar decocted in fennell and Rose water as much as is needefull for to make a confection. This patient shall take also after purging the second or third day one dragm. of Treacle, *Aurea Alexandrina*, or Spithivate. And make a potion: Take halfe a drag. of Treacle, breake it in wine, water of Rue or fennell, and take it once every weeke, yet this is best of all that one may vse for a weake sight, preserved *Chebuli* eaten fasting doth much strengthen the sight; some chaw every morning Juniper berries, spitting it afterwarde into the hands, and letting the fume go into the eyes: the which can also strengthen the sight much. The same vertue hath also chewed Annis, Cumine, and especially fennell seede, whether they be conected or no.

All later and ancient writers do commend this remedie following as well for the strengthening of the sight, as for those that be purblinde: Take the liner of a Bucke, take off the gall, cut broad peeces out of it, lay therein whole long Pepper, couer it with another peece of liner and Pepper as before, thus continuing til all the peeces be laide one vpon another, so that aboue and beneath be nothing but liner. But this then into an ouen, and drie it well away: then take of the Pepper, beate it small and mixe some *Opusculum* amongst it, and with the moisture which droppeth from the liner, moisten therewith the powder, and make losings thereof, preserve it untill you haue neede of it, then temper it with Siebricht water, or such like, and vse it as the other. To these spices of medicines are three kindes of commodities ascribed: the first to drop fatnesse into the eyes: the second to receiue the warme vapour into the eyes: thirdly, that the patient eate thereof many times a yere, every time three daies together.

One more (which is almost like vnto it) doth hereafter follow: Rose a Hogs liner, wet the eyes with the damp of this rosmearie, and rub the fatnesse on the eyelids.

Take a slip of Rue, drinke the infusion of it at your meale, it is also very good for this.

Take Cinnamome, Cloues, Pace, of each a like much, powze Palmsey vpon it, and vse it as you please.

When one hath then used a good deale of these foresaid things, and there be yet perceiued much more moisture in the eyes: there is sometimes to be used for to drie the braines of this iuice following, drawing it by thorough the nose, to wit, of *Parioram* gentle and Dane weede.

There are also twise a weeke two of these pills following to be taken after supper: Take *Pillula lucis*, *Rubarbe*, of each one scrup. and a halfe, and make thereof five or seven pills.

Of all those that after the rising of the Sunne, do see nothing at all, or very badly. §. 21.

This infirmite of the sight is of two kindes. The first is when one can see well in the day time, but against the euening and night can see nothing or very badly. The other to the contrarie, when one in the day time doth see little or badly, moving the eyes vp and downe, when he doth come into the clerenesse, without holding them open, therefore be they commonly called in Dutch blinde Cats: but when it groweth towarde euening, then begin they to amend, and can see much better. Both these infirmities do procede of like causes and according as the spirits of the sight be formed, whereof the philosophers do dispute much. The Grecians do call them *Nyctilopas*, the Latinists *Lusciosos*, in English purblinde, whereof *Galenus* speaketh generally, that it is a disease which proceedeth of no manifest cause. Others write that it is incident rather to blacke eyes than to other: what concerneth the signes, they are to be inquired of them that haue this infirmite.

First for this is reputed good, if the partie be full of blood, that first of all the head beine, afterwards the beines in the corners of the eyes be opened: others do aduise to open the median and the beine in the forehead. Afterwards whether it be of a *Phlegma* or *Melancholia*, purge with the pills *Cochia* or *Lucis*, and then to take Spithivate or Treacle. In the eye is to be used the fat of the Bucks liner (described before) or to temper it with a little of the Bucks gall, or the Bucks gall alone decocted with a little vineger, applied likewise as aforesaid: for in this disease is most of all commended, that which commeth from the Bucke or Goate. *Plinius* admonisheth that some haue aduised, that one should wazap the Goates dung with waxe, and so swallow it downe.

¶

He writeth also that this blindness is to be holpen with Goats blood, and it may come thereby, so that it is said that those beasts do see as well by night as by day: therefore it was commanded to *Nycrpolis* to eate the Bucks and Goats liuer roasted. And how the same shall be best is shortly before declared where we haue discoursed of the diminished and weake sight.

When one is waxen almost blinde. §. 22.

If there fall any moisture in the eyes which maketh one almost starke blinde, then it is found out by experience, that the decoction of a Vipser, the head and tayle chopt off, hath open (yet the intrayles pluckt out and stuffed with fennell seeds) like as also helpeth if one eate the flesh of this Serpent boyled. This is reported of the nature of the viper snake.

The like vertue also hath the decoction of *GMAIACUM* used after his manner or kinde, the which is not only mete for this, but also in certaine confections for the sight, which Pope *Innocentius* the third did send to an Abbot, who was almost blinde, and is made thus: Take fennell seede halfe a pound, Siluermountaine seede and blew Chamedris of each foure ounces, Smal-lage, Annis, Parslyseeds, Pennyroyall, Hyssope, Sarisfrage, Juniper berries, of each one dragm. the seede of Stauesacre two ounces: this being beaten small with Hony or Sugar, and a confection made thereof, and vse thereof morning and euening, and you shall see meruailes.

Commeth the cause of the hindrance in sight through obstructions of the sinnewes whereby the sight commeth into the eyes: then vse the Pills *Cochie* and *Lucis* of each halfe a dragm. make 7. or 8. pills thereof, swallow them in the morning betimes and fast five houres vpon it, vse them once euery month. Afterwards vse this confection, take Pennyroyall, Rue, Betony, Celendine, of each one handfull, Sarasfrage, Louage, Annis, Cammomill, Ginger, fennell, Parsly, Hyssop, Pariozum, Siluermountaine, of each two dragm. and a halfe, Gallingall halfe an ounce, poune all very small that is to be pouned, and temper it with Sugar which is clarified in fennell water, it requireth halfe a pound of Sugar at the least, cast Tabulates of it, and then lay them vpon the tong, and let them melt of themselves: this do and continue it the space of two or thre monthes, all after that the blindness is great and hath long continued.

Of Squintnesse. §. 23.

This is a distraction of the eyes out of their naturall places towards the right or left side vppwards or downewards: the occasion of this is sometimes through resolution of the sinewes where the whole place doth draw that infirmed vnto it. Also it may be a crampe in the same sinewes, where to the contrarie the shrinking sinewes do draw the whole vnto them it commeth also very well through a custome, when yong children in the cradle do lye alwayes vpon one side, and open but one eye: but if the squintnes do come through slacknes of the sinewes or the crampe, that is seene and shewed by the signes which are described in *Paralyse*, or in the crampe. This disease could the auncient Physicians heale very badly, and it is very vncertaine in yong children, neuertheless we will not pretermitt to shew our aduise for it: on the side where the disease is, put some clearenes to the end the eye may be drawne to his naturall place: also when it is carryed about on the arme, the auncient Physicians haue used all those things which were wont in *Paralyse* and in the distraction of the mouth to be adhibited.

Hydromell, hony water: how to make and vse the same. §. 24.

It is before oftentimes mentioned, and therefore it is very worthy for to describe here how to make it: The auncient Physicians toke rayne water and hony decocted therewith, skimming it well, and vsing it for a common drinke: in the shade of water or wine, like as also it standeth discovered in many places of this booke: now it is for the most part made with well water and hony: In fine, *Hydromell* is no other thing but our common meade without any addition: of other sorts of meade is spoken hereafter in the eight part.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Nose.



His is also one of the principallest outward members of the face, artificially conioined of sinewes and gristles, and by nature ordained for manie kind of uses: for who knoweth not how exceeding needfull it is for the life, and for preservation of the good breath, and for discerning of all smells and sauiors: in behalf of both these two causes is the Nose set in the height of the bodie, and endued with such a property that it might refresh and coole the heart, the lights and al inward parts with continual breathing, without the which no man liueth.

Besides this it hath power to discerne and iudge the sauor of the meate: It is set besides and aboue the mouth, to the ende it might adiudge and giue euidence to all befoze it goeth into the mouth what is pleasant and what is to be eschewed, or is necessarie or hurtfull: it standeth also in the middelt of the face not onely for a garnishing, but also for a stay or defence betwene both the eyes for to defend them (as hath bene said befoze.) It is also a right pipe or gutter to purge and cleanse thereby all the moisture of the braines and the head; to the end there should nothing fall downe vpon the breast or other principall parts that might there cause great sickness. This member is subiect also to many kind of diseases, as Impostumes, Obstructions, Rheumes, excessive bleeding, losse of smelling, of all which and others mo, shal be hereafter spoken.

Of Obstruction or stopping in the Nose. §.1.

This infirmite is caused thoroow inward or outward occasions: If the nose be stoppt thorough falling, striking, or thursting; then must it swell: if it be then swollen, then be the waies thorough which the breath and smell commeth stopped: yea also the smell otherwhiles wholly lost. It may also be well stoppt thorough some grosse moisture that falleth out of the head and braines, which cannot passe thorough the nose, for that the nose vents are thereby stopped. As much as then concerneth any outward busing, there must be salues and plaisters layd vpon it, like as vpon other tumors. The same being healed, the vents and pores will be open againe, and the smelling restored, yet it is alwaies good aduise to set boring cups vpon the necke and shoulbers, and to laie vpon the breast braied whites of eggs, tempered with some Camphere. But of this stopping shall be spoken moze at large hereafter, especially in the losse of the smelling.

Of the Vlcers in the Nose. §.2.



These impostumations do the writers diuide into *Vlcera* & *Apothemata*, which we doe English, Vlcers and Impostumes; the Vlcers are alwaies drie or moist: drie when they make hard scurfe, and contrarily when they yeld out much moisture, like as if the nose were rubbed on the inside and thereby bled, and yelded yellow, greene, or blacke matter; both proceeding of sharpe salt and burnt matter that descendeth out of the head into the nose. The signes thereof may one easily discerne: if there bee paine in the nose, then is to be sene against the bright sunne where the disease is. For this accident the patient is to be purged with the Pills *Cochia*, or *Hiera*, and such like. This is also a common rule in the curing of all Vlcers, to wit; that it be begun with no strong medicine, or that the partie be purged befoze. Like as for example, if the patient be plethoricke in bodie, and the Vlcer be great, open the Spedian, and let out foure or fife ounces of blood according to the strength of the patient: but if the disease be not so great; then open the head vaine vpon the arme or vpon the hand, at all times vpon that side where the disease is not, and sometimes very well in the vaines of the nose. In like maner also are cups to be set in the necke, thereby to seduce the matter. This being done, the patient is to vse the space of eight daies or fife daies this preparatiue potion: take *Oxyaccara* (which shal be immediatly hereafter described) the sirupe

of waterlillies of each thre quarters of an ounce, Soprellwater, and Fennellwater, of each thre quarters of an ounce, drinke it luke warme in the morning. The purgation vpon it is this.

Take halfe an ounce of the confection *De succo Rosarum, Cassia* prepared, with the water of Violets one ounce, temper all together with thre ounces of barleywater mixtely warme, so: otherwise it is too thicke. Immediately after purging lay this plaister following vpon the nose, that it may be couered euery where with it: Take small Houllecke, and the iuice of Plantaine, the iuice of Shepherds purse, of each one ounce, the whites of two eggs, Campher bused small foure scrup. prepared *Turia*, and butchers Bzomesædes of each one drag. burnt Corall and Amber of each two scrup. Starch one ounce and a halfe, buse these together in a leaden mortar some houres together, this is to be vled thre or foure times a day.

Another.

Put the iuice of Tassell leanes thre or foure times aday into the nose, it may be drawne vp into the nose: but if you feare that it will cole too much, then temper the third part of the iuice of Betony amongst it.

Occyzaccara.



This kinde of Sirrup may easily be made by all housekeepers, it hath also great vertue and operation, so: it doth consume the mixed and flegmatike humidities which do pinch or annoy the vppermost parts, and cause the vnruely double Tertian and quartaine Agues: Take five ounces of white Sugar, the iuice of Pomegranats foure ounces, sharp Vineger two ounces: seethe them in a little pot by a milde fier, vntill they be of the thiknes of a common Sirrup.

Item, if there be scurfe in the nose: Then take sallad oile, the grease of a Capon as much as you please, and potize a little molten ware amongst it, and annoint therewith the scurfes: likewise take warme water, drawe it vp into the nose certaine daies together, in the morning it is also good. Item take the gum of a Cherrie tree, the gum of a Palme tree or Dragagant, dissolue them in Rose water which thou wilt, annoint the muscilage or slime in the nose with a feather. Or take the marrow of an ore bone, new ware, of each halfe an ounce, oile of water Lillies one quarter of an ounce, melt and vse it as before. Or you must in steede of the oile of water Lillies, take also the oile of Roses.

Another. Take Dragagant and the seade of fleawort, seape them in Rose water and oile of Violets, annoint the nose oftentimes with this muscilage. You may also make this salue: Take Ducks and Hens grease, the fatnesse of Shæpes wool, Harts seiwet, honie, of each halfe an ounce, burnt Spirabolans, Bals, of each a drag. temper them together. This allwageth and dzieth much.

In like manner this salue following is very conuenient: Take oile of swete Almonds one ounce, oile of Roses one ounce, washt butter, Hens grease, the muscilage of Dragagant, of each one quarter of an ounce, and a little ware.

Or take fresh marrow out of the Calues bones, and gum, of each one quarter of an ounce, oile of white *Camelina* one ounce and a halfe, ware as much as is needefull. The same doth also butter washt wel with faire water, likewise also decocted Hollihocks, Nightshade or Malowes.

Another, almost as the former. Take the marrow of Calues bones, the yolks of eggs, Dragagant and gum, of each one quarter of an ounce, oile of *Camelina* one drag. and a little ware.

But if the impostume onely beginneth to run: Then dip Cotton in strong and well salted vineger, put it into his nostrils, herewith they will be dried. But this following is better: Take prepared *Turia* which is flaked in the vrine of a man childe of two yeeres old, and Cernise, of each two drag. and a halfe, the iuice of Houllecke five ounces: rub this at the least the space of thre daies together the space of thre howers euery day in a leaden mortar, set it afterwarde well stopt in the sunne when it is too drie: then potize againe other iuice vnto it, and bzuise it as before: do this so thre or fouer times together, with this salue are you to annoint the diseale thre or fouer times a day. This salue is so forcible, that many people which haue had the canker and *Polypum*, thereby haue preserved their life a long time.

Canker Polypus.

And

And if so be (thorough the great uncleannes of this vlcer) there behoueth stronger things, and the disease be also old: then make first of all the scarfes moist with wine, wherein Agrumonic, Tervaine, and hony is decocted, drie it and make it moist againe, afterwards vse this following: Take Vitrioll, red and yellow Pympment, of each halfe a drag. beate and steepe it in the gall of a bull or ore, and refresh it daily untill the matter be white; then put thereto Antimonie and Pyrrhe, of each one quarter of an ounce, ware as much as will make an ointment, annoint therewithall, and stop it in the nose: if you will haue this somewhat milder, then put thereto beaten Hyssemints and Sallowses, to the quantitie of one quarter of an ounce. This that followeth is not so strong.

Take Cyppers rotes, Allome, Gals, Pyrrhe, Saffron, of each one quarter of an ounce, beate them to powder, and blowe it into the nose. Or make thereof a salve with hony. Also you may vse the salve *Vnguentum Apostolicum*, the which is made thus: Take Turpentine, white ware, white Rosen, *Ammoniacum*, of each one drag. *Oppopanaxum*, *Uerdigrease*, of each halfe a drag. the Litharge of gold two scrup. sallad oile sixe ounces in the sommer, but in the winter nine ounces, vineger as much as is needefull for, to dissolue the gum with it, make a salve thereof. This salve is common at the Apothecaries, and is not onely good for this, but also for all soze ries, fistulaes, for cleansing the wounds, wherein it hath a maruellous operation: for it consumeth the bad fleshy, incarnateth afterwards, and healeth all hard swellings: so that there is not almost the like vnto this.

*Vnguentum
Apostolicum*

Item take burnt lead well washt, Ceruse, Litharge of gold, of each a like quantity, oile of Roses, and Ware as much as is needefull for a salve. This also following is much commended and is certaine: take one sower Pomegranate, others take sower, meane and swete Pomegranates, of each one stamped with their pills, wung out and decocted a while in a little pot and clarified, dip a taint in it and put vp into the nose; but if there be any Vlcers with it, then vse this following. Take Ceruse, Pyrrhe, Litharge of golde, burnt Copper, Gals that are parched a little, Allum, of each one drag. oile of Roses three ounces, Ware as much as is needefull for a salve: this healeth and dieth. Item take Ceruse one ounce and a halfe, calcined and washt Ceruse, Litharge, of each halfe a drag. Vineger, Ware, of each one sponesfull: make it with oile of Spirtles vnto a salve, wash the nostrils with warme wine and pisse, wherein Pyrrhe and Frankincense is decocted. And if this vlcer will not be healed with the foresaid things, it is then to be taken for a secret Canker, which one may not touch with sharpe things; as presently hereafter shall appeare.

Obstruction or stopping in Childrens noses without any other infirmitie. §.3.



It happeneth oftentimes that young, yea new borne children doe suffer great stopping in the nose: Their breasts must be annointed well with the oiles of swete Almonds, and of Violets, and to them that giue sucke wine is forbidden.

And if the childrens breast be full, then is the oile of Violets with Sugar to be put into their mouth. Ancient folkes (if they cannot abide the oile of Violets by reason of the smell) then take Sallet oile, or oile of swete Almonds in stead thereof.

Impostumations of the Nose. §.4.



The second kinde of erulcerations in the nose are much more perilous and worse, and are called *Apostemata*, *Hamorrhoides*, *Polypus* Canker.

The first is a soft excrecence of fleshy, which giueth moisture when one wzingeth the nose; soft in feeling, and bleeding quickly: this proceedeth of moist water which falleth out of the braines, rotteth there, and degenerateth into the fleshy, the which otherwhiles groweth out so long that it hangeth without the nose: it taketh away the speech, the breath, and also the smelling, sometimes the wing red and sometimes white and blackish. But the *Polypus* is hardish, hath many rotes and vaines: he is so called after the name of a fish which hath manic sette; and for many mo similitudes and properties that are betwixen them. This is caused of melancholike humors tempered with slime or *Phlegma*, and stoppeth

stoppeſſe the noſe though his increaſe.

This Canker is wholly hard and ſaſt: it manifeſteth himſelfe alſo on the outſide vpon the noſe, with manie blacke vaines of melancholick blood, whence this ſoze taketh his oſſpring, and doth bying with it an intollerable ſtench (which the Phiſitians do call *Ozenam*.) The cauſe of theſe tumors is the affluence of bad humors: but that which cauſeth *Hemorhoides* is a ſweete *Phlegma*, which is without blood but rotten, very moiſt without paine, therefore is better to be healed then this following.

But in *Polypos* is corrupted blood, whereto doth come a ſtincking *Phlegma*.

The Canker is a burnt rotten and hardened *Melancholia*. Both theſe laſt are vncertaine, yea wholly impoſſible to be holpen: neuertheles there be many kindes of remedies ordained and uſed as followeth.

When as then the firſt ſort doth appeare with ſoftened or white fleſh which filleth the whole noſe, then is the head vaine firſt to be opened; afterwards a ſaint annointed with this ſalue following, to be put into the noſtreils where the diſeaſe is. Take yellow Myrriment, Coperas, Verdigreace, of each halfe an ounce, Quickſiluer, Salarmoniacke, of each one ounce; uſe theſe ſmall, and caſt it into lime ley: this may you uſe ſo: or make it with honie vnto a ſalue. Others do uſe this ſharp water following: Take yellow Myrriment, quick Lime, Verdigreace, Quickſiluer, of each one ounce and a halfe, Salarmoniack halfe a dragme; beate them cleane, and let it ſette the well in water: when it hath ſtoode a while, then will it be very ſharpe. In like manner, getteth alſo a Corroding qualitie, the water wherin quicke lime is quenched and wherin quickſiluer is put.

This is more gentle, take Allome, Verdigreace, of each halfe an ounce, yellow Myrriment one ſcrup. temper them, and ſtick a ſaint in Vineger, ſprinkle it with this powder and ſo ſticke it in the noſe where the diſeaſe is. Of the meane Corſiues is alſo taken ſo; an approued thing, pouned Vitrioll blowne into the noſe in the morning and euening. There is alſo deſcribed in this Chapter in the 2. ſ. a medicine with the iuice of Pomegranats, which are eſpecially good ſo; this, amongſt which you are to temper a little Antimony and Verdigreace. But if this will not help, then are ſtronger things to be vſed, as an actuall cauterie or incision, and although this do ſeldome proſper, neuertheleſſe we will diſcoure ſomewhat thereof. For this ſoft excreſcence of fleſh, whereof we haue ſpoken at the firſt, is not wholly incurable, but may through theſe meanes be cured, which neuertheleſſe is very vnpoſſible in the Cancere: but if it were found that there ought to be vſed either the actuall cauterie or incision, then muſt the cauterized place be annointed with freſh butter, and the beated white of an egge, and couer the noſe with the whole face with vineger and water, or Roſe water, or take the yolks of an egge, temper it with oyle of Roſes, and the iuice of Roſes, this ſwageth almoſt all the paine of the Cauterie.

Here do now follow certaine ſharpe, yet good meanes, which are moſt ſureſt in greateſt neceſſitie, the firſt is, that theſe ſuperfluous excreſcences be clipt off with a ſharpe paire of Ciſors euen to the bottome, afterwards take away the reſt that remayneth behinde with this ſalue following: Take one ounce of honny, vineger one quarter of an ounce, *Sarcocolla*, *Ammoniacum*, of each halfe an ounce, ſette theſe vpon a milde fier, and therewith annoynt your ſaints which you thruſt into the noſe, it hath a ſpeciall vertue of healing and drying. The other meanes, if this were not ſufficient, then burne the diſeaſe with an iron that is flat before, thruſt it through a copper pipe which is waſht in clothes wet in Roſe water, to the end that the ſound part of the noſe be not burnt, do this ſo long vntill one can perceiue no remanence of it more. Afterwards annoynt the cauterized place with butter, vntill that the eſcarre falleth off, and heale it with Baſill and the oymntment of Ceruſe, or with the ſalue that is deſcribed in the 2. ſ. in the vlcers of the noſe with *Tutia*.

The third meane to expell this accident, take a long and ſtrong hoſe haire, thruſt it into the noſe vntill you bying it out of the mouth againe: faſten it on both ends and plucke it hitherwards ouer the accident, and that ſo oftentimes till it be cut out at the bottome. This being accompliſhed, ſtanch the bloud with this powder, take Spirrhe, *Sarcocolla*, ſine Bolus, Dragon bloud, of each one drag. prepared *Tutia* halfe a drag. this powder muſt be blowne in the place where it bleedeth, or ſtrowe a ſaint with it and ſtop it into the noſe; now the bloud being ſtanch, heale it with the ſoſelaid ſalue.

Of the Canker in the Nose. §.5.

The causes of this Canker in the nose, and the signes thereof are discovered before. First, he sheweth himselfe small, like a corne of wheate, but afterwarde will be as big as a hassell nut or almond: it yieldeth seldome matter, and remaineth alwaies (as is said) harde and drie: it will abide no strong things, as actuall or potentiall cauterics; but it must be softly medled with, and vse thereto easie remedies, as to let blood, laratiue things, and Spall. 7 *risframs* water, which is described in the fift chapter and first §. Also oile of blew flower deluce annointed thereon, and chiefly Treacle and Githydate thrust into the nostrils, and to hold the same in the mouth and cate it. Also it is very good to purge the head with this potion: Take *Mirabulani Indi* one ounce and a halfe, *Sene*, *Epihymum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugarcanbie fower ounces, seethe them together in nine ounces of water euen to the halfe, straine it then through a cloth, and temper it with Hanna and fower dates amongst it, of each one ounce. In like sort may one purge also with the *Pillulus fatidis*, or *Stomachicus*. The place of the accident is also to be twice a day (at the least) strengthened with the oile of Roses wherein Camfere is tempered, and lay a cloth therein dipped in them, or made as it were into a salve, and annointed therewithall. Yet in Steele of this may he vse the iuice of Nighthade. The patient must much beware of all pottages, chiefe, harde flesh, and all which engendeth melancholike blood: but must vse drying meates. His drinke must be wine tempered with water. For the desfluxion *Ozena*, which the Canker bringeth with it, is this following very mete: Take one ounce and a halfe of oile of Roses, halfe an ounce of white ware, a little vineger, and the beared white of an ege, milke one ounce, washed Ceruse one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of Lettice, of Plantaine, of Nighthade, of each halfe an ounce, stir them together the space of two or thre houers in a Leaden mortar.

Of the Murre. §.6.



We haue taught in the description of the nose, that it is by nature ordained for a chanell, thereby to cleanse the moisture of the head, and of the bzaines, like as is brought to passe throught this course of the murre: the which the Grecians do call *Catarrhum*, especially this murre which falleth downe into the nose, do they call *Coryzam*: of the other two kindes, whence cometh so much badnes, which be salt catarrhes or rheumes, which descend into the throte and vpon the brest, shall be taught at large in their places. We will onely here now discourse of all these maladies that concerne the nose: that this course or running proceedeth out of heate and colde, which is *Cholera* and *Phlegma*, that shall be shewed at large in the discourse of the paine in the throte in the second part, where is spoken of the catarrhe or rheum. Here is no other thing discovered but onely of the murre, how that that is most caused, when one cometh suddenly out of great warmth into colde; and to the contrarie, out of great colde speedily into warmth: like as when one runneth bare headed out of the bath into the winde: or as one runneth out of the great colde into the warme stee, and this is also the course wherefore that the people for the most part in the later end of winter or sommer are plagued therewith. Now when this murre or sniuell is salt and biting, then doth it some cause these accidents, *Ozena*, *Cancer* or *Polypus*: therefore the sniuell is not to be esteemed so small, but rather endeouour by and by to prouoke and moue this desfluxion. To the ende the matter may be carried out, whereto this fume following is conuenient: Take Cloues, Pyrrhe, Frankincense, odoriferous fruites and herbes, as Quinces and their parings, Rue, *Parozum* gentle, and such like. Lotions for the fete are also very fit for this purpose, like as followeth: Take Sage, Lauander, Betonie, field Spints, or any other, thre or fower sp. seethe them in water, and put the fete therein, vse it oftentimes, and metely deepe.

The clensing of the head.

In all the former cases, the most principall remedie was alwaies to cleanse the head and the bzaines, whereto this water following is very good: Take fower ounces of the iuice of wilde Cucumbers,

Cucumbers, Salarmoniacke pouned small, halfe an ounce tempered in a glasse, and fill it halfe full with water, stir it oftentimes about, and sniffe it vp into the nose in the morning fasting five or sixe times together warme, and do this alwaies about the second day. This openeth all obstructions that hinder smelling, whether it be in impostumes or vlcers of the nose: it draweth also the matter out and consumeth it, and it strengtheneth all the instruments that are created for smelling.

Item take the iuice of Pariotam and Penniroyal, of each one ounce, Sulcus two grains, vse it as befoze. Make also this powder following: Take Penniroyal, Pariotam and Pep, of each one drag. Graines thre drag. pounce all and binde them in a fine cloth, and smel sometimes to it.

Take oile of Violets, oile of Saffron, of each thre drag. Treos, long Pepper, *Euphorbium*, of each two graines, make a salve thereof with a little ware, whereof you shall take the quantitie of a Pease, and annoint it in the nose when you go to bed, it purgeth and clenseth the bzaines.

Some do vse Velleboz or Pepper for the nose, but it is not without danger: for it troubleth too much the bzaines: but how and through what meanes the head is to be clenied with washing, loke in the first and second Chapter of the paine in the head.

Of the excessiue bleeding at the nose. §.7.



The excessiue bleeding at the nose hath diuers causes, which were too long to discover them all at this present time, it onely sufficeth vs to shew the inward and outward causes: as concerning the outward causes of bleeding, are blowes, falls, thrusts, soze labour, and the heate of the sunne: all these things do open the veines, and make subtil blood, which is easily moued to run out. The causes thereof can easily be perceiued and inquired of the patient. The inward causes be superfluitie, sharpnesse and heate of the blood, the which is ouer all the whele bodie, head, liuer, milt, wombe and other places.

In like manner also through agues and other great sicknesse, through paine of the head, a forcible expulsive powder, and feeblenesse of the retentive vertue, in full bodies and abounding of blood is the bleeding at the nose requisite, it emptieth the head and other partes. In *Phibisi* and other sicknesse moe, it is commanded to prouoke it, whereof shall be moze at large spoken in other places. Therefore if there be perceiued an vnburthening through this bleeding at the nose, then it is a good signe of health: like as to the contrarie a sudden and excessiue bleeding is very dangerous, and a signe of death. But if this bleeding happen through any busing of the skin of the bzaines, then it is very hard, yea in danger neuer to be holpen.

And whensoever the bleeding be about 48. ounces, then it is a bad token, and yet badder if it do surpasse it: if it come then vnto twenty or 24. pound, euery pound reckoned at 12. ounces, then must death follow after it immediatly.

In like sort the signes of death are, if the bleeding person be not onely of a bleake colour, but also darke, greene or leadie coloured.

An order of diet.

This bleeding at the nose commeth through some causes that require alwaies a good order of life to be obserued. For this purpose is this most common, that those things be alwaies used that cole the blood, and make it thicke: if there be any agues with it, then must light things be used (which be coling) as Lettice, Burrlaine, Endiue, small Endiue, vineger, verinice. Is then the bleeding strong and belement: to the end it might once be staied, vse Beanes, Pease, Lentils, Kie, Colewortts, Chiese, Basse, Hares and Harts, also thicke red wine, all hot spices, white wine (if so be that they be not well watred) are to be eschewed.

Now we will shew how the blood is to be stanchd.

For to performe the same, there be sixe kinde of meanes: first, by the foresaid coling things (which be to be eaten) these things following are to be dropt into the nose, and laid thereon: In like manner also vpon the forehead, the iuice of Lettise, of Poullcke, of Pighthead, Corne Roses or Pettles: In like manner the water of water Lillies, of Cichorie, of Roses, and Cumine water:

water: Also the herbe of Poppie, Willow leaues, or their iuice: Item also Horefayle, Shep^r herds purse, vineger and Camfere, and if it be very great neede, *Opium*: for these things all tog^rther make thicke blood, that it cannot run so hastily out of the veines. It is also good to irrigate his head with colde water, that so long continuing untill his head be so cold, that he get thereby a shivering, and shaking or trembling. In fine, to keepe the head cold, and not to stir it much, is very commodious: also wet a cloth or napkin in cold water, in vineger, or in Rose water, wring it not out too hard, and wrap it so about the necke.

Item, take the whites of twelue eggs, pouned Allome foure ounces, beate it well together, wet a cloth in it, and wrap it about the neck, about the forehead and temples, afterwards take Hares haire, or the haire of a Roebucke, stop the nostrill full thereof, and that at the first.

Also it is commended that both the thombs and their armes be bound hard about the el- bowes; but let them not be bound too hard, but being sometimes made loose, to binde them againe.

Or make one of these plaisters, take the iuice of Nightshade sixe ounces, Rose water one ounce and a halfe, Warly meale as much as is needefull for to make a plaister, lay this vpon the lyuer, if the blood runne south of the right nostrill.

The seconde meane to staunch the blood effected with stopping things, as the iuice of Sloes, red Corall, Pomy, Aloe, Horefayle, Amber, Bloudstones, *Hippocystis*, *Bolus*, flowers of Pomegranats, Lentils, Gals, Sumach, Shepherds purse, Medlers, Seruices, Quinces, Peares, and other sower peares amongst the compounded things, *Troscises de Carabe*, *Terra Sigillata*, which foresaid things, all that be of this nature, do draw and shut the vaines together.

For this are also made these plaisters following, take the iuice of Plantaine and Rose water, of each two ounces, Vineger halfe an ounce, and the white of an egge, sealed earth, or in the stead thereof lyme as much as is needefull for to make it metely thicke: lay it vpon the forehead and the temples of the head.

Another. Take Dragons bloud, parched gumme, parched starch Roses, the iuice of Sloes, *Hippocystis*, burnt Quozie, the blossoms of Pomegranats, *Bolus*, sealed earth, Bloud stone, red Corall, and Amber of each one drag. and a halfe, Poppy seede, Purcelane seede, of each one drag. *Opium* halfe a drag. pounce that is to be pouned thereof, and with the iuice of Plantaine make it to a plaister, and vse it as before.

This following is not much unlike to the former: Take Dragon bloud, parched gumme, the yelow seedes of Roses, the iuice of Sloes, *Hippocystis*, burnt Quozie, blossoms of Pomegranats, *Bolus*, sealed earth, bloud stone, red Corall, of each one drag. and a halfe, Poppy seedes, Purcelane seedes, burnt Harts horne, ashes of gals, Cypers nuts, of each one drag. Beate them all small, and mire them amongst the other with the iuice of Plantaine, afterwards make smal cakes of it: when you will now vse it, then beate it to powder, and blow it into the nostrils; but you may vse it as a plaister for to lay vpon the forehead and temples of the head.

Item, take well beaten Pomy, as much as you please, mire it with copwebs and the white of an egge, dip cotton or lint in it, and then stop it into the nose. First take Harts bones, burnt Quozie, Dragon bloud, *Verbascum* pouned with Vineger, temper the foresaid powder amongst it, according to that you will haue of it little or much put it into the nose, all these things staunch blood, tempered together, or each alone, or mire Aloe with the white of an egge, vse it as aforesayd. Item, take the whites of foure eggs well bayed and tempered amongst Aloe one dragm. Frankinsence one quarter of an ounce, Dragon bloud and fine *Bolus*, of each halfe a dragm. vse this yet putting therein Hares haire made wet.

Secondly, take well bayed whites of eggs, and temper Gips or plaister amongst them, so that it war a pap, then lay it vpon the forehead, take Hares haire, temper it wel with the white of eggs, and a litle Allom, afterwards mire it with Rose water, or Rose vineger: take pouned Horefayle, temper it with Plantaine water, or the iuice of Plantaine.

Thirdly, the blood is to be stoppt with astrigent things, as Dragagant, Gumme, Frankinsence, mill dust, whites of eggs, and such like, take Tormentill or Pyrola one of both, this is to be held in the mouth. These astrigent things are not oftentimes vsed alone, but commonly tempered with the aforesaid binding and cooling things.

Fourthly, the bleeding is to be inhibited by potentiall cauteries, as Coperas, Opiment, quicke lyme, Salarmoniack, when the same be powdered and blowne into the nose, for they make

make an escarre. But this is to be feared, if so be that the blood be not quenched therewith, that it might afterwards bleede the sozer, therefore it is not without great danger to vse this meane.

Termes in
Women.

5
Fiftly, it will be stanchd with those things which haue a proper and hidden vertue so; it, as the iuice of Wasill, but especially Asse dung and Hogs dung are said to be good so; it (be it of what soeuer cause that the bleeding be prouoked) if the same be but of it selfe alone, held before the nose, and so let smell thereto, and also the same tempered with the iuice of broad Plantaine, and annoynted in the nose, or burnt to ashes and blowne therein, or a plaister made thereof and laid on the top of the nose: this plaister is also mete against the excessive termes or flowers of women, put into the necke of the wombe, and also applied to their priuities.

This is also very good: Amber, Purslaine, garden Spints, and their iuice with copwebs, thrust vp into the nose.

6
Sixtly, the blood will be stanchd if one let it out on the contrarie side, the which is effected if one open the median or liuer veine, as also many learned phisitions do affirme, that they haue so; the bleeding of the nose not approued any thing moze better nor certainer, than to open the veine vpon the hand or on the foote, and then to drinke two scruples of *Philonium Persicum* with Purslaine water: they haue also, as hath bene said, powdered *Troc. De Carabe* and blowen into the nose.

It is also very good to set boring cups on the shoulders and on the legs, vnderstanding well, that if the blood run out of the right nostrill, then let the bores vnpickt vpon the Liuer: if it run out of the left nostrill, vpon the Spilt in the left side: Also the legs, the armes, and the breast are to be bounden, to rub the outward members, and also vnder the arme pits and other places of the bodie with burnt nettles so; to drawe therewith the blood downewards.

Besides all these aforesaid, I am to manifest one remedie moze that exceedingly stoppeth also bleeding: Take sleekt lime, make a plaister thereof with vinegar, lay it ouer the nose, it will stop presently. Others suppose also that this lime is to be blowne into the nostrills, or made vp with the white of an eg, to be so put with a faine into the nose. This also (as some suppose) wil the wooll or flaxe doe that tieth from the herbe *Carduus Benedictus*, cut small and thrust into the nose.

Item it hath ben oftentimes found, that an extreme frighting hath caused blood by and by to stanch and cease, so; that the blood runneth then towards the heart. In this also hath superstition and vnbeliefe taken place, whensoever one holdeth in his hand a dead mans bone, and the mosse that groweth vpon a dead bodie's scalp be stopt into the nose, then is the blood stanchd out of hand. In like maner also, albeit that it be somewhat moze naturall, if one lay the mosse of the blacke (or sloe) thorne in the shooes and goe thereon, it doth stanch blood.

Item take broad Plantaine, and the iuice of Shepherds purse, of each three ounces, prepared blood stone, fine Bolus, sealed Earth, dragon blood, of each one drag. and a halfe: spread it on a cloth, and lay it on the place of the nose where the blood commeth, and refresh it oftentimes. Or take beaten Beane meale, temper it with the white of an eg, and vse it as before. It cometh also otherwhiles to passe (and is also no wonder) that such superfluous blood of the nose doth bring swooning with it; so; the which are sicke persons hands and feete to be rubbed with salt and vinegar, to binde fast the armes and legs, and to bind & vnbinde them againe, also to vse other outward meanes, which here afterwarde in the second part shall bee described so; the swooning.

Item if the blood run out at the right nostrill, let a boring cup vnpickt vpon the Liuer: And so whensoever the swooning is past, the Liuer vaine is to be opened, or the *Saluatella* in the left side and to smell to cold things; as that which is made of Quince pearces, and to vse Lettice, Purslaine, Beanes, and other potages, vntill that the blood waxeth thicke.

For a conclusion you haue hereafter many remedies in the first part so; to stanch blood, which are also good so; this purpose.

Enfeebled or lost smelling. §.8.

This is no small disease to man, so; if one be bozne with it, or haue had it long, he is esteemed by the Grecians incurable, vnles it be thorough continuance of time and with great trouble: neuertheless, the ancient and latter phisitions haue employed all diligence

diligence to deuise all necessary meanes; and first described thre seuerall kindes thereof. The first kinde where thoroughly and wholly the smell is lost.

The second is a diminishing of the smell where a thing is smelt like as it is, yet vnperfectly: and this disease is much more with men then with beasts, for that they be of a moister braine, and all beastes haue their braines much drier, therefore doe they also smell sharper and surther.

The third kind is a corrupted smell, where one receiueth the smell otherwise then it is of it selfe, like as when one adiudgeth stinking things for odoriferous. The cause of the smell is utterly lost, is when the conduits that goe towards the braines be thoroughly obstructed, that the aire receiued cannot come to the skin of the braines, which obstruction may happen thorough some violent motion or blowes on the head: Also if about the place and instruments of smelling there ingender any wart or fleshy excrescence, or any vlcration: or that also through any other grosse humors that will settle there, and stop vp the conduits of smelling. Lastly, through repletion of the head and of the whole body.

The cause of the diminishing of the smelling is, as before, but is not so great: It may also be caused by cold or by hot medicines, which be vsed at the nose. The cause of a corrupted smell is a bad moisture, which lyeth hidden in the same place, and there makes stinking vapors: And so may also the canker of the nose be caused and procured.

The signes of the obstructions are, that no moisture commeth out of the nose without paine, vntiles the braines had some impediment: but if any moisture doth appeare without paine, then doth the same moisture obstruct the conduits of smelling.

If it proceede of heate and drought, then may you perceiue the heat in the forehead and nose: of colde, it is also discerned by the same places: or if it be some stinking moisture, then doth all stinke that he smelleth vnto, and all what is nere him, also his breath is vnauoie and stinking.

Other infirmities or lets, are knowen by sight, they may also be discerned by the paine and by the matter. The cure of them all consisteth especially in comforting and cleansing the infirmities of smelling and the braines, whence most commonly all these infirmities doe proceede.

It may also be perceiued by the former reasons, that all these obstructions and sozenesses, the diminishing and losse of smelling doth proceede of humors: now to remedie the same, are you to begin the cure by a good diet, wherefore all meats easie of digestion are best, as brothes, yolks of eggs, Pares braines which haue a proper and secret vertue for this infirmity, Pullets, young Pigeons, Partridges, fcelants, Weale, Cawbles, and all of them distilled with Sage, Parioram, Rosemarie, and Betony: parched Wasell nuts are also verie good for this purpose: small white wine shall be his drinke, neither may you omit to purge the bodie: if the sickness be caused of colde, then is he to be purged as hath been said in the second chapter and first §. of the cold paine of the head: but if blood and heate do cause it, then are you to proceede as hath been shewed in the first chapter and first §.

Afterwards you are to cleanse the head with naxing in them that haue lost their smelling without any excrescence of flesh or sozenes of the nose: for which purpose you may looke the second chapter and second §. also in the first §. of this present chapter: but these simples are especially to be vsed for it, to wit, Amber, Rosemarie, Cinnamom, Cloues, *Lignum Aloes*, *Pigella*, to which he must smell often and long, for they open the obstructions of the head: which is also effected with these dried herbes following, namely, Rue, Germander, field Cipers, *Pepper*, and *Parioram*: but for to prouoke sternutation or naxing, take *Lignum Aloes*, *Pepper*, and *Staues acre*. Also the vapor of boyling vineger receiued into the nostrils very often is of good effect, for because the same hath a biting nature, it doth moue naxing. Also you may sethe one of these things following in wine, and receiue the vapor as is said into the nostrils.

Take *Calmus*, Gentian, Bay leaues, Peniroyall, field Pints, Annise and Fennell seedes, Barley, and rootes of Smalage: or receiue often in one day the vapor of warme water where in Peliot or fumitorie be decocted, the water of *Asarabacca*, or of Elder is also good for this vse. Also the seedes of *Pigella* bounden in a cloth, caried with him and smelt oftentimes vnto it, the same throwed vpon hot coles, and to receiue the fume of it.

Item take the powder of *Pigella*, Treos, of each 3. quarters of an ounce, *Parioram* gentle, Cammomil,

Cammomill, Bay leaues, Pepper, Stechas, of each halfe a handfull; sethe all in sufficient water, vntill about the third part be wasted; mire the powders amongst it, and draine thereof into the head, it doth cleanse the head very wel. Also this powder following may be prepared: Take Pardus seede, which hath lien a day and a night in sharp vinegar, & is dried againe one ounce, Beuer cod and Putmegs, of each one drag. and a halfe, red and white Behen, Calingale, white Pepper, Pariozam and Pepper, of each a scrup. Costus rootes, *Sagapenum*, the seede of Rue and Basil, of each one ounce; stampe each apart, and binde it being tempered in a peece of Syndall, and smell oftentimes vnto it. This is good against all hinderance of the smelling which cometh thorough coldnesse, be it with or without obstructions.

Pomanders.



Take red Sotozay, Putmegs, Cucubes, Cloues, Pardus seede, *Lignum Aloes*, Indie Spica, and Cinnamom, of each one drag. Guscus and Amber, of each one scrup. *Laudanum* one ounce, make a pomander thereof, like as there be many described in the first part, and is also taught how the same is to be made. Use Cammomill, Pelilot, Rue, Pariozam, decocted in halfe wine halfe water. But if these things wil not helpe, then take the iuice of blew flower deluce, and a little beaten *Piretrum*, annoint that or stop it into the nose: do the like with oile of Spike, wherein is tempered a little *Euphorbium* and *Muscus*, for both of them be strong and hot.

This following is commended for a worthy receit, wheras the smelling is lost: Take small pouldred Pardus seede, temper it with oile of Oliues, binde the head backward as much as is possible, and let three or fouer drops fall into the nose, but take the mouth full of water, to the ende the oile may run the lesse into the mouth. Item take Pardus seede, which hath lien three daies in vinegar, and is dried againe, one quarter of an ounce; steepe them in three ounces of the iuice of Pariozam gentle, or at the least in faire water, and vse it as aforesaid three or fouer times betwene day and night, and so shall you see maruels. Take oile of Tyles, like as shall be described hereafter, halfe an ounce, Guscus two graines, stroke them in the nose being made warme. The gargarismes are also commodious, like as here followeth: Take Radish, Pariozam, Calmus, Betonie, Peniroyall, of each halfe a scrup. let them sethe in a pint and a halfe of wine, vntill about the third part be sodden away; put thereto as much honie as you please, Pardus seede, *Piretrum*, of each one drag. vse it in the morning. The like also gargarized with decocted Rue and Hyssop, also *Piretrum*, *Pastickie*, and Zeduary, or one of these, are to be taken and cheewed in the mouth, and to spet out the moisture: likewise is also very good to strowe this powder following vpon the head.

Take Byonie, *Lignum Aloes*, Graines, of each one drag. Pariozam gentle, Cloues, of each one quarter of an ounce, Beuer cod one scrup. Guscus, Amber, of each one graine and a halfe, pouldred apart and then mixed: of this powder take fouer graines, and strowe it vpon the head before where the haire beginneth to the crowne of the head.

For conclusion: Because amongst the foresaide remedies there be some violent, which may prouoke much paine in so pretious a member as the nose is; therefore drop them therein when the paine is too great, the oile of Gourds seede, and poure warme water vpon the head, that will assuage the heate and paine: so will also all whatsoever coleyth and moisteneth, whether it be vsed inwardly or outwardly, or stoppt inwardly into the nose: like as for example, a cloth made wet in Rose water and laid vpon the nose, or Rose water draine vp into the nose.

Oile of Tiles or bricks, called *Oleum Philosophorum*.

This oile is worthy for his vertues sake, that it should be here described: for it is not onely good for the lost smelling, but also for all cold sicknesses; for it is warme and pearfing, it consumeth all tough moisture of the members, and expelleth all swelling: it is also very good against the falling sicknesse, swimming of the head, the dead pallsie, losse of memorie, crampe, and paine of the backe, and against all manner of goutes; it is also highly commended in all diseases of the milt, the bladder,

bladder, and of the kidneies, in all vlcers, lepric, scals and fresh wounds. This oile is made as hereafter followeth.

Take a very old tyle or bricke, beate it in peeces as big as Walnuts, make it glowing hot, cast one pece after another in olde Sallet oile, leaue them therein so long, untill they be well soaked throught with the oile; afterwarde beate them to fine powder, and put them in a glasse helme, the which is cleane ouer well luted, lute also the helme and the recipient, afterward distill it in sand or ashes, but first with a milde fire augmenting the same a little; the oile which cometh out of it, preserve it well stoppt.

The ninth Chapter.

Of the Eares.



There be moze partes of the face, to wit, the Eares, in truth precious and necessarie members, the which nature hath ordained as instruments for receiuers and iudges of the voice and their noise, whereof as well men as other beasts haue alwaies twaine, on each side of the head one, that alwaies stand open, bicause that as well sleeping as waking we haue neede of hearing. They be also outwardly shapen with diuers crooked entrances, to the end they may receiue much aire, and noise might retain and discerne the same the longer: which crooked waies are also meete for this, that there may not easily fall any thing therein, which otherwise might befall if the entrance were right out, whereto is alwaies the moistnesse in the entrance of the eares, which we call the Ware of the eares, and is as it were birdlime, to the end that the small flies, fleas, and other such like that woulde otherwhiles creepe into the eares, might be first staid therein. It is also very seldome sene, that men can stir their eares, the which neuerthelesse is sene in all sowerfooted beasts.

The eares are also subiect to many kinde of diseases, the which are diuided by the learned in three principall kindes.

The first is when any one be wholly and thoroughly bereft of his hearing, the which we call with one word, deafnesse.

The second is when the hearing is diminished or weakened, like as when one heareth not but when one calleth aloud to him.

The third kinde is, when the hearing onely is lost or altered, like as one thinketh that he heareth one pipe, sing, rush, or any thing else, the which in truth is not so.

But of this, and of other moe that concerne the eares, we will write thereof moze at large.

The causes which may hurt both these are almost incurable, some be naturall, some also through some outward and inward accidents, to wit, as to come out of too hot or too colde aire, sudden alteration of colde or heate, from warme water to colde water, or any thing else that might come into the eares, as thrusting, falling, striking, wounds, beasts that may creepe therein, vnslacht lyme, &c. In like manner also, disturbance of the brains, of the head, and of the whole bodie, rheumes of the head, and chiefly cold, toothach, paine of the sinewes, and of other members which do touch the hearing: or impostumations, swellings, and wormes that do growe in the eares. All these and other moe haue their speciall signes: if the deafnesse or diminishing of the hearing procede of outward causes, the same may be well demaunded of the patient: Doth it come from the braines? then will also the sight, smelling, and especially the taste be annoyed. If it be caused through hot impostumes, or swelling of the sinewes, then is there intolerable paine, panting, trembling, and some frensie with it, yea hot agues, and lastly death it selfe, if so be that there be not some good aduise taken for it in time: if it be caused through colde humors, there is then impostumation and cold alwaies about the same place: be windes the causes: then is there alwaies some sissing with it: impostumations do yeld matter; wormes may be perceived by their stirring or rumbling, and if otherwhiles one fall out; what now concerneth the description of the remedies, our beginning shall be first of all of the paine of the eares, and afterwards of all other infirmities of the eares.

Paine of the Eares in generall. §.I.



First it is herein to be noted, that the paine of the eares is not rightly nor properly spoken: for that which toucheth the outward part of the eare, the same can suffer no great paine: and although the paine were great, yet is there no danger of life with it: for that they be no principall members of the life: neuer thelesse this is wont to be called, the paine in the eares which is within in the head, and in the instruments of the hearing, as in the sinewes of the hearing, which are nere vnto the bzaines, and are knit therewith, of which intolerable paine deadly agues and frensies do procede. Wherefore we will here expresse sundrie remedies for the strengthening and cleansing of the bzaines, from whence these terrible accidents do come, like as already hath bene done in the description of the head, in the first and second Chapter: and moze yet to where we haue discoursed of the pole or murre, that for this are especially these following gentle cleansing of the head commanded to be vsed.

Take two ounces of Sparierum gentle, white wine one ounce, the seedes of L ycebane, *Piretrum*, of each one scrup. temper it and drop it into the eares: such cleansing of the head is not to be spared, as long as the paine of the eares or head endureth. When he perceineth that it will come againe, it is forthwith to be prevented and cut off: but if the paine get the vpper hande which is caused through blood, the which the red and swollen face, with beating of the bzaines doth shew: then is the head veine on the same side where the paine is, to be opened, that the matter may be drawne downwards.

If there run any choler amongst it, then may the same be purged with yello w Spirabolans, sover dates, sirupe of Roses, *Cassia*, de *Succo Rosarum*. After both these remedies following, or one of both are to be vsed outwardly.

Take oile of Roses, of Willow leaues, of each a like much, temper a little vineger amongst it, and drop it lukewarme in the eares. Take warme womans milke like as it commeth from the bzeast, and drop it oftentimes therein. Both of them do slake the heate, and allwaie the paine. For this is also good the bzaied white of an eg, tempered with a little oile of Violets and some Camfere: others do vse oile of water Lillies alone, or tempered with others.

A generall rule of the outward applications
into the Eares.

As much as now it is of much importance, ho in that is to be vsed, which is to be put into the eares, therefore we will, before we run any further, declare this rule following. First, there ought nothing to be drop into the eares, before that the body, & especially the head, be purged: but before we come to this, he may vse the fomentations, bags, vapors, & plaisters that are to be vsed most safely: for this application hath alwaies some moze danger in causing some obstruction or stopping. And if so be that with them nothing can be effected, then is the imposition to be attempted: yet the eares are first of all to be cleansed with clothes: also there is nothing to be put therein, which by nature is either too hot or too cold, but al whatsoeuer is middle, mean & lukewarme: also not too much, but from one to 4. drops, and to hold the same not above three howers in the eares: howbeit that neuerthelesse others do suppose this time to be too short, for that the medicine in so short time cannot performe his operation, therefore do they prescribe sixe or eight howers. In the imposition shall the patient lie vpon his whole eare: yet not to drop it in, if so be that it be not first run out: the which through nœsing, crying, strong blowing of the nose, is done. And this is also to be noted, that there is neuer any repelling medicines therein to be vsed, to the end that the paine be not driuen to the bzaines. Now for to come to the hot paines of the eares, then take the water of Purslaine, grated Gourdes (the iuice press out) temper them, or vse each alone, like as is already taught.

Take the seedes of Gourds, Melons, Pompsions and Cucumbers, of each one drag. and a halfe, beate them and sethe them in sixe ounces of vineger, untill that two ounces be consumed: straine them through a cloth, and vse them like as all the other.

Take the iuice of Yonilke, oile of Roses, of each halfe an ounce, and temper them: or take the

the iuice of Roses, of Housleake, of each halfe an ounce, oile of *Sesamum* two drag, temper them together. Or take the oile of Roses two ounces, sharpe vineger halfe an ounce, let them sethe untill the vineger be sodden away, then temper therein *Philonium Romanum* one quarter of an ounce, and rub it in and about the eares.

Take the iuice of Housleake, temper it with womans milke and vse it. Also you may take the iuice of Peach leaues, tempered with a little vineger.

Item take a small glasse with a narrow necke, put therein the fresh leaues of Violets halfe full, put moze vnto it afterwards twenty Ants eggs, & then fill full the glasse with the foresaide Violet leaues, stop it tight. Burie it the space of sixtene daies in the ground, wherein Ants are; afterwards wyng them out, and drop thereof into the eare: and if one perceine thereby no amendment, and that the paine be yet augmented, then are stronger things to be vsed for it as followeth.

Take *Opium* one scrup. oile of Roses one ounce, temper them together, and drop a little thereof in the eare, it allwaigeth the paine, and procureth sleepe: but doe this but selde, for we haue oftentimes warned you from the *Opium*. The same may you also do with the iuice of Witherwood, with the foresaide oyle. In like maner also garden Snailles decocted in the oyle of Almonds. Eye waters may also be vsed for this, which are ordained for the hot and sharpe paine of the eyes, like as here before in the seuenth chapter, in the fourth and fifth §. is declared, if so be that the paine be intollerable.

This plaister following is very highly commended for all paine of the eares: Take drie Violets and Cammomil, of each one ounce; temper amongst it well decocted and beaten Venbane rotes, with Barley meale, of each one ounce and a halfe, the fat of Hennes one ounce, oile of Cammomil as much as is needfull: let them sethe thicke together, and lay it vpon the eares, and vpon the temples of the head: when it is cold, then lay another vpon it that is warme. It must also not be neglected to rub the patient softly behinde his eares with the foresaide oile, being made luke warme, once or twice a day. But if the occasion of this paine be thorough colde, then parche first Pillet and salt vpon the fier, and lay it warme ouer it in a cloth, and purge the patient like as hereafter shalbe taught of the diminishing of hearing.

For to put into the eares are to be taken these things following, which are extant in readines: as oile of Bayes, oile of Costus, oile of Radish seedes, the iuice of *Marizium* gentle, the which also is good each apart, or mixed and drop therein. Also oile of Rue, oile of Spike, of *Beuerod*: and of *Behen*, the eares are to be rubbed round about with the salue of *Marrion*, and couered with vnwasht shepes wooll, and to doe this twice in 24. houres.

Take oile of Roses, or of Eggs, and the iuice of Sage, of each two ounces, stamp therein one or two Scarabees (which are of the small beasts that flie abroad in the evening with out hoznes) also as many Earth wormes washt in wine: sethe this by a soft fier untill all the moisture be wasted: afterwards straine it through a cloth, and drop thereof in the eare euerie morning and euening luke warme two or thre drops.

Item temper *Beuerod* with womens milke, vse it as aforesaid. If this helpe not so sone: Then take Ants, bruse them and temper them with womans milke, the iuice of Radish, drop therein the space of thre daies shall also take away the paine.

Take the iuice of Paula Betonie, of Strawberry leaues, of Sage, of Housleake, of each one ounce, Paslick and Frankincense of each one drag. and a halfe; temper them together, the decoction of Colewortes two ounces: drop thereof into the eare, should also take away all paines.

Of the order of life or Diet.

Whereas we haue shewed many causes of the disease in the eares, yet can there no certaine order or rule be yielded for it. But one must direct him according to the qualitye or importance of the cause.

But generally whereas paine or impostume of the eares be approaching, then must one keepe him alwaies sober in eating and drinking, and to eschew all that which ascendeth to the head whereof is already sufficiently expressed: also all that maketh winde, as pastages, moist fruit, cheefe, smoked and salted flesh, unleauned bread, and great fishes, small or watered wine is he to drinke and to eat coole meate, Comin, Annise, Caraway, and Fennell are very requi-

sute

site for all diseases of the eares which proceede thorough colde; so also is prepared Coziapder after meate.

Of the noise and hissing in the eares. §.2.



This disease hath many causes, as blowes without wounds, ouermuch vomiting, great stirring of the head and the whole bodie, great cold or heate, wind, moisture of the head, or the impostumation of any other member: But the principallest cause of this sissing is, that the vapoꝝ and windes of the bzaines doe fall into the eares; and according to the importance thereof, do forcibly rushe like water, which either continueth alwaies without intermission, or at sometimes also ceaseth. Now pꝛetermitting manie subtle differences. This hissing pꝛocedeth most through the feeblenes or imbecility of hearing, by reason it is not thoroughly cleare and cleane, so that it may be thereby knowen; to wit, that it is lesse perceived fasting and when one is hungrie, then when one hath eaten; for that the ascending vapoꝝs of a full stomacke do much take away all such purenes in hearing.

This hissing must be pꝛeuented betimes, for that when it endureth continually, it is not to be cured thorough good gouernement and necessary medicines; then commonly followeth after it a perfect deafnesse: and for this are commonly vsed these following: *Pillula de Hiera, Mastichina, Cochis, sine quibus, de Agarico*, and *Trocisci de agarico*. These diseases of the head be cleansed with the things which are described in the first §. of the paine of the eares thorough neede and otherwise.

Certaine ancient Philosophers haue more violently dealt with it, and aduised to temper two grains of *Opium* in oile, and to put it into the eares, but the same is so perillous, that some thereby haue remained utterly deafe: But if *Opium* must needes be vsed, then is this more safe.

Take *Opium*, *Beuercob*, of each one graine, breake them with one quarter of an ounce of vinegar, and drop a drop or twaine into the eares: yet is this following much safer.

Take sallet oyle wherein Poppie seede and Girtle seede are decocted, and ble it as is expressed. But if the sissing come with anguish of the head, and specially thorough cold causes, feeblenes of the hearing, and windie vapoꝝs, whether it be from the stomacke, the wombe, or any other parts of the bodie, then vse for it the iuice of *Pariorum*, with womans milke.

Use also which of these oyles that you will, as the oyle of *Radish seede*, of *Bayes*, of *Roses* (wherein some *Beuercob* is mixed) of *Pustard seeds*, *Cofus*, and of *Sesamum*, and aboue all is the oyle of bitter Almonds commended. In like sort these things following which haue the same efficacie are to be vsed, temper *Radish water*, with oyle of *Bayes*, the iuice of great Harts tong, with hony, the iuice of an *Onyon* alone steape well in *Rue water*, afterwards take bitter Almonds, and the iuice of *Rue*, of each halfe an ounce, and prepared *Euphorbium* brused small & tempered amongst it: but if so be that these foresaid things do not helpe, then it is a token that this sissing of the eares pꝛocedeth of a great moisture which lieth enclosed in the pannicles, which couer the bzaines.

And then must the bzaines be oftentimes purged with the pills of *Hiera cum Agarico*, and *Pillula Cochis*, and to take them in the euening after meate. Will you then according as it is aduised vse preparatiue potions before: then take *Drimell*, and *Drimell* of *Squills*, *Hony* of *Roses*, *Sirrup* of *Betony* and of *Stechas* (which you thinke good) each time one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, tempered with the water of *Baulne* or such like, continuing this thre or foure mornings one after another. After the purging take *Pariorum* gentle, *Stechas*, *Sea mints*, *Wormewood*, *Pariorum*, of each halfe a *℞*. sette them and let the warme vapour goe into the eares.

Item, take *Rosemary*, *Sage*, *Betony*, *Cammomill*, *Pariorum* gentle, of each alittle sodden together, and vsed as aforesaid. Item, for this is also good, the vapour of vinegar wherein *Wormewood* is decocted: also the iuice of *Dinions* and of *Rue* decocted in oile, and two or thre drops put into the eare; boile the *Betony* alone in wine; and let the vapour go into the eare, the iuice of *Pariorum* put into the eare oftentimes in the day, drineth away all sissing of the eares, which cometh through any winde or colde matter, and hindreth sleepe.

We haue before shewed how to mixe *Euphorbium* in the oile of bitter Almonds, for which one may take the oile of *Elderne*, of *Rue*, of *Cammomill*, and *Will*, also of *Lycebane*, *Peach kernels*

kernels, oile of Walnuts, of Baies, or which you will : or you may vse one of these aforesaide, which you will, alone or with oile of Beuer cod, and of *Euphorbium*, which is not so hot. Item take the gall of an Ore, or of a Shæpe, the oile of bitter Almonds, of each halfe an ounce, the iuice of Vinions, or of Garlick and honie, of each one quarter of an ounce, temper them, and vse them as is aforesaid. Take the oile of Spike (at the Apothecaries) and the iuice of Vinions, of each a like much, vse it warme as before, it is very forcible.

Item take one drag. and a halfe of Aristologie, temper it together with the oile of Baies, and vse it as before.

Hissing in the Eares with bad hearing.

TAke white Helleboe, Beuer cod, of each one drag, Rue, Saltpeter, long Pepper, of each two scrup. *Euphorbium* one scrup. the iuice of Radish and Garlick, the oile of sweete and bitter Almonds, oile of Dill, of Cammomill, of Sardus, of each one ounce, let them seethe alone in a pot of water vntill the iuice be consumed : afterwards straine them through a cloth, and drop two or three drops in the eare with a chip or slice of Cyper wood, whereon is laid a good deal of the stamped leaues of Marierum. These little Cyper bords are very highly commended of famous Physicians, made warme and laid alwaies before meate vpon the diseased eare and temples vntill it be colde, and this continued so long, vntill the hissing be gone away : also when one goeth to sleepe he may lie downe vpon his eare, putting alwaies the stamp Marioram vnto it.

And if any body through the great hissing cannot sleepe, then is he to prepare this bag following, and after that it hath laine certaine howers in ley, to wash and rub himselfe therewith.

Take the innermost of the Coloquint, field Cyper, *Afarabacca*, Centorie, of each one handfull, Marioram, field Spinte, Penneroall, of each two handfulls, water Spinte one handfull and a halfe, chop it small, and make two bags thereof : lay them in ley and wash your head therewith, afterwards wring them out well, and lay them warme vpon the head, or on the hissing eare. It is an approued remedie.

Item in like maner may you take a drie bag so to holde before the eare ; to wit, of Betony Stechas, Marioram gentle, and Cammomill ; lay these warme vpon the eare. Take Mastick halfe an ounce, *Piretrum* one drag. beate it small and temper it with as much honie of Roses that you may forme Troscos thereof, chew it in the mouth and spet it out againe : they doe draw much slime out of the head.

Treacle and Spithydate are not onely good against this hissing, but also against all the diseases of the eares and hearing : Wherefore it is commanded in this disease, so to take after purging, one drag. of fine Treacle, with conserue of Buglosse.

After meate you shal vse Permelade or any such like that detaineth the ascending vapours out of the stomacke towards the head : it is also commended not to eate much in the euening, nor to drinke late. But rather to take a sponesfull of Carroway seede (which is steeped in vineger) and so goe to bed, or may vse also Annise, fennell, and prepared Coziander.

What meates are to be refrained.

BEware of all whatsoever doth ascend vpwards towards the head, as Garlick, Mustard, Vinions, Hoseradish, Ruts, strong Wine, and all that is made of do we and milke, of Coleworts, sodden fish, and especially from Geles and Trenches, also from all broths, but especially in the euening : also it were not amisse euery fourth day before the supper, or two or three howers after, to take these pills following.

Take Beuer cod fine graines, pills of *Sarcocolla*, halfe a drag. washed Aloe one quarter of an ounce, make pills thereof with the iuice of Rop ; after this vse the vapour described in this §. where it beginneth : Take Marioram gentle, Stechas, &c. afterwards this bag or cap laid vpon the head, that both the eares euen to the necke be couered therewith : Take Rop, marsh Spint, Penneroall, Marioram and Rue, all drie, of each one handfull, Pace halfe an ounce, Aneos, Bozage seedes, and Carroway, of each halfe a handfull, two white Poppie heads, stamp all

all these to powder, and make thereof a rap or bag.

Another. Take *Asarabacca*, *Pep*, *Pennirovall*, *Stechas*, of each one handfull and a halfe, *Spiknard*, *Spica Romana*, *Rosemarie* flowers, *Basill*, *Lignum Aloes*, of each halfe a drag. Pare halfe an ounce, poune this together, and make a rap thereof; make it warme betwene two Cipers boards, and lay it on the head, as befoze. Capitall powders are also commended for this purpose: Take *Lignum Aloes*, *Cucubes* and *Cloues*, poune each apart, and strowe this in the haire on the top of the whole head, as is taught befoze.

Will you then haue a mirt or compounded powder? Then take one quarter of an ounce of *Lignum Aloes*, *Spica Indica*, *Cucubes* and *Cloues*, of each one drag, *sandaraca*, and *Roses*, of each two drag. Pare thre drag, make thereof a powder; strowe this vpon the head two howers after supper and early in the morning, like as is said. Whereto all such patients are oftentimes to smell, is sufficiently alledged here befoze in the eight Chapter and 8. §. in the diminishing or lost smelling.

Of the binding or rubbing in the hissing of the Eares.

For this rushing or hissing of the eares is very good, that the shoulders euen vnto the rump, and the knees vnto the fete, be forcibly rubbed and chased downwards so long, till they be through red.

It is also very commodious to binde them hard, and againe quickly to make loose and vndo them: also to binde hard the browne beneath the knees, and then after wards ascending by little and little, euen to the very puiities.

In like manner are also mete for this, boring cups without picking, applied from the buttocks vponwards euen to the shoulders.

Lastly, if there appere in the face or on the temples, any extuberating, then can it not be ill to let two or thre ounces of blood out of the *Phedian*. To these we will adde a very olde superstition, whereof *Plinius* hath written 1500. yeres agoe, which is, When ones right eare itcheth, then is there somewhere some good thing spoken of him: but if any ones left eare itch, then is there some ill speaking of him; which misbelaeve continueth with many euen to this present day.

Impostumes and sores in the Eares. §. 3.



It hapneth very seldome that nature accusdometh to purge her superfluous moisture through the impostume of the eares, neuertheless it chaunceth in yong new borne children which are full of moisture; this appeareth oftentimes in the first described sisting of the eares, but when this hath ceased and abideth away, yet cometh againe and endureth the space of thre dayes; then it is a signe that there is an impostume of the eares at hand, for which maturatiues must serue, and when it is broken vp, mundification. The running and mattering of the eares is moued through thre kinds of causes, to wit, of an impostume, or of some vlcers of the eares, or through any desluxion into the eyes that afterwards falleth towards the eares, and there putrifying, is altered into corruption and matter.

For all these foresaid a sober life is fit and requisite, whereby this course of matter may be diminished. Also the patient must refraine from all grosse and vapoious meates: moderate exercise is mete and commodious for him: he is alwayes to hold the bodie loose: if he be hot and full of blood by nature, then is his head baine to be opened, in the hand or in the arme. And if so be this (by reason of occasion) might not be compassed, then are boring cups to be set vpon the shoulders, also to purge with the pills *Cochia*, and otherwhiles insue naxing, for that it draweth the matter into the nose, whereby it may be easily purged and drawne, for the Gargarismes are also very mete which are prescribed in *Paralysi*: for this are also outward things to be vsed wherewith the impostumation may quickly be matured, the matter enacuated, and the vlcers mundified, the which can be by no surer meanes effected then by this: take oyle of *Sesumum* halfe an ounce, Ducks and Hens grease of each one quarter of an ounce, melt them together, and drop them oftentimes in the eare, or vse *Hydromell* which is described in the end of the seauenth Chapter.

Item

Item, take salt water wherein fish hath ben sodden, or the pickle of salt Oliues, and vse them as before: the same may you do also with the leaues of Betonie sodden in wine, which are very good for all paine of the eares: or take the iuice of Harts tong tempered with hony, afterwards are to be vsed one of these things following.

First. This is a commodious plaister for to draw out the matter therewith, take two ounces of *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, Turpentine and Wax, of each halfe an ounce, Serapin one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of Onyons one drag. and a halfe, Pyrrhe, Beuercod, of each one drag. dissolue the Gums in a little Wine, and pounce all that is to be pounced, afterwards mingle them and worke thoroughly this salue with oily handes; So that there be made a hard plaister of it.

Another: Take one ounce and a halfe of fine wheate flower, the Muscilage of Linsede, of Fenegræke seede, Celes grease (which droppeth off when they are roasted) gold Litharge, Ceruse, and Frankincense, of each one drag. make a plaister of it, and lay it all over the eare, and rub it also in the eare. Item take fresh Hollihocke rootes beaten small, two ounces, Linsed, and Fenegræke seede both beaten, of each one ounce, Will seede and Cammomill of each halfe an ounce: let them seethe somewhat together in butter: afterwards make a soft plaister thereof and laie it vpon the eare as is aforesaid.

Another, which is not vnlike vnto this former: Take the muscilage of Hollihocke rootes, of Linsedes, and Fenegræke seede, of each three drag. Lilly rootes sodden and stamp as much as is needfull for a plaister: temper amongst it one ounce of seedes of Will, two ounces of Cammomil, butter sixe ounces; if it be too thin, let it seethe till it be thicker, annoint all over the eare therewith, and lay it vpon it.

But when the paine beginneth to cease, it is then a signe that the impostume is ripe and will breake: But for to drawe out the matter the better to mundifie and heale, you are then to vse this that hereafter followeth.

Take *Sarcocolla*, Aloe, Dragon blood, Iron drasse, Verdigrease, Pyrrhe, and Frankincense, of each halfe a drag. temper altogether with Vineger, dip a taint therin and put it into the eare. The same doth also the well knowne salue called *Apostolorum*, whether it be newe or olde. Iron drasse alone brused small and tempered with vineger vntill that it be as thicke as honie, rub the same in the eare, it dyeth much. The like also doth burnt Allom tempered with honie.

This ensuing is also marueilous good for all kindes of impostumes of the eares: Take honie fine drag. Vineger halfe an ounce; let them seethe; put thereto one drag. of Verdigrease brused small: lay it with wooll in the impostumated eare. Item, whether you see the impostume in the eare or not, you are to walhe the eare with water wherein Willowe leaues and Agrimony are decocted and mixte with Drimell. If there be great paine with it, then looke into the 1. S. chuse there what you please to assuage the same: but if this matter and impostume be caused of a hot corruption, the which may be knowen by the former signes, then is the head baine to be opened and let him bleede. Lastly also purge, as is alleadged in the paine of the eares through heate, and drop oftentimes new womans milke. For this is also good, oile of Roses decocted with vineger vntill all the vineger be consumed.

Some do take oile of Roses, of Violets and vineger, of each halfe an ounce, Venbane seedes halfe a drag. and let them seethe till the vineger be wasted away, then straine it through a cloth: this may be done the first three or fouer daies; and then vse this drying and healing salue.

Take Iron drasse as much as you please, make it glowing hot, and then stake it in vineger, and do this so fower times together; afterwards take thereof one quarter of an ounce beaten small, and bruse it very small vpon a brusing stone; temper amongst it one ounce and a halfe of the oile of Roses, vineger seven drag. Make as much as is needfull for to make a soft salue; spread thereof vpon the taint, and stop it into the eare, or seethe it in vineger and oile. Take shæpes wooll with the fat called *Hysopus Humida*, temper therewith as much oile of swæte Almonds, and vse it in the eare, it is very wholesome: likewise is also Meruaine and Pightshade sodden.

Item take the leaues of Pightshade, beate them very small, temper some Salt amongst them, make a plaister thereof, and lay vpon the eares. Take oile of Roses and clarified honie, of each a like much; temper it well, and drop it in the eare: this is good for all impostumated and soze eares.

Will not the paine cease but rather increase: then take *Opium* one scrup. oyle of Violets three drag. vse it like as in the paine of the eares is expressed in the §. 1.

Or take two graines *Philonium Romanum*, and a little womans milke, drop it in the eare, it allwageth the paine. This is to be layd on the outside, take the muscilage of Linseed and Fenegreke seede.

Item, take Ducks grease, Hens grease, the suet of ffores, or which you will, tempered together with oyle of *Sesamum*, it delayeth the paine.

If the impostume be very hote, temper Goats suet with Hony, this maturateth and allwageth the paine. For this is also mete Butter alone, or else tempered with Calues seate, oyle and Hony.

Item, melt Hony and oyle of Cammomil together, temper some Cosedung amongst it, let it seethe a little, and then wying it through a cloth, this helpeth for the opening of the impostumes. But this insuing is moze better and moze profitable for to mature and open all impostumes.

Take Litharge of gold and Ceruse of each halfe an ounce, white Rosen, Frankinsence, and mildust, of each one ounce and a halfe, Sallet oyle sixe ounces, For grease, Goats suet, and Hogs grease (altogether fresh) of each one ounce and a halfe, Muscilage of Linseed and of Fenegreke as much as is needfull, let them seethe vnto a plaister, and lay it ouer the eares vpon the forehead and temples of the head. You must also keepe a part soft with the water of the greater Withwinde, and when you will occupie it to mollifie it with Hony and moysten Cotton therein, and so vse it in the eare. But if the impostume do come through colde, the which may be perceiued through the small paine, lesse beating, by cold weather, continuance, and such like, then is he to be purged againe with the pills *Cochia*. For this, is also mete the foze mentioned suets and greases, tempered with oyle of Spike.

Item, take a good handfull of Spillet, parch it in a pan, that thereby it may lose the moyssure, and may warme the better, put it in a bag and lay it so warme vpon the eare; this doth also parched bread mixed with salt: in like maner also dyed Betony layd warme in a bag vpon the eare.

Item, hold the eare oftentimes ouer hote water wherein Spints, Stechas, and Pariozam are decocted.

Take Rue, Dinions, both or each apart, vse them as before. This warmeth also the matter, and prepareth it to breake out. The oyle of Hemp seeds dropt into the eare helpeth also to mundifie. The iuice of Dinions and Rue, of each a like much moztly salted, doth much drie the running of the eares; likewise also the iuice of Radishes.

In like sort are requisite for this these iuices ensuing, to wit, that of Daffodils, of shepherds purse, of Werneine, Knotgras, each alone, or mixed: the iuice of Betonie tempered with oyle of Roses, and so used is very good for all impostumes and paine of the eares.

Item, take Beane straw, seethe it in water and receiue the vapour in the eare, for it is especiall good for all hissing impostumes, and paine of the eare which procede through colde.

But if these foze said things will not help, then take one ounce and a halfe of Sallet oyle, skéepe one quarter of an ounce of Turbith a whole day therein, then let it seethe somewhat, and temper one ounce of the oyle of Lillies amongst it, *Euphorbium*, Beuerrod, of each one drag. vse it as the foze mer; this disperseth the matter mightily.

In like sort it is oftentimes found, that the water which runneth out of the greene Ash wood layd on the fier, doth helpe marueilously if one let a drop or twaine thereof fall into the eare.

Here before is an oyle also described which is made with Beetles, which are called in latine *Scarabaeos*, the which in time of neede is also to be used. These beasts do liue in the eueninges alwayes in Sommer.

Item, take the salue *Basilicum*, melt it in the oyle of Lillies, or the salue *Martiaton* molten in the oyle of Spike, and rub it all ouer about the impostume.

Bathing is also very mete with warme herbs wherein Stechas, Cammomil and Bay berries be decocted: but first to purge with the pills *Cochia*, other wise it is not commodious.

And if so be this impostume would fistulate, then temper Dre gall, with as much vaine of a yong boy and drop it into the eare: or take the oyle of Rue, Hens grease, and Dre gall, of each halfe an ounce, Swines bzed one quarter of an ounce, Comin one drag, both beaten, let these seethe

sethe in two ounces of vineger untill the vineger be consumed, whereof being strained, you shall twice a day drop into the eare. Item, take wine wherein white frankincense is sodden: another: Take red wine and honie, of each halfe an ounce, white Velleboe one drag. and a half, steep a linnen taint therein, and sticke it in the eare. For this is also good, whatsoeuer is described for the fistula of the eie.

Outward sores of the Eares. §.4.



About the eares do also engender mo kinds of outward swellings, which are called *Parotida* or *Gemelli*. For that commonly there commeth one vnder each eare, chiefly in the time of the plague; whereof is moze at large discoursed in the first part. These are somewhat perilous, not onely in the time of plague, but also hurtfull for the bzaines at other times, for that they be causes not onely of frantickenes, but also of death: in like maner also if the matter descendeth towards the throte, it both sometimes cause a squinancie, whereby the patient commeth otherwhiles in great perill, and might be strangled therewith.

These foresaid swellings may proceede from the blood *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and *Melancholia*: the signes of blood are fulnes and hardnes, if it be wrong with the finger, the place where the finger was sheweth white and in the twincle of an eie spreadeth with red; also with heauy breath and ill swallowing. If the grieue do come through *Cholera*, or of the subtlest blood, then there is a byring payne and great heate, without any impediment either of breathing or swallowing. But if it proceede of *Phlegma*, then is there a little payne in the feeling, without heat or great rednes. As the other be, the *Melancholia* giueth great hardnes and little paine, and is leaden coloured: these are to be cured as followeth. First, if the patient be of a *Phlethorick* constitution, then the matter of the same is to be auoided & drawen away with Clusters and letting of blood: also to be holpen with letting of cups, especially if there be no headache or Ague at hand, that thereby one doe not agrauate paine with paine: but if there be great paine with it, then vse outwardly warming and moistening things; as Butter, the yolks of eggs, sodden Hollihocke rootes, Swines grease, figs, muscilage of Linseed, of Fenegrake seede, oyle of Olives, warme water & such like: and if the same swelling encline to maturation, then make a plaister of these things following, which are in a readines; as mill dust, Linseed meale, and Fenegrake meale, or wheate meale: temper them with water wherein Gallowes, Hollihocke rootes, Figs or Fenegrake are decocted: these things do mollifie, consume, and maturate; when they be ripe they are to be opened, the matter is to be let out, and the issue so long continued, untill all the blcer be fresh and well mundified. But if the swelling be caused through colde, then are hotter things to bee used for to maturate it, as oyle of Cammomill, oyle of Lillies, & old Swines blood, tempered amongst it, or Coates dung, Shæpes dung sodden in wine and a little honie put thereto. This is very forcible also, Dre tallow with honie, oyle of Lillies, the iuice of Onions, Linseed oyle, Pease meale, and such like tempered together.

But if the maladie be olde, then must strong things be used therunto, as Treas, Pigeon dung, of the foresaid grease or tallowe of old beasts, for how much older the beast is, so much the better is the grease.

For this is also good Badgers grease, Beares seiwet, the marrowe of Harts bones: of these foresaid things may plaisters be made: Take which you will of the Gumme *Ammoniacum*, the fatnes of Sheepes woll, *Sal gemme* and such like, are you to mixe amongst it.

Of the bleeding at the Eares. §.5.

This vnaccustomed bleeding of the eares, both come of falling, or of blowes on the head, but seldome of superfluous blood, but often thorough very subtle blood, the which openeth the vaines in and about the eare: if it come in hot Agues, or in great paine of the head, then followeth great ease afterwards: if it be caused of falling or blowes, then is the head vaine to be opened on the same side, for that thereby the blood will be drawen downe and hindered that it congeale not in the eare, and so cause an impostume: if there be paine with it, vse oyle of Cammomill, Willowewood, or the iuice of the same with

with so much wine wherein hot bread is steeped, and so laid ouer all the eare. Item, see the Gals in vinegar and water, and drop thereof in the eare. Take a whole Pomegranate, see the it in vinegar, and wying it out well: also for this is good Hares greale decocted in vinegar. But if you be afraide of any goyed or congealed blood in the eares: for that vse the iuice of Carlick tempered with vinegar: if there be any heate with it, then take the iuice of Shepherds purse, the iuice of Plantaine, the iuice of Youllake, which you will, tempered with wine. These are cooling and astringent.

Item take both the kidneies of a steele or ore, with some of the tallow about it; salt it mæte-ly well, let them rosse: of the fat which droppeth off, put a little into the eares. All that is also described in the right Chapter 7. §. of the blading of the nose, that is also very fit for this purpose.

Of little wormes that growe in the Eares, and that do creepe into them outwardly, and such like. §. 6.

Wormes do growe as well in the eares as in the intrailles, although that the same be not so common: these do make an itch with great paine. Besides that, it happeneth oftentimes if one do lie vpon the bad eare, that the wormes do creepe or fall out. Against this are you to vse any of these iuices following; of Spints, of Peach leaues, Peach kernels, and water wherein Aloes is dissolved, put of each a drop in the eare; for that they kill all wormes whether it be that they be growen or crept into them, as fleas or earwigs. The same doth also the iuice of Wormwood, of Lupines, of Capers rootes, Coriander rootes, which haue therein an especiall propertie; and also the iuice of greene nut shels: some do decoct in wine a little Helleboe, and so drop it therein. But if these maladies may otherwise be cured, then is the vse of these rootes to be omitted.

Item, take burning Nettles, stampe them and straine out the iuice, put it into the eares, and giue him to eate of the roote, it will helpe immediately. Take Aloe halfe an ounce, Coloquint, *Agaricus* of each halfe a drag, beate them together, and temper them with hot water, buse them and vse as aforesaid. Take a slice of well tosted bread, hold it to the eare, then will the wormes, fleas, earwigs, and such like come out: or holde the eare wherein the wormes be, on the vapour of hot new milke: then do the wormes creepe after the vapour of the said milke.

Another, take one quarter of an ounce of Wine, Hony, and oyle of Roses, of each the drag, temper them together with the beated whites of two eggs: make cotton moist therein, and stop the eare therewith, lye about an houre on that side, afterwards plucke it suddenly out, then will the worme hang vpon it: the same doth also the wolle steeped in Hony. Item, set a great boying cup or glasse on the eare, then will it be drawne out whatsoever is within it.

Obstruction or stopping of the Eares through inward
and outward causes. §. 7.



If the eares be stoppt, and thereby the hearing hindered, the same must procede either through an inward or outward cause. The inward cause may be some tough slime or moisture, wormes growing in them, congealed blood, matter, impostumations, excrescence of flesh, warts, and such like. Outward causes are, if there come any thing into them whereof we will speake seuerally. Do now these obstructions proceed of excrescences, warts, and such like, which one cannot see nor come at with the hand: then is it taken to be incurable: as contrarywise if it may be seene, it may very well be cured, the which is committed to the Chirurgeons, otherwise the oyle of Bay, Dre gall, Hempe oyle, are very good, each used apart. If then the stopping be through slime, matter, or any other vncleannes, mollifie it with the oyle of bitter Almonds, or drop hony water warme into it two dayes together, and oftentimes to vse the one in stead of the other: afterwards take a warme tyle, sprinkle it with wine, couer it with a cloth, lay the eare vpon it, to the end that the matter may runne out: for this is also good Goats gall tempered with oyle, or Scorpion oyle for the stopping with wormes, you haue heretofore in the 6. §. the remedies.

If any thing be gotten into the Eares from without. §. 8.



These things are of two sorts, as it also hapneth that the one child doth put peason, small stones, or chery stones into the eare of an other; the other be soft things, as water, fleas, Carewigs, and such like. If this happen, then is not the same to be slept vpon or delayed, for those things require help and aduise with all speed, for there is great danger imminent, especially if that which is crosen therein be of any bad nature, for of that commeth great paine, and consequently great sickness.

For this accident, first one of these foresaid Oyles is to be dropped therein, afterwards to bath, and to sit there a good while, moue nœsing, and to hold in the breath for to drie out what soeuer is in the eares: but if this will not help, then is the same to be done with manuell operation with instruments. But if that which is gotten in be liquid and soft, as water; then vse oyle againe, and bend the necke alwayes towards the side of the disease, and exercise your selfe with leaping and iumping: and if so be that it come not out thereby, then indue your selfe againe to nœsing. Also you may often cleanse the eare with an eare picker covered with wœll, or with a peece of a sponge, or to tye the pith of Elderne wood at a thred and so to thrust it into the eare or through a little pipe let the moisture be sucked out, the which in like manner may be done with the wormes. One may also hold the eare ouer the vapour of whote wine, wherein Cammomil, Linseed, Annis seeds and such like are decocted. But if fleas or wormes be gotten into them, they do rayse great paine through their iumbling, especially the fleas: for the which take a Taint and annoynt it with a little cleauing salue made of Turpentine and Rosen, to the end that the fleas being fast thereat may remaine hanging at it and so be drawne out.

If this cannot be effected, then vse that which is heretofore described in the 6. §. of the wormes in the eare, and wherewith they be to be destroyed.

Of the deminishing of hearing. §. 9.



The deminishing of hearing may procede of many sundrie occasions: the outward causes are these, strong fumes, vnerpected, vehement, and sudden noyse, as when the thunder striketh on, oftentimes hath bene sene that some thereby haue lost their hearing, and haue bene starke deafe. In like manner the south winde doth also cause it, by reason that it filleth the bzaines with moisture whereby the sense of hearing is inflexible. What now concerneth deafnesse, and the diminishing of the hearing, thereupon do all learned men first conclude, That if we be iborne with it, or that it continue the space of two yeres, that there is no hope at all left for to cure the same: and if the same do procede of any moisture, water, matter, or other cause, whereby the hearing is weakened, that may be knownen by these meanes ensuing.

Take a sponge, make it very drie and warme; binde it in a double linnen cloth, and when you go to bed lay it vnder the eare: if you then in the morning see the cloth spotted, then may you well adiudge, that there is some matter in the eare, whereby that the hearing is hindered: but if the cloth be cleane and faire, then dependeth it on another cause.

If that this disease do then come through heate, yet without any impostumation, the which thereby may easily be discerned: if the patient complaine of no heauinesse, but much rather of lightnesse in the head, the heate perceiued in the feeling may well abide colde things, and hot things very ill: where this is found and perceiued, then to take away the great heate is first to be endeouored, and to drop those things ensuing into it luke warme.

The oile of Roses, oile of Violets, oile of water Lillyes, temper them together, or vse each alone. Item, take a Pomegranate, wring out the iuice, put vineger and oile of Roses vnto it, of each a sponesfull, pounded Frankincense one dragm. and a halfe, let it sethe a little, and drop it therein.

Take the water of Lettise, the water of a cut Wine, mire them together, or vse each alone, the beaied whites of eggs with womans milke (mingled together or each vled alone) that giueth suck

to a maiden child, are also very good: the iuice of Houflocke alone, or tempered with other things, is also good.

Take Gallioles, Hollihocke rootes, Lettice, Purslaine, Willow leaues, Nightshade, of each halfe a handfull, let them seethe together, and receiue the vapour.

But if this deafnesse, as it chiefly happeneth through cold matter, which cannot be without winde, then is the patients head alwaies heauie, the face puffed vp or swollen, casteth out much moisture through the mouth and nose: for this is the head vaine to be opened, certaine potions to be vsed, as Dymel of Squills, or sirupe of Stechas, one ounce and a halfe, in a b:oth wherein Pariozam gentle, Hyssope and fitches be decocted; and afterwarde to purge with the pills *Cochie* euery 14. daie once, in the weight of a french crowne. Some do vse the *Hieralogion*: two daies after purging, he is to gargarise with this decoction following.

Take Hyssope, Pariozam, field Spints, of each halfe a handfull, Calmus, Mustard seede, of each three drag. stampe and beate it with honie vnto a confection, take thereof one quarter of an ounce, temper it in eight ounces of water, wherein Dane warde, fullers grasse, or Lycbane is decocted. Also to prouoke nesling is very meete: how that is to be effected, loke in the first Register.

In like maner Pasticke doth drawe out much slime. Also Ginger and *Pieretrum*, oile of bitter Almonds alone is to be dropt into the eare, oile of Bay tempered with a little oile of Roses, or some Pepper amongst it, or the iuice of an Onion, of Radish, of Garlick, of Daffodils (which you will) as much strong vinegar with it, and for euery ounce foure graines of *Euphorbium*, tempered amongst it: The vapo: of water wherein wormewood is decocted, and the warme vapo: of Vineger receiued into the eare openeth all obstructions, and consumeth all moystures.

Take Hares gall, fore fat, molten Pitch, of each a little quantity, temper them together, it is very good for deaffenes. In like sorte Shapess gall, Sallet oile, the oile of bitter Almonds and wine decocted together vntill the wine be cleane euaporated.

Of this ensuing it is said that it hath holpen deaffenes, which hath continued thirtie yeeres, and they that find it so may iustly say, *Probatum est*.

Fill a bottell with the blossomes of Walnuts, stop it fast with ware, that it do not putrifie, & that there come no vapo: out of it, burie it in horse dung, that it stand couered all about three quarters of a yarde: let it stand so a whole yeare, when you then open it, then shall you finde therein a kinde of oile or moistnes, that must you straine out and set in the sun certaine daies together, then put a drop thereof into the eare, and you shall quickly find amendment: At the first opening it hath a lothsome stench; therefore must the eares and nostrils be stopped, and to eschew as much as is possible the receiuing of this vapo:.

But if the infirmitie of the hearnig do come out of any vncleannes, then is the same to be remedied with the things described in this chapter, in the S. 3. of the impostume of the eares, or els if it be needfull to vse the manuell operation for it: and if so be that there be no matter appearing, and that the disease doth breede through repletion, or of some great former sickness, then are the eares to be somented with the water wherein Pariozam gentle, Wormewood, Stechas, Spints, and Pariozam is decocted, for that this vapo: doth consume and erpell all windes and thicke vapors, which doe stop the conduits of the hearing. Also one pound of fresh or new Sallet oile sodden, and the vapo: thereof receiued into the eares is also verie conuenient.

Trocisces.

Further you are to prepare these Trocisces: Take Coloquinte halfe an ounce, Bozas one scrup. Beuercod, Aristologie, the iuice of Wormewood of each halfe a drag. the roote of *Costus* 15. gr. *Euphorbium* ten grains, Cologals as much as is needfull for to fashion Trocisces thereof: when you will vse them, then breake it with oile of bitter Almonds, and drop thereof into the eare.

This medicine is very fit for all infirmities or diminishing of the hearing, which proceedeth of winde and legmatike humors.

Item take Aloe, Coloquinte, *Euphorbium* of each one scrup. temper it altogether with Cowgall, afterwards diuide it in small peeces and let them drie: when you will vse this, then buse it on a stone, and mixe it with the iuice of Radish and so drop it luke warme into the eare, and annoint

annoint it also therewith. Item take oile of Baye, and sethe therein a cast skin of a Snake.

Take beaten Bay berries halfe an ounce, sethe them in the oile of Lillies; afterwards wzing it out through a cloth, and vse it as befoze.

Do take Balsame, oile of Juniper, the oile of bitter Almonds, temper them together, or vse each alone.

Item take the iuice of Sage, as much as you please, temper it with Dre gall, or Goose grease, or the fat of an Ele.

Item take oyle of Scorpions, of sweete Almonds, and Wormewood, of each a like quantitie, mire them together, or vse each alone. The same doth also the herbe Coriander decocted with Vinions and water.

Do take Ants eggs, powne them, and put thereto a fresh Hares gall, as much honie as both of them, temper them together, and vse them luke warme.

Item take a reasonable big Radish, wind it about with wet towle, rost it vnder the ashes, clesse it, and afterward stampe it, wzing out the iuice, then put as much Sallet oile vnto it, and vse it as the other.

Take Dre gall, the iuice of blew Flower de luce, oile of bitter Almonds, of each a like quantitie; drop it warme into the eare. Take also the iuice of Peach leaues, the iuice of Wormewood, of eache a like much: This is very soeicible for the impostumation of the eares, and payne of the same.

Passer Trisframs water described befoze in the discourse of the face, and 1. S. is very good for this infirmity of the hearing being dropt into them, and used otherwise.

But if this disease be caused of too much fasting or too much watching, whereby the face is cleane fallen away, and wares leane, and the eies stand deepe in the head, then must one bathe oftentimes, eate well, and drinke more than befoze, sleepe longer: to powze oftentimes vpon the head warme water and oile, and to keepe it moist.

The tenth Chapter.

Of the Lips.

The face is comprehended the mouth that outwardly doth not appere in sight, but only the lips, which do hide all that is contained therein, and accordingly are described among the inward members.

The vse of the foresaid lips is diuers: first and befoze all they are most needefull for the speech, therefore that they also by nature are wholly moueable and light, yea made more swift to moue than any other muscle of the bodie: so that iustly they may be called neither skin nor fleshy onely, but a musclie skin. They do couer (I say) and shut the mouth, to the ende there come nothing into it against ones will: also that they might couer the teeth from all colde aire, and whatsoever else; they do retaine the spetle, that otherwise would alwaies driuell apparently out of the mouth. So do they also keepe in the meate, the which the tong doth thrust amongst the teeth, and might fall out of the mouth. Lastly, both for man and beasts they are be- houefull to drinke in the drinke.

The learned do ascribe fower kindes of maladies vnto the lips, as chops and clifts, impostumation and quauerings: others do write onely of the chopping and the swelling, as hereafter shall appere.

Of the chops or clifts of the Lips. §. 1.

This is otherwhiles caused through fals strokes, great heate or colde, whether it be inward or outward, and very often of nipping colde winde: the signes of the outward causes are to be perceiued by the patient. Be they then prouoked through sharpe hot catarres or rheumes, which do fall out of the head: then is there a manifest heate and drouth in the lips; in like manner also in the forehead and in the

nose : if there be no such, then is it a signe that it doth procede of vapour. If now these chops procede of a burnt matter, as salt *Phlegma*, *Cholera*, or *Melancholia*, then are the same to be prepared for expulsion, and to vse three or fouer moynings together the sirupe of *Jumitorie*, of *Mozme*, *wood*, or *Oxyacchara* tempered with *Endiue* water, or such like ; and then to purge with these pills following, which are approued especiall good for all such burning matter : Take the rindes of yelow *Piobalans*, *Chebuli*, *Sene*, *Epithymum*, of each two scrup. *Pastick* halfe a scrup. *Agaricus* and *Kubarbe*, of each one scrup. *Diagridon* two scrup. *Jumitorie* halfe a drag. make thereof pills with the iuice of *Jumitorie* : one may giue of these pills one drag. vnto one drag. & a halfe. Afterwards lay a flut vpon hot coles, vntill the shell be somewhat blackish, then wzing the oile out of the kernell, and annoint the clifts therewith.

Item take *Dragagant* or gum of *Cherrie* trees (which you will) in the mouth, vntill it begin to dissolue, afterwards rub it with the tong vpon the clifts, or dissolue it in *Rose* water, and so vse it.

Item, take fresh *Butter*, the muscilage of *flea* wood, *Calues* sewet, *Ducks* grease, *honie*, oile of *Roses*, of each a like much, melt them and temper well amongst them the well beaied white of an eg and *Pease* meale.

Item, burne the herbe *Ferne* to ashes, it healeth maruellous well : or take *Mare*, *Hens* grease, of each halfe an ounce, *Turpentine* one ounce, *Dragagant* halfe a drag. *Cals* one quarter of an ounce, melt them all together with a little oile, and mire the rest amongst it.

This following is also altogether wholesome : Take the *Caul* of the hart or stag, lay it the space of three daies in ley, wash it euery day with fresh water, and renew the ley euery day, let it drie ; the third day cut it small, and melt it by the fire : then temper amongst it halfe so much harts sewet, *Ceruse* beuised small, fire ounces, *Camfer* one drag. or beaten *Ginger* and *Cloues*, temper them together : but if so be that the chops do eate in, then leaue out the *Ceruse*.

Pomade.

Pomade is especiall good and safe. Take the sewet of a Hart, fresh *Butter* or *Barroloes* grease, of each three ounces, let them melt together on the fire, put thereto fouer or fine small cut apples, also white wine fire ounces : let all these sethe together, vntill that the apples be soft ; then beuise them well together, and put *Camfer* vnto it, *Cinnamome*, *Cloues*, *Putnegg*, of each halfe a drag. beaten small together, also *Pulsus* fouer graines, *Rose* water two ounces ; sethe these againe in another pot in boiling water, vntill all the *Rose* water be wasted away : afterwards wzing it throug a cloth, and wash it so long with *Rose* water, vntill it be white. This *Pomade* is also good for all chops of the hands and other wise. For this is the *Poplar* ointment also good.

Item, take white *Mare*, *Hens* grease, the sewet of a *Weather* sheepe, the iuice of *Rue*, of *Camomill*, *Dragagant*, of each a like quantitie, temper them together.

Take *Gum*, fresh oile of *Almonds* and *Hens* grease, of each a like much, *Mare* as much as is needefull : these two last are also speciall good for the impostumation of the nipples and womens breasts, although they gaue suck vnto children.

Hæmorrhoides.

The blood of the lips (do the Physicians cal *Hæmorrhoides*) it is to be healed like the vlceration and bleeding of the nose, which hath bene shewed in the eight Chapter.

Trembling of the lips.

The trembling or quauering of the lips is commonly a messenger of imminent vomiting, the which afterwards ceaseth againe : what is to be vsed for this quauering, loke in the Register.

If the lips be hot and swollen : for that do some aduise that the nauell is to be annointed with *Sallet* oile, the which is easily to be approued. You haue in many places else what is to be done to all such hot swellings : of the inuersion of the lips, shall be spoken hereafter amongst the diseases of the mouth.

The eleuenth Chapter.

Of the Beard.

This is the last part of the face which one seeth outwardly, and also a goodly ornament of man ; therefore that men do desire to haue it grow, and staied from falling out.

For

For the growing of the Beard. §.1.

For to make the beard growe thicke and speedily, take Southernwood, *Squinanth*, of each a handfull, powre oile of Will vpon it, stop it close, and let it stand a night; then afterwarde seethe it in water two or thre howers space; temper then more amongst it, about halfe an ounce of poudred Southernwood: after this straine it through a cloth, and annoint the place therewith, where you desire to haue a beard.

Another.

Take oile of Will two ounces, of Southernwood halfe a handfull, Squills two scrup. wine thre ounces, let these seethe so long together vntill all the wine be consumed, and then straine it through a cloth and vse it, as befoze. Like so; this also in the third Chapter §.1.

Against the falling out of the Beard. §.2.

Take as many Bees as you please, kill them and lay them in the sunne or elsewhere, beate them to powder, make with Sallet oile a salue thereof, and annoint therewith the balde place. Take five drag. of Ware, the oile of *Palma Christi* sedes two drag. & a halfe, liquide *Syrax* and *Pyrrhe*, of each 3. drag. *Laudanum* one ounce, *Euphorbium*, wilde Rue, Gum, *Cantharides*, of each thre drag. powdered Bees or Waspes two ounces, melt all that is to be molten, and temper the poudred things amongst it: therewith annoint the place of the beard when you go to bed; but chafed well first: and in the morning wash it off againe; let also the beard be often shauen away.

This ensuing is also good for the haire of the head and of the eiebowes.

Take the oile of Behen, seethe *Cantharides* therein, whereof the head and wings be abated, make it smell well with *Opuscus* and Amber, and vse it as befoze.

Even as of all outward accidents of the head and the face, mention hath bene made befoze; so will we now also speake of all inward diseases and members of the same. And first of the Braines.

The twelfth Chapter.

The Braines, and all that concerneth them.

Like as is already alledged, the braines are the vppermost and chiefest of all the inward members of mans bodie, a place and abode of the vnderstanding, memorie and iudgement, the which are shapen, and by nature fashioned with many kindes of wonderfull, seuerall, and proper shapes, for they be without blood, without flesh, soft and congealed together like as a scum, also as marrow, moist, cold, & of themselves insensibl.; where they neuerthelesse through the sinewes, do impart and send to all other members the sensiblenesse and motion. With this part of the bodie are all beasts endued (which haue much or little blood) but most of all men above all beasts, and the men more than the women: the foresaid braines are also moister in man than in any beast.

Hence do also spring all the sinewes, that thence (as is specified) do spread themselves through the backe ouer all the whole bodie, strengthening and conioining it, making it moucable and sensible. Vnto the braines do also stretch and reach the right beginning of all vaines out of the hart, and there do they ende: from thence commeth also sleepe, which imparteth rest vnto the whole bodie.

It is also the second part (next to the hart) that is formed in the mothers wombe.

This pretious and tender part is also subiect vnto many accidents, which bring with them very great inconueniences, like as for example, if so be that the braines through fals or strokes be annoyed

annoyed or molested; then doth it oftentimes come to passe, yea comonly, that the patient becometh mute and dumbe: like as also in the dead palsey the members are altogether nummed or utterly lamed, and so losse of vnderstanding ensueth. But before that we do come to these infirmities, we purpose here to admonish, that before the description of other diseases of the head, those things are not discovered, which might be conuenient for the braines; as *Pessing*, *Treacle*, *Epithymate*, *Ciebright wine*, *conserue of the same*, and such like. With these may be also well annexed, all that strengtheneth the braines, dryeth the superfluous moisture, taketh away heate, and whatsoeuer might be els. But because our whole booke is full with such like things, therefore it is the lesse needfull for to write much thereof.

For to drie the Braines.

For to drie and strengthen the braines, you haue amongst other, many and sundrie remedies. When you goe to bed, swallowe downe two or three little peeces of *Frankincense*, this strengtheneth and dryeth the braines marueilous much. The smell of *Sugar* is also very good received at the nose.

Certaine Aromaticall wines which in the last part are described with their operations, and other moe, as *Calmus*, compounded waters, *Paster Tristrams* water, are also very good for this vse.

And especially this following: Take *Ireos* three ounces, *Laualder* flowers, *Rosemarie* flowers, and the hearbe, *Rose* leaues, of each one ounce and a halfe, red *Syrax*, *Benzuin*, of each one ounce, *Nigella*, prepared *Coziander*, *Epithymum*, *Stechas*, of each one drag. make a powder thereof, furre a cap therewith and weare it on the head. You shall haue also many moe such like whereas we shall discourse of the giddines of the head.

But if you desire any coling things for the braines, whereto you haue not onely commodious things to lay thereon in the first chapter and second §. but also in other places where we discourse of the ague and plague, as much as concerneth their vertues and infections of the braines we will begin with that costly treasure of memorie.

Of the Memorie. §.1.

Memorie is a retaining of ads either heard or sene: Or memorie is a comprehension of the things ouer past; the which the minde, as present, doth keepe and retaine.

Item memorie is a retaining, establishing, and preserving of matters which haue bene conceived in the spirit. If so be that this memorie be hurt, then followeth forgetfulness of matters which be past and done. And there be two sorts described thereof by the Physicians: The first they doe call the greater *Lethargus*, the sleeping disease, whereof we will speake a parte hereafter. The other is lesse and without Ague, that may in time so take the vpper hand, that not onely the memorie will be enfebled; but also that men lose their vnderstanding and become childish and foolish. The cause of this is commonly a bad and cold complexion: otherwhiles also adioyned with cold and moisture which ouerruleth the hinder part of the head. If it be caused onely through colde, then it is *Stupor*, astonishment: These sicke persons doe speake neither of things past, nor yet things to come; they care for nothing, they sleepe and wake metely, they feele no brought of the tongue nor yet of the nose.

Lethargus

Stupor.

Cold braine.

Cold & drie.

Cold & moist

Mania.

But if this disease be caused thorough cold and drie, then can the patient sleepe, thinketh well vpon things which be ouer past, but not of any thing that is present: the mouth and nose are alwaies drie. If it come through moisture and colde, then it is the sleeping disease, which forgetteth all former things wholly and thoroughly, and all present very quickly: they haue verie moist braines: so that the moisture runneth out at the nose and mouth. If heate and drie be causes, then commeth it to *Mania*, that is the right madnes.

To the end now, that this precious treasure of memorie maie be continued and kept; there of you shall haue sufficient instructions which you finde of the sleeping sickness, astonishment and madnes: So that we will onely speake here of that kinde of forgetfulness which is caused of colde and moisture together, and is not an absolute *Lethargus*: neuerthelesse doth raigne most.

For this is to be applied for a generall rule to defend the head from all superfluous moisture, how the same is to be effected you haue many and sundrie meanes especially there where as it is discoursed of the cold paine of the head, in the first Chapter §. 2. and also hereafter where we shall speake of giddines.

But to the end we haue an orderly rule for to pzeuent this forgetfulness, therefore we will here prescribe an orderly meanes for an example.

If this disease pzoceede of an excessive vncleannes, sursetting of meate, of drinke, of colde, and such like outward causes, then are they to be shunned, and good gouernment obserued, wherof we will once againe speake more at large.

For this, must also strong Clusters be vled, take *Consolida Saracenicæ*, Betony, S. Johns wort, both kinds of Sage, both sorts of Centorie, Rosemary, Stechas, Flouramour, Camomil of each halfe a handfull, Baulme a handfull, Coloquint 1. drag. and a halfe; all these things are to be bounden in a cloth and sodden in sufficient water, afterwards wong out and to take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, wherein shall be tempered *Hiera Picra*, *Benedicta Laxatina*, of each five drag. Salt one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Lillies two ounces and a halfe. This Cluster (as is expressed) is strong; will you then haue a milder: then vse them that be described for the cold paine of the head: for a pzeparatiue potion is mete *Oxymel Squilliticum*, with the decoction of Galingall, or Calinus. Afterwards purge with these pills following, take *Pillula Cochis* one drag. Coloquint, Mastix, Bellion, of each halfe a drag. make pills thereof with the iuice of Baulme, you may giue them all together to a strong man, although they be strong. Hereafter you may vse certaine dayes Treacle, Spithidate, or *Aurea Alexandrina* one drag. at one time: afterwards purge againe with *Hiera Logodion*, or *Simplici*, according to the importance of the matter. You must annoint the head with Beuerd dissolved in Vineger, and oyle of Lillies, or rub the neck with some of these waters of life hereafter described, like as most of all those waters are requisite for this vse which be described in the eight part. For this, is also conuenient Ginger, Mastick, *Pyretum* chewed or bounden in a cloth by reason of his heate, they draw out much moisture. In like manner are things of a good sauour or smell to be holden before the nose, and those that be of hote nature as *Muscu*, *Ambra*, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloues, Putmegs, Indie Spica, floure Amour, and such like sauours: take Frankinsence, Pepper, Cipers rotes, and Myrhe, of each a like much; make with decocted Honnie a conserue thereof, giue thereof a drag. at one time.

The aunient Physicians commend much to take euery morning one drag. of Frankinsence, Pepper halfe a scrup. and that with a draught of wine.

Order of Dyet.



For forgetfulness of cold and moist causes are alwayes warming and drying things to be vled; the dwelling place must be cleare and cleane, and carnall copulation as much as is possible to be refrained, and that not only therein, for it is seldome found that they that be immoderate therein, haue a good memorie or vnderstanding: Mustard, Garlick, and all things which be of cold nature: in like manner, all excesse of meate and drinke is also very hurtfull; likewise also Putton, Parrow of Putton bones, sleepe immediately after meate, and such like: to the contrary all dry fruites which be parched, as haseell nuts and Chestnuts be very good.

Also all fowles are very mete for this and the bzaines of the same, wherof we haue made mention in the other description of dyet, where we haue spoken of the memorie, ordinarie going to slepe, and making water, &c. moderate mirth, fresh water wherein Baulme, Fenel, Bay leanes, and such like are decocted.

The head may also twise a weeke be washed with lye wherein Cammomil, Rosemary, Sage, Baulme, Betonie, or which one will, is steeped or decocted.

Like as for example to be followed, here we describe for these matters.

A good powder.

In especial
powder for
memorie.

Take thre ounces of Sene leaues, Seduarie, Cumine, Parsley, and Will seede, of each one ounce, Ginger halfe an ounce, Cloues, Putinegs, Calmus, Calingale, Wimpernell roots, Sage, Rue, Valerian, Annis, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar thre ounces, poune all small, and temper them together: take thereof in the morning and evening about one ozag. at one time: this powder doth not onely strengthen the bzaines, but also the memorie: it is also good against giddinesse of the head, clenseth blood, and is good for the stomache, strengtheneth the wombe, preserveth the lights from all superfluous humors, withstandeth all diseases of the hart, paine of the lyuer, of the milt, of the gall, driueth away the cough, maketh a good colour and a clere face. It is also good to be vsed against all swellings, and against all pestilentiall aire: holden in the mouth, it taketh away all toothach, stinking breath, and keepeth men in good health.

The water of *Carduus Benedictus* is said to strengthen the memorie, to take away the paine of the head, to amend the giddinesse, and all other accidents of the head, if so be that one take the water or the decoction of the herbe euery morning two or thre ounces at one time.

Coriander seede and bitter Almonds confected with Sugar, doe strengthen also the memorie and the bzaynes.

You haue heretofore in the second chapter and first §. of two lie bags which strengthen memorie, and in like maner in the eight chapter 8. §. of the oile of Briches which is also requisite for it. Secondly, there be also prepared for this many compounded wines, as the wine of Spariozam gentle, which not onely strengtheneth the memorie, but also canseth it, if it were lost, to returne againe.

Another meane for to strengthen the memorie.

Iohannes
Coletus.

There was by our time, at Canterburie here in England, a Canon, a Doctor of Diuinitie and also in the Lawe, named *Iohannes Coletus*, to whom by that time he was sixtene yeres olde, was an experiment imparted by a Christened Jewe, whereby he obtained such a marueilous strong memorie, that he retained and kept all that euer he read in all his life time: the which when he was in his 39. yere of age, he lying at the poynt of death, his friends praied him to disclose and reueale this secret remedie and experiment vnto them: where he hath declared that befoze he had a very grosse & hard vnderstanding, but through the vse of this experiment he afterwards obtained such a sharpe wit and memorie, that he could not onely remember & hold in mind that which he read, but also all that he heard and saw: Insomuch that he could recite by heart from woꝝd to woꝝd the *Decreta*, *Decretals*, the orders of all the Emperors lawes, with their expositions, *Aristotle* and other authoꝝs which he had seene and read. Also how manie names that were rehearsed befoze him, he could afterwards without missing one repeate them againe.

Therefore may this experiment be reputed of a great value, and as a gifte of God, because that thereby men may with so little trouble attaine vnto so great a matter.

First the head is to be clensted with these things following: Take *Pyretrum*, Spariozam, Calingall, Ginger, Caraway, seede of broade Plantaine, prepared white Mustard seede, of each a like much: this being beaten grosse together: and if this powder wey about two ounces, then sethe it in a quarte of water stop close so, when it hath now sodden well, then put a quarte of strong wine vnto it, and an ounce of clere honie, let it sethe againe vntill about two fingers breadth of the loquoꝝ be wasted: herewith are you once euery morning (in the increasing of the mone) to gargarise well and many times, holding it long and warme in the mouth, to the end it may vapoꝝ vp into the head.

Afterwards make this potion following: Take Ginger, long Pepper, of each one dzagme, Calingall one scrup. Cloues, Cubebs, of each one dzag. and a halfe: powne them altogether to powder, and binde them in a linnen cloth, let them sethe well together in two quartes of Wine stop fast as aforesaid: afterwards let it stand couered vntill it be clere, wherof you are to drink euery morning fasting, and at evening going to bed a good draught, and that befoze you shall haue annointed with the salue which shall hereafter be described. The vertue of this wine is for
to

to drawe a superfluous moisture out of the head.

This being done, then place your selfe in summer time in the sunne, and in winter season by the fier, and kembe your haire softly along time; so that thereby the pores may be opened: afterwards wash your head with the water of Rue, and drinke a good draught of wine, and thereupon eate a bit of twaine of bread that hath been steeped in the wine, then fall so vnto the euening. Your supper must also be sober, your sleepe quiet and vndisturbed: continue this many daies together, the longer the better.

When now the baines be warme with kembering, then annoint the head and the temples with this salve following. Take white Lillies, Colewort leanes, wilde Baulme, of each one drag. powne them together, put them in a pot, powze therein two ounces of Sallet oile, fresh butter as much as all the rest, three sponesfuls of the spirit of wine (which hath been rectified at least foure times) water of Rue, of Sage, of Celendine, of each two sponesfuls, old white Wine five sponesfuls, temper them well together, set it so fire or eight houres in a warme place, then straine it through a cloth; afterwards sethe the liquoz vntill it be as thicke as honie, (and that by a small milde fier) then set it in the sunne so long till it be of the colour of Copper: This salve must be alwayes made betimes, and it can continue good the space of two yeres. Also it becometh to gather all the hearbes for distillation when the daies be at the longest: and then may also most meetely this salve be prepared. This salve must you (as is rehearsed) vse after that the head is purged, you must annoynt well the hinder parts of the head and the temples with it; afterwards couer it with a letherne cap or hat, so that the head may be warme that the said salve may haue her operation the better in the blood and baines. In the euening is the head to be washed with good warme wine, and one must keepe a good diet, and vse meates that be light of digestion, also vse moderate drinking. This order is to be kept at the first by the space of foure daies, and so to continue it the space of a whole yere, euery eight weekes once two or three daies together.

The next yere afterward you may chuse one day vpon which it is good to take phisicke, and then vse this salve euery three moneths once, when the moone increaseth: The third yere it is sufficient once in twelue moneths, and afterwards so long as you liue, once in two yeres.

Of the giddinesse of the head, and infirmitie of the Braine. §.2.



This disease is called of the Grecians *Scotomia*, and of the Latinists *Vertigo*, which is a giddinesse or swimming of the head, we call it also the swimming of the head, for that it seemeth that all which one seeth runneth round about: or the sight faileth when he will behold any thing, and he thinketh that he seeth swarming before his eyes many maruels, and things which be of strange colours, yea it often happeneth that his eyes be very darke, and must fall to the ground, like as also it sometime happeneth to a sound bodie, if they run too much about: or to such that looke too much downward from a great height, or vpon a quicke turning thing, or into running waters.

This disease do they chiefly get, that are wont to frequent much the sunne, and their heads haue bene overheated: It is also caused of the stomacke, if that it be overcharged with any superfluitie, whereby the mouth of the stomacke is harmed, and sendeth some bad vapours towards the head, which do cause this swimming or giddinesse.

In winter time and when the winde is southerly, then are all people moze subiect to this giddinesse, than in drie sommer. Of this giddinesse the phisitions do make many kindes, like as also it is diuers according to the nature of the humoz whereof it is caused: but to speake of the foresaid giddinesse, when many one thinketh that all that he seeth runneth round about, the sight vanissheth as he would fall to the ground, the face and the eyes ware red, the baines swell, the eares thew themselves great and full of blood, whereof it may easily be adindged, that it is caused through superfluous blood in the head, the which troubleth and moletteth the baines: therefore is this sicke person to procure presently afterwards to open the vaine behinde the eare, and to let out three or fouer ounces of blood; for that is a certaine remedie for this disease. And further, for all other spices of this swimming, of whatsoever cause that they may procede: for if so be that this giddinesse do continue long, it is much to be doubted, that the falling sicknesse or the dead palse may come thereby. In like maner are boring cups unpickt to be set about vpon the

the head, in the necke, vpon the shoulders, and on the legs. For this also are certaine lotions of the fete to be vsed, made with herbes which do strengthen the head, whereof before in the first Chapter 3. §. for the heate of the head, and in the seventh Chapter 12. §. sundrie are described. But although these foresaid vaines do not appere and make shew, and neuerthelesse the face were alwaies red, then must the median be opened, boring cups, as is said, to be vsed, to moisten the head with vineger of Roses, and with oile of Roses, and to eschew all hot meates, much sleepe, long watching, to looke from great height downwardes, and such like things: Lintels, milke, kids flesh prepared with veriuice, iuice of Pomegranates or with vineger, roasted peares or apples after supper are very good for him: of herbes, Lettice and Purslaine with vineger may he also eate well: for his drinke he may also temper vineger or the iuice of Pomegranates, Sugar water decocted with Fleawort, or any small thin wines.

For purging are made yelow Pirabolans, especially if the giddinesse be caused of Cholera, the which are thus to be vsed: Take one ounce and a halfe of yelow Pirabolans beaten grosse, sethe them in eight ounces of water at the least, put thereto one ounce of sower Dates, let them sethe together vnto the halfe; then temper amongst it thre or sower ounces of sirupe of Violets, or of Roses, and so giue it to the patient in the morning fasting.

Take five ounces of whay, lay therein to keepe one drag. and a halfe of Kubarbe a whole night, wryng it afterwards out, and giue it to the sicke person colde or lukewarme.

Take ten drie Pjunes, sower Dates one ounce, sethe them in five ounces of water, then take thereof 3. ounces, and mixe amongst them two drag. and a halfe of the Eiectuarie *De succo Rosarum*, and drinke it warme. Item take sower Dates, Spanna, of each one ounce, temper them with thre or sower ounces of Pjune broth.

Also these pills following may be vsed: Take *Pillule fatide, de Sarcocolla*, of each one scruple, temper them, and make thereof seven pills.

After the purging he is to keepe him quiet, and to coner the belly with warme clothes. But if to this giddinesse there happeneth no rednesse in the face, nor any ague, it may be concluded thereof, that the cause proceedeth of colde, whereof the matter lieth in the stomacke, which there prouoketh the patient to wambling and vomiting, whereto the patient is then to brge himselfe thereby to be rid of it; and that though this meanes: Take Kabisshes, or Hoseradish one ounce, the seede of Dage and of *Asarabacca*, of each halfe an ounce, sethe all this in 12. ounces of water vnto sower ounces: vnto this strained decoction you are to adde halfe an ounce of Dile, Saffron one drag. vineger sower ounces, giue thereof two spoonesfulls in the evening after meate. Preparatiue potions are to be vsed according as the cause of the disease, for the space of certaine daies, and then to take these pills following, *Aurea* or *Cochia*, the waight of one drag. In the steede of these pills, to vse halfe an ounce of *Hiera Picra*, and *Oxymel Compositum* one ounce, with sower ounces of water, wherein Hyssope and Zeduarie is decocted.

It chaunceth also oftentimes, that at the first this giddinesse doth come with some swarming or fantasies which appere before the eies, the which neuerthelesse in truth is nothing so. This the Whistions do call *Scotomiam* and *Imaginationes*, whereof before in the seventh Chapter and 12. §. is spoken at large. Of the which very many be holpen by these meanes following: Take Ciebright two ounces, Pace halfe an ounce, beate them small; giue thereof after the purging halfe a drag. or two scrup. with wine or flesh broth. What further concerneth this kinde of giddinesse, you may discerne hereafter, where we speake of *Paralyfis*, with the which this swimming doth agree. This patient must refraine from all meates and drinckes which be colde of nature: but kids, Putton, Bullets, Partridges, Pheasants, and all other fowles that haue their abode in hilly countries; he may well eate them, yet rather roasted than sodden: in like sort eggs and all that is dyest with wheate or Rice: small red wine, or rather home water is to be his ordinarie drinke. But if this will not helpe, and the foresaid giddinesse do still continue, then is this commended for a principall remedie, to wit, to open the head by actual or potential Cauteries aboue vpon the seame (which is called *Sutura Coronalis*) to the end that thereby all bad vapors, which cause these infirmities in the baines might exhalate. Some vse in stead of the foresaid Cauterie this corrosiue salve following: Take *Cantharides* (the heads and wings broken off) two ounces, sower dowe halfe an ounce, temper them with spirit of wine or vineger, lay them behinde in the necke, and behinde vpon the browes of the legs, in bignesse of halfe a dollar; let them lie so long vntill they raise a blister, that is, about twelue howers or somewhat moze. These blisters are to

to be holden and kept open, with the laying vpon them of a Colewort leafe as long as is possible. But if so be that neither ague, nor vomiting, nor any other impostume do befall with it, and yet neuerthelesse the giddinesse persist and endure, then is the sicke person oftentimes to be purged with the pills *Cochia*, and to withdraue him (as is said) from colde meates, because that the cause of this disease proceedeth of colde. Further, he is to be let smell to a little bag of Annis seedes, and in like sort must he weare a cap with Annis seedes vpon his head, and receiue the vapor of the decoction of Annis seedes into his nose; for that the smell is very requisite, because it drieth and warmeth well. Also the head is to be clenfed, as oftentimes hath bene shewed: but this ensuing is especially good for it: Take the iuice of wilde Cucumbers one ounce, honie water wherein *Parozam* is decocted, two ounces; temper and draue them into the nose; but take before, thy mouth full of cleere water, so that it may come the lesse into the mouth.

Gargarismes.

Gargarismes are also to be vsed for this purpose, thereby to expell all flegmatike humors which cause this maladie: Take Betonie, Hyssope, of each one handfull, Licorise, Rue, and Raisons (the stones being taken out) of each one ounce, *Piretrum*, Treos, of each halfe an ounce, Mustard seede, Lycebane, Ginger and Pasticke, of each one quarter of an ounce, clarified honie three ounces, sethe them in sufficient stoze of water, and scum them well, take thereof before and after meate, at each time two spoonesfull in the mouth, holding it long therein, and hauing gargarized, spet it out againe.

With this may you also vse chewed Pastick, *Piretrum* decocted in wine or water, or skyped. But alwaies (as is admonished before) the rotes knit in a cloth: for it is otherwise too strong.

Item, take Mustard seede, *Parozam*, *Piretrum*, long Pepper and Sage, of each one quarter of an ounce, sethe it to the halfe, being strained vse it as before.

The *Piretrum* hath an especiall operation against the giddinesse, therefore it is also to be decocted and beaten to pap with the whites of eggs, and so laid vpon the head.

A powder for meate.

Take Putmegs, prepared Coziander, of each halfe an ounce, Pistelden of the Dike, Piony seede peeled, and Galingale, of each one drag. Calmus, Betonie, Cubebs, and Cumine, of each halfe a drag. Sugar, as much as you please. You haue heretofore in the first S. a good powder for the memoie, which is also meete for this purpose: and this following is very necessarie for it.

Take the iuice of Fennell one ounce, Sugar two ounces, sethe it together like to *Manna Christi*.

An Electuarie.

Take a pound of Currans (well clenfed) Licorise cut small, Buglosse water and Endiue water, of each sicke ounces, let them sethe together, and afterwards wzing it out hard: in this decoction are you to put of preserued Spirabolans, *Chebuli* and *Emblaci*, of each sixe ounces, honie of Roses and Sugar, siue ounces; let it sethe vntill it be somewhat thicker than honie: afterwards clarifie it with the whites of eggs: when it is now cold, then temper amongst it one drag. and a halfe of Cinnamome powder, preserued Putmegs one ounce, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloues, of each one drag. Fennell and Annis seedes, of each halfe a drag, conserue of Roses two ounces and a halfe. Of this confectiō you are to vse euery weeke the quantitie of a Walnut. Item take Cinnamome, Cloues, Fennell, Galingale, chew them long in the mouth, and afterwards spet it out againe. The confected Calmus is also much commended for this giddinesse, and in like manner confected Coziander, as is moze said in other places, where we haue intreated of the memoie.

Preserued Spirabolans are also especiall good after meate, also being drie to chew them in the mouth; for that they do hinder the vapors ascending vp to the head, and consume all waterie moiffure: also how good *Carduus Benedictus* water is for this vse, looke in the place where we haue spoken of the memoie: the Treacle and Spithivate are also much commended for this purpose.

The

The order of diet.

They that be troubled with this giddines ought to liue very soberly and moderately, to leaue wine, or to water it well: if the disease come through heate, then is heate to be eschued; if through cold, then is cold to be shunned: after meales take a peece of toasted bread and eate it. His meates must be light of digestion, and vse little: like as is sufficientlie shewed in the hot headache.

Of franticknes, madnes, or doting, and such like infirmities. §.3.



The diseases of the braines are diuided into three kindes, to wit, first if their accustomed operation be hindered. Secondly, if they be perished & enfeebled. Thirdly, if they be altered from their good disposition and nature into another: like as when a man falleth into foolishnes and forgetfulness, that he forgetteth his writing, reading, and his nearest kindred, yea his owne name: the which in truth, proceedeth out of a coldnes of the braine, like to the palsey, and falling sickenes, and such like accidents which sodainly assault men. But if this foresaid disease (whether it happen in the vnderstanding or in the memorie) be small, then it is a signe that the coldnes is not great, for these diseases haue also their greatnesse and smallnesse. *Delirium*, doting childishnes, be it howsoever it will, it commeth of some bad humors and distemperance of the braines, and is an erring, troubled and spoiled motion of the principall vertues of the minde; and if so be that an Ague befall with it, then it is a right *Phrenitis*, that is frensie; which is not onely caused through hot humors, but is also admired with some *Phlegma* in the braines: but in case there be no ague with it, then is this maladie called *Mania*, madnes; and springeth out of hot humors, and chiefly of *Cholera*, which inflameth the braine too much: *Melancholia*, of which issue onely despaire, sorowe and feare, and that which is called in latine, *Dementia*, (to wit, when a man is wholly out of his right minde) proceedeth only of cold humors, like as hereafter againe shall be more at large declared.

Delirium

Phrenitis.

Mania.

Dementia.

Of dotage and childishnes, called in Latine *Delirium*. §.4.



This disease is for the most part in all sicknesses or infirmities of the braines, for that in case the same be distempered, (be it by whatsoever manner that may be) then will the vnderstanding be thereby wholly or in part enfeebled, according to the greatnes or smallnes of the humors: whence this disease is caused.

Melancholia.

When now these doting conceits & strange thoughts do come without crying, calling, or noise, as if he were possessed, then it is the very true *Melancholia*.

But if the madnes do come with chiding, scolding, leaping, cursing, and such like misdemeanors, then it is the right *Mania*, or madnes, with all her symptoms, which doe assaile him no otherwise then as if he were possessed.

If there be with this madnes laughing, merriment, friendly semblance, then is the same alwaies better then any of the rest: but if this come through burnt melancholicke humors, then it is the worst, and the behaviour none otherwise then as if he were possessed. Others make of these *Delirium* or *Desipientia*, 12. kindes, whereof the most part are here described.

And to the end we might first of all haue an example how that these kindes of sicknesses are best to be holpen: therefore we will set before vs a youth that hath lost his vnderstanding, and is become distraught.

At the first is very mate for it a very good gouernment or order of diet, and to vse all things which be warme and moist, to eate good rayled bread, which is about three daies olde: otherwise he is to eschue all things that are made of dolue: young Weale, Sutton, Lambe, Pullets, Capons, young wild swine; in fine, he is to eate all that is young whether it be wilde or tame, and to refraine all that is olde.

Of herbes are mate for him Endiue, Spinage, Purcelane. As concerning fruit, fresh Almonds,

monds, Hasell nuts, swæte Cherries, Pelons, Gourds, Pompons, fresh Figs, Grapes, swæte Peares, Apples, oyle off swæte Almonds, or fresh Butter. He must refraine from Vineger; or if he will vse it, he must delay it with Sugar or water: yet is he rather to vse the iuice of Limons or Teriuiue, but seldome, and that made swæte with Sugar.

For his drinke he is to take swæte wine, and clære wine well watered, for that he will be very some drunken, which is hurtfull for him. In this countrey in steede of the foresaide wine, small beere is commonly to be vsed: he is to forbear all old and salt flesh.

But if so be he cannot forbear wine, and were yet notwithstanding inclined to drinke much, then are you to stepe therein prepared Coxander seade, Sorrell seade, Purcelane seade, with the flowers of water Lillies, this will resist and withstand all drunkenness.

Can he be satisfied with drinking of water: then let him drinke none other then barley water or sugred water.

Buglosse leaues or the rootes of the same are alwaies good, whether they be vsed in meates or drinks, and all that may be made with Buglosse.

Buglosse
good for
Melancholy

He must also moderately moue and stirre in going and standing. Copulation must he utterly eschew, because that thereby the best blood of a man is wasted, and woyn away and the naturall forces infabled.

He must kembe the head oftentimes, sing much, vse musicke, which is very commodious for all melancholicke persons, his sleepe must be somewhat longer then it was wont to be when he was in health.

Because that this matter is very hard to be purged, and yet neuertheles it must be done for the most part, then is alwaies the aduise of a learned Physitian to be followed, it is especially commended for this disease, the opening of the Piles or Hemorrhoides. One may also drinke many daies together, three ounces of the iuice of Buglosse, for it is marueilous good for all kindes of melancholy. Also it is very good two ounces of the iuice of Hops (being wrung out) if it be presently taken without setting, preserved Citron pills one spoonefull taken in the morning early, and in the evening two houres before meate are very mete, or two ounces of the sirup of Citron pills, with three ounces of Lettice water vsed before purging.

Comfortable Electuaries.

TAke the flesh of a roasted Partridges best twelue ounces, the rootes of white Behen, the flowers of Bozage, Buglosse, Seduary, of each one drag. Saffron one scruple, Pace, Sapfrage, of each one scrup. Jacint, Smaragd, Saphires, and Varts bones, of each halfe a scrup. three leaues of beaten golde, fired gold halfe a drag. prepared pearles one dragma, three ounces of fresh Pine apple kernels: let this stepe 24. houres with the flesh in foure ounces of white wine, and two ounces of the iuice of Quinces, poune them all small, and sette 12. ounces of white Sugar with the foresaid liquoz, temper it all together: giue thereof euery morning halfe an ounce, and drinke thereupon two ounces of Buglosse water: afterwards take before dinner and supper one quarter of an ounce of it: for besides that it is good for the giddines, it doth also strengthen all the members of the bodie.

In like maner marke, that all which strengtheneth the heart, whether it be hot or colde, the same also strengtheneth the bzaine.

Of Phrenitis, or franticknes with an Ague §.5.

WE will now discourse of that kinde of franticknes, which the learned call *Phrenitis*, which we define thus: *Phrenitis* is a frensie or bereauing of the wits with an hot Ague, or *Phrenitis* is a doting and distraction or spoyle of the vnderstanding, which endureth not alwaies, and that assaileth one with quivering, small voice, and with an Ague, which doth also most procede of some inflammation or swelling in the bzaines. And although there be manie kindes of franticknes, yet may they be diuided into two principall sortes; the one which is caused of blood, the other of *Cholera*: out of both which, the third kind which is *Melancholia*, as a mixture doth sprout and spring.

They that be burdened with the first kind, they may adiudge al things like as they be, know what

what it is; but how to thinke of it and vse it doe they know nothing at all. They that haue the second kinde of franticknes, they doe know in their thoughts or forecast nothing at all: but adiudge much otherwise of all that euer they see then it is. For both these sortes haue you a notable hystorie recited of *Galen*. They which be charged with the third sort, they be so distraught of their wits, that they can neither discern right, nor adiudge right. And now so; to come to the right signes of the foresaid diseases, we will rehearse these following.

The signes
of frantick-
nes with hot
Agues.

First, inward Agues, heauines of the head, drounht, rednes of the eyes and face, paine of the head, humming of light, and strong motion of the pulse. Item vnquietnes, much and filthy talke, drythe and blackenes of the tongue, tumbling vp and off from the bed; their vrine white, quicke and strong bzeathing, crying out in the sleepe, feare, impudencie, doe not couer their priuities being vncouered; forgetfulness of all that is passed, terrible dreames &c.

And if, besides the foresaid signes, the tongue be red and yellowe, and the vnderstanding enfeebled with much watching; then it is a perfect *Phrenitis*, that is, franticknes, with a strong Ague. For this the remedie is not to be delaied, but before they (which doth procede of blood) do take rote, he is strongly to be let blood in the head vaine, euen till he swoone, if nature may abide and suffer it.

But if so be that the sickness haue indured already past the fourth day, and settled it selfe, then is the veine of the forehead also to be opened on the top of the nose, and to be diligent so; to open the *Vemorhoides*, the which is very requisite and sure.

And if so be that so; some causes the opening of a vaine be hindered, then is blood to be forced out of the nose, or at the least to set boring cups on the shoulders.

But if the cause be of *Cholera*, then is the body to be purged through Clusters, as hereafter followeth.

Take two handfuls of Lettice, Barley halfe a lb. Mallowes, *Mercurie*, Violet leanes, of each halfe a handfull, the flowers of water Lillies one ounce, and a little bran; sethe these together in a sufficient quantity of water: then take of this decoction twelue or sixtene ounces, put thereto Sallet oyle, and prepared Cassia, of each one ounce, extracted *Pjunes* five drag. let this Cluster fasting.

Another: Take Mallowes, Blites, *Mercurie*, Violet leanes, and water Lillies, of each one lb. let them sethe together in sufficient water: afterwards take twelue ounces thereof and temper amongst it *Triphera Sarrazenica* one ounce, streined *Pjunes* an ounce and a half, oile of Clolets two ounces, Salt halfe a drag. Further to purge withall, sowre Dates are especially fit; for they doe not onely expell the bad humors, but also alter them. These are thus to be prepared.

Take twelue ounces of sowre Dates, sethe them in 24. ounces of water vntill the fourth part be consumed: this decoction is to be strained through a cloth, and to giue him five ounces thereof at once. Item take three ounces of *Panna*, temper it in the decoction of *Pjunes*, and giue it him in the morning.

But if so be that the humors be burnt, then sethe with the *Pjunes* a fewe *Sene* leanes, a little *Sumitorie*, and *Epithymum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, the rootes of *Polypodium* one ounce, and in foure ounces of this decoction, temper the *Panna* and sowre Dates.

Another. Take yellow *Spirabolanes* one ounce and a halfe, stamp *Pjunes* two ounces; sethe them together in ten ounces of water vnto the halfe, or till that there remaine foure ounces ouer: then giue it so.

Or take one quarter of an ounce of *Kubarbe*, decoction of *Pjunes* foure ounces, beate the *Kubarbe* and so temper it amongst the decoction; ad vnto it two ounces of sirup of Violets: let this stand together the space of twelue houres, and giue it him early in the morning. But if so be that the humor be burnt, then put some *Sene* leanes vnto it, *Epithymum*, and the rootes of *Polipody*, of each one quarter of an ounce.

After these foresaid purgings, may the head vaine vpon the hand or in the elbowe, be safely opened, and boring cups fixed vpon the shoulders. Also to open the *Saphen*, and to moue the *Vemorhoides*, if so it same requisite.

If this sicknesse be caused of blood.

Take 12. ounces of the iuice of Plantaine, iuice of Sheperds purse and Rose water, of each fower ounces, Vineger two ounces; make clothes of Towle wet therein, and then lay them on the forehead, and so ouer halfe the head.

Item, take Violet leaues, Lettice, and poulded Barly, of each 1. ℥. Poppie heads, rootes of Southernwood, and water Lillies, of each halfe a handfull, Penbane, Poppie seeds, and Lettice seeds, of each halfe an ounce, Cammomil, Pelilot and Pallowes, of each halfe a ℥. Sethe them altogether in a sufficient quantitie of the water of Sage: afterwards take a Spunge and therewith moisten from the forehead or from thence where the haire beginneth vnto the necke behinde as often as you please. Item, take the iuice of Housleake, of Lettice, of Burdane, and of Nightshade, of each three ounces, Rose water two ounces, Vineger one ounce, temper and vse them as before; this bringeth also sleepe with it and especially, if one temper therewith two ounces of the iuice of Poppie heads: cannot you get the iuice: then take the distilled water it selfe, if you will haue a plaister of it, temper Barly meale amongst it.

Note also that these cooling things are to be vsed only in the beginning of the frenzie: for that if it be seene that the matter beginneth to yeld, there are other things to be adhibited, as when it beginneth to depart; then take a sucking whelp and take out the bowels, and so lay it warme vpon the patients forehead, or rather on the top of the forehead when the haire is shorne off.

Item, take an other whelp (the intrailles being taken out as is sayd) bestrowe it inwardly with Penbane seede and lay it warme vpon the head, this maketh the franticke to sleepe: the same do also yong Doves and Cocks opened in the backe and layd vpon the head: or take the warme lights of a Weather, hold it vpon the forehead, when it is wahren cold make it warme againe in warme water, but wying it well out, and lay it againe vpon the forehead, and reiterate the same oftentimes.

Of the dwelling of a frantick man, and other remedies concerning this disease.

The dwelling of any franticke persons must be temperate, moze colde then warme: Bestrow his Chamber and bed with cold herbs, as Lettice, Burdane, Housleake, small and great Willow leaues, water Lillies, and Nightshade, haue also clothes made wet in common water, round about him pluck away all pictures out of his eyes, for that they bring fantasies and troubles vnto him, let honest people come amongst them to the end he may be ashamed; let him smell to Roses, Violets, water Lillies, floures, and Campher, whereof may also bags be made, this is prescribed for an example, how all manner of frantick men are to be gouerned, now will we procede forward.

But if it be feared that a man would become frantick, then take quick Brimstone, and Asstick, of each one drag. and a halfe, temper them well beaten with halfe an ounce of good Treacle, and giue a youth thereof halfe a drag. at once mixed with Cicory water, an old body one drag. with old wine. He is to sweate thereupon as long as he is able to indure it: doth it not help at one time: then do it mo times, but the patient is to beware of cold and wind.

Take Cammomil, the herb Dill, Roses, Pariozan gentle, of each one ℥. sethe them and make clothes wet with it and lay them warme oftentimes vpon the patients forehead.

Take Violet leaues, Pelilot, Pallowes, Rosemary, Bay leaues, and Poppy heads, of each two handfulls, let them sethe together and vse it as before: the conferue of Betony, of Willow flowers, and especially of Piony flowers, is very conuenient for this about all other, and not only for this disease, but also against all strange fantasies, frightings and feare, the which people haue a nights and without any cause.

A Precious water.

This is much commended about all things for to keepe men in their good vnderstanding, and to restore the same if it were lost: take Pay Lillies stript off from their stalkes, poluere
Pulcradell

Spuscabell, Palmsey, or any other old wine vpon them, put this in a glasse and stop it fast, and let it so stand certaine daies: afterwarth distill it through soft seething in a kettell of water. This is not only good against the frensie, but also in the dead palsey, where the spech is lost, against all faintnes, against all consumption: it repugneth also all venime, and strengtheneth the heart; a sponefull taken thereof at once.

These franticke persons are to be alwaies kept sober in eating and drinking, as is expressed, and to vse coling things, for necessity requireth the same: They must eschew wine, and be content with small beere and Barley water, wherein the sirup of Violets, of Roses, or of water Lillies be mixed. He is to eate Dgemond or Ptitane (called *Pisana*) or any other water paps. Also all other cold herbes stewed, as Lettice, Spinage, and Sorrell, yea some require this order to be kept so directly, that they will not allow any other thing in the world. But regard is alway to be had to the ability of the patient: and haue must also aboue all things be taken, that this patient be not made angrie, nor feared, and not frighted; but as much as is possible to be kept with mirth.

For to bring the sicke to sleepe and rest. §.6.



That this maladie doth bring with it much vnnaturall watching, therefore it is needefull to write somewhat thereof, for that is very hurtfull in the disease, because it doth drie the whole bodie, taketh away the appetite, troubleth the mind, contracteth the sinewes, weakeneth the wits: also causeth some Ague, and bringeth with it other inconueniences moe; as also the losse of sleepe, which is a very bad signe in all whot diseases.

The causes why one cannot sleepe are many, as anger, sorrow, paine, heauy thoughts, a full and crude stomacke, hard meates; as Loadstoles, Beanes, Minions, and Mustard seede, the which doe all bring terrible dreames: Also when there is an impostume in the braines, great disquiet, barking dogs, and such like moe which may hinder the sleepe: these are the common causes which doe keepe one awake. But how the same is to be redressed, and how that the remaining sleepe is to be restored, shall be shewed hereafter.

But now to prosecute our method, there be in the frensie (called *Phrenitis*) which is with strong Agues, these things following prescribed.

If it happen that this patient can attaine to no sleepe, like as it commonly chanceth in such diseases, whereby the sickenes is agrauated; then may the sleepe be prouoked well with inward and outward things: whereto these safe remedies are very meete.

Take womans milke, of one that giueth sucke to a daughter, foure ounces and a halfe, the braine whites of foure eggs, and white pouned Poppy seede as much as is needefull to make them to a salme; spread thereof vpon the forehead and the temples. Take the sirup of Poppy heads, the water of white water Lillies, and oyle of Violets, each alone or mixed together, and vse them (as hath been said.) Take Venbane seedes, and seethe them so long in wine vntill it be thickish, annoint the temples of the head, the nose, and eares therewith: this is very strong, but vse it not but only in great neede. Item, take Poppy seede, & Venbane seede, of each a like much, beate them small, and temper them with the white of an eg, womans milke, and with a little Vineger; vse them as before. When one is come out of his naturall sleepe, or enfeebled in his wits, then make a sponge wet in this water following, and lay it warme on his forehead and on the temples of his head: being wahren cold it is to be renewed.

Take Lettice, Violet leaues, piled Barley, Poppey heads, the rootes of Pandagoga, the white water Lillies of each a handfull, Venbane seede, Poppy seede, Lettice seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cammomill, Pelliot, and Pallowes, of each halfe a handfull: let this seethe together in water.

Take Cassia wood one drag. Opium two drag. and Saffron one drag. make a powder thereof, and at the most take one scrup thereof, let it sleepe in Vineger and Rose water; annoynt the temples with it, it is very strong and safe. In like manner will be so this (amongst the common things) *Oxyrrhodum* vled: whereof some stand described in the first Chapter and second §.

A Salve.

Take one ounce of Poplar salve, oile of Violets halfe an ounce, Venbane seedes, the rootes of *Mandragora*, of each halfe a drag. Saffron, Cassia wood, of each one scrup. temper this together: the sleepe was wont also to be procured with this following, binding it about the necke, and to lay it vpon mens pziuties, and womens brests.

Take colde water and Rose water, of each five ounces, vineger one ounce and a halfe, wet a double linnen cloth therein, and lay ouer it.

Item, take the herbes of cold natures, as Willow leaues, water Lillies, Wine leaues, and Lettice, seethe them in water, and wash the foresaid place, also the hands and feete therewith. This doth also, to set the hands and feete in colde water.

A potion and such like to procure sleepe.

Take white Poppie seedes halfe an ounce, rootes of *Mandragora*, Venbane seede, of each halfe a drag. vnb beaten Saffron sower graines, stampe them all together, and binde them in a cloth, and then lay them in sleepe in five ounces of the water of water Lillies the space of fire howers, afterwards wzing it out, and giue it to the sicke person two howers before supper or dinner, from one ounce vnto thre ounces, according to importance of the sicknesse and habilitie of the patient.

Item, take water Lillies twelue ounces, *Opium* one drag. sleepe them together in thre pintes of *Palmsy* the space of 24. howers, then cast therein one quarter of an ounce of Salt, white beaten Poppie seedes halfe an ounce, Venbane seedes one quarter of an ounce, Lettice seede thre drag. distill the same in seething water, whereof you are to giue going to bed, from halfe a drag. vnto a drag. This is strong ynough for to cause the patient to sleepe fire howers: wine doth also prouoke sleepe if one drinke somewhat excessively; in like sort also wine of *Wormwood*, yet that drineth away heauie dreames.

A confection and what else may be taken.

Take conserve of Violets and water Lillies, of each one ounce, white Poppie seedes, white Venbane seedes, of each halfe an ounce, Ginger thre drag. temper this together, and when you go to bed, then take the bignesse of a Hasell nut rather moze than lesse; the Ginger is put thereto, to the end that his power might penetrate.

Another. Take white Poppie seedes, Endiue seedes, Lettice seedes, and Purslaine seedes, of each two ounces, Melon seede pilled, Pompon seede, Courd seedes, and Cucumber seedes, of each a drag. and a halfe, *Mandragora* apples one ounce and one quarter, Saffron, Cammimill, Dill seede, of each one drag. and a halfe, *Lignum Aloes* one drag. Sugar twelue ounces, honie of Violets fire ounces: the Sugar and honie you are to seethe in the water of water Lillies vntill it be thicke; when it is almost cold, temper the other beaten small amongst it, and vse it as before from one quarter of an ounce vnto halfe an ounce. It is good for frantick persons to annoint the forehead, the temples, the nose and the pulse vaines therewith, or to take it with the water of Lettice one hower after meate.

Another not so strong.

Take white Poppie seede thre quarters of an ounce, the seedes of Violets, of Lettice, of Endiue, of each one quarter of an ounce, pilled Melon seede, Pompon seedes, Courd seedes, Cucumber seede, of each halfe a drag, Sugar one quarter of an ounce, temper this as thicks as you will haue it, with the sirupe of Poppie seedes.

Here may you see that Poppie seedes are vsed almost in all receipts for the sleepe, likewise all that is made of Poppie is good to procure sleepe, as the confection *Diapapauer*, *Loch de papauere*, *Syrupus de papauere*, and *Diacodion*.

A powder. Take Lettice seede and white Poppie seede, of each halfe an ounce, Endiue seede,

Penbane seede and Ginger, of each ons drag. Sugar seuer ounces, make a powder thereof.

But if all these things will not helpe, then must *Opium* of necessitie be vsed, to the ende that nature may get some rest. But with what prouidence this is to be vsed, that do all experienced Physicians sufficiently knowe, without whose counsell the same is not to be done.

Of the ouerheated children, when they awake out of sleepe.

Take water Lillies oꝝ Purslaine, Wine leaues, Willow leaues, and Poppie seede with the heads, of each one handfull, let these seethe together in a pot of water, when it is then luke warme let the childe his sate therein, and stroke him well downwards, likewise also from the shoulders to the elbowes. This ensuing is much more safe and expert than any thing else appointed on the temples of the head.

Item make a cloth wet in his mothers milke, oꝝ if the same be not to be had, in warme Coates milke, lay thereof vpon the forehead, and on the temples of the head, it cooleth well, and also causeth to sleepe.

Of *Mania*, another kinde of franticknesse, which we commonly call Madnesse. §.7.



It is discovered how that the *Mania* is a mad *Phrenesis* without an ague, and is described by the learned, and defined after diuers manners, which are more to be here rehearsed. *Mania* (some say) is a distemperature of the vnderstanding, which altereth the right and reasonable thoughts, with losse of voice, of wit, and of iudgement, which were good in health.

Other say thus, This *Mania* is a dotage oꝝ madnesse, and therefore a disease of the minde, which no otherwise distempereth the minde, but as any other sicknesse of the bodie, whereby can be no health. In fine, it is such a *Melancholia*, in case that it begin to rote in one, that they become raging mad, and must be bound, yea that the common man meane no otherwise but that he is possessed with a spirit.

The chiefest signes of *Mania* be these, vnstedfastnes, alterations in wordes and deedes done without sense oꝝ reason, like as much talke and prating, much waking, leaping, great troubles, and such like.

But if they be caused of a cholerike *Melancholia*, then is the patient the more vnquiet, and so much the more inclined to chydning, calling, and great madnesse: but if it be mixt with burnt blood, then do they only rage, and hold also their peace otherwhiles, the which cometh straight way againe afterwards with so wonderfull much talke, that they are hardly induced to holde their peace: they will be leane ouer all their bodie, they haue heauie dreames; spet out otherwhiles some gall, which falleth seething vpon the ground; their pulse is slowe and weake, and their arteries hard.

This is verily a terrible sicknes not onely for the patient himselte, but for all them that doe assist and keepe him: and is cured throughe the same meanes that are prescribed for *Phrenia*, and for this *Melancholia* following.

Of *Melancholia*, or *Dementia*, a wonderfull madnesse. §.8.



This word *Melancholia* is to be taken after two waies: first, for one of the foure humors of a mans bodie, the blacke part of mans blood, whereof we haue as yet not admonished. Secondly, for a certaine sicknes which annoyeth and weakeneth the braine and minde, with great trouble and heauines; and is thus described. *Melancholia* is a corruption of the iudgement and thoughts altered from their naturall kinde, into an vnnaturall and spoiled maner, tempered with feare and care: throughe which the blacke blood causeth a troubled and changed spirit; like as it is also true, that it is common with all melancholicke persons (be it of whatsoeuer cause that it will) to be alwaies fearefull and sorrowfull: and if you demaund of them the occasion, they know not to declare oꝝ alledge any occasion vnto you: they be so full of fantasies and marueilous imaginations,

tions. Otherwhiles they be weary of their life; neuertheles they shun death: they complayne not any otherwise but that they be persecuted and murdered, or that some wilde beasts will deuoure them; yea some be also moued in their wits; albeit that they feare death much, neuerthelesse sometimes destroy themselves. Other also being infected with this disease, they fall into ridiculous fantasies: (for an example) like as we doe reade in *Galen* of one that had a strong imagination; so that he thought he was an earthen pot, that he therefore shunned the way from all such as met him, fearing that they would breake him.

There was another that so surely minded the fall of the Gyant *Ablas*, which should carrie heauen, that he thought that he also caried heauen, and was so weary therof that he could no longer carrie so great a burthen, and yet would not cast it downe for feare he should buse himselfe and all men in the world to fitters.

Some suppose and imagine that they be Emperors, Kings, Wolves, Diuels, Fowles, and what may be moze, some weepe, some laugh, others shun the water. Also it hath been scene before times that learned men being plagued with this disease, afterward did not know one letter. To the contrary, vnlearned men did know wonderfull artes, could speake strange languages, who also prophesied: And others that did those things that seemed to be against nature, some feare the things which be not to be feared, nor neuer can come to passe. But in this they be like to fearefull men, yea all those men who alwaies feare darkenes: for like as such outward darkenes bringeth feare with it; so doth *Melancholia* also cause a darke blacke blood, which maketh darkenes in a bodie minde, and a feare withall.

This is also a cause wherefore the melancholicke persons are easily possessed with the falling sicknes.

The cause of these melancholicke fantasies doe procede most from the nature of the meate which ingender melancholike blood; to wit, all Venison, but especially Hares, Conies, and all old flesh, whether it be of oxen, Goates, Bucks, Kine, wilde Dren, and rather if they be salted then fresh.

Also of great sea fishes, Salmones, Sturgeons, &c. The like also of all herbes which do not moysten, especially of Coleworsts, and all other Pottages, as Beanes, Linells, Pease, &c. The blackethicke Wine, old Chace, vneleuened bread, and such like, doe also increase Melancholie.

The melancholicke persons are also to beware of great labour, sorrow, heauie thoughts, much watching, from great hunger, and great thirst; and eschew also great cold, drie countries and dwellings.

To the contrary is also good for them, young Buttion, Kids, Lamb, Bullets, Hens, fresh flesh both, Eggs, and whatsoever els is easily to be digested, and maketh good blood; as Burrage, Buglosse, &c.

His bread must be white, light and well raised: To bathe oftentimes without tarying long in it, is very meate for them. In like manner the hearing of musicke and all mirth, and all well sauouring and odoriferous things carried about them: this is now a generall rule for all those that be assailed with this Melancholie.

But soasmuch as this grieve of the minde, or heauines, doth commonly procede out of two parts of mans bodie, as out of the braines, and the Silt or Splene; therefore is good heede to be taken, viz. when these grieuous thoughts and fantasies doe assaile a body, as feare, sorrowe, and also when anger doth get the masterie, then it is a signe that the Melancholie proceedeth out of the Splene, and that the rather when it appeareth with swelling, and ache in the belly, loathsome colour, lost appetite, and vomiting: if it then come so farre that the patient doe disclose his thoughts in wordes or deedes, then it is a signe that the melancholie hath fast settled herselfe, and that it is high time to vse good aduise for it: for if this maladie do take roote, then it is incurable. Therefore first the Liuer vaine is to be opened in the hand; and if the blood be blacke, then let it bleed as long as the sick person may suffer it: but if it be faire red, then stanch it presently againe. And if with this franticknes were not the foresaide signes, but that this Melancholy (according to the frensie) were caused through long continuance in the sunne, or that the patient be beaten on the head, then is his head vaine to be opened, and he is also to vse purging, and meate as is before said; his head is to be irrigated with warme water from on high, and afterwards to be annointed with oyle of Roses, Vineger, and womans milke, and let him smell to things which

cole of nature, as Roses, Violets, Sanders, Camfere, &c. In fine that which is before prescribed for frensie, and in the first part of this booke for Cephalaa and Hemisrania, is also good for this purpose.

And if so be that none of the foresaid signes be present or apparant, then doth the melancholie not aggræue the head only, but it hath also communion with the heart and lyuer. For this, the Spedian must be opened, and the sick person gouerned (as is said before) a certaine space, otherwise holding by and interceasing, and then to begin againe with phisicke, and continuing this so long, till he be thoroughly whole.

Now in generall to wize of this sicknes, it is first to be noted, that no medicine is meete for this which purgeth by vomit, for because that the matter is heauie of it selfe, it doth couet to be purged by stoles, therefore it is good that he vse some preparatiue potions, according to the aduise of a learned Physicion, and according as the patient is able. Some also commend for this a potion of *Epithymum*, thus prepared.

A Potion of *Epithymum*.

This decoction or potion doe we here describe to be made after three manners, the which also is a sure signe that the same as well by the auncient Physitions, as of later time, is of estimation and prise.

The first maketh *Rasis* thus, take *Spirabolanes Indi* one ounce and a quarter, the rootes of *Polypodie* five drag. *Sene* leaues nine drag. *Turbith* halfe an ounce, *Epithymum* 10. drag. sethe them altogether (except the *Epithymum*) in 36. ounces of water; then at last cast in the *Epithymum*, afterwards take it from the fier and let it cole: straine it, and reserue it.

The second manner. Take *Epithymum*, *Sterchas*, *Mirabolani Indi*, of each one ounce, *Mirabolani Chebuli*, *Emblisi*, *Bellirici*, *Turbith*, the hearbe *Piony* and *Agaricus*, of each two drag. and a halfe, *Polipody* rootes, and *Sene*, of each three drag. *Fumitory*, *Squinant*, of each one drag. and a halfe, rinds of black *Hellebo* rootes one drag. *Salgemme* two scrup. *Cozans* three quarters of an ounce; sethe them altogether (except the *Epithymum*) in a pot of water a good space, then put thereto the *Epithymum* at the last, and let them sethe vntill three parts remaine: when it is luke warme, then straine it, and keepe it in a cold place couered.

The third manner. Take *Fumitory*, *Endiue*, *Cicozy*, of each one handfull, rootes of *Polypody* three quarters of an ounce, *Cuscuta*, *Soyrel*, *Buglosse*, of each one handfull, *Thymum*, *Epithymum*, of each one ounce and a quarter, *Cozans* one ounce, *Dates* and *Figs*, of each one ounce, *Sene* leaues 7. drag. *Turbith* three drag. *Agaricus* halfe an ounce, sethe them altogether in a pint and a halfe of water of *Fumitory*, vntill the third part be spent; then straine it and lay to steape in this warme decoction two drag. and a halfe of good *Rubarbe*, Rindes of *Mirabolani Chebuli* one drag. and a halfe, *Indi* one drag. let them stand together: wying it oftentimes out, and keepe it vntill you haue neede of it.

But before this potion, these pills are first to be vsed: take *Agaricus* two scrup. *Aloe* one drag. *Indy* salt, halfe a drag. black *Hellebo* halfe a scrup. make as many pills as you will with it for to take at twice. Three howses before the potion also you may in steade of these pills, vse the confection, *Hamech*, or *Diasena*. When as now it hath thus bene continued certaine dayes (according to the abilitie of the patient) then let him rest three dayes, and liue soberly (drinking small white wine, and then purging againe as before) and so vntill foure times one after another, for (as is said before) melancholy is wonderfull hard to be purged. In fine, delay is in no wise meete, and the Physicion is to do his very best for to make the sicke person fat, for if that can be effected, then shall he quickly recouer his health.

And if it chaunce that he could not vse this potion, then may he take in steade thereof the pills which expell blacke *Choler*, yet to vse alwayes before some preparatiue medicine, for which you are according to the importance of the cause, to follow the aduise of a learned Physicion. This potion following is very conuenient, take *Mirabolani Indi* one ounce and a halfe, dried *Prunes* one ounce, sethe them together in 8. ounces of water, euen to the halfe: afterwards straine them through a cloth, then dissolue therein two ounces or two ounces and a halfe of *Panna*, and vse it in the morning betimes. All the time that he shall rest, may he vse these things, as *Laxificans Almanforis*, the which is thus prepared: Take *Walme*, the pills of *Citrons*, *Cloues*, *Gallia*

Laxificans
Almanforis.

Muscata,

Muscata, Pace, Cinnamome, Putnegg, Cardamome, red and white Behen, Pionie fixe pil-
led, *Seduarie* great and small, *Basill* seede, of each one drag. and a halfe, *Muscus* nine graines,
afterwards 20. *Mirabolani, Chebuli*, and 30. *Emblaci*. powze twelue ounces of water thereon, bzay
them so long in a mortar, untill the fist part remains: afterwards straine it through a cloth, and
mire therewith sixe ounces of cleere honie: sethe it so long, untill all the water be consumed:
waigh that which is ouerplus, and temper alwaies with twelue ounces of this decoction, one
quarter of an ounce of the foresaid spices, or one ounce and a halfe in the whole quantitie, and
then make a confection of it. But if you will haue tabulats or rotuls, take vnto twelue ounces
of Sugar one ounce, or at the most nine drag. of the foresaid spices; you shall take of the confec-
tion the quantitie of a Hasell nut; it strengtheneth all the principall partes of mans bodie, and
helpeth much the naturall warmth and concoction; it withstandeth all grieuous thoughts, and
maketh also merrie, and a good colour.

A very precious Confection.

Take *Lignum Aloes*, Cloues, *Cardamome*, *Amarantus* which is burnt to powder, *Roses*,
Burrage, and flowers of *Buglosse*, of each one quarter of an ounce, parched hasell nuts
halfe a drag. swete Almonds, and *Iunber*, of each one ounce, prepared fine *Solus* 3 drag.
Annis, fennel, of each two ounces, *Saffron* two scrup. *Doronicum*, Harts bones, *Seduarie*, *Ia-
cynth*, *Smaragd* and *Saphires*, of each one scrup. prepared pearles one quarter of an ounce,
Basill seede one drag. 8. leaues of beaten gold, you are to sethe this together in the iuice of *Cha-
medrys*, of field *Cypers*, and iuice of *Buglosse*, of each three ounces, untill all the iuice be consu-
med. But note, that the precious stones, golde, and *Saffron* must not be sodden with it, but be
at the last tempered amongst it. Of this is to be giuen in the morning early three drag. in a
draught of wine before dinner and supper, one drag. and a halfe to eate, and halfe an ounce of
conferue of *Buglosse* after it. This is especially fit for the burnt melancholie, of whatsoeuer oc-
casion the same doth procede. If you will vse it also in *Mania*, minister it with the water of
Violets, and of water *Lillies*. Now for to prouoke sleepe, you are to giue the decoction of *Poppie*
heads, or lukewarme water of water *Lillies* one quarter of an ounce, and that two howers af-
ter supper.

Another confection.

Take burnt silke, prepared *Cozall*, of each halfe a scrup. burnt Harts hoine two scrup. pre-
pared pearles one drag. *Cardamome* fower scrup. prepared *Pingles* two ounces, *Hyslope*
and *Licozise*, of each two scrup. *Putnegg*, Cloues, *Pace*, *Indie Spica*, *Cypers* rotes, *Cucubes*
and *Galingale*, of each one drag. and a halfe, *Cinnamome* one quarter of an ounce, *Saffron* one
scrup. white Sugar 24. ounces, sethe this with *Buglosse* water, untill it be as thicke as honie,
and then temper the rest with a little Muske amongst it.

A Powder which is much commended.



It is said that it hath bene many times found, that they which had this melanco-
like passion, haue onely through this powder recovered health both of bodie and
minde.

Take *Epithymum* one ounce and a halfe, *Azure stone*, *Agaricus*, of each one quar-
ter of an ounce, *Diagridion* one drag. 20. Cloues, this being beaten together and tempered, you
are twice a weeke to giue thereof, but at the most one quarter of an ounce at once. And you may
vse for this the confection *Diamargariton*, and all that is described before for the strengthening
of the head, and shall be described hereafter for the comforting of the heart. To moisten the
 drie bzaines in this *Melancholia*, take the broth wherein the head of a Weather, or the fete be
decocted: let certaine *Poppie* heads be sod fine or fire waumes, and so lay thereof wet clothes
vpon the head. And take the flowers of *Bozage*, of *Buglosse*, *Thymus*, *Epithymus*, of each a like
quantitie, sethe this together, and wash the head therewith.

Take the iuice of *Bozage*, and of *Fumitorie*, of each sixe ounces, foment therewith the head
with

with a sponge which is made wet therein: if you cannot get this iuice, then take the water of the same herbes.

Peeling is also very fit for this vse: and that is to be prouoked like as is taught in the second Chapter and 2. §. The learned do aduise, that in this disease, after the purging, the head before and behinde about the necke is to be cauterized euen to the very bone, and to holde the holes open the space of 14. daies. In fine, to reherse the whole manner of curing this Melancholie, it consisteth onely therein, that the blacke Melancholike blood is first and last to be purged, through all meanes possible. Also good haere is to be taken vnto the L yuer, and the phisicke to be ordained thereafter.

Of the Palsey in generall. §.9.

This is indoe a swift, grievous and terrible disease, which (like as is said before) hath his osspring from the bzaine. It is of diuers natures, each one worse then the other, which we will comprehend in fve kinds: the first is *Lethargus*, which is the sleeping sickness: the second is *Stupor* or *Tremor*, which is astonishing and quaking, which some call the small Palsey: the third is *Paralysis*, that is the right or dead Palsey: the fourth is *Epilepsia*, which is the falling sickness, and all kinds of such like parorismes, sometimes in old men, and otherwhiles in young children: the fift is *Apoplexia*, that is the most grievouest, which not without reason, we doe call the power or hand of God.

Because that these said sicknesses doe resemble each other in many things, therfore we will before all briefly discover what difference there is betwene them, and wherein they doe accord together. First therfore *Apoplexia* and *Epilepsia* haue this difference, that the last mentioned is placed before in the head, the man fallen neither calleth nor cryeth out, the sinewes stirre, and are contracted towards the bzaine, he hath the breath almost wholly free, and commeth quickly to himselfe againe. To the contrarie, the *Apoplecticus*, or he that is stricken with the dead Palsey, the sickness is ouer his whole head, cryeth in falling, the sinewes will be slacke, they haue a grievous or no breath, and come slowly to themselves: but they resemble each other so like, that they be both caused of stegmaticke humors in the bzaine.

The Palsey or *Apoplexia*, is also differing from the numbness and sleeping sickness, which is *Lethargus*, *Subeth*, and *Congelatio*: but in *Congelatione*, there is no restraint of the breath, as there is in the Palsey: secondly, that it forcibly assaileth the sicke persons; they thrust, crie out, & such like, which is nothing so cum *Apoplecticis*.

Thirdly, that the sleeping disease commeth slowly, and the dead Palsey very sodainly. But herein they accord, that all they be altogether depriued of their vnderstanding. *Subeth* or *Stupor* doth therein disagree with *Lethargus* and *Congelatio*, that at the last there assaileth in *Lethargus* an Ague, & an impostume in the hinder part of the head: where contrariwise *Subeth* or *Stupor* commeth without an Ague, and alwaies without any sozenes, and in the forefront of the head.

Of the sleeping disease *Lethargus*, *Veternus*, *Torpor*. §.10.

The nature of this disease is cleane contrary to the foresaid frensie: for that like as they be plagued with an immoderate watching; so are they in this sickness vexed with an insatiable sleeping. It beginneth first with an alteration in the colour in the skinne ouer the whole bodie, and with a feeble pulse, sometimes with a small, and otherwhiles with a great and hurtfull ague. It is also caused out of a colde moisture of the head and bzaines, whereby not only the vnderstanding is enfeebled, but is so: the most part alwaies so spoiled, that they utterly forget all that they do speake, heare and see. The which also the Greeke name *Lethargus* doth signify: for this cold slime doth through his toughnesse obstruct the hindmost tunicles of the bzains, where the memoerie hath hir seat. Amongst many causes this is one of the commonest, namely, all that augmenteth melancholie, that causeth this sleepe sickness: but which they be, loke in other places, viz. where the melancholie is described, which the first Register discovereth especially. This maladie is caused of all meate and drinke which ascendeth towards the head, as Dimons, Garlick, Pennyroyall, Mustard (howsoever they be dressed) and such like moe: Also if he ouercharge himselfe, liueth in filthinesse, sleepeth much, and especially lieth on the backe, whereby

whereby that the heauie flegmatike vapors do ascende into the hindermost parts of the head, which do cause there otherwhiles an impostumation or depauration of the vnderstanding, and sometimes much gaping or yawning.

Here is also to be noted, that there be solwer kindes of diseases contained and comprehended amongst these sleeping sicknesses.

First, *Lethargia* it selfe; *Congelatio*, which is the numnesse; *Stupor*, that is, senselesnesse; *Sopor*, which is called of the Arabians, a very deepe sleepe. And although it appere that all these be one kinde of sort, neuerthelesse they haue notable differences.

The numnesse and sleeping sickness do therein accoꝝd, viz. that they do both infect the hinder part of the braine, do take away vnderstanding, and all sensiblenesse, and pꝛeferre foꝝgetfulnesse.

But they disagree herein, that in *Lethargo* the eies be shut; and in the numnesse they remain open, like as is sufficiently shewed before in the 9. §. But to the end we might speake somewhat of their signes, these are the commonest; small continuall agues with a deepe sleepe, and the patient lieth alwaies with closed eies; if one call him, he openeth the eies, and shutteth them close againe by and by; the pulse is strong, but slowe and sweatie, with foꝝgetfulnesse of all that is past and done, and of pꝛesent things, yea in such manner if they aske foꝝ meate and drinke, they foꝝget to shut their mouth to: they drawe their bꝛeth slowly, and with great trouble; the going to priuie or stoule is alwaies thin, the bꝛine thicke and troubled, as of a slower sort of beast. If all these signes (or any of them) be marked, then it is easily to be adiudged, that it is none other but the sleeping disease. But if there befall something else with it (whereof it were too long to write) then do these foꝝesaid signes alter and change.

Now foꝝ the first meane all diligence is to be done, to let and stay that these sicke persons fall not in any deepe sleepe, though the strong binding of the outward members, like as is taught in the ninth Chapter and second §. and in other places of the Winding of the eares, frothing and rubbing the same hard: also the plucking by the nose or beard, and women by the haire of their pꝛiuities, lowd crying, and making great noise, yea if it were needefull, by fearing them, to the end they may be foꝝrowfull.

Some Phisitions begin first the cure with letting blood and opening of the head vaine: and if there be no other occasions which may let and hinder it, few daies after the vaine on the foꝝehead aboue the nose. They also do further the bleeding at the nose, by thrusting in of swines bꝛistles and such other. Afterwards they vse strong Clusters, and two or thꝛee daies afterwarde naxing powder, foꝝ to expell sleepe therewith: and if all these will not helpe, then is one to looke if he can bring the patient to parbꝛaking and vomiting, whether it be through thrusting in of his fingers, feathers, plumes, or waꝝe candles into the thꝛote, or through the iuice of Radishes tempered with *Oymel*, or taking a Radish, sticking here and there into it peces of blacke Yelleboꝝ laide all night in a celler, taking out the rootes in the morning, and boyling the Radish in water, and straining it through a cloth: tempering therein one drag. of Saffron and solwer ounces of vineger, whereof two spoonefulls are to be giuen him immediately after meate.

The order of Diet.

Because that this maladie is short, and inclineth speedily to life or to death; therefore is no great heede to be taken foꝝ meate and drinke in this sickness: but thin spꝛead must be his onely drinke, foꝝ it digesteth and expelleth. Also he is to occupie the bꝛoth of fitches and Barly decocted with Ven bꝛoth: it is a commodious meate foꝝ him; but of all fruites, and one drag. meates of cold nature, he must beware.

But as much as concerneth the foꝝesaid Clusters, we shall speake thereof when we discourse of the *Apoplexia*: foꝝ thereby be the braines discharged from all that hurtfull matter. You must also inside of the same, vse these suppositoꝝies: Take stone salt, and beaten Beuercoꝝ, of each one drag. clarified Honie two ounces: make moꝝtely thicke and long suppositoꝝies of it.

Foꝝ to purge, this ensuing is very requisite: Take *Hiera Picra* halfe an ounce, Honie water thꝛee ounces; it is thin and bitter: or bꝛeake the Pills *Cochia* one drag. sirup of Roses one ounce, in thꝛee or foure ounces of honie water: also he must drinke sometimes of this honie water following: Take foure parts of water, and one part of honie, lethe it so long as it will cast

vp any Skim. The above mentioned *Oxyrrhodinum* thre dayes together layd vpon the head is also much commended. M^e make this water, *Stechas*, *Rue*, *Spariozum* gentle, *Spariozum*, *Bay* leaues, *Pyssop*, and *Pep*, of each halfe a handfull: sethe them altogethe in sufficient water vnto the halfe: dip a sponge therein, and apply it warme to the head. This foresaid water may from on high be irrigated vpon the head, and the herbs being w^oung out to be laid in a little bag on the top of the head.

Item, take Pigeon dung, temper it with Honey, and so lay it vpon the head: you must rub well the neck with Lilly rootes o^r with Squils. For this are also good all these oyles ensuing v^oled each by it selfe o^r mired together, as the oyle of *Beuercod*, of *Spike*, of *Piretrum*, of *Mustard* seede, and oyle of *Bayes*, the iuice of *Rue*, o^r the herbe decocted in Wine, and layd in the neck, is very highly commended.

Because then the causes require (like as is sayd) that the head be purged through neede, take the things whereof we haue at sundry times spoken, like as the first Register shall shew the: if it be needefull to purge yet more, you haue further instructions for it in the foresayd places, where we haue discoursed of the Palsey.

Lastly, the patients haire is to be shorne off, and afterwards he must haue the head annointed with a salve of *Mustard* seede, *Beuercod*, and *Vineger* tempered together, for it is strong and hote for to consume all melancholick humors in the hinder part of the head. There may also those things be v^oled for it which are o^rdeined for the *Palsey*, which be w^othie of obseruation.

Of Nummes and Astonishing, which is *Stupor*, *Congelatio*, whereon dependeth *Tremor*, which we call trembling.

§. 11.



The second kinde of this sleeping disease haue we ascribed to *Stupor* and *Tremor*, that is, the nummes and trembling which commonly follow each other.

What the first is for a disease, that is discovered in the beginning of this our booke, viz. a strong cold, which comprehendeth the hinder part of the head (like to *Letargus*) and maketh vnmoneable and sencelesse the partie affected, and therefore is likened therein to the *Paralyti*, for that also (as is sayd) it is called a small *Paralyti* o^r *Paulsie*. In this sicknes the patient lieth none otherwise then as if he slept, but hath the eyes open, and stirreth neither the eye lids, nor any other member of the body. If they do get this nummes, as they stand, they remaine standing, o^r as stiffe as a sticke: if they get it w^oiting, so do they continue sitting, as if they w^ote: o^r if they get it with looking into the Skye, so they also remaine seeing without any alteration: whereby then the common people do get an vnbeliefe, saying, that they be taken away, and that they spake with God o^r with an Angell: amongst which otherwhiles *Sathan* doth mingle his wilines, whereby some do take and hold them for Saints, like as they sometimes shew forth, that they haue some meruailes in *Purgatorie* and in heauen. In fine, these be likened to *Idols*, that do not see with open eyes, do not smell, nor heare, do not speake with open th^oate, neither go on their legs, like as the *Psalme* saith. This numming o^r stifnesse doth also most commonly take one in their sleepe, that is, if any one haue a leg o^r a foote stiffe, like as the learned and we also call it sleeping, and hath lost for the space of a certaine time his feeling, and motion, the which hapneth if that one member lye too hard vpon the other, whereby the vitall spirits are kept backe: but with what infirmities of the braine this nummes agreth, is sufficiently before rehearsed and shewed.

This disease is to be holpen as the sleeping sickness *Subet* is cured, as you finde w^oitten in the first Chapter §. 6. and afterwards of *Cephalaa*: but for this is especially commaunded not to tarry long from taking of good aduise, for that if one let this nummes grow olde, then followeth after it a perfect palsey.

Therefore, if any body haue their face o^r other member benumbed, o^r will ware stiffe, then are the remedies to be v^oled for it, which are good for the palsey, and those that shall be hereafter described, and a good diet to be obserued in eating and drinke. Also all such meates to be chosen which be warme and dry by nature, as *Bullets* with their brothes, and all other fowles which make their abode in the hilly countrie. If this patient may also be brought to sweating, it would be very good. The neck and all other stifned members are euery where to be annointed with

with *Dialbaea*, oꝛ *Martiaton*: foꝛ this is also good oyle of *Coffin*, with a little *Beuercod* tempered amongst it, which is speciall good foꝛ trembling. But if the maladie ware old, then purge with the pills *Cochijs*, and vse otherwhiles the confection *Anacardina*, which is also much commended foꝛ the same: oꝛ take the oyle of *Elderne* flowers one ounce and a halfe, temper it amongst one quarter of an ounce of *Euphorbium*, and annoint the head therewith.

In like manner the head may also be annointed with the oyle of *Elderne* leaues, *Beuercod*, and of *Euphorbium*, oꝛ vse this water following, which is moze milder.

Take *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, *Fumitory*, *Stechas*, *Tymus*, *Tymiana*, of each halfe a handfull: sethe them altogether in sufficient water, and let the head be therewith irrigated warme, oꝛ made moyst with a sponge. The nexing is also very requisite, and this is to be done in the numbnes oꝛ stiffness with black *Hellebo*, by reason that the same vehemently riddeth away all melancholy, whereof two kinds are here described. Clifters are also very commodious foꝛ this kind of numbnes, take *Mercurie*, *Baulme*, *Sene* leaues, rootes of *Polypody*, *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, *Annis* seeds, and *Fennel* seeds, of each halfe a ℥. Also take *Bian*, sethe all these together in sufficient water, and take thereof 12. oꝛ 16. ounces. Temper amongst it *Hiera Russi*, *Logodonis*, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of *Rue* foure ounces, salt halfe a drag. then make a Clister thereof.

The second. Take *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, both the rootes and herbs, *Fumitory*, *Mercury*, of each one ℥. *Cuscuta*, *Fennell*, *Tymus*, *Tymiana*, *Stechas*, and *Amaranthus*, of each halfe a ℥. also a little *Bian*: sethe this altogether, and take of this decoction as much as befoze: afterwards put moze thereto, oyle of *Lillies*, and *Honie*, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Sal gemma* one drag. *Hiera Logodon*, oꝛ *Russi*, thꝛe quarters of an ounce moze oꝛ lesse according as the patients abilitie requireth.

Of the shaking Palsey. §. 12.



Concerning the shaking Palsey, the which is a kinde of this foꝛementioned disease, it is therfoze added to the numbnes, foꝛ that they both pꝛocæde from one kinde of cause.

There be diuers spices of this, which are here especially reckned amongst the contagions of the braines, although they be caused thꝛough some offence oꝛ perishing of the sinewes, and are thus described. The shaking is a continuall strife of the naturall powers, which willingly and after a naturall manner are rayed without ceasing, and is overcome by sicknesse. Also, this shaking is a weakening oꝛ diminishing of motion.

This hapneth of many causes, as if one loke from great height into the depth, oꝛ like as any body should speake to a seuerer Prince, a Tyrant, oꝛ an other great Sir, oꝛ Ruler: oꝛ if one se any deuouring beast befoze his eyes. Also this shaking oꝛ trembling commeth of great anger, great ioy, hard binding, thꝛough great cold and darknes, like as dayly experience sheweth. Item thꝛough great heate, vnbridled incontinencie, much bleeding, and also when there is little blood and spirit extant, as one seeth by them which be recouered of a long sickness. But because that it plainly appeareth by the foꝛesaid reasons, that this disease is caused by diuers meanes and accidents, therfoze there be generally diuers remedies appꝛopziate vnto it, wherefoze if it pꝛocæde of perishing of the sinewes, and cold causes (like as it most commeth to passe) then is to be vsed foꝛ it all that is ordained foꝛ the Crampe and Palsey. Generally of all other herbs there is pꝛaysed foꝛ this, thꝛe leaved grasse, *Comin* and *Stechas*, whether it be in Clifters oꝛ otherwise: of oyles, the oyle of wilde *Cowcumber*, of *Dill*, of *Cleauers*, *Articoca*, which herbe is maruelous foꝛcible against the shaking oꝛ trembling.

Foꝛ his meate, are very mete foꝛ it the braines of *Hares*, yong *Stares*, and yong *Beuers*, and also foꝛ all other diseases of the sinewes. These Clifters following are also to be vsed, take *Centory*, wild and garden *Sage*, *Rue* and *Cowslips*, *S. Johns wort*, and *Mercury*, of each halfe a ℥. also paled wild *Safron* seede one drag. *Rue* seede, *Basil* seede, *siluer mountaine* seede, of each halfe an ounce, *Agaricus* fine drag. *Stechas* and *Amaranthus* of each halfe an ounce: let them sethe together in sufficient water, take 12. oꝛ 16. ounces of this decoction, *Hony*, and oyle of *Lillies*, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Sal gemma*, *Pil. Cochis*, of each halfe a drag. temper them well foꝛ a Clister, this is also good foꝛ the palsey and stiffness, but if the trembling come of excessse

excesse drinking of wine, then is the same to be sozborne, or at least tempered with Sage water, or common water wherein Sage is decocted: Heade is much moze mete for this then wine, or common water tempered with the iuice of Pomegranates, or Cleriuiue. There is also to be demanded, what the cause is that the head alwaies shaketh most of all, and next after the handes; like as by experience is seene. The answer: For that the braine is a very flegmatike part, the which imparteth her moysture to the other members. And for that the hands are next of all to the head with their sinewes, & far from the naturall warmth: they are also most annoyed with outward causes, for that they be seldome covered. Now that one may chiefly helpe this shaking of the head (out of which might procede much damage) first is the patient to eschew all moyst and colde meate, as fish, and especially sodden Crabs and Celes. He is also to refraine from Spinage, Bêtes, Purcelane, Cowcumbes, and such like herbs, and all that is made of dowe, except leauened bread. Item from all sortes of pottages, except red and white Pease, and Rife. All fruit is also hurtfull vnto him, except Oranges and Limons which be preserued. Milke, and all that is made of Milke is he to shun like poyson; and if he loue his health, he must drinke no wine. But his meate is to be wheaten bread with the brande: Also Meale, Birds flesh, and leane powdered flesh, Fennell, Pints, Rosemary, Sage, wild Time, yellow Rapes, Parsneps, Capers, and such like, are also very commodious. For his drinke is this to be prepared: take five quartes of fresh Well water, and one ounce of dried Rosemary flowers; let it sethe vntill two quartes be waisted: afterwards temper thereto foure and twenty ounces of Honie, let it then sethe againe, and scum it well, vntill there be about a quarte consumed: Afterwards straine it through a tight cloth, and let him drinke thereof in steede of wine: but if he cannot well drinke it, then temper a little red clere wine amongst it. But if so be that he must and will drinke wine, then take Rosemarie wine; for it strengtheneth the members, and also the sinewes, whether it be drunken, or the members rubd with it. The same doth also the wine of Clarie, Sage, and Clozmetwood, but aboue all others Rosemary wine.

But if so be that the person be young & full of blood, then after the vse of the foresaid Clusters, open the Lincrin baine in the elbowe, or vpon the hand, and let out of it foure or five ounces of blood, and the next day afterwards let him take these pills following: as *Cochia*, de *Sarcocolla* of each halfe a drag, with the iuice of Roses, whereof are seuen pills to be made, and he must fast after them five houres. Also to drinke afterwards a good draught of warme wine, and an houre after he is to breake his fast. After purging he is to drinke euery morning this potion following the space of a moneth, and to fast foure houres after it. Take water of Artichokes, of Betony and Rosemarie of each one ounce, sirup of *Stechas* & *Oxymel*, of each thre quarters of an ounce; and once in twelue daies he is to vse these pills following: as *Pill. fatidarum* two scrup. *Cochiarum* one scrup. whereof you are to make with the sirup of Roses seuen pills, euery euening when he goeth to bed he is to eate one quarter of an ounce of Calmus, & therupon to drinke a draught of Artichoke water. He is also from the necke downewards to the rump along the backe bone, to be rubbed with warme clothes, and thereupon annoint it with the oyle of Artichocks. He is also to drinke halfe a drag. of the powder of a Hares head burned, and that one houre before meate, with Peade, or water of Artichocks. Now after that the patient is well purged, then may he euery day two or thre houres before meate, set boring cups unpickt behinde in the necke.

A Powder.

Take field Cyppers, Cowslops, *Lignum Aloes*, Ireos, *Hermodactils*, *Stechas*, *Mariozam*, Pints, of each halfe a dragme, *Indy Spica*, Greines and Rue of each one scruple: this beaten each by himselfe, and then tempered, bestrowe all the head therewith when it is thorne.

The confectiō of *Diamargariton*.

This Confection following is very mete for all maner shaking: it doth maruelously strengthen the heart in all venymous accidents, and is amiable to the stomacke.

Take Cinnamon, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloues, *Indy Spica*, Galingall, Licorice, *Trociscos de violis sine Scammonio Specierum Diarrohodon Albas* of each five drag. Putmegs, *Alipia muscata*, *Seduarie*,

duarie, Spiknard, Pace, Kubarbe, and red Storax, of each halfe an ounce, prepared Pearles, burnt Iuorie, Harts bones, Ginger, *Blatta Byzantia*, of each two drag. and a halfe, Puscus, *Ambra*, Cardamom, Louage seede, Basil seede, of each one drag. and a halfe, Camfere one drag. and three ounces of clarified Honie: temper these all together, and you shall giue thereof earlie in the morning, and as often as is needefull in the day time; to wit, one quarter of an ounce at once.

If you will then haue Tabulats thereof, then take twelue ounces of Sugar, and one ounce of the foresaid ingreience: seethe Sugar with Lauander water; or if you desire it moze coler, then take Buglosse water, there is also at many Apothecaries *Diamargariton frigidum*, which is yet moze coling, because that the former is of a warme nature.

Against the trembling or Shaking are all *Aque Comp.* good, which are described in the eighth part, taking thereof, or the trembling member washed or rubbed therewith.

Item take Garlick, beate it with wine, and rub the Shaking members with it: In like manner also, with the iuice of wilde Cowcumbers, tempered with oyle of three leaved grasse, or bled by it selfe. Take a sponge which groweth on the Juniper tree in May, before the rising of the sun: put it into a glasse, set it in the sun, and then will it change to water; wherewith wash the Shaking and trembling hands, and let them drie of themselves. There is much taught in the second part of the palpitation of the heart, which is also mete for this Shaking.

For the Resolution of the sinewes or dead Palsey. §.13.



If the third kinde of the Palsey we haue tolde heretofore in the beginning of the 8. §. of the Resolution in the sinewes, what maner of sicknes it is that doth sodainly take away the free motion and action of a part in mans bodie particularly, or wholly, and maketh it dead & insensible. We do call the same a resolution of the sinewes, or a dead Palsey, and them that be troubled with it, *Paralyticos*.

This is now called by the learned, the great or dead Palsey or Resolution, for a difference of the foresaid trembling and Shaking. In this are two kindes of natures hidden; whereof the one is *Epilepsia*, when it taketh the left or right side, and not all the whole body, and is called in Latine *Resolutio*, or *Dissolutio nervorum*, that is a resolution or vnbinding of the sinewes, that the members haue no strength or might in them, whereof we will here speake moze at large, for this Palsey concerneth not the head at all: for if so be that the head be therewith infected, then is it a right Apoplexie.

The Palsey or Resolution, whereof we at this present doe speake hath many causes: first, it is properly caused of cold moist meates, as fish, Swines flesh, Pilke, and all that is dressed therewith: all fruits, except Almonds, Hesel nuts, and Distaces: also all colde herbs, as Wets, Spinage &c. In fine, all that is moist and cold is hurtfull for this sicknes. But if one will eate fish, Bozke, and red Beafe, then are they to be prepared with Rosemarie, wilde Time, Pints, Sage, and such like. The sursetting with meate and drinke, is in this sicknes very preiudiciall; like as also much sleeping, and chiefly for all them that be of a colde nature, and be olde, or dwell in a colde or moist countrey.

This disease may also procede of beating, breaking, or racking of the sinewes, of anger, of feare, great colde, hard binding of any of the members, and such like moze. For this, all drying and warming meates are good: as well salted and leauened bread, Partridges, Fesants, Turtle doves, and all small fowles: also Putton and Teale dressed with the foresaid herbs. Some commend much kids flesh salted, the which should strengthen much the sinewes. For this is also mete all kind of drying and warming Conserues, whether they be of rootes, herbs, flowers, or spices: but wine is to be refrained as much as is possible. But in case that the patient, by reason of his age, cannot forbear wine, then chuse old red wine, which he is to drinke tempered with a little Rosemarie water: And if that like him not, then he may drinke Rosemarie water alone, whether it be decocted or distilled. If the red wine be against him or not to be gotten, then take thin white wine, and temper it with water wherein Cardamom is decocted.

Resolve all they that will be defended from this Palsey, they are to vse much confected Coriander, fasting and before meales; as also to vse white prepared Mustard seede therewith.

For this is also very good the blood of Turtle doves dronken. This sicknes commonly appeareth

peareth with a new and full Moone, against which you are to prepare these things following.

Take good Treacle three quarters of an ounce, Beuercod one quarter of an ounce, and temper it with Lauander water, and take it in the morning fasting.

But if so be there appeare any beginning of this sickness, then doe many aduise (and that rightly) that then the thumbe and great toe are to be hard rubbed, chafed and stretched out; and likewise to rub with warme clothes the necke and the backe bone downward, that the blood may be drawen from the head and from the heart. Also there must be a little Treacle thrust behinde in his thyoate.

Beuercod holden in the mouth and vnder the tongue is also very good. Some doe also giue Beuercod and Pepper to drinke, of each one drag.

For this is also much commended *Asa fetida*, whether it be taken inwardly, vsed on the outside, or in gargarismes: and if you would take the same, then is one drag. and a half enough, with Pepper and Rue, of each halfe a drag. tempered with wine. This is good for all diseases of the sinewes.

The distilled water of blacke Cherries is also much praised for this sickness at the first, and especially if one put thereto as much Lauander water, and so take thereof three or foure ounces at one time.

The common order of this sickness is, that all remedies for this disease are applied to the hinder part of the head, and in the beginning before the fourth and seventh, or also before the fourteenth day to vse no strong medicines, but onely preparatiues. And if so be that the sick person will yeld vnto it, then it were not amisse that he drinke no other thing the first foure or five daies, and did eate almost nought els but only hony water, yea also (if it be possible) to suffer hunger and thirst with it. The fourth day he is to haue given him one drag. or a drag. and a halfe of Treacle or Spithivate, with waters made for this disease.

It is also found by experience, that all they that be burthened with this disease, shall get great ease, if they accustome to drinke every morning three ounces of Rosemary or Lauander water, with three drag. of the powder of *Pierisium* tempered amongst it.

Item take the water of the blossomes of the Willet tree, of May Lillies, and of blacke Cherries, of each one ounce, giue it him so to drinke. In like manner also stilled womans Urine is highly commended for it, and all kinds of *Aqua Comp.*

Take sliced Licorice, and Annis seeds of each one ounce, Cleampane halfe an ounce, Pynie rootes one drag. Putmegs one ounce, Spirit of wine sixteen ounces, Hony eight ounces: temper these all together and conserue them well. In winter put thereto one quarter of an ounce of long Pepper, vse thereof every morning a spoonfull or twaine. This is marueilous much commended for a speciall remedie.

Another.

Take Lauander water six ounces, water of the May Lillies three ounces, *Elixor vita*, and the water of wild Poppey, of each two ounces, oyle of Beuercod one ounce and a halfe: temper it in a glasse, and then set it in the sun the space of eight dayes, whereof in time of neede take a spoonfull, and annoynt therewith the Temples of the head. *Sp. Tristrans* water is also very fit for this purpose.

Of Purging.

Forthmuch as purging is very needefull in this sickness, therefore for example will we describe here a purgatio. But it is about all aduised, that the sick body drinke every morning foure or five dayes together five ounces of Rosemary water, and fast foure houres vpon it.

Afterwards he is to take halfe an ounce of *Hiera logodion*, tempered in two ounces of Agrimonia water, in the morning, & to fast five houres after it; or to vse these pills following: Take *Agaricus* a scrup. *Asa fetida* halfe a scrup. Ginger twelue greines, *Diagridion* one greine: make pills thereof with the iuice of *Hyssope*. When the patient is purged, then he is to vse this potion following, for the space of eight daies together: Take the water of Agrimonia, and of Sothernwood, of each two ounces, put some Sugar amongst it.

Other

Other doe rather aduise this following: Take Calmus halfe an ounce, Cowslips three ℥. Saint Johns wort, fiede and garden Sage, Betony, Balme, Rue, Bay leaues, of each one ℥. Siluer mountaine, Balsame wood, Balsame fruite, and Bassill seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, Licorice, Cozans, Lauander flowers, *Amaranthus*, of each one ounce, clarified Honie sixe ounces, rayne water which is clarified with the white of an eg twelue ounces; let all these sethe together vnto a sirup.

Another.

Take Calmus sixe ounces, Sage three ℥. *Stechas* three ounces, clarified Honie sixe ounces, white Sugar nine ounces; sethe them together in eightene ounces of rayne water vnto a sirup, whereof you may take one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces at once, tempered with Sage water.

Also you may vse the sirup of *Stechas*, for all they be very commodious for this disease. Afterwards take the former purgation againe, or the pills of *Euphorbium*, de *Serapino*, & de *Opopanaco*. And if the patient by drinkeing of these potions do remaine bound in bodie, then is he euery euening befoze supper to swallow one of these pills following.

Take of the pills of *Alephangina* one drag. *Trocisci Albendali*, *Agaricus*, of each halfe a scrup. Indie salt siue greines, whereof make sixtene pills.

Clifters.

Take Sage, Rue, *Stechas*, Centozie, Gallowes, Mercurie, and Bizan, of each halfe a handfull: let them sethe all togither, and take twelue ounces of this decoction; temper amongst it *Hiera logodon* halfe an ounce, Salt one quarter of an ounce, Sallet oyle three ounces, minister it warme. But for them that haue newly gotten this dead Palsey, there is to be sodden in these Clifters, half an ounce of rootes of Bizony, or of Pyonie, for both these are good for the disease.

Powder for sauce to meate.

This powder is he to strow vpon the meat in stead of spice: Take pickt Cinnamom one ounce & a half, prepared Coziander, Cloues, Galingall, Pepper, Cucubes, Pace, nutmegs, of each one ounce, Calmus two ounces, Coutchenell halfe an ounce, Sugar sixe ounces: this is to be tempered together.

Another.

Take Pepper two drag, and a halfe, Cloues, Cardamome, long Pepper, Seduarie, of each one drag. Indy Spica, Pace, Saffron, of each one scrup. Sugar as much as you please: Temper them well togither.

Item, about the third day is the patient befoze the rising of the sun to take one drag. of Treacle tempered with the water of wild Sage. This medicine is most highly commended of diuers Physicians.

Of Bathing.

In this sickenes is also bathing much commended; whereof there be two kindes naturally, ac sea water; or that is sulferish by nature: Others which be prepared with herbs and such like.

For the herbe bath: Take the same herbes, rootes, and seedes, which be named in the last sirups, and one is onely to receiue the vapoꝝ, and sweate withall: or make this ensuing.

Take Bay berries, Juniper berries, and Pepper, of each as much as you please, stampe it to grosse powder, and set the patient in a dry bath: powꝛe of this powder on hot irons, tempered with Lauander water, to the end he may sweat well with the vapoꝝ thereof, then rub all his members infected with Venice Sope, vntill the Sope be drie againe: Also his bodie is not to be made

The first part of the

made wet at any time with any thing, but onely as he steppeth out of the bath with Lauander water, which is to be powred on a glowing Iron, and so moisten him with this vapoꝝ. And after bathing, taryng in a warme place, the lame ioynts are to be rubbed hard with the grease of Sotzkes, untill they be drie; and afterwards with the suet of a Wether; & lastly with Bucks suet. This being continued so the space of foure daies, the great baine on the foote is to be opened, and boring cups set vpon the armes: then will he be holpen.

An especiall Bath.

TAke a For, vncase him, and (the botwels being taken out) sethe him in a sufficient quantitie of water, and bathe the sicke person with it: but yet not befoze that the bodie be purged, it is not otherwise permitted.

Fomentations in steede of Bathes.

TAke Sage fire ʒ. Juniper berries foure ʒ. the strong wine lxs seuen quartes; let them sethe together by a small fier: afterwards put it all together in a necessary kettle oꝝ pot, to the end the vapoꝝ thereof may euapoꝝate and ascend vnto the lame member, and vs this so twice every day.

Item take drie Sage thꝛe ʒ. sethe it in a pinte of rayne water vntill the third part be sodden away: at the length cast therein one ounce & a half of *Stechados*, let it sethe a waume oꝝ two: then temper amongst it halfe a pinte of wine, oꝝ salt water, with halfe so much white Wine, clarified Honie two ounces: annoynt and rub therewith the lame members. This (and other moe which followe hereafter) is approued foꝝ this disease, if one cannot get the naturall bath, oꝝ will not vse artificiall baths, which is alwaies to be vsed befoze the annoynting, therewith befoze hand to open the pores.

Take a hot Tile, spinkle it with god strong wine, receiue the vapoꝝ vnto the lame members, when they then be warmed and besweated, drie them with warme clothes, and annoynt them with some of the foresaid things, now with the one, and then with the other, and couer wel the lame members with a god *Wolfs furre*, oꝝ with somewhat like vnto it.

In like manner it is also good to rub the lame side with god burnt wine, oꝝ spirit of wine onely, oꝝ halfe so much white wine tempered amongst it: but if you will haue it yet moze soꝝcible, then take in the stead of the spirit of wine, one of these *Elixers visa* following.

A water for Inunction.



TAke Rosemarie, *Parierom* gentle, and Bay berries, of each one handfull, *Wenies* sope as much as the yolke of an egge, fire ounces of Lauander water, temper all these together in a moztar, and let it stand a day: afterwards wzing it through a cloth, the which is thus to be vsed: first rub the member well with a warme cloth, and annoynt the water vpon it.

Also he is twice a weeke foꝝ to swallow oꝝ slide downe ʒ. oꝝ i. prepared *Mustard seedes*, and to drinke thereupon two oꝝ thꝛe ounces of Lauander water, and so to continue this the space of thꝛe weekes: otherwhiles he may annoynt the lame side with the oile of Juniper, but not too often: foꝝ thereby might come great hurt. The oyle of *Costus* is also especially recommended foꝝ this vse, which is thus made.

Oile of *Costus*.

Take the rootes of *Costus* one ounce, *Pepper*, *Pieretrum*, *Euphorbium*, of each eight scruples, *Beuer* cod halfe an ounce, melt these all together in fire ounces of the oile of *Wall flowers*, oꝝ in oile of Bay which is moze soꝝcible.

Another.

TAke pouned *Pieretrum* halfe an ounce, sethe it in fire ounces of *Sallet oyle*, vntill the thꝛd part be consumed, let the sicke person be annoynted therewith sower times in sower and twenty howers: it is much commended of all ancient and later *Physitions*.

A marueilous Oile called *Hypobalsamus*.

This oile is most highly commended for the dead palse, and for all resolutions of the sinewes, and is thus made: Take cleere Turpentine five ounces, oyle of Bayes one ounce, *Galbanum*, *Gummi Helenij*, of each three ounces, *Gummi Hedera*, *Olibanum*, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one ounce, *Pasticke* one quarter of an ounce, *Pyrrhe*, *Laudanum*, *Aloes*, *Beuer* cod, of each three drag. poune it grosse; then adde vnto it two ounces of spirit of wine, let it stand three daies, afterwards take *Galingale*, *Cloues*, *Cinnamome*, *Putnecs*, *Zeduarie*, *Cucubes*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Diptamum*, *Comfrey*, of each one ounce and a halfe: powze thereon two ounces of spirit of wine: let it stand so fower daies, stirring it oftentimes about, distill it afterwards in a glasse helme. This water is called also *Balne water* which must be preserued alone, so also do with the oile: for it swageth and strengtheneth all the sinewes maruellous much.

For this is also mete the oyle of *Parierom* gentle, the oyle of *Juniper*, of wilde *Cucumbers*, of *Tyles*, and two pretious balmes which shall be hereafter described in the eight part, which are especiall good for the lame members.

This salve following is very good for all lame hands: Take *Lauander*, *Sage*, of each one handfull, *Juniper* berries three ounces, sethe all together in wine, and rub the fingers and other members with it. And if you will haue this more forcible, temper it with the former oiles vnto a thin salve, which is wonderfully commended.

Another.

Take *Squills*, *Rue*, *Calmus*, *Pettlerootes*, *Agrimonie*, *Cowslips*, of each a handfull, poune them all together, and powze oile of *Puts* vpon it, and old *Sallet* oile 24. ounces, and well salted water or wine as much also: let these sethe together vntill the moisture be waisted away, wzing it hard through a cloth, and temper amongst it *Saltpeter*, *Euphorbium*, *Pepper*, oyle of *Bay*, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Galbanum*, *Turpentine*, of each two ounces: Ware as much as is needefull for to make a salve thereof. This is marvellous good against the *Crampe*, against the colde *Cowte*, and whatsoeuer ache els may procede of colde.

Also you may make of all the foresaid oyle, salues, if you temper amongst it any grease of *Beares*, of *Badgers*, wild *Cats*, *Hens*, and *Goose*, of which you will.

Item take *Calmus*, the rootes of *Lillies*, rootes of *Costus*, of each halfe an ounce, *Pepper* *Pieretrum*, *Beuer* cod, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Sage* three drag. *Stechas* one drag. and a halfe, *Spicanardi*, *Squinant*, of each one drag. and the iuce of *Cowslips* which is well settled one ounce, of the oile of *Indie* nut kernels, of the oile of crabs, and wine, of each three ounces: afterwards poune all that is to be pouned, the rest are to be byused by themselves: sethe this by a milde fier so long, vntill the wine be consumed, afterwards put as much ware vnto it as is needfull for the salve.

Item, it is reported that this salve ensuing doth preserue men from the dead *Palsey*: Take *Bay* leaues, *Parioram*, *Rosemarie*, *Sage*, *Costus* rootes, *Scariola*, *Spints*, *Pillet*, *Consolidamir*, *Sanicle*, of each one lb. *Spicanardi*, broade and picked *Plantaine*, *Agrimonia*, *Buglosse*, and *Rue*, of each one lb. and a halfe, *Wormewood*, *Smallage*, *Saint Johns wort*, red and white *Roses*, of each two lb. *Hyssope*, nettles, and *Tansley*, of each halfe a handfull: beate them altogether, and sethe them in three pound of fresh butter, vntill all the iuce be consumed: afterwards straine it through a cloth, and temper amongst it white molten *Ware* three ounces, *Pasticke* two ounces, *Sallet* oyle one ounce, and make thereof a salve. This is also good to preserue one from the *Cowte*.

Another Salve highly commended.

Take a pluckt *Goose*, taking cleane out all the intrails, and wash it with *vineger*: afterwards make a dozie of *Sage*, *Frankincense*, *Pastick*, pouned *Earth* *wormes*, *Molues* and *Cats* grease, fill the *Goose* therewith, and let her be gently roasted: the fatnes which

droppeth off is to be gathered in a pot, with some vineger. This is a very pearcing salve, which doth marueilously resolue and consume all hardnesse. But if the *Wolues* or *Cats* greale cannot be gotten, then take *shēpes* suet in stēde thereof, and annoint the necke and lame members therewith.

It is also very requisite after the vse of this salve, to weare a plaister vpon the lame member, wherto this following is very mete: Take sixe ounces of the iuice of *Rue*, which is very clere, and *Pigeons* dung as much as is needefull for to make a plaister. This plaister is to be laid on the lame part.

Also you shall many times finde many kindes of remedies mo in the fourth part of the lamenes, and extenuation of the members.

To be noted.

In this Resolution or *Palsey*, are two principall members, which are to be healed with the foresaid oyles, waters, salues, and plaisters, viz. the member which is taken, and the beginning of the sinewes which are next to the same member. Take for example, if the *Palsey* or Resolution is in the one hand, then is the same, and all the parts of the backe, from the necke vnto the huckle bone to be annoynted, for that the sinewes of the hand haue their osspring from thence.

Further, boring cups vnpickt are to be applied vpon the beginning of the sinewes, which do also helpe well, because that they doe warme and drie them: it is good also to rub the same places with salt, *pettles*, and *Gustard* seede. But alwaies after purging certaine daies together, whilst that the patient staeth and ceaseth from purging, bathing, and such like, then is he to take euery morning halfe an ounce of the confection *Anacardina*, for that it is commended aboue all measure in the colde *Palsey*: and if so be that there be any sweate or small *Ague* with it, (like as accustomed to happen, which his heate causeth) then it is a good signe: but if this followe not, then is the patient to forbear ten daies long from all vse of phisicke, and to continue onely with good meate and drinke.

It is also here to be noted, that all that is described before, is only fit for the Resolution which proceedeth of colde causes: but if they proceede of hot causes, the sickness will be augmented thorough the foresaid remedies.

Palsey through fals or blowes.

If so be that one doe fall so hard, or be beaten or striken, that thereby forthwith he be taken with the *Palsey*, then it is not to be holpen: but if it come slowly afterwards vpon one, then this salve is very mete for it.

Take *Benecod* two scrup. *Euphorbium* one scrup. *Pepper* three greines, *Pieretrum* halfe an ounce: sethe all these in ten ounces of sallet oyle vnto the halfe, then temper with it fine *drag.* of *Wymstone*, and a little wine: It is also especiall good for the *Spasmus* or *Crampe*.

Item, take *Pyrrhe*, *Opopanacum*, of each fine *drag.* *Benecod* three *drag.* *Euphorbium* one quarter of an ounce, oyle of *Lillies*, and of *Narcissus*, of each two ounces, make a strong plaister thereof with ware, and spread it vpon a cloth, and lay it vpon the place agreed.

But good heed is alwaies here to be taken of the lamenes (and of all that might concerne the same) with heate or without heate, like as we haue already admonished, that it may be knowen to applie the remedie thereafter.

Lanander, *Rosemary*, *Spicanardi*, (which haue almost the same operation) are inestimable good for the Resolution which proceede through colde causes. Therefore all conserues which be made thereof, are not onely profitable for these causes, but also for all lost speche and lamed limmes. If so be that any will vse anie wine in this sickness, then is there none fitter nor better then wine of *Rosemarie*, or *Mozmwood* wine. Conserue of *Sage* and of *Cowslips* are also much commended; with other things moze which are declared in the *Palsey*.

Convulsion

Convulsion of the mouth through the Paulsey. §. 14.



His disease is thus described of the Physicians: *Contorsio* is a disease which altereth the naturall shape of the face: or, *Contorsio* is a convulsion of the mouth and lips to the right or left side; so that it doth otherwhiles cleere shut by one eye, and also the breath issueth out but at one corner of the mouth, whereby sometimes also the whole face is changed in colour.

In fine, it is a Crampe, with a contraction and shortning of the sinewes, which draweth the lips hither or thitherwards, and these be the most causes, (like as in the Crampe and Paulsey hath bene shewed) that if it procede of moisture, then it is a kinde of Paulsey: whensoever it is caused through dryeth, then it is a kinde of Crampe.

Also this contorsion or contraction cometh sometimes by reason of an impostume, like as in the paine of the throte, which quickly stranglet a body.

This Crampe or contraction of the mouth assaileth a body oftentimes sodainely, as in *Phrenitide* and such like, whereof at this present shall not be spoken, because that the same is commonly a signe of death: it cometh also not through repletion of the body, but through inanition and dryeth. But we speake only here of that which is caused of *Spasmus* or the Crampe, which distendeth the sinewes from houre to houre, therefore is there some aduise to be done and taken for it.

But for to expell this disease there is somewhat to be done vnto it out of hand, that there breede not a worse matter of it, as *Epilepsia*, or *Apoplexia*. This cure is first to be begun with Clusters, especially if the patient be bound, and to acuate the Clusters by little and little.

Afterwards he is to be let blood, if it be not that this accident be so small, that there were time sufficient first to take a purgation, and to take good hede whether the vyne be cleere and well coloured, and then to open the *Saluatella*, besides the little finger vpon the right hand, and to let out thre or foure ounces of blood, and after that to purge.

These preparatiue potions is he to take first of all: take *Calmus* six ounces, Ginger and Nutmegs of each one ounce, clarified Hony nine ounces, make a cleare sirup thereof, and giue the sicke person thereof certaine dayes together enery morning two or thre ounces tempered with the decoction of Sage.

Afterwards he is to take these Pills: take *Pilles Cochie*, de *Sarcocolla*, de *Hermodylis*, of each one scrup. and *Dysagridion* two greines, make thereof 7. pills, with the iuice of Rue, and take them earely in the morning fasting, and fast six howres vpon it: for this vse are also good the pills *Fetide*. Will you then haue them more forcible: then take two drag. of the pills *Cochie*, prepared *Coloquinte*, and *Bdellinum*, of each one drag. make pills thereof as big as a pease, and if the patient be reasonable strong, then giue him a drag. at once.

Item, let his head be shauen and rubbed softly with warme clothes, vntill the skinne begin to be red, and then annoynt it with this following: take the iuice of Swines bred thre ounces, *Stechados*, *Pemroyall*, *Hints*, *Hyssop*, of each one ounce beaten, and one quarter of an ounce of Violets, temper them altogether.

When he hath then purged well, and the matter is prepared, which is done in foure dayes, then is he to vse euery day before meate this Gargarisme.

Take white Mustard seide two ounces, Vineger one ounce and a halfe, Hony thre ounces, sethe them altogether in a pint of water, vnto the halfe, and skimme it well. But it is here to be noted, that these Gargarismes must not be vsed at the first, that they make not an afflure of the humors, and the accident thereby be augmented.

Item, take Nutmegs, *Pieretrum*, *Stechados*, of each halfe an ounce, sethe them and vse them as before. You may also temper amongst it *Oxymell* of Squills.

Another. Take thre ounces of *Calmus*, Vineger one ounce, and vse it as before.

This contraction of the mouth sometimes also yeldeth much spetle, and to further the same, and to make it runne the better, make this *Masticatory*.

Take Liebane, *Assick*, white Mustard seide, *Pieretrum*, of each a like quantity, temper it with molten virgin ware, make small balles or pellets of it as big as hassell nuts. This is to be chewed & spit out: the same doth Frankincense & *Assick* also together, or each chewed by it self.

Neeſing.

Neeſing is very good: wherewith it might be effected, you are to ſeeke ſoꝛ that in the firſt Register.

Salues.

Alſo the nape and hinder part of the head, the throte, the face, and the ſoꝛthead are to be annointed with the oyle of Coſtus: but it were good, that one made firſt a Cypers boꝝd hot, and bound it in a cloth, and layd it ſo long on the necke and ſhoulders, vntill the ſame parts were thoroughly warmed, and afterwards annointed.

Item take the oile of Coſtus one ounce & a halfe, oyle of *Euphorbium* halfe an ounce, Pints, the ſeede of Rue, *Stechas*, *Penniroyall*, *Lignum Aloes*, of each halfe a dzag. oyle of *Beuercod* one ounce, white Ware as much as is needefull: beſpinkle it with ſome vineger of Squils, and therewith annoint all the necke from the nape to the rumpe ſower times in 24. howers.

Item take Calmus ſower ounces and a halfe, Ginger, Putmegs, of each thꝛe dzag. oyle of Coſtus ſower ounces, wine as much as is needefull: let them ſetthe togiſther by a milde fire vntill the wine be conſumed, ſtraine it, and make a ſalue thereof with molten Ware.

A Plaister.

Take Betonie ſixe ounces, white water Pints, field Pints, *Penniroyall*, *Parierom*, of each one ounce and a halfe (altogether grēne) *Stechas* two ounces, Peale meale one ounce and a halfe, Beane meale two ounces, Saffron halfe a dzag. ſetthe theſe herbes in Sharpe lie vnto grout: afterwards temper the meale and Saffron vnto it, alſo oyle of *Beuercod*, oyle of Pepper, and of Rue, of each two ounces: lay it moꝛning and euening warme vpon the head, and vpon the temples of the head, where this contorſion is.

Another.

Take *Opopanacum* thꝛe ounces, Calmus thꝛe dzag. Ginger, Putmegs, of each one dzag. Turpentine one quarter of an ounce, melt the Gum and Turpentine, and temper it with the reſt vnto a plaister: then ſpread it vpon a cloth, and lay it behinde vpon the head, vpon the necke, and ouer all the nape.

Item, take freſh Swines bread halfe an ounce, *Parierom* gentle ſeuē dzag. *Lignum Aloes* one dzag. and a halfe, ſetthe them in a pint of water vnto the halfe: but befoꝛe that the patient draweth by this into his noſe, he muſt firſt take his mouth full of honie, oꝛ ſugred water, and then hold ſome of the ſaid decoction in his hand, and draue of it thꝛe times through the right noſtrill, and thꝛe alſo thꝛoꝛw the left noſtrill, and that one howe befoꝛe ſupper: the like alſo in the moꝛning and at none. This is very requiſite ſoꝛ health: he is alſo euery day two oꝛ thꝛe howers befoꝛe ſupper to ſwallowe downe two oꝛ thꝛe coꝛnes of *Opꝛhe*.

A capitall Powder.

Take *Stechas*, *Penniroyal*, white water Pints, and Betonie, of each one dzag. and a halfe, *Pieretrum*, Coſtus rotes, *Lycbane*, of each one dzag. *Parierom* gentle, poune it, and temper it all togiſther: ſtrowe therewith the vppermoſt part of the head, rubbing it gently. Alſo it is to be ſtrowed thereon, when he hath annointed him with the oile of Coſtus.

A lotion for the feete.

It is alſo very good to uſe theſe lotions ſoꝛ the ſete befoꝛe meate, wherein Woodbine is ſoden. Alſo the ſete, the legs, the thighes, the hands, the armes and face may be waſhed with this decoction following: Take Bay leaues two handfuls, Juniper leaues thꝛe handfuls: ſetthe them all togiſther in a good deale of water, vntill it ſmell ſwaete.

Order

Order of Diet.

This patient is to keepe himselfe from eating and drinkeing, and all other things, as is taught in the Palsey, and Apoplexie: viz. to eschewe wine, to drinke homie water, to eat Kids, or young Goates, Koebucks, and Hares, rather roasted then boyled.

All his other meates are to be bespzinckled with Rosemarye, Sage, Wormewood, white water Pints, garden Pints, Pennyroyal, & Comin. And albeit that hot spices are also good for him, yet may he instead thereof vse these following.

Take Nutmegs one ounce, long Pepper, Beuercod, Galingall, of each one scrup. Seduary halfe a drag. poune all small and temper them together.

Item take Nutmegs, Ginger, of each three drag. of the confection of Calmus three ounces, Sugar as much as wil suffice to make an electuarie: this ought he to vse in the morning fasting. Eggs howsoeuer they be dyest, Kise, Colewortts, and Kapes, he may eate. But from milke, and all that is dyest with it, from all fruit and all that is of a cold & moyst nature must he refraine. A darke habitation is also meete for him, and to looke oftentimes into a looking glasse, and to soze himselfe to set his mouth right: great labour also is not fit for him, but rather rest and moderate use. To warme him, he is to burne that wood which is warme of nature, as fir wood, and Juniper wood: he is alwaies to keepe his head couered with a ffor furre, and to hold alwaies a peece of Nutmeg in the mouth, in the place affected, or in steede of that these *Troscos*: Take Calmus two ounces and a quarter, Ginger halfe an ounce, Nutmegs two drag. and a halfe, poune them all together, and steape them two daies in water of Sage. Nowe if it be too moyst, then let it dye away vpon warme ashes, and then with Honie make *Troscos* of it, of the weight of a drag. and a halfe, and holde them in the mouth: if you can swallowe them, they will doe no hurte.

And if these things will not help, then must he purge againe, and lastly make an issue behind in the nape of the necke, and on the vaines vnder the eare or vnder the chin with an hot iron or cozossue, and to holde it long enough open.

Of the Crampe, and conuulsion of the sinewes by the Palsey. §.15.



His disease is also a kind of *Paralysis*, called of the Grecians *Spasmus*, and by the Latinists *Convulsio*, and it hath also no small agrément with the foresaid contraction or contorsion of the mouth, (like as hath been said already:) in like maner also with the *Epilepsia*, and all other diseases which be reckoned amongst such like infections, and it is described thus: *Spasmus* or *Convulsio*, is a contraction of the sinewes, and muscles against our wils, which sometimes doe conuulse but one part, and otherwhiles the whole body. The Grecians for diuers causes, doe giue this Crampe sundrie names, *Opisthotonos*, that is when the sinewes are drawen backwards; *Emphrosthotos*, when they be drawen forwards; *Tetanos*, when one member wareth stiffe like to a sticke. The causes of these are otherwhiles when any one is thrust into a sinewe, wounded or ouerburdened with too much labour or work. Also it is caused through great scolding of the bodie, through excessive bleeding, through vnbzideled leacherie, freight and wormes &c. In fine, the causes doe procede of an intemperate nature, as cold which is augmented; and heat which is diminished: also of drythe and moysture, according to that the body is full or emptye. Of these differences there be yet moze, which are here too long to be rehearsed.

Nevertheless, yet can I not omit, that this *Spasmus* (of whatsoeuer cause that he doe proceed, & especially if he be caused of a hot Ague) is not only a bad signe, but also that it is incurable: for by reason of the heate the sinewes will be a great deale too drie, and shrinke by short, like as one for example may see by a leather lace, or such like, if one holde it by the fier, then will it be hard and shrinketh. On the contrarie, if it be holden in a moyst place, it will be lithier or limber.

When as then such kind of Crampes do assaile the whole body, and that the patient beginneth to be childish, and addicted much to sleepe, then is the disease in the marrow of the backe bone, which hath his osspring from the braine. Also this disease commeth either sodainly, or

slowly: that which commeth sodainly, proceedeth of repletion of the body, and is through purging (as hath been said of the Palsey) to be remedied.

But it must be moze and oftener annoynted and rubbed with the oyle of Costus, for that the humoz is much grosser then in the Palsey, and may worse be consumed. But if so be that this sickness be by little and little byed and growen, then is the cure to be taken in hand after an other manner, viz. at the first to vse preparatiues, and afterwards digestiues are to be vfed, as foloweth hereafter.

The rubbing of the lims downeward is very mete, for that it disperfeth and digesteth the moysture, and openeth the poyes: afterwards are these salues o: oyles following to be vfed; to lay plaisters vpon it, to couer the limbes with ffor, Molues, o: Cats furre, and to keepe them warme: o: if so be that one member alone be conuulled, it is to be wrapt about with warme clothes.

Suppling or mollifying Salue.

Take the Pulcilage of Fenegræke, and of Linsæde, of each halfe an ounce, fresh butter and suet, of each two ounces, and a little ware, and make a salue thereof.

Digestiue Salue.

This Salue is described befoze in the 13. S. viz. where it beginneth, Take Calmus, Lilly rootes &c. Of these two salues the patient is to vse at the first the mollifying oymment the first two dayes, and afterwards the other so long also, and so forth, now the one, and then the other, untill that the matter begin to anode.

Item, take a fat yong Cat, pluck off the skinne, and take out the entrayles, chop her small, and fill therewith a Gose, let her rost softly, gather the drippings, and preserue it well, for it is also good for the poulsey thzough cold. You haue befoze in the 13. S. one salue almost like vnto this, and also one other salue moze in the sayd discourse where it beginneth thus, Take Beuercod, &c.

Take *Euphorbium*, Cinnamom, Saffron, Frankincense, Beuercod, Bith, *Opopanacum*, the iuice of wild Rue, & dry Hyssop, of each halfe an ounce, Ware one ounce and a halfe, *Pieretrum*, *Amoniacum*, of each halfe a drag. Sallet oyle as much as is needefull for to make a salue, therewith are you to annoynt the whole body.

Take oyle of swæte Almonds six ounces, beaten Saffron one drag. and a halfe, good wine cuia 12. ounces, sethe them altogether in a tinne panne on a milde fier, untill the wine be consumed, and annoynt therewith the cramped limmes, this is a noble remedie.

Many kinds of sewets o: fats are very requisite for this, for to make salues thereof, viz. of Lions, Beares, Badgers, Hens, Goats, Capons, and such like, as shall be hereafter discoursed in the fift part, where we shall speake of the lame and extenuated members.

There are many moze common plaisters and salues god for this, which are to be found ready at all Apothecaries, as followeth hereafter. *Ceratum de Hyssopo*, *unguentum Arragon*, *Mastiaton*, *Emplastrum de Meliloto*, *Diachilon*, *Oxyroceum* dissolved with the oyle of Lillics, oyle of Tyles, oyle of ffores, of Beuercod, of Rue, and of blew floure de luce, and all other which be warme of nature. Of the things which are to be taken inwardly, Treacle, Bithridate, confected rootes of *Eringui*, and also *Mozmewood* wine are very god.

Of Bathing.

All Bathes which be by nature Allomy, o: Sulphurish, o: made artificially, are much commended. Also one may prepare a bath in this manner: take wilde and tame Rue, Juniper tops, *Mozmewood*, *Sothernewood*, Pennyroyall, Bay leaues, Cyppers rootes, Dragon blood, Squinant, of each one ℥. sethe them altogether in sufficient water for to bath therein, put the patient into it, and afterwards lay him in a bed, that he may sweate. In like manner is mete for this a dry bath; but one must not abide in it long, for auoyding of swooning: you may also vse the bath which is discovered befoze in the 13. S. Also gargarismes and neesings.

Of the Cramp through emptines and heate.

If this contagion assaile one not suddenly, but by little and little, as after an Ague, through great scowzing, vomiting, or through much bleeding, then it is very hard, and almost incurable, by reason that it is caused through emptines, to wit of *Exinanitione*, neuertheles necessarie meanes are not to be omitted.

First, Barly water is good for this patient, especially if there be Crabs or prepared wood-snayles decocted therewith, so that this drinke will almost wholly and thoroughly turne to nourishment.

Secondly, he may drinke well watered Wine, reare eggs, and Henbroth prepared as hereafter followeth: Take a Hen, chop her small, and put her in a Can, powre Rose water vpon it, and Wine, of each a good spoonfull, stop it tight that there can come no vapour out, and so put the Can into a Kettle of seething water, and take cleane away the fatnes. But if the patient be very weake, then take a Capon and rost him alittle, afterwards dip it with unsalted lard, beate him and presse out hard the iuice, temper it amongst the foresayd Henbroth, then will the same be the stronger.

It comforteth
table broth.

A better Broth.

Take a dyest Capon in wine, pouned and distilled in a glassed helme; that water strengtheneth much in extreme debilitie: temper also amongst it the yolke of an eg. Item, chop a Bullet, hang the peeces on threds in a great glasse or pot, stop it tight, and sethe it thre howers long in a kettle of water, and vse the liquoz that hath dropped out of it. If you will make it more cordiall, then lay therein ten or twelue peeces of gold. For this is also milke matres first womans milke; secondly Ases milke; thirdly Goates milke, as new as you can get it. If so be that there come a scowzing with it, then steale the milke with steale or flint stones.

The meat which he is to vse, and take whensoever there is an ague with it, ought to be Kids, Lambs, and Hens, wherein Spinage, Pallowes, BATES, Purcelane, Lettice, or such be decocted. Watered wine is also permitted, if there be no heate perceived.

For Stengthening.

Take Bullets or Kids flesh which is metely sodden seven ounces, chop it small; temper amongst it Cardamome, Cloues, Cucubes, Galingall, Ginger, Putnecs, Dragagant, and Gum, of each one drag. Pace, Saffron, of each two scrup. Sterch, Licorice, Cozans, pilled Almonds, Pine apple kernels, Sebestes, Pistacies, pilled Melon seede, Pompeon seede, Gourds and Colwumber seedes, white Poppie seede, Lettice seede, and Purcelane seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar pennets fower ounces; dissolue it in Buglosse water, with other Sugar as much as is needefull for to make a confection thereof.

Of Bathing.

For this disease is also commanded for to bathe in luke warme water. But to the ende it might be the more forcible, cooling herbes may be decocted therein; as water Lillies, Violet leaues, and Willow leaues. For this purpose also, bathing in milke is much commended. Item, at last shall the beginning of the sinewes be annointed with warme oyle of Violets, oyle of Pompeons, and such like, thereby to stay the erickation of them.

This salve following is also marueilous good: Take Hens and Ducks grease, and the marrow of Calues bones, of each halfe an ounce, the musilage of Fleawort, Dragagant, and Gum, of each thre drag. oyle of water Lillies, and Willowes, of each one ounce and a halfe, Ware as much as is needefull for a salve; annoint therewith all the backe bone. It is also good for all other members.

Crampe through wounding.

But if this Crampe or contraction of the sinewes do come through any wounds, then are the oyles of Cammomill, Dill, and flaxe tempered together, or each alone requisite & fit for it.

Item take wine lees, temper some beaten Allume amongst it: this is of a maruellous force and operation.

Take Linsæde, and fenegræke meale, pouldred Will sæde, Penbane rootes, and Annis sæds, of each a like quantitie: temper them with the foresaid oile, and lay it warme vpon it.

Here be also two experiments which euery one may proue: Take *Victorialis longa*, otherwife called *Allium Alpinum*, and weare it alwaies hanging about the necke: it should defend a body from the crampe. The second: Plucke off an Geles skin, and let it be dyessed like leather; when you be plagued with the crampe, then lay it vpon it; and when the skin is warme, then ceaseth the paine.

Of the hag or mare *Ephialte*, and *Incubus*. §.16.



Although that we haue reckoned among the five species of the palseie or Apoplexy, the falling sicknesse, *Epilepsia* to be the fourth; yet doth method first of all require, to write of this sicknesse, the which thzough vnbeleafe is with vs called the hag or mare, bicause that this *Incubus* is a messenger of a future falling sicknesse.

The vnbeleuers make thereof *Demonium insultans*, which is an vpsparting and pinching Dewill, the which we also in this countrie, as is said, make one another to beleue, that they be witches. But in truth it is none other but a naturall sicknesse, as hereafter shall more evidently appere.

The *Incubus* is thus described; *Incubus* is a sicknesse which vereth the bodie, whereby both motion and speech is taken away. It is more larger; *Ephialtes* is a sicknesse, when a body is in his first sleepe, lying on his backe, doth suppose and also beleue none other, but that some what creepeth vpwards from his feete vnto the brest, the which wryngeth, and vereth him there as it were a ghost, and so wholly hindzeth his breath and voice, that he cannot call for any helpe, yea it seemeth that it would murder him: therefore is otherwhiles heard of them, that be vered therewith, such a kinde of groining, that as soone as the veration or torment is past, that they awake with great feare and trembling.

And albeit that this disease of it selfe alone is troublesome ynough, neuertheless somewhat else is to be feared thereby, viz. the conuulsion or madnesse which is *Mania*, and (like as it is already said) the falling sicknesse *Epilepsia*, and especially of them which haue great head vaines; bicause that the bzaines (as the place of the vnderstanding) are thereby enfebled.

Now when as such accidents come, then is there no long delay to be looked for: therefore it is meete indede that there be aduice taken for it out of hand, and first of all to take good hæde, whether the sicke person haue a good colour. And if so be that also his vaines be full, then is the *Saphea* to be opened; secondly (if neede require) the *Cephalica*; thirdly, the vaine of the forehead, or vnder the tong. And if great heate of the time, or any thing else do hinder it, then let thereon two boring cups with picking, the one vpon the right bzaine of the leg towards the hæle, the other hard by the ham: but if it amend not thereby, then let two vpon the shoulders.

Also it is very needefull to obserue good order in eating and drincking, and to refraine from wine, swete things, and especially of all that engendzeth blood.

Some allow wine, yet that which is thin, white, cleere, and well watered, drunken soberly.

For his meate are all fowles good which haue abode in hillie countries, better than any fowerfooted beastes: yet of these, the wilde are alwaies better than the tame.

Item new laid eggs sodden reare, Capers, with *Oxymel* are good for him in the beginning of supper; he is to eschew fish, and especially sodden fish: he is to shun all fruit, except Raisons, Pingles, Pistacies, confected Peares, Quinces, and such like.

All herbes be also forbidden him, except fennell, Will, and Buglosse: but Rue, Sage, Parierom gentle, Hyssope, and Rosemarie are especial good for him, which are rather to be reckoned for medicine than for nourishment.

Furthermore, he is to refraine these things, as the Sunne, colde windes, the fire, the smoke, incontinencie, bathing, wearinesse, care, much veration, deepe speculation, and especially two howers after meate, all great noise, to looke from any height, to looke vpon whirling things, or that turne suddenly about, and all that shineth much, all strong saues, long sleepe, especially after none, much watching, and such like: but metely mowing after dinner is very good. Also

he must be rubbed otherwhiles from the shoulders to the brest, vntill beneath vpon the legs, with warme clothes.

And when that is done, then is the head to be kemmed and wel rubbed. Pionie rootes woꝛne about the necke, and smelling oftentimes vnto them, are also very good: 15. Pionie kernels pæled and dzunken in honied water, doe much hinder and let that the vapors which might obstruct the bzaines, should not ascend vpwards, and do also strengthen the bzaines.

Confected *Mirabolani Chebuli* taken euery moꝛning doth strengthen the head & the bzaines, and dzine away the mare. If the sicke bodie loke bleake in the face, then it is a signe of Melancholie. Therefore is he to vse the pills *Cochia* oftentimes, to the end he may be well purged. Further, he is no otherwise to order himselfe in eating and dzinking, than as is shewed in *Epilepsia*: foꝛ that *Incubus* is none other, than a small falling sicknesse, oꝛ *Epilepsia*.

This water following is very good foꝛ to purge: Take Hyssope two handfuls, Currans one ounce, seethe this together in a pint and a halfe of raine water vnto the halfe, take thereof thꝛe ounces of Oxytel, of Squills one ounce and a halfe, dzinke it euery moꝛning continuing the space of eight oꝛ ten daies, mixtely warme.

When the body is purged, then is the head also to be purged with this gargarisme ensuing: Take Hyssope, Currans, and Oxytel sodden together with water, and gargarise therewith. Pæsing is also behouefull, like as hath many times bene expessed.

In like manner may you carrie these little bals oꝛ pellets in the mouth. Take Penniroxall one ounce, senen fresh Figs, long Pepper one dzag. *Pieretrum* halfe a dzag. poune them all together, and make pellets oꝛ round bals of it. It is also marvellous good twise a weeke in the euening and moꝛning to take halfe a dzagme of Treacle oꝛ Spithivate, with thꝛe ounces of water wherein Pionie rootes are decocted.

If this disease be caused thꝛough great cold of the head, then it is to be annointed with the oyle of Costus, of Rue, oꝛ oyle of Bay: But if it be caused thꝛough ouercharging of the stomacke, then it is to be holpen with vomiting, clisters, and such like.

Foꝛ this is also to be sought to strengthen the hart and the bzaines, which is very conueniently done with this confectio following.

Take red Corall, Harts bones, Pearles, and burnt Silke, of each halfe a dzag. Galingale, Cardamome, Graynes, long Pepper, Cloues, Putnecs, cleansed Spittle, and Pionie kernels, of each one ounce and a halfe, Cinnamome one ounce, Pace, Saffron, of each one dzag. White Sugar 34. ounces, seethe it vnto a sirupe in Buglosse water, and make an Eleduarie of it. In the winter honie is to be vsed in stead of Sugar, whereof you are to take in the euening and moꝛning the quantitie of a great nut, and thereupon to dzinke a draught of water wherein Pionie rootes are decocted.

The confectio of *Diabamaron* and *Diambra* are also very mixte foꝛ this purpose.

Foꝛ a conclusion, if so be that these foresaid remedies bzought not health with them, then are they once againe to be vsed.

At the last cast oꝛ neede, there must be plaisters laid vpon the head, that corode the flesh and skin on the foꝛhead, wherein the scul is ioined together, which is to be made with Mustard seede oꝛ *Cantharides*, as is taught in this chapter in the second S. and in other places, oꝛ to open it by an actuell cauterie.

Of the falling sicknesse, called *Epilepsia*. S. 17.



¶ We name this sicknesse with sundrie names. And albeit that it be but one kinde of sicknesse; notwithstanding it seemeth by diuersitie of the names to haue some small difference. The Grecians do call it *Epilepsia*, the Latinists *Morbns Comitialis*, *Caducus*, *Herculeus*, and *Lunaticus*: the which we haue comprehended all vnder fouer kindes of Apoplexies, and taught also thereby, that this falling sicknesse (as also all other) is an infection of the bzaine.

This is a quicke and speedie distraction of the vnderstanding, whereby the partie is so spoiled and robbed of all his wits, powers, remembrance, and all the vse of his members, that he must suddenly and vnawares fall dōwne to the earth, some, and lie a certaine space without motion, seeth not, heareth not, neither seeth, and sometimes also doth foꝛcibly stir and cast himselfe

selfe about; when he cometh to himselfe againe, he knoweth nothing of it, what is happened vnto him, although there be some that knowe all that was done with or about them.

The causes of this sicknesse are diuers, for that it proceedeth of the sower humors of the bodie, and doth chiefly take his beginning of *Pblegma*, next of *Melancholia*, sometime of the blood, and seldome of *Cholera*. This is also increased by excessive eating, drunkennesse, all sauors of meats; and of all things which fume vp into the head, as Onions, Garlick, rawe fruites, and such like, that be of a cold and moist nature, wormes of the belly, whereof the venemous vapors ascend vpwards out of the stomacke towardes the head, putrifaction of the detained naturall seede, of obstructed termes in women, like as oftentimes also happeneth to women which haue first conceived, to sit long in the sunne with a full stomacke, to eate or smell to Bucks lyuers. Also thunder and lightening do hurt them, whereby they are wont quickly to fall, as also long and much sleepe, and all that increaseth *Pblegma*.

There hurteth them also, who are infected with this sicknesse, the south wynd, cold and moist countries, and the smell of these five things following, as Goates hoynes, which is so forcible, that they that suppose to be cleane rid of this sicknesse, receiuing the suet thereof, must immediately fall to the ground. Item *Galbanum*, *Myrrha*, *Benzuin*, and aboute all the herbe *Smallage*, like as it is found, that if hath caused one to fall onely through looking vpon it, therefore such persons must and are to be kept from them. Youth is also more subiect to this disease than age; but it is easier to be cured in yong persons than in old, like as shall be more at large taught hereafter.

The signes of one that hath the falling sicknesse, are these: if he fall suddenly to the earth, bendeth him, beateth or striketh from him, loseth his vnderstanding, and someth at the mouth, if thereby his vyne, nature, or excrements passe away; then it is a signe, that the sicknesse is the stronger.

Order of Diet.



It importeth as well yong as olde people in this sicknesse, like as in all other sicknesses, but for this sicknesse must regarde be had, especially of the age and youth, nature, custome, and habilitie of the patient.

In common falling sicknesses is first to be eschewed all colde moist and waterie places, in like sort also all meates cold of nature, all that bringeth with it slime, and obstructions, as dowe, milke, fish, Gourds, Lettice, Betes, Spinage, Purslaine, Cucumbers, and fat fleshy. Item all strong things, as Onions, Garlick, Scallions, Radishes, Colewortes, Mustard seede, all that is much salted, and all spices. Item fresh water, all strong wine, be it red or white, and chiefly swete, they are very hurtfull: like as is also to eate too much, and to swallow dowe meate vnchewed, and to eate againe before the former be digested, long sleepe, and principally to sleepe by day, he is vtterly to eschew.

But on the contrarie, all his meates are to be drying, as Putton, Partridges, Pheasants, all wood fowles, with some Pepper, Zeduarie, and Calingale prepared, and alwaies rather roasted than sodden: his drinke must be thin, clere, small red wine; but if the wine be somewhat strong, then it is to be tempered with the water of Buglosse, or the water wherein Betonie rootes are decocted. Great motion is not fit for him, but rather much rest.

The remedies which are to be vsed for this falling sicknesse are most of them here before (where we haue discoursed of the hag or mare) described, which according to the importance of the cause must be vsed for old folkes, which be burthened and troubled with this disease.

And because (like as before is discovered) the yong children by reason of their moisture, whereof they be full, are more subiect to this sicknesse; therefore we will first (as much as shall concerne that) describe these meanes, and remedies following.

Of the falling sicknesse in children.

With sucking children nothing is safer to be taken, than that the mother or nurse doe obserue a good order of diet, eate meate that is light of digestion, and that moderately warmeth, that she refraine man, and all that maketh grosse blood. And if she be conceived, then is the childe to sucke no more at any hand: before meate she is to moue and stir well,

well, and to drinke watred wine or small Beere: she is to refraine and leaue all fruits, and especially those that be colde and moist. In fine, she is not to gouerne her selfe otherwise than if she were herselfe infected with the falling sicknes.

When as the childe doth waxe stronger, and beginneth to feede on other meat, then it is to be gouerned according to the importance of his age, and of his sicknes, like as by this prescription (and other chapters written to this end) may be seene.

These are alwaies the remedies which by the auncient Physicians be commended for young childrens falling sicknes, and are found profitable.

Take water of Rue, Bay Lillies, of each a like quantity; giue a spoonfull thereof or more, according to the bignes of the childe, make peeces of Liles hot, lay chopt Rue thereon sprinkled with vineger; hold him that befoze his nose: the same is also good for ancient people.

Temper Conserue of Violetts in Endiue water, or Pyonie water; this is very good if there be any heate mixt amongst it.

Take thicke Almond milke, temper therein as much Sugar that it be as thicke as pap, wipe thereof in the childes mouth, it nourisheth well, bringeth sleepe with it, and defendeth the stomacke from all fowle stinking humors: the water of Chickweede is also verie requisite for this.

Others doe commend much for this, the water of Colubung: and if it cannot be had, then is the Colubung to be broken into faire water, and strained throught a cloth, and to giue thereof halfe an ounce at least.

Item, take the water of blacke Cherries, water of Tillet blossomes, of each a like quantitie; giue it in the time of sicknes, or when it is thought to be at hand.

The fish that is called *Mustella Flumiatilis*, or *Trinca*, called *Trisca* in latine, hath two small bones lying vpon the baines, which are to be dyled and powdred, and giuen to the childe. These are marueilous good: but these small bones are to be taken out of an vnsodden fish, for when they be sodden they haue lost their vertue.

It hapneth also, that children when they be full of worms do get the falling sicknes, which is very dangerous: against which you shall finde hereafter in the thurd part, where we shall discourse of the worms sundrie good aduises.

Take young Paggies out of the nest, distill water out of them, and giue to young children a spoonfull for the falling sicknes.

Another. Take three young Paggies that cannot flie, *Vngula Alcis* three drag. Harts hozne shauen one drag. and a halfe, distill them together, and vse them as befoze: it hath been often proued.

Item, take *Carduus Benedictus* water two ounces, Lauander water halfe an ounce, when you perceiue that the falling sicknes will assaile any body, whether they be young or old, then loke that you get a young hare, which sucketh still, take the mawe out of it, (hang it in the aire that the milke may drie in it) whereof giue to the sicke person one drag. or lesse (according to the importance) powdred with fresh water: for this are Pyonie kernels good, worne about the necke, and also the powder thereof taken, the roote sodden, and dronken thereof, and the powder strowed vpon the meate, is also very good.

A good Powder.

Take prepared Beeries one drag. red Corall halfe a drag. Spicleden one drag. and a halfe, prepared Amber two scrup. Harts bones one drag. Pyonie seede, and the rootes, of each halfe a drag. white Sugar one ounce, beaten golde fixe leaues: of this powder is euery weeke one drag. to be giuen with Betony water: Sometime also halfe a dragm or a dragms tempered with a little broth.

A Powder.

Take halfe a drag. of the skull of an executed man, prepared Beeries one drag. Harts hozne two scrup. Cozmentill, Seduarie, of each two scrup. Sugar candie one ounce and a halfe, fixe leaues of beaten gold; temper them all together, and giue it to the sicke body with Pyonie water and such like.

A Confection.

Fetch these things following at the Apothecaries: take *Diapionidum* at the Apothecaries three drag. *Pliris Arcoticon* one drag. *Diambra* halfe a drag. Cinamom one drag. and a halfe, Putnecs, Cucubes, of each two scrup. Ginger one drag. Sugar eight ounces, melt them in Piony water, and make a confection thereof.

All that is befoze witten of yong children, is also to be vsed foꝛ aged people, taking alwaies good heede, whether the sicknes be great oꝛ small, and also with that which followeth hereafter.

Yet more of the falling sicknes.

But if so be that the falling sicknes doth assaile young, full growne, oꝛ auncient people, then (besides all that is already discovered) this is one common and necessary rule, that euery one which is infected with this sicknes, keepe himselfe at home in rayny weather, in places which be warmed with fuming woꝝks and fire, and be also dry. The chamber is to be strowed with herbs, which are necessary foꝛ the falling Cull, as Rue, wild Time, Rosemary, of each halfe a lb. poune them, and make them in a bag three quarters long, at night lay it on both sides vnder the head.

If there be then any one infected with this sicknes, that perceiueth something to ascend oꝛ clime vp out of any member of the body towards the head, then must he, as soone as is possible, and befoze that he falleth oꝛ goeth beside himselfe, bind hard the place where he feleth it craeping vpwards, wꝝing hard the fingers, and rub the fete, set boring cups behinde on the neck, without picking, thereby to suppress the ascending vapors, and after wards (if it may be possible) foꝛ to let oꝛ minister vnto him this Clister following.

Take Swines Bzead, black Belleboꝛ, Centoꝝy, fresh white Daffodill, of each one drag. wild Saffron seide halfe an ounce, seethe this in a quart of water vntill the halfe. Take 13 ounces of this decoction, temper therein *Hiera Logodion* one ounce, oyle of *Euphorbium* 10 drag, *Salgemme* one drag. and a halfe, temper all these together, it is a very strong Clister foꝛ to draw the matter out of the head.

Set also great boring cups on the inside of the thighes, besides the buttocks, and rub well his armes and legs downeward.

Take the iuice of Swines bzead, the seide of Rue, the remnet of Hares maibes, of each one quarter of an ounce, stirre them together in a mortar, blow that into his nose thꝛough a Tullures quill: there haue bene befoze times meruayles wrought thereby.

There is also a great noyle to be made about the patient, to open his eyes, and hold great light befoze them: when he is come to rest againe, then is he to purge often with these pills *Cochia* (oꝛ some other,) but vsing alwayes befoze certaine Iuleps, thereby the moze easily to take away the humoꝛ. Whylest that he vseth these potions, he must presently vpon it, likewise also two hotwꝝes befoze meate take and vse the quantity of a Putneg of this conserue following.

Take *Visciacis* shaled, which haue bene steeped one night in Piony water three ounces, *Doronicum*, Harts bones, Burrage, and Buglosse flowers, Violets, Roles, of each one quarter of an ounce, red and white Behen, of each one drag. and a halfe, Basil, red Cozall, of each 2 drag. and a halfe, Jacint, Smaragda, Saphir, of each one scrup. Greynes, *Lignum Aloes*, of each two scrup. water Lillyes, and Juoꝝy, of each foure scrup. fine leanes of beaten Gould, *Muscus*, *Ambra*, of each fine greynes, Pong of Roles, Sirup of Citron pills, of each fine ounces, Sugar three ounces: you are to seethe the Sirup and Sugar in foure ounces of Buglosse water vntill the water be cleane consumed: bzeake the Puske and Amber in a little Lauander water, and temper all the rest amongst it. This may be also vsed whensoever he vseth not the other potions, and so foꝛth, now the one, and then the other.

It is also aduised to couer the place whence the diseale is caused with plaisters, which make blisters, and to let them lye so long vpon it, vntill the blisters be drawne full of water, and bzeake of themselves, and runne out; the which are not to be suffered to shut in ten dayes, to the end the moisture haue his full course, foꝛ this is one of the most pꝛincipall remedies that is meate foꝛ this maladye.

Plaisters

Plaisters which raise and drawe blisters.

Take Mustard seede, Pepper, and *Euphorbium* beaten small, of each one drag. Honie of *Anacardio*, as much as is needfull for a plaister: spread this vpon a cloth the bignes of a Doler, and lay it on the place where you desire.

But this ensuing is generally vsed: Take *Cantharides* (heads and wings broken off) one quarter of an ounce, Honie of *Anacardio*, and solwe dowe, of each one drag. Strong vineger as much as is needfull for to temper it together: lay this vpon it as is said, when the blister is full, open it with a needle with a thred in it, and leaue the thred behinde, that thereby the humidity may be let out. Item take blacke Sope, quicke Lime, of each one quarter of an ounce, mixe them to gither.

A stronger.

Take *Cantharides* prepared as befoze, quicke Lime, of each a like quantity, temper them with the iuice of Daffodils, some doe burne it with iron or gold.

When as these blisters haue run enough, they are to be healed with this salue: Take *Aristologie*, Ireos, Pyrrhe, frankincense, *Sarcocolla*, of each one drag. oile of Roses flower ounces, Ware as much as is needfull; make a salue thereof. For this also is aduised to set boring cups with small picking vpon the same place: And if the patient, befoze the sickness assailed him, were grieved with any kinde of vomiting, with griping and panting of the heart, and came thereby to fall: then is the vomiting or casting to be furthered by all manner of meanes.

Take blew flower de-luce rootes one ounce, *Aristology* halfe an ounce, Centozie, garden Pints, Wormewood, Rue, Sage, Hyssope, Polipody, Pallowes, Percurie, of each a ℥. Silver mountaine, Ameos, Will seede, wilde Rape seede, and Basill seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, beaten Pionie seede, and a little Bran: sethe these all together in a good deale of water: of this decoction you are to take fouretene ounces, temper therein one ounce & an halfe of honie, salt one quarter of an ounce, *Hiera Picra* thre quarters of an ounce, oyle of Rue two ounces, make a Clister thereof.

For to Purge.

Halfe an ounce or one ounce of *Hiera Picra* taken oftentimes, is verie conuenient. But it is better to vse first some preparatiue potions, which are thus to be composed.

Take blew flower de luce rootes, or Ireos, Pyonie rootes, fennell rootes, and *Aristology*, of each one ounce and a halfe, prepared Squills one ounce, garden Pints, and Wormewood, of each one handfull and a halfe, wilde Thyme, Pilscleden, wild and tame Sage, and Rue, of each one ℥. Annise, fennell seed, Pyonie seeds peeled, of each one ounce; Silver mountaine, Basill seede, of each halfe an ounce; Licorice, Raisons, and *Stechas*, of each one ounce; the iuice of *Fumitozie* (or the water) two ounces, clarified honie six ounces, Sugar nine ounces: sethe the herbes, seedes, and rootes all together: afterwards wring it out hard, and with the decoction, the Honie, & Sugar, make a clere sirup: giue therof to the patient the space of certain daies together one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, with anie of the waters mete for it. And because that the foresaid *Hiera* is gentle in purging, and this sicknesse doth require strong things; therefore take *Hiera Picra* two drag. and a halfe, prepared Coloquint, and *Bdellium*, of each halfe a scrup. Pasticke thre greins, make pils therof with the iuice of Wormewood, and giue the patient one drag. at night going to bed.

In like sorte when he goeth to bed, then is this salue following, the quantity of a Hempe seed, to be wiped at the least thrice a worke in the patients nose: Take Dre gall one quarter of an ounce, Starch halfe a drag. Pigella seede halfe a scrup. Pariozam gentle six greins, white Helboze fine greins, *Euphorbium* 3. greins; poune all reasonable small and temper it well together,

After Purging.

After purging is the sick person to vse a comfoztatiue, as hereafter followeth: Take prepared Pearles halfe a drag. Galingall and Cinnamom, of each two scrup. Seduarie halfe a scrup,

scrup. prepared Coziander, red Cozal of each one drag. Putmegs, Cloues, Cucubes, Coutche-
nell, Annise and Fennel, of each fiftene greines, yellow Saunders, and Pasticke, of each five
greines, *Diptamus*, *Miscleden*, pilled *Pyonie* seedes, of each two scrup. consecret Citron pills
halfe an ounce, Sugar Candie halfe an ounce, conserue of Roses, and of *Stechados*, of each thre
drag. but if the Conserue of *Stechas* cannot be had, take pounced *Stechas* one dragme, fire ounce
ces of Sugar decocted to a sirup in Rose water, and then temper the rest amongst it. In like
manner are other stomachicall things to be vsed: for which Pasticke is highly commended.

For strengthening of the stomacke is this shielde wzorne: Take Pasticke thre ounces,
Spikenard, *Roses*, *Frankincense*, of each one drag. stampe them all together, and make it to a
plaister with odoriferous wine, spzed vpon leather, and lay it vpon the stomacke: if it will not
cleaue fast, adde ware, and oyle of Pasticke as much as is needefull vnto it.

Another.

Take *Laudanum*, and Pasticke, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Frankincense* one quarter
of an ounce, *Galingall*, *Seduary*, and *Annise* seedes, of each one drag. and a halfe, *Roses*,
red and white Saunders, of each one drag. garden Pints, and *Bloodstone*, of each one
quarter of an ounce, *Turpentine* one ounce, melt the *Laudanum* in the *Turpentine* in a warme
moztar with a little of the iuice of *Mozmewood*, temper the rest beaten small amongst it, and
make a plaister or shielde of it: you shall haue moe of these shieldes for the stomacke in the third
part.

After the vse of the purgation, the patient is to take once a weeke at least, early in the mor-
ning, one drag of *Spithivate* tempered with Balme water, and thereupon to remaine lying
the space of fouer howers, and to sleepe if he can without vning anie thing els the same day.

A Bagge.

Take *Species Elecluarij de gemmis*, *Latificantis Almanforis*, of each one quarter of an ounce,
Pace one drag. *Pariorant*, *Indy Spica*, *Lignum Aloes*, and red *Stirax*, of each halfe a
drag. each stamped alone, make a silke bag and weare it on the left brest: when it is be-
sweat, then let it drie againe.

Here followeth yet many a good remedie.

Take *Pieretrum*, Pasticke, of each a like quantitie, temper them with molten Ware, and
make small bals or pellets thereof, of the bignes of a Hesel nut, chew them and spet out the
slime, kembe your head oftentimes, and annoynt it with oyle of Pasticke, and *Spikenard*: the
gargarismes which follow hereafter are very mete for this sickness. Take *Treos*, prepared
Squils, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Hyssope*, wilde *Thyme*, of each one *P. Pieretrum* one
quarter of an ounce, *Licebane*, Pasticke, of each one drag. white *Hellebor* one quarter of an
ounce, *Pyonie* seade pilled, and *Ginger*, of each five drag. *Raisins* (the stones taken out) two
ounces, *Wineger* halfe an ounce, clarified honie thre ounces: sethe all that is to be sodden, af-
terwards temper the *Wineger* and *Pyonie* amongst it.

Neeeing.

The Neeeing (like as it is oftentimes said already) is very speciall good thereby to purge the
braine. But for this sickness are *Pyony* rootes beaten commended aboue measure, and
blowen into the nose. If you temper this powder with the iuice of Rue, and drop it into
the nose, then will it be moze forcible, for the Rue hath a marvellous operation against the fal-
ling sickness, like as doth also *Spikenardus*: these foresaid things are also good beaten and sinelled
to the other, as this small bag following.

Take wilde Rue beaten halfe an ounce, *Siluer mountaine* one quarter of an ounce, red *Sti-
rar* one drag. and a halfe, *Pyonie* rootes five drag: temper them well together, and bind them in
a little bag or cloth and sinell vnto it.

Of things that may be hanged about the necke.

If this falling sicknes are somethings highly commended of all the famous Phisitians; to be hanged about the necke, and they alleadge thereto also certaine reasons and experiences, wherewith they doe proue and shewe, that they that weare them about the necke, doe not fall, and omitting it, their disease presently returneth. This is also no misbelief, like as the common people thinketh: but it is the smell of sauez, which doth most vehemently withstand this euill, and therefore is the same at no hand to be omitted. Some write also that the red Coral and the Emerald hath the same vertue, which experience must teach vs. This happily hath been (as hath been said) a cause of some superstition, as commonly it befalleth, that good things are abused: for euery one can tell, that the Gospel of Saint Iohn, peeces of the crosse, and other such like fantasticall reliques, also sentences of the holy Scripture, haue been used to bntwitch & blesse those that haue been sozspoken. It hath also been faithfully credited, that thereby great maruels might be wrought, if they were onely either spoken ouer the patient, or hanged about his necke, for the which this peece of Iugling might also be used, wherein it is counsell'd that a girdle be cut out of a Wolfes skin, euen from the head thereof to the verie taile, and so weare it about the bodie. But because it is not easie for euery man to catch a Wolfe, the same is also ascribed to the skin of an Asse. These things for the most part are accounted as gospel of olde dosing women: like as it is also with the gut of a Wolfe, that is of many women applied to the nauels of young children against the Collicke and gripings of the bellie: but these remedies following are of better estimation, and of a moze secret or hidden vertue, to wit: Bzionie wozne about the necke: also Thyme, Yslope, Rue, and Southerne wood wozne likewise in the bosome, for by reason of their smell they may haue some effect.

A Capitall Vnguent.

Take Marigold gentle, Rosemary flowers, of each halfe an ounce, *Lignum Aloes* one ounce, beate them together, and rub them well with strong wine in a mortar; temper one ounce of Barley meale, Starch two ounces amongst it, apply this to the head being shauen; it easeth the falling euill maruellously. Item, take oyle of Rue, oyle of Pepper, of each one ounce, sweete *Cosius* rootes, *Pieretrum*, Ginger, Galingall, Rue seeds, of each one drag. and a halfe: mire them altogether, and so apply them warme ouer both the shoulders. Item, take Beuerd cut small foure ounces, oyle of Oliues six ounces, Juniper berries beaten grossely three ounces, put a pint of strong wine vpon them, couer it well, and let it boyle awhile: with this is the patient to be annoynted in the hamnes, in the armpits, and on the pulses of his hands. Also it is very good in this infirmite to annoynt the forehead with the suet of a Stagge.

Indian Baulme is in like sort good for all kinde of falling euils, being annoynted on the roose of the mouth; and albeit that it cureth not the sicknes wholly, yet will it greatly hinder his returne.

Vngula Alcis.

It is a common erro: to weare a ring of this beastes hooe on his finger against the falling sicknes, I haue proued it oftentimes, but with no ease vnto the patient.

A Confection or Electuarie for the falling euill.

Take *Pieretrum*, *Cosius* rootes, *Stechas*, of each 10. drag. Agarick fine drag. Will seede, *Assafetida*, *Aristolagy*, of each two drag. and a halfe, iuice of Squills, clarified Hony, of each 14. ounces: boyle the iuice and the Hony with a gentle fier, vntill it waxe metely thick; afterwards, when it beginneth to cole, mire the other ingredience with it: take of this euery morning three drag. and fast foure howres after it. *Montegnana* taketh God to reco:rd, that he hath knowne a thousand cured thereby. This following is not much vnlike the former, take *Pieretrum*, Siluer mountayne, *Stechados*, of each 10. drag. Agarick fine drag. Cardamom, *Assafetida*, *Aristolagy*, of each one drag. and a halfe, iuice of Squills, and Hony twice as much

much as of all the rest, or as much as is needfull: let them boyle sufficiently, and temper the other things being powdered amongst them. The patient shall vse every day of this confection one quarter of an ounce, and beware of grosse meates.

These two Eiectuaries following are very good for all manner of falling euils, except that which is caused of blood: take prepared Pearles one drag. Cloues, Galingall, Putnegg, Cucubes, of each halfe a drag. Cinamom one scrup. Couchenely, *Lignum Aloes*, red Stirax of each halfe a scrup. red Saunders, *Calamus*, *Doronicum*, of each five graynes, Piony seeds pceled, Pistleto, Diptamer, of each one drag. Cozans one ounce, conserue of Roses, conserue of Stachados, conserue of Burrage, of each two drag. white Sugar clarified in Rose water 12 ounces, make a confection of them.

An other. Take Piony rootes one ounce, Pace, Indian Spike, Saffron, red Cozall, prepared Pearles, of each halfe a drag. Cinamom, Cloues, Putnegg, Ginger, Pepper, long Pepper, Cardamome, Craynes, of each two drag. Licorice fine drag. *Anacardium* one ounce and a halfe, Puske, Amber, of each 7. greynes, clarified Hony or Sugar 12 ounces, make an electuary of them: take of this the bignes of a Putnegg, and drinke a little Beade after it. It is very good against the falling sicknes, the Paulsey, and such like other infirmities moze: it comforteth the bzayne, maketh a good memory, and expelleth the lithargie, and all obliuiousnes.

One may vse either of these prescribed medicines, or this powder following, take, Cinamom, Cloues, Galingall, Putnegg, Pace, Cucubes, of each two drag. black, white and long Pepper, Cardamome, Annis seeds, Fennel seeds, pceled Piony seeds, Hyssop, Diptamer, Pistleto, of each one drag. Saffron two drag. Sugercandy fine drag. make a powder of them, keepe it in a lether sacke, and vse it in all thy meates.

Item, take the seeds of Spaiden haire halfe an ounce, Pistleto one ounce, Tormentill one ounce and a halfe, make them into powder and minister 2. drag. of it at once, with the decoction of Piony rootes when you feare the accesse of the disease. For this purpose serueth also white Pustled seeds prepared, conserue of Betony, the iuice, the water, the herbe, and the flowers: in fine, all that is made of Betony is very good for the falling sicknes of the head, and for all other infirmities of the same. So is also the conserue of Piony rootes, seeds, water, wine of Piony, and all what may be prepared thereof, as may evidently be seene by the former receipts: the preserved *Eryngii* rootes are also very profitablie vled therein.

In like sort also Lavender, Rosemary, Spikenard, their leaues, flowers, wine, and what so euer else is made of them: we haue also mentioned of the taking of Pithridate and Treacle likewise. *Guaiacum* is very commodiously vled for this infirmite. After due euacuation of the body, this is also much commended in the falling sicknes, take the iuice of Rue two ounces, *Assafetida* halfe a drag. mire them together, and so take them.

Item, take the skull of a sound man calcined or burnt, pilled Piony seeds, of each halfe an ounce, Tormentill, Pistleto, of each two drag. giue it to the patient as befoze: the same doth also burnt Harts hoze taken with wine, as also the liuer of a Bate, and dried blood of a Shepe, the bladder of a Boare with the bzine dried in an ouen, and every day the bignes of a beane taken with Oxymel. Item, Ravens eggs, Swallowes flesh, Wolls, Harts, Fore flesh, either boyled or otherwise, the blood and flesh of a Mesell tempered with the bzine of a manchild. Item, Bucks blood taken, the hofe of an Ass burnt and mixed with strong Vineger, and so annointed about the head.

The liuer of an Ass taken fasting, the gall of a Beare powdered, the fume of Peacocks dung or otherwise vled, Partridges liuers dried, and one drag. and a halfe dronken, the bzaines of Camels, or of Mesels vled with vineger, the bones of a man calcined, the blood of a Toise that liueth in fresh water, a Cuckow put into a pipkin close stopped, and burnt to ashes, the stones of a Boare, of a wild Boare, of a Ramme, and of a Beare dronken with water, the bzaines of Sparrowes, with many strange things moze that are highly commended of diuers famous Physicians, but aboue all other things is the reuning of a Leueret much commended, as hath bene sayd befoze. Cuery one may vse of the premises thos that he hath approued to be good: but if this falling euill (which very seldome befalleth) be caused of blood, then appeareth it with rednesse of the face, red eyes, & with large vaines. In this case is the *Sapha* to be opened, boring cups be set on the thighs, and legs, and on all other parts of the body. Thre ounces of oyle of Roses mixed with an ounce of Vineger, and other cooling things moze, are to be applied

to the head: also to beware of these meates, that fume into the head, and that ingender much blood, as hath been said, neither may the patient vse any Wine, sower fruites, as Citrons, Lemons, Meriuiue; Pomegranats may be measurably vse either rawe by themselves, or mixed with his drinke.

Of the friction.

The patient is to be rubbed downewards, to wit, from the necke to the very rump, from the brest to the legs, and from the thighes to the fete, the lower the better, with rough clothes warmed, thereby to draw the matter downewards: after that, he is to vse a reasonable motion, walking, and kembering of the head. Some counsell to rub the pulles with Strawberry water, and if all this will not helpe, then is an aduall Cautey to be used for the extremest and last remedy, whereof hath sufficiently been spoken before.

Of the Apoplexy or dead Paulsey. §. 18.

Euen as we haue generally spoken of this fearefull disease in the 9. §. this *Apoplexia* is the most vehement and last of all the former five infirmities, because it is moze hurtfull and perilous then all the rest; for it often befalleth, that these *Apoplectici* do not only lose their speech, senses, and memorie, but also all motion, naturall warmth and nourishment, yea remaine wholie dumme, which hapneth by reason that all the passages of the braines are obstructed, whereby the vitall spirits cannot be spread ouer the whole bodie, and because they are without sence, without feeling, and without all motion, do the Latinists call them *Attonitos*.

This *Apoplexia* is described after two manner of wayes, the one becaueth a man of all sence and feeling, and that otherwhiles so long, that the patient seemeth to be dead, wherefore it is also commaunded, that he should not be buried before the fourth day: and to be assured that there is no life moze to be expected, thou shalt hold a little fether at his mouth, which if it moue no: wag not, and that the body wareth stiffe, then is he departed. Likewise a glasse of water is to be set vpon his brest, and if the same be not stirred, then it is a sure signe of death.

The other palley is somewhat easier, it doth first infect the brest, whereby all the sinewes are constrained to moue immoderately, and to hinder respiration, and this is rightly called *Apoplexia*. Others do deuide it into three kinds, whereof the first is, when the patient doth drawe a little breath, but with great difficulty, as also when he someth, his breath is not heard, but his voyce a little, as if he were choked, and this is the worst and deadlyest palley.

The second hath a variable respiration or breathing, sometimes not perceived at all, and anon returning to his former course, without some at the mouth: this also is not without great danger, and albeit that it were cured, yet doth it turne to some other sickness.

The third kinde is, when the breath remaineth in due order. The causes of these sicknesses are superabundant humors either in the braine, or in the blood, ouercharging the stomacke with meate or drinke, ouerwatching, debilitie of the braines, drinking of cold water, cole winds, rayny weather, blowes, fals, vse of many cold meates, as frutes, fishes, lettice, ouermuch sleepe, carnall copulation presently after meales, long rest or quiet, binding in the body, ouermuch bleeding either by opening of a vaine, or otherwise. This disease is both very common, and very dangerous for old folks, especially if they haue kept an immoderate dyet before. The common and surest signes of it are these, to wit, if the patient be quickly snorting and not sleeping, be handled or pinched without sence or feeling. Likewise, the vehemencie, or debilitie of this disease may be discerned by the snorting: also it is to be taken for a most sure and infallible signe thereof, if he come at the mouth, and is by no meanes possible to be cured; so that all physicians herein agree, that nothing can be done but only to satisfie his friends, yet without all hope of recouerie.

But if the patient snort not hard, then is the apoplexie the lesse, and to be briebe, a strong apoplexie maketh quick dispatch of the patient, or else there ensueth a dead paulsey, which is much easlier cured: wherefore it is altogether needlesse to make any great discourse of this apoplexie, and the rather, because that all the remedies in seruing for cure of this sickness, are declared in the treatise of the falling euill, and of the paulsey.

Afterwards

Afterwards haere is also to be taken, whether the face waxe red, black, or greene, as it commonly befallerh if some part be tyed or bounden about hard: for this, are both the *Saphena* to be opened on the fete, and awhile after both the head vaines, afterwards in the forehead about the nose. This being done, the armes about the elboiues, and the legs beneath the knees are to be very strongly bound, that the blood might be drawne to the paines, yet (as it hath oftentimes been sayd befoze) not to let them be bounden too long without vntying them, and then afterwards tying them againe. Also you are to pinch the fingers of the patient very hard, and rub both his eares and his nose so roughly, that it might be painefull vnto him.

Some do counsell that the outward parts should be stroked downewards with wine, where in Treos or Calamus hath been decocted: also suppositoies, Clusters, and boring cups, and such like not to be omitted, nor yet the Application of *Oxyrodanum* to the head.

But if none of the foresaid signes do appeare in the patient, but only a little rattling in the throte when he breatheh, then it is an infallible signe of many watrissh humors, for the which this Cluster following is to be vsed. Take Centoie, wild and garden Sage, Rue, Southerne wood, Mariorum, white water Spints, of each halfe a lb. a little Bzand, and halfe a Coloquint tyed vp in a cloth, boyle them altogether in sufficient water. Take of this decoction 16. ounces, and mix with it *mel anacardium*, and oyle of *Costus*. of each one ounce and a halfe, *Sal gemma* one dzag. *Hiera Picra* 7. dzag. stirre them well together, this is very mete for the Apoplexie.

To draw the phlegme out of the head, shalt thou prouoke nesings with Elleboze, for the which this roote is very appropiate, or vse this following: Take white Elleboze, or nesing wort one dzag. Beuercod halfe a dzag. *Lignum Aloes* one scrup. beate them to powder, and blow it into the nose; and if he could abide vomiting, the vse thereof will not be vnprofitable for him, open his mouth and powze therein *Oxymel* of Squils with warme water, oyle of Roses, and of Lillies. Item, boyled Radishes, or hoze radishes in water. Also this vomiting may be prouoked by putting a feather into the throte: giue vnto him not much meate, and if it be possible, giue him nothing to drinke but Peade, and the next day let him drinke one dzag. or one dzag. and a halfe of the decoction of Annis seides.

Thou shalt call aloud and make a great noyse about this patient, also vse musicke, therby to awake him out of his deadly slepe: which if it will not help, then is he to be pulled, pinched, and very roughly to be handled.

It is also very mete, that this patient take euery day one dzag. more or lesse of the confecti on *Anacardina* with *Oxymel*, thereby to bring an ague accozding as the cause requireth, for it is very hot: wherefoze the learned dispute greatly whether an ague be a good or a bad signe in the Apoplexy.

Of outward applications.

Take Cammomill, Melilot, Penmiroyall, wilde Thyme, Marioram, Baulme, Marioram gentle, of each one lb. boile them in water, and bathe or foment the head therewith warme, stampe the herbes, put to them oyle of Rue, and of Lillies, of each one ounce and a halfe, and applye them warme to the head; if it be colde weather, then annoint the head with oiles that are warme of nature, and with the oyle of Daffodils, of Beuercod, of *Pierisum*, and such like: and not onely the head, but also the neck and the whole backe bone. Make this salve following. Take Calmus, bitter *Costus* rootes, of each halfe an ounce, Siluer mountaine, Basill seide, of each an ounce, oyle of Spikenard, of Cammomils, of Lillies, of each two ounces, white wine three ounces: melt all that is to be molten, and boile them together on a small fire of coles, vntill the wine be consumed, then mixe the oyle amongst it, and annoynt the whole head therewith, and the backe bone downewards to the very end thereof: And if this will not helpe, then shawe off all the haire on the head, and applye this plaister following, being spred on a peece of leather or a peece of suttian, and make it as big that the whole head may be couered therewith. Take *Galbanum*, *Sagapenum*, *Opopanaxum*, of each two dzag. Sulfer vise one dzag. and a half, Turpentine one ounce, melt and mixe them well together.

Now to finish this part of the bzaines, we must first remember two things briesly: first that it is most necessary for this patient altogether to forbear wine, and to drinke some small beere, or to continue with this Peade following, which is made of twelue quartes of water, and

and thre or fouer quartes of homie being well sodden and scummed. Concerning his meate hath sufficiently bene spoken befoze.

Secondly, if his speech be altogether or very much decayed, then is the water of Liraconsan- sie to be vsed, as it is described in the 5. S. befoze, and with it all manner of waters of life, which are specified in the eight part. Also Wormewood wine, Lauander wine, Spikenard wine, and the conserve of the same: but remember alwaies, that all other wines be streightly prohibited: wherefoze these ought also very circumspectly to be vsed.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the Mouth, and all that appertaineth vnto it.



After the description of the Braines, which are the vppermost inwarde member of the head, we will now speake of other partes, as of the Mouth and Lips. In the mouth, first is the pallet, the tong, the gums, the rose, the teeth, the almonds, with all the other adiacent partes; as the voice, which is made and brought forth with the lips, tong, teeth, and with other partes moze.

After them follow all manner of accidents that are incident vnto them. Now to speake of the whole mouth it is to be admired, as also all other partes that are created by God: for about all that it containeth, it is the onely meanes, wherby euery liuing thing receiueth foode for the whole bodie. Also by this the nostrils, the hart and lungs receiue aire, without which it is impossible to liue.

Thirdly, out of this proceedeth the voice and speeches, whereby one man vnderstandeth an other, and whereby a man is different from all other beasts, which haue nothing common with vs but onely the voice.

These things are manifold, as hereafter shall appere moze at large. Of the outward partes, to wit of the lips, hath bene spoken in the tenth Chapter: but befoze we come to this particular treatise, we will first of all shew all that belongeth vnto the mouth.

Of putrifactions and exulcerations in the Mouth. S. I.



These exulcerations or putrifactions of the mouth are of many sortes: one deepe, an other not: some perurulent; some coroding; virulent, as well in the tong as in the gums, consuming and spoiling them otherwhiles wholly. They procede of diuers causes, and amongst all other of these: to wit, if one scald his mouth with hot meats, or vse any thing which is hot by nature; likewise also hot vapors which ascend from the stomacke and vlcerate the mouth.

If these exulcerations be red, the face also red and inflamed, and especially about the place where the soze appereth; therby may be adiudged, that it procedes only of the blood: but if the colour in the face be yellowish, with heate and drythe in the mouth, rednesse in the eyes, of the throte, and with blisters in the mouth, without any great swelling, and that the patient cannot abide any hot thing in his mouth; then proceedeth it of Cholera: but if the vlcers be white, without great paine, without any great swelling of the lips and gums, and if the spittle be sal- tissh, then riseth the same of Phlegma. The melancholike humo? bzingeth hir owne signes with hir, to wit, obscurenesse, hardnesse, and blacknesse.

These infections are thus described: The putrifaction in the mouth is, when many blisters and vlcers are ingendred, which do arde the gums, tong, and throte painfully, running from one place to another, and so spoile the mouth.

Befoze thou take these exulcerations in hand, loke whether they be deepe eaten into the flesh or not, new or olde. If they be not big but fresh, and not ouerladen with much moisture: then vse these things following, which may suffice with some astringent and binding things admired, as to wash the mouth with Well water, Plantaine water, and Rose water, wherein the blossomes of Pomegranats and their pills, and also Gals haue bene decocted. Pou may also vse Rose water mixed with vineger.

Item, the decoction of fleawort seedes, or of dried Prunes, by it selfe, or tempered with vinegar. Item take raine water, boile therein the yelow seedes of the Roses, with Gals as much as you please, and wash the mouth therewith: or extinguisht stale made red hot in milke, and wash thy mouth often therewith. Item, take Gals one drag. Rose water six ounces, vinegar one ounce and a halfe, put them together. Or take Roses, burnt Iuorie, Coziander, Sumach, Lentils, Burstaine seedes, peeled Gourd seede, and Cucumber seedes, of each halfe an ounce, beate and mire them together; and lastly adde a little Camphere vnto them: Take of this powder halfe an ounce, Rose water, vinegar, of each two ounces, vse it as hath bene saide before: mire Well water with the iuice of Pomegranates or wine: likewise the decoction of Barley mired with Sugar, clenseth the mouth. The water of Sage healeth all exulcerations, if the mouth be renced oft therewith. Also in a hot cause are very good all fruits that are sower, cold & astringent, being chewed, as Pedlers, Pulberies, Choke peares, Quinces, Seruices, Framboies, and such like, especially if they be not ouer ripe. Also the iuice of Vine leaues, and sower and tart herbes may be vsed for gargarismes.

But if these gentle remedies would do no good, then purge the patient as the cause requireth, as before hath often bene shewed. But because this is for the most part caused through heate, he is to be purged with Cassia, sower Dates, or with the Electuarie of Roses, afterwards open the vaine vnder the tong, or those that appere on the inside of the lower lip, which is very com- modious for all hot infirmities of the lips.

If sucking children were troubled with it, then is the nurse to be fed with cooling things, for by the alteration of their milke they are easily restored to health againe: for this purpose is the oyle of Sulphur very good, as well in young children as ancient people, but there are many com- mon things that are altogether as good as that.

Item, take the yelow seedes of white Roses, blossomes of Pomegranates, Starch, burnt Iuorie, milke of Lentils, Burstaine seedes, Coziander, Sene huskes, of each a like much, and a little Camphere: make a powder of them, and rub the vlcer easily therewithall, or holde it in the mouth with vinegar of Roses, Rose water, and oile of Roses. Item, for this hot exulceration thou shalt take the water of Shepheards purse, of broad Plantaine, of Roses and of Burstaine, of each two ounces, the iuice of Pulberies, honie of Roses, of each one ounce, mire them well together, and gargarise with it often.

Item, take Gals, Pomegranate blossomes, & Cyppers nuts, of each one ounce, Roses, white Wyper, two drag. Acoyne cups halfe an ounce; beate them grossely, and boyle them in water, and wash thy mouth with it. When by these meanes the paine is somewhat abated, then mix fresh butter with honie of Roses, and annoynt the place therewith: this mayest thou well account one of the best remedies. Or stamp a sower Pomegranate with the pils, wring it out hard, and adde as much honie to the iuice; let them sethe together vntill it be thicke. If thou wilt haue it stronger, adde the third part of beaten Acoynes with it. The application of boring cups is also very mete and fit for it: and if the patient be full of blood, then is the head vaine to be opened.

But if the blisters be white, then is the patient to be purged with Diaturbith, or with these pils following: Take Spec. Hiera Picra two drag. Species medicaminis turbith, two drag. and a halfe, Coloquint halfe a drag. make pils thereof with wine, take of them one drag. or one drag. and a halfe at once. It is also very good to rub them with hony and salt; but these things following are moze in vse, and moze fit for this purpose: Take Allum one ounce, boile it in Plantaine water; you may also put Plantaine leaues vnto it, and wash the mouth often therewith. Take honie of Roses, warme water, and a little Allum, halfe as much vinegar as water, vse it as before, it is very good. Take Roses one ounce and a half, Plantaine one ounce, burnt Allum halfe a drag. Hirtle seedes halfe as much, Pomegranate blossoms and pils of each one scrup. let them sethe well together and vse it as the other. Item take one pinte of water, and a good peece of Ireos cut small, and asmuch Allum, honie of Roses two spoonfulls, let it boyle away two fingers breadth. In fine, whensoever Phlegma is cause of the bleers, then must drying and astringent remedies be vsed, Cyppers nuts, barks of the frankincense tre, frankincense and Galliche: and although one should mire these warme things with others that are cold and astringent, as Gals, Pomegranate pils, Roses, Hirtle seedes, and such like: yet is not that any error at all, but rather a helpe. Also of these things following may gargarismes be made, or little bals with

with the iuice of Beares, or Quinces to holde in the mouth.

There is in the seuenth chapter and fourth §. a water described for the eies, beginning, Take broade Plantaine water, with Verdigrease, and Dragons blood. This may you vse if the soze run much, and were very vncleane, for it dryeth and healeth much: Take Plantaine water, boyle therein grosse beaten Spittle seedes. This clenseth the sozes, and cureth them: Conserue of Roses held in the mouth long doth cleanse the same. *Oxyraton*, that is, wine, water, and vineger mixed together, is also very good.

If this erulceration of the mouth proceed of Melancholy, then shalt thou purge as folloiweth: Take Cozans one ounce, Burrage flowers, and of Buglosse, *Epithymus*, and Sene, of each one drag. boyle them in water wherein *Mirabolani Indi*, and *Chebuli*, of each halfe an ounce haue bin steeped and decocted, giue thre or fouer ounces therof in the morning. In like maner may you purge with *Hiera Ruffi*. you shall also vse a gargarisme made with Cozans & Annise seedes, and mixed with honie. Hereafter doe diuers good things ensue for the infirmities of the tongue, that are also very good for this present purpose.

Of the swollen Almonds. §. 2.



It chanceth also sometimes, that in these infirmities the Almonds or the pallet in the throte doe erulcerate: of this Pallet shall hereafter especiall mention be made. But for the tumor of the Almonds, and other erulcerations in the throte, are these remedies following ordained. Take a quarte of red wine, Roses thre ℥. pills of two Pomegranates, foure Oals grossely beaten, Licorice halfe an ounce, Cozans two drag. boyle them together vntill the fourth part be waisted: before thou doest adhibite this, wash thy mouth with a cloth dipped in wine, then vse it warme: if it be with any erulceration, then adde honie of Roses vnto it, and wash it euery day fve or seuen times.

Aqua Iohannis.

This water is very good and effectuell to gargarise withall, both in blisters and vlcers: Take Sulfer vife, red Spints, Allum, and Sugar, of each halfe an ounce, Pastick, Frankincense, of each two drag. *Pieretrum* halfe a drag. *Aqua vite* thre ounces; beate all what is to be beaten, and temper them together: Take Allum, Sugar, of each halfe an ounce, boyle them together in Plantaine water, mixe it with the iuice of Mulberries, wash the mouth therewith, it asswageth the swelling, dryeth and healeth. The same doth also the sirup of Spittle seedes, and of the iuice of spout shels that hereafter are described. In like maner also, Silke, and the iuice of Lettice, each by it selfe. If the throte be erulcerated within, then take Frankincense, *Sanderaca*, Pasticke, of each one drag. red Stirax halfe a dragme; beat them together, and receiue the fume thereof at the mouth often times: afterwards gargarise with Barley water and honie of Roses.

For all impediments, putrifactions, and erulcerations of the mouth, are thre diuers gargarismes prescribed and ordained: whereof some are specified hereafter, wherewith is also declared how that commendable iuice of Mulberries, honie of Roses, and moe other things, are to be prepared.

Of outward erulcerations, and contractions of the mouth, hath been spoken in the twelfth chapter, and §. 14.

Of a stinking mouth and breath. §. 3.



This infirmity proceedeth not onely from the mouth, but of many other accidents moe, which the learned comprehend in the number of eight: first, when the gums doe putrifie and stinke: secondly, bad and hollow teeth: thirdly, stinking humors that fall downe from the head into the pannicles of the mouth, and there make the spittle to stinke: fourthly, stinking fume of the stomacke: fifthly, the corruption of the Lights: sixthly, stinking matter & purulensie, as in *phibisi*: seuenthly, stopping in the nose, or some erulceration of the same, as in *Ozena*: eighthly, the corruption before mentioned of the mouth,

Of the foresaid infirmities haue diuers Authoꝝ sufficiently spoken, as also hereafter in many places shall appeare. Here we intreate only of the corruption of the mouth, in the which we may comprehend the thre last causes. And first of all, if this stench procede from the braine, and settle it selfe in the tunicles of the mouth, which most commonly commeth of heat, then is there present a great itch, heate, thirst, and drought. For this shalt thou open the head vaine, let boring cups in the neck, purge the head with *Pillula aurea*, or *Cochis*, wash thy mouth often with Plantaine water, or water of shepherds purse, receiue the vapoꝝ of decocted Pallowes or Lettice, and smell of Roses, Violets, waterlillies, Willow leaues, Saunders, or of Cammomill.

If it procede of cold, then vse some dayes together potions of *Oxymel Compositum*, or Drimell of Squils, purge with pill. *Cochis*, and Gargarise with this water following.

Take Treos, Cyppers rootes, Juniper berries, Pariozum gentle, field Pints, wild Time, garden Pints, all of them, or as many as you please, vse it often: you may also draw it by into the nose; you must beware of Fruites, Fishes, Beanes, all hard meates, and such as putrifie speedily in the stomacke.

If the corruption of the mouth do cause this stinking breath, then shall you gargarise very often with the decoction of Agrimony, and Blue leaues, adding as much Hony vnto it, as you thinke good. Item, take Vineger and ertinguish it in gold, made red whot a good many times, with Cloues decocted in it; wash the mouth with it, this taketh away the stench: also gold only held in the mouth is very good: so likewise doth chewed Treos. Take greene oken leaues, beate them to powder, and take of this one drag. euery day fasting with Wine, it taketh away the stench. In the 12. Chapter and first §. in the description of the memoꝛie you may finde a good poulder, which beginneth, Take Sene leaues, Seduary, &c. Item, take Cinamom, Cloues, Sage, Pariozum gentle, Baulme, Nutmegs, *Angelica* rootes, and such like odoriferous things, eate and chew them in thy mouth, spit them out, and take in fresh: they take away all bad sauiours and stenches.

Of what cause soeuer this infection procede, these simples following are very commodious for it, each by it selfe, to wit, Auence, Cyppers rootes, Frankincense, *Lignum Aloes*, Cinamom, Citron seeds, Kape seeds, Cloues, Pirrhe, *Blatta byzantina*, Mastick, Cardamom, *agnus Castus*, Spica, Squinanth, Citron leaues, Roses, Saunders, Campher, water Lillies, Rosewater, prepared Coziander, odoriferous apples, Quinces, Tozmentill rootes, and such like.

Take white Saunders, Roses, of each fine drag. red Saunders, Citron pills, Squinanth, *Gallia muscata*, of each two drag. make a powder or little bals thereof to hold in thy mouth.

A Gargarisme for all infections of the mouth. §.4.



Argarismes are commonly made for all infirmities of the mouth, thꝛoate, and lips, to cleanse, to heale, and to cure them, but because we haue described many such accidents, and haue promised to shew some gargarismes for them, which shall be done at this present. And for that in all gargarismes thre principall things are tempered, as the sirrup of Mulberies, hony of Roses, and the iuice of Nutshells, we will therefore first of all shew how they are to be prepared.

The Sirrup of Mulberies *Diamoron*.

This Sirrup is diuersly prepared. The common people take halfe Mulberies and halfe Blackberies, and boyle them like to a conserue. Of this do they giue in hote diseases to comfort: others take only the iuice of blacke Mulberies, wꝛinging them thꝛough a streyn, as sone as they are gathered, and so with Sugar make it to a Sirrup.

The Apothecaries prepare it thus: Take sixe ounces of the iuice of Mulberies, 12. ounces of the iuice of Blackberies, both the berries as yet being not full ripe, clarified Hony 11. ounces, swete Wine thre ounces; let them sathe together ouer a gentle fier, till it be reasonable thicke, and keepe it in a pot.

The fourth and best meanes. Take iuice of Mulberies, Blackberies, Framboys, and of Strawberies, of each foure ounces, clarified Hony eight ounces, boyle them with a mild fier till they wax reasonable thicke. But note (as already hath ben sayd) that the berries be not altogether

altogether ripe; and because the framboyes and Strawberries be ripe before the rest, their iuices are to be sodden with halfe as much Sugar, and so to be kept untill the rest be red. All these sirupes haue an especiall vertue to cure all infirmities of the mouth, to cleanse, to coole and to drie: for which cause also they are good to be vsed against the Squinancie, and all infections of the throte. But if thou wilt make it stronger, then temper Allume, Myrrhe, Saffron, and Veriuiue, of which thou wilt amongst it, according as the cause requireth.

Honie of Roses.

This honie of Roses is also made diuersly, but commonly as followeth: Take Roses that are not fully blowen, cut off the yelloiw tops, and to one pound of Roses put thre pound of honie, which hath bene clarified very well, and so place it in the sunne.

One that is stronger: Take Rose buds (as before) one pound, beate and boile them in a pinte and a halfe of raine water, wring it out hard, adde to the expressed liquoz fower ounces of the iuice of Roses, clarified hony two pound, boile them together till it be thicke ynough.

The third manner. Take clarified hony two pound and a halfe, iuice of Roses new made fower ounces, set them on the fire, and when it beginneth to boyle, mire one pound of chopped Rose leaues amongst it, let them boile till all the iuice be consumed: afterwarde strain it through a cloth, and keepe it close stopp'd; for the older it is, the better it is. This honie of Roses hath an easie astrigent vertue, it cooleth, and is very good in all sharpe rheumes that fall from the head into the mouth: it withstandeth all putrefactions, corruptions, and white exulcerations in the mouth: it expelleth all stinking humors of the stomacke, that are caused of the gall, if it be vsed in hot feuers; otherwise it doth cleanse the stomacke of all slimynesse, prouoketh sweate. That which is made with the iuice of Roses, loseth, and outwardly it clenseth all vlcers, stinking wounds, and such like. If any man had taken physicke, and would not willingly vomit it vp againe, he shall take a little of this honie of Roses after it.

There is yet another manner of making this honie of Roses. Take sixe ounces of drie Rose leaues, put 15 ounces of boyling water vpon them in a pot that may be close couered, let it infuse so eight howers, then wring it out hard, and take as many Roses more; make the liquoz boyling hot againe, put it on the Roses, and let it infuse as before; this reiterate thise and no more: afterwards weigh the liquoz, and to fixe ounces of it put thre ounces of honie; boyle and clarify it: this burdeth the bodie, and comforteth the stomacke.

The sirupe of Nut shels.

The Apothecaries do call this sirupe *Rob nucum*, and *Diacaridion*, which is thus prepared: Take the greene shels of Nuts, beate them and presse out their iuice: of this take one pound, clarified honie halfe a pound, boyle them to a sirupe. Some do take of the iuice and honie of each a like quantitie: this sirupe is very good for women and weake folkes troubled with hot rheumes that swell. You may adde other things vnto it, according as the accident requireth.

The gargarismes which are most mete for the mouth, the throte, and the adiacent partes are these: Take Rose water, Plantaine water, of each fower ounces, honie of Roses one ounce, sirupe of Pulberies halfe an ounce, burnt Allume one drag. white wine eight ounces, let them sethe together as long as you would do an eg, gargarise therewith warme, it drieth and cleanseth. Take Plantaine, Knot grasse, and Barly, of each one handfull, boyle them untill the Barly burst, strain it through a cloth, and adde to it honie of Roses, sirupe of Pulberies, of each halfe an ounce: vse it as aboue. Item, take Barly halfe a handfull, rootes of Buglosse as many, iuice of Quinces one drag. and a halfe, Violets, Currans, and Stauesacre, of each two drag. boile them in a good pynte of water, untill the Barly swell: this healeth, and alaieth the paine.

Take Pomegranate pils, broad and long Plantaine, of each one handfull, let them boyle together in a pynte and a halfe of water being strained, adde to it *Vnguenti Egyptiaci*, sirupe of Pulberies, and Nut shels, of each halfe an ounce, temper them all together: this drieth maruellously, and healeth all stinking exulcerations. But you may not swallow any of it downe, by reason of the Verdigrease which is in the salue.

In great heate of the mouth and throte, with a sharpe matter adioyned, which excoziateth

this place: Take water of Nightshade and Purslaine, of each three ounces, water of Borage and of Clorets, of each two ounces, seedes of fleawort halfe a drag. Quince kernels halfe a drag. Dragagant a drag. and a halfe, steepe it in Rose water, presse out the slime or musilage, and mixe them all together.

Take Plantaine water and wine, of each fower ounces, burnt Allume halfe a drag. honie of Roses, sirupe of Pulberies, of each one ounce, boile them a little, and gargarise often therewith: this is especiall good in all tumors of the throte, & also in the squinancie. There are many more such like gargarismes prescribed for many other diseases, as euery where may appere. There are also diuers Phisitions, which without any exception, vse in all gargarismes *Scrophularia*, and that not amisse; for it hath a wonderfull vertue.

Of the Pallet, and the falling downe thereof. §.5.



L is called by the Grecians *Epiglottis*, that is, the little tong, by the Latinists *Lingula*, *Vuula*, and by vs the pallet. It is also a very needfull part and member of the tong, it hath five seuerall partes: first, the two almonds, *Tonsilla*, that engender the spittle, and moisten the tong; and if they ware drie, then do they hinder the speech. Secondly, the *Aspera Arteria*, or *Trachea* and *Oesophagus*. Lastly the pallet it selfe. This is the onely instrument of the voice, whereby the same is fashioned, and for that cause it is placed in the middelt of the throte, because it should couer one part of the throte, and preserue the best, hart and lights, should direct the meate and drinke receiued, to the mouth of the stomacke. It befallerh often, that it hangeth downe, and so troubleth one very much, which he is not accustomed to haue before, as may be seene when the tong is pressed downe.

If this procede of heate, then is the pallet red, the vaines about the eyes swollen, the face red, and the spittle sweetish; all which are signes of ouermuch blood.

But if it be white, then it is caused of a colde rheume, which falleth into the mouth abundantly: the voice is hoarse, the face pale, the pallet white, and much longer than it ought to be.

Of the tumor and falling downe of the pallet through heate.

If the pallet be red, then is the whole backe bone from the very necke downewards, and both the armes to be rubbed with warme clothes, the legs are to be tied hard, and untied againe; afterwards boring cups are to be fastened on the thighes, against the fire; also if neede require, the head vaine may be opened vpon the right hand.

Item, a visicatorie vnguent shall be applied to the shoulders (which is diuersly described in the twelue Chapter and 16. §.) and so let it remaine thereon two howers long.

Item, take Roses, Gals, and Pomegranate pills, of each one drag. Allume one scruple, Salt halfe a scrup. make them into powder, and beare by the pallet with it. Or take Rose water and vineger mixt together, gargarise with it; or in the steede of Rose water, you may take Well water.

Water of Plantaine, and Nightshade is also very meete for the same, but it must not be taken downe.

Item, mixe the sirupe of Pulberies and a little vineger with water, and gargarise therewith.

Another. Take the yello w seedes of Roses, and a few Citron seedes, boyle them in Plantaine water, after wards mingle some honie and a little vineger with it.

This following is of no lesse vertue than the former: Take the sirupe of Put shels, one ounce and a halfe, the decoction of Sumach two ounces, temper them together, and vse it certaine daies continually: if you will haue it milder, then take Barly water in steede of the other, and mixe some Pomegranate wine with it.

Item, another that is stronger, and especially at the first: Take two ounces of Rose water, one ounce of red vineger, Acozne cups, *Hypocistis*, iuice of Sloes, calcined Plume Allume, of each one scrup. mingle them together for a gargarisme.

A Powder.

Take the green shels of Shells dried, beat them smal, and take a little sponesful of the powder; hold it to the pallet, & beare it vp therewith continually: this hath oftentimes bin approued. Another. Take Allume (that is called *Allumen Iamenum*) burne it, and vse it as before: or burne Salarmoniacke, and vse it as the other.

Note also, that all the powders may most conueniently be vsed, after that the patient hath gar garised: neuerthelesse they may be vsed when one thinketh good.

Of swelling, and falling downe of the Pallet through cold.

If the pallet be white, then take Cinnamome, Ginger, Pepper, *Pieretrum*, Pomegranate pils, Gals, and Roses, of each a like much, make them into powder, and hold it to the pallet as before.

Item, take long Pepper th;æ dzag. Ginger one dzag. and a halfe, *Album Gracum*, that is, a white Dogs turd (of a dog that eateth nought else but bones) one dzag. Allume fower scruples, *Sal gemma* halfe a dzag. vse it as all the rest: abho; not the dogs turde, for in this extremitie it hath a maruellous operation.

Item, take Sage, Mustard seede, of each one dzag. boyle them together in water, vntill there remaine about eight ounces, then adde one ounce of honie of Roses vnto it.

Take *Album Gracum* being well dried, fine Bolus, of each one dzag. Allume halfe a dzagme, Pepper and Salt, of each halfe a dzag. make them into powder, and vse it as aboue.

Take *Oxymel*, Mustard seede beaten, and vineger, of each a like quantitie, annoint the pallet therewith.

Item, haue off the haire that groweth on the suture of the skull called *Sagittalis*, apply a great boring cup vnto the bare place, and let it there remaine a whole hower long. This may you reiterate th;æ or fower times a day; it dzalweth the pallet vp againe.

What is to be done in the greatest extremitie.

If the patient haue long haire, then let a strong man take hold of it, and pull it vpward violently, vntill such time as one may perceiue that the skin is leuered or parted from the skull; then also doth the pallet ascend, bicause it is fast to the skin: it hath bene founde by experience, that it hath holpen immediately, and hath preserved the patient from choking.

But if this infirmitie be of long continuance, and that the pallet sameth to hang onely at a little skin, and the neather end of it is much swollen, then there can be no other meanes vsed (although one is loth to follow it) but by incision to take it away; afterwardes you are to vse this gargarisme following: Take the decoction of Treos, and Licorise, of each a like much, mingle as much honie with it as you please, and a little vineger.

Item, vineger and water wherein the blossoms of Pomegranate trees haue bene decocted.

The order of Diet.

In this infirmitie proceeding of cold, vse exalciatiue meates, dzinks, and habitations, beware of all manner of violent motions, anger, vexation of minde, feare, and such like. The confectiones *Diatrion*, *Pipereon*, *Diamoscu*, *Diambra*, and *Pithridate* are very commodious in this maladie: or else to gargarise with *Mina Citoniorum* and the water of Sloes.

Take beaten Cucubus halfe a dzag. make therof with the iuice of Roses or their water, two pils; they are very effectuell. These pils following do also hinder the falling of the rheume into the mouth. Take *Pill. Aleophangina* one dzag. Pastick, one scrup. make eight pils of them, take twaine after supper at each time.

Of the Toong. §.6.

The partes of the toong are flesh, muscles, baines, and sinewes combined together, spongiuous and soft; which member amongst all liuing creatures, or amongst them that haue a toong is most different, not onely by reason of hir forme, but rather by the voice: and

indeed it is no lesse, for by his wonderful motion (whereof there be three in general) both the thing maruels to passe.

First, by the manner of the words and speech, whereby we can declare whatsoever we conceive in minde, and make it known to another bodie. By this groweth wars and peace, friendship and enmitie, concord and discord: by this is both God and man praised and dispraised. In fine, by this is done both good and harme, as that merrie *Aesopus* saith in his fables, that the tongue is the best and worst pece of flesh.

The second is the taste, whereby it can discern which is bitter, which swete, solwer, tart, sharpe, colde, hot, or any such like: also it adiudgeth what is good or bad for the stomacke.

The third is the sense of feeling, whereby it perceiveth what is hard or soft, hot or colde, &c. Besides all this, it helpeth to holde the meate received betwene the teeth, that there it might be chewed, and thence conveyed into the stomacke. Also it serveth to gather the slime and moisture of the mouth together, and to spit it out, which by no meanes can be effected without it, as it evidently appereth in those that have a dead palsie, and cannot wag or moue their tongue.

This member is subiect to diuers and sundrie infirmities, as when the tongue is heauie and slowe, hard and immouable, hot and drie; for which cause it is especially infected of *Alcola*, which causeth it to swell, harden, and exulcerate, &c. whereof we purpose to speake hereafter.

Of the losse and vnperfectnes of tasting.

Amongst the before mentioned infirmities, this is also to be placed, that in the taste, as in the sight and hearing, oftentimes happeneth that it be quite and cleane decaied, so that there remaine not one whit of taste; otherwhiles also is the tasting onely diminished, as when one can perceiue some taste, yet not perfect and to the full. Also it is oftentimes quite spoyled, as when one taketh solwer for swete, &c. As it befalleth to them that haue the yellowe Jaundies, or to them that are troubled with a hot ague, wherein the patient adiudgeth all what he tasteth to be salt, bitter, swete, or without sauour, according to the quality of the disease.

The signes of the humors that causeth this infirmitie, are these: The blood yeldeth a swete taste. *Phlegma* also somewhat swetish, with much spittle, humiditie of the head, of the tongue, and of the whole body. *Cholera* causeth bitternes, saltnes, and giueth a salt fleume. If there be no taste at all, then is the mouth of the stomacke pestered with many bad and superfluous humors. If it proceede of melancholie, then is the taste tart, and astringent, of all that he taketh in to the mouth.

There may also very sure signes bee taken of the tongue: the which if it be white, then it is not onely a signe of colde, but also that the stomacke, head, and liuer are full of *Phlegma*: If it be red, then both it signifie that this maladie is caused of blood, and of hot rheumes: The yellownes is a signe that *Cholera* is cause of all: If it be of the colour of lead, and blackish, it sheweth Melancholy to be the cause of it, vnlesse it should proceede of some vnnaturall heate, as in hot fevers it commonly chanceth.

Now concerning the remedies for this lost, bad, or corrupted taste: If it come of a hot sickness or feuer, and the patient be full of blood, then is first the head baine, after the baine vnder the tongue to be opened, and a good diet to be kept, and all manner of cooling things to be vsed.

He is also to be purged with a potion of the sirup of Roses, of yellowe Spirabolans, or with these pills following.

Take of the *Species Hiera* one drag. and a halfe, Shales of yellowe Spirabolans three drag. *Diagridij* and *Annise* seedes, of each halfe a drag. temper them with sirup or the iuice of Roses, and giue a drag. of them at once, more or lesse, according to the ability of the patient. Or take 5. drag. of the Electuary, of the iuice of Roses, or some such like matter: afterwards is he to hold in his mouth vineger mixt with the iuice of Pomegranats: otherwhiles also the iuice of Lettice, of Purcelane, miscilage of Fleawort, and of Dragagant, made with Rose water, and held in the mouth a long time, sometimes Rosewater by it selfe vsed as before. These pills following are also to be made, and holden continually in the mouth: Take Roses, burnt Quozie, and Bay berries; of each a quarter of an ounce, piled Pelon seedes, Gourd seedes, Cowcumber seedes, Pompeon seedes, Lettice seedes, Purcelane seedes, Endine seedes, Dragagant, of each one drag.

make

make it into pills with the Diagagant dissolved; afterwards he is to gargarise with the iuice of Endiue, and of Nightshade, or with the decoction of Roses, Meruaine, and Pirtle seeds. Thou shalt rub his tongue with peeces of fresh Pelons or Gourds. All these things alter the bad sa- uor and taste of the mouth in a hot cause.

But if the losse of taste proceede of heate and brought with any humor with it, which may be perceived if the tongue be drie, red, and without any spittle; then are contrary things to be used for it, to wit, cold and moyst remedies.

Contrariwise, if it be caused by colde, then note if there be any affluence of humors with it, or not: if there be (as commonly it befallerh) any superabundant humors with it, and if the body be full of blood, then is purging and letting of blood (as opportunity serueth) to be used: if not, minister vnto him *Oxymel compositum*, or of Squills, with the decoction of Hyssope, Parietom, Sage, and Stechas: afterwards purge him with the pills *Cochia*.

A Gargarisme for the same.

TAke Hyssope, and Licorice, of each an ounce, twenty sappy Figs, Honie sixe ounces; boile them in water, and gargarise therewith, and holde it a good while in thy mouth. If there be no agues with it, vse this gargarisme: Take the iuice of Squills one ounce, Vineger twelue ounces, Well water and Honie, of each sixe ounces; let it boyle a while scumming it. If the patient doe abhorre euery thing, supposing them to taste very vnsauorie, then he is to be purged with an ounce of fresh Cassia, with *Oxymel*, and with the afore mentioned water.

For this purpose serue also sharpe meates, as Onions, Garlick, Leekes, Mustard seedes with vineger, iuice of Limons, iuice of Citrons mixt with other meates: also otherwhiles salt meates.

Of a heauie and slowe tongue.

THese infirmities are of two sorts; the one naturall, and the other accidentall, as when the tongue cannot pronounce the letters aright, but in pronouncing the vowels *A, E, I, O, V*, is no want in it, because that the tongue then neede not much to be stirred: also in the saying of *B, M, P, Q*, wherein the lips do the greatest labour. But in these letters following must the tongue be most of all used, to wit, in *C, D, G, H, L, N, R, S, T, X, Z*. In the naming of *F*, must the breath be blown out betwene the vpper teeth and the lower lip. If in any of these be any hinderance, then may the same be ascribed to the tongue, especially if the same be inueterated through a long custome, which after remaineth for ever incurable.

The other that proceedeth of outward causes, and lurketh in the sinewes of the tongue, may be cured by Phisicke.

Both these infirmities are caused of sower sundry occasions. The first of a colde matter, that lieth in the sinewes of the tongue, which is to be perceived, if they cannot pronounce perfectly the letters aboue shewed in the third row, and especially the *R*. Besides this also their sight and hearing decreaseth; or when one would speake hastily, and therewithall dribbleth against his will, the which is a messenger of the dead Palsey.

Secondly, it is also sometimes caused of hot agues: then can the patient not draw his tongue backward, and it waxeth blacke and rough.

Thirdly, this infirmity may proceede of the toughnes of the humor that stayeth the tongue, as if it were fastened vnderneath, and therefore could not be put forth by the patient.

Fourthly, it is otherwhiles caused of certain fleshy that groweth vnder the tongue, the which if the tongue be lifted vp apparantly may be seene.

The first which groweth of colde, and without an ague, is thus to be cured: to wit, that after the patient hath bene purged, he open also a vaine, and afterwards wash his tongue with this water following, but he is to take great heed he swallowe none of it downe. Take Sal- armoniack, Pepper, Ginger, white Mustard seedes, *Pieretrum*, Licibane, Borras, Salt, salt of Indie, Parietom, seedes of Pigella, Parietom gentle, of each one drag. boile them altogether in a quart of water vnto the halfe, and vse it as hath been said.

Item, boile *Pieretrum* in vineger, and gargarise therewith. Take also that these things doe not

not excoziate the thyoate, and make it rawe: for the *Pieretrum* is very strong, and therefore it is commaunded (as often hath been said) to tie it in a fine peece of cloth, and to chew it.

A Powder.

After the long continuance of this gargarisation, take *Salarmoniack*, *Pieretrum*, *Pepper*, and white Mustard seedes, of each a like much, make it into powder, and rub the tongue often with it: but childrens tongues may you rub onely with the powder of Sage, or wash it with *Oxymel*.

Item take honie of Roses two ounces, *Sal gemma* two drag. mixe them together, and rub the tongue often with it.

Also make this gargarisme following: Take Sage, Hyssop, *Calmus*, of each a like quantity, boyle them in water. Take *Costus* rootes that are swete, white Pepper, Ginger, Licibane, Rue seedes, of each one drag. *Pyretum* three drag. Graynes halfe a drag. Pastick dissolued in Vineger one ounce, temper them together, and make pills of it of the bignes of small pints. Take one of these in thy mouth otherwhiles and chew it, they are very mete to draw the phlegmatick matter out of the tongue which there hindereth the speech.

But of the bereauing of the speech by reason of the dead palsey haue I shewed before how the partie so troubled is to be purged and dealt withall; yet notwithstanding that, I will proceede in teaching all what might happen vnto the tongue.

If the same seeme to be caused of a cold and moyst matter, then is the tongue to be often rubbed with *Hiera Picra*, tempered with a little Staues akre, Mustard seede, and *Pyretum*, but this is very hote and bitter, so that the patient shall hardly be able to abide it: but this following is milder.

Take *Salarmoniack* and Ginger, of each a like much, temper them with the iuice of Squills and rub the tongue with it.

Item *Oxymel* of Squills, and water wherein one or moe of the former things haue bene decocted, is very commodious: but annoynt the necke and the hinder part of the head with oyle of Bayes, and of Beuercod, afterwards apply this plaister following vpon it, being spread on Leather.

Take Gumme three drag. *Stechas* and *Mariorum* gentle of each one drag. oyle of *Mariorum* gentle, and Wax as much as is needefull for a plaister.

Take Beuercod, wet it with the iuice of Sage, and make pills of it, and hold them in the mouth, or else take Nutmegs, Indian Puts, Cloues, *Pyretum*, *Alsa fetida*, of each one scrup. *Laudanum*, Dragagant, of each one drag. make them into pills with Wine, and hold them in the mouth. So also may you hold a peece of a Nutmeg in the mouth, and chew it. Treacle, Witheredate, and such like confections are commended in this infirmite. The patient must also speake much and plainely.

But if it come with the infection of any other sinewes, then it is to be cured by the meanes that are prescribed in the Palsey.

But if it proceede of an Ague, with a contracture of the tongue, then must you irrigate the patients neck and shoulders from on high with warme water, so that moysteneth and warmeth the same place and the tongue also: afterwards annoynt it with oyle of Olives.

How to moysten the tongue.

If then a great drythe of the tongue happen with it (as it commonly befallerh in hot feuers) then is the patient to hold in his mouth oyle of Roses or of Violets; but especially ought that to be obserued which hath been sayd before in the losse of the taste, where it beginneth thus, Afterwards he is to hold in his mouth &c.

For this vse serue also these things, to wit, preserved black Cherries, preserved Raspiles, and whatsoeuer else is made of them, preserved Peaches, Barberies and their sirrup, the preserved red Cherries, with their sirrup, and such like moe, sirrup of Pulberies, of Nutshales, conserve of Roses, conserve of water lillies, and many moze such like, as is shewed in hote diseases and pestilentiall feuers.

Diatragagantum frigidum is very good in this and in all other hote diseases whatsoeuer.

For this purpose serueth also Sugarcandy, the musilage of Fleawort, of Quince kernels, and to wash the mouth often with warme water, Vineger, and Rose water.

If there be any tumour with it, then vse the iulep of Violets and of Roses, dyed Wines, dyed Cherries, iuice of Licorice, sowre Dates, Hanna, or which of them you please: but if the tongue were fast somewhere, then it is to be loosed with some instrument, and afterwards to be strow the place with Ginger and Allome.

Lastly, if a pece of flesh should grow vnder the tongue, as if it were a frog, then doth the same proceede of a grosse and tough humour: when the tongue is lifted vp then may you see it very red, and it is otherwhiles little or big like vnto a little tongue. It is also sometimes round like a hassell nut, and bigger, whereby both the speech and eating is hindered. Here must the patient first be purged, let blood vnder the tongue, and obserue a good diet, as in any other impostume of the head, that might also proceede of fleume. Afterwards is the frog to be rubbed with Salarmoniack, Gals, *Salgemma*. or parched salt: or els you may prepare this for it. Take *Pieretrum*, Ginger, of each two drag. Salarmoniack, *Salgemma*. of each a drag. and a half, *Parierom*, Calmus, Ireos, Daffodils, *Passicke*, of each a drag. make a powder of them. Of this powder may you take one part, and with the white of an egge make it into *Trociscs*. and when thou wilt vse them, to dissolue them in *Aqua viua*, and so annoynt the frogge vnder the tongue with it.

With this water following may you also wash the mouth very often. Take *Parierom*, Spints, Pennyroyall, Pettie rootes, of each one ℥. *Pieretrum* two drag. boyle them together in a pinte and a halfe of water, till the third part remaine.

But if this malady do once inueterate and ware olde, then it is to be cured with those things that are described hereafter in bleeding of the gummes; amongst which this following is rehearsed: Take Sugar, Allum, Verdigreale, of each a like much, mixe them with hony, and rub it therewith.

Item, if this infirmity ware too big, then it is to be cut, taken away and healed, as all other sores of the mouth. Some doe counsell to burne it which is vncertaine in this place: but this is to be obserued, if this frog be hard and blacke, then it is doubtles the true Canker, which is altogether incurable.

For the *Alcola*, or hardnes and cliffes in the tongue.

This *Alcola* of the tongue proceedeth of the foresaid hot and drie causes, when the tongue wareth blacke, drie, hard and full of cliffes. For this must the patient first bee purged with this purgation following.

Take Kubarbe three drag. *Spica* halfe a drag. Squinant one scrup. of the decoction of fruites called at the Apothecaries *Decoction fructuum*, which shall hereafter be described, eightene ounces; let them infuse in this decoction a whole night, in the morning presse it out, take sower ounces of the Colature, sirup of Pomegranates one ounce, sirup of Limons halfe an ounce, temper them together, and so take it three mornings together.

If these potions haue not sufficiently purged (for they be very gentle) then take of these pills, *Cochia*, *Fauide*, *Aurea*, of each one scrup. and of them all one dragme; make seuen pills of it, Gargarise after the purging with warme Coates milke, and eat five or sixe Cherries after it.

And because wine is very hurtfull in such a heate, this water following shall bee very meete for it. Take halfe a handfull of Barley, thirtie drie Wines, Barberries, Cinnamon, of each halfe an ounce; boyle them in sower pintes of water vntill the fourth part be consumed. In like manner may you vse this potion for to cole: Take the iuice of Quinces one ounce and a halfe, *Rob de Berberis* halfe an ounce, water of Burcelane three ounces, temper them together.

For this purpose serueth also whatsoeuer hath been written in the first S. of the corruption of the mouth, but especially the gargarismes.

Of the tumour and swelling of the Toong.

This is caused of blood, or of flegme that falleth downe out of the head. It happeneth sometimes that the tong doth so swell, that it lieth befoze in the mouth, whereby the spetting and all other hir actions are hindered. In this you are to purge the head with the foze saide pills.

If it then procede of colde flegme, which is discerned, that the tong and face are alwaies white, and the mouth alwaies full of moisture, then is the tong to be rubbed so long with the iuice of Onions, of Citrons, sirupe of Raspes, or with sower Pomegranate wine, vntill all the spetle and slime be gone away: for these foresaid things do separate the matter.

Item, take Treos, white Mustard seede, *Pieretrum*, and such like, all of them, or each apart, boyle them, and vse it in the washing of the tong.

Item, boyle Dates, Raisons and Figs, of each a like much in swete wine.

This gargarisme is also good being bled oftentimes. Take Fenegrake, Raisons, Fennell seede, Lilly rootes, and Figs, of each halfe an ounce, boyle them together in a quart of water, vntill the third part be wasted, afterwards temper thre ounces of honie of Roses amongst it.

Item, take Squills and *Oxymel* thre ounces, mire them with the decoction of the Beuerdod. Or boyle Rue, Cypers rootes and Pepper together, or which you please, in vineger.

But if heate be cause of this tumor, that will be perceiued by the rednesse and swelling bp of the face and tong, without any spetle, and with swatenesse of the mouth: for this you shall presently open the head baine, then vnder the tong; for this asswageth the paine, and coleteth the blood.

If it be needefull, then purge with the *Electuarie de Succo Rosarum*, sirupe of Roses, or with *Cassia*: fasten boring cups in the necke, that the affluent matter might somewhat be withdrawen. Also the patient is to gargarise with sower and astringent remedies, as with the iuice or sirupe of Raspes and of Limons: the iuice of Lettice is also good for it, likewise the iuice or wine of Pomegranates.

Of the impostume of the Toong.

The tong doth otherwhiles impostumate through abundance of blood, which is knowen by the rednesse, the tumour, the swatenesse in the mouth, and by the puffing bp of the face with rednesse.

If it procede of *Cholera*, then it is perceiued by the great burning, vehement paine, and bitterness of the mouth.

Or if it be caused of flegme, that may be seene by the palenesse, by the small soze of paine, and much spetle, without any great swelling being spred ouer the whole tong.

When this infirmitie cometh of Melancholie, then groweth the tong hard, ash coloured, and with small paine.

But if it procede of heate, then purge the patient as hath bene shewed in the tumour of the tong and *Alcola*: and in the beginning make gargarismes of colde things, as of Gourds, Shepherds purse, Purslaine, Endiue, and especially of Lettice, Milke, Rose water, or the decoction of Roses, and rub the tong with a Peach, which is very profitable for this purpose. But if by these meanes it do nothing amend, then vse oftentimes honie, milke, and the decoction of Lilly rootes and Raisons, Fenegrake, and of Fennell seede.

For his meate he may vse Coleworts, Orage drest with oile of Almonds or of Oliues, Figs, Raisons, and Linseede chewed and spet out againe with the slime.

When this tumour or impostume is broken bp, then take any one of these things following, to wit, Butchers brome, Barberries, Myrtle seede, of each halfe an ounce, Agrimonie one handfull, boyle them in a pynte of water vntill the halfe, then adde Beade or honie vnto it two ounces, and gargarise therewith often. It preuenteth great harme that might insue. Olde wine is also very good, being held in the mouth, and spet out againe.

But if it procede of colde, then purge the patient with pills *Cochia*, or with the confection *Disturbib*, and make this gargarisme following for him. Take Fenegrake, Lilly rootes, & Fennell seedes,

sides, of each one ounce, ten Figs, Cozans one ounce and a halfe, Bay berries one ounce; boyle them in a sufficient quantity of water: let him hold this in his mouth, and wash his mouth with it very often. It easeth the paine and ripeneth all impostumes of the mouth and thyoate, especially if you ad hony vnto it.

This impostume is accounted the middlemost thing betwene the vlcers of the mouth and the Squinancie: for they doe agree together both in their causes and their remedies, as hath been shewed before in the first §.

Of the losse of speech.

But if of any of the foresaid causes the speech is hindered or taken away, and yet the voyce remaine, and that the patient could not utter his minde, then is he to take twice a weeke one drag, and a halfe of *Hiera logodon*, with the decoction of *Rosemarie*.

A Gargarisme.

Take a drag, of *Coloquint*, Parts tong two dragms, Ginger, Galingall, Costus rootes, Greines, of each halfe a drag. boyle them together in a pinte and a halfe of water euen to the halfe, wzing it out hard, and temper with it *Oymel* of Squills six ounces, and let it boyle a while longer: afterwards hold it warme in thy mouth, and wash thy mouth therewith. This will not deceiue thee.

Take *Pythridate* or Treacle two drag, water of Sage, of *Parierom* gentle, and *Rosemary*, of each three ounces, or which of them you can come by; wash thy mouth with it in the morning and at night, and spit it forth againe: and thus much for the tong.

Of the Gums and Mandibles. §.7.



It is sufficiently knowen that children are bozne with the Gums and Mandibles, whence first the teeth doe growe: wherefore it is first needfull to worke of the roote, and then of the tree. These Mandibles haue their scituation one nere to the other, called by the Latinists *Præsepilia*, that is, little mangers, for so in the old time were the mangers of the beastes wont to be parted. In them are the teeth fastened, with baines and sinewes at the bottome.

These Mandibles or Gums are subiect vnto many infirmities, as impostumes, putrefactions, corruptions, aquefactions, bleeding, increase and decrease of the Gums, the which are caused of the rheumes in the head, or els of vapors ascending out of the stomacke: of the which, and first of all of the impostume, now shall be spoken.

Of the impostumation of the Gums.

If with this impostumation be great paine admixed, so that the impostumated Gums be red, then it is caused of heate. In this case is the head to be purged with water wherein *Pannes* haue been decocted, and *Kubarbe* or *Panna* mixed with it, and afterwards to vse mild Clysters: also to open the head vaine, & to be let blood vnder the tong: lastly, to fasten boring cups to the shoulders, and to hold this following in the mouth a good while. Take honie of *Roses* one ounce and a halfe, Vineger halfe an ounce: when you spit it out you are to take in fresh againe. If then any other sores doe happen vnto them, they are to be opened with a fleame, and then to wash it thrice a day with water wherein *Allum*, *Pyrrhe*, or *Salt* is sodden.

Item take halfe a pinte of the water of Knotgrasse, *Allum* halfe an ounce; dissolve it in the water, wash the teeth and Gums with it: Afterwards take *Pomegranate* pills beaten, dippe a cloth in them, and rub them gently with it. In like manner you may also finde in the first §. those things that are very mete for this purpose, because both these infirmities doe procede of one cause.

Item wash the mouth often with Vineger, and *Allum* afterwards with the wine of *Pomegranates*, with a little *Allum* dissolved in it. Seeke the description of the sirup of *Pulberies* in the fourth §. before.

Item

Item rubbe thy gums in the mornings with the vnguent of Egypt, but swallowe none of it downe: & gargarise often with honie of Roses and sirup of Spulberries, of each a like much, mingled with the water of Plantaine.

For all impostumes and corruptions of the gums or teeth, which procure a stinking breath, and if there be much blood and moisture with it, then is the party to be purged according to his abilitie with yellow Spirabolans and sower Dates, then to open the vaine of the head, and to applie a great boring cup in the necke, to rub the gums untill they bleed, and to wash the mouth with this water following.

Take blossomes and pils of Pomegranates, Acozne cups, and Roses, of each halfe an ounce, Staues acre two drag. boile them very well together. This following is to be vsed for to heale and to drie it: Take Roses, Cipers nuts, Gals, and burnt Allum, of each a like much: boyle them together in Vineger and water, ad vnto this decoction as much honie as you please. After the vse of this Gargarisme strow this powder vpon the sores: Take burnt Allum two drag. blossomes of Pomegranates, plume Allum, Spittle sades, of each one drag. and a halfe, burnt Harts horne one drag. mire them well together. He is also often times to be purged with the foresaid capitall pils *Cochia*.

Of the bleeding of the Gums.

This may happen of some outward accident, as of blowes, fells, and such like, the which must be knowen of the patient. The inward causes are either heate or colde of a sharpe matter falling downe out of the head, corroding the gums and the sinewes of the teeth, and making them to impostumate: insomuch that if it once begin to inueterate, it some cha- ngeth into the Canker, whereby all the teeth fall out. But if this blood be thin and subtil, then are these sower things following to be put in practise. First, to take away the corrupted gums: Secondly, to mundifie & cleanse that which is infected: Thirdly, after mundification, to astringe or drawe together and heale them: Fourthly and lastly, to confirme and strengthen the gums and iawes, that the matter cannot haue recourse thither againe.

First there are manie kind of powders in such vehemencie vsed, that the venime Oypiment is added thereto: but my counsell is to omit it, and to vse this following instead thereof: Take rootes of Daffodils and Pomegranate pils of each a like much, make them into powder and rub thy gums therewith, and an hower after wash thy mouth with warme wine or vineger.

Secondly, you may make this decoction following: Take Oliue leaues one lb. and a halfe, *Pieretrum* halfe an ounce, Ginger, *Passicke*, Treos, of each one drag. Honie two ounces, boile them together in a pinte of water to the halfe, wash thy mouth therewith.

This following is very good for all infections of the gums and iawes. Take honie of Roses three ounces, warme water one ounce, dip a cloth in them and rub the gums with it, and an hower after wash thy mouth with Wine or water wherein dyed Roses haue bene decocted.

In like manner this following mundifieth very well: Take water of Cammomils one ounce, honie of Roses three drag. temper them together and wet the place infected with it: afterwards wash thy mouth with wine wherein dyed Roses haue ben decocted.

Thirdly, they are to be cured with this powder: Take Frankincense, Aloes, *Sarcocolla*, and Dragons blood, of each one dragme: beate them small, and strowe them on the gums.

Item, take *Laudanum*, *Passicke*, Frankincense, and Corall, of each a like much; make them into fine powder, and applie it to the place infected: it confirmeth, hardeneth and clenseth the gums and iawes: and when the soze is well mundified, then it doth also incarnate and ingender flesh.

Fourthly, this following is highly commended. Take Cipers leaues, or nuts, halfe an ounce, Well water a pinte, boyle it untill the halfe parte remaine, dip a cloth in it and applie it to the grieve: this doth not onely confirme and strengthen the gums, but defendeth them also from all bad rheumes.

Another.

Take blossomes of the Pomegranate tree, Allum, Roses, Hounds tong, Acozne cups, and Plantaine, of each a like quantitie, boyle them all in wine and wash thy mouth therewith: it

it strengthneth the gummes and tæth, and hindereth the blæding.

Item boyle Gals, Oliue leaues, Lentils, Spugwort, and Pomegranat pils, of each a like much in water, and wash thy mouth with it.

Another that is stronger.

Take *Pyretrum*, Lilly rootes, of each one drag. the outward rinde of Gals, and blossomes of the Pomegranat tre, of each two drag. beate them small, and rub thy gummes therewith. Take the same ingredience, but in greater quantity, boyle them in red Wine, and adde the fourth part of vineger vnto it; with this thou shalt wash thy mouth.

By all these former things is easily to be sene, that many remedies there be for the former infections of the tæth and gummes, which are also very good for all vlcers and corruption of the gummes.

Of the outward applications.

For both the former infirmities, and for all paine and griefes of the gummes, these things following are very good, which may be outwardly applied. Take Limesæde oyle, Cammomils beaten, Hollyhock rootes, meale of Fenegreek, Butter, of each halfe an ounce, oile of Dill or Cammomill foure ounces, this asswageth the paine, maturateth and digesteth.

Item Shepes woll vnwashed, wet it in the iuice of Roses, of Violets, or of Willow leaues: make a bagge the breadth of ones hand full of dyed Roses, decoct it in vineger and water, wring it out hard, and then apply it outwardly.

Take cold water only or vineger mixed with Rose water or wine of Pomegranats, and wash the mouth therewith.

Item, vse the iuice of cold hearbs, as of Nightshade, of the bigger and lesser Yousleke, of Plantaine, of Purslane, or which of them you can get.

For this purpose serueth also the wine wherein galls haue been decocted.

If then neither the paine nor blæding will cease, then is the same place to be opened with a Lancet, or Horseleaches to be fastned vnto it.

But if the gummes be not apt to blæde, not exulcerated nor painefull, nor the face any thing swollen, and that the patient be not well after meate, but when he hath eaten meates cold by nature, then may you easily gesse, that this infirmite proceedes of a cold phlegme. Wherefore euery such patient is to be purged with *Pill. Cochia*, *Hiera Picra*, evacuated with a little of the troiscises of Coloquint, or *Diaturbith*. Afterwards he is to wash his mouth with astringent decoctions, as of the blossomes and pils of Pomegranats, Akozne cups, Allume, Salt, iuice of Rue, and such like. Also for a change he may gargarise with the decoction of Figs, Fennel seedes, and seedes of Lillies.

The rootes of the blew Flower deluce prouoketh the gummes to blæde much, whereby the paine is asswaged. The decoction of Agrimonie tempered with Allume is approued to be very meete. Of this matter loke into the first §. where you shall finde many good remedies for this purpose.

Of the fistula in the gummes.

What a bad accident this fistula is shall be shewed in the fift part, for it appeareth in this place, as in all other places with salt and sharp desfluxions: you shall cure them with those remedies that haue bene described before in the infections of the tong, and putrifaction of the gummes, so that at this present time I purpose not to write much of it. Take Gals one ounce, Pyrethe half an ounce, make them into powder and strow it on the soze. Wash thy mouth often with vineger of Squills, or take Gals, Roses, Lentils, Akozne cups, Wedegar blossoms, and pils of Pomegranats, of each a like much, boyle them all in water, if it proceede of a hot cause: but if of a cold, then boyle them in wine.

If the fistula be deepe and the gums corroded, then take the blossomes of Pomegranates, plume Allum, of each a like quantitie, make them into powder, strowe it once in thre howers vpon the soze. For this serue also the blossomes of Pomegranates boyled in Wineger and Wine, and the mouth washt with the decoction. Amongst diuers other dentrifices this that followeth

loweth is the safest. Take calcined Allume, Plume Allume, blossomes and pills of Pomegranates, Ireos, *Pieretrum*, Sumach, Warberries, Gals, Acozne cups and Dragon blood, of each a like much, make a powder of them. This powder may also be tempered with vinegar and hony, and wash the mouth therewith, it is very good for all manner of epulcerations of the mouth.

When the fistula is mundified to the bottome, then are you to vse incarnatiues.

Others do commend the vse of actual and potentiall cauteries, but they are nothing commendable but at the last neede, and in the greatest extremitie.

Of the wasting away and consumption of the Gums.

Take Cinnamome one ounce, Frankincense, Roses, of each two drag. Dragon blood, this drag, bestrowe the gums therewith very often.

Take Pyrye, Pasticke, shels of Vine apples, Date stones, burnt Harts horne and Quozie, blossomes of Pomegranates, Roses, Dragon blood, of each a like much, vse it as before: it confirmeth the teeth.

Take Pease meale, make it into little cakes with honie, and drie them untill you can powder them againe, take of this two dragmes, Dragon blood, Frankincense, Pasticke, of each two drag. Aristologie and Ireos, of each one drag. rub the gums therewith.

Of the mollification of the Gums.

For this infirmite are all those remedies very meete, that shall be prescribed for the wagging or loosnesse of the teeth.

For a conclusion.

Although the gums were altogether corrupted and blacke, yea although all the teeth were lose, yet these remedies following haue done wonderfull much good. Take woyme eaten Gals, Sumach, Pyzle seedes, Acozne cups and Plantaine seede, of each one drag. white Vitrioll, Plume Allume, of each one dragm. and a halfe, yellow seedes of Roses, and refuse of Cloues, of each two drag. and a halfe, beate them all grossely, and let it boile in a sufficient quantitie of water: when it hath sodden a good while, then adde forty yong buds of the Bulbery tree, and so let them sate the untill the halfe part remaine. Wash thy mouth often with this decoction, afterwards you may strowe this powder following upon the gums: Take Pasticke, Sandarack, twice of Sloes, *Hippocystis*, of each one scrup. prepared Tutia one drag. white Vitrioll sower scrup. make them into powder.

Of the Teeth. §. 8.



An hath for the most part 32. teeth, although some there be that haue but 28. or 30. and they are differing in forme. First, there are sower above and as many beneath, that are sharpe and broad, therewith to cut and diuide the meate as it were with a knife, for the which cause they are called of the Latinists *Incisores*, they haue but one rote onely.

Afterwards there are of each side of the former sower moze above and below, which are broad above and thin below, and for that they are called by the Grecians and Latinists Dog teeth, because they be most like vnto the teeth of dogs: they haue but one long rote, and are made to bzeake that which the former haue as yet not sufficiently broken.

Thirdly, there are above and beneath on both sides commonly twenty teeth, albeit that some haue but sixteen, and others but fixe on each side, which are called in Latine *Molares*, that is, grinding or cheeke teeth. Their office is to grinde and chew whatsoever the former teeth haue not as yet sufficiently broken and chewed. Those that are in the vppermost mandible, are fastened vnto three rotes, the lowermost onely vnto two: although that sometimes it befalleth, that the two former of them haue three rotes.

The Philosophers do write, that the foremost teeth are engendred of a pure and superfluous moisture of the skull; the middlemost of a reasonable good humoz; and the very hindermost of a grosse humiditie of the foresaid skull.

The

The paines and griefes of the teeth are diuers, insomuch that amongst the Phisitions there are accounted twelue or thirtene kindes of them, of the which we shall speake hereafter. These infirmities haue all of them sundrie causes: to wit, outward and inward: which difference we purpose also to obserue.

Of the paine in the Teeth through outward causes.

This is caused through the continuall vse of sower and astringent things, as vnrripe fruits, through much picking of them with pins, & other stinking things that remaine in them, also through falls, blowes and thrusts, sharpe winde, too hot or too cold meates, but especially of those that be drest with honie, which causes must be knowne and inquired of the patient, thereby to order and gouerne himselfe.

Of the paine in the teeth through inward causes.

This kinde of toothache is of diuers sorts, and it hath also sundrie causes. First, if it proceed out of the head or braine, then is the patient not without some paine in the head: out of which there falleth continually great store of lime. If this paine be caused of the mandibles and teeth, that doth manifestly appere. But if one doubt which tooth might first haue provoked this paine, then let the patient bite somewhat betwene his teeth, first betwene two, then betwene two more, and so from tooth to tooth vntill you come to the tooth it selfe where the paine resteth. By this means also you may know whether the paine be in the sinewes or no, because the other teeth be nothing painfull. If it proceede from the stomacke, then is there paine felt in the same, after which doth ensue vomiting, and especially of a sower and stinking matter. If it be procured by the blood, then may it be knowne by the heate and rednesse. If of Cholera, then is the paine with pricking and shooting. That which cometh of Melancholie, is knowne by the great and hard swellings. Of Phlegma, by the whitenesse of the face, and by the small paine. If it be caused of many humors, then is the patient heauie headed, with much spittle in the mouth. The paine that proceedeth of drought is thereby discerned: if of windynesse, then shall you perceiue much beating and stirring with it. Wherefore of these inward meanes, to wit, of the sower humors may this impediment be caused. The teeth grow hollow and full of holes, they rot, the wormes do spoile them, and the sinewes are weakened, that at the last they fall away, and are so that they may easily be drawen out. How to preuent and remedie the same, shall be shewed hereafter.

How to procure Teeth in children without paine.

Not without reason are we to bethinke our selues how to ease the yong and tender babes of that paine and grieve, which they do suffer in breeding their teeth, especially if the paine continue long, as it often hath bene seene, that it hath continued three or fouer yeeres.

This is for the most part caused of the debilitie of their nature, or of wormes, which do consume the moisture, whereby the teeth should growe.

When this delay in teeth is caused through the debilitie and weaknesse of nature, then must the childe be fed with roasted birdes, bread dipped in brothes of flesh, and such like, according to the age of the childe. They haue also a great laske commonly with it, which must be staied. The mandibles where the teeth appere, are to be rubbed softly: and amongst all other remedies that may be inuented for this purpose, the braines of a Hare drest with the milke of a Bitch are the best. If you cannot get them, then take butter, oyle of Lillies, the fat of Hens or of other birdes, each by it selfe, or mixed all together.

And because that in these remedies following there be many sharpe ingredients, as Myrrour, Rasing wort, Coperas, Stanefacre, Southernwood, Penbane, Opium, and such like more (of which we will make mention but little) which are in no wise to be taken downe: wherefore here we will admonish and shew, how they ought in the greatest neede with the most safetie to be vsed.

First they are to be applied onely to the dolorous and painfull tooth, with a peece of Ware couered about, to the end it should touch but onely the place aggrieved. Otherwise they might

also harme the good and sound teeth. The patient must also holde his mouth open, and do tounge wards, that the spittle and slyme might runne out; neither are they to be applyed too hot or too colde.

If this paine procede of cold rheumes, as also of the vse of cold meats, then put the patient into a warme place, couer his head with warme clothes vntill he feele the warmth apparantly. Afterwards annoynt his head with the oile of Cammomils, of Kine, of Behen, of Beuer cob, and of Spica, or in place of them, with *Aqua vite* thre daies together. A hard yolke of an eg applyed to the tooth is also very good, and afterwards is the tooth to be washed with warme wine: Or take Vineger wherein *Pieretrum*, white Pints, and *Parierom* hath been decocted.

Item take *Pieretrum*, white Mustard seede, Pepper, Bozras, & Ginger, of each a like much, make a powder of them, and rub the teeth therewith, or strowe it on a little cotton, and apply it to the very rote of the tooth.

But before you vse any other kinde of remedie, take hede you purge the head very well, that you drawe not downe moe humors out of it vnto the teeth, the which may be effected through the pills or potions which euery where are sufficiently described. After purging you may vse any one of these things following: Take *Pasticke* one ounce, Sage a ℥. beate and boyle them in eight ounces of wine or vineger vntill the halfe remaine: wash thy mouth therewith.

Item take good white wine sixe ounces, temper halfe an ounce of *Sandaraca* with it, boyle them together vntill one quarter of it be wasted, & hold it in thy mouth warme, & if you adde one drag. of *Philonium Romanum*, then will it be so much the stronger. Or take of the foresaid *Philonium* two drag. red wine sower ounces, and hold it luke warme in thy mouth. Oals decocted in vineger are also very good for this purpose. In like manner Betony or Plantaine decocted in vineger or water, and vsed warme. Pellitozie of Spaine bound vp in a cloth and chewed in the mouth, draweth out much slime.

Take *Asa fetida*, and Frankincense, of each a like quantity, holde it on the painfull tooth. The decoction of Alehose is also very good for it. Likewise the consue of Gilliflowers, of Lianander, of Spikenard; Rosemary wine, Sage wine. Item take the rotes of Sperage, boyle them in water, and wash thy mouth often therewith. Others do commend Garlick, Ginger, Agrimonia, each by it selfe, or mixed together, and so applyed to the tooth. Also the water of *Parierom* gentle should be very good for this vse. In like sorte *℥. Tristrans* water which is described in the fifth chapter and §. 1.

Item take white and long Pepper, Cucubes, Sarisfrage, the barke of the Mulbery tre, Caper rotes, and rotes of Southernwood, of each a like much; boyle them according to the quality of the paine in water, wine, or vineger tempered together, or each by it selfe: it is very good, and confirmeth the gums.

Pepper, Pellitozy of Spaine, rotes of Diptamer, and Lice bane chewed together, or each by it selfe, are commonly very commodious for the toothache.

These remedies following are more cooling.

Take a little branch of a Cherrie tre, scrape off the outmost rinde, take the yelloe rinde and boyle it in wine, take of this decoction in thy mouth as warme as thou canst suffer it.

In like maner if the rheume fall into the teeth, then boyle Dken leaues in wine, and holde it often in the mouth: it draweth out the slime very well. The water that issueth out of a Lime being cut, is also very good for the toothache, if it be held in the mouth.

Yet more remedies that are approued.

Take eight ounces of wine, boyle in it halfe an ounce of *Esula*, wash thy teeth therewith thre times in a moneth: it preserveth the teeth from paine, but it is very violent and dangerous to be vsed: but this that followeth is safer and better.

Take Roses, and boyle them in milke, holde them a good while in thy mouth, and lay the leaues to thy teeth: Take Camfere the bignes of a Pease, boile it in two ounces of vineger, and hold it in thy mouth, it is very good for al maner of pain in the teeth. Item take of a Harts horne, to wit, that which hath been cast off in March, cut it into small pices & boyle it in Well water, take

take the decoction into thy mouth warme, repeate it thre or fouer times, and after the vse of it (as many men suppose) the paine should not returne againe: whosoever shall approue it and find it true, may commend and loue the experiment. Others do counsell to take of the skin of a Snake that hath been cast off by her one drag. & to boyle it in 3. ounces of vineger vnto the half, & to take it into the mouth: it should also be an approued remedy. Oyle of Roses luke warme only held in the mouth allwageth the paine. Boile a frog in water and vineger, vntill the flesh part from the bones, wash the teeth therewith. The iuice of Baxes dropped into the contrary eare of the paine, is also counselled of some men: likewise of Cichorie, of Daffodils, and of earth wormes.

But if this toothach proceede of a hot cause, then hold any of these things following warme in thy mouth, as the oyle of Willowe leaues, oyle of Poppy heads, and oyle of Roses (as hath bin said before). The iuice of Sorrel taketh the heat greatly. You may also annoynt the place with the iuice of Nightshade, of Purcelane, of Lettice, of Endiue. Item boyle the rootes of Pettles and Sage in wine. Venbane seede and *Opium* mixed with oyle of Roses, doe make the tooth insensible.

If Cholera be admired, then is the patient to be purged with the Eiectuary of *Succo Rosarum*, with Cassia, fouer Dates, or yellow Pirabolans.

If it be caused of ouermuch blood, then is the head vaine, the vaine in the lips, and that vnder the tong to be opened, or the gums made to bleede, and boxing cups to be applyed behind in the necke.

What els may be vsed for the paine in the teeth.

A Bone in the twelfth chapter and §. 1. haue I described a good powder, which beginneth, Take Sene leaues 1c. which is also very commodious for this purpose. Item take Myrre two drag. Frankincense halfe a drag. Galtick a drag. and a halfe, Cuttle bone, and red Corall, of each 15. greins, Argyle two drag. Classe small powdered fve drag. *Lignum Aloes*, Cinnamon, Cloues, *Sarcocolla*, of each halfe a drag. make them into powder: it confirmeth and whiteneth the teeth, and it cureth the sore gums being rubbed therewith.

Item take Bellitorie of Spaine, Licebane, of each a like much, beate them and temper them with a little white Ware, and couer the tooth therewith of all sides.

A wonderfull remedy: Take the liuer of a greene Cuet, and the fruit of Tamariske, rootes of wilde Cucumbers, and *Propolis*. which is taken out of the hole of the Bee-hiues, of each a like quantity. This may you vse for all manner of toothache either in washing with it, or applying it to the tooth, or in vsing it outwardly.

Of the outward applications.

P Arched Millet applyed vnto it is very good. Item take Hallowes, drie them in butter vntill they be soft, and so lay it outwardly vnto the payne. Item toaste a slice of bread vpon hot coales, and apply it to the cheeke where the paine is, and renewing it still being cold with another that is hot: doe this eight or ten times together: for when the paine is departing then it is most grieuous, wherefore leaue it not off.

But if the foresaid meanes doe not ease the paine, then make this composition. Take Benner cob, Pepper, Ginger, red Stozar, *Opium*. of each halfe a scrup. this being beaten, temper it with honie of Roses, and put the quantitie of a Hemp seede vnto the roote of thy tooth.

Item take *Opium* the bignes of an Hemp seede, warme it in thy hand vntill it be soft, and applye it to the painefull tooth, it allwageth the paine.

If you will forbear the *Opium*. then vse any of these iuyces following, to wit, iuice of Southernwood, of Venbane, of Poppey, or to vse the *Philonium Romanum*, as hath been before said: yet are you alwaies to ad vnto them a little Saffron, Cassia wood, or Cammonils, to mitigate their great cold. For this purpose serueth also Pithydate either inwardly or outwardly adhibited, for it is very good for all infirmities of the teeth.

It is also aduised that the patient abstaine from meate as long as is possible, & that he vse a drie bath to sweate, and metely exercise. But if the paine be not mitigated by all these meanes, then is the roote of the tooth to be seared with a hot iron, or to be drawen out altogether.

Of the toothache in the Poxe

Make the iuice of *Mozmewood* with the white of an eg, and applie it to the pain. For the same vse serueth the decoction *Guaiac.* holden in the mouth warme: and all those things that haue ben mentioned before.

Of hollow and rotten teeth.

The cause why these teeth waxe hollow and rotten, is some stinking matter adiacent vnto the tooth, the which doth putrifie the same. To pꛑuent this impediment, is the putrifaction to be taken away; which hath ben shewed before, and shall moꝛe largely be declared hereafter.

You shall in no wise omit to picke and cleanse your teeth after meales with a toothpicker, and afterwards to wash thy mouth with *Uline*. The remedies that hinder the putrifaction of the teeth are these, namely *Lycium*, *Frankincense*, *Pints*, *Spittle seedes*, *Spica*, *Gallia muscata*, *Cypres* rootes, *Hallick*, *Gals*, *Turpentine*, *Pepper*, *Campher*, and seedes of *Nigella*, if there be heate with it. This water following should also pꛑuent this putrifaction, or (if it were once entred) take it away, and alay the paine. Take of the middle rind of the *Gulbery* tree one ounce and a halfe, of the best *Ginger* one ounce, boyle them in strong vineger vnto the halfe, and wash thy mouth therewith in the morning.

Item, take the ashes of *Rosemary*, binde them in a cloth, and rub thy blacke and putrified teeth therewithall. Take *Aristology* beaten, temper it with *Hony*, and vse it as before. Take the water of wild thyme leaved grasse, mixe as much *Allume* and *Hony* vnto it as thou please, and wash thy rotten teeth with it.

Do take the inward part of gals, and as much *Pellitory* of *Spayne*, beate them to powder, and adde some *Stauesacre* vnto it, and lay somewhat of it on the rotten tooth.

Item, *Bozas* & *Stauesacre* decocted together, or each by it self. This remedie following is no lesse commended then any of the former. Take *Pellitory* of *Spayne* one drag. *Ammoniacum* and *Opium*, of each one drag. melt the gumme, and mixe the rest being beaten small with it: thrust some part of it into the hollow tooth, it taketh away the sence and feeling of the same.

Item, take pꛑared *Corrall*, blow it through a little quill into the hollownes of the tooth, it taketh away the paine, and pꛑuenteth the putrefaction of the tooth. All these things may be mixed with *Treacle*, and so vsed. We haue also shewed diuers and sundꝛy remedies before (in the 13. Chapter and the 1. S.) against the corruption of the mouth, which may also be vsed very well in this necessity. Wash thy mouth often with the decoction of *Roses*, *Pepp*, and a little *Pellitory* of *Spayne*.

Thou mayst also put a little of the spirit of wine into thy hollow tooth; also any of the waters of life that shall be described in the eight part of this booke. Some men do vse *Aqua fortis*, and it helpeth much, but you must deale very warily with it.

These stinking teeth are oftentimes the cause of a stinking breath. If the tooth be altogether corrupted, then is the only and best remedy to draw it out; otherwise must one wash the mouth alwayes after meales, with water sodden with *Sal Armoniac*. or otherwhiles with vineger, wherein hath bene decocted some *Pellitory* of *Spayne*, and *Stauesacre*. Vineger of *Squills* tempered therewith is also very good. After meales (as hath before bene admonished) is the hollownes of the tooth to be picked and cleansed of all superfluitie. If this paine pꛑeede of cold, then are you to thrust into thy hollow tooth a little pece of *Galingall*, of *Ginger*, of *Cloues*, of *Pepper*, *Frankincense*, or of *Spirr*. If it be caused of heate, then vse *Roses*, *Saunders*, *Campher*, and such like.

Of the wormes that are in the teeth.

It is euidently knowen, that if the paine be not ouermuch, but that there be felt a continual stirring and crawling in the tooth, that the same wax wont to pꛑeede of wormes: for if one wash his mouth with warme water, and hold the hollownes of the tooth vp towards the Sunne, then may the wormes apparantly be sene to stirre in them. For this, thou shalt take

Aloes

Does one drag. Spirrhe half a drag. make them into little pills with Wine, and thrust them into the hollow tooth. Item, boyle Coloquint in faire water, and wash thy mouth with it. Make a fomentation of Venbane seides, or (which is safer) of Onion seides, or of Garlick seides, then wash thy mouth with warme water, and spit it into cold water, then shalt thou see the wormes swimme in it.

Take Spirrhe, Aloes, and red Stozar, of each a like much, put a little of it into thy tooth where the wormes are. Or take *Calmus* bzused, boyle it in a little Wine, dip a little Cotton in it, and lay it ouer or in the hollow tooth.

In the greatest extremitie make a fume with *Opium*, *Beuercod*, and Onion seides, or with white Venbane seides or Mustard seides, receiue this fume through a tunnell into thy hollow tooth: but at one time take but the quantity of a barley corne to fumigate withall: and take heede the fume passe only into the hollownes of the tooth, although you should get a little pipe of purpose to put into thy hollow tooth, and to fit it vnto the tunnell. If all these meanes bring no ease, then let it be dzawen out, and bleede thzoughly.

Of grinding of the Teeth in children.

This commonly happeneth vnto children in their sleepe, through the debilitie of the muscles that stir and moue the iawes: this after a while leaueth them altogether. It may also be caused of wormes that are in the stomacke or intestines, but then their grinding of their teeth is not all after the same manner, they rub their noses, &c. Of which thou shalt haue further direction in the treatise of the wormes, where also shall be shewed how this is to be remedied. But if this infirmitie doe continue for some other cause, then it is commonly the messenger of the dead pallsie, contracture, or of some other affection of the lineues: for the which you are to vse those things, as are thought mete for euery such infirmitie. But for this it is especial good to annoint the chokes and the whole necke with *Vnguentum Martiatum*, or the oile of *Beuercod*, of *Spikenard*, of *Juniper*, of *Bates*, and such like.

Of the paine in the Teeth that commeth through the application or vse of colde things.

All manner of oyles that are warme by nature, applied to the tooth, or holden in the mouth, do ease this paine. Item, take Bayberries, Aristologie, and Allume, of each a like much, boyle them in a sufficient quantitie of wine, wash thy mouth with it warme. If thou wilt haue it stronger, adde *Hiera Picra* vnto it. The same operation hath old Treacle mixed with wine, and a good while after not to take any other moisture in the mouth.

Note also, that whatsoeuer is vled or applied to the teeth, may not be hot: for they are there by corrupted and spoiled.

Of the standing an edge of the Teeth.

This proceedeth either whiles of a sharpe and astringent slime or rheume, which falleth into the rotes of the teeth: or of some other sower matter that lieth in the stomacke, and sunieth by into the mouth and teeth, whereby the teeth are set an edge. But for the most part it is caused of sower and vnripe fruits, as of vnripe Grapes, Limons, *Kalpes*, *Cytia*, *Gloes* and such other: for this purpose serueth Parslaine with hir seide beaten together, and vineger put vpon it, bitter or swete Almonds, Licopice, and the iuice thereof, Salt water, milke of an Asse, to wash the mouth with the decoction of Aristologie and Bay leaves. These things may you mire together, vse or chew them as you please. To holde warme wine in the mouth is also very commodious. Or as soone as euer you do perceiue this infirmitie, then chew sixe of the graines of Pepper, and afterwards wash thy mouth with warme wine: this helpeth immediately.

This doth also oftentimes procede of colde, as hath bene before said. For when one wil cure the toothach with ouercolde things, then will thereby the small heate of them be ertinguished, so that they lose their sense and feeling. Now to cure the same, you must take some kinde of oyle that

that is warme by nature, as I haue shewed you before, and also bite the yolks of eggs hard red, or hot bread: to annoint the gums with the oyle of Spikenard, afterwards to hold warme wine in the mouth, wherin Cubebbs haue bene sodden. Lastly, to chew Pasticke in the mouth a great while, and then to wash it with warme wine.

How to confirme and fasten Teeth that be loose.

The cause of this loosenesse of the teeth may be blowes, chuffs, defluxions that fall out of the head into the teeth, that (as it were) resolute and slacken their sinewes, and loose their rootes. It may also procede of a great drought, as it happeneth vnto them that recouer of a long lingering disease: the corruption of the mouth and teeth may also cause the same. The signes of this loosenesse of the teeth may be discerned by beholding them diligently.

The cure of this infirmitie is comprehended in two principall points: to wit, in a good regiment of diet, and in the adhibition of good remedies. First, he must take heede not to bite harde vpon any thing, but to vse soft meates: also not to speake much, thereby to eschew the cold aire: also he is not to sleepe with an open mouth, neither are the teeth to be touched roughly either with the fingers or with the tong.

If this loosenesse of the teeth do come of blowes and such like, with an euident heate, then is he to vse the pills and blossomes of Pomegranates, Pedlars with their leaues and rindes, Seruices, Quinces, *Lycium*. Gals, Butchers bryome, burnt Juorie, Roses, Saunders, Ambers, Spirabolian stones, Date stones, red *Coffin* pills, *Hypocistis*, sealed earth, fine Sole, burnt Harts horne, Sea Muscles, and all that may be made and sodden with these things. But if it procede of cold, then vse *Laudanum*, Frankincense and hir barke, parched Cumine seeds, Crestles seeds, parched Annise seeds, Allume, Pitch, Pyrrhe, parched Salt, Cipres nuts and leaues, Pastick, *Sarcocolla*, *Sandaraca*, and all that may be made with it. Here now do follow some things that confirme and fasten the teeth, gums, and their sinewes.

Take garden Spints, fresh Olive leaues (if they may be had) of each an ounce, Roses, Pyrrhe seeds, Butchers bryome seeds, wood of the Barberrie tree, and the fruit of the same, of each halfe an ounce, beate, cut, and boile it in vnripe wine, and hold it in the mouth. Water of Nightshade, of Plantaine, and of Shepherds purse do fasten the teeth: and if in this water and vineger together you boyle the blossomes of Pomegranates and Pyrrhe seeds, then will it be the better.

In like manner you may boile Gals, Pedlars, Lentils and Seruices, of each halfe an ounce. For this purpose serue also Cypres nuts and leaues, Acozne cups, and Sene leaues, all together, or each by it selfe, decocted in wine, and vled as the former.

Item, take Allume, Frankincense, Pasticke, Cypres nuts, Rosemarie flowers, of each a like much, boyle them together in a sufficient quantitie of raine water and red wine, and wash the mouth with it very often warme. Item, take Harts horne, Salt and Pyrrhe, all of them burnt, of each two drag, boyle them in honie, and rub the gums therewith within and without.

Item, take burnt Allume halfe an ounce, Rose buds halfe a handfull, Bedegar, red wine one pynte, boyle them vnto the half, take of this being warme into the mouth often, and holde it a good while therein, for it is very good.

Another. Take Treos, Corall and Frankincense, of each halfe a drag. temper it with honie of Roses to a confection, annoint the teeth therewith, and in the morning wash them with wine wherein hath bene decocted Sage, Rosemarie and Roses, of each a like much. Item, take Allume, burnt Harts horne, Roses, Dragon blood, Acozne cups, *Hypocistis*, blossomes and pills of Pomegranates, Gals, of each a like quantitie, boyle them in strong red wine or in vineger, and wash the mouth therewith.

Vineger and *Oxymel* of Squills are also especiall good for this vse. To wash the mouth oftentimes with Rosemarie wine, confirmeth the gums, and fasteneth the teeth.

Of the falling out and drawing of the Teeth.

The last and extremest meanes for the toothach, is that the teeth might either fall of themselves, or be drawen out. To prevent the falling of them is vnpossible to many men, yet are these things following prescribed for it, amongst which this that followeth is very sharpe, and yet (for all that) very safe and good to be vled.

Take

Take the barke of a *Pulberrie tree*, *Caper rootes*, *Pyretum*, the bigger and the lesser *Efula* red *Oypiment*, rootes of *Coloquint*, of each two *drag.* put as much vineger on them as will couer them, let it so rest eight daies, and euery day put a little moze vineger vnto it, and vse it as hath bene said.

Open the gums round about the toth as much as is possible with some kinde of instrument, then rub them ten times in one day with the foresaid water; it maketh the toth loose, and separateth the roote. Item, open the gums as befoze, annoint it with oyle wherein *frogs* haue bene decocted: and when the toth is very loose, then take it out. You may also do as hereafter followeth: Take *Pellitorie* of *Spaine*, *Scammonie*, white *Pelleboz*, *Euphorbium*, of each one *drag.* beate and keepe it in vineger, open and loose the gums about the toth, and rub it often therewith; it is very forcible, and therefore to be the moze regarded.

Item, take *Pettle seedes*, rootes of the *Pulberrie tree*, and rootes of *Celandine*, of each a like quantity, boyle them in wine or vineger; this should haue the same operation with the former, and it is much safer.

Another. Open the gums, and lay bare the roote of the toth, and strow *Euphorbium* in it, this will doubtles loose the toth, that it may easily be taken out: afterwards wash thy mouth with the decoction of *Ppyrhe*, for thereby will the place or hole be drawen together, and all paine abated.

Take the *drags* or lees of strong vineger, and applie it to the toth many dayes together: afterwards drawe out the toth. But if it would not stirre, then rub the place with fresh butter or some other greafe of birds, and especially with the braynes of a *Hare* sodden, which haue a hidden vertue and operation for this purpose, as befoze hath been said.

This remedie following applyed to the toth, maketh the same to fall out without any pain. Dissolue two *drag.* of *Ammoniackum* in vineger, temper *Benbane seedes* beaten amongst it, and annoynt the toth and the roote thereof.

Item, take the iuice of *Efula* with meale, make a bowe of it, temper it well, and let it boyle a while, and applie it to the toth.

Of the double toth.

Wherwhiles two teeth grow vnnaturally one befoze the other, which is not onelie vnnaturally, but hindereth also very much; wherefoze it must be taken away with an instrument, and with applications. If you will take it away by application, then are you first to loose the gummes from it, and make a little ball of *Waxe*, and mire the iuice of *Efula* or of *Peese wort* with it. The same doth also the blood of a leaf frog. Or take the roote of a *Pulberrie tree* and *Pellitorie*, of each halfe an ounce, wet them in vineger, and drie them at the sun, vntill they be as thicke as *Honie*, then temper them with the foresaid iuice of *Efula*, and annoint the toth thrice a day with it, and it will easily fall out. The iuice of the rootes of *Pettles* mired equally with *Galbanum* should doe the same. In like manner also beaten *Fig leaues* applyed to the toth.

To make and to keepe the teeth cleane.

Take *Cattle bone*, white sea *Buscles*, *Spuma Maris*, *Allum*, *Aristologie*, parched *Barley*, *Sulfer bise*, *Cinnamon*, and long *Pepper*, of each a like much, temper it with *Honie*, and rub the teeth often therewith. Or take *Argoyle* two *drag.* beate it small and scarce it, wash it with good wine, rub the teeth once a day with it, and afterwards wash thy mouth in the winter with warme, and in summer with cold wine. This following is highly commended.

Take two *drag.* of *Date stones*, red *Cozall* prepared three *drag.* *Lupines*, and the rootes of the yellow flower de-luce of each 3. *drag.* beate all that is to be beaten, and afterwards make a confectiō of it with clarified *Honie*, which must be so hard that you may make small *Placents* or *Trociscs* of it, drie them in the shadow: when you will vse them, then dissolue one of them in wine or vineger, & wash thy teeth therewith euery morning, whe you haue first rubbed them well with a cloth; & keepe the moysture a good while in thy mouth. Item take burnt *Dister shels*, & *Sandaraca*, of each half an ounce, *Treos* two *drag.* *Aristologie*, *Gentian*, & *Centozy*, of each half

a drag. vse it as befoze. It is bitter, but it dyeth and cleneth much.

Take one drjop of the oyle of Nitriol, wet the teeth with it, and rub them afterwards with a course cloth: this taketh away all blacknes of the teeth, but it is very sharpe.

The same operation is ascribed vnto the oyle of *Sandaraca*. Take Allum and Salt, of each a like much, beate it small, distill it in a glasse Lembecke, and rub thy teeth therewith. These last thre things are very strong, and my counsell is to refraine them.

But if one would keepe his teeth cleane, then are not those things to be vsed that doe change the naturall white colour of the teeth into another hew. The causes are both outward and inward, as the long vse of tincting or colouring meates, and the continuall dressing of the same in brasse pots. There groweth also a hard substance to the teeth, which may be called Argyle. The inward causes may be a corrupted and soule stomack, which commonly doth colour them green, and especially when one hath oftentimes eaten many Loabestoles. The cure thereof is this: if it be caused of bad meates, then must the patient first of all be let blood. If the teeth be pestered with Argyle, then is the same to be taken or scraped off gently. And because this colouring of the teeth doth only procede of bad humors, they are therefore often to be rubbed with parched salt, afterwards with the dentifrices or powders that make white teeth, (which shall be described hereafter) and rub them therewith; and last of all with a peece of Scarlet dipped in Honie.

How to make the teeth white.

Take Venice glasse, mole it vpon a Marble stone vntill it be very small, ad vnto it white pibble stones burnt, in like sorte powdered, and Treos of each a like quantity, rubbe the teeth therewith. Item take burnt Date stones, red Cozall prepared, of each two drag. put them mired together into a peece of linnen cloth, steape it in wine, and rub the teeth with it: this maketh them white and strong.

Another: Take Pumice stone, Cuttle bone, and red Bricke, eg Shells, the white skin taken out of rhem, prepared red and white Cozall, of each halfe an ounce, Pellitorie of Spaine, burnt Allum, of each two drag. and a halfe, Treos two drag. *Sandaraca* thre drag. Bassick, Pyrrhe, of each halfe an ounce, make them into powder, and vse it for a dentifrice. Item take Pellitorie of Spaine, burnt Allum of each two drag. & a halfe, Dragons blood, blossomes of the Pomegranate tree of each halfe a drag. mire them together, and vse it as befoze. Some doe vse the Cuttle bone only, others only eg Shells, they are both very good and safe.

How to preferue the teeth from all accidents.

Many Physicians do write, that whosoever will preferue and keepe good teeth, he must obserue two things especially: first they do commaund not to vse Milke, Fish, Radishes, dry Figs, Dates, sodden Hony, and all other meates that be dressed therewith. Also to abstaine from sower and greene Apples and Peares, Punes, Seruices, Medlars, Limons and Garlick, all which by nature are hurtfull vnto the teeth. In like manner all things that are very hote or very cold, and especially the suddaine change of hote or cold meates.

A good dyet is also very commodious for this purpose; for vomiting (as befoze hath bene shewed) is very bad and hurtfull: also to bite on very hard things. The teeth are alwayes to be kept cleane, that nothing remaine betwene them and stinke.

The meanes whereby the teeth are preferred and kept good, are these, to wit, that you rub them often with the barke of Tamariske, with the pills of Pomegranats, with the rinde of an Ash tree, with blossoms of the Pomegranat trees, or with red blossoms of the Peach tree: they cleane the teeth and confirme the gummies. You may also temper white Sugar with Hony and rub the teeth therewith: in cold causes with the oyle of Behen, in hote causes with the oyle of Roses. Item take the powder of a burnt Hares head, rub the teeth and gummies therewith: or take Hony and Salt, and burne them to ashes: beaten Lupines are also very commendable, with any addition. Item beate Pyrrhe and plume Allume into powder, or temper burnt Allume with Vineger, and wash thy mouth with it: or else take burnt Harts horne, sedes or flowers of Tamariske, Cipres rotes, Roses, Spikenard, of each one scrup. Salt halfe a scrup. make it into powder and rub thy teeth with it. Pyrrhe sodden in Wine and the teeth washed therewith, fasteneth

fasteneth the tæth, and dyeth the superfluous humiditie of them. Chew Pasticke and rub the tæth and gummes with it, it maketh them cleane and strong.

The tæth also are alwayes to be kept cleane and pure, and not to pick them with an iron, but with a tothpicker made of *Lentiscus*, which is the tree whereof dyoppeth Pastick, which is much commended for the tæth: remember also to wash the tæth after euery meale.

The fourteenth Chapter.

Of the Voyce.



¶ We haue concluded before in the 13. Chapter the voyce to be the last part of portion of the mouth, which part is only proper vnto all those liuing creatures that haue lungs: for although fishes and some other beasts seeme to haue a voyce, yet it is nothing else but a noyse; for a true voyce proceedeth of an open breast. Also the voyces of all females are much lesse (except the Cow) then of males. But it is not our intent to speake of any other voyces, but only of the humane voyce.

Amongst all liuing creatures you shall hardly finde any thing more changeable and inconstant then the voyce. For behold a man or woman from childhood euen to old age, and you may easily perceiue the mutabilitie of it: and which is about all things to be admired, that those children which speake very timely or yong, begin to go very late. It is also no lesse meruaile, that this voyce being shut vp and included in something, can neuertheless be vnderstood. As for example, put a long Trunk to another bodys eare, speake in it what and as softly as you please, yet shall he perfectly vnderstand euery word of your saying. Likewise you may as well know one by the voyce as by sight: for it is most sure, that if you heare one speake and see him not, you shall as well know him by his voyce, as if you saw him and heard him not.

In like manner the voyce maketh great difference both in words and in names in diuers speeches ouer all the world. It breedeth great delight by abreviating, and extending by singing high or lowe, soft or alowd in musicke. And in this it exceedeth all other parts whatsoever, that it is the only meanes, whereby we may disclose and make known our hidden thoughts and secret concepts of minde vnto our friend; also there is nothing else in which we differ from brute beasts, but only in the voyce.

We will not speake of any weak voyces, which are caused of some long sickness: for we haue already written of them before in the thirteenth chapter. But we purpose only to treat of those things that doe corrupt or spoyle the voice: as of hoarsenes and such like.

If the voyce be decayed of a colde cause, then drinke halfe a drag. of beaten cubebes at your lying downe, sodden in three ounces of the decoction of Guaiac.

The common people thinke it a good experiment to steepe the Tongue in wine, and to drinke the same.

But the tabulates of *Diaireos* are especially commended, which are made as followeth: *Diaireos*. Take Ireos halfe an ounce, Benniroyall, Hyssope, Licorice, of each three drag. Dragagant, bitter Almonds, Pine apple kernels, Cinnamom, Ginger, Pepper, of each one drag. and a half, Figs, Dates, Currans, of each five scrup. red Syrrar three scrup. & a halfe; and for euery ounce of this powder, take twelue ounces of Sugar, cut the fruits small, beate all the rest and make tabulates, or an Electuary of them. This is called at the Apothecaries, *Diaireos Salomonis*.

Another: Take Ireos halfe an ounce, Sugar candie, and the aboue named spices without Sugar two dragmes, Sugar twelue ounces, boyle it in the water of Hyssope vntill it be thick, then make tabulates of it. Both these kindes of *Diaireos* are good for the cough, proceeding of a cold rheume, and for a whēsing breath.

Of Hoarsenes. §. I.

¶ This hoarsenes proceedeth of many and sundry causes, but especially of cold and sharp humors that fall out of the head into the throte, and there make it drie, whereof shall be spoken at large when we shall speake of the infirmities of the throte: we will now only

only shew what is convenient for the roughnes and hoarsenes of the same; for the which Sugarcandy holden in the mouth very often, is very commodious: also the confection *Diatragacanthum*, whereof there be two sorts, to wit, the hote and the cold, which may be made as hereafter followeth.

The cold Electuary of *Diatragacanthum*.

Take white Dragagant one ounce, gumme Arabeck fine drag. Starch 2. drag. Licorice, pceled Melon seedes, Gourd seedes, Cucumber and Pompeon seedes, of each one drag. Campher fine graynes, Sugar pennets one ounce and a halfe, beate them to powder. If thou wilt make tabulates of it, then take of this powder one ounce, of the best Sugar twelue ounces, boyle it in water of Violets as it becometh. This confection is also very good for all infections of the lights, and of the breast, which do procede of heate and drouth, and especially for them that are declining to a consumption, and them that haue a dry cough doth it much helpe.

The hote confection of *Diatragacanthum*.

Take Dragagant, Hyssop, of each two ounces, Pineapple kernels, swete Almonds, and Linseed, of each 3. drag. Fenegreake, Cinnamon of each two drag. iuice of Licorice, Ginger, of each one drag. make it into an electuary or confection as before. This is very good for them that haue a tough and stymy cough, and that cannot get by any thing; also for all them that haue a wheezing and short breath, and that are subiect to a consumption.

Take Quinbes, boyle them in water, steepe Cotton seedes in it, and hold them in thy mouth a long time: it hath a marvellous operation in all hoarsenes, drouth, and roughnes of the thyoate.

Amongst all other things that haue bene found good by experience, the tabulates of *Diatragacanthum* are much commended: wherefore euery night when you go to bed, shall you dissolve one of them in swete Wine, adding halfe a scrup. of Saffron vnto it, and drinke them altogether; this hath cured many men of an inueterate hoarsenes.

A good potion. Take five pintes of water, halfe a pinte of Hony, fire figges, one ounce of Coxrans, two drag. of Licorice, boyle one pinte of it away, and skumme it well, drinke euery morning fasting a good cupfull warme: you shall also temper or mixe your Wine with it. This potion is also very commodiously vled against the cough. Hony of Roses is also very good for all drouth and hoarsenes of the thyoate, for it moisteneth and easeth it. In like manner also the conferne of Roses, oyle of swete Almonds, sirupe of Violets, and Hony water, which commonly alayeth all roughnes of the thyoate.

But if this hoarsenes procede of a cold rheume, then is fennel seede very profitably vled, howsoeuer it be adhibited: but for this purpose are confected Cumine seedes, Carui and confected Almonds much better. Likewise whatsoeuer shall be wrytten hereafter in the second part of this booke for the cough, may also be vled in this infirmite.

How to make a cleare voyce. §. 2.



Pyons and Garlicke, as also the Hyssop wine, are much commended for to make a cleare and good voyce, also the tabulates called *Diaireos Nicolai*.

This electuary following is also much commended for this purpose. Take Cabbage seedes, Hyssope, Elecampane rootes, fole fote, rootes of the flower de luce, Horehound, of each halfe an ounce, Annis seedes, fennel seedes, Ameos, Cubebes, Aristology, of each one drag. and a halfe, *Oxymel compositum*, *Syrupus de prassio*, of each three ounces, Sugar pennets three drag. Pineapple kernels that haue bene infused in *Vins cuyt* two dayes four ounces, Saffron one drag. clarified Hony twelue ounces, temper it to a confection or electuarie. Take of this in the morning halfe an ounce, with two ounces of the decoction of Pettie rootes. If it be not too much trouble for you, take one halfe of it in the morning, and the other halfe at night, mixed with alittle Sugar. This may be vled for all harshnes and hoarsnes of the thyoate. The water may you alter or change according to the qualitie of the disease. And so we end the first part of this our booke.

The

The second part of this practise of
Phisicke, Containeth
The Brest.

The *Anatomici*, that by deuiding mans bodie into the outward and inward members, doe affirme, the second parte of the same to beginne in the vppermost parte next vnder the head; thence to extende it selfe downetowards vnto the *Epidrisse*, which is a skinne that parteth the heart & the lights from the bellie. This part maketh shew outwardlie of very few members; to wit, of the Neck, of the Brest, Ribs, Shoulders, and vpper parts of the backe: and containeth inwardly two of the principallest members, as the Heart and Lights: Of the which, and of the diseases of the same; and how they are to be holpen shall now be shewen.

The first Chapter.

Of the Necke.

Here is none other disease to be seene in the necke outwardly, then a swelling or Tumor, which is called *Bronchocle*. the which either cometh by nature, or else of some outward cause: The same chanceth also sometimes to swell inwardly, although that commonly depend and is caused of the first swelling.

Of *Bronchocle*. §. I.

If any man haue this Tumor in the throat by inheritance or discent from his parents, and naturally is borne with it, as commonly happeneth in *Wintsgato*, and in many places moe, whereof at this present shall not be spoken: for that all Physicians hereupon conclude, that they are altogether incurable. But that which is not naturall, which proceedeth commonly of flegmaticke or waterish humors; with the which otherwhiles winde is admixed (by ioyning both together) breedeth knots on the necke. For by experience it hath been found, that when these Tumors haue been opened by incision, that sometimes there is found nothing in them but water; therefore is the same called a watery *Bronchocle*. Sometimes there will be therein a thicke matter like *Honie*, and otherwhiles a tough ashy coloured slime, as it were knot or sniuell. Lastly, it hath also been seene, that there is but a little water in it, with much wind, which in opening (euen as other wind) is let out and flieth away. These Tumors are caused most of cold rawe *Positherne* windes, and of thicke slimie flegme, whereby all such flegmaticke defluxions are increased: also through continuall vse of grosse meats that augment *Phlegma*. When as such swellings appeare, then must you not delay & rest thereon, but seeke some remedie betimes, and not follow the counsell of such as doe say, that it will weare away of it selfe.

The order of Diet.

It is first needfull that he take hede of eating vneauenened bread: in like sorte of all yong sucking beastes, and that are fat and slimie, as Swines flesh, fish, and chiefly soe milke, and all that is drest therewith: also of most fruits, as Cherries, Peares, Apples, Haselnuts, and Pelons: also of cold and moyst herbes, as Botes, Spinage, Lettice, Endiue, Purcelane, Tieruice, and fresh butter. But contrarywise, warme and drie dwellings, situate in the East and South, are very good, and not much sleeping; for that increaseth much flegme: also quiet and idleness are hurtfull. Therefore are all such patients to endeavour themselves to goe and walke much

much, and to hold alwaies their head vp right. And if that cannot be done, let them be rubbed with hot clothes from their heads downe wards towards their face, untill the skin be red there with; and also both their face. Their heads shall be seldome washed, and then only with Ale and Sope after the driest manner, like as you may finde a good instruction thereof in the discoverie of the head ache. Their drinke shall be small white wine, that is old and of a good taste: the which must be delaid with decocted water: in their meates they must beware of all superfluitie, and arise from their meales with appetite: also they must chewe their meate well before they swallowe it.

So to the remedie of this Tumor: first you shall prepare the humor where by this swelling is caused, with *Oxymel* of Squills, which is acuated with Pepper and Pellitory of Spaine. This must be continued certaine daies fasting, taking two or three ounces mingled with wine. In like maner (if need require) open a vaine: afterwards vse this laxative powder following, where by the corruption may be drawn out of the head and out of the stomacke, the vaines strengthened, and all humors consumed that run towards the swelling. Take beaten *Hermada Chili*, Turbith, of each one drag. Ginger two scrup. *Diapridion* five greines, flowers of *Efula* half a drag. mingle them together: you are to give at once half a drag. of this powder or two scruples at the most, tempered with three ounces of Beade once every wake, and that early in the morning: where upon he must fast fower houres. And this shall he take continually a whole month together.

Prepare also this following, and it will consume the corruption and the wind, where by the Tumor is caused: Take Cammomill, Pellit, of each one ounce, Annis seedes, Rue, of each one ounce and a halfe, dried Gase and Pigeon dung, *Sal gemma*, of each two ounces, all beaten grossely. Of this compound take a handfull, and steape it eight houres long in sopers lie, and then let it sethe a little; make a sponge wet therein, and bind it warme on the grieve. Take one of these waters following, the which you can get best: to wit, water of Aristologie, of wild Cucumbers, and Rosemarie, make a sponge wet that will couer the same & the places about it, wring it out, and lay it warme thereon, and renew it often. You must also annoint the part infected, and the places about it with warming oyles, and then lay this plaister following.

Take of *Diaculum magnum* (called the *Apostolicon* plaister) *Ammoniacum*, of each a like quantitie, temper therewith Treos, and *Sal gemma*, both beaten as much as the other, spread therof upon leather: Three dragmes of *Oporanacum*, Litharge of silver, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, of each one drag. Myrrhe, Pistleden, Frankincense, of each one drag. and a halfe, Gips, Bolus, Aloe, of each halfe a drag. the Pusilage of Hollibocke halfe an ounce, Turpentine one ounce, or as much as is needfull: poune all that are to be pouned, dissolve the gums in vineger, and temper the powder therein, and then make it into a plaister with Claye. This is also good for *Bronchocoele*.

Diuers powders for the same.

The Hasell nuts, Sponges, Sea bals, writing paper burnt altogether, Cuttle bones, and seedes of Plantaine, of each halfe an ounce, Pepper, Ginger, *Sal gemma*, Pumice stones, Nutmegs, Gals, white & long Pepper, Cinnamon, black & white Helleboe, of each one quarter of an ounce; make them into powder, and give therof every morning halfe a drag. The Helleboe or Pelewoort is somewhat dangerous: therefore this following is safer. Take newe Sponges, and burne them in a luted pipken or pot, untill they may well be beaten, and give him thereof every morning with wine one drag. Another which is much used: Take cleane washt sponges fower ounces, burne them in a luted pot, with halfe an ounce of Sponge stones, Pumice stones, and Cuttle bones, of each one drag. red cloth burnt like to the sponges half an ounce, mingle them and vse them as before. Make also this Gargarisme: Take *Oxymel* of Squills one ounce, sirup of Calamint one quarter of an ounce, blew Treos, and Marierom gentle, of each two ounces, temper them all together, and therewith you are to gargarise morning and evening every other day. Let him smell to this that followeth: Take Rosemary flowers, Marierom gentle, and Spica, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Lignum Aloes* one drag. and a halfe, *Spice Ameos*, *Laudanum*, red Storax, of each one drag. Amber halfe a drag. poune each apart, & binde it vp in a peece of silke, and let him hold it alwaies in his hand for to smell to.

Capi.

Capitall powders.

Take Cucubus, Putmegs, *Lignum Aloes*, Rosemarie flowers, Swines bread, of each halfe a drag. *Sandaraca* one quarter of an ounce; poune them and temper them together: take euery euening five greines thereof, and strowe it on the top of the head. Or make a little bag five fingers long and three fingers broad, & lay it on the head. Take the herbe called Harts tong, beat it small, mingle it with eggs and meale, bake cakes thereof, and take alwayes therof before meales, especially one houre or more before none, about one quarter of an ounce.

If one haue something sticking in his throte. §.2.



If one haue a great bit of meate sticking in his throte, then are you to clap him behinde about and vnder his necke, that thereby the meate may be remoued either by vomiting it out, or swallowing it downe towards the stomacke. In like manner also, you are to giue him water oftentimes, or rather oyle of Roses to gargarise therewith, and let it downe: for it dilateth the throte, and maketh it slipperie, whereby the same bit will sinke downe the better. And this is also good for all Asymie things, as Raisons and Figs sod in Beade. Item take bread, chew it not too small, and swallowe it downe. Doe the like with figs; for they are very commodious for this purpose. Item, take a bit of hard sodden flesh, bind it on a strong thread, and slide it downe, and afterwards plucke it out againe: if the bone or any thing els that sticketh therein cannot be forced downewards, then with a spullet or other instrument draw it out. But if so be that all those things will not helpe, then may you vse a leaden pipe which is thorow out full of holes, somewhat smoothe without, and somewhat bent, which you may thrust into his throte to the neather part by force.

Take the Muscilage or slime of Linseed, Butter, prepared Cassia, oile of Almonds, of each a like much, lay them on the throte. The vomiting after meate is also found good for this intent, and is therefore to be moued.

When a horseleach taken in drinke remaineth sticking in the throte. §.3.



He shall perceiue this, not only by the place where the same was donken, but also by the byting and tickling in the throat, and by the clere blood that he auoideth, and by the wambling and vomiting. For this, you are to presse his tong downewards, and to looke into his mouth whether the Leach can be seene or not; if yea, to take it by the head with a mullet & drawe it out; if not, then must you make a gargarisme with Mustard seede & vineger, or with vineger & *Asa fetida*, or with vineger and salt, which you will, and gargarise therewith. Or you may blowe beaten Mustard seede, and Figella seede into his throte. Also you may gargarise with Vinions, or the decoction of Garlick. The ashes of our Ladies Whistle blown into the throte, is commended above all the rest. The roote of Gentian beaten, and all that is bitter. When as the Horseleach is fallen away, then sethe the blossomes of Pomegranates in water, and gargarise therewithall.

To stay the blood, take the blossomes of Pomegranates, Frankincense, *Sang. Draconis*, and Starch, of each one drag. blowe this powder into his throte. Item take the blossomes and pills of Pomegranates, Sumach, sedes, and *San. Draco*. boyle them in water and gargarise therewith. You may also blowe the foresaid things into the throte, or boyle them in Wine and drinke it.

Another. Take Garlick, Lupines, and Coloquint, of each one drag. With sedes half a drag. Mustard sedes one drag. and a half; boyle them all together in sixtene ounces of vineger till the fourth part be consumed: then dissolue three drag. of Salarmoniack in it, and gargarise therewith.

But if the Leache be gone downe into the stomacke, then are you to vse the same remedies that

that are prescribed against woymes, and there kill it: *¶* take meale of Lupins, Turbith, Stecha, Penniroyall, Gith, of each one quarter of an ounce, mire it with the iuice of Wormwood, & make troiskes of it, of the waight of a drag. of which dissolue one in three ounces of the decoction of Gith, and take it fasting. It is very forcible, but safer and easier things may be used for it.

Of the Squinancie or swelling in the throate. §.4.



This Squinancie haue the learned giuen many kindes of names, & that of the place in the throate where it appeareth, or according to the qualitie and nature of it: as *Angina*, *Cynanche*, or *Synanche*, which last name the Physicians haue altered, naming the same *Squinanchem*, or *Squinantiam*. And with all these names haue they meant but one sickness; to wit, a Tumor in the throate: euen as they call *Pleuritis*, the pleurisie.

They describe the Squinancie thus: *Angina* is a strong perillous sickness, that ariseth about the throate, in the month, and about the throate boll, and very quickly stoppeth the breath. *¶* *Angina* is a slegmaticke desfluxion, that sinketh into the outward part of the throate, and there swelleth so that all the inward parts of the throate are thereby shut vp, and the breath hindered.

The causes are diuers: for it is ingendred aswell through great heat, as through great cold, and also through sharpe potherne windes; but especially when the same bloweth presently after a South winde. Likewise also if one sit bare headed in the Sunne shine a long time. But this sickness doth chiefly come and procede of desfluxions that fall out of the head into the throate, and there cause a swelling; and chiefly in the falling of the leafe or haruest, when the rheumes are most of all mingled with sharpe *Cholera*; like as the same are in winter for the most parte mingled with *Phlegma*. Sleeping also immediately after meales with hanging of the head, increaseth the same. Fat meate, and all that is dyest with Spilke, Pelons; and violent motions straight after meates, cause also this sickness. The same doe also venomous things, as blacke Belleboe, and all Toadstoles. So are sometimes blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and *Melancholia* occasions of this sickness; which neuertheles doe seldome strangle a man.

The signes of *Angina* are a short breath, with bad swallowing; otherwhiles blistering of the tong, so that the drinke taken will be diuen out at the nose againe: The speech goeth thorough the nose more or lesse, as the sickness is of importance.

If the blood be cause of it, then is the Pulse strong, the face, eies, and tong red; the mouth swete, great paine and retaining of breath. If it come of *Cholera*, then is there great heat with little spetle, thirst, blistering, and drought of the tong, bitterness of the mouth, and great paine with it: the breath is not so short as of blood, the tong is yellowish; this is also augmented in haruest, and in summer, and if one be cholericke also.

If this sickness procede of *Phlegma*, then is there too much tough moisture in the mouth, sometimes salt and of an euill taste; the face is bleake and the tong also. When is but little paine, little thirst, and a little tumor.

But if it procede of *Melancholia*, then is therewith sowernes in the mouth: the swelling is hard, his face ashy coloured. Also this Squinancie commeth by little and little, and not so sodaine as the other.

How to ease this disease, there is nothing better then to eate and drinke but little: the drinke shall be a Iulep of Roses tempered with Well water, or Sugar water, or any thin Beade.

Further he is to eate light meates, as bread mollified in fresh flesh broth, and such like: he shall also oftentimes two howers after meat take *Pillulas Aleophanginas*, and let his head be often kembd and stroked. And let him gargarise with wine of Pomegranates and barley water mingled together. Afterwards he is to cleanse his mouth with six ounces of Barley water, wherein is tempered one ounce of the sirup of the outward greene nut shels. Before meate he is to use water to wash his face, wherein Clodbinde, Bay leanes, Parietom gentle, and Rosemarie are decocted, and he shall rub his legs downewards with these herbes. Also he is often to use three or fouer greines of Pasticke, and one greine of Cucubes, or *Lignum Aloes*, to chew it in the morning, and to hold it in his mouth.

For this infirmitie it is also very commodious for one to auoyd much filth through the nose. And as this Squinancie is caused diuersly, so do the learned also deuide the same into fower kindes: first, when the thzoate and the bulck, with the parts round about them, do swell: Secondly, if about the thzoate there be no swelling sene on the outside, notwithstanding aboue all this, that the bzeath is so shorte that one would thinke that the patient would be strangled: Thirdly, when there appeareth a swelling on the outside of the thzoate: Fourthly, when the thzoate swelleth as well within as without.

But after what manner soeuer it commeth, it is alwayes a perillous sicknes, and especially the second kinde, for that it is very quicke and speedie, so that oftentimes it dispatcheth one in two or thre dayes; and commonly it is moze dangerous for children then for aged folke: therefore do the Latinitis call this kinde of Squinancie *Strangulatozem*, which is, Strangler, as it were somewhat that fell into the thzoate, the which then so stopt the bzeath, that one must therewith be strangled. For *Strangulatio* they say, is naught else but a speedie death, by reason that one can get no bzeath, euen as it hapneth when the thzoate is stopt, and this is the difference betwene them. The Squinancie (as it is sayd) killeth one very hastily, *Peripneumonia* (which is a sickness of the lights) doth with a painefull bzeath strangle by little and little. But if rheumes fall into the thzoate, then are they a cause of strangling, for that thereby the pipes of the lights in time are stopped.

If in swallowing he feele a narrownes and paine that the bzeath be painefully bzaue, and that the patient haue scarcenes of bzeath, and is constrained to hold open his mouth, then is the Squinancie at hand, which is great or small, as may appeare by the vehemencie of the signes. And for that this diseale proceedeth as well of bloud, *Cholera*, and heate, as of cold and *Phlegma*, and so requireth speciall remedies, therefore we will hereafter in particular speake of them.

Of the Squinancie or paine in the throate through heate. §. 5.



In this Squinancie, regard is to be had to the face and the eyes, whether they be red, and the face puffed vp, and whether the patients spittle be sweete: Also, whether he (being healthie) hath vsed much nourishing meate and drinke, for when these signes (as is sayd) do appeare, then is it certaine that this Squinancie proceedeth of superfluous bloud and heate: then is the head vaine to be opened without all delay on the right hand, and to let out foure or five ounces of bloud, according to the abilitie of the person, and to vse this Clister by and by after it.

Take Mallows, Hollyhocke roots, Violet leaues, Cammomil, *Adiantum*, of each a handfull, sethe these in sufficient water vnto the halfe part. Take 12. or 16. ounces of this decoction, oyle of Dill, and of Saffron, of each one ounce, oyle of Beuercod halfe an ounce, *Hieralogodion* one ounce, the iuice of Swines bred (if you can get it) one scruple, *Diagridion* halfe a scrup. Salt one drag. minister it warme. If the sicknes be somewhat tollerable, then within twelue houres after let two great boxing cups on the shoulders hard by the neck very warme, and let them blede well.

But if the patient be corpulent, then is the Median to be opened on the same side, or the little vaines vnder the tong. This letting of bloud is not to be done at one time only, but if the patient may well abide it, shall be the oftner reiterated, and the lesse at once, for it dispatcheth and diueth the matter from them.

But vntill the patient be let blond, Clistered, and bled, he must be rubbed with warme clothes, and first, from beneath the knees euen to the fete; afterwards, from the thighes to the knees; thirdly, from the shoulders vnto the huckle bone; fourthly, from the shoulders vnto the hands: or at the leastwise binde the same members hard, and make them lose often, as hath bene sayd.

When both befoze and after purging are presently to be vsed all cooling and astringent gargisimes, whereof diuers are described in the third Chapter and the 4. §.

Make it thus, lay the seedes of Sumach to steape in Rile water, and gargarise therewith. Take Coziander, Sumach, Gals, *Hippocistis*, Pomegranat pills, of each a like quantitie, sethe these in sufficient water vntill the halfe be consumed.

This following is also very good (being vsed within the first thre dayes) take water of Purcelane

Purcelane and Plantaine, of each solwer ounces, sirupe of grēne But shels th; ȝ ounces, tempered and holden long in the mouth.

Item, to gargarise with warme milke, easeſh the paine. Take sirupe of Poppie heads, and sirupe of Pulberies, of each one ȝrag. Rose water th; ȝ ounces, tempered and vſed as the other befoze.

And take Barly water (as much as you will) and mingle amongst it sirupe of Pomegranats, Pulberies, and honie of Roses, as much as you will.

Item, take small sliced Licorice, Corans, Figs, Fleawort, Quince kernels, and white Poppie ſeede, of each one quarter of an ounce, Barly one ounce and a halfe, ſetſhe it in ſufficient water till that the Barly bzeake; put vnto it two ounces of the honie of Roses. This is very good to be vſed after the purging.

Take Acornes that be olde, beate them ſmall, giue of them to the patient twice a day, halfe a ȝrag. at each time, in what you pleaſe. This is ſpeciall good againſt the ſwelling of the throte: it is alſo good to take the ſume of them into the throte.

Item, take dried white dogs dung, halfe an ounce beaten ſmall, tempered with sirupe of Pulberies, and giue it to the patient to ſwallow by little and little: it helpeth and ȝieth manuellouſly.

What ought to be vſed outwardly.

Befoze there be any ſalues, plaisters, or any other thing laid vpon the outſide thereof, you are to froth and rub the patients armes and legs (euen as befoze ſaid) and annoynt the ſame members afterwards with freſh butter, or with the oyle of ſwaete Almonds. And vſe this following: Take the ſalue *Dialthea* one ounce and a halfe, Muſcilage of Fleawort and of Quince kernels, of each one quarter of an ounce, prepared Caſſia & freſh butter, of each one ȝrag. Leauen and Dates, of each half an ounce, oyle of Violets two ounces, and make a ſalue of them.

Item, take a Swallowes neſt, and ſetſhe it in Well water, ſtraine the ſame througħ a narrow ſieue, and in this water boyle the rootes of Lillies, Pallowes, Hollihocks, Violet leaues, Pellitorie, Cammomill, *Adiantum*, of each one handfull: ſtampe them all together with Barly water and Lincſede meale, of each one ounce, Cammomill two ounces, and thereof make a plaister.

Another of *Montagnana*: Take a Swallowes neſt, Pallowes and Hollihocke rootes, of each one handfull, Cammomill, *Adiantum*, of each two handfule, Barly meale th; ȝ ounces, oyle of Cammomill one ounce, and lay it warme on the throte. Afterwards, if any impoſtume appere, then take Figs, Fenegræk, and Squils, of each halfe an ounce, ſetſhe them together in a pinte of water, till but halfe remaine, temper it with th; ȝ ounces of *Oxymel*, and then gargariſe with it. And if you thinke that it be too milde, then open the ſwelling (if you can come to it) and waſh the mouth often with wine and honie.

For purging thereof.

This purging muſt be effected with cole things, as ſolwer Dates, Pynes, Confections, Caſſia and Spanna (as ſhall ſeeme good) alſo milde Clifters are to be vſed, as hereafter followeth.

Take Pallowes, Hollihocke rootes, Violet leaues and ȝrage, of each a handfull, of the ſeede of Melons, Cucumbers, Gourdes, and Pompeons ſtamped groſſe together, of each one ȝrag. and a halfe: ſetſhe them all together in ſufficient water, take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, Caſſia one ounce, Salt one ȝrag. miniſter it warme.

God hēde is alſo to be taken, that the patient haue a ſoluble bodie; and to that end ſerue ſuppoſitories made of Venice Sope, vſing the ſame oftentimes.

If the ſame ache of the head be mixed with *Cholera*, the which may be knowne hereby, that is, if with the ſwelling there be a pricking and gnawing paine, yellow colour, bitterneſſe in the mouth: alſo if that he in time of health haue eaten ſuch meates as augment *Cholera*: then is the ſicke bodie to be purged with the aboueſaid things. Rubarbe is alſo very commodious for it, in this manner following: Take one ounce of Spanna, Rubarbe one ȝrag. or ſwaïne, ſtaye them in ſixe ounces of Pꝛune both ſixe howers long: then ſtraine it out hard; afterwards vſe the

the Clisser which is described in the twelfth Chapter of the first part 5. §. for madnesse or frensie which beginneth thus, Take Lettice, &c.

Hereupon you are to open the head baine on the hand, and set cups on the necke and shoulders. Use also these aforesaid gargarismes, or this following: Take the iuice of Nightshade that is well settled, sixe ounces, Roses, sliced Licorice and Fitches, of each halfe an ounce, good white wine three ounces, let it sethe mately well; then temper it amongst one ounce and a halfe of Cassie, and gargarise therewith often. This helpeth and easeth the paine. In the increase of the sickness, there is sometimes used Pyrrhe sodden with wine. In like manner also the Pusilage of Barly tempered with Coates milke, Sugar, Nightshade, and a little Saffron.

Thus may then the bad matter be drawn outwardly: Take Shēpes woll dipped in oyle of Cammomill and Sallet oyle, and lay it vpon the soze. Or (if one can get it) take one quarter of an ounce of Snakes skins, which the Snakes do cast euery yere, and sethe it in an dunce of oile of Almonds: then wet a cloth therein, and lay it on the place where the soze is a whole day and a night.

This plaister following is (to this end) also much commended. Take fenegræke and Lineseede meale, of each one quarter of an ounce, Hollihocke seedes, Cammomill, Hyssope, of each one handfull. These three last sethe, and stampe to pap, and then mingle it with the foresaide meale, and with two ounces of Cammomill oyle, and two ounces of the oyle of Lillies: afterwardes sethe it altogether vntill it be somewhat thicke, and then lay it warme on the necke.

In like manner are highly commended the Swallowes with their yong ones, burnt in a pot to ashes, and the same blowen into the throte, or tempered with honie, and the throte anointed therewith, or gargarised, which is a passing good remedie.

But aboue all other is Oxytel with Rose water and vineger in the beginning most commended. Likewise the sirupe of Pulberies and greene Putshels: so that the skilfull Physicians do write, that those three last are the best remedies of all others. Prepare also these pills to holde vnder the tong: Take *Assa fetida* one drag. Treos halfe an ounce, make them vp with the iuice of Coleworts.

If you thinke that the patient will be strangled and cannot swallow, then take Hemlocke seede, Radish seede, *Assa fetida* Bozaes, Pyrrhe, *Ammoniacum*, and common Salt, of each a like quantitie: of these all together, or of some of these make a powder, and blowe thereof into the throte. A great boring cup (without pricking or otherwise) set behinde in the necke, helpeth that the meate and drinke will be the easier swallowed downe.

But in case that the impostume be broken, then are you often to gargarise with Meade and wine, wherein Sugar and Treos be sodden. Iulep of Violets is very good for these kind of pains:

Paine in the Throte through *Phlegma*, and colde taking. §. 6.

If the face and the eies be not red nor fierie, and that the patient haue his mouth alwaies full of spettle, and is hoarse without great paine, with other signes moe of *Phlegma*: then shall Treacle and Pithridate be used, for that they mitigate the paine, expell all swellings, and cleanse all exulcerations wonderfully. Further, you may use this gargarisme following: Take Treos halfe an ounce, Hyssope, *Adiantum*, of each one drag. Licorice, Cozans, and Figs, of each one ounce, fenegræke and Lineseede, of each halfe an ounce, Barly one ounce and a halfe, let it sethe together in sufficient water vntill the halfe be spent. Also you may make choise out of the last mentioned gargarismes in the 13. Chapter and 4. §. of that shall best like you, and that is speciall good which is prepared of the sirupe of Pulberies and sirupe of greene Putshels, for a fowle mouth: for both of these are specially commended for all paines of the throte, as daily experience teacheth. The roote of Diuels bit sodden in water, and therewith gargarised, doth maruellously ease the squinancie.

For to purge are very requisite the pills *Cochia*, *Fetida*, *de Hiera*, and the powder *Medicamen de Turbith*, according as neede shall require. And if neede be, let a strong Clisser be made and ministred, as you shall finde in the 12. Chapter and the 17. §. that which is very meete for this, which beginneth, Take Centorie, &c.

There are Trocisces also used that are to be holden in the mouth, and are to be made and dressed thus: Take Palsicke, Frankincense, Raisons, red Stozay, and Sep, of each one quarter

of an ounce, beate them all to powder, and make troiscies thereof in waight halfe a drag. The auncient Physicians did vse to take a green Elderne sticke, to shane from it the vttermoſt barke, and did take the greene and yellow rinde of it, and strowed them with wheate flower, and so held them in the mouth. They do warme and dry much.

Outwardly you must annoynt the necke with Sallet oyle, Cammomill oyle, and oyle of swete Almonds, or with the oymntment of *Dialthaa*, and washt Sheepes wooll layd vpon it, and afterwards the plaister befoze mentioned in the 5. S. with *Cassia*, or this that hereafter followeth, so that there is small difference betwene them both.

Take the vnguent of *Alibea* one ounce and a halfe, the muscilage of Fenegræke and Linsede of each one quarter of an ounce, *Cassia*, fresh Butter, of each one quarter of an ounce, sowre dough, and fat Dates one ounce, oyle of swete Almonds two ounces, and thereof make a salve or plaister.

Or take Wheate, Fenegræke, and Linsede meale of each two ounces, water six ounces, oyle of Cammomil two ounces, seethe them till they be thicke inough, and afterwards spread it on a cloth, and lay it about his neck.

Item, take Goose dung, and Swines blood, of each a like quantity, mingle them, and lay it five times in 24. howres about his neck.

Some auncient Physicians do counsell to take warme Hony of *Anacardio*, *Mel Anacardium*, and let the neck be annoynted thicke cleane ouer that blisters may be rayled, whereby the matter might haue an issue forth.

Item, take white dogs dung (of a dog that eateth nothing but bones) Swallowes dung, or wolfs dung, which you can get, beate them to powder, afterwards temper it with Hony, and annoynt the neck therewith. This may you make for a gargarisme, or blowe into the throte with a pype.

If sudden strangling be feared, then are you to clip or shau off as much haire from the top of his head, that a great boring cup may be set thereon, which must be often salted, and taken off againe.

In greatest extremitie is wont to be made a vent in the patients throte betwene the two gristles, that he throught the same vent may take ayre and breath, the which vent afterwards when the swelling is gone, is to be cured as other wounds are.

Of the Vlcers of the throte. S. 7.



When as then the foresaid Squinancie or any other defluxion hath so annoyed the throte that thereby the skinne is broken, and the throte erulcerated, then take Cyppers nuts, Calmus, Sulfer vine, burnt Allome, Roses, Pomegranate pils, Passicke, Frankincense, and *Pieretrum*, of each one drag, and twelue ounces of *Aqua vita*, temper them all together and keepe them for thy vse.

When in the time of nede, take a little thereof, and gargarise therewith, so it drieth, clenseth, and healeth marvellous well. If this be too strong, then delay it with Plantain water, Knotgrasse water, or *Prunella* water. For this purpose is also good a decoction of *Guaiacum*. In like manner also *Aqua Ioannis*, which is described in the 12. Chapter of the first part and 5. S. But of all such things that do greatly hinder the same, you shall finde good instructions hereafter in the beginning of the description of the stomacke.

The second Chapter.

Of all Rheumes and Defluxions in generall.



This Greke word *Rheuma*, feared also in english a Rheume, is nothing else but a defluxion which descendeth or falleth from the head into the throte or breast, which doth otherwhiles so stop there the pipes of the lights and throte, that the patient seemeth to strangle or choke. Also these Rheumes do often fall into the nostrils, where they cause the Pisse, which is described in the second part the eight Chapter, and 6. S.

And so as much as these kinds of Rheumes, according to their severall natures haue severall

all names, as that which falleth into the nostrils is called *Coryza*: that which descendeth into the breast, *Rheuma*: that which commeth into the throte, *Bronchus*: neuertheless, all tough and stymie defluxions which fall from one member into another, are called rheumes or defluxions; for that they prouoke (as is said) not onely the strangling in the throte, but also are both noysome and troublesome vnto the breast; whereof we shall shortly write: therefore it is very requisite that we make mention of them at this present.

First these rheumes doe procede of diuers causes, like as when the humors of the brain, through the same, through bathes, vaporizing meates; as Vinions, Garlicke, Mustard, Pepper, and such like, are made thin and fluxible.

Secondly, these are caused of great cold, whereby the parts of the head be thrust and compelled together, and the humors forcibly expelled; euen as water is wrong out of a sponge: In like manner may they be stirred vp of the superabundance of some humors, be it of *Cholera* or *Phlegma*, or of some other outward alterations, as of a sharpe potherlie wind, that bloweth sodainly after a South winde.

In fine, the plaisters that are neither too hot nor too colde, are available for all such defluxions; to wit, as followeth: Take Rosen two ounces, *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, *Pyrrhe*, *Pasticke*, of each halfe a drag. *Sandaraca* one quarter of an ounce, Beane meale, Pease meale, of each halfe an ounce; dissolue the Rosen and *Laudanum* in one ounce of lie, and let them sethe till they be very soft: then put it into a mortar, and mire the meale amongst it: Spread this warme vpon a cloth, and lay it vpon the whole head. If you will haue it harder, then leaue out the meale, and temper together with the other one drag, and a halfe of *Mare*. This comforteth the braines, stablisheth the rheume, drieth all tough slime that falleth into the nostrils, mouth, and throte, and would choke one. For it is often found, that those that haue been at the poynnt of death, haue by this meanes been recovered.

Item take new Barley meale two ounces, *Nigella* seeds, Mustard seeds, & Spice dung, of each one ounce, Dre gals, or the vrine of a manchild, as much as sufficeth therewith to make a plaister. Or take fresh Bponie rootes twelue ounces, Clozmelwood, Rosemary, Parierom, all greene, of each a handfull and a halfe, Barley meale two ounces, Saffron one drag. Cammony halfe a drag. oyle of Lillies three drag. sethe well all the rootes in water, afterwards stampe them well to growt or pap amongst the other herbes, and therewith temper all the rest, except the Saffron which must be also added vnto them. Last of all, spread thereof vpon a cloth, and then lay them all warme ouer all the polled head, couering the same warme.

This is also commodious for al old headaches, especially for such as proceed of cold humors: for it consumeth all defluxions and bad vapors of the braines that fall out of the head into the eyes, eares, teeth, and throte: it is twice a day to be renewed.

These two plaisters following are also highly commended to be very good for the same: first, put about vpon the head a metely great bore or cup unpickt vpon the same, on the seame of the skull (the haire being cut off before) and the place that the cup is fastened vnto must be first well rubbed, till it be red, and let the cup draw it well. Afterwards lay this plaister following thereon: Take *Laudanum*, *Gummi Heleni*, *Sandaraca*, Frankincense, white and red Stozay, and Rosen, of each a like much, melt the *Laudanum*, Rosen, and the liquid Stozay together, and temper the other with them: But if it be hard, then make it softer with oyle of Lillies plaister wise.

The second is more forcible then the first. Take Aloe, wilde Spints, and Citron pills, of each a like much; mire them together with *Laudanum* in a warme mortar, with as much iuice of Sloes as will make it soft.

Of Rheumes that proceede of colde. §.1.



The cause of these rheumes are strong cold potherne winds, and chiefly if there did blow before that, a milde moist South-west winde, as hath been told already. Also tolie bareheaded in the nights when it is cold, whereby the moisture is forcibly driuen together, and chiefly if warmth followe after, as hath been heretofore shewed of the sponge. Also moist fruit doe cause these distillations, as Cherries, Apples, Peares, Peaches, and such like.

These Rheumes are knowen by these signes following: as wearines and heavines of the whole

whole bodie, sleepines, heavines of the head and forehead, palenes of the face with full baines, stuffing of the head or nose, bereaving of the sense of smelling, swelling up of the eyes, payne in the throte, motion to vomite, dropping of the nose, and swelling of the Almonds.

In like maner is the head also in the feeling found cold, and the Rheume is neither sharp nor biting at all.

The which is commonly ingendred and maintained, if the complexion, the time, the age, and the weather be cold.

As for example. If that any one do runne into the cold ayre bareheaded out of a bathe, or after any other great warmth, especially in the nights, and begin to get a tickling in the nose, then is it a sure signe that he hath already gotten a defluxion, and then must the patients head be covered so long with warme clothes, that he feeleth manifestly that his head beginneth to warme inwardly, or in stead thereof he shall lay these things following vpon his head.

Take beaten Millet foure ounces, Salt one ounce, parch them in a panne, and lay this vpon his head as hote as may be suffered. Or take a good quantitie of Salt, powre thereto as much Wine as is requisite to dissolue the same Salt, and being a litle sodden, wet clothes therein, presse them out, and lay them very dry vpon his head, this dryeth, and is safe. You may also prepare this salve. Take Pigeons dung, wild Rue, Beuercod, and white Mustard seede, of each one drag, oyle of Rue three ounces, *Euphorbium* halfe a drag, Ware as much as will suffice for a plaister, but let the forehead of the head be shorne, and the place annointed therewith where the sore is, it is forcible and dryeth much.

Will you now haue more plaisters and salues for the same? then looke into the first part of the description of the cold paine of the head, for these things are also very commodious for this paine.

Yet note this, that all that is here discoursed, is to be speedely effected: for if this disease be to be maistred, the same must be done at the beginning, when as the patient is incontinently to haue a vaine opened on the right hand betwene the thomb and the forefinger, letting out foure or five ounces of blood.

Clifters.

After the full dispatch of letting of blood, minister a Clifter vnto him at night. Take Barne, Gallowes, rootes of blew floure deluce, Betes, of each one handfull, seethe it altogether in sufficient water, and then take of this decoction 12. or 16. ounces, composition of Beuercod a drag. and a halfe, prepared Cally and Lho. Sugar of each five drag. oyle of Lillies and Cammomill, of each one ounce and a halfe, Salt one quarter of an ounce, mingle them altogether, and minister it metely warme. The next morning following giue these pills: take pills of *Hiera compoſita* two scruples, *Cochia* one scruple, make seven pills and vse them at one time.

Against the euening let him be rubbed with rough warme clothes, euen as is sayd not long ago in the first Chapter and 5. S. of the paine of the throte. And this is to be obserued certaine dayes euery morning and euening.

Gargalines.

If therefore these Rheumes be cold, thin, and watery, then can you not do better, then to make the same thick, the which may be performed with Pastick, frankincense, Cyper nuts, and such like, if one do gargarise oftentimes therewith, or vse this following. Take Myrre, and frankincense, of each one ounce, Cyper nuts, Nutmegs, and Pasticke, of each halfe an ounce, beate them altogether, and boyle them in twelue ounces of red Wine vnto the halfe, and gargarise therewith.

Cakes to be holden vnder the Toong.

Take Pastick, Nutmegs, Cyper nuts, of each halfe a dramme, red Storax, and frankincense, of each one dramme and a halfe, fat Raysons (the stones taken out) Sugarpane of each one quarter of an ounce, make a dough thereof with Beade, and then make Cakes thereof as big as small Beanes, the which you are to hold continually day and night vnder the toong.

Syrups

Syrups and purgations.

For a sirupe, Take Sage, Cypers leaues, of each one ounce, *Lignum Aloes* one quarter of an ounce, clarified honie and Sugar, of each sixe ounces, and let them sethe together in a sirupe, as hath bene often taught.

Another. It is also very needefull, that in such diseases the head be well purged, whereto this sirupe following serueth well: Take Elecampane rootes, Ireos, Cozans and Licorice, of each one ounce, Hyssope, *Adiantum*, of each a handfull, Basticke, Frankincense, of each one dragma, Nutmegs, Cypers nuts, of each halfe an ounce, sethe this together (as is beforesaid) with Sugar, and giue him certaine daies continually two ounces with three ounces of this water.

Take twenty Zinibes, thirty Rebistes, Cozans one ounce and a halfe, dried Tiolets halfe an ounce, cut Licorice fine drag. and ten figs, sethe them all together in a pynthe and a half of water, vnto the halfe; afterwards straine it out, and let it settle. You haue also here before in the first part for the colde paine of the head, sirupes and other things that serue for these rheumes. For purging these pills following are speciall good, as *Hiera Composita* and *Cochia*.

Three daies after purging, there is to be set about the buttocks two great boring cups vnpicht, two howers before supper, and let them drawe well, and the next morning take of this confection following the quantitie of a Walnut: Take Ginger two ounces, Licorice one quarter of an ounce, Cloues, Nutmegs, and Cardamome, of each one drag. and 18. ounces of refined white Sugar; temper them all together one amongst another.

Another. Take Cinnamome one drag. and a halfe, Nutmegs, red Storax, of each halfe a drag. Licorice, Cozans, of each one ounce, Sugarcanbie halfe an ounce, refined Sugar fine ounces, make a confection thereof, and take halfe an ounce thereof euery euening when you go to bed. The seueneth day after that the patient hath bene purged, he shall euery day two howers before meales, at none and at night, twice euery moneth wash his mouth with water wherein Costus and *Asarabacca*, of each halfe an ounce is decocted. Take of this water sower drinces, of *Oxmyel Compositum* two ounces, therewith shall he gargarise two daies one after another, till he haue walshed it eight times. For this cold rheume is also speciall good the herbe Calmus, as it is described in the eight part of this booke. Three cornes of white Frankincense swallowed downe before he go to bed, are also commended: And if so be that the rheume be wahren a little thicker, then is there no better aduice in the world: for it comforteth and drieth not onely the braines, but stoppeth the rheume also from falling. It is also good counsell after purging euery third or fourth day, three or sower howers before meales, that you take a dragma of Treacle or Withydate, the which is better for aged than for yong folks.

Capitall Powder.

After letting blood, you are euery euening two howers after supper, to strowe the head with this powder following: Take red Storax, Roses, burnt Iuorie, wilde Vine leaues, Cloues, *Sandaraca*, of each one drag. and make a powder thereof.

Another for to smell on: Take Pigella that is parched on the fire, binde it in a cloth, and smell often thereto. Or take *Lignum Aloes*, red Storax, of each one drag. and a halfe, Nutmegs, Cypers, Frankincense and Cloues, of each one drag. parched Pigella sedes one quarter of an ounce: stampe them all together, and binde them in a cloth. The vapo: or smell of Sugar is also good for the braines, and drieth away all cold rheumes.

In this behalfe Pomanders may be made also, as followeth: Take *Laudanum* and Hoze Pomander bound, of each halfe an ounce, *Lignum Aloes*, red Storax, of each one drag. and a halfe, Nutmegs, Cypers nuts, Frankincense and Cloues, of each one drag. Amber halfe a drag. poune all small that is to be pouned, and dissolue the *Laudanum* with Rose water in a warme mortar, and make thereof a pomander. Another: Take one drag. of *Laudanum*, *Lignum Aloes*, red Storax, Frankincense, of each halfe a drag, Pigella, Cinnamome and Cloues, of each two scrup. Nutmegs, Cypers nuts and *Sandaraca*, of each one drag. *Gallie Muscata* one drag, Pyrrhe, Lauander spike, Basticke, Costus rootes, of each one scrup. Amber halfe a scrup. Muscu three greines: dissolue the *Laudanum* with a little Clare, and temper the rest being powdred amongst it, for me thereof pomander.

pomanders as big as you will haue them: afterwarde make holes in them, and put into them the Musk and Amber mixed with a little Rose water. Such like pomanders shall you haue more hereafter in the first part.

You may also make bags with all these foresaid compositions.

For this disease some do counsell to neede, and some suppose it hurtfull: but if these things do helpe the patient, then I counsell that this neede be omitted, that the braines and the head be not thereby disquieted.

Plaisters.

Take Pigeon dung, Rye seedes, Mustard seede, Frankincense, Gallicke, Sigella, of each halfe an ounce, mingle these things with *Oxmyel of Squils*, and then put the rest amongst it, spread it vpon leather, and lay this plaister on the top of the head. This plaister drieth the superfluous moisture of the head, and strengtheneth the same, and you may put thereto Storax, Rosemarie, Parietom gentle and Cloues.

Of the Diet in these rheumes.

Euery such patient must haue special care, that he neuer lie vpon his back: for if the rheume fall backwards, then is it to be feared that they wil prouoke the crampe or pallsie, or might choke one.

His dwelling place or chamber shall be prepared for drythe and warmth, yea in sommer season also: for if he should vse moist things, then it will be the worse for him, and be in danger of the pallsie.

In fine, the greatest care of all must be, that his dwelling be free from all moisture, and if the place be not so by nature, then take fire, and cast therein these things following (or one alone) therewith to fume his chamber: to wit, *Sandaraca*, *Laudanum*, *Rosen* of both sortez, *Frankincense*, red *Sotazar*, and such like. Make also a fire with *Juniper wood*, *Saytree wood*, *Lamarische wood*, or with any thing of that nature: and the patient must be warme clothed, and haue a speciall regard to his head, and he shall weare alwaies on the best a soft small cushion, filled with downe or Hares haire, or (which is better) with *Squirrels haire*, the which he is to keepe about him night and day.

Concerning his meate and drinke, euery such patient must refraine from wine as much as is possible, and drinke onely Sugar water tempered with wine or iuice of *Pomegranates*, to wit, the first or seventh part of it. So that nature finding no superfluitie of the meate, may the more easily worke vpon the moisture of the rheume, and therewithall consume it.

Here is to be noted, that one ought not to eate vnlesse hunger venge thereto: other wise might one euill light vpon another, and the stomacke thereby be weakened. But when naturall hunger commeth, then may he eate, yet euermore arise and cease with appetite, and auoide all superfluitie, especially if he feele any distemperature in the stomacke, and drinke not before meate, vnlesse the meate before were passed thorow the stomacke, which happeneth at least eight howers after that it is taken.

His bread shall be in winter and in the spring time wheaten bread with the bran: but in harvest and in sommer he may eate boulded bread. Also it were not hurtfull for him in case the same binde him not ouermuch, that alwaies after meate he eate a little bisket baked with *Annis seede*, in which bread (be it howsoever it will) is to be obserued, that it be baked light, rising or puffed vp, and salted a little more than ordinarie, and that it be not about three daies old.

Concerning his flesh, all kindes are good for him, *Deale*, *Kids flesh*, yong *Button*, and leane *Porke*, but not too much, nor too often. All olde and fat flesh must he shun and forbear. Of wilde beasts, *Bucks* and *Does* flesh is best of all. *Hares* flesh, albeit it be somewhat melancholike, yet neuertheless because it drieth, is not very vnwholesome for him, yet chiesly if it be best with *Pepper*, but he must forbear *Conies* and *Hedgehogs*.

It is also requisite to shewe what partes of the beasts are most wholesome for this sickness: to wit, the stomack, the hart, the skin, the sinewes, the milt, the intrailles, the braines, the lights, and such like of the foresaid beasts, are hard of digesture, and their fat is windie.

Other parts are much easier of digestion and warmth of nature: reasonable fat flesh is easie to

to be digested, the wings or pinnions and the legs are good for him at none, being sodden; and at night are good roasted: but fried in a pan is not for his dyet.

All fowles, as Capons, Cocks, and chiefly Hens, wilde and tame Pigeons which are not fully feathered and haue been killed a day or twaine before, and are well dressed: these may he eat franke and freely.

Young Peacocks, Geese and Ducks, shall he also refraine, or at least eate of them very seldom, and that roasted. Of all wilde birds, these are good for him, Partridges, Fesants, & small birds; as also Stares, finches, Nightingales, Larkes, Sparrowes, Snites, Dishwallers, and such like; by reason that all their flesh is much drying.

Swallowes, Paggies, and Woodpigeons are not to be used: Quails shall he also abstaine from, in regard they are hurtfull for the stomacke, and breed loathsomenes.

No kinde of fish is to be used: But in case that he will eate them, then let them be hard broyled; to wit, Roches, Pikes, Gudgeons, Perches, and such like: and they will hurte the lesse if they be dressed with Parsley and Spints: and they are alwaies better broyled or fried, then sodden and stewed: also the salt fish is better then the fresh. The Ele, the Tench, and the Creuels are also forbidden. Likewise Silke and all that is dressed therewith: but he may eate reare eggs out of their shells, or poched; but hard eggs are naught.

Of all manner of Pottages, there is onely allowed of *Panicum*, red Pease, and Rice.

The herbes that are commodious for this must be in operation drying and warming, as Sage, fennel, Spints, wild Thyme, Rosemary, Parietom gentle, Basil, Dill: Contrariwise he must forbear Lettice, Endiue, Spinage, Cherries, and all that are cold and moist. In like manner also Radish, Leekes, and Onions, (after what maner soeuer that they be dressed) shall he forbear.

Rapes or Turneps haue much superfluous moisture, therefore are not to be used: but Olives and Capers are good for him. He must auoid all colde and moist fruits, parched Hasell nuts, Almonds, figs, Raisons, Pinapple kernels: *Pistacium* may he vse without danger. All meats that are betwene sower and sweete: in like maner that which is dressed with Ginger, Annis seed, Fennell, Parsley, Saffron, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, and Spice, are very commodious for him; and the rather if they be sweetened with hony, then with Sugar.

Item a Sallet made of Parsley, Spints, wild Thyme, and Vineger, is very profitable for him. His best drinke is honie water or Heade, Cinnamon & Licorice wine, amongst which are to be tempered some of the foresaid waters: And if he will needes drinke wine without mingling it at all with water, then is to be taken (as is said) a thin and pleasant white Wine, the which ought to be drunken delayed with steeled water.

Lastly is the patient after meales to vse somewhat that closeth the stomack, that the vapors ascend not into the head; as prepared Coriander, toasted bread, roasted Quinces, or such as be conected with honie.

In the morning fasting, to goe or walke on fote, or to ride a horsebacke softly, is very commodious for these Rheumes. And if the patient be not so strong, then may one vse in the steede thereof to rub him with warme clothes, (euen as is oftentimes aforesaid) and after meales to keepe himselfe quiet two or thre houers.

Of watching and sleeping.

This patient must wholly forbear sleeping on the daie time, vnles he be other wise distempred, and must forbear it at the leastwise two houers after meate: first he must lay himselfe on the right side, and then on the left side, and not on the backe; for how hurtfull the same is, hath been shewed sufficiently before.

The heate of the sun and of the fire must he auoide, and forbear lowde calling and speaking. And to conclude, touching these colde and stinging rheumes, we will tell how they are to be prevented, the which may be effected thorough these meanes following.

And so; that this disease proceedeth of a cold and moist stomack and brains, all things (measurably warme and drie) are good for it, as these confections following.

These Species, *Diatripiopereon*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, of each halfe a drag. Spice one quarter of an ounce, Cinnamon one drag. and a halfe, Sugar thre ounces, sirup of Roses five ounces;

the Sugar & the sirup seethe till they be mactly thicke; afterwards mire the other spices amongst them in a moztar: take euery day sower howers befoze meales, as much as a Nutmeg. And this must you continue a moneth together, and afterwards thre times a weke, as long as you please.

¶ make this confectiō to be vsed after meate, and take therof thre drag. at one time: Take *Species Diambra, de xylo Aloes*, of each one drag. and a half, Violets, water Lillies, Sozrell seeds, and Endiue seeds, of each one scrup. Sugar sower ounces, seethe it in water of Violets, & make *Mannus Christi* of them.

A plaister for the stomacke.

Take *Laudanum* and *Rosine*, of each five drag. prepared *Cozall* and *Quozie*, small *Endiue* seede, and *Purflaine* seede, of each one scrup. The two first you shall dissolve in sharpe vinegar, and put thereto molten Ware as much as is needefull, and thereof make a plaister oꝝ twaine foꝝ the stomacke, and weare them all the winter vpon it.

When these rheumes are a diuiding, then must you prepare a drie bath, as hereafter followeth.

Take a sweating tub, make it mactely wet with wine and Rose water, afterwards heall the same ouer a glowing fire till that it be thorough drie: then make the same wet againe with a sponge oꝝ cloth, as befoze: and do this so long, untill that the tub be thorough hot; and then let the patient therein, and couer the tub ouer with clothes, which must stay vpon the hops, yet holding his head without: and let him sit so sweating one howre oꝝ twaine.

Hot rheumes. §.2.



So in the beginning is generally treated of rheumes, so are there also declared certaine causes of the hot rheume, therefore it is needeles to rehearse the same againe. These rheumes are much prouoked through idlenesse, through sleeping a daies, through superfluous eating and drinking. Also if the head be too hot couered, great labour, ouerheating of himselfe, and such like.

The signes and tokens that one hath the rheume, are these: to wit, the face is red, mixt with bleakenes oꝝ pale colour, great heate in the nose, with itchings, when as the mouth and the throte are full of bitternesse and sharpnesse. And if the head be hot in feeling: the which rheume is thus to be cured.

First, it hath not bene a little disputed of amongst the learned, whether a vaine must be opened oꝝ not; but foꝝ the most part they affirme it: some would open the head vaine, other the median, and some the lyuer vaine. But this letting of blood must be effected, according as the rheume falleth moze on the one side than the other, and when the rheume is almost staied. foꝝ it hath bene often sene, that they that haue bene let blood in the beginning of the rheume, haue alwaies remained and bene the hotter. But to diminish all such subtile courses of the rheume, and to make it thicke, then must he hold in his mouth these gargarismes and losings.

Of Gargarismes.

Take sirupe of *Ziubes*, of *Violets* and *Poppie* seeds, of each a like much, temper them with *Barly* water: ¶ take *Ziubes*, *Sebestes*, *Violets*, white *Poppie* seeds, & *Quince* kernels decocted with *Barly* water, vse it in the euening after meate: it is passing good.

Item, take sirupe of *Poppie* heads, sirupe of *Pulberies*, of *Roses*, and *Well* water, of each thre ounces, wine of *Pomegranates* one ounce, make it warme, and gargle therewith.

Losings.

Take white *Poppie* seeds, *Purflaine* seede, and *Lettice* seeds, of each one drag. *Dragant*, *Gummi Arabicum* and *Saffron*, of each halfe a drag. *Opium* fine greines: poune all that is to be poune, and make it with the sirupe of *Poppie* heads to a dolwe, then make losings thereof as big as small *Beanes*, and hold one of these in thy mouth. And foꝝ this also are commodious these common losings, *Diapapaner* and the cold *Diatragacantha*.

Item

Item, take *Gummi Arabicum*, *Dagagant*, *Starch*, *Licozice*, *Quince kernels*, and *seedes of fleawort*, beate all these small together, make thereof as aforesaid losings with the muscilage of fleawort, and hold them vnder thy tong.

Also there may otherwhiles be made for a change the small losings, called *Bechion* of *Diachodon*, or *Diamargariton*, and all the sortes of losings, which are here w^orth^y to be described.

The preparation of the losings for the cough and rheume after diuers manners.

The blacke losings are called at the Apothecaries, *Bichion*, or *Bechion*, the which are made after two sortes; to wit, as followeth: Take the iuice of *Licozice*, and *Sugar*, of each halfe an ounce, *Starch*, *Dagagant*, pilled *Almonds*, of each one quarter of an ounce, the muscilage of *Quince kernels*, as much as is needefull for to make losings with it: these do thicken all subtill rheumes, and delay their sharpnes.

Another sorte: Take *Pine apple kernels* that haue been steeped a whole night in *Rosewater*, and bitter *Almonds* pilled, of each thre quarters of an ounce, iuice of *Licozice* two ounces, beaten *Licozice* thre dag. make a dowe with *Rosewater*, and then make thereof losings: they are very good against the Cough, and against all raw swellings of the throte.

The white losings are thus prepared: Take white *Sugar*, and *Sugar candie*, of each a like, *Starch* the fourth part, beat them all together, and with *Dagagant* dissolued in *Rosewater*, make losings of them.

Item take five ounces of white *Sugar*, *Sugar Candie*, and *Sugar pennets*, of each two ounces, beaten *Treos* thre quarters of an ounce, *Starch* almost fine dag. beate these all together with *Dagagant* dissolued in *Rosewater*, and make losings of them.

The third maner is this: Take *Sugar pennets* one ounce, *Sugar Candie* thre quarters of an ounce, *Manus Christi* without pearls and with *Rosewater*, half an ounce, fine *Bolus* one dag. and a halfe, white *Sugar* one ounce & a quarter; make losings thereof with *Dagagant* as aforesaid.

If that then neede require that these rheumes must be yet more suppressed and made thicker, then take *Starch*, *Dagagant*, pilled *Almonds*, *Weane meale*, blacke and white *Poppie seede*, *Gum*, and fine *Bolus*, of each a like much: this must you beate together with the muscilage of *fleawort* or *Quinces*; and make losings thereof.

For to Purge.

Necessitie also requireth in this sicknes for to purge: the which is to be begun with the sirup of *Iuiubes* and *Sebestes*, or with the drinke at the Apothecaries called *Decoctio pectoralis*, the which is thus prepared: Take *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, *Violet flowers*, of each one dag. *Iuiubes* and *Sebestes*, of each fiftene, *Venus haire*, *Scabious*, *Folewote leanes*, of each a handfull, *Annis seedes* two ounces, *Figs* and *Dates*, of each fine, *Licozice* cut small thre dag. husked *Barley* halfe a handfull: let all these sethe together in a pinte and a halfe of water vntill the third part be sodden away; straine it, and take the clearest of it, and keepe it in a coole place.

Take small cut *Licozice* one ounce, *Iuiubes* and *Sebestes*, of each ten, sethe them all together in sufficient water, and make it as abovesaid. In this manner are there many more made: but these are the commonest.

For purging, take thre or fower ounces of the first mentioned decoction, break therein *Cassia* and *Panna*, of each one ounce, mingle them together, and drinke it warme, and you may drinke a good draught of the two foresaid pectorall decoctions.

Another purgation. Take *Violets* and water *Lillies*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Damask Prunes* ten or twelue, fower *Dates* one ounce, sethe them all together in eight or ten ounces of water till the halfe part be consumed; you are to take thre or fower ounces of this decoction: temper therein one ounce of new *Cassia*, confection of *Succo Rosarum*, or conserues of *Prunes* thre dag. mingle them, and giue them early in the morning.

The third purgation. Take fower ounces of broth wherein *Prunes* are sodden, steepe therein a quarter of an ounce of grosse beaten *Rubarbe* all night, and in the morning straine them, and

and temper therewith two ounces of the sirupe of Roses, and giue it fasting in the morning, in the sommer cold, and in winter warme.

But if you had rather haue pills, then prepare them thus: Take the shales of yellow Spirabians halfe an ounce, Kubarbe one ounce, Aloe, *Diagridion*, of each fine drag. Pasticke and Licorice, of each one scrup. beate them all together with the muscilage of Quinces vnto a masse: you are to take thereof a drag, at once.

After purging.

Hue regard whether the matter be yet waterie and thin, then are you to giue to the sick bodie somewhat that is made with Poppie seedes. For this is also good colde losings of Dragagant, conserue of Roses and water Lillies, also he must smell to things that are colde of nature, as Rose water (the which he must also drawe vp into the nose) Camfere, Roses, Saunders, Romanders of colde natures, whereof some are described in the first part. But if the rheume be tough and thicke, then is all that to be forborne that is made of Poppie heads, and make this water following: Take dried Hyssop, Licorice, Venus haire, figs, Pollihoche seedes, and seedes of Pallowes, of each a like much, and he shall hold in his mouth Dragagant with a little looch de Pino.

Because these salt rheumes haue some communion with the lyuer, then is highly commended for this strange bathes, that flowe from iron or other mines in the ground.

When this patient will go to bed, then is he to take a quarter or halfe an ounce of the conserues of water Lillies, and vse also one of these two capitall powders following: Take Spere one quarter of an ounce, red Cozall, burnt Quozie red and white, Saunders, of each one scruple, Sandaraca one quarter of an ounce, water Lillies one drag, and a halfe, Cloues halfe a drag, temper them together being all beaten small, and therewith bestrowe the crowne of the head, and euery other day when you will strowe other powder thereon, brush off the first.

This following is moze coling: Take Roses, Spirtle seede or leanes, Cozall, and Butchers brome seedes, of each a like much. This being powdred small, vse it as before.

The order of Diet.

The best meate that this patient may vse (when he is not ouerweake) are paps of Barly, of Spelt, of Starch, of Oten meale, and alwaies adde some Sugar pennets. In like manner may he eate these herbes following drest or sod with other meates: as Spinage, Drage, Purslaine, Pallowes, and Bêtes, also Melons, Gourdes, Cucumbers. But if he be weake, then is he to eate Kids, Hens, and such like sodden with these foresaid herbes and mildly salted, reare eggs, Oile of swete Almonds, and all small birds are very mete.

The best that he may vse for drinke is Barly water, or Sugar water, and both hawing Licorice sodden in them. Item, cleane fresh Well water tempered with sirupe of Roses or Violets. He must wholly forbear wine: but if that will not be, then must he vse a thin wine tempered with a little veriuice.

It is also good counsell for all rheumatike persons to sleepe as little as is possible, & that with the head vpight. The which together with the whole body must be well couered, and in the meane whiles if any sweat followe, he must let the same haue his course.

It is also thought good, that the forehead, the temples, and the whole breast be annointed with oyle of Violets, water Lillies and Roses, mingled together, or with each apart: Or that his breast be annointed with oile of swete Almonds and fresh butter. When as the sicknes is declining, then is the patients head to be washed (if euer he used the same) with clere lie, wherein is decocted or steeped Marierom gentle, Roses, Cammomill, and Melilot, and afterwards he is to be kemberd, and dried with warme clothes.

Of rheumes with Agues. §.3.



If in case that through the foresaid remedies the rheume will not be staied, which happeneth often through the abundance of humors, then befalleth oftentimes a cough and Ague to followe it, whereby one may well gesse, that the same proceedeth of a cholerike humor, that lyeth still hidden in the vaines. Wherefore is the letting

of blood very needefull for this, and specially in the lyuer vaine. Afterwards you must purge the body with Cassia and Spanna, or concerning the same take the counsell of a learned Physitian.

For this also must continually be used those Losings wherein is no Treas. And for to take away this hurtfull matter of the rheume, it is specially advised, that the same be deriued from the best into the nose where the same may be the better euacuated.

To this end, take *Ammoniacum* halfe an ounce, smal beaten Pellitorie of Spaine one quarter of an ounce, make this with the iuice of blew Flowers deluce into dowe, and thereof take a little on a knife, and put it in the nose, and forthwith you shall see the water to run out of the nose. This is a secret. Item, take the iuice of the roote of blew Flower deluce one ounce, beaten Staueacre and *Piretram*, of each one drag. make some cotton moist herein, and so put it warme into his nose.

He must also be prevented and kept from eating of flesh, and drinking of wine as long as the ague and the cough endure. Barly water tempered with Iulep of Violets and sirupe of Violets must be his drinke: for this supplieth, moisteneth, and cooleth the best, and maketh the matter thicker. But if it proceede of colde, then are you to boyle Venus haire, Hyssope, and Licorice amongst them.

When as then the ague and cough begin to cease (which one may seele as the breath and spittle beginneth to cease) then are you to prepare this water following: Take five fat Figs, ten Quibes, twenty Sebestes, Raisons (the stones taken out) one ounce and a quarter, Licorice cut small five drag. let them sethe well together in sufficient water. Afterwards straine it, and take thereof three ounces, sirupe of Violets five drag. temper them all together, and you shall giue him this potion, if the rheume proceede of heate: but if it proceede of colde, and the flegme or spittle will not be losed, then sethe Venus haire and Cozans with the foresaid things, and leaue out the sirupe of Violets.

If the rheume would not passe through the nose. §.4.

To conclude, we are to adde this following to the rest. If so be this rheume do stop the nose a great while, and that there is no heate with it, then are fumes to be used for it. And heere is to be taken, that if the moisture that issueth out at the nose be subtile, sharpe or yellow; make a smoke with a little Sulphur, that hath bene steeped in a little vineger, and is dried againe, or with husked Barly or Beans peeled, that were also steeped in vineger and are dried againe, and beaten to powder. For this also serueth Saunders, and the fume of Sugar. And you may prepare this following: Take grosse beaten Bismstone one quarter of an ounce, sethe it in eight ounces of red vineger, and receiue the vapo: of it into your nose. And sprinkle the Sulphur with wine, and lay it on a hot stone.

Item, make a vapo: of sodden Barly, water Lillies, and white Poppie seede. Also you may sprinkle vineger alone vpon an hot iron. For this is also good the vapo: or smoke of Partridges feathers. But if there be no heate nor rednes in the face, then make a fume of Costus rotes and Frankincense. And take Gith seades steeped in wine, and so sprinkle it on a hot stone. Take also *Lignum Aloes*, *Gallicke* and Frankincense, of each a like much being pouned together, and receiue the vapo: thereof. Likewise is commodious for this *Sandaraca*, steeped in vineger, and the same sprinkled on a hot stone, and the vapo: thereof receiued into the nose. And for as much as there is very much written at this present of this rheume, and shall be more discovered thereof in the description of the rheume, of the cough, and pursuenes: therefore will we here make an end of this Chapter.

The third Chapter.

Of the formost part of the Brest, Thorax.



That which we generally call the Brest, hath his beginning there where the necke endeth, downwards vnto the lower rib; albeit that Aristotle ascribeth the whole body from beneath vnder the necke without the armes, euen to the priuities below, vnto it: yet this *Thorax* includeth the foremost and hindmost part of the body, from the necke euen to the midriff. The foremost part is in the middle

middle of it downwarde, somewhat lower and heightened againe where the breasts or paps are; euen so in the hinder part downe alongst the backe bone it is lower, and on both the sides higher towarde the shoulder blades and ribs. This place is not altogether bonie like to the skull, nor of one peece, but very orderly the one with the other intermingled, and filled with bones and muscles: so that the ribs comprehend and defend behinde and before the inward parts, euen as it were with a bulwark. And euen as this part of mans bodie is outwardly defended with bones: euen so are also the inner partes with vaines, arteries, and strong sinewes ioynd together, and fashioned very formally, thereby to take aire into it, and to yeeld it out againe, where by the hart, the lights, and other parts should be refreshed, and preserved in their estate.

Also the breast (like as other partes of man) is subiect to many kindes of maladies: as partly may be seene in the description of the rheume. For when these mischacious rheumes fall vpon the breast, then do they harne the lights, stop the winde pipes, make a man pursue, sinking breath, much coughing, and anguish: so that at the last they rid matter and filth, with many more such accidents. Whereby the lights are perished and hurt, whereof afterwards more at large and plainly shall be parcelwise discovered. And to follow our wonted method, we will first speake of the outward partes of the Breast.

Of womens breasts, milke, and of their diseases. §.1.



The womens breasts are by nature indued with two kindes of woundrous woork: The first, that though their meanes the new borne childe receiue his foode, to wit, from the blood, which though naturall warmth is altered and brought into milke.

The second, that they are a defence and coner of the hart, whereby when they warme them, they are also in like manner kept warme of the said hart. Euen as our body warmeth the clothes, so do the clothes also keepe the body warme. And this cometh more to passe in women than in men, by reason that their breasts are bigger by ods. The substance of womens breasts is a soft fleshy, by nature spongiuous, thereby to draine much moisture vnto it. Contrariwise, mens breasts are hard and clung together, especially in them that are not overcharged with fatnesse: both of them haue their nipples in the midst of their breasts: The which in women are very meet & comely instruments for to giue their new borne children their said sustentance. Otherwhiles also mens breasts do giue milke: but this is a token rather of vnable humors than otherwise. Thus to procede with womens breasts, they are subiect to diuers and sundry accidents. Otherwhiles, they growe a great deale too big, the which seemeth not onely ill, but is also sometimes an occasion of other diseases. But this cometh rather by nature or inheritance, and according to that one woman is fatter and copulenter of bodie than another. But by nature (as it hath been said) they are vessels of milke, whereby in some women it is too little, and in some too much. Wherefore it is very needefull to seeke a remedie, how in the one to lessen them, and in the other to augment them. For where milke is too abundant, there prouoketh it many kindes of diseases, to wit, that it doth clod and congeale in the breast, whereof hardnesse, heate, swellings, canker, wozmes, and such like do ensue.

Womens milke

In like manner the nipples do also chop, which bringeth thereby great anguish to them that giue sucke, and infect the children that sucke the matter and blood into their bodies, with sundry sicknesses.

Of the ouermuch growing and hanging downe of the Breasts. §.2.

When as this superfluous & ouermuch growing of the breasts happeneth in haill, young and plethorick women, there shall (in my best opinion) the nature be suffered to haue hir free course, least by taking them away, some greater mishap be procured: yet some do counsell for a sure remedie, that if one annoynt the breast with the gall of a Hare, that then they will not growe too great. Item, take Barly meale, and Coates milke, of each a like much, vinegar halfe so much, let them sethe well, and be laid on the breast: it is taken for a certaine remedie: in like manner drie Wallowes in Sallet oyle, and lay it ouer the breast.

These things following are yet stronger: Take *Hypocistis*, the pills and blossomes of *Pomegranates*,

granates, Akozne cups, and burnt lead, of each three drag. Allum, Ceruse, the iuice of Sloes, and roasted Lentils, of each one drag. Snailles with their houses burnt, and Southernewood, of each two drag. and a halfe: Make a salve thereof with the iuice of Plantaine, and therewith annoint the breast. Item, take Frankencense, Gallice, of each one ounce, sea Pulcles one drag. and a halfe, temper them together with red vineger.

All that is taught here doth not hinder onely the growing of the Breast: but also that they be not losse or hanging down: these things may also be used against the falling down of the Pother even as in the third parte shalbe further declared, in the description of the diseases of the wombe or mother.

Pilles.

Take Ferne rootes, *Sarcocolla*, and Allum, of each one drag. *Sandaraca* halfe a drag. make fine pills thereof with the iuice of Ireos, whereof take one, and fast solwer holwers after it. These Pills do not onely consume all superfluitie, but also the naturall fatnes of mans body, if they be oftentimes used.

Secondly, he or she may (if they will) strowe beaten Amber vpon all their meate: and if you will haue it worke better, put the powder in wine: for the wine carrieth the force of it very quicklie into the vaines.

Thirdly, take beaten Gals, Cipers nuts, of each five ounces, Allome prepared, Iron drasse, of each three ounces, seth them together in a good deale of Tanners lie, and wash therewith meetely warme, and make often wet therewith the hands, feete, face, and breast with a sponge. The like are you to do also on the priuie members: Or take stamped Venbane seede, seth it in wine, and then lay the wine ouer the Breasts. But I cannot counsell you to take this by reason of his great cold.

Of Milke in generall. §.3.



As much as this wonderfull alteration of the red blood into so faire and white a colour, daylie happeneth in women and other beasts, therefore is their force and might accounted the lesse: neuertheles hath God ordained it for all creatures that are borne aliue, for their first and most requisite nourishment. Of the difference of women and beasts Milke, it is not our meaning here to discourse. But concerning womens Milke, the yellow is alwaies better than the white: so is also the same more forcible in browne women then in white. In *Ponto* by the *Riuer Asteo* it is said that Milke in women & in beasts is black. But without any circumstances, we will onely discourse of the Breasts of women, and of the accidents incident vnto them.

Of the want or scarcitie of the Milke. §.4.



If women that giue sucke haue want of Milke, then must we search out the cause thereof: This may procede sometimes of some hot or drie, or of some cold qualitie of the Breast, that the blood which should alter into Milke, be dried out. Likewise both these infirmities may also be cause of some infection of the Liuer, yea and sometimes of the whole bodie: that if their complexion be too drie, that then the increasing of Milke is not to be effected, but of pure blood. Item the want of Milke may also be caused through want of meate, or by the vse of such meates as make much blood: as if they be colde and drie. Much bleeding (be it by what meanes soeuer it will) and the bad digestion of the stomacke and Liuer, soe labour, or if the child sucke too little, may be a cause of the want or scarcitie of Milke.

The signes of this infirmite are euident and apparant: as when the Breasts are swelling, and the Milke doth not issue forth. Also if the childe haue not enough to sucke. Item, whensoever that the mother which giueth sucke be fretting by nature, be leane, be not long since recovered of some long sickness, sweateth much, and is without all exercise. But if the infirmite doe procede of bad meates and drinkes, it is then good counsell that they doe eate good wholesome meate, that is light of digestion, as Hens, Partridges, Capons, young Putton, Eggs, brothes of

of good flesh, and drinke good wine: Some women are accustomed to increase their Milke, that they drinke a good draught of milke wherein fennell seed hath ben steeped.

But if the infirmity be through too much bleeding, by what means soever that the same come to passe, then are you to prevent the same through meate and necessarie remedies, as is sufficiently shewed in their proper places. But if the women be of a hot nature, as full of Cholera, then are they to drinke Barley water, and Almond milke, and to eat Cocks, Hens, and Partridges, dressed with Lettice: also use cole fruits and their seedes; fish of running waters, Burrage, Spinage, Goates milke, Cowe milke, Kids flesh, and Lambe sodden with veriuice: they are also to refraine from wrath and sorrow, and to be alwaies merrie.

But if these mothers that doe giue sucke, bee slegmaticke of nature, and haue lacke of Milke, then is their foresaid meate to be dressed with Saffron, Cucubes, or Cinnamom, and other spices: also to eat it being sodden with fennell rootes and seedes, Pistacia, and Pine apple kernels.

Whether the maladie doe then proceede of heate or not, it is alway needfull that the stomacke bee comforted: for the which these thinges may serue, as Annis and fennell seedes confected; but chiefly Caraway and Comin also confected. To eat fennell seede greene, helpeth also greatly for the augmentation of milke. Likewise Caraway seede, Annis and fennell seede sodden in water, are very commodious for this purpose: also to eat greene Parierom fasting in the morning, is much commended for the same.

And I cannot here petermit to rehearse diuers other remedies more, that are prescribed of others for the increasing of milke, like as hereafter may appeare: Take ten earth Moymes, wash them in wine, sethe them in flesh broth, straine them, and in the morning giue thereof a draught to drinke. It is also holden for certaine, that if these Moymes be dried and beaten to powder, and if you giue to the patient halfe a dragma to drinke in flesh broth, that thereby the milke will be much increased.

For this also you may take this plaister following: Take Parsley rootes, and the hearbes, Doreas suet, of each halfe an ounce, red Storax three dragmes, newe oyle of swete Almonds three ounces, Barley meale one ounce and a halfe; let the rootes sethe well, and stamp them to pap, and then mingle the rest amongst it, and lay it warme vpon the pipples, for it increaseth the milke.

Item take beaten Annis seedes two dragmes and a halfe, temper them with the broth of Colewortes, and giue it to the partie to drinke when shee goeth to bed. Item, take Barley water, sethe therein greene fennell and Dill, make it swete with Sugar, and drinke thereof at your pleasure.

The like doth I insede sodden in the broth of flesh meate and dronken. Some belaeue, that if a woman doe drinke a dragma of fine powdered Christall with Honie or Barley water, that thereby the milke will merueilously encrease. Some impute the like operation to be in the prepared Sapphire stone, if the same be tempered with water, and the Breasts wetted therewith. I account neither of them good: But they that will, may trie them, for they cannot be hurtfull.

Against the superfluitie of Milke. §.5.



It cometh oftentimes to passe when women haue lien in, that their Breasts do happen to swell through the abundance of Milke, and doe bring more inconueniences with them; namely, that sometimes the whole bodie thereby wasteth: for the greater abundance there is of Milke, so much the more blood is thereby consumed: if it be not sucked out, then doth it clod and congeale, hardneth and turneth at the last, with great paine, into an impostume.

The causes hereof are superfluous blood, much eating and drinking, and specially such kinds of meate as ingender blood. Therefore must the same be in the beginning prevented, and these kindes of meates refrained; and to eat and drinke but little. And in case there be much superfluous blood, then is the mother vaine to be opened, that thereby the blood may be drawen downwards. Otherwise, there be two meanes to take away this superfluous blood: The first meane is through the vse of Rue, and chiefly of wild Rue with their seeds, Basil and Comin stamp together, if one take of them euery day one quarter of an ounce, the same drieth the Milke.

The herbe *Rapistrum* is very forcible for the same, the which may appeare in Swine: for when they eate of this herbe, then are they rid and quit of all their milke, whereby their Digs are constrained to starue. You may also lay these hot things on their Breasts. But these following are more sure: Take Rosin as much as you thinke good, temper it with the Creame of milke, spread it on a cloth, and lay it luke warme over the Breasts.

Item, take eight ounces of Honie, and two pintes of water, let them sethe well together, and scum it well, and then wet therein a thre folded cloth, and lay it on the breasts; and when it is colde, take another: this drieth away the Milke.

Item take Chickweede, let it sethe in Goates milke, or in water, lay it over the Breasts. Also the water of Knotgras or Venice sope water, are both very good, vled as before.

Item take one drag. of Saffron, eight ounces of Palmsey, wet a cloth therein, and lay it on the Breasts, as aforesaid. Item take greene garden Mints, stampe them and mire them with oyle of Roses, and doe as before. And for this purpose is the oyle of Mints also very good.

Item take Beane meale mingled with vinegar, and sodden to a pap or grout, tempered with oyle of Roses to a plaister, and lay it on the Breasts.

Take Beane meale sower ounces, oyle of Roses and red Vineger as much as needeth for to make a plaister. Or Beane meale and of Lentils, of each two ounces, Saffron one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Roses as much as is needefull: all which aforesaid thinges doe drie by the milke.

For the clotted or congealed Milke in the Breasts. §.6.



This congealing of the Milke in the breasts may proceede as well of heat, as of colde: Or that the Milke is too grosse, and cannot haue passage through the vaines into the Breasts, or cannot be sufficiently sucked out and there congealeth, hardneth, putrifieth, and impostumateth. The tokens thereof are manifest, as hardening, inflammation, and paine in that place where the milke is congealed, that if one doe drawe or wring the Breast, yet doth it giue no

Milke at all.

To prevent therefore this congelation, women must keepe themselves very sober in eating and drinking, vse most meates that may make subtile milke. For this is requisite, Mints, Parsley, Saffron, and Cinnamon in their meates, and their drinke must be neat white wine, and vse commonly this following for the congealed milke.

Take grated white bread as much as you wil, new Milke, and oyle of Roses, of each a like much, for to make pap thereof; let these sethe together, and lay it warme vpon the Breasts: it dissolueth knots and swellings that proceede of congealed milke. Item if the milke doe paine any bodie, then take Cozke, kindle it well, and then poune it to powder, temper it with oyle of Roses and a little Vineger, and therewith annoint the Breasts. Or take of the fat of a kid one ounce and a halfe, Liquid Styrax one ounce, Wormewood one ounce and a halfe, Comin and Dill seedes, of each one drag. Annis seedes halfe a drag. Barley meale halfe an ounce, oyle of Wormewood one ounce and a halfe; temper the rest amongst it being beaten small; and lastly put a little Saffron to it, and vse it as aforesaid.

This salve following is very good for to dissolue the congealed milke: Take Dears suet thre quarters of an ounce, liquid Styrax one ounce, Wormewood, Comin, and Dill seedes, of each one ounce, oyle of Wormewood, Duckes grease, of each one ounce and a halfe: make an ointment or plaister thereof, and at the last ad a scruple of Saffron to it.

If this congealing of milke be with an inflammation, and that it were needfull to cole more: then mire the mulcilage of fletwort, of fenegræke, and Purcelane seedes together, of each a like much: make of them with molten Ware an ointment, and therewith annoint the Breasts. Item take Chickweede without busing it, applie it warme to the Breasts. Item take the iuice of Coleworts, of Nightshade, and of Coziander, of each a like quantitie: This being mingled together, lay it with a cloth warme vpon the Breasts. Also beate Rose vineger and oyle of Roses together, vse it as before. Likewise Colewort leaues or their iuice mixed with Saffron easeth the paine. Take fenegræke meale, and make a plaister of it with oyle of Violets and Vineger.

But

But if the Milke be augmented by extream colde, then take water and wine together, and lay it on the Breasts. D: boile Cammomill, Melilot, Fennell seedes, Annis seedes, Will seedes, Fenegræke, Linseedes, Southernwood, Ginger and Basil, which you will, and vse it as hath been said, especially if there be not an Ague with it. That which is sodden maieft thou beate, and with the oyle of Cammomill make a plaister of it, and so applie it. The Veuercod and his oyle is very good for the same purpose.

An especiall and good plaister. Take the crums of white bread, Barley meale, Mustard seedes, Fennell, and Hollihocke rootes, roasted vnder the ashes, of each a like much, pounce them well together, and with the oyle of Cammomill, make a plaister of them, and applie it warme on the Breastes: it softneth the hard knots, dissolueth them, and suffereth them not to congeale againe.

Item take Spints, and make a plaister thereof with white bread and Vineger. But if so be that this congealing growe to an impostume, then make the Breast moyst againe (as is already declared) with warme wine and water: also with the foresaid pap of Spints and crums of white bread: or Myrthe mirtle with Saffron and Bread. But if this impediment happen to breake, then cleanse it and heale it as you doe other tumors; whereof shortly hereafter you shall haue a sufficient declaration.

For the hardnes and inflammation of womens breasts. §.7.

Whereas the Breasts, not through the congealing of the milke, but through other occasions chance to be hard and inflamed, the which may sone be felt with the hand, or discerned with the eye: then may you vse for the same any of these things following, which you will.

First lay Rice about fower howers long to steepe in wine, afterwards seethe it well, and lay it on the Breast: D: temper Rice meale with oyle of Violets, and the white of an eg, putting thereto a little dissolved Tragagant. Item take sifted Beane meale and Barley meale, of each one ounce, Linseed meale and Fenegræke meale, of each half an ounce, temper it to a salme with oyle of Roses: Lastly, ad thereto one scruple of Saffron, spreade it on a cloth, and so lay it ouer the hardnes and the whole Breast. Item take Barley meale and Beane meale, of each three ounces, beaten Cornin half an ounce, oyle of Violets one ounce, Waxes suet one ounce and a quarter; make thereof a plaister with the water of Sorrell, and so this is also to be vsed that which is described in the first §. of the congealing of Milke through heate.

This plaister following is exceeding good: Take the flowers of Malloves, Violets, Celendine, Daisses, and Cynquefoile, of each a handfull; let them seethe together in sufficient water, vntill there remaine 8. ounces: then straine it, and mingle it with wheaten meale, to the consistance or perfection of a thicke pap: then temper with it Hens grease, or Swines suet, and let it seethe together vnto a plaister. This must you spreade on a cloth as thicke as a finger, and lay it morning and euening vpon the inflamed and soze Breast.

Another. Take Beane meale and powdered Spints, of each three quarters of an ounce, powder of red Spints half an ounce, prepared Coriander and Pease meale, of each one dragme, Roses half a drag. two ounces of fresh butter, muscilage of Linseed one ounce, muscilage of Fenegræke three quarters of an ounce, Shepes suet & Ducks grease, of each one ounce, the yolke of an eg, oyle of Turpentine half an ounce, Saffron three greines: temper them all together and make a salme therof. Item take the crums of two or three white loaves (according as their bignes is) Sallet oyle three ounces, pounced Hollihocke rootes one ounce and a half, Fenegræke meale half an ounce, two yolkes of eggs, oyle of Roses and of Cammomill, of each one ounce mingle them all together, and lay them vpon the Breasts.

Item take earth wormes as many as you will, wash them with wine, and burne them to powder in a tight stoppt pot, temper this powder with oyle of Roses and of Lillies, and therewith annoynt the Breast, and couer it ouer with sattie Shepes woll wrapped in a cloth. This maturateth very well and swageth the paine. This powder is also highly commended, taken with some sweete things, against the wormes in the bellie, the waight of a drag. and a half, and is in like sorte very good against the yelowe Jaundies.

Of the tumours or swelling of the Breast. §.8.

Take broad Plantaine and Purslaine, of each one handfull, stampe them to pap, Cammomill, Pelilot, of each one ounce, Barley meale fower ounces; temper them being small with the oyle of Violets and Roses amongst the iuice, vntill it waye to be a thicke salue. And lastly, mingle amongst it halfe an ounce *Gummi Helenij* dissolued in strong vineger, spread it on a cloth, and lay it on the swelling.

Item take Ballet oyle and Colw dung, mingle them and straine them thzough a cloth; then put fenegræke meale amongst it, vntill it will serue for a plaister.

Or take Peache leaues onely; or as much Rue with them; stampe them to powder, let them sethe in water vntill it be a pap: lay it on the swelling: it easeth the paine, and ripeneth the impostume.

This salue is also highly commended: Take Plantaine and Gallowes, of each one handfull, the lesser Houslecke five handfals; let all be sodden greene vntill it be a growt, straine it out, then ad vnto it thre ounces of the oyle of Roses, beaten Cammomill and Pelilot, of each one ounce, Barley meale fower ounces, *Edellum* dissolued in Vineger one quarter of an ounce: let them sethe together vnto the consistence of a plaister.

Of the Impostumation of the Breasts. §.9.

These impostumations do proceed of two speciall causes: First, of congealing of the milke whereof is witten alreadie: Secondly, of other bad rheumes that sincke into these parts and there putrifie, breeding there diuers accidents: as namely, the Canker, Ringworme, Gangrene, and such like. According to the nature of the foresaide rheume, it happeneth also quickly, that women which haue not their Termes, that their Breasts doe impostumate by reason of the abundance of blood, that taketh his course thither.

The signes of this grieve are, that the woman hath not conceived nor can giue sucke, that this swelling doth not deuide it selfe into many places, but remaineth in one place onely: If it be caused of blood, then is the Breast full of paine, with beatings and rednes. Or if it come of Cholera, then is the paine greater, the Breast redder, and yelloyish, and with greater agues and more heate then that which proceedeth of blood. If it be of *Phlegma*, then is there small paine, and no Ague with it: the Breast is white, with a small Tumor.

For to remedie this must the cause be knowen: If it proceede of blood, then first of all open the mother vaine on the same side where the soze is, for to withdraw the matter thereby. But if there be any want of the Termes or flowes, then are they to be prouoked by all meanes possible; and in the augmenting of the swelling must the Liuer vaine be opened, or at leastwise the Vedian: afterwards temper oyle of Roses with Vineger, and wet a cloth therein, and lay it fower times a day vpon it: You may also sethe Cammomill therein. Of these things following you may vse which you will.

Take Beane meale, fenegræke meale, Linsæde meale, and crums of white bread, of each one ounce, Pyrrhe halfe an ounce, Saffron one drag. and a halfe, roasted Hollihorke rootes fower ounces, fower yolkes of eggs, oyle of Violets, and Linsæde oyle, of each thre quarters of an ounce: if it be too hard, then make it softer with water, and vse it till that the swelling be ripened. Or make this following: Take five ounces of clarified honie, Barley meale two ounces and a half, two yolkes of eggs, Pyrrhe and *Sarcocolla*, of each halfe a dragme, let the Honie and the meale sethe together vntill it be metely thick, stir then the yolkes of the eggs amongst it, and at last the powder. But if you will haue it more cooling, put thereto thre ounces of the oyle of Roses, and honie of Roses fower ounces, and five ounces more of Barley meale. This is a wonderfull plaister for to consume and clesse all swellings, not onely of the Breasts, but also of all other members.

Item, take Treos, as much as you please, cut it small, then put as much oyle of Roses thereon as will couer the Treos roote, let it sethe very well, and straine it; afterwards put one halfe ounce of Treos vnto it, oyle of Violets fower ounces, Ceruse, Mace, and Pasticke, of each one drag. and therewith annoint the Breast.

Vnguentum
de Apio
Mundifica-
tium.

When as then this Tumor is sufficiently matured, and will breake out, then make Pap of Wheat meale, Sallet oyle, and common water. If it will not breake out of it selfe, then is it to be opened with a Lanset, and afterwards cleanse it with Hony, the iuice of Smalage, yolks of Eggs and Turpentine, and a Salve made thereof. *¶* Take the common salve *Vnguentum de Apio mundificatium*, the which is thus to be prepared: Take clarified Hony, and the cleare iuice of Smalage of each one ounce, Wheat meale thre quarters of an ounce, temper them together: This is also good for all fistulaes and Carbuncles. This Salve is to be vsed for any kind of soze, with a Tent or Lint for to cleanse the same.

But if this Tumor be caused of cold, then are all warming oyles to be vsed thereto, as of Lillyes, Spike, and Beuerd, and such like; And you may lay thereon water of Hony suckles, whereby diuers are holpen: but washed with water of *Cardus Benedictus*, and the powder of the same strowed thereon, helpeth aboue all others.

All things that are ordained in the first part, the 13. Chapter and 1. §. against the cleannes of the mouth, are also commodious for this: For to mature, take fire fat figs, greene Cresses, Dock rootes, Hollyhockrootes, Lillyrootes, Fenegreekemeale, & Linseed meale, of each one ounce, let them sethe well to a pap, stampe it well together, and temper it with thre ounces of Barrowes grease, this swageth the paine, & ripeneth exceedingly. When as this impostume is sufficiently ripened, open it with a Lanset in the lower part of the same, or with a Cozle, afterwards cleanse and heale it, as you do all other impostumes.

For the Canker in the Breasts. §. 10.



hitherto hath only been spoken of the impostumes and tumors of the breasts, whereof otherwhiles do spring and grow the Canker, fistulaes, and other inconueniences: but here will we only discourse particularly of the Canker, woyme, and fistula of the breasts. For the soze which the Chirurgians call the woyme, this is their common plaister: Take Rye and Wheate meale of each alike much, temper amongst it about one third part of burnt Copper powdred small, and make a dough thereof with Rose water, spread it on a cloth, and lay it warme thereon; but this auayleth not much, a better way must be taken to cure this malady, and so to withstand this Canker or woyme. first, it is very necessary that the patient at least thrice a moneth be purged of melancholicke humors, that he keepe a good dyet in meate and drinke, and vse alwayes such things as are somewhat cooling, and very much moistening. Also he must eschue all sharpe, salt, windie, and fat things, and such as are some corrupted in the stomacke, and chiefly from all that increaseth *Choleram*, and *Melancholiam*. For to prevent this, prepare this drinke folowing.

Take *Thymus* one quarter of an ounce, the rootes of Polypody and Sene, of each one drag, the seedes of Gourds, Cucumbers, Pompeons beaten, and Violets, of each one drag, and a halfe, Cinamome, yellow Rapesede, of each one scruple, let them sethe altogether in eight ounces of Hopwater euen to the halfe, strayne it, afterward take of this cleare decoction and temper therewith thre ounces of the whay of Goats milke, and so drinke it warme, and fast fixe howles after it.

Secondly make this plaister folowing: Take Fenegreek and Barly meale, of each two ounces, Gallowes 3. handfuls, of great Houselæke 8. handfuls, of smal Houselæke 4. handfuls, of the oyle of Roses fixe ounces, brayed in a leaden morter: sethe the herbs in whay, afterwards beate them altogether to pay, and temper the other things amongst it. Then let it sethe againe in fixe ounces of the water of Nighthade vntill it be sodden away. The patient is first to annoynt the soze with oyle of Roses that is brayed in a leaden morter, and afterwards let him lay this plaister folowing vpon the soze, and the foresayd oyle must be also prepared.

Take one pound of the oyle of Roses, put it into a leaden morter, and bray it with a leaden pestell thre or foure howles long. This plaister colet, swageth the payne, and preserveth out from all other corrosion.

Thirdly, if this Canker corode any further, then must it by two manner of wayes be hindered: first, by laying somewhat on the soze: secondly, by applying somewhat about the soze. The first shall be prepared as folloiweth.

Take Barly meale foure ounces, of the oyle of Violets, oyle of Roses, prepared with lead,

of each thre ounces, foure whites of Eggs, prepared Tutty two ounces, Bloudstones that be stamped tenne times in a leaden morter, with the water of water Lillies one ounce, afterwards bray the whites of Eggs a great while with the oyle tempered amongst the Barly meale: and lastly, the *Tinia* and Bloudstone, and then therewith annoynt small taints, and lay them on the soze.

The Second.

TAke of the foresayd oyle of Roses prepared with lead one ounce and a halfe, the iuice of Nightshade two ounces, Starch one ounce, fine Bolus one ounce and a halfe, sealed earth two ounces, temper them altogether in a leaden morter, and therewith annoynt round about the Cancre or disease of the breast.

Of the Fistula of the Breasts. §. 11.



If this or any other soze of the breast would turne to a fistula, then looke what hath been sayd in the first part the seventh Chapter and 11. §. of the fistula of the eyes: likewise that which is written in the third Chapter and fift part of the impostumes of the arsegut, wherein you shall finde sufficient remedies.

Of the Clefts or chops of the Nipples. §. 12.



Ake fresh molten suet of young Lambs powred on water, and afterwards washed with water of Roses as much as you please, and therewith annoynt the nipples.

Item, take Gumme of the Cherrie tree, and Frankincense, of each one ounce, Mace and Gumme of each halfe an ounce: melt the Mace with one ounce of fresh Butter or Barrowgrease, then mingle the rest amongst it, and vse it as aforesayd.

Take oyle of Violets and oyle of Eggs, of each thre drammes, Harts suet and Goats suet, of each one quarter of an ounce, make as much as is needefull for a salve.

Vare before in the first part, the tenth Chapter and 1. §. there are set forth two good salues, that do also serue well for this purpose.

Take a white Lilly leafe out of his oyle, and lay it on the nipples, it is very good.

All these foresayd meanes cannot hurt the child, although it do sucke at the same breasts.

What the haire on the breasts doth signifie. §. 13.



The Philosophers do agree altogether in this, that all they that haue no haire on their breasts, or very little, are more timorous, fearefull, and much slower of nature then they be that haue much haire vpon their breasts, who are at all times more manly, stout, and couragious.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Back in generall.



In the vpper parts of the Rump is the backbone, which (as is sayd) standeth deepe into the bodie about the shoulders and ribs: but on both the sides is the backe somewhat higher. This beginneth at the neck, and reacheth downewards euen to the fundament. Foure and twenty sundry bones are imputed vnto it, the which the Grekes do call *Spondyli*, and the Latinists *Vertebrae*, and in our language the chine or back bones. The neck hath seuen which are lesse then all

the rest.

The back hath twelue: five stand also close to the loynes, whereon the last and vtmost pæce of the backbone is fastned, which is called the Rump, in Latine *Cauda*, or the Tayle, which is torped together of thre pæces, and is a Cristle or Tendzell.

The foresayd peeces of the backbones are all hollow within, filled with marrow, the which is not much unlike the bzaynes in substance, and yet an ossifying and beginning of all hard sinewes.

This substance of the bzaynes may be assimilated to a plentiful fountaine, whereof many small brookes and diuers streames do flowe, which we call sinewes, whereby we haue both motion and feeling.

These sinewes are about threescore, which do come all of them (each through his owne passage) from the backbone, and spread themselves into all the members of mans body, where they cause both mouing and feeling.

From them do the hands and fete, all parts of the face, and the bowels (the instruments of the voyce only excepted) receiue their sinewes, whereby they do moue and are holden together.

Therefore both it also happen, that whensoever any of these chinebones, through the which the sinewes do passe, are wrinched or bzused, either by falling, striking, or any other way, some parts are thereby lamed, lose their sence and feeling, and otherwhiles deadly diseases are thereby procured, euen as it is mentioned in diuers places of this booke, so that we purpose not to discourse here of any other thing, but of the paine or ache in the backe, and of the crookednes of the same.

Of the payne in the Backe. §. 1.



His paine in the backe proceedeth of Rheumes that fall into the sinewes of the muscles, or of great labour, and such like occasions, for the which, these things following are good.

Take Bugwort, Helilot, and Cammomill, of each one handfull and a halfe, Helilot seedes heated in a pan, foure ℥. the herbs and floures chopt small, mixe them altogether in a little bagge, and lay them warme vpon the backbone, vse it often and that fasting.

Afterwards, annoynt the backbone with this salue: Take oyle of Spike, oyle of Lillies, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of Cammomill and Dill, of each one ounce, Saffron, Lauender spike, Spadder, and Agrimonie, of each one dragma, Pastick and Squinant, of each one scruple, Vase as much as is requisite for to make a salue.

Item, sette Bepe in your meate, which draweth the noysome and grieuous matter out of the necke, it draweth also away all paine in the shoulders and backbones maruellously, if it be swallowed in the sayd bryth.

In like manner take Siluermountaine seade, sette it in water, and drinke thereof twice or thrice awaake, euery time thre or foure ounces, for it is very good against all wearines, and paine in the backe and reynes.

Annoynt the backbone with Beares grease: Also the oyle of a fore is effectuell against all paines of the backbone, reynes, kidneies, and Colvt, the which is thus to be prepared.

Uncase or fley off the skinne of a young fore, take out his bowels, and cast him in fountaine water, and seawater or salt water. Put thereto thre pounds of Sallet oyle, Salt thre ounces. When it is almost sod, then put vnto it Dill and Thymu. of each twelue ounces, let it sette together till the fleshy fall from the bones, and when all the water is sodden away, then strayne it.

The oyle of Bricks, which is described in the first part, is also passing good for this, either by it selfe, or when it is tempered with some other things.

Of the paine in the backbone that proceedeth from the kidneies, of the grauell and other things moe, shall be spoken elsewhere.

Of the crooked Backe. §. 2.



Here are thre sortes of this: The first doth come befoze, the second behinde, and the third groweth on the left or right side. Childzen are moze subiect to this disease then aged folke, by reason that their bones be softer, easier to be wrested & wzong out of their naturall place. This happeneth of inward, and outward causes: The outward be falles, blowes, stripes, ill handling of yong childzen, racking, and such

Oyle of a
Fore.

such like bad dealing with yong tender children. The inward causes doe come of the Crampe, contraction of the sinewes, abundant winde, rheumes, swellings and such like, that settle themselves in the backe bone, and doe thrust and wench awrie the yong weake bones.

The signes of the Crampe, that cometh through great inanition, is manifested and apparent by the consumption and faintnes of the whole body. The signes of the windines are, if the patient that hath the croke Backe haue much griping and contractions in the Backe. If there be any impostume appoaching, then is there great paine in the backe, or in some certaine place of the same, with a strong Ague and vehement pulse. But if there be but one of the Backe bones wrested out of his place, then must it needes follow, that the ribs which are fastened therein, be also drawn ouerthwart, whereby the body must be crouked, and the shoulder blades raised, the which maketh an vnhandsome beast and vncomely bodie, as daillie experience teacheth vs.

Howe to prevent this mischance betimes, it is first counselled for all yong folkes and children, as followeth: so that at all times according to the age (as much as is possible) euery one may know how to frame himselfe thereafter.

Take Comin, Caruway, Fenell, and Annis seedes, of each two handfull, Rue seedes three handfulls, Bran six handfulls; make it all together very warme in a pan on the hot ashes, put it then all together into a dye bag, and lay it vpon the place where the paine is: and when the place is well warmed, then annoint it with this salve following. Take musilage of fenegreek and of Linseed, of each one ounce, oyle of white Camelina, oyle of sweete Almonds, oyle of blew flower deluce, of each one ounce and a halfe, Plaster de Muscilaginibus, (which in the first part the first chapter and seventh S. is described) solwer ounces; melt this with Ware as much as is needfull: Lastly, ad vnto them two scruples of Saffron: doe this solwer daies together. Afterwards must the croke Backe be bounden together with bolsters and other things, as neede shall require, and renew the binding euery morning: Or els without putting the childe to paine, doe this six dayes one after an other; and this being done, returne to the laying on of the bag, and annoynting with the foresaid salve, which shall be also vsed solwer dayes together: afterwards lay this plaster following, vpon the Backe bone and shoulder that is wrenched.

Take of the foresaid plaster de Muscilaginibus two ounces, Oxycrocei plaster one ounce and a halfe, spread these vpon a cloth or leather, and lay this plaster thereon, binde it very carefully as aforesaid, and let it lie so six dayes without opening of it. The Oxycrocei plaster is also good for this by it selfe, and profitable, which you may also finde allwaies ready at the Apothecaries, like as is here described after three manner of wayes.

The plaster of Oxycroceum is thus prepared: Take Ware, Pitche, Rosin, Saffron, of each Oxycroceum one ounce and a halfe, Turpentine, Galbanum Ammoniacum, Pyrrhe, Frankincense, and Pasticke, of each half an ounce, Vineger one ounce, dissolve therein the Ammoniacum and Galbanum, then sethe them so long untill they become thicke, and untill that the vineger be sodden away, then melt herewith the Ware, Pitche, and Turpentine, but the Pasticke, Frankincense, and Pyrrhe shall you temper herewith first beaten small: when this is mingled all together, then strowe the Saffron therein, and then mingle them all together very well.

Item, take Ammoniacum, Sagapenum, Galbanum, of each halfe an ounce, Pitch solwer ounces, Rosine, Ware, of each six ounces, Pasticke, Frankincense, and Pyrrhe of each one quarter of an ounce, Turpentine three ounces, and Saffron halfe an ounce; and make it vp as aforesaid.

Oxycroceum Vigonis.

Take eight ounces of Sallet oyle, Hollihocke rootes, the lesser Consolida rootes, of each halfe a handfull, Pyrrhe, Frankincense, of each one drag. Roses one drag, and a halfe: you are to cut and sethe the herbes and rootes in red wine and water untill halfe be consumed: straine them hard out, and in this decoction boile the oyle, put thereto also Buckes suet two ounces: afterwards sethe it againe so long untill all the moysture be sodden away, then put thereto three ounces of Lyscharge of golde, Bolus, sealed earth, of each two ounces, red Lead one ounce and a quarter, Ware one ounce, and whilest it is hot ad vnto it two ounces of Turpentine, Pasticke one drag, and lastly, whilest it is soft, put thereto one ounce and a halfe of powdered Saffron, as is aforesaid. This last is marueilously vsed of the Chirurgians. They are all

of them not only good against the croke back, but also for all fractures, and other members which are pained, and they mollifie and consume all hardnes.

It is also good for these children sometimes to drinke the water of Southernwood, of Hollyhocks, of blew floure deluce, of each one ounce tempered, and to vse thre dayes after one scruple of this powder following: Take halfe an ounce of the seedes of Smalage, one dragma of Cummin, Parsly seedes, Annis seedes, and Licorice mixed, of each two scruples.

And you may giue the patient to eate after meate, a peece of the Confection of *Pistacium* or Cinamome.

And there is to be strowed vpon his meate some of this powder following: Take halfe an ounce of good Cinamome, Licorice, and Hollyhocke seedes, of each halfe a scruple, Safron one scruple, stampe them all together, and mingle them one amongst another.

If this patient be but ten or twelue yerres olde, then were it very good twice in a weeke, alwaies before supper, that he swallowe one of these pills following. Take prepared Aloe one dragma and a halfe, *Bellinum* halfe a dragma, Smalage seedes halfe a scruple, and make seven pills of a drag.

But if on an aged bodie there growe a croke backe, then must he vse the pills of *Hermodectilus*, *Feride*, or *Cochia*, to purge withall. All the meates that he is to vse, must be hot vnto the second, and drie in the first degre, therefore must his chamber be alwaies kept with a fire of fir wood, Juniper wood and such like, that must burne therein, & to fume the same with Bay leaues, white Spints, *Pennirovall*, *Styrax*, *Laudanum*, *Cipers* wood, *Gallia Muscata*, *Sandaraca*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Frankincense*, *Pasticke*, and such like, each alone, or tempered together. He must forbeare cloadie weather, raine, and dewes, and vse no exercise: also he must not sleepe much, ne lie much on the same side of the croke backe, and he must refraine lying vpon his backe, that his breath be not thereby painefull to be drawen; watching is also ill for him.

Further, he must forbeare all that is made of meale: but kids flesch,utton, Hares, Kiddeare, and yong Beares flesch are very good for him, and specially if the same be drest with garden Spints, wilde Spints, wild Thyme, Parsley, and Balme.

Offoules these be good for him, Hens, Capons, Bullets, yong Pigeons, Frelants, Partridges, Turtle doues, & wild Pigeons, either boyled or roasted, being drest with the foresaid herbs. He may also eate roasted Duckes, and also all field foules: but Quails (by reason of their moisture) he shall leaue. Fish is not good for him, and especially those that be sodden, except they be drest with the foresaid herbs: but being roasted they are for his disease most mete, except Eeles, Crabs, Mussels, Mussels, the which verie seldome are to be vsed: and he must forbeare all Beanes.

All herbes of colde natures are hurtfull for him, as Lettice, Burrage, Purslane, Spinage &c.

Of all seedes he may vse them that are of a warme nature, as Comin, Caraway, Annis seedes, Parsley seede, Cardamome, and Greines.

Touching rootes, the wilde and tame yellowe Rapes or Turneps, and also all other Turneps may be vse: but he must beware of Onions, Garlike, and Radishes.

No herbes of colde natures are mete for his Sallets, neither yet Capers; but *Rapunculus*, Sperage, Hop sprigs may passe well enough, drest rather with wine then with vinegar. Salted or powdered Merince, the iuice of Limons, and iuice of Oranges be tollerable; but he must beware of eager vinegar, and Pomegranate wine. He may vse all manner of spire (but soberly alwaies in his meate) he must forbeare all colde and netue fruit, as Apples, Peares, Cherries, Peaches &c. but in the stede thereof he may eate Raisons, dried figs, Almonds, and Halleluts.

His drinke must be small Beere, or some thin well savoring wine, he may water the wine with some water, wherein Cinnamom or Licorice hath been decocted. But about all other, it were good for him (if he can come by it) for to vse from the middest of September to the middest of March, this drinke following, or at least wise temper his wine therewith.

Take Well water seven quartes, clere Honie sower and twenty ounces, Ammy flowers, and Marierom gentle, of each one drag. Basil seede halfe a drag. Artichocke rootes thre drag. Rue seedes two scruples, Shaving of Licorice and Annis seedes, of each thre drag. let the water and Hony seethe together till there be about two quartes sodden away, letting it remaine still all a night

a night, and in the morning make it hot againe, and strayne it through a cloth, preserve it bring stopt close, so; it will do him good.

The learned do give counsell accordingly, that every such patient must purge twice a yeare, to wit, in the beginning of Sommer, and beginning of Winter, and that according as a learned Physitian shall advise him.

Further, for this disease of the crooke backe are two things to be regarded: first, that it do not increase: secondly, how to take away the same. For which, this plaister following is to be made.

Take oyle of Cammonill, oyle of Lillies, and *Albea salve*, of each one ounce, oyle of fores one ounce and a half, oyle of Spike one quarter of an ounce, soft Stirax one quarter of an ounce, Cyper, Sage, Parierum gentle, Squinant, Stechas, Wormewood, Pelilot, and Linseed, of each halfe a handfull, prepared Earthwormes, and Putmegs, of each one ounce, Hollyhocks, halfe an ounce, sethe these all together in a pinte of Wine vnto the halfe, then straine it through a cloth and make a hard plaister thereof with Mace and Turpentine.

But before this plaister is to be layd vpon it, the crookeback must be well fomented with this following: Take Hollyhocks two handfulls, Calmus halfe an ounce, Pallowes, Cammonill, Will, Linseed, and Pelilot, of each one handfull, Spike, Squinant, Fennell, Cumin, Wormewood, and Stechas, of each halfe a handfull, cut them small, and let them sethe well.

And it were also very good that he vseth these pills all the yeare, take prepared Aloe one ounce, *Opopanaxum*, *Sagapenum*, of each halfe a dragme, temper them all with the iuice of Roses, take one pill thereof about the fourth day every euening before meate: and if so be that he do take twice a moneth the waight of one dragme of these pills one howre after supper, it is very good for him and god aduise.

These confections following shall also be prepared for him: Take Betony, Stechas, Parierum gentle, Beldion, Spallick, Rue seede, and Cinamome, of each one quarter of an ounce, pouned Calmus three dragnes, rootes of Artichocks one dragme and a halfe, red and white Beben, Saffron and Putmegs, of each three scruples, Licorice foure scruples, Honey of confection Ginger twelue ounces, and white Sugar two ounces, whereof take throughout the whole yeare before meate the quantity of a putmeg. And this is a speciall meane whereby this disease may be holpen. But if the patient cannot take of it every day, yet is he notwithstanding to vse the same every third day, or twice a weeke.

In especiall
remedy as
gainst the
crookeback.

Many things commodious for the crookeback.

Secondly all these things following are good for this crookeback, Zeduarie chetoes, or layd vpon the outside, likewise Calmus, be it confection, or otherwise vset, Centoie is very good for all infirmities of the Shewes, howsoeuer they be.

Gumme *Sagapenum* in manner of a plaister layd thereon, or annoynted therewith, is very forcible for it. Pusilage of fenegreke made with lye, and the shoulders and all the backbone rubbed therewith. Sulpher bathes alone haue oftentimes brought that to passe, through a hole whereby the vapour may come against the backe. The decoction of Sperage being dronken, is very good for this.

A good salve. Take oyle of Wycks one ounce, oyle of *Cosm* halfe an ounce, the plaister *Cerumen Nicolai* three ounces, temper them together, and therewith annoynt the backbone for the space of one whole moneth when one goeth to bed. Then couer it with Shæpes wooll.

Betony sodden in all meates is very commodious, or a dragme thereof powdred dronken with Honey water. The rootes of Bionie sodden, and the decoction thereof vset for Clusters, is also very good, and the whole backbone fomented or bathed therewith.

Of the shoulder blades. 5. 3.

The shoulder blades do suffer sometimes great paine, and that through many kinde of causes, like as through any cholerick or phlegmatick humours that be mingled with some blond, and fall downe into the shoulder blades, and there prouoke paine, that spreadeth it selfe afterwards into other members, which is knowne by feeling and handling of it. For this, make

make this salve following: Take oyle of yellow Violets one ounce and a halfe, of *Coffin* one ounce, burnt Iuozie, red and white Saunders and Roses of each one dragma, Starch one ounce and a halfe, Saffron one scruple, yolks of eggs two scruples, stamp all small that are to be stamped, and temper it in a mortar.

Item, take Huselage of fleawort, Starch, of each one ounce and a halfe, Saffron one scruple, Roses, seedes of Plantaine, Sozell, and small Endiue, of each halfe a dragma. and the yolks of two eggs, stamp all these small together, and then make them into a salve, and when you will vse it, then let the shoulders be first well rubbed, and warme the salve. These things be also very good for all paines of the backbone and of the kidneis. For this also serueth the salues of *Aragon*, and *Marciaton*, oyle of Saffron, oyle of fiores, and Badgers greace, of each alike much tempered together.

In like manner also the oyle of *Pieretrum*, oyle of *Euphorbio* tempered together, or each apart, do serue well for all olde paines, for they are very hote. Further, all that is very commodious which purgeth the head; Cupping, or bores set on the shoulders, being annoynted with this salve following: take vnripe Sallet oyle one ounce, oyle of *Euphorbium* halfe an ounce, parched salt beaten small one quarter of an ounce, and temper all together. If there come any such paine with any vehemencie whereby the sleepe is hindered, then take oyle of sweete Almonds, oyle of Cammomill, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of yellow Violets one ounce and a halfe, Ducks greace, Badgers greace, and Saffron, of each one dragma, make a salve thereof with Ware. Item, take Cammomill, Pellit, Will seede, *Ameos*, Balme, and Harierum gentle, of each one ounce, let it sethe well, and put it together in a bladder, or (which is more commodious) into a sponge, and so lay it warme vpon it. Or take Colewort leaues, Betony and Balme, of each thre handfuls, Beane meale two ounces, Wheate meale and Linseed meale, of each one ounce and a halfe, Saffron one dragma, and two yolks of eggs: Sethe the herbs untill they be soft, then stamp them altogether, and lay them on altogether, as is done with other plaisters.

Of the Ribbes. §. 4.



After the sayd backbone and shoulder blades, there followeth amongst the outward members of the uppermost parts of the body the Ribs, whereof by nature there are twelue on each side, which is together foure and twenty. The uppermost foureteene do mete together, whereby they ioine themselves in the backbone and on the brest, and become as it were one bone. The lowermost foure of each side are named the short ribs, and there is not one man amongst a thousand, that hath 11. or 13. ribs in one side.

When as then the Ribs through any outward cause, shall be thrust or broken out of their naturall places, or else rotten through any long continued impostume, the Chirurgeians must be entertained for them, vnto whome I commit them; yet notwithstanding, these two remedies following are highly commended. If then any body haue broken or sprung a rib, then take *Campane* rootes, roasted amongst the ashes, beate them to grout, raw Honey, Butter, Hogs grease, and *Alibea* salve, of each a like much, let it sethe well together: Secondly vse one of the foresaid plaisters of *Oxyrococo*, and lay it ouer the ribs. Under and about the ribs commeth the most perilous sicknes *Pleuritis*, which is the *Pleurisie*, of *Pleura*, whereby the *Greekes* call the ribs, whereof we will now write.

Of the Pleurisy, *Pleuritis*, a sicknes, with great pricking in the side. §. 5.



This sicknes is described by *Galen* as followeth. *Pleuritis* is a paine of the side or of the ribs, which is spread abroad in the skinned that couereth the ribs, even to the shoulders, with Agues, pricking paine, cold, short breath and cough. He doth further describe the same sicknes in another manner, saying: the *Pleurisie* commeth in the skinned that couereth the ribs, with an inflammation of all the muscles thereabouts, with a strong Ague and with such paine, as though all the whole ribs were thrust through with bodkins, with shortnes of breath, slowe pulse, which afterwards

wards increaseth, with a vehement cough, sometimes without auoyding any thing, and otherwhyles by casting out of bloudy matter.

These manners of Pleurifies the learned do call *Incolitas Pleuritides*, which is vnrripe Pleurifies. It seemeth also sometimes that this paine doth stretch it selfe euen to the thyoate, and is alwayes with a strong ague and pricking in the side, whereby there followeth of necessitie a shortnes of bzeath. But this Pleurifie bringeth with it no spettle, and there is no other difference betwene it and the other Pleurifie, the which may be only differenced thereby, that at the last nothing is coughed vp.

All they then that haue the Pleurifie without spetting, they will be plagued with a dry cough. Their pulse is faint, and sheweth no inflaming in the bzeast, and there is no strong Ague, nor any combzous bzeath therewith: and when one doth trying the patient in the place of the paine, then will he feele paine; and by reason that there is no humoz which may be enflamed in the bzeast, from the beginning, but in the outward muscles only, which humoz being afterwards ripened, sheweth it selfe outwardly as an impostume, the which may be opened outwardly. Thus much testifieth *Galen* in this matter, whereby his successors do conclude, that there be two kinds of Pleurifies, to wit, a right and a bastard Pleurifie. Of the true Pleurifie hath here been spoken: the bastard Pleurifie is called that, which is opened on the outside. But we will in these and moe other subtile descriptions not vse many circumstances.

First, there are many causes of these Pleurifies. The outward causes may be vnnaturall heate or cold, much exercise, so:thern winds, euen as these sicknesses do raigne moze in winter then sommer, superfluous drinking of cold water or Wine, carying of heauie burthens, falling, straying, striking, and after great heate to come suddenly into the cold, as also by drinking much Spult. The inward causes procede by repletion of the whole body, and alwayes most (about all other humozs) through *Cholera*, afterwards of bloud, thirdly of *Phlegma*, and very seldome of *Melancholia*.

In like manner, winde may bzeede this false Pleurifie, the which may hereby be knowne, to wit, through anguish of the side without coughing, or with some small cough: and if the place be trying or touched, then will it cause paine, that so swelleth otherwhyles and rancleth, that it breaketh out outwardly, or that it must be opened on the outside.

The true tokens of the Pleurifie you heard out of *Galen*: olwe wo:ds: but that it may be knowne of what humozs it procedeth, is to be marked by these wo:ds following; in that of *Cholera* the vzin is yelloiw and thin, the pulse hard, swift, and continuing, the paine is great and pricking, the whole body yellowish, the spettle mingled with a little rednes, there is much thirst appoaching, with bitternes of the mouth, and no sleape, with diuers other accidents moe, which *Cholera* commonly causeth.

But if the Pleurifie do procede of bloud, then is the vzin red and thicke, the spettle ruddie, the vaines full, the pricking paine is not so big, but there is drouth and anguish with it, the mouth is alwayes swete, the forehead and eyes are alwayes heauie, the patient is young of yeeres and full of bloud.

The tokens of *Phlegma* are, when the spettle is white, when the paine is not too great, when there is but little thirst, and much sleape therewith, the vzin is bleake, slow pulse, and other signes moe that *Phlegma* accustometh to bring with it. The *Melancholia* causeth the spettle to be a little leaden coloured, wherewith is no sozenes or continuall paine.

In like sort, there are certaine tokens of life or death. The signes of death are these, when no remedies will help, and all accidents, as paine, pricking, shortnes of bzeath daily increase: and contrarywise, it is a token of life, when all they diminish. Commonly the stich in the left side is moze perillous then that in the right side, so: that it is nerer the hart. But to come to the remedies, then will we first take in hand the Pleurifie which procedeth of heate and of bloud.

Of the Pleurifie of heate and bloud. §. 6.

When as any body getteth a pricking paine about the ribs in the side, with a cough and an Ague, then must he first vse this Clisser following: Take 16. ounces of broth wherein a Lambs head or Calues fete be sodden. Put therein one ounce of slight Sugar, the yolke of one Egge, two ounces of Sallet oyle, Salt one dragme and a halfe, temper them

them all together. If neede be to make a strong Clister, Take Pompeon seede, Cucumber seede, and Courdes, of each halfe a handfull, Purslane seede and Lettice seede pound together, of each one drag. Pallowes, Violets, and Percurie, of each halfe a handfull: sethe them together in sufficient water euen to the halfe part; then take of this decoction twelue or fiftene ounces, and temper therein oyle of Violets thre ounces, *Electuarium de Psyllio* two ounces, Cassia and Cho. Sugar, of each halfe an ounce, Salt one quarter of an ounce; and set it warme.

In like maner it is needefull to let blood with spede. Therefore is the liuer vaine to be opened, (and that like as all learned and also *Galen* himselfe teacheth) in the same side where the paine is: for this helpeth very sone, & the other very slowly. But *Rasis* maketh this difference: If that the patient be full of blood, then first must the vaine be opened in the side, where there is no paine, and that not onely once, but also oftentimes, euen as the sicknes doth require, and the maladie doth continue, the which may be fortie daies continually: But if there be great weaknes or any other occasion at hand, that one durst not open the vaine, then at the least set cups or bores vnder the paine with much pricking, as the cause importeth. And after letting blood, then annoint the place of the paine or Stitch with oyle of Cammomill, oyle of Will, or with this salve following, the which is stronger: Take oyle of swete Almonds, oyle of Violets, and unsalted Butter, of each one ounce, Althea salve halfe an ounce, Pusilage of Hollihocks, and of Frankincense, of each halfe an ounce, Ware as much as is needefull: annoint the place therewith, where the Stitch is, and afterwards lay this plaister thereon: Take roasted Hollihock rootes thre drag. Violets and Cammomill, of each one quarter of an ounce, Barley meale thre quarters of an ounce: Temper them together with the oyle of Cammomill and Violets as much as is needefull for a plaister, and lay it warme on the place of the paine: It swageth the paine, and the Stitch that proceedeth of hot Cholera.

Another that is also very good.

Take drie Violets, red Saunders, Barley meale, the seedes of Pallowes, Bran, Cammomill, and Pelilot, of each a like much, powne all that is to be powdered, and make it with oyle of Cammomill and Ware to a plaister: And if therewith the paine doe not cease and swage, then put Beane meale, Fenegræke meale, and Linseed meale vnto it, of each one quarter of an ounce, and one fig or twaine: and vse this so long, vntill the paine (as may seme to the eye) be delaied and swaged, and vntill the spetle auoyd more easie.

The order of diet.

Albeit that the abstinence fro eating and drinkeing is very highly recommended of all old Physicians, who haue commanded for the first thre or fower dayes onely Barley water to be vsed: yet is the custome of our Countrey and nature, not to obserue it so strictly, but (according to their command) to keepe all possible abstinence, is very good aduise, yet in such manner, that nature, as well through such great abstinence, as by reason of the sicknes it selfe, be not ouerthrowen. Others doe prescribe as followeth: if the sicke body the first or second day doe cough vp no flegme, then is he to be kept with Barly water onely: But if he hath been purged and let blood, then shall he at none drinke Barly water, or the decoction of red Beale: At night he is to be fed with the crum of white bread, that is steeped in sugred Almond milke, and after it to drinke a good draught or twaine of Almond milke. When as he cougheth vp much flegme, then may he eate well of a sugred Pomegranate, and so moderate himselfe thre or fower daies. Afterwards, when the flegme beginneth to be white or red, and to come easily, then may one let him sup by a little broth of a Pullet, with a little Saffron, which strengtheneth the hart & ripeneth flegme. As the matter colde: then let a little Hyssope and Parsly rootes be sodden therein. For a cold Pleurisie a little wine may be well affozded, the which in a hot Pleurisie is not to be permitted. After the seventh day must his meate be the broth of Pullets, Barley pap, dried Raisons, figs, Dates that are alwaies drest with a little Saffron, or Parsly rootes. Sometimes also are good broyled river fish, and roasted Pullets or Chickens permitted.

And when as the Ague hath cleane forsaken the patient, then may he eate measurably Pullets, Partridges, Capons, Turtle doves, Pigeons, Rabbits, & rare eggs, vntill he haue thoroughly recovered

reconered his health. He must also keepe himselfe alwaies warme, and to sweat a moynings: he may otherwhiles for pleasure eate Raysons, Figs, Pine apple kernels, and also two or thre Dates, yet he must alwaies haue regard that he keepe a soluble body: and to this end these herbs following are to be drest and vsed: as Spinage, Drage, Burrage, Lettice, Violets and Malloves, with Almond milke, the which is good also for all hot coughes, Shepes sute sodden very mellowe are passing good for him. His bread must be wheaten or barley well baked: sops of bread and Almond milke with Sugar pennets, are very mete for him. Contrarily, he must abstaine from Vineger, Meriuce, and all soure and salte thinges; and likewise from eating and drinkeing too much. Also from smoke, winde, lowde crying, wrath and sorowe, and aboue all, is carnall copulation hurtfull. Hereafter haue you yet many moe potions that serue for such hot Pleurisies. Wine must be for this utterly forborne, and in stead thereof he must be cherished with Almond milke, or with sugred Barley water, the which for all Pleurisies is much vsed and commended. And it is principally to be drest in this manner: Take pilled Barley one pound, wash it very cleane, afterwards potoze nine pound of water vnto it, and let it sethe euen to the halfe; then straine it thorow a cloth. This is good for all infirmities of the brest: it lo-
seth flegme, and withstandeth the Ague.

Barley water

Some doe sethe with this barley water Figs, Iuiues, Currans or Licorice, and such like, every one according to his owne pleasure. Some doe take vine Snailles out of their shels, and sethe them with the Barley water, which cause the tough slime in the brest to auoide and driue it out. For daintie folkes you may prepare this decoction: Take a Hen or a Pullet, sethe therewith a good handfull of Barley vntill the flesh goe from the bones, straine it, and temper it with the foresaid Barley water. Item, take white bread crums, binde them in a fine cloth, steape them in Barley water, straine them often thorow, and put thereto as much Sugar as you please.

Item, take pilled Barley halfe a handfull, Iuiues, Sebestes, of each ten, or in their stede fine figs, one ounce and a halfe of Raysons, Licorice and Currans, of each halfe an ounce, cut all that is to be cut by a mild fire in as much water as you thinke good. Or take Licorice cut small thre quarters of an ounce, Currans two ounces, Sugar candie one ounce, Barley a good spoonfull, and a pinte of water or as much as you will, let it sethe till about the third part remaine, and vse it as aboue.

To every such patient is not onely forbidden wine, and other things, but also spices, Mustard, Garlicke, hard and old flesh, Eggs, Cheese, Milke, and all that is drest therewith, he must forbear all fruts and herbes, except such as be soluble and doe open the body. In fine, all that warmeth and hindereth the ripening of flegme, like as all soure and cold things doe.

Here follow many things against the Pleurisie.

Soone as the common people finde not speedie amendment of the expert Phisitions, then will they be incensed therewith and discontented, and will goe seeke for other counsell: therefore are these things following very well to be vsed, where there is any great heate approaching: Take Cozne roses one quarter of an ounce, stamp them, and wring out the iuice, and drinke it with Violet water in the beginning of the sicknesse: it is a very good remedie.

This following is commended for an especiall mastrie in the Pleurisie: Take the red skin out of the Vassell nut and their shales, make them very drie, stampe them, and giue them to the patient twice or thrice a day with Carduus Benedicus water, or Endiue water. But if you will haue it stronger, then vse the red skin alone, take out that which is in the shell, and leaue the shell, and giue him thereof a scruple, which sufficeth at one time.

Some doe counsell for to take the water of water Lillies before the Pleurisie be full possess, for a preservation of the Pleurisie. But I cannot well agree therto.

A wonderfull remedie that might be tried.

Take a tooth of a wild Boare, file from it two scruples, and drinke this powder with Scabious water or Well water: And you may also take it with two or thre ounces of sweet oyle of Almonds: for the oyle of sweete Almonds (taken with Sugar candie) is a blessed
medi-

medicine for the Pleurisie. This is also good for it, conserve of Violets, and of water Lillies; and both these Syrrups, to wit, the Syrrups of Endiue and Pomgranats, and specially the cold Diagagant lozings which are described in the first part, the 14. Chapter 2. §. In like manner the confection of *Diapenidion*, *Diapapauer*, and conserve of Roses, and in great distresse & weaknes Perle Sugar, which is called *Diamargariton Frigidum*.

These waters following are also very good for this sickness, as water of *Cardus Benedictus*, of *Dandelion*, of *Leniticum*, of *Cicozie*, *Violets*, *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, and all that is made with all manner of Sugar candyes, Sugar pennets, and of *Licoize*.

And here must alway be taken, that the patient in the time of this sickness haue alwayes an open body, the which may alwayes easily be brought to passe, through the common Clusters and suppositoies, whereof we haue here before mentioned twaine, the which may be made stronger or weaker, according as neede requireth.

Likewise it is very commodious also to giue the patient two ounces of *Manna*, within three ounces of broth, wherein were sodden *Iunbes* and *Violets*. And if so be that the sickness be not too vehement, and ouerthroweth the patient not too soze, then may he vse these Syrrups, to wit, Syrrup of *Violets* one ounce, Syrrup of *Licoize* halfe an ounce, Barly water, wherein *Violets* or *Licoize* were sodden, three ounces; giue him this in the morning earely, and vse it certaine dayes one after another. For this serueth also the Syrrup of Poppy heads, although it were but to prouoke sleepe.

Another. Take *Endiue*, small *Endiue*, *Liuertwort*, *Lettice*, and *Venus haire*, of each a handfull, peeled *Welon* seeds, *Courd* seeds, *Cotton* seeds, *Violets*, water Lilly floures, of each one ounce, Sugar twelue ounces, make a Syrrup thereof, and vse it as is aforesayd; whereupon, take this purgation, to wit, new *Cassia* two ounces, of the foyersayd broth foure ounces, and giue it him in the morning earely very warme. You may also put thereto halfe a dragme of *Rubarb*, and halfe a scruple of *Spica*. But in case that the patient be very narrow in the brest, as it often hapneth in this sickness, then take *Manna*, and new *Cassia*, of each three quarters of an ounce, and make thereof a drinke with the foyersayd broth.

For this, are also these confectiions following to be vsed: Take *Diapenidion* without spices, and two ounces of the conserves of *Violets*, mixe them together, and vse it often. Take Syrrup of *Iunbes*, and Syrrup of *Violets*, of each three quarters of an ounce, temper them with the water of *floesote* and of *Buglosse*, take this also once a day when you please. But of the narrownes or passions of the brests, you shall afterwards in this Chapter finde many good remedies.

An expedite cure of the Pleurisie.

As soone as the paine of the Pleurisie is felt, shall bores be fastned on the place of the paine, for this helpeth marueilously. Then open a vaine in the contrary arme, and the next morning in the same side where the griefe is. Afterwards thou shalt giue him this Syrrup following, as you finde the sickness to be either hote or cold. And when you finde that the matter ripeneth or digesteth a little, then apply this plaister following vpon the place affected: Take *Polyhock* rootes, *Wallowes*, *Violet* leanes, and *Cammonill*, of each one handfull, decoct them in water, and beate them to grout, adde as much oyle of *Almonds* as shall be needefull. But if the phlegme will not be raised and spit forth, then set bores on the place againe as before, with picking, and let them draw well. Also adde to fine ounces of his drinke, two ounces of *Oxymel* of *Squils*, for that it breaketh the tough phlegme, and casteth it forth with ease.

Of the Pleurisie of Cholera. §. 7.

If the Pleurisie proceede of *Cholera*, then are soluble medicines to be vsed at the first, like as hereafter follow: take *Endiue*, small *Endiue*, *Lettice*, *Liuertwort*, white *Diptamus*, *Venus haire*, (all greene if they can be gotten) of each a handfull, peeled *Welon* seeds, *Pompeon* seeds, *Cucumber* seeds, *Courd* seeds, seeds of *Polyhocks* and *Bourrage* floures, of each halfe an ounce, peeled *Barly* one ounce, *Licoize*, *Corans*, *Iunbes*, *Sebestes*, of each one dragme, *Violets* and water Lillies of each halfe an ounce, sethe them altogether, and with twelue ounces of Sugar make a Syrrup thereof euen as we haue

haue taught before. And the common sirupe of Zuiubes is also good for this. Item, in steede of the foresaid things may you vse this following.

Take sirupe of Violets three ounces, sirupe of Poppie heads, of Venus haire, of each one ounce and a halfe: mingle these together with sufficient water of Endiue, and so drinke it at twice, afterwards take this purgation: Take Violets, Borage flowers, and Buglosse flowers, of each halfe an ounce, Dunes, Zuiubes and Sebestes, of each ten, Spikenard halfe a dragme, Licorice and Cozans, of each fiue drag. let them all sethe well together: then take fower ounces of this decoction, and steepe therein halfe oz a whole drag. of Rubarbe, let it so stand in a warme place all night, and drinke it warme. This being done, lay vpon the affected place a sponge that is made wet in warme water, wherein Cammomill, Violets, and Dill are decocted. But if these herbes be not to be gotten, take warme Well water, and wring out the sponge metely well, you may do the like with a bladder that is filled with warme milke and Linsæde oyle, and so lay it ouer the place of the paine. Or you may vse this: Take a pinte of milke, and two pintes of honie tempered well together, and laid with towre vpon the place. Item, take Gallowes, and Hollihocke rootes, of each one handfull, chop them well together, and frie it with butter oz Sallet oyle, and so lay it vpon the paine. This following is good to expell the blod: Take Bolus and Salt, of each a like much, make them to pay with honie, and binde it on the place where the paine is.

Hereafter followe Plaisters, Salues, and such like.

Take crums of white bread about fower ounces, fresh Butter oz Sallet oyle, three ounces, Hollihocke rootes two ounces, fenegræke halfe an ounce: cut, stampe, and sethe it well in Goates milke, mellow to pay: and when it is almost colde, then stir amongst it one dragme of beaten Saffron, and so lay it warme on the paine. Item, take beaten Hollihocke rootes, Gallow seedes, and Barly meale, of each a like much, let it sethe together in Goates milke vntil it be thicke ynough, then put thereto sufficient oyle of Cammomill, and spread it on a cloth. You haue here before in the fist §. of the picking of the pleurisie two plaisters of roasted Hollihocke rootes, the which are maruellous good for this. This also following is very excellent for the great stitche and oppression of the brest: Take halfe a pound of Cassie taken out of pipes, as is taught in the Preface, temper amongst it one ounce of the salue of *Althea*, oyle of swæte Almonds, and pouned Hollihocke rootes, of each two ounces, spread them on a cloth, and make thereof a plaister, and lay it on the stitche. Item, take fower ounces of white bread crum, soften them one hower in Goates milke, afterwards poune them well, then put thereto one ounce and a halfe of Cassie, three whites of eggs, Saffron ten greines, and oyle of Roses as much as is needfull for a plaister.

Of the Pleurisie of *Phlegma*. §.8.



If the Pleurisie proceede of flegmatick humors, and that the paine drawe downward toward the lowermost rib, then is the patient to take oftentimes halfe an ounce of the conserues of Hyssope, tempered with *Carduus benedictus* water, and a little Saffron.

Other do take a swæte Apple, which they make hollow, and fill it with Frankincense, and then stop the hole againe with a peece of an Apple, cleaued to round about with dowe, and so let it roste a while. This Apple is eaten as a preseruatiue against the Pleurisie, that people might not be taken with it, although they be subiect to it.

Item, take a swæte Apple, cut a peece out of it, and put therein one scrup. of beaten Masticke, close it againe with the same peece. Rooste this Apple in hot ashes, and so eat it. Take the vppermost crops of Pettles, sethe them in Well water, and straine out the iuice through a cloth, giue him the rof at two or three times in the beginning of the sicknes, three ounces at one time. For purging of this flegmaticke matter, prepare these sirupes following: Take Hyssope and Venus haire, of each two handfulls, pilled Melon seedes, Pompiion seedes, Courde seedes, Cucumber seedes, Butchers brome seede, Sperage seedes, Linsæde and fenegræke seedes, of each one drag, good vineger halfe an ounce, cut and poune all that is to be cut and pouned, let them sethe
all

The second part of the

all together. To this decoction put three ounces of clarified Hony, nine ounces of Sugar, then make thereof a Syrup: This is passing good when the *Plegma* is thick and tough. But if you will not make a Syrup for it, then take common Syrup, to wit, of *Venus* haire, of *Licoice*, or *Hyssop*: but the Syrup of *Licoice* is marvellously commended for this.

For a Purgation: take *Violets*, *Buglosse* flowers, and *Burrage* flowers, of each one ounce, *Licoice*, *Cozans*, of each two ounces, two or three figs, *Agaricus* one dragma and a halfe, let all these steape and sethe together, take foure ounces thereof, and temper therewith three dragmes of the confection *Elefchoph*, and then drinke it at one draught.

When you haue purged, then annoynt the paine with oyle of Dill, or oyle of Lillies; afterwards sethe *Cammomill* and *Venus* haire in water and vineger in a bag, straine it out, and then lay it warme vpon the paine. Item, take Barly and Pease, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Bzanne* one handfull, beate them grosse and make thereof a bag of a quarter of a yard broad, sethe it, and vse it as aboue. Thirdly, take *Hyly* and Salt as much as you will, warme it together in a panne, put it into a bag, and lay it warme thereon, especially if the matter be windy.

Of the Pleurisie of Melancholia. §. 9.



If this disease procede of *Melancholia* (which chaunceth seldome) then straine the iuice of one handfull of *Burrage* and *Buglosse*, and being clarified, giue it him with the foresayd Syrup. For purging, take blacke *Ellebo*, *Thyme*, *Epithymus*, the rootes of *Polipody*, *Sene* leaues, and such like, euen as in the description of *Melancholie* in the first part of the twelfth Chapter and 8. §. is taught.

When as the sicke person beginneth to cough vpon phlegme, then it is necessary that he vse to drinke for it euery day of common Barly water a good draught, of the decoction which here before in the cold Rheume in the second Chapter is expessed, and beginneth thus: Take twentie *Iuibes* &c. which cleanseth the breast. And if the great pricking and shooting remaine, and he do cough with paine, then is the patient to drinke of this potion following three or foure mornings together: Take tenne fat figs, fat Dates, Smalage seede, Fennell seeds, *Venus* haire, *Licoice*, *Hyssop*, and *Yallowes*, of each five dragmes, sethe them all together in fire and thirtie ounces of water to the halfe, and trouble not your selfe therein, albeit the patient should cough vpon matter or corruption.

Of the Bastard or false Pleurisie. §. 10.



We haue mentioned heretofore of the false Pleurisie in the 5. §. and made her nature knowne. If the patient haue plentie of blood, then is his *Saphea* or liuer vaine to be opened. Afterwards, set vpon the place of the stich, a cup or bore or twaine with pricking, or according as the humors in that sicknes do raigne, as blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, or *Melancholia* do excede, and afterwards purge, and vse stronger Clusters then for the true Pleurisie were prescribed. But in case that the patient feele this stich about the *Diaphragma*, then open the *Median*, and vse the foresayd warming things, that deuide the matter: let the place be often rubbed with a hand or cloth, that thereby the pores may be opened. This being done, then lay this plaister following thereupon: Take two ounces of *Fenegrake* meale, and Pitch three ounces, *Waxe* one ounce, melt them both, and mingle the meale amongst it, with oyle of *Cammomill* to a plaister, which you may spread on Leather, and couer it with Silke, and so lay it on the stich. But if the Ague be not too big, then may you vse thereto the *Oxycroceum* plaister. Item, take the ashes of *Coleworts*, tempered with Bullets or Swines grease.

But if the anguish shew it selfe outwardly, and yet will impostume but slowly, then must the same be opened, be it with an hote yron or with a Lancet. What doth lose phlegme, that shall be set downe hereafter in the description of the cough, of the shortnes of breath, whether it procede of heate or colde. But if the phlegme that at the first shall be coughed vpon, be blacke and yellow together one amongst another, and that the Ague end not on the seuenth day, then it is a very bad signe, if therewith be any heauie rattling in the thyoate, with rednes of the cheekes, led coloured red and darke eyes, then is death at hand.

When

When the Pleurisie sheweth it selfe outwardly.

If the Pleurisie shew it selfe outwardly, with any rednes, and the partie feleth great paine in the touching of it, then it is a certaine token of a false and bastard Pleurisie, that is settled outwardly on the ribs. For the same, is a cup or bore to be set thereon, or to lay a blistering plaister of figs and Mustard seedes, and let it lye thereon so long, vntill the place begin to impostume, and then to open it, and heale it like as other impostumes. But if the matter were hard, then it is to be maturated with this plaister following: Take Hollyhock leaues one handfull, Cammomill, Helilot, and Violet leaues, of each halfe a handfull, fenegreake seede, and Linseed beaten small, of each halfe an ounce, Beane meale, and Barly meale, of each two handfuls, oyle of swete Almonds, oyle of Dill, and of Violets, of each one ounce, then temper the one with the other, and so lay it on the place. Hereafter follow plaisters and salues that asswage the stich and paine, be it of whatsoeuer occasion it may be. Take Yallowes, and Hollyhock rootes, of each one handfull, sethe them together to pap, and then stamp them together with oyle of Violets, and Barowes grease, and so lay it on the soze: but let it not lie too long thereon, that the matter be not maturated too soone. Item, take oyle of yellow Violets two ounces, of the oyle of swete Almonds and oyle of Cammomill, of each half an ounce, fresh Butter one ounce, Saffron one dragma and a halfe, white Mare one ounce and a halfe, Dill seede, Cammomill, Ducks grease, of each halfe an ounce, and thre yolks of Eggs: make thereof a salve or plaister. This poultisse following, doth much asswage the paine: take Banne as much as you please, sethe it in Wine vnto a pap, and put thereto a little Salt.

Another. Take vnripe Sallet oyle thre ounces, foure fresh yolks of Eggs, Saffron one dragma, new oyle of Roses one ounce and a halfe, sethe it a while, and set it on warme ashes, and stirre well amongst it the beaten yolks of Eggs: put afterwards vnto it Starch and Barly meale, of each one dragma, and a halfe, and last of all the Saffron: if you will haue it more sozeible, then put fresh Butter to it, and Reddellion, of each one dragma, and sethe it with decocted swete Wine, as thicke as you desire it. Or else this following.

Take Cammomill, Dill seede, Venus haire, Hollyhock seedes, and folefoote, of each two handfuls, Cozans thre handfuls, sixe Poppie heads, sixe ounces of fresh Butter, xxxvi. ounces of swete sodden Wine, put vnto it (when all is well sodden and brayed) one dragma of Saffron.

A good salve. Take *Alibea* salve, and Butter, annoynt the place therewith where the paine is, and strowe thereon beaten Cumin, and lay a warme Colewort leafe thereon.

When the Pleurisie taketh a woman with
Childe. §. 12.

If it then chaunce that a woman be in doubt of bearing the space of two moneths, were brought a bed befoze her time, and brought a dead childe into the world, or were much inclined to the same, and so be taken with the Pleurisie, she must not be let blood, but she must haue cups set on her buttocks, and be picked well, whereby to drawe the blood downeward. But women that are wont to miscarry in haste, they may well be let blood, yet alwayes taking god heede to their strength. But for a generall rule, all women (albeit they miscary or not, or that they haue conceiued) are to haue the Liuer vaine opened. But if it be not the right Pleurisie, then make a bagge with warme Spillet and Bran, and lay it where the stich is felt, and annoynt the back with *Alibea* salve.

But they that are not with childe and haue the Pleurisie, it is much counselled, that their Termer be prouoked as much as is possible, whereof in the first part is very largely discoursed. And the other (euen as is already sayd) are to be holpen (according as they be of strength) by other medicines.

Rules

Rules for such as are recovered of the Pleurisie, that they fall not into it againe. §.13.



First, all they that be subiect to this sickness, are to shun all dwellings (& principally in winter season) that are situate in the North & West, and neere the water. They must also forbear all tough slimie meates, and all that is made of dough, Cheese, Milke, and such like: also from Vineger, sowze and sharpe, and all kinde of tart things: Capers and Sallet oyle are also enemies vnto him. Item from all pottage, except of red and white Pease, and Beane broth, which be good for him; and these Hens, Pullets, Teale and Pigeons with it. Also colde fruits, as Apples, Peares, Chestnuts &c. are hurtfull for him: but Figs and Raisons are very meete; sod Coleworts, and all sortes of Kapes and rootes, as Parsneps, Parsley rootes, and such like, are very good for him: and all Barley paps also.

His drinke must be thin, white, and swete wine, or common Beere which is very clere. To drinke water, is for this straightly forbidden: but if the patient desire to water his wine he may doe it; yet with water that is decocted with Cinnamon or Licorice. After his meals tide is he to keepe himselfe quiet one or two howers. Watching is very hurtfull for him: but to sleepe long is very good and needefull.

In eating, he must also beware of swallowing downe meate not well chetwed, and of ouercharging his stomacke with meate and drinke, that there followe no harme to the stomacke. He must looke well to all these, and that he be alwaies merrie and of a light hart.

Secondly, he must take good heede for to haue alwaies an open bodie; and before he vse these pills following, he must first vse these potions: Take of the water of fole foote five ounces, Sugar one ounce, drinke it euery morning fasting at one time. The pills are thus to be made: Take prepared Aloe one quarter of an ounce, *Opopanax*, *Bellium*, and Colloquint, of each one scruple, make pills thereof with sirup of Roses sire of a drag. then take euery fower dayes one or twaine, according as you are bound, and in the euening one before supper.

A Salue.

Take *Asarabacca*, Hyssope, Gallowes, and Rosemarie, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Sandaraca* three drag. *Spica nardi* one quarter of an ounce, Dragon blood, and the iuice of Sloes, of each one drag. Starch five dragms; poune each apart as small as may be, then temper it with Palmley, and keepe this stopped tight: Herewith are you to rub the back bone and shoulders softly, and afterwards a ffore case bound thereon. And the patient must haue his vaine opened on the right hand, besides the little finger, and let it blæde fower or five ounces of blood.

These are the most principall meanes, wherby these perillous sicknesses may be prevented: But we will ad somewhat moze to the rest.

Certaine seuerall remedies against the colde Pleurisie. §.14.



For the true colde Pleurisie do serue these compounded Confections and losings; which are prepared two maner of waies, *Diaprasium*, *Diabyssum*, *Diaireos*, *Solomonis*, & *Loboch de Pino*. Item all that is prepared against the colde cough, as confected Clecampane rootes, Treacle, Pithydate, swete sirupe of Pomegranates, and Parsley rootes sodden in wine, tempered with a little Vineger, and thereof dronken often. Also *q. Tristrans* water, and other moe *Aqua Composita*. But by reason of the Ague some coling things must alwaies be tempered amongst it.

For the common drinke you haue herebefore in the 6. §. a speciall barley water: mollifie crums of white bread therein bounden in a cloute, straine it often out and mingle some white wine amongst it. Honie water quenbeth thirst, it prouoketh also the tough humors & eiegmies to auoide, and it is good for all coughes. Thin wine tempered with water is tolerable for this, if the Ague be not too strong. It take *Cicera*, Venus haire, as much as you please: let it sethe with a little

a little Licorice. For common things, these following are very good for the colde Pleurisie; as *Assa fetida*. Pettles with their seede, Balsam wood, with their fruits, Treos, Pyrrhe, the right Aloynes, for which some doe take Calmus, or great Galingall and Sarcy.

The fifth Chapter.

Of the Lights or Lungs.



We haue hitherto spoken of the outward parts of the Brest, and discoursed of their infirmities: now we will write of the inner parts, and will begin with the Lights, for that they are made as a separation betwene the pipes of the Lungs and the Hart; also as an instrument of the bzeath, ordained of God for the vse of the body, thereby to drawe in the outward aire, thereby to cole and quicken the hart and all inward parts, wherewith to forme also and effect the voice and speech in all that hath receined life. Therefore hath nature made the substance of the Lights light, and like a sponge, formed with many pipes, wherby they might be the more mete to draw the bzeath out and in. Some ancient Philosophers are of opinion, that they were without blood; but it is not so, they haue their blood too, and are full of it: but as soone as it cometh out of the Brests, the bodie is void thereof. What great difference is betwene the Lights of men and of beasts, is not here needfull to be written. In like manner that the smaller the Lights be in ones body, the more swifter can they indeuour and besir themselves.

This noble and necessary member is subiect to many grieuous and deadly sicknesses, whereof we will speake hereafter: But first of all we will begin with the Cough.

Of the Cough. §. 1.



As much as the Cough is a messenger of all the diseases of the Lights and of the Brest, and that through the grossenes, dysculth, moisture, spittle and other excrements; wherby men may easily adiudge how the Brest & Lights are made within: therefore it is aduised first of all to write thereof. The ancient Philosophers doe write thus of the Cough: The Cough is a naturall motion of the Lights, the which by the aire and mouing vertue of the muscles that are within the Brest is made and made for to cough vp all that which hurteth the lights. The mouing and bzeathing in the Brest is appropriated by nature; as the naxing for the bzaines, and the digesture for the stomacke. But before we goe any further, we will speake first of the Rheume, the which prouoketh the Cough most of all.

Of the Rheume or Catarrhe which falleth vpon the Lights. §. 2.



Before in the second Part, the first Chapter, and 4. §. and afterwards in the description of the Squinancie, there are written many things of this Rheume of the Lights, which may as well be vnderstode of the Rheume in the Lungs as of the Squinancie. For the perill of stifling is euen as much, whether the Lights were stoppt, or the throte were shut vp. Such things happen oftentimes through a tough slimie matter, which falleth out of the head vpon the Lights, and into the Brest, the which is very ill to be gotten out, and there resteth and abideth. We will therefore first shew, by what meanes all such stoppings of the Lights are to be remedied and cured. And for that these Rheumes are more incident to children, by reason of their moisture, therefore we will expresse certain necessary things that are requisite for the said young children.

Take Linseed which is beaten, mollifie it in clere honie, giue it to the child to lick thereof: it draweth out the slime, it separateth it, openeth the Bzeath, and purgeth mildly, whereof giue him five or sixe times, according as it purgeth much or little: but if so be that the childe will not eate any thing at all, then is there no hope of health to ensue. But then roste an Onion in
P 1 warme

warne ashes, wizing out the iuice, put thereto as much Hens and Capons grease as there is iuice, and temper it by a soft fire, and annoynt the Childes bzeast therewith. Item, take Spick, Frankincense, and Citron pils, of each alike much, and make thereof a powder, and rub the Child softly therewith aboue vpon the future of the Skull. Also you may let him lick oyle of swete Almonds, tempered with Sugarcandy, for it mollifieth the bzeast, and loseth it. These losings following are not only very good for children, but for aged people, whether the same be vsed in losings, or in some of any confection, *R. Agarici albi ʒ. i 8. Spec. Diambra ʒ. 5. Diaireos Solomonis ʒ. 1. Spec. Diatragacanthi Scrupulos 4. Polypodij quercini ʒ. 1. Omnia in Puluerem redacta, cum Saccaro incorporentur ad placitum.*

But with men in yeres it hath another respect. They that be sixtene or eightene yeres olde, who are infected with this disease, they shall rule themselues according to this regiment following.

Concerning the order of Diet, you haue here befoze in the first Chapter and 4. S. and god aduise and instructions afterwards. Also, it is very good that the Liuer baine be opened, and five ounces of blood letten out. Afterwards two scruples or one scruple of the pils *Cochia* to be taken, and to sleepe one houre after them, and five houres after that to drinke a draught of sugred Barly water, and then to eate somewhat. This so done, he must vse this Potion following warne in the morning: Take Syzrup of Endiue, Hony of Roses, and Syzrup of Stechas, of each halfe an ounce, water of Cicopie, and of Endiue, of each one ounce and a halfe, tempered together.

But for this accident are Clifters moze profitable, like as these be following, which are re- cited and put for an example. Take Poppie heads, small Housleake, Gallowes, and Bran, of each halfe a handfull, *Asarabacca* and Betonie, of each halfe so much, sethe altogether in sufficient water, then wizing it out well, and take of this decoction twelue or sixteen ounces, oyle of Violets and of Saffron, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Hiera Picra*, and S. Thomas Sugar, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Salt one quarter of an ounce: These Clifters are you to vse befoze none. He may lay rosted Millet, with Salt and Cammomill vpon his head, and to set oftentimes cups or bores vpon his shoulders and buttocks (without picking) is highly commended. Or if that the partie be full of blood, then ought they to be picked. Also if by nature he be subiect to the Piles, then ought they to be opened by rubbing with rough clothes or figge leaues; so also is the Dre gall very good for them. Afterwards must he be washed euery day with sharp Lye, and therefore vse conuenient Sope, and let him be well dyed, continuing this tenne dayes together, but in the meane time shall he take the pils *Affaires*, and refraine the cold ayze, and keepe his head well couered.

This Salve following is very commodious, if the thorne head be annoynted therewith, it rayleth many blisters, and thereby draweth out all the moisture fro the bzaines, and strengthneth the head exceedingly.

Take one ounce of Pep, Weane meale, and Pease meale, of each thre ounces, stamped rootes of *Costus* and Gace, of each halfe an ounce, Mustard seede one dragme, Pigeon dung two ounces, Pariterum gentle stamped thre quarters of an ounce, sethe these together in sufficient water to pappe, and vse it (as is said:) for this purpose serueth also oyle of Spick. Item, take oyle of swete Almonds, and Hens grease, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron one scruple, and therewith annoynt the thyoate and the bzeast. To this end may also this Syzrup following be prepared: take five Poppie heads with the seedes of *panis diui Iohannis* (clefled from the kernels) one ounce and a halfe, Hirtle seedes halfe a dragme, prepared Licorice one ounce and a halfe, sethe them in a pinte of water, vnto two parts, wizing it out and straine it, and put afterwards thereto Sugar candy, & Sugar pennets, of each two ounces, sethe it as thick as Hony. And if the Rheume fall vehemently on the bzeast, that it seemeth to strangle one, then take halfe an ounce of *Agaricus*, letting it sleepe 24. houres long in five ounces of the water of *Venus* haire, afterwards wizing it out, and put as much Sugar vnto it as you please. And sethe it to the thicknes of Hony for your dayly vse, whereof is to be taken halfe an ounce at a time.

If this Rheume come with heate, then make these Pils following, and keepe them one day and a night in your mouth. Take white Poppie seede, Purflane seede, and Lettice seede, Sugar candy and Sugar pennets, of each one dragme, Saffron one scruple, and make them all to pils, with dissolued Dragagant.

But

But if the Rheume be with cold and a great cough, then take red Styax, Cipers Ruts, Frankincense, *Laudanum*, iuice of Licorice and Amber, of each one dragme, Keysons (the stones taken out) one drag. and a halfe, Sugar candie three dragmes, make pills thereof with sirrup of Hyssop, and vse them as befoze.

This powder following is approued for staying of the Rheume: Take *Spica* of the Indies one quarter of an ounce, Cinamome one quarter of an ounce, of the skull of a man that dyed through violence three quarters of an ounce: take every time it commeth one drag. after meate in Wine, or any decodion. You may also make this in lozings with Sugar, or to a powder. Further, you may take and receiue a fomentation for this Rheume, as in the first part the third Chapter, and 2. S. Item, take Frankincense and *Sandaraca* (which are very requisite for this) the water of *Consolida regalis* is also very mete for this vse. Certaine auncient Physicians do highly commend Warly water mixt with Iuleb of Violets. Item, take clere and well washed Turpentine one quarter of an ounce, beaten Licorice one dragme: put thereto sathing hote flesh broth, and stirre it still about untill the Turpentine be dissolved, and drinke it when you go to bed. Other do take also washt Turpentine, tempered with Hony, and beaten Licorice: both these are marvellous good, and specially if the patient therewith be troubled with the infirmie of grauell. Item, Hony and Vineger wherein *Agaricus* hath bene steeped, taketh away all danger of choking. Likewise for this is very good the sirrup of grane Putshales, which is described in the first part the thirtieth Chapter, and 4. S. loke for it there. It is also herebefore oftentimes mentioned, that as men will go to bed, they are to swallow three or foure greines of Frankincense, so that they do strengthen much the braines, and do dry and stay cold Rheumes.

If so be that through this Rheume the Pleurisie is feared, the which is thereby oftentimes caused, then take foure ounces of new made oyle of Almonds, and small filed bones of a Boze ten greines, tempered together, and so giuen the patient to drinke.

And if so be that through all the aforesayd remedies the Rheume be not remoued, then do the learned giue counsell for the last meane, which is to canterise on the seame of the skull, the which any may do very well, if one be afraid that the patient be in danger of stifeling.

What is commodious for the obstructed Lightes. §. 3.



At the obstruction of the lightes (which prouoketh the cough, the shortnes of breath, and many other diseases) is all that highly commended which causeth to rid much phlegme, like as hereafter moze amply (where we shall speake of the Cough) you shall see: yet are these things following used against this present stopping, to wit, conserve of fumitorie, and all that is made of that herbe: it openeth the obstructions of all parts. In like manner, conserves of *Parierum* gentle, Sage, oyle of bitter and swete Almonds, oyle of Wormewood, Syrrup of Violets, of Vineger, and *Acetosum compositum*, which do separate and lose these Rheumes that are impacted in the Lights. In like sort *Oxymel* of Squills, and *Agaricus*, haue a speciall operation for to lose all tough phlegme from the lights, for which this confection following is highly commended: Take Frankincense, Myrrh, Licorice, Saffron, and Cassy wood, of each one dragme, beaten small together, and Hony (sodden with Palmsey somewhat thicke) foure ounces, tempered all together. This confection is speciall good for this maladie.

But every one ought to know whether this Rheume do proceede either of heate or of colde, thereby to rule and direct himselfe, and may make choice of medicines that may be commodious as well for the one as the other.

Remedies for the Cough. §. 4.



What the Cough is, and how it is described of the learned, is declared befoze in the 1. S. But as much as concerneth the inconuenience of the Cough, we will diuide it into two sorts, to wit, a dry and a cold sort, both proceeding either of inward or outward causes. The outward are, when as any thing commeth into the throte, be it powder, dust, any pestilent ayze, or any other bad ayze, dry, moist, or hote ayze, wherewith the Lights be infected.

In like maner smoke, sharpe meates drest with Pepper or much salt, Pedlers, Vineger, Meriuce, Limons, or such like, which passeth through the throte, be it through meate or drinke which doe slide into the vnright throte (as the common people vse to say.) The inward causes are tough slime, and rheumes, (whereof before hath been written) that fall into the breast and the stomacke. And when any vapors come into the Lights, be it of any infirmity of the stomack, Spilt, Liner, Spothe, and such like: the which infirmities bring with them their owne signes, and shewe whereof they spring and sproute, which would bee too long to be rehearsed at this present.

But to come to the remedies of both these sorts of the Cough, it is to be marked, whether the Cough be drie or no; for when it is so, then commeth it of heate: And if so be that the patient be full of blood and red in the face, then according to the permission of his age, of the countrie, of the time, he is to be let blood without delay, especially if the party be drie and leane. But if it last long, it is to be feared that it will come to a consumption (which is *Phthisis*.) For this are good all coling and moist things, as Conserue of Violets, stewed Barley (which is *Pisana*) and such like things.

Against all drie Coughs. §.5.



That which at the first of the stewed Barley and other things hath been said, the same is also good for this drie Cough, whereas little or nothing at all is roughed up: But this drinke is especially commended for it. Take sirup of Violets, sirup of Poppie heads, and sirup of Zuiubes, of each a like much, water wherein barley, Violets, Licorice, Raisons, and Bebbes be sodden, as much as you thinke good, tempered with Sugar. Purging is not onely commodious, but also needfull, the which is thus to be effected: Take of the said decoction, sette therein Pjunes of Damask and sower Dates, of each halfe an ounce, pilled Melon seede, Pompon seede, Cucumber seede, Gour seedes, and Venus haire, of each one quarter of an ounce; take sower ounces thereof, and temper therein one ounce and a halfe of Cassie, for it cooleth and openeth. The auncient Physicians doe praise pilled Beanes; it is possible indeede, for that it will make the water thick. In like manner doe they commend fresh Butter wherein Almonds and Sugar are mixed, stewed Gourds, Zuiubes, Spinage, Endiue, Lettice, Purlane, oyle of swete Almonds, Kids flesh, Pullets, and such like.

It is also good that the patient alwaies keepe somewhat in his mouth, sometimes one thing and otherwhiles another, to wit, Losings of Dragagant, Sugar pennets, Licorice, the iuice of Licorice, Sugar candy, or such like: and for this you may prepare this confection following: *R. Specierum, Diapapanere unciam unam, Diatragaganti Frigidi, Diapenidionis, siue speciebus, ana dragmam unam, Sacchari violarum uncias duas, Species Diaireos unciam unam, fiat mixtura.* Take that which followeth: Take Poppie seede beaten small one ounce and a quarter, Starch, Dragagant, and Gum, of each halfe an ounce, pilled seedes of Gourds and of Quinces, of each three dragms; then make thereof a powder. Item take Sugar pennets sixtene ounces, sette it with water of Folewote vnto the thickenes of honie, or somewhat stiffer, and take thereof oftentimes in the mouth. Item take a little pan, and drie Currans therein, stirring them still about, that they burne not; and eate thereof euery morning a full spoonfull. Item take halfe an ounce of Spanna, dissolve it in fresh oyle of swete Almonds, if there be any drest therein, straine them thorough oftentimes. For this also is very meete a bath of faire water, wherein are decocted Violets, Malloves, and Hollihocke rootes.

Because that this kinde of drie Cough hath neede of moisture and mellowing potions, for which these things are noted downe: Take of the blacke Losings, and temper them with the sirup of Violets, and with the foresaid decoction, & drinke thereof as often as you will, it is marvellous good. And you may also vse it with the sirup alone. Item, take new milke, temper it with swete butter and Sugar, and drinke when you go to slepe, it easeth the Cough about all measure. Take sower pintes of water, and the fourth part of a pinte of honie, fixe Figs cut small, one ounce of Licorice, sette them together vnto a pinte, scum it well, and drinke thereof euery morning a good warme draught, and delay also the patients wine therewith. This is also marvellous good against all hoarsenes.

Another

Another. Temper faire well water with any of these Syrups following, and drinke thereof, to wit, with sirrup of Violets, of Poppie heads, or of water Lillies. Item, take Barly water one pinte, seethe therein foure or fve Crabs, according as they be bigge, or in their stead hedge Snailles, for they are speciall good against all dry Coughes.

This Potion following is called at the Apothecaries *Decoctio pectoralis*, and is much vsed and had in all Apothecaries shops at Amborough, and also very commodious: for it scoureth the stomacke, melloweth the Cough, cleanseth the tough slime in the breast, and moistneth also the same. Take new Figs halfe an ounce, Dates and Zuiubes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Gallowes, Hyssop, Cozans, sliced Licorice, Annis seede, Fennell seeds, and Barley, of each one quarter of an ounce; seethe them all together in three pintes of Barley water vnto the second part: but if there be much phlegmatick slime with it, then let there be sodden therewith one ounce or twaine of Hony. The like remedie haue you also here before in the second Chapter, and the 2. S.

The pectoral decoctio.

Of that which may be vsed outwardly.

Take Cammonils alone, or with Roses and Thyme sodden together, and receiue the vapour or fume thereof into your nose.

Hereafter follow diuers Salues, and such like.

Take the muscilage of Tragagant, and of Gumme, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyle of swete Almonds, and of Violets, of each one ounce, Hengrease and Calues marrow, of each halfe an ounce, Ware as much as is possible for to make a salue. Or take oyle of Violets foure ounces, as much white Ware as will make it thicke, spread thereof vpon a cloth, and then lay it vpon the breast. Item, take the muscilage of Linsede and of Hollyhock rootes, oyle of Lillies, and Colegrease, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron few greines, and a little molten Ware: make a soft salue of them, and therewith annoint the whole breast. This is speciall good for young children, and not vnprofitable for people in yeares. The things hereafter following are exceeding good to annoint therewith the breast, if so be it be vsed alone, or tempered with other things, like as is oyle of Cammonils, oyle of yelow and blew Violets, oyle of Lillies, and Poppie heads. Item, all fat of Hens and Ducks, of which two fats take one ounce, of Saffron one scruple tempered together, and the breasts annointed therewith.

There are at the Apothecaries two kinds of breast salues, which are called *Vnguenta Pectoralis*: Take muscilage of fleawort, Tragagant, Gumme, Linsede, and Fenegreke seede, of each one dragma, Hens grease, marrow of Calues bones, fresh Butter three quarters of an ounce, washed together with the water of Violets, oyle of swete Almonds, and of Violets, of each halfe an ounce, Ware as much as neede requireth, and so tempered all together into a salue.

This swageth not only the Cough, but also all paines of the breast. Another. Take oyle of Violets two ounces, oyle of swete Almonds one ounce and a halfe, fresh Butter two ounces, Ducks grease one ounce, Muscilage of Hollyhock rootes, Linsede and Fenegreke, of each halfe an ounce, let these seethe all together vntill that the Muscilage be consumed. Take molten white Ware as much as is needefull for a salue, but sturre it well about vntill it be colde. This hath the same operation with the other.

Of a moyst and cold Cough. §. 6.

When the Cough commeth with much slime and moisture, and will not be removed, and that therewith be no Ague nor Aske, then are these losings following to be giuen him, with water wherein Venus haire and Hyssop is sodden. Take Fennell seede, Smalage seede, iuice of Licorice, Venus haire, and pceled Almonds, of each alike much, make troisches or losings thereof with the muscilage of Linsede. You are also to prepare these Syrups following, which are passing good.

Take Ireos and Clecaryane rootes, of each one ounce and a halfe, Hyssope and Venus haire, of each two handfuls, white Spints, Dimpennell, Gallowes, Marierom, of each halfe a handfull, fried Linsed one ounce, raw Barly one ounce and a halfe, Licorice & Cutrans, of each

two ounces, Honie and Sugar, of each five ounces, make of them a sirrup.

For this is also made the vsual sirup of Licozice, also *Stechados*, *Oxymel* of Squils, and sirups of Venus haire thre or fower daies one after another, with water of Venus haire or Scabious dronken. When as then the matter is prepared with the foresaid things, then purge the patient with pills *Cochia* and *Aurea*, of each halfe a drag. Or take one ounce of Cassie, *Agaricus* one dragme and a halfe, *Turbit* also one drag. *Sal gemme* and Ginger, of each thre greines: giue it him with fower ounces of water, wherein are sodden Venus haire, *Hyssope*, Scabious, Licozice, and Violets.

After purging, some doe giue *Pithivate* and Treacle for olde coughes, thereby to consume the matter. Also for old Coughs the Treacle *Diateffaron* is to be vsed, but take what you please, giuing him a dragme at one time, according as the person is yong or old, with a little Barley water. The Beaste is also to be kept warme, and the same to be annointed, wherto this following serueth: Take muscilage of Fenegræke, and Lincæde, of each two ounces, fresh butter one quarter of an ounce, oyle of swete Almonds one ounce and a halfe, Ware as much as is needed full. For this is speciall good the salue *Althea*, and when you haue rubbed the best warme therewith, then couer it with carded shæpes wooll.

Further, these things may be vsed outwardly: to wit, that in the morning there be laid on his head a bag of parched Billets and salte, or a bag with Penitropall, Parierom, and Pints laid vpon the head: Or in the scæde therof, *Styax*, wilde Pints, *Pyrrhe*, & *Sandaraca*, of each a like much beaten to powder, and cast vpon the fire, and the vapo: or fume thereof receiued into the nose and mouth. For this is also good *Nigella* scæde, or *Sandaraca*, each alone. Item take *Rosemarie*, Penitropall, Cammomill, white Pints, and Sage, of each a like quantitie: let them sethe together, and receiue the vapo: or fume. You may make also of these things following a cap, and weare the same continually on the head: it is very commodious for old folke. Take *Stechas*, *Amaranthus*, Cammomill, Pelilot, *Agnus castus*, and Rue, of each a handfull and a halfe, Annis scæde, Fennel, Comin, prepared Coziander, of each halfe an ounce: then lay this Cap vpon a hot stone, which is sprinkled with wine, and so let it warme on his head.

The patient is also to holde *Pyrrhe* a long time in his mouth, and afterwards swallowe it downe, for it hath a maruellous operation in all colde Coughes. A bath to wash the scæte is also very commodious for this: Take for the same Thyme, Roses, Cammomils, and Salt, of each one handfull: let them sethe together, and put the scæte therein euen to the knees. This may be vsed thre daies long, and then renew the same.

Other things moe that are very requisite for this purpose.

For this is also good all that warmeth the breast, whereof there are many sortes, as two kindes of *Diatreos*, the which in the first Part, the 14. chapter §. 1. are described: Likewise *Diatragacanthum calidum*, which is also there described in the 2. §. Peade is also very good against the cold Cough, and all diseases of the Lights, which is taught to be prepared diuersly in the eighth Part. What pectorall potions the Apothecaries haue in vse: the same is shewed in the second Part, the second Chapter, and 2. §. Elecampane wine taketh away all colde diseases of the breast. The same doth also oyle of Lillies, of swete Almonds, oyle of Poppy heads, trocises of *Diapenidion*, *Looch de Pino*, which is a confection of Pine apple kernels, *Looch sanum*, & chiefly *Looch de Scilla*, tosted Figs, Dates, the decoction of an old Cock, with wild Saffron seed, wherein *Hyssope*, Treos, Raisons or Pettie seeds is decocted. Elecampane, Saffron & al that is prescribed for the cold Rheum. And because that these Losings, *Looch*, or confectiōns are many times reherfed in this our booke of Whisicke, therefore it cannot be misadvised that we describe them & other such like here, and begin first with *Diapenidion*, which is made thus. Take Sugar pennets two ounces, swete and bitter Almonds, and white Poppy scæde, of each thre dragnes and one scruple, Cinnamon, Cloues, Ginger, iuice of Licozice, Dragagant, Starch, Gum, scædes of *Pe-lons*, of Gourds, and Cucumbers, all pilled, of each one drag. and a halfe, Camfere seven greins, make thereof small powder being all beaten and chopt, and with an ounce of this powder, 12. ounces of Sugar, and sethe it away with water of folefote vnto losings, and then let it melt in your mouth. This Sugar is very good for all old coughes, for hoarsenes, for digestion, and coughing by of phlegme.

Diapenidion.

Looch

Looch de Pino is thus prepared: Take fresh Pingles fiftene dragmes, steepe them all a night in the water of Folewote, swete Almonds, parched haseell Nuts, Dragagant, Gumme, Licorice, Starch, Venus haire, and Treos, of each one quarter of an ounce, 17. or 18. Dates, one ounce and a halfe of bitter Almonds, Hony of Roses, fresh Butter, and white Sugar, of each one quarter of an ounce, 18. ounces and three quarters of clarified Hony, cut and poune all that is to be cut and poune, and then temper them together with the sayd Hony, this is passing good for all cold Coughs. There is also another *Looch* or confectiō, the which is called *Sanum & exper-* *Looch Sa-*
num & ex-
perium.
sum, which is haill and approued. Take Cinnamome, Hyssop, and Licorice, of each one quarter of an ounce, Iuibes and Sebestes, of each fiftene, Cozans, Figs and Dates, of each one ounce, fenegreke two ounces and a halfe, Venus haire halfe a handfull, Annis seede, fennell, Treos, Linsede, and white Mints, of each one quarter of an ounce, seethe them together in 24. ounces of water vnto the halfe part, then straine it out, and put to this decoction twelue ounces of Sugar pennets, seethe this together againe vntill it be thowow thicke, afterwards mingle the other things therein cut and beaten small, prepared Pingles one ounce and a quarter, as is aforesayd, peeled Almonds, iuice of Licorice, Dragagant, Gumme and Starch, of each one quarter of an ounce, rootes of Violets one dragme, stirre them well together vntill it be white. It is very good against the Cough and hoarsenes that cometh of colde: it melloweth and emptieth the breast of all phlegmatick matter.

Looch de Scylla which is of Squils, is very forcible to cleanse the Cough, slime, and phlegme out of the brests, and to separate the same: it swageth all paine and smart of the brest, and it may be thus prepared: Take the very best and purest part of a Squill parted asunder with a wooden knife, stamp it with a wooden pestell, and wyng out the iuice: take so much Hony as there is iuice, and seethe it together vntill it be thick ynough. *Looch de*
Scylla.

Of an olde Cough. §. 7.



If the Cough be wahren olde, and so fierce, that it will not let one sleepe, then doth *Kafis* or dayne to take Hyrrh, Styax, and Opium, of each a like quantitie, and to make pils thereof, and take one or two of them. It is often shewed befoze how hurtfull the Opium is, whereby euery man may know how to deale therewith, this following is safer. Take Syrrup of Poppie heads halfe an ounce, or more, or cate a little Poppie seede with Sugar, both of them make the Rheume thicke, and do stay the same that falleth into the brest. Item, take a handfull of Hyssop, cut Licorice, and Cozans, of each three ounces, fenegreke and Linsede, of each one ounce and a halfe, beate them and seethe them in two pintes of water vntill two parts remaine, couer the pot with a funnell, and receiue the vapour or reke in at the mouth.

And so: that the Cough is a very common disease, therefore will it not be amisse briefly to comprehend what things are commodious for this Cough. First, if it procede of heate, then are good for it the Violets and Sebestes Dragagant, Gumme of Arabi, Starch, white Poppie seeds, Iuibes, Pulberies, Pusilage of Barly, of fleawort, of Quince seeds, peeled Melon seeds, Gourd seeds, Cucumbers seeds, Purslane, Endiue, Lettice, Melons, Almonds, Sugar pennets, oyle of Violets, of water Lillies, and such like. Conserues of water Lillies do coole and moisten the breasts, the thoroate and the tongue, and chiefly the sirrupe of swete Pomegranats.

If the Cough procedeth of cold (and if it be growne old) then are these things following very profitable, haseell Nuts, with Hony, do ripen the Cough, Smallage, Hyssop, Venus haire, Galloves, Scabious, Betony, wild Thyme, white Mints, Marierum, great and small water Mints, & *Chamedrios*: of rootes, Licorice, Treos, Squils, Lillies, Elecampane, the rootes of blew floures delute, Garlick, boyled Calmus, Sefeli, Pease, fenegreke seeds, Pettles seede, Annis seede, and fennell seede, Linsede, seeds of *Verbascum* peeled, and seeds of Polyphocks, which are both good in heate and cold. Of fruites, Figs, Dates, Bayberies, Raysons, swete and bitter Almonds prepared with Starch, are speciall good for all Coughes, swete oyle, Pingles, swete Pomegranats, & Iuibes. Of all Spices is very commodious Pepper, Cinnamome, Saffron, and Cardamome. Further also of Gummes Baellion, *Assa fetida*, Myrrba, Galbanum, Mastix, *Sagepenum*, *Sarcocolla*: Likewise Sulphur, Hony, Sugar, and all that is swete, Sugar pennets, Sugar candie, *Agaricus*, Hony combs, swallowed downe or mixed with salues, and fine Wolus.

Of Compositions, are Losings, Barly water, many Confections, Syrrups, & *Mantis Christi*, whereof one that hath vnderstanding and knowledge, is to make choise of such as he shall see to be requisite for the cause.

In like manner is highly commended for this the Conserues of Rosemary: all *Oxymels* are good for the Cough, specially they that haue *Agaricus* in them: notwithstanding in grieuous Coughs is to be vsed the aduise of a learned Physitian. For the Cough in Childzen Bathing is hurtfull: The drinke of their Surses shall be Water and Sugar. Also it is very good for to put alwayes Sugar, or the powder of Licorice in their Pap.

All colde things are ill, and contrary to the Cough, as Vineger, Meriuiue, all colde drinks and meates, and all that is cold of nature, or in any wise sharp, are straightly forbidden.

What ordinance or gouernment of life is to be obserued (be it in cold or hote Agues) you may see aboue in the second part, the second Chapter, and 2. §. where it is at length described. But this is only yet to be therewith annexed, that all most phlegmatick Coughes, whether they proceede of heate or colde, reasonable walking, standing, and watching, is most meete, by reason that the matter which causeth the Cough, doth alwayes fall more into the breast sleeping then waking.

What is good for coughing vp of Phlegme. §. 8.



Albeit we haue told here before what raiseth the Phlegme, and is commodious for the losing thereof, yet can it not be but expedient, to rehearse here againe certaine of the formentioned things, and to adde other remedies moe thereto, whereby the Phlegme might be furthered and brought vp. The Syrrup of Licorice is one of the most precious remedies for the Cough: after that, the Syrrup of Horehound, *De Prassio*, and of Hyssop, *De Hyssopo*. If there be much tough Phlegme at hand, then is *Oxymel* to be tempered and dronken with Barly water. Waters of Folefote and Elecampane are passing good and forcible to lose Phlegme: likewise *Manna*, and Sugar pennets.

Will you then haue good *Tabulates* for this: then take Starch, paled Melon seede, Courd seede, Cucumber seede, and Pompeon seede, of each (being all peeled) halfe an ounce, Dragagant and Gumme, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Licorice one quarter of an ounce, Sugar pennets two ounces, Saffron foure greines, Sugar candy two ounces, Clolets one quarter of an ounce, seedes of white *Sesamum* halfe an ounce, of the Syrrup of Clolets twelue ounces, dissolve the Sugar therein untill that you (with other things therein tempered) may cast *Tabulates*. If you will make a confection thereof (like as it will best frame vnto it) then sethe not the Sugar too hard.

And you are to annoynt the breast with these things following: Take Ducks grease one ounce, fresh Butter halfe an ounce, oyle of *Sesamum* & of Clolets, one ounce and a halfe, Saffron one scruple, Grapes grease and Ware, of each thre quarters of an ounce: melt them together, and wash it twice with Barly water wherein some Saffron is sodden, then mingle Saffron amongst it, which is then put amongst it, because it is speciall good for the breast for all manner of coughs and heauie breath, therefore is it to be vsed at all times in their meate.

Will you haue the salue more maturating: then temper amongst it the muscilage of *Sesamum*, and Fenegreake, of each one ounce, with a little molten Ware. And if so be that the belly, the fundament, the pynities, and all parts round about them be annoynted with it, then will all Rheumes be stayed therewith. Item, the breast annoynted with the salue *Althea*, ripeneth Phlegme, and riddeeth it very much. The like doth also the pectorall vnguent described in the end of the 5. §. In like maner also a stomachicall powder, which is expressed in the first part the 13. Chapter and 1. §. of the *Pemozie*, the which is also good for the Cough, and for the Lights. Item, *P. Trisframs* water, and many other remedies that are also discovered before in the 6. §.

And for that there is written much of the Rheume or Catarrhe before, whereof the sayd Cough is moued, and there is likewise much hereafter to be sayd also of the shortnes of breath, the which infirmities are to haue one and the selfesame kind of remedies: therefore we will proceede now and speake of other maladies which the Breasts and Lights are subiect vnto, and how they are best to be cured.

Of

Of a short panting Breath. §.9.



If this heauie and panting breath hath bene mentioned befoze: That the lights are by nature ordained an instrument, dwelling place, and distributoz of the breath, therefore (albeit they be subiect to many diseases) yet can there not a more dangerous accident happen vnto any, then that the breath be hindered, or cannot be drawen or yelded forth againe, for that whensoever this chaunceth, then will the affected partie be quickly choked. Yet doth it come to passe oftentimes, that if any do get a short panting breath, of which if he be not sone rid, that death must needs insue; therefore are all Whisitions full of care and trouble in the cure of the same.

And whereas this maladie proceedeth of many kinds of causes, therefore haue the Whisitions giuen it many kinds of names, and specially the Grecians, which difference we are also (as much as is possible) for to imitate and follow.

That we may therefore first speake of the pursuenes or shortnes of the breath, and whence the same proceedeth, we will indeede first of all describe thre sorts of pursuenes, as *Dyspnea*, *Asthma*, and *Orthopnea*.

Dyspnea is, when the breath is drawen painefully and out of course, and therefore all that are so affected be called *Dyspnæici*, who do draw their breath with great labour through the narrownes of the breast and of the lights, and they are more troubled in drawing it in, then in letting the same out againe.

Asthma is an vneasie drawing of breath, where there is more griefe in letting out the breath then in taking of it in, so that this hapneth with a strong wheasing and noife, yea with such narrownes of the breast, that it seemeth that the partie would thereby yeld vp the ghost, and depart this world.

Orthopnea hath both these accidents, that commeth commonly so strong, that the sick person (if he be as feeble as he may) must yet notwithstanding be alwayes vpight for feare of stifling: and these persons do finde indeede, that when they are vpight, then they draw their breath in, and let it out the easier: so that *Dyspnea* is caused only through the feeblenes of the drawing in of the breath; *Asthma*, for lacke of this force that ought to diue out the superfluous vapors out of the light, and *Orthopnea*, where that there wanteth vigoz to draw the breath in, and againe to let it out.

But these thre infirmities of the Lights are very nigh of condition the one to the other, yet haue they their severall signes from what humors they proceede, which are chiefly caused of bloud and phlegme, but lesse of *Cholera*, and very seldome of *Melancholia*. The cause of this pursuenes may proceede as well of outward cold, as of vnnaturall heate, as also of falling, thrusting, and striking, whereby any of the inward parts of the thyoate be tainted or pained, as *Sinewes*, *Arteries*, *Muscles*, *Peck*, and such like, iointly or particularly, whereby the breath is hindered, even as the same may be prouoked by some suddaine strong stirring of the body, pestilent ayze, vapor or damp of *Quicksiluer*. The inward causes are phlegmatick matter through out the whole body, or in any part thereof, the which for the most part infecteth the head and the lights, long and continuall vse of any choking and binding things. Item, if there were any impostume in any part about the breast, as in the thyoate, pipe of the lights, as in the *Squinancie*, paine of the stomach, suffocation of the mother, and such like. Also when as any Rheume falleth into the lights, which is comprehended vnder the foresaid parts.

The outward causes must be vnderstood by the patient himselfe, to wit, whether he haue led any unruly life, whether he haue eaten much fruite, much swines flesh, much *Wese*, or haue bene fed with much *Teruice*, *Winger*, *Pedlers*, or *Chestnuts*, all which do breede a short breath: but if this shortnes of breath do come of the *Squinancie*, loke for the signes of the same, and likewise for other incident sicknesses, as for the signes of the *Pleurisie*, inflammation of the lights, suffocation of the mother, superfluitie of phlegme, even as of either of them is sufficiently spoken of in his place.

Concerning the remedies for these sicknesses, we will first of all shew in what manner the patient is to behaue himselfe, for that helpeth much, and chiefly, for that these diseases do many times so moter and plague people (for the space of many yeares) that they can neither liue nor dye.

dye. Because then this Purfuenes, Coughs, and Shortnes of breath are caused of all humors of a mans bodie, which is blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and *Melancholia*: therefore we will for benefit sake, declare no certaine rule of living, to the end that every one of discretion might knowe to rule himselfe according to the nature of euerie patient, and other circumstances, as also by many other instructions that are described here and there in this booke. Notwithstanding to frame an introduction thereto, this is the beginning. If in case that this Purfuenes proceede of tough flegme that obstructeth the breast, you shall know it by this, to wit, if the patient be plagued with a grievous and pinching Shortnes of breath, and that most at all times when as this tough slime shall be removed, to wit, two howers after midnight, euen vntill the morning. And if that he through want of sleepe, can scant come to him selfe through weaknes of wit, with a strange pleasant taste of his mouth, and casting out of salte flegme, whereby that the softe and the eies ware bleake, the breast is without heate, or with very little: yet the breast being burdened with a grievous Cough and Short breath; therto commeth also a heauie freighted head, lithernes of the whole body, a slowe, fable, and sometimes also a still pulse. And if the matter which is impacted in the breast be stirred, then trembleth the patient: yet with these other signes moe are many alterations, which are incident vnto them, according to the importance of the Ague, as it commeth to passe.

Of the fixe vnnaturall things which are called *Res non Naturales*, whereto is also added a rule of diet for the Purfuenes. §.10.



In the introduction of this booke of Physicke, in the elcuenth Chapter, is a briefe discourse of these fixe vnnaturall things, the which the learned call *Non naturales*, whereof we then promised to speake moze at large. And to the end this may be orderly effected, therefore are we to speake somewhat thereof at large; and to that end, because the same is very commodious for many sicknesses already mentioned, and others that are yet to be described hereafter. But these are not therefore called vnnaturall, because they are contrarie or besides nature: for sleeping, watching, &c. are not contrary vnto nature, but only by reason they haue not receiued their naturall offspring of blood, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and *Melancholia*, wherewith the nature of man is vnited and ioined together: and when they agree orderly together nature will be supported by them, especially for that they are but accidentall things, that are not nature her selfe, but be the furtherers and preseruers of the same: and by reason thereof haue gotten these names, as folloiweth.

Eye.

The Ayze is of the learned decreed for the first, wherein they that haue a Short breath, are to obserue this rule; to wit, that men are for the same to chuse a subtile, warme, and drie Ayze. Contrariwise, men are to shun the colde and moist, and chiefly the southwinde, for that oftentimes is an occasion of a narrowe breast or Purfuenes. But if you cannot get such an ayze, then make tier in your chamber of Juniper wood, and of a Bay tree, Cipers wood, Beechen wood, Oken wood, and such like. Item make a fume with Pyrrhe, *Laudanum*, *Ambra*, *Pusk*, and red *Styrar*, three ounces; temper them all together in Sage, wilde Thyme, *Pennirovall*, and all maner of odoriferous herbes. And if one be kept in a Stone, the same must be made but metely warme. All places next to the earth, & all vaulted chambers must be refraine. The windowes of his chamber must stand towards the East and South, the which in the heate of the morning vntill none are to be kept open, and afterwards shut vp; and when the Sun beginneth to goe downe, then to open the same againe, thereby to refresh the ayze.

All dwellings that stand beside still standing Poles, are to be auoyded. In like maner also all darke, clowdie, thicke and stinking ayze. And when you are to goe abroade, then is the Pomander following to be caried in your hand, and smelt to continually. Take *Spica* of *Indy*, *Calingall*, and *Spice*, of each one dragma, *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, *Frankincense*, *Sandaraca*, of each halfe a drag. *Pusk* and *Ambra* of each two scruples, make thereof a Pomander with *Palmsey*. Note also that the chamber of his dwelling be strowed with herbes of hote natures: but from Rue and Smalage let him beware, for that they hurte the vaines. And sprinkle often the chamber with wine wherein the same herbes are sodden.

Motion.

Motion: *Morus* is accounted the second vnnaturall thing; touching this is commanded in the straightnes of the breast, that whensoever any such do rise in the morning, that he shall goe forthwith

forthwith and ease himselfe, and beware how he weare any clothes that are narrow about the neck and brest: yet must he weare clothes well ligned, but no linyings of any Beest that frequent the water, or of *Molues*. He must also not weare any heauie thing on his head: yet must he see that his head be well couered alway, and defended from the cold, with a light Cap or Hat. He must also giue himselfe to metely stout walking, or to ride vpon an easie trotting horse, or to shote in a handbow, or vse such like exercises. In the euening one howze before, and one howze after meate, shall he exercise himselfe, yet not aboue his abilitie, so that the short bzeath be not moued too much, wherewith *Venery* is also comprehended, for that it is a deadly poyson to a full stomack, by reason that the same ought to be done fize howzes after meales. But if these exercises cannot be atchieued by reason of great feeblenes and other occasions, then in stead of them the patient is to be well rubbed with hote clothes ouer all his outward or vtmost parts, euen as the same is sufficiently taught in the second part of the first Chapter and §. 3. and in other places. This rubbing may be also well effected, with oyle of *Cammomill*, *Dill*, or with *Sallet* oyle, and in such manner, that if the shortnes of bzeath be extream, then in the beginning is he to be futhed, and rubbed mightily, and afterwards very mildly: and this is all to be done in such sort as the patient may well abide and suffer it.

If there be great weakenes appochoing, then let his clothes be fumed with *Musk*, *Amber*, *Cinamome*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Gallia Muscaca*, and such like: or lay on those parts certaine clothes which haue been wetted in *Palmsley*, or any other kinde of Wine, wherein *Cloues*, *Calingall*, *Spice*, *Spica*, &c. are decocted.

Sleepe and watching are said to be the third vnnaturall thing. And for this sicknesse is commaunded that men giue themselves to sleepe at any hand, be it at none or euening, but only two howzes after meate: but it is better that one vtterly forbear sleeping a dayes: seven or eight howzes long is the fittest time for sleeping, yet the same may be diminished or augmented, according to the custome of the sicke body, or his diet. First they are to lye high with their heads, and on the right side, vntill the digestion of the stomack be consummated: and afterward awhile on the left side, and then againe on the right side, and to lye vpon the belly is commodious for digestion, but it is not good for the eyes. To lye vpon the backe is most perilous, and a cause of all diseases of the bzaines, the *Sinewes*, the *Palley*, the *frenzie*, and such like, because that thereby all superfluitie of the humors do fall downe backwards: contrarywise, measurable watching strengtheneth much, yet according to the importance and custome of nature, and power of all naturall humidities: for if one take not heede thereto, then cometh none other thereof, then all mishap. Now that all excessive watching shall be withstode, is to be seene in the first part the 12. Chapter, and §. 5.

Repletion and inanition are the fourth vnnaturall things, which the Latinists do call *Repletionem*, and *Inanitionem*. You must haue an especiall care that the body be kept free from all superfluous humors, for thence do grow many and sundry infirmities, wherefore it is necessary that they be expelled in the morning through going to the stoe, through the vrine and sweating, and by all other such like meanes. And if so be that nature cause not all this of it selfe, then ought it to be compassed through the help of stronger meanes: and first to begin with the easiest remedies, that is, with meate and drinke, but if the same cannot be perfected, then must other things be vsed according to the qualitie of the disease: but what serueth best for the grieve in the bzeast (whereof we here do treat) shall be shewen hereafter.

The first part of the foresaid vnnaturall things is called of the learned *Accidentia animi*, which are things that concerne the minde, as anger, rage, weeping, frightednes, feare, heauines of the minde, sorrow, and such like, whereof also procede great sicknesses, and thereby this disease of the bzeast is specially increased, for that thereby are the tough phlegme in the bzeast drawne, and the bringing of them vp hindered, therefore are all such sick folks to be alwayes merry and of good cheere.

The first and last part and vnnaturall thing is meate and drinke, of which all is to be chosen that is good, and to forbear all that is hurtfull. For this it is a generall rule, that those so infected are neuer to be overladen with meate and drinke. Also it is better that such do moderate themselves, taking at thre times but a little, then at one time or at two times to overcharge themselves with meate and drinke. Secondly, that they swallow not downe the meate vnchewed. Thirdly, they that haue a grieve in their bzeast, are to forbear eating of all that is cold, moist, slimie,

limie, and astringent of nature, as vnleauened bread, sodden fish, bafe, inwards, and fete of all beaſts: alſo Milke, Cheſe, & all that is dzeſt with Milke, Lettice, Purſlane, Beetes, Spinage, &c. may he not eate. Meates that be good for him, are well raiſed white bread which is not aboute thre dayes old, and bread wherein Annis ſede, Licorice, Saffron, Cinamome, and fennell are baked. Of fleſh is to be choſen goodutton, Teale, Lambe, kids, Hares, Conies, Kobucks, and the lungs of a fore. Of fowles theſe are very commodious, Hens, Pullets, Capons, yong Pigeons, Pheſants, Partriches, Blackbirds, wild Ducks rather boyled then roſted. Alſo there be good for him Broths, Coleworts, Parſly, Fennell, Pints, Sage, and Hyſlop, which are to be uſed often, but Turneps and Spinage very ſeldome: oze figs, Keiſons, and Cozans eaten be: fore dinner and ſupper are much commended. And his meate is to be dzeſt with fennell ſeds, Annis ſede, Comin, Caruwayes, Pepper, and ſuch like things moe. Peaſe porredge & Beane broth is alſo good for him to ble: likewiſe Keiſons decocted in Almond milke, oz Coates milke. To haue his meate dzeſt with Sugar and Hony is very good, Vineger oz Meriuiſe tempered with any kinde of Spice, as Saffron, Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloues, Cinamome, oz Cardamom In ſtead of ſallet oyle, is freſh Butter, Warrow greaſe, and Goſe greaſe good for him. Further, all that be grieved in the bzeast, ſhall occupie much theſe hearbs in their dzinks and otherwiſe, as *Venus haire*, Hyſlop, Hozehound, Clecampane, and Saffron.

For his dzinke, Wine is not utterly forbidden, but he may dzinke ſome ſmall dzaughts, and that the oftner. Swete and pleaſant Wine is moſt wholeſome for him, tempered in the Sommer with well water, in Winter with decocted water, notwithstanding that good swete rebde Wine were as god. But if the patient will not gladly dzinke Wine, then is this meade following to be prepared for him: Take thre quarts of the water of Cinamome and Saffron, of each one dzagme and a halfe, Hyſlop one dzagme, ſethe it ſo long untill the fourth part be ſodden away: then put thereto twelue ounces of Hony, and ſethe it againe till the third part be ſodden away: ſkomme it, and then let it runne thozow a cloth. Of all Wines the Reniſh wine is moſt commended, bzued alittle with water, for it ſumeth not into the head, but haſtneeth towards the bladder, and caryeth the matter with it. Swete Limons, Pomgranats, & Quince Peares, being well Sugred, are alſo permitted for the appetite: but Sparmalad ſtrengtheneth much the bzeast and lights.

This is then the order to be obſerued in this ſickneſſe, chiefly when as it pzocedeth of phlegme, and not for any ſhort time, but the ſame is ſtill to be continued: for as we haue already ſhewed, this ſickneſſe is of long continuance, and perilous, ſo that if one do his very beſt therein, yet it is in yong perſons very hard, and in old folks almoſt vnpoſſible to be cured. And although there be many ſickneſſes of the bzeasts (like as is already rehearſed, and ſhall be yet againe ſpoken of hereafter) yet is there no euidenter meanes for to know whether the Lights be infected oz fraighted, then thzough the Cough, and by that which is caſt vp in coughing. It is alſo to be noted, whether the bzeathing be vnealie, ſlow, & wheaſing, &c. For the troubleſommes of the paine, and of the fetching vp of the phlegme, do betwzay the matter which cauſeth the diſeaſe and vlceration of the lights, therefore muſt all Philiſitions loke diligently vnto it: for when the matter is known, then is it eaſily to be diſcerned, whereof this griefe in the bzeast is cauſed. This may ſuffice for this preſent.

Of the bzeast oppreſſed with Phlegme. §. II.



When any ſuch ſickneſſes do light vpon men, then muſt they be knowne and diſcerned (as is already recited) therefore we will write firſt of *Phlegma*, as of the moſt common infection of the bzeast. In this ſickneſſe is firſt the *Bafilica* to be opened in the right arme, letting out ſoure oz ſiue ounces of bloud, and afterwards this dzinke following to be vſed.

Take ſeme oz twelue figs, Dates, Smalage ſedes, Fennell ſedes, *Venus haire*, Hyſlop, and Hozehound, of each ſiue dzagnes, ſethe them together vnto about the halfe, take about thre ounces thereof, and temper therewith this Confection following, and take ſuch once in euery thre dayes, oz once in euery ſoure, ſiue oz ſiue dayes, for it exceedingly expelleth the ſuperfluous matter from the bzeast.

Take

Take the iuice of Licoice, Hyssop, and *Venus haire*, of each tenne dragmes, Pepper, bitter Almonds, Aristologie, Cresses seedes, and Pettie seede, of each thre dragmes, Hony as much as is needfull for to make a confection; the Hony must be boyled and clarified. But aboue all it is to be aduised, that after letting blood he take one dragme, or fower scruples of *Pillula de Agarico*, which are much commended for this sickness. Use these pills following *Pillula de Hiera composita*, *Aurearum*, of each two scruples, make thereof seuen or nine pills with sirup of Roses, and take therof twaine early in the morning: And 5. houres after that take a draught of leane Ven both; and then one hower afterwards breake your fast. The next day, take in the morning this preparatiue Syrup. de *Bizantijs*, de *Calamintha*, de *glycyrrhiza* of each halfe an ounce, water of Cicoie, of Violets and Balme, of each one ounce, temper them altogether, and drinke thereof eight daies long fasting. When this is done, then take this purgation following: Take *Eleuarij Indi* two dragmes, *De Psillio* halfe an ounce, temper them altogether in a little warme wine, and drinke it in the morning early. Some doe counsell also, that after purging hee be taken that one vomite with beaten Mustard seede and honie: for that doth vehemently expell the matter of the stomacke. And if that you perceiue the matter be to be cast vp, then take the water of blew flower deluce, Hyssope & Parierom, of each one ounce, water of folefote two ounces, Sugar halfe an ounce; temper and vse them euery morning for the space of one whole weeke: afterwards take thre ounces of new Cassie, and water of folefote wherein two scruples of *Rhapontica*, and *Spica* halfe a scruple were steeped, drinke it warme, and fast fye howers after it.

This vnguent following may also be used euery day, anointing the belly warme therewith, conering it with a peece of warme fur: Take oyle of Saffron, oyle of Cammomill, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Ducks and Badgers grease, of each one quarter of an ounce, Saffron half a scrup. white Pepper, Treos, and Rue, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Ware as much as is needfull, thereof to make an vnguent or salue.

Here is also to be noted, that all sower and egar things, and all that is drest therewith, as sowe Pomegrates, Drenches, Limons, and such like are very hurtfull: In like maner is also grosse sower wine and Sallet oyle very hurtfull. These Pills following are to be prepared. Take god potte Aloe thre dragmes, *Agaricu*, and the roote of Polypodie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Coloquint one drag. *Spica*, Ginger, and Indie salt, of each halfe a scruple; beat them all together, and steape them in the iuice of Roses and of Endiue, of each two ounces, keepe it in a warme place, stirre it often about til it waxe drie, then afterwards powze thereon againe two ounces of the iuice of Parierom gentle, and let it drie also. Thirdly, temper therewith two ounces of the iuice of small Endiue, and halfe a scruple of Saffron: when it is drie, then take the waight of a drag. thereof, make pills of it; of which take allwaies one euery fift day before supper, and one more two howers after. This may euery such patient vse all his life long in all countries. The like also when he vseth the preparatiue Potions, if he be bound in his body, he may freely take one of them in the euening before meate.

These pills haue great force to preserve health; for they cleanse the breast, the stomacke, and the Luer. He must eate euery weeke a peece of greene Ginger, and fast at least sower howers after it.

In winter time must he strowe vpon his head twice a weeke, this powder following: Take *Lignum Aoes* one dragme, Pace one quarter of an ounce, *Stechas*, Parierom gentle, and grosse Parierom, of each one scruple, Roses, Quozie, and *Sandaraca*, of each one drag. and a halfe; beate all small and temper them together. For a confection: Take *Spec. Aromatici Resati*, *Troisicos de Rosi & de Spica*, of each halfe a drag. fye ounces of white Sugar, make thereof Tabulates, and eate thereof after meate. If you vse not greene Ginger, then is also god for you, the Tabulates of *Diaireos Salomonis*, and moe confections that serue for this end, euén as it is described in the discoverie of *Asima*. There is a fume also to be made for this patient, with Spirithe, Clous rotes, Saffron, Cassia wood, Aristologie, or *Galbanum*, which liketh him best, each alone, or mixt together. Also he is euery euening to wash his feete, euén to beneath the knees in warme fresh water, wherein Roses and Violets of each two handfulls, Spints, Parierom and *Stechas* of each one handfull haue ben sodden.

Of the right pursueneſſe with a ſore ould Cough through tough *Plegma* in the Breast, which is called with one word *Aſhma*. §. 12.



By this name *Aſhma* ſome later Diſſitions comprehend the three ſoſeſaid ſpecies of purſueneſſe, to wit *Dyſſnea*, *Aſhma*, and *Orttopnea*, ſoꝛ that the bꝛeaſt in theſe three ſoꝛts is hardly dꝛawne, which is peraduſture becauſe all the diſeaſes of the bꝛeaſt and the Lights haue a naturall participation together, that they are very hardly to be diſcerned, euen as may be well obſerued out of theſe deſcriptions folloving, where the lights and bꝛeaſt commonly are comprehended together: neuertheles they haue partly their difference, whereof we (as farre as is poſſible) ſhall giue god inſtructions.

It hapneth alſo oftentimes, that theſe phlegmatick humoꝛs do fall out of the head into the lights and bꝛeaſt, that they fill them full, and if then that nature be not ſo ſtrong that ſhe cannot auoide oꝛ conſume the tough ſlime, then will it coꝛrupt there, and conuert into that, whereof then (if it be not looked to) the *Hellica* oꝛ *Phibiſu*, which is the conſumption, is wont to folloꝛ, as hereafter ſhall appeare. Therefore is this *Aſhma* to be alwayes pꝛeuented: ſoꝛ when it beginneth to be confirmed, then is there no moꝛe help to be done, noꝛ cure to be wrought.

As much as then concerneth the oꝛder of liuing in this ſickneſſe, he muſt (as much as is poſſible) rule himſelfe accoꝛding to theſe ſoſeſaid oꝛdinances; ſoꝛ which, all they that are vexed with *Aſhma*, are to haue twice a weeke cups ſaltned on their buttocks without picking: what is further ſit, as to open the bꝛeaſt, and to bring vp phlegme, you haue god remedies in the ſecond Chapter of the Cough, and yet moe not long befoꝛe in the 8. §. that may ſtand alſo in ſome ſtads ſoꝛ this purpoſe.

Now folloꝛ diuers confectiones and other medicines that are god ſoꝛ *Aſhma*. Take Sage, Venus haire, ſoleſote leaues, Lungwoꝛt, Violet leaues, and Hyſſop, of each a handfull, Penunroyall and Thyme, of each halfe a handfull, floures of Bugloſſe, Violets, Burrage, and Cicorie, of each halfe ſo much, Annis ſeede, and Fennell ſeede, and ſeeds of Pallowes, of each halfe an ounce, Clecampane and Licorice, of each three quarters of an ounce, Warts & Polypody rotes of each halfe an ounce, tenne oꝛ twelue figs, Coꝛans, foure ounces, prepared Agaricke three dragmes, Spica, Squinant, Galingall, and Cinnamome, of each halfe a dragme, Ginger and greynes: ſet the this altogetheꝛ with a milde fire in ſufficient water, vntill there do remaine about a pinte, wꝛing and ſtraine it well out, then put as much Sugar vnto it as you thinke god, and let it ſet the to the thickneſſe of Hony, uſe this Lambatiue, and lick thereof as much and as often as you pleaſe.

Confection
of Coꝛans.

The Confection of Coꝛans, which are vſed of all Apothecaries, is thus prepared: Take Piony rotes halfe an ounce, dyed Hyſſop, Baulme, and Warts twong, of each halfe a handfull, Licorice cut ſmall halfe an ounce: ſet the theſe altogetheꝛ in ſufficient rayne water, wꝛing it hard out, and ſtraine it thꝛough a cloth: Put into this decoction waſht Coꝛans that be well pouined: ſet the it once againe with the decoction, and ſtraine it thꝛow a cloth oꝛ a hairne ſearce, put thereto a pound of Sugar, and let it ſet the into a confection: it is ſpeciall god to open the bꝛeaſt to ſwage the Cough, and to maturate the phlegme.

Another. Take waſht Coꝛans oꝛ Rayſons ſixe ounces, ſet the them ſoftly vntill that they ſwell, pouꝛe them into a Sieue and preſſe them thꝛow, put thereto twelue ounces of Sugar, and then ſet the them together into a confection.

This Confection folloving is god ſoꝛ the common people, take Colewoꝛt leaues with the red ſtals, cut the ſtals and ribs, ſtamp them in a wodden moꝛter, and ſtraine out the iuice: let it ſet the, and take as much Hony as there is iuice: ſet the it all together vnto the thickneſſe of Hony, ſtirring it alway about. If you will haue it ſtronger, then temper ſome ſaffron amongſt it. Another. Take Hollyhock rotes one ounce, Clecampane halfe an ounce, let them ſet the together in water of Violets, ſtamp them to pap, temper therewith one dragme of Cheruill ſeede, and make thereof a confection with ſodden Sugar, let them ſet the together in water of Violets, ſtamp them to pap, temper then therewith one dragme of Cheruill ſeede, and make thereof a confection with ſodden Sugar, let them ſet the together vntill they be thicke.

Do take one dragme of Rubarb, oyle of freſh Almonds three ounces, and two ounces of the
creams

creame of Milke, temper them together boyled on warme ashes, and vse thereof often, for it is very good. Some put thereto one dragma of Rubarb moze, which is not to be discommended.

Young children may haue this kinde of powder prepared: Take Masticke, Frankincense, and Citron pills, of each alike much, beate it small together, wherewith rub the childe softly in the seame of his skull. Afterwards giue him hereof to lick; take fresh oyle of sweete Almonds, temper therein white Sugar beaten; but if the obstruction of the breast be much, then temper amongst it *Trociscos de Agarico*. or giue him the powder thereof to drinke; in like manner also Rubarb with *Spica of Indie*, with Cinamome, or Squinant, according to the importance of the cause. Old folks may vse this as well as young children.

How commodious the *Cassia* is for all soze Coughs, is sufficiently declared in our introduction. But for this paine in the breast, it is needefull that it be tempered with Agarick, or some other thing, according to the qualitie of the sickness. But for this is especiall heede to be taken for women with Child, that it be not giuen them without great cause, because it maketh paine or ache in the belly.

Item, take Sulphur viue two greines, temper it with a little Hony, and so take it in, for it is marvellous good.

There is also to be had readie at some Apothecaries a costly compound *Trociscos de Sulphure*, or called *Adulphi*, and are thus prepared: take lossings of Cole, Dragagant, & Sugar pennets, of each halfe an ounce, Ginger two scruples, Licorice three dragmes, Treos one scruple, Hyssop, Pettie seede, Rosemary floures, Saffron and Sulphur viue, of each seuen greines, mire it with *Looch sanum*, and fourme trociscos thereof, take a little of it, letting it melt alone in the mouth, and vse it often.

Trocisci de sulphure Adulphi.

They make also a Confection of Brimstone: take Sulphur viue one scruple, mire it with fresh Butter, and Pusilage of Linseede, or Cleampane one ounce, take thereof often, and a little at once.

The Confection of fore lights, that is *Looch de pulmone Vulpis*, is aboue all other remedies, for the *Asima* (which is a shortnes of breath) very much commended: for it is not only good for a soze Cough and short breath, but it healeth and clenseth all blcers of the breast and Lights. And for the consumption it excelleth all other remedies, and is made thus: Take prepared fore lights, the iuice of Licorice, Annis seede, Fennell seede, and Venus haire, of each halfe an ounce, clarified Sugar seuen ounces and a halfe; beate these together, and decocted with Sugar in the water of folewote leaues, temper it into a confection.

Looch de pulmone Vulpis.

Hereafter followe some good Potions for this shortnes of breath. Take Sebestes, figs and Dates, of each fower, Venus haire, Violets, Currans and Licorice, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Poppy seede one ounce, Cinnamom one quarter of an ounce, Annis seede, Fennell, Agrymonie, Hyssop, of each one ounce, 20. Iuiubes, Sugar or Honie five ounces, three or fower pintes of water: let this sethe together untill the third part be sodden away, straine the liquor thowoe a cloth, and put the Sugar thereto or honie, and let it sethe againe untill it be clere.

Item take three quarters of an ounce of figs, Dates, hozehound, sinallage seede, Fennel, Roses, Venus haire, Hyssop and Licorice, of each five dragmes; sethe them as before, or to the halfe.

The common people may sethe the water with honie and Hyssop: and as the shortnes of breath beginneth to lessen, he must lay one dragma of *Agaricu* in the water of Betonie and Hyssop to steape, and temper amongst it some honie of Roses, and so drinke it together. Also the common Peade, and Sugar water, is good to drinke.

Another Potion. Take a pinte and halfe of white wine, steape therein one handfull of Hozehound; let it sethe together untill the third part, straine it and put thereto five ounces of clarified Honie; let it sethe a little together, and scum it diligently, whereof the patient is to drinke euery day two or three ounces. Some doe take three ounces of Honie, and do melt therein halfe an ounce of Turpentine washt, or as much *Oxymel*: Both are good and sure.

A marvellous good medicine which is highly esteemed in Turkie. Take the liuer of a Wolfe, the Hilt, Lights and braines: salt well the braines, and take of these fower of each a like much, let them be dried well that they may be powned: Giue the patient thereof one quarter of an ounce with a little fresh broth three daies one after another in the morning fasting, and let him fast afterwards five or sixe howers. The sicke partie must take his drinke through the Wolfes throate, and when this is so done, they report that they (which vse the same) be from thence forth freed

freed of it all the yere following : but if it returne not within one twelue moneth , that then it will neuer come againe. And if he had this sicknesse any moze afterwarde, they aduise that one shoulde make a lace of the Wolfes mathe, and weare the same all his life time on his naked bodie ; for thereby should he be certainly freed of this sicknesse. But to trie these things is the best waie.

Water distilled of Clecampane or byzoth wherein it is decocted is verie good, and chiefly if it be mingled therewith.

Hereafter are some things described , which the diseased may hold vnder his tong without chewing as big as a beane, and swallow it downe by little and little.

Take *Looch de Pino* one ounce and a halfe, Sugar pennets halfe an ounce, pounce them together. Item, take *Looch de Farfaria* (called *ad Astma*) as much as you thinke meete, and as much pounded Hollyhocke rootes, make a hard confectiō thereof with prepared honie or Sugar. And if any do resist these weake things, then shall he in the stāde thereof vse *Diapenidion* described in this Chapter and 6. S. And if it happen (as it wonteth often) that the sicke person by reason of this cough cannot sleepe : then is he once or twice a weke to take this potion when he goeth to bed.

Take placentes of Treos one dragma, the confectiō of *Philonium Romanum* halfe a scruple, temper it with one ounce & a half of Hyssop water, and at the same time strow on the top of the patients hed this powder following : Take *Sandaraca* one quarter of an ounce, Cloues one drag. Space two scruples, Roses, water Lillies, Violets, and Poppie heds of each halfe a dragma, *Lignum Aloes* one scruple, stampe each a part and temper them together.

Plaisters or Vnguents for this *Astma*.

Take fatte Dates and Figs of each one ounce, Mallowes, Hollyhocke leanes, of each three handfulls, rootes of Mallowes and of Hollyhockes, of each halfe an ounce, cut them to peeces and boile them together into a Pap, mire Pigeon dung amongst it, Turpentine, and Rosin of each one ounce, the Puselage of Linseed, and of fenegreek as much as is needfull for to make a milde plaister, laye it warme vpon the bzeast ; the same doth also the fat shayes well.

Item, take Comfrey rootes, broade and narrow Plantaine, Purslaine, and Venbane, choppe them small and sethe them together in the waters of Plantaine and Purslaine vntill it be thick, beaten well and mirt with Pomegranates pils, Arozne cups, Galles, and Spittle seade (which haue bene steeped eight howers in warme water :) Then strained out hard and powred to the rest and boiled vnto a little ; afterwarde mingle it with fine Solus, the meale of Lupins, and Barly meale of each halfe an ounce, *Gummi Helenij* one quarter of an ounce, Clare, and Turpentine as much as is needfull for to make a metely thicke plaister, then spread it on a leather and laye it vpon the bzeast. The vnguent *Alibea* is verie good to annoint the bzeast withall, as the same is often here before commaunded to be vsed.

Item, annoint the bzeasts with the oile of Mall flowers, of Bayes and Dill tempered together or each a part. Or take oile of Violets and of swete Almonds of each one ounce, Duckes grease and butter of each fower ounces, Saffron two scruples, white Clare as much as needeth for to make a soft Vnguent.

Certaine excellent things in generall. §. 13.

These things following are much commended for all diseases of the bzeast, and for all coughes in generall. First, the gum *Ammoniacum* dissolved in Barly water and honie, and taken : Aristologie, bitter Almonds, & oile of swete Almonds best with all meates. Boiled Southernwood, Balsam wood, & the fruits of the same : prepared Coloquint is wonderfull good for this, being vsed in pils : Cipers decocted in wine, confected Clecampane rootes, *Galbanū*, the rootes of blew flower delace, Pyrrhe put into pils of *Agaricu*, Coriander, and Spikenard seade, rere eggs supt up, or Catowles made thereof, Leakes with Barly water and Honie, Petties and their seade with Barly water and Honie, Woodbind, *Sandaraca*, greene Rue boyled in Wineger, Squils are speciall good, roasted, or howsoeuer you will vse them for that they be commended

mended and esteemed aboue all other medicines. Saffron tempered in the broth of a Corke, wilde Saffron seede, the gum *Sagapenum* giuen in with Rue water, Sesele seedes, Fore lungs prepared one drag. onely, Hyssope and all that is prepared with this herbe, is good for the lights and the whole breast, confected roots of the Star thistle *Eryngion*, conserve of Rosemary, & all that is made of Rosemary, Betony, Gilloflowers, and all that is made thereof: Nutmegs that are confected, doe consume all superfluous humors, not only of the Lights, but also of all the inward parts, albeit that some suppose, that they are hurtfull for the Lights: Walnuts that are confected in Sugar or Honie, doe warme the Lights and all inward parts, for which this thing following is very good. Take a sweete Pomegranate, cut it in fower parts, strowe the peeces with Sugar candie, and binde them together againe, binding or wrapping them in a moyst cloth, and let them roste leasurably, then take out the coare, & eate it for a medicine. Conserues of Elebriht openeth all inward members, and al obstructions of the Lights, like as doth also the wine which is described in the first Part against the diminishing of the sight.

Calmus which is confected, hath a speciall power for the oppilation of the Lights, and to open all inward obstructions.

Comin doth also the same, Caroway and Fennell confected, or eaten rawe: likewise Fennell is good for all Coughes, roughnes of the throte, and hoarsenes. Treacle and Githibate are also very good for this. All Losings of *Diapenidion*, of Dragagant, iuice and sirup of Licorice, and all kindes of *Oxymel* (as is already sayd) are altogether maruellous good for this disease. *Silique* roasted in ashes are also good against all shortnes of breath, and all kindes of Coughes: *Sp. Tristrans* water: In like manner both the sirups of Vineger, *Simplex* and *Compositus* are also speciall good for this purpose. Also all the forementioned Potions for the Cough and the breast, even as they are set downe in the second Chapter S. 2. In like maner also a costly stomachicall powder, which is described in the first Part, the 12. Chapter S. 1. that may be also used for *Astma*.

Of shortnes of breath through *Cholera*. S. 14.



At the beginning of the description of this shortnes of breath we haue shewed, that the same is caused very seldome of *Cholera*; and if the same should be caused thereby, then is the same yet to be cured through the same meanes, as in all places are expessed hereafter and before.

Wherefore is here no speciall matter to treat of, but onely the signes that are of this sickness through *Cholera*, and afterwards to see wherewith to delay the heate.

As concerning the signes thereof, it commeth with great drought, heate, and gnawing about the breast, and the same rather in the right then in the left side, with a yellow colour all ouer the breast, wherewith commeth also a roughnes of the tong and of the throte, and especially about the time when the *Cholera* accustometh to moue and stirre, which is from three a clocke untill nine in the day time, whereby the patient will also cast by small stoze of flegme, and that is yellowish: In his sleepe appeareth yellow things, and fiery fantasies, as lightening, and such like: The pulse is hard, quicke, and continuall, except the patient had lost most part of his naturall strength: the Urine is thicke, yellow, and ruddie, but in the bottome clere and subtile: yet doe these signes alter with euery mutation of an accident, according to the which euery expert person may know to direct himselfe. These things following doe cole the heate of the breast in generall, and the inflammation of the Lights; as Cassia, new Conserues of Roses, Julep of Roses, sirup of Roses, and such like: conserues of Burrage, Buglosse, and their wine, if they be not expessed forbidden for some reason.

In like maner the Cherrie wine, which is of a temperate nature. Item, Conserue of Violets & Julep, Conserues of Cicozie do cleanse all inward members of *Cholera*, driueth it out through the stole, and doth withstand all Agues of *Cholera*: Peaches confected in Sugar are also a speciall comfortatiue for all hot diseases, for that they cole all inward members, like as doth also the Conserues of water Lillies.

Take the iuice of Chickweede, and Meruaine, or the water wherein they are decocted (if you please) it is very good for all Coughes. Sirup of the right Endiue is speciall good for hot Lights, and for all inward hot parts. Likewise also Hanna of himselfe and his confection, *Electuarium de Manna*, which is ready to be had at all Apothecaries.

Of the shortnes of breath through *Melancholia*. §.15.

Hen so it is also with *Astma* through *Melancholia*, which is through the heauie blood, that happeneth very seldome, whereof these are the signes: a right leaden colour of the face, and the brest, running eies, with great heauines of the spirits, wherewith is also a fearefulness, faintnes of hart, desire to be solitarie, especially from nine of the clocke in the day time, vntill two or thre in the night: he complaineth also of moze abatement or lacke of breath in the left than in the right side, and of little sleepe: he is also vexed with many heauie fantasies, he cougheth by much thin spittle, and that with much a doe: his water is thin, white and clere, his going to stoule is lead coloured and hard. There is heard much rumbling & winde in his brest & in all the body. Yet doe these signes alter through diuers occasions, so that you must note the meate and drinke that the patient hath accustomed himselfe to vse before time.

How this disease is to be remedied and cured, you shall finde in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter, §.8. of *Padnes*, of *Melancholia*, and all that is said in the third Part of the fowle melancholicke blood.

Of the shortnes of breathing or Pursuenes through winde. §.16.

Whereas there is any short breath, or heauines in the brest through winde, the same will be alwaies augmented through meates and medicines that engender winde, as may well be noted through the rumbling and course of the winde in the brest and other places moze.

For this must be vsed, Rue, and Benniroyall, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Serapinum*, *Opopanacum*, of each one dragme, Comin one ounce and a halfe: all this being beaten together, make thereof a salve with molten Ware, and annoint the brest therewith very warme. This salve is also very good for all heauy breathing that proceedeth of grosse tough matter and that is impacted into the Lights: for it separateth and consumeth the same. What further might be done for this, that may you sufficiently perceiue by all the forementioned Treatise, wherein hath bin spoken of this sickness. For this short and soze breath through winde cannot be alone by it selfe: but there must be with it either *Cholera* or *Plegma*, or *Melancholia*, or blood: of all which there is sufficiently witten.

Of the spetting blood through some disease of the Lights. §.17.

The spetting of blood may come of many occasions of the bzaines, which are wont to be eased through bleeding at the nose, whereof is witten in the first part the eight Chapter and 7. §.

Secondly, through any hurting or bruising of the throte or the mouth; for which you are to looke in the first part the 13. Chapter.

Thirdly, through hurting of the gums, whereof we haue sufficiently mentioned in the first part; also the same is sometimes caused of the Lights, brest and stomacke, also of the Liuer and of the mother, &c. This spetting of blood do the Greekes call *Hemoptoin*, whereof we will write at this present.

The cause of this bleeding may happen through falling, thrusting, and such like outwarde occasions of the brest, or of any hoarseleach drunken, through great heate or great colde, strong coughes, to drie lowd, to vomit much and vehemently, through long vse of hot peppered meates, or through vse of oinions and garlick, through much subtile blood, through neglect of accustomed letting of blood, and through some disease of the Lights: or when a vaine chaunceth to breake, whereof hereafter we shall discourse in particular.

The signes of this spetting of blood that commeth out of the brest, or out of the Lights are, that when the same proceedeth out of the brest, then will there be felt great paine in the same: and contrariwise, when it proceedeth out of the lungs, there will be felt very little paine, the spetting

spetting blood out of the breast is not so perilous as that from the Lights. But when there is a vaine broken open, then runneth it most abundantly. If it be caused of any other inconueni-
ence, as of impostumations, bruises, or hurts, then commeth vp but little blood, & that full of scum.

When as then a sicke man through haking without coughing fetcheth vp blood, it commeth from some little vaines about the throte, where you may easily come by it with any kinde of remedies: but the patient for this disease must forbear to eate excessive meate and drinke, by reason that thereby much blood is engendred, whereby through the superabounding in the vaines the throte openeth: but if he be prouoked to such bleeding through vomiting, then it is a signe that it commeth from the stomache: the which is not much to be feared, for that the same is to be easily prevented through letting blood, setting boring cups, opening the mother vaine, or opening their termes or flowers: in like sort by taking some astringent things, as the seedes of Schumach, soler grapes, and such like. Item, through this potion following: Take fine Bolus, Gum, Dragon blood, Pomegranate blossoms, and Frankincense, of each a like much, poune them together to powder, and take thereof three dragmes, and temper it with sodden iuice of Quince peares. For meate is very good, Starch, peled Beanes, Lentils, Pease, unleaunened bread, Turtle doves, and common Pigeons: Of fruites, all that binde, as Pedlars, Seruices, Quince peares, Pyunes, Peares, and such like: For drinke, milke wherein are quenched glowing pibble stones, steeled water, thicke red wine a little now and then, sirupe of Poppie heads tempered with water, wherein Quince kernels and Pyztle seedes are decocted. It happeneth oftentimes that such spetting of blood commeth of it selfe, without any cause at all, whereof the patient is neither hindered nor harmed at all, and is to haue his course: but if the same do chaunce through coughing, which is a signe that the same ascendeth from the lights and the breast, then is it to be feared, that it will be *Phthisis*, that is, the consumption which then ensueth, bicause one cannot come to this place with necessarie remedies. When for this sicknesse it is best to let blood immediately at the first, and that in the Liuer vaine, whereby the blood may be deriued from the Lights. Others do first of all open the *Sapha* on the fete, that the blood might be drawen downwards, and allwaies on the same side that it is adiudged the disease to be. The third sort counsell for this disease, to set boring cups on their buttockes. This being all done, the patient is to be laide in a cole chamber, where he may be as quiet as may be without much stirring of himselfe, and must keepe from him all that might inflame his blood, as anger, crying, copulation, laughing, hot coverings, hot and salt meates and drinke, bathing and such like. There are also no red colours to be brought in his sight. Aboue all this, binding is one of the principallest remedies against abundant bleeding, therefore is that also here to be used, as in other places is sufficiently taught.

There are ordained many mo remedies against this spetting of blood, euen as hereafter fol-
loweth, whereof you may chose that which liketh you best.

Take Frankincense and Dragon blood, of each three drag. and one scruple, of yellow Amber one drag. prepared Bloodstone and sealed earth, of each ten drag. Allume two drag. and a halfe, flowers of Pomgranats three dragmes, Opium two dragmes, Kubarb one quarter of an ounce, make thereof 18. trociscs with sirupe of Poppie heads, then temper euery day one in Burdane water, and so drinke it. And if this spetting of blood be too violent, then may the patient take one more at night.

These things following are more certaine, because of the Opium: Take Gumia, Gallick, fine Bolus, and Dragon blood, of each alike much, being all beaten small together, make trociscs thereof with Burdane water: for this is also good Trocisci de Carabe, and of Terra Sigillata.

Now follow certaine confectiions and such like, wherewith the cause of this spetting of blood will be taken away, for the which this following is a certaine remedie. Take a dragme of Eghels beaten small, and temper it with halfe an ounce of the Syrup of Poppie heads, or sirup of Zuiubes: temper also with it the confexion of *Philonium Romanum*, halfe a scruple, and so take it: if you had rather drinke it, then mixe it with some Burdane water. Item, take conserues of Roses and Violets of each one ounce, the confexion of *Triafandalon* three ounces, prepare red red Corall, Burdaine seede, and broad Plantain seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, temper them together with Rose water. Or take the spices of cold Dragagant cakes halfe an ounce, yellow Amber, prepared red Corall, Bloodstone, fine Bolus, Plantaine seedes, and Houllike, of each one dragme and a halfe, Gumme, broad Plantain seede, of each halfe a dragme, Gallick,

Frankincense, of each three greynes, Raisons one ounce, white Sugar as much as is needfull, Purslain water and Rose water, of each two ounces, seth the therewith the Sugar, untill it be as thicke as Hony, and temper the rest being beaten small amongst it. Item, take Pingles one ounce, Cozans one ounce and a halfe, beaten Licorice halfe an ounce, Ginger, one dragma, Cinnamon two drags, as much Sugar as the rest: seth the them with the water of Plantain, and temper the rest, being chopt and beaten amongst it.

Take Henbane seedes tenne greynes, prepared Cozall one scruple, two or three ounces of Plantain water, temper them together, and giue it him to drinke: put also therto the tabulates of *Diatragacanthum*, the confectiō *Diacodion*, *Looch de Portulaca*, each alone, or tempered to a confectiō, with the sirrup of Girtles, the red losings are also to be holden in the mouth that stand described with other. Treacle or Pithivate do maruellously withstand the spetting of blood, if there be taken of them one dragma and a half, tempered with Vineger and Purslane water. The confectiō of Fore lights described here befoze in the 12. S. are also highly commended aboue all other remedies.

Against all cloddod blood in the breast, be it of any wounds or otherwise, you are to drinke this: take field Cyppers, stamp it small, and lay it 24. howres to steepe in Scabious water, wying it well out, and drinke oftentimes thereof warme.

Item, take the herbe Horetaile, beate it to powder, and drinke thereof euery time one drag. with Plantain water twice a day. This powder may you also cast vpon the meate, and a little Bloudstone mixed amongst it. Item, take prepared Bloudstone, mixe it with water or iuite of Purslane, and swallow it downe: for this stone hath a speciall force to staunch blood like as experience bringeth with it. Or take two scruples of prepared bloudstones, and temper it with the renning of a young Deere, and make pils thereof, and hold them awhile in your mouth.

Item, take Iuiubes, Sebestes, Dragagant, Gumme, of each one quarter of an ounce, Annis seede, and seedes of Hollibocks, of each one drag. one quart of steeld water: seth these together to the third part, whereof the patient is to drinke foure times aday. Item, take sirrup of Poppie seedes, of Iuiubes and Girtle seede, temper them together, or take each alone: make a drinke thereof with water wherein Quince or Girtle seede is boyled.

Another. Take Girtle seede, broade Plantain seede, both beaten small, of each one dragma, temper them with Purslane water, and drinke it treatably. Or vse this following in this manner also: take beaten Lupins one quarter of an ounce, prepared bloudstone one dragma, tempered with Purslane water, and drinke it as is sayd. Betonie layd in Wine is also many times approued in the spetting of blood.

There may also Salues be vsed outwardly vpon the breast: yet here is to be noted, that it is very commodious for the spetting of blood, but for the Cough very hurtfull, therefore this following is rather to be vsed: take oyle of Roses, of Girtles, of swete Almonds, & iuite of Pines, of each alike much, and make thereof a salue with molten ware. Item, take beaten Frankincense, temper it with the white of an Egge, and lay it on the breast. Or take the iuite of Sloes, *Hippocistis*, Dragon blood, blossoms of Pomegranats, Gals, Pasticke, and Roses, of each foure scruples, Turbith, fine Bolus, of each one dragma, oyle of Roses, of Girtles, of Pastick, of each halfe an ounce, the white of an Egge, well beaten, and Ware as much as is needfull for a salue. The black Tabulates described in the second part the second Chapter and 2. S. shall the patient hold vnder his tong. And if this be desired to be moze forcible, then is it to be prepared as hereafter followeth: take Dragagant, Plantain seeds, a little parched, and Gumme, of each halfe an ounce, bloud stone, the yellow seedes of Roses, fine Bolus, sealed earth, Amber, and red Cozall, of each one dragma, Pusilage of fleawort seed, tempered with Purslane water, as much as is needfull for to forme therewith these troscises, vse them as is said.

It is also needfull that the body be purged. For which this sirupe following may be vsed: Take Girtle seede and the seede of Butchers brome, Roses, blossomes of Pomegranates, the yellow seedes of Roses, Acozine cups, Gals, iuite of Sloes, and *Hippocistis*, of each halfe an ounce, white Saunders, Quinces and burnt Quozie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Dragagant, Gum, fine Bolus, and Dragons blood, of each one drag. and a halfe, sealed earth and Pasticke, of each three drags. Frankincense, white Poppie seede, of each two drag. and a halfe, prepared Bloudstone halfe a drag. the iuite of Plantaine, and iuite of Quinces, of each five ounces. You must straine and scum the iuite, then powze thereto as much raine water as will serue to seth the
it

it together, and make thereof a sirupe with sugar, whereof giue one ounce and a halfe tempered with three ounces of Purflaine water during certaine daies early in the morning.

This sirupe doth not lose, but stoppeth much rather, and stancheth blood. For the purging, vse these pills *De Agarico*, two scrup. *Cochia* one scrup. make thereof seven pills. And make the sirupe of Roses lartine with Rubarbe in an astringent decoction, and Purflaine water, wherein the shels of yellow Pirabolanes be decocted, and this is a soluble and good purgation, it clenseth well the blood. But if the cough be with it, then against night giue him a pill of *Cynoglossa*, and let him hold one in his mouth by day.

For a broken vaine in the Lights or breast. §.18.



The signes of a broken vaine in the Lights are (as is already said) if the blood be suddenly spet out or powdered out by heapes, and that clere, cleane blood, and not clodded, then is present remedie to be looked for before it turne to an impostume, or that the blood be congealed and turned into matter. For if so be that there be neglect thereof, then is there danger of neuer more to be holpe. And if so be that such forcible blood wil not be staied, then are you to open out of hand the Liner vaine, in the same arme of the same side, where you thinke that the vaine of the Lights is broken, and then to let no more but two or three ounces of blood. And if you perceiue that there is any Cholera run out with it, then is the bleeding of the nose not bad for the same. But if this will not helpe, then is the head vaine to be opened betwene the thumbe and the first finger, and let out about two ounces of blood. There is good for this to purge choler with Cassia, slower Dates, Spanna, and such like.

To drawe the blood downward, the patient is to be rubbed softly with warme clothes in the outward members, also to set great boring cups vnpickt on the top of the buttockes: and if the piles could be made bleede, that will do it much good.

Salues.

Take beaten Gals, Acornes, Butchers brome seedes, and the iuice of Sloes, of each halfe an ounce, Hyttle seede, seedes of Plantaine and of Purflaine, of each three drag. Dragagant, Gum, Zinglas, Clew, of each five dragmes, Barly meale one ounce and a halfe, Starch, pill dust, of each one ounce, Saffron one drag. seth it in red wine, which is somewhat milde, and make pap thereof, and lay it vpon the breast, and renew it once euery sower and twenty howers. And in case that the pap cleaue hard on the breast, then must you lay a fresh thereon.

Item, take Sozrell water, water of Balme, Cicozie and Rose water, of each five ounces, Troiscos de Spodio, de Rosis, of each two scrup. red and white Behen, *Doronicum*, Harts bones and Pearles, of each one scrup. Palmsey halfe an ounce, temper it together and seth it a little, then dip a sower square wollen cloth in it, and lay it lukewarme ouer the left breast, in like manner one more on the same side of the backe bone, and refresh it euery day once.

For stanching of blood there are many sundrie remedies described in the first part, the eighth Chapter, in the 7. §. where we haue spoken of the bleeding of the nose, yet is there here commanded to be vsed (if neede require) these things following.

Take Venbane seede and white Poppie seedes, of each five drag. sealed earth and red Corall, of each two drag. and a halfe, prepared Bloodstone one drag. and conserue of Roses sower ounces, temper them all together and make a confection thereof. Use a little thereof, and that with great heed: for this also may be taken the oyle of Rosine distilled with Ireos and prepared Sulphur two ounces, Ireos one drag. beate it together very small, and vse thereof euery day three or sower greinces. Yet it is to be vnderstood, that this is not to be done, but after all the foresaid things, as letting of blood, and such like be done.

Afterwards it is very good once in eight daies to take one quarter of an ounce of Turpentine, with a little Ireos rowled with powder of Licorice.

This following is to be laid vnder the tong: Take cold Dragagant Tabulates two ounces, prepared Bloodstone, Amber, Clew, red Corall, and Pearles, of each one dragme, temper them

all together with *Looch de Papanere*, as much as all the rest, and hold at all times thereof in the mouth the bignes of a Beane.

Order for meate and drinke.



It is very needefull in this disease to obserue a certaine order in eating and drinking: therefore he is to feede with that which coletly measurably, which thickeneth the matter, and dralweth it together. From the first day to the fourth, the sicke body is to be kept soberly: afterwards is his meate to be drest and sod with one of these things following, as Dragagant, Gum, or a little cleane Clew, or a pap of Starch, of pill dust, or at the leastwise other meate strewed therewith. Pap of Goats milke that is prepared with pebble stones or stele is good for him. Sodden Calues fete, or Lambes fete, Pulletts broth, or Capon broth drest with Finglas are very commodious for him. There may also sometimes a peece of a Tench or an Ele, with other intrailles of fish be sodden in other meates: for it is certaine that those things for this sicknes are very commodious. In like manner are the Lentils sodden with Wheate, and drest for this sicknes very mete: for this is also fit Zuiubes, Dates, Barly, thicke milke, fresh Chæse, all kinde of flesh wherein is little blood, as wood pigeons, Turtle Dones, and Partridges prepared with binding things, as with Quinces, Warberies, Raspes, and such like, &c.

If this spetting of blood be caused through heate, then dresse his meate most with Lettice, Purslaine, Gourds, Melons, Daisies, Shepherds purse, and such like.

For his drinke this following is very good: Take twelue ounces of very good honie, sower pintes of water, that is twice stealed with stele, being well sodden together, temper amongst it Dragagant and Gum, of each one drag. and a halfe, Saffron one scrup. let it sethe againe untill the third part be sodden away. But if one will not drinke thereof alone, then is good red wine to be tempered amongst it. But let him drinke what he wil, if Finglas be sodden in all his drinks, or the powder thereof be mingled amongst his drinke, it is the better. He may also otherwhiles take a draught of Rose water, or Purslaine water. Raine water is commended aboue all other sorts of drinks, if a vaine be broken in the breast, and chiefly if there be a little fine Bolus, or burnt Iuoze tempered amongst it.

This following is praised for a precious and an approued powder: Take the seeds of Plantaine, Butchers brome seeds, and the iuice of Sloes, of each one drag. prepared Pearles, red Corall, Amber, Bloodstone, and Dragon blood, of each one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus thre quarters of an ounce, Dragagant, Gum, and Frankincense, of each thre drag. temper, and beat it together.

You are to take one scruple of this powder with Purslaine water sower times a day, one hower before breakfast, one hower before supper, and likewise two howers after.

For congealed blood. §.19.



When it is thought that (after the vaine is stop in the breast) then is yet still a little clotted blood behinde, then are these things to be used thereto. For which is fine Treacle highly commended, if thereof be taken one dragme, or a dragme and a halfe, with thre ounces of water, wherein Licorice and Venus haire haue sodden. Or take olde Treacle one dragme, one ounce of vineger, two ounces of Rose water, temper it together and giue it him. For this is also good the water of Larks spurs, billet coles one quarter of an ounce beaten smail, and giuen to drinke in vineger is a generall medicine for all clotted or bused blood. So is likewise the renning of all yong beastes especiall good for all clotted or bused blood. If then any body hath caught a great fall, or is hard stroken or thrust, and afraid of any clotted blood, then giue him euery morning and euening (each time) two or thre ounces of the iuice of Cheruill. Item, take Cheruill water and Louage water, of each one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, & drinke it at a draught. Or take of Kubarbe halfe an ounce, Lacca one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus, and sealed earth, of each one dragme, Kubarbe halfe a dragme, if you put thereto some burnt Sponges, it will be so much the better, make a powder thereof, and vse it as is aforesaid. Another: Take fine Bolus halfe

halfe an ounce, sealed earth one drag. Dragon blood and Spermaceti, of each halfe a drag. make a powder thereof, and giue him a dragme of it with white wine. This plaister following may also be made: Take Goates milke and honie, let them be well warmed together, then temper amongst it as much fine Bolus, untill it be as thicke as a plaister, and so lay it vpon the beast: it wasteth the clotted blood.

If any be afraid that through falling or thrusting he haue broken any thing in his body, or feare to haue any clotted blood within him, then is he to drinke one dragme of this following with warme wine or beere. Take fower ounces of the rootes of red Buglosse, cut them in peeces, and let them seeth in a pot of red wine untill they be soft, then take them out and beate it to pap, put thereto two ounces of Spermaceti, and one pound of fresh Butter, let them melt together with a small fire, and therewith annoint the place, where the paine is greatest, and chiesly about the beast.

Lastly, in the middle of the spetting of blood, take one ounce of the iuice of Plantaine, temper therein two or thre greines of *Opium*, and giue it to the patient. To make these conserues following: Take white Pepper and Venbane seede, of each fine drag. sealed earth and *Opium*, of each one quarter of an ounce, peled Venpe seede and Saffron, of each fower scruples, *Beuer-cod*, *Spica*, *Euphorbium*, *Pieretrum*, Pearles, Amber, *Zeduary* and *Doronicum*, of each one scruple, Campher fire greines, sodden hony as much as is needefull, giue of this halfe or a whole dragme. with one ounce and a halfe of Plantaine water, tempered with halfe an ounce of wine.

Comfortable things in and after the spetting of blood. §.20.



To keepe nature by hir might and power, these confections following are to be vsed. Take the flesh of Capons that are sodden with Dragagant in stealed water fower ounces, white and red Cozall, Dragagant, Gum (both a little toasted) of each one dragme and a halfe, fine Bolus, Amber, sealed earth, *Mumia*, and Bloodstone, of each one dragme, Purflaine seede and Plantaine seede, of each thre dragmes, Almonds steeped in the iuice of Quinces, thre dragmes, Iuiubes, Sebestes (so drest also) of each one ounce, *Specierum Eleſtuarij Regum*, one quarter of an ounce, *Species* of the colde Dragagant Tabulates fower ounces, white Sugar and Sugarcandie, of each one pound and a halfe, or so much as you please, seethe the Sugar with Bullet broth, and mire all the rest amongst it, and make of them mozeels.

Another.

Take *Species de Gemmis*, which are set forth in the description of the hart, one dragme, and giue it with sirupes of Apples, this strengtheneth the hart and the Lights, it is very good for those that after spetting much blood, be so faint harted, that they seeme to haue no moze pulse.

For conclusion: for this spetting of blood we will here present some particular things to be vsed for the same, where there is neither phisition, nor Apothecarie neare hand, bitter Almonds with Starch are passing good for this, and also for all colde coughes: *Agaricus* one quarter of an ounce, steaped in fower ounces of Purflaine water, and wzing it well out, and so in one day at two times taken. Flowers of Pomegranates, *Hippocistis*, and prepared Cozall, of each one dragme, with the white of an egge and Gum tempered together to Trocisces, and so holden under the tong.

The iuice of Quinces, Centozie, burnt and washed Hartes horne, prepared Amber, *Lycium*, sealed earth, fine Bolus, Pyrtle seede, Pyrrhe, or a little of al of the thre or fower greins at one time taken with wine is passing good. Likewise the iuice of Pints, or of Purflaine is highly commended for this disease. For this is also good the white Venbane seede, but not about thre greines at once to be taken. The yellow seede of Roses, white Brier, and many other things moe that are aboue rehearsed, amongst other compounds (which are to be vsed alone) are very good.

Of the infection of the Lights which is called
Peripneumonia. §. 21.



His name is as much to say in Greeke as *Phlegma*, which is phlegme, slime, or corruption of the Lights, which matter infecteth the lights, maketh them swell, and bringeth an hote Ague with it. This is caused chiefly of *Cholera*, or of *Phlegma*, the which falleth through the vaines, or out of the head into the lights, and may be caused of the matter that prouoketh the Pleurisie, or Squinancie, and falleth into the lights. And although the *Peripneumonia*, as an impostume of the lights hapneth to breake out, whereby the lights are wounded; yet is it notwithstanding therein leuered from the *Phthisis*, that this infection of the lights is rather placed betwene the small skinne which couereth the lights, then in the substance of them where it can procure an erulceration; where contrarywise the *Phthisis* which is the right consumption that harmeth, impostumeth, and rotteth the very substance of the lights.

The signes of this *Peripneumonia*, or maladie of the lights are these, namely, a troublesome breath, as if one would choke, whereby the sicke bodie is compelled to lift vp himselfe, his breath is alway hote, so that he doth alwayes call for cold ayre. This phlegme is sometimes somewhat yelowe, and otherwhiles pure red, and sometimes greene and blacke and stommy. They do feele a wizinging and paine in the bzeast, that reacheth from the ribs to the backbone. There is also a stronge Ague commonly therewith, the tongue is red, and will be in time slimie and black, so that when one toucheth it with the finger, it cleaueth thereto. They cannot lye neither on the backe nor side, but must sit alway vpight: the cheekes are alwayes so red, as if they were painted. If then these signes all or in part do appeare, then is it most certaine that there is an impostume in the lights, the which otherwhiles causeth such a strangling, and *Apnea*, that the patient can get no more breath, and that it cannot be thought otherwise, but that the patient must stiffe, and all this without any great stich or feeling of great heate, which neuertheless is very great ouer the whole body.

The remedies for this sicknes are that the head vaine be opened, & afterwards the meanes be vsed which here before in the fift Chapter in the 5. §. are prescribed.

The remedies for this sicknes are, that the head vaine be opened, and afterwards the meanes be vsed, that here before in the 5. §. is ordained for the Pleurisie, be it of what cause soener that they procede, but good herbe must be taken, for that this impostume sticketh deperlier in the body then the Pleurisie: so that whatsoever one layeth outwardly vpon the bodie, must be stronger & alwayes tempered with such things, that may conuey the medicine to the lights, and make the phlegme to be losed the soner, that which is to be layd on the out side, must be layd on the side, but aboue ouer the bzeast; and if that the patient be not let bloud, then is he to be let bloud in the liner vaine in the arme.

Of the anguish of the Lights which is called *Empyema*. §. 22.

This disease of the lights is all together like the foresayd *Peripneumonia*, and proceedeth commonly of these causes following, to wit, when one is thrust hard vpon the bzeast, or hath fallen, whereby that afterwards there flow bad humors to it, that at length alter into matter. Also, this sicknes can be caused of a continuall vse of some certaine vaporous meates and drinks, or through a Rheume that falleth out of the head vpon the lights, and cannot be coughed vp by any meanes, so that there it doth putrisie, and must needs turne to matter: Or that inwardly within the bzeast some impostume happen to breake, whereby the matter runneth into the hollownes of the bzeast, like as of the Squinancie, of the Pleurisie, and *Peripneumonia* commonly chaunceth.

In fine *Empyema*, which is an anguish or impostume, wherein much matter gathereth together, the which is burthened with all the foresaid matter with it.

When as then any such anguish commeth into the Lights, then is it very hard or impossible to be holpen, for that there be no other meanes for to cleanse the same then through the Cough, the which still erulcerateth more, and consumeth the lights.

The

The signes of the impostume in the Lights, are oppression of the bzeast, a painefull bzeath, to cough by corruption with a dry and salt Cough, to speake snappishly, a disordered pulse, with a small Ague, which is rather perceiued by night then by day, whereby there is but little sleepe.

And to know in what place of the Bzeest that this impostume is, these are therfore the signes, namely, if it be in the right side, and the patient doe lie vpon the left side, then hath he much more paine and griefe.

Item, make a cloth wet in water wherein fine Bolus is dissolved, binde the same rounde about the bzeest, and vpon the place; where the same cloth is first of all drie, there is the griefe: if it drie on both sides, then are both sides therewith infected.

This sickness, be it as perillous and incurable as it will, notwithstanding are there no other remedies to helpe it, then they that are ordained for the paine in the Bzeest, for the Pleurisie, and chiefly for the cough: So that there must be vsed for the same now and then sirups, and otherwhyles Plaisters, Confections, Pills, Tabulates, Gargarismes, and such like, nowe one, and then another.

Forasmuch as then we haue notified in all the foresaid places, and in the insuing *Phibisi* or Consumption, many remedies, therfore it is needeles to reckon them here againe, but onely to remember, if the amendment come slowly, that then it should not be discontinued and left off. For that this disease accustometh commonly to tarrie fortie daies and longer. And if so be that the sickness be not cured in fortie daies, then commeth thereof the consumption, and whereas it often happeneth that neither inward nor outward remedies doe helpe for this sickness, then doth the last refuge and necessitie constraine, that other remedies are to be sought for: to wit, that lastly the Bzeest must be opened, be it with a hot iron, cozie, or incision, that thereby the filth and matter be let run out, whereby the bzeast is to be cleansed, the patient cured, and olde age atchieued. Therfore that we will not pretermitt to make knowen, what the auncient Physicians haue taught thereof:

First all such Plaisters are to be laid therein, that doe discusse matter and maturate it. As these following: take Fenegræke, and Linsæde meale, of each three ounces, eight or ten fat figs, fire or seven Dates, two ounces of Pease meale, Cammomill one ounce and a halfe, poune them all together and sethe them in wine, and temper therewith two ounces of Turpentine, and Linsæde meale one ounce and a half, oyle of Cammomill one ounce, then make a plaister thereof, and lay it on the bzeest where the paine is.

And if you suppose that this swelling procede out of a cold cause, then put thereto two ounces of Pigeon dung, Saltpeter one ounce, and oyle of Lillies as much as is needfull, Treacle or Pithivate (if there be no Ague) taken inwardly or layd thereon outwardly are very good: and that this impostume might the sooner bzeake out, the patient must prouoke himselfe as much as is possible, to lie on his side where it is, not to forbear coughing, but to prouoke himselfe much rather to cough by the same, as much as he can, thereby to bzeake the same the sooner.

But if the anguish will of it selfe not incline to any bzeaking, then must the place where the same is, be opened on the outside, with an hot iron, Cozie or incision: when as the matter is all run out, and the impostume mundified, then it is like other impostumes to be cured. And if so be that through riddance of much filth be it through coughing it vp, or any other issue, that nature doth begin to be weake, and requireth strengthening: then is the patient to be well prouided for, with good light bzead, and swæte white wine, and broths of Hens, and vse all sowles that haunt the high countries: Goates milke is very good for him to vse: also rere eggs, sodden Barley, Coleworts broth, drest with Hyssope, Parsley, and with oyle of swæte Almonds. Lastly, all his meates are to be tempered with Hyssope and Saffron, by reason that they haue both a speciall congruitie or affinitie with the Lights and the Bzeest.

Also there may be vsed the confection of the flesh of Capons described of late in the 19. S. for a strengthening.

With these foresaid things we will ad some other things, that are not onely commodious for the impostume of the Lights, but also for the *Astma*, and all other diseases of the Lights: but chiefly some Potions, as wine of Parierom and *Asarabacca*, like as both of them in the ende of this booke are described. Item, take Fenegræke, Linsæde, Hollihock rootes, Pallowes, and wilde Saffron, of each one handfull, dried Hyssope, and Venus haire, of each one handfull, eight or ten fat figs, Currans two ounces, Sugar pennets, Licorice, of each one ounce, fennell seed

one dragma, *Turbit* halfe an ounce, *Ginger* one scruple, *Salgemma* halfe a dragma; sethe these all together in thre quartes of water, vnto two quartes, and euery day giue the patient thereof five ounces.

He may also vse this Cocke water following, the which is thus to be prepared, when as the greatest extremitie is past: and when the patient beginneth to recouer, then giue him a good Cruse full of this broth following, for certaine daies continually. Take a Cock of thre or fower yeres olde, course him so long vntill he lie still; afterwards kill him, and stufte him with Currans, Figs, Licorice, wilde Saffron, Venus haire, white Spints, Penniroyall, Fenegreake; if you cannot get all of them, take the most parte of them, of each a like much: let them sethe in a great kettle that you neede to poure no more water vpon it, drinke of this as is said. But the third day, take five ounces of this Potion, and sethe therein two cut Figs, vnto thre ounces: then put thereto a dragma of Treacle or Spithivate, *Philonium Romanum* halfe a scrup. washt Turpentine one drag. and a halfe, and then take it all at one time.

This order must he obserue certaine dayes together, albeit that it should last one whole yere, which would be the better. Likewise there is good for this sickness, Turpentine taken with Worme, and prepared fore Lights, for it openeth the Breast, cleneth the same, and healeth the Lights.

Another Cocke water. Dress the Cocke as he ought to be, and stufte him with Viskope, Licorice, and Venus haire, of each halfe a handfull, Currans halfe an ounce: let them sethe well together, and lastly put a dragma of *Thymus* vnto it, vse this broth, as is aforesaid. Item, melt a drop of *Ammoniacum* in a sponefull of the water of life, and drinke it fasting.

Of the consumption *Phthisis*, a disease of the Lights. §. 23.



This *Phthisis*, (the which by reason of her nature, is called the Consumption and of the Latinists, *Tabes*) is an vlcere of the Lights, of the Breast, of the throte, or of the mouth of the stomacke, wherewith is alwaies a Cough or a small ague, wherby that the whole body consumeth away, and wareth impotent. Wherby *Phthisis* is an exsiccation and weakning of the body, wherby the whole body will be consumed, euen as the Greke name sheweth.

Item, *Phthisis* is a sickenes of the Lights, that dryeth away and consumeth the flesh, marrowe, and all other powers of the bodie. In fine, *Phthisis* is all that harmeth the Lights, or deuoureth them: This disease is also of such nature and qualitie, that it seldome infecteth the very young, the very old and aged persons, but most of all, as *Hippocrates* testifieth, those that are betwene eightene and 35. yeres of age: and this is the cause that the eager and sharpe matter in this age, be it through naturall or accidentall causes, doth as then raigne most of all in these kinde of bodie.

First, this Consumption can procede of many causes, as of a sore Cough, wherby any vaine doth breake in the Lights, or of any eager blackish rheume that falleth vpon the Lights, and there through his eagernes doth arrode some vaine of the Lights, as a drop of water through continuall falling pearceth a hole into a hard stone.

Secondly, this can also be caused through an impostume of the throte; the which breaking, falleth into the breast and there annoyeth the same.

Thirdly, if any impostume in the breast which after the Pleurisie, inflammation of the Lights, or spetting of blood is not well clenched and taken away. Like as of *Empyema* (which is the infection of the Lights) hath been said.

Fourthly, such can also be caused through some obstruction of any accustomed course of womens flowers, or course of the Hemorrhoides, which being closed vp, by their vapors do endamage the Lights.

Fifthly, it commeth through extreame outward heate, or colde rawe windes, and especially in the falling of the lease. Also straines, wounds, pestilent ayre, through long vse of many hot spices, Vinions, Garlike, and other things moe, which doe ingender much and subtile blood, wherby a vaine quickly commeth to breake, wherby afterwards the blood putrifieth there, and turneth to an impostume.

These

These sicknesses can also be well prouoked through long conuersing in quicksiluer, the vapour whereof harmeth and putrifeth the Lights.

These also are the commonest signes of this sickness, to wit, when the sicke mans nose waxeth small and sharpe, when the temples of the head fall downe, their arme pits doe stretch out like wings, whereto cometh afterwards a small hot Ague, Cough after meate, oppression of the breast, grievous breathing, matterie spittle, the which is alwaies a little dyed with blood, which if it be cast ouer hot coles, yelde a stench; or if one cast them in a kettie of water, do sinke to the bottome. The cheekes of the patient are alwaies ruddie, the nailes on the hands and feete will be crooked, he is sometimes hot, and otherwhiles cold. In fine, they that are oppressed with this wretched sickness, they are alwaies very raging and vnpatient, so that no body can doe enough for them, &c. When as then besides all these signes, the blood beginneth to consume, to drie away, and the haire to fall off, then is he very far spent.

Now for to come to the meanes whereby all such sicknesses are to be holpen, then is there first an olde saying, that the old and ripe consumption is not to be cured: The cause is, that all such vlcers of the breast doe corrode too deepe. Secondly, because the Lights must be in continuall motion, where notwithstanding all cures haue neede of quietnes. Thirdly, through continuall motion doth race and eate in the deeper. Fourthly, for that the disease lyeth so deepe in the bodie, that Phisicke can hardly or slowly come to it. Fifthly, if hot remedies be to be vsed for it, then increaseth the Ague: if colde remedies, then haue they but small force to pearce to the place infected: Or if there be drying medicines vsed thereto, then doe the same oppresse and putrifie there.

These sicknesses may be settled a long time in children and old folks, in corpulent and fat folks, and specially in women: but if the sickness do draw to an end, and that besides all the sayd signes the stomacke faileth, and the laske approacheth with it, then is there small hope more at hand, notwithstanding, although this sickness (as it is sayd) is very dangerous, and long continuing, yet are the due remedies that serue for the same not to be despised nor abieted. And be soze all, as much as concerneth this disease, the eyes are to be fired on seuen kind of things, first, to see that the Rheume be stayed, for the which you may heere before finde diuers remedies in the Squinancie in the twelfth Chapter and 2. S. Also in the fifth Chapter 2. S. Secondly, haide must be taken to the vlceration of the lights, for which in this present description of the lights very many remedies are prescribed, moe shall be hereafter specified.

Thirdly, to drie away the Ague, and for that to this sickness many kinds of Agues are incident, as may appeare in the first part of this booke. Fourthly, care must be taken to diminish this Cough, neuertheles to beware not to hinder altogether the coughing vp of the phlegme, for the which heere before the 4. and 5. S. and also afterwards. Fifthly, the patient must obserue a good rule of liuing, whereof hereafter followeth a good instruction.

Sixtly, meanes must be made to take away the spetting of blood, whereof is at large discoursed in the 17. S. Seuenthly and lastly, care is to be had to lengthen the sicke bodie short breath; for this, looke into the 12. S. of *Asma*: what is further needefull for this sickness shall follow hereafter.

First there are heere expessed foure principall things, as well fitting the patient for sode, as for remedie, to wit, Hony, conserue of Roses, Crabs that are taken in fresh waters, Figs, and certaine other fruits.

As much as concerneth the Hony of Roses, it is alway more forcible then the common Hony, because that it expelleth phlegme and matter, pierceth and cleanse, therefore is Hony accompted a safeconductor of all other medicines which are commodious for this sickness. But if so be that there be with it a belement heate, and putrifying Ague; then in the stead of the same Hony is Hony water to be vsed: for which cause some say that the Hony is not to be vsed in this sickness alone without scumming, for if the same be not scummed, and do not see the it is hurtfull, and causeth the Laske.

The second is the conserue of Roses, through which only some preserve themselves, and prolong their life: and if through vse of this the bodie chaunceth to be stoppt, then is sirrup of Hyssop to be vsed, and if the same be too hote, then are *Trociscos de Camphora* and cold Tabulats of Diafragant to be vsed.

Thirdly are the Crabs, which must thus be prepared: take fresh water Creuets as many
as

as you will, seethe them so long in well water untill they may be pluckt in piéces, then cut off the fete and skins, take off all the shels, and wash them well in Lye that is made of Wine ashes, afterwards seethe them very mellow in Barly water, the patient must eate the Crabs, and drinke the water.

Fourthly, there are good for this disease in stead of Whisicke, Raysons, Figs, Pingles, Pistacia, Cozans, Sebestes, and Zuiubes.

But for this we will discouer moe other remedies, amongst which is chiefly commended Asses milke, and if the same cannot be gotten, Goats milke is to be taken in the stead thereof; also bread sopped therein is to be eaten, and if that may be, he is to vse no other drinke sugred; but if that cannot be, then is he to vse therewith some sugred Wère, yet is it no counsell to vse the Milke, if therewith be any putred Ague. Here is also to be noted, that womens milke surpasseth all other milke: but be it what milke that it may be, yet must the same be dronken new milked, for all milke very quickly taketh an alteration and corruption. But if all manner of milke is lothsome to the partie, then prepare him this potion: Take Treos one quarter of an ounce, of Hyssop and graine Venus haire (if it may be gotten) of each one handfull, peled Barly three ounces, Melon seede, Cucumber seede, Gourd seede, Pompeon seede, seedes of *Verbascum*, Fenegrake, Zuiubes, and Sebestes, of each halfe an ounce, Licorice and Raysons, of each one ounce, white Sugar nine ounces, Hony three ounces, seethe it all together except the Sugar and the Hony in a sufficient quantitie of rayne water, according as you will haue it strong, let it seethe to the second part: when it is strayned, then put the Sugar and Hony vnto it, let it seethe awhile, and clarifie it.

And if so be that after the vse of Milke, there follow a small Ague, then shall he in stead of Milke, vse Barly water, or a thin Barly pap, for that clenseth the brest, and coleteth the same, and expelleth phlegme, but as soon as the Ague goeth away, then may you returne to the vse of the Milke.

The rule of liuing.

First, they that haue the consumptio are to chuse al such dwelling places, where it is always cold and moist, and chiefly where he is troubled with the Ague, situated to the North East and on the water. But if he cannot get the same, then must his chamber be often sprinkled with faire water; and if he be of ability, then is the chamber to be sprinkled in the place of common water, with stilled water of Violets, water Lillies, Cucumbers, Courdes, Pompions, mingled, or each by themselves: or strow the chamber with Violet leaues, water Lillies, Wine leaues, and with other colde herbes. The chamber may also be fumed with these fumigations following, which are made of water Lillie flowers, Lettice seedes, and Purslaine seedes beaten together. He must not couer his head too warme.

Secondly, almost all exercise and trauaile is hurtfull, principally when as yet his head is full of humors; therefore shall he refraine all labour, and to be still and take his rest.

Thirdly, he must beware that he doe not ouer eate himselfe, and it is moze commodious to eate oftentimes, and to eate a little at once, then for to eate once or twice a day very much: And so it is also with his drinke. He must also beware and refraine to eate without hunger, and that which he eateth must he chew very well, whereon manie doe thinke but little, that doe either hate or finally esteeme their owne liues. In like sorte must he eate to expell all the superfluitie of the stomacke or bowels. If there be any such thing in the stomacke, then must it be taken away by stoles, for vomiting is very hurtfull for this disease, but Panna or Cassia are to be vsed herein. But if the going to the stole be hardened in the bowels, then must this Clister be ministered: Take Gallowes, Betes, Violet leaues, and small Woodbind, of each a handfull; seethe them together in sufficient water, take thereof twelue or sixtene ounces, oyle of Violets, and of white Sesamum, of each one ounce and a halfe, fresh Butter three quarters of an ounce, *Sal gemma* four scruples, or one quarter of an ounce of common Salt, minister it onely in the morning.

Fourthly, his sleepe must be seuen or eight howers long, and not at all, but at the least one houre after supper, he must shunne sleepe a day times, and is to sleepe halfe sitting, and not to lye vpon his backe nor on his face.

Fifthly,

firstly, he must beware of anger, of calling aloud, and of all that will imparte the phlegme in the breast, as of sorrow, feare, fright, and about all things of Venerie, for there is nothing that more abateth the nourishment of the body, then the same, but he must by all meanes possible endeavour himselfe to be merry and of good chere.

As much as concerneth the first, to wit, meate, and drinke, for that you haue this common rule, as, that his bread be of good white Wheate, and baked well, rising: also if the same be drest with the water of ffolesote, it were very commodious. Of fleshes are good for him, fat Pullets, Hens, Capons, & all field fowles, as Pheasants, Partridges, &c. Also yong Birds, Calues, Hares, roasted Pigs, Fore lights, and the selwet of all these Beasts. All water fowles, wilde Pigeons, and Geese are forbidden him. But this meate is specially commended, take Almond milke when he hath a strong Ague, and where there is no Ague take Goates milke, and sethe crums of white bread therein to a thin pap, and let him eat therof, & such like paps made with wheate meale, Barly meale, or Billet meale, swetned with Sugar or Sugar pennets; amongst which one may temper some white Poppie seedes.

All fish are permitted for this sickness, and chiefly all riuer fish: Crabs haue also a speciall propertie, vertue, and secret operation against this maladie. And if one cannot get Crabs, then take in the stead of them garden Snayles, and let them with their houses boyle with Hyssop and fennell, then take them out, and bestrow them with Sugar, or fry them with Butter, as it liketh the patient best, for they cause the phlegme to arise, and moisten the bodie: all herbs that moisten and coole are good for this disease; yea it behoueth that all the patients meate be drest with the same, as namely with Beetes, Lettice, Spinage, Burrage, Purslaine, Melons, and Shepherds purse, which haue a speciall operation for this sickness in cooling and moistening. But Coleworts and Turneps must he forbear: Rise sod in water, wherein 24. holwers be, or wheaten Bran hath bene steeped, may he well feede vpon, for through the Bran doth the water get a cooling and moistening operation. So is there also good for this sickness, red and white Pease, notwithstanding that they be warme and dry in the first degree, which warmth and dryth is taken away by dressing. For amongst all kinde of pottage, there is nothing more requisite then this for the Lights. But the auncient Phisitions do much commend stued Barly, *Pisana*, of all other pottages, for it is light of digestion, slipperie, and loseth the phlegme very well; it altereth also the bad, dry, and Aquish complexion. And albeit that Barly is hote and dry in the first degree, yet all such dryth is taken away through the moisture wherewith it is boyled, whether it be sodden and drest in water, Almond milke, or some fresh broth; for it is familiar to the stomacke, cleanseth the same, quencherh thirst, putrifieth not in the stomacke; for these vertues is Barly commended of all auncient and later Phisitions that are expert in Physicke. So do they also commend Metemeale, which hath almost the same vertue, and is like to the Barly, but is not so common in vse, yet are the right Metemeale paps very good, so are paps also of Beane meale, of Lentils, of rough bearded Wheate, of Starch drest with Almond milke, or the broath of Hens, as occasion shall serue.

About the foresayd fruits the basell Putts are tollerated and allowed of, yet but few, least they spoyle the stomacke: vnalted Cheese is very good for him, but old Cheese is highly forbidden, and albeit (euen as is sayd) milke is for meate tollerated, yet is not Butter, nor Hogs grease, neither Sallet oyle commendable for this disease; neither yet any meates which are drest with much fat. Oyle of swete Almonds, and oyle of Walnuts are accounted for the best, because that the other stufte the head: all salted fish and flesh are hurtfull, like as be vineger, beruice, and such like, and specially if there be salt in it: but if any of these be vsed, then delay the sharpnes with Sugar; but swete Pomgranats and Citrons well Sugred may he vse well ynough. Hony is not good in his meate, although the same vsed after another manner be good and profitable, euen as is here before exprest.

He must beware of all Spice, vnlesse they be drest with some other cooling herbs, as with Violet leaues, Purslaine, Spinage, Lettice, Endiue, and such like. But Saffren is much commended for this disease, for it strengtheneth the hart, the breast, and cleanseth the Lungs. White Wine is good for his drinke, if it be cleare and somewhat swete: but the sorow and hard Wine harmeth him, if so be that the Wine do not fume into the head, then let him drinke it by it selfe, but if it be heady, then temper it with sodden water, or the water wherein Licorice, Buglosse, Cleampagne, ffolesote leaues, and such like are decocted, this must be his drinke at meales, but

if he drinke betwene meales, then is he to drinke sugred Barly water. Here haue you now the second time a description of the fire vnnaturall things, the which the Physicians do call *Res non naturales*, like as the same are before set downe in the description of *Asma*.

Heere do follow many remedies for this disease.

Looch de
Cancris.

Another
Looch.

Bistorta.

Take the tayles of fresh water Crabs sixe ounces, prepare and dresse them as is before instructed, the seedes of Endiue, of Dorell, of small Endiue, and of Lettice one dragme and a halfe, Pingles that haue been steeped one night in folesote water two ounces, stamp and chop them altogether, and seethe them with foure ounces of Sugar & Hony to a Confection. There is also another Confection made of Crabs, called *Looch de Cancris*, as followeth: Take the tayles of good fat fresh water Crabs foure ounces, Raysons the stones taken out two ounces, 30. Zuiubes, Licorice two ounces, Venus haire, Teasell leaues, Younds tong, and Will, of each one quarter of an ounce, Seethe this alltogether in sufficient water to the halfe part, then wring it out, and put thereto sirrup of Poppie heads, and white Sugar, of each foure ounces, and when it is well clarified, and decocted to the thicknes of Hony, then put vnto it sirrup of Licorice, Almonds chopt small, and Gourd seede, of each halfe an ounce, seedes of Pallowes and Quinces, of each one quarter of an ounce, Purslaine and white Poppie seede, Dragagant, Gumme and Starch, of each one drag. poune all these small together, *Species Diamoschu*, and *Diambra*, of each one dragme, temper them all well together. Item, this Looch ensuing may also be prepared for this, the which is very good for the consumption, the drouth and heate of the thyoate: Take Licorice sliced, Raysons without stones, of each one ounce, Zuiubes and Sebes ten or twelue, seethe them altogether in two quarts of water, that there remaine not aboue the eight part, then strayne it through a cloth, and put thereto five ounces of sodden Wine, Sugar pennets two ounces, and so let it seethe thicke together, whereof the patient is to take twice or thyece a day, and likewise in the night treatably, a small sponesfull at once, for this are also good *Looch de Pino*, *De Farsaria*, and *Looch de Papanere*.

To these foresayd confectiōs is this following highly commended: Take the iuice of Pimpernell, of *Bistorta*, or powders of the same, of each halfe an ounce, conserues of Roses one ounce and a halfe, temper them well together, and let them seethe ouer a small fire; or if it be hote weather, set it in the Sunne vntill it be thicke. About the *Bistorta* is a great debate amongst the learned, euery one may therefore looke vnto it that will.

Item, the confectiō of fore lungs described before in the twelfth S. is speciall good for all such as haue the consumption, taking daily the quantitie of a Nutmeg. The operations that Treacle and Pithydate haue in this disease, are declared in many other places of the booke. The warme and cold Dragagant tabulats are also speciall good for the consumption, and that according to the importance of the same.

Item, take eight ounces of Vens flesh which is sodden in Barly water, and as much Almonds, beate them all small together, and temper therewith one ounce and a halfe of Starch, and the whites of five Eggs well beaten, with foure ounces of beaten Sugar, temper them all together with Rose water, and let them seethe well without the Almonds and the Vens flesh: when it then beginneth to be thick, then stirre the Almonds and the Vens flesh amongst it, and make mozels or small cakes thereof, and let them dry in an ouen. The confected Almonds are speciall good for all such as consume away, for they giue good nourishment; in like sort the confected Pingles, if they be steeped first 24. howres in Rose water.

This following is a costly powder: Take white Poppie seede one ounce and a quarter, Starch and Dragagant of each thre dragmes, peeled Melon seede, Pompeon seede, Cucumber seede, and peeled Gourd seedes, of each seauen dragmes, seedes of Purslaine and Pallowes, of each five dragmes, burnt Juozie, and the iuice of Licorice, of each thre dragmes, Sugar pennets as much as of all the rest, make a powder thereof, and giue euery morning thereof one quarter of an ounce, with the sirrup of Poppie heads, or sirrup of Zuiubes; this is good against all vlcérations of the Lights, and against all Coughes, for that it is of wonderfull operation, yea also in them that do cough vp peeces of their lights. If you will haue a powder of it for to strowe vpon your meate, then put as much more Sugar vnto it.

Item, take Lungwozt, and prepared fore lights of each halfe an ounce, and two ounces of Sugar,

Sugar, and make thereof a powder. And you may make these pills following for to lay vnder the tongue, which are very good against the Cough, and against the Ague: Take peeled Melon seede, Courd seede, Cucumber seede, and peeled Pompeon seede, of each fine dragmes, white Poppie seede, Purslaine seede, of each seauen dragmes, Sugar pennets as much as all the rest waigh, muscilage of Quinces as much as needeth for to make pills therewith.

Item, conserues of Betonie, and conserues of Gilloflowers (being both of one operation) are passing good against the consumption: The conserue of water Lillies cooleth maruellous well, and the wine thereof. In like manner Rosemary wine, and of Clary, are also good for this, euen as in the last of this booke their operations are discovered.

Here followeth also a precious Capon water which much strengthneth the heart, and restoreth all weaknes: Take an old Capon, chop him small, and put vnto him Buglosse water, the water of Burrage and Dandelion, of Endiue, and *Carduus Benedictus*, of each eight or ten ounces, grosse beaten Cinamome and Pionie seede, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron and Nutmegs, of each one scrup. Roses, Pinks, Sage, and floures of Burrage cut small, of each one handfull, Buglosse the roote and herbe one ounce, Harts tong, Violets and Rosemary floures, of each halfe a handfull, Pistelden of the Dke halfe an ounce, let all this digest in a Still, and afterwards distill it like other water, this is speciall good for children.

These cold remedies following are very meete for a consuming bodie, which is hote and dry, to wit, conserues of Roses, sirrup of Poppie heds, Roses and Violets, Purslaine, cold Dragagant tabulats, and the confection of *Diarrhodon* which is very temperate. Of warming remedies if the patient be not too hote, like as in *Asma*: these following are good, *Diaciminum*, *Diaaereos Solomonis*, *Dia Hyssopo*, *Dia Calamintha*, *Dia prassium*. In like manner, the sirrup of all these aforesaid, also the sirrup of Licorize, Zuiubes, and Venus haire, but chiefly the last of them, which is not too hote. This patient ought alwayes as well before as after meate to sit in a warme bathe of water, and to sit therein so long vntill that the vaines begin to swell and growe big.

Plaisters and Unguents haue also good operation in this disease, to wit, such as hereafter inline: Take prepared Crabs tayles (as is taught before) twelue ounces, seedes of Endiue and of small Endiue, of Sozrell, of Lettice, of each one dragme and a halfe, Pare one quarter of an ounce, peeled Melon seede, Courd seede, Cucumber seede, and peeled Pompeon seede, of each thre dragmes, Pingles two ounces, beaten Sugar foure ounces, and Hony of Violets as much as needeth for to make a plaister, and so lay it warme vpon the breast.

A good Oyntment.

Take the fat of a white Cat, Harts suet, Barrowes grease, the marrowe of Harts bones, Dogs grease, and Badgers grease, of each one ounce, Honie two ounces; melt all these together on a milde fire: afterwards put thereto *Beuered* and *Euphorbium*, of each halfe an ounce, long Pepper fower scruples; beate that small which is to be beaten small, and make thereof with sufficient Mace and oile of Cammomill an oyntment. Some haue not without cause dyed Betony and fiede Cipers, stamping of each halfe an ounce, with thre dragmes of Turpentine put vnto it: and as this vnguent is somewhat hot, so is this following temperate. Take one ounce and a halfe of the oyle of Violets, fresh butter thre quarters of an ounce; melt them and powre them into a mortar, and put thereto one ounce and a halfe of womans milke that hath a daughter sucking on her, stir it together vntill it be well tempered, and annoynt the best therewith: it is good against heate, it swageth and loseth flegme: Therefore it is also good in *Asma* & *Helica*. Item, take the whole Purtenance with hart, lights & liner as it hangeth together of a black Calfe, chop it together very small, and distill it in a glasse helme in seething water, you may take thereof as much as you will, and temper amongst it as much Pettie water as of the former, and rub therewith the withered members.

If so be then the marrow in the bones doe also wither away (as is admonished at the first) then take a sole of a yere olde, let it be killed, sleped, and all the bones cut in peces: take the marrowe out: then take walst Turpentine, Hounds grease, and Harts suet, of each halfe an ounce, cut and melt the marrow, but the skin that sticketh to the bottome preserve that alone: for being powdered it is good for all sores, the molten marrow keepe still in the pan, and temper
one

one with another as long as an eg may be sod, and let it cole: you may take thereof the bignes of a Walnut, and annoynt your selfe twice a day therewith, on the handes and side, and else where if it be needefull.

It is also to be noted, that there is another sozte of Consumption called *Febris Hæctica*, which proceedeth also of this contagion of the Lights, but we will speake further thereof in the first Part, where we doe treat of all other soztes of Agues, as also of other witherings of the members, of lamenes, and the Pore, in the fourth Chapter of this booke.

Of the stinking breath in *Phthisis*, or the Consumption. §.24.



If all the former diseases and putrifactions of the Lights, it is easily to be vnderstood, from whence the breath hath his beginning and whence it stinketh, and that it cannot be amended if the disease whereby it is corrupted be not taken away and cured; whereof is spoken moze at large in the first part, the 13. Chapter, and §.3. therefore wee will speake moze briezly of it: soz which Pastel Trisframs water is very good. Likewise the iuice of Wormewood tempered with Vineger, and the mouth washt therewith. Confected Calmus, Elecampane and Citron pils, are also very good with their sirups. In the first Part the twelfth Chapter, and 1. §. is a powder set downe which beginneth thus, Take Sene &c. Annis and fennell seedes confected, and such like, doe also take away the stinking breath: the which also doe swæte and bitter Almonds, be they confected or no.

But hæde must be taken soz the consumption, that no laske or flure happen with it: and if such doe happen, then is this powder following to be vsed. Take Gum of Araby, burnt Iuoz, fine Bolus, and Pirtle seæde, of each a like much, make thereof a powder, and minister thereof every day as long as is very needefull, thæ dragmes at a time, with sirup of Poppie heads and Pirtles.

For to conclude this Chapter of the Lights, we will ad hereunto certaine needfull and necessary things: to wit, the medicines which by nature voluntarily ease the Lights, as Ireos, Hyssope, Licorice, Raisone, Venus haire, Squils, Saunders, Pingles, Forelights, Porehound, Ponie, Sugar, Dragagant, fenegræke, Barley, Saffron, Ameos, Colewort broth, the broth of an old stued Cocke, Cherries, *Lignum Aloes*, Hasell nuts, *Opopinacum*, *Serapinum*, *Mirra*, *Ra dishes*, *Daffodill* rootes, Lilly rootes, frankincense.

These things following doe clesne the Lights and the Bzeast; as *Agaricus*, Hyssope, Woodbind, *Sarcocolla*, Cassia, Ireos Coloquint, the confectiõ of *Diasena*, and the pils *Cochie*.

These things following doe strengthen and warme the bzeast and the Lights, as Hyssope, Porehound, Ireos, Elecampane rootes, Cammomill, Hollihocke rootes, Currans, Squils, Balsam wood, *Mirra*, *Serapinum*, Lilly rootes, Venus haire, Licorice, Indie Spica: and amongst the cõpounded things are *Diacalaminiũ*, *Diaprasium*, *Diabyssopum*, Ireos Tabulates, the confectiõ of Pingles and *Looch de Pino*. For the coling of the Bzeast these things, Iutabes, Sebestes, Dragagant, Gum of Araby, Starch, and white Poppie seæde, swæte Almonds, Violets, Sugar candy, Pulberies, Saunders, Sugar &c. Of the compounded things, the confectiõ *Diapapauere*, cold Dragagant, Sallets, Sugar pennets, and other things moze: that with many moze are described befoze.

We must note further, that although the disease of Childzen, which is called the infection of the hart be a malady of the Lights, and a kinde of Consumption, yet soz some causes it is described in this Chapter following.

The sixth Chapter.

Of the Hart, the most precious part of mans body.



All they that are expert in naturall things, or in Philosophie, do write, that the Hart is the first member that is found in all liuing bodies; and in like maner the last that dyeth of all other parts of a liuing body: the which is very well to be beleued, soz that it is a perfect fountain and offspring of life, & of all natural heat and is also it selfe hotter then any other member: therefore in all beastes it is set in the midst of their bodies, that it might warme the blood, spread the same abroad

abroad ouer all the whole body, and thereby preserve life right in the middle of the breast, (which is contained in this second part of this booke.) The Hart hath his place in mens bodies, but with his pickend end tendeth towards the left side, and left nipple: therefore doth the common people suppose that the hart lyeth in the left side.

Out of this springeth first the vitall spirits, *Spiritus vitales*, which with a continuall stirring and moving preserve it, and that with such force, that the same being out of the body, yet it forcibly stirreth and goeth vp and downe, euen as one may specially see by the harts of the Salmon and Sturgeon. Through which continuall stirring from this place, it doth communicate his motion through all the Arteries, and also the life it selfe vnto the whole body, the which is to be knowen by this, that when the same is infected with any impostume, or with any weapon neuer so little pearced, that forthwith the vitall spirites, yea life it selfe must depart out of the body: like as is daile seen by the like experience of the harts of all beastes which are killed, whereas the hart being found sound, so soone as the same is neuer so little touched or stirred, that then all warmth and helpe is taken from all other members, whereupon immediately death ensueth, and is none otherwise but as if ones hart be not before harmed.

Item, this hart is also the dwelling place of all inclinations of the mind, as mirth, veration, sorrowe, feare, care, hope, loue, hate, anger, malice, mercie, sufferance, or forbearance, and such like.

Fourthly, appeare in the Hart such diuersities of affections, with such a force and vertue, that if the one doe raigne about the other, the same draweth such an humor vnto it, as is most acceptable for it: As anger draweth vnto it *Cholera*, mirth discusseth the blood ouer the whole body, and through feare and fright hasteneth it towards the hart: in great sorrowe and veration it draweth the melancholicke blood vnto it, &c. How were it then possible to expresse all the causes of these and of other moze wonderfull passions of the hart: yet haue many renowned and learned men written very amply thereof, whose booke may be read and perused.

Also it is certaine, that all bodies, which haue great harts, are fearefull, and faint harted, for that they haue not so much heate as is needefull for them. Contrariwise, all small harts, which drawe the heate the better together are stout & valiant: This may well be vnderstande of great and spongeous harts, which are not so wide, nor filled with so many vitall spirits: like as are other great and compacted harts, that be hot, and filled with vitall spirits, then can they not otherwise but shewe themselves manly and couragious, like as the common prouerbe saith, he hath a great Hart.

The Hart hath some fatnesse on the top, yet in leane bodies very little, but in fat bodies somewhat moze, the which is ordained by nature therewith to moisten the Hart, that through his continuall stirring it should not be so soze dried. Likewise it hath otherwhiles a thicke fleshy skin which lieth round about the hart, and sometimes wareth almost as hard as a bone, the which the Grecians call *Pericardion*, and we the closet of the hart, and hath such moisture in it, like as it were vyne, yea otherwhiles like as it were with a sweete dealw. And when as this moisture commeth to drie vp, like as it happeneth in them that consume or lye in great sorrow, then must death follow after it. Like as to the contrarie doth come to passe, when there is too much of this sozefaid moisture, that thereby is caused the panting of the Hart, and distemperature of the vitall spirits. It were here too long to rehearse all the signes of a hot, colde, drie and moist Hart, or of a colde and drie, hot and moist, colde and moist, or hot and drie: all the which are intemperatures or *Intemperies*: Of which is spoken of in the first part and 1. S. We will also touching this, recommend the Reader to *Galen*, who hath at large discoursed of these *Intemperies*.

But I must adioyne thereto three things which concerne the hart, whereof the hart of them that dyed of *Cardiaca* or swooning, or their harts that dyed through poyson cannot be burnt.

Secondly, the foolish fantasie of the Egyptians that were of opinion, that mens harts do euery yeare augment one quarter of an ounce, and that during fiftie yeares, and that afterwards from yeare to yeare it did abate as much againe, which was the cause that men could not lye about one hundred yeares.

Thirdly, that the heathen of their offered beastes (and also *Julianus* the Emperour that fell from Christ) do marvellously seduce people and perswade, that all things to come may thereby be knowne, whereof we will speake no moze at this present. We will now procede with our

intent, and treat of all the diseases and accidents of the hart, and do teach thereby how the same are to be holpen and cured. And albeit touching this there be many maladies and accidents described by the learned, yet we will neuertheless briefly reherse only of the faintnes of the heart, of whatsoeuer cause that it may procede, as swooning, quaking and panting, be it through heate or colde; amongst which may be contayned all accidents and maladies which are incident vnto the hart, and lastly adde thereto of the maladie which is commonly called, the gripping of the hart.

Of the fainting of the Hart in generall. §. I.



When as the Hart is the most principall and pretious part of the bodie, so doth the same declare that there is the more care and prouidence to be had, for to auoyd and take away his maladies, for to cure all that which hurteth it, and to preferre all that helpeth; and to obtaine the same, thus do the learned write these common rules hereafter following.

First, that with expedition some good meanes and counsell be vsed and had against all that might happen vnto the hart, for to expell the matter which is cause thereof, for that there is no part of the body which may tollerate lesse delay of helpe.

Secondly, for other members which haue any disease, there one thing is commaunded, another forbidden, so that thereby no hurt might happen, which neuertheless is not so duly obserued, as whensoeuer is giuen to one that hath the Agus, Wine or flesh, which notwithstanding is clerely forbidden: but this must be more strictly obserued in the infirmities of the hart, by reason that it is much more needefull for to strengthen the same as can be best, and to comfort it.

Thirdly, if any member be by nature hote, and yet there striketh more heate vnto it, then must a great coling be vsed: but one may not do so to the hart, whereto lesse or smaller things be vsed, neither yet to delay it so long, before you seeke remedie to cure it, as shall be hereafter declared in the eight and ninth instructions.

Fourthly, the parts that are helpers of the motions and actions of the whole bodie, must not at any hand be touched with any strong purgation, so that thereby the same parts, and consequently the whole body be not ouerweakened, the which must so be obserued in the hart, by reason that the same doth procure all actions of the whole bodie.

Fifthly, for that the diseases of the hart are caused for the most part of bloud and winde, therefore is Phlebotomy much better for it then purging: but if the maladie procede of bloud, then must the Liuer vaine be opened on the right side; if of winde, then is the Liuer vaine on the left side to be opened.

Sixthly, if that purging medicines must needs be vsed, then is there alwayes to be put thereto that which may comfort the hart, as hereafter shall be taught, thereby to strengthen the same, and to preserve it, by reason that all purging medicines are not alittle contrary to the hart.

Seuenthly, it must be narrowly looked vnto what part of mans bodie doth send these humors towards the hart and causeth this maladie, for to make readie the purgation accordingly, and to adde the cordiall things vnto it, as hath bene sayd.

Eighthly, if that the Hart haue gotten a bad hot complexion, that the same must be coled, then is to be tempered amongst the coling medicines some warming things: for if nothing but onely colde things were vsed, then might perchance the naturall heate be quenched, and the patient killed.

Ninthly, the cause of this mixture of colde and warme things is; for that colde things are commonly of no force or power without the helpe of warme things, to penetrate to the Hart. As for example, the Saffron is therefore added to the Troiscos de Camphora.

For that all, which shall here afterwards be written of the maladie of the Hart, is no other thing but a faintnes, whereof the one is greater and the other lesser than another, like as *Lipothymia* and *Syncope*. When it is needefull to write of their differences.

Lipothymia is a swooning or defect of minde, which sometimes is but small and sometimes great, and is sone ended: contrarywise *Syncope* cometh suddenly vpon one, and that with such vehemencie, that he can neither see, see, nor heare, so that betwene death and him there is no other difference, then that as yet he hath some breath.

Notwith,

Postwithstanding is the *Lipothymia* not so little to be regarded, but that speedily helpe must be had for it, for that it may quickly turne into *Syncope*.

But before all things, shall every one know, that both these tremblings of the heart, haue so great acquaintance with the panting of the hart, that many Phisitions haue comprehended them vnder one title, as the remedies described euery where do testifie the same: but that they haue made many necessarie differences betwene hote and cold swoonings, and first to write of the foresaid small swooning, or defect of minde, which taketh one vnawares, therefore are these things following to be vsed which do strengthen and warme the hart, as Balme, Burrage, Rosemary, Bassill, Pennyroyall, Parietum, Wormewood, and specially marishy Spints. Of rootes, Cipers rootes, Zeduary, Costus, Ginger, Elecampane rootes, both the Beetes rootes, and *Doronicum* Of seedes, *Ameus* Smalladge seede, Annis seede. Of Spices, Cardamome, Nutmegs, *Lignum Aloe*, Saffron, Cucuber, Cloues.

Item, take *Muscus*, Ambra, Harts bones, Citron pills, Pastick, Pyrrh, *Blatta Byzantia*, good and pleasant tasting Wine.

Item, take these warming confections following, as *Diamargariton Calidum*, *Diacinammum*, *Diapirus*, *Laticians*, *Dia Moschu*, *Diambra*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, which is of a temperate nature, Treacle, Spithydate, confection Citron pills, confection Elecampane rootes, and other things moe that do follow afterwards.

These things are of a temperate nature, as Jacint, Smaragdes, Saphirs, Rubies, Perles, Coprall, Gold, Siluer, Amber, Pirabolanes, Bellerici, Buglosse, silke wormes nests, burnt Iuorie, Barberies, Tormentill, Harts bones, and Saffron. To cole the hart, take Melon seede, Pompeon seede, Cucumber seede, Gourd seede, the seedes of fleawort, Sorrell seede, prepared Coziander, Pomgranats, Lemons, Citrons, and their iuice, Quinces, sowre Apples, Peares, Raspes, new and oye Prunes, and all pleasant sauouring fruites, water Lilly floures, the iuice of the Wyne, Vineger, Roses, Violets, shauen and burnt Iuorie, all kinde of Saunders, Amber, and sealed earth. Of compounds, is the confection of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Tria santalon*, *Manna Christi* with Perles, *Diamargariton frigidum*, *Troscisci de Camfora*, conserue of Roses, of Violets, Sirrupe of Raspes, Lemons, Violets, Roses, water Lillyes, Vineger, and *Oxy sacchara*, and all that you shall finde written hereafter. Moreouer, there are hereafter set downe diuers confections, that comfort the hart in heate and colde.

The order of life or diet for this faintnes of the Hart.

A Bad stomacke is otherwhiles no small cause of this swooning, for it procureth before the swooning come a heate ouer the whole bodie. As soone as this shall be perceiued, it is not amisse to vse for it confection Balsam wood, but in the stead thereof take *Tabulates* of *Xyloaloe*, which are very requisite for this. Secondly, he is to take euery morning one dragme of fine Treacle, which must be twelue yeres old, with Rose water, of the confection of *Muscus*, *Diamoschu dulcis*, he is to drinke of it oftentimes with Bassill water one quarter of an ounce at a time, but that which concerneth the stomack shall follow hereafter. Fourthly, this patient is to haue hanging about his neck a good Smaragde stone, or at the least selected Coprall. Fifthly, take one dragme and a halfe of Rose buds which are not fully blowen, Wyne leaues, red and white Behen, floures and seedes of Bassill, barke of Frankincense, Parietum gentle, of each one dragme, Balme one dragme and a halfe, Camfer one scruple, Amber halfe a scruple, Puske two greynes, each beaten by it selfe, and being bounden in a peece of silke, are to be smelt vnto oftentimes: but if the faintnes be not holpen thereby, and that it be feared that he will be moze fainter, then must these things be vsed against the swooning that are described hereafter.

But for the first, you are to vse these cordiall waters and plaisters following: Take Balme water twelue ounces, Rose water, Violet water, the water of Willow leaues, and of wilde Wine leaues, of each five ounces, burnt Iuorie, Roses, red and white Saunders, Harts bones, seedes and leaues of Bassill, of each two scruples, Puske two greines, Amber five greines, Puske two ounces, let all these sethe together about one quarter of an hower (except the Puske and Amber) make then a peece of red Scarlet cloth wet therein, one quarter of a yarde square: wzing it warme out, and lay it sower or five times in an hower vpon the hart. A sponge may

also be laid in this water, and smelt vnto oftentimes : for both of them do maruellously comfort the Hart.

If so be that the swooning doth not yet cease, then take two ounces of this foresaid powder, and temper amongst it as much Barly meale, one scruple of Saffron, and seethe it with good old wine vntill it be reasonable thicke, temper it well in a moztel with fower leaues of beaten gold, and one dragma of prepared Pearles, spread these vpon a peece of red Scarlet cloth, and then lay it on the left breast. This is approued to be marvellous good, and to haue sometimes holpen such a grieve within one quarter of an hower, and sustained the sicke person by his strength.

Of Syncope the great Swooning. § 2.



The second and sozest swooning of the Hart is called *Syncope*, and is thus described : *Syncope* is a distraction of all feeling and stirring of the whole body, with extreme faintnes. Amongst many other inward causes whereof, are these : receiuing of any pestilent or other stinking aire, whether it be in time of the plague, or of the stench of any hollow caues, or of the byting of any venomous beasts, as of Scorpions, mad dogs, and venomous fumes of mettals, like as in the melting often happeneth : of great feare and frighting, of former diseases, as of the dead pallsie, the pleurisie, inflammation of the lights, suffocation of the mother, of worms, of over watchings, of many laskes, of much bleeding, of great hunger, of much smarting, of great paine, yea also of great ioy, and other strong motions of the minde. So that this great swooning hath great familiaritie with the dead pallsie : albeit there be a difference, whereof we are to speake. If any get the pallsie, then remaineth his face by god semblance : but in this swooning it is like to a dead bodie. For in this swooning, all the blood runneth towards the Hart, so that the patient remaineth without any feeling, and in such an estate, that no man can tell whether he be dead or liuing. So that there is a common prouerbe of it, That such dead men ought not to be buried in thre daies.

Secondly, they are like one to the other, in that neither breath nor pulse is perceived.

Thirdly, in the pallsie the patient seeth before a heavinesse in the head, but not in the *Syncope* : neuerthelesse they accord in this, that the affected partie lieth as though he were dead.

But in this swooning it is certaine, if it come after a long panting of the hart, and continueth long, then it is a messenger of death, and chiefly if there be Ellebor blown into the patients nose, and it doth not stir and moue him at all.

The signes of the swooning to come, of what cause soeuer it be prouoked, are sweating and panting of the Hart, a slowe and feeble pulse, bleaknes of the lips and face, chilnesse of the outward members, numnesse of the sense of feeling and mouing : where these signes appere, there a strong swooning draweth nere, and there is neede of god counsell.

First, and with speede, when the swooning approacheth or is extant, then is the patient to be spouted in the face with Rose water, or (if that be not ready to be had) with colde Well water, and it will be the better if there be a little Puske tempered amongst it : for thereby will the naturall heate be driven inwardly, and the vital spirits reuiued. Stop also his nose and his mouth a little while : for if the breath finde no vent, then turneth it backe, and thereby quickeneth the naturall heate.

Secondly, his armes are to be bound hard, and then made loose, and bound hard againe. The palmes of the hands and plants of the fete are well to be rubbed with rawe clothes, salt and vineger, to the end that the matter may be drawn from the hart.

Thirdly, his stomacke and about the mouth of the stomacke is also to be well rubbed, whereby the naturall heate may be quickened. All fragrant herbes, which are hot of nature, are to be holden before his nose, as all kinds of Spice, Puske and Amber, if so be that the cause of this matter be colde.

But for women that do fall into swooning through the suffocation of the mother, it is another case, as shall be shewed elsewhere, for that all odoriferous things are hurtfull to be holden before their noses. A greyne of Puske dissolued in Wine and then giuen, is passing good. And if the patient haue vehemently closed his mouth, then is the same to be broken open with a wooden sticke, and his tong, teeth, and rouse of the mouth to be annoynted with Treacle or pitch date.

date. But if the cause be through heate, then must the patient haue cold things giuen him to smell vnto, as Camfer, Saunders, Roses, and such like, here before expressed. And of what cause soeuer this swooning doth come, yet is it alway good that there be made a great noyse about the patient, and that he be called vpon by his name, and blow Campher in his nose, or Saunders in stead thereof: these are now the commonest meanes, if the swooning be procured through heate or colde, that are to be vsed at a sodaine.

Secondly, all the windowes are to be set open, that then the patient may be refreshed with the fresh ayre, and they are to speake very friendly vnto him. Also you are to annoynt his pulse, nose, and temples, with the foresaid things, and giue him all comfutable things, as is before sayd, that nature may thereby be strengthened and quickened.

An order of life for Swouning.

First, all men that are subiect to this swooning, must beware of all cloudie, moyst, and cold ayre, and shun such like dwellings, must suffer no sweate vpon the head, must cast off all sweatie shirts, and put on cleane: he must forbear all moyst and cold meates, as Spinage, Bettes, Lettice, Purslaine, Endiue, Cherries, hasell Nuts, Abzicocks, Cucumbers, and such like, but new figs are good for him. Further, he must be kept from all grosse binding meates, from all that is made of dough, from all fish, as Eeles, Tenches, and all great corruptent fish. But Crabs and small fishes which are taken in fresh waters he may eate, being a little broyled. He must also eschue all old and fat flesh, Cheese and such like. He must vse for his drinke all clere white Wine that is not swete, or a good old mild sort of Beere: he must wholly forbear drinke of water: he must not ouercharge his stomacke with eating and drinke, but chew his meate well, and leaue off eating with appetite. He must not sleepe after meate, or at least not too long. He must walke well two howres before meate, yea runne vp hils, for that consumeth well the moysture whereof the swooning is prouoked. He must specially fye all anger, sorrow, vexation, and other troubles of the minde, as is sufficiently declared before.

But what medicines are to be vsed for the swooning, shall be here taught, the patient must as soone as is possible, take these pills following in the morning betimes.

Take pills of Rubarb one dragme, *Hiera composita* one scruple, make nine pills thereof with Rose water, afterwards giue him this drinke following 6. daies one after another: Take halfe a drag. of Agaricke, *Hermodeuili*, and Rubarb, of each one scruple, *Diagridij*, and *Sal Gemma*, of each two greynes, Ginger, Squinant, Spica, and Annis seede, of each thre greynes, Hony of Roses halfe an ounce, let it steape one whole night in thre ounces of water wherein Woodbinde is sodden, afterwards let it sethe a wale, and strayne it out. For to make pills, take good Aloes two ounces, Paffick, Saffron, Violets, and floures of Buglosse, of each halfe a scruple, burnt Quoye and Roses, of each thre greynes, *Diagridion* seuen graynes, Agaricke, Turbith, and prepared Asure stone, of each halfe a dragme, Steepe it all together with Cicorie water thre dayes long, and (being well sopt) let it dry in the Sunne, or in another warme place, yet stirring it often about untill it be metely thicke: take then a dragme thereof, and make thereof seuen pills, whereof euery euening you are to take one pill a certaine time long, afterwards a whole yeere thorow take one pill about the fift day: but if the patient be full of bloud, and of sufficient strength, then are you after purging to open the Liuer vaine in the elbow on the left side, and to let him bleede about fise ounces.

For to keepe open the body, you are to vse this powder: Take *Epithymum*. rootes of Polipody, *Thymus*, Harts tong, and *Cuscuta*, of each one dragme, Argall and Seny, of each halfe a dragme, Make foure scruples, Stamp and mingle it all together, take one dragme thereof at the least twice a weeke at one time, tempered with a little wine, or some fresh broth: it purifieth, breaketh winde, and clenseth the hart and stomacke. Item, take at the least (once a weeke) as much *Pietretum* as the bignes of a Pease, chue the same, and spet the moysture out of the mouth.

Another.

TAke a good peece of white bread, mollifie it in good Puscadell, or Palmsey, if so be that the cause of this swooning be of cold: but if it procede of heate, then mollifie the same white bread in Rose water, in iuice of Pomgranats, in iuice of Quinces, in the iuice of Citrons,

oz any flesh broth, and so eate it. Also this patient may vse conserue of Roses, Burrage, Buglosse, and Rosemary, and other things moe, which shall be expessed hereafter in the trembling of the hart, after that heate oz cold hath the vpper hand.

There are yet many moe confections and cordiall things prepared, which are very profitable for this purpose, and do remaine described befoze in the discourse of the cold paine of the head, where it beginneth, Take conserues of Betony &c. Item take *Pistacia* thre ounces, white Sugar five ounces, sirup of Roses fower ounces, seedes of Basil, red and white Corall, Roses, burnt Quoy, red and white Behen, of each one drag. Zeduary, Amber, and Saffron, of each two scruples, Jacint, Smaradge, and Sapphire, of each halfe a scruple, Pace, Cinnamom, and Cloues, of each one drag. five leaues of beaten golde, Pearles fower scruples: the *Pistacia* steepe (being cut small) thre dayes long in *Palmeley*: afterwards sethe the sirup & the Sugar thicke enough, and first temper therein the moist *Pistacia*, and afterwards the rest beaten small, whereof is to be taken the space of five weekes euery morning the bignes of a Walnut. This powder following is to be strowed vpon the meate: Take Cinnamom halfe an ounce, Saffron one dragme, Zeduary thre quarters of an ounce: beate and mire them all together. The Zeduary hath a speciall power for to strengthen the Hart. And there is to be deest alwaies in his meate Buglosse and Baulme.

Cordiall
waters.

To this end are prepared diuers cordiall waters, as hereafter followeth: Take Cinnamom and Cloues, of each one ounce and a halfe, Putmegs one ounce, red and white Roses of each ten handfuls, Lauander flowers seuen handfuls, hyssope two handfuls; powze then therupon a quart of *Palmeley*: temper them all together, cut them small, and let it so stand nine daies together, and afterwards distill it. Item, take good wine five quartes, two rasles of Ginger, fortie Cloues, Cinnamom thre quarters of an ounce, Pace one quarter of an ounce, Spike two handfuls: If you will haue it moze forcible, then put two Putmegs cut vnto it, let it steape all together five oz seuen weekes long, and afterwards distill it. Thus haue the aunient Phisitions done. D, take fower quartes of good wine, Spike thre handfuls, greene Marierom gentle two handfuls, Pace, Cloues, Cinnamom, and Putmegs, as much as you thinke good: temper them together, and let them a whole moneth long in the Sun in a glasse: This may you keepe so, oz distill it.

Another. Take Lauander thre handfuls, steape it in a pinte of wine, oz *Palmeley*, stop it tight then let it for the space of thirty dayes in the Sun, and afterwards distill it. Of all these foresaid waters may a little be giuen him when he beginneth to get the swooning, oz hath the same already. This iuice following is iustly praised: Take a Capon oz a Partridge, roast it leisurely, baste it with Rose water and Puscabell, oz any other good wine wherein Cloues haue bene steeped; then presse the iuice out of the said bird, and giue him some thereof, and the rest let him eate now and then some. And that this iuice may continue good the longer, then temper it with as much hard Sugar as you thinke good. But will you haue another: then wzing likewise as much iuice out of a Bullet, oz out of yong kids flesh, take 2. ounces therof, new pressed iuice of Quinces one ounce and a halfe, and one ounce of good milde wine: temper them all together, and giue the patient to eate thereof. For this is also commodious all *Aqua Composita*, which are described in the eighth Part. For this swooning may be used outward remedies after many maners: first, through shield: Take Burrage flowers, and Violets, of each one handfull, red and white Saunders, red and white Corall, red and white Behen, and Roses, of each one dragme, Saffron halfe a dragme, burnt red Silke 15. greines, Camfere, *Muscus*, *Ambra*, of each two greines, poune them all together, and mire them in a red silken bag, and so lay it on your left breast.

Cordiall
shields.

Another. Take Ireos halfe an ounce, tame oz wild Baulme, Citron pils, Buglosse flowers of each one dragme, Pace one quarter of an ounce, yellowe, white and red Saunders, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each halfe a dragme: temper them with the powder of the capitall bags, which are described in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter, in the beginning, whers is mention made of the Bzaines: take thereof as much as is needefull for a bag to lay on the Hart. The same is also wonderfull good in time of the plague, being layd vpon the Hart. Item, take Ireos thre ounces and a halfe, Damaske Roses five ounces, Marierom, Cipers rootes, and red Sytyar, of each halfe an ounce, Cloues one quarter of an ounce, Calmus halfe a dragme, *Muscus* two greines, used as aboue.

This

This following is a very precious cordial shield: Take Burrage flowers, Buglosse flowers, red and white Saunders, red and white Behen, Nutmegs, and Couchenell, *Lignum Aloes*, Saffron, Sednary, white Diptamus, Cucubes, Basil seede, Baulme, and Citron pills of each halfe a dragma, *Gallia muscata* one scruple, *Muscus* and *Ambra* of each five greines, beate them all together grosse, and put it into a red Crimson bag, and lay it ouer the bzeast.

Here followe diuers moe. Take Juniper berries, powze thereto water of Sage, poune them to pap, & then bind it luke warme vpon the Pulse. Item take Cinnamom, Pace, Saffron, Cloues, as many as you will, put Palmesey vnto them, and lay it all vpon the Pulse. Take unpounded Saffron, fasten it in the left hand one hower at the least; it strengtheneth much the Hart. Take cleane burnt Baulme, Benirovall, Cloues, water of Sage, and Roses; temper them, and annoynt therewith the patient, especially on the Pulses, vnder the nose, and vpon the temples of his head. The auncient Physicians doe rub the hart with fresh Burrage flowers; it is very good, but it is very weake. All odoriferous things which are hot by nature, are to be vsed against the swooning through heate. But Hypsope is chiefly to be commended for it, and all those who are subiect to this swooning are counselled to smell oft vnto it.

This Baulme following was ordayned for the Emperoz *Ferdinandus*: Take a pound of Turpentine, sixe ounces of Virgin honie, twelue ounces of water of life, euen as hereafter be diuers described in the eight Part, *Lignum Aloes*, Turbith, yellow Saunders, Sage, rootes of blew flower deluce, and *Chamedrys*, of each one dragma, Nutmegs, Galingall, Cucubes, Cinnamom, Passicke, Frankincense, Cloues, Spica, white Mustard seede, Saffron, Ginger, Rue seedes, and Collemary rootes, of each three dragmes, Muske one dragma, Amber one quarter of an ounce; beate them all grosse together, and let it steape all together one day and a night in the water of life. But the Muske and the Amber are to be broken alone in some Muscadell wine. Lastly, temper the Turpentine therewith, and distill it in seething water.

A precious
Balme to
comfort the
hart, first
ordained for
the Emperoz
Ferdinandus.

A good Salue.

Take Amber, *Zeduarie*, red and white Cozall, *Blatta Byssantia*, Basil seede, red and white Behen, and Rosemary flowers, of each one dragma and a halfe, Pace one quarter of an ounce, Sozrell, small Cardine and Cicorie, of each halfe an ounce, Roses and water Lilies, of each three quarters of an ounce, Rosin one ounce and a halfe, *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, white Ware three dragms; melt the three last things together, and as they begin to be cold, then mingle the rest amongst it: afterwards let it be spread on a round cloth, and layd vpon the left bzeast. If it be too hard, then make it softer with oyle of Roses; both which are good (as is said) against the swooning and faintnes of the Hart. Yet is the Balsam much hotter then the salue, for it is temperate, and therefore you may knowe howe to vse it accordingly. When you haue made it softer, then annoynt the whole bzeast therewith.

This capitall powder following may also be vsed for this: Take Indie Spica, *Ames*, Bay berries, *Parierom* gentle, of each one dragma, *Lignum Aloes* one dragma and a halfe; beate all apart, and mixe them together with fine greines of this powder: You must euery euening when you goe to bed strowe it on your head.

Of the beating or panting of the Hart. §.3.



He Grecians doe call this disease *Palmos*, the Latinists *Palpitatio*, *Tremor*, or *Saltus Cordis*, which is a trembling or panting of the Hart, contrarie to the common custome. It is caused (euen as we haue taught in the beginning of this Chapter) of the abundant moisture which is in the closet of the Hart.

With these there may be yet moe other inward causes, as the paine of the stomach, veration and offence of the Hart, of the Liuer, the Lights, the Spleen, or Spleen: Also of winde, ill damps, corrupted blood, & such like. The outward causes are commonly great heate, sodaine and great colde, great emptines, great sorewe, fright, great feare, and other motions of the mind: further, of venime taken, biting of venomous beastes, pestilent Agues, corrupted ayre, stinking dwellings; like as in prison, Spines, or other such like, which are vnder the earth: of belly woymes, and all other things that bere the Hart, the which

are well to be vnderstood of the patient himselfe.

The inward signes are these: If the panting of the hart procede of worms, then is the beating of the hart bigger before meate then after: but if the same come of a bad stomacke, then may it easily be marked through paine in the same place, if the same be wrong: Also by the swambling and vomiting: If it come by fulnes of the same, then is the disease most grievous after meate; but if through emptines, then it is most soze before meate. If it procede of fright, sorrow, and such like, you must vnderstand and learne that by the patient: If it come of winds, then it is very suddenly vpon one, and sone gone away againe. If it be prouoked of heate, then is the pulse swift, and the breath is strong, and disordered. If it procede of blood, then is the vrin grosse, and the pulse beateth spaciably and strong, his face will be red, and about the hart is alwayes great heate, the patient is alwayes light harted, the which is much augmented through meates that make and ingender much blood. ¶ If this disease be caused of *Cholera*, then is his vrin yellow and thin, the pulse beateth continually, swiftly, with great thirst, possibly through daily meate, whereby the *Cholera* is increased, or of former paines taken. If this be caused of *Phlegma*, that appeareth by the white and thick vrin, of small, slow, and disordered pulse, the patient is sleepe and fainthearted: This is also wont to be caused of meates that procure *Phlegma*. Likewise in winter time, when this panting of the hart is caused of *Melancholy*, then is the sick bodie fearefull, the bodie decreaseth, and falleth away, and that most of all in Haruest, with many moe melancholick signes that are elsewhere described. This panting of the hart doth often haunt both yong and aged people, whereby the occasion is hardly to be adiudged: and in all such it is found, that the letting of blood hath not only eased them well, but also thorowly holpen them, and chiefly if therewith they haue obserued a good order in eating and drinking, and vse all such medicines as haue abated the blood and other humors: howbeit the same happeneth very seldome that aged people be cured thereof, for that they most of all chaunce to dye of a hote Ague, or of swooning, and that commonly betwene fortie and fiftie yeres. Thus much for the beating or trembling of the hart.

Of the panting of the Hart through heate. §. 4.



If by the panting of the hart there be discerned a swift pulse, and an Ague, then is it a signe that it commeth of blood or *Cholera*, the which is not without danger: for it often hapneth, that then they do fall into a swoone, and thereby immediatly remaine dead. Now for to remedie this, must the sick persons face, hands, feete, and pulse vaines be forthwith sprinkled, and rubbed with these compounded waters: take Rose water foure ounces, Rins water two ounces, Roses, burnt Iuorie, red & white Saunders, of each two scruples, *Muscum* and Ambra, of each two greynes, Vineger two ounces, *Palmeley* two scruples, mixe them all together, and when you will vse thereof, then stirre it well about. Secondly, take pleasant Wine, and water of Buglosse, of each one ounce, *Specierum Diamoschi dulci* one scruple, temper it, and giue it to the patient warme to drinke. Thirdly, he shall continually smell to odoriferous bags, that shall hereafter be described. Afterward, as sone as is possible, ought the Liuer vaine be opened in the right arme, and foure or fve ounces of blood be letten out, but not before that the sick person hath gone to stoe. The next day following, he shall take this potion: take sirrup of Citron pills one ounce, small beaten Rubarb, and prepared Agarick, of each two scruples, sirrupe of Roses halfe an ounce, Ginger and Spica, of each five greynes, *Sal Gemma* two greynes, temper them all together with three ounces of the water of Burrage, and so drinke it luke warme, and fast thereupon foure howres.

You may also cause him to be purged with Cassia, Tamarines, yelowe Spirabolanes, Spanna, and Rubarb, putting to either of them some Agarick. As for example, you may take this Purgation following: Take water of Buglosse one ounce and a halfe, Cicorie water two ounces, Rubarb one dragme and a halfe, prepared Agarick one dragme, the iuice of Roses halfe a dragme, Spica one scruple, Ginger fve greynes: let this steepe 24. howres in a warme place, and making it hote in the morning you must straine it thorow a cloth, and so drinke it warme, and then fast foure howres after. This being done, he must eight dayes one after another, take euery morning this drinke following: Take sirrup of Apples, sirrup of Citron pills, and *Oxyfanchara*, of each halfe an ounce, water of Balme and of Buglosse, of each one ounce, Cicorie water one

one ounce and a halfe, temper them all together to a potion. And it were not ill that he take euery fourth day one of these pills following: Take Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Rubarb one dragma, Agarick foure scruples, red and white Behen, Saffron, Pace, and Indy Salt, of each thre greynes, make pills thereof with the iuice of Buglosse, fire to a dragma. If there be greater heate appoehing, then is it aduised, that at the first euery day be take half a dragma of *Trociscos de Camphora*, with sirrup of Pomgranats dissolued, and so continue foure dayes together. And if this will not help, then must the patient drinke new Buttermilke, with all these purgations and letting blood. It is also highly commended, to carie a sober life in eating and drinking, yet to take hede that the patient remaine by his strength.

We will here mention some moe things that are very commodious for the panting of the hart, like as fragrant things which are of a cold nature, as Violets, water Lillies, Roses, all Saunders, Cozrall, Perle, Campher, Harts bones, Jacints, Smaragdes, shauen Zuozie, Amber, Coziander, the iuice of Limons, Rose water, odoriferous fruites, Quinces, Perles, Apples, and their like. Amongst compounds are the confection of Orange pills and their sirrup, the confection of Citrons, and their sirrups, conserue of Buglosse, Roses, Violets, Burrage, confected Cherries, and their confection, the flowres and rotes of Cicozie, confected sirrup of Sozrell, Burrage wine, and Cherie wine, the Tabulats of Diamargariton, Diarrhodon Abbatis, Dragagant, and *Manus Christi* with perles, but the Physicians do ordaine many compounded medicines, as hereafter do follow.

The laxatiue sirrup of Roses is specially commended, if there be any stopping of the belly, for it coleteth and diuerteth all ill vapors from the hart, whereby the hart is much pained.

There are also made for this many confections, according to the importance of the patient, whereof there follow some hereafter: Take conserue of Roses halfe an ounce, conserue of Buglosse two ounces, conserue of water Lillies one quarter of an ounce, Perles, Jacints, Smaragdes, Citron seede, Sozrell seede, and red Cozrall, of each one dragma, red, white, and yellow Saunders, prepared Coziander, burnt Zuozie, red and white Behen, Harts bones sliced in Rose water, of each halfe a dragma, filed Gold and Silver, of each two scruples, Gold & Silver leaues, of each xv. Sugar one ounce and a halfe: beate them all small together, and temper it with Rose water, but not on the fire.

Item, take the iuice of swete Apples, and of Buglosse which is cleare and settled, of each two ounces, *Doronicum*, Citron pills, Burrage floures, Roses, shauen Zuozie, of each halfe an ounce, Basill seedes halfe an ounce, Pirtle leaues, Balme, Coziander, Cinnamome, Galingall, Seduary, Spike, *Lignum Aloes*, burnt silke, and Saffron, of each one quarter of an ounce, small filed Gold and Silver, of each two dragmes and a halfe, red and white Behen, burnt Harts horne, Pace, *Gallia Muscata*, Amber, Harts bones, red Saunders, of each thre dragmes, of all Pirabolans, of each halfe an ounce, Smaragdes, Berill, Jacints, Sapphires, Granates, which be prepared of each one dragma, Perles thre dragmes, Amber and Campher, of each halfe a scruple, Pulse one dragma, make a powder thereof, and to euery ounce of powder put twelue ounces of Sugar: dissolue the Sugar in Rose water, and sethe it for to make Tabulates thereof, or a confection.

This confection is of a temperate nature, very forcible for all swooning, and maladies of the hart. These two next following are cooling.

Take conserue of Roses, Buglosse, Burrage, of each one ounce, *Species de Gemmis*; and Rubis, of each one scruple, Harts bones, & peeled Citron seede, of each 10. greynes, sirrup of Apples as much as you desire to make it soft, vse thereof in the morning two howres before meate. The other: Take conserues of Roses two ounces, conserues of Buglosse one ounce, *Species Triasandalon*, burnt Zuozie, Sozrell seedes, peeled Melon seede, Gourd seede, and peeled Cucumber seede, Limon seede, and *Oxyfaccchara*, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Sugar halfe an ounce, Perles two scruples, thre leaues of beaten Gold, mixe it with the sirrupe of Apples vnto a confection. And if this panting of the hart come too often, then giue of this powder following halfe a dragma, tempered with Rose water, and water of Buglosse.

Take red Cozrall, Jacint, Smaragdes, and Saphir, of each five greynes, small filed Golde thre greynes, Perles halfe a dragma, temper them together, and put thereto a sponesfull of white Wineger, & make a potion thereof. Item, take red Cozrall, Perles, Jacints, and Smaragdes, all together prepared, of each one scruple, & giue thereof half a dragma, with some kind of distilled water.

Restoratiue

Restorative waters of Capons are very requisite for this, which must be thus prepared: Boyle the Capon in water, wherein hath diuers times golde bene quenched, chop it afterwards in peeces, and put thereto flowers of Borage, Buglosse, Violets, Roses, Citron pæles, Cinnamome, Cloues, Balme and Saffron, of each one dragma. If you cannot get all these, then take as many of them as you can get, and distill them all together with flesh and broth in hot water: and then when any body is very feeble, giue him a metely draught thereof; it strengtheneth not onely the Hart, but the stomacke also maruellous much.

There is also another made with spices, as followeth: When the Capon is made cleane, then stampe him with bones and flesh in a mortar, afterwards powze it into a glasse helme, Borage, Balme, Endiue, Fennell, and Rose water, of each two ounces; then put thereto the stampt Capon. Item, put moze thereto the water of Wormwood and of Comfery, of each one ounce, *Spec. de gemmis*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Diamargariton* the cold, Cinnamome, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one scrup. distill them all together as before.

Moreouer, there is another Capon water to be distilled, as followeth: Take an olde Capon that is made cleane, put thereto fower quarts of water, let them sethe well together, then pull off the skin, and the fatnes, and then bzeake him all to peeces, and distill water thereof as before. You are to salt this water, so that it may last the better without stinking. You haue also here before in the first Chapter in the 22. S. a pzeious water, which strengtheneth the Hart wonderfull much, the which may be also vsed for the same.

Syrups of
Apples.

We haue often here before admonished of the sirupe of Apples, which is thus made: Take the iuice of swete and sower Apples, of each fwe ounces, sethe it to the halfe, scumming it, then let it stand two daies to settle; put thereto thre ounces of Sugar, and then sethe them together vnto a sirupe. Another: Take the iuice of the best tassing swete and sower Apples, of each twelue ounces, sethe it vntill it be well scummed, then put thereto six ounces of Sugar, and let it sethe together to a sirupe. These sirupes strengthen the weake panting Hart, pzeferue one from swooning, and strengthen the stomacke.

Item, take Rose water, the iuice of sower Apples, and water of Buglosse, of each thre ounces, sethe these together to a sirup, or to a Iulep.

For this is also good many kindes of accustomed sirupes, as the sirupe of vineger, and of Limons, of Raspes, Violets, water Lillies, veriuice, Sorell, Borage and Buglosse, also Iulep of Violets and Roses: the which are to be found in the first Register by their names.

Confections and Powders for to vse inwardly.

Take Species *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Aromatici rosati*, *de gemmis*, and prepared Coziander, of each thre dragmes, prepared Bloodstone one drag. and a halfe, *Troscisci de Spodio cum semine*, *acetosa*, two scruples, shauen Iuoze halfe a drag. Harts bones halfe a scruple, prepared Pearles fower scruples, Granadoes, Jacints, Smaragdes, Rubies, Sapphires, Corall, and Roses, of each one scruple, Cinnamome one quarter of an ounce, Sugar six ounces, temper them all together to powder. If you will make Sugar plates thereof, then sethe it with Rose water, as hath bene taught.

The like confection or powder may be made also of the Species *De gemmis*, or any other that like you best. And alwaies for one ounce of Species, you must take 12. ounces of Sugar.

Of such things as are to be applied outwardly for it.

For this are highly commended the cordiall waters, and to that ende we will expresse many: Take water of Buglosse six ounces, water of Cicorie twelue ounces, water of Balme fower ounces, Species *de gemmis* the colde, *Latificantes Almanforis*, of each one scrup. Species *Triasentalis* one drag. and a halfe, white vineger halfe an ounce, and Balsmey two ounces; let it sethe a little, and then make a scarlet cloth wet in it a quarter of a yerd square, wring it out, and lay the same on his left bzeast fower or fwe times, before and after meate, and twice againe before he go to bed.

Take Rose water, and Sorell water, of each thre ounces, of Buglosse two ounces, red Corall, red Saunders and Roses, of each one drag. Puske, Amber, of each thre greines, Saffron one

one scruple, Vineger one ounce and a halfe : temper them together, and then lay it diuers times luke warme vpon the left bzeast.

Item, take *Species Diamoschu*, *Latificantes*, *de gemmis* the cold, of each two drag. *Palmeley* foure ounces, water of Buglosse, *Sorzell*, water of Cicozie and Violets, of each one ounce, temper them together, and lay it thereon, as befoze.

The chiefest Whisitions of *Angusta Vindelicorum*, haue these things following in vse : Take water of Burrage, *Sorzell*, Buglosse, Balme, and Rose water, of each eight ounces, two kinde of *Species De gemmis*, of each halfe a dragme, Harts bones, and burnt Harts hojne, of each halfe a dragme, Saffron seuen greynes, Rose vineger one ounce and a halfe, temper them all together. Another : Take Burrage water, the waters of Buglosse, *Sorzell*, Roses, Balme and Violets, of each two ounces, Vineger of Roses one ounce and a halfe, red and white Behen, of each halfe a dragme, floures of Burrage, Buglosse, and Violets, of each one scruple, Cinnamome one dragme, thre Harts bones, *Lignum Aloes*, yellow Saunders, and burnt Harts hojne, of each one scruple, prepared Perles one dragme, burnt Iuozie, and Saffron, of each ten greynes, *Spec. Diamargariton* one drag. temper them and vse them as aforesaid. Another : Take two kinde of *Spec. de gemmis*, of each one dragme, *Diamoschu dulcis* halfe a dragme, *Cordialium* one dragme, Saffron, Indie Spica, red and white Behen, and *Spec. de Canna*, of each one scruple, prepared Perles halfe a drag. yellow Saunders two scrup. *Muscus* two greynes, two Harts bones, one ounce and a halfe of Vineger of Roses, water of Balme, *Sorzell*, Burrage, Buglosse, Rose water, of each thre ounces, water of Melilotes foure ounces, temper them together, and vse them as aboue.

Take red Saunders halfe an ounce, Citron pils, white Saunders, Roses, red and white Corall, Amber, and burnt Iuozie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Harts bones, and Saffron, of each halfe a dragme, *Spec. Latitia Galeni*, *Diamargaritonis*, of each two scruples, Camfer ten Greynes : powder these all together, and temper them well, and when you will vse them, then take the foresaid water, which beginneth : Take Burrage water as much as you please &c.

Item, take Rose water, and the water of water Lillies, of each sixe ounces, the iuice of fouze Apples thre ounces, water of Balme and Buglosse of each one ounce and a halfe, Vineger halfe an ounce, red Saunders, Citron seede, and *Sorzell* seede, of each halfe a dragme, Camfer five greynes, Cinnamome foure scruples, temper them all together. This following is of a temperate nature : take water of Balme, Buglosse, and *Sorzell*, of each foure ounces, water of Cicozie, Roses, and Willow leaues, of each one ounce and a halfe, Saffron five greynes, Vineger one ounce, *Palmeley* thre dragmes : temper it well, and vse it as befoze.

These following are moze cooling : Take water of Buglosse, small Erduie, Burrage, and of Violets, of each sixe ounces, of Rose water eight ounces, *Spec. de gemmis* the cold, one ounce and a halfe, Camfer halfe a scruple, white Corall foure scruples, prepared Perles one drag. and a halfe, beaten Gold leanes eight, *Palmeley* two ounces.

For shields to lay vpon the out side, you may take all the foresaid things, except the Sugar For shields. and Rose water.

Item, take Roses, floures of Buglosse, and of Burrage, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Citron seede, burnt Iuozie, Hirtle leaues, white Corall, and Coziander, of each one dragme and a halfe, Campher one quarter of an ounce, red and white Saunders, of each foure scruples, make a shield thereof, to lay vpon the left side of the bzeast. Or take red and white Saunders, red and white Corall, of each one ounce, Balme, Buglosse, Citron pils, Hart bones, and burnt silke, of each one drag. *Spec. de gemmis* the cold, and Saffron, of each halfe a drag. Campher one scruple, mixe them together.

The same vertue that these shields haue is also in the Plaisters, for which these following are highly commended, as well to coole the panting of the hart, as the pulse, and therewith for to strengthen the bzeath, hart, and all naturall powers. Take *Doronicum*, Harts bones, red and white Behen, of each one dragme and a halfe, red and white Saunders, burnt Iuozie, leaues of wild Grapes, red and white Corall, of each one quarter of an ounce, Roses thre dragmes, water of Buglosse and Barty meale, one ounce and a halfe, Saffron two scruples and sixe greynes, foure ounces of *Palmeley*, oyle of Saffron halfe an ounce, molten Rosin halfe an ounce, and make a plaister thereof.

Another.

Another.

TAke red and white Behen, Harts bones, *Doronicum*, Facints, Smaragdes, Sapphires, of each two scruples, Perles one quarter of an ounce, fower leaues of beaten golde, Rosin one ounce and a halfe, boyle the Rosin in thicke red Wineger, make a plaister, and spread it on a red wollen cloute, and then lay it on the left bzeast.

For these sicke persons it is also very commodious (like as is already expressed) to holde at their noses continually odoziferous things that are colde of nature. For which be vled the Pomanders which are described in the first Part, or these following: Take Basill, Roses, Violets, burnt Iuoze, and Harts bones, of each two dragmes, Camfere two scruples, Muske and Amber of each fower greines, red and white Saunders, red and white Corall, of each one drag. beate each alone, and being tempered, binde them all together in a red peece of silke, and smell thereon continually. These simples also are very commodious, especially if there be an Ague with it, as Violets, Roses, Saunders, water Lillies, Rose water, Wineger, and such like, as hath before bene shewed.

Clifters to
comfort the
Hart.

It is very profitable also for the patient euery morning to vse these Clifters following: for it doth not onely lose the body, but also strengthen the Hart.

Take Hallowes, Violet leaues, Lincede, and Fenegreake, of each one handfull and a halfe, sethe them in broth wherein hath ben sodden a Lambes head, then take twelue ounces of this decoction, oile of Violets and swete Almonds of each one ounce, the marrowe of Calues bones, Ducks grease, Hens grease and swete Butter of each thre dragmes, Cho. Sugar one ounce: all this being made, then set it warme. In like maner may this salve be continually vled: Take oyle of swete Almonds, Ducks grease and swete butter, of each one ounce, the iuice of Mercury fower ounces: sethe these together till the iuice be thoroughly sodden away: with this oymntment annoynt from the Pauell downewards vnto the Hips, in the euening when you goe to bed. This Clifter may be vled both in cold and hot causes of the panting of the Hart.

Now as concerning the order of life, especiall care must be taken that he be not overcharged with eating and drinking. In the beginning of this sicknes, Barly paps are very commodious: Also Hens or Pullets drest with Wineger or Aeriuce. In fine, he ought not to order himselfe in this sicknes, then according to the custome of other hot diseases. It is very good to sethe or steepe in his drinke Burrage or Buglosse with the flowers. He must refraine from all clowdie colde and moyst ayre, his bed and his chamber shall he hang and strowe with Willow leaues, Roses, water Lillies, and Wine leaues, and that principally when it is hot weather. Also he must beware of all windy and flatulent meates; as Milke, Pottage, Ponic, fruit, and especially grosse slimy meates, as those made of dough, grosse fish, unleaunened bread, old Cheese and Chestnuts, and such like. In like manner also from all sharpe and heauy things, as Onions, Garlike, Radishes, Leekes, and such like. All grosse wines are naught for him, and water also decocted with Licorice.

Of the panting of the Hart through colde. §. 5.



When as there is no Ague with the panting of the hart, then is it a signe that the same proceedeth of colde which is caused for the most part of a watery *Phlegma*, whereby the bzeath is hindered, yea sometimes is stuffed with such force in the bzeast, that it seemeth that they will stifle. This hath also a slowe inconstant Pulse, with an heauy bzeath, and sluggishnes of the whole body and minde, and with an ill fauoured colour of the face. This is to be remedied as hereafter followeth: Take water of Baulme, water of blew flower deluce, and Agrymony, of each one ounce and a halfe, and a little Sugar; and then drinke it fower or eight mornings together very warme. But if the patient cannot goe to stoele, then is this Purgation following to be giuen him: Take *Electuary Indi* one ounce, *De Succo Rosarum* halfe a dragme, temper this with thre ounces of good wine, and giue it him in the morning betimes. And if the body be bound at the time when the foresaid drinke is to be vled, then must the patient take alwaies one hower or twaine before supper, one or two of these pills following: Take *Pilula de Sarcocolla* one dragme,

Ala-

Alephangins one quarter of an ounce, make thereof fower and twenty pills with the iuice of *Roses*.

Also he must drinke this every morning: Take Treacle or Pithydate one drage. or one and a halfe, according as you thinke best, and temper this with good wine.

Some doe aduise, that at the first, yea forthwith you doe giue with wine one dragma, or a dragma and a halfe of these Tabulates following: Take Pasticke, Indy Spike, *Lignum Aloes*, Cinnamome, Cloues, Cardamome, and Citron pills, of each one drage. and a halfe, Puske halfe a scruple: make a powder thereof, and giue it him as aforesaid.

But the principall things seruing to this panting of the hart, we will briefly expresse; to wit, all that is warme of nature and smelleth swate; as Amber, Puske, Saffron, *Lignum Aloes*, red Hyzlar, Cloues, Citron pills, Ruts, Cinnamom, Parietom gentle, Basill, Spike of Indie, Baulme, Burrage, red and white Behen, *Doronicum*, Zeduary, Cardamome, Rosemary, and Basill seede. Of all these things are made confectiōs, powders, and other compositions, as shall appeare hereafter. Of compounds these are commonly made at the Apothecaries, as *Diambra*, *Dianthon*, *Diatbamaron*, *Luscificans de Gemmis calidis*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, de *Xylo Aloes*, *Dia-pluris*, and confected Citron pills.

Here followe certaine Eleduaries for to vse inwardly. Take Pasticke, Cinnamom, both kindes of Basill, Ruts, Parietom gentle, and long Pepper, of each a like much: when you haue ten dragmes of this powder, then mire therewith prepared Pearles, red Corall, Amber, burnt silke, red and white Behen, and Indy Spike, of each halfe a dragma: afterwards mingle it with Honie vnto an Eleduary wherein Mirabolans *Chebuli* be put. This is not good onely for the panting of the hart, swooning, and for faintnes of the hart; but also for a colde and feeble stomache, for it strengtheneth the same exceedingly.

This must also be noted, when any confectiō is to be made wherein there is no certain quantity of Honie, then are you to take alwaies for one ounce of powder thre ounces of Honie, and then mingle them well together. Nota.

Item, take the flowers of Burrage, Buglosse, Rosemarie, red and white Behen, Saffron, *Doronicum*, *Lignum Aloes*, Licorice and Basill seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, Jacint, Smaragde, and Sapphire, of each half a scruple, Sugar thrice as much as the other; make a powder thereof: whereof the patient is to take a scruple at the least at meale tides.

Conserues of yellowe Violets are very much vsed, and also highly commended for this panting of the hart. You haue also before in the first Part the twelfth Chapter a good stomachicall powder, in the first §. which serueth for this purpose. Item, there is in the 5. §. a water of Lillies of Conuallies. Also in the eight part many sundry waters of life, hot of nature, which are for this very commodious. Confected Nutmegs doe strengthen all inward members, and consume all superfluous humors.

Conserue of Buglosse, Burrage, Parietom gentle, Rosemarie, Cowslips, & Cicorie mingled with other, or each of it selfe, doe much strengthen the hart. In like manner are good for this all Pomanders which are hot of nature, and are to be sought for in the Register, and these are specially good, wherein Puske and Amber are put.

Item, steepe the space of certaine howres Baulme in Palmesey, and besprinkle therewith a hot brickebat, and then receiue the vapor into the nose.

There may also be laid outwardly cordiall waters vpon the left breast, which are thus to be prepared: Take Baulme water, and Buglosse water, of each five ounces, Vineger one ounce, Cloues one dragma, Saffron halfe a dragma, Puske halfe a scruple; lay it with a cloth vpon the left breast. Some doe vse the iuice of the herbes (when they be settled) in steade of their waters, which are also very forcible. Item, take Buglosse water, and the water of Sozrell, of each thre ounces, water of Willowe leaues, Rose water, and Wormewood water, the water of Crasse and of Baulme, of each two ounces, *Spec. cordiales temperatas* one dragma and a halfe, Saffron eight greines, Myrhe, Diptamus, Gentian, *Lignum Aloes*, yellow Saunders, Basill seedes, red and white Behen, Jacint and Smaragde of each halfe a scruple, the iuice of Limons thre ounces, Vineger one ounce, and Palmesey thre ounces, temper them all together; it is wholly temperate: so that it may be vsed for the comfort of the hart in colde and heate.

Another:

Another.

TAke fresh Rosemary floures three ounces, Sage floures, Buglosse floures, Burrage floures, of each one ounce and a halfe, Saffron one scruple, seethe the floures in sufficient Muscadell, and then stamp them well together, and lay it warme vpon the left breast, this doth not only strengthen, but maketh also a light breathing.

There may also shields be made for this, euen as here do folloiw two sorts: Take floures of Burrage and Buglosse, of each one handfull, red and white Behen, and Saffron, of each one dragma, burnt red silke one scruple, Cloues, Cinnamome, red Corall, and Roses, of each halfe a dragma, Harts bones, Muske and Amber, of each three greines: put all these in a red silke bag, then must you besprinkle them with warme Buglosse water, and so lay them to the left breast. Item, take Zeduary, red and white Behen, Rosemary, Indy Spica, Roses, red and white Saunders, Burrage floures, burnt Iuorie, Shurtle leaues, Buglosse floures, and Camfer, of each four scruples, Saffron and *Gallia Muscata*, of each one dragma, Ambra halfe a scruple, Muske foure greines, and make a bag thereof. This is very temperate.

There are also these plaisters and salues, that hereafter folloiw to be vsed: Take *Laudanum* three ounces, Cloues and Citron pils, of each one dragma, Muske one scruple, Turpentine halfe a dragma, melt then the *Laudanum* with the Turpentine in a warme mortar, temper the rest amongst it, and so make a plaister thereof, spread it on a red clout, and so lay it on the left breast.

For to make a salve or ointment, take vnripe oyle of Olives, and oyle of Roses, of each two ounces, Sandaraca one dragma and a halfe, parched Salt three dragmes, Roses and Cyper roots, of each halfe a dragma: beate them all small together, and keepe and preserve it vntill occasion serue to vse it. For it hapneth oftentimes, that such humors do draw downewards, and fall in some place of the hip, the knee, or ancle, the which must be kept warme.

Lastly, you ought not to rest, vntill the patient be free of this panting of the hart, without vsing any medicine vnto it, or that the disease may with all diligence be diminished, if the same could be perfectly cured. Wherefore must alwayes a little Saffron be mixt amongst all his meates, and if that cannot be gotten, then is the dry powder to be dyest amongst his meate.

All these confections may be made thus: Take the *Spec. Latificantes Almanfortis*, *Dia Moschu dulcis*, *De gemmis temperatis*, of each three quarters of an ounce, red and white Saunders, red and white Corall, of each one dragma, Sirrup of Citrons, sirrup of Roses, and of Wineger, of each five ounces, white Sugar three ounces, seethe the sirrups and the Sugar vntill it be thicker then Honey, and when it doth begin to be cold, then mixe the powder amongst it, and vse thereof in the morning, and two howres before supper, about the bignes of a Walnut.

Thirdly, make two bags in this manner: Take Basil seeds, floures of Buglosse, of Burrage, Parierum, red and white Corall, red and white Saunders, of each halfe a dragma, Jacint, Smaragdes and Saphir, of each five greynes, Campher one scruple, wilde Wine leaues one quarter of an ounce, Pace one dragma and a halfe, stamp them all small, and fill herewith (as is sayd) a little bag, and lay it on the hart.

The rule of life for this sickness consisteth in light meates, as in all field fowles, in meates that be dyest with odoriferous spices, yolks of new layd eggs are very mete for him: further, behold what is taught in the discourse of the cold bzaines, and cold head. For his drinke, white Wine soberly drunken is good. For Wine, be it as strong as may be, if one drink too much thereof, then doth it cause cold diseases: and if one desire to delay it, then is it to be done with water, wherein glowing Cold hath been extinguished.

This Wine following doth strengthen the hart and the stomacke also: Take Ginger two ounces, Calingall one ounce, Cinnamome two ounces, Zeduary one quarter of an ounce, Roses one ounce, Burrage floures one ounce and a halfe, and roots of Buglosse, beate them together grossly, and keepe them in eight quarts of Must or new Wine.

These spiced Wines are also good for the hart, if the disease do come through cold: in like manner Wine of Burrage, of Harts tong, of Rosemary, of Buglosse, and of Hyssop, of Parierum, and of *Asarabacca*, all which haue power to warme the panting of the hart, and also to strengthen it.

Item, take Balme water, and Buglosse water, of each five ounces, Sugar nine ounces, seethe

sethe them to twelue ounces, and then vse it as a Zulep. **¶** Take water of Buglosse alone, wherein Cloues were sodden, and drinke sometimes thereof, for it comforteth maruellously.

¶ Item, take Parsly with the roote, boyle them in Wine, according to that you will haue it strong: temper therewith a little Vineger, and drinke the same. It taketh away the panting of the hart, and all paine of the same.

Besides all this, the patient is to forbear all milkie, doughy, moyst, and windie meates, to arise from meales with hunger, and halfe a thirst: he must after meate not moue nor stirre much, nor yet sodainly giue himselfe to sleepe: he must also (according to his old wont) not sleepe too much, whereby he might consume and diminish the humidities of the bodie: he must also for the most part lye on his right side, and sie all anger, sorow, and all other vexations.

Of the panting of the Hart through a bad stomacke or Appetite. §. 6.



Cre before amongst the signes of this sicknes, we haue taught also that the panting of the hart, and the swooning, are caused oftentimes through a bad stomack. But if this disease come of a full stomack, then must the cure begin with refrayning from meate and drinke, and first with opening the Liuer vaine, afterwards the Spleen. But if this be not very needefull, then are you to minister to the patient a milde Clister, for that all strong purgations are enemyes to this disease. Further, he must obserue for his meate and drinke, euen as is shewed hereafter, in the description of the stomacke. Now for to strengthen the stomacke through outward things, chole for it out of the foresayd remedies that which best liketh you.

Of the panting of the Hart through frightening. §. 7.



It is also admonished in the beginning, that the Hart may come to much disemperature through fright and feare, and that through the concurrence of bloud, for which, this water of Elderne floures is marvellous good. Lay then into a glased helme chopt Elderne floures: afterwards lay thereon whole Eggs with the piked end vppwards, and the same opened alittle: then againe Elderne floures, and so Eggs, untill that the helme be so full as the water is high, wherein the helme standeth, and is to be distilled. When it is thus distilled, then are you to lay of this Elderne water with a cloth vpon the hart, thus do the auncient Physicians accustome to make it. But marke that not only feare and fright do disease the hart, but also all other motions of the minde, which are herebefore for the most part already exprest: but what power they haue in furthering the sicknes and health, is sufficiently before discovered in both the descriptions of vnnatural things, which the learned do call *Res non naturales*, in the first Chapter and 10. §.

Of Heauines, a disease of the Hart. §. 8.



The cause of this infirmitie is *Melancholia*, where are sorow, feare, and many wonderfull fantasies without any cause at all, which are thus to be purged: Take *Mirabolani*, *Chebuli*, and *Indi*, of each one dragma, *Epithimi* one dragma and a halfe, fine *Bolus* five greines, *Muscus* three greines, make pils thereof, or mingle them with Wine: but this following is moze common: Take Senie leaues one ounce, beate them, and cast them in the iuice of Burrage and of Buglosse, of each sixe ounces, the iuice of Apples three ounces: let it sethe alittle, and wzing it out, and then mingle therewith sixe ounces of fine Sugar: then let it sethe againe, and when it is cold, temper amongst it one dragma of Saffron, and vse thereof as often as you please, at each time one ounce, in Wine, or tempered in one of the foresayd waters.

You haue also in the §. 5. before a very good confection, which beginneth thus: Take *Spick*, *Cinamome*, &c. which may also be vsed for this passion.

This following is also very expert: Take rootes of Buglosse halfe an ounce, Zeduary, and *Doronicum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, beate them to powder, and giue euery day thereof one dragma with Wine.

Behold also what hath been sayd before in the first part, the twelfth Chapter, and 8. §. of the madnes, *Melancholia*, and also in like manner in the third part, which are commodious for this.

Of

Here befoze in the end of the fift Chapter we haue reherfed, that this sicknes which we do call the griping of the hart, is rather a difeafe of the Lights, or a kind of confumption, then a maladie of the hart: but be it taken as it will, yet neuertheles is this sicknes very grieuous for young childzen, and almoft incurable for old folks. And in fine, this english name doth fignifie none other, then the feuer *Helica*, whereof we fhall further difcours in the firt part (where we do write of all Agues) for we haue alwayes thought good to adde thereto this that followeth: Take Walnuts with the fhels, burne them wholie to afhes in a pot, and thereof giue a child one fcruple, or moze, accoꝝding vnto the ftrength of the child.

Item, take drye bꝛowne Betonie, and therewith fill a fmall bag, and lay it on the childes bꝛest. Women are of opinion, that if the child may liue till the ninth day, then will it recouer health.

For this you haue alfo a fpeciall Capon water for childzen that haue the confumption, in the fift Chapter, the 22. §.

It is alfo fufficiently knowne to all the world, how that the hart by peffilent ayre, will not only be feebled and infected, but alfo inflamed with a full deftruction, againft which you fhall find fundry fit remedies in the firt part, in the treatife of the Plague.

For conclusion of this Chapter of the Hart, and of the fecond part of this booke, we will not omit the defcription of the *Species De gemmis*, whereof is fo often mention made, which are to be found at euery good Apothecaries after two kindes of preparations, to wit, the cold, and the hote *Species*, which may be vfed to Confections, Powders, Cordiall waters, and fuch like, but by reason that the preparation of the fame is very diuers, therefore we will here fet forth and defcribe only foure fozts of the moft common preparations.

*Species de
gemmis frig.*

Spec. De gemmis frigida which are cold of nature, are thus prepared: Take Perles 3. drag. Rubies, Facinds, Granadoes, Smaragdes, and Saphirs, of each one drag. Harts bones halfe a drag. burnt Iuoꝛie, red and white Coꝛrall, of each one drag. Roles one drag. and a halfe, white and yelloꝝ Saunders, floures of Bugloffe, Burrage, Soꝛrell fcede, and Bafill fcede, red & white Behen, of each one dragme, beaten Gold and Siluer, of each fine leaues.

*Species de
gemmis
calida.*

Species De Gemmis calida or Mefua: Take prepared Perles thꝛee drag. Saphirs, Facinds, Sardonix, Coꝛreils, Granadoes and Smaragdes, of each one drag. and a halfe, Zeduary, *Doronicum*, Citron pills, Space, and Bafill fcede, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Coꝛrall, Amber, and filed Iuoꝛie, of each halfe a fcruple, red and white Behen, Cloues, Ginger, long Pepper, Spica, Caffy wood, Saffron, and Cardamome, of each one drag. Cinnamome, Calingall, & Zeduary, of each one drag. and a half, fmall filed Gold and Siluer, of each two fcruples, Amber one quarter of an ounce, Huske halfe a drag. each beaten by it felfe, and then tempered together.

*Species de
gemmis
temperatz.*

Species De gemmis temperata. Thefe *Species* are of a temperate nature, not too hote, alfo not too cold, the which may be prepared as is thought good.

Species Cordiales, Cordiall *Species*: For this, take Perles, burnt Iuoꝛie, Granadoes, Cinnamome, Toꝛmentill, and fine Bolus, of each thꝛee drag. red, white, and yelloꝝ Saunders, Shanen Iuoꝛie, & Unicoꝛnes hozne, of each one quarter of an ounce, Facinds, Saphirs, white & red Coꝛrall, Valerian, *Diptamus*, Zeduary, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each one drag. fealed earth fine fcruples, burnt filke two fcruples, Harts bones halfe a drag. red and white Behen, of each two fcruples, fine leaues of beaten Gold, Huske and Amber, of each ten greines, either of them prepared after his manner, are to be beaten together.

*Species Dia
margariton
frigidz.*

The fame operation haue alfo almoft the *Species Dia margariton*, whereof there are two kindes hote, & cold; the warme are here befoze defcribed in the 12. Chapter 12. §. the cold are thus prepared: take peeled Melon feds, Pompeon feds, Gourde feds, & peeled Cucumber feds, Wurlane feds, white Poppie feds, white, yelloꝝ, and red Saunders, Ginger, Roles, water Lillies, Burrage floures, and Mirtle feds, of each one drag. white & red Coꝛrall, of each halfe a drag. Perles thꝛee drag. prepared together and being all beaten fmall, temper them all together. This holdeth all fell people that fall quickly into a fwoone, in their ftrength, whether it be caufed of the ftoꝛmach, or of the hart; it foꝛtifieth all the inward vitall parts: it is alfo good againft all Coughes, againft the confumption, and all thofe that be bꝛought lowe thꝛough a long ficknes, it bꝛingeth againe to their foꝛmer might and ftrength.

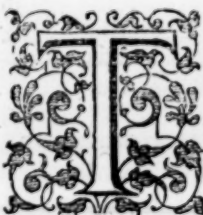
The third Part of this Booke of Phisicke, Containeth the Bellie.



The third Part of mans bodie, haue the Anatomistes (who are the surueours of the vniformitie and members of mans bodie) ascribed to the bellie, which beginneth outwardly from the breast, and inwardly from the *Diaphragma* descending downwards euen to the leggs. This part hath outwardly these members following: on the foreparte the *Pauell*, which is placed in the middelt of the whole bodie and bellie; vnder which doe followe both the partes of Generation, the which in man are the testicles or stones hanging downe in a codde: behinde are the raines and the buttockes which couer the fundament. The inwarde members are the stomacke, the liuer, the gall, the kidneis, the bladder, the bowels, and in women the mother: all which are subiect to verie dangerous diseases; of the which we are now to write and discourse.

The first Chapter.

Of the Nauell.



The first outward member of the bellie is the *Pauell*, which is called the roote of the belly: for that nature hath formed it as the first amongst the feeding parts, and also in new borne children holdeth fast in the mothers belly, no otherwise then as it were a roote in the earth. For like as the roote of a tree draweth nourishment vnto it whereby it groweth: euen so doth the nauell also which draweth the blood vnto it out of the mothers body thereby to nourish the child, and make it grow. Euen as the fore- saide roote of a tree of all that which it draweth vnto it for fode, doth not drawe also any thing but all that which is waterie & vnnecessary for his nourishment. As the gum which one seeth on a tree: euen so doth the string of the nauell which sweateth out all superfluous moisture which is not good for nourishment, and doth gather all the same together in the *Secundina* vntill the birth day: the which is called of women the flood, or breaking of the water.

All people be they yong or olde may get a rupture of the nauell, which swelleth and hangeth out of the forepart of the belly: the which causeth chiefly to women a great hinderance if they be not holpen therfore, like as we shall write hereafter moze at large when we shall discourse of the rupture: yet we will here discourse and write somewhat of certaine things for the behoofe and ease of yong children.

Take Comfrey one ounce, stampe it well, put thereto halfe an ounce of molten Ware, temper it well, and then laie it vpon the nauell. But if the rupture be verie great, then take Beares grease, and therewith annoint the whole backe bone of the childe: it causeth the nauell to be drawen in.

It is found to be oftentimes good for all ruptures of the nauell, be it in people of discretion, or in yong children, that the herbe *Perfoliata* and his seede be sodden and laid vpon the rupture, and so woyn or caried continually vpon the nauell, vntill that thereby the rupture be cured.

And the same seede being also sodden in water or in wine, and one dragma thereof giuen to drinke, or stampe the herbe and the seede and giue thereof to the childe the weight of one scruple and a halfe to eate in pap. Also you shall hereafter finde a plaister of *Perfoliata* which you may vse for this purpose.

A good powder. Take Lupins meale halfe an ounce, burnt linnen one quarter of an ounce, temper them together and take thereof one quarter of an ounce: then temper it afterwards with wine and laye it vpon the nauell.

Of the members of generation in generall.

Where as much as the supporting of the succession of mankinde cannot be purchased without the health of these parts in men and women: therefore it is to be endeavored (if they be infected with any kinde of disease) to remedie and cure the same: not to the continuance of carnall lustes, but onely to the aduancement and accomplishment of the state of Patri-
monie. For where as a mans nature doth scoure alway through the sper-
maticall flure; and therby is most vnfit for generation: therefore can it
 not be but a chrysian dæde to helpe the same, and to make it fit for gene-
 ration. For it is taken at all times to be a punishment of God, if a woman remaine barren,
 therefore haue we determined to write somewhat thereof.

Of the Tumors in the groinde and other such like diseases. §. 1.



Here come also many kind of diseases vnto the foresaid Groynnd or priuie places, with heat, hardnes, anguish, and great payne. Amongst other, the Latinists do reackō *Bubones*, the which are swellings of the Groinds: for which these remedies following are to be vsed.

Take muscilage of Elecampane rootes, Linsæede, Figs, and Sebestes, of each sixe ounces, and as much also of the oyle of swæte Almonds, prepared litharge of Golde thre ounces: sethe it so long vntill the muscilage be consumed, stirring it alway about, and put thereto one ounce of Ware, and then make of it a plaister, and lay it thereon.

Item, take Bird lime, and *Gummi Helij* of each two ounces, molten Ware halfe an ounce, temper them well by the fire, & make thereof a plaister: it diueth out the matter maruellously.

A good Salue.

Take Rosin and Ware, of each one ounce, a great Onion, two Lilly rootes: stampe them, and let them sethe in Goates milke: then straine them thorow a linnen cloth, and let it sethe well againe, stirre it alwaies about, vntill that it waxe cold.

When as this Tumor is broken out, then cleanse it with *Unguentum Apostolorum*, or with honie of Roses, and you shall finde sundrie things in the first Part, of the description of all olde Ulcers, rancelling and Cankers &c. which are commodious for this.

Of the Priuities or Secrets in particular. §. 2.



Besides the foresaid Tumor or swelling that the Priuities are subiect to, are many Priuities subiect to more other diseases. And because the same is a tender part and very sensible: therefore doe such paines commonly bring greater accidents with them, wherof we will discourse: but we will first shew the causes whence all such accidents are wont to grow. First, for that he hath lien with an vncleane woman, or that there remaineth of his Nature or Sperme sticking in the Conduit, and so festereth and putrifieth there. Also if one weare any sootie stinking clothes about his priuities, or if any haue euer had about that place any sore, and the same was ill healed. Item through rubbing and hard scratching, euen as one may best of all demaund all these things of the sicke person.

And to come to the remedies: if so be that this member be ouer heated, and hath an Ulcer, then is it to be cleansed and cooled with Rose water and Plantaine water. And if it require stronger things, then is water to be taken wherein the seedes of Butchers brome is sodden, Rose water and wine, of each thre ounces, Verdigrease, Vitrioll, and burnt Allum, of each halfe a drag, temper them together, and wash the open place therewith.

Other

Other do take Hony water, and sethe therein burnt Allom: but whether one or the other be taken, the soze is alwaies therewith to be washed & clenfed. If it be vpon the top of the yarde or secrecie, then clenfe it with soft cotton: And for the curing of the same, take Wine and water wherein Gals, Cyppers Putts, and Allom are sodden, and lay thereon fine clouts (made wet in the foresaid water) and then pluck the sozefkin ouer, and so let it lye still vntill he will make water, and then shall you put on fresh, and continue it so long vntill the heate be drawne out, and the vlcers somewhat clenfed. But this following haue the later Physicians in vse, which is also good and certaine: Take small turning or saw dust of *Guaiacum* three ounces, yellow Pirabolas halfe an ounce, Aloe and Pyrrh, of each one drag. solwe red Wine and Plaintaine water, of each twelue ounces: let them sethe softly together till that about the third part be sodden away, afterwards straine it, and therewith clenfe the vlcers. There may be also vsed for this the water for the eyes, which is described in the first part, against the rednes of the eyes, the which beginneth thus: Take broad Plantaine &c.

If it nede any moze coling, then take the white salve with *Camfora*, or *Diapompholigos*, and dyesse it oftentimes therewith, washing it alwayes well.

And if it will not be holpen with these things, then is that to be taken which dyeth moze, as hereafter followeth: Take *Aristology*, Aloe, of each alike much, strowe it on the vlcere, or take the rootes of our ladyes Cowslips, and strow them therein, and lay a coling plaister thereon, or *Album costum*, which is thus prepared: Item, take Sallet oyle, or oyle of Roses six ounces, A plaister of Ceruse. Ceruse one ounce and a halfe, stirre them well together with a wooden pestle, and put thereto one ounce of pouned Ware, and boyle it to a plaister: This plaister is also good when the skin is rubb off, or broken, for it dyeth and coleteth. The plaister *Diapompholigos* is made thus: Take Diapompholigos. oyle of Roses, & white Ware, of each three quarters of an ounce, the iuice of Nightshade berries about so much also, Ceruse one quarter of an ounce, burnt and washen Lead, and white Tutty, of each one drag. the iuice and the oyle of Roses, let them sethe together vntill all the moysture be spent, then melt the Ware therein, and temper the other things amongst it being well and small beaten. This plaister is also good for all vncleane vlcers, it dyeth, coleteth, and healeth, and cicatrisseth very well.

A powder. Take Tutia, Aloe, Galtick, Sarcocolla, Dragon blood, and fine Bolus, of each alike much, beate them all small, and mingle them with Ware and Turpentine, afterwards burne it whole to powder, and strow it vpon the open place.

A salve. Take prepared Tutie, one ounce, Galtick and Frankincense, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Ware halfe an ounce, oyle of Roses as much as is needefull for to make therewith a salve. The lytharge of Golde is also good for this, vsed alone, or tempered amongst the foresaid salve: for it dyeth, it mollifieth, it coleteth, it clenseth, and causeth the flesh to grow. If there be great anguish, and the skin off, then the oyle of swete Almonds serueth well.

Item, take Argall, put it into a new pot, and burne it so long vntill it be blacke, then afterwards pownd it small, and strow it on the soze.

This is alledged only for outward vlcers that are seene with the eye: but if there be any soze in the conduit of the yarde, whereby the same is stoppt, and the yarde enflamed, then vse this following, spowoting it therein gently with a Sering.

Take white Wine one pinte, burnt Allome two drag. and a halfe, Verdegrese one dragme and a halfe, let them sethe well together, and straine it through a tight cloth, and vse it, as is sayd: It is very healing, and driueth away swelling. Also this salve is to be vsed for it, anointing the whole member therewith: Take the iuice of Lassels, of Plantain, and Comfrey, of each two ounces, foure scruples of Camfer byused very small, and three well byayed whites of eggs, Starch and Ceruse one ounce, the lytharge of Gold halfe an ounce, Tutty prepared with Rose water one dragme and a halfe, stirre all these together in a leaden morter, and make a salve thereof.

Of the vnnaturall erection of the yarde called *Priapismus*,
and *Satyrismus*. §. 3.

These names are giuen to the disease, because that the member of man hapneth continually to stand after an vnnaturall manner, without the lust or concupiscence of a woman, euen as the heathen do paint and picture their false God *Priapus*, and their hedge gods

Satyros. Some do write, that when a man without lust of women hath his yarde erected, and conning to a woman the same will not swage nor relent, that then it is called *Priapismus*. *Satyrisimus* is the erection of the priuities, which is lost by copulation. The cause of both these infirmities, are grosse thick vapors or damps, with small heat, that they cannot sodainly spend, as also abstinence from women, continuall vse of Pease and Beanes, and other Dottages. In fine, if there be not speedie remedie for these causes, then may ensue after it as great a paine and distention of the sinnewes, as at the last might cause an intollerable Cramp and impostume.

For to remedie this infirmite, foure things are first to be noted: First, that the patient beware of all such things which might cause the yarde to stand, and stirre up venerie: what these are, we will shew immediately hereafter. Secondly, he must endeavour to vomit, to let blood, and take milde purgations: Thirdly, to rub well the vppermost members, and not the vndermost, to hinder the desire of the matter. Fourthly, the patient must refrain womens company, except it be that he haue very great lust thereto. And so to cure this, it is therefore advised, that first the Median be opened, and afterwards cause the patient to vomit. If it will not thereby amend, open the vaine againe, and giue the patient a little of the muscilage of Fleawort, which is made with the water of Purslaine, or of water Lillies, or bathe the members and parts about it with boyled Rue, *Agnus castus*, Cumin, and such like. Item, annoynt the kidneys and the priuities with herbs cold of nature, of which the seedes of Fleawort, Campher and Poplar salue are tempered. For his Sallet he must take Purslaine, Endiue, Lettice, and such like. For Wineger, the iuice of Limons and Citrons are good in all his meates. To fast much, and live only by water and bread is very good for him: but in case he will drinke Wine, then must it be well watered. This plaister following shall he weare on the raynes and the priuities, so long as this sickness indureth. Take white Ware six ounces, melt it, and wash it ten times in cold water: afterwards temper amongst it halfe an ounce of small bzused Campher, or weare vpon the raynes a thin plate of lead full of holes, and wet it often with Wineger and Campher. This powder following may also be prepared: Take Fleawort two dragnes and a halfe, Purslaine seede, prepared Coziander, and Lettice seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, Camfer one dragme, temper them all together being powdred small, and giue euery morning one drag. thereof with sirrupe of Limons, or faire water. Under the patients shates must be layd the leaues of *Agnus castus*, and he must lye alwaies vpon his side. But if he cannot abide to fast, then is he to eate much bread of Millet and many Sallets, and his drinke shall be white Wine, wherein Rue, Cumin, Coziander, and such like haue bene steeped. Also colde sirrupes, colde confectiōs, and such like are very commodious for him. The sent of Beuerdod, of Campher, of Saunders, Roses, and all coling things, are also passing good for him.

The third Chapter.

Of the Testicles and Cods, and of sundrie ruptures.



ature hath fastened behind the yarde or secrecie, a wrinkled bag or purse, wherein the testicles or stones are kept. This member is subiect to many Hernies or ruptures, the which the Latinists do call with one common name *Herniam*: which notwithstanding is manifold, and yet comprehended in three of the principallest, which are caused of swelling, of scabbines, or of stryuing, all which do fall downe into the said cods.

Yet is there another kinde of rupture which commeth about the Scrotum, or about the priuities, be it in man or woman, wherof we haue made some mention befoze in the first Chapter. The first sort of ruptures hath many differences, and each hath his proper name, and are to be compared with each other in fouer kinde of waies: to wit, when they are caused through winde: through puffing vp of the vaines with the blood, *Varices*: when the bowels or rim of the same little or much falleth downe into the cod: lastly, when as the cod is so filled with water or other moitures. Other do reckon fouer kindes moe, which neuertheless may be contained amongst the foresaid fouer. The causes of all these mixtures are either inward or outward. The outward causes may be fals, thrusts, much labour, heauie burthens, lowd hopping, coughes, extreme blowing or winding, and chiefly when

when one hath well eaten and drunken. The inward causes are, when his bowels or rim cannot stay in his due place, but cometh to fall downe into the nauell, pynities, and into the cod. Likewise windes, humors, or grosse melancholike blood (like as is said.) The signes of all common ruptures, are an extuberation, or swelling, and puffing vp of the same place beyond nature. These Hernies appeere at the first like to a small eg or nut, which by little and little increaseth. If this rupture proceede of wind, that may be heard by the shaking or rumbling, and it may be discerned with the eyes.

Of the vppermost Hernies or rupture, which happeneth about the Cod. §. 1.



If it, to speake of the rupture which happeneth about the Cod, (which is called *Scrotum*) it is aduised, that forthwith remedie be had for it. The new ruptures in children are easily to be holpen, and contrariwise when they were olde (especially in olde folkes) then are they hard to be holpen without incision. All Chirurgicalions do knowe well, what kinde of trusse they are to make for this: for as much as it is difficult to describe the same, therefore be they to be put in trust

therewith.

It is commanded, and not without reason, that the patient must be laid on his backe, and that the bowels which are fallen downe must be put vp softly againe, vntill that they do lie in their due place: then must this plaister (spread vpon a thin peece of leather) be laid vpon the rupture, and on the top thereof a bolster bounden pretie and harde. They that be about thirtene yeres olde must lie on their backe: and if they must needes arise, then must they beware of stooping, and hold still their hand vpon the rupture. But yong children must be dealt with somewhat milder. But for this can no certaine rule be prescribed: but regarde must alwaies be had to the age, to the strength, the time and disease, and so to deale thereafter. Now for to helpe these ruptures, we will decipher first certaine plaisters, which are very fit and requisite for it: Take Pitch and Galls, of each three dragmes, Frankincense one quarter of an ounce, *Hypocistis*, *Sarcocolla*, and the iuice of Sloes, of each one dragme and a halfe, Bloodstone, Dragon blood and Aloe, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Birdlime one dragme and a halfe, Comfrey, Galls, Pomegranate peles, fine Bolus, of each three dragmes, Aristologie one quarter of an ounce, Shumach, blossomes of Pomegranates, of each one dragme, two ounces of Dore sewet, Turpentine and Clove, as much as is needefull. The gums and iuices dissolve in hot vineger or wine: the rest poune small, and make thereof a plaister. Another: Take Pitch halfe an ounce, white and red Clove, Litharge of golde, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, Gumme, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Birdlime, Pyrrhe, Cyper nuts, and Frankincense, of each one dragme, Gyps or plaister, prepared Bolus, and Aloe, of each halfe an ounce, Galls, Comfrey and Daisie rotes, of each three dragmes and a halfe, Turpentine one ounce, Aristologie round and long, and Clove nuts, of each one ounce, Dragon blood one quarter of an ounce: but melt the Gums in vineger, and poune all that is to be poune: the Pitch, Clove and Turpentine are to be molten, and the rest tempered amongst them: the Clove may be augmented and diminished according to the importance of the time. This plaister is also good for all fractures of bones.

Plaisters
for the rupture.

The ancient Physicians were wont to vse for this rupture, this plaister following: Take Cyper nuts two ounces, Pyrrhe, Cyper rotes, Parietom gentle, Galls, the iuice of Sloes, Frankincense and Gumme, of each one ounce: the Gumme is to be dissolved in wine, and the rest tempered amongst it, and so (as it is said) laid vpon the rupture. You shall not vnloose the trusse but once in foure or five daies, and then renew the plaister.

Item, take fish lime two ounces, Gumme one ounce and a halfe, Pitch and *Ammoniacum*, of each one ounce, beate them all to peeces, and lay it to steepe one day and a night in three ounces of vineger and oyle of Galls: afterwarde let them melt together, and temper therewith Galls, Frankincense, fine Bolus, Dragon blood, Gumme and Fenegreke meale, of each three dragmes, and stir it long together.

Item, take Daisie flowers and rotes, wilde Tansie flowers and rotes, Comfrey, of each halfe an ounce, Galls one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of Sloes and Pomegranate flowers, of each halfe a dragme, Pares haire chopt small one drag. Birdlime one ounce, Pitch two ounces,

ces, Ware five dragmes, oyle of Roses as much as is needfull, to make therewith a plaister. This salve following is much in vse: Take Pitch three ounces, red Ware, *Винмен Индическ*, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum* & Turpentine, of each 2. ounces, Litharge of gold one ounce, Venbane seed, Aloe & Pasticke, of each 3. ounces, Gips 02 plaister & fine Bolus, of each three ounces and a halfe, both kindes of Aristologie, of each two ounces, Frankincense and Pyrrhe, of each two ounces and a halfe, prepared Earth woymes, Comfrey and Daisie rootes, of each two ounces, fresh blood of a heauie minded man sixe ounces, Iunglas and Clew as much as is needfull: the Gums let steape three daies in vineger, afterwards temper them with molten Pitch and Ware: when it beginneth to be colde, then mingle the other things beaten small amongst it: lastly, put the blood thereto, and when it is well mixt, powze it vpon a stone, and worke it very well with greasie hands, and spread thereof vpon leather, and lay it vpon the rupture vnder the trusse.

Another: Take Iron drasse five dragmes, Pomy, Dragagant and Gum, of each three drags. Frankincense, the iuice of Sloes and Sandaraca, of each one drag, and a halfe, Iunglas, Cyppers nuts, of each one ounce, Birdlime three ounces, Gips two ounces, Rosin 8. ounces, make ther- of a plaister with the iuice of Celandine.

Item, take Pitch one ounce, Litharge of golde, red and white Ware, Iewes lime, *Ammoniacum* and *Galbanum*, of each one dragme and a halfe, Birdlime one ounce, Turpentine washt with vineger, both kindes of Aristologie and Gals, of each two ounces, and two scruples of Cyppers nuts, Pyrrhe, Frankincense, of each one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus and Gips of each one ounce, Pastick, Comfreie, and Daisie rootes, of each one ounce, Dragon blood and Pomy, of each halfe an ounce, mingle them well together to a plaister. Another: Take the Gum of Cherries, dissolve it in Sallet oyle, put thereto Pasticke and Frankincense, of each a like much, melt it, and boile it to a plaister.

Yet another: Take Gum, Dragagant, Pasticke, fine Bolus, Dragon blood, Iunglas and common Clew, of each one dragme, Frankincense one dragme and a halfe, Iewes lime halfe an ounce, Pitch and Pomy, of each one dragme and a halfe, Tar one quarter of an ounce. First melt the Pitch, then ad the Clew and Tar, and temper then the other things amongst it beaten small. When it is cold, then annoynt your hands with oyle of Roses, and worke well this salve.

This following is taken for a secret: Take Dragon blood halfe a dragme, Pyrrhe, *Sarcocolla*, *Opopanaxum*, Wymstone, Amber, Pasticke and Comfrey, of each two drags and a halfe, Pyrrhe seede, yellow Spirabolanes, of each two drags, the barke of Wine apples and Cyppers nuts, of each fower scruples, fower 02 fine garden Snails out of their houses, Dragagant dissolved in red vineger one dragme, fish lime molten in vineger also as much as is needfull for to make the foresaid things to a plaister: afterwards dye it by a small fire.

Sixe howers after, drinke three ounces of this water following: Take Comfrey and Tomentill, of each one quarter of an ounce, Codwort, Sengrene, Cinqsoile, Bugwort, and herbe Trinitie, of each two handfulls, *Garyofillata*, *Verbascum* and broad Plantaine, of each two drags, and a halfe, Roses, Horetaille, of each halfe a handfull, cut and poune it grosse; and put thereto red seething wine and *Aqua vite*, of each sixe ounces, or so much as will couer it well: let it so stand fowertene howers: afterwards straine it thow, and wyng it out, and make it swete with sirupe of Pyrrhes. But if so be that three ounces be too strong to drinke at once, then is he to take but one or twaine, and this potion may be tempered with somewhat else.

A plaister
called De pel-
le Arietina.

Hereafter follow three kinds of plaisters, *De pelle Arietis*, which is commended aboue all other plaisters, as a certaine remedie: Take Pitch two ounces, litharge of Silver, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, Pastick, of each one ounce, white and red Ware, Iewes lyme, Aloe, and both Aristologies, of each one ounce and a halfe, Bird lime, fine Bolus, of each three ounces, Gips, Pyrrhe, Frankincense, Turpentine which is washt well in Wineger, prepared earth woymes, Comfrey, Sengrene, of each two ounces and a halfe, halfe a Hammes skin made cleane from the haire and woll, and cut small, the blood of a red bearded yong and healthfull man sixe ounces, prepare them all together as hereafter followeth: Take the cut Hamme skin, let it sethe to tough lime, then wyng it out hard, and temper amongst it common Clew, and fish lyme, or Iunglas, of each one ounce and a halfe, afterwards let it sethe well together. You must dissolve the Gumme in Wineger, and you must pound all that is dry, in like manner also the grene rofes, herbs, and earth woymes to pap, you must worke the bird lyme amongst the blood till that it dry, & the plaister ware hard, then are you to preserve this plaister in a glasse stop tight.

The

The second : Take Pitch, Mace, Jewes lyme, both the Arisfologies, earth wormes, prepa-
red Turpentine, and Aloe, of each one quarter of an ounce, lytharge of Gold, *Ammoniacum*, *Opopanax*,
Galbanum, *Bellium*, *Sagapenum*, *Gallick*, Comfrey, and Daisie rootes, of each thre drag.
Birdlime, Bloudstone, Dragon blond, Frankincense, Gips and Pyrrh, of each thre dragmes,
mans bloud thre quarters of an ounce, and the fourth part of a Ramme skin, sethe this to
lyme, and strayne it throughe, and dissolue the Gumme therein, sethe it all together, and mixe
the rest amongst it.

The third : Take Pitch, Aloe, Venbane, Arisfologie, Behen, Saffron, and Chickwede with
red flowers, of each two ounces, white Mace and Jewes lime, of each one ounce and a halfe,
Litharge of golde, *Galbanum*, *Ammoniacum*, *Gomy*, *Opopanax*, *Gallick*, Cyper nuts, Dragon
blod, of each one ounce, fine Bolus thre ounces and a halfe, Gips, Pyrrh, Frankincense, Tur-
pentine, of each two ounces and a halfe, Birdlime and Mans blood, of each twelue ounces, tem-
per these with the glew of Busilage of a shepes skin and of sodden Hollihocke rootes. Many
haue bene cured onely herewith.

You haue also befoze in the second part the first Chapter 1. §. a plaister which beginneth
thus : Take Pitch halfe an ounce, &c. The which is also very good for this purpose. But note,
befoze that you lay the plaister vpon the rupture, rub it with water that is distilled out of a
shepes skin when the wolle is off.

Item, some other things moze to lay thereon : Take the iuice of Sloes, sethe it in water,
and lay it on the rupture, and bathe the same therewith : it healeth without cutting. For yong
children in stead of this plaister are pultises also to be made, as hereafter followeth : Take meale
of Lupines and burnt Linnen, of each a like much, and make with sower wine a pap or pultis,
and lay it betwene two fine clothes vpon the rupture.

A milder plaister for children : Take Beanes as many as you please, and steepe them in
warne water, peece them, and let them drye againe : after wards stampe them to powder, and
take thereof two ounces, small filed Oken wood one ounce, Comfrey sodden treatably in wine,
and then stampe, thre ounces : let all this sethe metely thicke, and spread it on a cloth, and lay
it thre times a day on the rupture, and a nights but one time, and let it be well fastened
with a trusse : doe this sower or fure wokes space untill the rupture be cured, and the skin pretie
strong.

Another : Take *Consolida Saracenica*, *Gariophyllata*, Plantaine, Fennell, Sanicle, broad Plan-
taine, and Pauls Betony, of each one handfull, chop all small, and let the plaister sethe untill it
be thicke : then lay it on the rupture, and tie it, as behoueth.

It hath bene told befoze in the first Chapter, how wonderfull good that this herbe *Perfoliata*
is for all ruptures, which oftentimes hath bene by experience found and approued.

Here follow some salues : Take womens milke sixtene ounces, Badgers grease, Capons
grease, Harts suet and Comfrey, of each two ounces, the innermost rinde of a Cherry tre cut
small one ounce and a halfe : let it sethe so long as a hard eg, straine it hard throughe a cloth, and
therewith annoint the rupture sower wokes long mozning and euening : trusse vp the rup-
ture as behoueth, and keepe the patient lying still on his backe.

Badgers grease is also speciall good for all ruptures.

Hereafter are yet moze sundry salues described, which are very good for this kinde of rup-
ture, and some Potions, whereof the first is befoze described, beginning thus, Take Com-
frey &c.

Item take broad Plantaine, Woundes tongue, of each halfe a handfull, Comfrey, Daisie
rootes, of each halfe an ounce, Hirtle sedes thre dragmes, blossomes of Pomegranates, Bay
beries, a dragme and a halfe, Ladies mantle, Sanicle, *Consolida Saracenica*, and Agrymonie, of
each one handfull : sethe them all togither in wine and water, of each one pinte, unto the halfe,
straine it, and put thereto Sugar, at each time one ounce.

Item, take Sengrene, *Consolida Saracenica*, red Wortes, herbe Venet, Fennell, knot grasse,
and Pauls Betony, of each one handfull; boyle them all in wine, and drinke of it twice a day,
but not at night. An olde body must continue with it twelue wokes, and a childe sixe wokes.
Some ad vnto it Ladies mantle, and Sanicle.

Item, take the roote of the long *Consolida*, one or twaine, *Consolida Saracenica* with the roote,
Wounds tong with the roote, of Pauls Betonie, and rootes of Polypody, of each a like much ;

chop it very small, put it in a bag, and put thereto thre pintes of wine, and distill it through a glassen helme, take therof in the morning early a good draught, at afternone, and in the evening when you goe to bed againe: yet at all times warme.

Some doe make this Potion yet stronger, and put halfe an ounce of *Perfoliata* vnto it, Watercresses one ounce and a halfe, Cicorie rootes one quarter of an ounce, and a pynte of red Wine.

Or take Comfrey, *Consolida Saracenica*, Auens, Lady mantle, of each a like much; let it sethe together with good wine in an earthen pot, and drinke thereof betwene meales.

Another. If so be that the Rupture be not yet a yere and a halfe olde, then take two pintes of small wine in an earthen pot, and put thereto *Pyrola*, S. Johns wort, and Strawberry leaues, of each one handfull, stop the pot close, and let the same sethe vntill the second part, and drinke thereof morning and evening metely warme. This must also be continued two or thre moneths space, till that he be cured.

Powe folloewe some Confections, and such like: Take Calmus and Comfrey, of each one ounce, Solomons seale rootes, Hoxe tayles, of each halfe an ounce, cut them all small, and let them sethe together in sowe wine, vntill it may be stamped to pap, and then temper it amongst this powder following. Take Cipers nuts one scruple, small chopt Hares haire halfe a scruple, Pasticke, red Cozall, Pomy, sealed earth, Cinnamon, of each fiftene greins, and Cassia wood two scruples.

Lastly, take sower ounces of clarified Honie, and temper it to a Confection: thereof may be taken euery day one dragma, or a dragma and a halfe with wine, wherein Cipers nuts are decocted. Item take *Corna* as many as you please; sethe them in red wine, and straine them. Then take therof eight or twelue ounces, and sethe the same with fixe ounces of Sugar metely thicke, and then mingle therewith Hares hayre (cut it as small as may be) one scruple, great and small Comfrey, and Doymen till, of each two scruples, herbe Trinity halfe a drag. Hoxe tayles, *Consolida media*, rindes of Pine apples, and the seedes of Butchers brome, leaues and rootes, red Saxifrage, of each one ounce and a half, Jewes lyne one ounce, Hyssop one ounce and a halfe, Hares hayre cut small thre quarters of an ounce, Gals and Cipers nuts, of each one quarter of an ounce; rootes of Solomons seale, wilde Cucumber rootes, of each one ounce, rootes of Sperage one ounce and a halfe, *Numularia* one ounce; temper them all well together with Hony and Sugar as much as is needefull, and take thereof euery evening and morning the quantity of a Walnut in wine.

Otherwise, these things following are counsell'd much to be vsed: Valerian euery day one dragma taken in wine, Cressie seedes also in wine: but the same must not be vsed often times. Item, Shepherds purse cut small and decocted in wine. In like maner also the herbe *Cardopatinum*. To foment the Rupture also with these things following is very good: Take Daisie leaues with red flowers, and *Consolida Saracenica*, of each a like much, Pauls Betony, *Perfoliata*, *Pyrola*, and Watercresses, Parts tong, Cicorie, Sanicle, wilde Thyme, *Cardopatinum*, and the herbe of the same, of each halfe so much, chop it small, and make thereof two bags, sethe them in water, and lay first one bag, and then another, fomenting the Rupture euery time fixe or seuen houers long. After that, the Rupture must be trussed againe, as before, This water may last good thre daies long in the winter time.

Item, take Rue, *Agnus Castus*, Parierom, and white Spints, of each one handfull, Annis seede, Fennell seede, Rue seede, and Siluermountaine, of each one dragma; Cammomill, Pellilot, of each two ounces: stampe it all together, and let it sethe in a quarte of water vntill the third part be sodden away; foment therewith the Rupture. This is also good for the *Hernia aquosa*, the waterish Rupture, whereof we will hereafter speake moze at large.

Of the Ruptures that fall downe into the Cods. §.2.

Nowe we will speake of the breaches or Ruptures that fall downe into the Cods, whereof the causes are diuers, as it standeth herebefore declared in the 4. §. that they may therefore be holpen by sundry remedies, shall hereafter appeare.

Of the Rupture through winde. §. 3.



The causes of this kinde of Rupture may proceede of meates which are windie, as certaine pottages, Pilke, and all that is drest with Pilke, all doughy meates and unleavened bread, swete Wine, baynes and marrow of beastes. Such must beware of cloudy ayre, and all moyst dwellings, all heauines of the minde, and he must eschue slepe. Further, sodden fish, moyst fruites, great riotting, much exercise immediately after meales, continuall vse of all moyst meates, are hurtfull for this disease.

For to cure these Ruptures, it must be endeouored to driue out the winds, for the which at the first this Clister is very requisite, take Comin, Annis, Caraway, Fennell, and Anicos, of each one dragme, Rue one handfull and a halfe; sethe these together in a quart of water vntill the halfe, take twelue ounces of this decoction, oyle of Rue, of Bay, of each one ounce and a halfe, Indy Salt, and *Sal Gemma*, of each halfe a dragme, Thos. Sugar one ounce and a halfe, make a Clister thereof, and minister it once a day: Secondly, is the patient euery morning to take seuen howres before meate one dragme of Pithridate, with two ounces of the water of Rue. This is a diuine medicine to expell winde, and to take away the occasions thereof.

There may a good lye be used outwardly, and to take thereof a pinte, Sulphur vis beaten two ounces, greynes halfe an ounce, beaten grossly, this so sodden together vntill that the third part be sodden away, in this warme water wet a sponge, and lay it fine or sixe times a day vpon the priuities.

Secondly, set often Copper cups which haue narrow mouthes vpon the belly. For this is also good, all that expelleth winde.

Of the waterish Rupture *Hernia Aquosa*. §. 4.



If any where in the vaines, in the pores, or in the lyuer or other parts do gather some water, which falleth downewards, then must it at last fall into the cods: but the Lyuer is alwayes the most principall cause from whence all such moistures haue their beginning.

Wherefore when as all such waterish Ruptures happen to any, it is quickly to be discerned by the Jauell or Cods, which immediatly afterwards do swell vp, and seeme to be perspicuous, whereto these things following are to be used.

First of all, the patient must be purged: for if such happen not often, the matter of the sickness will not be carryed out of the body. In like sort, if there be not kept a good order of dyet, and the water be not expelled, then runneth it againe downewards towards the Cods, whereby at length may be caused a greater harme. And to purge all those humors, take this drinke following: Take *Agaricus* and *Hermadañili*, of each one dragme and a halfe, Ginger one scruple, Treos one dragme, Hony water foure ounces, then make the Hony water warme, and let the foresayd things be steeped therein 24. howres, afterwards wring it well out, and drinke it warme, and sixe howres afterwards eat and drinke warme beere and bread vpon it.

But if so be this drinke through the bitterness thereof goe against your stomacke, then take this ensuing, *Electuarium Indium* three dragmes, burnt Copper eight greynes, water of blew floure deluce two ounces, temper them all together and drinke it. Or take these pills: Take the rote of *Laureola*, which hath bene steeped five dayes in Vineger, one scruple, Sulphur vis foure greynes, burnt Copper two greynes, Licozice, Annis and Dragagant, of each foure greynes, make pills thereof with the iuice of Roses, and take them all at one time.

There must also be given to this patient those things to eat and drinke, which do mone vaine, whereof many are specified where we shall speake of the Dropsy *Ascite*: but of these things following, chosse which liketh you best.

Take red Bease about sixe ounces, two Fennell rotes, let them sethe well together, and take five ounces of this decoction: or drinke five ounces of Worme water. Thirdly, take the water of Spiliot, and water of Smalage, of each two ounces and a halfe, Sugar as much as you please, and drinke this a whole weeke long.

A Confection to strengthen the Liuer.

Take *Trociscos Diarrhodon*, and *Spec. Diacynamomi*, of each one dragma, burnt Juoꝝ one scruple, fower ounces of white Sugar: sethe it with fennell water, and make Tabulats of it. Of these take one quarter of an ounce before meate. When as then through the foresaid meanes the water be somewhat boyded, then are these plaisters to be vsed: Take Pasticke one ounce, Cipers nuts halfe an ounce, Dagagant and Gum, of each one dragma; temper these together vnto a plaister with oyle of Roses. This stoppeth, that there can no more water run vnto it. Item, take *Seseli*, Comin, Cammomill, and Helilot, of each one ounce; sethe these together in a quarte of water, vntill the third part be spent, and foment therewith the Rupture. Then lay this plaister vpon it bounden warme to it: Take rootes of blew flowerdeluce, and rootes of wilde Cucumbers, of each thre ounces, Pease meale and Beane meale, of each two ounces, oyle of Rue and iuice of Bay leaues, of each two ounces: let this sethe till it be makeley thicke, and so lay it vpon the Ruptures, and binde it warme vnto it. But if this cannot be made, then vse the first with Pasticke and Cipers nuts.

The Apothecaries haue also one in vse, which they call *Emplastrum ad Rupturas*, which is also very good, and is thus to be made.

Take Putnegg, the iuice of Sloes, Gips, Comin, Annis, Rice, *Pyrola*, fower Dates, Cipers nuts, Sanicle, of each one dragma and a halfe, Fish lime oꝝ Singlasse halfe an ounce, *Bdellium* two ounces: But dissolue the two last in Vineger, and with the rest beaten small make a plaister of it.

Another. Take Bran twelue ounces, beate it very small, and let it run through a Sieue, put amongst it two ounces of beaten Comin, make a plaister of it with Oymel: You may also sethe it well with white wine vnto a plaister. Item, take Lillie rootes one ounce, Linseed meale one quarter of an ounce, Beane meale one dragma, Comin and wilde Rape seede, of each one ounce, Sulphure wise one quarter of an ounce, Cipers nuts one dragma, *Bdellium* molten in Vineger halfe an ounce: beate all that is to be beaten, and let it sethe to a plaister with white wine. Item, take Parierom, foment therewith the whole priities, oꝝ annoynt it with the iuice of Parrowe; take also oyle of Pepper and of Saffron, of each a like much, and therewith annoynt the Rupture.

But if so be that this waterish Rupture be taken for a species of the Dropsy, then must you loke for moe other plaisters, which stand described in the Treatise of the Dropsy *Ascite*, and chouse which you like best. But if the water (which is so gathered together) must be let out, then are you after the purgation to lay the foresaid plaister vpon it, and open the Cob, yet let not the water run out all at once, and being run out, then lay drying plaisters vpon it: It is also opened sundry wayes, as with a hote yron, with a thred thrust through it, also with a Corosiuue and otherwise, which we commend to the Chirurgions. But if so be that you be once cured, and that the same returne againe, then is he to be ruled in all things, like as is from the beginning hitherto prescribed.

Of the Rupture through Bloud or *Phlegma*. §. 5.

Although that out of all the humors of mans body, there be specially caused foure ruptures, yet notwithstanding is the same very seldome caused through *Cholera*. In like maner also not often of bloud, vnlesse that such hapneth through strokes, wounds, falls, cariage, and through vse of meates which make much bloud, that be very hote, moist, and swete, and such like. These Ruptures do make shewe with nozozious swellings, with heate, and many humors, which may easily be knowne by their feeling, for at the last they will be red, and beating, oꝝ panting. The Liuer oꝝ Median vaine is to be opened of such a patient, and foure oꝝ fve ounces of bloud letten out according to the strength of the patient. And the day next must he purge with this potion following: first, must you make readie a Decoctio which the Apothecaries do call *Decoctio fructuum*, as followeth.

Take Figs and Bynes, of each fiftene, Iuibes, and Sebestes, of each twentie, Pops a handfull

handfull and a halfe, Endiue, Purslaine and Cicozie, of each halfe a handfull, pæled Melon seæde, Pompeon seæde, Cucumber seæde, and pæled Gourd seæde, of each one dragma, solwe Dates one ounce, Violets halfe an ounce: sæthe these all together (except the Dates) and breake them into this decoction, it is very good for the breast and coleth naturally, take of it thre ounces, Rubarb two scruples, Spica foure greynes, conserue of Runes halfe an ounce, temper these well together, and drinke it warme, and fast thereupon the space of sixe houres. The same day lay vpon the Rupture sixe ounces of greene Nightshade: but if you cannot get it, then take dyed Roses and broad Plantaine, of each two ounces, Linsæde sodden in Vineger twelue ounces, Barly meale five ounces, oyle of Roses foure ounces: let all these sæthe together vnto a thicke pap by a milde fire treatably, and then lay this vpon it twice a day. Item, take water of Endiue, Nightshade, Barly water, and Beane water, of each alike much, temper amongst it a little Saffron, and oyle of Roses, make it wet in a cloth, and lay it thereon: Or take Barly meale, Lentill meale, Beane meale, and Violets, of each a like much, temper these all together with the iuice of the herbe of winter Cheries, vnto a plaister of salue, and vse it as aboue. But if so be that the paine of this accident will not staunch, then pound Venbane amongst it. The third day must two cups be set behinde on the buttocks, and that at such time as the patient hath least paine, letting them draw much blood. His meates must be cooling and drying, as Heruice, the iuice of Pomgranats, &c. His drinke must be solwe and thin Wine. This is also to be noted, that this kinde of Rupture is of that nature, that it may be cured in eight dayes.

But the Rupture which is caused of phlegmatick humors is much more common, and they that gladly haunt strange women, are most subiect to these Ruptures: Also all they that live riotously, eate hard meates, and haue sate vpon a cold stone with their naked bodie, which may be knowen through the coldnes of the disease, when it beginneth to mollifie, and when one doth thrust his finger into it, that the dent of the finger stayeth a good while in it, which in the windie ruptures in the water ruptures hapneth not to be. Also the place is not perspicuous, and the swelling remaineth at a stay. This disease is to be cured with these purgations following: Take Turbith one quarter of an ounce, Ginger one dragma, white Sugar thre dragmes, temper them together: of this must the patient euery fourth day take one dragma, with Wormewood water, & betwene them must he euery morning take this potion: Take water of Balme, Betony, and Wormewood, of each one ounce and a halfe, Sugar halfe an ounce, Vineger of Squills one ounce, mire them together. Now for to strengthen the parts wherein the phlegmatick humor ingendereth, it is very good euery morning to take one dragma of Treacle which is ten yeares old. This plaister following is also marvellous good for to consume all such matter: Take Sandaraca two ounces, Sarcocolla one ounce, alhes of Beane straw, or Wine stocks, sixe ounces, Vineger of Squills two ounces, as much water as is needefull: let these sæthe together vnto the thicknes of a plaister, and lay it vpon the soze as aboue. Some do take in stead of common alhes, the alhes of Saponaria, which may be well done.

Of the fleshy Rupture. §. 6.



His Rupture may also ingender of good blood, for that the nourishing operation doth worke so vehemently therein, that the blood turneth into flesh. It may also be caused through great heate of the Cods. When as then this excrecence of the flesh doth much increafe, then will this member be much scabbed, and the new flesh which at the first was not hurtfull, will be vtterly destroyed.

This excrecence of flesh, or this fleshy ruptures, is first of all knowne, for that therewith is no paine at all. The heate is to be knowen by the rednes of the place, where the disease appeareth, and by the hardness it is also knowne, for that it agreeth with other flesh. Lastly, it is also to be discerned and knowen by the speedy increasung, by reason that sometimes it will be as big as ones head. The outward causes of the fleshy Rupture are all that ouerheate and ouermoysten, whereby the blood inflameth, and will be fat, euen as all delicate meates, yolks of eggs, good fresh broth, swæte Milkes, Dates, Sugar, and all that is best therewith, and such like. For to remedie this, first the Liver vaine, or the Vebian is to be opened, and that at severall times, first one, then another. Secondly, you must looke to open the Hemorrhoides in the fundament, through continuall rubbing it with Oxe gall, or with water wherein Sulphur vis is decocted.

decocted. Thirdly, through often applying great cups vpon the buttocks, hips, and other fleshy parts. He must eate no other meates then that are cooling and drying, thereby to hinder the generation of the blood: for which, this plaister following is also to be layd thereupon. Take Lentils, Nightshade, Roses, and broad Plantaine, of each five ounces, Barly meale twelue ounces, three whites of eggs: keth these all together in sufficient Vineger, and thrice as much water, then make thereof a plaister, and lay it vpon the whole Cod five or six dayes one after another.

Now when as this patient hath purged, and done all that is prescribed, then is this plaister following to be layd vpon the rupture: Take Balsm two ounces, sealed earth, and Starch, of each one dragma, Gill dust one ounce and a halfe, Sandaraca and Balsick, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a salve thereof with the iuice of Roses in a leaden morter, and lay thereof twice a day ouer the Rupture.

Afterwards vse this corroding oymnt: Take blacke Sope two ounces, Oymnt one ounce and a halfe, Sulphur vis halfe an ounce, burnt Copperas one dragma and a halfe, temper all together in a morter with water wherein Salarmoniack is dissolued: lay this vpon the lower part of the Cod, about the breadth of a groate, and let it lye therein about one houre, but no longer, so that it may not bite in too deepe. When there is then any vlcer, then lay easie things thereon, as Barrowes grease, or Butter, untill that the Escarre fall off. When this is all done, then take for this the salve of the Apostles: after wards are you to lay this biting salve againe vpon another place of the Cod, so that it may be opened in five or eight places, yet so, that one may commodiously come to it with the foresayd things. When you then see that such excrecens be consumed, which may be discerned and knowen hereby, that the Cod is come to his wanted bignes againe, the which sometimes halfe a yeare hapned to endure before it came thereto, then must you procede with incarnatiues, which things require an expert and patient Chirurgeon.

Of the Rupture which is caused of broken vaines,
called *Varicosa*. §. 7.



Hereof haue we in the beginning of the 4. §. made mention, how that it is none other but an intumescation of the vaines through blood, for in the Cods are many vaines that compasse them all about.

This Tumor or Rupture proceedeth of Melancholick blood, to which do helpe sorrow, variation of the minde, many fantasies, and grosse meates, whereof the Melancholick blood is ingendred: like as also of grosse red Wine, Salt flesh, pottage of Beanes, and Lentils, and all that is dyest with sharp Vineger.

Such a patient is to rule himselfe no otherwise then is taught in the fleshy Rupture, but that he must not vse any of the corroding salve, but in stead thereof vse the plaisters *De Muscilagibus*, and especially those that be made with *Opopanaco*, *Serapino*, *Edellio*, and *Ammoniaco*. For this is also good Bathes which are Sulpherish, Copperish, and warme by nature. And (to speake the truth) this species of rupture is not to be holpen but with great paines, and continuance of time.

Of the terrible Rupture, called *Euris*. §. 8.



This Rupture commeth also through Melancholick blood, which not onely falleth downe into the Cods, but also infecteth them wholly, so that beyond all measure it commeth thereby to swell, yea will be black and cold, and sometimes without any vlcration. But if so be that there come vnto it any hard swellings, which afterwards breake out and yeld much matter, then may the same be well taken for *Elephantiasis*: yet if so be that the swelling be not so big, and hath neuertheless the foresayd signes, then is it to be taken for the right *Hernia Oscene*, which some do call *Oscalis*, which altogether descendeth into the Cods. This disease will be cured like other hard swellings, or as hereafter followeth.

Take Beane meale three ounces, Cammomill, muscilage of Hollyhock rootes, Annis seede,
fene

Fenegræke seede, and Raisons without stones, of each halfe an ounce; temper them with yolks of eggs. These things following are good for plaisters; as Comin, Nightshade, Beane meale, Cammomill, Helilot, oyle of Lillies, Colwe dung, crums of Rie bread, and moe other things aforesaid. But if so be that the hardnes will not weare away, but inclineth to maturation, then must the same be opened and healed as other impostumations.

The plaister *Diachilon*, is good to be vsed at the first, and the Gum *Ammoniacum* by it selfe; for that they either consume or maturate the swelling in short space. There is also good for this Beane meale, Fenegræke meale, Lillie rootes, Colewort leaues, and figs, as much as you please, sodden together, and then pownded, and so layd upon the grieve. Also this Rupture is to be oftentimes annoynted with the oyle of Cammomill, Lillies, and Spike, and chiefly when there is no speciall heate therein.

It is also to be noted, that it is not good, that if it be not known that the Cod is full of matter or corruption, to leaue the same long therein, lest that the Testicles thereby might also spoile and putrifie. For this is this rule to be obserued, to the end that in time the melancholicke humors might be drawen out and purged away; to wit, to open the Liuer vaine on the left side. The next day must he take half an ounce of *Catharticum Imperiale*, with Violet or water Lilly water. Nowe for to cause the matter to discusse and consume, take fire or eight dayes one after another these Potions following: Take Violet water, Lettice water, and Hop water, of each one ounce, sirup of Citron pils one ounce and a halfe. Take this warme early in the morning.

Of the Ruptures whereby the Bowels do fall into the Cods. §.9.

The eight and last sorte of Ruptures is here aboue mentioned in the Title. The descending of the Bowels or Rim, is oftentimes very sodainly, and otherwhiles very slowly. But howsoeuer the same come, yet for all that can it not be without pain, and chiefly if it be touched: the inward causes are none other then winde, which cleerely appeareth hereby; if the patient hold vp his breath long, the Rupture will be the greater, and in breathing out the smaller. The outward causes are sufficiently expressed in the Treatise of the Ruptures of winde, and of the Panell,

For to helpe this disease, befoze all things diligence must be had, that the Bowels which are descended, may be brought againe into their place. And for to compasse this, take holde on the Cods vnderneath, and treatably thrust it vp. Take also a great boring cup, set it aboue the prinities, or hard by, and let it drawe a good space. The patient must also lie higher with his buttocks, then his body, that the bowels thereby the easier may returne into their due places. If there be any great paine appoaching, then first of all looke to swage the same, and chiefly with Clusters, which are thus to be made: to wit, the decoction wherein Linseed, Fenegræke, and white *Sesamum* seeds beaten grossly hath been boyled, and wherewith Butter and oyle of Violets be mixed. Item, take Hens and Cocks broth, and oyle of *Sesamum*, of each five ounces, *Sal gemma* halfe an ounce, or a little lesse; temper them together, and minister this Cluster metely warme.

Another. Take twelue ounces of swæte wine, fresh Butter, and oyle of swæte Almonds, of each two ounces, *Benedicta lax* halfe an ounce; temper them all together for a Cluster.

Further, the whole Cods with all parts that are adioyning are to be well fomented or bathed. What waters are to be taken for it, you haue them set down befoze in the end of the 1. §. beginning thus, Take Rue &c. Yet another in the 4. §. beginning thus, Take *Seseli* or Silver mountaine seede &c. In one of these warme decoctions wet a great sponge, and lay it ouer all the prinities: which being done, then let the Rupture be softly shoued backe. Afterwards must you lay this plaister following ouer it, and binde it as hard as may be abiden and suffered.

Take Cipers rootes two ounces, Will dust three ounces, Comfrey and Daisie rootes, of each one ounce, fish lime or Singlas one ounce and a halfe, Dragagant, Gum, Honey, and burnt Quorie, of each halfe an ounce, Dragon blood, *Sagapenum*, sealed earth, and fine Bolus, of each five dragmes: the meale and pownded rootes shall you sethe in two third partes of water, and one third part of red Wineger, untill it be thick enough; then mixe molten Ware amongst it as much as is needefull, stir it with dissolved Gum well together untill it be colde. You haue also befoze

before in the discourse of the Spanell and vpper Rupture, many good plaisters which are good for this vse.

But if so be that the Rupture be large, and all that is fallen downe be much, then lay the plaister thereon which is described in the Treatise of the vpper Rupture, in the beginning of the 1. S. for it is singular good also for this kinde of Rupture. Make a plaister thereof after the forme of a shielde, whereof the narrowest end may passe vnder the Cods betwene the legs, and the broade end ouer the whole Cods. This being done, then put thereon an accustomed Trulle.

Lastly, haede must be taken to cure and strengthen the place of the Rupture where the bowels come thowow: for the which this following is very commodious.

Take yron drosse which is sodden in Vineger and Pyrrh, of each halfe an ounce, Dragon bloud, fine Bolus, Frankincense, Gassick, sealed earth, and the iuice of Sloes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cyper nuts, and Pomey, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Iunglas two ounces, temper them altogether with Ware and Rosen, as much as is needefull for a salve, and therewith annoynt the Cods thrice a day, and knit it vp with the Trulle, as is vsuall. If the Rupture be not too wide and too old, then may it be well cured therewith in 40. or 60. dayes.

Of the Ruptures of Children. §. 10.



He yong children are subiect to the foresayd ruptures of winde and water, moze then aged folke, and are also to be cured with the foresayd remedies. Concerning the vpper Rupture of children, especiall mention is made in the 5. S. But as in the beginning of this description we haue sayd that childre and tender bodies are to be dealt withall moze milder and subtiller then with aged folks, therefore is the same to be had in minde.

For the first, these are as much as is possible to be defended and kept from crying, and to be let lye with stretched out legs, and after the first binding not to vnbinder it in ten dayes. If the Rupture as then be not yet cured, then is the Rupture the second and third times to be trussed, for that by the first trusse they heale not thowowly, but all after as they be still or vnruely. But if the children be so small that they suck still, then must the Mother or the Nurse keepe a good dyet in eating & drinke of dry meates: for they must eschue all meates which be moyst of nature.

For to keepe vp the Matter that it descend no more. §. 11.

For this purpose are good the last mentioned Clifters, the binding and rubbing of the knees downewards, the setting vp of boring cups on the buttocks vnpickt, the opening of the Liner vaine, or Median, wherewith also accordyng to the importance of the cause, remedies must be vled through vomits, whereby the matter that falleth out of the head will be diuerfed: for all ruptures are much subiect to the deluxion of humors, and especially the great ruptures. Lastly, it is very necessary that women do further their floures or Termes, and for men, the Hemorrhoides or Pyles.

For to stay the reuerfion of the Rupture that it come not agayne. §. 12.



This must be effected through such things as expell winde, and flegmaticke matters, whereof is sufficient store declared, and chiefly that which hath Turbis in it in the 5. S. If you had rather haue pils, then take Coloquint one scruple, Turbis one dragma, Bdelium one dragma, and Ginger one scruple; make thereof twelue pils with Hiera logodion, whereof the patient is to take thre in the morning early, and thereupon drinke one ounce of the water of blew flower deluce metely warme and sugred. This medicine is good for all flegmaticke diseases. This foresayd matter will be expelled through these things following by vyne: Take water of Worme, Spader, and Smalage, of each one ounce and a halfe; temper it, and drinke thereof about halfe an ounce at a time: and immediately afterwards take thre pils of pouned Miliun Solis seide, mixt with the iuice of Smalage: or take one dragma of beaten Lignum Aloes, with Honey water.

to ater. Also you may vse twice a weeke one dragme of Pithydate, tempered with spinte water.

Thirde there is a strong confection discovered, made by *Nicholau*, by the name of *Opopyra*, which hath a special operation to drie by the flegmaticke humors. And if you desire to make the same, then are you to vse the aduise of an expert Phisition, for it is very hot. There are also simples, which be very necessary for to stay the bowels after the first curing from falling downe into the Cods any moze: whereof the first are Cipers nuts, when they are greene to confect them with sirup of Roses wherof one is to be taken thre or fower howers before meate, and that continuing two or thre moneths long. Secondly, after the same manner shall be confected Pine apples (the kernels being taken out) and vse them in like manner. Thirde, take one dragme of Pomy, and make therewith twelue pils with the iuice of Roses, and take thereof alwaies thre howers before meate one, two, or thre moneths space together. Fourthly, you are to swallowe every morning thre or fower peeces of Pasticke, and continue it thre or fower moneths: it is the most surest. Fifthly, you are fower howers before meate to take a roote of *Consolida media*. Sixtly, the powder of Cipers nuts is to be vsed in all meates. Seuenthy, there must be woyn a plate of filed Iron vpon the Rupture. Eightly, the patient is to sit often times in an Allom bath, which is very sure to pzeuent the recedue of all such accidents.

For this may be prepared these confections following: Take Frankincense, Pastick, the iuice of Sloes, *Hypocists*, of each one dragme and a halfe, Roses, burnt Tuoze, parched Comin, Will seede, of each one dragme, Cipers nuts halfe an ounce, small filed Steele, Iron drosse, decocted together in red Vineger, of each one quarter of an ounce, dried seedes of Pomegranates one ounce; beate them all small together: Honie of Roses eightene ounces, white Sugar twelue ounces, Granada wine sixe ounces, Dagagant, Gum, of each halfe an ounce; seth the both of these Gums with Hony, Sugar, and this iuice untill it be thicke. When it beginneth to be colde, put it into a mortar, and temper the other things amongst it, stirring it well about, and giue the sicke bodie there of two dragmes in the morning two howers before meate: also two howers after supper one dragme. With this haue many been cured.

The order of life or dyet. § 13.



Then as all diseases in the worlde haue neede of a good diet, so hath this maladie most of all neede of it: But if the patient doe not gouerne himselfe in this sickness as it becometh, then are all medicines of none effect, but in vaine.

For this is first required to keepe himselfe as quiet as is possible, and to lie vpon his backe. The patient is also forbidden all colde and moist places, carnall copulation, much stirring after meate. To ouercharge himselfe with meate and drinke is also very hurtfull vnto him, and all strong drinks, and chiesly Rust or new wine is forbidden him. All meates that are binding, as sad baked bread, and all that is made of meale and dough must he forbear. Of all sorts of pottages there are none moze hurtfull than Beanes, Turkie Beanes, and Lentils: contrariwise, he may eate well smoke dried fleshy and all kindes of fish: but new milke, and all that is made thereof, is hurtfull for him. Item Butter, and all colde and moist herbes must he forbear, as Spinage, Lettice, Botes, Pallowes, Purslaine, &c. vnlesse they be mingled with some warme herbes, as Rosemarie, Pinks, Thyme, Parierom, and such like. Peates that are good for him, are well leauened bread not aboute thre daies olde, Brewele of fresh fleshy broth, reare Eggs, Meale, Button, Porke, Hares. Item, Capons, Hens, Pheasants, Partridges, Ducks, Doves, and all other field fowles. All fish fried in oyle, and salt fish may he vse otherwhiles, &c. Hard salt Cheese is also sometimes permitted. All sorts of Turneps, Diues and Capers may he also vse. All manner of spice may he eate best with his meate. Also Annise seede, fennell seede, Comin, and such like. All manner of fower things in his meates cannot hurt him, as vineger, veriuice, Limons, Drengees, and such like. For his drinke shall be good clere wine or bere. But if the patient can neither drinke wine nor bere, then is he to vse this Peade following.

Take Rosemary halfe an ounce, Cinnamome halfe a dragme, Balne flowers, Ginger, Borage, Putnegg, of each halfe a dragme: seth these together in seuen quarts of water untill the fourth part be sodden away: afterwards put thereto sixtene ounces of honie, let it seth againe untill

untill the third part be consumed.

This drinke is speciall god in the winter, and if the same be not continually vsed, yet may the wine be delaied with it.

This order is as well directed for legmatike humors, as for the cause whereof this rupture hath his being. And if the same be caused of *Cholera* and blood, we haue thereof discoursed before.

The Chirurgions haue two other meanes to heale the rupture, which is, by incision, and with cauterisation, whereof we are not purposed to write.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Testicles or Stones.



Some do name both these parts, the Priuities: which name doth signifie more than the stones onely of men or women, for that it is thought to be too grosse a terme, the Stones: but if the matter be honest which is spoken of them, then can the true name of them not be shamefull nor dishonnest. Both these small parts of a mans body were once fashioned thereto by God and nature (like as is discovered) whereby to continue mankind: for which cause they are by god reason accounted amongst the principall parts of mans body. For how greatly mankind is depending thereon, it is to be seene by such, whose stones be cut out, who haue no bearded growing, do lose their mans voyce and naturall heate, yea are wholly unfit for generation: In fine, do almost alter wholly into the nature of women, we may therefore with god reason write thereof.

Men and women haue both of them two of these stones, therefore do the Grecians call them *Didymi*, which is, *Twins* or *Twilings*. In men they hang outwardly out of the body in the abovesaid cods, and are of a soft fleshy substance, round and somewhat long, inwardly hollowish, wherein they receiue the purest and clearest blood of the whole body: and for that they be hot and moist, they prepare that for the full perfection of the seede. Women haue the stones inward, of each side of the necke of the mother one: but they are much lesse than the stones of a man, and also of another fashion. It is also aduindged, that the right stone is hotter of nature than the left, therefore the right also (is said) will ingender a sonne, and the left a daughter. It is found by experience, if a man haue one stone cut out, yet may he ingender children: likewise they that haue these stones are very vnchaste of life. Of the diseases which these members of the body be subiect vnto, is sufficiently discoursed in the treatise of the Cods: for there can hardly come any infirmities to the cods, wherein they do not suffer with them, whether that they chaunce to swell through winde, or any other humor. But chiefly yong children get lightly such diseases: for which you haue this plaister following for to vse, as well for yong as for aged folks. Take Lilly rootes fower ounces, Linseed meale, Beane meale halfe an ounce, yellow wilde Rape seede halfe an ounce, Sulphur vise one dragma, make a plaister thereof. But before you lay on the plaister, annoynt the place with oyle of Pepper and Saffron, of each halfe an ounce, temper them, and vse it warme.

Another plaister: Take small beaten Annis seeds, temper them with well bzaied whites of eggs, and lay warme vpon it. This is approued and found good.

The fift Chapter.

Of Womens Priuie members.



The Priuities of women make outwardly a small shew, but within are much like to the priuie members of a man. The necke of the mother or wombe is in steade of the yarde: the mother or wombe is to be compared with the Cods, where on the necke of the same (like as is said) the stones are fixed: so that with god reason may be said, That whatsoever men haue outwardly, the same haue women inwardly. But for honesties sake we will write no further of it. But as much

much as concerneth the inward parts thereof, and all that appertaineth thereto, shall be discovered hereafter, here shall onely be touched certaine diseases, which these parts are subiect to. For which, first of all the common aduise of women is against all paine of these parts, be it of whatsoeuer cause that the same procede, to wit, that Betony be layd to steepe in Wine, and to drinke thereof.

Of the inflammation of the place with swellings. §. 1.



Take the whites of Eggs, and beat them with a long peece of Allome a good space, then will it be a salve: spread it vpon a cloth, and so apply it, and when it is dry, refresh it, this hath bene many times approued, and found certaine. Item, take of the white of an egge halfe a nutshell full, and Sallet oyle, stirre them well together, and therewith annoynt the hote burnt place. Or take the greene and yellow barke of Elderne sticks, put them in a little bag, boyle them in Wine, and lay them warme thereon: it drineth away all swelling, as well that which is caused of Childbirth, as otherwise.

Item, take for the hote swellings of womens priue places *Consolida Saracenicæ*, *Auens*, and ladies mantle, as much as you please: powne them all together, and wyng out the iuice, temper it with molten Capons grease, and fresh Butter, annoynt the place therewith betwene day and night foure times at the least.

Of the Clefts of this place. §. 2.



The Grecians do call these clefts *Rhagades*, and are such clefts as discover themselves with excrescence of flesh, which for the most part standeth alwayes inward, and blades not of it selfe, vnlesse they be rubbed hard with the member of a man, which proceedeth of inward and outward causes. The outward cause may be falls, strokes, or bignes of a mans member: Also through putting in any sharp thing, as with sæde, and such like. The inward occasions are, when as any inward swelling hapneth through descent of some sharp humour, which there seeketh issue, and (to tell the truth) this is very hardly to be healed, especially, when all such diseases do stand deepe in the neck of the mother. But these clefts are to be healed with the same remedies which shortly hereafter in the treatise of the Arkeut shall be described, yet if there be no Ague nor sharpnes present, then may these pessaries following be vsed.

Take Ducks grease, and the marrow of a Stags bone, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron one scruple, oyle of Lillyes, and of white Daffodill, of each one quarter of an ounce, Make as much as is needefull wherewith to frame pessaries. These pessaries must be put vp into the place, yet bounden at a thred, they draw the clefts together. Item, take Frankincense, and *Hypocistis*, of each halfe a dragme, Aloe halfe a scruple, Dragon blood three dragnes, the iuice of Sloes one dragme, dyed Asse dung one ounce, dyed Spints a scruple, burnt egshells one dragme and a halfe, three whites of eggs, burnt paper two scruples, three ounces of the iuice of broad Plantain, Vineger one quarter of an ounce: temper them all together, it is speciall good for all clefts of the whole bodie. But if so be that there be any heate or sharpnes therewith, then is oyle of Roses to be vsed for it, and the pessaries must be annoynted with this white vnguent: or make a pessarie of Cotton, steeped in Rose water or Plantain water. But if the heate thereof be great, take the iuice of Purslaine, Puselage of fleawort, and iuice of Houfelleke: worke this the space of certaine howres in a leaden mortar, and temper a little oyle of Roses amongst it, this healeth and cooleth. It is also very good against the Cancre of the Mother, and such like diseases. Item, take Dragagant, and Gum, dissolued in Rose water, washed Alor, Ceruse, Frankincense and Dragon blood, of each one dragme, litharge of Golde halfe an ounce, oyle of Roses two ounces, Make as much as is needefull, Stamp all that is to be stamped, and make a salve of it.

Also this hereafter following may with a Serin be squirted into the place: Take washed white bread, Frankincense, Bolus, and Dragon blood, of each one ounce, powne it, and seethe it in foure ounces of Goats milke vntill the halfe, then straine it through a cloth, and vse it as hath bene sayd.

Of the Vlceration in the priuities of women. §. 3.



All that is ordained herebefore for the clefts, is also good for all vlcérations of the priuities in women. So is also in like manner that which followeth hereafter: Take fresh Butter, Badgers greafe, and Deere suet, of each one ounce, the marrow of a yong Stære halfe an ounce, fine beaten yolks of Eggs: temper them all together ouer a milde fire, and stirre it continually. When it is then almost colde, then put thereto Violets, Cammomill, and Roses, of each one ounce, oyle of Olives one ounce and a halfe: let this seethe softly one quarter of an houre, stirring it alwayes about. Afterwards strayne it through a cloth. Item, take Barrowes greafe, wherein Dill hath been fryed, May butter, and Harts suet, of each two ounces, Sallet oyle one ounce and a halfe, the marrow of a yong Stære, and Roses, of each one ounce, Violets, Cammomill, of each one dragma and a halfe, fine yolks of eggs well beaten, temper it as before: you may put thereto a little Wuercob, this is, the elder, the better. For a generall rule note, that whereas any vlceration or clefts do shew themselves outwardly, that for the same these foresayd remedies are commodious: if so be that they stand deepe in the neck of the mother, then vse the foresaid pessaries, and thrust them in deepe ynough, for which cause the pessaries must be reasonable long. Also for all swellings and exulcerations vse the oyle of white Daffodill, for it is very much approued for it.

When any body catcheth any sore through carnall copulation. §. 4.

This is to be vnderstode of any sore which commonly cometh through copulation or venery. For this, you shall take Calues suet, letting it melt treatably vpon hote coles, then temper therewith the marrow of an Ore: when it is molten, let it be cold: when you will vse this, then take a little of it, and annoynt the sore therewith. But if it hapned that one haue his ordure to come forth before, then take a small Tunnell, and stick it into the fundament, like as it were a Clister pipe, then powre therein the molten fat, but not too hote. The patient must also keepe in his breath, and afterwards pluck out the Tunnell, and so stop the fundament with Cotton, that the same fat might not run out againe. And two or thre dayes after he must bathe in warme water, or foment with a bag that is filled with Oken leaues, Plantaine, and Roses, and is decocted in water.

For to make a woman to be as narrow as a Mayden. §. 5.

Take *Consolida Saracenicæ*, Plantaine, red Roses, and Shepherds purse, of each alike much, and chop them small: when you haue two good handfuls of them, then take a pound of May butter: melt it, and put thereto the sayd herbs, then let all seethe softly together halfe an houre long: afterwards strayne it thorow a cloth, and therewith annoynt the place. Item, take Copperas and let it dissolue in well water, wet a cloth therein, and lay it in the place, but it must otherwhiles be refreshed. If then one be plagued with the Crab lice, then loke the first part in the third Chapter in the §. 8. where is sufficiently written of Lice.

For to speake then moze at large of this matter, and to declare (like as is sayd already) how much importeth mankinde in the soundnes and health of these parts of generation, therefore we will first speake of the Spermaticall fire or running of the raynes, be it by day or night: afterwards of the impossibilitie of the venereal act: Thirdly, of the barrennes both of man and woman, and how to redresse it. Fourthly, what belongeth to the *Secundina* or Skin where in the Child is wapt, we will shew hereafter.

The sixth Chapter.

Of the Spermaticall Fluxe or running of the Raines.

The Grecians do call this infirmitie *Gonorrhæam*, which is, when one against his will without erection of the yarde hath his seede running out, through the losse of his strength, and vnnaturall heate. This is caused through feblenes of the vertue retentive, which is in

in the instruments of the seede, which may happen through any ouercoldnes, be it by sitting on cold stones, or other wise. It is else daily sene, if any beare this mischiefe too long, that he wareth leane thereby, and falleth away. And it is also no wonder, that by reason of this fire of the seede which sometimes ten yea twentie times hapneth betwene day and night, that thereby the best nourishment of the bodie is withdrawen. If so be that then this spermatikall fire is caused through weakenes of the retentive vertue, then hapneth it without feeling; or if it happen through the force of the vertue expulsive, which is knowen before by certaine impotencie, and trouble of these parts: But if the same grow through outward accidents, that must be understood of the patient. And to cure this infirmitie, first, it is to be knowen, that albeit this disease proceedeth for the most part through heate, yet notwithstanding the same may be caused through colde, therefore we will here first write of the running of the Raynes, which commeth through heate.

Of the Fluxe of seede or running of the Raynes through heate. §. I.

This fluxe of seede is (as it hath ben sayd) felt with some grieve. All cold things are acceptable to the patient, and hote things do put him to paine, as to a man which is superabounding in seede, doth this fire of Sperme bring not any feblenes, and he wareth not thereby leane at all: but if such come through heate of the seede, then feleth he also heate, itching, and grieve: this must first of all be begun with a good order of dyet. And first he must chuse for his dwelling a place & ayre, which is neither too hote nor too colde, neither too moyst nor too drye. It is also not convenient for him to stirre or goe much, neither to ride: but rest and sleape is highly commended for this infirmitie, and not too long, but a litle, and that oftner. Deepe speculations, sorrow, vexation, fright, feare, and especially all veneriall thoughts must be eschue. All purgations, and that which abateth the body are very hurtfull: and if neede require, the same is easily to be effected through vomits, sweates, and Clisters.

For vomiting, take water (wherein Radishes haue bene sodden) three ounces, sirrupe of Vineger one ounce and a halfe, giue the patient this warme, after that he haue eaten sundrie meates.

For to prouoke sweate, take Barly water three ounces, strong Wine two ounces, giue it him very warme, and let him sweate. The Clister must be thus prepared: Take Baites, Violet leaues, Nightshade, Wallell leaues, of each one handfull, let them seethe well together, and take twelve ounces of this decoction, Thio. Sugar one ounce and a halfe, yolks of eggs, oyle of water Lillyes, and of Roses, of each two ounces, Salt one dragma and a halfe: the Clister must be set in the evening before meate.

In eating and drinking must be eschued all that nourish well, except there be great feblenes appoaching, whereon ought most of all to be aduised. Also he must eschue all that prouoketh venerie, as all sharp hote meates, spices, fat and windie meates: but much rather may he vse all that are contrary to these, as water wherein Lentils are sodden, and water Lillyes tempered in all his meates and drinks. Also conserues of the same: prepared Copiander is also good, be it of what manner soeuer they be eaten. These things haue a speciall propertie to expell incontinencie. In like sort also, Purslaine, Endiue, Cicorie, and Lettice. But Lettice seede excelleth all these, if one eate much thereof: It stayeth also exceedingly and speedily the running of the Raynes. Item, oyle Oliue, and Nightshade, are very good for this. All these foresaid things is such a patient to vse continually, moztely sowze Vineger, Oranges, and the iuice of Pomegranats may he also vse otherwhiles, and herewith eate shæpes sate, and other beastes sate. Fish that are taken in fresh waters, are also good for him, with Vineger and other sowze things, and dressed with Sallet oyle. All sea fish shall he forbear. Concerning flesh, there is good all kind of Venison, water Fowles, and in fine, the flesh of all Dæres that be not fat, but in good plight. For his drinke, must he haue red clere and pleasant Wines, and if he desire to haue them watered, then take thereto water wherein Copiander, Lettice, Purslaine, (and that which is yet better) Gum of Arabie, and dyed water Lilly floures haue bene decocted.

And that we forget not the venerious and lustie women, it is specially aduised, that for them shall be made a potion of the iuice of Betonie and Cicorie tempered together with vineger.

Item yet moze against concupiscence of man and woman that are hot of nature, may plaisters be made: Take *Herbarie*, *Opium*, Camfere, the muscilage of Fleawort, Purslaine seede, and oyle of Poppy seede: make a plaister thereof, and annoynt o: lay it vpon the kidneies. Yet must this plaister by reason of the extreme coldnes be vsed p:ouidently. Also to goe bare footed is good likewise for this: and they that be full of blood are to be let blood.

These things following doe much drie the naturall seede: to wit, Rue, and *Agnus Castus*, wilde Spints, Comin, and mo:els made thereof. But chiefly if one doe take the seedes of the p:emisses with Vineger. Item take Will seede thre dragnes, Lettice seede and Purslaine seed, of each halfe an ounce; drinke thereof euery time one dragne and a halfe with the water of Lentils. Item take Rue seede and Herbane seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, Roses and flowers of Pomegranates, of each thre dragnes: make thereof a powder, and giue thereof to drinke one quarter of an ounce at one time, with water o: watered wine. But to returne to the lessing of the sperme, it is not amisse to write what is inwardly to be vsed for it. First then shall this confectiō following be necessary for it. Take Comfrey rootes thre ounces, cleanse them, and cut them small, piled Pompeon seede, and water Lillies, of each one dragne, the iuice of Licorice two scruples, prepared Cozall, fine Bolus, Spittle seede, and Roses, of each ten greines, Gum halfe a drag. beate them all small (except the rootes) and make thereof a powder; sethe the rootes in red wine, and stampe them to grout: then temper the powder amongst it, and put thereto the sirup of Citron pills and of Drenges, as much as you please, and then let it sethe together againe to a confectiō. Take euery morning one spoonfull thereof before breakfast.

Item temper Conserues of Roses with Harmalade as much as you will: o: take either apart.

Another. Take prepared Bolus one quarter of an ounce, Conserue of Roses thre quarters of an ounce; temper and vse thereof euery time one dragne: O: take a whole newelays eg sodden and sugred.

A famous Syrup for heate.

Take Purslaine seede, Lettice seede, and water Lillies, of each one ounce, prepared Cozander, rootes of water Lillies, of *Dandelion*, and of Nightshade, of each halfe an ounce, Camfere halfe a dragne, o: fiftene Iuiubes, Dates (eight dayes steeped in Vineger and chopt small) two ounces, Rue seede, mountaine Spints, and parched Comin, of each one dragne; sethe these all together in two quartes of water vnto the halfe; then straine it thorowly: being very hard w:ong out, put moze thereto twelue ounces of the iuice of Quinces, Sugar fixe and thirty ounces; and let them sethe all together and clarifie them. Lastly, cast a little Spints into it, whereof shall be taken two ounces with thre ounces of Purslaine water: it is very p:ecious and approued.

For this is also good these sirups following: As *De Succo Endiuia*, *de Cydonijs*, *de Rosis sicis*, *rosarum Solutium*, and *Martinus*. It hath bene also said before, that for this disease no purgations are fit. But if such were most needefull, then is there to be giuen him one ounce, o: one ounce and a halfe of fine Cassia with Purslaine water. Another which is stronger: Take Cassia one ounce, and *De Succo Rosarum* one quarter of an ounce, beaten seedes of *Agnus Castus* one scruple, water Lillies thre ounces; temper them all together. Also there is to be giuen him one ounce o: one ounce and a halfe of Cassia with Hony o: milke. Afterwardes take euery morning a draught of well decocted Barley water, and temper therewith (according as the heate is great) a spoonfull o: twaine of the iuice of Wonslake, o: Purslaine, for it cooleth much. Item take one ounce, o: one ounce and a halfe of Cassia, strowe it with the powder of Licorice, and swallowe it downe in the morning fasting. Item, vse foureteene daies continually in the morning early a little Cassia out of the pipes, and spet out the kernels.

A Confection that is very fit for this. Take prepared Cozander one quarter of an ounce, powder of Spintes thre dragnes, Lettice, Purslaine, and piled Cucumber seede, of each two dragnes and a halfe, Gum, Comin, (both parched) of each one dragne, parched Dragagant one dragne and a halfe, water Lillies one quarter of an ounce, (all these beaten small together) Sugar fiftene ounces, and sethe the Sugar in Purslaine water, and then make Tabulates of it.

Hereafter followe Potions : Take Comfrey rootes and seethe them in water, drinke thereof three or fower ounces with Sugar : it is very fit for this disease. Item, stealed water (wherein Spittle seede hath been decocted) being dronken, is also very good. For this is also meete Plantaine water, Sorrell water, Purslaine water, and Cicorie water. Dr take Gallowes and Holihocke rootes, boyle them in water, and drinke of it. Dr take of the *Trociscus de Carabe, de terra Sigillata, & de Spodio*, which you will, or of each halfe a dragma : for the whole Dose mixe it with whay, and so drinke it.

What ought to be vsed outwardly.

If so be that this infirmity haue long continued, then make smiths Sinders glowing hot, and flake them in wine, and bathe therewithall. You must fill the Panell with Stags suet, which stayeth the affluxion of the heate and sharpnes of the matter. If the patient then desire to make water, then must the patient hang his priuities in Plantaine water or Nightshade water.

Item, take olde oyle of Roses two ounces, oyle of Quinces and Spirtles, of each two ounces and a halfe, Burnt Lead, white Lead, Bloodstone (both washd in Lettice water) of each halfe an ounce, Starch one ounce and a halfe, Willowe leaues and water Lillie flowers, of each fine dragmes, Camfere one quarter of an ounce : mixe one with another in a leaden mortar with the iuice of Plantaine, and make also a salue thereof. For this disease shall you finde many remedies both in the auncient and latter Phisitions. The cooling salue is also very commodious for this; like as is the oyntment of Saunders, *Vnguentum Sandalinum*, which is made in this manner. Take Roses three dragmes, red Saunders two dragmes and a halfe, yellowe Sanders one dragma and a halfe, fine Bolus one quarter of an ounce, burnt Iuorie one drag. Camfere halfe a dragm, white Ware one ounce, oyle of Rose buds three ounces : the Ware & the oyle are to be molten together, and then temper the other things amongst them. This is not onely good for this disease, but also for inflamed Kidneies, and to cole the liuer, the stomacke, and all other parts. With any of both these oyntments annoynt the patients Kidneies and the Cods, euen to the end of his Parde. Item, take oyle of Spirtles, Roses, Spasticke, of each halfe a drag. Shauen Iuorie one scruple, Camfere two greines : poune all that is to be pouned, and with a little Ware make thereof a salue, wherewith annoynt the Kidneies. This salue is also good for the whites in women. It is also much commended to weare vpon the Kidneies a peece of thin beaten Lead.

Vnguentum
Sandalinum.

Womens
whites

Of the Fluxe of Sperme, or the running of the Reynes
through colde. §.2.

In this infirmity is felt with the paine in the head, a dis temperance also of the bzaines, and a veration of the whole body with colde, euen as in *Mania*. For this be especially Spints very meete : Rue also, and the seede thereof be highly commended for the same, mountaine Spints, *Agnus Castus*, Artichokes with the rootes, parched Comin, and Caruway, Annis, Frankincense, & their barks, Spasticke and Sparierom. This patient must then prouidently (as is said) and mildly purge, and afterwards euery morning take a dragma of Treacle with Betonie water. You may giue him also stued Peares or Quinces to eate. Likewise rare sodden eggs wherein is a little Spasticke powder strowed, and red Corall powder. Also the Reynes and bladder are to be annointed round about with oyle of Spasticke, and oyle of Roses.

Of the Fluxe of the Sperme or seede in the sleepe. §.3.

Aboue the afozementioned fluxe of the seede, this yet is to be annered vnto it, when as the seede also passeth away in the sleepe a nights, and very seldome by day. The cause of this is daily rpyotting and surfetting, and specially meates which are dressd with spice, and be easie of digestion. Secondly, the thoughts vpon a faire woman whome one loueth. Thirdly, to sleepe sound, and to lie vpon the backe, abundance of blood, abstinence from women, haill youth, whence all

other signes are to be had and taken, these are also to be remedied like the former. If it be caused of fulnes, it is to be cured by abstinence: if through lust after women, then will it be eased with a godly Patrimony, as also by the vse of cold and dry things, as is already sayd, of the running of the Raynes, of that which proceedeth not of abundance, but maketh a man unfit to get children, as shall be hereafter spoken of.

Of what and whereby naturall Sperme or seede will be most augmented. §.4.



The cause of the diminishing or increasing of naturall seede may as well proceede of intollerable heate, as colde; also of inward and outward causes. The colde is repercussive, and keepeth backe. The heate consumeth. Likewise it may growe by fals, and such like other things moe, whereby the bryaines are weakened.

Item, of some kinde of lesion of the stones and other parts, also of inward, as a bad concoction of the seede, cutting of the stone, or the Viles, whereby the generation of the seede is hindered, of soze precedent diseases, of sozrow, heaviness, temptation, smalles of the humaine member, and (amongst diuers other causes) of age also.

Now for to help this disease (euen as is before said) not to increase lecherie or fleshy lusts, but in fauor and pferment of Patrimony. For this therefore is good, warme and dry weather, and also all such dwellings, yellow Rape seede baked in bread, as much that there be put one scruple in halfe a penyworth of white bread is very requisite; yong fat fleshy, not salted too much, a sauce with Saffron, long Pepper, and tayles of *Stincus* prepared with good Wine: all solwe, sharp, doughty and slimy meates, must be forborne, long sleepe, and especially after meate doth annoy: for the long sleepe immediately after meate doth not lesse hinder venerie, then setting with meate and drinke. He is also to eschue all veration, sozrow, and care.

But in generall, these things are good for the increase of humaine seede, and to recover the losse thereof againe, to wit, Eggs, Milks, Kise drest in Milke, Sparrowes bryaines, yea the whole birds. Also the stones of these Beasts following, viz. as of Bulls, Cocks, Bucks, Rams, Bozes, and all their pissells.

Of pottages are very good that of Beanes, Ciches, Lupins: the first bitter brothes of them cast away, and the rest sugred. Pease, Turkey, or French Beanes, and Wheate, sodden in fresh broth, and drest with Spice, Annis, Fennell seedes, white and red Mustard seede, Colewort seed, and yellow Rape seede, the seedes of white *Sesamum*, Fenegreake seede, sodden with Hony in fat fleshy broth, Linseede tempered with Sugar and other meate, and also Pettie seede.

Of Rotes these following are highly commended, as stued Vinions, Garlick, Lakes, yellow Rapes, fresh Ragwort rootes, and confected Sugar, or the poulder thereof, dronken with the water wherein Mustard seede is sodden, confected rootes of *Eringus*, confected Ginger, *Costus* rootes, Sperage, Whistle rootes, Radish, Zeduary, Squills roasted, confected *Asarabacca*, *Pieris*, and Cyperus nuts. Of Herbs, are the garden Cressis, and bryanches of Sperage. Of fruits, basell puts, *Pistacia*, Almonds, and aboue all, Marshmalle made thereof.

All Spices are very commodious for this vse, as Cinnamome, Cardamome, Galingall, long Pepper, Cloues, Ginger, and Saffron. For this is also very highly praysed *Assa fetida*, the waight of one dragma and a halfe dronken in good Wine: in like manner also Dragagant, the pissell of a Bull, or of a Hart, the waight of one scruple taken also in Wine; likewise the tayles of *Stincus* the waight of a dragma, taken before meate with Wine. Of things compounded you haue these confectiōs, *Diamoschu*, *Pliris*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *Diambra*, *Dianthus*, *Digalanga*, *Trionpiperon*, and *Diamargariton calidum*: also *Spithzidate* in like manner.

And aboue all other things is the confectiō *Diasatyron* commended, for it strengtheneth the stomacke. This following is much vled at *Angustia*: Take Ginger one dragma and a halfe, Almonds, Pingles, and *Pistacia*, of each one ounce, the kernels of an Indy Nut, and *Sisarium*, of each halfe an ounce, the pissell of a Hart five dragmes, Cingfoyle, *Palma Christi* one dragma and a halfe, Galingall, Cloues, Cinnamome, white Mustard seede, long Pepper, wild yellow Rape seede, white Behen, of each one dragma, Vinion seede, Radish seede, Rape seede, and Alphen kepes, of each two scruples, the sides and tayles of *Stincus* three drags. Bozrage one quarter of an ounce, Sugar two pound, seethe it in Wine as you would make Tabulats, or a confectiō of it.

This

This also following may be prepared : Take yelloſw and other Kapes, Dinions, Sperage rootes, wild Mustard ſeede, Radish ſeede, Pingles, Ash keyes, rootes of *Eringus*, of *Satyriion*, ſweete *Costus* rootes, Ginger, long Pepper, and Cresses ſeeds, of each a like much : Also take clarified Honey, three ounces to one ounce of the powder, then make thereof a confection. Of this same may three dragmes be taken at once, tempered with Sugar pennets and new Milke.

One may vse outwardly Ware made to an Oyntment, with oyle of Beuercod. Take Beuercod, Marierom gentle, oyle of *Costus*, of each a like much, put thereto a little Huske or Zibeta, and therewith annoynt the yarde, with other places adioyning vnto it. If you will haue a sligher, then take the gall of a Beare.

An especiall oyntment : Take of the great winged Ants three drag. oyle of white *Sesamum*, and oyle of Lillies, of each one ounce ; powne the Ants and put them into the oyle, and so let them stand the space of fire dayes in the Sunne : afterwards wyng out the oyle, and put there to *Euphorbium* one scruple, Pepper and Rue, of each one dragme, white Mustard ſeede halfe a dragme : set this againe into the Sunne awhile, and annoynt all ouer the priuities therewith.

Another. Take oyle of Lillyes two ounces, oyle of Beuercod one ounce, *Euphorbium*, Pepper, white Mustard ſeede, of each one dragme, *Muscum* halfe a scruple : temper it vnto an Oyntment. If so be that then the naturall heate be thereby excited and stirred vp, and other kindes do come vpon you, then do what in you lyeth.

The ſeuenth Chapter.

Of Barrennes in generall.



When as then neither in the one nor in the other, as that neither in the Man nor in the Woman, there appeareth any infirmitie in the parts of generation, and both parties are mightie ynough for the worke, notwithstanding cannot come to any generation; then must there be a certain cause of barrennes, whereof there be many kinds. First then concerning the Man, it may be well caused throught outward and inward accidents : the outward are the hard meates, whereto there cometh then also the vnbeliere of Witchcraft. But if so be that the same proceede of inward causes, then both the same proceede of the weakenes of the most principall part of mans bodie, as of the Hart, the Braines, the Luer, the Stomack, and the Gills. And he may be too fat, or too leane, with many mo other infirmities, which may be in the priuie members, that are not to be here discovered. The signes of the Barrennes of the man are these, great heate, which may be knowen by feeling him. The woman in receiuing feleth the great heate of the seede, he hath great desire to the action, and is very hairy ouer all his body, and got haire very earely about the priuities : But if so be that cold be the cause, then are these things found to be all contrary.

Concerning the Women, the Barrennes may be caused by drincking too much cold water, by continuall vse of soſwe meates, by anger, by feare, by frightening, and other motions mo of the minde which may cause all the same. Item, when a woman after copulation stirreth by and by, leapeth, runneth, or daunceth too much. If it proceede of any inward cause, then must it be either of the constitution of the whole bodie, or of some other infirmitie of the parts of generation. If of the constitution of the whole bodie, then shall some principall part of the bodie feele the same, to wit, by reason that the Armes are hindered, or slow too much. Also a woman may be too old, or too yong, or too fat, which maketh barren. If the maladie be in the parts of generation, then dependeth it most in the mother or wombe, which hath some vlceration, or is too wide or too narrow, or too much obstructed, and such like.

The signes of Barrennes in women are these, to wit, when it proceedeth of the coldnes of the mother, then hath she her Armes very little, and if they do runne, yet are they not well coloured : they haue also but little haire on their priuities, they be by nature slowe and slack, they care not much for men, and are commonly of a pale colour, for which doth also much help the long vse of meate or drinke which are cold of nature.

If the Barrennes be caused throught heate, then hath she likewise her floures or termes very little, mixt with yelowtones, the woman is hasty headed, crastie, thirlic, desirous of the man,

haire about her pzinie place, she hath a quick pulse, and black haire, with other tokens moe, all which drie or moyst diseases must needes be in the mother, or in the neck of the same.

Thirdly, they are sometimes of a contrary complexion, for that the seede cannot be rightly mixed, or sometime also too nere like one another of complexion: for an example, when a cold man commeth to a cold woman, or that they be both dry of nature; and if in all things else they be also of like complexions one to another, then is it impossible that the woman can conceive. There shall be moe other signes described how to know by whome the let and infirmitie commeth, to wit, doe cast both *Spermata* vpon the water, and that which driueth on the top, is barren. Item, sprinkle both their vziues vpon a Lettice leafe, and whosoever doth dye away first, the same is vnfruitfull. Or take five coynes of Wheate, seuen Barly greynes, and seuen Beanes, put them all into an earthen pot, and pisse thereon, let it stand so seuen dayes long, and if they begin to sprout, then is the person fruitfull, or if they rot, then is he or she barren, be it man or woman.

Or let him pisse in a pot, and let the vzin stand awhile, if woymes grow therein, then is that vzin barren. These three last pꝛoꝛes do the auncient Physicians themselves say to be vncertaine, therefore we will let them rest.

Item, make vnderneath an odoziferous fume, as of Pyrrh, red Sfozar, and such like odoziferous warme things to passe into the neck of the wombe, through a Tunnell, which being close couered round about, if the woman finde that this smoke go thorough the bodie, and salety it in her nose, then is she fruitfull.

Another. Take grosse beaten Garlick, and lay the woman with her back thereupon, if so be that she feele the smell in her nose, then is it a token of fruitfulness. There are no such like tokens which are sayd to be appꝛoued: but how that fruitfulness is to be furthered and holpen, there are diuers remedies hereafter reherſed out of the writings of the most famous Physicians, out of which may be chosen according to the complexion of women, whether they be hote, cold, moyst, dry, fat, leane, oppilated, or contrary by nature.

For to help and preferre or hasten fruitfulness. §. 1.



If that fruitfulness be desired to be furthered and holpen, then must the cause that hindꝛeth the same be abated and taken away, of which the learned do reckon very many, which may be containd in three especiall points, as when a woman is too hote, and too dry, too cold, and too moyst, or hath her termes or floures too much or too little, of which three especiall points we will now discourse.

Of Barrennes through heate. §. 2.



All such women must beware of hote apparel, dwellings, and such like: also of clothes which keepe the parts and lineues about the wombe too hote. Also they must eschue all hote meates, as Spice, salt flesh, strong Wine, very fat meates, warme herbs, as Smallage, fennell, Thyme, Southerne wood, Rue, long watꝛhing, to lye much on the Raynes or Kidneys, great labour, anger, heauines, and such like motions of the minde: but all that moderately colety that must be vſed. They must take oftentimes conserue of Roses, or cold Dragagant losings, and the conſections *Triſantali*, also to hold befoze the nose and smell to Campher, Rose water, and Saunders, as hath been many times told for hote sicknesses.

Above all these must the *Basilica* or Lyuer vaine be opened in the right arme, and to let out about five ounces of blood. On the next day is this purgation to be vſed: Take *Elect. de Epithimo, de succo Rosarum*, of each two dragmes and a halfe, the whay of Milke ſowze ounces, temper them well together, and take it in the moꝛning, then sleepe afterwards about one howze and a halfe, and fast ſowze howzes vpon it, this being done, drinke a good draught of whay, and you may breake your fast one howze after.

Other do purge with *Triphera Suracenicæ*, and Rubarb, and also minister pꝛeparatiue portions mixed either with ſcurrups of Violets, Roses, or Endiue.

Or take the water of water Lillyes ſowze ounces, water of *Mandragora* one ounce, beaten Saſſon

Saffron halfe a scruple: drinke them luke warme, and doe this eight dayes one after another.

Also you may vse these pills following: Take Worme flowers, Smallage, Parsley seed, Comin, Bugwort, and Feuerfew, of each halfe a scruple, Aloe halfe an ounce, Indy salt and Saffron, of each halfe a dragma, poune them all together and mire them well; afterwards poure thereon fise ounces of warme Feuerfew water: close it to, and let it stand and dye in a warme place: do this thre times one after another. This being all done, then make 6. pills of each dragma, and take alwaies one thereof before supper about the second day, all the while that this foresaid Potion is vled, afterwards you must take one thereof about the third or fourth day, untill that she haue conceived. After the foresaid Potions must this purgation following be vled: Take the Conserue *Benedicta lax.* one quarter of an ounce, *de Pills* thre dragms, *Electuarium de Succo Rosarum* one dragma and a halfe; temper them together with Feuerfewe water, and drinke it warme in the morning early: thre dayes after this purgation must the Median vaine be opened in the right foote, to wit, fise or sixe howers after breakfast, and according to her strength must be letten out fise or sixe ounces of blood, the next day, and also fise daies one after another. Then is to be taken, one dragma and a halfe with Feuerfewe water. And the whilest that this Potion is by her vled, then is she in the morning one hower before that she doe arise, and also at night before she goe to bed, to sit in this bath following, and remaine therein about halfe an hower.

Take wilde yellowe Rapes, *Daucus* Balsam wood with the fruits, and the seide or keyes of an alh tree, of each two handfuls, red and white Behen, Worme flowers, of each a handfull and a halfe, Muske thre greines, Amber, Saffron, of each one scruple, sethe all these in sufficient water. But the Saffron, Muske, Amber and Worme flowers must be put into it when all the rest be sufficiently decocted and wong out.

A profitable Confection. Take *Pistacia*, *Pingles*, *Eringus*, of each halfe an ounce, of the sweet rotes which the Italians doe call *Dolceguine* as much also, of Saffron one dragma, *Lignum Aloes*, *Calingall*, *Spice*, *Gariophilata*, red and white Behen, and Baulme flowers, of each fower scruple. Shauen Zuoy and Cassia rindes, of each two scruples, sirup of confection Ginger twelue ounces, white Sugar sixe ounces: sethe these well together with the sirup in twelue ounces of Balme water untill it be all decocted: when it is colde, then put the rest amongst it, and stir it well together: Lastly mire Muske, and Amber amongst it, of each halfe a scruple. Hereof must a woman take thice a day, to wit, in the morning, one hower before none, and one hower after supper, every tyme the quantity of a putneg, and that especially after purging and bathing. This confection is rather a strengthening and warming medicine than cooling; and is specially to be vled when it is perceived that the flegme and lime be appoaching.

For Barrennes through drought. §.3.



For this must be eschewed all that which is hot, so that hot things consume the natural moisture too soone; notwithstanding their meate and drinke must be moztely warme, as Barley and Otten paps, Bullets, and small hard fishes. For this is to be vled small Clusters: as the broth of Lambes heads, and common herbes which do moisten: to wit, Violet leanes, & such like. Pestaries of Polli-hocke rotes fattened with fresh Butter, & so put into the necke of the Blombe. Goats milke and such like, that doe fatten and moisten, are very commodious for this purpose. In like maner also Almonds and Pingles, which not onely through their fattening withstand the drought, but also doe strengthen all the sinewes.

Of Barrennes through fatnes. §.4.



The great fatnes is no small cause of Barrennes: therefore are all such women to leade and obserue such a rule of life, whereby the superfluous fatnes may be consumed, whereof in the first Part you shall haue an especiall Chapter. But for a generall obseruation they must not sleepe much, and chiefly by day. Also they must forbeare all bathes, except such as be warme of themselves. For this is also good a drie sweet bath very

very commodious and profitable. To purge often is also good for this. Item strong Clitters which warme and drie, and other things moe which hereafter shall be described.

Of Barrennes through cold and moysture. §.5.



A woman which is cold and moyst, mately strong exercise is very good for her, except it be then, when she hath accompanied with her husband: after which time she ought to rest two howers at the least. Also she is not to be overcharged with any meate: but rather to refraine alwaies with appetite.

Such sleepe, sozrowe, anger &c. she must beware of. To eate much fish is hurtfull unto her, Pilke, fresh Cheese, and all that is made of dough; Beetes, Lettice, Spinage, Endive, Purslaine, Cherries, Walles nuts, Garlick, Onions and such like, are not meate for her: fat flesh, much broth and Vineger must she refraine: for they be hurtfull for the wombe.

There is to be much therein considered, fro all excessive moysture how to cleanse the wombe; for which are to be used some preparative potions of Oxytel, of Squills, or at the least of Oxytel Composita, and sirup of Wormewood with a decoction of Annis, Fennell, Comin, Cuscuta, and Harts tongue. And then to take thereupon Pill. Benedicte one dragma, once every fourteene daies, and then to fast five howers after them.

Secondly, take Stryax, Calaminta, field Hints, Asphalathus, Ameos, Sefeli, Rue, Balsam wood and the fruites, red and white Behen, of each halfe an ounce, make a bath thereof, and let her sit in it euen to the pannel.

In the meane time no delay must be in annoynting the places adioyning about the wombe, with warming and drying oyles; as oyle of Spike, oyle of Elder, and such like.

Also this Confection is to be used: Take Cinnamon, Cardamom, Saffron, Cloues, Pace, long Pepper, Cipers rotes, Putmegs, Comin, Lignum Aloes, and Cassia wood, of each one scruple, Cucubes and Dotonicum, of each fower scruples, Puske, Amber, and Balsam, one dragma, white Sugar eightene ounces, Balnesey, Buglosse water, and of Balme, as much as is needfull for to seethe the Sugar, then make thereof a Confection: whereof she is euery euening to take a spoonfull when she goeth to bed, also halfe so much befoze supper.

Another. Take yellow Kape seede, Pease, and scrapte Juozie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pettie seede, Ameos, Sefeli, Indy Spica, Cardamome, Blatta byzantia, Bay berries, Putmegs, Cipers nuts, Hyssope, Parierom, Spikenard, and Cipers rotes, of each one dragma, white, blacke, and long Pepper halfe an ounce together; Ginger and Cinnamon, of each one ounce, this being all stampd and mixed together, make with honie a Confection therof, and lastly temper therewith two or thre greines of Puske.

All the foresaid things are speciall good to consume the windes of the wombe. Now for this purpose followeth here certaine simples and compounded medicines; as Annis, Fennell, Caraway, Smallage seede, and Rue seede, each used alone. In like sorte, Parierom, Agnus Castus flowers and seedes, Comin, prepared Spikenard seede, Bayberries, Rue, the Tabulats of Dicymus, and Anise, that doe altogether consume moysture.

For to fume or to foment are specially commended these things following, Rue, Carui, Ameos and Gallia muscata.

Item, take Galliam Muscatam, Bællium, Benercod, Laudanum, Hares grease, and Putmegs, of each halfe an ounce, let these seethe all together in water, and wash or foment therewith.

This following clenseth and also warmeth well the wombe, and dryeth the moysture of the same: Take Coloquinte beaten grosse one quarter of an ounce, Cinnamon thre dragmes; temper them with good wine, or with oile of Spike, dip Cotton therein, and put the same into the necke of the wombe.

Item take Swines bread, some thereof a Pessarie of the bignes of a Date stone, & women must put this into their priue places, being fastned to a thred: it is passing good. They may also lay this plaister following vnder their nauell being cut round. Take the plaister called Ceroneum two ounces, Laudanum one ounce and a halfe, Gallia & Alapia muscata, of each halfe an ounce; temper them with oyle of Spike and spread it on a round leather, and use it as is afoze said.

For to drie and correct a stony and moyst wombe this following is to be used. Take Silvermountaine, red and white Behen, Ashe keyes, shauen Juozie, yellow and wilde Kape seede, of

of each one dzag. Cinnamome, Pace, Cloues, Calingale, long Pepper, Rosemarie flowers, Balsam wood, *Blatta Byzantia*, Parietom gentle, & Penniroiall, of each fower scruples, Balme, Buglosse, Citron peeles, of each two scruples, Pearles one scruple, Muske two graines, white Sugar fower and twenty ounces, sethe the same with Palmsey, and make therof a confection. This confection is very good and approued for all that is aforesaid, and also for fruitfulness.

For to comfort the retentive vertue of the wombe. §.6.



It so be that there be any infirmite in the retentive vertue of the wombe, which doth commonly happen through ouer coldnes, for the which are strengthening and warming things to be vsed, as Amber, Frankincense, with their rindes, Pasticke, *Lignum Aloes*, Cloues, Putmegs, Sage, Calingale, Calmus and Cardamome. Also the must be gouerned like as hath bene said in the discourse of barrennes. Item, there is more good for this, that the necke of the matris be often washed with water wherein Cyperus rootes are decocted: Or with water wherein Iron doosse is sodden, which is stronger. Also for this may serue Pasticke strowed vpon hot coles, and the fume thereof receiued from belowe.

A very good salve fit for this: Take the iuice of Roses, of Pomegranates and Cloues, of each one ounce, Frankincense, *Hypocistis*, the iuice of Sloes, Pasticke, prepared Coziander, and Iron doosse, of each one dzag. Sealed earth and Starch, of each one ounce, vse these very long in a Leaden mortar, and annoint the priuities therewith oftentimes. But if the infirmite procede of heate, then are things to be vsed which be astringent, roborating and coling, yet tempered with some warme things. The colde things are these, burnt and washt Parts hohne, Amber, iuice of Sloes, *Hypocistis*, burnt Muske shels, Bolus, burnt Gals, Dragon blood, Sealed earth, flowers and shales of Pomegranates, Acornes with their cups, the rinde of the Pedlar tree and the fruites, Seruices and Hirtle seede, of all these foresaid simples may salues, plaisters, and other things be prepared, which are all fit for this infirmite.

Of Barrennes, through repletion of the body, and obstruction of the Termes or Flowers. §.7.



These women must forebeare all slimie meates, as milke and all that is drest therewith, also from all dolvie meates, pottage and old fish, vnleauened bread, new Cheese (but olde Cheese is metely tolerable) from all cold and moyst fruits. Touching all other meats, they may liue according to their olde custome: their drinke must be reasonable or meane strong white wine.

Concerning the medicines, you must first begin with the letting of blood, opening the *Basilica* in the right arme, and to let out fower or fve ounces of blood.

The next day following you may cause to be mixt together *Pillula de Opopanaco*, and of *Hiera Composita*, of each halfe a dzag. and to make seuen pills thereof, and to take them in the morning, and then to sleepe one hower and a halfe vpon it, and fve howers after to drinke a draught of sugred water, and then one hower after that to eate. This being done, this powder following is to be prepared, and to be vsed fower graines thereof euery mealetime in all their meats. Take Cinnamome halfe an ounce, Saffron one dzag. Spikenard two scruples, Licorice fower scrup. whereof make a subtile powder.

Immediately after the pills, they are to vse this potion sixe or eight daies continually early in the morning: Take *Syrupum Acetosum Compositum*, *De Eupatorio*, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Bugwort, Feuerfew, and the water of Elecampane rootes, of each one ounce, temper them together. Or take the foresaid waters alone without sirups fve ounces at one time.

Other pills: Take Aloe two ounces, *Agaricus* and *Opopanacum*, of each one dzag. and a halfe, *Spica*, Pather, Cinnamome, Saffron and Indie Salt, of each one dzag. Coloquint fower scrup. the iuice of Feuerfew fower ounces, temper all together, and let it in the sunne, and stir it often about untill it be drie, do this thrice. Then take the weight of a dzagme, and forme sixe pills thereof, and vse one euery thre daies iust before supper. Also likewise one in the day time, so long as they vse these foresaid potions. But not when they purge. The said purgation must be made thus: Take *Electuarium Indum* halfe an ounce, *de Succo Rosarum* one dzag. temper this with thre ounces

ounces of water at Elecampane rootes.

After this second purgation, she is one moneth long to take the waters of Feuerfew, Elecampane rootes and Balme, of each one ounce mixed together, before none and against night, she is to sit in this bath following: Take Balme, Parierom gentle, white Spints, Pennioiall, Feuerfew, and Bugwort, of each a handfull, small and great *Chamedryos*, *Spica romana*, *Daucus*, Agrimonie and Satechas, of each a handfull, sethe these all together in sufficient water, untill that about the third part be sodden away, & then put therto Puske thre graines, *Lignum Aloes*, *Gallia Muscata* beaten small, of each a drag. This being so prepared, then shall she set hir selfe therein, and keepe hir selfe from hir husband thre daies.

In the meane while, she is to put into the necke of the wombe this pessarie following: Take Saffron halfe a scruple, Puske, Amber, *Lignum Aloes*, and Ash keyes, of each thre grains, Hares renning, as much as is needfull: soyme it like to Dates stones, and she is to weare it all the day in hir body.

Another: Take Hares renning one dragme and a halfe, shauen Quozie, red and white Behen, and Ash keyes, of each halfe a dragme, Selsely, Penniroyall, Sep, Saivine, *Gallia Muscata*, of each halfe a scruple, being all beaten small and tempered with oyle of Spike untill it be soft; then temper therewith Puske and *Laudanum*, of each two graines, dip some woll therein, and vse it as before.

For the poze is onely the oyle of Lillies commended with a pessarie of Cotton dipped therein, and so put by and holden therein the space of thre howers.

When such women haue purged and bathed, then must they, before that they come at their husbands, be let blood in the *Saphena* or *Pedian*, two howers after supper, letting out thre or fower ounces of blood, if so be that she be any thing strong.

It were also very good that when such women arise a mornings, they do girde about them a long garment, and let some fire vnder them, and to strowe therein this powder following, that she may receiue the vapo: thereof, and vse a little at once.

A very good confection: Take *Doronicum*, Ash keyes, Bugwort, Feuerfew, flowers of S. Johns wort, of each one dragme, Balme, Basill, of each one quarter of an ounce, shauen Quozie halfe an ounce, Amber one scruple, Puske fine graines, small filed Golbe halfe a dragme, the powder called *Nere* one dragme, *Syrup. de Calaminta* thre ounces, Sirupe of Citron peles fine ounces, Sugar firs ounces, all that is to be pouned poune small, sethe the Sirupe and Sugar mostely thicke; and when it beginneth to be colde, then temper it with all the powder (except the *Spec. Nere*, Puske and Amber) the which must be put in at the last. Kepe this confection in a Gally pot, whereof the woman is to take immediately after hir second letting blood, euery morning the quantitie of a Putmeg, and fast fower howers after. In like manner also after meate the bignesse of a Beane, and drinke thereupon a draught of good wine; the which hath holpen many women.

The powder before promised for suffumigation. Take *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, *Gallia Muscata* two dragmes, Puske, Amber, of each thre graines, *Lignum Aloes*, *Opopanacum*, of each one drag. make them into powder, and vse a little of it one time.

For to further the fruitfulness in man and woman. §. 8.

Take Kapes, *Sisarrum*, shauen Quozie, Selsely, red and white Behen, Ash keyes, of each one drag. Cinnamome, *Doronicum*, Pace, Cloues, Calingale, long Pepper, Rosemarie flowers, Balsam wood, *Blatta Byzantia*, Parierom gentle, Penniroyall, of each two scruples, Balme, Buglosse, Citron peles, of each one scrup. Indie Spike, Amber, Perles, of each halfe a scrup. Sugar decocted in Palmsey one pound, make Tabulats therof or a Confection.

A powder for to strowe vpon the meate: Take Putmegs, Cucubes and Ginger, of each halfe a drag. long Pepper, Passicke, Cinnamome, red and white Behen, of each one scruple, stamp them together, and so vse them as is said.

Item, take the stone of a Boze hog being two yeres old, and the pissel of a Stag shauen small halfe an ounce, fower paire of fore stones, and fittie or thre score Sparrowes bzaines, wilde yellow Kapes, *Eringus* rootes, *Saryion*, confected all together in Sugar and shauen Quozie, of each thre ounces and a halfe, Cinnamome, the pissel of a Bull, Bingles, Dates, and Indie Put kernels

nels, of each two ounces, long Pepper, Ginger, and Rosemary flowers, of each halfe an ounce; Sefeli one dragma, Pettie seede, Cloues, Saffron, Pace, Galingall, Cyperus rootes, Putnegg, Cassy wood, Cucubus, Doronicum, field Pints, Penniroyall, Indie Spica, Puske and Amber, of each one dragma, white Sugar refined in the water of wilde Pints, so wze pounds and a halfe, make thereof a confection, this confection may be both by men and women vled in the morning fasting, and in the euening when they go to bed, whereof haue bene great wonders scene.

Another: Take clarified Hony three ounces, Linseed, Greynes, and Shauen Zuozie, of each one ounce, Burrage three ounces, make thereof a confection, and temper therewith 24. ounces of Sugar, Puske and Amber, of each halfe a scruple, Cinnamome two greynes, Cloues and Pace, of each one greyne, it is a very milde medicine.

It is also very good that men and women receiue euery morning a little Treacle, to wit, halfe a dragma, with halfe a dragma of Shauen Zuozie, but for such as be yong it is not so good by reason of the heate.

A good salve: Take *Gallia Muscata*, Putnegg, Beuercod, Vares renning, *Laudanum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Spike, oyle of Waller and of Spirtles, of each three dragmes, Ware as much as is needfull for to make a salve therewith, these are to be vled as the other.

Wine of Rosemary is also much commended for this. In like manner the Hozelle Wine, all which are described in the last part, with other most such spiced Wines, which are very fit for such ouercold and barren men and women.

For to make a woman fruitfull, for which this serueth for a Potion and Bath following: Take Wormewood and Bugwort, of each a handfull, seth them together in a quart of Goats milke, almost to the halfe, whereof euery morning and euening she is to take a good draught.

For to Bathe: Take wilde Penniroyall, Bugwort, and Rue, of each one handfull; make a bag thereof, and let them seth in rayne water: Bathe therein euery eight houres, and alwayes about the third day a fresh Bath.

For a conclusion in women is (as it is already sayd) the greatest cause of barrennes, for that the Spatir or Uombe is not cleane, is ouercold, or hath some other infirmitie, whereof hereafter in this part shall be discoursed and taught, also what is mete and fit for the same.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Raynes and their paynes.



When as we haue described now the outward parte before of the Belly in this third part of our booke of Phisicke, so both the cause require, that we ought to write somewhat of the hinder part, amongst which the Raynes are comprehended: and that these raynes are a part of the backe, it appeareth by all that here before in the second part in the fourth Chapter, and also afterwards is written, therefore is thought needeles to make any further mention thereof.

These Raynes do suffer by reason of the Kidneys very great payne, when the same are vexed with heate, vlcration, grauell, stone, or other maladie, the description whereof yet hereafter followeth in this third part, where it may also be noted and obserued what may be good and commodious for the same. Where be commonly commended for hote paines in the Raynes oyle of Roses, Violets, and yelloe Violets, water Lillies, and Poplar buds, in like sort also these three salues following, of Saunders, the coling oymtment of *Galeni* and the Poplar salve are very good, and that in all hote causes.

But if the paine procede of colde, then is Hony water to be dronken, and confection rootes of *Eryngiu*, fennell, Conmin, Caraway, be it confection or otherwise, are to be eaten, for they asswage much the paine. Some vse also the conserues of Hony.

This salve following is especiall good: Take blew and yelloe Violets, of each one ounce and a halfe, oyle of swete Almonds, of *Sesamum*, of each one dragma and a halfe, fresh Butter one ounce, Saffron one scruple, white Ware one ounce and a halfe, Ducks greafe, oyle of Camomill, oyle of Will, of each one quarter of an ounce, and a small yolke of an Egge, the oyle, greafe, and butter, melt together, and at the last put the Saffron and yolke vnto it, and stirre it well

well about, it swageth much the paine, which is caused through the grauell, stone, and any thing else, therefore it is called by the Grecians *Onodynum*, euen as the Apothecaries do call it vnto this day *Vnguentum Anodynum*.

The ninth Chapter.

Of the Buttocks.



Here are two Buttocks giuen to men for their vse, by nature compiled of a compact, fast, musky, and hard flesh: and not narrow piked, bearing vp like to other Beasts, but pretty and round, as well for a comelines of the same place, as for to sit on, and ease the whole bodie, conering and defending the Fundament, that the same cannot be violated nor strayned through sitting. These foresayd Buttocks do seldeome suffer any other infirmitie, but such as be subiect to Chirurgery, as wounds, vlcérations, fistulaes, Cancries, and such like. Besides this, is no more to be spoken thereof: therefore we will passe ouer to the Fundament or outward part of the Arsegut, with his infirmities, which are incident vnto it outwardly, and inwardly.

The tenth Chapter.

Of the Arsegut or Fundament in generall.



Here haue ben some doctrels in the world, who haue complayned of Nature, wherfore she had not cholen as well a bone or some other neather member of the body, whereby she might expell the excrements, as she did this mild place of the bodie, which grosse speech is to be scorned as a great folly, for how could she haue ordayned a closer, sifter, and handsomer place then this: Concerning then this Arsegut, it is a conueigher of all excrements, long, and wide, and whereas it cometh to our sight with a round circle, it is there shapen of a musky and finetwy substance, (like as are the lips of the mouth) therefore hath it also such power that it openeth like a purse, and shutteth fast againe, that it might not receiue any winde or any thing else. Vnto these priue places do there come sundry accidents, amongst which the most manifest is, when this gut both fall out of the body, therefore we will first of all write thereof.

Of the going out or hanging downe of the Arsegut,

Procidencia Ani. S. I.



This may be caused by two manner of meanes, to wit, when the Puscles and Lacertes, which do open and shut this gut, with two sinewes (which presently deuide themselves into two parts) do giue & relent through some falling downe of humors, or thrust the same out through some impostume. Of the sayd sinewes, that which openeth the Arsegut is outward, and that which shutteth the same inward. If so be then (as it is said) that any of these sinewes be too soze feebled or slacked through any humors, then followeth immediatly the *Procidencia*, or hanging out of the Arsegut. The signes that this is hapned through some resolution of the sinewes, are, that it may easily without paine be brought againe into the bodie, like as contrarywise if there be any impostume with it, then will it not be done without griefe. Also there is alwayes a hardnes with it, and an apparant distemperature. Now for to remedie this, then cause first that the patient may haue his going naturally to the stoule, that he be not suddenly forced for to open the gut: But if there be no swelling with it, and that you haue none other thing nere hand which is fit for it, then let the patient sit in common warme water. Otherwise it may be made stronger as thus: Take Acorne cups, Gall nuts, flowres of Pomgranats, and Pirle leaues, seethe them together in water vntill it be a little red, and sit therein. The same do Cyper nuts alone, or the iuice of Sloes, wherein Pirle seade, and the seeds of *Verbascum* are decocted. After this bath, then foment the dependant gut with warme

warne oyle of Roses, and afterwards strow this powder thereon: Take white led, blossoms of Pomgranats, Antimony, and Allome, of each alike much, make thereof a subtil powder.

Item, take Butchers Brome halfe an ounce, Gals, the yelloe seeds of Roses, Cipers nuts, Pirrhe and Frankincense of each one dragme, beate them to powder, and vse them as aforesaid. Another. Burne Dates to powder, and strowe that powder thereon, as is said. Or take *Mumia*, *Lycium*, *Hypocistis*, and beaten Gals, of each two scruples, burnt *Dysterthels* two drag. and a halfe; and vse it as before. This following is also very good for this: take *Hypocistis*, *Passicke*, and *Pyrre*, of each one dragme; beate it metely small, first annoint the gut with oyle of *passicke* and *Roses*, strowe it then with this said powder: this being done, thrust it softly into the bodie, lay a cloth thereon wetted in grosse wine, and it is good to put a little *Sandaraca* vnto it.

It is also very good to annoynt the place oftentimes with steeled wine for the same; and in like maner *Sauine* dyed, beaten, and strowed vpon it.

Item, after the annoynting with oyle, annoynt the gut with the iuice of *Sloes*: when as then through any superfluity of humors this gut doth fall downe in children, then take *Pyrre* one dragme and a halfe, oyle of *Roses* one ounce; annoynt it therewith, and then put it vp againe softly into the body.

This *Procidencia Ani*, or falling downe of the Arse gut, happeneth for the most part in the *Pyles* with an excrescence of flesh, the which the Grecians doe call *Condyloma*: for which *Parietaria* is very good layd often vpon it, whereof we will write more at large hereafter.

Of the relaxation or slacking of the Arse gut. §.2.



his disease doth manifest it selfe sometimes through the first recited falling downe of the Arse gut, and otherwhiles without the same, and is such an infirmity (as hath been told already) that the sinewes which doth shut it are become altogether without might, insensible and lame; insomuch that he cannot perceiue his *Dydure*, and doth it without any sence or feeling; also oftentimes so contracted and made so senselesse, that it holdeth vp and stayeth the *Dydure* altogether, whereby commeth gripings in the belly, and other great inconueniences. The causes of this are sometimes fals, thrusts or blowes behinde on the backe, and especially on the place whence the sinewes haue their osspring, whereby the power of the opening and shutting of the Arse gut is enfebled.

In like maner, when any body hath the *Pyles* opened, whereby the *Pyles* are in that place spoiled. This infirmity may also be caused by sitting too long on colde stones, and by suffering too much colde in the sexe. But if this disease doe come through cutting or any other bruising of the sinewes, then are all remedies in vaine. If it come then through colde, which taketh away all motion, then is the place to be kept alwaies warme: for which this bathe following is very good, which is thus prepared: take Cipers nuts and the leaues, *Spints*, *Sauine*, *Cosinus* roses, *Sage*, *Bay berries*, rindes of the *Pine tree* and the leaues, of each one handfull; seethe them all together in a good quantity of water, so that the sicke person may sit therein, when he hath bin bathed, then lay a peece of felt in this water, and lay it to the patients Arse gut: he must vse this bathe twice in fower and twenty howers; it warmeth and strengtheneth the sinewes of the Arse gut.

Also he must seethe therewith *Kue*, *Scenanthie*, *Allome*, garden *Spints*, field *Spints*, and if it will not alter therewith, then vse these Clisters following: Tak sixe ounces of this foresaid decoction and oyle of *Spike* two ounces, and mire them together. And annoynt the Arse gut outwardly, and all other places adiacent with the oyle of *Lillies*, *Beuercod*, and of *Euphorbium*, tempered all together, or vsed each apart. If there be any slegmaticke moisture with it, then put vnto it halfe an ounce or three quarters of *Hiera Picra*, if that there be heate with it. Let the patient after the vse of all necessary medicines take a bathe of water, wherein hath been decocted the rindes of the *Spedlar tree* and the leaues, the rindes of *Oke*, *Seruires*, *Pomegranate* rindes, and blossomes, *Chestnut* shales, or those that may be gotten of them, yet alwaies putting some warming things vnto it.

For this is also especiall good all naturall bathes, which are *Sulphurish*, *Allomish*, yea there is also good for this *Sea water* or *Salt water*.

Of the Impostume of the Arsegut. §. 3.



If there happen then any vicer or impostume in the Arsegut, whereby one can not get it into the body, and the same is caused through heate, there is nothing more fit, then to open a vaine, and afterwards to prouoke vomit, whereby the matter may be deriued; but for this is no purging good, and especially because the disease is in the fundament, but lay this following thereon: Take peled Lentils three ounces, Roses and the iuice of Aloes, of each one ounce, the iuice of Rightshade three ounces, beaten Hollyhock rootes, Figs cut, Linseede, and Fenegreke beaten small, as much as you thinke good. Let this sethe all to pay, and at the last temper therewith three or foure yolks of Eggs, and as much Butter as you thinke good, and lay it warme vpon the place where the paine is. If so be then this be caused through cold, then put vnto it a little of the rootes of Lillies, Cammonill, Pelilot, and such like. And if so be that this Arsegut by reason of the impostume, will hardly be put vp againe into the bodie, then must the patient be set oftentimes in warme water, and afterwards annoynt the Arsegut with oyle of Cammonill and of Will, which are molten with a little Mace, this swageth the paine. In like sort also descendeth the neck of the Patric in women, and is in such sort to be made, like as hereafterwards amongst other infirmities of the wombe shall be written more at large.

Of the Pyles called *Hæmorrhoides*. §. 4.

After the foresayd falling downe of the Arsegut, there cometh one disease more in the fundament, the which we call the Pyles, & the Grecians *Hæmorrhoides*, which is a fluxe of blood, and *Sycoses*, that are figs, which the Latinists do call *Ficus*, figs, and *Mariscas*. All these are Accidents and Tumors, which do come behinde in the fundament, or in the lowermost part of the Arsegut. And they do appeare by their swelling, and otherwise (whereof they get their name) sometimes with blood, and otherwhiles without blood, but seldome without paine, but vexeth folks with great trouble. They take their beginning from some small vaines, which spread themselves into the uttermost parts of the stomack, and are thereof called the Pyle or Emroyd vaines. When as these be then ouercharged with blood, or any other humors, then do they open themselves, and expell the melancholick blood from them sometimes in great quantitie, whereby nature is much unburthened, and getteth great health, therefore it is often commanded for to open the same, euen as hereafter shall be admonished: also they bleede otherwhiles so excessively, that great trauell is taken before they can be stopped, whereof we shall speake hereafter. There be also some of these vaines which lye some what deepe bywards, and therefore are called the blind Pyles.

These Pyles are properly the *Hæmorrhoides*, like as by their name may appeare. Others be without blood, of the which they that make shew outwardly on the Arsegut are first of all the figgyles, by reason that in their whole substance and quantitie, they be like vnto figs, and also are therefore called *Verrucales*, the which are much worse then the other, whose cause is only melancholick blood. Other do shew themselves like to a black ripe Grape, so that they be called *Vuales*, which haue their matter from blood, mingled with melancholie. The third are like to *Pulberies*, red and blackish coloured, wherein the blood doth apparantly excede.

The fourth kinde is like to the bladder of a fish, which is extended very much without blood, filled or stuff with melancholick humors, but these sorts are seldome seene. The first sort are the secret Pyles, which do come within the Arsegut, and be very hurtfull, especially those which extend towards the priuities, for that through their hote tumors they hinder the passage of the vrin, whereby the strangurie is prouoked, and especially when they do not bleede. Now for to know these hidden Pyles and diseases, there is nothing more certaine, then to let a great bore or cup on the Arsegut without pricking, the which will draw the Arsegut outward so that it may be apparantly seene, how that the case doth consist within. The first kind of Pyles are the figs, a certaine excrescence vpon the Arsegut outwardly, who with a little vaine like the stalk of a fig, is fastned to the gut, formed as it were a small dry fig, from thence a little bigger, and is pressed

pressed downe on the top like a fig, which is called of the Grækes *Condyloma*, which is an excrescence of flesh, for it hapneth sometimes that round about the roundnes of the Arsegut, or last besides it, there do come great scabs which sometimes (yet vncertaine whether it be first or last according as the patient ruleth himselfe) do happen to blæde sometimes much and sometimes little. These figs and swellings are tempered also with bloud and melancholy, a litle red outwardly and perillous ynough, euen as hereafter shall be further expessed.

In all these Species of the Pyles, the learned haue a generall rule, that they esteeme them for an accident that can hardly be cured. They recite nine causes of these accidents, albeit we will recite but foure, first, for that it is in an vncleane place, and no man medleth willingly therewith. Secondly, for that this place is very hard to be sene. Thirdly, for that it is a place whither all vncleannes of the bodie doth descend: Lastly, for that it is a place cold by nature, and therefore voyd of strength, notwithstanding there be many good remedies prouided and ordained for them, as hereafter followeth.

But before we discourse of the foresayd remedies for the Pyles, Blathers, Figs, Warts, Tumors, and their accidents, we will first of all shew their causes, and teach how the same may be cured, for which the principallest is to obserue a good dyet in meate and drinke, and such like,

Of the Dyet.

It is sufficiently declared before, that the greatest cause of these accidents is the heauie melancholick bloud, which is mirt with the pure bloud, and perisheth the same, which all other members expell from them, like as it were a popson, and so falleth downewards from the other bloud into the vaines, openeth them through his heate, and maketh them blæde.

This is altogether caused of a bad digestion of the stomack, and other members, and of all such grosse meates, whercof there can be none other ingendred but melancholick bloud, the which must be altogether left off, as Beanes, Lentils, and other Dottages. Item, Colewortes, Chese, old Bese, Harts, Hares, Goats, salted and smoked flesh, sodden Wheate, Rice, vnleauened bread, which bring much moisture with them.

Also all water fowles, Gees and other fith without shales, scate, heads, and all entrailes of Beasts, grosse Wine, Hult, and Bere. Item, all things which burne the bloud, as much Mustard, Pepper, Garlick, Onions, Bees. All things which be very cold do also increase melancholie, as Melons, Cucumbers &c. *Drinke*.

Amongst the Medicines which are good for this disease, are Coloquinte, Centorie, Scamonie, and chiefly Aloe, very hurtfull for the Arsegut, for it openeth the Pyles.

Euen as we haue recited what is hurtfull for this disease, so will we also teach what manner of dyet might be commodious and profitable for the same. The dwelling of this patient must be a warme and dry place, which is close and toward the South. But if the house be not of it selfe fit thereto, then is it to be prepared for the same with fire and fumes: yet is alwayes to be eschued things which be too hot, and must take the milde meane which are hot and dry, as Frankincense, *Lignum Aloes*, red Styax, *Landanum*, and such like.

And whereas all kinds of Pyles do agree in this, they be caused of bloud and melancholie (like as is already alledged) and of both together mired, so may the patient vse one and the selfesame dyet.

Next after the dwelling place, the patient must also according to the time of the yeare, prouide himselfe of clothes, which are meetely dry and warme, keepe the head well couered, and defend the outward members from all cold.

His meate must be white bread, not aboue thre dayes old, Eggs, Butter, Lambs flesh, Veale, Kids, Gutton, Bullets, Capons, Partriches, Pheasants, and Pigeons, yet of all these a litle: in like manner all fild fowles.

His drinke shall be good white Wine, all grosse and soure Wines shall be forbore, albeit that it were much better a good Sugred water then Wine, sodden Milke, fresh and meetely well salted Chese, be meetely good for him; but good regard must be had that he feede thereof moderately, so that the stomack be not ouercharged.

But if any excesse be perceiued, then is it not amisse that the patient be moued to vomit, and to take that with one ounce and a halfe of Clineger, and thre ounces of warme water, and afterwards

wards to put the finger into the throte, and if that will not be, then may he take an easie Clister.

These patients are alwayes for the most part bounden in the bodie, the which bringeth with it great paine and griefe, therefore diligence is to be had that he keepe an open bodie, for this shall he sup every morning and evening before meate some bzoath, wherein is sodden Percury, Pallowes, Burrage, Bêtes, and fumitorie, and with a little of the oyle of swete Almonds or Butter. Also to eat sometimes new Prunes and Keysons, and drinke vpon it some bzoath of Colewoorts; after that, he may eat some other meates. Also it were not amisse, to eat against this binding in the body one dragma of pceled wild Saffron seade, or one quarter of an ounce of Cassie, now the one, and then the other.

Reasonable motion, yet more with the hands, then with the feete or the whole bodie, is very good, but riding and sitting hard is very bad. In fine, long rest is better then short, so must it be alwayes with slepe. He must lye most vpon his right side, but little on his left side, or on his back. Lastly, he must utterly eschue all sorrow, vexations, anger, and other passions of the minde.

To staunch the bleeding of the Pyles. §. 5.



As to come to the remedie of this accident, therefore we will first begin if these Pyles hapned to blæde overmuch, how and wherewith the same is staunched.

First therefore we will rehearse this (whereof hath also bene spoken before) that if this blæding chaunce without paine, and not but by flatwes, then is it no counsell to stay it vnlesse the patient were greatly weakened thereby.

For when these vaines begin to blæde, then do they exonerate the whole body of many melancholick diseases, as of the Leprosie, Rocks, dytch Itch, Droisie, quartaine Agnes, hardnes of the Pilt, or Splæne, and mo other such like infirmities, which grow of burnt blood, and of such like humors, as hereafter shall appeare in a proper §, wherein shall be taught how the same shall be opened: also if they that accustomed to blæde and now remaine stoppt, do cause the Droisie, the Consumption, and many other Sickneses.

But if the blæding of them do get the maistrise, and thereby do weaken the patient, then must the same be staunched: and take good hede, whether the same blæding be on the right side, for it is sometimes a messenger of some long lingring sickness, as headach, giddines, hinderance of the bzeath, and to conclude, feblenes of the whole body, so that he cannot well go nor stand, at the last folloiweth great thirst and binding of the body.

When as then these kinds of inconueniences do all appeare, or part of them, then must such blæding be staunched out of hand, and forbear from all manner of Spices, also from Vinions, Carlick, Pustarb, strong white Wine, Wenary, great labour, and all such like things, which inflame the blood: and to the contrary, vse all things that increase blood: for this, is also good the sirupes of Quinces, Roses, Hirtles, *Trocisci de Terra sigillata*, and *de Carabe*. These staunchers of blood must be layd outwardly vpon the fundament: Take the white of an Egge, and temper amongst it beaten Pome, sealed earth, fine Bolus, and Dragon blood.

Also these things following by their proper vertue, staunch this blæding, as Amber, prepared Bloudstone, burnt or prepared Cozall, Dragon blood, fine Bolus, burnt Vitrioll, Aloe, Plantaine, Pastick, Blossoms of Pomgranats, the barks of Frankincense, Copwebs, Hares haire cut small, burnt Assedung, and powdered Basill.

The compounded things are these, *Trocisci de Corallis*, *de Spodio*: Also, one may take one dragma of Amber and sealed earth with water wherein is decocted Butchers Brome seade.

The pills of *Bdellio*, and *de Sandaraca*, must one take the first eight dayes the waight of halfe a dragma, and fast fure howres after it.

Powders and other things to staunch Blood.

Take the bones of Bulls seate, red and white Cozall, the stones of Dates, Wyther shels, burnt altogether, of each one quarter of an ounce, Vitrioll halfe a dragma, burnt Iuorie, Amber, and Bloudstone, of each thre dragmes, Dragon blood, the iuice of Sloes, the powder of solwe Pomgranat blossoms, Dragagant and Gum, both of them tolked, of each two dragmes

dragmes and a halfe, beate them together very small, and temper one amongst another, then strowe it vpon the place of the bleeding, & lay Cotton thereon, which is made wet in Rose vineger, afterwards bind it hard vpon it, this stauncheth blood maruellously, although it had continued a yere and a day; and not only for this, but also for all excessive bleeding.

There may also a plaister be made of the foresayd powder, and fill dust with the iuice of Plantaine, Comfrey or Tassels.

Item, take Aloe, Frankincense, Dragon blood, Pomgranat blossoms, and Siesmemithe, of each alike much, make a powder thereof and vse it as before.

Another. Take Cyper nuts, and Iwoyme eaten Gall, of each halfe a dragme, Dragon blood, Gummy, Dragagant and Gum, both of them tossed, of each one dragme, Gips halfe an ounce, temper them all together, and strow therewith the whole Arsegit, it stauncheth bleeding a whole day.

One more. Take the yellow seedes of the Rose, stampe them to powder, strow it thereon, so they dry and staunch blood.

Item, take *Hermodyli* two scruples, prepared Antimony one dragme, Frankincense one scruple, Pyrrh halfe a scruple, make a powder thereof, and strow it vpon the Wyles where they blode: and further, spread round about the same Wyles this salve following.

Take of the vnguent *Pompholygos* halfe an ounce, vnguent of Roses two ounces, oyle of Quinces, Linseed oyle, and oyle of Nuts, of each halfe an ounce, *Hermodyli* two scruples, Pomgranat blossoms, & Dragagant, of each one scruple, Gummy, Dragon blood, and prepared Tutty, of each one dragme, Beane meale and fill dust, of each one dragme, Plantaine, *Verbasum*, Willow leaues, Hirtle leaues, and Horse tayles, of each one dragme and a halfe, Camfer ten greynes, oyle of Roses as much as is needefull therewith to make a salve, spread thereof vpon a swollen cloth and lay it vpon the fundament: the blood of the Wyles hath therewith been staunched at sundry times, when all other remedies had been vsed, and would not helpe, vntill this foresayd was applyed. Item, take Gips, beate it small, and make it to dough with the beaten white of an Egge, this stauncheth blood maruellous well, and that in a quarter of an houre, in what sort of bleeding soeuer it be.

Item, take Aloe, Frankincense, Dragon blood, fine Bolus, and small cut haire of a Hare, of each one quarter of an ounce, beate them all small, afterwards take a Cobweb out of a fill, rub it amongst it, and make thereof a salve with the white of an Egge, and annoynt the place therewith; this also stauncheth much. It is also good for rent or cut vaines, where the blood cannot be staunched.

Or take the water of Hounds tong, distilled from the herbe and roote; when the Wyles grow inward, then are you to take euery morning thereof foure ounces, but if they be outward, then cleanse the same, and lay on this water with a cloth, it healeth much.

Another: Take the kernels of Abyricks one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Pastick, and vnripe Sallet oyle, of each three ounces, the iuyce of Bloes, Dragagant, Gum, and Fish lime, or Asinglas, which haue been long steeped and are dissolved in the foresaid oyle, of each three quarters of an ounce, temper them together, and dip Cotton therein, and hold it continually on the fundament. You may also prepare this following: Take Pastick, Spica, Cyper rotes, Squinant, Calmus, Saffron, and Pyrrh, of each alike much, make a plaister thereof with red Wine, and lay it ouer the Lyuer.

Item, take the iuice of Plantaine two ounces, Rose water halfe an ounce, beaten seedes of Butchers brome, as much as is needefull for to make a milde plaister, lay this vpon the Arsegit.

Here nowe followe some Salues.

Take oyle of Hirtle and of Pasticke, of each one ounce, *Trocisci de Carabe*, Paper gletwe, burnt Dates stones, burnt Iwoye, *Sandaraca*, and Bloodstone, of each one dragme, Ware as much as is needefull for to make therewith a soft salve, annoynt therewith the fundament.

Or take beaten Plantain, *Verbasum*, Willow leaues, Hirtle leaues, and Horse tayles, of each a like much: to an ounce and a halfe of this powder, ad ten greines of Campher, and oyle of

of Roses as much as is needfull for to make salve thercof. This stancheth blood, and dyeth gentle.

A precious salve. Take Comin, Caraway, Rue seed, *Ameos*, *Seseli*, and *Gallia Muscata*, of each one dragma and a halfe, Rosin three dragmes, oyle of Will two ounces, Sallet oyle one ounce, *Lignum Aloes* and Cloues, of each halfe a dragma; melt the Rosin in the oyle, and temper it with the other things being beaten small, stir it then well about untill it be a thicke salve. This salve verily hath great vertues, it stancheth the excessive Termes in women, if they annoint the raynes and Pips therewith: being applyed on the Pauell and the stomacke it expelleth wind, and taketh away vomiting & parbreacking. Will you then haue it stronger to vse for the Pyles: then temper amongst it two scruples of Saffron, and one dragma of *Opium*.

Other good Salues moe.

Take dyed Dyege pils, beate them very small, put thereto a roasted Apple, and bruse it in a dish; then temper the foresaid powder amongst it untill it be as thicke as a Salve: then wash first the Pyles with Plantaine water, and afterwards annoynt it with the foresaid salve.

Take two ounces of newe Ware, three ounces of Hony, fower ounces of Butter; melt them all together, and straine it warme thowle a cloth: then set it vpon the fire again, and stir therein as much Wheate flower untill it be as thicke as pap, and then lay it thereon. Item, take white Dogs dung, that hath eaten nothing but bones, burne it to ashes, and make a salve thereof with cleane Barrowes grease, and annoynt therewith the Pyles, and then strowe thereon the powder of *Hermodeciles*. Or take the stones of Indian *Spicobalang*, burne them to powder; thereof take halfe an ounce, prepared Iron dross one quarter of an ounce, temper them well together with the iuice of Plantaine in a mortar, and therewith annoynt the Arse gut within and without.

If so be that these foresmentioned will not helpe, then take two ounces of the iuice of Roses, the brayed whites of a couple of eggs, Gips three dragmes; bruse them in a mortar one amongst another, and vse it as aforesaid. The like is also counselled, when as this bleeding commeth too soze, that the *Basilica* is to be opened, whereby to deriue and withdraue the blood, and afterwards that he be bathed with water wherein Linseed and the seedes of Hollihocks be decocted; or at the least wise that he be well fomented therewith. Lastly, like as it is said already, there must be layd thereon beaten *Parietarie*, or *Bellitorie* of the wall.

For to foment withall, take Pomegranate blossomes, Roses, Cipers nuts, seedes of Butchers Brome, Pomegranate pils, Hirtle seede, the iuice of Sloes, Frankincence, of each halfe an ounce, beate them a little, and seethe them in thicke red wine, and water of each a like much, and foment the place with sponges: or set the patient in water wherein Gals, Pomegranate blossomes, Butchers Brome, Hirtle seede and such like are decocted.

Item, seethe Turnep leaues in water, and therewith wash oftentimes the fundament metely warme. Another: Boyle Rose campion in thicke red wine, and foment the Pyles often therewith.

If so be that throught all these remedies the blood be not stanchd, then dip a little woll in boylng oyle, and lay it hot vpon it, then will it cease. Afterwards place him in water wherein Gals, Pomegranate pils and the blossomes, the barke of the Medlar tre, Seruices, Roses and Allom of each one ounce beaten grosse were decocted: But red wine were moze forcible for this.

Howe that the inward Pyles are to be stanchd.

Of this hath mention ben made at the first; and for this purpose doe serue these foresaid remedies, if they be to be had. For the stanching of these Pyles, if they doe blede incessuely, then is this salve especially to be ordayned for them: Take Pomegranat blossomes and pils, burnt Pussel shels, Frankincense, Passicke, Dragon blood, sealed earth, and Copwebs, of each a like much; make a powder thereof with dissolued Kinglas, and common gleeue in steled water: make then a taint of Hares haire, or at leastwise of woll, and lay it to steepe therein, and put it into the fundament, refreshing it oftentimes.

What

What is to be vsed inwardly to staunch this bleeding.

For this excessive bleeding of the Pyles are these thinges following highly commended : Take *Mirabolani Indi*, *Emblici*, *Bellirici* a little parched, of each five dragmes, *Perles* halfe a dragme, temper them all together with the iuice of Garlick, and vse halfe a drag. thereof at one time with steeld water : the party is also euery morning to eate a couple of confected *Spirabolans* *Chebuli*, and to fast fower howers vpon it, and that during the space of ten daies, or as long as the bleeding continueth. A stronger : Take the confection of *Triphera*, *ex parte Phenonis*, or *de Scorja ferri*, (of the which you will) one quarter of an ounce or lesse, tempered in two ounces of Purslaine water. Also the iuice of Parrow may be taken for this one ounce and a halfe : the same stancheth much. Item take *Mozmelwood*, *Venus haire*, and *Sorell*, of each one handfull, *Sorell* seede and the seedes of Plantaine, *Opelons*, Purslane & *Roses*, of each one dragme ; seethe them in fayre well water, afterwards wring it out, and put thereto the shales of yellowe *Spirabolans* one quarter of an ounce, red and white prepared *Cozall*, Citron seede, of each halfe a dragme, let it seethe to thre or fower ounces, then mire with this decoction *Syrupum Acetosum Compositum* one ounce, *Syrupum de Plantagine* halfe an ounce, take this certaine daies one after another in the morning betimes. For this is also good one quarter of an ounce of *Galbanum*, dissolued in water and dronken.

A very commendous confection for to be taken allwaies before meat : Take Butchers brome seede, parched seede of broad Plantaine, the iuice of Sloes, and Coziander, of each one scruple, Amber all beaten small, and Sugar which is dissolued in Purslaine water thre ounces : take thre dragmes thereof at one time. Aboue all these astringent medicines you shall finde manie more in the discourse of the excessive flure of the Termes in women : also in the first part where many are specified for the staunching of blood, the which are altogether good for this purpose.

How that the Pyles are to be opened. §.6.



What good this bleeding of the Pyles doth cause when it commeth by nature and of it self, and from what sickness it wil preserve a man, it is partly declared in the §.5. Likewise what this bleeding doth procure if it be staunched contrary to the old custome : also what inconueniences may come and ensue thereof. When as this bleeding discontinueth, and the Pyles doe bere the patient with great paine & extuberation, then are they to be opened for to let the blood haue his accustomed course ; for this preserveth one (besides all the recited perillous maladies) from all corroding vicers, wildfire, cankers, madnes, melancholy, falling sickenes, enflaming of the Lights, both the kindes of dropsies and consumption. And if so be that this blood be staunched, then is it to be feared, that all the foresaid diseases may ensue thereby : therfore when any body desireth to open them, then are these thinges following to be vsed.

First put the sicke body in a bath whereby the Pyles may be mollified. For in the steede thereof make this fomentation : Take *Parierom*, field *Hints*, and *Hallowes*, seethe them in wine, and receiue the vapo: thereof from beneath, sitting on a close stole metely warme : the next day after open the *Saphea*, or the *Pedian*. The *Saphea* is vpon the hindermost part of the sofe, besides the hyle, whereby the melancholicke blood is drawen downward : afterwarde annoynt the Pyles with oyle of bitter Almonds, or oyle of *Puts* : also a little Cotton is good for this, made wet in the iuice of *Onions*, and laid thereon. This may you effect also with the Gals of all beasts, although the *Dre gall* be especially commended aboue al the rest. Secondly, put *Horsleaches* into them throught a pipe, whereby they may fall right vpon the Pyles, for by nature they doe drawe out the melancholicke blood, which is contrary to the boring cups : Wherefore if there be boring cups set vpon it, then must they be fastened vnpickt, be it on man or woman, and that betwene the priuities and the Arse gut. Thirdly, rub the Arse gut with fig leaues untill it begin to bleede, in like sort may the powder of *Pepe*, of *Parierom*, of *fleawort*, of *Swines bred*, and of *Pepper*, or any other biting powder, as *Cantharides* and *Esula* : also *Flammula* may be laid thereon. But if you will haue milder things, then take the iuice of *Centozie*, or water wherein a good quantitie of *Hallowes* be decocted. Item, beaten *Staues acre* tempered with *Vonie*.

Fourthly, this is the most certain way, viz. that two or three pyles be opened with the flem, and to the end they may not shut suddenly together againe, like as their nature is, then vse this salue following: Take oyle of Peach kernels, of Abzicock kernels, (or the same kernels beaten) and the iuice of Garlick, of each one quarter of an ounce, Ware, as much as is needefull for to make a salue. But if so be that these inward Pyles cannot be seene, then must the patient be required once to strayne hard as if he would goe to the stole. Do not the Pyles as yet appeare thereby: then let a bore or cup with a wide mouth be set vpon the fundament, when these haue pluckt out the Arsegut, then open a vaine or twayne that be fullest. Fifthly, vse this salue following: Take small beaten Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Dre gals one ounce, Wineger t two ounces, temper them all together, put therein some Cotton, or wet a cloth, and rub it well therewith. Item, take Centozie, *Rapontica*, Staues acre, *Flammula*, and white Pesewort, of each alike much, temper it with Dre gall, and the iuice of Vinions; let it then dry, stampe it, and once againe do as before. Reiterate this soweze times together, when you will vse this, then wash well the Pyles with warme water, and temper the foresayd powder with Dre gall, and annoynt therewith the Pyles.

Another. Take two small Vinions, soweze heads of Garlick, beate them together, & temper them with the meale of Lupins, and with very eager Wineger vnto a plaister, which will open the Pyles immediately.

Sixtly, make a long suppositoze of Swines bread, put it vp into the fundament, & keepe it therein a whole night; if it come out, then put in another, vntill the Pyles begin to blode. Also with the suppositozies of wild Cucumber rootes do the like. Item, take Coloquinte three drag. bitter Almonds halfe an ounce, sodden Hony three ounces, and make suppositozies thereof, and vse another euery fye holwes, so that the Pyles will then blode immediately. Some do open these vaines with hote yrons, and some through Cauteries potentiall, as *Arsenicum* and such like, but because they are perilous, it is better to rest with the former remedies.

Against the paine of the Pyles. §. 7.



If so be that there be any impostume, besides the paine of the Pyles, outwardly on the Arsegut, then must the patients Liner vaine be opened on the right hand, and this plaister following layd vpon the fundament thereby to asswage the paine: Take the yolke of a roasted Egge, one dragme of Saffron, *Opium* halfe a dragme, Linseed meale, Wheate meale, the muscilage of Linsede, Butter, and Goats suet, of each halfe an ounce, a fresh yolke of an Egge, Roses one dragme and a halfe, Ware as much as is needefull for to make therewith a soft plaister. Item, take Hollyhock rootes sixe ounces, Lilly rootes one ounce and a halfe, great Pallowes and Penbane, of each one dragme and a halfe, Cammomill one ounce, Helilot and Dill seede, of each one quarter of an ounce: let these sethe well all together, and stamp them to growts then temper therewith Fenegræke meale, Linsede meale, and Barly meale, of each three quarters of an ounce, oyle of *Sesamum* one ounce and a halfe, *Opium* halfe a dragme: make thereof a soft plaister, with the decoction wherein they were boyled.

Many kindes of Salues, against the paine of the Pyles.

Take oyle of the kernels of Abzicocks one ounce, oyle of Roses halfe an ounce, Ducks grease, and washt Butter, of each three dragmes, *Bdellium* one quarter of an ounce, melt it in the foresayd oyles, Ware as much as is needefull therewith to make a soft plaister, & take oyle of Peach kernels, and oyle of bitter Almonds, of each one ounce, liquid Sytyar, *Bdellium*, of each one dragme, temper them well together, and therewith annoynt the grieve.

Item, take oyle of Roses, oyle of the yolks of Eggs, Ducks and Hens grease, of each halfe an ounce, Ware, three quarters of an ounce, melt them all together, and vie it like as the rest, couering it with warme clothes.

Item, take of that well knowen plaister *Diachilon* one ounce, oyle of Roses halfe an ounce, the yolke of an Egge, Saffron and *Opium*, of each one scruple, temper it well together, and therewith annoynt the place where the paine is.

Another.

Another. Take *Opium* one dragma, dissolve it in Rose water, make Cotton wet therein, and lay it vpon the Pyles, and keepe it a little while therein, it doth presently asswage the paine. But note, that all these narchotick and stupefactiue remedies must be applyed warme vnto it.

Item, take oyle of Roses and Violets, of each alike quantitie, and lay it warme vpon it with a wollen cloth. D; take oyle of Roses and fresh Butter one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of Garlick one dragma, *Bolus*, Dragon blood, Gum, Roses, Myrrh, and Pomegranat blossoms, of each two scruples, powne all that is to be pownded, and temper them all together. Item, take oyle of Roses, and the white of an Egge, of each alike much, with a few crums of bread steeped in spulke, and a little Saffron tempered amongst it, and so vse it. Item, take Wine cutte two quarts, and the yolks of two Eggs, well bzaied, Saffron halfe a dragma, Cammomill powder, and Dill powder, of each one dragma, temper them together. D; (that which is moze maruellous and better) Take the yolks of foure Eggs, oyle of Roses thre ounces, Saffron one dragma, temper them together: this is somewhat stronger: Take the oyle of water Lillyes, Cammomill and Dill, of each one ounce, Saffron one dragma, the yolks of thre Eggs, Barly meale, two ounces, let these sette together in two ounces of the iuice of Lettice, untill the iuice be wasted, then put thereto Venbaue seede, and *Opium*, of each one dragma, and lay it vpon the Pyles.

Item, take the middle of cozne roses, and temper it with the oyle of Abzicock kernels vnto a soft saue, and vse it as the rest, for it is very good, and approued.

Philonium Romanum rubbed on the Pyles, asswageth the paine greatly. Item, take fresh Butter, and oyle of Violets, of each halfe an ounce, and beate amongst it the white of an Egge. D; take oyle of Roses, and Linsæde oyle, of each one ounce, oyle of Abzicock kernels one ounce and a halfe, muscilage of fenegroke, and of Linsæde, Butter and Goats suet, of each one ounce, the yolks of thre Eggs, and Ware, as much as is needefull for a saue.

Another. Take Linsæde, Hollyhock seede, fenegroke, *Verbascum* seede, S. Johns Wort, Pallowes, and Wounds tong, of each one handfull, sette them together in water, and soment the place infected with a sponge, afterwards annoynt the foresayd place with oyle of Eggs, for euery ounce and a halfe whereof, haue one greine of *Opium*. D; take Sallet oyle as much as you thinke good, pownded Chalke as much as is needefull therewith to make a plaister, it dyeth well, and coletth much. This can oyle of Oliues do also alone, being made warme, and Shæpes wool vndreft dipped in it, and so applyed vnto the Pyles. Item, take Herdigreace one quarter of an ounce, burnt Allome one ounce, dissolve them in Wine, and then vse it with Shæpes wool. D; take Ducks grease, the fat of Shæpes wool, Goats suet, and white Ware, of each alike quantitie molten together. Item, take Harts suet one ounce & a half, the grease of a Heron that halfe an ounce, melt and stirre them together untill they be very white. This next following is passing forrible for to asswage the paine: Take a great Dimion, make it hollow within, and fill it with Sallet oyle, or fresh Butter: afterwards close it againe, and rost it in the ashes untill it be mellow, then binde it on the Pyles. Also you must boyle Dimions to growot, and temper them with Sugar, and vse it, as is said: they be both very good. Item, annoynt the Pyles with the iuice of Rosemary or Cloues, and lay a Peach leafe vpon it, this asswageth much the paine. This following dyeth, and easeth also the paine: Take pownded Houslecke two ounces, small brused litharge of Gold one quarter of an ounce, sette them with fresh Butter to the thickness of a saue. These two salues ensuing do mollifie the hardnes, and take away the paine: Take Ducks and Hens grease, of each one ounce, oyle of Roses two ounces, Ware as much as shall suffice: let them melt together, and cole afterwards, then mixe the yolke of an Egge amongst it, and one dragma of *Opium*, and halfe a dragma of Saffron.

Item, take fine *Bolus*, Gum, Salltick, Dragon blood, Roses, and Pomegranat blossoms, of each thre dragmes, powne them all small, Butter one ounce, oyle of Roses thre ounces, iuice of Garlick thre ounces, iuice of red Sarifrage foure ounces, melt all that is to be molten, and temper the rest amongst it, this alayeth the swelling, asswageth the paine, dyeth and healeth all vlcers, and it is also especial good for all clefts of the fundament.

Certaine Pouders for the same.

Take Garden Snailles as many as you please, put them into a pot stopped tight, and burne them at a potbakers ouen to ashes, strowe these vpon the Pyles, it asswageth the paine

forthwith: also it is to be asswaged with Egge Shells, wherein Chickens haue bene hatched, or with dried Cipers nuts powdered to powder, and strowed thereon, as before.

Of fomenting, bathing, and such like.

Take Mallowes, Hollihocke leaues, Violet leaues, Bearesfoote, Carlicke and Parietarie, of each two handfuls, Cammomill, *Amaranthus*, of each one handfull, chop the herbes, sethe them in water, and place the patient lukewarme therein. Or take Oken leaues, Houndstong, Mallowes and Cammomill, of each two handfuls, Fenegræke, Linsæd, of each one ounce, stampe and sethe them in water; then make a sponge wet therein, and so applie it warme vnto the fundament. Also you may lay these herbes following, being sodden, thereupon. Item, take small beaten Bease, cast them on a hot stone, and receiue the vapo: from beneath: it swageth the paine, it drieth wonderously, and taketh away all superfluous flesh. If so be that the fume or smoke be nysome to you, then put some wine thereto. Item, take Caruway, make it pretie moyst with wine, cast it also vpon a hot stone, and receiue the smoke, as aforesaid: or take *Gariophyllata* and Lady mantle, of each one handfull, sethe it in a bag, and therewith foment the raines. This hath holpen whereas the piles hang out a finger long, and it cannot hurt women with childe.

Take Venus haire and Water toych, of each a like quantitie, butter as much as you thinke good, let it sethe all together, powre the butter thowow a cloth, and herewith annoynt the pyles: it is said that this hath holpen the piles, where the paine hath continued twelue yeeres long. You may also annoynt the piles with Ducks greafe, wherein Coleworts haue bene fried, be it before, or after the bath.

Of the Piles which are called *Verrucales*. §.8.



Note that this sort of Piles are called *Verrucales*, for that they be much harder than the other, and therefore haue more neede of mollifying and dissoluing remedies: and those must be used according to the oportunitie of the time and the age of the patient. In the sommer there is to be laid thereon three yolks of eggs with oyle of Violets, also swete unsalted butter, or oyle of swete Almonds tempered with muscilage of Linsæde and Fenegræke. If so be then the paine be intolerable, then temper a little *Opium*, *Mandragora*, Benbane seede, Poppie seede, or such like amongst it. The olde Physicians describe very many such like things for remedies, but these aforesaid shall be here sufficient.

Of the Piles that do hang far out. §.9.



But when as the Piles do hang far out, and so do drie that they waxe blacke and stinking, then are they often to be annoynted with warme butter, vntill the blacknes be againe cleane: and if so be that such stinking moisture would proceede further, then vse the foresaid co:stues. But in case that this rotting cease, then will it heale forthwith with the salue of Ceruse and such like. There are also used sometimes for this hot irons. Also while they be greene, they may be cut off with a paire of sizzers, and afterwards the white of an egge and oyle of Roses laid vpon it, to asswage the paine. But when they be olde, then it is safest that they be bound about with a silke thred, and so often repeate the same till they die, and fall away of themselves. The which afterwards is to be further healed with the salue *Apotholorum*, and to lessen the paine, scrape the silke thred or horse haire in Rose water before, wherein is dissolved two or three graines of *Opium*. In the same manner may all other warts of the bodie be diuened away, whereof we will speake in the fift part.

Here before in the common description of the Piles, we haue rehearsed the kindes of these greuous Piles. Thowow these Piles there is to be feared, when they begin to corrode, that they may so infect the Arse gut, that there may follow a Canker or fistula, yea that which is more, if there follow a salt desurion to them, that the waies may be so dilated and opened, that the patient might blede to death. For this disease, there is great heed to be taken, to forbear all hot meates,

meates, as it adishes, Mustard, Carlicke, Onions, and from all spiced meates. For this must he also abstaine from all ouer coling and slimie things, as fish, dowe, and all entrailes, sinewes and skins of beasts. Wherely good red wine shall be his drinke. But if (as it often falleth out) there come any other Piles, then are such meates and drinks to be forborne as make melancholike blood, as pottage of Beanes and Pease: but red and white Pease, and Turkie Beanes may be eaten sometimes best with Sallet oyle. Also in this case the Median is to be opened, and five or six ounces of blood to be let out, according to the strength and age of the patient. But if this letting of blood may not be done for some causes, and that it be thought better to applie Horse leaches, as is already said, that may safely be done: yet first make the place moist with cold water, for then will they fasten the rather. When as the Leaches be full, then fall they off of themselves: if not, then strike them off with a twig, or burne them off with a Tlare candle. But if after their falling off the bleeding will not stanch, then lay this plaister following thereon: Take Starch and Mill dust, of each one drag. fine Bolus, Dragon blood, Aloe, *Sarcocolla*, Frankincense, *Hypocistis*, of each one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of Plantaine as much as is requisite, temper it in a leaden mortar untill it be very tough.

A plaister: Take of hard Pitch three ounces, Rosin and Yunglas, of each one ounce, Dragagant, Gum, *Sarcocolla*, of each one dragme and a halfe, refuse of Iron halfe an ounce, make a plaister therof with red vinegar. This is for this purpose as forcible a remedy as may be found: Item, take wood ashes two ounces, Parrow, Bellitory of the wal, Cammomil, & roasted Squils, of each two ounces, burnt Allome one quarter of an ounce, red wine as much as is needfull for to make a plaister, and apply it warme. Item, take Parrow, Parietarie, of each one handfull, Salt halfe an ounce, and vse this daily. It is said also that this for certaine will cure the Piles, namely, Venus haire with Aristologie beaten and tempered with red wine, and so continually vsed thereon.

This following is said to be infallible: Take the ashes of an herbe which the Germans call Koozwoyt and roasted Squils, of each two ounces, honie as much as is needfull for to temper this withall: apply it, and it healeth very speedily.

The confectiō of Iron *dyosse de Scoria ferri*, must be vsed sixe daies one after another, euery morning one quarter of an ounce, and fast five howers vpon it. And if the Piles be without any affluē of humors, or other accident, then are you to vse this following: Take oyle of Abzicocke kernels three ounces, liquide Sytyar one quarter of an ounce, sower hard sodden yolks of eggs, prepared Iron dyosse, *Sandaraca* and *Sarcocolla* steeped in womans milke, of each one dragme and a halfe, Puske three graines; buse this a long time together, afterwards temper as much Barly meale amongst it as is needfull for a plaister, annoynt therewith the Piles inwardly and outwardly. But if so be that the patient haue neede of any purging, vse thereto those things that are ordained in the description of the other Piles. Or take of the confectiō *Diasena* three quarters of an ounce, temper it with whay of milke, and take it betimes in the morning. After the purgation the Arse gut is to be annoynted the next day with these things next after following.

Take Swines head, Cowslips, *Bistoria*, Dog fennell and red Sarisrage, of each one dragm and a halfe, *Alumen lamenum* one drag. oyle of Abzicocke kernels and Rosine, of each one ounce: temper them all together, and annoynt therewith sower times a day, and lay this plaister following vpon it.

Take the plaister *Apostolicon* that shall be hereafter described, halfe an ounce, burnt Coppe-ras, Frankincense, *Colophonia* and Myrriment, of each one scruple: mingle it all together in a mortar, till that it be a plaister, with a little dissolved *Laudanum*, but it may not be laid vpon the fundament. But whereas the lest exulceration is, the vaine exulcerated is to be annoynted with the foresaid salue, and if there come any scabs thereto, then must they be oftentimes annoynted with the oyle of swete Almonds.

The Plaister *Apostolicon* which is also called *Triapharmacon*, is described after two manner of waies: the first is a good *Triapharmacon*, for that it is made of three things, as followeth.

Take small Litharge of golde and vineger, of each sower ounces, olde Sallet oyle eight *Apostolicon* ounces, let them seethe so long together untill all the vineger be sodden away, alwaies stirring it about, till it be the thickness of a plaister. This plaister maketh the flesh growe, and

and healeth all wounds. Some put amongst it one quarter of an ounce of Merdigrease, Ware and Turpentine, of each as much as pleaseth him best, and when it is made, then it is called at the Apothecaries *Apostolicon*.

The second: Take eight ounces of Sallet oyle, small brused litharge of golde solwer ounces, Vineger eight ounces, let it sethe well, and then put thereto prepared Galbanum, Frankincense, Pyrrhe, Pasticke, Tormentill, of each halfe an ounce, Dragon blood thre quarters of an ounce, Aloe two ounces beaten small, Ware one ounce, then mingle them altogether, and let it sethe to a plaister.

There are other means moe to heale these kinds of Wyles, namely that they be cut off where they be thinnest: But by reason that then they bleede much, therfore it is moze certaine to take away the same with actual cauteries or hot irons, which is not vnknowen to all Chirurgicals, which is afterward better to be holpen.

Some take them away with potentiall cauteries or corrosiues, as with poysoned *Anacardus*, *Dypiment*, *Arsenicum*, and such like: Afterward they lay salue thereon, that asswageth the paine, and mollifie the escars with swete butter, or some other fatnes. But the binding wherof we haue spoken is moze certaine.

Of the impostumes in the Arse gut. §.10.



It happeneth also very well when that one commeth to burne, cut, or corrode these Wyles, that thereby the blood is stancheth: which notwithstanding, so that it cannot haue his course, doth sometimes putrifie there, and impostumate, and causeth also therewith great paine, heate, Agnes and thirst: for which these things following may be vled. First, the Liuer vaine in the arme (on the side of the accident) is to be opened, thereby to diminish the affluent blood. If the patient also be corpulent, then are boring cups to be set on his shoulders with pricking. Further, you are to binde the vppermost parts of the bodie, and to chase them, by reason that for this accident may no purging medicines be vled, to the end that thereby the matter may be drawne out downewards. But if the great obstruction or binding of the body require any purgation, then must the same be brought to passe with Clusters, and according to the opportunity of the time, to open also a vaine besides the Ankles, and to vse this salue.

Take oyle of Abzicocke kernels two ounces, *Bellum* one ounce, liquid Styzar one ounce and a quarter, fresh butter, Duckes grease, Starch, of each one ounce, white lead one drag. and a halfe: temper it a long time in a mortar, and make a salue thereof, annoynt therewith this impostume, when the gut is turned and drawen forth, you shall finde good ease thereby.

Secondly, take grease, Pallowes, fenegreke seede, of *Sesamum* and *Linsede*, of each five ounces: sethe them in water, straine them, stamp and temper them with halfe an ounce of Rie meale, oyle of Abzicocke, vuripe Sallet oyle and oyle of swet Almonds, of each one ounce, roots of Smalage, Elecampane roots, of each halfe a dragme: lay this warme thereon, or let it thereon, that it touch very well the Arse gut, it is very good.

Thirdly, if this impostume be not hereby sufficiently mollified, then vse this hereafter following: Take Sallet oyle seven pounds and a halfe, swete red wine sixe quarts, Saffron one dragme and a halfe, *Bellum* one ounce: sethe all these together untill the Gum be dissolved: herein shall the patient be set 4. times a day, being made luke warme, as deep as to his priuities.

Other vse for such Impossumes as procede of heate, this plaister: Take Pallowes and Pighthead, of each one handfull, Violets and shaled Lentils of each two ounces: let this sethe till it be as thicke as grout: afterwards stir it wel about in a mortar, & mingle therewith oyle of Violets, Roses and the white of an eg, of each a like much as shall seme needefull for to make a plaister: spread then thereof on the Arse gut, and lay ouer it.

Take white Lead sixe dragmes, Frankincense one dragme and a halfe, litharge of gold one quarter of an ounce: This being beaten small, temper it with oyle of Roses, and therewith annoynt the impostume, spread it on a cloth, and lay it thereon.

Item, take the crums of white bread, or in the steade thereof thre ounces of pill dust, oyle of swete Almonds two ounces, beaten Saffron halfe an ounce, temper them one amongst another, and lay them warme vpon it.

If there be a great heate present, then soment the impostume with Rose water, Purslaine water, or water of Nightshade, and afterward apply this salve following thereon: Take crums of white bread three ounces, oyle of Roses two ounces, Saffron, Opium, of each one quarter of an ounce, fowre yolks of Eggs, fresh Butter one ounce, mire them well together, and vse it as above. But if it procede of a cold cause, then vse this following: Take Onions, Garlicke, and Moulblade, of each alike quantitie, boyle them till they be soft, and beate them to a grout, afterwards adde as much Butter and oyle of Cammomils as shall suffice.

All that hath bene written before to asswage the paine, may be also used for this: But note this, if so be the impostume begin for to mature, then are you to looke to open it, to the end that the matter corode not inward, and so there follow a fistula after it, which hapneth very often.

Afterwards vse this salve following for to finish the cure: Take burnt lead, Cypers nuts, and prepared litharge of Gold, of each one dragma, Rosin one ounce, oyle of Pastick halfe an ounce, Mace three quarters of an ounce: first melt the Rosin with the Mace, and when it be ginneth to streame, then mingle the foresaid powder amongst it: you may also strow the powder of Knotgras vpon it, for it dryeth much, and causeth great alterations.

Of the Clefts that are called *Rhagades*. §. 11.



What manner of infirmitie it is, is sufficiently declared in the fifth Chapter 2. §. These may procede of five sundry causes in the Arseut: as of the bloudie flux called *Dysenteria*, of too hard excrements; of heate and drought of the Arseut; otherwhiles also of the Pyles that corode inward; lastly, of some outward inconueniences that cleaue the Arse gut: the signes are paine, and burning, and sometimes such clefts as may be seene, and do yeld a blacke, greene, or red stinking matter. There are also two sorts, the one with matter, and the other without matter, whereof shall severally be spoken.

First for to cure those that are without matter, the partie is first of all to be purged (if neede do require the same) and to open a vaine, like as it is told of the Pyles, and especially with *Epithymo*, *Polypodie*, and *Mhay*, by reason of the melancholick bloud: also in like manner with the pils of *Bdelio*, or with Clisters, and other like purgations. Afterwards when these clefts do yeld matter, then are they often to be washed with water, wherein are sod Roses, *Polypodie*, and Allome, and afterwards annoynt them with this salve following: Take ashes of Muscle shels, and rootes of *Polypodie*, of each two ounces, leaues of the Oliue tree halfe an ounce, pound them all small, and temper them with oyle of Roses, and if they be with inflammation, then vse salve made with Ceruse and Campher and other salues that follow hereafter. This following is marvellous good, for it dryeth, coaleth, and also healeth.

Take litharge of Gold, white lead and burnt lead, of each alike much, buse it in a leaden mortar with Rose water, oyle of Roses, and whites of Eggs as much as is needefull, and with a little Campher, untill that it be wholie blacke, annoynt the clefts therewith, and lay a cloth ouer them. If there be no heate thereby but only a manifest drought, then take Hens and Ducks grease, marrow of Harts bones, and Calues bones, and the fatnes of Sheeps woll, of each halfe an ounce, fresh Butter, oyle of swete Almonds, oyle of Poppie seedes, Dragagant, oyle of Lillies, and oyle of Peach kernels, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pyrrh, Starch, Pill dust, Pomme, Frankincense, Pastick, Dragons bloud, white lead, and burnt Allome, of each one dragma, Mace one ounce and a halfe, melt all these in the foresaid oyle and fats, and make thereof a salve, this salve asswageth the paine, moistneth and causeth the flesh to grow.

Item, take yelloiw Mace, oyle of *Sesamum*, Ducks grease, Parrow of Dre bones, the fat of Cammels fete, or (in the stead of them) Goats suet, or Hens grease, and *Bdelium*, of each a like much, melt these together in Muscilage, Linseed, and temper them together, for it is very com- modious. Item, take Turpentine, Ducks grease, oyle of Violets, of each two ounces, dissolved Dragagant and Mace, of each one ounce, pound Dragagant two ounces, temper them by the fire vnto a salve.

Or take muscilage of Licbane one ounce, Hens grease one ounce and an halfe, the yolke of a new layd egge, Saffron one dragma, temper them one with an other, and annoynt the clefts therewith.

Another.

Another. Take Dragagant and Gall nuts, of each a like much; temper them with molten Ore luct, and a little oyle of Roses vnto a salue.

But if the vlcers be deepe, and yeeld much stinking matter, then are both outwardly and inwardly sharp waters to be vsed fo; them, and especially dresse it with the remedies that are described in the first Part and the eight Chapter, of the vlcers of the Nose, o; strowe them with Verdigrease, and powdered *Anacardus* fo; to cleanse them. But note, that this corrosiue inwardly in the Arsegut is not wholly without danger, vnlesse the Arsegut be drawen out by a boring cup. Afterwards roole and heale them with white lead, o; any other cooling and healing salue.

Item, take washed white lead, Aloe, Pisticke, Frankincense, and Dragon blood, of each thre dragmes, oyle of Roses one ounce and a halfe, Make as much as is needefull. Fo; this you may also vse the salue that was before described, and made in the leaden mortar, o; prepare this following.

Take Pomegranate blossomes and the pils, Pirrhe, washed white Lead, burnt Lead, washed Aloes, seedes of Roses, Frankincense, Pisticke, Dragon blood, and burnt Pusell shels, of each one quarter of an ounce, Olive leaues, burnt Allom, *Alumen plumosum*, Verdigrease, and Litharge of Gold, of each one dragme and a halfe, Make one ounce, melt this in as much oyle of Roses as is needefull to make a salue: vse this often times, and wash the vlcers twice o; thrice a day with water wherein Gals, burnt Allom, Olive leaues and Roses are decocted. These are very good fo; all such like diseases, being holden ouer the vapo; o; dampe of water wherein Pallowes, Hollihocke rootes, Violet leaues, and Beare fote is sodden.

Of the Fistula and Canker in the Arsegut. §.12.



This infirmity commeth very sodainly into the Arsegut, and albeit it hath bene accustomed (like as in other the like diseases in the body) to vse incision o; an actual cauterie: notwithstanding in this place it must be vtterly omitted, that there be no sinewes hurt. Fo; it might easily thereby befall, that the patient afterwards should neuer stay his o; dure, but (against his will) to let his excrements passe from him. The cause of these fistulaes may be the bad healing of the diseases in the Arsegut, be it of what cause soeuer it may proceede. In like manner also thorow vsing of the Pyles badly, o; any other impostume that hath not ben opened in time, but that the matter was left to stinke o; putrifie therein, all which may cause fistulaes, as is aboue said; amongst the which there are some that penetrate the Arsegut, others the necke of the bladder, and some that remaine alwayes at a stay. These are hereby discerned, that either the vrin, the o; dure, o; windes passe thorow the fistula. Also if the Puscles be therewith infected, then can he not retaine o; stay his excrements, but as soone as it descendeth to this place it passeth from him.

If then these fistulaes be moyst and matterie, and the matter sharp and stinking, and wareth from day to day bigger, then it is a signe of a depascent fistula, fo; the which strong remedies must be vsed to stay the same, that they corode not deeper: fo; it hapneth otherwhiles that these depascent vlcers will consume the whole buttocks and all parts adiacent, and bring a body at the last after many miseries to his liues end. But if so be that this fistula corode no deeper, then must the same be cured with drying things, so that fo; a while they neither runne no; swell any moze: but if so be then the matter come to runne againe, then must be done as before, and that so long as one liueth. As concerning then the curing of this fistula, it must alwayes be looked to that the hole be kept open, which may best be effected with the pith of an Alder tre, dyed Gentian rootes, o; Wyony rootes: afterwards you must vse those things that are set downe in the first part, the eight Chapter, and 11. §. and also afterwards of the fistula of the eyes. Some do commend two o; thre drops of oile of Sulphure to be inieted into the Arsegut, which will haue a wonderfull operation; and if so be that there follow any inflammation, that it should be delayed with the white of an Egge, o; fresh Butter. fistulaes and such like vlcers, are to be washed with Rosemary wine, fo; it cleanseth and keepeth the vlcers cleane, but of this fistula will we intreate further hereafter in the first part.

Of

Of the itch in the Arsegut. §. 13.



The causes of the itch in the Arsegut are folwer: First, that there remaines somewhat that is sweaty or saltish in the fundament, which causeth the same: Secondly, thozow the woymes *Ascarides*, that haue their being in the end of the Arsegut: Thirdly, some kind of vlcers that are in the lower part of the gut: Fourthly, sharp humors, as it oftentimes hapneth thozow some vncleannes that resteth in the Arsegut, and then must the Arsegut be washed with warme water, and be clesed with clothes or wolblade leaues. But if the same come thozow the small woymes, then take a sharp Clister, yet not aboue eight ounces in quantitie: also dip woll or any such like thing in soft Pitch or Turpentine, then do the woymes stick fast thereon; besides, the Pitch doth kill the woymes by nature: or annoynt a great taint with Bird lime, and binde it on a thzed that it may be drawen out againe. You may also see in this present part what hath been witten for the woymes, but if the same be caused thozow any vlcers, then vse for it the white salue, and others moe: but keepe the vlcers alwayes cleane and dry with fresh cloathes, wash the same oftentimes with water wherein Agrimony, Oline leaues, and such like are decocted, put also burnt Allom thereto, and plume Allome, and binde clothes ouer it, and keepe your selfe quiet. But if this itch procede of a sharp matter, then vse Suppositoies with *Opium*, Clisters, and others, as shall appeare hereafter for the laske or losenes of the body.

The eleuenth Chapter.

Of the inward members of the third part.



In the beginning of the third part of this our booke of practise, we haue giuen to vnderstand, how that therein are contained the Stomacke, the Liuer, the Gall, the Kidneis, the Bladder, the Bowels, and in women the Pother or wombe; but because we haue hitherto treated of the outward parts and their accidents, therefore will we now discourse orderly of the inward members; and first we will begin with the Stomacke, for that the same is couered with the Luer, and lyeth on the top thereof: for it hath not onely his beginning at the mouth of the Stomacke, but is also the meate roome or kitchen of all the other members, and therefore will we (and that by good reason) place it before.

Of the Stomack in generall. §. 1.



Vnder the *Diaphragma* or *Epidrisse*, betwene the Luer and the Gall on the right side, and the Silt on the left side, that is, right in the midst of the body, yet a little moze on the left side, there lyeth the Stomacke, that is so ordayned by nature, for that the Luer might keepe roome and scope. The Stomacke is called of the Grækes *Gaster*, *Colia*, and sometimes also (although vniuersally) *Stomachus*, and of the Latinists *Ventriculus*. It is ordained for a receiuer of the meate, to dresse the same, and afterwards, like as out of a Cubbord, to impart all that is coked, to each member his due, and that might suffice for his sustentation and nourishment, and to send out all that is vncleane or not fit for the nourishment, thozow the bowels and other naturall passages as a superfluitie. His substance is outwardly hard flesh, inwardly compacted full of vaines, rough, and with many pleites or folds, whereby it draweth the meate vnto it. His forme is long, and round, holloiw within, and like a Tunne, to let passe easily that is received, wide beneath, and nere the mouth of the Stomacke (which is properly called *Stomachus*, *Oesophagus*, and by the Arabians *Meri*) it is narrow. In comparison of the bodies of other beasts, it is not big, so that thereby it doth not much excede the blind gut *Intestinum cecum*, and is otherwise not much vnto a dogs maue. With the vppermost end of the Stomacke doth it receiue the meate, and with the lower end doth it let all that is digested fall into the bowels, from whence all

all superfluities are cast out. Both these ends of the stomacke, belowe and aboue, after that the meate is receiued, shuts vp most wonderfully, least that the concocting and digesting warmth should vanish away. For if in the mouth of the stomacke there were not such closing, then could not the meate be well digested: whereby then must insue a noysome vapour, and a diminishing of a naturall heat. So hapneth also of the lower passage of the stomack when as it, after the meate is receiued, will not be shut vp, a bad digestion and other diseases, as the sicke &c. whereof we will hereafter speake moze at large. But thus much we would write in generall of the stomacke: Now will we procede forward with particular things.

Of the necke and mouth of the stomacke. §.2.



This passage, through which the meate and the drinke descendeth out of the mouth into the stomacke, is properly one peece of the same; therefore will we first write thereof, as of the beginning of the stomacke. The necke of the stomacke is of the olde Grecians, and nowe adaies called by all learned men *Oesophagus*, and vnrightly *Stomachus*, and of the Latinists *Gula*, the which we in English doe name properly the vpper part of the stomacke, the necke; and the neathermost part, the mouth of the stomack, which lieth right in the pit of the hart. So that both these parts haue some difference, and that by reason of their situation and for other causes moe, euen as also *Galenus* maketh two sundry chapters of them: These foresaid necke and mouth of the stomacke, are subiect to many diseases, be it out of heate, cold, drought, moysture, or of anie compounded complexion. Also thow the obstruction of those partes, whereby the meate is drawen into the stomacke. Item thow impostumes, blcers, blowes, wounds, and other inconueniences, all which may hinder the swallowing, whereof much is written in the second part, the first Chapter §.5.

But we will here onely reherse somewhat of the signes, and their difference. When as now then the whole neck hath any disease, then can the meate not be but slowly swallowed. But if the disease be in a certaine place of the necke, then remayneth the meate sticking in the same place. But whether it come of heate or drought, that shall be betrayed by the drought and thirst, for that cold water is very acceptable vnto him. But if so be it procede of cold, then hath the patient neither heate nor thirst, but onely an anguish in the throat. If so be that one can hardly swallow through excessive moysture, then doth the same appeare thow much spetle and whitenes of the tongue. And the same commeth thow drought that maketh the drought of the tongue and the mouth knownen, for the patient will drinke continually, or wash his mouth with colde water. If there be any impostume in these places, then haue you the signes of Squinancie therewith; whereof we in the second part, the first chapter, the 4. §. haue mentioned. Also when he would drinke, then runneth the drinke out of the nose; neither can he addice himself to lie, but seeketh alwaies to sit vp. When commeth this disease thow we blood Cholera, that may be knownen by the pricking paine, also by the thirst, heate and Ague: and to the contrary, when the same is caused thow we colde, then is the paine small, but with drought and the painefulnes of swallowing is felt in moe places then in the place of the tumor. But if this impostume break out, then doe they cast vp matter, and are very prone to vomiting, whereby also they lose their paine in swallowing.

These impostumes are also to be knowen, if that one doe swallowe dowe, Vineger, or any other sower thing, or that is salt, not onely into the necke of the stomacke, but also euen into the shoulder blade.

And if the same be caused thow any cricke of the necke, then will the paine also be knowen there: or there groweth a bunch either before or behinde. And if so be that the same be caused thow we the crampe, then shut to the patients mouth. And he shall feele the paine most of all in the shipples, and on the breast.

But before that we come to the remedies for this infirmitie of swallowing, we must prescribe some common rules: and first, because that the necke and mouth of the stomacke are tender parts, therefore heede must be taken that there be not vsed for it any sharpe or biting things, that thereby they be not grieved nor hindered in their actions. Secondly, if these parts do rancie, or get any maladie (like as often hapneth) then must all sharpe, sower and biting things be eschued,

eschued, vnles the same things be drying withall, yet very little, because such sharpe things doe augment the same paine, doe feeble the naturall power, and enflame the whole thyoate. Thirdly, if so be that the necke of the stomacke be ouer cold, then must plaisters be laid vpon the shoulders (and there about.) But if this coldnes be in the mouth of the stomacke, then must the plaisters & other things be layd vpon the pit of the hart. Fourthly, if there be a hot impostume with paine and a cholerick body, then must he be let blood, purge, and vse other remedies, euen as hath been said in the description of the Squincie. Fifthly, the remedies that are to be vsed for the healing of the erulceration of the thyoate, and to incarnate, they are alwaies to be tempered with some tough slimie thing, to the end that they may cleaue the faster in the thyoate, and thereby also may haue the better operation.

Now to come to the remedies: If that this impediment be onely caused thowheate, or heate and drought, then purge the patient with sower Dates, Cassia, and Hanna tempered in some broth, wherein Vines, Violets, and figs haue bin sodden: for all these things doe expell such matter, and moisten the thyoate and the necke of the stomacke, like as in this disease is required.

Therefore shall the patient (and that oftentimes) vse sirup of Violets, water Lillies, and such like, and swallow the same leysurely.

There may also be made a sirup of Vines as hereafter followeth: take sower or fine Damask Vines, Violets two ounces, seedes of Lettice, Endiue, small Endiue, Purslaine of each halfe an ounce, Sugar 18. ounces, make a sirupe thereof, like as before in the introduction is taught.

Beneath vnder the neck betwene the shoulder blades there must the patient be annointed with coling oyles, or any such like plaisters layd thereon, that are tempered with oyle of Violets, water Lillies, and oyle of Roses: afterwards take wheate meale three ounces, the muscilage of fleawort, iuice of Housleake, of each one ounce and a halfe, iuice of Purslaine one ounce, stamp them together vnto a plaister.

Take the iuice of great and small Housleake, Rose water, of each two ounces, Melon seede, Lettice, Gourds, Cucumbers, Purslaine, and both kinds of Endiuers, of each one quarter of an ounce: let this seethe altogether vnto a plaister, then stamp them to growt, and vse it as aboue.

If there be no drought thereby perceiued, then may be put thereto red and white Saunders and Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, and one ounce of Vineger.

But if there be great drought therewith, then vse the muscilage of fleawort, Dragagant, the seedes of Quinces, Violets, and such like: also he must eate cold herbs (whereof the seedes are here aboue named) fried with Butter, and annoynt himselfe outwardly with all manner of beaues marrow. In like manner are also very good for him conserues of Roses, the cold losings of Dragagant, and Diapenidion without spices, and new reere eggs.

These ensuing pills are also to be prepared, and to hold them continually in the mouth, and lastly, swallow them downe: Take Dragagant, Gum of Arabia, Purslaine seede, Wallowes, and Quince kernels, of each one quarter of an ounce, Licorice one dragme and an halfe, the gumt of Cherry tree a dragme, make thereof flat pills: Barley water and Buttermilke are good drinks for this sickness, also he may drinke watred wine.

But if this impediment be caused thowhe cold (like as most commonly hapneth) and if so be that neede require, then giue to the patient some potions of Sirupo de Prussia, de Calamina, or de Hyssopo, and purge him with Diatribith, or Hieralogodion, and if it be needefull put a little Esula to it.

These tabulates shall he also hold in his mouth, and then swallow downe the iuice of them, to wit, Dianison, Diatriopiperion, Diaireos, Salomonis, Diaploris made with Huske, and such like. Vpon the shoulders must he be annoynted with the oyle of Costus, or with the oyle of Rue.

For this is also good the salues Martiaton, Agrippa, and Althea, wherevpon this plaister following is to be applied: Take Laudanum, the fat of Sheepes woll, Galbanum and Ammoniacum, of each one ounce, dyed Hints, Sage, Indy Spica, Spica Romana, and Cloues, of each one dragme, Cloare, one ounce, oyle of Spikenard as much as is needefull to make a plaister, spread it ouer a cloth halfe a quarter of a yard, in compas foure square, then drawe it ouer with Syndball, and lay it after the length from the neck to the ridge of the backe.

Amongst other Medicines may also these be vsed, that shall against a cold stomacke be described

scribed hereafter, whence is to be taken also an order of life.

If that then this impediment in swallowing be caused thozow excessive moisture, then is the first described order to be obserued: but that is not needfull to expell such exesse of matter, but to keepe a sober diet in eating and drinking: further, he must vse this gargarisme following.

Take Cypers nuts, and the leaues, of each one handfull, Frankincense and his rines, one ounce of each, burnt Allome thre quarters of an ounce, plume Allome half an ounce; sethe this in a quart of Wine, and gargarise herewith, afterwards wash cleane the mouth, but swallow it not downe: or he shall vse all that in the first part, the thirteenth Chapter, and 6. §. is taught, of the swelling of the tong.

If then a hote or cold impostume, or the Squinancie be appoehing, then rule you like as it is shewed in the second part, the first Chapter, and 4. §. of the Squinancie, now we will goe forward with the Stomacke.

To preferue and keepe a good digestion of the Stomacke. §. 3.



How much the health of man is sustained thozow a well digessing stomacke, is sufficiently knowne to all the world: and it is also very true, that if the same receiue no wholesome meate, it cannot digest it well, the which appeareth in the disease of the stomacke, that all meates must corrupt, the which may evidently be discerned thozow the sicknes that shall hereafter follow.

Therefore it is first requisite and necessarie to prescribe a rule, how to keepe this good digestion in her full efficacie. And although in all places hereafter, whereas shall be discoursed of any of the infirmities of the Stomacke, it shall be taught what shall be eschued or bled: notwithstanding, it cannot be but auayleable briefly to comprehend the same in these ten rules. The first is, of the motion of the bodie, which (as followeth) is much commended. The motion of the bodie is a preservation of a mans life, a quickning of naturall heate, and an excitation of sluggish nature, a digesture of all superfluous humors, a strengthening of all the members, an ouerthrowe of the diseases, a medicine for all anguishes, a gayning of time, renewing of youth, of mirth, of old age, a pleasure, a help of health and blessednes, an end of all infirmities, an enemy of sloth and lithernes, therefore do they seare and shun all labour, that will want mirth, and if any body desire not euery day to eate, he may keepe himselfe from all labour.

This motion is most commodious for sober folks before both mealetides, if they mone not aboute their might: for when one beginneth to be weary, then must he rest, and each one must exercise and stirre, according to the abilitie of his bodie. The men of occupations haue exercises ynough about their occupations; but if any one at any mealetide haue surfetted, then must he fast the next day, and vse temperate motions, to consume all superfluitie thozow abstinence and exercise.

All people that haue great exercise, may much better digest grosse meates, then they that are idle and lue at ease, whereby may easily be discerned the vertue of motion.

The second is of the propertie of meates, that they be not too hote of nature, or too cold, whereby they may not inflame the naturall heate, or might ouercole it, the which is also to be understood of all other qualities of meates. Secondly, prouidence must be had that all meates be well boyled, sod, and roasted, otherwise can the stomacke not digest it as it becometh.

Thirdly, binding things eaten before other meates. They binde the body, like as if they be eaten after the same, they loose, and are laxatiue. Fourthly, light meates are, Barley well sodden, well baken bread, small fishes, Partridges, Pheasants, and such like. Fifthly, meates that are acceptable to nature, will be the more willingly receiued by the stomacke, and also digested. But this is only to be understood of healthfull persons, and of them that vse the same moderately: otherwise, that is not alwayes good which is pleasant to the mouth. Sixthly, although the subtil and light meates do lesse molest digestion, and are requisite for health, yet are they nevertheless nothing the stronger or apter for labor, therefore they passe all others herein, that feede on grosse meates. Seuenthly, would or might any one not eate such healthy meates altogether: then is he notwithstanding to do the contrary as seldome as he may, tempering with some wholesome meates, like as men do pepper and wine with Mushrooms, and Spices or Carlick with fish, &c. Eighthly, slimie meates tarry long in the stomacke, before that they passe into

into the bowels. Bread with his bran goeth much sower into the bowels, than where the bran is boulded out. Ninthly, flesh boyled on the gridiron giueth good nourishment when it is digested: but it goeth slowly towards the guts. Tenthly, Pullet broths do delay the humors more than Ven broth, yea and giueth much more nourishment.

The third rule dependeth on the quantitie of the meates, whereof too much must not be taken in, least they make some grieve or winde in the body. Secondly, much meates do not mouen thorowly, but onely those that be without sharpnesse, sowernesse, saltnesse, and bitternesse. Thirdly, when any body hath taken much meate and drinke, and thereby findeth some weaknesse or brought in the stomacke, he shall then the other day afterwards fast, and sleepe the more in a temperate place. Fourthly, a haile man shall take euen so much meate, as shall not graue him. Fifthly, all they that liue laciuously and riotously, do die before their olde age. Sixtly, great bodies haue neede of more meate and drinke than small bodies: they require also more heate and vitall spirits for their sustentation. Seuenthy, much and many meates taken at one time, be preiudiciall two manner of waies: first, by reason of the variable digesture, as when light meates are mingled with grosse meates: secondly, for that it is sene, that there is more eaten of that which is pleasant in taste, than with moderate feeding would suffice.

The fourth rule containeth a good diet, whereby the meate is not to be tempered with the medicine, for that it were an vnmete cost, when as the seedes of wild Saffron, Nettles or wild Time should be mingled amongst meate, that spoyle the meate, hurt digesture, and driue it into the bowels, before the body haue his nourishment out of it.

Secondly, grosse and hard meates are to be eaten alwaies at the first, and afterwards the light meates. Thirdly, if one do eate milde and moyst things at the first, and then afterwards hard meates, then do the light meates run quickly thorow the stomacke, and leade the harde grosse meates away with them vndigested. Fourthly, all they that be losse of body, are to take at the beginning of their meale siders binding things and spices: and if not, then are they to waies first to take that which will quickly passe thorow the stomacke, and leade the way to other meates.

To this end are Melons, Peaches, and other fruites to be eaten before one eate bread or flesh: for that when as they which be harder do hinder the passage, then is the digestion spoiled, and so it is with all other kindes of meates. Fifthly, meates which be of this nature that they do not easily passe thorow, or without requisite digestion, then must the grosse meates be first taken, and the light meates last of all: as Button before Birds, and Base before Button. For the bottome of the stomacke by reason of his heate, hath more force to digest the grosse meates first, than the top or upper part of the stomacke. Sixtly, milke and sower things are not to be eaten aboue once, for that the milke runneth into the stomacke, whereby the digestion is hindered. Seuenthy, Butter milke and Radishes are not mete together, nor yet with any birds: for the birds hauing subtiler flesh, will be spoiled thorow the sharpnesse of the Radishes. Eightly, sodden wheate in flesh broth, or in water, is not to be vsed after Rice, for that both of them be of grosse nourishment, and do obstruct the waies. Ninthly, Vineger, Oyle, and all manner of saltnesse are not at any hand to be kept in Copper vessels, for that they do drawe the venomous nature of the Copper vnto them.

The fifth rule containeth the time, that in the winter and spring more meate is behouefull than in the sommer: for that then the stomacke is at the very hottest. Secondly, that there be nothing eaten vntill the sommer be digested. Thirdly, in the winter, things be not tolerable to be eaten, which do little nourish, as herbes, and such like, but compact and strong meates are to be vsed, which be long in digesting. Fourthly, in sommer is the most fit time to eate before the heate cometh, and in euening when the heate is past. Fifthly, in the spring is one to eate but little at dinner, and in sommer nothing at all. In the harvest fruites do bring many sicknesses with them: but in the winter one may eate his fill.

The sixt rule prescribeth a diet for euery complexion. First, he is not to forbear meate which is hot and drie of nature: for there is nothing more hurtfull vnto him than abstinence. Secondly, for to prelerue and keepe a good digestion, these meates are to be vsed which do best agree with euery ones complexion: to wit, if any be warme by nature, that he then feede vpon metely warme meate, and so the like for drie and moyst bodies. Thirdly, if so be that heate do increase in any one, then must coole things be taken for it. Fourthly, a melancholike man must feede vpon

moyst things and somewhat warme: A cholericke body cold and moyst meates. Fiftly, all that be hot and drie of nature, and do much exercise, for them are all light and subtile meates very hurtfull.

The seuenth rule doth yeld a reason of repletion and inanition, wherof is first to be marked, that how much the more you feede an vncleane body, so much the more doth the same annoy and hurt it: for when the meate is mixed with the corrupted humors, it is then also corrupted: the same happeneth also vnto them, who haue the stomacke full of bad humors. Secondly, no man ought so to ouercharge himselfe with meate, but that he might feele still some hunger. Thirdly, when one hath filled himselfe well the one day, although he might the next day feele some hunger, yet is he the next day to forbear as much as is possible, and to sleepe in a temperate place. Fourthly, when any accusmeth to eate flesh and to drinke wine, and doth not labour at all, the same person (to the end he may be discharged) is the oftener to be let blood. Fiftly, there is nothing worse than when one hath fed on strong meates, before they be digested to eate againe: for when as the one meate commeth to the other vndigested, then do they both spoyle. Sixtly, all they who after dinner take their supper vpon it, they must then fast out the same. Seuenthly, all that do liue soberly, and after much eating and drinking do fast againe, they liue the longer. Eighthly, all rioters and great drinkers must sometimes force themselves to vomit, and betake themselves therewith for to fast it out, and to sleepe a day times.

The eight rule comprehendeth the drinks: which first are not to be vsed so much that the meate come not to swim in the stomacke, for thereby will the digestion of the stomacke be spoiled. Secondly, albeit some be of opinion, that men ought not to drinke to their meate, yet do they speake against all skill; therefore be they not to be heard. For one ought to drinke, that the naturall heate be not aggrauated. Thirdly, when he feeleth good thirst, and when as the heate of the stomacke requireth the same, the which neuer happeneth to such as be haile, but when they do either eate or do great labour, and after a long Easterly winde. Fourthly, all sharpe, new, grosse and swete wines. Likewise, all they which are kept in Sulphured caskes, and also all Ruff ought to be eschewed, if so be that they be not vsed for medicine. White, clere, thin, red and pallet wine which is not troubled, and of a good taste, drunken moderately, is very healthie: but to water them much, is very noysome, because that thereby is made gripings in the belly, windynesse in the stomacke, tumor in the milke, and spoyleth the digesting of the stomacke.

The ninth rule is of the customes. First, all they that be wont or accustomed to eate much, and that of all manner of grosse meates, shall not onely altogether relie on the strength of their stomacke: for they shall not be able to escape the harme, which they shall feele thereby in time to come, because that thereby bad humors are increased in the body by little and little. Secondly, the custome of eating once or twice a day, and if that thereby men remaine healthie, it is not good to alter it: for that custome (as is wont to be said) is nature it selfe. Thirdly, good and tolerable custome is to be continued. notwithstanding, if one were wont to be drunken every day, or to drinke in the morning fasting, who is it that can commend the same? Euen so is sobrietie to be adiudged of, and fasting. It is also to be vnderstood, that all they who be wont to eate twice a day, and would accustome themselves to eate but once a day, that the same might cause some inconuenience vnto them, and so to the contrarie: for the stomacke cannot tolerate it. Fiftly, all they that vse to eate at a certaine hower, and should suddenly alter it, do stand in danger that the same will not prosper well. Sixtly, although that the accustomed meate and drinke be such, that it be not much to be commended: notwithstanding it ought not slightly to be changed into other meates and drinks which be taken to be healthier.

The tenth rule requireth the dressing of meates: to wit, that each meate be boyled, roasted and dressed as it ought to be, so that the stomack get no loathing thereby, and the same meate may the better be digested. Thirdly, delicate sauces for each meate in particular, prouoketh one to eate more than is good for him: therefore they ought to be omitted and forborne. Fourthly, skinning and putrified meates, be it fruit, flesh, fish, or whatsoever else, howsoever they be dressed, they can bring none other but badnes with them.

Whereof is now sufficiently spoken for the preservation of good digestion, and how the bad digestion of the stomacke is to be amended. For that what might faile therein, these sicknesses following sufficiently do declare.

Of the debilitie of the stomacke in generall. §.4.



If these debilities or infirmities of the stomacke, there be three principall accidents; vnder which are all other comprehended. The first the Grecians doe call *Bradypepsian*, which is slowe digestion. The second *Apepsian*, which is when the stomacke cannot digest. The third *Dyspepsian*, which is when the digestion is utterly spoiled, and the meates doe turne into bad humors, which is when the stomacke is wholly weakened and departed from his natural actions,

and hath lost the same, which default may be prouoked through inward and outward causes: the outward causes be the motions of the minde, as anger, care, sorrowe, rough winde, and grosse meates which be hard of digestion; as old beefe, hard, old, and vnleauened bread, Vassell nuts, old Cheese, cold herbs and fruites whereof hath bene vsed much a long time, as Gourds, Melons, Mushromes and Apples &c. Item all excessive, windy meats & drinks, pottiges, Pastes, and all ouermuch watered wine, or water dronken alone (if it be not in great heat) and to eate before the former meate be digested.

Item, blowes or falls in and out the stomacke, bathing in very hot or cold times: also inward and outward heate and colde of nature, great exercise, extreme venerie, which infirmitie much, and weakeneth the naturall powers. Likewise ouermuch sleepe and rest: also to study too much, and straight after meate.

The inward maladies of the stomacke be these; ouer great heate, colde, drought, moisture, winde, impostumes, and such like: Also through the infirmities of other parts; as if out of the braines there doe fall any rheumes into the stomacke, or when the hart beateth, the liuer is obstructed with any cholerike humors, the Spleen with melancholike humors, and the stomacke is too much ouer charged. When as then the property of each member is weighed, then may easily be discerned what annoyeth the stomacke.

If then the debility of the stomack be caused through heat, that is to be knowen by the stomacke: also there is euermore thirst with it, and all colde things are welcome to the patient, and hot things are loathsome.

Or if this debilitie doe come through any limines, then is there heauynesse in the stomacke, drought, bitterness, and wambling. When as this proceedeth of colde, that may the stomacke finde: so that the thirst is small, the digestion little, and no desire of meate: warmth is welcome, but colde is tedious vnto him. If it be of phlegme, it is knowen by the drowlines, swelling, much spittle, quicke passage of the meate through the body, and almost after the manner of one that hath taken somewhat doth belch with a sower taste, and such like. But if this infirmity of the stomacke doe come of a ny melancholy, then is there also drought, heauinesse, and wambling with it, the teethe will be loose, the patient will be plagued with vnnaturall lust of eating, the Spleen doth swell, whereof great heauinesse doth follow of the minde. If so be that the same be caused through drought, then insueth great thirst therby, drought of the tongue, binding in the body, vnlustines, and harme through drie meats. If it be caused through moisture, then is there little thirst with it, but loathsomenesse of all moisture: all drought doth good to the patient, and there is much spetting with it. Or if these humors be mixed, that is easily to be perceiued through the signes aforesaid; like as euery accident bringeth with it a proper description.

But before we come to any particularities, we will here discover one thing, which is so renowned, that it can preserue the stomacke from all diseases, and suffereth nothing to putrifie therein, because it expelleth all humidity and vncleannes from the stomacke, and clenseth the same: they which vse it often get neuer any more paine in the stomacke: it causeth mirth, it strengtheneth the hart and head, it clenseth also the reines and the wombe exceedingly: which are the pills of Amber called *de Succino*, which are thus prepared: Take the white or other Amber and Spackie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Aloe fine dragmes, *Agaricus* one dragme and a halfe, right Aristology halfe a drag. this being all beaten small and tempered with the sirup of Mallowewood, make thereof a masse of pills, and forme seven pills of one drag. Take alwaies two or three of them when you goe to bed.

Of a weake stomacke through cold. §.5.



First this is to be noted, that (to speake naturally) the stomacke in the summer and in the haruest is coldest of all, and that by reason that the heate is drawen into the outward members, and therefore is so much the weaker about the stomacke. Contrariwise (as we haue mentioned befoze) the stomacke in the winter and spring time is hottest of all, because the outward cold diueth the heat inward: and therefore then people are to eat so much the more. For in the debilitie of the stomack regard must be had of the times. Now for to write of the colones of the stomack, so it is that (besides all the foresaid signes) that the meate will scarce settle it self in the bottome of the stomack, so that the same otherwhiles after the patient hath taken them, hath no rest yer and befoze he hath vomited out the same againe vndigested: and although it be digested, yet happeneth it slowly. Also if one feele with the hand thereon outwardly, then may it be perceived to be cold there: It is also full of winde which is expelled upwards and downewards. There be yet moe herebefoze other signes reherfed of a cold stomacke: When as then the colde of the stomacke is small and of no continuance, then is the patient euery morning to take *Trociscos de Rosis* two or thre dragmes in an ounce of *Mina citioniorum*, wherein Comin and Ameos be boyled.

*Trociscos of
Roses.*

The foresaid *Trocisci* are thus to be prepared: Take *Roses* thre dragmes, *Lignum Aloes*, *Pasticke*, *Indie Spica*, *Cassy wood*, *Squinanth* and *Wormewood*, of each one drag. beaten altogether small, and tempered with old wine, and then formed. These *Trocisci* are very good taken with halfe an ounce of the spirit of wine.

They are also to be fed with light meates, which haue but little moysture and superfluitie: Also their meate must be strowed with *Galingall*, *Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Cloues*, *Ameos*, and such like.

Befoze meate the patient is to exercise himself well: they that vse this water, must alwaies drink moze thereof after meate than befoze. After meate he must sleepe much, & drink neate olde Rensish wine; but eate lesse than he was wont, for the weaknes of the stomacke cannot digest much meate. Meates which be requisite for him are *Buttons*, *Kids*, *Hens*, *Pullets*, *fowles*, *Partridges*, *felants*, *Pigeons*, *Quailes*, and such like; yet rather roasted than boyled, and dressed with spice: also reere eggs and such like. But if this weaknes of the stomacke hath long continued, then may be vsed one of these Sugar plates following (which one will) one quarter of an ounce or moze at once. If so be that it be made after the maner of a conserue, then to take one ounce at a time daily with wine: viz. *Diatrion Piperon*, *Diagalanga*, *Dianison*, *Diamenba*, *Caryophylatum*, *Rosata nouella*, *Diacyminum*, *Diabolbanum*, also the warme *Dragagant* cakes, the which also do strengthen the stomacke & procure digestion. But especially is the Confection *Diacinamomum* commended for a blessed medicine, for all moyst, bad, & spoiled stomacks as that consumeth all superfluous humiditie, helpeth digestion, and strengtheneth the eyesight, therefore be there two sortes here described.

Confectio Diacinamomi.

*Diacinamo-
mum.*

Take of the most purest *Cinnamom* fiftene drag. grosse *Cinnamom*, *Comin*, and *Elecampane*, of each halfe an ounce, *Galingall* tenen drag. *Cloues*, long *Pepper*, *Cardamomum*, *Greines*, *Ginger*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Pace* and *Putmegs*, of each thre drag. *Saffron* one drag. white *Sugar* fwe drag. When you will make *Tabulates* thereof, then take one pound of *Sugar*, one ounce and a quarter of the foresaid spices, and sethe the *Sugar* in *Wormewood* water as behoueth. Another with *Rubarbe*.

Take excellent *Rubarbe* one quarter of an ounce, *Angelica*, *Rapontica*, of each halfe a drag. *Cinnamom* thre drag. *Putmegs* one drag. and a halfe, *Cardamome*, long *Pepper*, white *Dipnamus*, and *Zeduary* of each halfe a drag. *Galingall* two scruples, *Calinus* halfe a drag. *Ginger* two scruples, *Pinpernell* rootes, *Pasticke* and *Cucubes*, of each one scrup. *Saffron* ten greins, *Sugar* eight ounces, boyle the *Sugar* with *Wormewood* water, and cast a plate of *Sugar* of it.

In like manner is the confectiō of *Aromaticum rosatum* not only commended for the debilitie of the stomack, but also for many other diseases, like as here and there the same be discovered, for which purpose it is also prepared after sundry sorts, like as be some here expressed.

Confectio Aromatici rosati.

TAke fiftene dragms of red Roses, Licorice seuen dragmes, *Lignum Aloes* and yellow Saunders, of each thre dragmes, Cinnamome, Pace, Cloues, of each two dragmes and a halfe, *Gummi Arabicum*, and Dragagant, of each one quarter of an ounce, Putmegs, Cardamome, Calingall, of each one dragme, Huske one scruple, Indie Spica, and Amber, two scruples, temper them all together: and if you will, then cast a plate of Sugar of it, take one ounce of these Species, and twelue ounces of Sugar, decoct them in Rose water as is accustomed. Thus is this confectiō at the Apothecaries made, and not only for his pleasantnes, but also for his commodiousnes used daily: for that besides this, it both strengthen the weake stomacke, and comforteth the hart, the baines, the head, and the Liuer: it driueth out also the bad and superfluous humors of the stomacke: it helpeth the digestion of the stomacke, and especially in them which be afote againe after a long continued and lingring sickness.

Another which is common at *Augusta Vindelicorum*.

TAke Roses one ounce, Licorice thre dragmes, Cinnamome two dragmes and a halfe, Cloues, Pace, of each one dragme, and ten greines, red Cozall, Cardamome, Calingall, of each halfe a dragme, *Spec. Diarrhodon Abbatis* one scruple, Indie Spica, long Pepper, of each ten greynes, *Lignum Aloes* one dragme and a halfe, Greyes eight greynes, Hauen Zuorie one dragme, Gum, Dragagant, of each thre scruples and a half, Putmegs two scruples, Huske ten greynes, Amber one scruple, make a subtle powder thereof. If you will haue Sugar plates of it, then do as before. Item, take beaten *Calmus* half an ounce, the iuice of *Mozme* wood as much as is needefull to make plates of Sugar: and if you desire to haue this strong, then sethe it in Wine, and giue it him at two or thre times.

If you take Cinnamome one quarter of an ounce, Ginger, Putmegs, Cardamome, Calingall, Cloues, of each one dragme, Pace, *Lignum Aloes*, of each halfe a dragme, Annis one dragme, the skins of Hens mawes washed with Wine and dyed, thre dragmes, white Sugar 34. ounces: sethe the Sugar in good Wine, and thereof cast Sugar plates.

Another.

TAke Cinnamome thre dragms, Calingall one dragme, Sugar five ounces, but boyle the Sugar with one ounce of Rose water, this Confection doth make also good appetite to meate. In like manner you haue also in the first part the twelfth Chapter, and 12. S. a confectiō *Diamargariton Calidum* which is very good for this. Item, take Ginger one dragme, Cloues and Calingall, of each halfe a dragm, Pepper, prepared Coziander, of each one scruple, Annis, Fennell, *Ameos*, *Spicanardi*, Cardamome, of each thre scruples and a halfe, confected Citron pills one ounce, Rose water one ounce and a halfe, Licorice halfe a dragme, Sugarcandie halfe an ounce, Cozans one ounce: powne all that is to be pownded, but chop the Citron pills and Cozans very small, then sethe the Sugarcandie, and ten ounces of white Sugar with Rose water, and so make tabulates thereof.

Confected Annis seeds are also very good for all debilitie of the stomacke, it helpeth digesture, it expelleth the paine and winde of the stomacke, the same doth fennell seede also. But there is yet a better for this, to wit, confected Comin and Caruway seede, for that the same haue also power to warme the stomacke.

Certaine Powders for meate.

TAke prepared Coziander, and Cinnamome, of each halfe an ounce, long, white, and black Pepper, Cloues, Calingall, and Ginger, of each one dragme and a halfe, Annis, Fennell,

of each thre dragmes, Saffron one dragme, Sugar as much as all the rest; make a powder thereof, or a confection, which you had rather haue. Item, take Cinnamon, Pace, Cloues, Pepper, Cyppers rootes, of each alike much, Sugar as much as you please. Item, take Cinnamon two ounces, Nutmegs one dragme, prepared Coziander seedes, Roses, red Cozrall, of each one scruple, Sugar fowze ounces, temper them all together: it is of a temperate nature. For this may also things be used, which are described in *Aromatico rosato*, beaten to powder.

Here follow now certaine stomachicall medicines against all coldnes, windines, and humidities of the stomacke, and all other inward parts of the bodie: Take Annis, Fennell, and prepared Coziander, of each one ounce, Caruway halfe an ounce, Licorice (beaten small) one ounce and a halfe, Ginger, Calmus, of each thre dragms, Calingall, Zeduary, of each one dragme and a halfe, Cloues one dragme, temper all together. One may take thereof euery morning the waight of two dragmes.

Some do take the fowze seedes confected with Sugar: other do let them to be all together confected with Sugar, that it might be so much the more pleasant to take. Some temper amongst it cut Cucumber rootes, because that they (besides all their vertues) cause the windes to depart, and to dry vp bad humors. Item, take Licorice cut small one ounce, Calingall one quarter of an ounce, Calmus halfe an ounce, Pace thre dragmes, Cinnamon and Nutmegs, of each one dragme and a halfe, confected Annis seedes fowze ounces, Caruway, Fennell, prepared and confected Coziander, of each two ounces: cut all that is to be cut, and temper all together. Do take cut Licorice, prepared Coziander, Fennell, and Caruway, of each one quarter of an ounce, Gentian, Calmus, and Ginger, of each thre dragmes, Pimpernell rootes, or the seedes, and Rue seede, of each one dragme: cut all that is to be cut, and temper them all together, as before.

These foresaid stomachicall compositions are very commodious for the common people, and also commodious for all the foresaid infirmities, but especially the Gentian doth expell all stime and venemous matter of the stomack. This is to be used in the morning on tosted bread, mollified or soaked in Wine, and to fast thre howres afterwards.

In like manner you shall finde before in the first part the twelfth Chapter and first §. a good Medicine for the stomack, which may be well added vnto these, Calmus and Cinnamon tempered together are also speciall good for this purpose.

Electuarium
de Citro.

This Confection following is also highly commended for all feeble, cold, and moist stomacks, as also for the strengthening of the Liuer, Spitt, Hart, Reines, and whole bodie: it increaseth Venerie, maketh fat and merrie, and is also good against the beating of the Hart. It is called *Electuarium de Citro*, or confection of Citrons: Take Citron pils, Zeduary, *Doronicum*, Amber, and red Cozrall, of each one dragme, Silkewoymes nests cut very small, red and white Behen, *Lolium*, Rosemary floures, and *Calmus*, of each fise dragmes, two Harts bones, and Berles two scruples, Rubins, Jacints, Smaragdes, Parietom gentle seedes, and Stechas floures, of each one scruple, small filed Gold and Siluer, Buglosse floures, Cozmentill, red Storar, burnt Iuoze, Basill seede, and long Pepper, of each halfe a dragme, Puske and Amber, of each one scruple, drye Pints, and Mastick, of each two scruples and a halfe, conferue of Buglosse one ounce, white Sugar 18. ounces: sethe the Sugar metely thick in Buglosse water, and so make a confection thereof. Parmalade with spices (as hereafter in the last part it is described) is also commodious for this, for that it strengtheneth and warmeth the stomacke maruelous well.

Another. Take Ginger one dragme, Cloues, Calingall, and Cinnamon, of each halfe a drag. Zeduary, long Pepper, prepared Coziander, of each one scruple, Annis, Fennell, Ameos, Spikenard, Cardamome, and Pace, of each fise greynes, confected Citron pils, and Raisons (the stones taken out) of each one ounce, Sugar twelue ounces, decocted in Rose water: cut and beate the Citron pils and Raisons, and temper the rest amongst them. Item, take prepared Coziander and Cinnamon, of each halfe an ounce, long, white, and black Pepper, Cloues, Calingall, and Ginger, of each one dragme, Annis, Fennell, of each thre dragmes, Saffron one scruple, Sugar twelue ounces, make it (as before) vnto a Confection.

Take the whites of 24. Eggs sodden metely hard, Honny twelue ounces, stirre them aparte a good while together, vntill it waxe thick, afterwards put thereto halfe a dragme of Zeduary, Cinnamon, Cloues, Spica, Licorice, Ginger, Pepper, Calingall, Roses, and red Saunders,

of

of each one drag. beaten small. Hereafter shall be described in the description of the granell a conserve of Horse radish rootes, which is also very good for a cold stomacke.

Item, take clarified Hony twelue ounces, clarified iuice of Quinces one ounce and a halfe, Vineger thre ounces, sethe all these together untill they be mately hard, and temper amongst it halfe an ounce of Pepper, Ginger one drag. vse thereof about the waight of halfe an ounce alwayes before meales: with this also ensuing may be made a plaister to lay ouer the stomack, to wit, Pithidate, Treacle, and Diatesano. They are also good for a weake stomack, for that they dry and further the digestion of the stomack, if one take thereof one drag. in a draught of Wine.

All confected things, as Rootes, Fruits, and all such like, which be warme of nature, are good for a cold stomack, as is confected Ginger, which not only warmeth the stomack, but also all inward parts, and doth restrain the vapors from ascending and drawing vp towards the head. Calmus is passing good for a cold stomack. Cierampane rootes also strengthen the stomack, help digestion, driue out all venemous humidities, and warme the same. Confected Putnecs do consume all moisture of the inward members, they do warme and strengthen the stomack, and are good for the digestion of the same. The like do also confected Orange pils, Citron pils, rootes of Eringus, and Walnuts, all which be described in the last part of this our booke of Phisicke. The herbs and floures which be warme by nature, are Eyebright (which is also very good against all Agues that be caused of putrifaction.) Conserue of Betonie, and of Gillofloures do the like also, if that one take thereof halfe an ounce or moze daily before meales. They do also stay the ascending vapors of the stomack, and strengthen the same. The like also doth conserue of Parierom, Hyssop, Piony, Sage, Lauender, Spikenard, and Rosemary.

All aromaticall Wines are much commended for this, not only for the stomack, but also for all other parts to be used outwardly: They do also take away the insatiabie hunger. Secondly, there can be thought no better thing for the stomack then good old strong Wine for common drinke: But if the same cannot be had, then may be used in the stead thereof, some Beade, or Hony water. In like sort also *Mina Aromatica*, and other sirupes moe, which shall be described hereafter.

The rich and very daintie persons may also get Hippocras made, whereof you shall finde many kinds described in the eight part: especially this following (called *Stelladia*) is used much in Italy. Take Cinnamome, and Cloues, of each one drag. Pepper, Graines, and Galingall, of each one drag. and a halfe, Cardamome one drag. and a halfe, one quart of Wine, Sugar or Hony, as much as you please: make Hippocras thereof, as is taught in the eight part.

Amongst the most used Wines made of Herbs, are these ensuing, warme of nature, Wine of Eyebright cleanseth the stomack of all humiditie, and withstandeth the Ague, and is of a temperate nature.

The Wine of Hyssop warmeth also the stomack, and all inward members. The like do also Rosemary wine, Parierom wine, which also prouoke appetite. Asarabacca wine, & Mozme wood wine, are very good, especially if there be any Gallick decocted in the common wine. Betonie wine and Gillofloure wine are very good against windines. The herb Bennet wine and Clary wine, are also very good for this purpose. Item, take Must as much as you thinke good, let it worke solwe dayes one after another, then put therein a small bag, with the leaues of the right wilde Wine, and let them also worke together as before, whereof will be a very pleasant wine. You haue the like before in the second part the first Chapter and 5. S. of the panting of the hart through cold, a spiced wine, beginning thus: Take Ginger two ounces, &c. What a vertue also the Cierampane wine hath (which is very common) shall be amongst other discovered in the eight part.

Here haue you also some mo such like drinks for a purpose: Take sirrup of Spints one ounce, Cinnamome water thre dragmes and a halfe, oyle of Cloues two drops, oyle of Vitrioll, thre drops, temper all together. The oyle of Vitrioll is very sharp and perillous, as is rehered in the description thereof.

Take water of Currans fower ounces, temper therein as much Saffron as the bignes of a Pease, drinke it lukewarme in the morning, likewise also after none and after supper: it is especiall good against all paine of the stomacke. The wine may also be tempered with Currans water. Item, sethe Mozme wood in wine or water, and drinke it: it is very good for poze folkes,

Item, in the second Part the first Chapter and 5. S. you shall haue a pectorall water, beginning: Take new Figs, &c. which also doth cleanse the stomacke from all excessive humiditie. In like manner doth also a forcible Capon water in the second Part the first Chapter, and 4. S. which doth strengthen the stomacke and the hart maruellously mightily. Charuell water, Marks spur water mixed, or each apart, strengthen the stomacke.

The vitall waters and other waters are very requisite also for this, whereof many be described in the eight Part.

Of sirups which do strengthen the stomacke. Sirupe of Citron peeles doth strengthen and helpe digestion, sirupe of Mozimwood doth make appetite, sirupe of Pints is good for all diseases of the stomacke which procede of colde, sirupe of fumitorie helpeth all obstruction. *Oxymel Compositum* and of Squils be good to breake all tough slime. Ginger and *Calmus* steeped in wine or vineger are also very good, if one eate a spoonfull thereof. Some do put Gentian rootes vnto it, for such as can away with bitternes. Also twice a day you may eate sixe or eight peeled Almonds, therewith to drie the stomacke, and every third day once to eate a few water Cresses tempered with wine. Also if there be any new Figs to be had, then eate fower or five in the morning fasting.

Amongst all these foresaid remedies there be many which may be vsed as well to the olde, as the new diseases of the stomacke, like as each one may knowe for to rule himselfe thereafter.

What then belongeth to the order of life, we haue spoken thereof at the first: but if neede were (whether it be of superfluous moisture, binding the bodie, or other debilitie of the stomack) to purge, then must good heede be taken of such things as be contrarie to the stomacke, and might distemper it: to wit, though wilde Saffron seede, Polypodie rootes, and seedes of *Palma Christi*, (which are enimies to the stomacke, and accounted but Quacksaluers remedies) but in this is prouidently to be dealt, and after the taking of some preparatiue potions, he is to vse the last mentioned Sirups, or these insuing, and such like purgations. Take *Hiera Picra* one ounce, Turbith halfe a dragma, Ginger one scruple, and three ounces of the before mentioned wines. Make also a potion thereof: also there may be put into this a little Cinnamome for the tastes sake.

Another.

Take of the Confection *Diacatholicon* five dragmes, *Diaphenicon* two dragmes, sirupe of Treos and Rubarbe, of each halfe a dragma, *Spica* two graines: both beaten small, temper them with *Decoctione Fumellum* (which is described before in the third Chapter 5. S.) wherein some Spikenard is decocted. If you had rather vse pills, then take pills *De Agarico, Hiera Picra, or Inda*.

Item, other that be lesse laxatiue, and do strengthen the stomacke. Take *Mirobalani Chebuli* and *Inda* Rubarbe, Cinnamom, Cardamome, Cloues, and Galingale, of each one dragma, Aloe one dragma and a halfe: these being beaten small together, temper them with the iuice of Pints wherein *Agaricus* hath bene fower and twenty howers steeped: of these pills may one swallow two or three morning & euening, especially if the paine of the stomacke haue long endured. These following do strengthen and asswage the paine of the stomacke: Take *Pillula Alephangina* one dragma, *Opj* and Beuercob, of each one graine, make five pills thereof with *Oxymel*. Item take washt Aloe one scruple, and make two pills thereof: take them one howre before meate, and especially before that he be purged.

Pills which will not purge, but onely strengthen.

Take beaten Pastick and the iuice of Mozimwood, of each a like quantitie, set it (couered close) in a warme place, vntill it be drie, that one may make pills of it, whereof euery day two howers before none, you may take one pill.

Now we will declare what is to be vsed outwardly for such bad stomackes: for which we haue expressed many plaisters, as hereafter do follow. Take Pitch and Rosin, of each one ounce, Pasticke, Pints and Cloues, of each halfe an ounce, *Troisci de Bolo*, and *De Terra sigillata*, Amber, Bloudstone, Dragon bloud, *Hypocistis* and Pommy, of each one dragma, *Gallia Muscata* and

and red Sytyar, of each halfe a dzagme, the iuice of Quinces, as much as is needfull for to make a plaister with it. This is not onely good for the stomacke, but is also much better for that flure which cannot be slooped nor staied.

Another. Take red Sytyar, Spica, Squinant, Wormwood, Calmus, Pasticke, of each a like much, temper them with olde wine and the iuice of Quinces vnto a plaister, and lay it on the stomacke. Item, take Pasticke, Galingale, Zeduarie, Ameos, Pints and Wormwood, of each halfe a dzagme, Turpentine and Ware, of each halfe an ounce, temper them with the oyle of Pasticke to a plaister.

Or take oyle of Pasticke, oyle of Wormwood, of each one ounce, oyle of Hirtles halfe an ounce, Cloues, Cinnamome, Galingale, of each halfe a dzag. *Lignum Aloes* and Ginger, of each one scruple, vineger one spoonfull, Ware as much as will suffice. Another: Take Bayberries and Pasticke, of each one dzag. Cinnamome, *Lignum Aloes*, Cyper roots, Saunders and Cubes, of each halfe a dzag. Pints, Wormwood and Roses, of each fower scruples, Spica, Pace, of each one scruple, *Gallia Muscata* one dzag. Galingall, Calmus, Comin, Frankincense, of each two scruples, Laudanum one quarter of an ounce, Rosine and oyle of Pasticke, as much as sufficeth to make a plaister: then spread it on a peece of leather, and so lay it vpon the stomacke.

Item, take Wormwood and Roses, of each one handfull, Pints halfe a handfull, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one dzag. and a halfe, yelloe Saunders, Galingall and Putmegs, of each halfe a dzag. walsh Turpentine with wine, two ounces, Pasticke three dzag. and oyle of Pasticke, as much as is needfull to make a plaister.

Another: Take the iuices of Pints, Wormwood and Harierom, of each two ounces, Frankincense and Pasticke, of each halfe an ounce, Cloues, Pace, Putmegs, of each two dzagmes: temper them with Turpentine untill they be thicke, as a plaister ought to be, then spread it on leather, and couer it with red Syndall: you may also temper a little Laudanum amongst it, and so lay it thereon. Item, take Pints and Wormwood, of each one dzagme and a halfe, red Corall halfe a dzag. Laudanum three dzag. Ware one ounce, Turpentine halfe an ounce. First, melt the Ware, Turpentine and Laudanum, and then mingle the rest amongst it. Item, take the vppermost leaues of Wormwood, Pints, Roses, of each halfe an ounce, Cinnamome, Galingale, Pace, Putmegs, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one dzag. Pasticke one quarter of an ounce, Frankincense one dzag. and a halfe, and Parmalad three ounces: poune all small which are to be pouned, and afterwards temper the rest in it with Palmsey. This so tempered, spread it on leather (as is said) and sprinkle it with beaten Cloues and Pasticke, of each halfe an ounce; then with oyle of Pints make a plaister thereof.

Yet another: Take Pastick, Cinnamome, Cloues, Violets, Spica, *Lignum Aloes*, *Gallia Muscata*, Calmus, and Galingall, of each one dzag. and a halfe, red and white Saunders, prepared Coziander and Sozrell seedes, of each one dzagme, Laudanum halfe a dzag. boyled Ditch (as is taught in the Introduction) one ounce, Puske two graines, and then make it to a plaister with oyle of Pasticke.

Another: Take Pasticke three ounces, Galingale, Ameos, Zeduarie, of each halfe a dzagme, dried Pints and fresh Wormwood, of each one dzag. Turpentine halfe an ounce, poune them all togither, and temper them with the oyle of Pasticke vnto a salve, and spread it then on fustian.

The plaister of Bayberries, which is called at the Apothecaries *De Baccis Lauri*, is also specially commended for a colde stomacke, and is made as followeth: Take Frankincense, Pasticke & Myrrhe, of each halfe an ounce, new pouned Bayberries one ounce, Cyper roots, *Coffus* roots, of each three quarters of an ounce, clarified Honie eight ounces: sethe it till it be thicke, and then temper all the other things amongst it, and so make a plaister thereof. This foresaide plaister is not onely good against all paines of the stomacke, but also for the bowels, for the liuer, kidneies, bladder, belly, and all other parts of the body, where is any paine through cold winds. And how much more Cyper roots you put vnto it, so much the stronger do you make it to expell the windes, and especially it is very good for the dzopsie called *Tympanites*, a Tympanie.

Item, take Cloues, Pasticke, Spica, Galingale and Long Pepper, of each one quarter of an ounce, Ware, Laudanum, *Ammoniacum*, of each one dzag. oyle of Spikenard as much as sufficeth for a plaister.

Here

Here followeth now all that is to be outwardly applyed
vpon the Stomacke.

TAke a great Onion, and make it hollow, and put therein Saffron floures about one dragma and a halfe: this Onion must then be wound in wet tow, and afterwards roasted in ashes. This being done, you are to make it cleane, and stamp it to pap: lay thereof vpon a cloth the thicknes of a finger, and then lay it vpon the pit of the stomach, and as often as it is cold, then take another againe which is warme. This is passing good for a cold stomach.

Also you may sethe Mastick in Wine, and of this Wine must you lay vpon the stomach with a cloth, as warme as you can suffer it.

Item, vnwashed Shepes wooll kemmed must you let soke vpon thick red Wine, wherein is oyle of Spikenard, and so layd warme vpon the stomach, the same taketh away the paine of the stomach. Or keepe the foresayd wooll in oyle of Mastick, oyle of Wormewood, or oyle of Spike, then wring it out, and so lay it very warme vpon the stomach.

Another. Take Ginger, Pints, Southernwood, *Costus* rootes, to wit, the swete rote, Wormewood, wilde Thyme, and Mastick, of each halfe an ounce, Frankincense one quarter of an ounce, Spikenard, Cloues, *Lignum Aloes*, Cassy wood, of each halfe a dragma: let all these sethe together in nine ounces of Sallet oyle, and three ounces of good Wine, vntill the Wine be cleane consumed: afterwards straine it thorow a cloth, and then lay it vpon your stomach like as is before sayd.

For this is also very good Pellitorie of the wall, with oyle of Spike, of Mastick fryed, one drag. of Saffron put thereto: likewise a Swallowes nest boyled in Wine, vntill it be cleane thorow mollified and dissolued, and so layd warme vpon the stomach. Or take water of Pints, Wormewood and Palmsey, of each sixe ounces, Cloues, Pints, Cinnamome, *Lignum Aloes*, Galingall, of each halfe a drag. temper them all together, and make a peece of felt wet therein, and so lay it warme vpon the stomach, like as is taught before.

Item, carrie vpon the stomach a yong naked Child, or in stead of him a yong naked Dog: they do both of them warme the stomach, & strengthen the same. The same doth also a Cushion of fine feathers: likewise also a warme hand holden vpon the stomach. It is also found good to rub the stomach with vitall waters. One may also make a cloth wet therein, and so lay it warme vpon it.

Bags to belayd vpon the Stomack.

TAke Pints, Wormewood, wilde Wyne leaues, Rosemary, and Pennyroyall, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloues fowze scruples, Putmegs, Pace, Mastick, of each two scruples, Galingall halfe a drag. Roses and prepared Coziander, of each two scruples, *Gallia Muscata* one drag. beate them all together grosse, and make a bag with it.

Another: Take Wormewood, Pints, wilde Wyne leaues, and white Pints, of each one drag. Cloues one drag. and a halfe, Putmegs and Pace, of each two scruples, Galingall halfe a drag. prepared Coziander and Roses, of each two scruples and a halfe, Mastick, Cinnamome, *Calmus*, of each one scruple, *Gallia Muscata* fowze scruples, *Laudanum* one quarter of an ounce: make thereof with red silke a bag to apply vnto the stomach. Or take this next following: Take *Lignum Aloes*, Wormewood, white Pints, Betony, Mastick, Frankincense, Cyppers rootes, *Costus* rootes, Caraway, Fennell, Roses, and Bziony, of each one drag. Iuibes, Pace, Cinna- mome, Cloues, Spica, Putmegs, white & long Pepper, of each halfe a drag. *Calmus*, Cassy wood, and red Corall, of each two scruples: this being all beaten grosse, make a bag thereof for the stomach.

Oyntments and Oyles for all cold Stomacks.

TAke oyle of Mastick, Wormewood, Spikenard, of each one ounce, Cloues, Mastick, Ameos, of each one drag. beate them well together, and make an oyntment thereof. Item, take oyle of Mastick, and of wormewood, of each one ounce, oyle of Spiritles halfe
an

an ounce, Cloues, Cinnamon and Calingall, of each halfe a drag. *Lignum Aloes* and Ginger, of each one scruple: make an oymntment of it with a little Vineger. Or take Roses five drag. Wormewood one quarter of an ounce, *Spica* one drag. Cloues two scruples, long Pepper halfe a drag. Pasticke, rumbled Pints, of each one drag. these being well beaten, then take oyle of Pasticke thre ounces and a halfe, oyle of Roses five ounces and a halfe, Ware one ounce and a halfe, (but the oyle and the ware must be leysurely molten together) and then temper the rest together vnto an oymntment, wherewith you are to annoynt all the breast very warme. And if it be in winter, and that the party must goe abroade, then lay vpon the breast annoynted two or thre leaues of wyting paper, for it preferueth naturall heat and defendeth the stomack from all outward colde.

Another: Take distilled oyle of Pastick; or in the stead thereof oyle of Cammomill, Wormewood, Pints, Quinces, and Roses, of each one ounce and a halfe, Pace, Pasticke, Putnecs, Cloues, Cardamome, Orcines, Calingall, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Cozall, prepared Coziander, Roses Pints, Wormewood and Cammomil, of each two drag. and a half, crums of new Rie bread which haue ben steeped 24. howers in sharp Vineger, fower ounces; take them out and beat them to pap: afterwards melt thre ounces and a half of Ware in oyle, and then temper it vnto a salue.

Another which is vsed in Italie: Take oile of the blossomes of Dzenes one ounce, powder of Benesine one drag. and a halfe, Cloues, Pace, of each halfe a drag. *Laudanum* one quarter of an ounce, temper all to a salue.

Another: Take oyle of Quinces, of Spikenard and Pastick, of each two ounces and a half, red Hyar, Squinant, Cipers rootes, red and white Cozall, Roses, Pasticke, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloues, wilde Vine leaues, of each halfe a drag. Ware and Rosin, as much as is needefull for to make a salue. This doth strengthen the stomack, withstandeth the wambling, and is also good for all humidity of the stomacke.

Item, take oyle of Pastick, Spike, oyle of Quinces, of each thre ounces, oile of Wormewood one ounce and a halfe, Pasticke, Cloues, Putnecs, wilde Vine leaues, Pints and Spirtle seedes, of each one quarter of an ounce, wormewood, Roses, red and white Cozall, of each one drag. with a little Ware, and make an vnguent thereof.

Another. If one can get none other thing, then take greene or drie Wormewood, sethe it in Sallet oyle with a little Wine, vntill the wine be consumed, and annoynt therewith the stomacke.

Oyle of Pasticke is thus prepared: Take oyle of Roses five ounces, good wine fower ounces, of grosse beaten Pasticke one ounce and a halfe: let this sethe together vntill the wine be decocted: This oyle doth not onely strengthen the stomacke, but also the vaines, the sinewes, ioynts, and the Liver, asswageth all paine and all swellings in all the parts of the body.

To make oyle of Quinces.

This oyle of Quinces is also (next to the oyle of Pasticke) very highly commended; for it is costly and good for all debilities of the stomacke, it alayeth all wambling, it strengtheneth the digestiue vertue, and also the sinewes &c. and it is thus prepared: Take Quinces that be yet scant ripe, cut them with the pils in peces, and take out the seedes; then take the iuice of Quinces, of the one as much as, the other in a glasse, and powre into it as much oyle as there is of the iuice, but rather vnripe oyle then other: this being bounden tight, then let the glasse the space of fiftene dayes in the Sun, afterwards let it boyle two or thre howers in water, and then wzing it hard thowow a cloth: this must be done thre or fower times one after another, and so kept close stopped.

For a conclusion of this weakenes of the stomacke through colde, some doe vse this brieve meane, first, they doe ordaine a Clister made in this manner following: take Limesede and fresh butter, of each five ounces, of well washed Turpentine dissolved in wine or any decoction (wherein be much Annis seede sodden) one ounce; let the patient also drinke much of some decoction of Cloues, Calingal, Cinnamon, Balsam fruits, and Calmus: Lay then lastly this plaiaster following vpon the stomacke. Take Rue one ounce, Wormewood fower ounces: this being beaten together, temper it with hony, and then lay it warme vpon the stomacke.



If so be that this weakenes of the stomack, and bad digestion of the same be with great thirst, without appetite, with some foule belchings, and with great drought of the mouth, it is then very easily to be adiudged, that the same is caused through heate. If there be *Cholera* mingled amongst it, then followeth wambeling and parbaking, and that after the taking of light meates, as eggs, fowles, and other good flesh. The mouth is bitter, and sometimes there cometh a shewing paine: he desireth all cold things, and all which is hote goeth against him. The digestion of the stomack is strong, if the heate indure not too long, which other wise spoileth the same. These are the signes of the Gall or *Bilis*, which troubleth or inflameth the stomack, and (as is sayd) molested the same with vomiting and a sharp scowling. Now for to remedie this paine of the stomack, it is to be marked whether the sick person were not wont to cast, and if he were, he is then to vse this sirupe, which is necessarie for it: Take the iuice of some Quinces eight ounces, white Sugar some ounces, Vineger two ounces, sethe them to a sirrup; this sirrup doth not only cole unnaturall heate of the stomack, but also strengtheneth it for to effect her worke, and expelleth the windines of the same. For this, is also very commodious the sirrup of *Meriuce*, or *De Agresta*, which doth also the same. Item, the sirrup of Peares, Peaches, and especially of Apples, which is described in the second part, the first Chapter, and 4. §. which be also these following, that be made of the iuice of Bayberies, Sozrell, Roses, water Lillies, Limons, Citrons, Spittle seeds, and of the iuice of Pomgranats. Item, *Oxyfaccchara*, Zulep of Roses and Violets, sirrup of Oranges are also highly commended for this, which be euery where described.

Item, sirrup of Roses laxatiue, *Oxymel*, sirrup of Endiue and of Vineger, or these following: Take Endiue, small Endiue, and Lettice, of each one handfull, the seeds of Melons, Cucumbers, Gourds, and Pompeons, of each one quarter of an ounce, Wormewood one handfull, Roses, Violets, of each one ounce, peeled Warty one handfull, the iuice of Pomgranats some ounces, Vineger three ounces, Sugar as much as you thinke good, make a sirrup thereof. Item, Honey of Roses expelleth all cholerick matter from the stomack, and doth strengthen the same: and if it be needfull to vse any purgation for this, then shal you finde good instructions for it where we shal treat of *Cholera*, but chiefly is Cassie commended for it, because her cooling operation is very fit and meete for the stomack, for it clenseth the same from all moisture, and therefore are the confectiōs of Cassie and Spanna which be described hereafter in the binding of the bodie, esteemed very meete.

Item, the *Tabulates Diatribith cum Rhubarbaro*, and a certaine powder more, which is expressed in the same place. Amongst the Simples, are Sene leaues the very principall, which haue a great propertie to purge the hote *Cholera*; the like doth also Aloe, Coloquinte, the iuice of wilde Cucumbers, *Epithymus*, and twenty or thirty seeds of *Palma Christi*, which be very good, but that they be somewhat preiudiciall to the stomack.

Efula is somewhat too strong, for if the same be not well prepared, then is it venome in the body. Lawzell and the flowers of *Mexereon* be exceeding sharp and perilous to be used. The *Polyppodie* roote is very safe, but yet somewhat hurtfull to the stomack. The yellow *Spirobalan*es above all other do purge *Cholera*, and loseth very necessarily. Where be of such laxatiue simples many mo, but we haue only recited here these simples for example, whereby to chōse that which liketh him best, and to forbear that which is to be eschued. When he hath purged, then is it counsell'd by diuers that this Potion following be taken after it. Take sumitorie, Violets, Wormewood, of each one ounce; let these sethe so long in water, untill about foure ounces do remaine of it. You are then to skape in this decoction one quarter of an ounce of yellow *Spirobalan*es the space of a whole night, and being wrung out, then are you to temper amongst it one drag. or one quarter of an ounce of *Hiera Picra*, and in the morning yerey to drinke it warme.

The order of Dyet.

The patient is to be sustained with such meates as be some what some, and that haue also an astringent vertue, as flesh boyled with vnrype Pomgranats, or for sauce for his meat *Meriuce*

Meriuiue, wine of Pomgranats, iuice of Oranges, Limons, and Pines of Damaske, Lettice, Purslaine, both of them made sowze with Vineger, and so vfed.

Barly pap, Quinces, roasted Peares, or stued Peares strowed with fennell or Annis seede, eaten after meales, do shute vp the stomacke: The like do also wild dry Peares.

Befoze in the first part the twelfth Chapter, and first §. you haue an especiall good stomachi- call powder which is very good for all paines of the stomacke, which procede of *Cholera*. Item, take Roses ten drag. burnt Juozj three drag. prepared Coziander seedes fine drag. giue him halfe an ounce thereof with sirupe of Pomgranats, or sirupe of Quinces. For this, are also good these confectiōs following, as *Triasantalon*, *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Rosata nouella*, and *Aromaticum rosatum*, which is wholly of a temperate nature.

Confected things which do coole the stomacke.

The Conserue of Raspes and of Lettice are both of them good for to cole the stomack: they make also a desire for meate, and do quicken the appetite. Puske peares do stay the vaporing or fuming vp into the head. All preserved Cherries, Barberies, Cicorie rotes, vnripe Grapes, for what they be good, and how they are to be confected, shall sufficiently be taught in the last part. Item, take new conserue of Roses sowze ounces, sirrup of Apples as much as you please; temper them all together, and take halfe an ounce fasting in the morning. Or take Pastick one drag. Roses, burnt Juozj and Pints, of each halfe a drag. prepared Coziander one quarter of an ounce, red Cozrall one drag. and a halfe, Parmalad fire ounces; make these with the sirupe of Apples a little soft, and stampe them all together in a mortar, and mire them all well together. Parmalades without spice (whereof be diuers described in the last part) be also good remedies for the stomack, they stay the flir, strengthen all the inward parts, and make appetite. The conserue of Peach blossomes is also good. Conserues of Cicorie is also made for this.

Of the Trocisks these are speciall good, *De Spodio*, *Diarrhodon*, *De Camphora*, *De Barberis*.

And as touching his drinke, he must eschue all strong Wine, and drinke a small thin Wine.

Chery wine cooleth and moistneth the stomack and all inward parts, through his temperate nature. Iulep of Violets, and all other cooling potions may be vfed. Hereafter in the treatise of Melancholy, there shall be described a very pretious wine, beginning thus: Take pickt Copans, &c. which may be also very commodiously vfed for this.

Now for to come to the things which one may vse outwardly, we will speake first of the plaisters, and describe some of them.

Take the iuice of Plantaine and Rose water, of each fire ounces, Vineger one ounce, red and white Saunders, red Cozrall, and prepared Coziander, of each one quarter of an ounce, Quince kernels, Sozrell seede, of each one drag. this being beaten small together, make a plaister thereof with Barly meale, yet let it not be too hard, and lay it on the neck of the stomack.

Another. Take red and white Saunders, Sozrell seede, Bay berries, Quince kernels, and the iuice of Quinces, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Pasticke one ounce; poune all that is to be pouned, seethe it by a milde fire or on hot ashes untill the iuice be wasted, then strain it thorow a cloth, and make thereof a soft plaister with Ware, as much as is needfull for it. This plaister following is cooling and astringent.

Take Roses, burnt Juozj, Pasticke, Coziander, Pirtle kernels, and the iuice of Sloes, Sandaraca, & Dragon blood, of each half a drag. *Laudanum* one quarter of an ounce, *Gallia Muscata* halfe a drag. Bitch and Rosin, of each three quarters of an ounce, Ware as much as is needfull for a plaister; let all these be molten together in sower ounces of the iuice of Quinces, and seethe it slowly untill all the iuice be consumed, and it will be like to a soft plaister: it strengtheneth the weake stomacke of heate, of *Cholera*, and of an Ague; it queneth thirst, stayeth excessive vomiting, scowzing, and also the paine of the stomacke.

Out of all the foresaid things may you make salues with oyle of Roses, Violets, Quinces, and Pasticke (which you please) untill that the salue be soft enough. In like maner is the salue of Roses also especially good for the heate of the stomacke. The stomacke is also to be annoynted with this oyle following; as oyle of Quinces, oyle of Pasticke, and chiefly when there be Wine tendels decocted therein.

Of Bags, of Applications, and Fomentations for the stomacke.

Take red and white Saunders, red and white Corall, and Citron seede, of each one drag. prepared Coziander one drag. and a halfe: these being all stamped together grossely, make a bag thereof.

Take Rose water, Endive water, and water of Pints, of each twelue ounces, the iuice of solye Quinces two ounces, of red and white Saunders, prepared Coziander, red Corall, and Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, Wormewood halfe a handfull, wherewith you may foment, and put the decocted herbs in a bag, and so apply them to the stomacke.

Of the debilitie of the stomacke through drought. §.7.



Wherefoeuer is any weakenes of the stomack caused through drought (whereof hath been spoken at the first) it causeth great thirst, drought of the tongue, and falling away of the whole bodie, as also contrarywise they finde ease, when they finde moist things. In this disease is the patient to drinke milke, and Barly water, for the same do cole, moisten, and cause the body to increase againe. In like manner he is also to be fed with moistning herbs, as Lettice, Pallowes, and such like: also with Meale, Lamb, River fish. Eggs dressed with Wine are also good for him, for that they yeld good nourishment. Item, there be very good and commodious Pullets broth dressed with coling herbs, Capon waters, Sparchpane, and other things moe, which befoze in the Consumption of *Phibisi* in the second part of the fifth Chapter and 22. §. and afterwards in the first part of the Ague *Helica* are expressed, all which be prepared for to moisten. We shall also oftentimes bathe befoze meales and after meales, but a good while after. His drinke must be small Wine. Rest is good for him, and much motion is hurtfull, he is further to rule himselfe in all things as for the Consumption, and as is taught for the Ague *Helica*. But in case there strike great heate into it, then vse the salue of Roses and Saunders, the coling salue *Galen*, oyle of Roses, of Violets and waterlillies and such like. But this plaister following is highly commended: Take new sliced Gourds, Purslaine, and Willow leaues, of each two ounces, white Saunders one quarter of an ounce, Camfer one drag. Rose water as much as is needefull: temper them, and lay them vpon the stomack: you may lay also a bladder of cold water vpon the stomacke.

But this is here to be noted, that the coling things must be layd vpon it in such manner, that the places adiacent about it, to wit, the Spidiffe, the Liuer, and the Spilt, may not thereby be harmed, and lose their naturall action: for which, it is also aduised that when the same is perceived, that the same place be annoynted with warme oyle.

Of the skalding in the throate, and of the hartburning. §.8.



Although this hartburning be caused diuersly, yet neuertheles doth the same come alwayes for the most part through heate, or through ascending vapors, through strong Wine drunken, Spices, and fat meates, and such like, against which, these things insuing are to be vled, to wit, conferue of Betonie, Gillofloures, and the wine of both these: also the first stomachicall medicine described aboue in the 5. §. Item, Parmalade, and preserved solye Peares. Some do hang about their neck for this disease the herb Agrimony. Other do hold in their mouth the stone in the Carps head. Other do eate suet or fire Peach kernels, or bitter Almonds vpon it, &c. of which euery one may chouse that which liketh him best.

Of Inappetencie or lost appetite, and whereby it may be remedied. §.9.

Of all the foresaid debilities of the stomacke, like as also in all diseases incident vnto it, the Appetite commonly is alwaies taken away, except the infirmities of the vnnaturall hunger. Pea there is sometimes such loathing of meates therewith, that they cannot abide

abide to smell them. The causes thereof are diuers: the first is heate, wherein the patient hath very small desire to eate, but great list to drinke, with drouth of the tong, and loathing of all warme things. If it be mingled with *Cholera*, then is there alwaies bitterness with it, with a wambling. Or if so be that there be any *Plegma* with it, then doth the patient alwaies finde some kinde of blackishnes in the mouth.

Secondly, this may also be caused through colde, whereby the constringent vertue and taste of the stomacke are destroyed. These are the signes: small thirst, much spetle, and other filth about the mouth of the stomacke; the patient doth feele heauines or pinching. Other whiles he parzaketh some *Plegma*, be it swete or sower, he shall feele it in the mouth. All warme things are welcome vnto him; cold things go against his stomacke. This disease may also be well caused by eating too much cold fruit, or by drinkeing of water.

Thirdly, the hot Agues do also take away the appetite. Fourthly, impostumes of the stomacke, of the liuer, and of the milt, which be not without an Ague. These may be perceived by swelling, and paine of the same parts, whose remedies are taught in the description of the selfe same members. Fifthly, this is also caused through a tough slimie matter, which lieth in the mouth of the stomacke, and there doth take away the appetite. The signes of them are these: if one do cast vp againe all that he hath taken, be it sower, swete, hot, cold, like as Oliues, and such like. And albeit they do remaine in the stomacke, yet do they make great paine and disension. Sixthly, there appereth a certaine debilitie of the retentive power in the flesh, in the small vains, in the muscles, and other members, whereby (as behoueth) they cannot drawe their nourishment vnto them, so that the stomacke may also thereby beare the lesse meate. The signes whereof are these: the patient is metely desirous of meate, but when the same is set before him, then can he eate but very little of it. Seuenthly, it is sometimes caused, for that melancholie very slowly or nothing at all hath his course towards the mouth of the stomacke, which was wont there to excitate appetite to meate: which may well be perceived hereby, if he be giuen to eate sower meates: by which meanes the appetite partly returneth againe. The cause may also be wormes, whereof shall be spoken hereafter. Eighthly, it may well happen, for that the melancholic too abundantly runneth towards the mouth of the stomacke, whereof the signes be vomiting of melancholike humors, sowernes of the mouth, blacke colour of the face, debilitie of the stomacke and hart. The tenth cause is, when women begin to beare, whereof the signes be sufficiently known. Eleuenthly, the ouerhot time and aire may likewise cause the same, like as doth also exceeding colde and much watching; which causes and signes may be learned of the patient, and demanded of them that do tend him. Twelfthly, through great variations of the minde, as anger, sorrow, care, anguish, great ioy, desire of Venerie which cannot be obtained, as well as that which may be obtained. Thirtenthly, this last appetite may be caused through any corruption in the stomacke, which may be perceived through stanch of the breath, or through the ordure. This is also otherwhiles caused by reason of the scowring called *Diarrhea* with intolerable stench. There be also many mo causes: but the abovesaid shall be sufficient vnto vs for this time. Now we will procede to prepare remedies for those lost appetites, whereby otherwise people might perish at length.

First, if so be that this last appetite proceedeth through heate and *Cholera*, then is the patient to be brought to vomiting, for that by reason that the matter is light and liquid, therefore may it easily be expelled, and so to prepare for the same, let the patient take *Oxyacchara* and sirupe of vinegar, which shall immediately hereafter be described, and thereupon vse this milde and gentle purgation.

Take *Samitoy* and *Mozmelwood*, of each two ounces, put them in water vntill that there remaine about sower ounces; then steape therein one ounce of grosse beaten *Piobalans*, one whole night, afterwards wzing them well out, and so giue it him.

Also one may purge with the confectiō of *Triphera* & *Rubarb*. This sirupe following is very much welcome vnto the stomacke: Take the iuice of Apples that be somewhat sower, and the iuice of Quinces, of each eight ounces, (both well clarified) then sethe them together with 8. ounces of Sugar vnto a sirup, whereof euery morning and euening giue him two ounces at one time. Also *Pharmalade* may be used alone. But if you will haue it stronger, then take eight ounces of the foresaid confectiō, and temper it with a little wine: and when the same is a little colde againe, then mixe amongst it one ounce of beaten *Roses*, *Species Triasandali*, halfe an ounce,

Spica

Spica, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each one quarter of an ounce. For this be also good, *Seruiques*, *Peares*, sirup of *Pulberies*, sirup of *Wineger*, *Oxyfaccbara*, *Oxymel*, confected *Coziander*, *Pelon* seede, and all that is sower.

On the outside shall you apply as followeth: Take a Quince peare, cut it very small and take out the coare, and let the same boyle in oyle of *Roses*; afterwards beate it very small, and temper therewith the seedes of *Butchers brome*, *Barberies*, *Roses* and red *Saunders*, of each one quarter of an ounce, the pills of *Grapes* thre dragmes, beaten small, then spread it on a leather, and weare it on your stomacke.

Wineger eaten with *Lettice* is also very good: so are also *Quinces*, a little *Sorell*, *Meriuce*, *Lemons*, the iuice of *Citrons*, *Drynges*, sower *Apples*, *Pomegranates*, and *Pulberies* that are and all yet scant ripe.

Also all they that haue lost their appetite of eating must beware of all fat fleshy and meate, that is dressed with much oyle and butter.

You shall haue also a further resolution or aduise in the first part, where we speake and discourse of *Agnes*, what is needfull to be done for the defect of appetite.

But if so be that this lost appetite do proceede of colde, then are these preparatiues to be used. The sirup of *Citron* pills, *Mozmewood* and *Spints* of each halfe an ounce, tempered in *Barley* water, and so dronken sower or fire moynings one after another.

For to purge, vse the *Pillula stomachica*, *Hiera Picra* sharpened with a little of the *Trocisci Albandali*: this is passing good if one haue a fowle matter stinking in the stomacke. Afterwards he may take any of these confections ensuing, *Diacimnum*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *Distrion piperon*, *Diacalamintha*, and sometimes some *Treacle*: also *Parmalade* with spices, greene *Ginger*, and *Chebuli*: The stomachicall powder which is described in the first part, the twelfth chapter, and first §.

Salfamentum Regium.

In like maner also the *Salfamentum Regium*, which is thus made: Take *Fennell* & *Barley* seede, *Cinamom*, *Cloues*, of each a like quantity; let them sethe well in *Wineger*, then put vnto the both a good deale of *Sugar*, and so vse it for all other meate in steade of a sauce: This hath an especiall operation to quicken the appetite.

For this may also be used *Onions*, *Garlicks*, spices, confected *Cinamom*, and *Annis* seeds, roasted and stued *Peares* sticke full of *Cloues*. And this salve for the stomacke may also be made thus: Take *Sallet* oyle sixe ounces, *Spints*, *Mozmewood*, *Parierom* gentle, and marsh *Spints*, of each one ounce, *Putmegs*, *Cipers* nuts, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Annis*, *Fennell*, *Cloues*, of each halfe a drag. white wine sixe ounces; cut and beate all grosse together, and so let it sethe vntill the wine be decocted away: afterwards wying it out hard thowle a cloth, and annoynt the place therewith warme. Afterwards strow this powder following vpon it: Take *Frankincense* and *Pasticke*, of each halfe an ounce, *Cipers* rootes one quarter of an ounce, *Spints*, *Mozmewood*, and *Putmegs*, of each one dragme, and then apply vntill it shalpe well vpon it metely warme.

Syrupus Acetosus simplex

Forasmuch as not onely here, but in other places moe, the sirup of *Wineger* is specified: therefore we will here describe it after two sorts, like as the same is used at the Apothecaries: the first is called *Syrupus Acetosus simplex*, and is thus prepared: Take good sharpe *Wineger* thre ounces, *Sugar* siue ounces, clarify it with the white of an eg, and let the *Wineger* be decocted to a sirup. This sirup is very good against all corrupted humors: for it doth attenuate all thicke slime, and causeth all tough matter to auoid, softeneth the hard, and expelleth all bad humors: it openeth all obstructions, and prouoketh vrine. In fine, it is good for all bad corruptions of the body, and is also very good for all pestilent feuers, for it quencheth the thirst.

Compositus vel cum Radicibus.

The other sirup of *Wineger* doe the Physicians call *Syrupum Acetosum compositum*, or *Acetosum cum Radicibus*, and is made thus: Take faire Well water about ons quarte, the rootes of *Fennell*, *Smallage* and *Endiue* wel clenfed, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Annis*, *Fennell*, and *Smallage* seedes, of each halfe an ounce, beaten grossely; let them sethe vnto the halfe, then wying out hard all the liqor, and put thereto eighteene ounces of white *Sugar*, twelue ounces of strong *Wineger*; sethe them to a sirup. This sirupe doth cause grosse humors to auoide, and chiefly the cholericke slime which will hardly be expelled from the Lights: It openeth also all the oppilations of the Liuer, Lights, and Kidneies.

Of the wambling, and the loathing of meate. §. 10.



Al they that haue lost their desire and appetite to meate, haue commonly such a loathing of all meate, that they can neither abide to see nor to smell it. This debilitie of the stomacke do the learned call *Subuersionem*, *Fastidium*, *Nauseam*, and the Grecians *Anorexian*, which is, when all things do go against the stomack, and hath no delight in any, after which followeth wambling, and then *Atrophia*, when the patient cannot sustaine himselfe any longer. Also when one can geth for no meate, and when the stomacke is molested with continuall wambling and parbazing, and yet notwithstanding cannot cast vp, the bodie falleth away, and doth vnterly come to the Consumption *Tabes*: for this *Atrophia* is a spice of a Consumption. So that these things, as inappetencie, or losse of appetite, wambling & lothsomnes, do commonly depend on each other, and are almost caused of one manner of cause, therefore haue we described them beside each other. The causes which prouoke this losse of appetite and wambling, may well be these hereafter following, to wit, when one beholdeth some lothsome thing or any other filth, as when another vomiteth, whereby the imagination is moued, and the stomacke also vnto vomit, and yet neuertheles cannot by any meanes parbake at all; as it cometh often to passe, when as any be stricken hard vpon the stomacke. Also the same may be caused through ouer great heate or cold: Also if one haue ouercharged himselfe with meate or drinke, and chiefly with porke, with Geles, with water fowles, and with excessive Wine, or such like, and then thereupon followeth no exercise, whereby such cruditie might be digested.

These diseases may also be caused through some bad and stinky humors which are in the stomacke, whether it be through mixture of heate, *Cholera*, or cold *Phlegma*, or otherwise; the which notwithstanding, how late soeuer that it be, do trouble the stomacke, cause wambling, but not so forribly that the stomacke is able thereby to expell them.

The signes thereof are for the most part apparant to the eye, and to be enquired by the sicke person. If it be long of the stomacke, then is some heate to be perceiued in the feeling of the stomack, which also is by the complexion augmented, as old age, the time of the yeare. And if otherwise there be somewhat parbaked or vomited vp, and that the same cometh through cold, then causeth it neither thirst nor heate, the patient desireth rest and quiet. If so be that it do come through heate and cold, then do come all things for the most part by the foresaid feblenes of the stomacke, for which are the remedies here expessed to be therefore vsed: yet is this here especially commended.

But if so be that this wambling or lothsomnes do procede of *Cholera*, with heate and bitterness of the mouth, or out of the throte and tongue, then prepare the matter with sirrup of Vineger, and with *Oxymel Simplex*. The vomiting and purging must be brought to passe through these meanes following: Take Violets, Burrage flowers, and Buglosse flowers, of each halfe an ounce, 15. or 16. Damaske Runes, seethe them together with 18. ounces of water vnto the halfe, then lay it to steepe therein a whole night, halfe an ounce of yellow Pirolalanes, Rubarb and Mag. or more, after wards toying it out very hard, and drinke it beimes in the morning. After purging strengthen the stomacke with sirrup of Apples, of Pomegranats or of Quinces which is made of Sugar. And for this is to be vsed also the confection *Triafranton*, conferue of Roses, or *Rosata Nonella*. First, he must eate Lettice, Parslaine, and Sorrell, with Vineger, and Strawberies if they be ripe. His meate must be tempered with the iuice of Sorrell, Oranges, and the iuice of Limons.

But if this wambling or lothsomnes do procede of colde, then must the matter be prepared with *Oxymel diureticum*, or with sirups of Cloymwood, and with wine of Cloymwood, and afterwards must the patient be constrained to vomit.

For to purge must be taken *Diatriph* or *Hiera Picra*, which is sharpened with a little *Efula* or *Psaltike*: after purging, *Parimalad* with spices is to be vsed, and *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Diapiru* with *Pulsus*, or *Letitia Galeni*. Also make a sauce of Parslie, Sage, Pints, Clones, beaten together, and tempered with vineger. Moreover, all manner of other meanes are to be vsed to quicken the appetite. Outwardly is the stomacke to be annoynted with the oyle of Parslie and of Cloymwood.

Plaisters and other things mo which be fit for this, are to be found in the treatise of the debilitie of the stomacke. But if this disease be caused through repletion of the bodie, then is the cure to be begun with letting blood, and afterwarde to purge (whether it came through heate or colde) and so to procede with other things.

Of wambling or vomiting through weaknes of the
Stomacke. §. II.



So we haue spoken of the lothsomnes of meate: so we will now make mention of the third, which is of the vomiting. This is partly a desire, and partly a constraint of vomiting. But to speake abusedly of it, there be two kindes of vomitings: to wit, that which is called of the Grecians *Anastrophē*, and of the Latinistes *Inversio* (which is a turning upside downe of the stomacke) wherein all that is beneath in the stomacke is yelved upward by vomit; the other manner of vomiting is called *Cholera*, or *Cholerica passio*.

The which not onely with parbaking, but also with a strong scowzing doth take one, whereof we will now write. Concerning the first kinde of vomiting, it is thus described: Vomiting is a motion of the stomacke, whereby it doth cast upwardes that which is grosse, and all that is hurtfull vnto it. The causes of this casting are many: namely, to strike on the stomacke, to fall, and such like, or vpon any other parts, which haue some sympathie with the stomacke, as the braines, and other strong motions. Item, when it happeneth to those that are vpon the boysterous sea. Or if there fall into the stomacke any corrupted humors, and there destroy the digestion of the stomacke. Also this parbaking may be caused through some kinde of meate, which prouoketh vomit, as we haue shewed heretofore. Item, all things wherof nature hath a loathing, as Frogs and Snailles, &c. Also the Cough may otherwhiles be too strong, and so prouoke one to vomit. Likewise also impostumes, tumors of the stomacke, or the Lights: for nature cannot suffer nor abide any matter. Lastly, all such vomits do come also through debilitie of the vertue retentive, & violence of the vertue expulsive, or if any one haue taken naxling roots, or any such like.

The signes of the parbaking are these: when one beginneth to feele a wambling, and when the lower lips begin to quiver, the vppermost intrailles begin to stir, and feele the paine of the head, and hart, giddines, and when the mouth is full of slime: the which be for the most part all the signes, that the stomacke is charged with *Cholera*. But if the causes of parbaking procede of outward things, then are they to be demanded of the sicke person, and of them that be with him. Or if any do come of any stinking matter which is in the stomacke, that is to be perceined by the stench of the brine, or by that which is cast vp, or by the stench of the ordure, wherewith the matter is otherwhiles admixed, and the patient shal well feele the same in his mouth, like as we haue sufficiently spoken thereof already.

But before we come to the remedies of these diseases, it is first needfull to adde some common rules for this parbaking.

Whereof the first is, that whensoever the parbaking doth chaunce naturally, and the patient findeth ease by it, that it is not then to be prohibited, in case that the naturall strength be not thereby enabled, which is then to be holpen by all meanes possible.

The second rule is, when nature beginneth to expell by vomit all that is hurtfull for hir, that then it is yet more to be procured. Thirdly, persons that be narrow in the breast, and haue a long leane necke, weake sight, and feeble braines, they are by no meanes to be brought to this vomiting. Fourthly, if one would haue any body parbake which is very hard to be brought vnto it, then is he first to eate much meat and other things, which causeth the humors to be loose, and also to drinke much, whereby the vertue retentive is weakened, and the expulsive strengthned, whereby the vomiting may be the more easily effected, but this is of no value for the Ague. Fifthly, rough and grosse things taken are not to be expelled through parbaking, that the throat (through which the same is to passe) be not thereby hurt. Sixthly, the vomiting is very dangerous for the stomack. Seuenthly, in them that haue an impostume in the stomacke, it is very dangerous to prouoke vomiting. Eighthly, odoriferous things be very acceptable vnto the stomacke, and assisting, especially when they be admixed with alimentall meates, therefore be they commonly ioyned with those things which prouoke vomit. Ninthly, to withdraue the matter

matter and humors of these excessive vomitings, are the outward members to be bounden, to wit, the armes and legs, and also to set the feete in warme water. Tenthly, when it is seene that this vomit hapneth in a violent disease, after the manner of a *Crisis* or ending of the disease, then is the same not to be stayed at any hand, yet if it so be that it come not too vehemently, whereby nature might be weakened, but then is the same to be cured with his contraries. Eleventhly, for this unmeasurable and excessive vomiting, may the matter be conveniently drawne downwards by Clusters.

These now be rules which are to be obserued in all maner of vomiting. When as the vomiting proceedeth of hote causes, which is presaged by the bitterness of the mouth, desire and longing for cold things, then is the matter to be prepared with *Oxyfaccchara*, or such like sirrups, and to prouoke vomiting by drinking warme water, and oyle of Violets, and by putting a feather into the throte. But if the same will not be, then are you to purge, especially with yellow *Scorbalanes*, and afterwards to strengthen the stomacke, whereof we haue giuen good aduise before.

If the patient be of a plethorick constitution, then must there be no neglect of opening the *Basilica*, for thereby shall the matter be diminished, and the whole bodie cooled.

But the principallest things that be requisite for this, are *Roses*, *Saunders*, prepared *Coriander*, *Violets*, *solwe Apples* and *Peares*, *Peaches*, *Quinces*, *Camfer*, blossoms and pills of *Pomegranats*, *Corrall*, *Bolus*, *Dragon blood*, the rinds of a *Pedlar tree*, *Quince tree*, *Wke*, and *Plum tree*; *Wineger*, the iuice of *Sorrell*, sodden iuice of *Quinces*, the iuice of *Pedlars* and of *Sernices*, sirrups of *Roses*, *Violets*, *Raspes*, *Citrons*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*, and such like, &c. Of the foresaid things you may if you please make Confections, Conserues, Sirrups, Potions, or any thing else what you please. It is especially obserued, that *Purslaine* eaten with *Wineger*, taketh away the parbzaiking through heate. But there is to be layd vpon the out side of the mouth and of the stomacke and pit of the hart, this plaister following: Take the pills and blossoms of *Pomegranats*, the seedes of *Butchers brome*, and of *Spirtles*, of *Roses* and *Bayberies*, of each halfe an ounce, *Passick*, *Spints*, of each two drag. and a halfe, *Lignum Aloes* one drag. the iuice of *Quinces* and of wild *Peares*, of each alike quantitie, or so much as is needefull for to make a plaister with it. And to the end this may be the more piercing, mixe therewith one ounce and a halfe of *Wineger*, and then spread it on a cloth, and lay it thereon, as is sayd. But if the iuice of *Quinces* and wild *Peares* be not to be gotten, then take the iuice of *Plantaine* in stead thereof: Or heate *Wineger*, and wet therein a peece of felt or a sponge, and so lay it ouer the stomack either hote or cold, and then lay on the top thereof a *Rosecake*, which is made wet ouer the vapo: of *Wineger*: but annoynt the stomacke before with the iuice of *Spints*, and then strowe the powder of *Roses* and *Spirtle* seede vpon it.

Here before in the twelfth rule is spoken of a Cluster, whereof you haue one here for example: Take *Pallowes*, *Hollyhock rootes*, *Violet leaues*, and *Bettes*, of each one handfull, peeled *Barly* and *Bran*, of each halfe a handfull, eightene or twenty *Brunes*, let them sethe, then take 16. ounces of this decoction, and put therein one ounce of *Cassie*, and of *Succo Rosarum* half an ounce: temper all together, and vse thereof two or thre or one after an other, vntill that the body be well opened.

But if the parbzaiking be caused through cold and *Plegma*, and the patient do not vomit much nor often, and that nature be not much diseased, then must first be giuen to the patient *Oxymel* of *Squils*, *Syrupus de Calamintba*, or warme water, wherein *Dill*, field *Spints*, and *Sage* are decocted. And afterwards he is to purge with *Hiera Picra*, which is sharpned with a little of the *Trocisci Albandali*, or with pills of *Aloe lota* or *Stomachicis* tempered together, or each apart.

Vomiting must be furthered or procured, and although that to this end there be many medicines described, notwithstanding is this hereafter following not to be omitted: Take the iuice of *Squils*, the iuice of *Dinions*, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Sugar thre ounces*: sethe these so thick that it will make *Tabulats*, or *Sugar plates*, each of the waight of thre drag. When you will vse them, then dissolue them, and drinke them, and then loke if you can vomit afterwards, the *Squils* haue an especiall power to moue vomit.

When as then the matter is thorowly purged, then comfort the stomack with sirrupe of *Quinces*, with *Mina*, and with sirrupe of *Spints* and *Wormewood*. His meate must be dressed with good *Spices*, his drinke shall be good old and pleasant *Wine*. He must annoynt the stomacke

make with the oyle of *Passick*, and with the oyle of *Spike* tempered together, or each alone, then strowe thereon powder of *Passick*, and lay a cleane cloth vpon it.

This plaister ensuing may also be made and prepared for the same: Take white bread so hard that you may powne it, and temper it with Vineger, and the iuice of *Pints*, put thereto one ounce of *Passick* more or lesse, according to the quantitie of the white bread, make them warme, and then temper therewith a little oyle of *Spike* and *Passick*, and so lay it warme on the pit of the stomacke. Or take tosted bread as before, and temper it with the iuice of *Pints*, and strowe halfe an ounce of this powder following vpon it: Take *Pints*, *Ginger*, *Mozme*, *Wood*, *Cypers* nuts, *Cinnamome* and *Spike*, of each one drag. *Frankincense*, *Passick*, of each halfe an ounce, and make a powder thereof, it warmeth, strengthneth, and astringeth. There may also be made of this foresayd powder Confections, Plaisters, Oyles, and all whatsoever one will.

It hapneth also sometimes that with this vomiting a laske or fire is adioyned. For to stay the same are these things following good, parched *Cresses* seide, *Cipers*, *But* leaues, *Hirrh*, *Lignum Aloes*, red *Syzyar*, *Amber*, *Landanum*, *Indie Spica*, *Spica Romana*, *Calmus*, *Cloues*, *Pints*, *Mozme*, *Wood*, *Citrons*, *Lemons*, *Oranges*, *Frankincense*, *Passick*, *Rue*, *Agnus Castus*, tosted bread, *Gallia Muscata*, and *Alipia*, and almost all kinds of *Spice*. Also *Treacle* taken with the iuice of *Pints*, stayeth vomiting.

Item, make a plaister of *Passick*, with a little sodden *Turpentine*, and lay it on the stomack, for this also are you to set boring cups vpon the shoulders.

For this also is *Parmalade* with *Spices* very good, and preferred *Quinces*, and these are the common meanes against the vomiting through a weake stomacke, be it through heate or cold. You shall also finde many more described in other places of this booke, amongst diuers sicknesses, as before in the second part the first Chapter and 2. §. is discovered for the spetting of bloud, and such like. We will now passe ouer to another manner of parbraking through *Cholera*.

Of parbraking or vomiting, with the laske or scouring. §. 12.



This maladie do the learned name after the humors, whereby it is caused, *Cholera*. The later Physicians call it *Cholericam Passionem*, and it is thus described: *Cholera* is a very sharp, troublesome, and heauie disease, which immediately molesteth one with the Rheume, whereby vomiting, great fire, or scouring, Collick, paine of the bowels, and an Ague is bred. Or, *Cholera* is a violent sickness, with vomiting, great scowring or laske, with Cramp in the sinewes, Thighes, and Legs, whereby all outward members are cold, and the pulse is small and slowe.

Or, *Cholera* is such a maladie, whereby one immediately doth scowze and rid vpwrd and downeward many kinds of humors and slime, with the meate: so that he detaineth nothing in his bodie. This sickness cometh first of spoyled and corrupted meate, which remaineth too long in some place of the bodie, as in the stomack or bowels, and there causeth a bad alteration, and also giueth little nourishment. Also this sickness is sometimes caused of cold and waterish humors, which gather themselues together in the bowels, and in the stomack, that do debilitate the retentive vertue of the stomack aboue and beneath. But the sickness for the most part is caused through much *Cholera* and red gall, that do so lye and bite in the stomack & bowels, that within the space of one houre the parbraking & going to the stoule do so haunt a bodie, that otherwhiles the strongest bodie on the third day is depriued of his life, and this is worse then all other. The signes of a cold cause are these, before the sickness be vpon one, much windnes is felt in the bowels: also some dayes before the sickness, he feleth paine and shooting about the flauell, whereupon presently ensueth a vehement laske, or fire, with vomiting of much slime, and of other illsaoured matter. This is also the sooner caused, if the patient haue vled great stoze of phlegmaticall meates.

That which is caused through heate is hereby knowne: there falleth much *Cholera* into the stomack and bowels, with great and mightie parbraking, and also with great thirst, and if one drinke cold water, then both the vomiting stay vntill that the water be warmed in the stomack. The flure is so vehement, that the patient sometimes thereby swooneth, and also utterly loseth

loseth the pulse, with an vnstedfast heate, and bereauing of his senses.

When as then it hapneth that one feelth a continuall paine in the stomacke or bowels, with great heavines of mind, and perceiueth parbaking & vomiting; then is such verily to be taken for *Cholera*: for this, there is to be giuen to the sick body lukewarme water to drinke very often. And if so be that this parbaking & scowzing continue still, then giue him warme water to drinke againe, as befoze, and that so long till you find that he haue auoyded some corrupted meates, stime, or some of the gall. This will free the patient of moe other sicknesses.

For this are moe other things to be vsed; to wit, that expell this sharpe matter: so that *Phlegma* with things necessary for it, and *Cholera* with those that helpe it, might be taken in hand, because parbaking will be cured by parbaking, and scowzing by scowzing. When as then the scowzing is staied of both ends, then is the patient to bathe one hower long; afterwards to eate a little, and that light meate, because the stomacke is very much weakened. After that, he is to eate a little *Pharmalade*, which is tempered with prepared *Coziander*, and so go sleepe. He is to vse of this *Pharmalade* as long as the scowzing or parbaking endureth.

His diet must be *Ven broth*, decocted with *Meriuiue*, steeld *Goats milke*, *Barley* and *Wfer paps*, *Sodden Lettice* and *Purlaine*; but principally if there be any heate and bitterness of the mouth remaining. But if so be that there be any cold in the stomacke, then are these herbes at no hand to be vsed. When as the patient beginneth agayne to fede well, then be good for him all field foules, and chiefly *Partridges* which haue a proper hidden vertue to strengthen the stomacke. Amongst other meates may well be vsed *Lemons*, *Citrons*, *Dzenges*, *Meriuiue* and such like. Item, all sower fruits, *Seruiues*, vnripe *Pedlars*, sower *Peares*, *Apples* and *Quinces*. Also he shall eate (although he did not gladly) sops of white bread in the iuice of *Pomegranates*: and if so be that he vomit by the same, yet must he take moze againe, and doe this so long till that he doe hold and retaine it.

As long as he is not thorow whole, then is he to drinke steeld water with sirup of *Quinces*, or old conferue of *Roses*. When he beginneth to be whole, then is he to drinke good relished wine, which is tempered with the iuice of *Pomegranates*. And if so be that he parbake it vp, then let him drinke of the same againe, but a little at once, that the stomacke be not ouercharged.

Here followeth now what is to be vsed for this scowzing and parbaking, and chiefly when it is sene that these diseases doe increase. For which one is not to be discomfited, but much moze bestir him to helpe the sicke person with these remedies following: First, you must giue him one or two dragms of *Troscos de Olibano* with water or iuice of *Pomegranats*: and afterwards to binde his legs fast, like as is taught befoze against the parbaking, when the vomiting getteth the vpper hand; so must his armes likewise be bounden, when the scowzing getteth the mastery. But aboue all, sleepe is passing good. Item *Rose water* layd very cold ouer the legs, or from the vpper part of the legs downeward wetted and washed therewith, and the fete set in it, is also very good.

In like manner is this plaister ensuing forcible to allwage the pain, and to warme and strengthen: Take rindes of the *Pedlar tree*, of *Quinces*, and of an *Daken tree*, the seide of *Butchers brome*, blossomes and rindes of *Pomegranates*, *Pirtle seed*, *Sarcocolla*, *Pasticke*, *Cammomill*, and *Spililot*, of each a like quantity: make a plaister thereof with the iuice of *Quinces*, or of wilde and sower *Peares*, and spread it on a cloth. But if the scowzing be stronger than the parbaking, then lay it warme vpon the belly. But if the parbaking be sorest of all, then lay it vpon the stomacke. Others doe make two plaisters, as hereafter followeth.

Take *Laudanum*, *Pasticke*, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Frankincense* halfe a drag. red and white *Saunders*, red *Cozall*, seides of *Butchers brome*, of each one scruple, yellowe *Rose seide*, the iuice of *Sloes*, *Hypocistis*, blossomes and pills of *Pomegranats*, of each halfe a scruple, beaten small together as much as is needefull for a plaister: spread thereof vpon a cloth, and lay a great plaister thereof ouer the stomacke, befoze and behind vpon the backe about the *Ridneies*. Item, take the iuice of *Plantaine* and *Rose water*, of each thre ounces, *Wineger* half an ounce, *Pasticke*, *Frankincense*, of each halfe a dragme, *Lentill meale* as much as is needefull for to make a plaister withall.

Another called *de Cruſta panis*: Take *Pasticke*, *Spints*, burnt *Quoy*, red *Cozall*, red and white *Saunders*, of each one dragme, *Cruſts* of white bread two ounces; keepe them halfe an hower in *Wineger*, after wards beate them all together, and temper amongst it oyle of *Pasticke*

and oyle of Quinces, of each one ounce, Barley meale as much as doth suffice for a plaister, and lay it warme vpon the stomacke. This taketh away the parbaking within the space of halfe an hower.

Hereafter follow moe salues and oyles.

TAke oyle of Pasticke and oyle of Roses, of each a like much, temper therewith a little Wineger, and annoint the stomacke with it. Item, take oyle of Pasticke, of Quinces, and of Spirtles, of each halfe an ounce, Roses, red Cozall, and Pints, of each halfe a dragme, Nutmegs, Spirtle seede, of each two scruples, and a little Wineger; temper them all with Ware, and make a salve of them for a plaister. You haue a salve also here befoze in the tenth Chapter, & the 5. §. beginning thus, Take Comin and Caruway &c. which is especiall good against parbaking being rubbed warme vpon the stomacke, and the Hauell. You may also rub alone vpon it the iuice of Plantaine tempered with Rose water: but to make it thicke, mingle therewith Lentill meale. Take oyle of Wormewood one ounce, oyle of Quinces, Pints, and Pasticke, of each halfe an ounce, Salmeley five dragmes; let them boyle vntill the wine be wasted, and when it is almost cold, then temper therewith *Species Diagalanga, Aromatici rosati, de xylo aloes*, of each one dragme, and Ware as much as sufficeth for a plaister. Item, take red Saunders & Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Gallia muscata*, and Camfere, of each one dragme, Rose water fixe ounces; temper, and then lay it on the belly: for it asswageth and coleteth. Item, Rose water alone made colde in snowe, and laid vpon the belly, and when it is warme, layd cold againe vpon it, is very conuodious for this purpose.

Another. Take Bay berries, Hedlar leaues, Frankincense, Tormentill, grosse Parierom, (or them that one can best get) of each halfe an ounce; cut and sethe it in red wine, and afterwards lay it as a warme plaister vpon the stomacke with Towe wetted therein: This is especiall good for all them that cannot keepe in their meate. This ensuiing is also accompted to haue a maruellous operation: Take the iuice of Crabs, make a double cloth wet therein; if his body be hot with an Ague, then lay it cold vpon it: but if the body be colde, then apply it luke warme vpon it. Item, take tosted bread beaten small fower ounces, Pasticke one quarter of an ounce, make it metely hot, and lay it warme in a bag vpon the stomacke: It taketh winde away, and also the Collicke in the belly.

Another. Take Roses, blossomes of Pomegranates, of each one handfull and a halfe, *Gallia muscata* one dragme and a halfe, the iuice of Aloes, Spirtles, Frankincense, of each one dragme, Wormewood, *Hypocistis*, Cipers rotes, Cloues, Pasticke, of each halfe a dragme, red and white Cozall, *Spica*, of each one scruple, tosted bread halfe an ounce, Camfere halfe a dragme, beat it small together, and then put it into a bag, and so apply it.

In the mixture of other things is often times mention made of the *Troiscis* of *Gallia muscata*, or *Alipta muscata*: And because that their description is but brieue, we will here ad it vnto the rest.

Galliamuscata is made thus: Take *Lignum Aloes* five dragmes, Amber three dragmes, Puske one dragme, Dragagant dissolved in Rose water, as much as sufficeth for to make *Troiscis* with it, and keepe them well. The *Alipta muscata* is thus prepared: Take pure *Landanum* fower ounces, liquid Sytyr one ounce and a halfe, red Sytyr one ounce, *Lignum Aloes* halfe a dragme, Amber one dragme, Camfere halfe a dragme, Puske halfe a scruple, and a little Rose water, and prepare them thus: In the Dog dayes must you set the Sytyr and *Landanum* with the Rose water together in the Sun, let them there drie together vntill they be as hard as bowes: afterwards stamp them in a mortar, and temper the rest amongst them, then forme *Troiscis* of them, and keepe them very well, like as you doe the other. For this parbaking is also used for menting vpon the stomacke: therefore make or chuse your selfe that which you desire of these things which be prescribed. Take the things which we haue ordained for the first bags beaten grossly, sethe them in the iuice of Quinces, and in Rose water, of each fixe ounces, red thicke wine eight ounces, Wineger two ounces: make therein a cloth or sponge wet, wring it well out, and hold it very warme vpon the stomacke.

Another. When the stomacke is vtterly spoyled, so that the patient can neither abide meate nor drinke, then may it be strengthened againe with these fomentations ensuiing: Take Balme,

Wormewood

Gallia muscata.

Alipta muscata.

Wormewood, grosse Parietom, field Pints, Fennell, and Dill seed, of each a handfull, Pattick, Galingall, Putnegg, Squinant, Pirtle seede, and Coziander, of each thre dragmes, wild Wine leanes and the blossomes halfe a handfull; beate all grosse together, and sethe them in thicke red wine, and vse it as aforesaid. Item, take garden Pints, Balme, Wormewood and Roses, of each one handfull, Cammomill, wilde Vine leanes, Betony, Rosemary, of each halfe a handfull, Calmus halfe an ounce; beaten all together grosse, put it into two bags, each one a quarter of a yarde long: then sethe them in red wine, and a little water, and then layd vpon the stomacke, sometime the one, and sometime the other. This fomenting must be so continued the space of a quarter of an hower, and afterwards are you to vse the prescribed salue with the spices, and weare one of the foresaid plaisters vpon it.

But if so be that the scowring or laske of the belly will not stay, then must boring cups be set vpon the shoulders vnpickt, and taken off and on. The like is also to be done for continuall vomits, and to set a great cup vpon the Pauell, to the ende thereby to drawe the matter downe wards: And in case that the sicke body can sleepe with these cups so fastened, it is so much the better. There is also often times to be holden befoze his nose, Sanders, Moles, & such like things for to smell vnto them. Also some doe counsell to take for this scowring (if it continue) the stalks of Camariske being scraped cleane, and to powder them, and then put thereto as much Parts tong as these foresaid powders, the quantity of two handfuls, powring then vpon it thre pints of wine: of which wine he is alwayes to drinke his first draught sitting at the table. This wine is also especiall good for the Pilt or Splene.

If there befall any swooning, then must there be giuen to the sicke body two greins of Puske tempered in wine: for this strengtheneth much the vitall spirits. In like maner is Ven both and Lambe both good for him, tempered with a little of the iuice of Quinces. Let the patient also haue roasted Bullets cut in peeces vnder his nose; for the smell thereof doth much comfort. Also let him chew Frankincense, and swallow downe the same treatably. At the last temper together fine Bolus and Camfere, of each one scruple, and temper them with old wine and drinke it: it doth cole and strengthen the stomacke.

All that is hitherto rehersed, is to be vsed whilst the parbaking yet endureth. But if it stay, and the stomacke begin to retaine the meate, then is the patient to drinke good old strong wine, and compose himselfe to sleepe, and also to take of the *Trociscos de Olibano* the waight of halfe a dragme, which is thus prepared.

Take fine Bolus and Frankincense, of each one ounce and a quarter, Cucubes, Cardamom, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Camfere, *Gallia muscata*, Cloues, of each thre quarters of an ounce; make thereof *Trociscos* with old wine: these are especiall good against parbaking. Item take the iuice of sower Pomegranates as much as you please, and when it hath stode one night and the cleare is powdered off, then sethe it to the thicknes of hony. When it is taken from the fire, and whilst that it is hot put some spints vnto it; so let it cole, and then take out the herbs againe. This may be vsed warme or how one will, and is called at the Apothecaries *Rob de granatis*. After the same manner you may also make *Rob* of the iuice of Quinces. For this is also requisite the sirupe of Meriuice, and of Pirtles. But if so be that there cannot be gotten anie of the foresaid thinges for the foresayd sirupes, then take Wine, Plantaine, and Rose water.

Trocisci de Olibano.

Rob de granatis.

Now for as much as in this our methode we are come to the Laske or siire of the belly, which is commonly caused through a weake stomacke and diseased Liuer, therefore it is now requisite that we discourse of all other sorts of Lasks whatsoever: but first of all we will make a generall discourse of them.

Of the Flixe, Laske, or scowring by stoole. §. 13.



First, it hapneth often in haile people, who haue a plethorick bodie, and do eate and drinke much, that they get a Laske, which commeth not often vpon them, continueth not long, also not otherwise then of a strong nature, who seeketh to vnburthen her of superfluities, like as it commeth to passe, that thereby the patient findeth great ease. This scowring hath no neede of any remedie, vnlesse it be caused of ouergreat weakenes, for the which the same counsell is to be vsed

which is prescribed against the fire of the belly *Lienteria*, so that at this present there is nothing more to be written thereof. If so be then that this scowzing of the belly be taken for a disease, then is it first to be understood, that the same is caused through many inward members of the body, and also of diuers other causes, like as shall be hereafter taught immediately, that the same cannot be ascribed to any one thing. And for that we should not describe this kind of laske by piece meales here and there, we will now here ascribe this fire to the stomacke (as is already expressed:) the which if it be no euident cause of this scowzing, yet notwithstanding it is a great help to the same: we will then afterwards adde vnto it all that appertaineth vnto it, as the constraint to the stole, and binding of the body, and all that is good for it. But first of all we must here rehearse certain rules which are to be obserued for all sorts of lasks: wherof the first is, that no scouring or laske is to be staied before the fourth day, if so be that the patient be able to suffer the same without extreme faintnes. Secondly, when you will euer vse astringent remedies, then must y^e same be alwaies done before meat, to the end that the meat which is taken after the might be staied vntill it were digested. Thirdly, this is to be noted of all binding meates, of Chestnuts, and such like. Fourthly, when the laske is of heate, then are the remedies to be vsed which are cold of nature, and for the scowzing of cold, contrary remedies. And because that in the cold scowzing the digestive vertue is very feeble, warme things are to be vsed, according to the importance of the case. Fifthly, if so be that there do come a cough to this scowzing, then are all sowerly things to be forbidden, and all those which binde much. Sixthly, it is very good for all lasks to force the bodie to sweating, and to annoint it much with oyle of Cammomill and Will, thereby to draw out the matter, and to open the pores. Seuenthly, cups are to be set vpon the belly, and kept vpon it sowerly holowes long. Eighthly, he is to be restrained and kept from all fruits, except Chestnuts, which may binde if they will. Ninthly, rest and sleepe are especiall good for all fires: so is also contrarywise bad, great labour, and other motions of the body. Tenthly, when as in the red or bloudie fire the uppermost guts are excoriated, then is the remedie to be ministered in at the mouth: and if the lower guts be perished, then must Clisters and suppositories be ministered beneath. Eleuenthly, if the Excoriation of the bowels be aboue and beneath, then are the remedies to be vsed aboue and beneath.

And that we may come to the originall, the learned do name three Species of fires or lasks: as namely, *Lienteriam Diarream* (vnder which is contained the fire of the Liuer) and *Dysenteriam*: but what difference is betwene these lasks, that shall in their proper description be declared.

First, this is here alwayes to be noted, that all lasks be moued of inward or outward causes, as vnhealthie meates, vnrule life, eating of any venemous things, also heate or cold of the time. The inward causes may proceede out of the head, as if any humors do fall out of the head into the lower parts of the body, be it into the stomacke, or into the uppermost or vndermost bowels: likewise also into the small vaines *Mesaraica*, into the Liuer, Spleen, and sometimes also into the whole bodie, like as when the same is too full of humors, or too much wasted away, euen as it may be seene in the consumption *Phthisi*, *Hectica*, and in the pestilent feuer, out of all which the expert Physicians do take and discern sundry signes and obseruations.

Of the Laske, *Lienteria*, of *Cholera*, and Heate. §. 14.



This is an infirmite of the retentive vertue of the stomacke, with the slipperines of the guts, whereby it hapneth that the meate taken very suddenly without digestion, like as it was receiued, passeth away by the stole.

The cause of this scowzing may be great cold and moisture, which doth so benumme naturall heate, that the meate cannot digest, neither can the stomacke retaine and keepe it. Contrarywise, may this laske be also caused through outward heate, which doth so discusse the naturall warmth, and causeth it to euaporate, that thereby the digestion is utterly ouerthrowne. In like maner also, this fire commeth through stripes, falls, thrusts, and bathings in cold water, distemperature of the stomacke, and of other parts, debilitie of the retentive and strength of the expulsive vertue, a cold complexion, (so that it is seldome caused through heate) impostumes of the stomacke, which expelleth the meate and drinke, as things whereby the stomacke is hurt. Item, it doth also come to passe, that the bowels

els be too slipperie, or that there is too much meate, or that it be hurtfull, whereby it doth make a great disturbance in the guts.

If so be that the meate be not kept or holden in the stomacke, but before the due time, without great alteration, though the laske be expelled, with a gnawing in the stomack, and with thirst, & when before the meat there cometh forth a little corrupted matter: then may it be well concluded that it is *Lienteria*, which is caused of *Cholera*. To cure this, and all other scowzings (of whatsoever causes they proceede) this common rule following is to be obserued: to wit, that all those things (wherewith you purpose to stay it) are to be used before meats, then doth the same presse the meate downewards, and increaseth the laske, like as in the former 13. S. hath bene taught.

But to proceede with this laske (wherein the meate is not digested) first giue to the sicke bodie the iuice of Pomegranats, burnt Iuozie, and Roses, of each one drag. For this, is also good boyled Meriuiue, Raspes, Butchers Bwomesede, and the iuice of Quinces.

Whilst that the bodie is strong ynough, and the sicknes hath not as yet gotten the maistray, and that he may tolerate it, then must the *Cholera* be purged, and especially with yellow Spirobalanes, afterwards he is to use cooling, astringent, and binding things, and to be forbidden all that is hote. These Sirrups ensuing are passing good, as namely, sirrupe of Meriuiue, Quinces, Peares, Apples, Pomegranats, and Raspes, moreover certaine Simples also which are woorthie to be remembred, like as *Hypocistis*, blossomes of Pomegranats, Gals, iuice of Sloes, Roses, Araby Gum, sealed earth, fine *Bolus*, burnt Iuozie, Camfer, Pomegranat seedes without iuice, Purldaine seede, seedes of Sorrell, Coziander, Plantaine, and Hirtles, the yelloe seede of the Rose, Saunders, Cozrall, Dragon blood, Poppie seede, Horse failes, Knotgras, wilde Vine leaues, the iuice of Sharp Plantaine, and the seede, and chiefly when they be parched, and such like more.

The fruits which are fit for this disease be Quinces, Seruices, Medlars, wilde Peares, black Cherries, vnripe Mulberries, and such like fruits more which do binde and cole. You may also giue *Trociscos de Spodio*, two or three drag. mingled with the water of Knotgras, or Plantaine, and because that we haue before spoken much of them, and shall be used often hereafter, we will here learne how to prepare them: Take Roses, burnt Iuozie, (which is *Spodium* Trocisci de) wherof they haue their name) Sorrell seedes, the seedes of Butchers Bwome, blossomes of Spodio. Pomegranats, and Gum of Araby, of each a like quantitie: make thereof *Trociscos*, each of the waight of a quarter of an ounce, and giue it them to drinke, as is sayd, with one ounce of the iuice of Quinces.

Another. Take Roses one ounce and a halfe, burnt Iuozie one ounce and a quarter, the seedes of Sorrell three quarters of an ounce, Purldaine seede, prepared Coziander seedes, and paled Butchers Bwome seede, of each two drag. and a halfe, Starch, blossomes of Pomegranats, and Barberies, of each one quarter of an ounce, parched Gum one drag. and a halfe, temper all together with Meriuiue. These Trocisks are good for all Agues which be caused of *Cholera*, and that haue a laske admired, also for all tumors of the stomacke, and continuall thirst.

Other Trocisks. Take fine *Bolus*, sealed earth, Cozrall, Saunders, Sumach, Barberies, Quinces kernels, blossomes and pils of Pomegranats, Gals, of each one drag. beate them all small together, and temper them with the iuice of Plantaine and of Wormewood, and then forme them into Trocisks when you will vse them; then take a dragme or twaine thereof with Milke wherein glowing pibbles are flaked. But if then this scowzing and the Ague do not weare away, with all the vse of these foresaid things, then take fine *Bolus*, sealed earth, and burnt Iuozie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Amber, Roses, blossomes of Pomegranats, the iuice of Sloes, *Hypocistis*, and Cinnamome, of each one drag. and a halfe, make them into powder: take thereof sixe drag. Buttermilke sixe ounces, and giue it him at one time, to wit, before none.

If so be that the stomacke be hurt through the choler, (which may be perceiued hereby, if there come any corruption or matter with the stole) then take Barly water and Hony water, of each three spoonefuls, and giue it the sicke bodie to drinke, it clenseth all that is ercoziated. Afterwards he shall vse this following to heale withall: Take Dragagant, Gum, Pastick, Frankincense, Amber, of each one drag. stamp all these into a subtil powder, and make thereof pils, with the iuice of Wormewood, wherof he is to take twaine euery morning.

Plaisters

Plaisters are also very requisite for this, whereof here followe twaine: Take the iuice of Melars, Seruices, greene Pomegranate pils and the flowers, of each one ounce, 15. or 16. Pynes, whereof the stones be taken out, the iuice of Quinces, red Wine, of each sixe ounces, oyle of Spirtles and of Quinces, of each three ounces, Pasticke, Colophonia, yellow Rose seedes, Sloss, and Rye meale of each one quarter of an ounce, the middlemost pils of Chestnuts, three dragmes, Ware as much as is needfull, and a little Vineger: spread it on a clothy, and lay it ouer the whole belly.

The second. Take the iuice of Plantaine three ounces, Rose water, Vineger, of each one ounce, Butchers brome seede, Barberries, Piobalans Chebuli, Indi, Emblics, Bellirici, Citrini, of each two ounces, red Cozall, red and white Saunders, yellow Rose seede, Pasticke, of each one dragme, blossomes and pils of Pomegranates, Gals, of each halfe an ounce, Lentill meale as much as is needfull for to make a metely soft plaister. This plaister is of a maruellous operation, if there be any vnnaturall heate with the laske.

This diet is to be all maner of sower and cold things, wherewith he must also dresse his boyled and roasted meates. He must temper his drinke with Rose water wherein Butchers brome seede hath been steeped: parched Rice decocted in Coates milke, and parched Warley sodden in Almond milke are very requisite for him. All that which is hot of nature, and is laxative, must he forbear; as also all that doth augment *Choleram*.

But if this scowzing be caused through weakenes of the retentive power, be it of the stomacke or of the bowels, then are those parts to be comforted, and that with odoriferous and binding medicines, as followeth: Take Cipers rotes, Pasticke, Calmus, Smallage, and Comin, (which hath first been steeped in Vineger) Gals, Cipers nuts and the leaues, Spirtle seede, Raylons stones, dyed Pomegranate kernels, Frankincense, and Pasticke, of each a like much: make a powder thereof, and giue it in the morning fasting to drinke one quarter of an ounce, with good wine or steeld milke. Outwardly annoynt the stomacke and the whole belly with oyle of Pasticke or Wormewood, and weare vpon it a plaister of Pasticke: He is also to vse *Parimalade*.

But when this scowzing causeth no gnawing or griping in the stomacke, nor yet yieldeth any corrupt matter from it but onely a tough slimy substance, and when there is no great thirst with it, but onely some belching; then is it a certaine signe that this scowzing is caused through *Phlegma*. For this, the patient is to vse all such things as extenuate and lose this slime, as Mustard seede, salt fish, and such like. Afterwards shall he force himselfe to vomite, with salt, Vineger, sodden Hony, or with some other thing, which expelleth siegme. And if that will not suffice, then vse this following.

Take Aloes one ounce, the inside of Coloquinte, and Indie salt, of each halfe an ounce, Turbith one dragme; make pils thereof: and you are to take of these but one pill at once. For this disease are the purgations commodious, which hereafter be described against the paine of the stomacke through *Phlegma*.

Some other doe write a more proper cure, to wit, Take sirup of Wormewood and Spints, of each three ounces, temper them, and drinke thereof at each time two ounces, with three ounces of the decoction wherein Beale, Spints, and Spike were boyled. Afterwards purge with the pils called *Stomachica*: Also vse vomiting herewith, like as is before rehearsed; for it is very commodious in this case, if it weaken not too much. For his meates he is to vse all drie things, as roasted felds foules, and chiefly roasted Larkes, Turtle doues, and such like; as doe not sodainly passe awaie: yet alwayes a little at once, and no more then the stomacke is well able to beare.

This medicine following is not onely for *Lienteria*, but also for the laske called *Diarrhea*, very good: it detayneth the meates receiued in the stomacke; which also with the bowels, it doth warme, strengthen and drie.

Take Cypers nuts and the leaues, dyed Spints, Pasticke, Frankincense with his rindes, grosse Cinnamon, Pace and Galingall, of each three dragmes, Cresses seedes, Comin, and prepared Coziander (all together a little parched) of each halfe an ounce, *Landanum*, red Styrax, Ambra, Citron pils, of each one drag. and a halfe, *Lignum Aloes* and *Spica*, of each one drag. make thereof Trociscs of the weight of one dragme and a halfe, and giue to the patient thereof at euery time, as well before dinner as before supper, with some milke, wherein pibble stones be

naked. Also you may minister of this powder alone one drag. or to make a confection of it with Sugar. This patient is also to vse some solwe and salt things befoze and after meate, as Cypers and Olives, which be requisite also for this purpose. For these cold phlegmatick scourings be these simple, warming, and binding remedies very good: parched Comin, *Aniseos*, Annis, Frankincense, Pirrh, Sytyar, Pastick, Putnecs, Cypers nuts, *Laudanum*, parched Rubarb, Moymewood, Pints, *Lignum Aloes*, rootes of Cypers, Bucks and Hares rennet. Of confections and confectioned things may be vse confectioned Ginger, *Diagalanga*, *Diaviron pipereon*, de *Cymino*, Par-malad with Spices, also sometimes Treacle and Pithidate. Item, there is also very profitable for this, strong Wine, as Puscabell, Palmsey, and such like, and otherwhyles a good pull, or hartie draught dronke thereof.

But for a common drinke he shall vse clere white Wine, which is mixtely strong, which can well heate and dry the stomacke.

Hereafter be many things described, which may be vled with aduantage for this scouring, with this condition alwayes, to discerne warmth and cold.

Of the Laske *Diarrhea*. §. 15.

This loosenes of the belly is thus described: *Diarrhea* is a watrish laske, with griping, but without Excoziation of the bowels, and without heate, caused diuersly, whereby the bodie is consumed and diseased. This scouring is caused of all humors of the body, that is, of Bloud, *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and of *Melancholia*, and proceedeth not alwayes from some particular part of the bodie, but rather from the whole bodie, as throught weakenes of nature, in such as let hands and fete fall throught great weakenes.

The learned do discover sixe kinds of causes of this *Diarrhea*: whereof the first is caused of the Gall and the Liuer: the second of the stomacke only, but sometimes out of the Liuer also, which two are the principallest members, amongst which the other solwe be comprehended. Thirdly, this scouring is also very well caused throught the obstruction of the small vaines which are called *Mesaraica*. Fourthly, of the Spilt. Fifthly, this laske is also sometimes caused of the braines. Sixthly, throught windines, whereof we shall hereafter write moze at large.

When as now this scowzing is caused of the Liuer and Gall, then is *Cholera* very abundant: or if the same be but very little, yet is the same so hote and so sharp, that nature cannot abide her gnawing and heate, but seeketh to expell the same by all meanes possible, so that the perfect digestion might not thereby be weakened: therefore you haue for this first infirmitie these signes following, to wit, when the meate digested passeth away with a subtle, ill coloured, and whitish watrishnes, then it is a signe that the Liuer is fixbled and ouercold. For this, there is to be giuen to the patient the confection of Iron drasse, which is *Scoria Ferri*, or some other things, which warme the Liuer, and strengthen it. For which, you shall finde here befoze sundry remedies, where we haue spoken of *Lienteria*, which do warme and strengthen the inward parts in such like lasks, which you may vse at this present, each alone, or mixed: here follow the remedies which be requisite for this intent.

Take *Trociscos de Spodio*, Rubarb, and winter Cherries, of each one scruple, beate them all small, and make thereof with Agrimony water sixe or seauen pills, take them euery morning with smalladge water. Item, take Spirtle seade, and Nut blossomes, of each one drag. Amber, Zeduary, of each one scruple, beate and temper them all together, and part them in five equall parts.

This plaister following is also to be prepared: Take Annis, Comin, Cresses seade, parched together, and Frankincense, of each three drag. the iuice of Moymewood one ounce and a halfe, Rose water two ounces, strong Vineger one ounce, beaten Cypers nuts, as much as sufficeth for to make a plaister with it: these being made, then lay it warme vpon the Liuer and Stomack, and vpon the parts adioyning.

You may also vse this salve following: Take oyle of wild Roses one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Spica one ounce, Pastick and Rubarb, of each one drag. a little Ware, melt the same in the oyles, and when it beginneth to cole, mire the rest with it.

Item, take *Spec. Triasantali* one drag. fine Bolus, *Trociscos de Spodio*, of each halfe a drag. Pastick

Spallick one scruple, oyle of Mozme wood, of Capers, of each halfe an ounce, a little Mlaye, make a salve of them.

But if this scowzing do procede of heate, then are cooling and binding medicines to be used for it, like as herebefore in *Lienteria*, where it is sufficiently discoursed, *Triasantali*, *Diapenidionis*, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Corall, and prepared Coziander, of each halfe a dragme, Quince kernels, Sozrell seede, Railon stones, of each one scruple, Cinnamome, Frankincense, of each five greines, Conserue of drye Roses one ounce, Rose water two ounces, white Sugar nine ounces: sethe the Sugar in the foresaid water, and make a confection of it. Item, take old conserue of Roses, and Parmalade, of each one ounce, sirrupe of Spirtles, as much as sufficeth for to make therewith a Confection. Another. Take the Species of *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, prepared Molnes lyuer, and Kubarb, of each halfe an ounce, Sugar which is clarified with Rose water, as much as you please: make a confection thereof, or cast Tabulats of it. You are also to mire amongst it as much burnt Quozie as you please.

Or take at the Apothecaries the confection called *Diacracoma*, or *Diacrycuma*, and Cozrars, of each one ounce, Kubarb, prepared lyuer of a Wolfe, of each one drag. burnt Quozie halfe a drag. *Philonium Persicum* one drag. *Syrupi de Byzantijs* as much as is needefull for to make therewith a Confection, then take alwayes thereof about the third day one quarter of an ounce, or a little more at once.

This following is also very good: Take old conserue of Roses fowze ounces, Parmalade two ounces, prepared Coziander one drag. Putmegs halfe a drag. confectioned Pirobalanes *Chabuli* one ounce, clenised Pistacies halfe an ounce, Almonds thre drag. beate them all small together, and then make a confection of it with the iuice of Quinces: sirrup of dyed Roses doth commonly stay all scowzings.

Take clenised rotes of Burres, and sethe them vntill they be mellow, afterwards fry them in Butter, and eate them. Item, take a Putmeg be it great or small, let it sweate well in hote ashes, and eate it as it is, or strowe it vpon a roasted Partridge, or some such like thing. Or take a Turtle Dowe, prepare it, and fill it with new Mlaye, with Spirtles, and Butchers Bzome seede, let it then be roasted by a milde fire, and afterwards eate it, it bindeth maruellously. It is also required by expert Physitions, that new laid Eggs are to be fryed in Mlaye. Or do take an Egge, and rost it vpon a hote tyle, and strowe vpon it the powder of Putmegs.

But if it be not given at due time, then doth it bring more damage then commoditie.

This powder following are you also to prepare: Take Species *Aromatici Rosati*, one drag. Cinnamome one drag. and a halfe, prepared Coziander two scruples, Roses and red Corall, of each one scruple, Sugar fowze ounces. Item, take parched Cresses seede and Spallick, of each one drag. giue him this with the sirrupe of Quinces. Some do giue Cresses seede alone, with the sirrupe of Quinces.

We will now recite certaine Potions: Take Spirtle seede one drag. giue it him with rains water or Plantaine water thre ounces, and let him drinke it. Or take Luerwozt one handfull, Cardiner rotes, Fennell, Smalage, Butchers Bzome, Sperage, and Parsly, of each two handfuls, Agrimony halfe a handfull, Cozars one ounce: cut all that is to be cut, and let it be sodden in Bullet broth or water, vntill that the third part be wasted, then drinke thereof a cruise full, and temper amongst it halfe a drag. of prepared Forelights. Item, take Mozmentill one drag. giue the patient to drinke thereof fowze or five times in red Wine.

Or take the rindes of a Beare tre one handfull, a good pinte of red Wine: let them sethe together so long as one may sethe an hard Egge, and drinke a good hartie draught of it very warme. But for his accustomed drinke he may prepare this following: Take about 50. Sloes, and powze vpon it about a good halfe pinte of seething Wine, afterwards couer it close, and let it be cold together: this being done, then powze all together into thre pints of Wine, and drinke thereof a good draught.

A roasted Quince Beare eaten early in the morning, is also very good. Some do say that one must drinke Beere or Wine, which hath stode a while vpon *Bolus*. For this, is also steeld water good, wherein is flaked Steele, Iron, Gold, Silver, or pibble stones: yea, all the patients meate is to be dyest with it.

Item, take of the pessel of a Hart as much as you please, shauen, or grated small, and put it in your drinke. Item, take a dyed Otters lyuer, beate it to powder, and drinke thereof the quantity

title of a Beane with warme Spilke, or with red Wine, it is said that it is tried.

Likewise is commended Plantaine decocted in Vineger, and the broth being dronken. The water also of Waken leaues doth stop much, being dronken warme. The like doth also the iuice of Sloes, with the stones of Raysons being beaten together, and the water distilled thereof and dronken. You haue also in the first part, the first Chapter, and 3. S. a good water of the crums of burnt bread, which is especiall good for this scouring or laske.

This plaister following is also especially commended for this: Take broad Plantaine xii. ounces, the leaues of the Pomegranate tre, Comfrey, Daisies, and the leaues of *Palma Christi*, of each two ounces, (being all greene) the seede of Butchers Brome, Gals, Spittle seede, of each one ounce, prepared Coziander one ounce, sealed earth halfe an ounce, Dragon blood one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus three ounces, Saffron halfe a drag. Pace three drag. Gum, Dragagant, both parched, of each halfe an ounce: first beate the leaues, and sethe them in three pintes of water, then put vnto it three ounces of red Vineger, then let it sethe well againe, and strayne the decoction, then stamp that which is boyled with all the rest. Lastly, temper halfe a dragme of Camfer with it, and make a supple plaister of it, and lay it ouer the whole Belly.

If so be that this scouring procede from the stomacke, (euen as it may, as wel as from the Luer) then hath the same the like cause, to wit, *Pblegma* and *Cholera*. And thereby it may be discerned that it procedeth from the stomacke, if so be that there appeare no feblenes of the Luer, and if so be that which the patient doth auoyd be very white and thin, and that the stomacke be grieved. The chiefe cause is, that many superfluous humors do aggrauate the same: or, that there is much meate and drinke together in the stomacke, and especially when as both these things do concurre, to wit, many superfluous humors, and much meate and drinke. So that then the meate and drinke is of necessitie for a time expelled out of the stomacke, be it through weakenes of the retentiu, or through the efficacie of the vertue expulsive, or that the digestion be of it selfe so faint, that the meate thereby as halfe digested must passe through the stomacke. And to finde good aduise for this, the stomacke must be strengthened and heated, for which is very meete Pharmalade with Spices, but especially this powder following: Take dry Pomegranat kernels parched and beaten small, one drag. Caruway, Coziander, both steeped in Vineger, dyed and parched, of each two ounces and a halfe, *Lignum Aloes*, blossomes of Pomegranats, and Butchers Brome, of each one drag. make a powder of all these, and giue a drag. of it at one time.

Item, take *Mirobalani Chebuli*, which be a little parched, one quarter of an ounce, Spittle seede one drag. sirupe of Spittle one ounce, vse this as occasion serueth. Item, take the shales of yellow Mirobalanes which be parched one quarter of an ounce, beate them small, and giue them to drinke with two ounces of Plantaine water. In fine, all sorts of Mirobalanes a little parched, are good for all scourings of the belly, of whatsoever cause they do procede.

Afterwards, you are to vse the confectiōs of *Diacalaminta*. In like manner also Annis seede, and roasted hassell nuts. Of the foresaid hassell nuts one may make milke with steeld water, and also the same being confected with Sugar. Afterwards you must annoynt the stomacke with oyle, as namely with oyle of Pastick, or Frankincense, and so couer it warme. The patient must sethe Pastick with red Wine, and drinke the same, if so be that the same go not cleane against him.

But if this scouring do come through *Cholera*, it may be perceiued by the yellow excrements which do smart much in the fundament, as also by the thirst, and by the Ague: Then are you to giue him *Trociscos de Spodio*, with parched Barly broth, which is made as followeth: Take parched Barly beaten, and powze so much water vpon it vntill it be well couered, then let it boyle vntill it be very thicke, and afterwards wring it out. Of this decoction are you to take foure ounces, and two or three dragmes of these *Trociscos*, and then mingle it with so much Quozie and Gum, as one can drinke at one time. Item, take one drag. and a halfe of yellow Mirobalanes, *Chebuli*, and *Indi*, of each one scruple, parched Rubarb foure scruples, Dragagant halfe a drag. steepe all these in two ounces of the iuice of Quinces, one ounce of Cinbue water, and halfe an ounce of the water of Bellitozy, wring it out hard, and take it luke warme.

Item, take Rubarb one drag. or one and a halfe, parch it, and poune it to powder, and drinke it with three ounces of Plantaine water.

Take of the best Rubarb one drag. and a halfe, parch it, and beate it to powder, the pills

Parched
Barly broth

of

of Spirobalanes *Chebuli* one dragme, *Pasticke* thre dragmes, the iuice of Quinces halfe an ounce, the water of broad Plantaine thre or foure ounces : temper them together, and drinke it fasting in the morning.

Some that be prone to this scouring, do accustome euery weeke two times to eate one dragme of Rubarb parched. Item, take the confection of *Micleta* one ounce and a halfe, *Trociscos de Spodio* one dragme, temper it with thre ounces of raine water, and drinke it carely in the morning. Take yellow Spirobalanes and Rubarb, of each one dragme, Dragagant and Gum, of each one scruple, parched together, Cucubes, fine Bolus, of each halfe a scruple, beaten small together, then temper with it sufficient sirrup of *Pirtles*, and when as then you will vse of it, breake it as is aforesaid.

A powder wherewith the patients meate is to be strowed : Take good Rubarb one dragme and a halfe, yellow Spirobalanes one quarter of an ounce, both parched, fine Bolus one dragme, yellow Saunders, red Cozall, of each one scruple, prepared Berles one dragme, *Trociscos de Spodio* one dragme, make thereof a subtil powder. You may also take the waight of one dragme, and a halfe with Plantaine water.

For this be also Clifters requisite, as hereafter follow : Take the boeth of a Lambs head and a Calues head one pinte, sethe oaken leaues in it, broad and picked Plantaine, of each one handfull and a halfe, parched Barly halfe a handfull : let them sethe vnto the halfe, then take of this decoction, and put vnto it the yolks of a couple of Eggs, brayed well, oyle of Roses two ounces, oyle of Violets two ounces, and then minister this Clister warme.

Item, take prepared Coziander, *Pirtle* seede, Acorne cups, the seedes of Plantaine, and iuice of Sloes, of each one handfull, fennell, Comin, and Annis, of each halfe a handfull, pils of Pomgranates two handfulls : let them sethe together in sufficient water : then take of this decoction twelue or sixtene ounces, oyle of Roses thre ounces, Hony of Roses one ounce, Waxe suet two ounces : melt it, and make a Clister of it. Also the decoction of Rice is good, if the cause of this laske be in the lower guts.

Hereafter be described commodious pils : Take the stones of all Spirobalanes, beate them when they be well parched, Rubarb parched, fine Bolus, and Amber, of each alike quantitie, make a masse of pils of it, with Dragagant and Gum, dissolued in Plantaine water : but if there be an Ague with it, then vse Barly water.

Or take one quarter of an ounce of Rubarb, which is parched, burnt Quozie one dragme, make pils of it as is befoze said.

Item, filed Steele one dragme, Cipers nuts one quarter of an ounce, *Pastick*, Amber, Cumfrey, Daisies, Plantaine seede, of each one scruple, Gum and Dragagant both parched, of each halfe a dragme, Cinnamome, Galingall, and Graines, of each two scruples : make pils thereof with the iuice of Plantaine, for they do binde much.

Others moe : Take vn salted Deeres rennet one dragme, *Trociscos de Spodio*, *De Carabe*, *De Terra Sigillata*, of each one scruple, well parched Rubarb, Plantaine seede also parched, of each halfe a scruple, beate them small together, make pils of them, with the iuice of Plantaine : when they be tempered with the sirrup of *Pirtles*, then do they binde the moze.

Item, take *Hypocistis*, blossomes of Pomgranats, Butchers Brome, Barberies, Soxrell seede, of each one dragme and a halfe, Purslane seede, and Plantaine, both parched, of each one quarter of an ounce, Dragon blood, Wormeaten Galles, the iuice of Sloes, yellow seedes of Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, Venbane seede one scruple, *Opium* two scruples and a halfe : make pils thereof with the iuice of Plantaine, and fourme seuen of a dragme. But note yet, that they be very strong, and that one must not vse many.

This following is moze gentle : Take Gum, *Pastick*, Frankincense, Amber, of each halfe a dragme, temper them with the sirrupe of Roses vnto pils, and take alwayes thereof twice a day, a little or much befoze meate, according as the scouring is violent.

For this scouring is alwayes good all roist meate, fryed Eggs, Rice, and Lettice, (if it be with great heate) Calues seete, conserue of Rosler fruits, Puske Peares, befoze meales old conserue of Roses, conserue of water Lillies, *Parmalade*, preserved Bayberies, and also preserved Sloes.

The drinke for this patient must be staled water, wherein *Pirtle* seede is decocted, also Harts tong, Wine dronken warme. These Sirrups following are very good, as namely, sirrup of

of Spirtles, dried Koses, Pints, and also hony of Koses : for it hath a milde binding, and an astringent vertue, like as veriuice hath also.

The smoke or reke of Frankincense is also very good. Pilke put into Clusters when it is dried is commended for this purpose. Note ye, that all that we haue sufficiently written of before is also good for the red or bloodie fluxe, whereof we wil shortly hereafter speake and discourse.

Of the scowring which proceedeth of the Liuer and stomacke. §.16.



I commeth also verily to passe, that the Liuer and the Stomacke do cause this scowring, which is then very dangerous. So that the dyoplie called *Tympanites* is wont to follow it. Therefore is an order made and ordained, what one ought to obserue for this. Wherein first it is needefull that he forbear all meates and drinks which be laratiue, or do in any wise molest the bodie, as Spinage, Beets, Pallowes, Percurie, well boyled Coleworts, and such like.

He must also be restrained from new wine, and them that be not very olde. Likewise also of all sharpe, salt and sower things, as Radishes, Vinions, Garlicke, hard meates, unleavened bread, and that which is not well baked. And he must eschew fruits, and especially them that be laratiue, as figs, Grapes, Pjunes, and such like. In fine, for this sicknes the patient is to be kept very sober in eating & drinking, and to feede onely vpon that which is light of digestion. He must also abstaine from all violent motions, and that chiefly after meate, from venerie, much watching, and anger. All his meates (be they sodden or roasted) must be dressed with Warelewet. Secondly, he must beware of many kindes of meates, especially against night. Thirdly, before every meale he must eate a roasted Quince pear, or sower or sue Pedlars. Fourthly, Lentils are very haile meate for him, if they be dressed after this manner: Let them first seethe a little in vineger, after that boyle them with two parts of water, and one part of vineger. Fifthly, every euening he is to take three of these pills ensuing: Take parched Diagant & Gum, of each one dragme, Butchers brome seede, Spirtle seede, Acorne cups, burnt Juozie, Squinant, Koses, Cyppers roses, of each two scruples, whereof make pills with the iuice of Daillies before none. He is to vse this confedion ensuing: Take Parmalade without species three ounces, prepared Coriander and Pasticke, of each one dragme, temper them with the iuice of Quinces, and vse at each time halfe an ounce or more.

Also once every eight daies take two of these pills: Take *Trociscos de Spodio* one quarter of an ounce, parched Rubarbe halfe a dragme, burnt Juozie and parched Diagant, of each one scruple, Hares rennet, or the rennet of a yong Goate or kid, one dragme and a halfe: make pills thereof, and vse them as all the rest.

This plaister also following is to be made, and woyn vpon the nauell: Take two ounces of Rosin, Cyppers nuts one dragme and a halfe, Plantaine seed, the iuice of Sloes, burnt Juozie, Koses, Iron dyosse that is prepared, of each one dragme, Space two scruples, but the Rosin must be boyled in red vineger. When it is sufficiently sodden, and almost colde, then temper all the foresaid species with it, spread of it vpon a peece of leather the quantitie of a quarter of a yarde sower square, and lay this plaister vpon the nauell downwards. As often as the patient goeth to stoe, he is to fume his fundament with this powder ensuing: Take *Calophonia*, *Gallia Muscata* and red Styar, of each halfe a dragme, *Lignum Aloes* one dragme, red Corall, burnt Juozie, *Sandaraca*, of each two scruples: poune them all together, and temper them all together. Afterwards strowe some of it vpon hot coles. It is also good aduise that there be alwaies boyled in his meate, as much Comfrey as the signes of a great finger.

Lastly, he must continually weare this bag ensuing vpon his stomacke: Take Spirtle seede, prepared Coriander, Parietou and Sep, of each one handfull, Space halfe an ounce, Pasticke, *Gallia Muscata*, red Styar, red Corall and *Sandaraca*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Lignum Aloes* one dragme and a halfe, parched Comin halfe an ounce, temper them, & vse it as aforesaid.

Thus far haue we spoken of this scowring and of both the causes of it, as of the stomacke and of the liuer, and also how they both do come together.

The third cause of this *Diarrhaa* is the obstruction of the small vaines, and are called of the Grecians *Mesenterion* or *Mesazon*, for that as the stomacke and the entrailes haue done their duties,

duties, so if these vaines do not sucke out the nourishment, then both nature expell the meate in manner of a thicke pay, with paine in the right side and in the bowels, and so out of the bodie, especially if one haue eaten much grosse and sweete meate before. Also this scowring may be well caused of an impostume, which might be about the small vaines, or about the upper guts, at which time is commonly perceiued an ague, heate and paine: which obstruction doth also procede for the most part, of grosse and tough humors.

For this disease vomiting is one of the best remedies. Also this srupe following is to be vsed: Take the rootes of Smallage, Parslie, Butchers brome, Sperage, grasse and Cicorie, of each one dragma, the seedes of Smallage and of Parslie, Comin and Fennell, of each one ounce: let this seethe well together, and wring it out, and to this Colature adde halfe a pint of honie, and boyle it againe, and clarifie it as becometh. Give thereof to the patient euery morning fower or five ounces. Also the seedes of Smallage, *Amess*, and Parslie decocted in wine, may be vsed for this, being giuen the patient to drinke: in like manner parched Rubarbe with wine or Endine water. This patient shall also oftentimes, but at each time eate a little, & take suer after it some penetrating things, as *Diacalamintum* one dragma and a halfe before meate, and halfe a drag. after meate. His drinke must be likewise old white wine. Also to take otherwhiles some *Creacle* is very commodious. It is also very good, that the belly be strongly rubbed before and after none with a rough cloth.

The fourth cause of this laske proceedeth from the milt, the which may be knowen hereby, to wit, when his excrements are a blacke and darke gray, if the paine be in the left side, if the patient be melancholike, quiet and tractable. When the matter is very sharpe and blackish, then is there great danger with it. But if it happen in the end of a quartaine ague, or of any other sickness, then doth it bring ease with it, and is a signe of health. What is fit for this, you may see hereafter, where we shall discourse of the Spill.

The fift cause proceedeth from the braines, which may be discerned by the paine of the head, also by the rheume, and by the stime of the mouth, which after sleepe runneth out of the same, and is also expelled by stoule. These diseases are to be cured like as all other rheumatike diseases, whereof you finde sufficient discourse in the second Part, the 12. Chapter, and 2. S. But it is especially commended, that parched Heliot shall be laid vpon the forehead. Otherwhiles a bag with Cammoill and Roses, and so to gouerne himselfe, as abovesaid, in the second cause of the stomacke.

The last cause is windinesse, which puffeth vp the stomacke, spoileth digestion, and prouoketh a scowring, like as hereafter shall be taught in the description of windinesse of the stomack. It is also counselled to enery such patient (like as is often shewed before) that he must be very sober in eating and drinke, yea he must suffer hunger as much as is possible, and that he exercise himselfe well before meales, and vse the Confection *Diacyminum* or *Diacalameniha*, which do strengthen his stomacke, and let him gouerne himselfe in all things else, as hath bene said before in *Lienteria*.

Of the Laske *Dysenteria*, called the red Flixe. S. 17.



His name *Dysenteria*, is of the Grecians so called, being an vlceration or excoziation of the Entrailes, and is thus described: *Dysenteria* is a paine of the Entrails, which enflameth, fretteth, and excoziateth the same: so that with the matter of the scowring, blood is auoyded: and it causeth much gnawing, which maketh the patient to goe often to the stoule.

As thus: *Dysenteria* is a scowring, with an erulceration of the bowels, which is increased through outward causes, as heate, cold, drinke, hard meate. The causes of this noysome scowring are sharpe humors, which passe through the bowels, and there erulcerate the same, fret and take away their fatnes. Item by the taking of too sharpe medicines, as *Diagridion*, *Efula*, and *Spelling wort*, or when too much of these hath been taken at once.

Also this scouring is occasioned, when the body is overcharged with *Cholera*, *Melancholia*, or *Phlegma*, of which superfluities, if the expulsive vertue be strong, nature seeketh to vnburthen herselfe. Likewise also, when the meate in the stomacke, or humors in the vaines doe pestrise.

In like maner also of great and long alteration of the ayre, be it in hote ayre, dry ayre; or when these mete together: like as dry ayre it selfe is wont to cause *Choleram*. Item, of the vse of such fruits which doe quickly putrifie: therefore it is not commendable, and especially that children should eate the same.

The signes of this red scouring or bloody flire are these, which doe not come sodainly vpon one: also befoze it getteth the masterie, it prouoketh paine and gripings in the bowels, and also round about the stomacke. This scouring likewise burneth and pricketh soze, whereupon doth first followe the scraping of the bowels, mixed with a little blood, vntill it corode somewhat deeper into the bowels: then is the paine felt most about the flauell: and if so be that the disease be in the great guts, then is the paine felt most vnder the flauell. Also the scraping of the lower most guts are much satter then of the vppermost: and it doth come also in greater abundance, with many moe such like demonstrations.

But there be described two sorts of *Dysenteria*, whereof the first is here befoze discovered: The second hath the name of *Dysenteria* vniuersally, by reason that it without scraping of the bowels, and very sodainly falleth vpon one, with much blood. This with good right is to be called rather an Hepaticall Fire than *Dysenteria*: but we will here first of all write of the right *Dysenteria*, and afterwards, of this flire of the liuer.

If we desire to pzeuent this red flire or *Dysenteria*, then is the same to be done both through outward and also inward meanes. But first we will shew what is best to be vsed inwardly for it: wherefoze you are first to keepe in your memozy the common rules which haue ben rehearsed befoze in the laste *Lienteria*, to wit, that all those things wherewith you will stay this scouring, be alwaies minisfred befoze meates, for that after meate these binding medicines cause a sicke body to scoure the moze.

For this scowping or red flire all expert Phisitions doe vse commonly at the first parched Spiribolans, and chiefly the yellow, steeped in Plantaine water, and put also vnto it parched Rubarbe, beaten to powder. But the same must not be infused but in substance and powder, like as you haue sene befoze in some potions, for the scouring of *Cholera*. Item, take parched seedes of Fleawort two ounces and a halfe, seedes of Plantaine one ounce and a quarter, Gum, fine Bolus, of each thre dragmes, in the iuice of Quinces defecate.

Or take dried Quinces, beate them to powder, and giue thereof one dragme and a halfe, with Plantaine water, once or twice a day, wherewith you may also temper parched Nutmegs, and the seedes of Plantaine. Item, take parched Gum one ounce, sealed earth thre quarters of an ounce, fine Bolus halfe an ounce; make powder thereof, and giue of it one dragme and a halfe at once. Item, take Shepheards purse, St. Johns wort, and Penniroyall, of each a like quantity: make a powder of it, and giue two dragmes thereof at one in the morning early, with a new layd eg: this stayeth the scouring euidently. Burnt Harts horne washt in Rose water or Plantaine water, a dragme, or a dragme and a halfe, taken with wine wherein a little Dragagant is dissolved, is a very expert medicine, if it be taken twice a day. The like also of one drag. of the rennet of a yong Hare taken with wine.

Another: Take broade Plantaine seede, and Colombine seede, both parched and beaten to powder, of each a like quantitie, and giue each time thereof two scruples or one dragme, with red Wine: Item, take small beaten Bloudstone, well washed in Plantaine water, thre drag. red Cozall one dragme and a halfe, rootes of Mozmentill, and *Trociscos de Spodio*, of each one dragme, shauen Quozie, burnt Harts horne, of each two scruples, prepared Berles one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus halfe a dragme: beate them all small, and take two dragmes of this powder in the morning with Wine. You may also strow the meate with the same.

Item, burne frogs to ashes in a pot, and vse thereof as befoze, for they haue a maruellous operation to staunch bloud.

In like sort may for many purposes be vsed Spittle seede, the seedes of Butchers Bzome, Pomegranate kernels, sealed earth, fine Bolus, and other binding medicines, which are to be beaten to powder, and as the case requireth, may be vsed well ynough for the red fire.

Here followeth now a notable confectiõ against all species of scouring, and the same may be vsed after what sort one will. Take pills and blossoms of Pomegranats, Gals, and Acorn cups, of each one quarter of an ounce, Keyson stones, Spittle seedes, burnt hassell nuts, dry Pomegranate kernels, yellow Rose seede, the iuice of Sloes, Butchers Bzome seede, of each two ounces,

ces, red Corall, Frankincense, Masticke, white and black Poppie seede, parched Gum, the seede of fheatwozt, Starch, Dragon blood, of each one dzagme and a halfe, Sugar fire ounces; temper them well together, whereof you may make a confection with Sugar, oz with Plantaine water, oz Tabulates; oz strowe the powder alone vpon the meate. Pou may also make pills thereof, which are to be vsed in the mo:ning betimes, and in the euening two howres after supper: but of the confection may be vsed thre oz foure times a day, like as necessitie requireth, at each time one quarter oz halfe an ounce.

Here followeth yet another, which may be vsed after the same manner: Take Butchers Brome seede, fine Bolus, and Gum, of each thre dzagmes and one scruple, Dragon blood, and burnt Iuozie, of each one dzagme and seuen greines, Cloues Strigs, Annis, of each foure scruples, Hypocistis one scruple and thre greines, Bloud stone two dzagmes and a halfe, red and white Corall, of each two scruples, Amber one quarter of an ounce, Comfrey, Daisies, Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce and one scruple, blossomes of Pomegranats, Dagagant, of each one dzagme and seuen greynes, Hirtle seede thre dzagmes and one scruple, Quince kernels, white Poppie seedes, of each fise dzagmes, Anotgras, Sozrell seedes, yellow Rose seede, broade Plantaine seedes, and Calmus, of each one dzagme and seuen greynes, one pound oz moze of Parmalade, dissolued with Sugar oz Hony, and the other spices tempered amongst it.

Another. Take Parmalade boyled with Hony and white bread well tossed, of each foure ounces, red beaten Saunders one ounce, then put thereto a litle red Wine, and poune them all together, whereof the patient may take otherwhiles the waight of halfe an ounce. Spread it also vpon a cloth, and lay it vpon the stomacke. This hath bene oftentimes approued: Take olde conserues of Roses, and Parmalade, mixe them both together vnto a confection made with steeld Goats milke.

Item, take confected Quince Peares, oz Parmalade, thre ounces, Masticke, Hints, and Pace, of each one dzagme; temper them all together with a litle of the iuice of Quinces, and make Trocisks thereof halfe an ounce in waight, and you shall alwayes take one of them before meate. Or take old conserue of Roses thre ounces, Parmalade two ounces and a halfe, red Corall one dzagme, Tozmentill, *Bistorta*, *Trocisci de Carabe*, fine Bolus, of each halfe a dzag. prepared Bloud stone one quarter of an ounce, temper all together with the sirrupe of Hirtles.

Item, take old conserues of Roses thre ounces, Parmalade two ounces and a halfe, conserue of Buglosse and Burrage, of each one ounce, prepared Bolus one dzagme and a halfe, Corall and Roses, of each halfe a dzagme, prepared Perles two dzagmes and a halfe, *Bistorta* one dzagme, Tozmentill two scruples; beate them all small, and make a confection of them with the sirrupe of Quinces.

It is to be noted, that the old conserue of Roses is very good for all manner of losenes of the belly. Some commend that which is made with Sugar alone, and not with Hony. Others vse both kinds, accozding as the scouring is with heate oz with cold.

Rob de Cornubus.

Conserue of *Cornus*, called at the Apothecaries *Rob de Cornubus*, hath great force in binding, for all kinds of losenes of the belly, and also for womens excessive menstruall fluxes, and for all other sorts of bleedings, and it is thus prepared: Take ripe *Cornus* fruits, boyle them so long in red Wine vntill that they may be dzyen thozow a hearne Searse oz Strayner, and then let that which is Strayned sethe vntill it be thick by a milde fire, stirring it about continually, vntill it be a thick conserue, and preserue the same.

Pithizide and Treacle do also stay the scouring, like as doth also the conserues of water Lillies, if there be great heate with all. In like manner conserues of Barberies vsed with meate in manner of a sauce.

Hereafter follow yet other things moe, which may be taken for this confection: Take *Trociscos de Carabe* thre dzagmes, Dragon blood and fine Bolus, of each halfe a dzagme, Plantaine seedes oz Embiue seedes halfe a dzagme, Sugar fower ounces: sethe them all togither with Rose water, and make tabulates of it.

This ensuing is taken to be a very good and approued remedie. Take a putmeg, burne it at a Maxe candle vntill the oyle drop out, poune it to powder, and temper with it the whites of two Eggs, and as much Beane meale that will make a dough. Afterwards make pellets of them as big as a put, and put them on a sticke, and roste them softly vntill they be thozowly dzye, whereof giue to the patient in the mo:ning and also at euening. But if you will haue the scowring

ring speedily stoppt, then take the more Putmeg and the lesse meale.

In like maner are also highly commended hard sodden eggs eaten out of vineger, and strowed with powder of Putmegs. But some preferre rather roasted eggs alone.

Dried Peaches boyled in water and eaten, do stay the red fire. Others do confect Peaches ^{Peaches} in this manner: Cut the Peaches in two peeces, and take out the stones, tie them to a thred, and ^{Peaches} preserve dyie them in an Ouen. And when you will vse them, then infuse them in water. When be they good for the stomacke, stay the scowping, quench thirst, moisten the throte and mouth of the tong.

Concerning the drinke and such like, steeld milke is very good for children. Item, Rose water fire ounces, Cloues, Pisticke, Butchers brome seede, of each one dragma: poune them final, and put it into a glasse, and let it sethe in water, and giue the children a sponesfull of it.

Another drinke: Take Clew that is burnt in a baking Ouen fower pound, poune it small, and poure faire fountaine water vnto it: let it sethe a waume or two. Lastly, stake thre or fower times in it glowing Steele: afterwards straine it cleere out, and make Almond milke with it. Item, the iuice of Sloes and of Barberies are very commodious, each apart or mingled together, or drunken with wine, like as is taught in the 15. S. of the scowping *Diarrhea*, and of the Sloes. You haue also in the first part and 3. S. another water of Sloes, which may be vfed also for this red or bloodie fire.

Sirupe of Pints is much vfed for all losenesse of the belly: therefore it is not amisse to shew ^{Sirupe of} at this present, how it is made after two manner of waies. Take the iuice of ripe Quince ^{Pintes.} peares, the iuice of swete, metely swete, and of fower Pomegranates, of each fower ounces and a halfe, infuse therein fower ounces and a halfe of rumbled Pints the space of fower and twenty houres with halfe an ounce of Roses, afterwards sethe them all together by a milde fire vntill the halfe be boyled away, then wring it thow a cloth. Further, put good honie vnto it, or Sugar, fire ounces, and let it sethe well & thicke: lastly, hang in it a peece of silke with *Lignum Aloses* five graines, Amber thre graines, Puske one graine. This sirupe doth not onely stop all scowpings, but is also good for all diseases of the stomacke which procede of colde, and it doth also take away all wambling and vomiting.

The other is made thus: Take clarified iuice of Pintes, swete and fower iuice of Pomegranates, let this sethe all together with sufficient Sugar vnto a sirupe.

The sirupe of Quince peares is also of the same efficacie, which is also made diuersly, as fol- ^{Sirupe of} loweth hereafter: Take the seedes of broad Plantaine two ounces, Cypers nuts, the middle ^{Quinces.} rindes of an Oken tre, Chestnut tre, and Butchers brome, of each two handfull, Spittle seede one handfull, fower Quinces, Seruices and Pedlars, of each fire, the iuice of Sloes halfe an ounce, *Hypocistis* one ounce: sethe them all together in Plantaine water, and make thereof a sirupe with sirupe.

Another: Take raine water or Rose water sixtene ounces, and sethe therein one ounce of Spittle seede, Roses, Sumach, the iuice of Sloes, *Hypocistis*, blossoms of Pomegranates, burnt Iuorie, of each halfe an ounce, ten or twelue vnripe Seruices, Licorice, Dragagant and Gum, of each halfe an ounce: poune all that is to be poune, and when it is sodden away vnto twelue ounces, then straine it thow a cloth, and put a pound or twaine of Sugar vnto it: then let it sethe againe together, clarifying it vnto a sirupe.

The third sort of sirups is called at the Apothecaries *Mina*, which is also made two man- ^{Mina.} ner of waies, as followeth: Take of the iuice of Quinces strained well, twelue ounces, sethe it away vnto the halfe, and then poure good wine vnto it, and nine ounces of Sugar, then let it boyle againe vnto a thicke sirupe. This sirupe stayeth the laske, and comforteth the stomacke.

The other sort of *Mina* is called *Mina Citioniorum Aromatica*, for that it is prepared with good spice, like as followeth: Take the iuice of fower Quinces seven common pounds, old wine halfe as much, clarified hony two pound and fower ounces, or one may take Sugar in stead of hony: let them sethe away scumming it, and afterwards hang in this sirupe bounden in a cloth Cinnamon, Cardamome, of each one dragma and a halfe, Cloues one dragma, Ginger, Pisticke, of each two scruples, Saffron one dragma, Pace two scruples, Puske halfe a dragma, *Gallia Muscata* one dragma: this being all beaten grosse together, wring it often out, that the force of these may come into the sirupe. This sirupe is much warmer than the other, and therefore it is not to be vfed for the losenesse of the belly which commeth through heate: other wise

it strengtheneth the stomacke, the lyuer, and all inward members : it causeth appetite to meate, it helpeth digestion, and taketh away the vomiting.

Syrup of
Pirtles.

The Syrup of Pirtles will we adde vnto it, for that the same is very fit for all scowzings or fires. Take Pirtle seede twelue ounces, the iuice of Sloes and Butchers brome seede, of each fiftene graines, Roses one ounce, burnt Quozie and *Hypocistis*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pints one dragma: sethe them all together in raine water vnto the halfe, then straine it thoroow, and put vnto it fire ounces of the iuice of Quinces, hony twelue ounces (but clarifie it well) and let it boyle vnto the consistence of a thick sirrupe.

Another, which is very common at the Apothecaries. Take Pirtle seede ten dragmes, white Saunders, Butchers Brome seedes, blossomes of Pomegranates, of Barberies, of each fiftene dragmes, Pedlars fire ounces and two dragmes, iuice of Pomegranates, iuice of Crabs, of each twelue ounces: boyle the foresaid simples in these iuices, and with thirtie ounces of Sugar make a sirrupe of them.

For this is also fit these vsuall Sirrupes following, viz. the sirrupe of Raspes, *Oxyacchara*, of dry Roses, and of Peares, for therewith will the sharpnes of the matter be delayed.

Clifters are also fit for this disease (whereof some be here set downe.) first, they are to be made, which the Physicians do call *Laxativa*, which be those that do wash the bowels, for which there is none other to be used but Barly water only. Secondly, if it be desired to haue them cleanse more, then temper with it some hony of Roses, or a little slight Sugar. The third sort is binding and asswaging the paine: Take a handfull of parched Barly, sethe it well in water, take of this decoction twelue or fiftene ounces, slight Sugar thre ounces, oyle of Roses two ounces, and two yolks of Eggs. This Clifter may be often used.

It is to be noted, that there is to be taken for it oyle of Roses, which is made of Rose buds, for that it is better for this purpose. You haue also a Clifter before in the fiftene §. which was made of the broth of a Lambs head. For such a one you may use steeld water, and to sethe therein the seedes of Plantaine. But if so be that then the scrapings of the bowels passe not away withall, there must then be tempered amongst it one ounce of Dære suet, and a dragma of Dragons blood.

For to know whether the vppermost or the vndermost bowels in the red or bloudie fire be perished, take a handfull of Dogs dung, and dissolue the same in steeld Milke, and giue this to the patient, then, if so be that he presently with paine, with purulencie and bloud auoyd the same againe downeward, and be mixt with the excrements, then it is a sure signe, that the disease is in the lowermost bowels. But if he goe much to stoule after the paine (the bloud being separated from the excrements) and if the paine be about the pæuell, then it is a signe that the place of this fire is in the vppermost bowels.

If you desire to stay this bloudie fire, then are these things following to be used, to wit, steeld water, the iuice of Plantaine, the iuice of the herb Pullin, and the iuice of Sloes, wherewith one may temper a few paper athes, and one or two yolks of Eggs sodden hard, the powder of sealed earth, or fine Bolus, and the oyle of Pirtles, of which you may chuse that liketh you best, and can get soonest.

This Clifter ensuing dyeth and healeth. Take vntwo meaten Gals, Butchers Brome seede, and Bolus, of each one quarter of an ounce, Dære suet or Goats suet, one ounce and a halfe, two hard sodden yolks of Eggs well beaten one ounce, of the iuice of Plantaine and rayne water, as much as is needefull for to sethe the premisses in it. And take the decoction of butchers brome seede. This Clifter is the patient to keepe with him as long as euer he can.

Another. Take pæled Lentils, Pillet, Roses, blossomes of Pomegranats, and Gals, of each one handfull: sethe these together in a pinte and a halfe of water vnto the halfe, take thereof ten ounces, of the oyle of Roses one ounce, paper athes one dragma, and Dære suet one ounce, and the yolke of a rosted Egge, and make thereof a Clifter.

Suppositories: Take white Henbane seede, *Opium*, white Poppie seede, burnt Quozie, blossomes of Pomegranats, and frankincense, of each a like quantitie, boyled Hony one ounce alwayes to a dragma of the premisses, make Suppositories of it. They be strong, they thicken the humoz, procure sleepe, and take away the paine: but they be not to be used, but when the paine is intollerable. These Pessaries may be made for women to be used in the pother. Take frankincense, Linseed, and Saffron, of each one dragma, temper them well together, and

and bind it in a fine cloth with a threede at it, that it may be well pluckt out againe. In great extremities may the Stupefactiues be vſed, which doe numbe the ſinewes, yet are they not to be vſed vnleſſe all inward and outward remedies haue bene applyed. But firſt of all are outward medicines, and afterwarde inward to be adhibited. Likewise the remedies which be miniſtered by the mouth, are firſt to be tryed, and afterwards from belowe.

For this are theſe pills enſuing alſo vſed: Take the bloſſomes and pills of Pomegranates, *Spittle ſeede*, Comfrey rootes, Dragon blood, fine Bolus, the iuice of Sloes, Roſes, Argall, *Hypocistiſ*, Butchers brome ſeede, and Saffron, *Gallia muſcata*, Gals, Cinamom, burnt Tuoze, Pace, and Gum, of each one dragma, *Opium* one dragma and a halfe; make of them with the iuice of Plantaine, as ſmall pills as Hempſeeds, and giue thereof nine, or eleuen at one time. Item there was a woman that boyded eighteen pound of blood at thre times, and ſhe was cured with *Philonium Perſicum*, which was tempered with the iuice of Plantaine, and parched Rubarbe. But in theſe waighty matters, an expert Phyſition is to be ſent for, becauſe (as we haue tolde already) there is no teſting with this *Philonium*.

Pills for all manner of fluxes of blood.

What ought to be outwardly vſed for this diſeaſe.

Fiſt of all it is good to binde the armes, but not the legs; then is alſo a bath to be made, wherein be decocted the leaues of Quinces, Peares, Pedlars, Seruice tre, Cornus leaues, Butchers brome, Gals, *Spittles*, Acorn cups, Roſes, and ſuch like binding things, where in the ſicke perſons are to be ſet euen vp to their ſhoulders. Thus may you alſo ſet the ſoreſaid things, and wet clothes in the decoction, and then lay them warme vpon the belly: or in the ſteed of them, to vſe the iuice of Plantaine, or any other iuices of binding herbes; as Butchers brome ſeede, or *Spittle ſeede*: and temper alſo of the powder amongſt it, whereof be made *Troſciſci de Terra ſigillata*.

Theſe ſicke perſons doe complaine alſo of great paine, when the ſharpe humors ſcowereth thorow the excoziated bowels. Now for to allwage the ſame, you are to take of the firſt mentioned things, which you will: but you muſt put alwayes Cammomill and *Speliot* vnto it, and afterwards let them ſet in wine or ſteald water, and then lay them with a cloth wrung out, or with a ſponge vpon the paine. You may make alſo thre or ſower bags of the ſoreſaid things, and ſet them in wine, and ſo lay them warme vpon the paine, and when the one is cold, then to lay another vpon it againe.

There be alſo fumigations vſed for this ſickenes, for which is to be taken Cyperus nuts, *Spittle ſeede*, Butchers brome ſeede, Pomegranate pills, and wormeaten Gals, of each one handfull, the iuice of Sloes, prepared Coziander, *Hypocistiſ*, Plantaine ſeede, Roſes, Frankincenſe, *Sandiraca*, *Gallia muſcata*, Bloodſtone, and *Parierom*, of each one handfull, Cinamom, *Paſticke*, and parched Caraway ſeede, of each one dragma, *Colephonia* one ounce and a halfe; make a powder of them and ſtrowe thereof vpon the coles, and receiue the ſume from belowe.

Another: Take *Parierom*, ſeedes of Butchers brome, *Spittle* and Coziander, of each one handfull and a halfe, bloſſomes and pills of Pomegranates, *Hypocistiſ*, and yelloe Roſe ſeedes, of each halfe a handfull, rootes of the herbe *Spullin*, rootes of *Carduus Benedictus*, the rinde and roots of the Mulberry tre: make al theſe to powder, and then make alſo a bag for to ſit vpon, and take therewith the firſt aboue mentioned things, and boyle them in wine.

For a plaſter: Take a ſhine or twayne of Rye bread, toſte it well, and beſprinkle it with Vineger or red wine; afterwards beate it, and put vnto it Gals, Acorne cups, the bloſſomes and ſhales of Pomegranates, and the rinde of the *Spedlar tre*, of each two ounces, Roſes, Starch, the iuice of Sloes, fine Bolus, ſealed earth, and Dragon blood, of each one ounce; make them all to powder, and put it then amongſt the ſoreſaid bread. Further, make a plaſter with a ſufficient quantity of the oyle of *Spittles*, Roſes, and Roſe water, with as much Vineger as ſufficieth, and ſo lay this plaſter warme vpon the ſtomacke.

This patient may alſo vſe ſuch ſaluces for this diſeaſe, as doe hereafter follow: Take oyle of Roſes, of *Spittles*, oyle of Quinces, and of *Paſticke*, of each halfe an ounce, Gals, Roſes, bloſſomes of Pomegranates, *Spittle ſeede*, fine Bolus, Dragon blood and *Paſticke*, of each one ſcrup. Make as much as is needefull for to make a ſalue. This following is ſtronger: Take *Paſticke* ſix ounces, oyle of Quinces and of *Spittles*, of each three ounces, *Paſticke*, the iuice of Sloes,

and Dragons blood, of each thre quarters of an ounce, red Cozall, Amber, sealed earth, of each halfe an ounce, the innermost pils of Chestnuts, prepared Iron doffe, of each one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus, Pomegranate pils and Frankincense, of each one quarter of an ounce, Rosin halfe an ounce, Ware as much as sufficeth for to make an oyntment thereof, wherewith the belly must be annoynted 3. or 4. times a day. This vnguent is speciall good against excessive flowing of the flowers in women, the same being layd vpon the Hips and vpon the Thighes.

Item, take Rosin thre ounces, the seeds of Butchers brome, prepared Coziander, and Pirfle seede, of each halfe a dragma, Pasticke two scruples, *Hypocistis*, red Saunders, of each halfe a dragma, oyle of Spirtles and of Quinces, of each one ounce and a halfe; melt the Rosin in Wineger, and make a Plaster of it, or a salve, and annoynt therewith the whole Belly, and about the Ribs.

Boring cups are also very meete for this purpose set on vnpickt vpon the Hauell, vpon eyther side of the Hauell one: this will drawe back the blood. Let them also remaine thereon the space of fower howers.

Some also do aduise for to open the Mediam other the Liuer vaine, thereby to delay the sharpnes of the humors, and to withdraw it, and also to cole the Liuer with it: but it is somewhat dangerous, and ought not to be effected at any hand, except it were for some great cause, and therefore is here the counsell of a learned Physitian to be required.

For a Lotion of the feete you are to take of the forementioned things, and therewith to rub the thins and the legs.

In fine, what simples soeuer are to be vsed for this red or bloody fire through heate or cold, are these; to wit, in heate, take the blossomes of Pomegranates, Gals, Butchers brome seedes, the iuice of Sloes, Roses, Barberries, Quince kernels and the rindes, Pomegranate pils, sealed earth, Bolus, burnt Quoy, *Hypocistis*, Pomegranate kernels, Sozrell seede, Plantaine seed, Raisons stones, and all binding fruits; as vnripe Melons, vnripe Mulberries, vnripe Sloes, Medlars, Seruices, the fruits of Cornus, and of such like. Of compounded things be *Trisantalum*, *Diacodion*, olde conserue of Roses, and many other moe which are before mentioned. Simples which bind and warme, are Putmegs, Cipers nuts and the leaues, Frankincense, Myrrh, *Laudanum*, red Styax, Amber, *Ameos*, Cinnamon, parched Annis, and such like. The compounded be *Diamentsa*, *Diacinnamomum*, and all that are of the like nature.

The other kinde of *Dysenteria* or bloody Flixe. §.18,



I hath been shewed before, that the learned haue described yet another manner of bloody fire, the which by the vnskilfull is wrongly called by the name of *Dysenteria*, for it commeth without any scrapings of the guts, and with much more blood than the former. Wherefore it is rather to be taken for a fire of the Liuer than for ought els. This fire is also thre folde: first, idle persons that are full of blood, and that eat and drinke much; also they that omit their wonted exercises, are very subiect to this infirmity, for these of necessitie must haue ouermuch blood; which nature seeketh to expell as she doth all such things, that in any way are troublesome vnto her, but especially in the Liuer, albeit that some other inward partes might cause the same.

The signes of this fire are first clere blood, which with a great quantity doth sodainly passe away at one time, and returneth againe afterwards. It may also be well caused of sharpe medicines, which may be vnderstood and knownen of the patient.

Secondly, it may also happen through weaknes of the retentive vertue: for if there be no perfect digestion, then cometh the blood like vnto water wherein flesh had been washed and so is auoyded with the ordure by stole. In like maner it may be caused also very well through melancholy, and in the scowping is the blood blacker. But if it come through the inward Vyles, then is the blood clere, yet somewhat blackish. Sometimes it is caused through some vaine, which chaunceth to breake within the body: And then doth this scouring come very sodainly, little or much, according to that the vaine so broken is great or small. The difference betwixt all these fluxes of blood is, that the Hepaticall fluxe is without paine, where to the contrary, all other are not without paine and anguish of the place, from whence the blood issueth.

Thus

Thus for to cure this bloudie fluxe, phlethorick persons who be infected with this scouring, must betake themselves to all manner of sobrietie in eating and drinking. Open a vaine, use some exercise, and purge, if neede require. But if so be that the same be caused through any sharp medicine received, then is this scouring to be stayed by taking three dragmes of Cresses seed with steeld Pilke, or through any other binding medicine before mentioned.

This plaister following is to be applyed on the Liver: Take Roses, red Saunders, of each halfe an ounce, Spike one dragme, Barly meale, two ounces, Wine and Vineger, as much as will suffice for to make a plaister, lay this warine upon it. If this scouring procede through heate, then giue him *Trisantalum*: Or if it come through cold, then giue him some warming Confection, and other things moe which be referred before. Secondly, if there run any black blood amongst it, then open the Median. It is also good for this, that the bodie be well rubbed morning and euening about the place where the disease is, so that those things whereby these parts are nourished, might be drawne thither. But if so be that there be any vaine broken, then looke what is written of the casting vp of the blood, which is caused through a broken vaine, in the second part, the fifth Chapter, and 18. §.

Of all bloudie Fluxes in generall. §. 19.



As a conclusion of all these bloudie Fluxes, there is to be added vnto them, to wit, if so be that through any excessive scouring, (of whatsoever occasion it be) the patient fall into a swoone (like as it often hapneth) what is then to be done in it. First of all, he is to be cherished with water, and moe other meanes are to be used for it, as in the second part, the first Chapter, 2. §. hath bene sayd of swooning.

Further, the patient is to be nourished with good meate, and Wine, to wit, with roasted Bullets, Turtle Doves, and other Doves, Cloues, Rose water, Galingall, and *Lignum Aloes*, which be very meete for him. When as then the swooning is past, then are all meanes to be sought for to stay his scouring, and to bring the patient to rest and sleepe. There is also to be given vnto him one dragme of Treacle, or *Philonium*, and if so be that he can abide it, then let him bathe, euen as is herebefore admonished.

Item, we will moreover adde hereunto a generall rule, how a man is to gouerne himselfe in these bloudie fluxes. First, he must beware of all moyst meates, because that thereby the moisture of the bodie is augmented; but there is much rather to be used all that is dry, like as hard baked Eggs, and such like, without much salt, and much fat. Also all things are to be drest with steeld water, Dafen pap, Barly pap, and Bullets both are not forbidden, neither yet shins of bread baked in fat or butter. He shall also eat white bread: red Wine is better for this sickness then white: but if you can get no red Wine, then take old white Wine which is not so soure, and temper the same with steeld water, temper therewith some parched Gum, Wolus, and burnt Quozie. In like manner also temper some iuice of Barberies in his drinke, or in stead thereof, use wine of Barberies.

Almond milke made with steeld water may he also drinke, but not to drinke much is best for all loosenes of the belly.

And whereas in this sickness the patient commonly loseth his appetite, yet are there some Physicians who permit the patient to eat what he most longeth for, albeit they do counsell most of all for bread and other meates which be most necessarie for this sickness. Betwene meates be conserve of Roses and Parmalade very commodious to be eaten.

For in this sickness is the patient to be kept quiet, warme, and well couered, and rather to let his ordure and excrements in a boll vnder him, then to rise often, for the lesse that he is stirred, the sooner will the scouring be stayed.

All that is too hote and loseth much, is forbidden in this infirmitie, whether it be Spice, or any herbs: likewise also very strong Hony, Pilke, Fruit, Cheese, Fish, and all doughy meates.

Of the Constipation or binding in the body. §.20.



¶ We haue hitherto discovered many kindes of things, which doe stay the flure or laske. But it is well knownen to all men, that the health of man is oftentimes neglected, through constipation of the body, and when the excrements haue not their naturall course: therefore it is the principall determination of all famous physicians, to keepe open the body for all manner of sicknesses, whereby the superfluous matter and bad humors may be auoyded, euen as euery where may be seene throughout this whole booke. And albeit this binding of the bodie procede of diuers causes; yet it is not needefull to dispute further thereof, because that in certaine sicknesses which be caused through this constipation, is sufficiently spoken of it. We will here therefore speake of the binding of the body in healthie persons.

For this is first needefull a common and necessary rule, to wit: all that is taken to lose the body, it be done fasting, that is, when the stomacke is emptied of other meates, and that one fast an hower or twaine after it: for if so be that the meate be mixed with the medicine, then can it not performe his operation as it behoueth; for it will thereby be hindered and enfeebled. Secondly, to begin alwayes with the weakest and easiest things: and if they worke not strongly enough, then are after that more forcible things to be vsed. And because no safer things can be vsed, than Suppositories and Clusters, therefore we will first of all begin to speake of them.

Suppositories to prouoke Stooles.

There be made many kinds of Suppositories, whereof these are the easiest: Take Honie as much as you please, sethe it hard, and to poure it it be sodden enough, let a drop fall vpon a cold stone, or vpon an Iron, which being cold, will spring in peeces if you strike vpon it; if that it doe not cleaue, then it is sodden enough. Afterwards temper amongst it salte & meale, and pouze it on a stone table, or on a Lin trencher, & roll vp the Suppository as thicke as you will haue it: then cut it off and make both the ends sharp and euen by the fire or candle, and afterwards reserue it in Sallet oyle, or in Lyne oyle. These Suppositories are to be put into the fundament, and to be kept therein as long as is possible. In like maner doth also this ensuing: Take two parts of meale and one part of salt; make a Suppository thereof with the white of an eg, and keepe it drie.

Other some vse in steade of this Suppository, that which followeth hereafter: They beat the white of an eg, and stir a good deale of salt amongst it, and a little Sote: they put the same in a fine cloth the quantity of a putmeg, and bind it fast, and let a threde hang at it; being annoynted with fat or oyle, put the same into the fundament, and when you will goe to the stoele, then plucke it out againe.

Stronger Suppositories, which are to be vsed at the Apothecaries, are these: Take *Species Hiera simplicis* one dragma, Salt halfe a scruple, Honie one ounce; sethe these all together hard, and make Suppositories of them. These may be vsed with all safety. But if you will haue them yet stronger, then put halfe a dragma of *Sal gemma* vnto it.

The foresaid *Species Hiera* be thus made: Take Cinnamon, Pistick, *Asarabacca*, Balsam fruit, Saffron, Balsam wood, & Cassie wood, of each one drag. Aloe two ounces; make a powder of them. There be also Suppositories to be made (if there can nothing els be gotten) of salt Lards cut in long slices; of Allom cut also of the longest fashion, & of Venice sope &c. For yong children are also Suppositories made of fresh Butter, Figs, and Beete rootes, and such like. Also there be made for especiall sicknesses many kinde of Suppositories, which be not here specified.

The Clusters be marvellous requisite to open the Constipation of the body, and of more effect than the Suppositories: because that through their moisture and slippynesse doe enter further into the bowels, and do there supple, soften, and prouoke the going to stoele. Of these Clusters we haue euery where described diuers in this our booke: yet we will recite here certaine moe, which doe open the body without any paine. Take Gallowes thre handfuls, Beetes, Mercurie, of each two handfuls; sethe them together and wring them out: then take of this decoction twelue or sixtene ounces, thre yolkes of eggs, oyle of *Sesamum*, or of Lineseede folwer ounces,

onices, *Salgemme* halfe a dragma, temper them together, and minister it warme. Item, take Gutton broth, Meale broth, or Ven broth, as much as before, melt therein fresh Butter, and Ducks grease, of each one ounce, Saffron halfe a dragma, oyle of Will and of Lillies, of each one ounce and a halfe, Indie salt one dragma, and then temper them together, this is somewhat stronger.

There may also be taken in stead of the foresaid oyle *S. Tho. Sugar*, and oyle of Violets, of each two ounces: but if so be that the paine be great, then may be tempered with it one dragma of *Philonium*, and one ounce of the oyle of *Spanthagoza*. In fine, all common Clusters be fit for this which be made of fresh broth, Sallet oyle, oyle of Violets, boyled *Pallowes*, *Betes*, *Pellitor* of the wall, *Camomill*, *Pellitor*, and such like suppling things.

Some do vse also these things following in the stead of suppositoies: Take new Milke and Butter, of each two spoonfulls, make it warme, and vse it as a Cluster.

There be also many easy Conserues and Confections which do also lose the body, like as conserue of *Pellitor*, which by long continuance doth lose if one take it alone. First, you haue before in the first part, the twelfth Chapter, in the second §. a conserue of *Cozans*, and others which be very requisite. Now commodious also the *Cassia* is, hath in many sundry places bene sene. Yet hereafter ensueth a very notable and safe confection of *Cassia* and *Panna* for to kepe the bodie open. Take *Damask* *Prunes* one ounce, *Violets* one dragma and a halfe, faire well water nine ounces, sethe them together vnto the halfe, and temper in this decoction *Cassia* two ounces, *solwe Dates* halfe an ounce, *Panna* one ounce, sirupe of *Violets* two ounces, *Sugar candie*, and *Sugar pennets*, of each halfe an ounce: bruse the *solwe Dates* in the decoction, and then boyle them thicke with other confections, *solwe* then the dissolved *Panna* vnto it, that through sething it lose not the force. This confection is requisite for all daintie persons which be bounden in the bodie, for it hath no vnpleasent taste, it doth lose very gently, expelleth *Choleram*, and asswageth an Ague.

Also for a gentle laxation one may eate *Cassia* out of the pipe one ounce, casting away the stones.

For the same purpose are these Confections following also fit: Take a quart of good *Rhenish* wine, steepe therein the space of six howres halfe an ounce of *Sene* husks, and one ounce and a halfe of *Sene* leaues, let them boyle well: temper afterwards in this wine *Cozans* poned small one pound, fat *Figs* three ounces, rub these thorough a Strainer, which being done, put foure ounces of *Sugar candie* vnto it, and then let it boyle vntill it be metely thicke. Lastly, you are to mixe with it halfe an ounce of *Cinnamome*, whereof you are to vse halfe an ounce at a time.

These laxatiue confections following are commonly ordayned in *Pinerall* bathes: Take ryndes of yellow *Piobalanes*, and of *Indie*, of each one ounce, bruse them well with *Cozans*, *Sene* husks two ounces, *Polipody* rootes one ounce and a halfe: let this sethe together vnto the halfe in the water of *Betonie*, *Sage* and *Englosse*, of each six ounces, water of *Pints* three ounces, temper amongst them *Agaricus* one dragma and a halfe, *Rubarb* one quarter of an ounce, *Ginger* one scruple, *Thyme* and wilde *Thyme*, of each halfe a handfull. When it hath sodden metely well, then let it stand a night, and in the morning wyng it out, then mixe foure ounces of *Cassia* amongst it, the iuice of *Cozans* (which is *Looch de Passulis*) two ounces, beaten *Cinnamome* one ounce, *Spec. latitia Galeni* one quarter of an ounce, *Sugar* six ounces, sethe them with *Betonie* water vnto a sirupe, and make a confection of it.

Solwe Dates be also a blessed medicine, for they purge very mildly, and therefore they be seldome vsed alone, but what force and vertue they haue, is sufficiently shewed in the first part of this booke.

The laxatiue confection of *Prunes* (called *Diaprunis lenitiua*) is very pleasant and metely: *Diaprunis* it doth not only lose the belly, but delayeth *Choleram*, it quencheth thirst, & is good for all heate, *lenitiua*. but especially when the Ague is in his prime, and it is thus prepared: Take fiftie *Prunes* (the stones pluckt out) sethe them in sufficient water, then bruse them thorough a Strayner, that the skinnes may tarie out: afterwards put the broth or liquo: into the same pot where they were sodden on the fire againe, and put vnto it three quarters of an ounce of dyed *Violets*, and let it sethe vp twice or thrice, then strayne out the decoction, and put it vnto the foresaid brused *Prunes*. This being done, put six ounces of *Sugar* vnto it, and let it sethe againe vntill it be thickly,

thickly, and then take some of the liquoz remaining, and therewith temper Cassie and softze Dates, of each one quarter of an ounce: lastly, mixe all together, and let it boyle softly untill it be as thick as a confection.

Item, take pouned Rubarb halfe an ounce, fresh conserue of Roses two ounces, temper, and vse thereof about one quarter of an ounce at a time.

There is scant any confection which is not only moze mete for this matter, but in many other causes moze, then that which is called at the Apothecaries *Electuarium de Sebesten*, and is therefore worthe to be rehered.

Electuarium
de Sebesten.

Take *Sebesten* and *Wjunes* (having both of them their stones taken out) of each two ounces and a halfe, Violet water five ounces, water of blew floures deluce, and Pompeon water, of each three ounces, Mercury water two ounces, Sugar pennets foure ounces, *Rob de Prunu* five ounces, pield *Welon* seide, Pompeon seide, Wourd seide, and pield Cucumber seide, of each one ounce, *Diagridion* one dzagme and a halfe beaten small, boyle these fruits in the waters, then dzine them thozow a strainer, and boyle them with the sugar, and when it is almost cold, then adde the seides cut very small, and the *Diagridion* beaten finely. This confection is very good for all hot Agues: for it easeth thirst, watching and bitterness of the mouth, and doth cause much vyne to be avoided.

Diaturbith cu
Rhabarbaro

There be also many kinds of Spices prepared, wherof Confections & other things be made, of which we will here describe some: to wit, *Diaturbith cum Rhabarbaro*, which is thus prepared: Take *Turbith* and *HermodaEyli*, of each one ounce, Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, *Diagridij* halfe an ounce, white and red Saunders, Violets and Ginger, of each one dzagme and a halfe, Annis, Pasticke, Cinnamom and Saffron, of each one dzagme and a halfe, Sugar foure teene ounces and a quarter of an ounce: make of all these premises a powder or Confection.

Tabulats of
Ginger lax-
ative.

Another: Take Rubarb halfe an ounce, Cloues and Galingall, of each one quarter of an ounce, *HermodaEyli* and white Sugar, of each three dzagms, *Diagridij* five ounces, Sene leaues one quarter of an ounce, Indy Spica, Saffron, Ginger, Annis and Pasticke, of each one scruple lastly, make a powder of it. Both these are fit for to purge all bad humors, be they Cholera, Phlegma, or Melancholia.

The powder
Palaphan.

The purging Tabulats of Ginger be made thus: Take beaten Ginger one quarter of an ounce, Cinnamom and Cloues, of each one dzagme, Putmegs and Galingall, of each one scruple, Saffron foureteene ounces, *Turbith* halfe a dzagme, *Diagridion* one dzagme, Sugar two ounces: make Tabulats of it: exhibit not aboue one quarter of an ounce at once, for they be metly strong. The like purging Confections you may find very many at wel furnished Apothecaries: to wit, *Diaphenicon*, de *Succo Rosarum*, &c. Take *Epithymum*, Polypodie rotes, and Thyme, of each one dzagme, Sene leaues three quarters of an ounce, Argall three dzagmes, Cinnamom and Annis, of each one dzagme, the powder of Will leaues one quarter of an ounce, make them into powder: take a dzagme of it, tempered with fresh broth.

Medicamen
de Turbith.

In Italy they haue a powder called *Pasaphan*, which is there much in vse: and is thus prepared: Take Sene leaues three dzagms, *Turbith* one quarter of an ounce, good Rubarb one dzagme, Licorice, Annis, Fennell, of each halfe a dzagme, Indy Spica fine greines: these being all powdered, and then giuen one dzagme at the most with wine or with any kinde of water.

This powder is very common at some Apothecaries, and is thus prepared: Take *Turbith* halfe an ounce, Cinnamom and Ginger, of each one quarter of an ounce, Galingall, Pasticke, Cardamome, Cloues, of each halfe a dzagme, Annis one dzag. *HermodaEyli*, *Diagridion*, Sene leaues, of each halfe an ounce, Sugar three ounces: temper these together, and giue him a dzag. of it at the most.

Medicamen de Turbith is also common, wherof here doe folloze two sortes: Take white Ginger, Pasticke and *Turbith*, of each halfe an ounce, Sugar one ounce and a halfe: mixe these to a subtil powder.

The other. Take *Turbith* halfe an ounce, Ginger one quarter of an ounce, Pasticke ten greines, Sugar three dzagmes: this being beaten small and tempered well together, purgeth slimy humors. Of the which may well be giuen to yong children, women in child bed, old folks and all dainty persons, one dzagme at the least at one time. Of which may all be giuen according to the ability of the person, moze or lesse.

Sene

Sene powder called *Pulvis Sena preparata*, is not only laxative, but also purgeth maruellous well the head.

*Pulvis Senæ
preparata.*

Take Sene leaues one ounce and a half, Ginger and Nutmegs of each two dragmes, Cinnamon and Argall, of each one dragme and a halfe: make a powder of it, and giue one drage: of it at once.

A powder: Take Turbit one quarter of an ounce, Ginger, Cinnamon, Bastick, Galingal, Cardamome, Cloues, Annis, *Hermodyli*, and *Diagridij*, of each one dragme, Sene leaues halfe an ounce, Sugar one ounce: or put vnto them as much Sugar as you thinke good, for without Sugar it is not to be taken aboue one dragme. Item take Sene leaues halfe an ounce, Ginger, and Cinnamon, of each one dragme, Sugar one quarter of an ounce: take the halfe thereof, and strowe it vpon a slice of stiffe of tosted bread, that hath bene steeped in wine, and so eate it. But if it doe not loose, then eate another slice of bread and the rest in a morning. It is surely good.

Amongst the things that one doth eate, some mixe Mercury leaues in a Sallet, for they do easily loose them, that be apt to goe to stoule.

Item, Dates, Piobalanis, stued Pynes strowed well with Sugar, doe loose the body very mildly. Likewise also Damaske Pynes stued with Raisons, doe loose also if one sup vpon the both withall, five or sixe figs eaten before meate, do open the bodie. Item, Cozans washed in sweete Wine, and steeped therein, and afterwards dyed and strowed with Sugar, are also very good for this purpose. Take Keysons (as is sayd) which be steeped, halfe a pound, beate them, and wryng them thorow a hearne strainer, Sugar two ounces, Sugar of Roses, and Hony of Roses, of each one ounce and a halfe, sethe them well by a milde fire vnto a confection, then take of it as often as you will the quantitie of a nut.

Also you may stepe these Cozans in oyle of sweete Almonds strowed with Sugar and then eaten, for much Sugar hath a laxative nature, and especially in yong children.

Now will we write of certaine laxative potions, of which be diuers readie at all well furnished Apothecaries to be had, and albeit you may vse the same alone, yet notwithstanding haue all Physicians ordayned, that the same shall be commonly tempered and taken with purging medicines, whereof here shall follow some, which the Apothecaries at *Angula* haue at all times in a readines.

First they haue a drinke which they call *Decoctionem communem*, which is a common decocted potion, made after this manner: Take ten or twelue Pynes, Licorice, Cozans, Annis seede, and Fennell, of each halfe an ounce, floures of Burrage and Buglosse, of each one dragme and a halfe, powze a quart of water vnto it, sethe it so long vntill a third part be wasted, then straine it thorow. This drinke ensuing is of a temperate nature, for it is somewhat more coling, and the same is to be vsed in sommer.

*Decoction
communis.*

Take Cozans, Licorice, Pynes, Zuiubes, Violets, Barley, peled Pelon seede, Pompeon seede, Gourd seede, and Cucumber seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, boyle them together in water like as is said before.

Take fumitorie, Betonie, Pints, Bugwort, of each halfe a handfull, floures of Burrage and Buglosse, of each halfe a dragme, Annis, Fennell, Asarabacca, of each halfe an ounce, wilde Saffron seede three quarters of an ounce, *Calmus* one ounce, Polipody rootes, *Agaricus*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sene leaues one ounce, the seedes and rootes must be beaten grosse, (letting them sethe first a litle) afterwards put vnto it the herbs, floures, and Agarick, and so let them sethe again: when it is then cold wryng it out hard, & keepe it wel very close stopt in a cole place. In like manner there is prepared a stronger which is called *Decoction aperitiua maior*, and is made thus: Take Endiue, Cicorde, fumitorie, of each one handfull, Agrimonie, Windweede, and Harts tong, of each halfe a handfull, floures of Burrage and Buglosse, of each one quarter of an ounce, Thyme and wild Thyme, of each two dragmes and a halfe, rootes of Fennell, Smallage, Parsly, of each halfe an ounce, Annis & Fennell seede, Pelon seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, sliced Licorice halfe an ounce, rootes of Cipers, rindes of Tamariske, of each three dragmes, Sene leaues two ounces, Polipodie rootes one ounce, *Agaricus* halfe an ounce, sethe them all together in water like as is said before, then wryng it well out. You are to stepe in this decoction Rubarb three dragmes and a half, Indie Spica one scruple, *Sal Gemme* halfe a scruple, Cinnamon two scruples, let them stand together to keepe all a whole night, afterwards sethe it

*Decoction
aperitiua
maior.*

Decoction
Senz.

it once in boyling water, strayne it very well out, and put six ounces of Sugar into it.

A decoction of Sene leaues called *Decoction Sena*: Take Sene leaues two ounces, and Sene husks one ounce, rootes of Cicorie, Agrimonie, Hyssope, of each halfe a handfull, Polipodie rootes one ounce, sethe them together in a quart of water untill the third part be decocted away, then wyng it out, and keepe it in a cole place.

Infusio Sena.

Another, *Infusio Sena*: This decoction is much vsed for the Rocks at *Augusta* in Germany, for which it is most mate: Take the husks and leaues of Sene, of each five dragmes, Ginger two scruples, Burrage floures, Violets, Roses, of each one scruple, Polipodie one quarter of an ounce, Cozans halfe an ounce, ten or twelue *Sebesten*, sliced *Agaricus* halfe an ounce, powze vpon them sixtene ounces of boyling water, and let it be steeped the space of ten howres by the warme ashes, afterwards wyng it out and keepe it well, whereof is commonly three or foure ounces taken, and sirrup of fumitorie, or *De Bizantijs* one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces tempered together, three or foure dayes one after another.

There be also vsed many other laxatiue potions, like as this followe: Take Sene leaues two ounces, *Tymus*, and *Epihyms*, of each one ounce and a halfe, floures of Burrage and Buglosse, of each three handfulls, Parts tong, and rootes of Cicorie, of each two handfulls, Rosemary, *Siecha*, of each one handfull, Roses and Balme, of each three handfulls: these are to be put dry and sliced into a little Runlet, and powze fiftie quarts of Must vpon it, and then let it stand and clarifie, when as neede both require, then may you take a good draught of it before meate.

Item, to drinke Bullet both wherein Prunes are decocted, and to eate the Prunes is very commodious. But this both relaxeth better when it is boyled with Cozans and much Sugar. In like manner new Whay well salted and dronken warme both lose, but better if it be sodden with Prunes.

In like manner also are you to take Clozmelwood, Hony, and Sugar, according to the abilitie of the person, sethe this together in water, and drinke a good draught thereof. Item, take Sanicle with the rootes, sethe it well, and drinke of it the quantitie of foure ounces, tempered with Hony of Roses.

If so be that pills could not be vsed, then take foure ounces of water wherein Gallowes were before decocted, and dissolue Sugar therein or Hony of Violets, and so drinke it. Or take Linseed, Hops, and Burrage, all together, or each apart, decoct them to a potion, this loseth also. The same doth also one ounce of Polipodie and halfe an ounce of Fennell seedes decocted together. Item, take conserve of Elberne one ounce, or one ounce and a halfe, dissolue it in fresh broth one pound, and drinke fasting a good draught thereof. Fumitorie and Goats milke boyled together doth not only lose the belly, but also clenseth the blood.

The decoction of Charuill and of Larks spurres do also open the bodie. Item, the decoction of Colewortes, of Beetes, and of Lentils, in euery of these are you to temper the quantitie of an halfe nut of fine Turpentine, and to drinke it warme, which is also good for the excoziation of the guts.

The decoction of Treuises, and of all other fishes, are also very good for relaxation, but swete oyle of Almonds is most commodious for this purpose, more sure and most pleasant being taken with Sugar. It asswageth all griping of the belly, and of the breast: which oyle is thus to be made.

Oyle of
Almonds.

Take Almonds as many as you please, make them cleane, beate them small, rost them a little on hote ashes, or on a small fire, stirring them alwayes about; put them afterwards very hote into a strong bag, which is made wet in Rose water, and presse it out forcibly, then haue you a fine and cleare oyle, whereof may be vsed for aged folks foure or six ounces tempered with comf Sugar, for children, and also for the first borne, each according to his age.

Which of puddle Wine, doth not only binde the bodie, but doth oppilate also the Luer, the spleen, and the kidneys, this do they which drinke much of it, therefore it is to be refrayned.

Of all laxatiue medicines and potions, Spanna is not the basest, but is highly commended aboue all other things, for it is one of the blessed medicines, like as is mentioned more at large in the introduction. This Spanna is ministred diuersly, according to the abilitie of the person, like as water of Burrage, fresh broth, and such like. You may also giue of this Spanna to yong children, to each one according to his age, be it in their drinke, milke, or Nap.

The vse of
Cassie.

In like manner is Cassie also a very notable and laxatiue medicine, euen as is shewed here before

before at large in the introduction: for it is much more commodious to be taken after the forme of a conserue, then in any kind of potion, by reason that there must be put vnto it so much more sure, thus will we here prescribe for an example how the same is to be vsed: Take the rootes of Polipody chopt small one ounce, sethe them in the water of Burrage eight ounces, and dissolve therewith one ounce and a halfe or two ounces of Cassie, letting all that is black be washed cleane off, and then drinke this warme, it loseth very gently.

Here before in the first part, in the first Chapter and 3. S. you haue a good mead of Sene leaues for children and other persons very necessary to be vsed, yet this following may be prepared: Take Sene leaues halfe an ounce, Ginger and Annis, of each one quarter of an ounce, beaten Licorice three dragmes, sethe them all together in fiftene ounces of water euen to the halfe, drinke the one halfe in the morning, and the other halfe in the euening.

Also there be certaine Sirrups vsed for the losing of the bodie, whereof the chiefest is, the laxatiue sirupe of Roses, which is before described in the first part.

Also there is made a sirupe of Sene leaues, as hereafter followeth. Take right Endiue, *Syrup of Sene leaues.* Cicorie, Agrimony, of each halfe a handfull, Venus haire, Harts tong, of each halfe so much, seedes of Melons, Pompeons, Cucumbers, & Gourds, of each one dragme, wild Saffron seede, Polipody rootes, seedes of Endiue, Cicorie, and Licorice, of each two scruples, Barly one ounce, winter Cherries, Windweede, of each one quarter of an ounce, fearne rootes, Smallage, Fenell, and Sperage, of each halfe an ounce, Cozans three dragmes, fire or seauen Prunes, floures of Burrage, Buglosse, and Violets, of each halfe a dragme, sethe them all together in a quart of water almost vntill the halfe, then wring it well out, and then lay to steepe in this decoction one ounce of Sene leaues, prepared *Agaricus* halfe an ounce, Kubarb three quarters of an ounce. When it hath stode so one night, and is wringing out, then temper with it, *Syrupum Capillorum Veneris*, which is the sirupe of Venus haire, the sirupe of Violets, of each one ounce, white Sugar three ounces, let this sethe by a soft fire vnto a sirupe: lastly, put more vnto it halfe a dragme of beaten Cinnamome, and one scruple of yelloe Saunders, and so keepe this sirupe vntill that you will vse it.

Of this sirupe you may boldly giue one ounce, or an ounce and a halfe or more, vnto all delicate persons, yea to women also with child, and that with fresh broth, or any distilled water, for it is very safe.

Another Syrupe. Take Endiue, Liuertwort, Venus haire all greene, of each one handfull, red and white Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, Melon seede, Gourd seede, Cucumber seede, Pompeon seede, and Burrage, of each halfe an ounce, Sene, *Epithymum*, of each one ounce, Kubarb three quarters of an ounce, Turbith halfe an ounce, Indie Spica halfe a dragme, Ginger one dragme, Sugar twelue ounces, dissolved in Endiue water, make a sirupe of it like as is taught in the first part, the first Chapter, and 6. S.

Hony of Roses loseth also very well, especially that which is made of the iuice of Roses, euen as it is described in the first part, the fourteenth Chapter, and 4. S.

For this are also sundry pills prepared, and that after this manner following: Take *Bdellium* and *Aloe*, which haue bene steeped the space of three dayes in Sheepes milke, of each one quarter of an ounce, temper them, and forme pills of them, vse thereof one scruple, or halfe a dragme at once, they will do you much pleasure. Item, take before supper one dragme of washed *Aloe*.

This salue following is also laxatiue, if that the belly and the nauell be annoynted with it: Take the salue *Agrippa*, and the confection of *Hiera*, of each halfe an ounce, the iuice of Swines bred and Ramonie, of each three greynes, *Euphorbium*, Turbith, Coloquinte, of each one scruple, beate them all together. Item, take Pitch and Frankincense, of each alike quantitie, cast them on hote coles vnder a close stole, and sit ouer it with the bare buttocks, it loseth.

For a conclusion, there is to be found through this whole booke, how that the bodie is to be loosed and opened for all manner of sicknesses: but this is only spoken of all them who be in health, and cannot goe to stole.

Of the strayingne or vnſatiabſe deſire of going to ſtoole,
which is called *Tenaſmus*. §. 21.



As much as throught both the ſoreſaid maladies, as well of the exceſſine going to the ſtoole, as throught binding in the bodie; this ſtrayingne which the Grecians do call *Tenaſmus* and *Teneſmus*, may be prouoked: Wherefore we can not omit, but adde the ſame vnto the reſt, and is thus deſcribed.

Tenaſmus is a diſeaſe or maladie in the end of the Arſegut hard by the fundament, with great paine, and continuall deſire to goe to the ſtoole, where notwithstanding the patient can be diſcharged and rid of very little or nothing at all. We do call theſe kinds of ſcourings properly a ſtrayingne to goe to the ſtoole; ſo it cometh ſo the moſt part alway with ſuch a force, that it driueth out the Arſegut, and the fruit of women conceived. The cauſe of this ſcouring may be as well inward as outward cold, like as when any one doth ſit vpon cold ſtones, or that is gotten of the cold ayre, or in the water: contrarywiſe alſo it may be cauſed throught heate and drought. Item, of any ſharp rheume of the ſtomacke or Luer, of corrupted meates, or much moiſture, throught the uſe of much fruite, throught woymes, impuſtation of the bowels, binding in the bodie, ſwelling of the Vyles, and alſo of any tough and ſubtile *Phlegma*. The ſignes whereof are eaſily to be diſcerned by the report of the patient, and view of the place, and odure. Now as touching the remedies, Cliſters are beſt of all ſo it. If this maladie do come of cold, then make the Cliſter thus: Take Pints, Parierom, Cammomill, Pelilot, field Pints, Southerntwood, of each one handfull, decoct them in ſufficient water. Take of this decoction twelue or ſixtene ounces, oyle of Cammomill, and of Lillies, of each one ounce and a halfe; then make this Cliſter very warme: but if there come any binding or ſtopping with it, then temper therewith *Benedictam laxatiuam*, or *Hierapicram*, thre quarters of an ounce, or one ounce. The herbs and all that be decocted ſo this Cliſter, ſtampe them all to pap, and temper them with oyle of Rue and of Lillies, and let it boyle a little while, and lay it vpon the place where the paine is, and when it is cold, then lay on another that is warme, doing this 3. or 4. times one after another. When as then this ſtrayingne of going to the ſtoole is red, then are you to vſe this ſollowing: Take ſkeled Cow milke or Goats milke, Putton broth, or Weale broth twelue or ſixtene ounces, melt therein one ounce, or one ounce and a half of Shepes ſuet, and two ounces of the oyle of Roſes, then temper them together, & vſe this Cliſter oftentimes. Item, take twelue ounces of Palmeſey, the yolke of an Egge, let them boyle together in a dining pot or kan in a Kettle of water vntill it be very hote, then giue it afterwards vnto the patient, it is a very ſafe remedie. When all neceſſarie medicines haue bene vſed to this kinde of laſke, and yet the paine doth not diminith in ten dayes, then may one vſe the Cliſter which is deſcribed in the 17. §. beginning thus: Take peled Lupins &c. and that at two or thre times, as the caſe ſhall impoſt. If theſe ſcourings be of a cold cauſe, then roſt Pillet or Panick with ſalt, and lay vpon it, or fill thre bags with Bran, let them boyle in wine or water, lay one of them vpon the belly, another vpon the back beneath, and the third vpon the fundament, as warme as may be poſſibly ſuffered, and when they be cold make them warme againe. Afterwards annoynt the place with warme oyle, or with the ſalue *Marciaton*, and ſprinkle wine vpon a hote ſtone, then lay a cloth vpon it againſt the burning, and ſit vpon it with the buttocks as hote as may be ſuffered. Others do counſell ſo to ſoment the fundament with red Wine, wherein the herb *Verbascum* hath bene ſodden, and that afterwards to ſit vpon a hote Daken or Cipers wooden bozd. Some do commend ſo this a Poplar bozd. Or if one cannot get ſuch a one, then a Firre bozd, and as ſone as one is cold, then to take another warmed againe, and doing this ſo long vntill he ſeele the warmth within the belly. Then is the fundament to be annoynted with molten Harts ſuet, or to ſume it with Pitch, like as not long ago hath bene rehearſed. Item, Holyhock rootes, Linſede, Fenegræke, Cammomill, Pelilot, the vpper ſprigs of Coleworts, of each thre ounces, poune the all together, & ſæthe them in reaſonable water. Pon are therewith to wet a ſponge, wring it out, & ſit thereon, and lay it vpon the fundament; yea, to ſit alſo in the water. Item, take the ſeeds of Plantaine, prepared Coziander, Pirtle ſeede, Acorne cups, yelow ſeeds of Roſes, Cipers nuts, of each one dragme and a halfe, Gum, & Dragagant, (both parched) of each one ounce, beate them together, and put them in a bag, and ſæthe them with

with Wine, then must one sit hote thereon. Item, seethe oaken leaues with water in a bag, and hold the fundament vnto the heate of it, and when it is cold, make it hote againe, and do this oftentimes one after another.

For a salve: Take oyle of Roses one quarter of an ounce, Saffron *rb.* greynes, Shæpes fetet, Dære fetet, of each one ounce, make a salve thereof, it doth maruellously take away the payne.

Another. Take Frankincense, *Lycium*, Saffron, Gum, *Opium*, of each one dragme, vnrype oyle of Oliues, *Colophonia*, of each thre dragmes, Ware as much as is needefull for to make a salve with it, the lard of a Boze, and of all fourefoted beasts: also the fat of all fowles is especiall good to be vsed for this disease.

You shall take for a plaister Hollyhock rotes, *Linsæde*, *Fenegræke*, of each one ounce, seethe them well, and poune them together, and temper amongst it halfe an ounce of pouned Cammo mill, the yolks of two Eggs, and lay it against the fundament. For this, may you also take Carlick boyled to grout, the heads of Leakes fryed in Butter, with oyle of Roses; and a little Ware made into salve may also be vsed for this purpose.

For this is also requisite the fume and vapoꝝ of diuers things, as the leaues of a Bearetree, of Spedars, Quinces, Dragon blood, fine *Bolus*, blossomes of Pomegranats, and sealed earth, whereof you may seethe (which you please) with Wine. When as then the patient hath bene at stoe, then is he to receiue beneath the vapoꝝ of this wine poized on a hote stone. Item, take a hote bryck, spinkle it with Wine and Mastick, vse it as before. Make a fume with *Colophonia* or Pitch.

This confection also following may be vsed: Take Girtle sædes, Pomegranat blossomes, Roses, and Pomegranat pils, of each halfe a handfull, Butchers Broomesædes, Sorrell sædes, the sæde of Plantaine, yellow Rose sædes, Barberies, white Saunders, Mastick, burnt Zuozie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Annis, sædes of Endiue, Cyperus rotes, and Frankincense, of each one dragme and a halfe, prepared Coriander, Cinnamome, red Corall, of each halfe a dragme, the iuice of Sloes, *Hypocistis*, Storax, Cyperus nuts, parched Gum, of each one dragme, white Poppie sæde thre dragmes, poune all that is to be pouned, and with dissolued Sugar make thereof a confection: you are also to put vnto it some iuice of Pomegranats. Item, take the bones of the head of a fresh taken Pickrell, the waight of a dragme and a halfe, stampe them small, and drinke them with Wine, or any fresh bzoth. This is taken for to be a most sure experiment.

Suppositozies which are to be vsed are these: Take Frankincense, Myrrh, Gum, *Linsæde*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Opium*, Saffron, of each halfe a dragme, temper all these with the white of an Egge, and make thereof short suppositozies, then binde thereon a strong thred, so that you may pluck them out when you will. Some do put Smallags vnto it, these are now the principall remedies for this scouring: but if so be that there be other causes with it, as woymes, obstructions, and swellings, whereof we haue herebefore made mention; you may reade of either in his proper description.

And for a conclusion, all bitter, sharp, and solwe things are to be refrayned, for that all such make the going to the stoe, gnawing, excoziating, painefull: Bullet bzoth, Warly pap, oaten pap, and such like light meates, are very commodious for him, and about all things must be beware of cold.

Of the paine in the stomacke in generall. §. 11.



These kinds of lasks and blondie stixes haue awhile seduced me from the infirmities of the stomack, and because these lasks (as hath bene shewed) for the most part procede from the weakenes of the stomack, with an infection of the Luyver and other parts moe, it would in no wise haue bene decent to haue treated of them elsewhere. But now we purpose to procede with our intent, and write of the paine in the stomacke, and of all that appertaineth vnto it.

This paine of the stomacke may be caused of diuers and sundry meanes, to wit, of some outward blowes, falls, wounds, of a pearcing cold, or an extream heate, of a bad digestion, that hath long continued, of ouermuch meate or drinke, of eating either too hote or too cold things,

of windes conteyned in the stomacke: and in fine, of all the foure humours of the body, also with o2 without an impostume. And indoe in this paine of the stomack, and also in all paynes of the Liuer, it were very needefull to vse the counsell of an expert Physitian, that might discerne and know whence these infirmities procede, and whereon each symptome dependeth. For if in this point any erro2 be committed, then is this malady imparted vnto all the parts of concoction. Wherefoze great heed must be taken what ought to be vsed in euery accident, for as their causes be diuers, so also do they differ in their signes.

If this infirmite be procured by some outward occasion, that is to be knowen of the patient himselfe: o2 if the cause be a bad digestion of the stomacke, that is perceiued by the slower belchings. If it come by ouerlading of the stomack and bad digestion, then doth the patient finde a heauines in the stomacke, with wamblings and vomitings, and good ease after them. If it be caused of heate, then seeth he a gnawing, heate, brought, and sweetenes in the mouth, because it procedeth of bloud. If it be procured of choler, then hath the patient a bitterness and a taste of Werdgrease in his mouth. The paine that commeth of phlegme, hath alwayes a salt taste with it. Also the spetle may shew what the cause is, whence this infirmite might procede.

Melancholy is knowen thereby, that there is neither heate, no2 paine with it, but only a slower and bad sauour in the mouth, which also otherwhiles is perceiued by that which is brought vp by vomit: vnto this is commonly adioyned a hardnes in the spleene, and a paine in the left side. But if this paine of the stomacke procede of windes, then may you perceiue a wambling and belching, o2 breaking of winde vpward.

These are the commonest signes of all paines in the stomacke, and first we will write of the paine in the stomack, that is without an impostume.

Of the payne of the stomacke without impostumation
through heate. §. 23.



E all paynes of the stomacke where there is great perturbation, great wambling, parbaking and vomiting, it may be iustly adiudged, that it doth procede of an hote occasion, for which vomiting (by taking of lukewarme water) it is to be prouoked: o2 if the same be too weake, then to put some Sallet oyle vnto it, o2 oyle of Dill, o2 oyle of Violets: the same doth also the seede of Drage, tempered with Vineger. But there be in other places other remedies moe described for to purge the patient by vomiting, and if this ease him not, then it is needefull that the patient be purged: but first he is to take some preparatiue potions, euen as hereafter follow.

Take husked Barly two ounces, Endiue and small Endiue, of each one handfull, Roses, seeds of Melons, Gourds, Cucumbers, and Pompeons, and the iuice of Pomegranats, of each one ounce, Sugar nine ounces, make a cleare sirrupe of it, vntill there remaine about twelue ounces, giue alwayes two ounces of it at once with Barly water o2 Endiue water.

For this is also *Oxyfaccchara* good, made with the iuice of Limons o2 the iuice of Roses, wherein is decocted a little of the iuice of Mozmelewood taken with Barly water. When as these potions be taken, then is to be giuen for a purgation one ounce of *Hiera Picra* with Endiue water, o2 if the patient feare the bitterness, then may he take this following.

Take Violets and Burrage floures, of each halfe an ounce, nine o2 ten P2unes, sowze Dates one ounce, Cozans one quarter of an ounce, sethe them in twelue ounces of water, so that there remaine after the straying out foure ounces of the decoction, then lay to skape in this warme Colature one ounce of the rinds of yellow Spirobalans, let it stand the space of one night vpon warme ashes, being strayed thozow in the morning, temper halfe an ounce of Cassie with it.

There is also to be giuen daily to the patient, bread which hath bene steeped in the iuice of Pomegranates, and *Syrupum Acetosum*, de *Cydonijs* with it, and (as is sayd before) Button broth and such like. Moreover, the Iulep of Roses, of Violets, wine of Pomegranats, Meriuice with water (wherein Lettice, Purslaine, and Endiue were boyled) be very good for this maladie. After purging, the patient may drinke otherwhiles Buttermilke and well water, if so be no impostumation in the stomacke do let the same. He may also eate well Lettice and Purslaine with small vineger, Melons, and Cucumbers: all his other meates must be light of digestion, as
Hens,

Pens, Pullets, Partridges, and small fishes best with vineger, Citrons, Oranges and Limons be very meete for him.

White clere wine is tolerable for this if it be well watred, but if so be that there come a yowth with this heate, then must moyst things be ministred, as namely, Pallowes, Spinage, and such like. And further also to vse water baths: in fine, all that wanteth for this is to be taken and had in the 6. S. where we haue discoursed of a weake stomacke through heate.

Of the paine of the stomacke without impostumation
through colde. §. 24.



f so be that this payne of the stomacke be beloyaid through belching, then is it easily to be marked, that the same paine is caused through some winde, which is ingendred through colde. Wherefore are we here to shewe whence the same is caused: But as much as concerneth the Belching, it shall hereafter be spoken of.

Of the paine in the stomacke through winde. §. 25.



his is the maladie of the stomacke, the which we call belching, and the Latinists do call it *Ructum*, the which is none other but the wind which nature expelleth through the mouth, and it is thus described.

Belching is an ascending winde which commeth out of the stomacke, and is not digested, but is diuen out through the expulsive vertue of the stomacke.

This is caused of a flegmaticke matter, or meate which is resolved in the stomacke into winde through the feeblenes of naturall heate, and is expelled out of the stomacke. Like as for example we apparantly see, that in time of great heate or great cold, the weather is least of all cloudy or foggie.

The causes of these belchings may well be a feeble heate of the stomacke, which cannot digest sufficiently. And albeit there be warmthe enough, yet hath he nothing but windy meates to worke upon; and the belching which proceedeth of great heate, happeneth but two or three times one after another. The windy meates are these, viz. Porredge of Beanes, Pease, Rye bread, Swines flesh, Chestnuts, Figs, dried Cherries, Must and all colde meates, which doe abate the naturall heate: also rosted eggs, Onions, Radishes, and all that be of such natures.

This belching may also be caused of superfluous meates or drinks, for if they cannot be consumed, then do they ingender winde.

Also this may well be caused by a cold rheume, which falleth also into the stomacke, through want of sleepe, through some unnaturall heate or cold, through ouer hot or cold bathes, through mighty motions, and through thrustes upon the stomacke, and also by bruising or wounding of other parts, which hinder digestion.

The signes of this belching are these: first when one hath neither smelling nor taste, before he haue taken his meate. Secondly, the stench declareth an vlceration or stinking matter in the stomacke. Thirdly, if the rising of the meate taken, be slowe, and the smatch commeth vp again with it: the is it a signe of a bad digestion. Fourthly, if the belching do come after *Asthma*, or after an heauy breath, then is it good and profitable. Fifthly, in like sorte it is very fit, if that any winde comprehended in the stomacke be belched vp. But if the winde will not auoide the stomacke, then is there some other infirmity to be looked for. Sixthly, the reasonable belching (if so be that the digestion be not thereby annoyed) is very commodious, and the digestion much holpen with it. Seuenthly, all they who haue many slower belchings, doe not lightly get any picking or shooting in the breaust. Eightly, all they which be awaked out of their sound sleepe, doe not well digest, and be much subiect to belching, and that more or lesse according to the meate receiued. Ninthly, the belching which tasteth like Sterdigrease betokeneth a great heat and a stinking matter in the stomacke.

And now to proceede to the remedies for the belching, there be first certaine sure rules to be kept and obserued.

First, if there ingender any winde in the body which nature would willingly expell, then is it not to be detained at any hand: notwithstanding, for reuerence sake, to forbear it in the presence of other folkes. Secondly, one ought to beware of all sursetting and superfluitie of meate.

Thirdly al cold is to be refrained, and especially colones of the sexe. Fourthly, all they that be plagued with sower belchings, are to vse *Diatrion pipereon*, and such like, and to drinke it with wine; but they who haue only certaine vapors ascending from the stomacke, they are to be holpen with *Mozmewood* or *Hiera Picra*. Fifthly, all they that doe belch of an ill stomacke or bad digestion, they must liue very soberly. Sixtly, sobrietie and warmth of the stomacke is passing good for all belching from the stomacke.

Now if that this belching do procede of a colde stomacke, then is the patient to be kept maruellous sober, and to eat nothing but light meate, and therewith to vse one of these things following, as *Diacyminum*; *Dianisum*, *Diagalanga*, *Disipipercon*, *Aromaticum rosatum*. And let these confectiōs be made: Take Species *Diacinamomum*, *Diambra*, *Diagalanga*, of each one dragma, Sugar five ounces, sethe them with the water of Spints or Hyssop, and make Tabulats of it. This being made, then vse one quarter of an ounce of it, or halfe an ounce at once. It expelleth all winds of the stomacke, it consumeth all cold matter of the bowels, and is very commodious for the stomacke and the lyuer, taken before meate. Item, take pouned *Galingale* one dragma, drinke it euery morning with wine. Item, *Cinnamom* chewed long in the morning, doth also auoyde all winde. In like manner the confectiō of Bay berries doth vehemently expell all windes out of the stomacke, and out of all other parts. And make this following: Take *Annis*, *Spikenard*, *Hace*, *Louage*, and seedes of *Rue*, of each halfe a dragma, *Commin* one quarter of an ounce, *Sene* leaues one ounce, *Argall* one dragma and a halfe, hony of *Roses* sower ounces and a halfe, *Sugar* halfe an ounce, the *Sugar* and *Hony* shall be boyled vntill they be thicke in the water of *Hyssope*, and temper the rest amongst them: take sometimes also halfe a dragma or one dragma of fine *Treacle*, or *Pithydate* in good wine.

Potions, and such like.

Take of an olde Cocke or Pen, stop it full of *Cinnamome*, *Cloues*, *Ginger* and *Seduarie*, as much as you thinke good, let them sethe well, and drinke of this booth euery morning eight ounces at one time. And drinke in the morning a good draught of wine, wherein be steeped *Putmegs*, *Galingale* and *Cloues*. A little *Aqua vita* is also very good. You may likewise vse for this vitall waters, *Conserues* of *Betonie*, of *Ciebright*, *Gilliflower* wine, *Betonie* wine, and wine of *Ciebright*, are very mete for all cold diseases of the stomacke.

Of sirupes are especial good for this disease, the sirupe of *Mozmewood*, of *Spints*, of *Quinces*, and aboue all *De Calamintha*. And make this following: Take *Parieron*, rumbled *Spints*, *Mozmewood* and *Permiropall*, of each one handfull, *Hony* water sower and twenty ounces, one quart of good white wine, sethe the herbs euen to the halfe, then straine it and clarifie the booth, put as much *Hony* vnto it as you thinke good; temper afterwards amongst it *Ginger*, *Galingale*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Citron* peles and *Spikenard*, of each one quarter of an ounce, then make a sirupe of it, like as in the first Part and the 6. S. is taught. Also you may temper with it *Commin*, *Fennell*, *Carnway*, *Annis*, *Cloues*, *Pother Cloues*, or *Cinnamome*. For all these things do expell winde, and strengthen the stomacke.

These pills following do not purge, but expell winde: Take *Asarabacca*, *Commin*, *Fennell*, and *Annis*, of each one quarter of an ounce, the seedes of *Rue*, rootes of *Mandragora*, of each one scruple, *Benecod* one dragma and a halfe, make as many pills of it as you please, and vse one dragma or one dragma and a halfe of it at one time. For when one will purge, then take these pills following: Take *Indie Salt* halfe a scruple, washt *Aloes* two scruples, *Pil. Alephangine* one quarter of an ounce, temper them together, and make seven or eight pills of them, and vse them at one time.

Suppositories which do draw downe the windes.

Take *Ammoniacum* one quarter of an ounce, *Opopanaxum* one dragma, *Mare* two ounces, *Turpentine* three ounces, *Indie Salt* one dragma and a halfe, *Saltpeter* two ounces and a halfe, *Rue*, *Carnway*, *Siluer* mountaine seed, *Cuscuta*, *Centozie*, *Coloquint*, *Commin*, *Swines* bread, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Colophon* one quarter of an ounce, melt the Gum, the *Mare* and *Turpentine*, and temper the rest (being beaten) amongst it. Then make suppositories of it the bignes of a small finger.

Others

Others do take *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, *Opopanacum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Sagapenum* one dragma and a halfe, dissolve them in vinegar, temper them afterwards in fower ounces of molten Hony, and put Swines bread vnto it, Coloquint, Turbith, and the rootes of ferne, of each one dragma, Scammonie one quarter of an ounce, parched Salt one ounce and a halfe, then make thicke suppositoies of it: for this are you to abate or increase the described waight more or lesse, according to the importance of the cause; for they be very strong, and draw downe the winde, and the ordure very vehemently.

This powder following is also very good for all windes: Take *Parietom*, Rue, *Spints*, *Ames*, *Pastick* and *Frankincense*, of each three dragmes, Cloues halfe a drag. make a powder of them, and giue thereof one dragma at the same time.

Another: Take *Cinnamome* one ounce, *Ginger* three quarters of an ounce, Cloues halfe an ounce, *Calingale* one quarter of an ounce, *Putmegs* three dragmes, *Cardamome* one drag. and a halfe, *Pace* one dragma, *Pepper* one quarter of an ounce, *Spica* one dragma, *Comin* three quarters of an ounce, *Saffron* one dragma and a halfe, *Sugar* one ounce and a halfe: take one dragma thereof with good warme wine.

Here followeth that which is outwardly to be vsed.

Take *Pillet* and *Salt*, parch them well, then put vnto them *Parietarie* and *Pettles*, and lay them warme vpon the stomacke. Or seethe Rue, *Parietom*, *Cammomill* and *Spints* in wine, and wet a sponge in it, or a wollen clout, wying it out, and lay it warme vpon the stomacke. You may also seethe the same herbes in *Sallet oyle*, and annoynt the stomacke with it, and then lay it warme thereon with vnderest shepes woll.

Another oyntment: Take Rue one handfull, *Beuercob* one quarter of an ounce, *Annis* one ounce, *Arisologie* two ounces, red wine 3. ounces, Oyle of Bayberries 4. ounces, poune them all grossely that are to be pouned, and let them seethe vpon hot ashes untill the wine be boyled away: then wying it thorow a cloth, and with *Waxe* make a salve of it for the stomacke.

These oyles following are very necessarie for him: to wit, oyle of Rue, of *Mandragora*, of *Pennirovall*, of *Will*, of *Spica* and Bayberries, mirt together or each alone. This plaister following is very good for to consume the winde of the stomacke, of the lyuer, and of the milt: Take *Ammoniacum*, *Opopanacum*, *Turpentine*, *Rosin*, of each halfe an ounce, *Cardamome*, *Cypers* rootes, *Sauin tree*, *Salt peter*, Bayberries, *Callic wood*, *Pellilot*, *Fenegræke meale*, *Smallage seedes*, *Parietom* gentle, of each one dragma, melt and poune them as behoueth, and then temper them with the oyle of *Spike* and of *Waxe*, as much as is needefull for to make a plaister; spread it on a leather, and couer it with *syndall*, and so lay it ouer the stomacke. You shall haue also hereafter a good plaister against the obstruction of the lyuer with colde, beginning: Take *Roses sine dragmes*, &c. which plaister is also mete for this purpose.

This fomentation is also maruellous mete for this: Take *Wormwood*, *Spints*, *Parietom*, rumpled *Spints*, *Fennell seede*, *Will seed* and *Commin*, of each one handfull and a halfe, *Pastick*, red and white *Cozall*, *Gallia Muscata*, of each one dragma, *Roses* two handfulls, *Quinant*, *Pirle seede* and *Coziander*, of each one handfull and a halfe, wilde *Vine leaues* one handfull and a half (but not *Byponie*) cut them all grosse, & then seethe them all in three quartes of wine vnto the halfe (except the *Gallia Muscata*) this is to be put last of all vnto it, when as the decoction is strained. Then foment the stomacke with it with a great sponge. These bags are also to be made: Take the seedes of *Smallage*, *Annis*, *Siluer mountaine*, *Fennell seedes*, *Stone Parsly* and of Rue, of each one handfull, *Parietom*, white *Water Spints*, of each one handfull and a halfe, *Hyssop*, *Pennirovall*, *Stechas*, Rue, field *Cypers*, of each one handfull, *Wormwood* two handfulls, *Calmus*, *Cinnamome* and Cloues, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Pace* three dragmes, cut it and beate it all together, and afterwards put it in a bag. Item, rub the stomacke with *Aqua vite*. This is also very good and commodious: Item, set a great boring cup vpon the stomacke vnpickt, &c. But you shall incontinent hereafter see more of this where we do speake of the griping and paine of the belly, because that they do both procede out of one kinde of cause.

Of the swelling or puffing vp of the stomacke. §. 26.



If the swelling or puffing vp of the stomacke be caused of winde, that is easily perceined through the foze mentioned reasons. But because that it may also happen very well through impostumation and other occasions, and that the same is to be outwardly sene and knowne, therefore are we here to adde vnto this somewhat thereof. When as then any winde doth stick in the stomack, that will passe neither vpwards nor downewards, then will they of necessitie puffe vp the stomack, and extend it with great perplexitie, and if the same procede through any impostumation, one may well perceine the same outwardly, what then the causes and signes of these winds be, that is sufficiently discoursed in the foze mentioned third part, and 25. §. But as concerning the impostumation, we will shortly hereafter speake of it: and if so be there be any maladie of the Wilt with it, then looke into the description of the infirmities of the same, and mixe the same things with it which do serue for it.

Of the paine of the stomacke through *Phlegma*. §. 27.



If so be that the paine of the stomacke do come through *Phlegma*, and with a salt humoz, then is the patients mouth salt, and hath also heate and thirst with it. And in case the same be caused of any other kinde of *Phlegma*, then is there no thirst with it, but only anguish and drouth, and one may know by the tong the taste of the matter which causeth this paine. Is the *Phlegma* much abound- ing: then will the appetite be lost, with other causes moe, whereof we haue spoken already. For this, is first counselled to take *Oxymel* of Squills, with the decoction of Hyssop, & that afterwards he is to be vged to vomit, with Mustard, Honey, Saltfish, Radish, & Carliche, or vse this decoction: take Squills two ounces, seedes of Dage three ounces, Radishes foure ounces, Vineger two ounces, and a quarter of water, let these sethe together vnto the halfe at least. When you haue eaten before two or three slices of a Radish, then drinke two ounces of this decoction, tempered with one ounce of Sallet oyle, and a short time after see if you can cast vp somewhat. But if the stomacke be not therewith sufficiently clenched, one may perceine by it, to wit, by reason that thereby followeth not any ease at all. Then be these Syrripes following to be prepared: Take Pints, Wormewood, Hyssop, Venus haire all Greene (if so be that they be to be gotten) of each a handfull, Wardy rotes, Fennell rotes, of each one ounce and a halfe, Annis, Fennell, Amas, Licorice, Cozans, Vineger, of each one ounce, Honey and Sugar, of each sixe ounces, make a cleare sirrups of it. For this, is *Oxymel* of Squills also good.

As it is needefull in all other sicknesses, that the *Phlegma* be purged: so it is also needefull in this, as thus: Take Burrage, and the floures of Buglosse, of each halfe an ounce, Annis one ounce, Licorice, Cozans, of each two ounces, rotes of Polipodie halfe an ounce, sethe them all in water so long that there remaine about fise or sixe ounces: then steepe therein one ounce of the rindes of Pirolalans *Chebuli*, whilst that the decoction is still hote, and so let it stand all night in warme ashes, afterwards strayne it out, and take three or foure ounces of this decoction, and put thereto halfe a dragme of Turbit, and one scruple of Ginger, and then giue it him earely in the morning: or giue to the patient of the purging Parmalade, like as it is described in the last part of this booke. For this is also to be giuen three or foure dragmes of the rotules of *Diaphenicon*, or the *Electuarium* or *Diasena*. But if in case he had rather take pills, then let him vse some of these following, to wit, *Stomachica*, *De Aloe Lota*, and *Cochia*: afterwards must the stomacke be warmed with all kinde of spiced Wines, as Hippocrasse, and such like. Also with lozings of *Diatriopipericon*, *Diagalanga*, &c. Item, confected Ginger, Annis, Comin, and Pints, mixed or confected with Sugar. All his meates are to be strowed with Ginger, with Cloues, Calingall, Pepper, and Cinnamome, and they are also to be drest with it.

This confection following is marvellous good for all feblenes, cold, and bad digestion of the stomacke, and also against all hoarsenes. Take Comine which hath bene steeped in Vineger and is dyled againe fise dragmes, Annis, Smalage seede, dyled Pints, Parietom gentle, *Calmsu*, Rosemary, Parietom, and Penpropall, of each three dragmes, Spica, Cloues, Cardamome,

moine, Putnecs, of each one quarter of an ounce, long and common Pepper, of each two dragmes and a halfe, *Lignum Aloes* one dragme and a halfe: temper them together, and make a subtil powder of it, and afterwards with Hony, into a confectiō. The *Troisci de Rosi* do hinder the matter that it runne not againe (after purging) towards the stomacke. If that halfe an ounce of it be taken with Wine, it comforteth, allwageth the paine, and very much assisteth digestion. Item, annoynt the stomacke with oyle of Spike, Pasticke, or oyle of Clozmetwood. For a Plaister, may be vsed that which is described before in the 5. §. beginning thus: Take Pastick three ounces, &c. If there be great cold approaching, then giue the patient one dragme of Spithivate or Treacle, with wine wherein Annis and Clozmetwood haue bene decocted.

Of the paine at the stomacke through *Melancholia*. §. 28.



His paine of the stomacke bringeth with her, together with the foresaid signes, a sowre smatch also vpon the tongue, great desire or longing for meate, but without digestion, with disquietnes, laskes, and vomiting, which do commonly come all together. For these kinds of maladies do people come commonly to be wonderfull feeble and boyd of might, for that the hart which is nextest vnto it cannot tolerate this ouerlading and burthen. Thus then to remedie these grievous melancholick humors which do sinke into the stomack, these sirrups following are to be vsed: Take Burrage rootes, Parsly rootes, and fennell rootes, of each one ounce and a halfe, the inner part of Squils one ounce, Pints, Yflope, Parts tong, Venus haire, being all greene, (if they can be gotten) of each one handfull, fennell seede, Annis seede, *Cuscuta*, Licorice, Cozans, Vineger, of each one ounce, Hony, and Sugar, of each sixe ounces, make thereof a sirrupe.

Another. Take Licorice and Reisons, of each one ounce, floures of Burrage, Buglosse, fennell, Annis, fennell rootes, and *Cuscuta*, of each halfe an ounce, Ginger one quarter of an ounce, Hony, and Sugar, of each sixe ounces, make forthwith a sirrupe of it, or in stead thereof use *Oxymel* of Squils, with water of Burrage, which taketh away the belching of the stomacke.

For to purge, this following may be vsed: Take water of Burrage, and of Buglosse, of each one ounce, Annis one quarter of an ounce, Licorice and Cozans, of each one ounce, Thymus and wilde Thyme, Polypodie rootes, of each halfe an ounce: sethe them together, and steepe therein one ounce of *Mirobalani Indis* the space of a whole night, then wring it well out, and then temper with it one dragme of Azur stone prepared, and giue it to the patient betimes in the morning.

There may also be vsed for to purge the confectiō of Hene leaues, afterwards strengthen the stomacke with the confectiō *Aromatico Caryophylato*, *Diaplyris cum Moscho*, *Lattia Galeni*, *Diabamarou*, and annoynt the same with the foresayd oyle. His meate shall he strowe measurably with spices. He must drinke but little old Wine. He must vse moderate exercise, and bathe often. All that is outwardly to be done is to be taken out of the 24. §.

But if so be that there be any belching proceeding of vnnaturall heate, (which neuertheles chaunceth very seldome) then is the patient to vse the sirrupe of Clozmetwood, or Clozmetwood wine, or Clozmetwood water. In like sort also he is to purge afterwards with *Hiera Picra*, and not to disquiet himselfe, for that these medicines be hote of nature, because they do purge both *Choleram* and the stomacke. Otherwise must this patient be ordered, like as in the debilitie of the stomacke through heate is taught in the 6. §. And god haede is to be taken that the digestive vertue may be strengthened. Set also a great boring cup vpon the belly without picking the space of one houre, yet otherwhiles taking it off, and afterwards annoynt the stomacke with the foresayd oyle, or some other oyle, wherein Annis, Comin, fennell, Rue, or Benniroy, all, is decocted.

The Aristologie hath also a great power to expell all winde and paine of the stomacke. And as concerning the order of life, or dyet, there is alwayes to be vsed all light meates, and white wine, and that with sobrietie.

Of the paine in the stomacke through a hote impostume. §.29.



These impostumes which the Grækes do call *Apostema*, and the Latinists *Abcessus*, are like a separation from that which is whole and firme in a mans body, or is separated into two parts, and doth make an erulceration, which we do call in our common spæche an impostume, as a woꝝd lent vs from the Grecians themselves: but in our english tong we doe call an impostume a Botch or a Wyle, which commeth to an issue, which breaketh out and healeth. The difference betwene an impostume and an erulceration is, that the impostume breaketh out & healeth speedily; but an erulceration endureth long and corodeth, like as the same may also happen in the stomacke.

The causes of these impostumes may be blowes, falls, and other outward bruises; all which do make paine in the stomack, which groweth afterwards vnto an impostume, through the falling downe of some bad humors into it: so that if the foresaid humors be not drawn thence, then there befalleth moze harme vnto it. And that we might write somewhat of it, we will first begin with the hot impostume.

In case then that with the paine in the stomacke there be an Ague, and an impostume, which may outwardly be felt through the heate and otherwise; then may it easily be adiudged that this disease is caused through heate and *Cholera*. It hapneth also that the paine is so vehement, so intolerable, & the heate so abundant, that it seemeth that the patient would burne: So that he loseth his senses, and thereby hapneth also to fall into a frenzie, or some other madness, with a forcible vomiting and parbaking.

For this, must the Liuer vaine or *Hedian* be opened, & afterwards these Refrigerations to be forthwith layd vpon it. Take Rose water six ounces, the iuice of Quinces one ounce and a halfe, red and white Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, Camfere one scruple; temper them all together: This is (as it is said) to be vsed at the beginning. Afterwards, if the cause requireth, there must be sundry plaisters made ready. The first is this insuing: Take red and white Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, the seede of Plantaine, of Burdaine, and Wormewood, of each one dragma and a halfe, Barley meale two ounces, Camfere one scruple, oyle of Roses and of Quinces, of each one ounce and a halfe; let them sethe all together vntill it be thicke. But in the increase of the paine, then temper amongst this plaister the greafe of Duckes and Hens, as much as is needefull: and when as this maladie is at the highest, put Smallage vnto it, Dates, Fenegreke, *Edellium*, and Vineger, of each one quarter of an ounce, and then mire it as is aforesaid.

But if the disease begin to ware old, that the heate were gone, & yet there remaine neuertheless a hardnes of the stomack, then be one of these plaisters following to be laid vpon it: take Violets two dragmes and a halfe, Roses fine dragmes, Spike and Masticke of each thre dragmes, Cypers rootes, Squinant and Calmus, of each one quarter of an ounce, Fenegreke meale two ounces and a halfe, Cammomill, Hollyhocke rootes, and Barley meale, of each one quarter of an ounce; temper them all together with the muscilage of Linseed vnto a pap. This pap is also good for all hard swellings of the stomack, & of the Luer: it allwageth the paine, and ripeneth all impostumations. And in the seede of this you may also vse this plaister of *Melilot*, *Diachilon*, or *Ceroton de Hyssopo*, and fower howers after meate, when the meate is digested, the stomacke is to be annoynted with the oyle of Masticke, and Wormewood, and further the place couered with shepes woll. Item, take Pitch and Rosin, of each two ounces, *Colophon* one ounce and a halfe, Masticke and frankincense, of each one quarter of an ounce, Aloe one ounce and a halfe, molten Larde, one ounce, oyle of Masticke fower ounces, greene Ware as much as sufficeth for a plaister: you may also make a salve of it; and it is very good both wayes.

It is also needefull for to purge, which must be effected with milde Clusters, whereof diuers stand here and there declared. Afterwards giue the patient one ounce of Cassie, or two ounces of *Panna*, dissolved in Endiue water. And if this doe not sufficiently relaxe, then giue him euery day one ounce, or one ounce and a halfe of Cassie. And in case that the Ague doe not remit, then open a vaine, and purge once againe, as before. Take thre dragmes of peeled Gourd seeds, make thereof milke with Barley water, and thre dragmes of Rose water, like vnto Almonds milke.

milke. Seuen dayes after, giue him halfe a dragma of *Trociscis de Rosis*, tempered with Endiue water. He is afterwards to take euery day this ensuing: Take of the water of Smalage, and fennell water, of each one ounce, the iuice of Wormewood one quarter of an ounce, Pasticke one dragma; temper them together, and vse one of the prescribed plaisters, Barley paps, Dacten paps, and otherwhiles stued Spinage may he well eate. A Burrage boyled in Hen broth and Almond milke, is very mete for him. Stued Peares, Apples, Quinces, and ripe Plums may he also eate. Water or Sugar water must be his drinke. In fine, such kinde of sicke folke must be kept very sober, for that is the best medicine for this sickness.

Of the impostumes of the stomacke which be of a colde nature. §. 30.



If so be that this impostume of the stomacke doe procede of a colde and moyst cause, which may quickly be perceiued through the small paine, the bad digestion of the stomacke, small Ague, little thirst, and much spetle: then is the patient to be holden very sober in meate and drinke, and beware of vomiting and purging: but at the first must be giuen him one dragma, or one dragma and a halfe of these *Trociscis* following.

Take Squinant, Cassie wood, Rubarb, and Calmus, of each three dragms, Saffron, Pirrhe, Costus, Annis, and Pepper, of each one dragma, *Bdellium* three dragms, Pasticke one quarter of an ounce, *Ammoniacum* one dragma, forme *Trociscos* of it with vine cuit.

Afterwards you may vse this plaister following: Take Cammomill & Helilot, of each one ounce, fennell, Roses, Cipers nuts, and the leaues, of each halfe an ounce, fenegræke meale, oyle of Cammomill, and oyle of Roses, of each one ounce: temper them together vnto a plaister.

Make this plaister folowing: Take Cammomill, Helilot, Priests crowne, Pennyroy, all and Will, of each halfe a dragma, Wormewood and Spikenarde, of each three dragms, Pasticke one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Roses sower ounces, make a pap of it with the muscilage of Hollyhocke rotes.

But when this disease is increasing and at the chiefe, then put *Ammoniacum*, *Opopanacum* dissolved in wine, and liquid Styar, vnto it, of each halfe a dragma, Hens and Gole grease, of each one ounce, oyle of *Spica* sower ounces, and make a plaister of it. This is forcible to mature all impostumes. For this is also good the plaisters de *Mehloto*, and the blacke *Diachilon*.

For the common man, take oyle of Wormewood and Coates dung; temper them vnto a plaister: Or take oyle wherein Wormewood hath bene decocted, Gallowes boyled in Sutton broth, and drest with butter.

For to expell this colde matter, this sirupe folowing is to bee vsed: Take Pints, Wormewood, Venus haire, being all greene (if they can be gotten) of each three handfuls, Roses one ounce, Annis one quarter of an ounce, Cipers nuts, Spikenarde, of each one dragma, hony of Roses twelue ounces: then make a sirupe of it, like as in the first part, in the first chapter, and §. 6. is taught: giue thereof euery morning, and in the euening befoze supper halfe an ounce, with the decoction of Pints and Pastick. For a purgation he is to take one ounce of *Hiera Picra*, tempered with three dragms of Cassie and Sugar, or dissolve it with the foresaid decoction, and then drinke it. Afterwards the patient is to take euery third day this prescribed Laxative.

Heede is also to be taken therein, when as the impostume in the stomacke will breake out, which may be well perceiued hereby; to wit, if there be great paine about the place where the impostume is. Likewise when the patient doth eate sower and harsh things: if in going to the stoe, or in any thing that he vomiteth there be sene any corruption. Item, if there come any stench out of the stomacke, and that the paine diminisheth somewhat after he hath vomited: for this the stomacke is to be clesed well in Summer season with Barley water, and that in the mornings especially, and at afternone, taking euery time five or six ounces. Or take water wherein Gum and Licorice haue been decocted.

For this is whay also very requisite. He is two howers afterwards to take one quarter

of an ounce of this powder following, tempered with fower ounces of the iuice of Quinces, or sirupe of the same in water, wherein Butchers brome seede, Spittle seede, and Purldaine seede haue been decocted. In the winter must the stomack be also clenſed at the same time with Early water, wherein Hyſlope, Squinant, Honie, or honie of Roses were decocted, and thereupon to vse this powder following.

Take Roses, blossomes of Pomegranates, and Amber, of each halfe an ounce, fine Bolus three quarters of an ounce: mire them well together being beaten small. This patient may also weare this plaister ensuing vpon his stomacke: Take fine Bolus, Pomy, Spirtbe, Pastiche, and Aloe, of each halfe an ounce, Pitch or Rosin as much as is needefull for to make a plaister.

Of exulcerations in the stomacke. §.31.



What difference there is betwene the impostume and the exulceration of the stomacke, we haue sufficiently declared in the 29. §. therefore haue the learned by good reason witten of these two kinds of diseases seuerally. As much as concerneth the exulceration, the which the Latiniſts doe call *Vlcera*, they growe otherwhyles of the impostumes, and cheifly if they be hote. For if the same be not thorowly healed, then doth this exulceration followe. The same be sometimes caused through cholericke and sharpe rheumes, which fall out of the head into the stomacke, and there then through their sharpenes doe excoziate the stomacke; like as the same hapneth often times to the Lights. Also these vlcerations may be caused of some sharpe and corrodng meates; like as through the excessive vse of Spustard, or the seeds, much salt, and such like. For if there come of this sharpenes into the stomacke, then doth the same gnawe and corrode it. Now for to speak of the signes of it, the disease it selfe sheweth some, and doth demonstrate vnto others the place. If there be a pricking paine present, then doth it cast out the meate backe againe, as a thing which is noysome vnto it, so that it cannot stay in the stomacke: whereby also the retentive vertue is infewbled. Item, if the patient doe take any sower meate or drinke, then doth the payne increase, whych would not haue hapned if he had vsed milke, butter, or any other swete meate. Item, if one doe smell any kind of stench thorow the belching, with drowth of the mouth, and thirst, which proceedeth out of the stomacke; then it is a token of an exulceration in the stomacke. Item, for that this exulceration is so nere the hart, there doe come also great swoonings, ache of the head, and the losse of vnderstanding. But the signes which doe manifest the place of the vlcet, are these: namely, when the necke of the stomacke is excoziated, then doth the patient feele paine in the swallowing downe, and especially if it be any thing which is sower or sharpe that he swalloweth; which pain, he feleth also euen to the point of his shoullder blade, but chiefly in the mouth of the stomacke, and pit of the hart. Item, if the disease be in the mouth of the stomacke, which is very sensible, then is the paine greater, and especially if one doe swallowe downe any sharpe and salte meates, whereby the breath also will be much indamaged and hindered.

But if the disease be in the bottome of the stomack, then doth one feele no paine in eating and drinke, but after that it is receiued: some signes likewise of it may be perceiued in the excrements; they that desire to haue moe other signes, may reade in the discourse of the Rheumes. But before we come to the remedies of this vlcet in the stomacke, there be certaine common rules to be noted, whereof the first is: If this disease must be holpen, then is the same alwayes to be begun with drying things. The second: albeit that it is needefull to vse drying things, yet neuertheles must haue been taken that there be no sharp drying things vsed, as Copperas, burnt Copperas, Verdigreace, and such like, because they be of a venemous nature. The third: all vlcerations of the stomacke can be hardly cleansed of the corruption, like as any other which may be outwardly seene, but it must be done only with things which do driue it downewards out of the stomacke. The fourth: these vlcers are not through any vomits to be clenſed, for that the tough corruption is hard impacted in the vlcet, and would through vomiting be drawen all together, the which the purging medicine doth not, for that it stirreth the stomacke not so soze, but driueth out the matter gently downewards. The fifth: in the exulcerations of the stomacke may not any strong medicine be giuen, that they be not the moze harmed by it. The sixt: without a perfect mundification, can no incarnation take any place in any vlcet.

ulcer. The seventh : all which is giuen to such patients, is to be done in the morning early, or must be dispatched before supper time, to the end that the medicine through the meate might not be hindered. The eight : whether this ulcer be in the necke, or top, or in the bottome of the stomach, there must be somewhat alwayes added vnto the incarnatiues that is clammy, as Gum, and Dragagant, to the end that the foresaid medicines might sticke the better, or cleane to the place infected. The ninth : because that the stomacke is so infected of a bad digestion, you are to giue him to eate a little, and likewise light meates.

When as then this maladie shall be knowne through the foresaid signes, and is yet new, then is there to be vsed none other but astringent and drying things, for which these *Trocisci* following are to be made: Take Roses, blossomes of Pomegranats, frankincence, Butchers Bomesede, burnt Quoyie, and Dragon blood, of each alike quantitie, made into Trocisces of the waight of a dragma, and giue one of them euery morning & one euery euening two houres before supper, with the iuice of Quinces or such like.

But in case that this exulceration of the stomacke be of continuance, then it is to be feared that there is still some corruption in it. For this, there are to be vsed certaine dayes together mundifications, as Barly water, or Peade, and also incarnatiues. Afterwards are Barly water and sirupe of Quinces to be vsed, and astringent things to be eaten after it, as Hedlars, Seruices, and such like.

Or vse in stead thereof *Oxyacchara* and *Oxymel*, of each one ounce, temper them with Barly water, and vse it (as is sayd.) Then take one drag. of *Trocisci de Carabe*. Item, there is also good for this disease one dragma of *Hiera Picra*, often vsed with Barly water or Peade. And if the bodie haue neede of any laxatiue medicaments, then vse thereto Cassie, or any milde Clister.

With this disease doth come otherwhyles the Laske, which is to be stayed with *Trocisci de Spodio*, or *De Carabe*. Note ye also here, that many of these things (which be described in the second part, the fifth Chapter, and the 17. §. against the bloudie fluxe) are very requisite for this disease.

This patient is to order himselfe alwayes (as is recited already) with all light meates, as Pullets, Hens, Partridges, new layd Eggs, Barly paps, and Datsen paps. In like manner Lambs fete and Shēpes fete vsed in this disease, are very mete. Buttermilke is also good for this. His drinke must be ripe Wine, without any sharpnes : also Barly water tempered with a stopping sirupe, which liketh you best.

Of the stinking breath through the exulceration of the stomacke. §. 32.

Whereas be such cholerick humors in the stomacke, there is commonly a foule stench with them, which may be perceiued by the breath, and that for the most part with thirst, drouth and bitternes of the mouth, the which discloseth it selfe more before then after meate. For this is also good the sirupe of Vineger and *Oxyacchara*, mirt with the sirupe of Wormewood : this is not only good for the cold, but also for all hot exulcerations. This patient is also to be purged with Aloe, and yellow Spirobalanes. Afterwards he is to vse the *Rosula Triasantal*, Peaches, dried Pelons, Pompeons, Abzicoakes, Quince pearces, Lettice with Vineger, Barley, and other sower things, which be verie good for him. Fish, Hilke, salt flesh, Onions, Garlick, and such like shall he forbear.

But in case that this foule stench of the stomacke doe procede of colde humors, then is the sirupe of Wormewood to be vsed certaine dayes together, tempered with one thirde parte of *Oxymel* of Squils : and afterwarde the patient must be purged with the pills *Stomachica*. And further to vse the Tabulates of *Dialanga*, of *Diambra*, *Diapirus*, and such like, which be hote of nature. Confected Spirobalanes, and especially *Bellirici* and *Chebuli*, Conserue of Rosemary, or confected Ginger, are all very good. He must wash his mouth often with odoriferous waters, and cleanse the teeth very well. As much as concerneth meate and drinke, we haue made before in the first part, the thirtieth chapter, and 3. §. a very long discourse of a stinking mouth and breath. Item, yet more which may there be vsed in the second Parte, the fifth Chapter and 25. §.

Of the schirrosity of the stomacke. §. 33.



It commeth also oftentimes to passe, that the stomacke hapneth to harden without any erulceration, which that it may outwardly be discerned, the causes of this hardnes or schirrosity, may be as well through cold, as through winde, whercof is sufficiently witten before in the 25. and 26. §. Also this hardnes may be well caused through melancholy, the which through some smatch of the mouth, and some belching, may be knowne, euen as the other proceeding of *Phlegma*, by drowth, and tough spittle, without heate and thirst. For this purpose is this salve following to be made: Take oyle of white *Camelina*, Rue, Cammomill, and of *Wormewood*, of each one ounce, the grease of Hens, Bytes, and Gese, of each halfe an ounce, the salve of *Dialibea* one ounce and a halfe: annoynt the stomacke warme with it, and couer it with vnswalhen shepes wooll. Also you may prepare for this vse this plaister following: Take Cammomill, Comin, Caruway, and Cresses seede, of each one ounce, Frankincense, Gallick, *Bellinum*, of each halfe an ounce, Spikenard, and Saffron, of each one quarter of an ounce, the dregs of Sallet oyle and Ware, as much as is needfull for to make a plaister, spread the same vpon leather, and weare it on the stomacke. And make this following: Take Ware one ounce, Turpentine halfe an ounce, Ginger, and *Opopanaxum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Aloe*, *Galbanum*, of each three dragmes, oyle of Calingall, as much as will suffice for to make a plaister. It is also very needfull for to comfort the stomacke, whercof hath bene sufficiently admonished before.

Of the Hickcough in generall. §. 34.



This disease of the stomack, which we call the Hickcough, and is called in Latine *Singultus*, is a common disease, knowne vnto all men: it commeth seldome, and departeth quickly, and there is no great cunning to driue it away: for it is oftentimes driuen away with a bit of bread, or with a draught of wine, or water, as also through the keeping in of the breath, through nesting, through great motions, through wrath, mirth, and other alterations moe of the minde: like as if any one be frighted, or see any haynous thing, if any body cast cold water into his face, if one do bind hard the outward members, or if one set boring cups vpon the stomacke, which are altogether small meanes and without danger. But there commeth otherwhiles such a Hickcough that ceaseth not, whereby the hart, the brest, and the lights are weakened: against which, the expert Physicians haue found out these remedies following.

But we will first of all discouer the nature of the Hickcough, and his causes, which be described as hereafter followeth. The Hickcough is a motion of the naturall expulsive vertue of the stomacke, which is caused through the feeling of any thing that is hurtfull, and that the stomack desireth to expell. This Hickcough may also be well taken for a cramp of the stomacke, for they be both caused through the repletion or inanition of the stomack. And like as the cramp is none other thing, but a shrinking or drawing of the sinewes backe to their beginning, so is this none other thing, but a dissention or contraction of the stomacke vnto the place of her beginning: but herein do they differ, that by the Cramp the sinewes are contracted, and by the Hickcough the neck of the stomacke. The cause of the Hickcough are two things, namely, repletion and windines, and contrarywise also inanition, as already hath bene sayd, which we will also comprehend in this §. Secondly, the causes be also outward, and inward. First, if the stomack be not well defended and kept from cold: also if the outward members, to wit, the head, the hands, and feete, do suffer too great cold, which draweth vp from thence toward the stomacke. In like manner, this Hickcough is also caused well through intollerable heate, whereby the stomack getteth a bad qualitie, to wit, too hote, or too dry. Item, if the head be sore wounded, that the braines be thereby perished: Item, if the stomacke be much overcharged with meate and drinke, or that any kinde of corrupted humors be gathered therein. Moreover, the Hickcough may be caused through any kinde of sharp and biting meates. For if the stomacke feele that it hath euer any thing in it that may hurt her, then doth she vse two meanes to discharge her thereof, which is, through parbaking, or through the Hickcough. It seeketh also thereby

thereby to cast out that which lyeth inclosed in the innermost plights. But that nature desireth to drive that out through the Hickcough, which otherwise through vomiting she doth easily bring to passe, this doth dayly experience teach vs: for if one take any thing which is tarte or sharp (as chiefly Pepper being beaten small) and drinke Wine vpon it, and the same commeth afterwards into the plights of the stomacke, then will the Hickcough be caused through the heate thereof, and the stomack seeketh through the Hickcough to expell the same Wine againe. But by reason that this is caused through inward occasions, then doth it oftentimes happen through the stomack only, and through other infected members, to wit, through impostumes of the head, of falles, and blowes, through breach of the Skull, and impostumation of the Liver, as when the same is overheated, that it sendeth sharp, pricking, and lowze humors towards the stomacke, or that the same runne thitherwards from other parts.

If so be that this Hickcough doe only procede of the stomacke, then commeth it of tough cold, or heate, and biting humors, whereby some bad impostumes, or eruclerations be prouoked. Item, this Hickcough is also caused through great emptines or inanition of the stomack, which commeth through lingring Agues, long abstinence, great labour, much purging, continuall lasks, and much parbaking. But if so be that it commeth suddenly vpon one without any long precedent sickness, and that a bodie finde himselfe well before meate, and after meate all at ease if he haue well eaten, and dronken, and thereupon do rest a long time, then it is a sure signe that this Hickcough proceedeth of the fulnes of the stomack. But if they be cold or tough humors, which prouoke this Hickcough, then are all warme things very welcome to the patient, and he seeketh alwayes some kind of cold in the stomack. And if it be caused through heate, then desireth he all cold things, and seeketh alwayes a gnawing paine in the stomack. With the impostumes are alwayes Agues, paynes, and inappetencie annexed: also the patient after parbaking, and after the laske, seeketh himselfe somewhat lightned, when as then the impostume is broken, that may be perceiued by tarte and lowze things that one taketh. All other signes of this feuerall maladie which is outwardly, may be required of the patient himselfe, and of such as stand by. In like manner, if the breath sauour, then is it a signe of some kinde of soule stinking humor, or meate, which putrieth in the stomack. If it come through cold of the stomack, that may be knowne through feeling, and all that is cold, is preiudiciall vnto him, and all warme things be acceptable. And if this Hickcough be caused through repletion, and fulnes, with angusties, straynes, and with many belchings, then may it be perceiued what humors they be, by the swartenes, bitternes, and saltnes.

Of the Hickcough through repletion, and through windes.

When as then the Hickcough commeth on any body, after that he haue eaten grosse meate, and hath dronken, then it is certaine ynough, that it is caused through repletion of the stomack, through coldnes of the matter, and of windes, which the Grecians do call *Empneumatosis*, which is a distention. For this, the stomack is first to be unburthened through vomiting, and to induce his bodie through loosenes; for which, there is to be taken *Hiera Picra*, *Rubarb*, and *Agaricus*. And if so be that these milde things will not help, then are you to vse these pretious pills following: Take burnt Quozie, seedes of Endiue, of Purslaine, and *Lignum Aloe*, of each one dragma and a halfe, lowze Dates halfe an ounce, *Rubarb* one ounce, this being beaten all small, and if so be that you will, then put Vineger vnto it, or the sirupe of Spints. And if you had rather haue the same soft like a sirupe, then take so much the more Vineger, or sirupe with it, and take euery day halfe an ounce of it.

For this is also commodious the conserues of Bayberies, *de Baccis lauri*: so is also the confection *Diacyminum*, *Diatrionpipereon*, bare, and confected Annis seedes, confected Ginger, Comin, Caraway, Galingall, Spints, Ameos, Gassick, Cloues, Frankincense, Parierom, and field Spints, through all which things, Powders, Confections, Conserues, and all that one will, and may be made. You haue also certaine good things in the first part, the twelfth Chapter, and 17. S. which be very good for this vse. But aboue all, Cloues are very good for to strengthen the stomack, and to consume all bad humors, which cause this Hickcough. The sirupe of Spints is also highly commended for this purpose.

This Confection following may also be prepared: Take Spica, Squinant, *Calmus*, Annis, Fennell,

Fennell, *Pints*, *Wormewood*, and *Costus*, of each one dragma, *Saffron*, *Lignum Aloes*, and *Cloues*, of each two scruples, *Passick* and *Roses*, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Opium*, prepared *Coziander*, white *Poppie seede*, *Cassy wood*, of each halfe a dragma, the muscilage of *flea wort*, as much as will suffice for to make losings with: but they be more mate and pleasant, if they be made with *Sugar*, taking to euery ounce of powder twelue ounces of *Sugar*, if one will make *Sugar losings* with it. If so be that then the *Hickcough* plague one too sore, then take *Spec. Dialanga* one dragma, *Philonium* halfe a dragma, temper it, and take it with *Wine* in the morning.

This following is to be dronken: Take *Comin*, white *Pints*, of each a like quantitie, and a little *Frankincense*; lethe it in water, and drinke of it oftentimes warme, it expelleth the winde and cold matter of the stomacke.

Item, the same doth also the water of *Kue*, being dronken fasting, or prepare this wine following: Take *Diptamum* beaten small halfe an ounce, *Treacle* one dragma, temper them together with one ounce of wine. For his meate, all common *Benison*, and all kind of *Birds*, as *Bullets*, and *Pigeons*, &c. be very fit, but they be alwayes better roasted then sodden. And all that he eateth boyled, is to be dyest or stued with *Spices*.

But if all the foresayd things will not yet driue away the *Hickcough*, then is there to be giuen to the patient *Trociscos de Olibano* five dragmes, *Clecampane* rootes three dragmes, dyed *Rosemary*, and *Kue*, of each one quarter of an ounce, seede of *Pints*, or the herbe, three dragmes and a halfe, make thereof *Trocisks* with *Syrup* of *Pints*, and giue thereof one dragma and a halfe at once.

Other do commend this following: Take *Costus* rootes, *Saffron*, *Roses*, *Passick*, & *Spica*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Asarabacca* one dragma, *Aloe*, *Opium*, of each halfe a dragma, make also *Trociscos* of it, with the muscilage of *flea wort*, and giue him one dragma thereof. These *Trocisci* are to be taken alone when the *Hickcough* shall get the maiesterie.

Outwardly are these things to be vled: Take the decoction of *Comin*, white *Pints*, and *Frankincense*, (like as is sayd for the drinke) make a sponge wet in it, and (being wrong out) lay it oftentimes warme vpon the stomacke. *Aqua vite* is also commodious for this, with *Water*, *Dyles*, and other things, (like as is described before in the paine of the stomacke.) In like manner one may foment the place with warme water of *Kue*, or that which is more forcible, must the same be well rubbed with, as is before reherfed.

Item, there may moreover be taken for this purpose, dry *Wormewood*, *Pints*, and *Comin*, pouned together, sowed in a bag, and so layd vpon the stomacke. Also the stomacke must be annoynted with warme oyle, to wit, oyle of *Wormewood*, *Passick*, and such like, and as then to weare ouer it this plaister following: Take *Frankincense*, *Passick*, *Wormewood*, and *Pints*, of each halfe an ounce, *Laudanum*, one ounce and a halfe, *Annis*, *Fennell*, *Cloues*, and *Spica*, of each one dragma, make a plaister of them with *Clare*, for to be layd vpon the stomacke. Also regard is to be had vnto the patient that he incline himselfe as much as is possible to sleeping, and fasting. And if so be that he be somewhat leane, then is he to bathe otherwhiles, for that the same consumeth the cold matter which doth cause the *Hickcough*.

Of the Hickcough, caused through emptines and inanition.

If so bee that this *Hickcough* doe come after an *Ague*, by the disquietnes, vomiting, thirst, and drouth of the mouth, then is the patient to take oftentimes a little warme water: and if so be that the *Hickcough* will not thereby auoyd, and tary away, then is he to take *Barly water*, with oyle of *swete Almonds*. For this, is also requisite *Barly pap*, made with milke: also warme milke as it cometh from the *Colw*, *Bullet* both, rare sodden *Eggs*, *Wine* which is not too strong: the muscilage of *flea wort* with the *Iulep*, and the iuice of *Pomegranates* being dronken, is also good for this intent.

Also, annoynt the backbone from aboue till beneath, or rather the whole bodie with *Sallet* oyle, or oyle of *Roses*.

Boring cups set vpon the stomack, and behinde vpon the back, be much commended for this disease: also the rubbing of all the outward members.

Lastly, we are to thinke vpon the yong children, who were wont to be vexed much with the

the Pickcrough. In case they be still nourished at the best, and do not digest well, through any pearcing cold, or that their milke doth come to curd in the stomacke, then are they to vse none other medicine, but that their stomacke be annoynted with this oyle following, tempered together, or each alone, and then to lay a warme cloth vpon it, to wit, oyle of *Spalticke*, of *Alumne*, of *Will*, and *Beuercod*, and that the sourse which giueeth suck, do eate light meates.

Of vnfaciable hunger in generall. §. 35.



If all other accidents of the stomacke, there commeth also an insatiable hunger, which the learned do deuide into foure parts, and some into fise, which parts are comprehended in the first, and so we will also let it rest. The first, the *Graeces* do call *Cynorexian*, the *Latinists* *Caninum*, which is dogs hunger. The second *Bulimos*, some haue alledged this for dogs hunger, which we also esteeme to be the same. The third, is *Syncopalis*, which bringeth swoouning with it. The last is, the lost or spoyled hunger, whereof we now intend to write.

Of the dogs hunger, or the vnfaciable appetite of meate.

This hunger is (as is sayd) an vnnaturall lust or desire of meate, and hath his name of the *Dog* (an vnfaciable beast) and so greedie in eating, that he must cast it out againe, and seeketh immediately to fill himselfe againe. All such manner of hunger may also come vnto men, and that as well through cold, as through heate, of the ayre, hard running, great labour, long watching, forrible Agues, great laskes, of woymes, or the stomack, or bowels, which consume the meate. In like manner also of any kinde of humors which do fall into the stomack, and there enfeeble the retentiuue vertue, and do daine downe the meate oftentimes with vehemencie, or that the expulsiuue force be too extreame strong. This maladie commeth commonly after a feruent Ague, and much vomiting. It doth also happen through ouermuch heate of the stomacke that is long continuing, whereby it digesteth much, and alwayes desireth more. The other principall occasion is cold, which sticketh fast in the mouth of the stomacke, whereof commeth also an vnnaturall desire of meate. And how much greater that the cold is, so much the greater is the hunger, and that so long, vntill all the vertues of it be weakened. The third occasion may be some solwe humor, or of *Phlegma* and *Melancholia*, which may be retayned in the mouth of the stomack, and doth there prouoke this lust and desire of meate. The signes of this vnnaturall hunger, which is caused through warmth of the time, through great labour, and such like, as is discouered before, also through vnnaturall cold, much watching, &c. and all other outward accidents, which are to be demaunded of the patient himselfe. And if this disease be caused through woymes, such hath likewise his sure signes, which be mentioned in their place.

If so be that this hunger then do procede only through heate of the stomacke, or through heate of the whole bodie, then is there great thirst with it. And if it be caused through any humors, debilitie of the retentiuue, or vehemencie of the expulsiuue vertues, which be to be saine by the meate, that annoyndeth vndigested through the stole.

But if this disease be caused through melancholie, then is there with it a pricking, or gnawing, with a drowth of the mouth, the patient slepeth but little, and that with terrible dreames, and hath ill fantasies in his head. When as then this maladie commeth through cold, then doth the patient alwayes feele himselfe troubled after meate, and that he must by and by vomit up the same againe, or the same passeth from him downewards vndigested. Present regard is to be had that the bodie be not filled full of bad humors, whereby the consumption might at last ensue, and *Lienteria*, yea the *Dropsie* it selfe. And if this should so continue a certaine time, then followeth at last *Bulimos*, and afterwards *Syncopalis*, (whereof we haue spoken before) which taketh people out of the world. If so be then this vnnaturall hunger be caused through any outward or accidentall occasion, the same are to be preuented with contrary remedies, to wit, with alteration of cold dwellings into warme; of great labour, into rest and sleape, &c. In case then that this hunger be caused through coldnes of the stomack, then are warme things for purging, and other warme remedies to be used which might expell the cold matter from the stomack, whereof we haue written herebefore in the 5. §. and of all that strengtheneth the stomacke. For this, it is

is also required by all the learned, that these kindes of patients should eate boyled Rice, with the fat of Button stued, or that is doopt off from rostē meate. All fat things moderately vsed are very good for him; as Sallet oyle, and such like. But if this maladie doe come thorough cold solwe *Phlegma*, then it is good that he boyle Parierom in all his meates. Hee may also vse Mustard, Honie, Butts, Almonds, Dinions, and Garlick; he may also the space of certaine dayes eate Goates milke, with the oyle of Violets, because that these fat meates do diuine about in the stomach: therefore they do supple the mouth of the stomach, and do make a loathsomnes to feeding.

The second: It is then passing good, that such doe drinke much olde and strong red wine at their meales, which is also very good to slake hunger with. Also for this Dogs hunger, are warme Confections to be vsed; as namely, *Letitiae Galeni*, *Diaplisir cum Moscu*, *Diatrisopiperan*, *Tripthera magna*, good confects, Ginger, Hippocras, and other spiced wines moe, made swete rather with Hony then with Sugar.

But this is not spoken, of the hunger which commeth thorough long fasting, of great scouring, of the bloodie fire, or of strong purgations; but onely of this insatiable hunger which is called Dogs hunger. If so be then euery such patient shall obserue this decreed order, then will this hunger abate very much, and also be thoroughly cured in time.

But in case that this hunger procede of heate, and the meate doe not molest him, neither yet is cast out about nor beneath (like as it was wont to be) if after a lingering sickness, he were overcharged with meate, and if the stomacke and all the whole body be wahren hot, they are to be fed with meates which be not easie to be digested: as namely, old Bese, Button, Bozke, and also all kind of pottages, of Pease and Beanes, of Rice, and Wheate boyled in milke, great fishes, Trypes, fete and Liners of all beastes; also hard sodden eggs: and in fine, with all that is hard of digestion, which lyeth long in the stomacke, and wherewith the stomacke may be cloyed. Also his meates ought to be drest with some colde things: for which Melons, Cucumbers, and Gourds be very good. He is to keepe himselfe also in the colde ayre. His drinke must be alwaies good Claret wine. And for a conclusion, he must eschew all spice and strong wines. But if so be the stomacke be too much overcharged, and too much burthened, then is the patient to be forced to vomit, thorough such meanes as be herebefore oftentimes exprested.

The stomacke is outwardly to be annoynted with colde oyles, likewise also with vnguent of Roses, with the cooling salve *Galenii*, with the white Camfere salve, with Vineger and Rose water, wherein is a little Allom dissolved. And if so be that the same be not any thing which hindereth it, then let the patient bathe in colde water. And if so be that this hunger be caused thorough melancholy, then prepare this sirupe following: Take the rootes of Sperage, fennell, Parsly, Smalage, Butchers brome, Thyme, Comin, Burrage, Buglosse, Harts tongue, Raisons (the stones taken out) flowers of Burrage, and of Buglosse, of each halfe an ounce, fumi-torie halfe a handfull, Hony eightene ounces: make a sirupe of them, and giue him each time one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces. For to purge vse the Confection of Sene leaues, or this potion following: Take Sene leaues, Polypody rootes, & Annis, of each halfe an ounce, Cozans one ounce; let them sethe together in eight ounces of water vnto the halfe, then temper therein beaten *Epithymum* one quarter of an ounce, Sene powder, and prepared *Agaricum*, of each halfe a drag. Cloues half a scruple, make therof a potion: And if nede be, open the Saluatella vpo the right hand. He is also to be ordered in his diet, as is before rehearsed, and all things are to be forborne which may prouoke appetite, as hath been shewed before in the 9. S. It is also saide, that hard rosted eggs after other meate, be very mete for this purpose. And it hapneth also very well (like as is chiefly spoken of before) that if one recouer after a long continued sickness, that there doth followe a very great hunger: but they are to haue no hard or grosse meates giuen them; as Bese, great fishes, vnleauened bread, or such like, because that their digestion is as yet very feeble, whereby they might easily fall againe into a new disease: but then are they to be kept with subtile meates; as with fat Bullets, Capons, soules, Butter, and such like, and all vnnaturall and vnnearurable eating is to be withstode and repugned as much as is possible.

Of the Cowe hunger which is called *Bulimos*.

This vnnaturall and insatiable hunger *Bulimos*, is as much as to say with the Grecians, as a very great hunger: which name, the successors haue somewhat altered, and haue made

made thereof *Bulimos*. And it is thus described: *Bulimos*, which is a hunger of the members whereby the stomacke is satisfied. And this is also a great disease of the stomacke, which taketh his beginning from the stomacke it selfe. But it is contrary to Dogs hunger in these things following: to wit, although they haue both of them an insatiable lust and desire of meate, yet with the Dogs hunger is not only a desire, but also the feeding it selfe: But in the Colwe hunger, it chaunceth that the patient who hath lately eaten is moued immediately to eate againe, where neuertheles all lust to eate, and so cast it vp, is taken away. But there is no such hunger in the stomacke, which is to be satisfied with a bit; but in the inward parts which be desirous of meate without interceasing: and when the stomacke is against her will overburdened and cloyed, then will it be onermuch disordered, and out of quiet or square, so; to discharge her due tie of digestion.

Secondly, in the Dogs hunger the vertues of the stomacke and other partes be so; a while strong and able: but in this Colwe hunger are they withered and wreake. And because that such sickness is caused as well through heate as through colde; therefore must we severally write thereof.

The greatest occasion of this *Bulimia*, is, when winter time is, the stomacke is coled too much with colde, then driueth the humors towards the stomacke, out of the vaines, in the inward parts, filling them therewith, spoiling the appetite, and also depriving the stomacke therewith of all her force and vigo: in the meane while the other parts remaine emptie and hungrie, desiring much their fode and sustenance. Hence then this insatiable hunger doth proceed: so that this is properly an hunger of the members, and is no hunger at all of the stomacke. If so be that then any one, as is said, be so extremely coled, and although there come such a lust of feeding upon him, yet it is very quickly slaked. This disease bringeth otherwhile such a quauime with it, that the patient is caused to cast out some tough slime or corruption: And then will all outward members (which be defrauded of their nourishment) be enfeebled, impotent, ouer cold, and the pulse very small. The sicke person hath sower belchings from the stomacke, and a fowle smatch in the mouth. The vyne is bleake, likewise the ordure blacke coloured, thin, and also otherwhiles hard, because that the patient can eate very little, or nothing at all. Now then, whether this disease be caused or not, through great colde of winter tyme, or colde slime of the stomacke, the patient is certaine daies together, to take moyning and euening a draught of *Oxymel Compositum*, or of Squills, with water, wherein Galingale is decocted: afterwards he is to vomit and purge with *Mirobalani Chebuli*, *Bellirici* and *Emblaci*. The like also with the pills *Fatida stomachica*, or with these following: Take Turbith, *Agaricus*, of each one dragma, *Spica* and Ginger, of each one dragma: temper them together, and take one dragma of it at once, and afterwards he is to vse this confection following, namely, *Diamaschu*, *Diambra*, *Trionpipercon*, *Diacymino*, *Diagalanga*, and that especially after purging. All his meate must be also dressed and strowed with spice, and also be rather alwaies roasted than boiled. Rye water drunken is also very necessary, but chiefly good old wine, which is somewhat binding by nature.

Before dinner and supper, the stomacke is to be well annoynted with the oyle of Pasticke and of Spike tempered together. Also to bathe in water, wherein Wormwood, Pelilot, Camomill, and Butchers brome hath bene decocted.

What is more to be used for this, loke in the same Chapter, in the 5. S. which remedies be most fit for it. These kinde of patients are also to be sprinkled oftentimes with Rose water, or faire Well water upon their bodies and their faces, that the naturall heate may be driuen inward, and the inward members may be strengthened. They are also to hold oftentimes spice before their noses, and to vse it in their meate. His wine must be alwaies strengthened and enabled with Cinnamon, Pepper, Cloues, and with *Spica*, and with them and with vineger is he to sprinkle a hot stone, and to receiue the vapor of it. The chamber is to be fumed with *Lignum Aloes*, or with *Muscu*, *Ambra*, blacke and white Frankincense, *Laudanum*, Pasticke, Galingale, with Citron peles and Orange peles, *Gallia* and *Alpta Muscata*, with each alone, or with which you please.

But if this disease come through heate, then is this unnatural hunger of the members caused of the resolved humors of the vaines and other members which passe into the stomacke, and there oppresse the stomacke, with lothsonnes and irksomnes of feeding. But they are to wash their mouth very often with a little *Oxyfaccara*, or with veriuice. Likewise also to vse Julep of Roses, with a little Campher, or Sirupe of Roses mixt with Saunders. For this is also mete all cooling

cooling things, and especially them that haue a binding operation, whercof there be many discovered in the same Chapter, and the 6. S.

Afterwards, the patient is to be purged with *Spīrobalans*, with *Kubarbe*, or *soluer Dates* steeped in the decoction of *Wjunes*, as also with *Hiera Picra*, or sirupe of vineger tempered with the said decoction. Afterwards he shall vse the confectiō *Rosara Nouella*, or *Triaſantalōn*. His meate must be dressed with veruice, and with Butchers hōme seedes, and strowed with odoriferous cooling things. For his drinke he is to take good clere wine delaid mately well with water.

It is also good for this patient, that he bathe in water wherein *Roses*, *Spirtle* seede, and *Endiue* be decocted, and afterwards annoynt the stomacke euen to the nauell with the oyle of *Spirtle*, and oyle of *Roses*, wherein is a little vineger tempered. In like manner may he irrigate the members from on high with *Rosewater*, or cold Well water.

Of the swooning Hunger called *Syncoḗpalis*.

The third vnnaturall hunger hath his name (as is said) of the swooning which it bringeth with it: and the same commeth commonly after the first described *Bulimo*, or such like sicknes, for that the naturall powers are very faint and debilitated.

Also because this hunger is so nere vnto the hart, that it cannot tolerate such debilitie, euen as it hath bene here before sufficiently taught. Also in respect hereof, for that some haue so weake and so tender a mouth of the stomacke, that they cannot abide any fasting: but when they begin to be hungrie, and may not by and by haue fode, do fall presently into a swoone. When this happeneth, then are the outward members to be rubbed hard, and bounden with paine, and the face sprinkled with *Rosewater*, or washed and quickened with other things which be mentioned in the second part, the first Chapter, and 2. S. But if so be that his force be not quite spent, or if one perceiue that the swooning will come vpon him, then giue him a bit of bread to eate steeped in wine.

The fourth is a corrupted or bad hunger. But because this hunger for the most part happeneth to women with childe: therefore we will not discourse here any further thereof, vntill such time as we shall discourse of this, and other matters moe appertaining to women.

In like manner also concerning the *woymes*, because that they do infect and frequent more the bowels than the stomacke, and are thence expelled: therefore we will discourse of them in the description of the bowels.

The twelfth Chapter.

Of the *Lyer*.



Abeit now the *Lyer* haue the seate in the third part of mans bodie, fall vnder the *Spīdriffe* or *Diaphragma*, about the stomacke, for which cause we continuing our method, ought to haue written thereof before the stomacke: yet we haue declared sufficient causes in the beginning of the tenth Chapter, and shewed for what cause it hath not yet bene effected. This most noble member whereof we are now to discourse, which we call the *Lyer*, the *Grecians* *Hepar*, and the *Latinists* *Iecur*, hath her situation (as is said) on the one side of the stomacke, which it toucheth in a wonderfull (and yet neuertheles, in a naturall) manner, with five branches, like as it were five fingers, wherewith she stretcheth also a little towards the left side, and is also by nature one of the most needfull and worthiest members which is giuen for the nourishment and sustenting of mans bodie, therefore are all beasts that do blow endued with it. This great and excellent gift haue the heathen people also acknowledged: but they shamefully and infidelly abuse this wonderfull creature of God in their sacrifices: in which, amongst other the entrailes they behold the *Lyer* especially, supposing thereby to learne and vnderstand things for to come, euen as they, whether it be through naturall causes, illusions of the diuell, (or through the leasings of their sacrificing priests) haue published and made knowne many kinds of wonderfull things.

things. The substance of the L yuer is compacted flesh, of a red colour, not much unlike to congealed blood, full of vaines & arteries, and is of a warme & moyst complexion, like as is also the blood. Also of her selfe she is without sence or feeling, like to halfe a circle, and in man (in regard of the whole bodie) she is much bigger then in other beasts, and especially in such as banquet every day, and make good chere, or be fleshy by nature. The L yuer is the beginning and the seate of all lusts, a fountaine of all the vaines, the kitchen of all the blood, which she afterwards in most wonderfull manner doth spread abroad, and impart throughout the whole bodie, where by all the members be nourished, sustained and strengthened. This her admirable operation is not amisse to be compared with must, which hath his les, that setteth it selfe in the bottome; Also there is then some light with it which ascendeth, that we do call the flowre of the wine: Lastly, there is somewhat more which vapozeth out within the yere, which is waterish. Euen so fareth it with the L yuer, which draweth first all manner of mixed moisture vnto her, and the greatest and the muddiest: to wit, *Melancholia* sendeth he towards the *Pilt* or *Splene*: that which is light, hote, and fierie, as *Cholera* is, draweth to the Gall: the excessiue watrish moisture which remaineth still in the rest of the bodie, and all that is not mete for the blood, that do the *Reynes* draw to them, from whence the same commeth into the Bladder, and is afterwards voided out for vyne.

This excellent member is (like as the whole body of man) subiect to diuers diseases: amongst which, the most principall are these, namely, when the arteries and vaines be obstructed, whereof then be caused all kinde of sicknesses, as inflammations, schirrosities, lasks, or bloudie fires, diseases of the Kidneies, and of the conduits of the vyne, thirst, yellow Jaunders, and lastly, diuers sorts of Dropsies, whereof we will speake more at large hereafter.

Of the infections of the L yuer in generall. §. 1.



First, all men that haue any infection of the L yuer, are called *Hepatici*. notwithstanding that some do make somewhat else of it, and it is described thus: *Hepaticus* hath his continuall paine about the place of the L yuer, with swelling, and hardnes. The face loseth his naturall colour: there is also an Ague, and thirst with it, with drouth of the tongue and the mouth. But this is to be thought as gaine vpon, that the L yuer it selfe is utterly insensible, and therefore feeleth no paine. But this sensibleness or feeling haue the inward and adiacent Tunicles, and all that belongeth vnto them: which paine doth procede through a cold, or hote L yuer, or some impossu- mation, whereof the Physicians haue their proper signes, which we shall declare in their conuenient places. But the common people, yea also the vnlearned Physicians do not know so quickly the sickness of the L yuer, and that because of her manifold accidents and *Symptomata*, which be incident vnto it, whereof we will describe the most needefull, with all their necessarie remedies.

Of the obstruction of the L yuer in generall. §. 2.

As much as the common causes of the obstruction of the Liuer (like as is already discoursed) are in the vaines and arteries, and that as well through heate, as through cold: therefore will we first of all make some declaration in generall of this oppilation, before that we come to the principall. This obstruction or oppilation is thus described: *Oppilatio* is an obstruction, and such a disease, as hindreth the blood, and other humors, that should haue their passage and course through the vaines, which may be prouoked through these causes following in the L yuer: to wit, if a bodie do gird himselfe too hard, and hath his clothes too straight about the L yuer. Item, through fallings, through thrustings, and such like, through vse of grosse meates, as Pork, Beefe, Chese, vnleauened bread, boyled seedes, as Rice, Wheate, &c. All manner of Pape, and other oppilating Pottages. Item, through outward cold, through inward tough slime and grosse blood, which hapneth to lye before the offices of the vaines, through winde, impostumes, and through other diseases moe of the L yuer. The common signes next after the forementioned, are these: that alwayes his excrements or ordure is very thin and watrish, the vyne also sheweth thin, clere, and yellowish. Also there is paine in his right side, and he feeleth a debilitie in the whole bodie, which may best be knowne when one must ascend staires or hills,

and that then the breath is very short, with other signes moe, whereof we shall admonish where we shall write of the impostume of the L yuer. Albeit that we shall hereafter make mention of the order of dyet in a hote or cold L yuer, and that we here but in generall do write of the disease of the L yuer, yet will we here notwithstanding briefly rehearse this rule.

To wit, that all they that haue any obstruction in the L yuer, are not to eate any thing but light meates, as young Puffton, Hens, and such like, which is often shewed before, and shall be hereafter shewed againe. Also all their meate is to be dyest with Barly rotes, and herbs. They are also to vse much Bealepozredge. And if this disease procede of a cold cause, then are you to adde Barly, Fennell, Southernwood, Sperage, or Capers. His meate must be boyled rather then roasted. Also he must beware of all grosse meates, old flesh, great fishes, and of all fishes which haue no shels. He is to vse no bathes, plaisters, nor any thing else before and yer that the second digestion be past. All strong motions or exercises immediately after meate must he eschue. And although he were very thirstie, yet must he forbear as much as is possible, and chiefly from drinkeing of Wine; howbeit neuertheles a cleare white and well sauozing Wine is in some sort permitted. This may suffice at this present.

The causes of a hote L yuer are many, as namely, the hote time, great labour in the heate of the Sunne, and especially without drinkeing, excessive Venerie, application to hote medicines, suffocation of the mother or wombe, continuall vse of all hote meates, as Spices, or Wine made with Spices.

These are now the signes of a hote L yuer, to wit, a red and yelloſe vrin, yelloſe or dure, great thirst, loathing of meat, and a swift pulse. All cold things are acceptable to the patient, and warme things be noysome. He is much enclined to vomiting, and that which he parbraketh, is lead coloured, and sometimes yelloſe and græne. Also the heat of the L yuer may be felt with the hand. They which be of hote nature, and yong withall, and in a hote time of the yeare, are most subiect to this disease. And when to this heate there cometh dyouth, that the mouth and the tongue be dry, then is it well to be sene that this disease procedeth of an vnnaturall heate, whereby there folloiweth forthwith Obstructions, Impostumes, Exulcerations, Tumors, schirrosities of the L yuer, and such like diseases.

Of the oppilation or obstruction of the L yuer through heate. §.3.



Of this obstruction of the L yuer these simples are good: amongst which notwithstanding some be moderately warme, but they can thereby do no hurt, because that they be forcibly droppilate. They may be mixed with other things, viz. with tame and wilde Endiue, small Endiue, Priests crowne, L yuerwort, Helon seed, Pom-pion seed, Gourd seed, Cucumber seed, and Lettice seed, seeds of Purslaine, of Endiue and small Endiue, water of the rotes, and herbe of Cicozie, Sozrell, Cicozie, Burrage, Venus haire, small Housleke, Harts tong and fiede Cyppers: of all which, one may prepare what he will. Item, the sirupe of vineger drunken with Endiue water. In like manner may be giuen to the sicke person to drinke Barly water, the iuice of cooling herbes, as of Endiue, Nightshade and *Cuscuta*, with the sirupe of Sozrell and Sugar: so that these things do open the obstructed L yuer, and cole the same. You may also vse for this purpose these things ensuing: Take *Oxyssachara*, and sirupe of Violets, of each thre ounces, sirupe of Endiue twelue ounces, temper them together, and if you thinke that the choler is tough and thicke, then temper amongst it one ounce of vineger, and vse thereof as often as you please, each time one ounce and a halfe, with some of the foresaid waters. Or take the sirupe of vineger, the sirupe of Endiue, of each six ounces, and temper them together. If the body be sore bound, then put thereto one ounce of the sirupe of Violets. Or if you thinke that the *Cholera* be burnt, then put the iuice of Burrage and of *Stimuloxie* vnto it.

And if there be any Ague with it (as it commonly doth happen) then is this obstruction not onely commodious, but also most necessarie, that the bad cholerike humors may the easier be expelled: for which these things following are very mete, viz. the sirupe of *Diarrhodon*, de *Byzantijs*, de *Radibus*, de *Cichorea*, taken with the distilled waters mete for them, to wit, water of Venus haire, of Harts tong, of Agrimonie, of Wormwood, of Endiue, of Cicozie, or with the waters wherein the foresaid herbes are decocted.

Item,

Item, Cassie with *Hiera Picra*, *Eleutherium lenitium*, *Rhabarbarum*, *Agaricus*, Sirupe of *Roses* *laxative*, *Pillula de Rhabarbaro*.

But seriously to take in hand this matter, it is aboue all woorks needefull to purge, which is thus to be effected.

Take the flowers of Burrage, of Buglosse, Violets, Currans, and Endiue seedes, of each halfe an ounce, boyle them together as becometh: of this decoction take thre or fower ounces, and temper therein thre dragmes of Cassie, fower Dates fine dragmes, beaten Rubarbe one dragme: these being tempered, take them in the morning early. Fower Dates are especiall good for this, because they cleanse the hot Liuer, and also cole it. Take the flowers of Violets, of Burrage, Pyunes, and fower Dates, of each halfe an ounce, *Spicanardi* one scruple: let them sethe together in sufficient water. Then take thre or fower ounces of this decoction, and temper amongst it one ounce of Cassie, and one dragme of Rubarbe steeped in Endiue water: make a drinke of it. If so be that the sicke person be metely strong, then in steade of the Rubarbe you may temper with it thre or fower dragmes of the confection *Succo Rosarum*.

Another: Take sirupe of Violets halfe an ounce, Warly water thre ounces, Rubarbe one dragme steeped in a little Endiue water, *Spica* thre dragmes, confection de *Succo Rosarum*, one quarter of an ounce: temper them together, and giue it him in the morning betimes. If the humors be grosse, then take in the steade of the Rubarbe, *Agaricus* and Rubarbe, of each halfe a dragme: for the *Agaricus* hath an especiall operation in the opening of the obstruction of the Lyuer.

For this is also requisite diuers Sirrupses, which be daily vsed at most Apothecaries, and also described in this booke: to wit, aboue all other, both sorts of *Oxymel*, the *Drimell* of *Squills*, sirupe of Endiue, of *Barberies*, their confections, and all that is made of it, *Oxyacchara*, sirupe of Violets, and of *Ribes*, and principally if there be tempered with it *Roses*, burnt *Tuozie*, and *Saunders*.

Item, take sirupe *De Bizantijs* two ounces, Hony of *Roses* one ounce, water of Endiue, Fennell, and of *Mozmeadow*, of each two ounces, make a *Iulep* of it to take at two seuerall times. Another: Take Endiue water six ounces, water of Liuerwort thre ounces, seedes of Gourds, Melons, and Cucumbers (slightly beaten with the pils) of each two dragmes, Venus haire two handfuls, and ten or twelue winter Cherries: let these sethe all together in sufficient water, untill that a third part be decocted, and in sathing put one quarter of an ounce of red *Saunders*: afterwards strayne it thorow a cloth, and sethe in the same decoction thre ounces of Sugar, and then make two Portions of it: they do cole, cleanse, and strengthen the Lyuer, the Kidneys, and all the intrailes marvellous much.

Item, take of a green Courd, and set it in an Oven when the bread is taken out: a good while afterwards make a hole in the bottome, and receiue the water which shall run out vnderneath, then put as much Endiue water vnto it, and make a *Iulep* of it as you thinke mete. The wine of *Pomegranates* is very good for this: in like manner also *Buttermilke* for all diseases of the Lyuer is highly commended. Venus haire one ounce and a halfe or two ounces taken in the morning and euening, coleteth, openeth, and easeth all diseases of the Lyuer. In the moneth of June is the water thereof to be distilled.

Note also, that whereas there is a great heate of the Lyuer present, there must one refrayne from drinking Wine, and also from all drinks wherewith Hony is admixed. But he is to vse all that coleteth.

Make also this *Iulep* following. Take the water of Buglosse, Venus haire, and of Endiue, of each nine ounces, the iuice of *Pomegranates* two ounces, white Sugar foure ounces and a halfe: sethe all these together vnto a potion. Take *Iulep* of *Roses*, mixe them with Endiue water, and cleere well water.

Although for great heate we haue forbidden Wine, yet neuertheless Cherrie wine is permitted, because it is of a temperate nature, and doth moisten the Lyuer, and also coleteth, and therefore these patients are to haue otherwhyles at their desire a draught of it. This confection following is also to be vsed, to wit, *Triasantali Diarrhodon* without spices, conferue of *Roses*, of Violets, preserved *S. Johns* Grapes, or *Ribes*, *Barberies*, and Peaches preserved, the conferue of water Lillies doth also cole much. Also the conferue of *Cicorie* with the rootes, and preserved Grapes, are good for this purpose.

Do haue this confection following prepared: Take peeled Melon seede, Cucumber seede, Gourd seede, and peeled Pompeon seede, of each thre quarters of an ounce, seedes of Purflaine, of Endiue, and Sozrell, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pine nuts which haue bene steeped foure howres in Rose water one ounce, Sugar eight ounces, or as much as you please: seethe the Sugar with Rose water, and then make lozings of them.

Now for to keepe an open bodie, these pills are to be prepared: Take one dragme of Rubarb, burnt Quozie one scruple, make nine pills thereof with the sirupe of Roses, and take them in together at one time.

Other Pills for the obstruction of the L yuer caused through *Phlegma*, which falleth out of the head into the brest and l yuer. If you will let the sicke person take these pills two howres before he goe to bed: Take pills *De Hiera Composita* two scruples, and let the sick person sit the next day in a bath of water.

Take also sometimes one dragme of these *Trociscis* following, to wit, *De Berberis*, *De Camphora*, *De Spodio*, and *De Sandalis* with water of Endiue, and make pills thereof.

We will also here repeate these things which are to be vsed outwardly: Take Roses, red and white Saunders, of each one dragme, Camfere halfe a dragme, beate them all to powder, Vineger foure ounces or more: temper this together, and wet a cloth therein, and lay it vpon the L yuer: when it is dry, then make it moyst againe in the same.

Do take the iuice of Pightshade and Endiue water, of each thre ounces, Rose water one ounce and a halfe, Vineger one ounce, red and white Saunders, and the seeds of Citrons beaten, of each one dragme, tempered, and vsed as before said.

Item, take one quarter of an ounce of strong wine, foure ounces of Pightshade, water one ounce and a halfe, Saffron five greynes: mingle them well together, and then lay it with a cloth ouer the whole L yuer. Another: Take Endiue water five ounces, Rose water and Pightshade water, of each thre ounces, water of Wormwood two ounces, the iuice of Lettice and of Calmus, of each one ounce and a halfe, red and white Saunders, of each one dragme, Camfere one scruple: temper them well, and then apply it vnto it.

Another, which is yet stronger: Take water of Endiue, and of Sozrell, of each five ounces, water of Burrage and of Buglosse, of each foure ounces, *Species de gemmis Frigidis* thre drag, *Diarrhodon*, *Triasantalon*, of each one dragme and a half, red Cozall halfe a dragme, Camfere one scruple: temper them and vse them as the other.

Do take Roses, red and white Saunders, Wormwood, Squinant, burnt Quozie, and *Spica*, of each a like much: beate them all to powder: when as you will vse it, then temper halfe an ounce with Sozrell and Endiue waters, of each foure ounces. Item, take the water of Pightshade, of Endiue, of Liuerwort, of Sozrell, and of Wormwood, of each foure ounces, *Species Triasanti*, *Diarrhodon*, burnt Quozie, of each halfe a dragme, Saffron one dragme, Vineger two ounces: temper them, and vse them as the other.

Another which is temperate: Take water of Buglosse, of Cicozy, of Balme, of each five ounces, *Spec. de gemmis temperatis* one dragme, Saffron one scruple, Vineger one ounce, Palmesey thre ounces: temper them all together. But it is to be noted that these cooling things must be vsed with discretion, that they do not cole the brest too much, and prouoke a Cough: the which might easily be procured.

Here follow now plaisters and such like.

Take Barly meale thre ounces, Roses one dragme, white Poppy seede halfe a dragme, the iuice of Wormwood and of Pightshade, of each one ounce and a halfe, Vineger halfe an ounce: make pap thereof with the oyle of Roses.

Do take white Poppy seede one ounce and a halfe, the iuice of Wormwood thre ounces, the iuice of Pightshade five ounces, Vineger one ounce, and Barley meale as much as sufficeth.

This plaister is also highly commended: Take dyed Violets thre quarters of an ounce, Roses two dragnes and a halfe, *Spica* and *Pasticke*, of each one dragme and a halfe, Cammommill, Merdis haire, Barley meale, Hollihocke roots, of each ten ounces, Squinant, Cipers roots, and Calmus, of each one dragme: make a pap thereof with well water, and lay it euery daie ouer the Liuer.

The

The common plaister of Saunders, which is to be found at the Apothecaries, is also very good for this vse.

For a salve: Take oyle of Roses, of water Lillies, and *Spica*, of each halfe an ounce; Roses, burnt Juoꝝ of each half an ounce, red and white Saunders, seeds of Plantaine and of Purslain, of each one dragma, *Spica*, Agrimony, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pastiche two scruples, Ware as much as is needefull for to make a salve of it. Item, take oyle of Roses two ounces, oyle of Violets and of *Spica*, of each one ounce, Vineger halfe an ounce, Roses, burnt Juoꝝ, squinant, red and white Saunders, of each halfe a dragma, Camfere two scruples: then make a salve of it with molten Ware.

The Saunders salve described befoze in the first Chapter, and first §. Also the coling oymntment, and that of Roses, are marvellous good for this disease.

Yet another: Take the oyle of bitter Almonds, and white wine, of each a like quantity, steep Cicorie in it, Wormewood, Cammomill and Agrimonie, and chafe it warme vpon the place of the Liuer.

Another which is very forcible. Take the salve of Saunders, and the coling oymntment *Galen*, of each one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Roses one ounce. If it be too soft, then make it as hard as you will with Ware.

It is also necessary to obserue therein an order of diet. If with this heate of the Liuer there be an Ague, then is he to be kept as one that hath an ague, and that according to the importance of the cause; like as may be discerned in the first part. Generally, Lettice, Pursaine, Meriuiue and Cucumbers are very good for him, with Vineger, and other meates mee that may be dyest with them. And although the inflammation were without an Ague (and yet there be some dry itch and scabs with it) then be the foresaid herbs very wholesome for him. In like manner also Pullets, Hens, Partridges, small birds, Kids, Guttons & Geale dyest with Vineger, Meriuiue, Oranges or Limons, Barly pap and Oaten pap are also very fit for his meate. The Vineyard Snails are also very good for them. The fishes that be taken in clere grauell waters, dyest with Parsley and vineger, may be very well eate. Pelons, Almonds, Peaches, stued Peares and Apples, Cherries, Strawberries and Raisons, a little of each eaten are also very good. Wine is altogether repugnant to this disease: yet being well watered, or Cherrie wine may be drinke in some respects moderately. Also all grosse meates are very hurtfull for him; as unleavened bread, grosse flesh, Chafe, Milke, Starch, Rice, and in fine all that bindeth is hurtfull for the Liuer. But Buttermilke is not ill for this maladie.

Of the obstruction in the Liuer through colde. § 4.



If so be that the Oppilation of the Liuer be caused through cold, then is the whole body bleake and lead coloured, and chiefly the face; the tong, the lips, and the vyne is not coloured: the pulse is slowe, there is little thirst, slow digesture, lead coloured and white excrements that stinke not much. All warme things are very meate for the patient: but colde things are vtterly against him; first, if this obstruction be without an Ague: but in case that it continue long, then must an Ague ensue by reason that the blood putrifieth in the Liuer. But if these bee any humors with this colde, that is to be perceived by the thicke water: also by the moisture and thinnesse of the ordure, and by the small thirst, slow pulse, by the swelling of the eyes and of the face, softnes of the flesh, and loathsome colour, wherby they doe come quickly to the yellowe Jaundies or Dropsie. With this cometh also oftentimes a laske or scouring, swelling of the eyelids, of the fingers, of the toes, and all outward members. If so be then that these signes chaunce to be, or may be perceived, then may easily be abjudged that this maladie doth procede through cold causes. The patient is for this, aboue all other things, to be purged, and the stegmaticke matter is to be expelled; for which this preparatiue sirupe ensuing is to be vsed: Take the rootes of Parslie and of fennell one ounce and a halfe, the rootes of Smalage one ounce, Agrimony, Venus haire, and Parts tong, of each one handfull, Pace, *Cuscuta*, of each two ounces, Licorice, Currans, of each one ounce, white Vineger one ounce, Honie, Sugar, of each sixe ounces; make a sirupe of them untill there do remaine about fiftene ounces, and clarifie it. For this is also good the sirupe of *Empatorio*, of *Acetosa*, *Diarrhodon*, de *Bizantiis*, and *Acetosus Compositus*. Item, take fennell

rootes, the rootes of Parsly, of Smalage, Sperage, and Butchers brome, of each halfe an ounce, Agrimonic one ounce, Annis, fennell, *Cuscuta*, of each thre dragmes, Harts tong, Venus haire, herbe Bennet, of each a handfull, Vineger one ounce, Sugar as much as you will; and make a sirupe of them. And of one of the foresaid sirupes you are to vse certaine daies one after another, euery day two ounces at once. This being effected, then is the patient to be purged with this purgation following: Take flowers of Burrage and of Buglosse, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Spica* one scruple, *Agaricus* and Polypody rootes, of each halfe a dragme: let them sethe together, and put vnto it one dragme of Turbith. You are to giue him about fouer ounces of this decoction.

So take *Pillulas de Agarico*, or such like, which purge the flegme. Whē the patient is well purged, then is he to vse some of these Trocisks following dissolved in water of Mozinwood; to wit, *de Rhabarbaro*, *de Absinthio*, and *de Eupatorio*. Amongst the Confections these are good: *Diacostu*, *Diacalamimiba*, *Dianisum*, *Diacyminum*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Diagalunga*, *Dialacca*, and such like. Item, take *Pistacia* two ounces; steepe them two daies in warme water of Agrimony, chop them afterwards small, and sethe the two ounces of Sugar in two ounces of Agrimony water which is mēetely thick. Then temper the *Pistacia* and halfe an ounce of Cinnamom with it; wherof make losings: then take therof morning and euening at least one quarter of an ounce. Hereafter doe now follow confections and other things which one may eate. Take one pound of well washt Currans; when they be dyed mēetely well, then temper therewith one ounce of beaten Rūbard, and eate thereof when you will, a good sponesfull at each time, and then keepe it close stopt. This is very good for all diseases of the Liuer, and chiefly to preuent the yellow Jaundies.

Another Confection. Take the musilage of Hollihock rootes 12 ounces, clarified Hony 18 ounces, Licorice 9 drag. Betony and Balme, of each thre drag. *Cuscuta*, rindes of Tamariske, of each half an ounce, Annis, Couchenell, of each on quarter of an ounce, Ginger one drag. prepared steale two ounces and a halfe, and one drag. of the musilage of Hollihock roots, and you must sethe the Hony to the thicknes of Honie: then temper therewith one ounce of beaten Rūbard, and you haue well stirred your selfe, walked, or run. Annis seeds confected be good for cold obstructions, and all old diseases of the Liuer. Item, Comin and Caruway haue great power to heate a frozen Liuer, and to open all her obstructions. Also bitter Almonds confected or otherwise. Likewise, Elecampare roots, Calmus, *Eriugus*, Nutmegs, Walnuts, all of them confected. Item conserve of Cichright, of Sumitoy, of Elderne flowers, Hyssope, Betony, Lauander, Parierom and Sage are altogether very requisite. So all which you may ad *Mina Citoniorum*, both Treacles; to wit, the great *Diateffaron*, and Spithidate, are very commodious for this disease.

For the obstruction of the cold in the Liuer be these pills following very good, and especially if there be feare of the dropic: Take Indy *Spica* 2 drag. and a halfe, *Spica Romana* one drag. Rūbard, *Agaricus* & Ameos, of each one drag. and a half, Cinnamom, Cloues, and Squinant, of each half a drag. Aloe 5 drag. make pills thereof with old wine, and vse thereof as often as you will, one drag. at once. For this obstruction are these things following especiall good: Take Couchenelle beaten half a drag. make thre pills thereof with the iuice of Limons; then take them fasting, as you please. Some aduise that there must be tempered amongst it the herbe Centoy, and then make pills of it with the iuice of Agrimony.

Potions and such like.

Wine is for this cold obstructiō of the Liuer, as in that of heate, not forbiddē. For there be sundry wines of herbs ordained for the same, viz. wine of Cichright, of Auence, of Betony, of Harts tong, Parierom, wormewood, Hyssope, and Asarabacca, and such like, which be described in the last part.

But if it be needfull that the wine must be tempered; then prepare a water wherein Annis, Cinnamom, Coziander, fennell rootes, or any of these were decocted, you may also sethe Galloves and *Cuscuta* in wine, and sometimes drinke thereof.

Spiced wines are some described before and hereafter, which doe serue for the Liuer very well. For which be highly commended *Cleretum*, *Aromatites*, and wine of Zeduary.

Besides the foresaid sirupes may these ensuing be used; to wit, the sirupe of Sumitoy, of Wormewood and Hints. And if so be that the *Phlegma* be very tough, then all the *Oxymels* are fit for it, used with water mēte for the purpose.

Of the outward Applications.

Take Agrimonic two handfulls, Cammomill and Clenue haire, of each halfe a handfull, Cipers rootes, Pasticke, Squinant, Spica, of each one dragm, red and white Saunders, Calmus and Wormewood, of each two scruples, burnt Quoy one scruple, muscalage of Holihocke rootes thre ounces, oyle of Pasticke, Spica, and Barly meale, of each one ounce, and also a little Vineger: then make a plaister of it with the decoction of Agrimony.

This foresaid plaister is good for all hote and cold tumors of the Liver, and to be used at all times, the plaister of Pelilot, the plaister of Bay berries, and the known gray plaister *Diachylon*, are all very good for this Schirrosity of the stomacke, of the Spilt and Liver. Item, take Roses fine drag. Wormewood halfe an ounce, Pasticke fine dragmes, Indie Spica two dragmes and a halfe, Ware one ounce, oyle of Roses fower ounces and a halfe: afterwards melt the Ware and oile, and wash it with water: lastly, temper all other things beaten amongst it. This plaister strengtheneth, openeth the obstructions of the Liver and the stomacke, swageth the pain which proceedeth of cold, maketh appetite, and assisteth the digestion.

These oyles following are also marvellous good against all Oppilations of the Liver: to wit, the oyle of Elder, of Baye, of Spike, and of Wormewood, tempered, or each alone, annoynted upon the place of the Liver.

It hapneth also very well, that through the obstruction of the Liver, the intrailles are annoyed. For which, you are to take the right sealed earth, and temper it with Annis or Fennell, Spica of Indy, with Cinnamon, of each a like quantity, as the cause requireth: use halfe a drag. of it at once with wine. But of this shall be written more at large where we shall discourse of the guts.

In generall, *Oxymel* is good for all oppilations of the liver (if there be any sharpnes of the urine with it) amongst which, some expert Physicians do temper these things following, which doe take away the sharpnes of the Urine: as Annis, wilde yelloe Mustard seede, Silver mountaine, Wallowes, Hollihocks, Fleawort, Dragagant, and such like: whereof we shall speake hereafter, to wit, in this third Part.

The order of Diet.

Besides all the foresaid remedies, it is necessary that we doe also write what diet this patient is to observe. First of all, whatsoever cooleth and moisteneth, is to be eschewed: to wit, all habitations which lie lowe by the water: also the Southwinde. All that here ensueth is hurtfull for him: as Spinage, Wexes, Lettice, Parslaine, Endive, Courds, Cucumbers, and Pompeons, as also all that is made of dough. Fish also is not good for him, unless it were seldom used. All slimy parts of beasts is he also to forebeare, as fat Trypes &c. unleavened bread, fresh fruits, and all pottages. Forwithstanding, Pease porrage, and broth of Lentils made with Spints, Parsley, Spike, and Galingall be special good. He must also refraine from drinking water, if it be not tempered with wine. Also all grosse wine is naught for him. Butter and Swines suet is also not much commended. But Sallet oyle is in some respects permitted. Item, all kind of milke, and all that is boiled with it, grosse old flesh, and all that bindeth, is also forbidden.

For his drinke he is to use nextely strong wine which is clere, and of a good taste, and is somewhat swete. He may also use otherwhiles good warming Aromaticall wine, like as we have shewed of late. Vineger, Meriuce, Limons and Oranges must he use with other meates, but alwayes a little, and rather these: The Pomegranates, Cinnamon, Pepper, Ginger, Galingall, Annis seede, Comin, Fennell, and such like odoziferous things are very meete for him. In like maner also the herbs and rootes of Parsley, Hyssope, Thyme, Parietom, field Spints, Southernwood, Sage, Basil, Costus rootes, yelloe Rapes and all other Turneps drest with oyle he is to use. In like sort Oliues and Capers. Of all flesh, Hens, Pullets, Doves, Partridges, Felsants, field fowles, and sucking kids, be very good to be eaten: for they may all be drest with spice: and especiall good to be drest with all meates be Parsley and wilde Turneps. Some do commend much for this sickness the Vineyard Snails, and of all fruits, the bitter and swete Almonds, Pistacia and Currans.



If this obstruction of the L yuer, it doth otherwhiles be schirrous and hard, that one may feele the same with the hand on the out side, without any great trouble to the L yuer: the which maladie the learned do call *Scirrhum*, and the Grekes *Schiroton*. This disease is not to be cured but at the first, for when it is wearied old, then it is too late. These patients do some dye suddenly, and some lingeringly; for the L iuer cannot tolerate so strong medicines as the Spilt. This disease is to be remedied, as here ensueth.

This sicke person is alwayes every second day to take one scruple of *Ammoniacum*, with *Oxymel*, made into pills. If it shall be needfull, his l yuer vaine is to be opened, and afterwards he is to purge with *Panna* and *Rubarb* tempered with *Agrimony* water: *Mozmelwood* water is also good. He is certaine dayes afterwards to take one dragma of prepared *Mols* l yuer tempered in foure ounces of *Agrimony* water, and to vse this certaine dayes one after another. It is also good aduise, that this sicke person do vse things which do pronoke much vrin, and do breake the stone in the Bladder, whereof shall god instructions be found in his proper place. For it is consonant to reason, that such things will also resolue and deobstruat the hardnes of the L yuer. Also he is to drinke dayly a dragma of the seede of *Agnus Castus*, tempered with *Comin*, and *Fennell* water.

Outwardly be the forementioned plaisters, and especially the plaister *de Meliloto* and *Dia-chilon* to be applied vpon it. Also you may make (if you will) a plaister of these things following: Take *Cammomill* one ounce, *Roses*, marrow of *Ore* bones, or of *Harts* bones, *Ducks* grease, *Hens* grease, and oyle of *Spike*, of each halfe an ounce, beaten *Mozmelwood* thre drags. *Fenegræke*, and *Linsæde* meale, of each one ounce, swæte *Costus* rootes thre dragmes, and *Waxe* as much as sufficeth. D y seth figs and *Reisons*, poune them to grout, and temper amongst it *Fenegræke* meale, beaten *Cammomill*, *Rue* and *Melilot*: afterwards mingle it with the oyle of *Cammomill*, as much as will suffice for a salue.

Item, take *Barly* meale two ounces, *Cammomill* and *Melilot*, of each halfe a handfull, the muscilage of *Hollyhock* rootes five ounces, *Cypers* rootes, *Squinant*, *Pastick*, and *Spica*, of each one quarter of an ounce, red *Saunders*, *Calmus*, *Agrimonic* and *Mozmelwood*, of each two scruples, burnt *Tuozie* one scruple, *Saffron* halfe a scruple, *Wineger* halfe an ounce, oyle of *Roses* one ounce, foure or fine d y figs, oyle of *Mozmelwood* and of *Spike*, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a plaister thereof. Some haue taken the venemous herb *Hemlock*, and layd it as pap vpon the L yuer: for it doth mollifie schirrositie and hardnes.

By this is also to be vnderstode that all which is good for the obstruction of the L yuer, is also very mate for this disease.

Of a cold L yuer without obstruction. §. 6.



Here befall also cold diseases in the L yuer without any obstruction of the same, yet are all the forementioned remedies very good for this intent, by reason that they do all heate the L yuer and other inward parts: but these Plaisters, Salues, and other things ensuing, are especially ordayned for this.

Take *Pastick*, *Spica*, *Cipers* rootes, *Squinant*, *Calmus*, *Saffron* and *Pirrh*, but the *Pastick* and *Pirrh* are to be dissolued in *Wine*, then temper the rest amongst it vnto a plaister, and lay it vpon the L yuer. Item, take the iuice of *Agrimonie* twelue ounces, *Wineger* one ounce, *Spike* and *Cinnamome*, of each one dragma and a halfe: wet a cloth in it, and lay it also ouer the L yuer. You may also put vnto it foure ounces of *Mozmelwood* water. D y take oyle of *Quinces*, oyle of *Pastick* halfe an ounce, oyle of *Spike* one ounce, burnt *Tuozie*, *Roses*, *Squinant*, *Cuscuta*, *Cinnamome* and *Spike*, of each halfe a dragma, *Saffron* five greynes, and *Waxe* as much as is needfull. Lastly, stirre a little *Wineger* amongst it, and with this salue annoynt round about and vpon the L yuer twice or thrice a day, that is, vpon the right side, euen to the ribs.

Another: Take oile of *Roses* halfe an ounce, oile of *Mozmelwood* and of *Spike*, of each one ounce, red and white *Saunders*, burnt *Tuozie*, *Squinant* and *Comin*, of each halfe a dragma, *Cinna*

Cinnamon one dragm, Agrimonie and Calmus, of each two scruples, Masticke, and Indie Spice, of each one scruple, Saffron, halfe a scruple, Vineger one spoonfull, Cleare as much as is needfull for a salme.

But if so be that there do remaine any paine, then may you vse these things following: take wheaten bread which is well bolted, put it into a bag, and so laie it warme vpon the liuer. But if the paine will not be as yet asswaged with it, then take two parts of Millet, and three parts of Bran, and one part of Salt; make them together warme, and vse it as aforesaide: Or set a great boring cup vpon the same place.

Item: Take Cammomill, Balme, Dill seede, and Annis seede, of each two handfulls, Pace, fennell, Gallowes, Wollyhocke seedes, of each halfe a handfull, and two or three Poppie heads; Sethe all these together in a good deale of water vntill the third part be decocted, and fill a great bladder or twaine with this decoction, and laie it on the place of the paine; and when one is colde, then laie another.

Lastly: Take fower ounces of Bran, Venus haire, Dill seede, Burrage seede, and Comin, of each halfe an ounce, Cammomill and Helilot, of each three handfulls; Sethe them altogether in white wine, then pounce them to grout, and temper therewith one ounce and a halfe of Barley meale, oile of Cammomill two ounces; then make a plaister of it, and laie it warme vpon it: it is verie good to asswage and delaie the paine.

Of the impostumation of the Liuer. §. 7.



The Liuer may be also annoyed through many kindes of impostumes inwardly or outwardly, which be ingendred of many causes; as through fals, thrusts, or by going too narrow girt, whereby all such issues and impostumes are caused. Also these impostumes may be well caused through some cholerick humour, and through an ouerhot stomacke, through the vse of too much spices, or any other hot meats, whereby the digestion of the stomacke is infexbled and wholly spoiled. For this is especiall good all swete things, as Honey, Sugar, Figs, &c.

But if this moisture be through cold, then doth there come a cleane contrarie cause.

The commonest signes of all the impostumes of the Liuer be these; paine in the right side tending upwards towards the ribs and shoulder blade, as it were the Pleurisie. The sicke person can hardly lie vpon his sides, and especially on the right side: his face is verie blacke, he loseth appetite, his vrine is bloodred, especially if the impostume be hot: otherwises the cough cometh with it, as also the hick cough, parbaking, short breath, retention of vrine, & great thirst.

Now for to cure these impostumes, we will first discourse of them that come through heate: for this is first, the liuer vaine to be opened (if the patient be able) and to let out much blood: but if the partie be weake, then but a little, and then the oftner.

Also be that he be hard bound, then be gentle clifters to be ministred, and this thing insuing to be laide vpon the liuer. Take red Sanders, and Roses, of each three dragms, the iuice of Endiue, and Nightshade, of each two ounces, Rose water one ounce, Vineger halfe an ounce; make them together luke warme, and then wet clothes therein and apply them vpon the liuer, and renew them once euerie three or fower houers, and continue this three or fower daies. This sirupe following is also to be prepared, which is as well good for the ague, as for to open and lose the body: Take the iuice of small Endiue, of great Endiue, of Agrimonie, Smallage, and fennell, of each three ounces, water of Parsley rootes, of Smallage and Venus haire, of each two ounces, cleere wel water twelue ounces, Sugar eighteen ounces, white vineger two ounces; Sethe them altogether, and clarifie them wel, then put vnto it Squinant, Spike, burnt Iuorie, Melon seede, Gourd seedes, Cucumber seede, Pompeon seede, and red Sanders, of each one dragm. Wormelwood three dragms; then make a sirupe of it, and take at each time two ounces of it with the decoction of Pease, or with Endiue water. The third day after that such impostumes be knowen, then is the soft pap to be laid vpon it. Take Barley meale, stewed Figs, and Dates beaten to pap, and tempered altogether with oile of Roses and Vineger.

For this sickenes one must not purge at the first without great neede be. But when the sickness is at the prime or declining, then are you to do the same with Panna, Cassie, solye Dates, and to exhibit it with the decoction of Violets, Squinant, Punces, and Wormelwood.

In like manner vse losing meate best with Burrage, *Palloves*, *Hops*, and such like herbe. But if the impostume be broken out, and that there do come a gentle laske or scouring, where with corruption also auoydeth, then is nature to worke. But in case this scouring get the mai- strie, then is the same to be stayed with the *Trosciscs de Berberis* and *de Terra Sigillata*.

But if these impostumes do come of thrusts, or such like occasions, then open a vaine (as is sayd already) and lay this plaister following vpon it: Take *Spittle seede*, *Roses*, & *Bayberies*, of each halfe an ounce, *Calmus*, *Spirrh*, *Passick*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Saffron* one dragma, oyle of *Lillies* and *Clare* as much as is needefull; and if you feare any hardnes of the *Lyuer*, then vse the mollifying things, whereof we haue spoken in the 5. §. Make this follo- wing: Take *Cammomill*, *Spelilot*, *Rue*, *Mozmewood*, *Treos*, *Paricrom*, *Calmus*, *Hyslop*, and *Roses*, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Endiue*, *Hollyhock roots*, *Linesed*, and *fenegreke*, of each one quarter of an ounce: let them boyle all together in wine and water, make a sponge wet in it, and then lay it warme vpon it. Item, in the declination of the sicknes is this plaister follo- wing to be vsed: Take liquid *Sorax*, and *Clare*, of each one ounce and a quarter, *Passicke*, *Saffron*, *Ameos*, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of *Passick* and of *Roses*, of each five dragms, wine sixe ounces: temper, and vse it warme: the *Barly* for his meate, and the water for his drinke, is amongst other coling things very necessarie meate and drinke.

But if so be that these impostumes do procede of cold, then do they make thew with intumi- factions and debilities, they bzing also rather heauines and oppression with them then paine. For this, take heede of letting bloud and strong Clusters: but milde Clusters may be vsed, and also milde purgations. Amongst other is good for these Clusters *Mozmewood*, *Barly*, field *Spints*, *Centoze*, or which you will, decocted with a little *Coloquinte*. You may also vse well suppositoies for to keepe the bodie soluble, and to drawe dolone the tough and grosse slime.

Prepare also these *Trosciscs* following: Take *Roses* five dragmes, *Barberies* halfe an ounce, *Annis*, *Smallage seede*, *Squinant*, *Callie wood* and *Calmus*, of each three dragmes, *Pa- stick*, *Spike*, *Cinnamome*, *Asarabacca*, *Rubarb*, *Spather*, and *Lacca*, of each one dragma: beate them all together, and make soursquare *Trosciscs* thereof, with the iuice of *fennell* the waight of a dragma, and giue thereof one in the euening with this potion following.

Take the rootes of *Smallage*, *Parly*, and *fennell*, of each one ounce, seedes of *Smallage*, *Annis*, *fennell*, and *Comin*, of each halfe an ounce, *Squinant*, *Agrimonie*, field *Cipers*, *Ger- mander*, *Spather*, *Cally wood*, and *Balsam wood*, of each one quarter of an ounce, white *Wineger* one ounce and a halfe, Hony three ounces: sethe them all together in sufficient water, and cla- rifie it as behoueth. Further, annoynt the place with oyle of *Spike*, oyle of *Sesamum*, or oyle of the seedes of *Mannus Christi*, and lay this plaister following vpon it.

Take the seedes of *Smallage*, *Ameos*, *Annis*, and *Cardamome*, of each halfe an ounce, *Squinant*, *Aloe*, of each three dragmes, *Spike*, *Amaranthus*, *Passick*, *Saffron*, and *Spittle seede*, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Turpentine*, *Rosen*, of each three dragmes, *Clare* as much as will suffice for to make a plaister with: melt it with a little oyle of *Spike* and of *Costus*, and then temper the rest amongst it. But if so be that you will you may take and put vnto it *Dre dung*, and *Goats dung*.

When the impostume breaketh, that may be perceiued if the patient about the same time fall a shivering and quaking with a swooning, and vomiting, and that bloud auoid both through the stole and the vrin, then is this plaister following to be vsed; and if peraduenture the opennes be not yet explete, yet doth it ripen and asswage the paine, and strengtheneth the *Lyuer*.

Take *Barly meale*, and *fenegreke meale*, of each one ounce, *Linesed meale* three drag. *Spill dust*, *Elecampane rootes*, the rootes of *Smallage* and of *Mozmewood*, of each five drag. *Cammomill*, *Spelilot*, *Violets*, and *Roses*, of each three dragmes, white *Lilly rootes*, *Pigeon dung*, *Spica Romana*, of each one dragma, oyle of *Cammomill* and of *Violets*, as much as will suffice for to make therewith a plaister: afterwards giue him a drinke for to cleanse him deco- ted of *Barly* and *figs*, or let him vse *Mellicrason*, which is *Peade*.

Of the laske or scouring through weakenes of the *Lyuer*. §. 8.

We haue sufficiently written thereof before in the eleuenth Chapter, where we haue spoken of all manner sorts of *Lasks* and *bloudie flures*.

Of diuers things which be very commodious for all infections
of the Lyuer. §. 9.



Er before in the 3. §. is highly commended the water of Venus haire for all diseases of the Lyuer. For this is also good *P. Tristrans* water, for it doth preserve and cure the Lyuer from all diseases. Item, take the seede of *Endiue*, of small *Endiue*, and of *Lettice* water, of *Venus haire*, and *Liverwort*, red and white *Saunders*, of each one dragma, seedes of *Pelons*, of *Pompeons*, and *Gourds*, of each one quarter of an ounce, shauen *Truozie* halfe a dragma, burnt *Truozie* one dragma, rootes of *Fennell*, of *Barly*, and *Smallage*, of each one quarter of an ounce, rootes of *Endiue* three dragmes, and a little *Vineger*, Sugar one ounce and a halfe: let them sethe all together in three pints of water vnto the halfe. This is especiall good for a stult Lyuer which is caused through heate, and also for the yellow *Saunders*.

Many kindes of golden waters and vitall waters be also good for this, and especially for cold causes.

Loke also in the first part the 12. Chapter, and 1. §. where you haue a very good powder, beginning thus: Take the iuice of *Mozmelwood*, &c. mixe it with Sugar, and vse it ten dayes together, it helpeth all maladies of the Spilt and Lyuer, it preserveth also from the yellow *Saunders* and *Dropsie*.

Of the thirst, through drouth and heate of the Lyuer. §. 10.



Although the thirst be a common drouth of the inward members, yet neuertheless it is caused (for the most part) from the Lyuer, which also dyeth away through the heate, or if the bodie be burthened with any sickness or *Ague*, which verily is such an intolerable trouble, that it exceedeth all other, like as may be sene by the wretched people that be set on a wheele, who do more complaine of thirst, then of their disoynting & broken bones: which thirst is thus described.

Thirst, is a desire of cooling and moysture, which is quenched with drinking. The learned do also make three kinds of differences of the thirst: the first do they take for the thirst which is gone cleane, when one hath lost his thirst, and when he is afraid of drinking.

The second is the diminished thirst, when one drinketh seldom.

The third is the spoiled thirst, like as when any body desireth out of measure any vnaccustomed and hurtfull drinke without measure: so wit, if one would drinke puddle water, vyne, or such like. This thirst is to be likened vnto the strange lust after meate, which is caused through a bad stomacke, which hath bene spoken of in his place.

The causes whence this vnnatural lust ariseth are many, as great labour, long conuersing in the Sunne and about the fire, a strong *Ague* through drinking of strong wine, through eating of salt and smoke-dried flesh, of fish, Cheese, Pepper, Ginger, Cloues, and other Spices: so: row and anger do also extenuate the bodie, and increase thirst: the like also do hote venims cause. Item if any inward parts be overheated (like as hath bene saide before) in the 2. §. hereby the thirst is also prouoked: and especially the thirst is then great about measure in the disease of the kidneies, which is called *Diabetes*, and when one goeth ouermuch to the stoule.

It happeneth also that some that haue had great thirst, would tollerate the same without drinking, and are fallen into such thirst which could not afterwarde be quenched, and haue fallen thereby into *Phthisis*, *Hecticam*, and other consuming sicknesses.

The same signes and differences of all these causes may be demaunded of the patient himselfe, or the standers by. The inward causes doth euery inward part yeld, as the Lyuer, Hart, Lights, and the Spidriff, sufficiently of it selfe to vnderstand.

For this thirst, are applyed certaine common rules, which may be well marked. First, how that if one haue a moyst bodie or stomacke, to him is the thirst profitable: for if he refraine the same, then is the moysture of his bodie thereby consumed. Secondly, if the thirst be by reason that one hath dronken ouermuch Wine, then is the thirstie person to endeouour himselfe to much sleeping, and that will quench the thirst. Thirdly, a bodie is thirstie because he is dry by nature, and

and then is he to quench his thirst through drinking. Fourthly, healthfull folks that haue thirst anights, are to be weaned from drinking. Fifthly, healthfull folks who haue thirst anights, are to be weaned from their drinking anights. Sixthly, if so be that one haue gotten an vnaturall thirst through eating ouermuch hote meates, he must quench his thirst by drinking water. Seventhly, the thirst which proceedeth of a hote hart and lights, is to be remedied by taking in of fresh ayre, or by receit of any cooling Lokes called *Looch*, and through much watching, for that drinking much water, and sleeping much, cause more harme then good. Eighthly, if the thirst do come onely through drouth of the mouth and of the throte, then is he to addict himselfe to sleepe after reasonable drinking, and to forbear talke. Ninthly, if any bodie be a thirst after much purging, he must not drinke too much, least that the naturall digesture be thereby enfebled, or that the naturall heate be therewith dissipated and extinguished. Tenthly, all they that haue accustomed to drinke much anights, they do in time spoyle all the humors of the whole body, whereby they do fall at the last into *Cacochimian*, or the Dropsie, if so be that they do remayne long alicie.

But now as concerning the particular remedies of the thirst. The most of them are discovered in all sicknesses that cause thirst. Nevertheless, we cannot here omit to declare in generall all that withstandeth thirst. And we will first begin with the potions.

Zulep of Roses and of Violets are much vsed in all heates. *Zulep of Roses* is made thus: Take one pound of Rose water, halfe a pound of white Sugar; seethe them together by a gentle fire, and clarifie them with the white of an eg, vntill they be as thicke as a sirupe. This *Zulep* quencheth all that is of dogmatike Agues, of the Pleurisie, and also of all kind of thirst. In the same manner is the *Zulep of Violets* to be made, and hath the same operation. It is also good for all rheumes of the breasts, and of the throte, against the cough and the thirst. Item, take fresh Well water, or decocted Barley water tempered with *Zulep of Roses* or *Violets*, and the like also with the iuice of *Pomegranates*. The same doth likewise quench the thirst very much.

These distilled waters following do also quench the thirst very much: viz. the water of *Cindie*, of *Buglosse*, of *Soyrell*, and such like, wherewith a little Sugar is decocted.

It is also said that the *Cherrie wine* is of a temperate nature, therefore doth it quench the thirst in great heate, it cooleth and moisteneth all the inward parts. Item, *Peade* doth also quench thirst, like as the same is to be seene in the last part of this booke. If so be that you desire also in quenching of the thirst, to lose and make soluble, then take three or fouer ounces of *Cindie* water, and with this water draine as much *Cassia* out of the canes as you thinke good, and so drinke it. It doth quench the thirst maruellous much, like as is also shewed sufficiently in the description of *Cassia* in the Introduction.

These sirupes following which be here and there described, may also very well be vsed for great thirsts: as sirupes of *Violets*, of *Vineger*, of *Citrons*, of swete and sower *Pomegranats*, and especially the laxatiue sirupe of *Roses*. For hote Agues you may also vse the sirupe of *Danges*, of *Barberies*, of *Cherries*, of *Pjunes*, and the iuice of them all. The same confected, dyed, and all that may be made of them.

There be also many things more ministred against the thirst: as fresh *Cucumbers*, *Courdes* and *Pompeons*; the same being eaten or the iuice dronken. For this is also *Lettice* good, being eaten with vineger and oyle. Item, blacke *Cherries*, *S. Johns grapes*, and *Barberies*. The confaction of *Pjunes* described before in the eleventh Chapter, 20. §. is also good and certain for the thirst. Item, *Confected Peaches*, *Conserue of Roses*, of *Violets*, and of *water Lillies*. A peece of *Sugar* dipt in water, and sucked in the mouth asswageth also thirst. *Vinripe Grapes* chewed & contained in the mouth doe the same. Likewise, some *Grapes* held long in the mouth, do quench thirst also. Or, if the same be vsed into ones drinke, like as is more amplyer admo- nished in the beginning of this Booke.

Of the yellow Iaudies, a sicknes of the Liuer. §. II.

This sicknes is called of the Grecians, and of all learned for the most part, *Icterus*, and in Latin *Morbus regius*, *Arquatus*, *Anrigo*, *Suffusio fellis*, and of many *Icteria*. This is such a sicknes, whereby that the *Cholera* or Gall doth spread it selfe very yellow ouer all the body,

body, and appeareth with other spots or staines. Wherefore is this first to be noted, that there be three kindes of *Icteri*, or yellow Jaundies, the yellow, the graine, and the blacke. The yellow is caused through yellow *Cholera*, the graine out of light graine *Cholera*. and both procede from the Liver; but the black is caused through black melancholike blood of some disease of the Spleen: Albeit the same may also be caused of the Liver. The causes of these sicknesses are taken to be after sundry, & especially of the yellow & graine Jaundies, as of the hot season, by great labour or great exercise, great heat, biting of venomous beasts, the use of much heate, sweete and fat meats, and inward impostumes. All which causes doe so obstruct the Liver, that such matter (like as behoveth) cannot be conveyed into the follicle of the Gall whereby it is inflamed: which this obstruction & heate may and doth come to passe in the vaines and in all parts of the body whereby the blood is spoiled and converted into a graine or yellowe colour. The cause of the blacke *Icteria*, is an obstruction in the Conduits of the Liver to the Spleen, or in the conduits of the milt to the stomacke, a feeblenes of the expulsive or attractive vertue be it of the milt or the liver. Item, through the use of much melancholick meate. In fine, it may also be caused through great heate of the whole body which enflameth the blood, or through great cold that doth congeale the blood, and maketh it blacke.

The first two signes are abating of the linely colour, yelownes in the white of the eyes, and over the whole bodie and of the vyne, the pulse is feeble, the patient thirstie, leaseth appetite, his meates will be bitter, and ready to vomit. Item, if the patient be also yong, cholerick of nature, hath done great labour, and eaten much hote meate, then do they altogether confirme that it is a perfect *Icteria*. The blacke *Icteria* is to be knowne by her black spots. The Spleen is commonly hard. This sickness is then thort beneath. The vyne is browne, ruddy, and a slime in the bottome. The sick person is alwayes heauie and fearefull without cause, like as all melancholick persons are wont to be. Thus then to speake briefly of this yellow Jaunders; they do alwayes come with heate and with an Ague, or also without any of them both, therefore we will first speake of the hote Jaunders.

Item first of all, if so be that there be an Ague with this sickness, then is the sick person to drinke Barly water with the iuice of Lettice and of spightshade, for it coleteth unnaturall heate, whereby the yellow Jaunders is caused. There be also all kinde of cooling herbs to be given him to eate, as Endiue, Lettice, Sorrell, &c. drert with Meriuiue or Pomegranat wine. His drinke must be well watred, thin wine, or common small beere. Pæde must also be taken at the first whether it be not needefull to purge the partie, and if neede require, then is the same to be done in this manner ensuing: Take Cuscuta and Hoarehound, of each one handfull, Endiue water twelue ounces, and as much white Rhenish wine; let them sethe together untill two parts remaine, then wzing it out and take foure ounces of it: temper one ounce of the sirrupe de Bizantij with it, you may put Sugar to it if you will, and drinke thre or foure mornings thereof one after another.

Another, which is moze forcible: Take Hoarehound, Cuscuta, of each two handfulls, Endiue water halfe a pinte, Wine one pinte, let them sethe together, and hang two dragmes of Rubarb in it, wzing it often out, then take foure ounces of it, and temper therewith one of these sirrupes following, Syrupum de Bizantijs, de Duabus, Radicibus, or Oxymel one ounce, and vse them as is before said. For to purge you may after the said potions vse these cooling medicines: Take common conferues of Hyzines and Cassie, of each thre dragmes, confection of Psyllio two dragmes and one scruple, De Succo Rosarum one dragme and a halfe, temper them together with thre ounces of the water of Cuscuta, and one ounce of the hony of Roses: or take Hiera Picra thre quarters of an ounce, Diaphanicon one quarter of an ounce, sirrupe of Cichorie with Rubarb halfe an ounce, and Endiue water as much as you will. The Rubarb is not ordayned for this but by good reason, because it is forcible at the beginning to take away the yellow Jaunders. For this are all medicines good that be described not long ago in the 3. S. for the heate of the Liver.

But if the heate after purging will not yet cease, then giue the patient every day one or one and a halfe of the Trociskis de Camphora, tempered in one ounce of wine, or the confection Triasantalon, and Diarrhodon Abbatris, but before the foresaid things be vsed, you must first vse these pills following: Take Earthwormes washt with wine, or burnt to powder in a pot as much as you please, and put as much Rubarb vnto it or halfe so much, and make pills thereof, giue
one

one dragma or one dragma and a halfe at once, according to the age of the partie, mixed with *Oxymel*.

Also you may giue this patient of this foresaid pouder one dragma without *Rubarbe*. It is also an approued medicine that twentie or thirtie earth wormes be boiled in the water of *Sperage*, of *Smallage*, and of *Parley*, and to take often a spoonfull of this decoction. Item take of the pouder of burnt earth wormes, rootes of *Smallage*, and of *Parley*, of each a like quantitie; giue thereof to women and yong children to each according to his age: it driueth the yellow iaudise very forcibly through the vaine, and in like manner also the dropsie. For this you haue another in the second part in the third chapter and 7. S.

And to returne to purging, if so be that the pills be moze acceptable: then take washt Aloe one dragma or fower scruples, and vse it after the foresaid potions which be good and safe.

But if so be that the obstruction of the liuer be not opened by it, then is this medicine following to be vsed: Take sirupe de *Bizantijs* prepared with Vineger one ounce and a halfe, water of *Cuscuta*, of *Harts tong*, and of *Cicozie*, of each one ounce; drinke it certaine times one after another: or take one ounce and a halfe of *Oxymel* with water of *Cuscuta*, of *Cicozie*, and of *Buglosse* of each one ounce thre mornings together, and one of the foresaid purgations after it. The *Oxymel* is highly commended for this sickness.

These pills following are verie forcible for to auoide water: take the iuice of wilde Cucumbers, which is *Elatarium*, and the iuice of Swines bread, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Rapontica* one quarter of an ounce, Aloe one dragma, *Diagridion* one scruple. Pease meale, Cinnamon, *Spica*, *Lignum Aloes*, of each halfe a scruple: make pills thereof with the iuice of *Smallage*, and giue him one dragma at once thereof at the most.

Now for to cleanse the head you are to vse these things following which you can get, as the iuice of wild Cucumbers, and of Swines bread, of garden Cresses, Hozehound tempered with womans milke and drawne vp thowowe the nose, and afterwards to lie downe vpon the backe. These things following do cleanse the grosse *Cholera* which remaineth still in the head, and doth take away all the yellowe iaudise with them. For this are very necessarie all cooling and preparatiue potions, with sirupe of Endiue, and of Purslaine tempered together, and chiefly if any obstruction of the liuer be present; for which this sirupe following is also verie fit: Take Endiue, small Endiue, Lettice, *Cicozie*, *Helilot*, *Harts tong*, and Venus haire, of each one handfull, twentie or fve & twentie *Prunes*, seedes of *Pelons*, of *Pompeons*, Cucumbers, of Gourds, rootes of *Cypresse*, of *Capers*, Dragon rootes, of each one dragma; beate them all grosse, and let them sethe together in fire and thirtie ounces of water cuen to the halfe. Afterwards sethe in this decoction 4. and twentie ounces of Sugar or Honey, & clarifie it untill there be a sirupe of it. Another: Take Endiue, *Harts tong*, and *Cicozie*, of each a handfull, wilde Endiue, and *Piess* crowne, of each two handfule, seedes of *Pelons*, *Pompeons*, Cucumbers, and Gourds, *Lacca*, *Spiknard*, *Wormwood*, and the rootes of *Smallage*, of each halfe an ounce, burnt *Iuozie*, red Sanders, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Roses* one quarter of an ounce, white Vineger thre dragms, Sugar twelue ounces; and then make a sirupe of it.

Another: Take Endiue, *Harts tong*, and Venus haire, of each two handfule, Fennell seed, *Parley* seede, and *Cuscuta*, of each halfe an ounce, *Spicanardi*, *Spica romana*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as you please; make thereof a sirupe. For the obstruction of the liuer in the beginning of the 4. S. there is also a confection which is verie fit for this purpose.

Of all drinks which this patient may drinke, there is nothing moze mete for this sickness then the whaie of milke, whereof he is to drinke euerie morning thre weekes together a good draught at each time: for this whaie doth cleanse the blood, and especially if there be mixed with it the iuice of *Sumitoe*. And the same is also good for all itches and scurffes: Item take the innermost skinne of a hens gizzard, also a Partridge dried and beaten to pouder; giue him the waight of a dragma thereof in wine or *Cicozie* water, and let the patient fast fve howers after it. Another: The innermost skin of a pullets gizzard or crop, and the rootes of *Auence*, of each a like quantitie; sethe them in wine the space that you would sethe an egge, and drinke thereof morning and euening, and fast an houre vpon it. Item, take foure ounces of *Sentian* and Fennell rootes fve ounces, *Smallage* rootes two ounces and a halfe, wash the same very cleane, and cut them in peces: let them sethe altogether with sufficient water, afterwards wzing them well out through a bag, and then let this decoction boyle untill it be as thick as honey, then giue thereof

thereof two ounces at each time. This medicine is also especiall good for all phlegmatick Agues wherewith the yellow iauanders be mixed. Item, for all dyspnoics, all paine of the kidneies, paine of the womb, for all venome, and it is to be given them that haue an Ague with any kind of cooling water, and when there is no Ague with a little Wine. Some do sethe it also with Sugar, the which is best of all.

Item, there be mozeouer good to drinke for this yellow iauanders the waters of Cicozie, of Soxrell, and of Wormewood, but the iuice of these herbs be much moze forcible. These herbs be also decocted together or each apart, and the decoction dronken warme. Item, the yellow seede of the white Lilly dyed and poudered, and one dragma thereof taken is an especiall thing in this disease. The same vertue hath grated Zuoze.

After purging, and the vse of all these foresaid things, then may any outward things be used whereby to weare away the yellownes of the body and to consume it. For this is also much aduised, that all yellow colours are to be fixed before the patients eyes, for nature doth the easier expell the yellownes out of the bodie. Also, take Endiue water and Rose water, of each foure ounces, red and white Saunders, of each one dragma, temper them, and lay them ouer the Luer. Item, vse the Saunders salue which before in the first Chapter in the end of the first S. is described.

Or take a spoonefull of good Hony, and boyle the same in a little pot in hote water, and stirre it well about, then put as much wheaten floure vnto it as you can take vp with two fingers, and temper a good deale of Saffron amongst it, yet moze alwayes for an old man then for a yong man, spread of it vpon a cloth and lay it vpon the pauell: when it is then dry, take afresh againe. And you are to continue this certaine dayes together, to wit, when the yellow iauanders be at the chiefe and highest: but one may not lye longer vpon it then vpon the other. For Wathing, take wild Thyme, watercresses, Alehose, Juniper rindes, Elberne floures, let this sethe well together, and make thereof a sweating bathe with hote stoncs. Item, take Mugwort, Parierom, wild Thyme, Juniper spizgs, of each one handfull, chop them small, and let them sethe in two bags, then lay one vpon the belly, and another behinde vpon the raynes, and therewith let the patient sweate.

Also, this Lie following may be used for the head. Take Betony, Cammomill, and Sage, of each one handfull, Parierom, *Spica Romana*, of each halfe a handfull, Sene leaues three ounces, Stechas two ounces, chop all small, and sethe them together in a good deale of water, and make Lie thereof, it will continue good a whole moneth.

For this hote yellow Jaunders is good all that which penetrateth, cleanse, and openeth the Luer, to wit, Soxrell, Endiue, Nightshade, winter Cherries, Drage, the iuice of Wormewood, Tienus haire, rotes of Cicozie and Sperage, Clerueine, and the water of the same herbs decocted in well water, and clarified with Hony or Sugar, and so made into a Potion.

And for conclusion of this heate, there is good hede to be taken whether the patient be a bounding of bloud, and hath full vaines, and also hath not bin let blond a long time, and so there be nothing which hindreth the same, then is the Luer vaine to be opened, and to let it blæde according to his abilitie. But if the yellow Jaunders be without heate and without Ague, then is it a signe that it is caused of *Cholera* and *Phlegma* together: you are first to giue to this sick person preparatiues, with *Syrupo Acetoso composito*, or *de Byzantijs*. He is also to drinke water of *Cardus Benedictus* with a little Saffron, and afterwards purge with these things following or such like: Take Aloe one dragma, *Diagridis* fine greynes, *Agaricus* two scruples, dyed iuice of Agrimony one scruple, then make it into pills, with the iuice of Endiue, or vse in the stead of it one dragma of the pills of Rubarb.

These pills following are not to purge but to open obstructions, Sulphur vis one dragma, the iuice of Swines bred halfe a scruple, *Euphorbium* fine greynes, the iuice of Smalage halfe a dragma, make pills thereof, and giue him halfe a dragma of it at once. When hee hath purged, then let him take *Trociscos de Lacca*, with the decoction of fennell, Parsly rotes, of Smalage, and such like. For this is also good *Trocisci de Rhabarbaro*, Radish water, and Agrimony. Item, the iuice of Swines bred made to a sirrupe with Sugar which is found to be speciall good, and it moueth sweate. In like manner be made for this the great Treacle *Diateffaron*, and *Epithimate*, sometimes one dragma, (taking moze or lesse thereof) according to the importance of the case. The simples which are made for the yellow Jaunders (when there is neither heate

no; Ague with it) be Gather (if one take a draine thereof euery day.) Item Gentian, rootes of Smallage, of Penningroall, *Diptamus*, Rosemary, Centoie, Agrimony, Annis, Fennell, Licorice, *Rapantica*, of *Costus*, *Aristology*, Alehouse and Piony. The compounded things be conserues of Cybright, of Sumitorie, of Elder floures, Piony and Rosemary. The herbwinies, are the wine of Betony, of Gillyfloures, of Harts tong, of Lamarinke, of *Asarabacca*, and of *Moly*; meadow. The *Oxymel* alone openeth all obstructions. But if so be that the yelloiw Jaunders do remaine long in the eyes, then the sick person is to smell often vnto sharp Vineger, for it prouoketh the expulsive power whereby the Braynes may be unburthened of all their superfluous humors, or receiue the vapor into your eyes of the decoction of Hyssop, Marierom, Payden haire, Cammomill, Will, of all of them or which you please. You may also wash the face with it. And it is very good to smell vnto Rose water or Rose vineger. Item, you may sometimes drop into their eyes one or two drops of the iuice of Citrons, of Limons, or of Oranges. But if these iuices be too sharp, then mire them with the water of Cuscuta, which water alone is very effectuell in this matter.

Also for the yelloiw iaudies, whether the same procede of heate or colde, naxing is highly recommended, especially if the same can be procured and effected with the iuice of Horehounde. Also all such sicke persons must wash themselves with water wherein Cammomill is decocted, and chiefly at the beginning of the yelloiw iaudise. The face is often to be washed with Rose water, to the end that the yelloiwnes might the lesse infect the eyes.

As much as concerneth the blacke iaudise: the same is to be cured with the selfe same things, wherewith all the maladies of the milt are to be cured, whereof shall be spoken hereafter: to wit with clifters, letting of blood, and other meanes moe which may there be read.

Of the Dropisie in generall. §. 12.



The Dropisie is a sickness which is caused of a colde humour that doth penetrate throughout all the members, in such manner that they thereby are all puffed vp and swollen. The dropisie is an error of the nutritiue vertue throughout the whole body: which error is prouoked by those causes which do hinder the naturall concoction of the liuer.

The common signes and right embassadoys of the Dropisie are first of all these following: Swelling or puffing vp of the feete and the legs, afterwards of the face (in men of the rods) and a little ouer all the whole body: Secondly, the alteration of the colour of the body into a white colour. Thirdly, when all the humors in the whole body be corrupted: the which the Grecians doe call *Cacochymian*. Fourthly, by great thirst. Fifthly, lost appetite through continuall desire of drinke. Sixthly, retention of stoles, of sweate, of vomiting, of the flowers or termes in women, and such like. Seuenthly, small stoze of vrine. Eighthly, that these sicke folkes are very slowe and vnhandsome for all woorkes. Chanceth it then, (like as it is wont to happen) that there be any vlcers or sores with it, then be the same by reason of the corrupted humors which be in this place very hardly to be healed. And although this sickness be very hard & dangerous to be cured: yet neuertheles must the sick person not therfore be utterly discouraged. In like maner also the Physitian is through all possible means to endenour himself to withstand this sickness. The totall summe for to rid this sickness depēdeth on three points: to wit, the mollification of the indurate Tumors which be in the bowels and other places. The vse of all manner of things for to expell the humors. Lastly, he must be diligent to drine out the same by going to stoole, and chiefly through the vrine: So that the principall meanes consist in this, that one doe drinke but little, doe liue soberly and orderly, vse reasonable exercise, that one doe sweate much, purge often, and vse Clifters: for if all this be not diligently obserued, then is there not much good to be expected. For notwithstanding that all these things be aduised and permitted: yet be there neuertheles very fewe holpen of it. These common rules alwayes take place in all sortes of dropisies.

The learned doe make three Species of dropisies, as *Anasarca*, also *Hyposarca*, (albeit some doe make difference betwene them, and so make fower kindes of dropisies) *Ascites*, and *Tympania*, or *Tympanites*, of which we will scnerally write hereafter. But first we will then briefly declare thus much.

When as any one is thought to haue gotten the dropisie, or that the same is yet in the beginning: for it is the conserues of *Sumitoy* highly commended; for it cleneth the blood. For this is also good the golden water which is described in the eight Part. The conserue of *Cypres* bright doth open much all obstructions. For this is also very mete all that is ordained here before for the obstruction of the Lights and Liuer.

Of the Dropisie *Anasarca*. §.12.



This spec. of dropisie doth *Galen* also call *Leucophlegmatia Hydrops*, as a white waterish dropisie, and is such a dropisie wherein the water which lyeth betwene the skin and the flesh is disperfed through the whole body, through each member and in the face, and maketh them swell; so that the belly and the nauell doe not swell alone: in which swelling if that it be pressed with the finger, then doth the dint or pit remaine long after in it. The priuy members doe swell, also a waterish scouring or laske. The pulses will be slowe and do beat longsom and lepurely.

The causes of it are bad digestion; so that all the meate and drinke is at least the halfe parte turned into a flegmaticke matter, whereby the same cannot as becometh be assimilated to the other parts. When as then these foresaid signes be perceiued in the face and in the priuities, then may the sickness be taken well to be *Anasarca*, the which also of all other dropisies is most easiest to be cured, because that it deuidenth it selfe into all the parts of the body, and for that cause may be the easier overcome by nature.

For this are these remedies ensuing to bee vsed. First if it bee a woman, and that the same sickness is fallen vpon her and caused through retention and let of her termes, or obstruction of the *Hemorrhoides*; then is care to be had through all meanes to helpe and to prouoke them. And in case that the same cannot be compassed and effected, then is the *Saphea* or milke baine to be opened: and likewise to set boring cups on the thighes and legs.

But for all other Species of dropisies, letting of blood is very hurtfull, for that they haue but little blood, yet very much moysture; whereby the good blood being drawn out, the water will be left behinde.

For this is to be giuen to the patient this sirupe following for to open him: like as is taught in the 4. §. of the diseases of the liuer.

Item, *Trocisci de lacca* are especiall good for this: and afterwards hee must euery worke be purged with pills of *Rubarbe*.

Take these pills ensuing: *Agregatina* two scruples, *Ammoniacy* one scruple, and make seuen pills of it with *Oxymel*. The pills de *Hiera*, de *Aloe*, de *Mezerio*, *Fatida*, de *Agarico*, are altogether very mete for this vse. It is also admonished before to vse reasonable exercise, hunger and thirst. For waking then sleeping is very commodious. Item, water bathes (if one can come to them) are also very good for this, which be by nature warme: or in the steede of them to bathe in drie baths, and then to sweate well. Such persons must also in warme seasons, & when the winde is downe, lie with their bellies towards the heate of the Sunne, and let the same be well rubbed. Some doe aduise also, that the armes and the legs must be well rubbed.

This confection following is very fit for to purge and expell water: Take Turbith halfe an ounce, *Hermoaditili* one ounce, peeled wilde Saffron seedes three quarters of an ounce, Ginger, Cinnamon and Annis, of each one scruple, Violets, Tuscute, *Soyrell* seede, of each one dragme, hony of Roses sower ounces, Sugar two ounces; seethe the Hony and the Sugar with a little of the water of *Sumitoy*, until you may scum it: when it is sodden enough, then mire the rest with it into a Confection. Giue thereof halfe an ounce at once.

Another.

Take one dragme of *Rubarbe*, Annis, wilde yellow *Kapelsede*, and *Indy Spica*, of each one scruple, Licorice one dragme, *Asarabacca* half a drag. Conserue of *Barierom* one ounce, Conserue of Roses three ounces, *Mina citoniorum* and *Oxymel*, as much as you will, for to make a Confection. This Confection strengtheneth and expelleth much the water.

Yet another. Take *Elecamp* and rootes, Ireos and Gentian, of each one dragme, Ireos

losings one ounce, sirupe of Horehound one ounce and a halfe; then make a Confection thereof. Take thereof as often as you please: it strengtheneth, doth quench thirst and lengthen the breath.

The auncient Physicians do aduise much for to vomit, to wit, at the first in the beginning of the sickness, whilst that the patient is in state of strength, but not otherwise.

Some do write, that dyed Hedgehogs flesh doth maruellously ease in this sickness if one take of the same one quarter of an ounce in wine. The like is also reported of the Wolfes Lyuer if the same be taken with Rubarb and Rapontica, with water wherein Clozmelwood is decocted.

Of the Drop sic Ascites. §. 14.

This Drop sic some do call *Asciten*, and *Alchiten*. In this Drop sic the belly doth only swell and the legs, and contrarily, the vpper parts of the bodie do dry away. This name is giuen to this species of Drop sics of a hyde wherein men do carry wine or wyle.

Of all other signes this sickness is a great trouble in the belly, when one clappeth or stoundeth vpon it, he doth heare a rumbling or a noyse of water, which is forcibly stirred about, the which also hapneth if the sick person do turne himselfe from the one side to the other: the bodie is not so swollen throughout like as in the foresaid Drop sic, neither do there remaine therein any dents or pits if one presse therein with the finger. The spawell doth not stand so puffed vp as in the *Tympanite*. the pulse is feeble, swift, and small.

The cause of this Drop sic is feblenes of the Lyuer which hath not a sanguification or concoction, and altereth all her moisture into water.

This infection of the Lyuer may be caused as well of heate as of cold: also of the water which is ingendred in the Lyuer that falleth downe afterwards into the lower parts and hollownes of the belly.

If this Drop sic do come through hote causes, after any paine of the Lyuer, after an Ague, by swelling vp the belly beneath the spawell euen to the very hip; also if one turne the sick person about, one heareth the water, hath an intollerable thirst, anoyeth but little vyne which is fierie red with some clots as it were with small stones: then is there great danger, and but small hope of life to be had. For if so be that one giue the patient medicines which do cole the heate, then is the Lyuer enfebled, the water and wind augmented: if that warme and drying things be vsed for it, then doth the heate and excessive thirst increase.

But not to leaue this sick person vtterly comfortles and to please his friends, you may vse for the lengthening of his life moderate cold and warme things, like as is this sirupe following. Take Endiue foure handfuls, Mayden haire and Warts tong, of each one handfull, fennell seede, Parsly seede, and *Cuscuta*, of each halfe an ounce, *Spica Nardi*, *Spica Romana*, of each one quarter of an ounce, and Sugar five ounces, make a clarified sirupe of it.

In like sort may also this cooling confection following be vsed, as *Diarrhodon*, *Dialacca*, *Diacrocama*, *Diatrisantalon*, and *Aromaticum Rosatum*, and other such like cooling things more.

Also the Wolfes lyuer (like as herebefore for *Anasarca* is sayd) is very highly commended for this, if the same be giuen with Endiue water, for it should (euen as many thinke) reduce the Lyuer to her right state.

Also for to cole the heate of the Lyuer may this plaister following be made and applied vpon it: Take the iuice of Endiue, of small Endiue, of Agrimony, of Lauerwozt, of each two ounces, Barly meale as much as will suffice to make a plaister withall.

It hapneth also very well that in this *Ascite* the patient is hard bound in bodie, who if he be knowne of sufficient strength, then is he to be often purged (as is already said) the which may be effected through sundrie meanes, as through Pills, Potions, and through Clusters, whereof there be many herebefore described for the obstruction of the Lyuer, and are also very requisite for this purpose, and amongst the rest these following may also be vsed: first, let pills be made with Rubarb, which be acuated with a little *Mezerio*, and be giuen vnto him once a weeke.

Also the pills of *Mezerio* are verie good for this vse, but they must be taken in hand verie circumspectly: for that the *Mezerio* is marvellous sharpe, as here before in the introduction you may well perceiue.

Item:

Item: Take of the foresaid *Mezerion* leaues which haue bene steeped two daies and two nights befoze in the iuice of Quinces & Vineger & dried againe, halfe a dragma, make small pills thereof: it expelleth water wonderfully. The like haue you befoze in the 4. S. good pills in the obstruction of the liuer beginning: Take *Spica*, &c. The iuice of wild Cucumbers, *Elaterium* is also good for this, but it must be giuen with great circumspection; for there is no man so strong that may take aboue halfe a scruple. Our Physicians do seldome take aboue fower graines at once, as is amplier spoken of in the introduction. Item, take clouted goates milke three ounces, the iuice of blew flower deluce halfe an ounce; seethe it on a small fire vnto the halfe or moze; straine it & temper it in a little sugar & so take it. Or take the iuice of blew flower deluce which is very clear one ounce; drink it with some sugar, or with some goats milke once in euery 4. daies: and the daies betwene both is he to drink a good draught of Rere decocted with *Wormwood*, or *Wormwood* powder with two ounces of sugar cast into sugar plates, & eat thereof. In Italie they haue an herbe called *Soldonella*; the iuice wherof is much vsed for the Dropsie: also the water and powder of the herb: or in stead thereof may be vsed for the Dropsie of the said blew flower deluce: for that *Soldonella* which groweth near the sea & all salt places, is giuen with wine wherin *Raponica* with a little *Wormwood* is decocted. What force *Wormwood* hath in this disease is sufficiently shewed in the end of the 9. S. Also what vertue the wild Saffron seed hath for the Dropsie, looke for the same in the introduction; the like also of the seedes of *Manus Christi*.

A powder to purge withall: Take beaten Treos three dragsms, Ginger two scruples, Annis, Spastike, of each one scruple, white Sugar candie one dragma, Turbith one quarter of an ounce, *Diagridion* fire graines: take one dragm thereof; it expelleth the water and the going to stoe verie vehemently. But if there be any heate withall, then are these milde purgations to be vsed: take the flowers of Burrage, Violets, *Fumitorie*, of each halfe an ounce, *Licorice*, *Quinibes*, Currans, and *Wormewood*, of each one quarter of an ounce, eight or ten *Prunes*, *Spicanardi* one dragma; seethe them all in whaie of goates milke, and steape therein halfe an ounce of the shels of yellow Pirobalans for a potion.

Item take sixe ounces of the whaie of goates milke, and fresh rootes of the flower deluce which be well censed from their shels halfe an ounce; seethe the same vntill two parts remaine, then temper them together for a purgation.

Clisters, as is befoze discoursed are also maruellous good for all such Dropsies, wherof certain do follow: Take *Ebulus*, Cammomill, and Saint Johns wort, of each one handfull: Let them seethe sufficiently in water; then take of this decoction twelue or sixtene ounces, Sallet oile three spoonefuls, halfe an ounce of *Hiera Pachij*, or *Hiera Picra*, Salt one dragma; temper them then together. Item, take the broth of Tripes, or any other fresh flesh broth, Deale porredge, or any other that one hath readie in the stead of common water; and in the stead of *Hiera*, take prepared Cassie for clisters.

This following doth lose moze: Take Gallowes, Hollihockes, Vates, Cammomill, and the herbe *Percurie*, of each one handfull: seethe it in water or in any of the foresaide brothes, and take thereof twelue or sixtene ounces, Salt, Dile, *Hiera* or Cassie, *Hiera Picra*, *Benedicta Laxatiua*, of each halfe an ounce; temper them together and minister this Clister verie warme. This following draweth from the head: Take Rosemary, Betonie, Cammomill, and Saint Johns wort, of each one handfull, Polipody, wilde Saffron seede grosse beaten, of each halfe an ounce, and seethe them well. This being done, take as much broth and do as is beforesaide. There may also be vsed in steede of common oile, the oile of Linseed.

If there be great griping of the belly with it, then may also be vsed with the foresaide herbs, Annis, Fennell, Caruwaie, altogether, or those that one can get: Take the waight of an ounce thereof beaten altogether grosse.

Clisters are not onely good for the Dropsie, but also against all griping of the belly, against the gruell, against the obstructions, against the yellow Iandise, shorrings, and such like.

But in case that with this Dropsie there be any scouring or red fire; then are Trociskes to be giuen to the patient, of Barberies with Vineger: for these Trociskes do coole, supple, and strengthen the liuer, and stay the scouring. The same do also Trocisci de Spodio, de Sandalis, and the iuice of Quinces, and all that is made thereof. Item, the conferue and confected rootes of *Cicorie*, by reason that they haue a binding and coling operation.

But if so be that the *Ascites* be without an ague, and there be no rednes sene in the water,

then may these pills following be giuen.

Take prepared leaues of *Mexereon* and *Sagapenum*, of each one scruple, make this to pills with the iuice of *Mozmewood*, but giue no more at once then the fourth part only, for they expell and purge very forcibly.

What things do moue Vrine.

In the beginning of the description of the *Dropsie*, it is (amongst other things) thus declared, that the chiefest meane for to cure this sickness is to expell vaine, and to auoyd the same in great abundance, the which may be atchieued through these meanes following: Take Rue, *S. Johns wort*, *Penyroyall*, Sage, *Parierom gentle*, *Mozmewood*, *Licozice*, *Annis*, *Fennell*, and *Clecampane* rootes, of each one quarter of an ounce, sethe them together in a quart of Wine, but not too long; then drinke thereof in the morning three ounces, and as much more in the evening. Item, take Garlick and *S. Johns wort*, of each one handfull, sethe them together in a pinte of Wine vntill a third part be decocted: afterwards strayne it throught, and when you please drinke a little thereof at one time, it dyeth by the water, and expelleth the rest through the vaine.

Item, take the whay of Goats milke foure ounces, sethe three dragmes of *Spica Nardi* in it vnto three ounces, and giue it him to drinke fasting. Dr take one ounce of the iuice of *Rep.* Also white Wine wherein the floures of *Rosemary* and the herbe be decocted is also very meete for this. Item, the vineger of Squils is also very good.

The *Trocisci de Lacca*, or *Crocama*, one quarter of an ounce giuen at one time with any of the foresaid iuices, be especiall good for this.

Item, *Rubarb*, *Asarabacca*, *Diptamum*, *Cinnamome*, *Agrimonie*, *Parierom gentle*, Rue, *Sperry*, all together, or each alone steeped in Wine, are very fit for the *Dropsie*, or any other maladie.

In the description of the yellow jaunders in the eleuenth S. haue you also amongst other potions a very good potion fit for this beginning. Take *Gentian*, &c.

These things following do also expell vaine, namely *Hermodeilis*, *Indie Spica*, *Licozice*, *Cinnamome*, *Fennell*, *Betonie*, *Vineger*, *Barly* rootes, Sage, and *Rosemary*, sethe any of these things in Wine; and in three or foure ounces of the same Wine dissolue one dragme of the *Trocisks de Lacca*, but aboue all other these here be very commodious: Item, the rootes of *Pettles*, of *Barly*, *Fennell*, *Clecampane* rootes, *Asarabacca*, pouldred all together, or each alone, taking one dragme thereof or wine dronken wherein the same hath bene awhile decocted. The rootes of great *fearne* boyled in Wine and dronken, expell vaine very much. Of all herbwines are commended aboue all other things for the *Dropsie*, to wit, wine of *Gillow* floures, rootes of *Parierom gentle*, *Betonie*, *Asarabacca*, and of *Wyslope*, but all troubled wines are contrary to this disease.

Outwardly are sundry plaisters vsed, and it is reported that they do bring foure kindes of commodities: first, they do supple, dry, expell winde, and do strengthen the belly and all the intrailles, like as these following are: Take *Coloquinte*, *Hollyhock* seedes, *Diagridion*, *Aloe*, *Sperry* rootes, of *Hallowes* and *Bdellion*, of each one dragme and a halfe, Treos three dragmes, seedes of *Hallowes*, wild Cucumbers, *Cardamome* and *Euphorbium*, of each three dragmes, *Boreau*, *Sal Gemma*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Gose grease, Ducks grease, Calues, and Hogs suet, as much as is needefull for to make a plaister or a salve, lay this plaister vpon the belly, it doth supple much. The plaister of *Bayberies* is also speciall good for the *Dropsie*, and moreover much mightier for it if the same be tempered with Goats dung, or Cow dung.

If the priuities be much swollen, then make this plaister following: Take *Annis*, *Fennell*, and *Commun*, beaten small together, of each one ounce and a halfe, Beane meale, *Ebulus*, the iuice of *Elberne* leaues, and good Wine as much as will suffice, lay it vpon the belly, and ouer the priuities.

Another: Take *Barly* meale, *Cypers* rootes, dyed *Shæpes* dung, *Bozace* and *Bolus*, of each a like quantitie, beate them together, make a plaister thereof and apply it to the belly. This plaister hath great force to efficate and dry the water. Item, take Cow dung, or Goats dung, and temper them with the vaine of a man child vnto a plaister. Dr take Dre dung which

is dyed in an ouen, poune it to powder, and make thereof a plaister with Wine, and then lay it on the belly.

Another: Take fat figs three ounces, Pigeon dung halfe an ounce, Pasticke and Spikenard, of each halfe a dragma, poune all that is to be pouned, and then make it to a plaister with Goats pisse.

Of all other salues, is that of *Agrippa* much commended, which is knowne at all Apothecaries, for it is maruelous good for the Dropsie. There is also another made that is *Aribansia*, of Swines bzed which is not so common. For a common inunction the oyle of Cammomil and of Rue tempered together be very commodious.

But it is also to be noted, that if so be that the Dropsie do come out of any cold occasion, that then this foresayd plaister is to be layd vpon the whole belly, and the cooling things vpon the Luer.

Sweating is very good for all Dropsies. §. 15.



It is shewed that among other releuations and expulsions of superfluous moeures of mans bodie sweating is accompted one: therefore it is very needefull to write somewhat thereof, and how that the sweate especially for Dropsies be moued.

We haue also written in another place of a dry sweate bathe, the which for the difference thereof we will rehearse here againe.

Take a flat tub, burne the same upside downe ouer a hote hearth, and make vnder this tub a small fire of Elderne wood or Juniper wood without smoke vntill it be thorow warme. When it is then hote, set hopes about it that it may be couered close, then let the patient in the same tub couered euery where close, yet so that his head be without. Afterwards he is to rob him well to the end he may sweate well: Dry away the sweate, and let him sit in it as long as he can abide it. Item, take *Ebulus*, Beane straw of each a like quantitie, sethe them together, and make thereof a sweating bathe with hote stones as is accustomed. It is also good to drinke a dragma of the powder of Bayberies with Wine, and chiefly after the sweating. Conserue of Elderne (taken fasting before sweating) after purging, causeth abundant sweate, and doth expell the fountaine or beginning of the Dropsie.

This following should be marvellous auayleable for the Dropsie through sweating: Take of the middlemost greene rinde of the Elder eight good handfuls, *Carduus Benedictus* five handfuls, Rosemary three handfuls, the vppermost sprigs of Elder three handfuls, chop all these small together, then put them into a glasse, and powze vpon it two quarts of white Wine, then stop it very fast, and so let it the space of fouretene dayes in horse dung, and afterwards distill it in seething water, whereof giue the patient one spoonfull twice a day. But at the first time giue him very little of it: and if he can abide it, then giue him more. This bath bene tryed in a thicke fat woman: that she must be layde vpon a leather bed, that the sweate through this medicine hath runne so extremely from her, that it must be laden by with dishes.

The great Treacle *Diatessaron*, and *Pisthydate*, one dragma, or a dragma and a halfe taken with Wine, or any of the foresayd waters do vehemently expell sweate. In like manner is very commodious for this all that is set downe for the yellow Jaunders for prouoking vrin, and expelling of grauell.

Certaine famous auncient Physicians doe aduise, that vnto them that haue the Dropsie, shall Treacle be giuen, and that thereupon they shoulde be made sweate vpon a boorde in a warme Duen, hauing their head out. But I cannot much approue the same.

The like grosse meanes, like as to bury the sicke person warme in the said and other things moe, there be of many men many described. But I will not rehearse them all, because I haue declared some that be more necessary and tolerable.

Of the Dropſie *Tympanites*. 16. §.

This *Tympania* or *Tympanites*, is also properly called *Hydrops*, which is a Dropſie: bicauſe that it is rather cauſed of winde then of water, and hath therefore hir name, for that the belly as in other dropſies is here alſo puffed vp higher: the ſpawell is thruſt forth on high: And bicauſe all other members doe conſume and ware verie leane: Pea for that the belly is hard ſwollen, that one clapping or knocking vpon it, giueth a clere and hollow ſound.

In theſe ſickenſſes, the Patient ought not to eate at any hand any green herbs, nor yet any thing elſe which maketh or ingendzeth winde, as Spinage, Beetes, Coleworts, new fruites, Peaſe, Beanes, Turneps, boyled Rice, or any ſuch like. He muſt alſo beware of milke, Cheeſe, Cheſtnuts, unleaueued bread, and muſt. He muſt alſo eſchue all cold, and keepe himſelfe alwaies warme, and to ſweate if it be poſſible, euen as we haue ſaide befoze. And the belly muſt be daily well warmed with warme Panicke or Spillet, wherewith is miſt a little Salt: for this cauſeth the winde to breake away. In like manner ſhall boring cups alſo be ſet vpon it vnpin.

All theſe things following are good for him: to wit, the confection *Diacyminum*, or *de Baccis Lauri*, vſed often, and other moe that be wriſſen hereafter for the griping of the belly.

But aboue all and for all Dropſies, the prepared Wolfes liuer is very much commended, be it poudered or eaten otherwiſe amongſt other meate: for it hath an excellent and prime vertue to expell the dropſie.

Item: theſe things following may be vſed for all Dropſies if there be no heat with it, as conſerue of Elbern leaues, of Betony, Gilloflowers, and of Roſemarie, Fennell, Annis, Commin, and all other ſuch like which do expell winde, moderate exerciſe. To ſuffer hunger and thirſt and much watching are alſo good for this.

Theſe ſuppoſitories alſo following are very mate for this purpoſe: take *Sal gemma*, Rue, Veruercod, *Euphorbium*, and Pettie ſeede, of each one dragme, decocted Hony about thre ounces, and make thereof ſuppoſitories. Theſe following be not ſo ſtrong: take Commin, Rozeas, Rue ſeede, of each a like quantity, Hony as much as is needefull for to make ſuppoſitories. Alſo let the belly be rubbed with rough linnen untill it be red. And when the winde doth not blowe, let the ſunne ſhine vpon it.

This plaſter following is marvellous good for this: Take dried Coates dung twelue ounces, rootes of wilde Cucumbers, and rootes of *Ebulus*, of each two ounces, Barley meale twelue ounces, ſteeled Vineger ſower ounces; make a plaſter thereof, boiled well with ſharpe lee: this plaſter conſumeth all windie matter, openeth the pores, and draweth all winde out of the body if it be laid warme thereon. The belly is alſo to be annointed with oiles which be of a hot nature: to wit, with oile of Will, oile of Rue, of Coſtus and of Bayberries.

Of Clifters we haue ſpoken befoze: but for this are ſuch chiefly to be vſed as doe expell the winds, as this following is: take Ireos, Hyſlope, Smallege, Rue, Beareſote, of each one handfull, Annis Fennell, Ameos, Bayberries, of each halfe an ounce; let them ſethe well. Take afterwards of this decoction twelue or ſixtene ounces if the patient be matly ſtrong: then put vnto it clarified Hony, and oile of Rue of each one ounce and a halfe, and ſome Salt one dragme. There may alſo *Hiera Picra* be put vnto it. For the ſame is marvellous good for to drawe out all bad humours, and to leaue the good.

Here do now follow certaine *Sirrupes* moe which are to be vſed for all Dropſies, like as the common ſirupe of *Eupatoria* which is good for all cold diſeaſes and obſtructions of the Liuer, and is therefore good for the dropſie, it extenuateth all tough and groſſe humours, it comforteth the Liuer. It expelleth water and hindereth all ſwellings of the inward parts.

In Italy is this enſuing ſirupe of Ireos much vſed: Take greene rootes of Ireos ſower and twenty ounces; cut them in peces, ſeape them the ſpace of thre daies in as much well water as will couer them. Stirre them about twice a day, but that they may be couered vnder the water: afterwards ſtraine the water from them, and pouze other water vpon them, as befoze; keepe the firſt water in a cleane pot, and doe the ſecond time as you did at the firſt: When temper both theſe waters together, or ſethe each alone with a little Sugar. Afterwards mixe theſe things following with it; to wit, Scabious and Payden haire, of each one handfull, Sperage
rootes

rootes, Fennell rootes, Ireos rootes, of each halfe a handfull, peeled Melon seede, Courd seedes, Cucumber seedes, and peeled Pompon seedes, seedes of Purslaine, of Cicorie, of Endiue, and of Lettice, of each one quarter of an ounce, Fennell, Annis, Sperage seede, and Smalage seede, of each halfe a dragme, Hillet, and winter Cherries, of each three dragmes, fat Dates and Figs, of each five, Licorice, Hadder, of each five dragmes: let them seethe all together vnto the halfe, and afterwards seethe the decoction with sufficient Sugar vnto a Sirrupe. Soine do giue this Sirrupe a pleasant taste with Cinnamome. Other do keepe therein one quarter of an ounce of Rubarb, against the obstruction and debilitie of the Luer.

The Italian Phisitions do giue thereof, when they will prepare any bad humoz, not above one ounce at the first, and afterwards alittle more, vntill they be wholly purged with it. It is also to be noted, that when this Sirrupe wareth old, it loseth the purging vertue. Also we will now speake of the iuice of the blew floure de luce: When it is giuen alone, it annoyeth the stomack, and causeth the red or bloudie fluxe. Further, for this sickness is to be vsed the sirupe de Radicibus, de Absinthio, Capillis veneris, de Betonica, and such like more.

When it appeareth that the swelling of the belly, of the legs, and of the pynities both decrease (be it in whatsoeuer Dropsie it will) then boyle *Ebulus* with the rose & herbe, and bathe or foment therewith the swollen places, or wash it with common Lye which is somewhat salted.

Other do aduise this following: Take Parietom, Wormewood, field Spints, Parietary, the rootes and leaues of *Ebulus*, Parietom gentle, Cammomill, and Payden haire, all together, or which you will: seethe them in Wine or Lye, and therewith bathe the members; but alwayes after purging, for otherwise it is not requisite. Parke also, that for all sorts or kinds of Dropsies, the remedies are often to be altered, taking now one sort, and another time another sort: and that for this is alwayes a good order of dyet, as we shall here briefly note, and set forth.

The order of Dyet.

WE haue heretofore sufficiently shewed, that sobrietie is good and needfull for all Dropsies. It is therefore required, that one do eate but once a day. Partridges are good for him, Turtle doves, and other yong Pigeons, Birds, rostmeate, Pullets, fowles drest with Meriuce and the iuice of Limons, Barly or Spelt bread which is raised and well baked, are also good for him. He may also eate sometimes Endiue, Sozrell, and Cicorie, with Vinegar: or a Sallet with Sozrell and Parsly.

And for a conclusion, we are to say somewhat more for opening the skin in this Dropsie, thereby to let out the water. The which the learned do permit at the last when the patient hath his legs and pynities full of water, that the same be then opened with a Lancet, thereby to let out the water, but not much at once. But in truth this is a slender help, and feeblely the sicke more then it doth strengthen: for inwardly as much water hath a course vnto it as may be letten out.

Other do open the legs with Cantherides. The third sort do cauterise the belly two or three fingers broad beneath the Panell, so that there as much as may be they do draw ouer and open the skin, and that chiefly in *Ascue*, where it ought most to be vsed. We will also note at this present, that because oftentimes befoze the hote *Exphorbium* hath bene remembred, that the same is not to be vsed but in the greatest extremitie, euen as his nature and operation are at large described in the introduction.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the Gall.



Vthin the middelt of the Luer is a bladder established by nature, where- in is kept and gathered all bitter and sharp humozs which are separated from the blood: which humozs the Grecians do call *Choleram*, the Latins *Bilem*, and we call, the Gall. The nature of this humoz is described after three kinds of wayes: to wit, light græne *Cholera*, yellow *Cholera*, and lastly black *Cholera*, like as befoze is sufficiently shewed. This blacke choler (by reason of her colour) is also called of the Grecians *Melancho- lia*, and is cold, drye, sharp, and heauie, and also none other then dregs

and yeast of the grosse blood: for it is nothing els but a yellow *Cholera*, that is *Oxymel* burnt, whereby the yellow and Greene *Cholera* are easily altered into blacke *Cholera*. How this blacke *Cholera* doth make men mad and raging, in the first part in the twelfth Chapter, and 8. §. is sufficiently declared, and also shall be taught hereafter.

It hapneth either through extremitie of heate or cold, that the black *Cholera* appeareth rather in the winter, and the yellow *Cholera* in sommer time. For when as the conduits which do carie those superfluities into the Gall are obstructed, then is the yellow *Cholera* dispersed through the whole bodie, with the rest of the blood, which causeth the yellow iauanders; and otherwhiles, by reason of their sharpnes and heate, a certaine Ague. And if it get wholly the upper hand, then doth it cause many kinds of ill and sharp Exulcerations, whereof we are to write more at large in other places.

Thus for to remedie this *Cholera*, and the foresaid Ague thereby, is this generall rule prescribed by *Galen*.

At the first it hapneth otherwhiles, that the Gall doth send her superfluitie to the stomacke, whereby the digestion is hindered and spoyled, and the patient getteth great infirmities: for this, there is no fitter meane to exonerate him thereof, then by vomiting, and that chiefly when one is fasting.

Contrarywise is the *Melancholia*, which through her heavines descendeth downewards, to be purged through the Stoule, which may be most commodiously effected through Clusters, afterwards through sweating, and through the urine.

And how this ought to be put in practise, is sufficiently declared before in the Dropsie, and yellow Jaunders. In like manner it is especiall good to bathe in swete water, for thereby will both these said cholerick humors be moistened and cooled, if it be done in due time. This patient is also to forebeare Wine, euen till the declination of the sickness.

And when the sickness beginneth to decline, then is he to vse small, watered, and but a little wine. All meates that moisten and cole are good for these Aguish folke, if the same be soberly vled. These herbes following may also be dressed in his meate; as Dage, Bêtes, Soysel, Pailowes, Lettice and Gourds. Also Barly paps (which is *Pisana*) and fish which is caught in granelly waters. All foules are good for him, which haue a soft and tender flesh, or the pinnions of the grosse and hard foules. The bzaines and fete of Swine, small birds, and rere sodden Eggs be good, but chiefly the yolks which are more nourishing, and lighter to be digested.

He may vse all fruits that remaine not long in the stomacke; but he must refraine Honey, Mustard, salt and sharpe meates.

This may suffice of the Gall, of her bladder, nature, & of the tertian Ague which is caused by it. Of which Ague, amongst other, shall be further written in the first part. The sicknesses besides, which be caused through *Cholera*, shall be described more at large in their due places.

The fourteenth Chapter.

Of the Milt or Spleene.



His third part of mans body containeth also in it the Milt, which the Grecians doe call *Splen*, and the Latinists *Lien*, a known and necessary part of mans body. It hath his place in the left side ouer against the Liver and the Gall, next of all to the stomacke. And if this were not found in the left side but in the right side (like as the same before time hath bene seene) then is it reputed to be against nature.

This Milt is fastened to the backe with certaine sinewes, where the ribs doe take end: and with one end it stretcheth to the Liver in the right side. Her substance and essence is a tender and soft flesh, like to a sponge; yet to be compared to the Lights, it is so much harder and faster, as she is softer and tenderer then the Liver. She hath also many baynes and arteries, whereby she draweth easilie vnto her the grosse melancholike humors out of the Liver, by which she is fed and sustained. She is different in colour to the Milts of beastes: for it is blacke grey, of foure long and thin: and of all fourefooted beastes there is none which more agreeth with the Spleene of a Span, then that of a Hog.

The

The office of this milt is none other but to cleanse the liuer from all melancholicke humours, and that is brought to passe through the said vaines, whereby she draweth vnto her the same grosse humours, where she keepeth and retaineth the cleanest, and driueth from her the rest through certaine passages and conduits: which if it be not performed, the spleene is so weakened that it cannot perfectly drawe vnto it the same melancholicke humours, and then there proceed out of it diuers melancholicke sicknesses; as namely, heauines of minde, desperate madnes, and such like.

This disease of the spleene hath his certain and outward signes: As when one is sorrowfull, then doth he commonly feele paine about the spleene where melancholicke hath her residence. Yea there is also written therof and beloued by many, that if men were depriued of their spleen, that then they should thereby lose all their laughing, and that their laughing and mirth doth augment according to the increase of the spleene.

Also the foresaide feblenes of the milt causeth eruclcerations, swellings, leapzie, the canker, and such like. And albeit that it do drawe the melancholicke humours vnto it, yet neuertheless can she not by reason of her feblenesse expell the superfluitie of the same: but swelleth, whereby an impostume may easily follow. If then it force the biting and sharpe matter excessively into the stomacke; then doth it there cause the insatiably Dogs hunger, whereof we haue written in the eleventh chapter and five and thirtie §. Or if the same harden in the stomacke, then doth it cause vomiting: the bowels will thereby be made soze and deadly annoyed, and also afflicted with moe other perilous accidents: by all which it may easily be perceiued, howe much the health of this partie importeth.

Therefore it is to the contrarie much to be marvelled at, that certaine Beasts can be wholly without it. And so daily experience sheweth, that how much the lesse that a mans spleene is, so much the faster may one run, and do the moze labour.

The chiefest diseases of the spleene, be inflammations, obstructions, and schirrosities: of which the obstructions and hardnings do depend so fast one vpon another, that the one cannot be well without the other. And the phisitions haue also no other difference in vse, then that there be vsed for the obstructions moe inward medicines, then for the hardnes or schirrositie: for in the hardnes of the same must outward things be vsed, whether the same be caused through heate, cold, or winde, which do come commonly with it: So that the spleene in all these diseases hath great affinity with the liuer: and so all that which is ordained for the liuer, is also seruing for the spleene.

And now to write briefly of the occasions of these maladies, whether the same be alwaies moued through inward or outward causes. The outward causes may be such meates and drinks as do ingender melancholicke blood: as Cheese, Colewortes, salted flesh, and such like, according as hath bene said in the first part of *Melancholia*.

The inward causes do come of the liuer; or when the melancholicke humours be too many; or when the spleene hath a bad complexion, whether it proceede of Cholera, Phlegma, winde, or any other occasion.

Of the obstruction of the Spleene with heate, and an ague. §. I.



The obstructed Spleene hath these signes: to wit, an hardnes which one may feele outwardly, with paine, swelling, thirst, thinne and discoloured colour of the vyne, a heavy ratling breath, bad colour of the face and of the whole bodie, heauines of minde, terrible dreames, and such like. But with the impostume is alwaies this difference, that the paine is in one place onely: but in the hardnes of the spleene without impostumation, the paine is ouer all the whole spleene.

These diseases do also make the whole bodie leane, because that the liuer doth not performe her naturall digestion, and in steade of good blood doth ingender bad humours, wherewith the whole bodie is fed and nourished.

If with this paine of the spleene through heate be agues, and a red vyne adioined; then are these cooling things to be vsed for it: to wit, Lettice, Endiue with their seede, Saunders, burnt Iuorie, the seedes of Melons, Pompeons, Gourds, and of Cucumbers, Wineger, and such like. Of compounded things, the confection *Trisantal*, &c. These things following are temperate,

rate, and not only good for the Pilt of Splene, but also for the Stomacke, Luyver, Gall, and for all inward parts, as Cammomill, Helilot, Lilly rootes, Burrage, water Lillyes, Fumitorie, Payden haire, and Harts tong.

But to proceede methodically, then is the patient first to vse these things following: Take Caper rootes, ryndes of *Tamariscus*, the innermost greene ryndes of the Ash tree, and the blossomes of Brome, of each one ounce, Endiue, Burllaine, Small Endiue, Payden haire, of each one handfull, the seedes of Pompeons, of Cucumbers, of Gourds, and the seede of Pelons, of each one ounce, Honey three ounces, Sugar nine ounces: let the foresaid rootes be steeped a whole night in Vineger, then afterwards make a sirrupe thereof, and giue two or three ounces of it (according as the cause requireth) with Endiue water, and that for the space of foure or five dayes in the morning fasting. For this are also these Sirrups good, to wit, the sirrupe of Vineger, of *Oxymel simplex*, and *Compositum*, *Oxyssachara*, Vineger of Squils, and his *Oxymel*, *Acetosus*, *Diarrhodon*, *De Fumo Terra*, *De Epithymo*, *De Pomis*, *De Duabus*, & 5. *Radicibus*, and of Burrage and of Buglosse, of each halfe an ounce, Cozans one ounce, Annis one quarter of an ounce, Poplipodie rootes halfe a dragma: sethe the foresaid all together in sufficient water, untill there remaine about foure ounces: Steepe therein a whole night *Mirobalani Indi*, then wzing them well out, and drinke it bloud warme earely in the morning.

You may also for both of them in stead of the *Mirobalani*, temper amongst it one quarter of an ounce of the confedion of Sene leaues, or *Hiera Picra*. Also this following may be vsed to purge withall: Take *Confedionis Hamech* halfe an ounce, or *Diapheniconis* three quarters of an ounce. Item, pils of Indie, called *Pillulas Indas* one dragma: the Sene leaues may also be well taken, but hereafter followeth a briefer, safer, and a more meete way.

Take the confedion of Sene leaues, and temper it (according to the strength and age of the partie) with Rubarb and Burrage water: giue it him warme fasting, and afterwards vse these Pils.

Take *Ammoniacum* one dragma, *Tamariscus*, Harts tong, and the seede of *Agnus Castus*, of each halfe a scruple: make nine pils thereof with the sirrupe of Vineger, whereof the patient is to take a little for the space of eight dayes together befoze supper, and one or twayne after supper, and then afterwards take this potion.

Take the water of *Tamariscus*, of Harts tong, and Cicorie, of each one ounce and a halfe, Vineger of Squils one quarter of an ounce, white Sugar halfe an ounce, then temper them together: this are you thus to drinke in the morning fasting, and then take of the foresaid pils twaine, and so continue it during the space of ten dayes. But especially you are to vse the potion, for it is the most forcible medicine for the Splene that may be found.

In like manner is this also exceedingly commended: Take the whay of Milke, steape Harts tong, *Epithymum* and *Calmus* in it, and so let it stand a whole night: afterwards you may sethe this a little while, and drinke often thereof. Likewise the seede of Burllaine, *Calmus*, and the rootes of Cicorie, of each a like quantitie: it is very good being taken with the sirrupe of Vineger.

Of those things which conuey the medicine towards the Milt.

It is of no small importance, to know the vse of those things which may conuey the preparatiue and purgatiue medicines towards the Splene, like as hath bene sayd elsewhere: This doth *Tamariske*, Harts tong, Caper rootes, Hather, burnt Squils, *Scordium*, wilde yellowe Rapeseede, Pep, Spica of Indie, *Calmus*, Ireos, Horehound, Wormelwood, Agrimony, Annis, fennell, *Cuscuta*, the seede of *Agnus Castus*, small Germander, and bitter Almonds.

When as then the sicke bodie hath bene purged, the Pilt vaine is to be opened: or if the melancholick humors do abound, then is the Luyver vaine to be opened, for that this melancholick humor doth mixe it selfe with the bloud. Some aduise, and that not without reason, that Leches should be set in the fundament on the Pyle baynes, because that by nature they do draw out the black bloud. For a strengthening and alaying of the heate, this following is to be giuen, as confected Peaches, Cicorie rootes, with Vineger, conferue of Roses, of water Lillyes, of Cicorie, and of Violets.

For his drinke, is allowed him otherwhiles a draught of Cherry wine: for it is (as is oftentimes

oftentimes said) altogether temperate, and do moisten the dried Spleene and the inward parts. Every such patient is to beware of all sweete and grosse Wine, which is shewed before in the first part.

Of the impostume of the Spleene. §. 2.



His impostume may be caused out of blood, of *Plegma*, *Cholera*, and *Melancholia*: as also of windes and obstruction. The outward occasions may be blowes, falls, great labour, and chiefly by that which hapneth in the heate, whereby the blood is burned: Item, of grosse meates, which make grosse blood.

The common signes of all impostumes of the Spleen are paine, heavines, and swelling of the left side, which stretcheth it out from the bowels even to the shoulder blade, and sometimes it bringeth also with it a healing breath.

All the slowe humors do bring with them their proper signe like as is already rehearsed, and so to remedie this present infirmite, this is the right way.

First of all you are to let him blood on the Lyuer vaine in the left elbow, and afterwards in the Spleen vaine upon the left hand besides the small finger, and if so be that the patient may abide it, then let the blood runne vntill it staunch of it selfe.

With purging, eating, and drinkeing is he to be kept, like as it is said in the twelfth Chapter of the Lyuer. Otherwise is this following very commodious: to wit, distilled water of Purslaine, Payden haire, Willow leaues, Harts tong, Nightshade, of Smalage, and of Endiue, of which one will (alone or tempered together) & then the rootes of Capers beaten small and tempered amongst it. You may also boyle the foresaid herbs, and vse the decoction of them tempered with the sirupe of Vineger. The first foure or fve dayes the Spleen is to be annoynted with this salve following: Take oyle of Roses one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Cammomill and Vineger, of each halfe an ounce, then temper it together. The second or third day temper amongst it halfe an ounce of the iuice of Nightshade. The first day vse this following: Take oyle of Roses, Cammomill, and the iuice of Wormewood, of each a like much, annoynt it very warme, and lay it vpon a warme cloth. Then lay this plaister following vpon it: Take Barly meale, pouldred Polychoke rootes, of each two ounces, Roses, red and white Saunders, of each three dragmes, rootes of Endiue one ounce, Vineger, and water of Harts tong, as much as is needfull for to make a milde plaister.

When as then the patient is letten blood, purged, and hath dronken the foresaid water certaine dayes together, he is to purge againe with *Cassy*, and with *Epithymo*: but if the impostume be of cold (which chaunceth very seldome) then may it be knowne, for that it is very soft, white, and without paine. But if the same be caused through *Melancholia*, then doth the same shew it selfe hard with small paine, and then may you vse that *Oxymel compositum*, or *Oxymel* of Squills, with water wherein the rootes of Capers, *Tamariscus*, Harts tong, and such like be decocted. Concerning the purging of *Melancholia*, you shall shortly hereafter find perfect instructions.

Of an obstructed Milt without Ague, but yet with paine. §. 3.



Of this is chiefly commended the *Tamariscus*, and yet about this Harts tong, Caper rootes, Hony suckles, which haue altogether a maruellous power for to aswage the swelling of the Spleene. In like maner Centorie, Valerian, and Men, or in the steede thereof, the rootes of wild Will.

These are the principall things which may be used for the foresaid disease. Again, these things following are good for to warme the cold Spleene as *Aristolgie*, the middlemost rindes of the Ash tree, Worme rootes, Burrage, Buglosse, Ammoniacke, Rue, Thyme, *Epithymus*, bitter Almonds, the water of the Ash tree leaues, Anise, Fennell, Caraway, *Ameos*, Parsly rootes, the rootes of Smalage, of Sperage, Squills, and their Vineger, seede of *Agnus Castus*, Lupins, *Bedellium*, and Beuered. Of the compounded things are the Confections of *Diacapparis*, *Diacalaminta*, *Diacimicum*, confected Carawayes, and Comin, very good also. And albeit, that according to the opinion of *Galen* & others, this obstruction of the Spleen, when the same waxeth old, is thought incurable: yet do the successors neuertheles think that it is very

very curable, although the obstruction of the foresaid Spleen, and the hardness of the same, had continued three or four yeeres. For which they doe first giue things to open the spleene: to wit, one dragma of Pithidate, water of Sage two ounces, and that betimes in the morning, whereupon they require one to fast fourer howers after. Item, take Squills and Oxy-mel, of each one ounce, sirupe de Eupatorio halfe an ounce, water of Valerian two ounces and a halfe: giue it him warme in the morning. Or take Payden haire, Polirichum, and Harts tong, of eache fower scruples, Gadder, Wyome rootes, of each two scruples, freshly Well water 24. ounces, Vineger three ounces, Licorice one dragma and a halfe; sethe them afterwards together by a milde fier vnto the halfe: The patient is to drinke of this Potion seven or eight dayes together, euery morning fower ounces. The same is good and approued.

Secondly it is to be considered, how that this obstruction is to be opened. For this, it is good that one doe take euery morning early one quarter of an ounce of walsh Turpentine, and fast fure or fure howers vpon it: Or in steede of this, that he doe swallowe two or three pills made of Galbano.

Thirdly, if so be that this wind be caused through winde, (whereof we are to speake moze at large hereafter) then may one swallowe halfe a dragma of Ammoniacum made into pills. Orther doe take Pillulas Aggregatinas, and Ammoniacum, of each halfe a dragma.

Fourthly, to the end that the bad humours may be expelled out of the Spleen, giue the patient one ounce and a half of the iuice of Poyehound, tempered with two ounces of Smallege water, to drinke early in the morning.

Fifthly, to the end that no grieuousser disease doe strike into the Spleen, and that the schirrosity or hardness might be mollified & dissolved, take Hollihocke rootes, and Swines head, of eache three handfulls, Bdellij, Ammoniack, of each halfe an ounce, Centoory, Wormewood, Harts tong, and Tamariscus, of each one handfull and a halfe, Vineger six ounces; sethe them all together in a pot of water, and steape a sponge therein, and lay it very warme on the left side: when the place is then very warme, couer it with a wollen cloth which is made wet before in steed Wineger, decocted water of Hony suckles, and of Tamariscus. And if so be that this swelling do not asswage thereby, then vse this plaister following.

Take the prepared marrowe of an Oxe, Badgers grease, and the oyle of a Fore, of each halfe an ounce, Tamariscus, Harts tong, Wormewood, Caper rootes, Spica of Indy, and Spica Romana, of each one dragma, Ammoniacum one ounce and a halfe, Bdellium halfe an ounce, oyle of Behen two ounces, Make as much as is needefull for to make a plaister with it: then make it like to halfe a psonne, and lay it on the left side: and then shall you see in thozt time that the hardness will weare away.

Of hardness or Scirrhus of the Spleene. §.4.



Although the auncient Physicians were of opinion, that this hardening of the Spleen were not difficult to be healed at the first, but were in deede, if the same had long continued and were neglected, like as Galenus writeth that he knewe not how to cure it, neither had knowen any that could heale the same: neuertheles one must not despair, but administer freely vnto it al strong outward and inward remedies. For how much the longer that this accident continueth, so much the lesse veration hath the patient with it. But it is not to be neglected: for this danger is with it, that if the same doe inueterate, then the patient might happen to fall into the droppe, whereby afterwards they commonly, one moze, another lesse, happen to dye with a laske or scurving.

The signes of this hardness are the same, that here before in the 2. §. and afterwards in the obstruction of the Spleen are discovered. There is alwaies a heavines in the left side: the whole body, and especially the face, getteth an ashycoloured, and discoloured colour: all the members will be weak, as if they were beaten in peeces. When the patient will doe any exercise, then seemeth it as if his breath would depart. The signes of the impostume of the Spleen are also described: yet the same may be well knowen by the feeling.

All that be sicke of the Spleen, will also be leane, very lister, out of courage, do get heauie legs, a heauy tong, and athin vaine.

If with the paine of the Spilt, or the swelling and hardnes of the same, there be no Ague; then is the patient againe in the beginning of the cure to haue a vaine opened: and especially if it be discerned that the vaines be full of blood, then is the *Saphe*a on the foote to be opened, and after certaine daies the milt vaine on the left hand. Afterwards are certaine sirupes to be vsed which doe purge melancholie: For which, this following, or such like is to be prepared: Take Treos, Fennell rootes, and Parsly rootes, of each one ounce and a halfe, the inside of Squills one ounce, Caper rootes, the greene rindes of an ashen tree, and brome rootes, of each one ounce, Payden haire, Harts tong, field Cipers, Germander, and Rosemary flowers, of each one handfull, Annis, Fennell, Cuscuta, *Asarabacca*, seedes of Purslaine, of each one dragma, Licorice and Currans, of each one ounce, *Tamariscus*, flowers of Burrage and of Buglosse, of each halfe an ounce, Hony six ounces, Sugar nine ounces: make thereof a sirupe, and vse the same as hath bene said of others.

This following is to be prepared for a purgation: Take Burrage, Buglosse, and *Tamariscus* flowers, of each halfe an ounce, Annis and Cuscuta, of each one quarter of an ounce, Thyme, *Epithymus* and *Agaricus*, of each halfe an ounce, Currans one ounce; sethe these all together in ten ounces of water vnto the halfe: then take of this strayned decoction three or fower ounces, and temper therein one quarter of an ounce of *Hiera Picra*, and also prepared Azure stone halfe a dragma: or in steede of this, one dragma of Bolus prepared, temper them together, and giue it him early in the morning. Also you may make pills of the other things without the water.

Another. Take Caper rootes, harts tong, *Asarabacca*, Lupines, Cipers rootes and Endiue, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Epithymum* halfe a dragma, Barly, Paynes, Violets, of each three dragmes; let them sethe all together. Lastly, put the *Epithymum* and one quarter of Sene leaues vnto it: then sethe it vntill the third part be decocted. Then take foure ounces of this decoction, and temper therein halfe an ounce of fresh Cassie, beaten Pills, of Azure stone one scruple: last of all temper it together vnto a potion. But if the patient had rather vse Pills, then take Pills *De Lapide Armeno* or *Indo* one dragma at one time. The Lupins sodden alone in water, should be also good for this.

But if this hardning of the Spilt be of wind and cold, as it otherwhiles befalleth, it is thereby to be perceiued: to wit, if one presse vpon it, that then the wind will rumble. For this, amongst other things, may be giuen *Troscos de Capparis*, and to let the sicke bodie to drinke old Wine: but water must he wholly forbear. But if one will vse water with it, then is the same first to be stealed, and all his drinke to be tempered with it, or any of these things following to be decocted in it, as Rue, *Costus* rootes, Cinnamome, Annis, Spica of Indie, Squinant, &c.

We haue also a little before declared, how that *Ammoniacum* is to be vsed: for this is also good roasted Spillet, Salt, and Comin layd warme vpon it. Item, boring cups vnricht set vpon the Spilt. But if it be discerned, that there be any moisture in the Spilt (which may be perceiued by rumbling if it be wung hard) then is the patient to be purged, as aforesaid. For this, is also good the Sirupe *Acetosus Compositus*: and this fomentation following is to be vsed with it: Take Annis, Fennell, Caraway, wild Thyme, Violets, floures of Burrage, *Calmus*, the rootes of blew floure de luce, and Agrimony, of each one ounce, Cammomill one ounce and a halfe: let them sethe all together in Vineger, and wet a sponge in this decoction, and keepe it very warme vpon the Spilt before meate; afterwards lay one of the foresaid plaisters vpon it.

Above all those which we haue hitherto reherfed, there be yet moe good things, whereof we will first discouer the simples, as namely *Agaricus*, which doth open all obstructions of the Spilt and other parts, Sene leaues, *Epithymus*, and black Ellebore, or *scellwort*. The compounded medicines be *Pillula Indae*, whereof we haue spoken so often, which are worthy to be described here, which be prepared as followeth.

Take *Mirobalani Indi*, blacke *scellwort*, and Polipody rootes, of each two dragmes and a halfe, *Thymus*, *Epithymus*, Stechas, of each three dragmes, *Agaricus*, washt Azure stone, Coloquinte, Indie salt, or *Sal gemme*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloues halfe a dragma, powder of *Hiera Picra Galeni* three quarters of an ounce, the iuice of Smalage as much as sufficeth for to make a masse of Pills. These pills are good for all melancholicke accidents, for the Cancre, for the Lepzy, for all incurable black impostumes, for all heauines of minde, the quartan Ague, yellow Jaunders, diseases of the Spilt, and such like. One may take a dragma at once of these pills. Item, take ten dayes together the powder of Fearne rootes one dragma and a halfe, augmen-

augmenting it still from day to day, to the waight of one dragma and a halfe.

Other do take of this foresaide ponder one dragma, and of the Pills *Agregatina* halfe a drag. and temper them together. Item, take the iuice of *Moymewood* foure ounces, Sugar as much as you please, and so vse it ten daies one after another. It is also not onely good for the Spilt, but also for the yellow Jaundise; as also for all moisture of the liuer, & for the Dropsie. Item, for all hardnes and swelling of the same, being tempered with Vineger and so drunken.

After *Tristrams* water is also verie meete for all diseases of the milt, like as be also the most of all golden waters which be described in the eight part. Item, take *Roses* and *Barberies*, of each three dragms, burnt *Iuorie*, *Moymewood*, *Cuscuta*, *Licozice*, *Pasticke*, and *Squinant*, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Endiue* seede, *Fennell*, *Annis*, *Spica*, *Agrimonie*, *Opium*, *Asarabacca* rootes, *Costus* rootes, peeled *Gourd* seede, and *Cucumber* seedes, of each halfe a drag. then make *Troscises* thereof with *Endiue* water. They be especiall good for the Spilt, and also for the liuer.

For potions, he may take of these things following what he desireth: as namely, both kinds of *Chamedryos*, *Harts tong*, *Haiden haire*, *Sene* leaues, *Capers* rootes, *Tamariske*, rootes of *Partley*, *Smallage*, *Fennell*, *Cinnamom*, *Licozice*, *Currans*, *Annis*, *Fennell* water, and of *Caluwaite*, wherein *Thymus* and *Epithymus* be decocted.

The order of Diet.



These patients are to beware of cloudie and foggie weather, and of harde and grosse meates: his bread must be well baked, and be a day or two stale, but unleavened bread is not good for him: also *Annis*, *Coziander*, and *Fennell*, are to be baked in his bread. All fielde foules, as *Pheasants*, *Partridges*, yong and old *turtle Doves*, *kids*, yong *mutton* drest with Vineger, he may eate well, as also reere eggs.

Of all other herbs these are good for him: *Pints*, *Partley*, *Fennell*, *Carlicke*, *Lekes*, all kind of *Cresses*, *Sage*, *Hyssop*, *Ravish*, *Endiue*, *Agrimonie*, red *Beale*, and the first decoction of red *Colewortes*. He must also eat oftentimes *Annis*, *Comin*, *Dill* seed, *Fennell* seed, & the seeds of *Sesamum*, *Capers*, *Tamarisks*, bitter *Almonds*, the kernels of *Peach* stones, and of *Cherie* stones: for this is also good, the sowings of *Comin*, and of *Annis*. The milts of swine are also beaten for the curing of the disease of the milt, and also the milt of a sound horse dyed and beaten to ponder the waight of a dragma, take of it with strong wine: for it is in like manner very requisite for this purpose.

But if so be that there be no heate, then may he chuse some of these things following for to drinke: first, wine is not onely permitted for this hardnes of the Spilt, but also highly commended. Also all famous Physicians do aduise that the patient must eate & drinke in the wood of *Tamariske*: for they say that only hereby many be holpen, who haue gone twentie yeres with a hard Spilt. But if this *Tamariske* wood cannot be gotten, then are the shauings thereof to be taken and laid in his drinke. And if so be that one can continue this sortie daies together, then he shall evidently see amendment. *Ash* wood doth the same which hath also the power of the *Tamariske*: Of *Wines*, white wine is alwaies most commended, if it be too strong; then is it to be alayed with water that is steled, or with raine water, or in the water of *Harts tong*. You haue also hereafter two kindes of good wines, which may be prepared for this vse.

Take *Sene* leaues, *Balne*, *Haiden haire*, and the rindes of *Tamariske*, of each sixe handfulls, *Polypody* rootes foure handfulls, prepared *Coziander* three ounces, *Guaiacum* foure ounces, eight or ten *Putnegg*, *Cloues* halfe an ounce, *Galingall* one ounce and a halfe, *Citron* pills one handfull, shauings of *Ash* wood as much as is needefull, at the most firtene quarts; make then an herbed wine thereof, and let the patient drinke the first draught thereof in the morning and euening. Another: Take the rootes of *Cicozic*, rindes of *Tamariske*, *Harts tong*, and the middle rindes of the *Ash* wood, of each one handfull: powze ten pots of muske, or some other good wine, and vse thereof as before.

And all other herbed wines which may be made, are at this present praised for the Spilt: as wine of *Cibright*, wine of *Tamariske*, each made by it selfe, or both together. Item, wine of *Hyssop*,

Hyslop, of *Parierom*, and of *Mo:metwood*, do warme the *Spilt* and all inward parts: the wine of *Gilloflowes*, and of *Betonie*, be also good for this. Item, the Aromaticall wine, and mo other spiced wines, and also the wine of *Asarabacca*. Reasonable exercise befoze meales is also much commended: and sometimes to bathe in water wherein the foresaid herbs be decocted. To the contrary, he must eschue all troubled wines, as *Pust*, *Syder*, and *Beere*: for all such do not only obstruct the *Spilt*, but also the *Lyer*, the *Lights*, and *Kidneies*: which obstructions be causes of many sicknesses.

For this disease is also hurtfull *Swines flesh*, *Pilke*, *Cheese*, *Rice*, *Starch*, *Pease*, *Beanes*, *Seruces*, *Peares*, *Pedlars*, *Quinces*, *Chestnuts*, and *Peaches*: therefore be they to be refrayned.

We will also note some things, wherewith the sicke partie, and the *Spilt*, with all other inward parts are to be strengthened. Amongst which, is *De Mina Citoniorum aromatica* one of the chiefe.

Item, this confection following if that heate and cold be mixed together: Take *Venus haire*, *Harts tong*, of each halfe an ounce, *Ammoniacum* one quarter of an ounce, *Tamariscus* one ounce, seedes of *Agnus Castus*, and of broad *Plantaine*, *Aristology* rootes, *Agrimony*, *Mo:metwood* and *Squinant*, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Laudanum* one dragma, seede of *Burdaine*, *Sorrell*, *Endiue*, and of wild *Endiue*, of each two dragmes and a halfe, *Oxymel* of *Squils* sixe ounces, water *Lillies*, *Violet* seedes, and of *Pallowes*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Sugar* eight ounces. Sethe the *Sugar* with vineger of *Squils* vntill it be as thick as *Hony*: when it is cold, then mire the rest amongst it, with the water of *Spayden haire*: afterwards, sethe it againe with vineger of *Squils* vntill it be as thick as *Hony*: when it is cold, then mire the rest amongst it, with the water of *Spayden haire*. Afterwards, sethe it againe vntill all the water be decocted: when it is then sodden and well brayed, then vse euery mo:ning thre dragmes of it. If you had rather drinke it, then temper it with *Sorrell* water: it is a maruellous good medicine.

Another Confection. Take *Mirobalani Indi*, and *Bellirici*, floures of *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, *Clecampane* rootes, and *folesote* leaues, of each one dragma, seedes of *Endiue*, of *Lettice*, small *Endiue*, and *Sorrell*, of each one dragma, peeled *Helon* seede, *Pompeon*, *Cucumbers*, and peeled *Gourds* seede, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Pingles* and *Pistacia*, of each two ounces, sirupe of *Alneger* foure ounces, *Sugar* thre ounces, *so:pe Dates* one ounce and a halfe: make a confection thereof, and take thereof euery mo:ning befoze meate as much as the quantitie of a *Putmeg*. This confection is very forcible to consume all melancholick humors and matters: it openeth the *splene*, strengtheneth the *stomacke* and the *hart*, and deopilateth also all obstructions. Item, *Putmegs*, *Walnuts*, rootes of *Eringus*, and *Clecampane*, all conected, be very meete for this disease.

Amongst the *Conserues*, are the conserues of *Betonie*, of *Gilloflowes*, of *Lauender*, of *Spike*, of *Parierom*, *Sage*, *Hyslope*, *Cyebright*, and of *Fumitorie*, and all that may be made of these foresayd herbs very good. Likewise also both the *Treacles*, and *Pithridate*. Item, you haue moze in the first part the twelfth Chapter and first S. a good grosse powder which is meete for this. *Capers* eaten with vineger, rootes of *Smallage* with the herb, and *Will*, are also good. And let this suffice for the order of *Dyet*.

Here followeth now what is outwardly to be vsed.

This powder following is alwayes about the fourth day to be strowed vpon the head, the weight of foure greynes: and one may vse it with much furtherance as long as he liueth: Take *Roses*, burnt *Quoze*, white and red *Co:rrall*, of each one scruple, *Space* foure scruples, *Cloues* halfe a dragma, *Lignum Aloes* two scruples, then make a small beaten powder with it.

A bag for the breast: *Species de Xilo Aloes*, *Latiscans Almanforis*, of each five dragmes: put these in a red crimson silke bag, and weare it on the left breast. Concerning the oyles and salues are these most meete: Oyle of *Wicks* is very good for all diseases of the *splene*. Item, the oyle of *Bayberies*, of bitter *Almonds*, of *Spikenard*, of *Mo:metwood*, *Galingall*, and of *Capers*. For all kinds of *Salue* may you make this following: viz. oyle of *Lillies*, *Almonds*, *Capers*, and

and the marrow of all kind of beasts, Saffron, Vineger, Gum, Ware, Pusilage of Hollyhock rootes, of Linsæde, and of fenegræke sêde.

The salve of Hollyhock rootes, *Vnguentum Althea* (which is well knowen to all Apothecaries) is also highly commended for this disease, the description whereof immediately ensueth: Take the rootes of Pallowes, of Hollyhocks, of Lillies, Dimions, Squills, Linsæde, fenegræke sêde, Figs, and Reisons, of each halfe an ounce: poune them all together, and then steape it a whole night in strong Vineger: afterwards sethe them all in water, and then stamp it to pap. This being done, mingle therewith the salve of *Althea*, two ounces, Ducks grease, Calues marrow, and unsalted Butter, of each one ounce, oyle of swete Almonds foure ounces, Ware as much as is needefull for to make a salve.

For this is also good the salve *Marciaton*, and *Cerosum*, *De Hysopo Philagrij*. This following is a speciall good salve for the Spleene: Take the iuice of wilde Cucumbers, and of Swines bzed, of each foure ounces, put them in a glasse, and the salve of *Althea*, oyle of Capers, and fresh Butter, of each two ounces: let them sethe the space of foure howres in hote water: strayne it afterwards thozough a cloth, and afterwards put *Ammoniacum* vnto it, dissolued in the iuice of Swines bzed one quarter of an ounce, Ware as much as is needefull for to make a salve therewith.

And because that this salve cannot be made eury where by reason of the iuice, this following may be used: Take oyle of swete Almonds six ounces, Petes sate oyle two ounces, fresh Butter one ounce, the iuice of Bizony and Tamariske, of each two ounces: put this in a speciall pot, and let it sethe in boyling water vnto the halfe: put afterwards vnto it the rootes of Capers, Tamariske, *Agnus Castus*, and Harts tong, of each one quarter of an ounce, molten white Ware one ounce: then make a salve of it.

Another. Take oyle of Capers thre ounces, Cammomill one ounce and a halfe, Harts tong, rootes of Capers, Endiue, wild Endiue, and Lettice sêde, of each halfe a dragma, sêdes of *Agnus Castus*, and Ware, as much as sufficeth for to make a plaister or salve: lastly, stirre a little Vineger amongst it. This salve is very good for the Pilt in hote and also in cold causes: it mollifieth all hardnes, expelleth all winds and all impostumes of the same.

Now for to lay somewhat vpon it, boyle Rue in strong Vineger, and make a wollen cloth wet in it: wzing out the same, and so lay it warme ouer it.

Item, there standeth the like alittle before: Take the rootes of Pallowes, &c. and that which is witten shortly after it, euen to the salve *Althea*, and what further followeth: sethe them all in water of Cammomill, and lay it warme with a bag ouer the Pilt: it helpeth maruellous well.

Take Drimel six ounces, Caper rootes one ounce, Wormewood halfe an ounce, beate them small together: afterwards make a wollen clout wet in it, and lay it so vpon it.

Hereafter follow certaine plaisters: Take *Ammoniacum* thre quarters of an ounce, *Bdellium* one ounce and a halfe: dissolue them in vineger of Squills, *Tamariscum* halfe a dragma, Harts tong, Dill sêde, and *Agnus Castus* sêde, of each two scruples, broad Plantaine sêde halfe a dragma, Ware one quarter of an ounce, and Rosen as much as is needefull therewith to make a plaister.

Another. Take *Tamariscum*, Harts tong, sêde of *Agnus Castus*, and of broad Plantaine, of each two scruples, *Ammoniacum* and *Bdellium*, of each thre dragmes. You are to dissolue both these Gums in vineger of Squills, and when they be cold, then mire the other things amongst it, beaten small. The same doth also the *Ammoniacum* alone dissolued in sharp vineger, and spzed it vpon a cloth and so lay it thereon. Other do dissolue this Gum in the iuice of Swines bzed, for then is it more forcible, as is here before admonished. Item, take oyle of Lillies, also of the floures of blew floures de luce, and of Capers, of each one ounce, Barly meale, Linsæde meale, and fenegræke meale, of each one dragma, *Bdellium*, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Opopanax*, *Pirrhā*, and Frankincense, of each halfe a dragma. Make this altogether with molten ware and Rosen vnto a plaister, then spzed it vpon a cloth, and vse it as all the rest. Item, take Rue leaues one quarter of an ounce, Wozeas and sprep, of each thre dragmes, *Ammoniacum* seven dragmes: dissolue them in old Wine, and make a plaister of it, it mollifieth, healeth, and expelleth windines. Or take *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, and Ditch, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Troscos de Capparis*, white Puslard sêde, Sulfur, wild Garlick, and

Colo

Cow dung, of each one dragma, Muscilage of Fenegræke, and of Linsæde, of each one quarter of an ounce: poune all them that be to be poune: then first dissolue the Gum in strong vinegar, and worke them one amongst the other: but first of all annoynt your hands with the oyle of Barberies.

Another. Take the Muscilage of Fenegræke, and of Linsæde, of each one ounce, the grease of Hens, Geese, and Ducks, of each thre ounces, washt Butter, Swines grease, Beates fixe oyle, of each one quarter of an ounce, beaten *Tamariscus*, Willow leaues, Harts tong, the middle ryme of the Ash tree, Capers rootes, Rue leaues, and Pepe, of each one drag. oyle of Capers one ounce and a halfe, a little Ware and Vineger: then make a plaister of salue of it.

Item, take an Dinton, cut off a peece at the top, and make it hollow within, and fill it with oyle of Lillies, and let it rest vncouered in the ashes so long till he haue soaked vp all the oyle: afterwards stampe it, and lay it warme ouer it.

All these plaisters following are also good for it: as namely, *De Meliloto*, *Diachilon magnum*, *De Muscilaginibus*, and others. Take of the plaister *De Muscilaginibus* two ounces, *Ammoniacum* dissolued in Vineger, and *Marcasie* beaten small, of each five dragmes: temper it on the fire, and spread it on a leather cut after the fashion of halfe a Spone, and so lay it warme vpon the spleene, it is very good, and approued. We haue promised herebefore to describe the salue of *Dialthea*. It is also made after sundrie fashions, like as we shall also teach here: Take cleane Hollyhock rootes eight ounces, Linsæde and Fenegræke seede, of each foure ounces, Sallet oyle sixteen ounces, Turpentine halfe an ounce, Rosen one ounce and a halfe: the rootes and also the seedes shall you keepe thre dayes and thre nights in a quart of water; the fourth day sethe them so long, vntill they yeld from them a thicke tough slime or muscilage: wzing them hard out, and take eight ounces thereof, and sethe it with the oyle vntill all the moisture be decocted. Afterwards put the Turpentine, Rosen, and foure ounces of Ware vnto it. When all these things be molten and well tempered, then take it from the fire, and stirre it well about vntill it be cold.

The second: Take eight ounces of faire sliced Hollyhock rootes, Linsæde, and Fenegræke seede, of each foure ounces, stampe them, and wzing them thorow as before: then put vnto it foure ounces of Barrowes grease, two beaten Dintons, one ounce and a halfe *Gummi Arabicum*, and let them sethe all together vntill that all the moisture be decocted: afterwards take foure ounces of molten ware, and then temper them together, and stirre it well about vntill it be thorow cold.

The third: Take faire censed Hollyhock rootes twelue ounces, chop it very small, and powze two quarts of water into it, fire ounces of Linsæde, thre ounces of Fenegræke seede, and thre ounces of Lilly rootes: then poune them all together, and when they be boyled to a tough slime or muscilage, then strayne them thorow a cloth, and take twelue ounces of it, and sethe the same with 24. ounces of Barrowes grease vntill the iuice be all decocted: afterwards put vnto it foure ounces of Ware, Fenegræke meale two ounces, *Galbanum* dissolued in Vineger, *Gummi Hedera*, and Turpentine, of each one ounce. But if you cannot get the foresaid Gum, then take thre ounces of Turpentine, and temper them all together as before: this salue is good for all swellings, for the shrinking of the sinewes, for all tumors of the breasts: it loseth phlegme, allwageth the Cough and all stiches in the sides, as also the paine in the Raynes, of the grauell, and is good for all extenuations.

The fourth and last: Take fresh Hollyhock rootes twelue ounces, Linsæde and Fenegræke seede, of each sixe ounces, Squils thre ounces, Sallet oyle 24. ounces, yelow Ware sixe ounces, Turpentine, *Gummi Hedera*, and *Galbanum*, of each one ounce and a quarter, *Colofonia* and Rosen, of each thre ounces: poune all that is to be poune, and let it keepe together thre dayes in water: afterwards sethe them all together, and strayne them thorow a cloth, and then take foure and twentie ounces of the muscilage thereof, and let them sethe altogether on a soft fire with the foresayd oyle vntill all the moisture be decocted: afterwards put Ware vnto it, and afterwards a little of the Gum, and lastly the Colofony and Rosen. When it is boyled ynough, then stirre it well about, and let it cole.

Of the *Melancholia* and moisture of the Spleene. 5. §.



As much as the Spleene (as is said) is the true receptacle of the blacke and melancholike blood; therefore reason requireth that we should write of what nature the same is, whereby other things may also be discerned which be incident to the Spleene. First, we haue in the first part the 12. chapter and 8. §. described many kinds of causes of Melancholie, and in other places moe, especially in the beginning of the former §. and taught of the Spleene, of her beginning, causes, and what hurt might proceed thereof; to wit, if the same got the maistrise, that there may follow not onely heavines of minde, frigh- ting, and such like: but also it might depriue the whole body of his liuely colour, and cause also blacke vlcers, leapzie, the canker, quartaine agues, and such like: and lastely, all manner of distraction of the minde, raging madness, and inhumaine beastelynes. Therefore, because this booke euerie where maketh mention of them, it is not needefull to discourse moze at large thereof at this present. But we will onely describe certaine remedies which be fit for it.

Wherefore it is first to be noted that all preparatiue and purgatiue things are to be used, that the matter may be auoided through going to the stoule, and not through vomiting, by reason that these melancholike humours are verie ponderous and heauie, and will not be expelled but onely downwards.

Before we then come to any particular remedies, we will first discover what simples there be that do prepare these melancholike humours, and whereby the same may be expelled, viz. Borrage, Buglosse, *Thymus*, *Epithymus*, Capers rootes, *Tamariscus*, Harts tong, good Wine, bathing in sweete water, Licorice, Currans, Polypody rootes, grasse *Chamedryos*, *Cuscuta*, *Asarabacca*, Gentian, Lupines, Fumitorie, Calmus, *Spicanardi*, *Agnus castus*, bitter Almondes, Cicorie, Rosemarie, Radish seede, burnet, sea Crabs, and aboue all a cherefull courage or light hart.

The compounded medicines are *Oxymel* of Squills, hony of Roses, sirrupe of Vineger, *Syrupus acetosus*, *compositus de Fumo terra*, and other moe. But chiefly this following is to be prepared for it: Take Cicorie, Rosemarie, burnet Hops, Cinkefoill, Endiue with the rootes, fumitorie, the rootes of Buglosse, Burrage flowers, Liuerwort, *Chamedryos*, fiede Cipers, Capers rootes, *Tamariscus* rootes, and Harts tong with the rootes, of each two ounces, Hynes, and Sebestes, of each twentie or fine and twentie, Sene leaues, *Cuscuta*, *Thymus*, wilde Thyme, and Fennell, of each halfe an ounce, Licorice, Raisons, *Stechas*, of each two ounces; Sethe them altogether in three pintes of water euen to the halfe: adde to this decoction (being strained) Buglosse, and the iuice of Hynes, of each eightene ounces, Sugar fower and twentie ounces, Hony of Roses sixe ounces: then let them sethe to a sirrupe.

These things following are reputed for such as expell Melancholie and do purge, viz. *Epithymus*, *Mirobalani*, *Indi*, *Chebuli*, Polypodie roots, prepared *Esula*, Bolus, mountaine Pints, Calsie, Sene leaues, fumitorie, Hony suckles, Hops, blacke Peasewort, Indie salt, wilde Saffron seedes, *Sal gemma*. The compounded medicaments are *Diasena*, *Hiera Ruffi*, *Hiera logodion*, and such like. Item, take Sene leaues, *Thymus*, *Epithymus*, *Cuscuta*, and Burrage flowers, of each one ounce, Annis, Fennell, and Smallage seede, of each halfe an ounce, Harts tong, Maiden haire, *Chamedryos*, and Agrimonie, of each one handfull; let them all sethe well, and take thereof foure ounces; Steepe therein *Mirobalani* *Indi*, halfe an ounce, and *Chebuli* three dragmes, all the night afterwards straine it well out, and temper therewith *Diasena*, three dragmes, *Cassia*, one ounce, waight Azure stone two scruples: giue the same vnto him in the morning. And there may lesse thereof be giuen at once, when as melancholie appereth, then is the liuer baine to be opened: for that surpasseth all other things: and the same is to be done moze than once, and that alwaies according to the abilitie and strength of the patient. Item, care must be taken to open the piles, be it with rubbing, with the Lancer, or lastely with Leaches.

For this it is also very needefull that this patient be often purged: but he must first alwaies vse some kinde of sirrupe as is here before expessed. Also he must vse according as the cause requireth: The sirrupe of Burrage, of Buglosse, Apples, de *Epithymo*, and *Diarrhodon*, of Cicorie, Clozewood, of Roses, hony of Roses, *Oxymel*, and sirrupe of Vineger.

And so to purge, he must take *Mirobalani* *indi*, *Chebuli*, and *Citrini*, of each halfe an ounce, the outward rindes of the blacke Peasewort three dragmes; poune them together very small, and sethe

sethe them in sufficient water: strayne it, and put into this decoction *Epithymum*, *Tyme*, *Polipodie* rootes, and *Sene* leaues, of each thre quarters of an ounce, the seedes of Citrons one quarter of an ounce: then sethe them againe vnto the halfe, and so let it stand all a night: afterwards strayne it out, and wryng it hard, and put as much Sugar vnto it as you thinke mete. This being done, sethe it away, and clarifie it with the white of an Egge. Lastly, temper amongst it the sirupe of Citron pils one ounce, and drinke foure or fve ounces of it earely in the mozning.

But this is here to be noted, that if this sirupe be giuen to any bodie that is infected with the Pore, the same partie is first to be purged with the confection called *Lenitiva*, miring with it thre dragmes *Confellionis Flamech*. Afterwards giue vnto him this Sirupe following, and then the decoction of *Guaiacum*, whereof we shall write hereafter moze at large.

This patient must often befoze meate take *Cassia*, for it clenseth the blood, and taketh away the sharpnes of it.

For this, is mete also the *Pillule Inde Aggregatine*, and *De Lapide Lazuli*.

Item, *Sene* leaues steeped in *Venbzo*, strowed with a little *Cinnamome*; or *Sene* leaues steeped in whaye. Item, the same boyled with the floures of *Burrage*, of *Buglosse*, of *Walme*, and with the rootes of *Parisy*.

The *Sene* leaues may also be steeped with *Wormewood*, and with *Wine*: and it is good during the space of a whole moneth alwayes euery other day to drinke two or thre ounces of the decoction or infusion of *Sene* leaues, both which are described in the eleuenth Chapter the 20. §. and temper amongst it two ounces of the laratiue, sirupe of *Roses* foure ounces: the decoction of *Sene* leaues as much: vse this fasting. You haue also herebefoze a powder for to purge melancholy, and two kinds of confections, *Diaturbith, cum Rhabarbato*.

Item, whay wherein *Epithymum* hath bene infused, or *Polipodie* rootes haue bene decocted, both moze prepare to purge.

How the melancholick blood is to be purged. §.6.



Amongst all these foresaid medicines, there be diuers which do cleanse the blood. And the drift of all Physicians in this sickness is, that all the heauie, blacke, and vnclane blood might be purged, diminished, and corrected. Howbeit, there is somewhat else which is here to be signified: to wit, for this doth Venus or Payden haire first serue, that edureth all bad humors and styme out of the Liver, maketh good colour, lengtheneth the breath, clenseth the stomacke, the liver, and the milt, and also breaketh the stone.

Item, take the whay of Goats milke, steape *Fumitorie* in it, or mire the iuice of the herbe amongst it, and drinke of it certaine dayes: ensuing other at each time a good draught: or in the steede thereof, take the Sirupe or Conserue of the same herbe, for both of them be very good. Also, make pils of powdered *Pastick*, and the iuice of *Wormewood*.

There be also certaine Wines for the cleansing of the blood prepared, as hereafter ensueth: Take *Cozans* thre common pounds, *Payden haire* fve ounces, and one quarter of an ounce, blacke prepared *Vellebo* two ounces and a halfe, and one dragme of *Polipodie*, and *Hermobadili*, of each foure ounces, prepared *Coziander*, and *Sene* leaues, of each fve ounces and one dragme and a halfe, *Wockwood* fve pound, rynds of the same eightene ounces. These being all well beaten together, then powze thereon two almes of *Hust*, and halfe an alme of well water: then let them stand and worke together at the fire about fve dayes space, stirring it well euery day about. When it is settled the space of thre dayes, and fallen downe, then strayne it out cleare, and kepe it untill occasion serue to vse it. Of this foresayd wine must this patient drinke at meales in the stead of other wine the space of two moneths, or at least euery other day. This openeth the bodie very easily, and therewith expelleth all grosse humors and *Cholera* out of the bodie. And if this wine cannot be broked by it selfe, then may the same be tempered with other common wine vponken moderately. It expelleth melancholie, and all heauines of minde: it maketh merrie, and of good chere.

In like maner are all herbe wines highly commended for this sickness: viz. wine of *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, and of *Harts tong*, and of *Taurariske*; which not onely taketh away melancholicke humors, but doth withstand the quarterne Ague which is caused by it.

Of Confections you may vse *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, and *Dyanthe*. Likewise Conserue of Violets, of Roses, of Buglosse, and of Rosemarie. The Treacle and Epithimare, taken the waight of one dragme, is very commodious for this: for that they doe both diminish melancholy, and take away the heauines of the minde, feare, and such like, that may proceede of Melancholy.

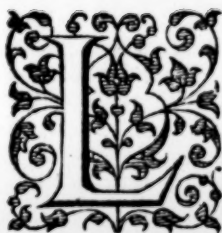
The confected Citron pills doe repugne all melancholicke accidents. Confected Nutmegs do make fresh blood. For meates instead of other, sauce with Sugar is to be vsed.

We haue before discovered, that bathing in swete water is very profitable. So are also boring cups, set vnpickt vpon the sides, whereby to extract all windines.

You are also to vse the grosse powder, which in the first part, the 12. Chapter, and 1. §. is described, which is ordained for the memoie.

The fifteenth Chapter.

Of the Bowels or Guts.



Like as we haue hitherto described the Stomacke, the Liuer, the Gall, and the Spleene, and made full declaration therof: so will we now discourse of the next adiacent parts, before that we come to the kidneies: to wit, of the bowels or guts, and all that concerneth them. We affirme then that beneath the Stomack the Bowels haue their beginning, which are parted in five parts. The three first and vppermost are very subtil & thin: for which cause they bee called in Latine *Gracilia intestina*, into the which one parte of the digested meats are conueied. The other three sorts of the bowels be the vndermost, which are more thicker and fleshier then the three vppermost, whereby the sharpnes and hardnes of the *Siercora* should the lesse abuse them. And these five sorts of bowels haue their name giuen them by reason of their greatnes, and property of their operations, and not for that they be five seuerall things: for they hold fast one vpon another, so that they may rightly be taken for one Gut, which is placed in the belly after a wonderfull manner, with many kinde of crookes and windings about, and reacheth from the Stomacke euen to the fundament. And to speake particularly thereof, the first which beginneth at the Stomacke is called of the Latiniſtes *Duodenum*, and that for this cause, because it is twelue finger breadthes long. The second (which *Galenus* calleth the first) they doe name *Iejunum*, which is the empty gut, because it is alwaies empty. This gut hath some crookes and turnings: afterwards, it both retche forth straight out euen to the liuer. The third is by the Grecians called *Ileon*, and by the Latiniſtes *Volulus*, which is the winding gut; not onely for that by his length it twisteth and windeth about, but also for this cause (as the learned write) because there be ingendred in this gut great Collicke and gripings, which doe vntwaine hither and thitherwards through their great paines, now in one, and then in another place they be most violently perceined. Thus are these three (as is sayde) thin and subtil of substance, differing onely herein, that *Ileon* is not found alwaies empty, like as the two former. The fourth gut, which they do call *Cæcum*, that is, the blinde, and *Monoculum*, being the annexed gut, which they do call *Cæcum*, for that it seemeth that it hath but one going out or issuing: whereas notwithstanding the Anatomists doe attribute twaine vnto it: we will call it also the bag, for that it is like to a fat Stomacke: yet somewhat lesse, and better to receive all that must bee auoided through going to stoule. The fifth is *Colon*, and by the Latiniſtes called *Crassum Intestinum*. This gut is fleshier then any of all the rest: also of a reasonable length, & crookednes, in the which, and especially in the end of it, the meate is conuerted to dunge: which (before and ere that it is digested) the learned doe call *Chylum*. In this foresaid gut both the Collicke properly ingender. The last gut is *Intestinum rectum*, which is the arsegut, that is called *Longanum*, for that it doth not crooke, and stretcheth to the end of the fundament. These are now the lower guts, and they be otherwhiles called the lower belly. But what each sorte of these bowels haue for a nature, property, poluer, vertue, & operation, were here too long, & contrary to our purpose to decipher, because we do not here thinke to discourse of any thing, but onely the cures of the diseases that the bowels or guts are subiect vnto.

Of the payne and griping of the Guts in generall. §.1.



In both these sortes of the guts come great outward griplings, stitches, and paine, whereof there be two sortes; the one *Iliaca*, the other *Colica*. *Iliaca* is in the vppermost small guts, and *Colica* in the vndermost bowels: which sortes of paines oꝛ stitches receiue their names of the bowels, oꝛ the bowels of this foresaid griplings oꝛ sicknesses. And because that in both these sortes of paines of the bowels the remedies are alike, whereas in other diseases they be greatly differing: therefore we will treat of both these senerally. Afterwards we will also determine of the Wormes in the bowels, of all other diseases which are to be ascribed to the bowels, as of all the scourings, of bloody stire and obstructions, &c. whereof we haue heretofore discoursed &c. where bee many kindes of things to be found foꝛ the paine of the guts.

Of the vppermost paine and griping of the Guts, *Iliaca Passio*, which the common man calleth *Colica*. §.1.



Leor, oꝛ *Iliaca Passio*, are griplings oꝛ stitches in the vppermost small guts, which be caused of some obstruction oꝛ swellings of the guts, whereby the congested filthe oꝛ corruption cannot fall downe into the great guts. Whereby such great intolerable pain, sickness, and griping do ensue, that the guts seeme to be boꝛed thowow with a bodkin, and that commonly with a continuall vomiting and parbaking: yet not in all patients.

Therefore, if so be that this paine, pricking, and obstruction, do get the maistrie; then doth there followe it a stinking belching, yea a parbaking of all filthines and of ordure through the mouth, and that by reason that the stopping beneath is so great, that neither ordure noꝛ wind can euacuate beneath: neither can it be opened through Clusters, whereby it must needs follow, that all the belchings do bꝛawe the winde and filthe vpwards, and must lastly be auoided through the mouth.

Certaine learned men doe dispute of these cases, and that not without reason: foꝛ some doe thinke, that it is not the right ordure which is eieced by the mouth: But that it should be onely a certaine filthe and corrupted meate which lyeth stinking in the stomacke, because the same cannot be expelled. But be it how it will, this sickness is neuertheles so terrible and painefull, that certain ancient Whistions do call the same *Domine miserere*, Lord haue mercy vpon me.

And it is a grievous sickness indede: foꝛ besides all that is said, if it come with a great heat, then it doth commonly cause an impostume in the bowels, wherby commeth the Crampe, & the contradure of the sinews, so that the sick person thereby doth lose his senses & runneth mad.

These and other signes which shall hereafter followe, are so deadly, that scarcely euer any one recouereth his health againe.

The common people which haue no vnderstanding of natural things which pertain to mans body, do call this *Iliaca* the mother in men, like as the common people in Italy doe call *Paron*, which is father, whereas notwithstanding men haue no mother within them.

The causes of this *Iliaca passio*, are inward and outward: the outward may be through fals, thrusts oꝛ strokes on these places: oꝛ through drinking of much colde water, through much binding, grosse meates, as hard Cheese, Colue bāse, oꝛ any other hard fleshy which is not well sodden oꝛ roasted, salt Porke, and principally of ill boyled wood Pigeons, oꝛ meates which be swallowed downe not well chewed. Item, there be moe things which be hurtfull foꝛ this sickness: as Pease, Beanes, Medlars, Quinces, Seruices, Peares, Soloes, and such like binding fruits. foꝛ this paine of the belly is commonly moze rise in haruest, when fruits are found most abundant, than at any other time of the yere. These sicknesses may also be caused of colde and pearling winds, as the soꝛtherne winde: as also to the contrary, out of great heate and great labour: and lastly through benyme taken. The inward causes commonly proceed from other partes: as if there bee anie impostume present, whether it bee in the Bowels oꝛ in the Liuer, oꝛ in the sucking vaines called *Vena Mesaraica*, in the Kidneyes, oꝛ in the Bladder, oꝛ when the Bowels thorough some vapour fall downe into the pꝛimities. If so bee that the

cause be in the bowels, thereof there be fire: to wit, if the gut *Ileon* or *Colon* be too hot or too cold, or be fraughted with any cold tough matter, or through winde, or obstructed with some hard corruption, or when the bowels be full of weathred wormes: lastely, this disease may also be caused through faintnes of the expulsue or strength of the retentive vertue.

Concerning the signes, they may be demaunded of the sicke persons or standers by. But if there be any impostume in any other parts, it may be knowne by the place affected where the impostume is. The hot impostumes of the guts are discerned by the continuall agues, thirst, & panting or beating of the same parte; whereas to the contrary the cold impostumes be without great paine and without agues, but onely with a kinde of heavines and tumour: and these commonly assaile a man that is accustomed to vse much cold and moist meates, as milke, fish, and such like. If this sicknesse be caused through the obdurated corruption of the bowels, then is there with it an extream paine, so that it seemeth to the patient that his bowels are cut vp, and that chiefly if he haue taken before any such things as may cause these bindings, and harden the filth or corruption, as inward or outward heate, and through vse of dry things. If this disease come through winde, then both the paine depart from one place vnto another, with a kinde of rumbling, and that with such stiches, as if the bowels were prickt thorow with awls. And if the same be caused of cold slyme, then be cold rheumes felt, and such like in the bowels, and that chiefly through certaine meates taken, which do increase *Phlegma*.

Of the paine or griping in the guts, which is called *Colica*. §. 3.



Colic, or *Colica Passio*, is a paine of the bowels, to wit (as is before discoursed) of the neathermost guts, which is caused, when the superfluitie which nature is enured to naturally to auoyd and cast from her, is stoppt and hindered, and if the corruption, winds, or wormes be not expelled, as they were wont to be. But the paine of the collick cometh commonly by fits, ceasing otherwhiles, and then immediately returning with great intollerable paine, with heauie breath, with shivering, shaking, and sweating. The causes of this collick are for the most part the same with *Iliaca Passio*: for both of these sorts of paines in the guts be matched so nere together, that they may be well called Sisters. But there is only this difference betwene them both, that the neathermost bowels be fat by nature, and therefore may gather fatnes vnto them, that by that meanes the guts are made so narrow, that the hard ordure cannot passe thorow them, but is vtterly hindered.

The signes of the Collick be these: when the ordure and windes are dayly shut vp, and hindered. And although the stoule be furthered through Clusters, or some other meanes, yet is the ordure neuertheles hard and burnt, as Schæpes dung, or Goats dung, whereby the naturall appetite doth abate from day to day, vntill it be vtterly lost. Thence followeth then so great paine and gripings about the Pauell, that it seemeth that the guts be knit or haled together with strings, or pluckt asunder, and bozed through with bodkins. As often as one stirreth him, or turneth from one side to the other, then doth the paine increase vehemently in this sicknes; the patient is alwayes greedie of slowe and sharp things, and hath a loathing of all that is fat.

Each humour whereof this paine is caused, is knowen by these signes following: If it be caused of *Phlegma*, then is the same with paine, heavines, and desire of all warmth. The paine is to be knowne by the feeling. Old folks, and such as be phlegmatick by nature, are most of all subiect to this passion. Also the winter, eating of much fish, of much fruite, and of much milke, excessive rioting, and great quietnes, much going into the water, and such like, be to this sicknes a great cause. If in case that this sicknes be caused through heate, then is there a great inflammation, and with it dryth of the tong, great thirst, itch, and great heate in the vyne. Chiefely if the person be yong, and in the Sommer time if he be cholerick by nature, if he haue vsed much about the fire, or much spice. If this paine of the bowels be caused through obstruction, it may be knowne by the going to the stoule, and paine of the guts, to wit, as if the same were torne asunder, and stuck thorow. And if the patient would go to the stoule with great foicement, then is it all to be auoyded very like to Clay, the which may be caused through long vse of any old meate, through the patients dry complexion, and through long continuing labour, and with much sweating in the hote ayre.

¶ If this colicke proceed through winde, then is heard much rumbling in the bowels and puffing vp of the belly, his excrements do swim upon the water because they be full of winde: and so much the more may one be ascertained thereof, if one knewe that the patient had eaten before much Pease, Beanes, Chestnuts, Rapes, Figs, Pushe, and such like windie meates, or drinks, much water, or much watered wine.

¶ When this paine of the bowels is caused of any hot impostume, then both the patient feele hotte stiches; he hath thirst and great paine, and that alwaies in one place; he hath also a red face, extuberation of the eyes, and restraint of vyne.

¶ But if this græfe be caused through a colde impostume; for it be all these things before mentioned much feebler: being caused of superfluous meates, of much fish, of much colde, and moist herbes, fruites, swines flesh, and such like: also stools be full of *Pblegma*.

Of the difference of these paines in the Guts. §.4.



¶ About those which are before discovered be these two sorts of paines in the bowels disagreeing in this: to wit, that in the paine of the vppermost guts, the extremitie is much greater, and can kil a bodie much sooner; for that this vppermost, tender and small guts are much more sensible then the neathermost great guts: Secondly, because that *Iliaca* is vnssteadfast (as it is said before) and remoueth from one place into another: Thirdly, because this *Iliaca* is higher than the nauell. And when this paine setteth there and about the raines, then is it the generall opinion of all the learned that in no wise, neither through medicines, neither through any other meanes is this sharpe matter or winde which hath no vent, lying shut vp in the crooked gut *Ilium* and there making this paine, may be made to auoide, neither yet expelled, and that there will follow of it the *Dropsie*, *Tympania*, wherein the winde doth after spread it selfe abroade between the skinne and the flesh behinde ouer the whole bodie, as hath bene said more at large before in the twelfth chapter, and firste *§*. The fourth difference is, that the vppermost paines of the guts or *Iliaca* are to be holpen through medicines from aboue, and the vndermost paine *Colica* through clisters; for that the clisters be verie commodious for the *Cholera*, and verie little for *Iliaca*, or nothing at all: fiftly, if there appere any other accidents with it, as swooning, trembling of the hart, short breath, much waking, or colde of the outward parts; they be then alwaies the more grievous in *Iliaca* then in *Colica*; because that it is nearer to the hart, and therefore the more perillous.

¶ Now to come to the remedies, we will (according to the custome of the auncient Phisitians) distinguish these paines of the bowels by five severall causes, whercof the first is the obstruction or binding of the bodie; the second *Pblegma*; the third windes; the fourth impostumes; the fift *Cholera* and heate: but we will here declare for the first certaine things that be generally conuenient for both these græfes: the remedies which be ordained and vled in both these paines of the bowels are also verie meete for either of them onely (as it is saide) that the clisters for *Iliaca passio* do seldome do any good: not that the same be therfore altogether forborne, for both must alwaies be first induozed to open the passages of the guts, & as sone as one perceaueth the pain to be presently in hand with clisters, & also to make somewhat ready which may be laid vpon the belly to warme the same therewith, like as with these things following: to wit, Bellitorie, of the wall, Bugwort, Southernwood, fennell, Elecampane leaues, Wormewood, white Spints, and Marierom: of these herbes, take as many and which you will, put them in a bag, and let them sethe in Wine: afterwards wring them out, and so lay them warme vpon the place of the paine.

¶ Item, take Hillet or Dates, mire them with salt, and a little Annis, fennell, Will, and with Linseed: parch them, and lay them on the payne. You may also make and vse after the same manner a bag with Cammomill, Venus haire, and Stechas. Item, take Althea, Butter, Barrowes greafe, Hens and Ducks greafe, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of Cammomill one ounce, annoynt the place of the paine with it: what is particularly to be vled besides for either of these paines in the guts, shall be distinctly shewed hereafter.

Of the paine in the guts through obstruction or binding of the body. §. 5.



In the beginning of this description of this paine in the bowels, when they come chiefly through the binding of the bodie, they are to be cured with Clusters, which hereafter be described against winds, and with the purgatiue medicines, whereof diuers be set downe in the eleuenth Chapter, 20. §. And both these are to be vsed so often, and so long, vntill that the bodie be thorowly opened. In like manner, this patient must endeavour himselfe to eate all soluble meates and herbs, viz. Mallowes, and herbe Mercury dyest with fresh broths with Butter and Shallot oyle, which for this disease is not only needefull, but also much commended.

Lay also outwardly vpon it this plaister following: Take Mallowes, Hollyhock rootes, and Bearefoote, of each one handfull, fenegreke meale, and Linseed meale, of each five ounces, oyle of Violets, Vens grease, Barrowes grease, & fresh Butter, of each two ounces, foure white Lilly rootes rosted. All the herbs are to be sodden, and afterwards stamped, and you are afterwards to temper the rest amongst them ouer the fire, and then to apply them warme vpon it. For this is also very good the sirrupe of Violets, dyonken with some broth wherein Damaske Prunes, Raisons and Figs haue bene decocted, and wherewith some Cassie is tempered. He may also vse the herbs and other things stamped, whereof the Clusters be boyled, and make a plaister thereof with Butter, or oyle of Violets, and with Barrowes grease, & lay it ouer all the belly. He must also eschue cold ayre, and must keepe him alwayes warme, continuing this so long, vntill that he haue his bodie very open.

Of the paine in the guts through flyme and Phlegma. §. 6.



In the other former discovered cause is *Phlegma*, which (as is sufficiently shewen before) both shew her selfe apparantly, if with a tolerable paine there be no great heate nor thirst adioyned. And if there be any salt matter (which the patient shall perceiue in his mouth) or any obstruction of the bodie, stincking, belching, and great faintnes with it, then must preparatiue medicines be ministered to the patient, and such as may procure no waibling, and so begin with these sirrupes following: viz. the sirrupe of white Pints, of Clozmelwood, and all sorts of Drimel, or any such like. Afterwards is much commended by the auncient Physicians the confection *De Gallia* for to purge, which followeth hereafter: Take Gallick, Cloues, Ginger, Pepper, long Pepper, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, *Gallia Muscata*, and *Diagridon*, of each a like quantitie: afterwards wryng out the iuice of sowre Quinces, and put as much hony as iuice vnto it: then take of both these one ounce and a halfe, and put halfe an ounce of powder vnto it which is made of the foresaid things: but let this iuice and hony sethe before to the thicknes of a sirupe, and afterwards temper the other things amongst it, whereof you are to giue at once one quarter of an ounce or two dragmes and a halfe. Also the purging confections of Quinces, which be described in the eight part, is very mete for this purpose, and in like sort the *Electuarium Induris*.

A purging Confection: Take Turbith one quarter of an ounce, Ginger one scruple, Gallick halfe a scruple, Sugar three dragmes; temper them well together, and then take it with what you will. But if so be that the sick bodie be not addited to vomit, and that the same be not feared, then are these Pills following to be exhibited vnto him, called *Iliaca*. Take Coloquinte, and *Sagapenum*, of each ten dragmes, *Diagridon* three dragmes and one scruple; then make pills of it with wine, and giue thereof one dragme at once, they ease very speedely the payne. For this is also very good *Benedicta Laxatiua*, or *Hiera Picra* one ounce, *Hiera Picra magna* halfe a dragme, Turbith, and Ginger, of each one scruple: then mixe them together with a good draught of wine. But in case that in this chollick the purging medicines will not help, and the sicknes still increaseth, then make these suppositoies following, and if so be that these suppositoies will not sufficiently relaxe, then are Clusters to be vsed, which are the very best and safest remedies for the collicke which one can deuise, therefore we will here rehearse some of them, and begin first with the mildest. But note alwayes (which is good in all Clusters that are to be vsed for the collicke)

collick) that the herbes, and all that is to be vsed with them, are to be decocted in such brothes wherein Calues heads, Lambs heads, and fete be boyled: for these brothes be very requisite for all obstructions of the bodie.

Take Cammomill, Hollyhocks, and Pallowes, of each one handfull, Fennell, Annis, Caruway, of each one quarter of an ounce: sethe them all together in wine, or water. Take fiftene or sixtene ounces of this decoction, and dissolue therein fresh Butter, and Sallet oyle, of each two ounces and a halfe, or thre ounces, the yolke of an Egge; temper them well, and minister it warme. Item, take one pound of Linsede oyle, and vse it very warme for a Clister: Or take Pallowes, Hollyhocks, Betes, Percurie, Fenegrake, and Linsede, of each one handfull, five or six figs cut, Annis, Fennell, of each one quarter of an ounce, Bran one handfull: sethe them all together in sufficient water. Of this decoction you are to take fiftene or sixtene ounces, and then temper amongst it *Hiera Picra*, and Cassie, of each one ounce, oyle of Rue thre ounces, and then make a Clister thereof.

Another: Take Pallowes, Hollyhocks, Mercury, and Bearesfoote, of each one handfull, ten or twelue fat figs, pouned Fenegrake, and Linsede, of each one ounce and a halfe, Dill seede one ounce, Bran halfe a handfull, oyle of *Sesamum* and Hony, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Sal Gemme* one dragme, Cassie and *Hiera Picra*, of each thre quarters of an ounce: temper them all together in sixtene ounces or more of the foresaid decoction vnto a Clister. You haue before in the eleuenth Chapter and the 21. S. a Clister of Palmsey, which is also conuenient for this vse. Item, take the iuice of Parietarie, and the iuice of Wormewood, of each six ounces, one Rutneg, Peach kernels beaten very small halfe a dragme, make them all together warme, and minister thre of these Clisters in one day.

Another: Take Annis, and the seede of Pellitorie, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pellitorie leaues one handfull: sethe them all together in wine, and take thereof fiftene or sixtene ounces: melt Butter therein, and Linsede, of each two ounces, then temper them together. When the patient hath auoyded this Clister, then let him afterwards drinke five or six ounces of the oyle of sweete Almonds, and that tempered with Sugar. Item, take oyle of Rue twelue ounces, five or six Leekes heads, stampe them, and sethe them in the oyle: then strayne it through a cloth, and then vse the oyle for a Clister. Item, take Pellitorie, Centorie, Parietom, and field Pints, of each one handfull, Annis, Comin, and peeled wild Saffron seede, of each one dragme, Polipodie rotes, Turbith, and Radish seede, of each halfe an ounce, *Sal Gemme* one dragme: temper all this into a Clister, as is abovesaid.

You are also to obserue here, that these and such like Clisters shall be ministred but onely when other remedies will not auaille. Item, oyle of Cammomill is more pretious then common oyle: but if Cammomill cannot be gotten, then is oyle of Linsede to be vsed in stead of it. Also here do follow hereafter many sundry remedies against all paines of the guts, which serue also very well for the *Phlegma*.

Certaine Potions for the cold Phlegma.

Take the rotes of Smalage, Fennell, and Parsly rotes, of each two ounces, Annis, Fennell, Caruway, Parsly, and Smalage sedes, of each one ounce, Radish two ounces: make a decoction of this, and drinke thereof adapes oftentimes as warme as you can suffer it.

Also once or twice a day drinke a spowefull or twayne of Rose hony tempered together with the foresayd potion.

Item, sethe an old Cock vntill the bones fall from the flesh, and in this broth sethe Polipodie rotes, the sedes of Dill, and of Annis, and drinke otherwhiles a good draught of it. Also you may oftentimes with the waters and sedes of the foresayd rotes, foment the place where the paine is, and afterwards annoynt the place with oyle of Rue wherein Annis sedes are boyled.

Some do highly commend the oyle of Sulpher, viz. to drinke in the winter one drop or twayne with Muscadell wine, or with vitall water. It will maruellously help and expell all gripings in the guts of a cold occasion.

Item, the confected Elecampane rotes, and confected Pimpernell rotes, do assuage all paines

paines of the bowels which procéde of cold. In like manner the confected Ginger both warme and strengthen all inward parts, and so doth also the rootes of *Eringus* when it is confected.

Amongst other Conserues, there be also méte and commodious the conserues of Piony, and Rosemary, of Hyssop, of Spikenard, and after purging the Confections of *Trion pipereon*, *Diacalamantha*, and such like.

Of the paine in the guts through winde. §. 7.



The third cause of these paines in the bowels are winds. If then this paine do come of no obstruction, and yet neuertheles one séle rumbling in the belly, and heareth the paine run vp and downe in the bellie, and if the paine do come by fits, and there abateth againe: against this be these remedies to be vsed that do expell winde.

For which, the confection of Bayberies is so highly commended, that it is thought that her like cannot be found. At the Apothecaries they call this *Eleuarium de Baccis Lauri*, and it is thus prepared: Take by Rue one dragme, Ameos, Comin, Pardus séde, Louage séde, Parierom, Caruway, bitter Almonds, long Pepper, *Daucus* séde, white Spints, Pepper, Calmus, Bayberies, and Beuercod, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Sagapenum* halfe an ounce, *Opopanaxum* one dragme, all these being powned together and molten, then make a confection of it with clarified hony, and giue the patient thereof the quantitie of an haseell nut with a draught of wine. Parmalade with spices is also very méte for this purpose. Item, in like sort be both the sorts of Treacle and Pithridate, for that they do waste winde, and be good for all cold diseases of the intrailles. Item, there is also fit for this vse the confection of *Uoxlerabish*, which shall hereafter be expressed.

These Confections following are also very commodious: viz. *De Cumino*, *Diatrion pipereon*, *Diagalanga*, *Diansum*, *Diacalamimba*, *Diaplriris*, *Aromaticum rosatum*, and after them a good draught of Wine.

If you desire to make a powder, then prepare this following: Take Ginger halfe an ounce, Annis one quarter of an ounce, prepared Coziander one ounce and a halfe, Pace, Calingall, Cucubes, and Putmegs, of each one dragme. This being beaten all small, then put as much Sugar vnto it as you please. This powder consumeth all winde, and hindreth also the generation of other. You haue also herebefore certaine grosse powders for the stomacke, which be also very good. In like manner do Annis, Fennell séde, Caruway, and Comin, (either bare or confected, and taken before meate) consume all payne in the guts. The sirupe of Wormewood expelleth also winds.

For this is also verie conuenient clisters if they be made of such things as do cause winde to auoide, as this following: Take Gallowes, Hollyhocke rootes, Violet leaves, Bearsefoote, and Beetes, of each one handfull, Centorie, *Rapontica*, Calmus, white Spints, Parierom, Southernwood, Rue, & Hyssop, of each halfe a handfull: Séthe them all together in sufficient water, and take sixtene or sixtene ounces therof, hony of Roses, and oyle of Rue of each thre ounces, *Hiera Picra* one ounce, *Benedicta laxativa* halfe an ounce, then temper them all together.

Yet this clister is to be diminished or augmented according to the abilitie of the sicke person. Suppositoies may also be vsed for this which are thus to be made: Take Rue, & Comin, or Caruway, of each one handfull, Swines bread one rote and a halfe, Bozeas one dragme, clarified Hony thre ounces, make suppositoies thereof. Another: Take Beuercod, Hony, Dregal, and oyle of Violets, of each a like quantitie, let them séthe somewhat thicke; after wardes wet a suppositoie in it bounden at a thred and vse it as before: it consumeth winde exceedingly and purgeth very much.

Potions and such like.

Take the rootes of Smallage, of Fennell, and of Parsley, of each two ounces, Railons, the stones (taken out) two ounces and a halfe, ten or twelue fat figs, twentie, or fower and twentie Quinbes: Séthe them all together in two quartes of water enen to the halfe, and take thereof, thre or fower ounces tempered with the foresaide confection. The common people and husbandmen do commonly vse sight things which they can best get, amongst which may

may this potion following be reckoned: Take fresh colwdung about halfe an ounce; temper it with good wine and wzing it thozowe a cloth and then dzinke thereof, it is much commended. Other do ascribe this to shæpes dung, also Chickwæde is commended for the same boiled in water and so dzunken. Likewise also Wormeword wine, or Wormeworde sodden in water: also Wheade being dzunken is very good for this paine; Wine measureably dzunken dzineth not onely the winde out of the bowels, but also out of all partes of the bodie. The wines of Varts tong and Parierom gentle are also much commended for these paines in the guts, and moe other aromaticall wines, as of Galingall, Putmegs, and Cloues.

Item: Take *Species Iustini* one dzagme, and dzinke the same twice a wæke with one ounce of Rose water, it is also good against the grauell. Pastel Tristrams water is also good against all paines in the guts: likewise is also commended one dzagme of Beuerrod dzunken with one ounce of *Mellicraton*.

In the meane time may outward things also be vsed: for this one may take the herbes, the seæde, and other ingredients whereof clisters haue bene made, wzing them out harde, stampe them and temper them with butter, with Barrowes grease and oyle of Cammomill vnto a plaister, and so laie it warme ouer the belly, it is verie good. But if one will laie any thing vpon the maladie; then must the belly be warmed well befoze with warme clothes, for this may be made also the foresaid bags of Pillet and Salt: or take vnbeaten Pillet, Dates, and Fennell, or Bran, which you can get; parch them in a panne and applie it warme vpon the paine. Item: Take parched Linsæde fire ounces, parched Comin one ounce, Bran halfe a handfull; beate them all grosse and make a bag thereof, then let it sæthe in water or wine a good space, afterwards wzing it out and laie it verie warme vpon it. Item: Take the oile of Scorpions, oile of bitter Almonds, and Turpentine, of each fire ounces; let them melt all by the fire, afterwards temper halfe a dzagme of Saffron amongst it. Lastly, dippe shæpes woll in it and laie it warm vpon the græfe: or take Pellitozie, and pouned Linsæd, of each one handfull, poure two ounces of the oile of Scorpions vnto it, and let them be made hot together; afterwards put a little Saffron vnto it and vse it as befoze. Warmed bread laid vpon the belly or the stomacke asswageth the paine, and is good against the suffocation of the mother or wombe.

Another: Take Hony, Butter, Salt, and Vineger, of each alike quantitie, let them sæthe all together a good while vntill it begin to be somewhat tough, then spread it on a cloth, and binde it warme vpon the belly.

Item, take wilde Thyme, Parierom, Caruway leaues, Cammomill, Wormeword and Sage, which you will, cut it all small, and put it into a bag, then make it moyst with wine or water, and let it warme in a pan and vse it as befoze. Or Colwdung and Butter, of each alike much; temper amongst it halfe so much beaten Comin. Wols dung is also very good for this vse, a plaister being made of it. For this is also good the plaister of Bayberies, which is described in the eleuenth Chapter and the 5. S.

Item, another salve also which is described in the third part in the tenth Chapter and the 5. S. Take Comin, Caruway, &c. Or prepare this following: Take Gose grease, and oyle of Scorpions, of each three ounces, Saffron one scruple, Make as much as sufficeth.

These oyles following are also to be vsed for this disease, viz. oyle of Lillies, of Cammomill, of Rue, of Dill, of bitter Almonds, of Spike, of Bayberies, and Elecampane rootes, of Peniroyall, and such like oyles which be warme of nature, and chiefly if Ameos and Pastick be boyled in them.

The bathing and fomenting is also very profitable for this sickness, which may be made as hereafter followeth; and may be prepared according as the cause requireth. The bathes of swæte waters are very good to assuage the paine, and they be especially commended after the collick and after purging and that fasting. After bathing is some Treacle or Pithridate to be vsed and taken, and to sweate after it.

For this be also good Sulpherie bathes which be warme by nature. Now will we declare all the foresayd things that expell winde and consume it, and especially these which may be vsed for Bathes and fomentations, viz. Rue, Dill, Rosemary, Fennell, *Chamedrios*, and field Cyppers.

Amongst the seædes, Annis, Fennell, Comin, Caruway, seædes of Rue, Ameos, and Dill seæde. Note ye that the patient must sit no deeper then to the breast in his bathe: and also may not tarry

tarry long therein, that he fall into no swoone: Otherwise the bathe is very profitable, for it openeth the pores, and doth consume the winde whereby the payne is delayed. You may wet a sponge in this bathe, and lay the same oftentimes warme vpon the belly. Likewise you may also fill a bladder and hold it warme vpon the belly. If you haue not this decocted water, then fill a bladder halfe full with Linsæde oyle, and then make it warme in hote water and so lay it vpon the belly.

Another Bathe.

After that the bodie is well purged, he may sit in a Tub with warme Sallet oyle, and when the paine is asswaged, then to go out of it againe. But if the oyle cannot be had nor be gotten, then vse this ensuing: Take Pellitorie, Violet leaues, Rue, Cammomill, Linsæde, fenegræke, Hollyhocks, and the sprigs of Coleworts, of each thre handfuls; sethe them all together in water for a bathe. Of this may you also make a Lotion for the face, be it coling or warming according as the case requireth.

For a Fume: Take Frankincense, Mastick, *Lignum Aloes*, and *Sandaraca*, of each a like quantitie, cast it vpon hote coles, and receiue the fume vpon the belly or where the paine is, for it doth draw much wind vnto it. The place also is first to be rubbed so long vntill it be thorow red, and afterwards well annoynted with any of the foresayd oyles.

The wine may also be consumed through good gouernment (if the same be put in practice) through exercise and sobrietie; for that where there is not much moisture receiued into the bodie, there cannot ingender much winde. And when such a patient hath recouered his health, then must he beware of greene herbs, Spilke, and all other things which be windy. He must also addit himselfe to drinke hony water with spices, or prepare this Beade ensuing.

Take two ounces of clarified hony, thre pintes of water, sethe and skim it well. When it is clenfed, then are you to hang therein halfe an ounce of grosse beaten Pepper, and afterwards let them sethe againe vntill there remaine about one quart of moysture. When it is then cold, take out the Pepper being well wung out. For this, serueth also burnt wine, or *Aqua vita*: yet there is nothing better then good old wine moderately dronken. He is to be restrayned from all watred wine because it ingendreth winds. He must likewise beware of all cold drinks, viz. the water of all herbs, fruit, fish, milke, and such like.

For all manner of paine in the Belly. §. 8.



Albeit that heretofore there be many things discovered for to assuage the paine of the belly, notwithstanding we must here set downe somewhat of the *Narcotica*, which be things that take away or do numb the senses, for which we aduise in the vse of them to begin alway with the laske, and so to come to the greatest, so that nature be not violated. Therefore where great paine is, you must apply parched spillet, Vanick and salt. Item, take Cammomill, spillet, Rue, Marierom, Venetoyall, Rosemary, Comin, Annis, fennell, and Will seade beaten grosse which one will, and as much as one will: let them sethe in wine, and whilst it is warme wet a sponge in it and lay it vpon the place of the paine. Make bags of the foresaid sedes and herbs, and sprinkle wine vpon a hote stone and warme them thereon. Or sethe it in wine and then lay them vpon the belly as all other. Afterwards annoynt the place with warme oyle, viz. oyle of Cammomill and of *Cosm*, but if the paine be intollerable great in the vppermost guts that one feareth to fall thereby in a swoone, one must (through extreame nede) put things in practice which do numb the senses, for which the confection *Philonium* is to be vsed and chiefly with the purging confection *Diaphanicon*, but this must be done with the counsell of a learned Physitian, as we haue oftentimes alreadie admonished, yet shall suffice halfe a dragme tempered halfe an ounce of the conserue of *Roses*.

Others vse in steede of *Philonium* the pills *Cynoglossa*, for that they be safer; also the *Triphera Saragenica*.

And albeit that through all these former reasons it may be sufficiently vnderstode, how that he is to be kept with meate and drinke, neuertheles we will briefly rehearse it once againe for methode sake.

Thes

These patients are oftentimes and very long to be rubbed with warme clothes. He is also to enure him alwayes befoze both meales to walke easily. He is also to be restrayned from all fruite, Pease, Beanes, and of Pust, and of all that procreateth windes. He shall also eate all light meates, and dresse his meate with Will seede, Comin, and Annis: Partriches and all other field fowles are very good for him. The iuice of old Cocks boyled with the foresaid seedes, is here much commended.

For this sicknes is also much aduised to eate Hedghogs flesh roasted, which causeth all paines of the intrayles to cease. His bread must be a little mozesalt ed & rayled: then commonly good old clere and white wine if there be no Ague with it, is to be his drinke.

Of the paine in the bowels through any impostume and other affections of the guts. §. 9.



We haue numbred this herebefoze in the 4. §. for the fourth cause of the paine in the bowels. But in case this paine in the bowels be caused thzough any impostume and vlcer of the Luyver, of the Splene, Kidneys, or any other parts, then is the same to be knowne by the place where those parts do dye: Like by each of these is sufficiently declared what is to be done for it. But if the bowels be hurt without any impostume, and that the same may be felt with the finger or any other instrument, then may you finde all that described in the tenth Chapter and 3. §. But if in the paine of the belly thzough heate there appeare any impostume in the one side, then must a vaine be opened on the other side, for the same must not be foreslowed, for that it is much needefull. First, he must befoze other things haue a vaine opened within the thirde or fourth day in the contrary side of the paine, and after wards on the other side where the paine is felt. This being now done, then take two parts of water, and one part of vineger, and make a sponge wet therein, and so apply it to the paine. When the sponge beginneth to be warme, then wet it againe, and reiterate this oftentimes.

Forreouer, the patient is oftentimes to be purged with Hanna, Cassie, and sowe Dates, and let him be ordered like as one is to be ordered who hath an Ague. He must also beware of Vineger, sowe Pomegranats, and also of all sowe things which may hurt the bowels. Boyled barley, and oaten paps, Pallowes, Burrage, and Drage decocted in Henbzoeth, or eaten alone, be very mete for him: and if the Ague be not great, then are they to be drest with butter or with oyle. He must also keepe a good dyet, and must vse much oyle of *Sesamum* in his meates. His drinke must be barley water decocted with Licorice, and all his whole government cooling and moistening as followeth hereafter. Take Pallowes with the rootes, Hollyhock rootes, Bearefoote, and Violet leaues, of each one handfull, Burrage floures, and floures of Buglosse, of each halfe an ounce, foure or fise p:unes; seethe them all together in a pot of water euen to the halfe, and then take of this decoction twelue or sixtene ounces, and temper with it two ounces of Cassie, oyle of Violets thre ounces, of Hony one ounce, then make a Clister of it. This is also especially commended being made with Goats milke, Cassie, and oyle of Almonds. When as then the impostume is broken bp, then are you to vse for to cleanse it, Clisters, barley water, and Hony, and after wards consolidating medicines. But if so be that one perceiue any parings of the bowels in the stoiles and that with great paine, then are these following to be used.

Take somewhat lesse then a pound of steeld water, and seethe therein broade and picked Plantaine and Rofes, of each one lb. euen to the halfe. Take twelue or sixtene ounces thereof, and melt therein one ounce of Dære suet, thre yolks of Eggs well beaten, oyle of Rofes two ounces, Thomas Sugar one ounce, and temper them all together.

Another: Take broad Plantaine, wild Tanisie, and Comfrey, of each one handfull, Pomegranat pils one ounce; seethe them all together in a pot of steeld water euen to the halfe: then melt in this decoction two ounces of Dære suet, *Trociscos de Carabe*, *De Terra Sigillata*, of each one quarter of an ounce, then make a Clister of it.

For plaisters, take the foddren herbs and the other things of the former Clisters, poune them to grout, and temper therewith halfe an ounce of pouned red Saunders, Barly meale two ounces, and oyle of Violets as much as doth suffice for a plaister, and then lay it warme ouer it, it doth abate the paine very much.

Another:

Another : Take *Pallowes*, and *Hollyhock* rootes with the herbes of *Nightshade*, *Violets*, *Cammomill*, and *Helilot*, of each halfe an ounce : beate them all together, and temper therewith oyle of *Violets*, of water *Lillies*, and *Duckes grease*, of each thre *dragmes*, *Linsed meale* one ounce, and then make a plaister of it.

If neede require to purge more, then may the same be done with the conserue of *Pzunes*.

But if so be this paine of the bowels be with a cold tumour, then must stronger clifters be vsed, as there be sundrie set forth in the first §. against the paine of the bowels through *Phlegma*. But first are the oyle of *Cammomill* with *Vineger*, and the oile of *Roses* (that it may pearce and strengthen the bowels) so to be vsed: after wardes the clifters expressed before in the first §. may this plaister following for mollifications be vsed for to ripen and assuage the paine : Take *Linsede meale*, *fenegræke meale*, *Wheaten meale*, and *Barly meale* of each two ounces, *fire yolks* of egges, oile of *Cammomil*, and good wine as much as is needefull for to make a plaister, this must be laid warme vpon it.

Another : Take eightene or twentie *Figs*, sethe them well in water, crums of white bread two ounces, *Wheate meale* one ounce and a halfe, unsalted *Barrowes grease*, and oile of *Cammomill* as much as is needefull for to make a plaister : let them all sethe a little together, and then laie them warme vpon it : you may also put warme vnto it one ounce of beaten *Cammomil*.

It happeneth also sometimes that in these impostumes the vaine is retained backe, because that the conduits are stoppt through the tumour : therefore if that fall, the *Saphea* must be opened, and the kidneies and the priuities annointed with the oile of *Cammomill*, and oile of *Violets*, and also with it clifters and plaisters to be vsed, like as shall hereafter be further spoken of the prouocation of vaine.

Of the paine in the bowels through heate and *Cholera*. §.10.



This is the last cause whereby (as is discoursed before in the fourth §.) the paine of the guts may be ingendred ; and when it cometh with heate and an ague, it is not then hurtfull nor so lingring as that which proceedeth of *Phlegma*. For this must the patient first of all be purged with sirupes and such like things as do coole, and further be kept with necessarie meate and drinke. He is lastely to vse clifters in this manner following : first of all he is to take certaine dates together preparatiue sirups, as both the sirups of *Vineger*, *Oxyfaccbara*, sirupe of *Violets*, of *Roses*, of *Endiue*, and of water *Lillies*, with some decoction wherin the same herbes haue bene decocted, whereof diuers be described in the third part.

For Purging.

Take fresh *Cassie* one ounce or one ounce and a halfe, the iuice of *Endiue* well clarified and skummed thre or fower ounces : then make a potion of it and giue it him warme, or in steede of the iuice (if one cannot get the same) then take *Endiue* water.

Another : Take eightene or twentie *Pzunes*, and fure or fure fat *Figs* : sethe them all together in sufficient water, and take of this decoction thre or fower ounces, temper *Cassie* therein, and oile of swete *Almondes* fure or fure ounces tempered with *Sugar*, and the same dronken at once, lose the bodie verie gently, and is also most sure that one may giue to the children newely borne : Likewise *Manna* decocted with fower *Dates*, *Pzunes*, and with *Sugar*, is also verie requisite to lose and coole.

Concerning the meates he must be restrained like as in other hot sicknesses, and must chiefly eschew alwayes meates which make winde. But oile of *Almondes* vsed in his meate, be very meate for him.

All his clifters must be made soluble and coling, like as be these following : Take *poeled Barley*, *Pallowes*, *Hollyhock* rootes, and *Violets*, of each one handfull, *Pzunes*, *Sebestes*, of each eight or ten, the seedes of *Belons*, of *Purslaine*, of *Courdes*, of each one ounce, *Barne* halfe a handfull : sethe them altogether, and take of this decoction and put vnto it oile of *Roses*, and of *Violets* of each one ounce and a halfe, *Cassie* for the clister one ounce, *Electuarium de Succo rosarum*

farum fine dragmes; then make a clister of it like as hath bene sufficiently shewed.

But here is to be noted that if any parings auoide with the gut, then must oile of Roses be most of all vsed; yet oile of Violets doth allwaie the paine of the guts if the same come through any sharpnes or any heate.

Take Mallowes, Hollyhockes, Bearefoote, Violet herbes, and Bettes, of each one handfull, Barley and Branne of each halfe a handfull; let them sethe all together, and then take of this decoction twelue or fiftene ounces, and temper Cassie in it one ounce, *Hiera Picra* three quarters of an ounce, *Benedicta Laxativa* three dragmes, oile of Violets three ounces, Salte one dragme or twaine; minister it as is accustomed.

This ensuing is also especiall good if any body haue bene bounden certaine daies together: Take twelue or fiftene ounces of Cowe milke, temper one ounce of Cassie amongst it, and minister it warme.

There may also a cooling plaister be layd vpon the belly, whereof there be diuers discovered against the heate of the stomacke and the liuer: yet must alwaies some Cammomill, Clozewood, and such like be tempered amongst it.

For a cooling you may also take preserved *Ribes*, or any such like, as in the eleuenth Chapter §.6. is shewed.

Of the paine in the belly mixt with grauell. §.11.

For this disease is much aduised, to take three dayes one after another, a good draught of the water of Elderne flowers, which helpeth maruellous well. Item, take the iuice of Bellitorie eight ounces, oyle of Rue two ounces; sethe the dung of a Dog in it, which hath eaten nothing but bones: straine it thowow, and vse it for a Clister. It is also much aduised for to take for purgation halfe an ounce of *Diaphanicon*, and Sebestes one dragme and a halfe, *Philonium Romanum* one scruple, *Species Iustini* halfe a scruple: temper them altogether, and drinke it, and drinke a little fat broth after it. But how easily an error is committed in distinguishing the paine of the guts, for the paine of the raines, and the paine of the grauell, it shall hereafter be declared, where we shall speake of the grauell.

Of the payne in the bellies of young children. §.12.

We haue here briefly shewed of the oyle of swete Almonds, which is to be tempered with Sugar, and may be giuen boldly to newbeorne children, for the paine of the bellie: This is alwaies found to be good. The water of Larkes spurs is also good for the same, aswell in olde folkes as in yong children. For a small Clister, take Mallowes, Hollyhocke rotes, and *Pyrola*, of each halfe a handfull, Pellilot and Rosemary, of each halfe so much; sethe them in a pinte of water, and then take of this decoction little or much, according to the bignes of the childe, Honie of Roses halfe an ounce, oyle of Cammomill two ounces, Salt halfe a dragme: temper them all together. Item, take vnto small children alwaies a sponesfull of the water of blacke Cherries in their pap, for it swageth the paine. Oyle of Putmegs annoynted about the Pauell, and a warme cloth layd vpon it: And in like manner the oyle of *Scorpi- ons* is also very commodious for this infirmitie. Also Chickeweed fried in oyle, and applyed warme on the belly. Also take Hints, Mallowes fried in fresh Butter, or Cammomill and Clozewood, of each a like much: cut them all together metely small and put them in a little bag: then make it metely warme in hot wine, wring it well out, & so lay it ouer the chिल्des belly. Item cut an Onion very small, frie it in oyle, and binde the same vpon the Pauell of yong children and olde folkes.

Albeit that it be not now our intent to write much of Chirurgerie, yet neuertheles, we cannot let this escape: viz. if any be wounded in the belly that his bowels issued forth, & then happen to swell, that they cannot be put backe into the body, then warme them with warme milke or wine. After that may the Chirurghion well knowe what he hath to doe.

Of the wormes in the belly. §.13.



First of all, there is not any thing more certaine, then that in mans body, like as in stinking kennels, in chesse, and in stinking flesh, wormes do growe, and that out of a putrified matter: But in man do they chiefly procede through vnaccustomed meates, that cannot be digested: also of sursetting and ouercharging of the stomacke. Item through bathing, and vse of venery with a full stomacke, through eating of fresh Beanes, of salt fish that is without scales, through Swines flesh, and such like things moe. Also these wormes doe growe by eating much fruit. Therefore haue children most annoy thereby about harvest.

These wormes doe ingender sometimes in the stomacke, and otherwhiles in the bowels: And some suppose that they onely grow in the blinde gut; but they which haue somewhat more carefully beheld them, doe write that the long wormes doe ingender in the vppermost bowels, and the small, like vnto chesse Pagots, onely in the arsegut, and in the middlemost guts should round wormes ingender called *Ascarides*. Some doe take it otherwise. In fine, wee will let them dispute thereof: for they do accord hercin, that there be thre sortes of wormes which may growe in mans body like as is shewed before.

And to the end that somewhat be discoursed of these kinds of wormes: The long ones be knowne to be in yong children through their gnawing in the bowels, through a small, dry, and troublesome Cough: Moreover, they do awake suddenly out of their sleepe sometimes with an outcry: afterwards they do quickly hold their peace, and haue an vnequall pulse. Also they haue vncertaine Agues, with coldnes of the outward members, which accidents do happen vnto them without any cause thre or foure times a day. Such children haue an vnnaturall desire of meate, they let out their tong, gnash with their teeth, sweate about the eyes: they be gladly quiet: they be also very quickly angrie, and snappish or testy on them that do awake them, and as now they be ruddy, and immediately bleake againe: they talke in their sleepe, be frighted in their dreames, and do lye very vquiet. When they awake, they do then rub their nose, the eyes sinke into their heads, they will be very hard fauoured in their face, they feele great paine in the belly, they haue much some and spittle, their mouthes will be dry, yet more by day then by night, and their breath stincketh much.

In like manner it hapneth very well, that they auoyd the wormes at the nose, at the mouth, and through soles: but amongst people in yeres there be besides these signes such an extreme paine of the belly also, that they cast their hands and feete from them like as if were a chollick. And as they come into their stomacke, then do they get a great wambling and loathing of all meates. And when one forceth himselfe to eate, yet can he not swallow the meate, but must cast vp againe presently the meate which he hath taken: their ordure is very stincking, their belly swelleth on high, like as if it were full of winde.

These be now the signes of the long wormes, which signes though they be not alwayes apparant, yet neuertheles this disease may be knowne by some of these.

The broade wormes be as well in them that haue no Ague, as in them which be troubled with lingring Agues: they do also bring some of the foresaid signes with them, and especially these will be knowne as well through the great gnawing in the stomacke, as through the vnmensurable desire of meate. And although they haue eaten inough, and do not by and by eate againe, yet then do they feele that gnawing and biting againe as before. They will be also very leane, and dry of bodie. But this is the very surest signe, that the patient doth auoyd through the soles small things, like to the kernels of Gourds. It is also found, that some not esteeming this gnawing of the wormes, and had taken no aduise for it, that the guts be bitten asunder, and that the wormes are got into the hollownes of the belly, whereof doth follow afterwards a great calamitie, as madnes, the falling sicknes, dogs hunger, swooning, paine of the belly, obstruction or binding of the bodie, and lastly, the painefull and bitter death. Therefore is this disease not to be accompted small, but rather men are betimes to vse all requisite remedies for it.

But if the wormes be not in the bowels, but in the stomack, and in the mouth of the stomack, then be they commonly vomited vp, and they that be in the bowels are rid and dispatcht through the soles.

Of the third kind of woymes, they which keepe themselves in the Arsegut, shall immediately hereafter be discoursed. I haue therefore the longer discoursed of this, for that it is a common disease amongst children and common families, whereby common householders might knowe their right difference, afterwards we will write of the remedies seruing for these common sorts of woymes: but about all, there be prescribed by the learned certaine common rules of them. The first is, that the lower the woymes be in the bowels (whether they be there growen or descended out of the stomack thither) so much the bitterer and stronger must the medicine be which is giuen from above, because that she may not lose her vertue through so long a passage. Secondly, the woymes *Ascarides* are not so easily killed through Phisick, as other woymes, therefore must stronger remedies be used for them. Thirdly, to preserve himselfe from woymes, he is to beware of all such meates as do increase *Phlegma*, and to purge out the same in aged folks, like as we shall speake more at large thereof. Fourthly, the first intention of the Phisitians is to kill the woymes, afterwards to expell them, for that through their stench they do not infect the hart, the stomack, and the whole bodie. Fifthly, as soon as one perceiueth the woymes, then must he inuenuoy to expell them, and so to free himselfe from great distresse. Sixthly, all remedies which be hote in the third degree, are very fit for this purpose, if there be not a strong Ague or impostume with it. Seuenthly, if one will expell the woymes through any meate or drinke, then is the same to be done with an emptie stomack, and fasting. Eighthly, the woymes are most fittest to be killed through hote and very bitter things, as (to the contrary) through sweete and fat things they are fed and sustained. Ninthly, all they that haue the woymes, may be fed two dayes with sweete and fat things; but the third day when they be hungrie and emptie, are bitter things to be giuen. Tenthly, if one take any thing to kill the woymes, then must the belly and the stomack be annoynted or plaistred on the out side with astringent and bitter things. Eleuenthly, if so be that the woymes be in the vppermost guts, or in the stomack, then will they be more easily killed and expelled through that which is taken at the mouth. But if they be in the nethermost guts, then are they killed with Clusters and Suppositoies. But in the middlemost guts are to be used of both these remedies.

The order how a man may preserve himselfe from wormes.

All those that are to be preserved from woymes are of three sorts, as children which do yet suck, children of the age of foureteene yeeres. Now for to free the sucking children, the Nurse must eate all light meates, and refraine from all fruit, fish, and filke, but especially from overcharging themselves with any kind of meates. The children which do not suck must be kept after the same manner, and be restrained from all that is slimy, and also beware of fruit, and especially of those which be not ripe, and those that be woymeaten, for they also ingender woymes in the belly. The yonths and people in yeeres are to be kept likewise as we haue sayd. Also twice or thrice a yeere, phlegme ought to be prepared in them, with *Oxymel of Squills*, or *Compositum*, or with the sirupe of *Calamintha*, and such like. Afterwards he is to take *Hiera Picra*, with the decoction of *Polipodie rotes*, *Mirabolani*, *Chebuli*, of a little *Coloquinte*, for to purge. He is also to vse rather roasted meate then sodden. He must eschue all grosse and fat meates, for thereby do the woymes growe especially. Also he must eate euery day a little Mustard seede.

But if so be that the woymes be present, then must one looke to kill and expell them by all meanes, for which purpose these hote things following be fit, viz. Wormewood, Bay leaues, Peach kernels, Rue, white Spints, bitter *Coffin*, Centozie, Horehound, Lupins, Annis, Smallage seede, parched *Nardus* seede, Spints, Elecampane rotes, dry Bayberies, Southernwood, Comin, Cresses seede, Caraway, bitter Almonds, *Diptamius*, Penniroyall, Oals of old beastes, and chiefly Dre gals, or Wolfs gals, the common Wormeseede, Cinnamome, Gentian, the rotes of the small fearne, and Agrimonie: of all which foresayd things, one dragme, or a dragme and a halfe is to be taken in winter time with wine, and in Sommer with some coling waters, and that chiefly with Pursaine and Endiue water.

These things following do not only kill the woymes, but also expell them forcibly, to wit, Aloe, rotes of blew floure de luce, the iuice of wild Cucumbers, *Agaricus*, Coloquinte, wild Safran, the fresh iuice of Elecampane rotes, Turbith, and *Rabarbarum*. One may vse some

of these foresaid things, if there be no Ague with it.

Cold simples which doe kill the woymes are these: viz. prepared Coziander, Butchers Worme seede, *Hypocistis*, sealed earth, Purslaine seede, seedes of Endiue and of Lettice, the iuice of Plantaine, rinds of Pomegranats, sowre Pomegranats, Oranges and their seede, Citron seede, burnt Harts horne, Asses milke, all that is sowre, bread infused in vineger, Worme seedes, Colewort seede, dry Plantaine, seedes of Dage, and vnripe Sallet oyle, a good deale of it taken at once. You may boldly take these things, where as heate and the Ague is.

And further to speake of the compounded things, we will first of all take the things in hand which may be vsed inwardly and in heate. Take the sirupe of vineger one ounce and a halfe, temper it with Endiue water and Purslaine water, and drinke this certaine dayes together alwayes fasting. Item, take the seedes of Butchers Worme, sealed earth, *Hypocistis*, the iuice of Sloes, of each one quarter of an ounce: boyle them all together in sufficient water euen to the halfe, and drinke thereof certaine dayes together thre or foure ounces at once. Or take Grasse rootes, and Butchers Worme seede, of each one ounce; seth them all together in a pot of water euen to the halfe, and drinke thereof as befoze. Another. Take eightene or twentie Sebestes, Purslaine seede one dragma, Grasse rootes, and Spillet, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar foure ounces, Tieriuice, and the iuice of Pomegranates, of each two spoonefuls; let them seth together, and skumme them well. But if you haue not this iuice, then take in steede thereof good Vineger. Item, take prepared Coziander, and the seede of Smalage, of each one dragma and a halfe, calcined bones of a Stags hart thre quarters of an ounce, red Cozall one dragma, Cinnamon halfe a dragma, *Calmus* halfe a scruple, prepared Perles halfe a dragma, *Diptamus*, *Ammoniacum*, filed Iuoze, and burnt Silke, of each two greynes, eight or ten Bayberies, Sugar thre quarters of an ounce: make a fine pouder of it, & giue one drag. of it moze or lesse.

Burnt Harts horne alone two or thre dragmes giuen with Beade, doth maruellously kill the woymes. Or take burnt Harts horne one dragma, Pyonie seede, Smalage seedes, Coziander, Cole wort seede, Pardus seede, seedes of Plantaine and of Endiue, of each halfe a dragma, *Diptamus* one scruple, red Saunders, Cozall, and Pearle, of each sixe graines, Sugar as much as all the rest; make a subtille pouder of it.

Another: Take filed Iuoze which is a little parched one quarter of an ounce, prepared Coziander one dragma and a halfe, *Diptamus* one dragma and halfe a scruple, Sealed earth one dragma, temper them al together. Item: Take Rubarbe, Wasill seed, Plantaine seede, Pomegranate peeles, Caruway, Butchers worme seedes, *Cardus Benedictus* seed, filed Harts horne, and filed Iuoze, of each halfe an ounce, rindes of Pulberrie rootes, Colewort seede, Citron seede, and rindes of Willow trees, of each thre dragmes, Purslaine seede, and *Diptamus*, of each two scruples, red Cozall and Pearles, of each one scruple: make a pouder thereof, and then giue one dragma or twaine of it, viz. in winter (when there is no ague) with wine; but in sommer, and when there is an ague with *Oxycrato*. Item: Take burnt Harts horne one dragma, prepared Coziander, and Aloe, of each halfe a scruple; beate them altogether, and giue it him with the sirupe of Vineger, or grasse water. In like manner is also especiall good for this the leaues of Smalage one dragma: or take the seedes of Purslaine one dragma, Pulsus folwer scruples, red Cozall, and prepared Coziander, of each one scruple, Dage seedes one dragma; make a pouder of all these, and giue thereof with strong wine, or with water wherein grasse rootes and Agrimonie haue bene decocted, each time folwer graines. Another: Take Dage seedes one dragma, Worme seede (which is *Semen*) one dragma and a halfe, Grasse rootes, flowers of Hyssop, Southernwood, of each halfe a dragma, Licorice folwer scruples, Cinnamon, and Will seede, of each halfe a scruple: stampe each a part, and afterwards mixe them together, and at the last put halfe a scruple of *Muscus* vnto it: then giue thereof from thre or sixe graines vnto halfe a scruple with warme grasse water.

Item: Take the seedes of Dage, of Purslaine, wilde Thyme, and Parierom, of each halfe a dragma, Worme seede thre dragmes, Licorice, and Lupines, of each one scruple, *Muscus* halfe a dragma, Ambra halfe a dragma: mixe them all together and giue one dragma and somewhat moze at one time with Grasse water. Another: Take the seedes of Plantaine, and Worme seede of each one dragma or somewhat lesse, according to the age, and giue thereof as befoze. Item: Take Plantaine seede, calcined Harts horne, and Worme seede, of each a like quantitie, vse it as the other. Or if you will make a confectiō, then take burnt Harts horne one dragma, prepared Coziander,

Coziander, Hyonie seede, the seede of Smalage, *Nardus* seed, the seedes of Plantaine, and of Cardue, of each halfe a dragma, *Diptamus* halfe a scruple, red Cozall, Sanders, and Pearles, of each five graines, Sugar one ounce and a halfe: then make Tabulates thereof with Grasse water. Then take about one quarter of an ounce at once.

You haue before in the second part the thirde Chapter, and seauen §. of the hardning of the breast, and in the third part the second Chapter, and eleuenth §. a preparation of earth wormes into powder against the yelloie Jaundise, whereof may a drinke or confection be made. But if the guts be distended and the heate not ouer great, then lay this plaister following vpon the belly: Take Linseed meale, and Beane meale, of each one ounce and a halfe, Wormewood one handfull, Aloe three quarters of an ounce, and make a plaister of it with Beade, or with the oile of Wormewood.

But if there be a small ague with the wormes, then may be giuen to people in yeres (each according to his age) Treacle or Spithivate; for both of them do kill the wormes and expell them.

Item: Take the seedes of *Sepia* one dragma, calcined Varts horne and Pomegranate peales, of each halfe a dragma, *Diptamus*, Cloues, Kubarbe, of each one dragma, Worme seed halfe a dragma, Saffron fiftene graines, Sugar nine ounces: Soethe them all together in Wormewood water, or in Grasse water, and then make Tabulates thereof: or take Worme seede one quarter of an ounce, Knot grasse, and white *Diptamus*, of each two scruples, burnt Varts horne, Peach leaues, of each one scruple, Kubarb one dragma, make them all together into a subtil powder, and giue therof on dragma or twaine at once. But if you will haue a confection, then take thereto three ounces of Sugar decocted in water of Knot grasse, and giue therof from halfe an ounce vnto a whole, according to the age of the patient. Item, other moe which be Laratiue: Take parched Kubarbe, and Worme seede, of each one dragma, prepared Pearles one dragma and a halfe, burnt Varts horne one dragma, Sugar six ounces: make a Confection of it as before. Or take Worme seede halfe a dragma, Comin one scruple, Cinnamon two scruples, burnt Varts horne halfe a dragma, Turbith one quarter of an ounce, Sugar one ounce and a quarter: make losings therof, and giue about one quarter of an ounce of it. Item, take Cinnamon, burnt Varts horne, Centozie, and Gentian, of each one dragma, Kubarbe one scruple, Sugar six ounces decocted with grasse water: make also losings thereof. They be very good, and they be also gither easie.

The seedes of Rue should also be very good for the Wormes: like as also is the vineger of Rue, and the common good vineger. Take in like maner the flowers of Feuersfew as much as you can gripe betwene two fingers, and vse it fasting. This hereafter ensuing may be vsed for children of three yeres of age: Take white *Diptamus*, Worme seed, *Carlina*, and Kubarbe, of each a like quantity: poune them to powder, and giue each time one dragma therof more or lesse with wine, according to the importance of the cause: whereupon you are to vse for children the salve of Drenges, which shall be described hereafter, and after that, this potion ensuing: Take Kubarbe two scruples, *Carlina* one scruple, pouned small with Wormewood water. In like sort also be very meete these pills following: Take Gentian, Pirrhe, *Diptamus*, Wormewood, Spints, and filed Varts horne, of each one dragma, Turbith halfe a dragma, *Agaricus* one quarter of an ounce, *Salgemma* one dragma, Ginger and Cinnamon, of each two scruples, Aloe as much as the rest: then make pills of it with the iuice of Wormewood, and vse often times of it about one dragma at once.

This composition following is most highly commended of the auncient Physitions: Take Gentian, Centozie, and *Agaricus*, of each one dragma, Cloues, *Nardus* seed, the roots of Costus, Annis, and water of Scordum, of each sower scruples, burnt Varts horne, Roses, Sozrell seede, and prepared Perles, of each halfe a dragma: poune each alone, afterwards temper them together, and sprinkle them with the iuice of Limons, with sharpe Vineger, and Rose water, of each a like quantity, and let it drie againe: doe so five or six times: At the last temper with it halfe a dragma of Saffron, one graine of Huske, and make thereof small losings with the sirupe of Citrons. One may take thereof from halfe a dragma to a whole, whether it be made in powder or pills. Conserue of Gilloflowers, and of Peach flowers, be also much commended for this purpose.

There may be also many things dronken: as the iuice of Radish, and giue of it to a strong

person one quarter of an ounce: it is a very strong and a right medicine for a Ploewman. This also is very like the same; poune Garlicke, and wring out the iuice, and drinke it as before. Item, take the herbe Bassil, sethe it in Vineger, and drinke of it; the woymes will run quicke out of your bodie. Another: take Rye, boyle it, and drinke sometimes of the decoction, and also temper your wine with it. Or take Citron peles one dragma, or one dragma and a halfe, giue it to childe in milke; it should be especiall good. Take the iuice of Cleampane rootes foure ounces, and drinke it; it is taken to be a speciall remedy. Item, take Wormesede one ounce, Sene leaues one quarter of an ounce: poune altogether to powder, and take one dragma of it or twoaine, with wine, Beere, or Meade.

Item, take Pomegranate peles beaten or sodden in wine, and drinke of it fasting about one quarter of an ounce. One dragma of powned Zeduary dronken once or twice a day, doth also kill the woymes through his heate.

Another. Take Cammomill two handfuls, twenty or fine and twenty Sebestes; sethe them in a pot of water vnto the halfe: then take thre ounces of this decoction, and temper with it thre ounces of Oxycraton, and drinke of it thre or foure moynings one after an other.

Clifters be also very good for this, if one can get Asses milke for it. If that cannot be gotten, then is there to be taken for it a broth which is decocted with 20. or 25. Sebestes and Rye, and mire with it Butter and Honey.

Also Colue milke may be taken for it alone, tempered with Honey.

For to vse outwardly, the learned haue ordayned diuers remedies; as plaisters, salues, and other meanes moe, as hereafter folloiweth: Take Aloe, Southernwood, of each a like quantitie, temper them with Honey, or oyle of Wormewood, and annoynt therewith the belly.

Item, rub Dre gall vpon the pauell as much as you can: if it be too thin, then temper amongst it beaten Wormewood, Gentian, or any other bitter thing. Note also, because that all bitter things be enemies to yong childe, that regard must be had to help them with salues, plaisters, and such like, as hereafter shall folloiw. For that through these meanes the woymes may be killed in yong childe, because childe haue tender, subtil, and thin intrailles, so that the plaisters and salues may penetrate, kill the woymes, & expell them, which also through the vineger which is mirt amongst it may be the easier effected. This salue following is very approued for it: Take Wormewood, Lupins, Siluermountaine, Comin, Nardus seede, Centorie, Doronicum, burnt Harts horne, & Spirrth, of each half an ounce, Aloe one ounce & a halfe, Agaricu one drag. the iuice of Oranges two ounces, oyle of Wormewood, of bitter Almonds, and oyle of Peaches, of each one ounce, an Dre gall: let the iuice & gall be sodden together, and afterwards mire all the sayd things amongst it, and then make a salue of it with Ware: with this salue is the belly, the stomack, and backbone to be annoynted. But if you will make a plaister of it, then will it be good for the stons of the kidneies and bladder. Or take the iuice of Spints two ounces, Centorie, Wormesede, and Lupins, of each halfe an ounce, Gentian, Wormewood, of each one drag. Diptamus, Semen Zedouia, of each thre drag. Dre gall one ounce, Aloe one drag. and a half, Spallick of Spica, and of Wormewood, of each one ounce, vnripe Sallet oyle, and vineger where in tossed bread hath bin infused and is wrung out againe, of each two ounces, the iuice of Oranges halfe an ounce, white ware vi. ounces: sethe the iuice and the oyle vntill all the moisture be consumed: when the oyle is cold, then temper the rest being beaten small amongst it, and let it sethe a litle againe vntill it be thick: lastly, put thre greines of Muscu vnto it, and spread this salue on a round cloth and bind it on the pauell: it killeth all kinds of Wormes, and also expelleth them.

Another. Take the iuice of Fleawort, Wormesede, Southernwood, Centorie, Swines bread, Peach leaues, Lupins, Ebulus rootes, and Pomegranate pils, of each one dragma, the iuice of Garlick two ounces, the iuice of water Cresses twelue ounces: let all these sethe vnto the halfe: afterwards put as much Ware vnto it as sufficeth for to make a salue. Item, take Centorie, Wormewood, and Lupins, of each halfe a dragma, Lignum Aloes, burnt Harts horne, and Diptamus, of each one quarter of an ounce, Aloe, as much as the rest, oyle of Wormewood foure ounces, Ware as much as will suffice. Or take Wormewood, and Lupins, of each half an ounce, Cinnamon, Comin, Nardus seede, Centorie, Worme seede, oyle of Peach kernels, and of bitter Almonds, of each foure ounces, Ware five ounces, make a salue thereof: it hath bene approued oftentimes. But if so be that you will haue it stronger, then take Agaricu vnto it

Take one dragma, Aloe one ounce and a halfe, Pirrh one dragma and a halfe, the iuice of Oranges two ounces, Dre gals one ounce, and vse it as the rest. Take Treacle halfe an ounce, *Diptamus*, Gentian, and Worme seede, of each one scruple, Aloe two scruples, Dre gals one quarter of an ounce: temper them all together, and make with beaten Coziander a salve thereof; then spread it vpon a cloth, and lay it vpon the stomacke. Item, take Zeduary rootes, Gentian, Aloe, and Worme seede, of each one scruple, Cloues and Palsick, of each halfe a dragma, Treacle one dragma, & one quarter of an ounce. Of the stomachicall salve which is described in the eleventh Chapter and the 5. S. make a plaister of it, and lay it ouer the stomack: for it expelleth wormes, and doth also strengthen the stomacke. Item, take Aloe, Wormewood, oyle of Peach kernels, of bitter Almonds, of Palsick, and of Spica, of each three quarters of an ounce, *Hypocistis*, sealed earth, and Lupins, of each one scruple, Aloe, *Spec. Hiera Picra*, of each halfe a dragma, *Nardus* seede, *Gallia Muscata*, Southernwood, Dre gall, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one scruple, burnt Harts horne one quarter of an ounce, Endiue seede one dragma, Ware as much as sufficeth for a Salue.

Another: Take oyle of Wormewood, and of Pirrhles, of each halfe an ounce, beaten Aloe, prepared Coziander, sealed earth, and *Nardus* seede, of each five dragmes, the iuice of Quinces, and Dre gals, of each halfe an ounce: sethe them with the oyle vntill all the moisture be consumed: afterwards temper the other ingredients amongst it.

This Salue following is very good, and common at the Apothecaries: Take the oyle of Wormewood three dragmes, oyle of bitter Almonds one ounce, oyle of Palsick one quarter of an ounce, Pirrh, Aloe, and white *Diptamus*, of each one scruple, Ware as much as needeth.

The salve of Oranges (whereof we haue spoken before) is thus prepared: Take a fewe Oranges, cut it vp at the top, and wzing out the iuice; then annoynt the temples with it, the hart and the stomack: the same is especiall good for yong children.

Item, take oyle of bitter Almonds, of Wormewood, Dre gals, and white *Diptamus*, of each one dragma, Pithidate and the iuice of Oranges, of each one quarter of an ounce: temper them together, and annoynt the Childe therewith vpon the Hart, Stomack, and Hauell. Put also vnto it one dragma of Aloe: it is a good and safe salve, especially if there be an Ague present with it.

Another: Take Southernwood one ounce, Wormewood, and the rindes of the Bay tree, of each one dragma, Sugar, Colewort seedes, of each halfe a dragma, Bayberies one quarter of an ounce, Aloe halfe an ounce, burnt Harts horne one dragma, white *Diptamus* two scruples: sethe them all together in Vineger and Oyle: then strayne it thorow a cloth, and vse it as the other. Or take Linseed oyle one ounce, Rosen more or lesse according to the age: melt it at the fire, and annoynt therewith the temples of the head, the stomacke, and the belly. Some do much commend the same, although it seme slight.

Item, take Aloe halfe an ounce, white *Diptamus* and Saffron, of each one scruple: mingle them with a little sharpe Vineger, afterwards spread it on a leather, and binde it on the Panell.

Take fresh beaten Wormewood, wet it with Vineger, and lay it warme vpon the stomacke. Take the marrow of Stags bones, temper it with a little molten Ware, and annoynt therewith the whole back bone, and then lay it beaten vpon the Panell. The iuice of Radish spread vpon the Hauell is also good for wormes. In like manner the oyle of Wormewood rubbed into the Hauell (chiefely of yong children) is also good for wormes. Item, there is also often to be vsed *Petrolium* for the same.

Here do also follow certaine plaisters which be good: Take Wormewood two ounces, *Euphorbium* one dragma, burnt Harts horne, and the gall of a Hare, of each halfe an ounce, Honey as much as sufficeth for a plaister.

Item, take *Nardus* seede two scruples, Aloe and red Corall, of each one dragma, Wormewood and Palsick, of each one quarter of an ounce, prepared Coziander one ounce: make powder thereof. Item, take Rye meale three ounces, Lupin meale five dragmes, Saffron one dragma, Vineger, and the iuice of Rue, of each two ounces, the iuice of Wormewood foure ounces, then make a plaister thereof.

Another: Take Pirrh, Gentian, Aloe, and *Diptamus*, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Wormewood, seedes of Pursaine, and of Orage, Lupine meale, filed Quozie, and burnt Harts horne,

horne, of each one dragma, Saffron one dragma, Barly meale one ounce, the iuice of Garlick foure ounces : temper them all together, and put two greynes of *Muscus* vnto it.

Item, take *Spints*, *Mozmelwood*, of each two ounces, *Centozie*, *Agaricus*, of each halfe an ounce, Aloe one quarter of an ounce, Rose water one ounce, Lupine meale as much as all the rest : make a plaister of it so; to lay vpon the stomacke.

Another : Take Lupine meale, the iuice of *Mozmelwood*, *Spints*, Peach leaues, and the iuice of Quinces, of each two ounces, sealed earth, prepared Coziander, *Spastick*, *Spirtle seede*, and Aloe, of each halfe an ounce, Dre gall one ounce, and red Wine. Item, take *Nardus* one scruple, Aloe one dragma, prepared Coziander two scruples and a halfe, *Mozmelwood*, *Spasticke*, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Cozrall one dragma, prepared Coziander two scruples and a halfe, *Mozmelwood*, *Spastick*, of each one quarter of an ounce, red Cozrall one dragma : make a powder thereof, and temper it with the iuice of *Mozmelwood*, and with Wineger : wet a cloth in it, and lay it vpon the belly.

Another : Take the water of *Spints*, and of *Hyslope*, of each sixe ounces, the water of Grasse twelue ounces, *Palmsey* eight ounces, *Gentian*, *Spirt*, and Saffron, of each one drag. *Lognum Aloes*, *Mozmesede*, of each thre quarters of an ounce, *Muscus* five greynes, Wineger five spoonfulls : vse this, as is aforesaid.

If it be so that the patient be very weake, then may this following be vsed : Take *Soyrell* water, and the water of Buglosse, and of Grasse, of each thre ounces, *Spec. Cordialium temperatum* one dragma, water of *Mozmelwood*, and of *Hyslope*, of each two ounces, the water of *Byome* floures thre ounces, *Gentian*, and *Diptamum*, of each halfe a dragma, Saffron halfe a scruple, mingle them together. One may also vse these bags following : Take *Spints*, *Pennirovall*, *Mozmelwood*, white *Spints*, *Southernwood*, *Roses*, and *Plantaine*, of each halfe a handfull : beate them all grosse ; afterwards put them into a little bag, and weare it on the stomacke. The patient may also smell oftentimes to black *Nardus* seede, and likewise to tosted bread, which hath bene steeped in Wineger.

Of the wormes *Ascarides*, which do keepe in the Arsegut. §. 14.



Whereof, we will heere so; a conclusion of this Chapter, discourse of the small wormes *Ascarides*, which do keepe themselves in the Arsegut. These wormes may be perceiued by the great itch that they cause there. And so; to remedie this, dip a little woll in the oyle of *Aburcocks*, or the iuice of white water *Spints*. Also, you may mixe Aloe and Dre gall amongst it, and so thrust it into the Arsegut.

But first, the bodie must be purged with *Rubarb*; afterwards are *Suppositories* to be made of fresh *Pozke* and put vp into the Arsegut, and all the little wormes will stick fast vnto it. Some doe take so; this the poudred *Pozke*. Also, one may annoynt the skinke of *Cole* worms with Dre gall, and vse the same as a *Suppositorie*. But aboue all other things is much to be commended *Quicksilver* mixed with *Barrowes* grease, and to dip thy finger in it, and so grease or annoynt the Arsegut within with it. But so; *Children* may *Suppositories* be prepared with *Hony*, and salt *Peter*, putting them vp, and plucking them forth againe immediately. Also, there may a small Clister be ministred of *Silke*, with *Hiera Picra*, and *Cassia*. Olde folke are to haue Clisters after this manner following : Take *Southernwood*, and *Mozmelwood*, of each one handfull, the seedes of *Cuscuta*, parched *Comin*, and the seedes of *Smallage*, of each one ounce, *Mozmesede* one quarter of an ounce, *Wzan* halfe a handfull, oyle of *Peach* kernels one ounce and a halfe, Salt one ounce, *Hiera Picra* five dragmes, the iuice of *Lockes* one ounce. Of this decoction take not aboue eight ounces, and make of it a Clister.

The sixteenth Chapter.

Of the Kidneyes.

In the left side right vnder the Spilt, in the bodie of all beasts, is the one Kidney placed, and the other in the right side, a little higher, so that otherwhiles it doth touch a great part of the L yuer. The Kidney which lyeth in the right side, is also in all beasts somewhat greater and fuller then that which is in the left side, and is not couered with so much fat. For because it is hotter then the left, therefore doth it consume the same fatnes, which groweth through moysture, like as it is very needeful: for there is no part which sooner wareth fat then the Kidneyes. Both of them be made fast very strongly to the back bone. They haue sundry vaines from the L yuer whereby they draw blood, with water, and also some part of the gall vnto them, separating the same blood from the water, and keeping as much of the blood as sufficeth for their sustentance: collecting also the water together in their concauities (like as in a pot) which the gall dyeth yellow; and then through the Conduits *Vreteres* (whereof each Kidney hath one by it selfe) descendeth into the Bladder, and from thence is eicted by the yarb. These Conduits or *Vreteres* are whitish, hard, somewhat fleshy, & of the nature of the Bladder, whereby they may not suddenly be hurt through the sharpnes of the vrin, or through some other occasions. The substance of the Kidneyes is of a tight well compacted flesh, fashioned partly round, and not vnlike to Dre Kidneyes (the greatnes excepted.) These Kidneyes be also through many causes, and sundrie sorts of soze diseases infected, which the Grecians do call *Nephritis*, which is paine of the Kidneyes. But this paine of the Kidneyes doth come of many causes, as of impostumes, with heate and cold, of the grauell, and the Stone, and further of many diseases, and sharpnes of the vrin, whereof we will hereafter direly write and discourse. But here, before we goe any further, we will make a generall declaration thereof.

First, the learned do deuide all diseases of the Kidneyes into three principall sorts: to wit, if they be subiect to any bad complexion, whether they haue it of themselves, or be compounded with other diseases. Secondly, if they be not as they ought to be by nature. If they from the time of their birth be too great or too small, or freighted and laden with grosse tough slyme, which do oppilate and stop by the conduits that do descend into the Bladder. Thirdly, there may be also impostumes and vlcers. These three things may be very well compounded together, whereby diuers diseases and paines of the Kidneyes may be caused. The causes of these foresayd diseases may be as well outward, as inward: The outward may be blowes, falles, vnaccustomed exercise, hard riding, much going a foote, great heate or cold about the Kidneyes, to drinke puddle water, to carie vnused packs, excessive lecherie, long vse of diaruticall meates and drincks. The inward causes are a bad complexion, as if it be too hote, or too cold, too dry, or too moyst, the putrification of naturall seede, or sperme, impostumes, and other paines of the Kidneyes. The signes be apparant of themselves, and to be knowne by the paine of each place, as if the same be small, meane, or great. This doth otherwhiles appeare through pissing blood, or the water which is like the blood, euen as there were flesh washed in it. But if these diseases assaile one with heate or cold, therefore we will also (according to our custome) discourse a litle of it, and comprehend them in two especiall points.

Of the paine in the Kidneyes through colde and moysture. S. I.

The signes of the colde diseases of the Kidneyes, are they which haue neyther heate nor thirst, nor great paine, and their water is not high coloured, but is much in quantitie, because the same could not be wasted through vnnaturall heate, which Ague, winter, and the grauell augmenteth.

For these diseases, must first a good dyet be kept. All grosse, slimy, hard meates, and all cooling things are to be eschued, as Endiue, Lettice, Cicorie, Spinage, and Beetes, &c. vnlesse there be some hote things drest with them, as Parsly, Fennell, Comin, and such like. Fifth that he sodden are not good for this, neither that which is drest with dough or milke. These is also here, in forbidden. Also cold clere water, thick red wine, and all fruits which make grosse blood, as Peares, Apples, Quinces, Chestnuts, Dates, and such like. In all other things he may direct himselfe according to his old custome: but he must not swallow downe his meate greedily nor vnchewed, that the stomack be not cloyed.

Great exercise immediately after meate is hurtfull vnto him. He is to keepe himselfe quiet one howre and a halfe after meate at the least, without sleepe. Also all moyst and cold dwellings are to be shunned, like as nere to the earth, or such as be vnder it, or do lye nere vnto the water. But he is to prouide himselfe of good clothes, and of a good dry chamber. He must forbear all sorrow, vexation, anger, lying long vpon the back, riding, and such like.

Concerning the remedies, he is first to be taken whether the kidneies be obstructed: but if so be that this be, and that the patient be yong, full of blood, and strong, then is the Mediana baine to be opened on the right side, and to let out about foure ounces of blood. And afterwards this Clister following is to be set according to his age: Take Beetes and Coleworts, of each one handfull, boyle them as is accustomed: then take thereof about sixtene ounces, and temper in it *Benedicta Laxativa*, and the confectiō of Bayberies, of each one quarter of an ounce, course Sugar and Cassie halfe an ounce, Salt one quarter of an ounce, oyle of *Sesamum* and of Lillies, of each one ounce and a halfe: temper them all together, and then minister this Clister one houre before supper. This foresaid Clister is alwayes to be vsed euery other day, according to the abilitie of the person.

After letting blood, or after the second vse of Clisters, then may this purgation following or such like be vsed: Take the confectiō *De Psillio*, and *Sebeste*, of each two dragmes and a halfe: temper them in three or foure ounces of the decoction of Parsly rootes, and fast after it at the least five houres.

Or if you had rather haue pills, then is the patient to take the pills *Fetida* one scruple, *de Hiera Composita* two scruples: make five or seuen pills thereof, and take them earely in the morning.

Immediately after purging is the patient to vse this following one whole wake or twaine alwayes betimes in the morning.

Take *Syrupum Acetosum Compositum* one ounce, *Syrupum de Calamintha* halfe an ounce, fennell, Annis, and Wormewood water, of each one ounce, afterwards drinke this warme.

When these kinds of potions haue bene vsed, then is he to purge againe after this manner: Take Aloe halfe an ounce, *Agaricus*, Coloquinte, and *Bdellium*, of each one scruple, Ginger halfe a scruple, *Sal Gemma* five greynes: forme eight or nine pills of one dragme thereof, and take them betimes in the morning.

Or take the confectiō of Bayberies one dragme, *Eleuarium Indum* three dragmes and a halfe tempered with wine, and vsed as before. This confectiō following is also good for this: Take the seedes of Endiue, of Smallage, and of Sorrell, of each one dragme, Pillit one quarter of an ounce, Cinnamon, Ginger, Cloues and Spice, of each one dragme and a halfe, *Oxymel Compositum* five ounces, hony of Roses three ounces, Sugar two ounces: temper them together, and take a spoonfull euery morning before meate foure howres, and so continuing it the space of two moneths.

You haue before in the twelfth Chapter and 11. S. a good inice against the yellow Jaunders, beginning, Take Gentian, &c. which is also very good for this purpose. But if you had leauer haue a confectiō, then take *Spec. de Seminibus* one dragme and a halfe, *Milium Solis*, Licorice, Cinnamon, Ginger, Annis, and fennell, of each halfe a dragme, white Sugar foure ounces, being dissolved with fennell water, make Tabulats of it: then take thereof three dragmes alwayes before meate, and that induring the space of a moneth. Sawin drieth and warmeth well it is good for the kidneies, but women must not vse it much.

The sirupes which be fit for this are these: to wit, *Oxymel compositum*, *Mina cydoniorum aromatica*, *Oxymel scylliticum compositum*, & *de Radicibus*: all these sirupes do deopilate the obstructions of the kidneies. The plaister of Bayberies is especially commended for the cold kidneies.

Item: Take Barley meale, Frankincense, and Pasticke, of each one ounce, apply the same, Roses,

Roses, Cammomill, of each a like much, soz to make a plaister withall, laye the same warme vpon the Kidneies. This plaister strengtheneth, dyeth, mollifieth, and supplieth, and doth hinder that the disease cannot corode any further: and it is very good to incarnate o: to ingender new flesh.

For a salve, take oyle of *Nardus* one ounce and a halfe, Saffron and Pepper, of each halfe an ounce, the salve of *Aragon* one ounce, white *Clare* thre dragmes: melt them, and make thereof a salve. With these salues is the patient to be very well annoynted mo:ning and euening in the warme Sunne all ouer the back bone.

Another: Take oyle of Rue and of Saffron, of each two ounces, the salve of *Aragon* thre ounces, temper them together, and let euery euening and mo:ning the back bone be annoynted with it: and the back furred with *Laudanum*, and as then lay a warme cloth vpon it. Also to let boring cups on the buttocks with picking is much commended for this disease, because that the vaines which fixe the conduits of the v:in do there end themselues in the very buttocks.

And if so be then euery such patient do reconer his health through the foresayd remedies, yet is he notwithstanding to vse the foresayd salve, and two o: thre Clusters moze. And if so be that the sickness will not auoyd with this, then take Spelt, Millet, of each thre handfule, made very warme in a bag, and lay the patient warme vpon his back thereon, vntill it begin to be cold, and then annoynt him on his Kidneies with this salve following made very warme: Take oyle of sweete Almonds, of *Costus* and of Lillies, of each one ounce, oyle of *Euphorbium* one ounce and a halfe, Beares grease and Badgers grease, of each one ounce, Vens grease one ounce and a halfe, *Sagapenum*, *Stechas*, *Costus* rootes, Pirry and Saffron, of each one scruple, *Clare* as much as is needefull soz to make a plaister withall. If you occupie it, then warme as much as you meane to occupie at one time.

Of the paine of the Kidneies through winde. §.2.



This paine doth not appere in one place onely, but spreadeth it selfe abzoade, and hath no signes of any impostume, neither of the stone nor ague; soz the paine is moze after that one hath eaten well then before, and it is especially augmented through windie things when the meate is halfe digested. Now soz to remedie this paine through windie things, then must he beware of all kindes of Pottage, of Pease, of Beanes, &c. Item: from all manner of fruit, from Chestnuts, from Rice, from Rie bread, and from Bere; soz all these do ingender winde in the bodie. Against which are all things to be vsed which be light of digestion and expell winde, as Annis, Fennell, Comin, Caraway, the seedes of white *Sesamum*, *Agnus castus*, and Rue seedes likewise the confection of *Diacyminum*, *Diacalamintum* is very good for this.

He is also to be outwardly annoynted vpon the place of the kidneies with oile of Rue, of *Costus*, of Lillies, & with oile of *Sesamum* and afterwards to weare this plaister vpon it: Take Parsley, Smallage leaues and rootes, white Watermints, Parierom, of each one handfull, Comin, Caraway, and Will seede, of each one ounce; beate them and frie them in the oile of Will and of Rue, then make a plaister thereof and laie it vpon the kidneies: it is not onely good for all cold paines of the kidneies with winde, but also for the grauell and for the stone, and against all obstructions of the same which do procede of cold.

Of the obstructed Kidneie. §.3.



Of these forementioned reasons may easily be discerned, that the most causes of the paines of the kidneies be none other then coleries and obstructions: soz this cold applications may be vsed, the conserues of Parierom gentle which doth open all obstructions of the inner partes. In like manner also conserues of Betonie, consecret rootes of Pimpernell, Cringus roots, and Calmus. Of wines be fit for this Elecampane wine, Hyssop wine, aromaticall wine, and chiesly all spiced wine, as Claret wine, and Hippocrasse. Item, Betonie wine, *Asarabacca* wine, and wine of Parierom gentle. In like soz also all the distilled wines, o: *Aqua vite*, of these herbes also Speade, and Hony water. But he is much to be restrained from all puddle wines; soz that they

they not onely obstruct the kidneies, but also all inward parts; they ingender grauell and the stone. Item: there is also a potion described in the twelfth chapter, and eleventh §. of certaine rotes decocted which be also verie commodious for this disease.

The great Treacle or *Diateffaron* if it be knowen how to giue them in good sort, are highly commended for this purpose. This pouder following is also verie good and meete for to open the obstructions of the kidneies, and to expell the cold: Take Annis, Fennell, Spillet, Smallage seed, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Spica romana* halfe a dragma, Licorice three dragmes, Dragagant, Gum of the Cherrie tree, of each one quarter of an ounce: beate them to pouder, and take thereof about the second day alwaies one dragma with wine.

This Sirupe following hath an especiall propertie in decopiling of the obstructed kidneis: to wit, *Misua citoniorum*, *Aromaticum*, and *Oxymel* of squils with other more described before.

The Simples which do open these obstructions, be Agarick, Sarsifrage, *Mirum Solis*, Parsly of Macedonia, or Stone Parsley, white Mustarde seede, Pettie seede, red Beale porrage, Fennell rotes, Parsley rotes, and rotes of Sperage, of Smallage, and of Butchers brome, *Spicanardi*, *Spica romana*, water Cresses, garden Cresses, and Bingles; the compounds are *Diacalamintum*, *Electuarium Ducis*, and *Philantropon*.

Of the paine in the Kidneies through heat and drieth. §.4.



he signes of these hot diseases of the kidneies, are such as that they may be perceived by the heate in feeling, and all cold things are welcome to the patient, and hot things contrarie unto him, vnlesse the fulnesse of the bodie both hinder and let them.

The patient hath also great thirst at all times, and a bad stomacke; his vrine is verie little and high coloured; there swimmeth otherwhiles some fat vpon it, and the rather in yong, cholerick, & hot men; with the hot pain of the kidneies is more danger then with the cold: Therefore must one without all delaye proceed forward with all necessarie remedies; and that much rather, for that though the foresaid heate (which is mixed with a tough thicke phlegmaticke matter) the stone of the kidneies might easily grow, wherein first the liuer vaine is to be opened, afterwards the *Saphea*, and such cisterns to be ministred as may cleanse the guts, that is, such as be decocted with Quinces and dates. This following is to be oftentimes vsed: Take Coates milke twelue or sixtene ounces, melt in it Coates suet one ounce, oile of Roses two ounces, and vse them as the other. For preparatiue potions you are to make this: Take Lettice, Purslaine, Luerwort, Shepheards purse, of each one handfull, the seedes of Lettice, of Purslaine, Cardine, Roses, Butchers brome seede, Barberies, water Lillies, burnt Quozie, red and white Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar twelue ounces, then make a sirupe of it. You are afterwards to purge with sower Dates, with Cassie, with *Manna*, and with *Succo Rosarum*.

Also for this (like as in the paine of the kidneies through cold) is needefull a good order of diet. Therefore is his dwelling to be high from the grounde, and not on the water, but to open towards the East and the North, and not towards the South or against the West. His clothes are to hang loose on his body, and not girt tith or hard. Wenery is also very hurtfull for this disease. Out of these foresaid reasons may easily be noted, that soze labor is hurtfull; as to ride hard trotting hoxles, to goe vp hills and staires, and that chiefly after meate. Notwithstanding moderate exercise is more commendable than to sit still vtterly vnoccupied. Also anger, heaviness of mind, and all other motions of the same are to be eschewed. One must not eate too much, for this sickness is caused most of all through overcharging of the stomacke, or gluttony; sleeping or waking must also be moderate: for to vse too much of either of them is hurtfull. But one must chiefly restraîne from lying much vpon his backe, for thereby will the humours stick much towards these partes: therefore is the first sleepe to bee done on the right side, and then finish it on the left side. To his meate and drinke must bee taken some more heed: hee must eschewe all olde and vnleaued bread, olde fleshy, and all hearbes which make grosse humors, as Betes, Coleworts, &c. All hot and tart meates, as salte fleshy, Carlick, Onions, Leekes, and Radishes shall he forsake. In like maner must he not vse the things that doe vehemently soze vrine; as Fennell, Parsly, Smallage, and such like. But he may not eate bread which

which is light and leauened, and is two or thre daies old. Vens, Pullets, wild Duckes, yong Pigeons, Fesants, Partridges &c. will be his best meates: but he must forsake all water foules. Yong Bucks flesh, Meale, Lambe, yong mutton, Conies, Hares, and wilde Swines flesh may be eate very well, and especially yong Hogs flesh is much commended for this disease. The fruits and herbes are Barly pap, wheaten pap, Coleworts, Spinage, Gourds, Cucumbers, Melons, Abzicocks, greene fennell, and aboue all, Sage & Betonie: And in fine, all that hath a saltish and opening powler, and not hot aboue the second degre, all sortes of Cherries, and especially the kernels of the same, bee good for to cleanse the kidneies, and to breake the stone. In like manner also Hasell nuts, fresh Almonds, and Figs that be well dyed, and Raisons, be altogether much commended. This patient may eate sower Apples (but no swete) and also peaches. He must refraine from Peares (if they be not very swete, and the stones taken out of them) Pistachies, Pingles, (and sometimes nuts) be commended: but Chestnuts, Pedlars, and Seruices, are hurtfull. Of all milke Shæpes milke is the very best for the kidneies, and next to that Goates milke: but aboue all other, the whaie of milke. But the first milke after caluing or *Colostrum* must be eschewed, except that of shæpe and goates. The butter is not much commended, but Sallet oile is much more requisite. Chæse is utterly to be refrained, for it hath an especial nature to ingender grauell, vnlesse that it be permitted otherwhiles for custome sake, and that it be Chæse of a yere old, which is drie, well salted, and not rotten. And alwaies in the end of the mealeties, of confected fruits, Oliues, and Rapes, (of *Brimswicke*) are most healthfull, and *Sisarum*, Quinces. Ginger, walnuts, conserues of Pionie, of Burrage, Buglosse, of Rholes, water Lillies, and especially of Cicorie, which do open the obstruction and clenseth. Item: Vineger, the iuice of Citrons, of Limons, halfe sower, halfe swete, Pomegranates be also verie mete for this Paladie, but veriuice is forbidden.

Of spices and seedes these are good, Cinnamom, Pepper, Ginger, Saffron, Annis, Caruway, Louage seede, *Ameos*, Ruesede; but a little of each for meates.

He drinke for this patient shall be white wine, or light red wine which is not harde nor sower, but of a good and pleasant taste. The Cherrie wine doth not onely cole and moisten alone the kidneies, but also the inward parts of the bodie, therefore may the same be freely drunken. Preserued Cherries do also the same.

Thus much haue we meant to speake of the order of diet for those that be plagued and vbered with the Grauell, which may be augmented or diminished according to the qualitie of the cause.

How to assuage the paine in the Kidneies. §.5.



We will speake now first of all of some particular things which haue a secret vertue for to conueigh the medicines into the kidneies and bladder: viz. *Sarirage*, *Milium Solis*, Parsley of Parcbonia, and stone Parsley, *Cantharides*, the rootes of fennell, Sperage, and Butchers brome seede, of Melons, Gourdes, Cucumbers, and Pompeons. These following haue power for to cole the kidneies: viz. Lettice seedes, the seedes of Purslaine, Endiue, white Poppie seede, Cassell, iuice of Quinces, broad Plantaine, and such like.

The compounded things are the sirupe of water Lillies, of Vineger, and all that coleteth the liner and the spleene, whereof is written before. Afterwardes you haue in the third part in the beginning of the eight Chapter, sundrie things which are also good and verie mete, therefore are you not to leaue them vnred. But if you will haue yet more, then loke what is written of *Dia-bete*.

If any body then do mete with this disease, or feare to get the same; then must he take the vtmost greene pils of Beanes, and distill water of them, and drinke thereof two ounces tempered with Sugar. Other do temper amongst it as much water of Younds tong, and so vse it euerie daie. Take oile of Violets, of water Lillies, and such like coling things, and anoint therewith the kidneies.

You haue also in the beginning of the foresaide eight chapter, a salue called *Anodyna* which assuageth all paines. Item: Take the oile of Violets two ounces, oyle of *Sesamum*, and

and of Sweete Almonds of each one ounce and a halfe, Butter one ounce, Saffron one drag. and a halfe, Ware one ounce and a halfe, Will seede, Cammomill, Duckes greafe, of each halfe an ounce, three yolkes of Eggs; temper them all together, and make a salve thereof.

Another. Take Elderne oyle one ounce, oyle of Roses and of Violets, of each halfe an ounce, Ceruse one ounce and a quarter, Rose water one ounce, two yolkes of Eggs, Ware fine ounces: The oyle and Ware must be molten together; and let them sethe a little: when it is almost cold, then mixe the other things amongst it; and at the last the two yolkes of eggs, and ten dragmes of fine Bolus, and afterwards stirre it well about. This salve is marvellous good for all ouer heated Kidneies, and especially if one after the annoynting doe laye water Lilly leaues vpon it.

Likewise doth the Saunders salve expell all hot matter and distemperature of the Kidneies: like as the same is described in the first Chapter and 1. §.

Item, take the Saunders salve, and of that which is called *Comitissa*, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of Violets one quarter of an ounce; temper them all together, and annoynt the Kidneies with it twice or thrice a day.

The Rose salve which is described in the first part, the second chapter, and first §. and other moe which be noted in the second parte, the fourth chapter and 3. §. are altogether meete for this purpose.

Item, take Roses, Purslaine, of each one handfull, sethe them in Cow milke, and stampe them to growte: ad vnto it red Saunders powdered two dragmes, oyle of Roses as much as you will for to make a salve of it. Item take oyle of Oliue and fresh Butter, of each halfe an ounce, the iuice of *Veronica*, of *Milum Solis*, & *Marierom* gentle, of each three dragmes: let them sethe together vntill the iuice be consumed. This salve is much commended. Take the foresaide herbes, and sethe them in oyle or greafe, and wyng them thozowe a cloth.

Take Rose water and oyle of Roses, of each one ounce, Vineger one spornefull, the white of an egge, and braye them well together, and lay it blood warme ouer the Kidneies.

If the paine will not thereby be eased, then let him weare a leaden plate, full of holes, vpon the Kidneies continually: it taketh away the heate and venery. If one perceiue any grauell in the kidneies, then cut a Radish in thin slices, and frie it in Gose greafe, & lay it on the kidneies. In fine, for all such enflaming of the Raynes, there is nothing better then to bathe, and chiefly in all such waters as do run ouer iron mines. You are also to loke how to strengthen the stomacke in this disease: loke for that in the eleventh Chapter and the 4. §. vnto the end thereof, where is shewed at large what strengtheneth the stomack with heat or with cold. For this, also is conuenient all that hereafter shall be written of the grauell and the stone of the Kidneyes.

Of an hard Impostume in the Kidneies. §.6.



The Grecians do call this disease *Scleros*. The same may also be caused through two manner of meanes: first, if the matter of the impostume begin to harden through great heat, & to alter into a stone: & that at the first it be an impostum of Melancholike humours, which is especially caused of colde that hardeneth the matter. The signes of the said impostumes are sozenes, or haimes about the place of the kidneies with little or no paine at all, whereby the members doe grow leane. The vaine is wholly cleare, rawe, and verie little: and although it be (as manie famous Physicians do affirme) that this disease is not to be holpen, yet are you to vse all things for it which be herebefore described for the hardnes of the Spleen and Liuer. And first of all he is to be purged, the *Saphea* or Liuer vaine is to be opened, and afterwards the kidneies to be annoynted with Vens greafe, with the marrow of Beates sete, or with the salve *Albea*. And afterwards this plaister following is to be applied vpon it: Take Linseede, and fenegreake, of each fine dragms, Galloves, Hollyhocke seede, Will seede, and Cammomill, of each halfe an ounce, Gum, *Bellium*, and Turpentine, of each three dragmes. First dissolue the Gum in warme water, afterwards temper the rest amongst it, and so make a plaister of it. If so be then the patient haue any want of stoles, then is Cassie or *Manna* to be bled for it. This disease of the kidneies doth make also oftentimes that one cannot hold his water, yea that otherwise it passeth away from the patient vntwittingly in his sleepe, wherof we will hereafter speake and discourse a part.

Of impostumes and vlcers in the Kidneies. §. 7.



What difference is betwene the impostumes and vlcers of the kidneies, it is sufficiently declared in the eleuenth chapter, and twentie nine §. because that the kidneies be subiect to both of these maladies. Therefore we will discourse of them seuerally, and speake first of the impostumes, and therewith also shewe all that concerneth both of these diseases.

Notwithstanding that both these diseases, of Hippocrates, of Galen, and of all other learned be thought to be incurable, or that at the leastwise the same could not without great industrie and long time be holpen; for which they alleage many reasons; yet are there nevertheless many kind of meanes found, whereby the paine may be allwaged. And if so be that the same maladies thereby could not be thoroughly and perfectly healed: yet may one state them that they do not grow and waxe worse. Now then concerning the outward remedies of this disease, you haue for it salues, plaisters, and other meanes before for to laie upon it, to herewith is this remedie also much commended: which is, that one is to laie to w over all his priuities being wetted in the beated yolks of eggs, and to refresh and renue the same often.

We must also speake here somewhat of the causes of the impostume, and shewe first that the kidneies and the bladder in this paine do depend so much one vpon the other that they cannot be discerned one from the other: therefore all that we shall write hereafter are fit for both these partes.

These foresaid impostumes may proceede as well out of cold as hot matter, which commeth to fall vpon the kidneies and the bladder, and there to assemble. But if any outward cause do happen vnto it, as blowes, fells, ribings, and such like: that must be learned of the sick person. If the impostume be in the kidneies, then is there great paine in the same place, the patient cannot make his water, and there is a small ague with it. Or if the disease be in the bladder, then doth there arise a very painfull swelling about the priuities, like to womens pangs in child-bed, chiefly if it be a hot matter, which causeth also an ague. And if this doe come through cold, then is the paine and the ague more tolerable, but the making of water very grievous, and this disease lingreth long. But in case that the impostume be in the right kidneie, then doth the payne brawe vpwards: or if it be in the left kidneie, then doth the paine stretch downwards euen to the bladder; the patient hath one while cold hands, another while cold feet: & his legs on the same side will be so: the most part asleepe. Also the sick person cannot lie vpon the whole side, but must lie vpon his backe, or his side where the maladie is. Where doth come also oftentimes great binding of the body, with the first headache, watching, rednes of the eyes and face, heauie breath, and especially if the impostume be in the membranes. And if the patient do stir himselfe forcibly, then thinketh he that the impostume hangeth or sacketh.

But before we come to the remedies, there be certaine rules which are to be obserued in such like impostumes. First, in the beginning he must beware of giuing too strong purgations. Secondly, onely laxatiue things are to be vsed: as Violets, Cassie, and such like. Thirdly, if so be that the patient be plethoricke of body, you must open the Liuer vaine or Saphen. Fourthly, there must not be giuen vnto him, so long as the impostume is not ripe; any thing that forceth vrine: for thereby would the humors be driven to sinke the more vehemently vpon the kidneies, or into some other part of the bodie, whereby the disease might be increased. Fifthly, one must endeavour that the humors which doe slowe towards the kidneies, may be conueyed into the outmost members. Sixthly, and that by reason that the kidneies should not harden. Seuenthly, when the impostume is thorough ripe (which may be perceiued by the vrine) then is there to be giuen him diureticall and strong things. Eighthly, if the body be bound, then must he not be let blood; likewise also if he haue too many stoles: but all accidents are to be prevented and watched before. Nenthy, because that the kidneies be so far distant from the necke of the stomacke; therefore are the medicines which are to be taken by the mouth, so to be composed, that their vigor, through so long a distance and passage, be not enfeebled and abated. Eleuenthy, all they that haue any disease in the kidneies, are to eate and drinke but little, chiefly if there be many humors in the body present. Twelthly, if so be that the disease of the kidneies may be holpen with any milde things; then must there be no strong things to knit and draw them together that they

they cannot come to any corruption. Therefore are temperate things to be vsed vnto it, and warme and cold things to be mixed together.

Of the impostumation in the Kidneies through
heate. §.8.



Ad so to come to the remedies; if so that this impostum be caused through heat, then is it first to be opened with Clusters, as hereafter followeth: Take Galloes, Violet leaues, and Hollyhocke rootes, of each one handfull, Linseed, fenegreake seede, of each two ounces; sethe them all together, and take of this decoction twelue or sixtene ounces, oyle of Violets thre ounces, oyle of Roses thre ounces, so to strengthen the kidneies: make a Cluster thereof, and you are to vse the same thre or fouer times, if it be needefull: Or take Barly water alone, with the foresaid oyle, or Sallet oyle. But if there be any laske or scouring with it, then vse binding Clusters, and such as doe strengthen the intrailles, whereof euery where be diuers discovered.

Also the lyuer vaine is to be opened in those sick persons on the same side, and that in the arme where the disease is.

Secondly, if the patient may sustaine it, the vaine is to be opened in the hammes or bending of the knee. Or if it be not to be found, then to take and open the *Sapha*, and that alwayes in the side where the impostume is.

Afterwards cooling salues are to be vsed, or those plaisters to be layde vpon it which we haue lately described. And if the sicknes come to diminish therewith, then is it a good signe: but if the paine and the Ague do continue still, and the patient cannot make any water, or that it passe too exceedingly away from him, then is it a signe that there is an assembly of corruption in the kidneies, against which you haue also a note before, what is to be done in these hot kinde of accidents.

For this is this plaister following good: Take Roses one ounce, the seede of Purslaine, and white Poppie seede, of each halfe an ounce, Sallet oyle thre ounces, Barly meale as much as will suffice so to make a plaister. Item, take pouerd Cammomill, and Linseed oyle, of each one ounce, oyle of *Sesamum* foure ounces, Wax as much as will suffice so to make a plaister: these being made, apply them on the kidneies. Item, take the slime of Fleawort, and of Quince kernels, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Roses two ounces, Endiue water five ounces, the seede of Purslaine, of white Poppie, and Vineger, of each halfe an ounce, Barly meale as much as is needefull so to make a plaister. Item, take Hollyhock rootes, and Gallow rootes, of each one handfull, fresh figs one ounce, the marrow of Meale bones, Butter, and Ducks greafe, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of swete Almonds, and of Cammomill, of each one ounce and a halfe, Cammomill and Balme flowers, of each halfe an ounce, Barly meale, and wheate meale, as much as sufficeth so to make a plaister. This pap or plaister maturateth all impostumes.

In the beginning of these impostumes giue the sicke persons Barly water or Peade to drinke, the water of Melons and Pompeons, tempered with Barly water the space of one week. Other do ordayne this drinke: Take the sirupe of Violets, the muscilage of Fleawort, of Gallowes, of Hollyhock rootes, and the seedes of Cotton, of each halfe an ounce, Reisons (the stones taken out) one ounce, Licorice thre dragmes, Sugar eightene ounces: then make a sirupe of it, and temper a little of the iuice of Nightshade with it, and drinke it so with Barly water.

This sirupe cooleth, and therefore it is very good against the Ague, which is alwayes present with this hote impostume; it relareth, clenseth, and allwageth the paine. Afterwards is the bodie to be purged with Cassie, solwe Dates, Panna, and such like.

The Dyct.

All such patients as haue a hote impostume in their kidneies, must (as it is sayd) kepe themselves very sober in eating and drinking, and must eate none other but Barly paps, Ven brothes made solwe with Cleriuiue, flowerd Spinage, Gallowes, Drage, Lettice, Burrage

Burrage, Almond milke, and yong Bullets decocted with Gourds, &c. And this is to continue so long, untill it be openly seene and knowne that the impostume is ripe. If so be then the patient betwene meales be troubled with any great thirst, then must be giuen vnto him sugred barley water to drinke. But if so be that the Ague be very small, and that the impostume be thorough cold *Phlegma*, then must he rather drinke Beade. But if there be great heate with it, then must he leaue flesh, and wine, alwayes at the first.

But if the same be caused thorough cold, then may watred wine be allowed, but no flesh at all, chiefly Pozke and Bese; also Cheese, Pease, Beanes, unleauened bread, and Rice, be forbidden. But all field sowles, cere eggs, riuer fish, dressed with Parsly rotes and salt, are permitted for him.

Of Impostumes in the Kidneyes through colde. §. 9.



We haue admonished before that all such impostumes of the Kidneyes may also proceede of cold, and whereby the same may be knowne. For this impostume are Clusters fit to be abhibited, and then to make afterwards this potion following.

Take water Spints, Hyssope, Wormewood, rumbled Spints, Reisons, Treas, of each one ounce, Caraway, Fennell, Endiue, small Endiue, of each one quarter of an ounce, Licorice halfe an ounce, Hony nine ounces: prepare it then, and vse it as other potions. And if so be that after eight dayes there be many humors present, then first open his Lyuer vaine, afterwards the *Saphea*, and purge the *Phlegma* with *Disturbib*, and vse Clusters of herbs which be mentioned in the first potion: but put Gallowes vnto it, Hollyhock rotes, and Cammomill; also oyle of Cammomill and of *Nardus*. After the taking of this Cluster, the patient is to lye very high with his tayle, that the Cluster may the better runne towards the Raynes.

Of the Exulceration in the Kidneyes. §. 10.



This Exulceration may as well come in the Kidneyes, as in any other places of the bodie, where they with their matter and corrosion do take away the naturall operation of the Kidneyes. The causes of these vlcers may be blowes, falles, wounds, and such like: as also bloud, and other humors, which descend thitherwards, and do there exulcerate and open the Kidneyes and the bladder through their sharpnes. Item, if that any impostumation of the Kidneyes be not thorowly healed: Item, through the grauell and the stone, that do vse the Kidneyes within: also of the vse of all hote meates and spices, and of eating salt, and by doing ouergreat labour in the heate of the Sunne. All these former causes may ingender some sharp humors which fall afterwards vpon the Kidneyes, and there do corrode and exulcerate them.

The signes of these vlcers are corruption, and bloud, with tough slime, as if they were small vaines peeces, as it were flesh, which do passe away with the vrin. If so be that there be any heate with it, that is knowne by the thirst and by the feeling. The signes of the Stone are to be found in their proper place.

If so be that the disease of the Kidneyes and the bladder, with other mo such like diseases, do agree so nere together that the same may be hardly discerned, yet we will neuertheles discouer certaine especiall signes of it.

For the diseases of the Kidneyes there is no grieve in making water, like as there is in the disease of the Bladder, wherein the water is made with paine and longsome. In the vlcers of the Kidneyes are alwayes found in the vrin small peeces of flesh, like small red Cozans; where to the contrary, in the vlcers of the bladder, there auoyd great and white peeces.

If so be that any skelines be pist out with bloud, and corruption which stincketh, then doth such come out of the bladder: like as contrarywise, that which commeth from the Kidneyes doth not stincke. In the exulceration of the Bladder is losse of a little bloud; but in the vlcers of the Kidneyes much. If so be then that the Kidneyes haue any disease, then doth the patient feele paine about the Raynes: and in the disease of the bladder, there doth the patient feele paine about

bove the priuities. The corruption which commeth out of the Kidneyes is mirt together with the vrin, and doth settle in an holowes space not to the bottome of the glasse: where contrarily all that which commeth from the bladder, doth separate it selfe forthwith from the vrin, setting to the bottome of the glasse.

We are also to alledge certaine common rules for this: as first, if there be any yong cholerick person which feeleth paine in the water conduits, that the same must be forbidden Wine. Secondly, for as much as these vlcers do chiefly procede through the falling downe of any sharp humors, then it is needefull that their sharpnes and heate be alayed with sweete things. Thirdly, one must refraine from all hote, sharp, salt, bitter, and sowre things, and to vse all that is to the contrary of them. Fourthly, to drinke too much, whether it be Wine or Beere is hurtfull, that one be not thereby constrained to make much water. Fifthly, Venerie, great labour, and exercise, be very hurtfull for this disease, for that the parced Kidneyes cannot be thowoly healed without rest and quiet. Sixthly, if so be there be nothing that may hinder the letting of blood, then is the same very profitable, as be also all great purgations. Seuenthly, by reason that vomiting maketh the matter to haue recourse vnto another place, therefore is such not to be taken to be vnprofitable for this disease. Eighthly, if there be great paine with this vlceration, then must diligence be giuen first to allwage the same paine, and afterwards loke well how to cure and cleanse this disease. Ninthly, for to heale this disease, one must first begin with things which prouoke vrin gently, whereby the Kidneyes may be a little clenfed. Tenthly, all medicines which are to be taken for the diseased Kidneyes, whether it be to vomit, or otherwise, must be alwayes done fasting, and he must also fast long after it. Eleuenthly, after the myndification of the vlcers, astrigent and healing things are to be taken, tempered alwayes with ericative medicaments. Thus for to heale these vlcers these are the right meanes: If so be that the patient be hard bounden, then is he to be losed with gentle Clusters. Accordingly, if he be full of blood, he must first haue his Lyuer baine, and afterwards the *Saphen* to be opened. For his drinke, the patient is to vse Hony water, or to make this drinke following: Take twelue ounces of peeled Barly, Fennell rootes, Smallage rootes, and Payden haire, of each one handfull: seethe them all together in two pots of water, vntill that the Barly be well swollen. Afterwards take twelue ounces of Hony, and boyle it all together with the foresaid decoction: but scumme it well, and drinke thereof. If so be that the vlcer be great, and that there be neede of stronger things, then put Treos, Hyssope, and Hozehound, of each two ounces, a good pinte of water more. But if there be but a small vlcer which hath not long continued, then take Spallowes, Hollyhock seedes, the seedes of Melons, and of Pompeons, of each a like much. But you must pale the seedes, and giue thereof three dragmes at one time tempered with Beade. Afterwards shall he vse hymselfe to vomit once euery fourth day. Let this much suffice, as chiefly spoken, of the vlcers of the Kidneyes.

Of the pissing of Bloud. §. II.



As much as this pissing of bloud may be caused as well of the vlcers in the Kidneyes, as in the Lyuer, therefore we will describe it here in this Chapter. The pissing of bloud is of two sorts: the one, when one pisseth faire cleane bloud: the other, when the same is mired with matter or corruption. This pissing of bloud, commeth of inward and outward causes. The outward may be caused through falles, blowes, strong riding, insatiable venerie, great labour, of certaine meates, drincks, wounds, of a concurrence of melancholick humors which are wont to be driuen out through womens Termes, or through the Pyles. Of their inward causes are superfluitie, sharpnes of humors, and of the vrin, winds, tumors, impostumes, debilitie of the Kidneyes, and of the Bladder: then doth he feele the paine about the priuities, and the bloud is congealed, and separated from the vrin. In case that the bloud be much, and runneth out swiftly, then doth it signifie a broken baine: but if it come out slow or longsome, then an vlcer: but if the vrin be like water wherein fresh flesh is washed, then it is of a weakened Lyuer: and if so be that it do come of a superfluous bloud, then is the same to be taken by the fulnes of the bodie: but if it come through the sharpnes of the humors, then doth the patient feele a continuall burning. But before we do come to the perticular remedies, it is needefull that we do make declaration

ration of certaine common rules. First, if so be that the maladie be new, then about all things is the L^yuer vaine to be opened: and afterwards (if the cause require, and that the patient be strong inough) the *Saphen* is to be opened, thereby to deriue the blood to another place. Secondly, in the beginning are not astrigent nor binding things to be vsed, that the blood may not congeale and clod, but he must first begin with such things as do cleanse the water conduits. Thirdly, if this pissing of blood do come as an expulsion of superfluitie, or *Crisis*, then is it not to be stayed, if it be not so that thereby the naturall powers be ouermuch weakened. Fourthly, whensoever the pissing of blood, whether it be caused of the L^yuer, Kidneyes, or Bladder, be thowoly clenfed, then is the same blood to be holpen with cold and astrigent things, and to mixe amongst them Anodines. Fifthly, all such patients are to eschue great labour, venericie, hote drinks, all spices, and all hote things. Now for to come to the remedies of the same: then it is to be considered, whether this pissing of blood do procede of outward causes, which may well be perceiued by the sick person, and is also to be remedied. First of all, whether this pissing of blood haue continued long or not. Of the pissing of blood which hath not long continued, we haue hitherto spoken. But in old pissing of blood, one must begin according to the contents of the other rules, with the cleansing of the Vtreteres, which is to be done through these meanes: Take *Spayden* haire foure handfuls, *Helon* seede one ounce and a halfe, *Sugar* and *Hony*, of each nine ounces: make a clere sirupe of it, and giue it with water wherein *Helon* seede is decocted.

Another which is very good: Take fower handfuls of *Cinkfoile*, *Sugar* 9. ounces: sethe the herbes in sufficient water, then wzing it out & with *Sugar* make thereof a sirupe. This sirupe is to be giue with water wherein *Plantaine* is decocted: this sirupe healeth & clenseth certainly.

If any one fall or be beaten whereby a vaine is broken in the bodie: the liuer vaine is then to be opened, for that thereby the blood will be drawne backe which doth runne out of these places. But if that the blood do auoide in abundance, and that the patient be strong inough, then is the *Saphen* to be opened the second day afterwarde: and to the end that the blood which lieth clotted in the water conduits might be caried forth; then giue to the sicke bodie a potion wherein *fennell* rootes, the rootes of *Smallage*, *Dragon* rootes, *Aras*, *Hyssop*, *Spaiden* haire, and *Ciceres* be sodden; afterwards one dragma, or one dragma and a halfe of *Troiscis de Carabe* may be giuen him, with water wherein the seeds of *Butchers* brome, and such like is decocted, or the *Troiscis de terra sigillata*.

For this is also meete, the confection of *Philonium Persicum*, but it is not to be vsed without the aduise of a learned Physition.

Some do take also three quarters of an ounce of the conserue of *Roses*, and temper amongst it seuen graines of *Benbane* seede, and two scruples of prepared *Cozall*, which may be vsed with stealed water. It is also verie fit to vse otherwhiles one ounce or one ounce and a halfe of *Cassie*, and chiedy if there be heate with it. We haue spoken befoze of the letting of blood, and thereupon are to giue to this sicke person a profitable purgation of *Rubarbe* in substance which is beaten, and not wzing out, but in powder with *Plantaine* water: afterwards giue him one dragma of beaten *Horsetaile*, and one quarter of an ounce of *Plantaine* water, and strowe all his meates with the same herbe.

All his flesh is to be sod with *Butchers* brome seede, and vnripe *Grapes*. He is alwaies to beware of all sharpe, tarte, and salt things, and laie a plaister on the place of the maladie made of *Bolus*, and the iuice of *Sloes*, *Aloe*, *Lycium*, *Wineger*, & *Rose* water. If you will haue moe remedies, then loke into the former §. of the impostumes & vlcers of the kidneyes: And although all the same were caused of other meanes, yet shall you finde also three remedies meete for the same. And if so be that this bleeding be caused through any sharpe meate, or any composed winde, then is the patient to order himselfe, as of the letting of blood, and taking of the foresaide *Troiscis* as is beforesaid. But if there be any impostume or vlcere of the kidneyes with it which may be sene by the matter & blood: therefore haue you hereafter all that is requisite for the pissing of matter.

If any man pisse matter. §. 12.



He pissing of matter must procede out of the bladder, kidneyes, or some of the vppermost parts; as from some vlcere of the sides, vlcere of the lights, the liuer, &c. the which may procede from some outward causes, as of blowes, falls, wounds, strong diureticall medicines, and such like. The inwarde causes may be vn-

If 1

cleane

cleane impostumes, blcers, superfluous, tough, and grosse humours, wind or stone, which do settle there and make some excoziation. The signes of these accidents may be perceiued easily by the paine of the same place, and by the declaration of the patient. This infirmite is thus to be holpen: Take peeled Melonsede, Cucumber sede, Courd sede, and Pompeon sede, of each one ounce and a quarter, fine Bolus, *Gummi Arabicum*, Frankinsence, and Dragon blode, of each fine dragmes, *Opium*, one dragme and a halfe, the sede of Smallage one dragme: Make Trociskes thereof with the muscilage of Quince kernels, and giue it the sicke folkes euerie day the waight of one quarter of an ounce with the sirupe of Popie heads. For this is also to be used consolidating and mundifying things, as hereafter followeth: Take peeled Melon sede, the seds of Hollyhockes, and nightshade, of each halfe an ounce, bitter almondes, Pompeon sede, fresh Padden haire, Treas, and Licozice, of each halfe a dragme: make a confectiõ thereof with Sugar, or with clere Hony. For mundification are also fit, Barley water mead, the decoction of Figs, of Hozehound, and Padden haire decocted with milke. Now for to heale you are to take great and small Comfrey, of each one quarter of an ounce, Dragon blood, Frankinsence, *Spistike*, and fine Bolus, of each one dragme, parched Rubarbe, the iuice of Sloes, and *Spistle sede*, of each halfe a dragme, *Indie Spica* halfe a scruple, Sugar as much as you please, make a confectiõ thereof. This sirupe following may also be prepared: Take Licozice one quarter of an ounce, Padden haire, and Hounds rib, of each two handfuls, peeled Melon sede, Pompeon sede, Cucumber sede, and Courd sede, of each one dragme, white Poppie sede, Hollyhocke sede, and Muscilage of Quince kernels, of each halfe an ounce, Dragagant, and Gum, of each the dragmes, Rubarbe, Roses, of each one ounce and a halfe, white Sugar nine ounces; make a clere sirupe of it. The *Trocisci de Alkekengi* which is of winter of Cherries, are surpassing good in this disease: and not onely for this, but also for all other diseases of the Kidneies: Give one dragme thereof, or one dragme and a halfe with Coates milke, or Plantaine water. Also for this disease is Hony water to be spouted into the yearde: and when the patient hath kept it in a certaine season and piss it out againe, then is this following to be used: Take Ceruse, *Sarcocolla*, Gum, Frankinsence, *Opium*, Dragon blood, of each halfe a scruple; temper it with fower ounces of womans milke, and spout one ounce thereof at one time through the yeard. In like manner shall he drinke Radish water, and water of Hozle radish, or spout it in. For this must also this order be obserued: to wit, that he now vse consolidating, & then againe mundifying things, and do alter them according as occasion serueth. Item, Take oile of Roses two ounces, oile of *Spistle*, and the iuice of Plantaine, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Trociscorum de Terra sigillata*, de Carabe, of each one dragme, Wineger one quarter of an ounce, Mace as much as is needefull for to make a salue. This salue for the pissing of blood and water is to be rubbed on the place of the Kidneies, and also round about the pziuities aboue and beneath, being rubbed well in, and then well couered with warme clothes.

Of outward vlcers of the Kidneies. §. 13.



These blcers outwardly in the Kidneies are wont to be caused if one lie vpon his backe, then are the places of the Kidneies red, & do come to erulcerate. Now whē this is perceiued, then is there a plaister to be made with the meal of millet, and with Bannicke meale, and to be laid thereon, and then you are to strowe it with Willow leaues, and to moisten the heated place with cold Rose water, or to laie any coling things vpon it. These salues following are also mete for this, viz. salue of Ceruse, Poplar salue, Saunders salue, and other coling salue of *Galen*, Wine leaues steeped in Rose water and thimne beaten, Led also which is full of holes wozne vpon the raines. Item: Take oile of Roses tempered with a little Wineger and laid often vpon it. If that there do then appeare bladder or blisters which do breake open: then are they to be cured with coling salues, and dried vp with the salue of Ceruse, or *Album coctum*.

All these foresaid sickeneses and diseases are the true messengers of the most grieuous disease of the stone, or grauell of the bladder and the Kidneies, whereof we will hereafter further discourse and write. But we will first of all prescribe a brieue order of diet for all them that be infected with these terrible diseases, as the paine of the Kidneies, impostumes, and blcers.

The

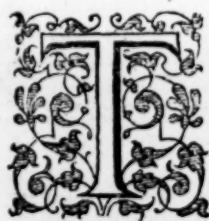
The order of diet. §.14.

All meates of milke, of wheate meale, of the crums of bread, Barly paps, Datsen paps, are verie commodious for this disease. In like maner all field sowles which are to be eaten, as Partridges, Pheasants, Doves, turtle Doves, Kibbes, and yong mutton, if it be vnterly without an ague: but if so be that there be a great heat with it, then is he to vse Melons, and Peaches, which be verie ripe.

Hasell nuts, Almonds, Pistacies, Pingles, and such like may be also eate. Item, yong Hens, rare eggs, Henboth wherein Purslaine, Lettice, Melon seede, Pompeons, Gourds, Cucumbers, or any other cooling things haue bene sodden: all riuier fish that haue scales, fraied, are to be tollerated. Greene herbes, as Dage, Hallowes, Purslaine, and Lettice, are also verie meete for him. His best drinke were indeede Barly water; but if he will drinke wine, and so there be no ague with it, then may he drinke good thicke red wine tempered with water: Asses milke is marvellous good for him: and if the same cannot be gotten, then may one take Goates milke. It is before admonished that euerie such patient is to beware of all Sharpe, hote, bitter, and swate things, and chiefly of all fruit, whether they be greene, or dryed.

The seuenteenth Chapter.

Of the Grauell, Sand, or Stone of the Kidneyes,
and of the Bladder.



This Stone or Grauell, hath his principall offspring in the Kidneyes, in the Bladder, and seldome in the hollownes of other inward parts, as of the Luer, &c. The cause of it is commonly by inheritance, like as the Gout or Podagra, the Leprosie, and other moe. Also these diseases do come through a weake Stomack and Luer that ingender much tough and grosse slyme. In like sort also of a foggie eye, sursetting by meate, or drinke, the feeding of ouermuch slymie meates, the which do obstruct not onely the Kidneyes, but also all other inward parts, as hath bene sayd, and hinder them that they cannot haue their right operation: the which may euidently be seene in yong children, which are most subiect to this disease, for that they eate much Milke, whereby the stone and grauell is most of all ingendred, of which the grossest sinketh into the bladder with the vyne, where the same lyeth and dryeth, and is confirmed to the hardnes of a stone: Like as we for an example cannot other wise liken this foresaid grosse matter of the stone, then with the matter of a tyle stone, which is first a weak tough slimie earth, afterwards dryed, & at last burnt & baked in an ouen to a hard stone. The stone of the bladder differeth also much from the stone of the kidneyes, for it is whiter, harder, & greater then the stone of the kidneyes.

This foresaid stone or grauell are knowne by these signes. Lyeth he in the Bladder: then must the patient often rub his priuities with his hand, his member is alwayes erected. Also in yong children they feele most paine about their priuities: the vyne passeth from him with labour and very great paine, and otherwhiles the Arlegut thereby descendeth. But if it be the stone of the kidneyes, then do they feele great paine in the raynes of the backe, as if were the Collick, or were paine of the guts, because that the paine draweth downewards. As sone as they stirre themselves, then doth the paine increase: they are much inclined to vomiting and casting, their body is bound, their vyne is rawe and waterish, they are alwayes prouoked to pisse, neuertheles they cannot be rid of it without very great paine: therefore can this growing and confirmation of the stone in these parts of the kidneyes not be without great paine and griefe. It is also euidently and sufficiently well knowne to each mans eyes, where the paine remaineth in one place that the vyne doth auoid with grauell, sand, tough slyme, yea sometimes mist with bloud and other things, and the kidneyes be full of heate.

Afterwards this griefe and paine stretcheth euen to the conduits of the vyne, and principally in fat folks, and before euen to the priuities, and then especially where they would make water. But because there be many deceived in the knowledge of the stone, and aduidge otherwhiles the Collick for the stone, and so come to vse contrary medicines: therefore it is not

without great neede that we make a declaration of both their differences.

The first is this, that the paine of the Kidneies is not so sharp as the paine of the Colick. Secondly, the paine of the Colick doth appeare beneath in the right side, and stretcheth her from thence vpwards towards the left side. Contrarywise, the paine of the kidneies doth begin from aboue, and so descendeth softly dotonewards euen vnto the place where it doth settle it selfe, and stretcheth her a little moze towards the back. Thirdly, the paine of the kidneies is much moze forcible when he is fasting, and the paine of the Collick is by fasting and eniptines eased. Fourthly, the Collick commeth vpon a sudden. And to the contrary, the paine of the kidneies commeth in a longer time. Fifthly, the Collick will be taken and dzenen away when the wind and the ozdure may haue their expulsion o: auoydance by Clifters, but the paine of the grauell not. Sixtly, all Saxifrages and all other things that breake the stone are good fo: the kidneies and not fo: the Collick. Lastly, there is found in the vaine grauell and sand, and not in the collick o: paine of the guts.

By all these foresaid declarations one may easily adiudge whether this disease be in the kidneies o: in the bowels.

For to hinder and restraine the ingendring and growing of the grauell and stone. §. 1.



As that we may orderly procede herein, hede is first of all to be taken how the matter, whence the sand and stone is ingendred, may be taken away, and how that the vnnaturall heate may be tempered, the which is first to be done thzough these things that do purge the same matter, as hereafter folloiweth.

Take *Electuarium Indum* thze dzagmes, *Agaricu* one scruple, Ginger fine greynes, temper them with a little white wine, & dzinke it vp, & fast thereupon foure howzes, then dzinke a cruse of sugred Barly wafer, and then eate foure howzes after it.

Or take *Electuarium Diapheniconis* one quarter of an ounce, Turbith one dzagme, Ginger one scruple, Salt of Indie thze greynes, giue it him with water wherein *Milium Solis* is decocted, and then made warme with Sugar.

One moze milder: Take Turbith one dzagme and a halfe, *Hermodactyli* one dzagme, *Diagridi* fine greynes, Salt of Indie two greynes, Ginger halfe a scruple, Annis and Pastiche, of each thze greynes, Sugar pennets one ounce, white Sugar halfe an ounce, keepe them all together in thze ounces of the water of Smalage o: the water of Payden haire throughout the whole night: after that lozing it out well and dzinke it, if so be that there appeare any phlegmatick matter, then may the patients vaine be opened: but if so be that the matter fall into the stomach, then is it aduised that the patient be made to vomit, and how that the same is to be effected, loke fo: that in the Register: fo: that thozow vomiting the matter will be especially dzawne away, which would run towards the Raynes. Fo: this vomiting, be Radishes, D: rage seedes, the middlemost peles of Elber, and *Nux vomica* to be vsed.

Some vse Clifters, but they must be very easie and milde: but Suppositoies are much moze praised fo: this disease. Item, all things which moue vaine, do also let & hinder the growing of the stone o: grauell. But first the mildest are to be begun withall, like as with these folloiwng, as Licozire &c. and where as is heate, Pelon seede, Pompeon seede, Gourd seede, Cucumber seede, Sperage rootes, o: the water of them, fresh Fennell, Hollyhock rootes and the flours.

Afterwards are stronger things to be vsed, as Smalage, Payden haire, Dyp Fennell, yellow wild Rapes, *Milium Solis*, Louage, wild Smalage, Harts tong, wild Thyme, Pistacies, Radish seede, Cassels, Whistlin seede, and such like, the ashes of Hares heds, of Magtailes, prepared Bucks blond, *Lapis Spongia*, and Jewes stone: of all these foresaid things may Sirups, Iuleps, Confections, Powders, Pills, Salues, Bathes, & such like be prepared: and because the vnnaturall heate is one of the chiefe occasions of the stone o: grauell, therefore are the foresaid coling things to be vsed, and also all such medicines which in this former Chapter & 8. §. be described.

To let the growing of the stone. §. 2.

Ndw fo: to let that the stone may grow no moze, that consisteth in two kinds of causes, viz. that one preuent the tough phlegme from growing which is the cause of the stone, and that the vnnaturall heate get not the maistrie.

But

But in this it chiefly consisteth, that one keepe a good order of dyet, and eschue all that may cause that grosse matter, as Pilke, and all that is dyest with it, fresh Cheese, Cow beefe, Swines fleshy, Goats fleshy, Gase, and all water sowles, all grosse fish, & all other that be without scales, all that is not well baked, sandie, or is ground with a new sharped stone, Rice, Pease, Beans, Coleworts, solwe fruits, vnripe Apples & Peares, Citrons, &c. and hard sod Eggs be also very hurtfull, troubled water, red thicke wine, Pusht and Bare are also to be eschued.

But to the contrary, all such light meates are to be vsed, as light and hard baked bread which is a day or two old, wherein fennell, Annis, Caruwayes, or *Nardus* seedes are baked, Hens, Pullets, Partridges, Capons, yong Button, Goats, Turtle doves, Doves, and all wild sowles, but especially Wagtailes are very mete for this sickness. He may also eate all Riuer fish which haue scales, as they that are prepared with Parsly; in like manner also poched Eggs. For his drinke he shall take faire white wine tempered with a little water, wherein the seede of Smalage and fennell seede is decocted. Heade may also be vsed in stead of his drinke and for a medicine. He may also drinke sometimes Pease broth, and the broth of Lentils wherewith Parsly is decocted; but he is not to eate the Pease at all. The kernels of bitter Almonds, of Peach stones, of Pryme stones, Pingles, Pistacias, and Nissons is he to eate: in fine, he must eschue all which causeth the matter of the stone to increase, and vse all that coleyth the vnnaturall heat, and expelleth the matter of the stone, for which these things following are fit, and be very good, as *Agaricus*, *Hermodactyl*, *Turbit*, wild Saffron seede, rootes of Polipodie, and the smell of the wine Vellebo, and also a little rote thereof steeped a day and a night in water, and the same water drunke also otherwhiles.

Amongst the compounded things there is *Benedicta laxativa* or *Inda*, which cleanse the Kidneies, the Bladder and Vreteres of all phlegme. The same doth also Casse giuen with diureticall things, and with beaten Licorice, for the same drieth not only the grauell, but hindereth and letteth also the growing of the stone, and alayeth the heate, and if so be that one giueth it him with the seede of *Agnus Castus* or Licorice, then doth it help the raynes maruellously, and stirreth no other humors then those whereof the stone doth grow.

Further, there be other things moe which do cleanse the vreters or conduits of vyne, and open them, as the water of Hyssop, of white water Spints, and of Parierom, of Smalage, of Parsly, of Betony, of Penniroyall, of *Milum Solis*, and about all other the water of Wellyhocks. Of Sirupes which be most vsed, are the sirupe of Hyssope, *De Calaminibus*, *Acerosus compositus*, *Oxymel compositum*, and all other *Oxymels*, but especially the *Oxymel* of Squills, and for example, these compounded things ensuing may be made: Take *Oxymel* of Squills one ounce, sirupe of Hyssop halfe an ounce, water of Harts tong, and of wild Cucumbers, of each one ounce and a halfe. This drinke is to be taken certaine dayes together vntill one may evidently see that the disease evidently in the colour of the vyne, and in other signes frameth it selfe on the better side, by the which the Physicians haue their especiall marks and signes.

And in case there be such matter present which may cause the stone to growe, then are the prepared through the first receited waters, sirupes and such like for expulsion; and when now the matter is prepared, then is the patient to be purged, which may be done through this ensuing or such like meanes.

Take the Confection *Benedicta* one ounce, or one ounce and a halfe, or somewhat lesse, according to the importance of the cause, then temper the together with three ounces of Parsly water.

Or prepare this following which clenseth much the Kidneies and expelleth the matter of the stone maruellously: Take Centorie, Peeled wild Saffron seede, of each one dragma, prepared *Agaricus*, powned *Hermodactyl*, of each sower scruples, *Diagridion* fire graines, Annis, fennell, Licorice, the seede of Smalage, and Ginger, of each halfe a scruple, Sugar pennets one ounce; Steepe them all together the space of sower and twentie howers in foure ounces of the water of mayden haire, afterwards wzing it out and drinke it. Lastly, you are to gouerne your selfe as in all other purgations.

This following is also much commended for to preuent the grauell: Take about Saint Johns tide Spillet as it standeth and blometh, then burne it with herbe and rote, and drinke thereof euening and morning two or three ounces with wine, and then fast two howers vpon it, and do so five or sixe daies together: it is said and also taken for to be certaine, that doing this one shall be clere and free from the grauell halfe a yere.

But if in this disease there happen great paine with it, thzough which the Whistitions are much hindered that they cannot vse the due remedies; then do they notwithstanding advise first of all, that at the first one is to begin with things which alaiie the paine, or at the least do ease it: for which are Clifters to be vfed made of these herbes following, as Gallowes, Hollyhocks, Bâtes, Bearefoote, Bellitozie, and such like, with the oile of Violets, with Cassie, with *Hierapicra*, or the confection *Benedicta* tempered amongst it.

Secondly when the foresaide paine is a little swaged, then are these things following to be vfed: Take water Cresses, Gallowes, Hollyhocks, Percurie, Parow, Cinkfoill, *Pencedanum*, the herbe of Pew, and Rue, of each one handfull, *Calmus*, Barley, of each thze ounces, Bzarme, Linsede, of each a little: let all these sethe together in sufficient water, and take twelue or threene ounces, temper amongst it *Hierapicra*, *Benedicta*, and *Lithontribon* of each half an ounce, oile of Cammomil, & of Rue, of each one ounce: This Clister loseth, expelleth wind, & also the paine.

Item: Take afterwards of the foresaide herbes, but somewhat more water Cresses, and a fewe Parie golde, and make a bathe thereof and set the patient in it euen by to the nauell: you are also to put some stalkes of Rapes vnto it, then will it be the better.

Thirdly, take Gallowes, Hollyhocke rootes, water Cresses, Cammomill, Spaiden haire, Linsede, and fenugreke seede, of each two ounces; let them all sethe in sufficient water, wet a swollen cloute or sponge therein and laie it continually warme vpon the place of the paine. The sodden herbes are you to poune small & temper with Cammomill oile, and so laie them vpon it. The place of the paine is sometimes also to be annointed with these things following: Take the grease of Hens, of Gese, Hogs grease, fresh butter, oile of *Camelina*, & of Violets, of each half an ounce, oile of Cammomils & ware, of each two drag. then let them melt together by the fire. But this is not continually to be vfed, to the end that the raines be not thereby too much weakened & infeebled.

After this annointing are these plaisters following to be laid vpon, it which do allwage the paine, and will open the conduits of bzine: Take thze ounces of Wheaten meale, of fenugreke meale, of Linsede, beaten Cammomils, of each one dragme and a halfe, Salt one ounce; then make it to a plaister with the oile of *Camelina*, and with the oile of Scorpions, and then laie it warme vpon it. You shall find hereafter many things moe which alaieth paine also.

Of those things which expell Grauell and do breake the stone. §.4.



If there be any feare had of the stone or grauell, or that one perceiue it already, then may these things be vfed for it: Take oile of Lillies, of Scorpions, and of earthwozmes of each a like much, annoint the raines verie fat with it by the fire or by a warme ouen. And if you cannot get this Scorpion oile, then take only the other oiles.

Item, eate euery morning 6. or 7. bitter Almonds, or Peach kernels like as is counselled before.

There is also much commended the bone of the Hare, which we call the Hares spring poune, and the same drunken with fresh bzothe: when as any bodyes raines beginne to graue him, then is the red oile of S. Johns wort esteemed to be verie good for to annoint him therewith.

Item, take 18. or 20. Peach kernels, one quarter of an ounce of Raisons; eate them together and drinke a good draught vpon it, of Pease bzothe sod without salt or suet: for this is also much commended, the Cicers or Spanish Pease which haue a speciall vertue against the grauell.

Item: take Hollyhocke rootes two pound; the same being made cleane, poune them and sethe them in two or thze quarts of water vntill the halfe, and then straine this bzoth thzough a cloth, whereof you are euery morning to drinke a good pull. Afterwards vse the foresaide potion of Cicers, and Peach kernels; and when you haue a pound of this drinke, then mixe amongst it one dragm of beaten Cinnamon, and as much of the Swams which groweth on the wilde Rose bzanches. You may also sethe Parsley rootes, Sperage rootes, & fennell rootes with it, & drinke often of it: this is especially commended for them that would withstand the grauell.

Item take the rootes of Pimpernell halfe an ounce, *Bistorta*, Wormentill, Polypody rootes and Annis, of each one quarter of an ounce, Centian, fenugreke, *Oculicancrorum*, Peach kernels, Louage seede, the seede of Smalage, Pickerels bones, shales of Hasell nuts, the seede of Gallowes, and Cammomill of each one dragme; make a powder thereof, and take thereof the waight of one dragme or one dragme and a halfe euery day.

The auncient Whistitcons accustome to make this potion following, the which they doe call
williams

Williams potion : Take one handfull of Alehose, yong Akozne buds halfe so much, the herbe *How to*
spoule eare a little, water and wine, of each a pinte; let them sethe together untill about the make wills
half be sodden away, then straine it thozough a cloth, and drinke thereof in the euening and mo-
ning, each time about thre spoonefuls, and euery fourtene dayes make a fresh.
ams potion.

Powe the wine of winter Cherries is to bee prepared, is amongst others declared in the
eight Parte: it openeth the conduits of vaine maruellously, expelleth the matter, whence the
stone and grauell both growe very vehemently, as well out of the kidneies vretres, as also of
the bladder.

And now further to come to a right pzoesse of the Grauell, take at the first five ounces
of fresh oyle of swete Almonds, and drinke the same warme. Two howers afterwarde take
a good draught of this potion following, and afterwarde as often as you will: Take
shalloues with the hearbe and rotes, and Hollihocke leaues, of each one handfull, Licorice
one ounce, fresh Butter and clere Honie, of each two ounces; sethe them together in suffi-
cient water, or in the water of Cresses: and so drinke thereof as is expressed. The next daye
one is to take this confection following early in the morning: Take fresh Cassie and *Benedi-*
cta, of each halfe an ounce, *Spec. Indini* one dragme and a halfe; temper them together, and
then strowe them with Sugar and Licorice. Having taken this, then is the partie to take there-
upon presently a good draught of the water of Cresses: and through this abuse hath many a
one been released of the grauell.

Dr take of the Confection *Benedicta* five or sixe dragmes, Turpentine washed in water of
shalloues, one quarter of an ounce; temper them all together with thre ounces of Agrymonie
water, and then drinke it as warme as you can: it is marvellous good against the stone.

Necessity both otherwhiles require, that these Confections following are to bee given to
the patient: Take the Confection *Benedicta* and walst Turpentine, of each thre dragmes
and a halfe, Jewes stone which is prepared with water wherein Pillet is decocted, one
dragme; temper them all together with pouned Licorice, and then giue it him with Cresses
water. Men doe also take sometimes for it halfe a dragme of prepared blood of a Bucke also,
which is not amisse.

Hereafter followeth one other necessary meane or pzoesse: and first in case the stone be in *Drills for the*
the bladder, then are these Pills to be prepared which doe vehemently breake the stone: Take
the fruites of Balsam, Radish seede, and the seede of great Smallage. Some doe take for this the
seede of Stone Parsley, *Opopanacum*, Capers rootes, bitter Almonds, Sarifrage, Squinanth
Cipers rootes, Indy Spica, Cassie wood, Harts tongue, wilde Rue, Gentian, Hartwort,
Asarabacca, Cardamome, *Ammoniacum*, *Scrapinum*, *Edellium*, long Pepper, and Calmus, of each
a like much: the Gummes are to be molten in sufficient Balsam, temper the rest amongst them
beaten small, and make it into Pills: take of them one dragme at once, with the foresaide
Confection of *Benedicta*, and of Turpentine, as is before rehearsed: when he is purged, then
take Pellitory of the wall, shalloues, of each one handfull and a halfe, Lincseede, fenegrake
seede, and Hollyhocke rootes, of each one handfull, fiftene or sixtene Sebestes, Licorice, pou-
ned Pillet, of each halfe an ounce: cut all that is to be cut, and let it boyle in fresh broth.
Take twelue or fiftene ounces thereof, and temper amongst it one ounce of *Benedicta*, oyle of
bitter Almonds thre ounces, slight Sugar one ounce and a halfe, Salt one dragme, and one
yolke of an egge: then mixe them together, and let this Clister very warme.

And if that this purgation (by reason of the vnpleasantnes of the Turpentine) went against
his stomacke, then may he vse one of these insuing: Take fresh Cassie one ounce and a quarter,
oyle of swete Almonds sower ounces, temper them together, and drinke it.

Dr take *Electuarium de Sebesten* and Cassie, of each halfe an ounce, *Electuarium Indum*
one dragme and a halfe, mixe them all together with Sugar, if you will put therewith one
dragme of Jewes stone, and make it to a drinke with Pillet water; then doth it expell the
better.

After this are you to come to the things which doe breake the stone easily and open the passa-
ges of vaine. For to atchieue this, then is the body first of all to be purged, and afterwards are
these following and elected remedies to be vsed.

To breake the stone is this following very forcible: Take prepared Buckes blood one
dragme and a halfe, alhes of Scorpions one scruple, ten graines of good Treacle burnt and
pze

By what
mean: the
stone is to
be broken,

prepared glasse one dragma, then sette Radishes, Sarifrages, winter Cherries in water or wine, and then take foure ounces of this broth, or as much Beane water, and make the foresayd a potion, and vse it fasting in the morning. In case that for all this the paine remaineth, indur-
ring, then take scraped Licorice, and Cozans, of each one quarter of an ounce, poured Spillet, Payden haire, of each halfe an ounce, sette them together in water of Agrimonie, Bellitorie, or Cammomill water: take of this decoction two ounces and a halfe, *Spec. Lichontribon* one quarter of an ounce, *Philonium Romanum* two scruples, good wine two ounces, Sugar one ounce; then temper them all together vnto a potion, and drinke it thre howes befoze meate. Item, take prepared Bucks blood one dragma and a halfe, *Oxymel* of Squils halfe an ounce, Wine where-
in Radishes be decocted, foure ounces, then make a potion of it. Further it is necessarie that the stomach be strengthened, and the hote matter of the kidneies expelled, for which is more alio the foresaid Clister, if there be put vnto it one ounce of Cassie moze. Or vse this following: Take twelue ounces of Linsede oyle, oyle of bitter Almonds fixe ounces, Hens greast foure ounces, or in lade of that, as much fresh Butter, two yolks of Eggs, then mire them all together, and minister it warme. You may also giue vnto the sick bodie oyle of sweete or bitter Almonds, of each thre ounces and a halfe or moze to drinke; for it is found, that the same taken by the mouth hath moze asswaged the paine, then that which hath bene used in the Clisters. It is in like sort found to be very good, that the place be somented with these things following where the paine is, and after that annoynted: Take Cammomill, Payden haire, Linsede, & Hollophock rotes, of each one lb. sette them all together in white wine and water: then make a sponge wet in it, and lay the same wung out very warme vpon it. For the annoynting may many things be used or like as hereafter followeth: Take oyle of Scorpions one ounce, oyle of sweete Almonds and Butter, of each halfe an ounce, Pulcilage of Linsede, of Fenegrake, of each five dragmes, Sarifrage one dragma, and a little molten Ware, temper them all together. The last and highest meane for the intollerable paine is, that the *Narcotica* be used, which be things that take away all sence and feelings, thus: Take the first described decoction, and put therein of the confectiō of *Lichontribon* two dragmes, *Philonium Romanum* one dragma, oyle of sweete Almonds one quarter of an ounce, good white wine two ounces, mingle them all together, and giue thereof to drinke. Will you then make a Clister of it, then take of the foresaid decoction about two ounces, oyle of sweete Almonds foure ounces, *Philonium* one dragma, Wine thre ounces, and then minister it like as is accustomed.

These two proceedings in this sicknes I thought good to describe thus at length, that every one might know how to chole of the medicines following what is most needefull for him.

First, we will describe all such things which are to be eaten, and may be used in the bodie, and first of all beginning with the confectiōs: Take sponge stones, Hollophock seade, Spillet, and Pedlar stones, of each halfe an ounce, prepared Bucks blood one dragma, Jewes stones, and Cromell seade, of each one scruple, great and small Endiue seade, and Pykes bones (which be vnsodden) of each halfe a drag. Sugar as much as of all the rest: but the Sugar decocted with the water of winter Cherries, and then make Tabulats thereof, and take of them every time halfe an ounce.

Or take Pomatestone, Jewes stone, and burnt glasse, of each one dragma and a halfe, prepared Bucks blood thre dragmes, Cromell seade halfe an ounce, beate them all small together, Sugar as much as all the rest both wey, make with the water of winter Cherries, or the water of Pallowes, Tabulates of it, and take halfe an ounce at once thereof. Item, take foure ounces of Distacies, steape them two daies and two nights in the water of winter Cherries, take off the peles, and chop them very small, Cromell seades halfe an ounce, the rotes of Cingfoile, Hartwong, wild Thyme, Rue seade, of each one dragma and a halfe, Sugar fixe ounces: then sette it with the water of Sarifrage, make Tabulates of it, and vse them as befoze.

Another. Take prepared Bucks blood one dragma and a halfe, the iacob bones of Pickard two scruples, Jew stones and Spunges stones, of each halfe a dragma, Melon seade, Hollophock seade, Licorice, the seade of Smalage, *Cucubus*, of each one scruple, Sugar two ounces and a halfe, make a confectiō thereof with the water of Pallowes.

Fennell seede and Comin rawe or confected and eaten, be good for all diseases in the kidneies of the stone and gravell. The Confectiō *Iustini* or *Lichontribon*, as they be prepared at all well furnished Apothecaries are also marvellous good for this vse.

In like manner also bitter Almonds confected and eaten expell the matter whence the Stone both growe.

This following is also a very sumptuous Confection: Take burnt glasse, and burnt Cresshoppers, whereof the feete and wings be cast away, of each three dragmes, the ashes of a burnt Hare and prepared Bucks blood, of each one ounce, Plantain seed, Starch, the seede of Butchers hyson, of each two dragme and a halfe, *Sirupi Aethiopi Compusiti* thirty ounces, Sugar pennets 24. ounces, then make an electuary thereof. This foresaid Confection both cleanse all kinde matter and grauell, it breaketh the stone, and openeth all conduits of vyne if one take every morning the space of twertene dayes three dragmes, with the water of Gromill, or Rabbitt water.

The Confection of a calcined Hare is thus to be prepared: Take Jewes Stone and Sponge Stones, of each one dragme, the powder of a burnt Hare one quarter of an ounce, *Spes Libanum* one quarter of an ounce, Sugar sower ounces: make thereof with Sarsifrage water a Confection. This foresaid Electuary purgeth vyne, and cleanseth all the vessels of all kinde and grauell, and expelleth also all windes: take thereof two or three dragmes with the water of Sperage betimes in the morning, and also before both the meale tides.

Item take yelloe wilde Rape seede, Conitt, Balsam wood, Parsly seede, Sweete Calamus roots, Calmus, Annis, Asarabacca, Fenell and Cinnamon, of each one dragm, the seede of Butcher of Endive, of small Endive, of Lettice and *Crisa Marina*, of each one drag. *Lapis Lyncis*, Spongie stones, and burnt Glasse, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as is needfull for to make a Confection. One may take a dragme or two thereof with a little water: all according to the importance of the cause.

The Confection of horse Rabbishes is thus to be prepared: take well clenfed horse Rabbishes cut them in round slices, and let them stand a weepe in Vineger untill that they be very soft; then putte strong wine upon it, and renewe the same every day, and that the space of six or seven dayes: at length see the them away therewith, and rub them thorow a strainer: Afterwardes take thereof one pound, & one pound and a halfe of clarified Honey, then let them seethe together by a gentle fire, stirring them alwayes about untill they be decocted, as becometh for a Confection. Afterwardes let it be somewhat cold, and put the spices unto it, which hereafter in the eighth part in the first chapter, of Calmus are described. Take in the seed of the same halfe an ounce of Cinnamon, Ginger three quarters of an ounce, Cardamome, Cucubes, Cloues and Nutmegs, of each one dragme and a halfe: temper them together, therewithall the stinking of the horse Rabbishes in the head is abated & taken away. This confection is not only good for the stone and grauell, but also for the stomacke: it warmeth the inward parts and belapeth the paine in the belly, which proceedeth of colde: it is a right Treacle for the common people, and an especiall medicine for the Scourie.

The confection of electuary of horse Rabbishes.

There is also another Confection prepared for this (called *Electuarium de Cineribus*, which is a Confection of ashes as followeth hereafter:) Take ashes of burnt Scorpions one quarter of an ounce, *Cantarides* without heads and winges one dragme, prepared Bucks blood one quarter of an ounce, burnt glasse, ashes of brist Coleworts, Hares ashes, ashes of Magtaylor, and ashes of egshells whereof Chickens have bene hatched, of each two dragmes, Jew Stones, stones of Dre gals, Pepper, wild yelloe Rape seede, Carulway, Hollyhock seede, Gum, Sarsifrage, and Crapinill seedes, *Seseli*, Balsam fruits, and the wood *India Spica*, Hayden haire, Mallowes, Pompeons, Cucumbers, and Gourds seedes, of each one dragme, of Roses as much as sufficeth for to make a confection of it, take thereof morning and evening the quantitie of a hassell nut at once tempered with the decoction of Cicers.

The confection of ashes.

Item, take Spithivate, or new Treacle, halfe or a whole dragme, with the decoction of Cicers, they expell and break the grauell and the stone, and also ease the paine, especially if it be used after bathing.

Amongst all other confected things, are especiall for the stone and grauell (chiefly if one want warmth) the preserved Elecamparis rootes, Wimpernell rootes, Calmus, yelloe Rapes, Parseneps, conserve of Gilloflowers, and of Piony: the water Cresses eaten for a Sallet, expelleth the stone, the grauell and vyne.

There be divers powders made for this which follow hereafter: Take prepared Bucks blood halfe an ounce, *Lapis lyncis*, *Lapis cancrorum*, and Peach kernels, of each one dragme, the seede

seede of Parsly and Smalage, of each halfe an ounce, beate them all together, and temper them all together, vse thereof in the morning, at noone, and in the euening halfe a dragma or moze at once with that kind of Beane water which immediately is described hereunderneath, and that so long, vntill the stone annoyd, and that you perceiue no moze grauell.

Item, take Sarifrage, Annis, Pepper, the seede of Smalage, Cromell seede, and Sperage seede, of each a like much, beate them all together very small, and let them passe through a Sieve, then take thereof halfe a dragma or a whole dragma with hony water, or with Wine.

This following hath oftentimes bene approued: Take parched Peach kernels halfe an ounce, Spedlar stones one ounce, poune them very small, and then giue him a dragma thereof with the water of Sarifrage wherein Cinquefoile hath bene decocted.

There is also one ounce, or one ounce and a halfe of *Oxymel* to be put thereto, and to temper the same with any water, that also expelleth the stone: but one must beware therein for vsing any hote things.

This drinke is also very requisite for this: Take wild Whittell rootes which be the rootes of Wallell and rootes of Smalage, of each one handfull, Annis halfe a dragma: seethe them all together in a quart and a halfe of water vnto the halfe.

Item, take sponges stones, Jewes stones, burnt glasse, prepared Bucks blood, and Sugar, of each alike quantitie, giue one dragma thereof with *Oxymel* or with the water of Smalage when he hath the paine. Both these foresaid are by reason of the great help and cure that they do, called the hand of God.

Item, take the rootes of Burres one dragma and a halfe, burnt glasse one dragma, rub the same with vineger, with the water of Smalage, or with any other such like distilled waters: this is maruellously praysed of all auncient Physicians.

Another. Take Cromell seede one dragma, Licorice one quarter of an ounce, peeled Pelon seede halfe an ounce, Gum of the Cherrie tre one ounce, poune them all to powder, and giue thereof at each time halfe an ounce, with a little distilled water.

Or take Cromell seede, Annis, Fennell, Parsly seedes, and peeled Pelon seede, of each one dragma, *Lignum Aloes*, winter Cherries, red Sarifrage, Spunge stones and Jewes stones, of each one scruple, the seede of Worme and of Sarifrage, of each halfe a dragma, Cinnamon, prepared Coziander, and red Saunders, of each three quarters of an ounce, Cloues, Calingal, Ginger, of each three dragmes, white Sugar two ounces, make a powder of it, and take one dragma at once thereof with Allowes water and Beale both.

Another. Take Cromell seede, and the seede of Sarifrage, of each one dragma, the seedes of Lettice, of Penbane, of Pompions, of white Poppies, of Pelons, of Cucumbers, of Gourds, (all together peeled) of each two scruples, pouned Licorice foure scrup. *Troscisci Alkekengi* which is of winter Cherries one drag. and a halfe, the seede of Pimpernell, of Worme, of each two scruples, Sugar two ounces, make a powder of them.

In like manner, there be good for this disease pouned Spedlar stones, and poudered earth wormes, of each one dragma and a halfe well weyed, and take fenelike with Sarifrage water.

Item, seethe a Crab like as they be used to be sod, and wash the same with wine, and let it dry, then beate it cleane to powder with his shels, and take one quarter of an ounce thereof with wine.

Or take the powder of Payden haire one quarter of an ounce, and drinke it with the water of Strawberies, or the water of Allowes, or the water of Parsly, it is also especiall good.

Take halfe an ounce of the shales of hasell nuts beaten small, Sugar also as much, temper them together, and vse thereof euery time a dragma or moze fasting in the morning with the water of Lillies, and women may drinke it with wine or any thing else in stead of Lilly water.

The stone which is cut out of one, beaten small, and halfe a dragma thereof taken euery day, with the water of Sarifrage or Radish water, doth also breake the stone of the bladder.

Item, take Licorice one quarter of an ounce, Spunge stone, and Jewes stone, of each ten greynes, Fennell seede, *Ameos*, *Mirba*, *Anny*, the seede of Allowes, peeled Pelon seede, Pompeon seede, chopt small together, of each halfe a dragma, Cinnamon one dragma beaten small together: there is the waight of a dragma thereof to be taken with any of the foresaid waters. There may also be prepared for this these pills ensuing: Take burnt glasse, ashes of a Parr, Spunge stone, and Jewes stone, of each alike much, make pills thereof with the water of Sarifrage.

frage, also three round slices of Radishes eaten euery morning be verie good. In like sort also the small bird the Wagtaile roasted, powdered, or taken as one will, is maruellous good for this, like as here before is specified already.

It is also taken for a certaine experiment if one do accustom to eate Nettles, that thereby he should be freed of the stone and grauell.

Now will we write of certaine potions which be meete for the stone and the grauell: Take Turpentine which is washed with *Pallowes* water three quarters of an ounce, *Species Indici* two scruples, *Benedicta Laxativa* halfe a dragma; let the Turpentine and decoction melt, afterwards temper the rest with it, and so drinke it as warme as you can. Potions for the stone.

Another: Take Rubarbe one quarter of an ounce, Juniper berries one ounce, the bark of the Cassie three dragmes, Jewes stone halfe an ounce, *Agaricus*, Ginger, Cinnamom, Galin-gall, and Pasticke, of each one dragma, Pithidate three dragmes, Pace, Cloues, of each halfe a dragma, spirite of Wine one pint, and *Palmeley* three pints: let them all together the space of three monethes in the sunne there to distill; and of this distillation giue two ounces earely in the morning, or being in the bathe, it is a maruellous and approued remedie.

Another: Take Rubarbe, Ginger berries, Cassie wood, and Fennell, of each one quarter of an ounce, Annis one dragma, Licoice five dragmes, Jewes stone halfe an ounce, *Agaricus*, Ginger, Cinnamom, and cloues, of each one dragma, Pithidate three dragmes, Pace, and Putmegs, of each halfe a dragma, Pasticke one dragma: put all these together beaten in a glas, and powder thereon three pound of the spirit of Wine or *Aqua vite*, then stop it tight and let it the space of five daies in the sunne; stirre it all together very well, then poure as much *Palmeley* vnto it, and let it stand againe eight or foureteene daies in the sunne, stirring it euery day well about, afterwards straine it and kepe it well; when as then the grauell beginneth to picke, then take a spoonfull thereof euery day, and you shall finde amendment out of hand. This same may be distilled like as the former.

Another: Take a pinte of *Aqua vite* more or lesse as you will, *Palmeley* fower ounces, Sugar candie eight ounces, the water of Strawberries fower ounces, Parsley water two ounces; mixe them together and take a spoonfull thereof, or as much as you please.

It is also here to be marked that you need not be afraide of *Aqua vite*, burnt Wine, or any other strong wine: for all learned do require to drinke strong wine, as *Vinum punicum*, *Palmeley*, *Piscadell*, and such like, against the grauell or the stone, yea when the paine is at the extre-mest, yet with moderation.

Some that loue distillations doe very much commend this potion following against the grauell: Take the oile of Pace and clere Turpentine of each ten or twelue drops, Annis wa-ter, and Fennell water, of each one quarter of an ounce, the sirupe of Licoice one ounce, oile of Vitrioll three or fower drops, then temper them well together, afterwards proue it; and if so be that it be not so fower that it set not the teath on edge, then is it metely; and if it be not fower enough, then put two drops of the oile of Vitrioll more into it. It is somewhat perillous to deale with the oile of Vitrioll; therefore good heed is to be had and taken, like as is declared in his description: Take Nettle seede two ounces and a halfe, powder wine vpon it, and drinke thercof. This wine is accounted maruellous good for the grauell and for the stone.

Here before is oftentimes admonished of Beane water which is thus made: when they The water of Beanes. beginne to be ripe, or when they be in their full iuice, then is onely the outtermost greene pods or peles to be taken where the Beanes do lie, and the leaues, and all their moisture is to be distilled out of them in sathing water. This being done, then take one ounce and a halfe thereof, prepared Bucksblood one dragma or fower scruples, and giue the patient thereof in the morning when he riseth, and at night when he goeth to bed. And this is he to obserue and continue so long untill that the stone or grauell be cleane expelled, and no more grauell can be perceived: this is of all aunient and later Phisitions taken to be a famous and certaine experiment. Item: Take womans milke about two ounces, steepe therein cut sprigs of Cipers, and let them stande and steape the space of three or fower howers in a warme place and then drinke it.

Item: Take Anot grasse halfe an ounce, red Pease, and Peeled Melon seede, of each one ounce; let them sethe in twelue ounces of water euen to the halfe, and giue thereof one ounce at once tempered with a little Sugar: the Peade or hony water is an especiall medicine against the grauell and the stone. In like manner also wine or water wherein harts tong and *Pal-loues*

lowes be decocted, and also of both these distilled waters.

Item: Take a good handfull of water Cresses, seth the them in a pinte of water vnto the half, and drinke thereof morning and evening each time thre or fower ounces, and do this the space of eight or ten daies. Some do also much commend Limons water.

Take the rotes of Cheruill and Sarifrage of eache a like quantitie: Seth the them in wine and drinke oftentimes thereof, it breaketh the stone, and causeth well to make water: Take Payden haire one handfull, winter Cherries, and Cromell seede, of eache two dragmes, boile them in a pinte of white wine vntill two thirds remaine, take thre or fower ounces at once and especially after a bathe the water of Larkes spur.

Likewise also the water of *Cardus Benedictus* if one do drinke thre or fower ounces of it, is very good for the stone. Item, so are all these waters insuing good therfore, viz. the water of Sarifrage, of Pellitorye, of Cinquefoile, of water Cresser, of Fennell, of Radishes, of Payden haire, of Strawberries, and of Cammomill.

Item: take a fresh Radish, cut it to thinne round slices, and poure thereon *Vinum punicum* or any other good wine: afterwards drinke thereof sometimes a good draught.

You haue also herebefore in the twelfth chapter, and eleuenth S. a good drinke against the grauell and the stone, beginning: Take Centian, &c.

Item: Take Payden hayre, Sperage, Tassell leaues, water Pints, broade Plantaine, and red Pease, of each a like quantitie: seth the them all together in water, then take of this decoction five ounces, and temper therewith two ounces of *Oxymel*: afterwards giue it to the patient. Further, laie him a bed and let him sweate well: this openeth the conduits of vaine, maketh all tough humours thinne, and expelleth them which cause the stone and the grauell.

Wine of As-
sarabacca.

Further there be diuers wines decocted and also vnfodden, whereof we will discouer some. Of all the most vsed are these following, as the wine of winter Cherries, wine of Elecampare rotes, wine of Hyssop, wine of Warts tong, and wine of *Assarabacca*, which is thus to be prepared. Take muste, and to euery quart of Must halfe an ounce of *Assarabacca*, the herbe being taken off when the rote hath been a drying the space of two moneths. Of this wine take euery evening and euery morning a good draught: it forreth the vaine and the grauell, it warmeth all inward parts, it expelleth the ague: it is good for the dropsie, and also for the yellow iannodie.

Another good Wine.

Take Strawberrie leaues, Pellitorye, water Cresses, and Courde Cresses, of each a like quantitie: seth the them in wine vntill the third part be consumed, then drinke thereof a metely draught when you goe to bed, and in the morning when you rise. This hath ben oftentimes found very good.

All Physicians do conclude that all troubled and thicke wine much and often drunken, causeth the stone and the grauell speedily to growe. Therefore must one alwayes beware thereof.

The Cherrie wine like as it by reason of the temperate nature may be vsed in all sicknesses so may the same be also occupied for this disease, and especially when the Cherries with their kernels be stamped in peeces, whereof it is made, then doth it driue out the grauell the better.

We will here yet describe certaine sirupes which may be vsed with great commoditie for the grauell, like as these insuing: Take the rotes of Sperage, of *Ruscus*, & of Grasse, of each three ounces, Warts tong with the rotes, *Creta marina*, Payden haire, water Pints, Sarifrage, Pimpernell, and Parrow, of each one handfull, red Pease two ounces, Vineger of squils one ounce, white Sugar, and Hony, of each five ounces. Lastly seth a clare sirupe of this, and vse the same with diureticall waters.

Another.

Take Fennell rotes, Parsley rotes, the rotes of Smalage, and of Sperage, of each one handfull, the seedes of Parsley, of Fennell, of Smalage, of Annis, of Caraway, of Lettice, of Pursnaine, of small Endiue, of Helons, of Pompeons, of Courdes, and of Cucumbers, of each one ounce, red and white Saunders, Roses, and Violets, of each halfe a draine, siue and twentie

What outwardly ought to be vsed.

Of bathing and fomenting in the grauell.

There be also mo accidents which are wont next to the grauell and the stone to accozd and accompanie it, as *Lithiasis*, *Dysuria*, *Stranguria*, and *Ischuria*, and all these bzing also great paine and sometimes swellings, whereby the conduits of vrine be stoppt, but because that these altoget-

ther belong but to the bladder and the neck of the same, therefore will we discourse thereof after the description of the Bladder.

But here is yet a heauie disease which proceedeth from the kidneies, the which we are here to describe, and therewith to conclude this Chapter.

When any one cannot hold his water. §. 5.



This disease the Grecians call *Diabeten*, the Latinists *Vrina Profluvium*, which is an unnaturall fluxe of the vrine, with the great paine which is with this disease, there is an excessive and intollerable thirst, the which when one thinketh to quench with drinke, then doth all that is dronke passe straight away from him, and is without any alteration of the same drinke, pisse out againe all together, whereby that this disease hath his name also *Profluvium*.

Tell now, this is a disease of the kidneies, which is wholly to be compared with the disease of the stomack in the fluxe *Lienteria*: in which disease of the stomack or fluxe, there is no satiablenes of meate, because that the meate receiued forthwith vndigested and without any alteration, passeth out through the bowels.

And albeit as is sayd, this unnaturall heate of the raynes commeth from the Luer, the which afterwards doth draw vnto it the moysture, which is receiued of the stomack, then doth this disease neuertheless for all that come from the cold of the kidneies, & of the whole bodie, like as may be seene in them who get the Palsey, and cannot hold their vrine. If it procede of heate, then it is knowne by the paine and pricking about the kidneies, and by the great thirst. If of cold, that is to be perceiued about the same parts, and in the outward members: for cold things offend him, and all warme things are acceptable.

By all these forementioned things are yet the tokens that in pissing there is no paine, and that there is stopping of the scale, when this sicknes growes to be old whether it be in aged or yong persons, then is it esteemed to be incurable, for that it consumeth the bodie from day to day, and that so long, vntill that death follow after it.

The cure of these sickeneses depend on these rules insuing, wherof the first is, like as this disease is caused most out of heate and drieth of the kidneies, then is the same to be remedied through cooling and moist things: secondly, if so be that the retentive force of the kidneies be infabled through the superfluous moisture which they do draw vnto them, then are men to strengthen the same (if it be caused through heate) astringent, and cooling things, and to alter their nature: thirdly, because that the whole body through the attraction and affluence of all waterish moisture, wareth faint and thirsty: Therefore it is good not to permit the sick person to drinke much, that he fall not utterly thereby into the consuming ague *Marasmus*: fourthly, if so be that the sicknes be caused through heate, and that the Luer and the Stomack be also thereby infected, then is he to eschue all light meates and eggs: fifthly, to the end the moysture may be drawn to another place, then is after much drinkeing of water parbraking and vomiting to be prouoked: sixthly, all that draweth the moysture outward, as the sweate, is here very profitable: seventhly, like as the body in this sickenes is commonly bound and obstructed, therefore is rare to be had to open the same with Clusters.

And like as we haue expressed that this disease *Diabetes* can be caused through heate and cold, therefore will we write distinctly and seuerally thereof, and first beginne with the colde *Diabetes*.

Of the affluxion of the vrine through cold. §. 6.



Though now it happeneth like as we haue discoursed here before that the sick persons do make water very much, and yet no heate perceiued thereby, or that a nights his vrine vntwitting runne from him, and had also no thirst and abated not: then are all such medicines to be giuen him which doe staye the vrine: for which these things following shall be very mate:

So wit, Eggs supt earely in the morning fasting, staled milke, or wherein Peble stones be staled, but especiall is the Shepes milke commended for it.

Som

Some do aduise that for this disease is euery day to be taken halfe a dragma, or a dragma of Sythidate with a good draught of wine. These pills following are also highly commended for this disease: Take Beuerdod, Spirthe, Hyssop, Marierom, Acozne cups, and *Pieratiron*, of each a like quantitie, make them to powder: then take the sirupe of Pyttles, and forme a masse of pills thereof; afterwards then giue a dragma thereof at once, to wit, when the patient goeth to bed. Or vse this powder following: Take Acozne cups, poune them to powder, and take thereof one quarter of an ounce at once with red wine before that you goe to bed. Item: Take a burnt Wedghogge powdered one dragma, or one dragma and a halfe, and giue it him as before; the flesh of an Wedghogge is maruellous good for this. Item: Take Acoznes one dragma, Frankinsence three ounces, and fire dragmes of prepared Coziander, fine Bolus, and Gum, of each one ounce and a quarter; then make a powder of it, and take euery morning thereof one ounce and a halfe with red wine. Item, take pouned Agrimony one dragma, with red wine when you goe to bed.

Outwardly may some of these things following be vsed: Take oyle of Lillies, or oyle of Costus, annoint the priuities with it and the parts about it. But temper amongst it some fine Bolus, Pasticke, Pomy, Spirthe, and make a salve of it: Or laye one of these plaisters following upon it: Take *Laudanum*, and Pasticke, of each one ounce, Frankinsence, Cipers nuts, of each one dragma, *Lignum Aloes*, red Storar, Calmus, Galingall, Cinnamom, of each halfe a dragma, Turpentine one dragma, or as much as is needefull, melt the *Laudanum* in a warme mortar, then make a plaister thereof and laye them ouer the priuities: but first haue off the haire that the plaister may be taken off without paine. Or make this following: Take *Laudanum* and Pasticke, of each two dragmes, *Lignum Aloes*, red Storar, Galingall, and Quince kernels, of each one dragma, Turpentine one ounce; poune all that is to poune, and adde the *Laudanum* vnto it as before, spread it on leather and apply it to the priuities.

Another: Take the iuice of Spints twelue ounces, Frankinsence, and Pastick, of each half an ounce, Cipers nuts one quarter of an ounce, Galingall, *Lignum Aloes*, of each one dragma, Cinnamom, or beaten Comin seed, as much as is needful for a plaister, vse it as is before shewed.

It is to be noted that the Comin seed must be parched before. What further is requisite for this purpose, it may be sought for in the third part the 11. Chapter, and also in the 12. chapter, in the first part, and 13. §.

For the affluxion of vrine through heate. §.7.



If so be that there be with this vnnaturall affluxion of the vrine, an vnnaturall thirst, and the drinke forthwith pist out againe; then are these means following to be vsed: first in case that the body be bounden, then minister to the patient laxatiue clisters of the Common cooling herbes, wherewith *Hierapicra*, or *Benedicta*, with the oyle of Violets be tempered: and immediately afterwards open the lyuer vaine wherby all the ill accidets of the body may be defended & auoided.

And if it be needefull, purge the patient with yellow Sirobalanes, and with Cassie, which both do cole. But if you will make it that it be good for the grauell, then mixe things amongst it which expell the grauell: afterwards cause the patient to vomit when he hath dronken much water, like as is taught in the first Rule.

Otherwise, is this ensuing especially commended for this disease *Diabetes*: Take *Acatia* one quarter of an ounce, Rose leaues three dragmes, fine Bolus, Gum, and Dragagant, of each half an ounce, poune them all small together, and let it passe through a small Sieue. Afterwards make with it small Troscises, with the muscilage of fheatwozt, and giue thereof the waight of a dragma with Endiue water, Burrage, and Cicozie water. Item, take fine Bolus, and sealed earth, of each one scruple, the iuice of Sloes, Pomegranate floures, Spittle seed, red Corrall, and Roses, of each one dragma; make a fine powder thereof when he goeth to rest, with thick red wine: or take the inner most rinds of hens matues, wash them cleane with wine, and dry them, the powder of a burnt Hares head and Pastick, of each halfe an ounce, Agrimony fine dragmes, burnt powder of an Wedghogge halfe an ounce, temper them all together, and poune them all small to powder; afterwards giue thereof one dragma and a halfe with red wine when he goeth to sleepe.

Another:

Another. Take *Pettle* rotes one ℥. *Meruaine* and *Caruway*, of each one ℥. and a halfe, ſæthe them together in ſkæled water, and dꝛinke thereof.

Item : Take *Sorba* and *Peares*, ſtamp them together, diſtill a water thereof and dꝛinke often of it, or mingle any other dꝛinke amongſt it.

Outwardly may theſe things following be uſed : Stamp cooling herbs, viz. *Lettice*, *Purſlaine*, *Pightſhade*, *Houſlæke*, *Roſe leaues*, and *Willow leaues*. And cut freſh *Pompeons*, or *Citrons* in broad pæces, and lay them thereon : you may alſo weare a beaten plate of leade vpon the raynes, the which may be made oftentimes wet with *Vineger*.

Alſo pꝛepare this ſalue enſuing : Take three ounces of *Poplar ſalue*, oyle of *Roſes*, and oyle of *Mandragora*, of each halfe an ounce, the muſcilage of *ſleawort* one quarter of an ounce, *Vineger* one dragma, *Ware* as much as is needefull for to make therewith a ſalue. Item, take the iuice of *Lettice*, of *Purſlaine*, and of *Pightſhade*, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Roſe water* one ounce, *Vineger* halfe an ounce, white beaten *Poppie ſæde* one ounce, *Ware* as much as ſufficeth for a ſalue, and annoynt the raynes with it.

After the annoynting, lay then this plaſter following vpon it : Take *Barly meale*, *Vineger*, and oyle of *Roſes*, let them ſæthe together, and lay it thereon. And take *Vine leaues*, *Willow leaues*, *Quince leaues*, *Taffell leaues*, and *Houſlæke*, of each one ℥. ſtamp them well together, and put vnto it ſixe ounces of *Barly meale*, oyle of *Roſes* and *Vineger*, as much as ſufficeth for to make a plaſter : then lay it cold vpon it.

The order of Dyet.

All meates that do cole are good for this patient, as *Meruice*, the iuice of *Ruſcus*, *Barly*, and all that is dꝛeſt with *Barly*, *Almond milke*, and *Rice*, all fruits which cole and bind, as *Pedlars*, *Sorba*, *ſloes*, *Cherries*, ſometimes alſo *Plums*, *Pulberies*, *Pomegranates*, and *ſtrawberies* are alſo good for him. If there be neither heate nor *Ague* with it, then may he haue the ſoreſaid things dꝛeſt, as *Barly*, *Rice*, and *Almonds*, with freſh broth. He may alſo vſe otherwhiles *Peates ſæte*, and riuer fiſh, but very little ſalted. Alſo *Hen broth* decocted with cooling ſædes is very good for him. His beſt dꝛinke ſhall be *Barly water*, whercin a little *ſleawort* is decocted. *Buttermilke* is alſo good for him. The iuice of the firſt mentioned fruits may be mixed with freſh well water and ſo dꝛonke, in like ſort alſo the *Roſe water* of it ſelfe alone. *Thick red wine* is alſo (as befoze) to be tempered with freſh well water. For this is alſo meete the *Sirupe* of *Violets*, or *Julep* of *Violets*, with ſome cooling waters, or tempered with ſome well water.

You haue alſo herebefoze in the twelfth Chapter 3. §. other *Juleps* and confections more which be alſo very fit for this vſe, as *Triſantalon*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatis*, therefore is he to take now the one and then the other, to the ende that nature chaunce not to abhorre and lothe that which is to be taken.

For an intollerable thirſt, may this following be vſed : Take burnt *Quozie* ten dragmes, *Lettice ſæde*, and *Purſlaine ſæde*, of each ſixtē dragmes, *Coziander ſæde*, yellow *Roſe ſædes*, and fine *Bolus*, of each five dragmes, *Pomegranate bloſſomes* one quarter of an ounce, *Camier* halfe a dragma ; then make a powder of it, and vſe one dragma thereof, or one dragma and a halfe at once, with the iuice of *Pomegranates*.

What is further good for the thirſt, loke for it in the twelfth Chapter and 10. §. in the third part of this booke.

This patient muſt reſtraine and keepe himſelfe from all labour, and conuerſation or company of women. Alſo to eſchue all ſort of things, and to perfoꝛme and do in all things like as here befoze in the 6. Chapter and 1. §. is taught of the eſſurion of humane ſæde.

The eighteenth Chapter.

Of the Bladder.



This inward part, the Bladder, is common to all humane bodies; it is made of two strong skinned membranes, whereof the innermost skinned is twice as strong as the outmost, and that not in vaine, but to the end it might the better withstand the sharpnes of the vaine. Both these skinned are formed of a slipperie white matter: and betwene both the skinned membranes, there runne many vaines, sinews, and arteryes every way, whereby they do draw the moisture of the vreters, which do come from the raynes, and carrie it into the Bladder.

For the foresaid vreters be so small, and so narrow, that one cannot in a dead bodie discerne nor finde the same; like as also the bladder of Beasts doth manifest the same, which be so tight and so shut by, that no water nor wind can pearce through.

In men doth this Bladder lye with his neck (which is fleshy) very hard besides the Arterie, gut, crooked, and almost like this letter S, great and long euen to the beginning of the yarde. But in women the neck of the bladder doth lye somewhat higher then the neck of the wombe, it is also shorter and wider, and therefore also they may much easier be holpen of the stone then men. Item, in the foresaid part of the neck of the bladder there is a muskellish flesh, the which holdeth the vaine so long shut by, untill a body desire to make or let go his water. Further, mens bladders be also according to the proportion of the bodie, much bigger then in any other beasts: they can also stretch out themselves very farre, whereby that they in time of neede may retaine and keepe a great quantitie of vaine.

Whensoever this Bladder also is pricked in her membrane substance, or a hole made in it, then is it incurable; notwithstanding that Aristotle doth thinke that it hath bene healed, but very seldome: for the neck of the bladder which we haue sayd to be fleshy, may be healed without plaister or salve, and onely thorough the vaine, like as is sufficiently made knowne, and shewed by the stone cutters.

Amongst Beasts, they onely haue bladders, which bring forth a liuing creature into the world, and that haue lights full of blood. But all that do lay eggs, as fowles and wormes, they haue altogether no Bladder, the Loztoyle only excepted.

This Bladder is by nature ordained for a receiuer of the vaine, and to the bodie a verie needfull member, for if so be that nature must haue expelled all her waterish moisture through out all the whole bodie, not hauing any particular bent or passage for it, then of necessitie should a bodie oftentimes either dry away, or stifle.

As this Bladder do also happen oftentimes many sundry diseases, and perillous infections, as the Gravel, the Stone, painefull making of vaine, retention of the same, the Strangurie, stime, obstruction through blood, the which doth not onely cause heate, swelling vlcers, and deadly impostumes, but also bringeth with it many kinds of other perils; and because that we heretofore haue written at large thereof, therefore will we not here rehearse them againe, but onely speake and discourse of those things that concerne the Bladder, and the neck of the same.

Of retention of vaine in generall. §. 1.



Under the name of the retention of vaine, we do comprehend all accidents, whereby the water is retained and kept back, whereof there be five kinds disclosed in the seuenteenth Chapter, in the conclusion of the fourth §. and here are to be rehearsed. Amongst all these is the one more violent then the other, and for that cause are to be cured and holpen with diuers and sundrie remedies.

First, we will speake of the disease which the Grecians do call *Lithisim*, which is, when the stone of the bladder resteth on the neck of the same, hindereth the passage of vaine, or causeth such a distention of the yarde and foreskin, that this and the stone together doth wholly hinder and keepe back the vaine, which is not without great paine and trouble to the patient:

patient: but these meanes following are to be vsed in this extremitie.

If so be that the stone of the bladder cannot be expelled through the former remedies, then put back the stone and so let out the vaine. First, the patient is to be layde on high with his arse, and spread his legs abroade, and shake and rub the place strongly, that thereby the stone may be remoued from the neck of the bladder, or the same is to be put back with a siluer instrument, that thereby the vaine might freely passe forth. But great care is to be had whether the passage for the vaine be not shut vp by some swelling, otherwise would the yarde within thereby be bursed, and the grieve made worse then before.

The second manner of the retention of vaine is *Dysuria*, which is when a man doth make water with great grieve and paine very slowly, the which is commonly perceiued by the pricking paine, and great heate in the forepart of the yarde.

The third kinde of the retention of vaine, is called *Siranguria*, which is when one is constrained to make water often, and that with a few drops at once. These two sortes of retention of vaine, are so like one to the other, that fewe Physicians can seuer them, yet neuertheles haue they some differences.

Both these kindes are caused of a sharpenes of some humors and of the vaine: or through the debilitie of the muscles and of the retentive power. For if there come any sharpe or corroding humor into the bladder, then will it presently by force expell the same without any intermission.

Or if the retentive vertue of the bladder be weakened, then can it not abide the least dissention in the world, but let the vaine continually passe forth as an intolerable burthen.

Ischuria detaineth the vaine altogether, and is caused dinerly: to wit, of heate, of the hardness of the passage, of the debility of the expulsive and force of the retentive vertue, and of the forementioned diseases *Litbiasis*.

Also if there be any grosse and tough slime gathered together in the passage of the vaine, or if there be any clotted blood, through blowes or falls, settled in the bladder, which there doe hinder the course of the vaine.

In like manner also when the kidneies, and the bladder doe ranckle and inpostumate.

Lastly (as it oftentimes hath been found) when the water is long held vp.

And albeit there be many sortes of this retention of vaine, which at the last may cause impostumes, vlcers, and much paine: Yet is this the totall summe and conclusion, that all of them that detain the free passage of the vaine, doe require but one kinde of remedy. Notwithstanding this we will in this our discourse following, (as much as shall be possible) shew some differences in them.

Although there haue been diuers causes shewed before of this disease, yet (to prosecute our accustomed method) will we recite them once againe: namely, if one haue fallen hard, or haue had a blow or bruise on the bladder. Item the tumors & inpostumations which do stop the passage of the vaine. Also when the backe or any other part of the body is bruised, and the blood fallen downe into the bladder, and there lyeth clotted. Likewise thicke tough slime or corruption, or other causes moze &c. whereof partly hath bene spoken of before in the 16. Chapter, and 7. S. and partly shall be intreated of hereafter moze at large.

The signes of this maladie are these: if it procede of any outward cause, that may be inquired of the patient. Or if the same be caused through congealed blood, stone, slime or corruption, then may the same matter be perceiued by the vaine, and by the paine of the place infected, whence the matter cometh. Also by the siluer probe, whereby the stone may be felt, or by the blood and slime which remayneth on the instrument being drawen forth.

Of the paine which is caused by the retention of the vrine. §.2.



We haue amongst other things before made mention of grauell, whereby not onely the patient is grieved with great paine, but also the Physician is hindered from the application of those remedies as may seme meete for him: wherefore it is specially aduised, first to delay the paine, or at the least to diminish it: for the which these remedies following are especially commended.

All gentle Clusters, easie purgations, and aboue all others, baths of warme water,

water, wherein Mallowes, Hollihocke rootes, and Nettle rootes, Cromell seedes, or any such like mollifying things and Sarifrages are decocted, wherein these patients are oftentimes to bathe themselves euen to the hauell.

Item, take Colewort leaues, Southernewood, Rosemary, Pigeon dung, wilde Saffron seedes beaten grossly: sethe them all together in water for a bath. Or take mallowes, Hollihocke leaues, Bellitorie of the wall, Southernewood, *Creta Marina*, fenegreake seede, Hollihocke seade, of each two ℥. sethe them all together vnto a bathe. Afterwards annoynt the kidneies with the oyle of Scorpions or with any of the foresaid salues.

With this bathe may this powder following also bee vsed, with the decoction of Pepper: Take the seedes of Dursaine and of small Endiue, of each halfe a dragma, Will seade two scrup. Parierom halfe a scruple: giue this to the patient when the paine is present.

Note also, that these two meates be very good both for the retention of the vrine, and also for the stranguy. And if so be this be holpen, then will the paine which is in the end of the yarde, sone cease.

In the description of the kidneies there may you see many plaisters, salues, and oyles, as that of *Anodynum*, and others moe which are very meete for this purpose.

Of the stopping of the vrine through the debility of the
vertue retentive. §.3.



If any one be hindered in the making of his water, or that the same be altogether stopped, without any swelling, vlcer, or paine of the kidneies: it is then to be censured that the same should come through the debilitie of the vertue expulsive: against the which such things shall be vsed as are diureticall, or that do prouoke vrine, as these pills following: Take the seedes of Smalage, Saltpeeter, Padder, great Smalage, Juniper berries, *Asarabacca*, *Ameos*, fennell, *Spica*, and bitter Almonds, of each one ounce and a quarter, Pelons five dragmes, *Cantharides* (the heads and wings cut away) halfe a dragma, *Ammoniacum* one dragma and a halfe: dissolve your gumme in wine, and mixe all the rest being beaten small, amongst it: then make pills of them of the bignes of Peason, giue thre of them at one time. These pills haue an especiall efficacy for to drie the bodie, so that they are accounted very good for the dropsie.

The *Electuarium Ducis* is also very good for this purpose, if thou giue one quarter of an ounce of it with Bease broth or wine which thou wilt.

There was not long since one cured with this remedy following, who for the space of five daies could neuer make his water. First he toke this glister: Take Bellitorie of the wall two handfulls, Mallowes, and Cammonill, of each one handfull, boile them together: then take of this decoction the accustomed quantitie and temper amongst it one ounce of Cassie, oyle of Cammonill thre ounces, Turpentine one ounce, Licorice one quarter of an ounce, minister it warme.

Secondly this following was also ordained for him: take Cassie, and Turpentine, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Benedicta Laxativa* two dragmes, prepared Iewes stones one dragma, make an electuary therof with *Oxymel*. At night he toke two ounces of *Oxymel* with the water of maiden haire, and presently after this he made water.

Item, take fower or five ounces of the iuice of Bellitorie of the wall, and clarifie it with the white of an egge, then sethe it with Sugar to a sirupe, and vse thre ounces thereof euery morning with the water of Mallowes, or with any such like distilled liquoz.

This done, giue vnto the patient a purgation of Cassie. Thirdly, take Coziander seedes halfe an ounce, Mallowes one handfull, one head of Garlicke, poune them all together, and sethe them with good white wine vntill that one third part be consumed, and giue him thereof thre ounces to drinke.

Peach kernels, and the kernels of Cherrie stones do also prouoke vrine. Item, preserved Pimpernell rootes, Calmus, and the rootes of *Eringiu* are also very good for this purpose, confectioned Louage seede, Annis seedes, fennell seedes, Caruway seedes, Comin seedes, and Sarifrage seedes, these do all expell vrine, grauell, and stone. Treacle and Pithydate do also cause one to make water. Item, the confection of Cherries with their kernels beaten in peeces, and rub it

thow a strayner is also mete for this vse; also halfe a dragma of dried Crashoppers is very fit and a great secret in this disease. Item, the stone which is cut out of a living body, and used as before hath bene shewed (in the expulsion of grauell) is also very conuenient and very commo-
dious for this intent.

Take Dozmentill, Piony, *Bistorta*, Acones, and wilde flaxe, of each a like much; pounce them all together, and take thereof in the euening and morning one dragma with wine. The Spanish flies do expell vaine most violently, but beware of them because they be very sharpe and exulcerate the vteres, but the Crashoppers are somewhat milder. Item take the rotes of Pimpernell be aten small as much as one can containe betwene his two fingers, and drinke it with wine. The pounced shels of Hasell nuts do the like also, and the salues of Pickerels, if thou take of each of them a like quantitie.

But if the vaine be stopped by reason of the stone in the bladder, then giue vnto the patient two small drops of the oyle of sulphure with wine or Agrimonie water: or beate a Radish very small, presse out the iuice of it, and take halfe an ounce thereof with wine, it prouoketh vaine immediately and breaketh the stone also. Item, drinke in the morning three or fouer ounces of Radish water very warme, and fast two howers after it. In like manner also two in the euening two howers before supper, and walke after it.

Another: Take Pallowes, and Garlicke, of each a little, sethe them in wine vntill the third part be wasted away, drinke three or fouer ounces of this decoction at once. Take *Balsamina altera* and the lesser burr leaues, boile them together in wine, and drinke it as before. Take a great Onion cut it small, and Pallowes one handfull, boyle them in wine and drinke oftentimes of the decoction being warmed.

If a child could not make his water, then take ten or twelue bitter Almondes, and ten or twelue Peach kernels, and two ounces of Currans, stampe them all together, strayne them thow a cloth with water like to Almond milke, and giue it the childe to drinke like Almonde milke.

Amongst the herbed wines are especially commended for the prouoking of vaine, the wine of Elecampance, of Harts tong, of swete Marierom, of Cherries, of *Assarabacca*, and of winter Cherries, which are also mentioned before in the treatise of the grauell. But if any one might not drinke wine at all, or that he had it not, then may he drinke Beade or Piony water, which also is very good. What sirupes and other things might be used for the prouoking of vaine, that hath sufficiently bene shewed before in the discourse of the grauell. But *Oxymel compositum* and the sirupe of Vineger are for this vse very highly commended: Clifters are of no small force in this disease, but especially when they be made with *Benedicta* and the oyle of Scorpions.

Amongst the outward remedies are the forementioned bathings, the especiallest and the most highest commended.

Hereafter follow the descriptions of salues and plaisters: take a sliced Radish, sethe it to pap, and temper amongst it the oyle of bitter Almonds, and the oyle of Scorpions with a little ware, then spread this very thicke vpon a cloth, and so laye it vpon the priuities. Item, take Turpentine, oyle of Scorpions, and of bitter Almonds, of each a like quantitie, and a little molten ware, then temper them together, and therewith annoint the whole priuities.

Another: Take the oyle of Scorpions, of *Costus* of Lillies, of Dill, and Ducks grease, of each halfe an ounce, Pellytozie of the wall, and Sarifrage beaten, of each one dragma, Comin three dragmes, war as much as sufficeth for a salue. For this you may also vse the balmes and oyles which are described in the eight part, like as shall be shewed there more at large.

Here before in the affluxion of the humane seede, is also admonished that the nauell is to be filled with a little old suet, either of an Ore, or of a Hart; the which is also an expert remedie for the making of water, but that is oftentimes to be used. The oyle of Saint Johns wort shoulde also expell vaine if one be annointed warme with it.

If now there be any body which cannot make water, then cut two great onions and put a sponefull of Caruway vnto it, poure then thereon some Sallet oyle; afterwards frie them all together and spread it on a cloth two handfulls broad and metely long, and so lay it (as before) vpon the priuities as warme as can be suffered; do this five or seuen times together, it helpeth evidently. Item, take Pellytozie of the wall frie it in oyle, and so lay it warme on the priuities.

Some

Some do write that the fat of Conies annointed on the pziuities & on the kidneies, should maruellously expell vaine. Likewise also the oile of bayberries, of cammomill, & of scorpions. The detention of the vaine of what cause soeuer it be caused, this insuing is good for it: take liue or dead wood, lice lay them ouer the pziuities before, & then plucke ouer the foreskin. These & cony fat are by some very highly commended: also the foreskin is to be put ouer the annointing with conie fat.

This insuing is also highly commended for women when they cannot make water: Take sliced goates hoze, and maiden haire, of each alike quantitie, make them to powder and strowe them on a new hot tile. put this into a close stoele and the woman vpon it, then sprinkle wine on the tile to the end she may receiue the vapour beneath: this is to be done twice or thrice a day, according as the obstruction of the vaine is great. But if this maladie sceme wholly to get the maistrise, then take the water of picked plantaine, make Almond milke with it, and drinke thereof twice or thrice a day, it is also especiall good. And if so be that the sharpnes of the vaine had made any ercoziation, then annoint the place with the oyle of eggs. And if a woman with childe cannot make hir water, then is she to take yelow Rose seedes & sethe them in wine; when the paine is somewhat asswaged, then giue thereof to drinke: afterwardes make a little oyle of Lilikes warme and annoint therewith the raine and ouer all the belly. Item: Take Sage, and Wormewood, of each one handfull, & ye meate one spoonfull; sethe them altogether, and let the woman sitting on a close stoele receiue of the vapo.

You haue also in the last Chapter, and first S. somewhat elsse, which is also mete for this purpose.

Of the retention of vrine through fals or blowes. §.4.

If the retention of the vaine come of any outward cause, as of fals, or of blowes, then must good heede be taken if so be that thereby any coagulated or clotted blood, not onely in the bladder, but also in any of the inward parts came to putrifie, like as in the stomack, in the bzeast, and elsse where, then may great sorrow and trouble procede of it, yea death it selfe: for that there follow great faintnes after it, great weakenes of the whole body, and the pulse will be so small that one can scarce feele it.

And to remedie the same is the lyuer vaine of the sicke person to be opened, and the brused place be irrigated from on high, oftentimes with warme water wherein Cammomill, Pellilot, and Roses, be decocted. Afterwardes is the sicke person to be annointed with this salue insuing: Take Pirrhe, and Pasticke, of each one dragma, oile of Roses one ounce, oile of Will halfe an ounce, waie as much as is needfull.

But if the paine will not abate and cease, and that it appere that the bruse will come to an impostume, and heat, and an ague sticke vnto it, then open the *Saphea*.

If the patient be bound, then are milder clisters and purgations to be vsed, and the patient is to keepe himselfe as sober in eating and drinking as may be possible the space of two daies, and afterwards to diet himselfe like as in one that hath an ague is wont to do. The place is to be fomented with the foresaid herbes, and thereupon to annoint it with warme oile of Violets, and with oile of Cammomill. The bladder is softly to be wzing from the top euen to the pziuities: also an Dre bladder may be filled with this decoction following & laid vpon the pziuities.

Take Pallowes, Cammomill, Rape leaues, Pellilot, Violet leaues, and Linsede; sethe them together and make a felt or sponge wet in it, and laye it warme vpon it. You may also make a bathe for the loines thereof, putting thereto some Hollihocke rootes, Dinions, Garlicke, and colewort leaues poured all together; sethe them and wzing them out well, then put them in a bag which hath a hole in the middle to put the yeard therein, and that he may lie vpon it. Item: Take Wormewood, put it in a bag, sethe it in wine & wzing it well out, then lay it vpon the pziuities as is expressed, & admonish the patient that he indeuo himselfe to pisse oftentimes.

This insuing is not onely good for the clotted blood in the bladder, but also for all other places of the body, be it of whatsoeuer occasion it may be: Take Wormewood, Feunell, smallage, the seede of the yelow roote, red Stozar, paled Melon seed, and Rabish leaues, of each a like quantitie, make a powder of them, and giue thereof betwene one and two dragms with ashes milke, or with water wherein fennel roots, and the rootes of smallage, of parsy, of Soperage, or of *Ruscus* be decocted.

Of the retention of vrine through some obstruction of the conduits. §. 5.



So be that it happen that this retention or painefull making of water do ver paine a bodie: and yet neuertheless the bladder is full of vrine, & that the patient had pist any blood or matter before: Item, are those remedies to be giuen him which do open, and which do attenuate the clotted blood and corruption in the bladder, and make it fluxible: Therefore one must first beginne to wying the priuities hard, that thereby the lowermost passages may be opened, and the vrine may runne out. Now if so be that this obstruction do come of clotted blood, of matter, or of slime, then are Sperage water, Sarisrage water, and radish water especially good for it. In like manner is also very good the bothe of red Pease, of fennell rootes, of Parsley rootes, and of Smallage, of each apart, or boyled altogether: also Limon water is very much commended for this vse. Item, treacle, good mithridate, & most of al that which is declared in the retentiō of the vrine.

Also Salt water or this following may be spouted into the bladder, which may draw out the vrine through their sharpnes: take burnt ashes of fenne, Aine ashes, and lime, of each a like quantitie, poure as much water vpon it vntill it be conered, let it stand so the space of thre daies; afterwards poure it through a tight cloth, and spout a little thereof into the bladder. This can also be done with the oile of Scorpions

Item, take the seedes of Carrots, the seede of Stone Parsley, and of Parsley, of each one quarter of ounce, *Hermodactyli* thre dragmes, make a pouder thereof and giue one dragme thereof at each time: Or take the seede of Smallage, of Parsley, of Pyonie, of Bzomes, and of Sarisrage, of each one quarter of an ounce, fennell seede, Caruway, and Annis seedes, of each halfe a drag. Cromell seedes, *Spica*, Cinnamon, peled Pelon seedes, Pompeon seedes, Gourds seedes, and peled Cucumber seede, of each one dragme, Licorice thre dragmes, Sugar one ounce and a half, make a pouder thereof and giue of it euery day one dragme with some diureticall decoction. Also be that the sicke person haue no stoles, then is the matter first to be prepared with *Oxymelle diuretica*, or with *Oxymel* of squils, and afterwards to purge with *Medicamine*, *Turbit*, and with *Agarico*, or with *Benedicta Laxatiua*, whereunto are added *Hermodactyli*; also these insuing clisters may be vsed.

Take Pellitorie of the wall, water Cresses, Sarisrage, and Cammomil, of each one handfull, sethe them al together in water, & take twelue or sixteen ounces of this decoction, *Benedicta Laxatiua* one ounce, Cassie, and *Hiera picra* of each one quarter of an ounce, oile of Rue, thre ounces, make a clister thereof.

For an outward application, take two handfulls of Rue leaues, poune them a little and frie them with butter, or with oile of sweet Almonds, or oile of scorpions, and lay it on the priuities.

Another: take dock rootes as many as you please, sethe them in wine, fry them and vse them as before: or take wheaten bran, let it sethe to pap with oile of spits, and vse it warme. Item, take pellitorie of the wal, water cresses, Sarisrage, and *Dipsamus*, of each one handfull, fennell, and annis seedes, of each halfe an ounce: sethe them together in white wine and wying it out hard: put it betwene two clothes and lay it on the priuities. You may also put the same decoction into the bladder, and so apply it warme vnto it.

Of the first mentioned may also a bathe be made wherunto diureticall medicines shall be added, as Cammomill, *Stechai*, Parierom, mints, the buds of Colewort stalkes, Pigeon dung, and let the sicke person bathe therein as long as he can suffer it.

Another: take Colewort leaues, Hollyhock leaues, water cresses, and garden cresses, Pellitorie of the wal, *Clanicularis*, Cammomil, Smallage, and Parsley rootes, of each thre handfulls; sethe them all together vnto a bathe, and then lay the decoction herbs vpon the priuities.

For a salve you are to vse dogs grease, and wild cats grease, of each one ounce, *Ammoniacum* halfe an ounce, oile of Lillies two ounces, oile of Scorpions one ounce, make a salve of it with waxe & vse it like as the other salues: or take the salve which is described in the 3. §. beginning thus. Take oile of scorpions, &c. Item temper balm & oile of roses of each a like much with waxe. Further, of all these oiles following may also salues be prepared, as of the oile of scorpions, of bitter almonds, of lillies, of the kernels of cherries, & of pepper, or one may also vse them as they be. for this disease are al things meet that be ordained for the stone of the bladder, & of the kidneies.

Of the hote and scalding vrine. §. 6.



Here hapneth also otherwhiles such a burning with the vrine, that the patient thinketh none other then that fire passeth thorow his yarde. The cause of this is, that there be mirt with the vrine some hote cholerick or salt humors, which make this scalding in the passage.

This cometh commonly of great labour, of much and long walking, or travelling, through heate of the Sunne, through much venery, through long vse of many hote meates, or for that the conduits of the yarde haue some exulceration within.

This infirmitie is indeede not to be regarded slightly, for if it continue long, then doth it excoiate the yarde within. The signes thereof be sundry, to wit, when the patient auoydeth in his water sometimes matter, small scales like bran, and otherwhiles also blood.

These kinds of sick persons are to beware of all sharp, salt, and sovre, and such like meates, because that thereby the paine will be augmented. But he shall contrarywise vse all cooling and moistning things, as well boyled Barley, Spinage, Lettice, Purslaine, Pallowes, Apples, Pelons, Pompeons, Courds, Bunes, Peaches, and Cherries, &c. Item, Lamb, Pens, and Partriches, dressed with the foresayd herbs are the best meate for him: Buttermilke, and that sodden, is also very good for him.

He is to take for his drinke Early water, Buttermilke, watered wine, and fresh water, tempered with sirupe of Violets, or sirupe of Roses, Almond milke, or Sheepes milke (which is most mete for him) if there be one dragme or two of fine *Bolus* tempered amongst it. Item, giue him sirupe of Violets, with water of Pelons: or if you haue it not, then beate the sedes, and make thereof a decoction, afterwards drinke it with the other meates (in the morning and euening) vse this powder following: Take pceled Pelon sedes five dragmes, pceled Cucumber sedes, Citron sedes, and pceled Pompeon sedes, of each one drag. and a halfe, Venbane seide one drag. Sugar the waight of all the rest, then temper them all together; take thereof euery morning and euening the waight of thre dragmes, with Zulep of Roses.

Another: Take pceled Pelon sedes, sedes of Pompeons, of Courds, & of Cucumbers chopt small, of each one ounce, the sedes of Purslaine, of Venbane, & white Poppie sedes, Licorice, and Cozans, of each one drag. Sugar 3. ounces, temper them together. Item, take Lettice sedes, and the sedes of Purslaine, of each halfe an ounce, pouned Sugar 2. ounces, make a powder thereof, and vse it in all meates and drinks, it is marvellous good, yea for all old folks also.

These Trocisks following do cole and clense the kidneies, and the bladder, of all such matter which do inflame or ouerheate the conduits of vrine.

Take pceled Pelon sedes, Pompeon sedes, Gourd sedes, & pceled Cucumber sedes, of each halfe an ounce, *Dragagant*, red Saunders, of each one drag. and a halfe, Purslaine sedes, white Poppie sedes, of each thre drag. white Venbane sedes one drag. make Trocisks thereof with the musilage of fleawort, afterwards take one drag. of them & beake it in Early water, and giue it earely in the morning and at night going to bed. You may also make an electuary of it. Cassie taken with Turpentine, is also especially good for this purpose. The oyle of swete Almonds allwageth and cooleth also the heate of the conduits of vrine.

If in case then the patient (because of the sharpnes of the matter) ought to be purged more, then is the same to be done with sovre Dates, *Manna*, and Rubarb steeped in Endiue water, or with the decoction of Violets: if there be salt phlegme with it, then giue him Cassie tempered with the whay of Goats milke, wherein Polipodie rootes, Annis, Violets, and Burrage floures haue bene decocted. When he hath thus bene purged, then is the Lyuer vaine to be opened, and the foresayd powder to be diligently vsed.

If so be that a child hath this disease, then take Pallow sedes, *Dragagant*, & Licorice, of each alike quantitie, sette them in water according to the importance of the cause, and let him drinke none other drinke. If his vrine be very sharp, and hot, then take so much the more of the sedes. And in case that a child through the sharpnes of the vrine had gotten some exulceration, then vse this salve ensuing: Take Spirit halfe an 3, Early meale or Weane meale, one 3, temper it to a soft vnguent with the oyle of Roses, spread it on a cloth, and then lay it where it is needefull.

The brayd white of an Egge may also be spouted into the priuities, or take the musilage of fleawort, and of Quince kernels, of each one drag. temper them with womans milke.

Take the seede of Fleawort three quarters of an ounce, the seede of Quinces 5. drag. pceled Melon seedes, Pompeon seedes, Courd seedes, and pceled Cucumber seedes, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Poppie seedes one dragma and a halfe; sethe them all together in a pinte of water until the third part be wasted, then straine it through a cloth that it may be like a muslinage, and spout thereof into the yard, it cooleth and asswageth the paine.

You shall vse outwardly red and white Saunders, the seedes of *Ruscus*, burnt Quozle, and Spittle seedes, of each one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of Plantaine, and Rose water, of each one ounce, Barly meale as much as sufficeth, then ponne them all together, and make a soft pap of it: you may also put vnto it two whites of Eggs. But if one desire to haue it stronger, then is the iuice of Sloes, and *Hypocistis*, of each one dragma, to be tempered amongst it, and so to be layd vpon it. If so be that the yard haue an exulceration within, then is a cloth to be made wet in Rose water and layd vpon it.

If any one be forced against his will to make his water. §. 7.



Although this disease which the learned call *Diamnem* be somewhat like vnto *Diabetes*, and especially in this, that in both sortes of these diseases the vyne passeth away against ones will and pleasure, yet is there neuerthelesse a great difference betwene them, so; that with the disease *Diabetes* is a great heate of the kidneies, her attractiue vertue is against nature, whence followeth a great thirst, and great quantitie of vyne, all which is not with the disease *Diamnes*.

For *Diamnes* is none other but a continuall fluxe of the vyne against a bodie will without any paine or heate, and also without any feeling of it. The occasions of this maladic may be when the muscles of the neck of the bladder be perished, like as otherwhiles hapneth in cutting of the stone. This can also chaunce through fals, through blowes, or through great cold, as to sit vpon a cold stone, through cold sicknesses as the Palsy or Lithargie: item, through immoderate and excessive drinking, and through great binding in the bodie. They may likewise happen vnto women with Child, when the Child oppresseth the bladder too hard. Lastly also through some impostumes about those parts. The signes of this disease are apparant, to wit, that all warme things are acceptable to the patient, and cold things contrary and hurtfull. When these diseases (as often befalleth) are caused through cold, then is this electuary very good, which hath great efficacy for to stay this fluxe of vyne.

Take Cyppers nuts, the rinds of Cyppers, Frankincense, and the rinds of the same Spittle seede, Comin, Pirolalanes, both fryed and dry Pigeon dung, of each three dragmes, Amber, red Corall, and Roses, of each one quarter of an ounce, sirupe of Quinces as much as is needefull for to make an electuary therewith, whereof is to be taken every morning, none, & euening, the bignes of a Chestnut, with a decoction of Cyppers nuts, Sage, Spittle seede, and such like. This electuary is also good for the laxes, called *Diarrhaa*, and *Lienteria*.

Another. Take *Mirobalani Chebuli*, *Emblaci*, and *Bellirici*, of each five dragmes, *Akonos* three dragmes and a halfe, which haue layde 24. howres steeped in Wineger, Cyppers rootes, Spittle seedes, Frankincense, dyed Elecampane rootes, red Storax, red Corall, and yellow seedes of Roses, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Spirth one dragma and a halfe, stampe them small, and make an electuary thereof with clarified hony.

For this is also good Treacle, Pithivate, and burnt Dre bladders, each taken alone with wine. Item, take the dyed kidneies of a Hare, stampe them to powder, and Will seede, of each halfe an ounce, the seede of Smalage one quarter of an ounce, make a powder thereof, and giue it betwene two and three dragmes at once with a little cold water, boyled Hedgehogs flesch is also very commodious for this purpose.

If so be that the patient haue any nede of stoles, then is this Cliffer following very commodious for it, so; when he keepeth it very long, then doth it strengthen the neck of the bladder, and draweth it together, that it doth afterwards kepe the vyne the better: Take Sage, Rue, *Clanicularis*, field Cyppers, Cammomill, *Stechas*, futs, floures and rinds of Cyppers, of each halfe a lb. then let them sethe together, and vse this Cliffer like as is accustomed, but mixe the oyle of Beuercod and of Behen, of each two ounces amongst it, powder of roasted Chebuli, Spittle seedes, and Cyppers rootes, of each one dragma and a halfe; lastly, temper them all together.

Outwardly

Outwardly he may vse the Minerall and Sulpherish bathes; but if one cannot get them, then make a dry sweating bathe with the foresaid herbs, which are named in the description of the Clusters, which also one may vse for a bath for the raynes, if the same be sodden in Wine or Rye, and put salt or Allome vnto it. The priuities and bladder are also to be annoynted with these oyles following, whether they be tempered together, or each apart, viz. with oyle of Seruicod, of Behen, and Elterne, amongst which there may be a little *Pieretrum*, Pepper, and the rinds of the Cyperus tree mixed.

This order of dyet consisteth principally in this, to wit, that he do not ouercharge himselfe neither with eating nor drinking, and vse nothing which soareth vaine, as Radishes, Cucumbers, Melons, Parsly, fruit, and such like. He is also to refrayne from all cleare, white, delicate wine, and from Syder, but is rather to drinke a red, thick, hard, and vnwatered wine.

He must strowe his meate with pouned Comin, which is somewhat parched: also with a little Mustard seede, Pepper, Caraway, or which he please: and he must specially beware of all that ingend'reth much moisture in the bodie: roasted Chestnuts and hassell nuts, be very good for him.

Of the excoriation of the bladder, and of the neck of the same. §. 8.



He causes of this disease may be a precedent impostume, or some sharp humoz of the bodie, the vse of some hote meates and drinks, which are salted too much, or some thing else which do evacuate the vaine, as is before discovered.

The signes of it are detention of the vaine, and although the same haue some small passage, yet hapneth it with anguish and great paine of the priuities, and of other parts adiacent. In the vaine are small scales to be seene, also otherwhiles blood and corruption, the which both stinke. And now for to remedie this, then looke what hath bene prescribed against the grauell, stone, and such like, for all that is also meete for this purpose, and therefore not needfull to be rehearsed at this present.

But here is especially needefull a good order of dyet as hereafter followeth: all salt, colde, sharp, and swete meates; also all great exercise must be refraine: yet all milde meates, and specially shepes milke is he to vse.

He is to vse for physick such things which do mundifie and cleanse the vicers of their corruption, viz. *Truiscos Alkekengi* the drageons, with sirupe of Zulep of Violets. He is also oftentimes to drinke *Peade*, *Sief Album Rasis* one drageon or two tempered with milke is oftentimes to be mixed into the bathe, or hony water wherein figs be decocted.

Of the impostume of the bladder, or of the neck of the same. §. 9.



There do come very seldome impostumations in the bladder, or in the neck of the same: yet when they come there, then commonly be they caused through brases, blowes, and falls, vpon the same place, or such like: Item, through a sweatie and bloudie bodie, which is mixed with *Cholera*, repletion of the Matrir, and of the kidneies, whence the matter falling into the bladder, and there impostumateth; the stone in the bladder may also cause the same.

The signes of these impostumes are Agues, which be caused of paine, also biting & pricking pains about the priuities, swelling of the same place, with heate, which is also to be perceiued by feeling detention of the vaine, the which the patient cannot otherwise adoyd, but standing only.

Herewith cometh also oppilation of the bodie, parbrazing of *Cholera*, heauie breath, cold of the outward parts, swelling of the tong, and distemperance of the vaines: they be also distempered through hote and diureticall things, age, hote weather, and a licentious life do trouble and harme these patients greatly.

In these impostumes be certaine common rules prescribed. First, if so be that this impostume be in the bladder, in the neck of the bladder, or in the pabd, then is no diureticall medicine to be given him. Secondly, the matter which causeth these impostumes, is to be deriued to another place, except it were in the plague, for then ought first a vaine to be opened. Thirdly, when it is knowne which humoz is most paccant, then must one looke to purge the same with

appropriated medicines: fourthly, there be not any attractive clifters (neither in the beginning nor augmenting of the impostume) to be vsed, to the end that by the affluence of the humour the impostume be not augmented; but one is to vse only mild things, so that throught the great binding in the bodie there insue no hurt: fifthly, repelling medicines are not to be too long vsed, that the matter be not made too grosse, and these parts which be cold by nature be moze refrigerated and cooled: sixthly, whensoever through cooling things the outwarde accidents be somewhat eased, then are such things to be vsed as may allwage the paine: seuenthly, if there be but a little moisture in the patients bodie, then are besides the expulsive pudicaments, also bathing and rubbing is to be vsed: eighthly, if there be any impostumes in the necke of the bladder, then must one beware to vse any instrument about o^r in it: (fo^r that in doing so) you might hinder the matter greatly: ninthly, when the detained v^zine, neither of it selfe, nor of any instrument may be letten out, then are other meanes to be vsed, whereof we haue w^ritten somewhat before.

Thus fo^r to helpe this disease, is in the beginning the *Basilica* to be opened, according to the prescription of the second rule, and let out as much blood as shall seeme meete. But if the patient finde himselfe metely strong, and if so be that the matter be much, then is the *Saphea* to be opened the next day after. If the impostume be through heate, as of blood, o^r *Cholera*, then take oile of *Roses*, and vnripe *Sallet* oile, of each one ounce, Vineger halfe an ounce, temper them all together; afterwarde annoint it vpon the place of the paine, and then strow vpon it this powder following: Take *Pyztle* seede, *Roses*, *Dragon* blood, and white *Saunders*, of each alike quantity, poune them altogether to powder, & lay a cloth vpon it dipped in the fo^resaid oile of *Pyztes*.

The patient is also to be purged with lenitive medicines and gentle clifters, thereby to mollifie the hardnes of the impostume and to allwage the paine, and so to open the conduits of v^zine.

Of all which you haue had good direaion before. Besides these is this fomentation following very meete: Take *Cammomill*, *Helilot*, of each three ounces, *Hollyhock* rotes, *Fenegrake*, *Linsede*, of each one ounce and a halfe; let them all sethe well together in water, and then bathe the place affected therewith the space of an houre: afterwarde fill a bladder with this decoction about halfe full & lay it warme vpon the p^riuities, then annoint the p^riuities with the oile of *Cammomill*, with oile of *Lillies*, and such like, euen as in the impostume of the kidneies hath bene declared moze at large.

For this is also very meet water bathes wherein mallotwes, hollihock rotes, cammomil, linsed, melilot, marierom, cipers roots, rape leaues, coletwort, fenegrake, and such like be decocted. If it be needfull to vse warming oiles, then take oile of lillies, of *S. Johns* wort, of rue, of swete and bitter almonds, of wall floures. All these oiles do alay the paine, as also doth the oile of tiles, and the plaister of barberies which consume all cold humours.

When as this impostume is broken, then follow the same course as hath been taught in the impostumes of the kidneies.

To conclude these things following are much commended to be eaten fo^r: all diseases of the bladder, viz. preserved *Clecampane* rotes, and *pimpernell* roots, which expell all vnclenes from the stomacke: likewise also preserved *Calinus*, treacle, mithridate, conserue of *Betony*, meade, & hony water. Item, the iuice of limons which is especial good fo^r: al b^rusings of the bladder that were caused of the stone.

The nineteenth Chapter.

Of the Matrix or wombe.



From the beginning of this Booke of Whiske hitherto haue we w^ritten and discoursed of all the p^rincipall inward parts of our body, concerning as well men as women: but concerning the matrix which is onely proper to the female kinde haue we deferred vntill this present, and now we will intreat somewhat thereof.

This matrix o^r wombe is the chiefest part whereby the generation of mankind is maintained, and o^r dained of God almighty (creator of nature it selfe) as fo^r a vessell, receiuer and p^reservative place of humane seed, which is therein formed vnto a liuing creatoz, increased, defended, nourished, and sustained vntill the opportune time of birth.

The Grecians do call this Patrix or wombe *Metra*, and *Hystera*, the Latinists, *Matrix*, *Palma*, *Vterus*, and we, by reason of her vertue, for that it incloseth the conceived Child, the Mother, or Wombe. This hath her place in the neathermost part of the belly, right vnder the Panell. It reacheth backwards to the Arsegut, and forward to the Bladder. It is deuided into two parts, whereof the first part is her whole bodie, wherein (as is said) humane seede is receiued, and the fruit p̄serued. The second part is the neck of the Patrix or Wombe, which reacheth out of the foremost parts of the priuities, so that it is assimulated vnto the bladder with her necke, the ligaments wherewith she is bound to the hips, onely excepted. When this Patrix or Wombe with all that belongeth thereto is rightly beholden, then is it onely shapen like to a mans member, only that the humane member dependeth outwardly, and that the woman had lyeth hidden within, whereof before in the beginning of the fifth Chapter, and afterwards hath bene spoken at length.

Her substance is inwardly fleshye, and rough, especially in the bottome strowed all ouer with small knops or bunches, which be full of small vaines, that come and haue their accourse from all parts of the bodie vnto the wombe, and in carnall vse do draw and keepe with them the humane seede, which also yelds forth the flowres or termes, nourish the conceived fruit, and maintaine the secondine. Also this Patrix hath two concauities, and it is supposed, that in the concautie on the right side, Sonnes be conceived, and in that on the left side, the Daughters, whereof we shall speake hereafter more at large.

Outwardly she is full of sinewes, and hard, because that she openeth and shutteth to againe in the bearing of children, all which must be atchieued and brought to passe through the sinewes: the same hardnes doth also defend her from many kinds of abuses.

The foresaid sinewes be also causes of her motion and ascending and descending in the body, for that because these sinewes are very sensible, and easily harmed, therefore do they shrink in and drawe the mother vpwards with great painefulnes, as hereafter shall be shewed more at large.

The neck of the wombe which is with some women long, and with some short, whereof the right measure is the breadth of ri. fingers, which is shapen of hard muskelly and of sinewy flesh, which so hardneth from day to day (especially in lecherous women or common harlots, and old women) that it at the last is altered into a kind of Cartilage.

This neck of the Patrix hath also where the mother beginneth an entrance, which is neuer more opened, but in the venerious act, in time of the termes, & in the birth, otherwise doth it remaine alwaies most tightly shut, and especially after the receipt of the humane seede, so that nothing may go in nor out. In yong maydens or girles it is very thin, but in growing it wareth thicker and bigger, viz. when the termes be at hand, and lesseneth when they be past: the thickness also increaseth with the being with child; and how many time moe that she beareth child so much the thicker doth it grow. In like sort also will it be harder and thicker in time of the first conception, but in the growing and increase of the child is it dilated, to the ende the fruit might haue roome and scope: but in women that neuer conceived nor haue not borne any children at all, it continueth in one bignes, and is much lesse, then in fruitfull women. In like manner it is also in children much smaller then the bladder, but with the growing vp it dayly wareth greater, yea that it is at last in greatnes farre exceeding the bladder.

These kinds and such like sundrie motions like as they haue delight in odoriferous things, and a loathing of stinking things for which it flyeth and for which it ascendeth, caused the wise Philosopher Plato to write as hereafter followeth: These parts in women, which many do call *Metram* and *Hysteram*, is a liuing creature, very greedie of conception, therefore if it be drawne vpwards vntimely, and if it remaine a long space vnfruitfull, then doth it become vnwilling, it creepeth through the whole bodie, whereby the parts of respiration are so obstructed and stoppt, that the woman can get no breath, yea it bringeth with it at the last great danger and perill, and causeth many kinds of sicknesses. These be the words of Plato, but this opinion is withstood by Galen.

This noble part in women is subiect to many kinds of diseases and sicknesses, which if they do get the upper hand, do hinder the conception, and the fruitfulness of women; which vnfruitfulness is especially caused when she hath too many of her termes, or too few, or when the same is wholly detained, where then followeth a spoile of the naturall seede, the whites, the suffocation of the

the mother, which otherwhiles killeth women, the precipitation and falling out of the same, great paine, bleers, impostumes, hardnings, Cancker, the vnnaturall disease *Mola*, barrennes, and if the peraduenture chaunce to conceiue an vntimely birth, whereof hereafter shall be writ- ten, yet first we will begin of womens termes and flowes.

Of the Termes or Flowes of women in generall. §. 1.



What these Termes of women be called the flowes, is for this cause, viz. when it is sene that a tree bloweth, then is it esteemed mete and conuenient to beare fruite; and contrariwise the tree vnfruitfull which bloweth not, except the fig tree. So is it likewise with women, that all they that haue their termes are fit and commodious to conceiue and beare children, the which they that haue not their flowes or termes, can neuer moze accomplish. Secondly, the Latinists do call these flowes *Menstrua*, of the month, and thus, for they euery moneth or thirty dayes returne and come againe; or for that they according to the course of the Mone, that is, because they appeare the first quarter of the Mone in young girles, the second quarter in them that be somewhat bigger, the third quarter in the middle sort, the last quarter in aged women. Whereby that all expert Physicians do and obserue in each time that each age is to haue them, to wit, the yong people in the new and increasing mone, the old folks in the decrease of the mone: in fine, the health of all women dependeth especially in this necessarie menstruall flure, yea, all her chastitie, fruitfulness, and welfare.

To the contrarie, if they do not at all auoyd, do flowe too much, vnderly, or be lothsome of colour, then do they cause all miseries, inclination to venery, and many kinds of sicknesses, like as hereafter shall be taught.

Wherewith it is to be esteemed for no small worke of wonder, that amongst all beastes that doe line and are of the female kinde (except certayne Apes) onely women are subiect vnto this flure, and therefore haue the Philosophers many kindes of disputations, which be here too long and needlesse to be rehearsed. But of the fountaine and matter of this blood, it is with one consent concluded, that it is a cold vndigested, and grosse matter, and the blood of the whole bodie, the which through the foresayd vaines is gathered together in the wombe, and is afterwards expelled in due time as a matter hurtfull and of no vse. That this matter is also cold, is by this perceined, that when it passeth away, the woman feleth a great cold ouer the whole bodie, this hapneth after many fashions. Of the Termes that be auoyded ouer and aboue their naturall custome, shall be hereafter spoken of with all their appurtenances. The woman whose Termes auoyde in two or three dayes, they are rid of them with small trouble, but if they indure long, then will they be thereby very feeble.

The first auoydance of their Termes is commonly about the fourteenth yere, the which signifieth that then their naturall seede beginneth to ripen, that the haire and breasts beginneth to growe, and they that be hote of nature do then get desire of the man, for that the womans Termes be none other but a naturall seede which is not yet thoroughly ripe, and that through his superfluitie of nature desireth to be expelled. This course of the Termes or flowes abateth about the age of fortie or two and fortie yeres, or indureth sometimes vntill the fiftie yere, but very seldome vntill the sixtie yere, in which time women be still mete and fit for generation; yet do these flowes or Termes of women come sometimes soner and sometimes later, according to that the nature and complexion of the bodie is full of blood, strong, suffereth much labour, is quiet, and feeble. It is also a common rule with all them that haue experience in naturall things, that a woman which getteth not her flowes, like as some which be hot and dry by nature is barren and vnfruitfull, and that for those causes that are discouered in the senenth Chapter of the barrennes of men and women, although that it chaunceth neuer thelesse (but very seldome) that such women do conceiue and beare.

This also is the naturall custome, that whē a woman hath conceiued, that then her termes do farrie away, for this blood is prepared for a sustenance vnto the child in the mothers wombe: like as also after childbirth the same to that end is turned into milke: notwithstanding that it oftentimes happeneth that women with childe auoide their flowes or termes after the old custome vntill the very day of birth (as we shall hereafter somewhat intreate thereof:) but these women doe
b7ng

being small, spare, weake and not liuing Childzen, into the world, because they haue been depriv-
ed of the most part of their nourishment. It is also contrary to the opinion of many women,
that she shall open a vaine when she is halfe gone with childe, in case she be not full of blood, and
the vaines not great, therefore is not the same very vnadvisedly to bee done. Item in this
flowing or course of womens termes, there is another wonderfull nature and property, to wit,
that so harmefull and venymous a matter in mans body, without any hinderance, yea, for a
great preferment of health, may be retayned and expelled. The common experience bringeth
with it, and all learned do testifie the same; that these womens termes doe bring innumerable
sicknesses with them, and haue many infectious properties: namely, where the same hapneth to
fall, there groweth no fruit, spoyleth the Vines, the Spust will be vineger, the herbes wither, the
trees dye away, iron rusteth, and all mettals do darken and ware dim: the same being taken
make a man mad, and chiefly the dogges: the Bees leaue their hives if they bee annoynted
therewith, women when they haue the same, then doe they darken through their breath
all bright looking glasses, the ayre will be poisoned with them, and childzen (as it is said) be-
witched. Now dost thou see thou stout high minded man, what a precious matter it is that thou
hast in the beginning of thy birth, and what the matter is that hath then nourished thee? This
hath caused the auncient Poets to assimilate this flux vnto the wars, saying, that *Mars* is no
sonne of the god *Iupiter*, but of *Iuno* onely, meaning by *Iuno* this mensstruall fluxe. And truly if
this hurtfull property be likened to the wars, then is it an expert and true similitude: for what
doth spoyle moze fruits, vineyardes, Spust, herbes, and trees, then the wars, what is there
which taketh away and wasteth moze iron: how many bright harnesses be thereby darkened?
where beareth madnes moze mastery? where are men moze like to mad dogs, then in the wars?
how can the ayre be moze venimed then through the stinking dead bodies? Here is now suffi-
ciently spoken of this matter, now will we procede without medicines.

How to preferre and moue the Termes or Flowers
in women. §.2.



Of the first, we will speake of the causes whereby the termes be detayned, the
which be outward and inward: The outward causes bee, soze labor, hunger,
rare, great fatnes, agues, dropsies, consumptions, & some disease of the wombe.
The inward causes be a bad complexion, of heate, colde, dryeth, or of moysture,
whereby the vertue expulsive is weakened, so that it is not strong enough for to
unburthen herselfe of the superfluities. And that there bee any malady in the

Matrix, or mother, to wit, if the necke of the wombe be stoppt and obstructed, and is swollen too,
like as it may easily happen in the mother, or in the vaines of the same.

Nowe for to haue some certaine or infallible knowledge of these things, there may
outwarde causes be easily perceiued by the declaration of the patient himselfe. If it come
through a weakenes of an expulsive power, then is it perceiued by the heat, by the thirst, by the
swift and strong pulse, and other signes of heate. But if such be caused through colde, then is the
woman bleak, sleepe, without any thirst, the arteries of the pulse beate slowly, and the vaine is
of loathsome colour. If the disease be of any inward part, then doth the whole body declare the
same, through the great fatnes or leannes. If such be caused through any of the colder humors,
that both the blood sufficiently shew, which therein beareth sway. This obstruction doth bring
to women no small sickness, besides that (as it is said) they be barren, for that they fall thereby
otherwhiles into *Mantam*, (which is madnes) into the falling sickness, suffocation, swellings,
and impostumes of the wombe, and of the other parts adiacent vnto it, loathfulness and heauy-
nes of the whole body, great vnlustines, wauing, and parbaking, coughing, and a heauie
breathing, the dropsie and detention of the vaine, and of going to the stoule, heauines of the mind,
great paine of the head, and at last into the gout.

And to remedie all these diseases, therefore will we first of all prescribe certaine common
rules, whereof the first is, in case that the termes be obstructed in a dry bodie, there must one
beware of all those things that might cause either heate or dryeth, to the end the disease be not
increased thereby. The second is: if in the stay or detention of womens flowes the blood had
course towards any other part of the bodie, then is it aduised that the same blood be drawne out,
which

which otherwise might be spoiled. Thirdly, to preferre these flowres, it is then needefull that the vaines be opened vnder the Matric that the blood may be drawne downewards. Fourthly, there is mete for this the strong binding of the thighes, and to hold the same a certaine time bounden. Fifthly, if the disease come, for that the vaines be stoppt in the Matric, (be it of what soeuer occasion that it will) then is the blood to be diminished by opening of a vaine, and to be diminished through laxatiue medicines, through abstinence, through exercise, and such like meanes. Sixthly, all strong things, as Helleboe, *Euphorbium*, and *Nardus* seede, (which is wont sometimes to be adhibited from below) must be but a very little, and not to be holden long therein, to the end that thereby the Ague, nor any other anguish be caused. Seuenthly, all that moneth vaine doth also moue the Termes. Eighthly, where there is obserued no good order of dyet, in eating or drinking, there can also no good aduise nor remedie do any good at all. Ninthly, for to preferre the Termes, is first of all the same to be approued through gentle remedies, and at the last through stronger meanes. Tenthly, all warme and well sauoyng things are very mete for this if they be layd vpon the nauell, vpon the priuities, and vpon the parts about it. Eleuenthly, if this disease be caused through any vlcer, impostume, Ague, or any other cause, it is first to be practised how to remedie, and afterwards to moue the flowres. Twelfthly, in case it be perceiued that this detention of the flowres or termes doth cause any other sicknes, or increaseth it, then is all diligence to be had to prouoke the Termes: and if so be that the same cannot be effected, then may the vaine be opened in the foote, and boring cups be adhibited. Thirteenthly, because there is a great space from the stomacke and the lyuer vnto the Matric, then is the Whisick so to be tempered, that the same in so great a distance be not enfeebled. Fourteenthly, all that is to be put vp in the wombe, is to be tyed to a strong thred, that one when he list may draw it out, and to the ende also that through the long continuance there it buse not the neck of the mother, or cause not an Ague.

And to the end that we may come to the remedies for to open this obstruction, therefore first of all be the causes of these obstructions to be thought vpon, in case that the same be caused of some outward accident, like as of too great labour, great heate, of all too much fasting, and such like, then is the same presently to be prevented. In hot causes are cooling things to be vsed: in cold warming things, which do open the obstructions. In a bodie that is full of blood are the vaines vnder the knes to be opened, which be most necessary to people that haue not the termes: & if so be that hereby eother moe lettings of blood is nothing profited, then is one to come to the inward and outward remedies, wherein be thre manner of wayes to be followed, which shall be here described, of which each one may chole what seemeth to be best and fittest for it.

And because that it is not bad counsell to rehearse and shew the simple which may stirre vp the termes, wherefore we will here discouer a good part of them, & first all that be warme by nature, and are weakest, are these, the rootes of Smalage, of Fennell, of Butchers brome, of Sperage, of Parsley, of Crasse, Padder, Calmus, *Asarabacca*, Treas, Valerian, white *Diptamus*, and Clecampane rootes. Item, the seede of *Ruscus*, Lupins, seedes of both kindes of Parsley, of Siluer mountaine, of Sperage, of Smalage, of Annis, of Fennell, of Comin, whether it be raw or confected: the herbes are these, Cinquefoil, Bugwort, wild Pints, Parietom, Feuerfewe, Parts tong, Spicknard, Wormewood, white water Pints, Juniper, wilde Thyme, Louage, *Cuscuta*, Maiden haire, Southernwood, and waight Turpentine.

These insuing be much stronger, as Hemlock, Rue, Centorie, *Laureola*, Sapin, *Euphorbium*, *Ammoniacum*, *Sagapenum*, *Mirba*, *Opopanax*, and *Asa foetida*, the seed of *Nardus*, Mustard seede, Pepper, Beuerrod, Colloquinte, blacke Helleboe, *Pieretrum*, *Calmus*, rootes of Celandine, the iuice of wilde Cucumbers, Licebane seedes, Bozas, the galls of steres, of Hens, and of all other beasts.

The odoziferous things which preferre womens termes be these, Indie Spica, Cinnamon, Cassie wood, *Costus* root, *Ameos*, *Muscus*, *Spica Romana*, Squinant, *Gallia Muscata*, and such like. The that may be burnt to receiue the vapo: therof be these, viz. *Opopanax*, *Saponaria*, Frankinsence, *Blatta Byzantia*, *Lignum Aloe*, and red Storax.

These be now the cooling things which preferre the termes: to wit, the seedes of small Endiue, the seede of Melons, of Gourdes, of Pompeons, of Cucumbers, of Endiue, of Lettice, &c. & other moe which shall be discovered hereafter, of all which pessaries may be made to vse in the wombe: also plaisters, salues, powders, oiles, potions, and bathes, all as the cause requireth, and that

that necessitie compelleth, like as there be many sundrie described hereafter, and now we will proceede.

The first meanes for to procure the Termes, is to be described somewhat at length, where in there be many sundrie medicines of diuers and sundrie Distillations ordayned and added together, out of which each may chose what is mete for him: but in the other twaine we will be somewhat briefer, therefore one might take out of them all that might be wanting in this, and so first begin with those things which be mete for this, for to bring the bodie vnto health, and to shewe wherewithall such obstructions and hinderances of the termes may be taken away, for which this sirupe following is to be prepared: Take Gather two ounces, Louage rootes, the rootes of Sperage, Cyppers rootes, and Grasse rootes, of each one ounce and a halfe, Siluer mountaine two ounces, Baulme two ounces, Balsam wood, and the fruits of the same, of each one ounce, Spica of Indy halfe a dragma, Licorice, Cozans, Rosemary floures, and Stechados, of each one ounce, Hony six ounces, white Sugar nine ounces, boyle a sirupe of it, clarifie it, and giue thereof two ounces tempered with the decoction of Ceres.

Another. Take Gather two ounces, Sperage rootes, the rootes of Butchers Brome, and Cyppers rootes, of each one ounce, Coznemints, Valerian, Hauin, white water Spints, and Penniroyall, of each one handfull, Baulme two p. Siluer mountaine two ounces, Balsam wood, and the fruits of the same, pceled Melon seede, of each one ounce, Spikenard half an ounce, Licorice, Cozans, of each halfe an ounce, Hony and Sugar, of each six ounces, make a sirupe of it, and giue thereof at each time one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, with the both of Ceres.

Another. Take the water of Smallage, water of Lupins, of Sperage, and of Fennell, of each six ounces, Indie Spica one quarter of an ounce, Cinnamome one dragma, *Ammoniacum* and *Opopanax*, of each one dragma and a halfe, Parsly seede, Fennell seeds, *Ameos*, wild yellow Rape seede, and Caruway, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cromell seede, stone Parsly seede, and Agrimonie, of each one p. Calingall, Cinnamome, and Saffron, of each halfe a dragma, sirupe of Violets two ounces, Quince kernels, Spallowes seede, of each halfe an ounce: sethe them all together in two quarts of Gourds water vntill the third part be wasted, strayne it thorough, and then temper it with a little of the foresaid water, and the sirupe of Violets amongst it, and boyle it with so much Hony as you please. Last of all strowe some Cinnamome in it, and as much vineger of Squills, vntill it be somewhat sowrish, then vse it as all the former, this forceth very vehemently the Termes.

For this is also very good the common sirupes which be alwaies prepared at all substantiall Apothecaries, as the sirupe of Bugwort, of Payden haire, of Cicorie, with Rubarbe, and the sirupe of the five rootes.

When as now this sirupe hath bene vsed like as becoueth, then must be proceeded: and for to proceed orderly, it is very needefull that women be purged, of all superfluous humours, which may be done verie commodiously with the confection *Benedicta*, or *Hierapicra*, tempered with the decoction of Padder: and of the foresaid confections you may vse thre quarters of an ounce, or an ounce, each apart or together. Afterwards are these laxatiue things to be vsed: Take Sene leaues, Penniroyall, and Padder, of each a like quantitie: sethe them in small white wine, and giue thereof about thre ounces at once.

Or take Penniroyall, Pepe, Southernwood, Rue, Centozie, and Hyssop, of each one handfull, Hauin, Feuerfew, of each one handfull and a halfe, *Opopanax*, *Ammoniacum*, Calingall, of each one dragma, Cinnamom, Padder, of each one handfull, Spirrhe one quarter of an ounce: sethe them all together with a quart of water vntill the third be wasted: then take thereof two or thre ounces fasting at one time.

Item, take the rootes of Smallage, of Sperage, of Fennell, of Parsley, of *Cardus Benedictus*, and of Butchers brome, of each one ounce and a halfe, Annis, Fennell, Caruway, and *Ameos*, of each one dragma and a halfe, Bugwort, Penniroyall, Spints, Horchound, Feuerfewe, and *Asarabacca*, of each halfe a handfull: sethe them all together in two quarts of water vnto the halfe, wing it together thorow a cloth, and mire therewith the sirupe of the five rootes, de *Calamintha*, de *Artemisia*, of each a like quantitie, drinke thereof in the morning and at afternone.

Another: take Spints, Balme, Penniroyall, Parierom, and Southernwood, of each one handfull, Annis, Fennell, Caruway, of each one ounce, the rootes of Polypodie one ounce and a halfe,

halfe, Cicorie rootes one ounce; cut the rootes of the herbs very small and sethe them in a quart of water vntill the third part be consumed, afterwards straine it thozow, and make it as sweete as you please.

Another potion with wine, take the Sauin, and Mugwort, of each one handfull, put two quarts of wine vnto it, and let them sethe together vntill the third part be waisted: take thereof in the euening and morning at each tyme two spoonfulls. Do you now desire to make a common potion, then take Wormewood and Rue, of each one handfull, five or sixe Pepper corones, sethe them al together in a quart of Wine, straine it then thozow and drinke thereof. In like manner may you sethe Gallowes in wine and drinke thereof, it is also very good.

This potion following is very good and pleasant: Take a pinte of good wine, Sage halfe an lb. Cloues, Saffron, and Pace, of each halfe a scruple, stamp them all together, and bind it in a fine cloth, and hang it a night and a day in wine, wring it out oftentimes: deuide it into thre parts, and take one draught of it five howres before meate, the other draught after none, and the last after supper. But this is to be done in the wane of the Mone, and eate very little.

Item, take Hartwort, and Pepper, of each one dragma, powze a pinte of wine vpon it, and drinke thereof in the euening and morning, it moueth much, and clenseth the wombe of a Patric from all bad humors.

Do take the herb Carulway one lb. Mugwort one lb. and a halfe, Arsmart one lb. Asarabacca one dragma, sethe them together in two quarts of water vntill about the half, and drinke thereof in the morning fasting a good draught.

Another. Take Benniropall one lb. Parierom gentle as much also, Pace one dragma, and one quarter of an ounce of Bayberies beaten grossely, binde them all together in a cloth, and powze thereon twelue ounces of wine; but let them sethe together in a Can in hot water the space of an howre, afterwards wring out the cloth, and drinke the halfe of this wine in the morning, and the other halfe in the euening after the mealtide.

Item, take Mugwort, Feuerfew, Benniropall, Baulme, and Gallowes, of each one lb. sethe them together in a pinte and a halfe of wine, and vse them as before.

Take the rootes of Cicorie foure lb. take out the woddie hart, and cut them small, then powze two quarts of wine vpon it, and let it sethe so long vntill the foze be gone out of it, afterwards wring it out, and then sethe it vnto a thin sirupe, and so take euery morning a spoonfull of it or twaine.

This following doth open much all obstructions, and forceth the Termes: Take of the confection *Triphera* without *Opium*, Mather, and Silver mountaine, of each halfe an ounce, Fenegreake, Turkish beanes, and Ceres, of each one quarter of an ounce, sethe them all together in eight ounces of water euen to the halfe, then strayne it thozow, and temper it in thre ounces of this decoction, the *Triphera* aforesaid. The Physicians therefore do occupie this *Triphera* without *Opium*, because it is forcible and strong. Also they temper therewith otherwhiles one dragma of the iuice of the Sauin, sometimes also *Mirra*, red Stozar, *Bellium*, *Euphorbium*, or *Opopanacum*, all according to the importance of the cause. Item, take Cassie wood thre drags. beaten very small, and giue it with wine.

One that is moze seble: Take Pirrh, Beuercod, and red Stozar, of each thre dragmes, Sauine, fine and course Cinnamome, of each one dragma and a halfe, make an electuary thereof with Hony, then take one quarter of an ounce thereof, and temper it in wine for a potion. Item, take Saffron one dragma or moze, and drinke it with wine, or with Gallowes water. Saffron onely preferreth the flowres, the same doth also one dragma of poudred *Cardamome*.

Here do now follow certaine powders which are to be taken in the potions, and amongst all things is nothing moze to be commended then the Trocisks *De Mirra*, which are thus prepared.

Take Pirrhe one dragma and a halfe, Lupins two dragmes and a halfe, Rue, white water Spints, Candie *Diptamys*, Comin, Padder, Elecampane rootes, *Sagapenum*, *Opipanaxum*, of each one dragma, then make Trocisks thereof with the iuice of Mugwort, and giue halfe an ounce thereof with water wherein Juniper berries be decocted: Take Beuercod one dragma, poudred of Spints half a scruple, drinke it with wine, it is also very good for this vse. Item, half a scruple of the blossomes of the Spur tre taken with wine doth the same. S. Johns wort doth also moue much the termes.

Also these wines ensuing are very good for it, viz. wine of Elecampane rootes, of Marierom gentle, of the herbe Bennet, of Betony, of Gilloflowers, and of Rose marie. Item, take one handfull of Juniper berries, Padder, Cinnamome, and Pirrh, of each halfe an ounce; seethe them all together in Bugwort water untill the third part be euaporated, strayne it, and put one dragma of Bozeas vnto it, giue thereof a good warme draught twice or thrice a day.

The same do also the *Troisci Gallia Muscata Rafis*, foure scruples taken with warme white wine, it helpeth immediately.

It is here also to be noted, if so be that the patient might drinke no wine, then take the leaues of blew floure deluce, stampe them, and seethe them in Capon broth, and let her drinke it, this is also found many times good, and it expelleth also dead children.

Item, take the skull of a Capon before he is boyled or roasted, stampe it, and drinke it with Penniroyall water: this may suffice for the potions.

Take Penniroyall, Italian Commin, Pints, Treoe, Hartwort, Pather, and Pirrh, of each one quarter of an ounce, make an electuary thereof with clarified Hony, take two dragmes of it, and drinke a draught of bere or wine after it, wherein Sauine, Penniroyall, Bugwort, Fennell, rootes of Sperage, of Smalage, and of Parsly, haue bene decocted.

Item, take of the electuary *Anisidotum Hemagogum* halfe an ounce, and giue it fasting. If you had rather drinke it, then temper foure ounces of Bugwort water amongst it, and vse it against the time that the flowres vse to come. Treacle and Pithidate do also force the flowres very gently.

Amongst the confectiōs there be good for this the confected Elecampane rootes, the confected *Eryngii*, conserues of Diony, and Pirrh rolled in an apple. The Italian women do highly commend the electuary *Diaciminum*, if one do take every morning one quarter of an ounce of it, then will the termes come within the space of a moneth as they affirme: it doth make fruitfull and strengtheneth the stomacke. The confected *Calmus* is especiall good, if the obstruction be come through cold. Fennell seade confected forceth also the flowres; likewise also Comin, and Caraway, Cinnamoin, and Saffron are also to be vsed in all things.

These Pills ensuing are also to be prepared: Take the pills *Alephangine* halfe a dragma, Aloe two scruples, beaten Sauin one scruple, make fourteene pills of it with the water of Bugwort, and take the one halfe thereof at once: they doe moue the termes and the stoles, and are also very safe.

Others: Take *Muscus* and Pirrh, of each foure scruples, Stechas, Pather, Penniroyall, Citron pills, long Pepper, Cassie wood, Cassie pills, Pionie seades, and *Calmus*, of each three quarters of an ounce, Indie Spica halfe a dragma: make pills thereof with the iuice of Bugwort, whereof take at once. The auncient Physicians do commaund pessaries to be vsed, as *Euphorbium* wrapt in woll. Item, take Helleboz, and the iuice of Mozmetwood, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Ammoniacum* one dragma, temper it with Dre gall. But here enlue sundrie which are safer: Take Beuercob, and Pirrh, of each alike quantitie, *Muscus* alittle, then so:me it with the oyle of Behen as an Akoze, and tye it to a thred, and put it into the Patir before.

Do take fresh Rue, Mozmetwood, and Coloquinte, of each alike quantitie: fourme a pessary thereof of Dre gall. Item, take white water Pints, Swines bread, *Agnus Castus*, Rue, Sauin, Bugwort, Penniroyall, Marierom, Radishes, Southernwood, Pettie seade, Juniper leaues, Pather, white Helleboz, Centoey, Pirrh, Beuercob, Elecampane rootes, *Sagapenum*, *Oporanacum*, of each one dragma, *Gallia Muscata* one scruple, stampe all that is to be stamped, and then make a pessarie of it with the iuice of wilde Cucumbers, and Dre gall, and then vse them as before.

Another. Take Gentian, and Penniroyall, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pigella seades one dragma, temper them together with pouned Figs, and with alittle of the iuice of Percurie, these do make no heate like as the other.

Item, take Gentian two scruples, Coloquinte and Pigella seade, of each one dragma, temper them together with the iuice of wilde Cucumbers. If you will haue it stronger, then put some white Helleboz vnto it: there be also sundrie other made which be stronger and milder according to the importance of the cause of the foresaid cold & warme things, each according to his good pleasure & content. Amongst all these things, & all that may be injected into the body and neck of the Patir or wombe, this generall rule is to be obserued, that the same may be vsed

as well before as after bathing.

Outwardly may one bathe and foment, with all that which here insue: Take *Asarabacca* halfe a ℥. *Ebulus* leaues one ℥. and a halfe, *Feuerfew*, *Pints*, *Pugwort*, *Agrimonie*, *Parierom*, and *Betonie*, of each one ℥. *Cammomill*, *Pelilot*, and *Roses*, of each halfe a ℥. cut all the herbs and seth them like as hath bene taught oftentimes. It is also very commodious and good to sit in warme water wherein *Pallowes* hath bene decocted. Take *Pugwort* and *Sauine*, of each three handfuls, *Pallowes*, *Hollyhock* rootes, and *Bearefoote*, of each one ℥. *Fennell* seedes, *Parley* seedes, *Annis*, *Dill* seedes, *Drage* seedes, wilde yelow *Kape* seedes, and *Asarabacca*, of each halfe a dragma, *Cammomill*, *Elderne* floures, *Rosemary*, and *Stechas*, of each one dragma: make a little bag thereof, and seth it in water, and then sit vpon it.

Another. Take *Pugwort*, *Sauintræ*, of each three ℥. swæte *Costus* rootes, *Pallowes*, *Hollyhock* rootes, and *Bearefoote*, of each two ℥. the seede of *Pallowes*, of *Hollyhocks*, of *Southernwood*, of *Linseed*, of *Fenegreke*, of *Cuscuta*, of *Pustard* seede, of *Lauender*, and of *Siluer* mountaine, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Parley* seede, *Fennell*, *Dill* seede, wilde yelow *Kape* seede, and *Asarabacca*, of each halfe an ounce, *Cammomill*, *Elderne* floures, *Stechas*, *Rosemary* floures, of each one ounce; seth them as before, and then sit vpon the bag. For fomentation, you are to vse that which followeth hereafter: Take *Cammomill*, *Pugwort*, *Sauine*, and *Pettle* rootes, of each one ℥. seth them together in water, and receiue the vapo: from beneath. Item, take *Rue*, *Sage*, *Southernwood*, and *Sauine*, of each one ℥. put them together into a new pot, and close it tight, but leaue a hole open aboue on the couer, wherein a tap may be put whilst it boyleth; afterwards draw out the tap, and receiue the warme vapo: from beneath, as is sayd before. Take *Pirrh* as much as you will, temper it with the iuice of *Pugwort*, and let it dry; afterward put filed *Parts* hoze vnto it, to wit, the third part as much as there is *Pirrh*, then strow this powder vpon a hote tyle, and receiue the smoke beneath, but round about couer you close. You may also take for it *Pennyroyall*, *Rue*, *Sauine* leaues, and vse them alone. Item, take *Violet* leaues two ℥. *Pirrh* halfe an ounce, let them seth together in rayne water, and foment therewith as warme as you can abide it. Take *Pennyroyall*, *Pepe*, *Southernwood*, *Rue*, *Centory*, and *Hyslope*, of each one ℥. *Sauine*, *Feuerfew*, of each one ℥. and a halfe, *Cinname*, *Galingall*, of each one dragma, *Siluer* mountaine, and *Pathe*, of each halfe a handfull, *Pirrh* one quarter of an ounce, beate them all grosse together, and seth the same in a quart of water euen to the halfe, and then vse it as before, this also prouoketh vrine. Take *Pennyroyall*, *Parierom*, *Sage*, and *Pugwort*, of each one ℥. seth them all together for a fomentation for to fume, you are to take a little *Coloquinte*, cast it vpon a hote stone, and receiue the fume from beneath, it greatly prouoketh womens termes. But note, that *Coloquinte* is very sharp, and that the sayd well sauoring spices and other things be much safer for to fumigate withall: or take *Dill*, *Cammomill*, *Pelilot*, *Squinant*, *Cassie* wood, *Costus* rootes, *Sulphur*, *Rue*, *Parierom*, *Stechas*, *Southernwood*, any of all these, or part of the same: to set boring cups vpon the thighes is also very behoufull, and auailable.

Plaisters and Vnguent.

Take the musilage of *Fleawort*, and of *Linseed*, of each one ounce, vn salted Butter two ounces, *Hens* grease, *Ducks* grease, *Cole* grease, and the marrow of *Calues* bones, of each halfe an ounce, *Ammoniacum* one quarter of an ounce, oyle of *Sesamum*, and oyle of swæte *Almonds*, of each five dragmes, Make as much as is needefull for a salve, then annoint you therewith behinde and before, from the nauell downewards, but not before that you haue vied all other meanes of bathing, letting of blood, potions &c. Item take of the confection of *Benedicta* halfe an ounce, *Turbith* one quarter of an ounce, *Nigella* seede three dragmes, decocted *Hyony* as much as sufficeth for to make a plaister. This is to be layd over the priuities as before.

If so be that one perceiued the termes, after the vse of this foresaid meanes: Some doe aduise, and that very well, that this potion ensuing is to be made: Take *Pugwort*, *Sene* leaues, and *Pennyroyall*, of each halfe a handfull, *Cinname* halfe an ounce, Make three dragmes; seth it all together in three pintes of good wine, vntill about the fourth part be waisted; and this in a Can stoppt tight in lathing water. This expelleth the termes vnto their due time.

The other orderly meane for to pzefer the termes, is; that first of all the *Saphea* or *Me-*
dian

diu shall be opened, and that afterwards a long bag is to be made, and to be filled with any of the foresaid herbes, which you like best, and then put vnto it one quarter of an ounce of *Gallia Muscata*, and then to weare it so vpon the priuities. Afterwards make of one quarter of an ounce of the foresaid *Gallia*, with the water of Bugwort nine pills, and take thre thereof at once in the morning early: then make a pessary of the length of a finger, and fill the same with pouldred *Percurie*, and put it into the place: Set boring cups also vpon the thighes, and in the hams, and then rub the legs downewards with warme clothes.

Squinant and Spadder decocted also in the water of Maiden haire, and broken, are also highly commended.

Item, take the pipes of Cassie, when the Cassie is taken out, and they which be well scraped on the outside, as many as you will, Cinnamom, Pace, Saffron, *Diptamus*, and Baulme, of the one as much as of the other: make a powder thereof, and take a dragma thereof euery morning with water of Pints. The same moueth them very gently.

But as much as concerneth letting of blood (whereof mention is made before) some do aduise, and not without reason, if in case that a woman hath not had her termes a long time, that her vaine is to be opened besides her little Toe, and the next day afterwards on the other side.

The words of Hippocrates and of his expounder Galen be true, that the letting of blood and hunger, doe cause women with childe to miscarie, for that thereby, they say, will the nourishment of the childe be withdrawen.

Therefore good harte is to be taken in these things, for that many women haue this for a custome, whether that they be fat, grosse, strong, or leane, that they alwaies open a vaine at the halfe of their going with childe, like as we also haue before admonished in the first §.

But if one will needes be let blood, then must after the same (or els without letting of blood) bathings be oftentimes vsed, for which is Peniroyall to be taken, field Pints, Southernwood Centorie, and Hyssope, of each one ℥. Hauine and Feuersewe, of each one dragma, Siluer mountaine, Spadder, of each one ℥. Pirrhe one quarter of an ounce; stampe and chop them all small, and then let them sethe in sufficient water, then make thereof a bath for the raines of the backe, or a fomenting for the bottome of the belly. The boring cups, whereof wee haue also spoken before, drawe the blood downewards: Like as dooth also the strong binding of the legges.

The third meane is, as hereafter followeth: thre howers after the rising of the sun shall the *Sapores* of them be opened on the right side which haue not the flowres, and about five ounces of blood drawen. The next day after is this purgation following to be giuen: Take *Agaricus*, Turbith, and Kubarbe, of each one dragma, Indy Spica, Ginger and Pace, of each five graines, *Salgemma* one graine, Agrimony, Bugwort, of each one ounce and a halfe; let them be steeped in cleere howers: afterwards wring it through a cloth, and temper amongst it thre dragmes of *Benedicta laxativa*, and then drinke it betimes in the morning. The third day afterwarde you are to begin to vse this potion: take Fennell rootes, Parsley rootes, Sperage rootes, the rootes of Butchers brome, and of Smalage, of each halfe an ounce: these being all cut small together, then sethe them in a quart of well water vnto the halfe; afterwards sweeten the decoction with Sugar, and then drinke thereof five ounces, and so continue this the space of eight or ten daies. In the mean time is the body to be kept open with gentle clisters, or else they are euery euening after supper to swallow a pill of *Alephangine*, or of *Aloes*. Afterwards it is very good, that thre times in fower and twentie howers all the backe bone be annointed with this salve ensuing: Take the oile of wal flowres two ounces, oile of Saffron one ounce, the grease of Badgers, and of Hens of each halfe an ounce, Saffron, Indy Spica, *Lignum Aloes*, and Bugwort, of each halfe a scruple, waxe as much as is needfull for a salve. After the foresaid potions, are these pills following to be vsed: Take *Pillula foetida* two scruples, *de Hiera composita* one scruple, make seauen pills of it with the confection *Benedicta*.

And if so be that through all this aduise the termes do not appere, then are the tops of the thighes hard by the priuities to be bounden hard: but if that will not helpe, set immediately hot cups behinde on the calues of the legs, setting them vp and of. Lastly, then make this bathe following: Take Peniroyall, white water Pints, Parierom, and Smalage, of each thre handfuls, Hauine five handfuls, *Opopanaxum*, Pirrhe, of each halfe an ounce, Hart wort, Rue, of each

thre handfuls; ſæthe them all together in ſufficient water vntill about the halfe, but leane the herbs in it, and then make a bathe of it ſoꝛ the raines euen to the nauell, and then ſit therein the ſpace of halfe an hower, oꝛ as long as you can. When you haue reſted ſomewhat, then put ſome cotton (being dipped in the iuice of *Mercury*) vp into the place, and without doubt it will prouoke the termes. Cuerie ſuch woman is alſo to beware of all ſlimy meates, which is from all hard meate, like as all that is made of Dough, of Peaſe, of Beanes, of Cheſe, of milke, and all that is dꝛeſt with them, from all ſalt, cold, and binding things, and from thicke rawe red wine: but Cinnamon, Saffron, Ginger, and Smallage ſeeds and rotes, Annis, Fennell, *Hardy ſed*, oꝛ any of all theſe is ſhe to uſe alwaies with hir meate.

But if ſo be that this retention of the termes be cauſed thereof, ſoꝛ that women had but little blood, did great laboꝛ, were weak, leane, not long recovered from a long lingring ſickneſs, oꝛ had liued a long time in hatred, malice, great ſoꝛow, and ſuch like; then are ſuch to haue theſe meates which nourish much, and ſhe ſhall omit all hatred, malice, and ſuch like. She is to bathe oftentimes in water, to ſleepe much, to take reſt, and to be merrie: ſhe muſt alſo reſtaine from letting of blood, except it be a very little. But ſhe is to uſe *Diſtacies*, *Pingles*, *Almonds*, & other nutritiue things as is befoꝛe ſaid. And although it appeared that her termes muſt be alwaies quickned through *Philiſicke*, yet it muſt be begun with the mildeſt meanes, like as hath bene counſelled befoꝛe.

How that the exceſſiue courſe of the flowers is to be ſtopt. §.3.



When this courſe of womens termes getteth the maiſtrie, then be there very heauie ſickneſſes to be feared: to wit, the dꝛopſie, the conſumption, *Heliſia*, the paine of the backe, the paine of the ſtomacke, ſæblenes of naturall digeſtion, lacke of appetite, and ſuch like diſeaſes moe. This iſſue is commonly cauſed of outwarde oꝛ inward occaſions: the outward may be ſals, bloiues, thꝛuſts, great running, leaping, dauncing, walking in great heat, and ſuch like; all which maketh the blood ſubtile and flurible. Item, if there bꝛeake a vaine open in the matrix oꝛ wombe, through vnnaturall and vntimely birth, through any vlcers, oꝛ through any other bꝛuſings in the necke of the wombe, through long uſe of many hot ſpices, oꝛ of any ſubtile meate and dꝛinke.

The inward cauſes may be the ſtrength of the expulſiue, oꝛ the debilitie of the retentive vertue.

This may alſo be cauſed of ſome diſeaſe of the *Matrix*, and through the moiſture of the ſame. But concerning the part it ſelfe, the ſame may be too ſæble, too ſlippery, too wide, and too much open: yet in caſe the moiſture of this part be cauſed of it, then is the ſure of blood ſo great that the *Matrix* and the parts adiacent cannot containe the humours, oꝛ theſe humours be ſo ſharpe, ſo ſubtile, ſo hot, ſo venomous, ſo ſalt, ſo biting, ſo cold, oꝛ ſo wateriſh, that the ſame cannot be retained. The outward cauſes may be inquired of the patient himſelfe.

But if this diſeaſe be cauſed of the debilitie of the retentive vertue, then is the woman bleake oꝛ pale of colour and weake. The ſignes of the ſame part be when as it wareth leane, and conſumeth: each humour may be adiudged out of the pꝛopertie of the body, like as we haue taught the ſame elſe where, as heate, of the fulnes of the vaines, thir, ſtitch, ill fauoured oꝛ lothy ſome colour of the face, and of the whole body.

If then ſuch pꝛocæd out of blood, then doth the colour of her termes alter, and will be whitiſh, oꝛ if the ſame pꝛocæde of *Cholera*, then are the flowꝛes ſomewhat yellowiſh, and of *Melan-cholia*, darkiſh, blew, oꝛ black. By the ſoꝛeſaid colours one may eaſily come vnto the full knowledge what humoꝛs might be the onely cauſe of this exceſſiue moiſture, wherby may be knowne how to choſe of theſe remedies following, wherewith the exceſſiue courſe of the termes may be ſtayed.

But firſt of all there be ſoꝛ this purpoſe certaine rules to be noted. Firſt, you muſt neuer bathe ſoꝛ this exceſſiue courſe of the termes, neither yet uſe any kinde of things which bꝛingeth heate with it. Secondly, when this kind of iſſue commeth by reaſon of the fulnes of the bodie, as it were an unburthening and clenſing of the ſame, then is it by no meanes to be ſtayed, if thereby be not feared a great debilitie. Thirdly, if ſo be that women be full of blond, and this

ſure

sure come too abundantly, then is the *Basilica* vaine to be opened, thereby to withdraue the bloud. Fourthly, in case that it be perceived that red *Cholera*, or any other mired moisture were cause of this sure, then is the same moisture or humors to be purged with appropriate medicines, yet mingling alwayes amongst it some binding and comforting things. Fifthly, infection is also very needfull for this disease, or some such like instruments to be used, whereby the medicine might be brought into the womb. Sixthly, if any astringent things may be brought into it through any instruments, then may they help much better and great a deale sooner then those things that be giuen by the mouth. Seuenthly, because that with this menstruall sure, not only the vertue digressive, but also the whole bodie is weakened, therefore are they to be sustained with light meate, as with yolks of eggs, with yong flesh, and broth of the same, and such like. Sometimes also with water, wherein the sexe of Butchers brome is decocted or tempered with water of *Sorrell*. Eightly, it is also good to set great boring cups vnder the breasts vnpickt. Ninthly, this sure of the termes is not to be stoppt so long as one seeth that the woman hath her liuely colour, and doth remaine strong and healthie: But as soone as one perceiueth that her strength fadeth away, then be all meanes to be sought for to stop it. Tenthly, if one desire to purge any of the folowe humors, and to separate it from the cleane bloud, then may that best be effected by vomits, for that thereby the matter is deriued to another place, and stay their course that they fall not downewards. Eleuenthly, these women are to abstaine from all heauie labour, and from all that maketh the bloud fluxible and thin.

By all these forementioned propositions, may be clearely scene and marked, that if any desire to cure or remedie this disease, that these women must leade an easie life, and keepe themselves quiet. They must also liue in such a place where it is not too hote nor too cold. They must also eschue all thinne and waterish meates, viz. from fruit, except all that which bindeth: in like manner also from all meate which cause any kinde of heate. But all kindes of roasted fowles, and all that maketh grosse bloud, as Rice, Wheate, and Lentils, be good for them. They must also beware much of ouercharging them with meate or drinke, whereof the causes be declared in the seuenth Rule, and afterward to put in practise these remedies following, according to the importance of the cause.

Thus for to speake first of the things which inwardly are to be used, hath bene spoken of before, and also what order of dyet, or government of life is to be obserued. But in case that any doe desire any ampler declaration of it, then let him looke the seuenteenth Chapter, 17. §. where is spoken of the red or bloudie sure, which also is most meete for this vse. But for this menstruall sure, may this Confection following be used: Take the *Species Trisantal*, and *Diarrhodon Abbatiss*, of each one dragme, prepared fine *Bolus* two scruples, Bloudstone washed in Plantaine water, and make Tabulates thereof. Or vse this powder following: Take *Species Trisantal* one dragme and a halfe, *Diarrhodon Abbatiss* one dragme, *De Gemmis Frigidis* one dragme and a halfe, prepared *Coriander* two scruples and a halfe, washed Bloudstone one dragme, prepared *Bolus* halfe a dragme, *Shepherds purse* two scruples, *Roses*, *Corall*, of each halfe a dragme, *Cinnamome* one quarter of an ounce, Sugar as much as you please, then make a powder of it.

Item, take prepared *Bolus* one dragme, sealed earth two scruples, *Tormentill* halfe a drag. *Bursa Pastoris* one scrup. *Spec. de gemmis frigidis* one drag. and a halfe, prepared *Perles* one drag. *Rubins*, *Pomegranats*, *Emeralds*, *Jacints*, *Saphirs*, of each halfe a scruple, *Roses*, red *Corall*, *Saunders*, of each one scruple, Sugar three ounces, make a powder thereof, and vse it in broth, or strowed in meate. The confection of the refuse of iron is also very profitable to be used for this disease especially, if so be that the lesser remedies will not helpe.

Another. Take conserue of *Roses* two ounces, Bloudstone, *Trociscos de Carabe*, *De Terra Sigillata*, and *De Spodio*, of each one dragme, make a powder thereof, and temper them well together, afterwards take euery time thereof about one dragme. Take conserue of *Roses* five ounces, conserue of *Burrage*, of *Buglosse*, and of *Baulme*, of each one ounce, prepared *Bolus* one dragme, prepared pearles one quarter of an ounce, of the fine pretious stones aboue mentioned, of each one scruple, *Cinnamome* one dragme, make an electuary thereof.

Another. Take of the dyest conserue of *Roses* 3. ounces, *Pharmalade* 2. ounces and a halfe, red *Corall* one drag. *Rosforta*, *Trociscos de Carabe*, & prepared *Bolus*, of each halfe a drag. prepared Bloudstone 2. drag. make an electuary therof with the sirupes of *Pirtles*. Item, take conserue of

Roses three ounces, Parmalade two ounces and a halfe, conferue of Burrage and of Buglosse, of each one ounce, prepared *Bolus* one drag. and a halfe, prepared pearles two dragm and a halfe, Wistorta one dragme, Tozmentill two scruples, red Saunders one dragme, then temper them all together with the sirupe of Pirtles vnto a confection. The black confectioned Cherries are very good for this vse: in like manner also the preserved Barberies.

Item, hold a roote of Galingall long in your mouth, and chue the same small. It is also a common aduise which is not to be despised, that tosted bread should be steeped with red wine, and pouned putmegs strowed vpon it and so eaten. Item, take fine *Bolus* which is well washed, Pastick, yelow Amber, prepared Coziander, and Dates, of each alike quantitie, then take thereof at each time halfe a drag. with a rare Eg. This powder ensuing is also maruellous good: Take prepared bloudstone 3. drag. red Cozall one drag. and a half, Tozmentill, and *Trociscos de Spodio*, of each one drag. shauen Quozie, burnt Harts horne, of each two scrup. prepared Pearles one quarter of an ounce, fine *Bolus* halfe a drag. stamp all that may be stamped very small, and strow your meate therewith. Item, take pouned horetail leaues one drag. and bestrow your meate with it. You may also drinke of this powder following one drag. lesse or moze, with the water of Plantaine: Take of the first budded Harts horges, burne them in a potbakers ouen thorowly to white Chalke, and giue thereof one drag. or one drag. and a halfe with red wine, or Plantaine water. You shall also finde hereafter many sundrie powders and waters to drinke described: Take egshells whence yong chickens hath bene hatched, and putmegs, of each alike quantitie, temper them together, and drinke thereof the waight of a dragme with Vineger or with Wine. The part within the Walnut taken a dragme thereof doth binde much.

Another. Take Tozmentill, and putmegs, of each alike quantitie, Plantaine seedes halfe as much, poune them to powder, and giue it in the morning and euening with old bere. Item, take *Trociscos de Carabe* one dragme, beate them to powder and make a potion thereof with Plantaine water, this may be vsed the space of a whole wake together, for that they do calme and stay the fluxe: the like doth also red Cozall one dragme, with Plantaine water taken every day allwayes before meales.

Item, take burnt Harts horne, and pouned Pettie seede, of each alike quantitie, and take thereof the waight of one dragme with the water of Plantaine. The iuice of Parrow doth bind also in this disease if one take one spoonfull or twaine thereof: These iuices ensuing may be decocted vnto the forme of a sirupe, for to be vsed in winter tyme: like as the iuice of broad Plantaine, the iuice of Shepherds purse, of Parrow, &c. for this is also good the water of Elderne dronken, and Galingall chued.

Item, if a woman do flowe too much, whether it be in Childbirth or other wise, and that it be feared that she might bleede to death, then take one dragme of red Pettie seede pouned, and let her drinke it with Plantaine water.

Some do giue chopt and boyled Doppie heds to drinke, but it is not allwayes conuenient, there be much safer things, viz. these ensuing.

Take fine *Bolus* one quarter of an ounce, binde it in a cloth, hang it in a pot of wine, and then drinke thereof: see the Pimpernell in Pease broth, and drinke also thereof.

Dr take dyed Goats dung, stamp it to powder, and drinke thereof, it doth not only stay the mensuall fluxes in women, but also all kinds of bleeding; for this, also is very meet red Rose water dronken.

Amongst Clifters is this following very highlie commended: Take Swines bred, Feuerflew, Baulme, Rue, Scabious, Rosemary floures, Southernwood, Comin, Siluermountaine, *Ameos*, *Ammomum*, Balsam fruit, Cucubus, Bayberies, *Calmus*, Cassie wood, *Cassia Fistula* and pipes, of each one dragme and a halfe, Will seede, Annis seedes, of each one \mathfrak{ss} . and a halfe, shauen Quozie two \mathfrak{ss} . see the them all together by a mild fire in two quarts of water vnto the halfe, and presse it out, take xii. ounces of this decoction, oyle of *Sesamum*, of Rue, & of Pepper, of each halfe an ounce, Indie salt one drag. *Diacastoreon*, confection of Bayberies, and *Benedicta*, of each three drag. temper them well together, and minister it very warme. With this following a woman is to be fanned from beneath. Take *Alipta Muscata*, *Spec. Nere*, of each one drag. *Gallia Muscata*, and red Sozax, of each 3. drag. Allome one drag. and a halfe. If this powder is a dragme to be vsed at once. This temperature is not easily to be made, because of the manifolde simples which do come therein, and it is not only good for to stay the vnnaturall fluxe of flowes, but is also

also good for the suffocation of the Matric, for that it dryeth, and is good for a barren wombe, and especially if the maladie proceede of cold. Pessaries and such like: Stamp dyed Asse dung, and some Pessaries thereof with the iuice of Plantaine, and put it into the places.

Another. Take iuice of knot grasse and washed Shepes wooll, dip it therein, and lay it on the places.

Item, take Frankincense, Pomegranat blossomes, Gals, Antimonie, and the iuice of Sloes, of each alike quantitie, bestrow the wooll with it, and vse it as before.

For this, is also good halfe a lb. of pouned Plantaine, and vse it as before: or make a small pessarie of the iuice of Sloes, and with the iuice of Pimpernell with Cotton.

Outwardly is this plaister ensuing to be vsed: Take the iuice of Plantaine 11. ounces, Rose water 3. ounces, Vineger halfe an ounce, red Cozall, Amber, Bloud stone, fine Bolus, Pirtle seed, Akorne cups, and Frankincense, of each one quarter of an ounce, sealed earth, as much as is needefull for to make it thicke inough: this being all beaten small together, and tempered together, then make three plaisters of it, and lay the one before, and the other behinde.

The plaister *ex Galbano* may also be vsed, whereof here do follow two sorts. Take *Galbanum* three ounces, *Bellinum* three quarters of an ounce, stamped Feuerstein halfe an ounce, and half a drag. Pirrh halfe a dragme: melt the Gums in Vineger. But if they be not cleane, then wryng them thorow a cloth, and let the Vineger sethe away, then make a plaister thereof with Turpentine.

Plaister of Galbanum.

The other: Take *Galbanum* as much as you will, melt it by the fire in red wine, temper fine Bolus amongst it, and Dragon bloud, of each halfe as much as the waight of the *Galbanum*, then make a plaister with sufficient Ware and Turpentine.

Item, take pouned Lentils twelue ounces, Shepherds purse, and Plantaine, of each three handfuls, dyed Asse dung, and Goats dung, of each one ounce and a halfe, Frankincense halfe an ounce, Dragon bloud, Pints, of each one ounce and a halfe, the iuice of Sloes, *Hypocistis Liscium*, of each one ounce, fine whites of eggs, Beane meale three ounces, Gips, foure ounces, but steepe the Gips the space of a day in Vineger, and then make a plaister thereof with the iuice of Plantaine, so that it may be sodden with the meale, vntill it be very thicke. Lastly, mire the rest amongst it, and when it hath stode a good while, and is well tempered together, then take it from the fire, and stirre it continually about vntill it be thorow cold. This plaister is to be layd ouer all the priuities, and all the parts about it. The same plaister doth maruellously stop the bloud of the Piles, and all moisture of the Matric, of salt and tough humors, for that it is oftentimes approued.

Item, take the iuice of Plantaine as much as you will, temper therein *Trociscos de Carabe*, and then apply them as all the rest.

Or take Clome wood, Nightshade, and knot grasse, of each a like much, stamp & wryng the iuice out of it, then temper as much Rye meale amongst it, vntill it be as thicke as pap, afterwards lay it ouer the nauell, and ouer the priuities. Another: take Vineger dyegs, make it hot, and wet a blew cloth in it, and lay it thrice double ouer the priuities.

Before in the third part the tenth Chapter and 5. S. ye haue a pretious Salue, beginning, Take Comin, &c. which is also mete for this vse.

There is also a Salue called *De Gallia*, which is thus to be prepared: Take Comin, Will seede, Caraway, Rue seede, *Ameos*, *Gallia Muscata*, of each one drag. and a halfe, *Epithimus* one quarter of an ounce, Indy salt two scrup. white Rosen one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Will two ounces, oyle of Roses one ounce, Aloe, Clones, of each 2. scrup. molten ware as much as is needefull for to make a plaister of it, then lay it ouer the kidneies, and ouer the priuities: this salue doth not only stay the sure in women, but also expelleth the wind of the stomach, and hindereth parbaking. Or take *Sandaraca* one ounce and a halfe, pouned Cyper nuts one ounce, fine Bolus foure ounces, Plantaine seede, and Pimpernell rootes, of each two ounces and a halfe, Saffron three ounces, then make it with water wherein Akornes were decocted, vnto a plaister or salue, and vse it as is sayd. There may also be made a bathe, as here followeth: Sethe the rootes of *Curcuma* in sufficient water, and make thereof a bathe for the raynes.

It is also good to make a bath wherein Allome is decocted, or any of these things following, which one will, as Pirtle seede, the rinds and rootes of the Elme tree, the rinds of the Oke tree, Pomegranat blossomes and the pales, Akornes, Pedlars, Lentils, and such like.

Item, it is sayd that one do burne *Ranum Arboream* to ashes, and the ashes woꝛne on the neck, that womens termes will be stopt thereby, but it is to be pꝛoued.

In like manner do some aduise, that the mosse of the blacke oꝛ Slothoꝛne woꝛne in ones shoes, should also stop the same.

Item, take Shepherds purse, and binde it on the soales of a womans fete. Other aduise also that boring cups should be set vnder her bꝛeast vnpyck't, foꝛ that they dꝛaw the blood vpwꝛds, and it is also a very good remedie foꝛ to stop therewith the flowing of the termes. Likewise it helpeth also exceedingly to binde the armes hard, to the end that thereby the blood might be dꝛawne vpwꝛds.

Further, this setting of cups, binding, and all these things that are to be put into the places admonished befoꝛe, be especially to be vsed, if it be perceiued, that thꝛough such superfluous courses women be impotent, and were afraide of pꝛesent falling into a swoone. In like manner also it is very requisite that the smell oftentimes to cold things, and vse other moe binding things, which be described in the first part, the eight Chapter, and the 7. S.

foꝛ a conclusion it is to be noted, whether there be heate oꝛ cold in this woman, that the medicine may be oꝛdained accordingly. These be all warming things, and they also which stop blood, which do heere follow, viz. Frankincense, Pistick, Cypers nuts, *Sandaraca Landanum*, *Mirba*, *Sotozar*, *Annis*, and such like.

Cold stopping things be these, as Camfer, the iuice of Sloes, burnt Iuoꝛie, Coziander, Dꝛagon blood, Saunders, blood stone, *Hypocistis*, fine *Bolus*, *Ruscus* seede, Whittle seede, Gals, Pomgranat blossoms, the seede of Plantaine, the seede of Melon, of Cucumbers, of Gourds, of Pompeons, and of Pimpernell rootes, &c. whereby all tempered medicines may be adiudged.

Of the whites, or white fluxe in women. §.4.



he disease which women do call the whites, and the Whisitions *Menstrua alba*, hath a great acquaintance oꝛ fellowship with the auoidance of humane seede, oꝛ the running of the raynes, whereof we haue wꝛitten at large befoꝛe in the first Chapter: and is also very evidently declared, that such kind of fluxes be caused thꝛough hot, and thꝛough cold causes which is heere also to be noted.

But aboue all that which is there discoursed do all famous Whisitions commend, that it pꝛocēde of heat. Women be first of all to be purged: foꝛ which, Cassie is passing good: afterwards giue her euery other day one dragme *Troscos de Carabe*, tempered in Plantaine water, oꝛ a quarter of an ounce, *Triphera ex parte Phenonis* tempered with a little fine *Bolus*. The raynes are to be annointed with the salue of Roses, and with other things moe which be pꝛescribed in the spermatieall flux. There is also to be giuen hir euerie second oꝛ third day one dragme of the siliing of Iuoꝛie to dꝛinke with Plantaine water, and the cold losings of *Diamargariton* is the also to vse oftentimes.

Item: Take *Camphora* ten graines, bꝛuse it small, beaten Amber one scruple: dꝛinke them together with Plantaine water, it is a very good medicine.

foꝛ this is also esteemed to be a sure remedie, the first buds of the Blackberrie bush, and the berries thereof dꝛied, pouned, and dꝛunken euery day one dragme with red wine, oꝛ twice a day. There may also be made a confectiō of the said berries when they be ripe, seething the same with hony oꝛ Sugar, and to vse thereof daily.

But in case that this disease pꝛocēde of cold, whereto some do make fire kindes of bathes which are to be vsed one vpon the other, which me thinketh to be much too strong, foꝛ that they take Sulphure, Alome, steeld water, and strong Penageges, as fenerfew, Bugwort, and bayberries: afterwards againe all things which be contrarie, as Wken buds, Knotgrasse, Squinant, &c. Therfoꝛe will we leaue the same vnmentioned: but foꝛ this must be taken the flowers of dead Nettles poudered the waight of a dragme with wine, confected Annis seedes, is also very commodious foꝛ this. But in case that the issue be very sharpe, then beate whites of eggs with Rose water, and make clothes wet in it and put it vꝑ into womens secrets.

Of the suffocation or ascension of the Matrix. §.5.

This terrible sickness is in many things most like to the falling euill *Epilepsie*, and the great swooning *Syncope*, for because that the *Matrix* hath great sympathie with the hart, the arteries, braines, & with the two membranes which do couer the braines. This maladic commeth to women through diuers causes; and especially when there is retention of their termes or flowers, yea also through the retention of their naturall seede, especially to them that be accustomed to haue the company of a man, and must then forbear it, as widowes, and aged maidens: for that in case the foresaide seede be retained, then causeth it many kinds of winds in the *Matrix* which do compell it so to ascend, that otherwise it oppresseth euen the *Diaphragma*. This is then the opinion of diuers learned men in this case. But *Galen* doth dispute against it with strong reasons, that the foresaide naturall seede doth much rather cause this sickness, then the retention of the termes; chiefly in women which also are burthened with many bad humours, be full of blood, and brought vp in idleness, haue accustomed to accompany with a man (like as is expressed) and now suddenly are constrained to want it. Wherefore is commonly sene saith he, that this suffocation for the most part troubleth widowes. We maintaineth also and that by good reason, that the mother doth not ascend euen to the *Diaphragma* (which is the midriffe) and there doth abide the breath.

Thus may be caused through the retention and putrifaction of the seede, all manner of troublesome accidents, as giddines and paines of the head, madnes, short breath, and panting of the hart, her naturall colour doth alter in a yellow pale, yea sometimes in rednes of the face and of the eyes, they gnash with their teeth, draw their hands and feet away, they do also feele that there ascendeth somewhat upwards out of the belly, and commonly then do they presse downe their belly with their hands; they also do sit commonly with bent knees on the ground; they lose their speech: and neuertheless when one calleth them by their names, then do they heare it, but they cannot answer, and do lie oftentimes, that neither breath nor pulse, nor any life can be perceived in them, yea are taken to be dead. Like as they also sometimes are taken or assailed with these kinds of maladies that they depart out of this world: neuertheless they alwaies remaine by their memorie and knowledg; and when they come againe to themselves, then do they rehearse all that is spoken and done. So that this disease (like as is rehearsed) is in many things to be compared with the falling sickness, onely that they do not come. In like maner it is not vnlike the palsey, but only that there is no long breath with it, and very like the sleeping sickness *Lethargia*, but that there is no ague with it. Amongst all the foresaid signes is there no worse then the retention of the breath, for that the same cannot be long holden vp without death follow after it; so that a body cannot liue without breath.

This greuous accident may also be caused through a strong colde which doth so sore assaile a body, that thereby all his breath and pulse will be so drawne inward that by the feeling it can be at no hand perceived. Like as we haue also admonished here and there in the first part amongst the diseases of the braines. In fine, the meane to remedie this terrible disease consisteth in these seuerall things.

The first what is to be done in the hastie accident for to hinder the stifeling.

The second (if so be that this disease be caused through retention of the seed) what is to be used for it.

The third, in case that this be caused through retention of the termes, or through any other bad humours, how one is to behaue himselfe therein. When as this disease commeth with hinderance of the breath, then is speedie helpe needfull: therefore is cold well water, or Rose water to be cast by and by into his face, and to hold to the mouth and nose to the ende it may compell the breath backward, and breake out with force: also the hands, feete, buttocks, and thighes, are to be rubbed hard with Vineger and salt, and afterwards to be bounden very hard. Another woman must make his finger fat with odoriferous oyle (like as oyle of Lillies or any other) and therewith annoint the necke of the wombe or *Matrix*, and to rubbe the same softly to the end that the *Matrix* be thereby drawne downewards. Further, there is a little nesting powder to be blowen into the nose, to the end that through the strong motion of nesting the mother may be drawne downeward. They are also to be called harde and lowdly by their names, and to

kepe away all pleasant saouours from their nose : but the places are to be soumented, annointed, o; sunned with all odoriferous things. Also a great boring cup is to be set vpon the same place vnpickt. You are also to hold all filthie lothsome saouours befoze the nose, as *Asa fetida*, *Galbanum*, o; *Beuerrod* : also the smell of old clouts, of shoes burnt, of haire, of feathers, and such like, that may be gotten spædily are you to let her smell vnto. For that (like as we in the beginning of the description of the *Matrix* o; mother) haue admonished. The mother doth so fæie and auoid by nature all stinking things, and to the contrarie loueth all odoriferous fumes and saouours : yet are these stinking things not to be vsed but in extreme nêd : for that all that stinketh very lothsomely, that doth also weaken and infæible nature. Amongst these foresaid things is *Hæres* haire also verie requisite. The chæfest odoriferous things which are to be vsed beneath is *Muscus* and *Ambra* mixte. And if one can get suddenly this pouder following is to be taken.

Take red *Hotar*, *Lignum Aloes* and cloues, of each one dragme, *Spuske*, *Amber*, of each half a dragme ; make all to pouder, then binde it in a cloth and put it vp into their places.

Item : Take one ounce of the oyle of Lillies, *Muscus*, and *Saffron*, of each three graines ; bruse them well together and dip a taint in it, and put it into the place, o; fill a small bag with salt and vse it as befoze.

You are also to make a funne with these things following, and to receiue the same through an *Annell* : Take *Cassie wood*, *Cinnamom*, *Lhyme*, *Gallia Muscata*, and such like. But if these will not helpe, then vse one of the strong pessaries and others which be described befoze in this chapter and the 2. S.

Verum (Saluo pudore) presentissimum Remedium est, si maritus iungat Penum, cum Oleo Caryophyllorum, admixto parum Olei amygdalarum dulcium, ad caliditatem prioris temperandam, & cum vix re Coeat : Matrix enim subito descendet.

When as now this patient beginneth to recouer againe (being a maiden) and enclined to this grieuous sicknes, then is there no better remedie, then that she induce her selfe into the state of matrimony : if not, then is she to reſtraine from all these things, which do increaſe naturall ſeeds, as flesh, wine, and other, like as befoze is described in the first Chapter, and the 4. S. and the ſenenty Chapter and the 8. S. For this is also letting of blood very meete. The vse of all cooling meates, and the abſence of men. All minerall bathes which doe drie, be also very fit for this vse, and she may also vse therewith these confections following.

Take fresh rootes of *Polypody* ſixe ounces, *Sene leanes*, *Violets*, *Pyxnes*, *Sebestes*, *ſower Dates*, and *Currans*, of each one ounce and a halfe; ſæthe them in two quarts of water vnto the halfe, afterwards wryng it out : and whileſt that the decoction is yet warme, ſæpe therein ſixe ounces of the ſeeds of *Fleawort*, ſo long that the muſcilage may be drawen out of them, then put 24. ounces of white Sugar vnto it. Likewise also the pith of ſower Dates and *Cassie* which are prepared with the foresaid decoction, of each three ounces : then ſæthe them again together by a milde fier untill that it be thicke, then temper with it these things following beaten very small burnt *Iuorie*, *Kubarbe*, red and white *Saunders*, *Roses*, *Violets*, white *Poppy ſeede*, *Purſlain ſeede*, *Endiue ſeede*, *Lettice ſeede*, small *Endiue ſeede*, of *fennell*, *Dragagant*, *Starch*, scraped *Iuory*, *Gum*, *Hollihockes*, *fumitory*, *Licoice*, and *Annis ſeeds*, of each a dragme and a halfe, *Diagridion* two dragmes and a halfe, *Microbalani Inds*, *Emblis*, of each three dragmes : temper them all together in a mortar, and giue from halfe an ounce vnto ſeuene drag. This foresaid electuary is ſo highly commended, that it is called the gift of God. These are also not euery day, but onely once o; twice to be vsed, with a decoction of *Spugwort* and Sugar, and then to ſaſt ſixe howers vpon it.

This being done, there ſhall a round plaister be layd vpon the navel *De Galbano*, and not to take it of befoze it fall away of it ſelfe, wherof therẽbe two diuers ſortes diſcouered befoze in the 3. S. Laſtly, these pills cutting are to be vsed. Take *Siluer mountaine*, *Spadder*, *Berniroyal*, the innermoſt rindes of *Cassie pipes*, *Pomegranate kernels*, *Pyony rootes*, and *Calmus*, of each three dragmes, *Muscus*, and *Spica of Indie*, of each halfe a dragme : then make pills thereof with the iuice of *Spugwort*, of them is she to take euery day, o; at leaſtwiſe, about the other day, if she do not vse the Confection, and that befoze ſupper. But the ſame is not to be giuen if the termes be preſent : but when they be paſt, if you will haue them milder, then put one drag. and a halfe of *Aloes* vnto them.

But in caſe that this aſcenſion of the *Spother* be cauſed through the obſtruction of the termes,

and

and that a woman be come to her selfe againe, and that it is feared that it will returne againe, by reason that the cause is not yet taken away, & that it be certaine that this disease were caused through the retention of the termes, or of the naturall seede; then must diligence bee used that the termes be preferred and moued, whereof we haue before giuen a full instruction.

Item, if this suffocation of the Matrix proceede through obstruction or hinderance of the termes, then giue her one quarter of an ounce of powdered *Agaricus* with Wine, or with hony water, for that it is a sure meane for it. It is also verie good for the same, that there be taken one drag. of the pouned *Agnus Castus* with one ounce of the hony of Roses, especially if the disease do come through the detention of the seede, the *Trocisci de Mirrha* doe also moue much.

Secondly, the *Saphea* is also to be opened in the scote, and afterwarde one dragme of pouned Betony, with the water of Feuerfew. In like maner also boring cups are to be set vpon the thighes, picked or vnpicked, cut a peece of bread round like to a Dolloz, and set thre waxe candles in it of the length of a finger, set them so burning vpon the Pauell, and then whelme ouer it a glasse of a quarterne long; then doe the candles goe out, and the glasse doth drawe the Mother or Matrix perforce into her due and wonted place: and this hath been oftentimes appoynted.

Item annoynt all the belly with oyle of Mastick, and make a pot lid warme, wind it about with clothes, and hold it warme to the belly.

Item take *Beuered* and *Assifetida* of each one quarter of an ounce, *Philonium romanum* one dragme; temper them together, and giue it them fasting: then drinke vpon it a good draught of Puscadell or Palmsey, it helpeth maruellous well.

The same vertue hath *Triphera magna*, the waight of a dragme and a halfe dronken with wine in the morning early. Likewise is also good for this one dragme of pouned Pyonie seedes dronken with hony water.

If the Matrix or mother begin to ascend, then is to be taken one quarter of an ounce with yellow Rape seede, with the water of Bugwort.

For a plaister you are to take *Galbanum* one dragme and a halfe, *Bdellium* one dragme, Bugwort, Feuerfewe, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of Lillies one ounce; dissolue the gums in the oyle, and when they begin to be cold, then temper the pouder amongst it: with this salve they are to annoynt them beneath and aboue the Pauell, and then to lay a plaister of *Galbanum* vpon it.

Item: Take *Assa fetida* one ounce, *Galbanum* two ounces; melte them in Vineger, and spread them warme vpon a leather of a quarter long, then lay them ouer the nauell: the *Galbanum* is also good vsed alone. Whensoeuer you will lay any thing vpon the place of the paine then take the roots of Louage, cut them very small and put them in a bag. Commeth the paine of the mother through cold, then sethe it in wine; but if it be through heat, then sethe them in water, and laye it on the place of the paine. Could you not get these rootes, then take Acozne buds, it is also good.

Passing and parbaking is much aduised for this, but especially hard must be taken to the strength of the patient.

And in case that the same woman must liue without a man, then is she so much the oftner to vse annoynting with the odoriferous salues with the fingers beaneath, and vse therewith all things which doe diminish naturall seede, as Rue, *Agnus castus*, and such like, as els where hath bene shewed. Besides all these you may looke all that hath bene said before in the second §. of the termes in women.

Of the descension and falling downe of the Mother
or Wombe. §. 6.



Like as the Wombe or Mother in women ascendeth, so doth it also descend, so that it commeth so lowe, that she being turned about dependeth, and with a long ende hangeth out of the bodie, like as is wont to happen with the Arsegut, whereof we haue witten in the tenth Chapter, and the 2. §.

The causes of this disease may be outward and inward. The outward may come of fals, heauie birth, long sitting vpon a cold stone, or in the water, thow

rowe hard going to stöle, through strong néxing, through running, leaping, through vse of much cold salue, and such like, &c. The inward be when the bodie is pestred and full of humors, which afterwards do fall euen to the wombe, which do so vnknit and resolue the bands and stayes of the same, that they cannot hold the mother any longer, like as oftentimes befallerh in the Palsie and falling sicknes, also in vlcers and impostumes of the wombe. The signes of this disease be manifest, if the same be caused through any outward causes, the same may be inquired of the patient himselfe. Otherwise it is to be considered whether the woman be fat, moyst, liue in quiet, is wont to eate much fruit, or much fish, &c. They haue also oftentimes paine about the priuie members, and in the neather part of the back bone. There cometh also sometimes an Ague with it, retention of the vyne, and hardning of the stöle. Some get also much trembling, the Cramp, and great feare, without any manifest causes, with many moe grieuous accidents. Now in case that defension of the mother do yet remaine somewhat inwardly, then must a Midwife behold and search her: to wit, then she must put one finger into the neck of the wombe or Patrir: if the passage be smoth and open, then is the mother not fallen downe; but if she find therein any stop or let, then is it a sure signe that it is descended: and if so be that the Patrir or mother continue long out of her naturall place, then is it vnpossible that she should be reduced againe into her due & naturall place, & moze vnpossible if the same depend out of the bodie.

Thus for to remedie this disease, then may one chöse out of these things following, those which are thought to be best and most mate, according to the qualitie of the disease. First of all take thre boring cups, and set the one vpon the nauell, or vnder the breasts, and the other two about the priuities vnpickt: these may draw the *Matrix* againe into her accustomed place. The Midwife may also annoint the body within with oile of *Pasticke*, and to do whatsoeuer is possible by manuell operation to set the same againe into hir naturall place.

Secondly, take a glowing bricke and strow thereon this pouder following: Take *Lozmentill*, the iuice of *Sloes*, and *Risforta*, of each thre dragmes, the peales and blossomes of *Pomegranates*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Assa fetida* one ounce, *Pasticke*, *Frankinsence*, *Galbanum*, of each two dragmes and a halfe, *Cipers nuts*, *Gals*, *Pirtle seade*, of each fve dragmes; stampe them together and mire them well together: this fume is she to receiue from beneath, but herde must be had that it come not into the nose: for to hold to her nose serue none other, but well sauoring and swete smelling things, *Ambra*, *Muscus*, and *Violets*, and all saouours which is most acceptable vnto her. These bad saouours (as is said before) cause the mother to ascende againe. This same is also to be vsed whilst that the boring cups are fastned.

Item, take a stincking egge from a brood hen and dip cotton it, and then laie it vpon the dependant necke of the *Matrix*, then will it forthwith be drawen vp againe.

Or take *Cammomill*, *Parierom*, and *Caruway*, of each one handfull, Linsede one handfull and a halfe; sethe it in water and receiue the vapo: thereof.

If so be that then there be heate with it, then are you to vse this vapo: following: Take *Houllake* as much as you please, beate it grosse, and then afterwards laie it vpon a hot stone, and let the woman receiue the vapo: thereof.

Thirdly, then is this fementation to be made: Take thre ounces of *Roses*, *Pirtle seade*, and *Violet leaues*, of each one handfull, *Parigolds*, *Jeuersfew*, of each one handfull, *Assa fetida* fve dragms: breake them all togither, then put them in a bag and sethe them in red wine, and then laie it after the vapo: receiued vpon the foresaid place.

Or take the blossomes and pils of *Pomegranates*, *Cipers nuts*, the rindes of *Medlers*, and of the *Seruite tree*, of each one ounce, *Allom* one ounce and a halfe: sethe them all togither in red wine and foment therewith the places and the parts adiacent of the *Matrix*. Some do also aduise to take *Ore dung* tempered with red wine, and to receiue the vapo: of it from beneath.

Fourthly, let euerie day the necke of the mother and all parts about the mother be annointed with the salue *Athea*, but temper amongst it some marrow of any beasts, the fat of foules, and oile as much as you please. Do this in the euening when she goeth to bed: you may also of such like things make a plaister, and apply it all the whole night as before.

Or take the oile of *Pirtles*, of *Lillies*, and of *Pasticke*, of each two ounces and a halfe, *Assa fetida*, *Risforta*, and *Lozmentill*, of each thre dragmes: the gum is to be molten, then poune all that is to be pouned and make a salue thereof, annoint therewith the body outwardly, and also vpon the kidneies.

Letter:

Rester: Take the yolks of two well beated eggs, put vnto them one ounce and a halfe of the oile of Roses, fresh butter halfe an ounce, make a salve thereof and vse it as befoze.

The dependant *Matrix* is to be washed often with wine which is steled.

Also the oile of swete Almonds may be vfed for this purpose.

Fiftly: Take *Assa fetida* one ounce, *Pasticke*, *Frankinsence*, *Pirtle seede*, *Galingall*, and *Cipers nuts*, of each one dragma, stamped together verie small, mixe it with the oile of *Pirtles*, and annoint therewith a pessarie, afterwards put it into the places.

Sixtly: Take *Rosin* two ounces, *Frankinsence*, *Pasticke*, and *Cipers gum*, of each halfe an ounce, temper it together and let it melt; make it then with the oile of *Pasticke* to a plaister and weare it vpon the priuities, it will stay and let that the mother or *Matrix* cannot fall any further out of the body. Take *Pasticke* one ounce, *Frankinsence* halfe a dragma, *Cipers nuts*, *Gals*, and *Pirtle seede*, of each one dragma, pils and blossomes of *Pomegranates*, and *Turpentine* of each one quarter of an ounce; poune all that is to be poune, and temper it all together with *Turpentine*, and oile of *Pasticke*, as much as will suffice for to make a milde plaister, spread it on a cloth of a quarter long, and half a quarter broad, weare this plaister continually betwene the nauell and the priuities.

The common people do much commend to sit vpon *Oken* bozds and to receiue the fume of dyed *Caraway* from beneath, takes baked with the dyed seeds of *Verbascum* and to eat them, to eate *Annis* seeds, to annoint the dependant *Matrix* oftentimes with the iuice of *Sloes*, and aboue all the vomiting and parbaking thereby to draw the *Matrix* vpwads are very good.

Above all these which be befoze discovered against the descension of the *Matrix*, are these things insuing also verie good: Take burnt *Dale* stones beaten small, and strow of this powder vpon the dependant member.

A stronger: Take *Mumia*, *Licium*, *Hypocistis*, poune *Gals*, of each two scruples, burnt and small beaten *Oyster* shels two dragmes and a halfe, then make a powder thereof and vse it as is befoze saide. Item: Take a ware candle of the length of sixe fingers breadth, and one finger thicke, annoint it with oile of *Lillies* and put it vp into the place.

Item: Take *Cipers nuts*, vntwo; meaten, *Oken leaues*, *Squinant*, & *Cammomill*, of each halfe an ounce, *Roses* one quarter of an ounce, *Hares haire* cut small halfe a dragma: stampe all to powder, and put it in a bag of the length & breadth of a finger, then steepe it in warme wine wherein *Cammomill* hath bene decocted, and so put it vp into the body.

This woman is also to sit vp to the nauell in a bathe wherein *Allom* and other astringent things haue bene decocted, and let hir sit therein about an hower.

Other do counsell to vse this bag following: Take *Oken buds*, *Hedlar leaues*, *Seruire leanes*, the vppermost sprigs of *Ladies Whistles*, *Cipers leaues*, of each one handfull, the sprigs of *Pyttles*, *Galerian*, wild *Spints*, of each two handfuls, chop them all small; afterwards put them into a bag, let it sethe well, and sit thereon when you are in the bathe.

For a conclusion: there serueth for this intent all that is prescribed befoze in the tenth chap. and second §. of the falling out of the arsegut: for that both these diseases haue one kind of cause. Likewise also there are many things specified in the third part the third chapter, and second §. of the tumorous beafts which is meet for this purpose, like as also hereafter of women in childe bed shall be said.

So much be then spoken of this suffocation and descension of the mother: nowe will we proceed of other accidents which also concerne the *Matrix* or mother.

Of the paine in the mother or *Matrix* through winde. §.7.



First of all each one may be wel assured which hath any vnderstanding, that euery vnnaturall accident with this part in women, to wit, the *Matrix* (whether it be of outward or inward causes) is subiect to, cannot be without paine, which the *Grecians* do call *Hystericalgic*. Amongst these the causes be most winde, which cause no lesse paine in that place, then they do in the guts, wherof we wil at this present write and discourse.

The causes of this may be blowes, thrusts, and fells. Item, outward cold which causeth an obstruction in the necke of the mother, whereby the winde be detained. These winde be al-

so caused sometimes through hard and painefull bearings, or through the long vse of windie meates, as Rapes, Chestnuts, Rye bread, and such like. The signes of these winds be paine in the Patrir, and other parts adiacent, swelling vp of the belly, and that the paine is now here now there.

To remedie this disease, some famous Physicians do aduise, that the bodie is first to be purged through some common Clusters, through Cassie, or through the powder of *Hiera Picra*, and that afterwards one quarter of an ounce of *Triphera Magna* shall be taken in the morning with good wine, for the same is esteemed especiall good.

These winds be also caused oftentimes through vomiting and parbaking.

Secondly, take for it two ounces and a halfe of *Oxymel*, and three ounces of the water of Cammomill, afterwards set a common Cluster.

Thirdly, foment the belly with wine wherein Cammomill is decocted. Lastly, may *Triphera* or *Philonium* be vsed.

This foresaid *Philonium* is very good, but as is oftentimes admonished men must deale prouidently in it: for the *Triphera* is much safer.

Afterwards do the famous Physicians commaund to proceede with these things which do follow.

Take Turbith one dragma, or foure scruples, according as the woman is strong, Ginger one scruple, giue it her with water of Mugwort, or with common well water wherein Mugwort is decocted. This is a very excellent medicine for to alluage all paines of the Patrir.

And if so be that one peradventure feare of any mischance, because the winds of the Patrir do oftentimes cause it, then take Caraway seede which is steeped in Vineger, and dyed againe, and powdered one dragma, *Ameos*, Ginger, Beuerod, of each one scruple, temper them together, and giue one dragma thereof with wine certaine dayes together. Or Gentian, the waight of one dragma with wine, which easeth them maruellous much, for that it expelleth not onely the paine, but also preuenteth that there returne no paine vnto it.

In the twelfth Chapter and 11. §. you haue a potion with Gentian and others which may also be vsed for this with great aduancement.

Amongst the remedies which may be outwardly vsed, first is bathing good, whereto this following is to be prepared: Take Parierom, field Spints, Southernwood, Fennell, and such like things which expell winde, sethe these in water for a bathe.

Or if so be that bathing is not mete, then vse fomenting of warme wine wherein Cammomill is decocted, and afterwards annoynt the belly with the oyle of Elderne. Item, take oyle of Walltick one ounce, melt therein one quarter of an ounce of *Laudanum*, and annoynt you therewith, yet the oyle of Lillies and of Wallfoures passeth all.

Item, rene sodden eggs, brayed well with swete milke, and some Saffron tempered amongst it, and then layd vpon it is highly commended for this vse. It is sayd also, that if black Belleboe be layd beneath befoze the Patrir, then doth it draw all moysture vnto it. But the Physicians do seth the Belleboe, and make a cloth wet in the same decoction, this clenseth the Patrir from all wind, without any molestation. This plaister following is especially commended for all winds and swellings of the Patrir: Take *Bdellium*, and *Ammoniacum*, of each two ounces, *Agnus Castus*, Centoie, Southernwood, Parierom, field Spints, *Ameos*, and Cassie wood, of each one dragma and a halfe, Turpentine as much as is needefull for to make thereof two plaisters, then lay one befoze, and the other behinde.

Of the paine in the Mother through cold. §. 8.



Take *Doronicum*, Zeduary rootes, the seede of Smallage and Cinnamon, of each one quarter of an ounce, Frankincense halfe a dragma, Beuerod one dragma, white Sugar one ounce, temper them and stamp them all together, and giue thereof a spoonfull with wine. In the first part and the twelfth Chapter there is a remedie for the memoie, to wit, of a grosser powder, which is also maruellous good to warme and strengthen the cold Patrir. Item, take one dragma of Treacle, Saffron foure greines, temper them in two ounces of Mugwort water, and then drinke it fasting, and fast three houres vpon it. Spithidate is also very good for all diseases

diseases of the Matric, and chiefly for them that proceede of cold. There is more good for this Venereol about the twaight of a dragma tempered with oyle of Cammomill, and the belly anointed with it. Ripe Juniper berries eaten be also very good for this disease. The first Balsam (which is described in the eight part) is also especially good for the same, all plaisters, oyles, salues, and fomentations, which be described in mo other places may also be vled for this.

The simple things, which are mete for a colde Matric, bee these, to wit, *Aguium*, *Rue*, *Sage*, *Savin tree*, *Assa fetida*, *Spadder*, *Juniper*, *Pemirogall*, *field Spints*, *white water Spints*, *Calmus*, *Serapinum*, and all that warmeth the Kidneies.

Of the paine in the Mother through heat. §.9.

There commeth also otherwhiles a great paine in the Matric through heate, so that there must oftentimes things be vled which take away and dead the fences like as the iniection of Venbane seede, or Poppy seede, but it must be prouidently taken in hand, and not to vse the same but in great heate. But if you will any thing that is more weaker, then seethe the Poppy heads in water, and iniection the decoction thereof, and foment it therewith on the outside. Warne swete milke iniection also is good for this purpose.

Of the contraction of the Mother, or the necke of the same. §.10.

It chanceth also sometimes that the necke of the Mother is closed cleane vp, wareth narrowe and shrinketh vp. And for to mollifie or soften the same, take Hollihocke rootes as many as you please: seethe them in Swines grease, or in Turpentine, to the end it be a soft plaister; then dip a clout in it, and put it vp into the necke of the Matric. The same doth also the water wherein Hollihocke rootes be decocted. In like sort also the oyle of white *Narcissus*.

Of the Schirrhus, or hardnes of the Mother. §.11.

Of these forementioned accidents of the Matric, whether it be through heate or cold, cannot these parts be hardened in any way, but as the Splene is hardened. For which these meanes ensuing be very good: take Aloe one ounce, *Pa- sticke* one quarter of an ounce, *Galbanum* dissolved in vineger one ounce, and being strained, temper the rest amongst it, and then make it with oyle of Cammomill and Ware, into a metely hard plaister. The plaister of Pelilot is also good for this vse.

Item, seethe figs and Fenegreke as much as you please in Barley water, and make thereof a Semicupe. This foresaid bath is good both for the paine and the heate also. There may also be vled all that is before admonished in the sixteenth Chapter and first §. These herbes following doe carrie all other medicines towards the Matric; as *Pemirogall*, *Rosemarie*, *Savin tree*, *Juniper*, *Rue*, *Venereol*, *Parrot*, *Cinquefoyle*, *Mirba*, *Sage*, *Spadder*, and *Lupins*. But because that all these foresaid things do also lead all things towards the bladder and the kidneies, so doe they the same also to the Matric.

Of the Impostume in the Mother, or in the necke of the same. §.12.

If so be that these foresaid diseases, as the retention of the termes of naturall seede, or any other sharpe humors, whether it be blood, *Cholera*, *Pblegma*, or *Melan- cholia*, winds, or any other the cold moisture which falleth downe to the Matric, then may they some cause an impostume: notwithstanding that the same can proceede well of any outward causes, as of blowes, falls, of lechery, through a mischance, through the ignorant dealing of the Midwife, and such like things more, the which doe bring with them either heate or colde. The signes of a hot impostume, be agues, great

great paine betwix the Pauell and the p̄uities, and round about the raines, much watching, inquietnes, and paine in making water, and going to stoule, swift pulse, paine of the head, and of the eyes, heauy breath, paine of the stomacke with much parbraking.

These impostumes will be very hardly cured, and the harder if they are situated deepe in the Patric. But generally are they to be cured, like as the impostumes and vlcers of the raines are taught to be healed, viz. as in the sixteenth Chapter and 6.7.8.9. S. hath bene shewed.

But here be first certaine rules to be noted, whereof the first is, that one must indeuour to carry away the matter from thence which descendeth thitherwards. Secondly, the lyuer vaine is to be opened, and afterwards the vaine in bending the kne: or if one can neither see nor finde it, then is the *Sapha* to be taken. Thirdly, if so be that this impostumation be in the Patric or in the neck of the same, then be the termes in no wise to be moued, but only (like as is sayd) to withdraw the matter into another place. Fourthly, after the letting blood is the patient to be purged. Fifthly, vomiting and parbraking is very commodious. Sixthly, if it be possible, she is to refraine the space of thre dayes from eating and drinke, or at least keepe her selfe very sparingly, and especially keepe in drinke. Seuenthly, she must watch as much as is possible. Eighthly, after that the boodie is well purged, then is the Patric in the beginning of the sickness to be delayed with such kinds of plaisters as deriue the matter from that place. Ninthly, amongst these foresayd remedies, temper alwayes somewhat which may asswage the paine. Tenthly, in the declination of the disease are those things good which do ripen and mollifie the matter vntill it issue and breake out. Eleuenthly, if so be that this impostume would not be matured and brought to matter, then is the same to be effected with *Senegreke*, with *Hollyhock* rootes, with *Camomill*, with *Waltheate* floare, with *Pigeon* dung, and with some *Saffron* being made to a plaister and layd thereupon. Twelfthly, the astringent remedies are not to be long vsed, to the end the impostumes be not hardened, according to all these foresayd rules, euery one may know how to order himselfe in the curing of this disease.

If this impostume do come through heate, then is heere first to be taken whether the sick person be bound in his bodie; if it be so, then are mild Clifters to be set, or Suppositoies, and afterwards to open a vaine, as hath bene shewed in the second rule. She is also to be fed with Barly paps, sued Spinage, and such like things, and to prepare the matter, giue vnto her the Julep or Sirupe of Violets at certaine times to drinke, and afterwards to purge her with *Callie*, *lotwre* Dates, or *Manna*, and also moue her otherwhiles to vomit. Afterwards vnto the raynes, the kidneyes and hips, are cooling salues, plaisters, and such like things to be applyed, and so to cole them as much as is possible, for which you are to vse this salve following: Take *Dragagant* and *Gum*, of each one ounce, dissolue them in *Wine*, and temper therewith *waltheate Ceruse*, the *Litharge of Gold*, *Starch*, *Dragon* blood, *fine Bolus*, and *Roses*, of each one dragne, burnt *Copper* two scruples, oyle of *Roses* and *Ware*, as much as sufficeth for to make a salve therewith: but if so be that one cannot apply the same to the maladie, then sethe them all together with *Silke* (except the *Ware*) and then dip a cloth therein or a sponge, and then lay it vpon the disease.

If you had rather haue somewhat else, then take the muscilage of *Fleawort* alone, or temper it with oyle of *Roses*, with broad *Plantaine* water, with the water of *Nightshade*, and with the white of an *Eg*.

There may also a great teint of *Cotton* be made, and the same dypt in this receipt following, and put into the neck of the Patric. Take *Ware*, and oyle of *Violets*, of each halfe an ounce, let all melt together, and whilst that it is yet warme, put thereto the iuice of *Plantaine*, of *Nightshade*, of each one ounce, *Camfer* halfe a dragne, then temper them well together in a mortar, and vse it as is aforesaid. If so be that there be any great paine with it, then vse oyle of *Roses* brayed with the white of an *Eg*, and tempered with *Hens grease*: but if the paine will not asswage and cease therewith, then is the vaine in the Ham to be opened, and the foresayd decocted *Poppie* seede is to be tempered therewith. In like manner *Sief Album* is to be tempered with womans milke, which giueth suck to a daughter or mayden child, and to be inieced.

This plaister is also verie good for it. Take *Camomill*, *Pelliot*, *Hollyhock* rootes, *Liv* seede, and *Senegreke*, of each one ounce, eight or ten figs, fire or seauen Dates, stampe and sharpen this altogether, and make a plaister thereof with water wherein *Violets* be decocted, and with oyle of *Roses*. At the greatest extremitie there is to be put vnto it a little *Opium*, *Poppie* seede,

saide, and Penbane saide : If so be that the impostume will be long a breaking, then temper amongst it one ounce and a half of pould Pigeons dung, Mustard saide halfe an ounce, fennell saide thre quarters of an ounce. But if this impostume be in any place where it may be seene, or where one may come by it, then is it to be opened through other meanes : when it is then open, then cleanse it with Barly water or hony water, wherein Hyssop, Saurin, Padder, Pugwort, and such like be decocted.

And if so be that the place must be incarnated, then take Aloe, Mirthe, Frankinsence, *Sarcocolla*, Dragon blood, Litharge of Gold, and prepared Tutia, of each a like quantitie; make then a salve thereof with Oyle, and oyle of Roses, and vse it according as opportunity serueth. And as before hath bene saide, cooling plaisters are to be vsed for it, and to take any of the things following, viz. Roses, Lentils, Blossomes, and peles of Pomgranates, the muscilage of flicewort, Nightshade, Tassel, fresh sliced Gourds, and Saunders : all these are to be tempered with Barly meale and sodden to a plaister, and then to be laid ouer the priuities.

Afterwards in the beginning of the disease, the iuice of broad Plantain is to be iniected oftentimes into the *Matrix*.

And to the end the *Matrix* inwardly may be perfectly mundified, prepare this water following : Take Gals, Lentils, Pomgranate blossomes, Butchers brome seedes, Roses, and Saunders, of each a like quantitie : seethe them in water and iniection the decoction into the place.

Or take Hyssop, Clozmetowd, hony of Roses : seethe the same in white wine and milke, and vse it as is aforesaid.

When the *Matrix* is cleansed from all uncleannes, then is this bathe to be vsed for to heale and to cause the flesh to grow : Take Centory sixe ounces, Treas, Comfrey, Cassie rotes, and Agrimonia, of each thre handfuls, *Sarcocolla*, Gum, Dragon blood, *Mumia*, *Hypocistus*, and Frankinsence of each one dragma : seethe them altogether in sufficient water vnto the halfe, then put thereto prepared refuse of Iron one ounce and a quarter, then let it seethe a while and waye cold that it may be vsed for a bathe. Of all the former things may plaisters, salues, and pasties be made, for they are to that intent verie mete and profitable. Or if you will haue a meane and milder bathe, then take Pallowes, Violet leaues, Pelilot, Plantaine, Lentils, Fenegrake, and Colewort buds, and make a bathe of it.

In like sort sodden Allom is available for this purpose : for this bathe is generally commended of all learned men.

But when the ague and the most paine is somewhat past, and yet the impostume remaine still, which may be perceiued when the ague returneth, and that the paine and hardnes between the nauell and the priuities continueth, then are mollifying things to be vsed, as these pasties following : Take Duckes greafe, the marrow of Harts bones, Beats sexe oyle, *Edellum*, Saffron, and yolkes of rosted eggs, of each a like quantitie : dissolve them together in wine and temper therewith the bottome of oile of Lillies, then dip a taint of linnen often therein and put it in to the place : it swageth the paine, and alaieth the same. But of this hardnes we shall shortly hereafter speake and discourse somewhat more at large.

But if this impostume be caused through cold, then doth the same happen through abundance of much *Phlegma* in the body, and that through a continuall vse of meate and drinke, whereby the *Phlegma* is augmented, whereby such like humours doe fall downe to that place, and there do putrifie and ranckle. This impostume doth appere with a swelling about the priuities nere the nauell, and that with a continuall ache, and yet no great paine, the woman is sleepe, and is very lither : and these signes be the more certaine if the time of the yeere, and the age of the patient do agree with them.

For this, neither cold, nor repelling remedies are mete, but maturatiues and such as expell *Phlegma*, sobietic, plaisters of metely warme, discusse and ripening seeds, laipng on of Camomill, of Pelilot, Saurin, Parierom, Pugwort, Linseede, Fenegrake, admired with the foresaid oiles, and the greases, and may also be sodden and iniected. Likewise for this are mete, salues and plaisters which do warme, moisten, and ripen, whereof we haue before admonished, and shall againe hereafter.

The third manner of the impostumation of the mother is such a bad and hard disease, and is much worse then any of the former, especially when it is confirmed and warene old ; for then it is not to be cured : but at last there commeth the canker of it, whereof we shall immediately

hereafter speake and discourse at large. But to do some ease for it, is the place to be annointed with warme and maturatiue oiles, marrowes, and greases of beastes, and the decoction of Linseed, of fenegræke seed, and oile of Cammomill, of Dill, or of Lillies to be iniected. Also they are to weare plaisters of *de Bdellio*, of liquid Storax, and of *Ammiacum*, thereon, and to vse these fomentations and bathes following: Take the rootes of Hollyhocke two ounces, Cammomill, Pelilot, Pallowes, Violet leaues, Linseed, and fenegræke seed, of each one ounce; let them sethe well in water, and of these decocted herbes shall you make plaisters with some of the foresaid greases, viz. with swines grease, hens, and duckes grease, &c.

Use also this salve following: Take oile of Lillies, and of Eldern, Conie fat, the fat of Quails, Peats sette oyle, and oile of Harts sette, oile of sweet Almonds, and Butter, of each one ounce, annoint therewith the necke of the mother within and without, then annoint therewith a pessarie of Cotton & put it therein. And if so be the same do not content thee, then looke into the eleuenth chapter, the 29. and 30. §. of the impostumes in the stomacke.

Item, of the impostume in the liuer, the 12. chapter and 7. §. 14. and 2. §. of the impostume of the milt, where you shall find a sufficient direction for it.

Of the canker and vlcer of the wombe or Matrix. 13. §.



What the difference is between the impostume and vlcer, is before in the eleuenth chapter, and nine and twentie §. sufficiently declared of the impostume of the stomacke. But the vlcers of the *Matrix* be verie noisome and perillous (as we haue before alleaged) and so qualified, that verie easily they may come into an incurable canker: for this vlcer and the canker haue a great communion one with another: yet this difference is betwene them, that where the canker is, there must also be an vlcer, but not euery impostume the caker. Thus may vlcers with the things be holpen, which be ordained for the clefts of the Arsegut, and of the womans places; where to the contrarie, the canker of this place is esteemed by all learned Physicians for to be incurable. The causes of these vlcers and canker of the *Matrix* may be (as we haue already shewed of the vlceration in the nostrils in the first part) of wounds, of thrusts, of blowes, of falls, of some vncleane impostume, of some sharpe humours, which do excoziate and erulcerate the *Matrix*, or the necke of the same within. The canker is commonly caused through melancholike blood which maketh an hard impostume, and beginneth first onely of a small hardnes as the signes of a Beafe or Beane, and afterwarde increaseth; the which at last filleth the vaines adiacent also with melancholike, thicke, and blacke blood, whereby it will be harder and greater from day to day. The heate augmenteth with pricking vntill that it breake out, whence then issueth a blacke græne matter, and otherwhiles like as it were the wine lees, and sometimes like to water, the which stinketh no otherwise then as it were a Carren, and corrodeeth more and more, for that is the nature of the cankers.

The signes of these vlcérations be paine, pricking, panting of the mother, and issue or descent of purulent matter according to the qualitie of the vlcer. But if it be caused through any outward occasion, that may be vnderstood of the sicke person himselfe. And if it come through sharpe blood, then is the paine sharpe, pricking with great heate and ague: or if it be caused through *Phlegma*, then is the paine not so great, the place anguished, and impairerth slowly. If there run any clære blood out of it with white corruption, then is there a small vaine broken in the impostume: If the matter be like water wherein fresh flesh is washed, then is it a signe that this disease is caused through long retention of womens termes. If this impostume be caused of *Cholera*, then doth græne matter runne out of it. The signes of the canker haue we discouered before.

In these kind of vlcers and cankers in the wombe do the learned prescribe certaine rules, whereof god had is to be taken. First, in case this vlceration be very moist, then are drying things to be vsed for it. Secondly, if there be with the vlcer a venemous qualitie adioined, then is this the most principall meanes of healing that the venemous qualitie may be taken away.

Thirdly, that such kinde of meate and drinke be vsed, as do cleanse and make good blood which is most commodious for to cleanse the vlcers of the wombe, for thereby will the venemous matter be best of all taken away, and drawne forth. Fourthly, these vlcers haue no neede of maturatiues,

maturatiues, for that thereby the venemous matter increaseth. Fifthly, the Physitian must vse such things as do dissolue and dry, and lastly, Incarnatiues. Sixtly, if this vlcer can be sene, then is the same to be refreshed with cleane and fine clothes continually.

And now to begin with some medicines: We must first of all be taken of a good gouernment of life, so that all that one doth eate, drinke, or vse (according to the abilitie of the patient, without the making of any heate) may be drying things: and commonly such things be ordain- ned so; this purpose as are warme in the first degree, but strongly drying: Quietnes in this dis- ease is better then motion. Hereby may it easily be marked and vnderstande that all cold and moist meates be hurtfull so; this patient, viz. Fish, Crabs, Milke, and all that is drest with milke, much pap, fat, and such like be naught so; him. Their most commodious drinke shall be a thin, red, and hard wine, which be very drying & discusse: the same may be tempered with wa- ter wherein Sallick, two kinds of *Consolida* (if so be that nature can abide it) & feuerfew be de- coded. Secondly, concerning the other phisick (if that nature may abide it) the vaine on the right side is to be opened against euening; yet is good regard to be had to the swooning, for that the letting of blood in the nethermost parts do bring more debilitie with it then that of the vpper parts. After the letting of blood, this potion following is to be giuen vnto her two mornings together: Take *Benedicta Laxatina* halfe an ounce, *Agaricus* one scruple, Ginger and Greines, the iuice of feuerfew two ounces and a halfe, temper them together, and afterwards she is to gouerne her selfe euen as the order is after purging. Thirdly, giue her this potion ensuing the space of certaine dayes together, vntill that the vaine appeare of a good colour and very cleane: Take *Oxymel of Squills* halfe an ounce, *Syrupus de Byzantijs* and sirupe of Vineger, of each three quarters of an ounce, Louage and Agrimome water, of each one ounce, Cicory water two oun- ces, this is to be dronken earely in the morning: they may also sleepe well vpon it, and fast foure houres after it.

This being done, minister vnto her *Pillulas Benedicte* foure scruples, or one dragme and a halfe, fourmed with the iuice of Bugwozt. You may also temper one dragme of it with the so;e- said water and drinke it: and if so be that the cause require stronger remedies, then take *Pillu- las de Opopanaco*, & *De Hiera composita*, of each halfe a dragme: make pils thereof as is befoze said. With this purging one must diligently haue regard whether this vlcer or canker be so nere in the neck of the Patrix, that one may come to it with the hand: likewise if the matter do stinke, to the end that according to the qualitie thereof might be knowne what medicines should be vsed: but be it howsoeuer it will, Hony water is alwayes good so; it. You may also cleanse the disease therewith where the vlcer is, and afterwards spread thereon this salue following: Take Aloe Dragon blood, *Mirra*, *Sarcocolla*, and Frankincense, of each alike quantitie. Ducks greafe as much as is needefull so; to make a milde vnguent of it. But this following is stronger: Take oyle of feuerfew floures, and of Saffron, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of Wallflowers (especially if there be great paine with it) two ounces, *Sarcocolla*, *Mirra*, & *Opopa- naco*, of each one drag. Turpentine three quarters of an ounce, *Muscus* one greine, white ware as much as is needefull so; a salue: afterwards sethe them all together in 4. ounces of the iuice of Smallage, vntill all the iuice be consumed, then annoynt therewith a pessary made of Cotton, and put it into the place, and refresh it oftentimes: It is very commodious so; it, and found oftentimes good. But if this disease be very deepe inwardly, then doth neede require that the bod- ie be cleansed with necessarie things, to wit, with Hony water, and afterwards vse the pes- saries which be described in the fifth Chapter and 2. §. beginning thus: Take Ducks greafe &c. and renew them foure or five times a day, or make this following: Take Smallage, feuerfew, and Bugwozt, all together, or each alone, stamp them together, make a pessarie thereof, and an- noynt it with *Hiera Picra*. You may also take the iuice of these so;e; said herbs, and make a cloth wet with it, and lay the same vpon the backe, the hips, and on the hethermost part of the back- bone. For iniection, this following is ordained: Take Hony water, sethe therein Treos and Wormewood, or sethe Agrimony in Barly water, and temper clarified Hony, or Hony of Ro- ses amongst it. If so be that the cause require stronger remedies, then take 6. ounces of wine, burnt Aloome, Verdigrease, of each halfe a dragme, temper them together, and let them stand so foue houres, afterwards iniect it. This following is also good, and chiefly to dry the vlcers, and to draw them together: Take Gals, Pomgranat pils and the blossoms, & Allome, let it sethe to- gether with a little Agrimony: and if you think that there be any vaine broken within the vlcer,

then temper somewhat of these things following with it, as Dragon blood, Birch, Frankincense, fine Bolus, Saffron, Hartwort with Rose water, or with Plantaine water.

A Bath for the raynes is very necessarie for this purpose, whereto you may prepare this following: Take Valerian rootes, Helwe, and rootes of Smalage, of each 4. lb. Myrrha, and Opopanacum, of each one quarter of an ounce, the rootes of Parrow 4. lb. seethe them all in sufficient water, & sit therein to the Pauell. Besides all this, there is another bath highly commended, wherein the rootes of wild Cucumbers be decocted. For this, is also very good that which is described in the 12. §. beginning thus: Take oyle of Centoꝝ 6. ounces &c. But in case this ensuing matter remaine stinking, and that there be heate with it, then vse the other pessaries made of Cotton and Roses, and are there discovered: but the vlcers must be cleansed before, by the iniection of Hony water. Lastly, if so be that the hardnes do continue, which may be perceiued by feeling, as also by the picking, by the paine, and by issuing out of the matter, then is one to beware that there be no sharp medicines vsed for it, for that thereby the maladie will be much the rather augmented, for all that which is discovered in the fifth Chapter and 2. §. of the iniection of the musilage of fleawort, and iuice of Houselake, for that is also the lyuer vaine to be opened, and the salue of Ceruse to be vsed. This person must also beware of all which augmenteth melancholy, whereof you may finde a sufficient discourse in the 11. Chapter, and 8. §.

Of an vnnaturall birth, called *Mola*. §. 14.



It chaunceth also sometimes, that certaine women which haue no companie with a man, yet their belly swelleth vp no otherwise then as though they were with Child, and all the signes with being with Child agree also with it, for that their Termes be absent and stayed. They feele also some stirring in the Matrix, their breasts will be hard, the appetite of meate leaueth them, their naturall colour will be pale, all which signes are common with women with Child: notwithstanding they beare no Childe which beare this *Mola*. This *Mola* groweth after two sorts in the wombe: the one will grow to a peece of flesh without any figure, halfe putrified, and is also no right flesh, but rather a spongy mass of winde, of water, and of some other superfluous blood, which through the accustomed termes cannot be expelled, and the same then being mixed with the naturall seede, groweth otherwhiles to such a hardnes, that the same cannot be cleft asunder with any hatchet. Secondly, it may also be ingendred of the sayd blood, and the concurse of certaine tough humors, and so make a false shew like women with Child.

Nevertheless the expert Physicians do distinguish three severall signes, whereby bearing women, and they that be burthened with this vnnaturall masse, are to be knowne, for that first, the moving of this *Mola* or vnnaturall masse, is not like that of a Child, because it is a thing which hath no life. Secondly, the belly of women which beare *Mola* is much harder, and not so moueable from one place to another as theirs is that be with Child: Thirdly, this masse falleth from the one side to the other. Fourthly, if a woman be burthened with *Mola*, then be her hands and feete very feeble and limber: and it seemeth also, that her fingers be shorter, all which cannot be perceiued in bearing women: Fifthly, the woman which beareth *Mola*, is not so merry as one that is with Child. Sixthly, a woman with Child is commonly after nine moneths deliuered: but in the *Mola* is no certaine time, for that it is found that women therewith haue gone two yeres, foure yeres, and also longer, yea their whole life time, that no phisick hath holpen them. And from these that be cured, there auoydeth oftentimes (as is sayd) a lothsome peece of flesh, and that with such paine, as if she were deliuered of a Child. It auoydeth sometimes into blood, otherwhiles to wind, and their belly falleth away as before. This is such an accident, that it ought not slightly to be regarded, for that thereby it may easily be marked that the Matrix is utterly vncleane and spoiled: therefore do these women easily fall againe into the foresayd maladies: or if not, into an vnnaturall fluxe, vlcere, or impostume of the Matrix. Lastly, they commonly fall into the Dropsies, *Ascites*, or *Tympanites*, or into some other perilous sickness, whereof they dye. Nevertheless must the Physician not doubt of the cure, but as soone as he knoweth certainly that the woman be burthened with a *Mola*, and be not rightly with Child, then is the woman to be commaunded that she stirre not too much, and lye for the most upon her back, and with her legs higher then the bodie; and to constraîne her selfe otherwhiles to

to vomit and purge, and refraine from all cold and moist meates, for which this potion following is to be made. Take S. Johns wort, Sauin, Rosemary, field Pints, and corne Pints, Louage, Bugwort, Pennyroyall, and Bather, of each one handfull, Fennell, Squinant, both kinds of Parsly seede, *Calmus*, and wilde Gallinall, of each one dragma, Kadiſh foure ounces, seethe them together in a sufficient quantitie of water for a potion, and vse thereof euery day thre or foure ounces, this potion melloweth that masse, and expelleth the humors whereby it might be increased.

There is also to be tempered with this potion one of these Trocisks following: Take Cinamon, Birch, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Rue, Sauine, field Pints, Pennyroyall (all together dyed) Bather, *Sagapennum*, and *Opopanaxum*, of each one dragma, Cardamome, Juniper tree, Rosemary, of each one dragma and a halfe, forme the Trocisks of the waight of a quarter of an ounce. This alsoe described is so to be vsed the space of ten dayes, or more.

Other do aduise for a thing of smaller importance, to wit, that the woman two moneths euery morning early should take thre ounces of warme Feuerfew water, and to fast foure houres at least after it.

Secondly, that the euery fourth day when she drinketh of the water, should take one of these pills: Take *Galbanum* one quarter of an ounce, floures of Bugwort, Saint Johns wort, and *Asarabacca*, of each one scruple, dissolue the Gum in good wine, and make thereof sixe pills of a dragma. She is also to purge once in fourteene dayes with thre quarters of an ounce of *Benedicta Laxatiua* tempered with two ounces of Feuerfew water. Or if she had rather, pills, that she swallow one dragma of *Pillulas fetidas*. Fourthly, she is alwayes to weare this plaister following vpon her belly the breadth of a finger beneath the nauell reaching vp towards the hips: Take *Galbanum* one ounce and a halfe, *Gallia Muscata* one quarter of an ounce, *Alpta Muscata* one dragma, white waxe thre dragmes, dissolue the Gum in good wine, and then make a soft plaister thereof.

Fiftly, she is to vse this bath for the raynes ensuing thrice a weeke, twice a day: Take *Gallia Muscata* one quarter of an ounce, *Colophonia* halfe an ounce, Saint Johns wort floures, Betonie, Bugwort, and Feuerfew, of each thre handfuls, *Bistorta* five handfuls: seethe them together in sufficient water vntill it sauer well: she is to sit therein vp to the nauell. These be very excellent remedies for to bring the mother to good health againe, to strengthen all the parts of generation, and to ease their maladies.

In fine, all these things may be vsed for this intent, which are prescribed for the expulsion of the dead childe out of the mothers bodie, and for the Secondine, and such lyke things more.

What commonly is good and profitable for the Matrix. §. 15.



Lecampeane rootes, the greater Pimpernell rootes, the rootes of Crings, and Ginger, all preserved, conserues of Betonie, of Gilloflowers, of Spikenard, of Lauender, and of Piony, wyne of Lecampeane rootes, of Auence, of Betonie, and of Rosemary. The oyles are these, oyle of Lillies, of Rue, and of Bayes. Item, the iuice of Gentian and of other rootes which are described in the twelfth Chapter and 11. §.

We haue now almost witten of all especiall accidents and diseases of the wombe, whereon naturally dependeth the whole state of humane generation. But if so be that this part of the bodie be not sound, and without all infirmities, then is the humane seede (be it as commodious as it will) neither rightly conceived, nor duly contained, and though it be receiued and contained, yet doth either a mischance follow after it, or at the least a feeble and weake birth. Infirmitie ensueth also thereby, as we very largely haue shewed in the seuenth Chapter before, so that it seemeth not to stand without reason, that many Philosophers and learned men haue disputed and concluded. By what means this part once infected might be eased and prepared to fruitfulness, to which end it was first created, whereof, as also of the conception of fruitfull women, of their infirmities, of their deliuerie, and of all that concerneth them, shall be spoken in this Chapter following.

The twentieth Chapter.

Of all that concerneth the fruitfull and childbearing
Women.



When as in women (as oftentimes hath bene sayd) this vessell of conception is by their termes well clesed and freed of their foze mentioned and all other diseases, or if some disease now present can be remedied, then neede not any one in this place take care for barrennes. What might moue their termes is sufficiently shewed before in the seuenth Chapter, yet notwithstanding we purpose here to speake of diuers things which are very commodious for conception: amongst which the first is Sirupe prepared as followeth: Take Hadder, Bugwort, Hauine, of each halfe a ℥. pints, Wormewood, fennell rootes, Squinant, Parierom, Calmus, Pepe, Annis, of each halfe an ounce, Cloues, Buglosse flowers, and Baulme flowers, of each three drag. Cyperus rootes, Callingall, fennell, Amos, and Siluer mountaine, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cinnamon and Raisons, of each 5 drag. Hony as much as is needefull: sethe them all together, and make a sirupe thereof as hath bene taught in the first part the fifth Chapter and 6. S. Lastly, put vnto it Pastick, Ginger, Pace, Cloues, scraped Iuozie, Saffron, Putmegs, *Doronicum*, Zeduary, and Basil, of each halfe a dragme, and beate them all together small.

The second is a powder which they may vse with their meate: Take Putmegs, Cucubes, and Ginger, of each halfe a drag. long Pepper, Pastick, and Cinnamon, of each one dragme, Callingall two scruples, the seedes of the Ash tree, scraped Iuozie, Siluer mountaine, red and white Behen, of each one scruple, beate them small, and mire them all together.

The third is this salue following, *Gallia Muscata*, Putmegs, Beuercod, Vares rennet, and *Landanum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Spiknard, oyle of Pastick, 3 oyle of Hirtles, of each 3 drag. Vase as much as is needefull for a salue, annoynt the place of the mother with it euery other day. The last is a confection prepared as followeth: Take wild yellow Rapes seede, and tame Rape seede, scraped Iuozie, white and red Behen, Siluer mountaine, and seedes of the Ash, of each halfe a drag. Cinnamon, *Doronicum*, Pace, Cloues, Callingall, long Pepper, Rosemary flowers, Balsam wood, *Blatta Bisantia*, Penniroyall, and Parierom gentle, of each two scrup. Baulme, Buglosse, Citron pills, of each one scrup. Indy *Spica* Amba, and Pearles, of each half a scrup. these being mixed and pouned all together very small, take 8. ounces of Sugar or somewhat more, sethe it in Palmsey, and make an electuary or Tabulates of it.

To know whether a woman be with Child or no. §. i.



When a woman hath layen with a man that her places after the action be dry, the Labra and sides of the same smaller and harder, then is it a signe that she retaineth the receiued seede, and (if the same passe not from her in seuen dayes) she remaineth with child. Item, take Lettuce, sethe it in water, and let her drinke 2. or 4. ounces of that decoction, if so be that she partake the same vp againe then is she conceived. Take a stele needle, stick it in a new wooden dish, and let the woman make water in it, if there hang a little cloude at the needle, then is she with Child. Or let her drinke meade fasting, if so be that she vomit the same vp againe she will proue with child. Another: Take Pace one quarter of an ounce, Saffron beaten small one drag. well water 6. ounces, Hony two sponfuls, boyle them all together as long as you would boyle an egge hard: let her drinke the third part thereof whē she goeth to bed, and continue it the space of three dayes together, if so be that thereby she get not her termes, then is she vndoubtedly with child, which of these thou mayst best beleue, experience will teach thee.

The common signes that a woman hath conceived, be these: to wit, whē her termes without ague and cold be stayed, for then the bloud is deuinded three manner of wayes, the subtillest doth seede the fruit, the middlemost doth by certaine vaines passe towards the breasts, for a preparation of the milke, the grossest remaineth in the Matris which will be experied in and after the deliuey. Item, whē a woman is conceived, then both she find great wambling & distemperature

in

in the stomacke, inappetencie to meate, vomiting, with other symptomes moze, as hath bene shewed in the former Chapter the 14. §. of *Mola*. She findeth also commonly the tenth day great headach, giddines, and darkenes of the eyes.

It is also sayd, if a woman perceiue immediately after she hath layen with a man small paine and cold about the raynes, that it is a sure signe of conception.

To know whether a woman be with child of a boy or a girl. §. 2.



Albeit there be diuers signes, whether a woman be conceived of a boy or a girl; yet are they not so sure that one may stedfastly beloeue them: for example it is adiudged, that those women which beare a boy, haue the right breast soner hard and round then the left, but experience teacheth the contrarie, and so it is with all the other signes, wherfore it seemeth superfluous to spend any time in this behalfe. But because we are now come to the conception and birth of mankinde, we will now speake of the Symptomes and signes which are perceyued in the women with Child.

Of those things which commonly appeare in women with Child. §. 3.



Those that haue conceived a man child, are for the most part better of colour, lustier, nimbler of their ioynts, and lesse troubled in the bearing then of a mayden child: they haue also a better appetite to their meate; they do feele the most burthen in the right side, in which place they also perceiue the first motion and stirring of the Child: the pulses be on the right side moze stronger and swifter, then on the left. When they rise from sitting, then doe they lift vp themselves with their right hand; the right Eye loketh moze liuely then the left, and in going they commonly set their right foote forwards. But when they beare a mayden child, then iudge all the foresayd signes to the contrarie, they are paller, leaner, moze pensiuie, and moze troubled in the bearing. The man child stirreth lower in the mothers bodie, and (as the common opinion is) most of all in the right side. The legs and the places do otherwhiles swell. It is also affirmed, that if milke be droppd on her vaine, it should swimme on the top. Likewise, if she beare a sonne, then perceiueth she on the 40. day the milke to come into her breasts with a kind of tickling. And when she is with child with a daughter, she findeth the same about the 90. day. *Aristotle* neuerthelesse acknowledgeth and diuers moze, that this (as we haue sayd befoze) is not alwayes certaine, but with the motion in the right or left sides of a man or mayden child it seldome hapneth to the contrarie, as may appeare in beasts, which at one time commonly do beare two yong ones, as Goats, Sheepe, &c.

At what time and in what manner the child groweth in the wombe. §. 4.



Albeit this concerne no Phisick, but is rather a woork of nature then any part of our science, yet both our methode require that we should shew in what time, and also how the Child doth increase and growe in his mothers bodie. First, there is also (as hath bene sayd befoze) a great difference betwene boyes and girles: to wit, the man child receiueth both forme and life much soner then the mayden child; yet the perfect fashioning of a man or mayden child, is in maner as followeth. In the first 6. dayes the seede doth swell like to a bladder full of winde, or a winde egge, nine dayes after that doth this bladder draw bloud vnto it, whereby in twelue dayes the liver, the hart, and the vaines are so evidently formed, that they seuerally may be seene and perceined about the 27. dayes. It is called of the Grecians *Embryo* or *Fœtus*, that is, a fruit, whereof afterwards a perfect man is formed; the other members are fashioned within 18. dayes following, so that the summe of all this time amounteth to 45. dayes, in which space the life is for the most part also receiued, although the child (by reason of his weakenes) seeme rather to be still then to moue euen to the 90. day.

Whē as now vnto this number which maketh in all 135. daies, is added as much moze, then (saith *Hippocrates*) you haue the true time of the birth, which is iust 9. months, counting 30. daies

for euery moneth, but as we haue sayd befoze, all things are longer deferred with a girle then with a boy: for that they commonly be not bozne befoze the tenth moneth.

Secondly, some suppose that if a man child be bozne in the seventh moneth (as it otherwhiles befalls) that the fruit was perfectly fourmed at the first in 30. dayes, and began to liue and moue in the 40. But a mayden child bozne in the 7. moneth receiueth her perfection in 35. dayes, and beginneth to stirre about the 60. day, and both of them are perfected in a 110. dayes: but a man child which hath bene bozne untill the ninth moneth, that getteth his perfect fourme in 45. dayes, and stirreth about the 100. day, is bozne into the world about the 300. day. But the mayden children are fully fashioned about the 60. day, they stirre about the 80. day, and are brought into the world about the 279. day. The cause why men children are sooner fashioned in the mothers womb, is, because the seede and the right side wherein they be conceived are hotter.

Thirdly, we reade, that in the first moneth, the conception should be naught else but a collection of blood; in the second moneth a fourming of the bodie; in the third moneth a perfect bodie; in the fourth moneth the nailes do grow; in the fift moneth it getteth the perfect signes of a man or a woman child; in the sirt moneth do the baines begin to appeare; in the seventh moneth doth the marrow grow in the bones; in the eight moneth are the bones hardned and strengthened; in the ninth moneth doth it get a full proportion of man or woman, and prepareth it selfe for birth. *Albertus Magnus* in the ninth booke and fifth Chapter *De Animalibus*, sheweth diuers moze diuisions of the kindes, and concludeth with these words following: *That which the Pbisitions do write of this matter, is not sufficiently approued: and they are not alwayes found to speake the truth. These are the words of the foresayd Albertus.* Now that this is true, appeareth by the difference of the foresayd computations. It differeth also sometimes according to the health and debilitie of the parent, whereby the fruit of necessitie is gouerned, and is brought into the world sooner or later; wherefoze it may iustly be sayd, that in this matter no certaintie may be found.

The order of dyet for women with childe. §. 5.



When God hath indued a woman with his gracious blessing, that in the state of wedlocke she should conceiue with childe, then let her take heede that she cast not away the gift of God voluntarily, by some great misdyet, but that she acknowledge the goodnes of God, and liue in such sorte, that by her dyet the conceived fruit be not onely not harmed, but cherished and strengthened, and fall not into any mishap or mischance whatsoeuer. To this end we will at this present prescribe certaine rules: first, a woman conceiued shall alwaies contend to be loose in body. For the which she is to eate euery morning befoze breakfast some ripe stued pynes, especially if she be bound. Also she is to beware of all manner of needeles labour, of leaping, dauncing, vomiting, coughing, much venery, & especially presently after meales: also of great sorrow, frightening, feare, anger, and such like. Neither may she bathe her selfe, vnles it were some fewe dayes befoze her childbirth; for then is it very commodious, as hereafter shall be shewed moze at large. All manner of cold, all kinde of stenches, all sharpe and bitter meates, as Capers, vnripe Oliues, Radishes, french Beanes, Lupins, red Pease, Rue, white water Spints, Pennirovall, and whatsoeuer els might prouoke her termes is hurtfull to her.

Contrariwise: She may vse all maner of wholesome accustomed meates, and drinke good red wine, or metely strong Beere; for the red wine is fitter for her then the white. Item, ripe fruits that are somewhat astringent, and that doe strengthen the stomacke, are very mete for her; as Quinces, Peares, &c. if she desire any other commodious meate, she shall not so stricly be kept from it, but that she may vse a little of it at once. But if so be that she doe long for some vnnaturall and vnaccustomed meate, then is she to be dealt withall, as hereafter in this next §. shall be shewed.

For to strengthen her serueth the warme confectiō of *Diamargariton*, for it comforteth the stomacke and the watrir. For the same purpose serueth also this wine following, a little draught otherwhiles taken of it: Take Ginger & Cloues, of each one drag. rootes of Louage, Spikenard, white Pepper, of each halfe a dragme, Comin, Calingall, Annis seedes, of each halfe an ounce, red wine three pintes, Sugar as much as ye please, make Hipocras. If the woman be hot by nature,

nature, then do lay that wine with the decoction of Currans, what she ought to obserue beside this, may you finde euery where in the discourse of conceiued women.

Of the strange longing of women with childe. §.6.



Ubeit that this disease of this vnnaturall appetite, which otherwhiles hapneth to women with childe, of some foule or vnnaturall meates, as Chalke, Coles, Lime, earth, Tarre, raw flesh, fish and such like, which is sometimes rather an imagination, and an idle or vaine conceit of some vntoward women: neuertheles, the Philosophers doe alledge a certaine naturall cause thereof, and as firme therewith, that this vnnaturall lust doth also come sometimes vpon them which be not with childe, yea also that men be otherwhiles plagued with it, although very seldome: wherefore, this longing by good reason, may also be reckoned amongst the vnnaturall hungers, and may be called a corrupting, as wee before in the eleuenth Chapter haue moued somewhat thereof, and haue alwaies hitherto determined to write somewhat thereof: This vnnaturall longing do the Greekes call *Citram*, the Latinists *Picam* and *Malaciam*, that is, a desire of bad meate, and is thus described.

Citra is a bad action of the stomacke, wherein the party is greedy to eate vnnaturall and foule things. The causes of this vnnaturall desire are very bad humors, and especially *Melancholia*, which lyeth in the stomacke where the same is excitating this vnnaturall longing. In women with childe, the matter of their termes doe cause it which commeth into the stomacke: and because the same is of sundry natures, therefore doe they also get diuers lusts. But in those that be not with childe, it doth come through retention of the termes, when those humors happen to ascend into the necke of the stomacke, or by the obstruction of the liuer, or the milt, whereby the said melancholicke humor doth stirre vp this naturall longing. The same bad melancholicke humors may also be burnt in the stomacke, as may appeare in the quartain ague.

And so for to remedie this disease (especially in women with childe) must first heed be taken to their meate and drinke. Roasted Lamb, Hens, Pullets, Partridges, and all kinde of field fowles are verie meete for her: yea also otherwhiles Duckes baines, and sheepes baines, whether they be roasted or sod. Her drinke shall be good white wine.

After meate shall she eate roasted Peares, Vassell nuts, Parmalade, confected Pomgranats, and Chestnuts. Giue her also oftentimes marimalade with spices which you shall finde described in the last part. Of the confectiō *Diantha* is euery morning about half a quarter of an ounce to be vsed. Item, giue her oftentimes the *Syrupum de mentha*. In like maner is good for her the *Mus* of Quinces, temper them both as much as you please, and take the spoonfull thereof before meate. It is also much aduised for this woman that she must otherwhiles incline her selfe to purge and vomit, as with cleere warme water and sirupe of Vineger, whereof we wil hereafter speake more at large, because that women conceiued are much addicted vnto it. But in case that they incline themselves to vomit, then is their stomacke to be annointed with this salve following.

Take Masticke, and oile Spike, of each a like quantitie, Vineger a little: lay this plaister following vpon it, the flowers of Buglosse, of Baulme, of Sanders, Citron pills, of each a like quantitie, with oile of Masticke and ware wrought together: or a bag made of the foresaide, except the oile of Masticke and ware, and so laid vpon the necke of the stomacke. But if it happen that they at any time desired that which might nourish them, and that they were detained from it, or that the same could not be gotten, whereby it came to passe that they were disquieted or vexed; then take presently a spoonfull of Hony, scrape a little Nutmeg in it, and so giue it her.

If so be that any man or woman (being not with childe) were taken with such vnnaturall luste, they are to take these things following fasting, as *Oxymel compositum* two ounces, with water of Cipers rotes, or the decoction of Cardamom, or take one ounce and a halfe of *Oxymel* of squills with the foresaid water: afterwards to purge and vomit are they to vse this Hony water following, wherein Mustard seed, the seeds of Dage, of Dill, Onions, and Radishes, is decocted. For to purge, take *Pillulas Stomachicas*, or *de quinque generibus Mirobalanorum*, which you will, one Dagne: whereupon these confectiōs following are to be vsed, viz. *Diapiris*, *Diamoscha*, and *Diambra*.

Diambra. The stomack is to be strengthened with these things following: Take Acozne cups one quarter of an ounce, Raisons with their stones seauen dragmes, Annis thre dragmes, *Mirobalani indici*, *Bellarici*, *Emblici*, of each fise dragms, prepared refuse of Iron one ounce and a quarter, fower quarts of Wine which is somewhat strong, and as much water: sethe them all together vnto the halfe, and then straine it thozough a cloth, and then let the patient dvinke it out now and then in the space of eight daies.

Item: Take Cardamom, Graines, Cucubes, of each alike quantitie, white Sugar as much as all the rest: giue thercof enerie mozing one dragme and a halfe with luke warme water, afterwarde vs the foresaide confections and annoint the stomacke, and keepe your selfe with eating and dvinke like as is said befoze.

Of the vomiting in women with childe. §.7.



With this vomiting are commonly women with child oppressed vntill that they do begin to feele the milke, and about the time they were wont to get their flowers, or when the childe haire beginneth to grow, then haue they it most greuous. Also it is the moze troubleosome, for that as then all strange lusses do come vnto them. Neuertheles it oftentimes happeneth not long after they haue conceived, that they as then are most inclined vnto it. It is also otherwhiles commodious for them as we haue shewed befoze.

But if so be that it do get the maistrie, and that thereby the foete be drawen away from the fruite, then must one do his best for to strengthen the stomacke and to remedie the vomiting: for which there be many remedies in the eleuenth Chapter, eleuenth §. described against the debilitie of the stomacke; out of which may easily be chosen what is mozte for women with childe, but especially these things following be aduised for safe things, as the sirupe of Aspes, *Parma-lade*, and sirupe of Quinces, which the auncient Physicians do so highly commend, if a woman with childe do vse the same much, then will the fruit be subtiler and whiter, Annis, fennell, Coriander, whether they be confected or not are good against vomiting. Item: Take a hard sodden egge and keepe it verie warme vpon the mouth of the stomacke. For this is also passing good, the sirupe of *Geriuce*.

When a childe is weake in his mothers wombe. §.8.



As much as there is no doubt that the conceined children be also sicke in their mothers body; therefore it is no small question how they are to be holpen. For seeing all sicknesses are knowen thzough feeling and sight, the which cannot be done by children in their mothers wombe, for this cause this matter is troublesome to the Physicians. But amongst other signes whereby it may be knowen, whether the childe be sicke in his mothers body or no, it is the very certaintie if that the woman with childe haue her termes oftentimes and much: for that there can followe none other thereof, but a debilitie of the childe, bicause that his sustenance and nourishment is taken and drawen from him.

Secondly, when the milke runneth from women with childe, then is it a sure token of the debility of the childe: also that the childe is not strong enough for to draw his nourishment vnto it.

Thirdly, if a woman do get a rong scouring, then is it much to be doubted of a mischance, but it dependeth specially on two things; vnder which all other accidents (be they how they wil) are contained, which is heat and cold, by which all the rest may easily be adiudged.

First (for to write of the debilitie of the childe thzough heat & dryeth) is the mother to be purged of *Cholera*, viz. with this following and such like: Take conferne of *Prunes* without any other addition halfe an ounce, warme whay of milke thre ounces; giue it vnto her in the morning betimes, and let them fast vpon it the space of fise holwers. And take prepared *Cassie* one ounce, with fower ounces of *Sozrell* water or *Barley* water.

If you will haue it stronger: Take 2. ounces of *Manna*, temper them together in thre or fower ounces of whay and vse it as befoze. And if you will, you may steepe in the former a drage of *Rubarbe* and to wzing it out well, or halfe a dragme of *Rubarb* beaten to powder giuen with out

out steeping. All these medicines be very safe for the childe and the mother.

Concerning the order of diet it is to be cooling and moistening, as with Lettice, Bâtes, &c. like as is oftentimes admonished.

Also Barley water, and Barely paps are to be used, the flesh is to be dressed with vinegar and verjuice, with the iuice of Limons and such like that she eateth.

Afterwards she is to drinke euery morning a good draught of whaie in sommer cold, and in winter warme. Take water of Endiue, and of Violets of each two ounces. If you will haue that which cooleth more: Take sirupe of Roses, & of Endiue, of each half an ounce, Succozie water two ounces, temper them together. These things following are yet more forcible then the former: Take sirupe of Vineger halfe an ounce, sirupe of Citrons one ounce, Buglosse water, and water of Sozrell, of each one ounce and a halfe, temper them all together. You may also drinke one ounce of the conserve of Violets, tempered with three ounces of Endiue water.

The Clusters with those things which force vrine and blood, and also all things which cause vomiting must be forbidden. But if it be needfull that one must purge more, then shall the former suffice. But these three things are especially to be shunned.

One must also do his best for to defend & resist all bad properties, and to strengthen the same, which may be done in this manner following: to wit, that the woman euery day three or fouer times do drinke halfe an ounce of the sirupe of Limons with Barley water, it cooleth and quen- cheth thirst. Item: Take water of Citruls, and of Violets, of each six ounces, water of Sozrell twelue ounces, red Saunders, Roses, burnt Quozie, and seade of Sozrel, of each one scruple, Saf- fron halfe a scruple, Vineger three spoonefuls: temper them all together and make a cloth wet therein; afterwarde laye it beneath on the priuities, and behinde on the rump. Also take then one ounce of small cut Pompon peeles, oile of Roses, and of water Lillies, of each one ounce and a halfe, small fresh Houslecke, one ounce, temper them all well together, and annoint the foresaid places with it three or foure times a day.

But if this debilitie do come through cold and moisture, then is this thus to be remedied: Take Buglosse water, the seedes of wild Saffron, grosse beaten *Agaricus*, and *Hernodactiles*, of each one scruple, Cinnamon, Ginger, Roses, and prepared Copiander, of each foure graines; let them steape together one whole night, afterwards wring it out, and drinke it in the morning rarely.

Another: Tak the water of Feuerfew, and of Baulme, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Benedicta Laxativa* one ounce, white Sugar halfe an ounce; temper them together, and let them stand the whole night; afterwards straine it through a cloth and vse it as the other.

For this is also a good order of diet to be obserued, wherefore these patients are to vse no- thing else but that is warme and drie of nature. And she is to boile in all her meates, Sage, Spints, Rosemary, and such like, which haue no nature of opening. Their drinke is to be metely strong red Wine tempered with a little stealed water: for it hath power to strengthen all the in- ward nourishing parts, and all vaines.

One must also deuise how to amend and cleanse these bad humors, which is thus to be effec- ted: Take Sage water foure ounces, *Mina* of Quinces one ounce, then mixe them all together. Item: Take *Sirupum de Myrto* one ounce, water of Baulme wherein *Pasticke* is decocted three ounces, temper them together and so giue it to drinke.

A better: Take *Mina Citoniorum aromatica* one ounce, water wherein Spittle seade is de- cocted three ounces, temper them to a potion. There may also be used in the morning earelie for a strengthening, half an ounce of confected Calmus. Likewise *Aromaticum rosatum*, *Rosata No- nella*, & conserve of Roses tempered with powder of *Pastick*, & with Spints water being dronken.

If it be needfull to purge, then is one to vse the former purgations without giuing any stron- ger thing. This insuing is also very commodious: Take the iuice of red Spints foure ounces, *Agaricus* one dragma; let it steape together two daies and two nights, then temper Ginger and Roses therewith, of each foure graines, *Manna* halfe an ounce: let it stand drying in the warmth, afterwards make pills thereof and vse them oftentimes: for that they purge the waterie hu- mors without any anguish.

Now for to remedy the venemous matter; for which you haue hereafter three kinds of ap- plications: Take Roses, Cipers nuts, burnt Quozie, and *Sandaraca*, of each one dragma, Rosin three ounces; but you are to seethe the Rosin in red Vineger, vntill that the Vineger be spent: afterwards

afterwards temper the other ingredients amongst it, and make two plaisters of it one quarter and a halfe of a yarde long, lay the one behinde and the other before vpon the place of the pother.

One more forcible. Take oyle of Quinces, of Roses, and of Spints, of each one ounce and a halfe, Comfrey, Blood stone, red Corall, *Sandaraca*, and burnt Date stones, of each one dragma, Make as much as is needefull for a salve; annoynt therewith the place of the pother and of the Kidneys. Both these haue so strengthened the fruit in sundry women, that they haue fully borne the same, which accustomed to lie in too sone of all their former children.

Thirdly, take the water of Tassell, and water of knot grasle, of each five ounces, water of greene Cipers nuts, or their decoction, fower ounces, the iuice of Sloes, burnt Suety, and Roses, of each one dragma, Frankincense, *Sandaraca*, and Colophony, of each one dragma and a halfe, the iuice of Quinces five ounces; temper them well, and make a cloth wet therein eight double, and so lay it warme vpon the backe.

Of mischances or vntimely birthes. §.9.



This vntimely child-birth or mischance may befall at any time without any difference, after that women haue conceived: as when the seede is not yet come to any perfect shape, or when the fruit hath some members, but yet before it come to be a perfect childe, or is brought into the world before the due time, being not thoroughly borne: or when it is violently or otherwise expelled. And it fareth therewith as it doth with the fruits of trees, when they begin first to bud and to fashion, then doe they hang on brittle stalkes, so that otherwhiles they may be blowen off and spoiled with a small winde: but being wahren greater, then is there to come greater force of windes, or otherwise before they will fall off. Lastly, when they be wahren very ripe and seasonable, then do they fall off of themselves. In like manner doth it also happen with the conceived seede, or fruit, which is at the first so weake & tender, that if a woman chance to leape, to fall, or to labour hard, that the seede receiued is thereby diuers times eicted. Wherefore also, betwene fower and seuen moneths she may purge most safely, and vse Physicke if neede require: for before the fower and after the seuen moneths must she forbear it (if possibly it may be) for then it is perillous.

But to returne to our purpose. We haue shewed before, that if a woman hath retained humane seede the space of 7. dayes, that it is a token of conception: but if it vade or auoide within seuen dayes, then doe the learned call it *Effluxionem*, which is an effluence or running out. But if so be that they detain it any longer time, and this effluence chance within forty dayes, then is it an *Abortus*, that is a mischance: and within this time of forty dayes, doe most mischances happen. Thus if a boy be conceived, and voyde away within forty dayes, then is there none other shape to be sene thereof, in case it be not cast into cold water, there doth it make shew as a small bladder, and making it open, then is the fruit found in it as a great Cricket, with all his seuerall members, and likewise also the humane member. And if a mayden childe conceived chance to auoide or passe away within three moneths, then can no direction or token be sene, for that it consumeth in the water: But in case that it doe come to the fourth moneth, then may some direction be sene thereby, but it sone consumeth and passeth away: For that (as we haue said before) the girles receiue their perfect fashion much later then the boyes, as also they bee borne for the most part in the tenth moneth. But when they be now come both into the world, the girles growe much faster, than the boyes, and also doe come soner to their time of generation, and leaue off much soner, especially they that get many children one after another.

The causes of these mischances or vntimely birthes, doe the learned alleadge to be of many sortes, which may neuertheless be comprehended in fower principall articles, viz. of outward causes which procede of the conceived fruit, when the Patir hath any kinde of disease; or if the humane seede be of no good disposition. Amongst outward causes be these, leaping, running, winking, and chiefly in lying together, bathes, anger, sorrowe, feare, trembling, loud calling, strong labour, sursetting of meate, and diureticall things, as fennell, Bersley seede, and all other things which expell the stone. Also hot spices, as Ginger, Galingall, Cinnamom, Annis, and such like. Item, all that purgeth violently, as *Aloe*, *Epithymu*, *Coloquint*, *Scamony* and *Euphorbium*,

phorbium. In like manner all scouring or lares, the bloodie fire, or the fluxe of the termes.

The same may also happen if a woman haue any strange luste or longing which she cannot come at or get it, and moe other such like causes, whereof we haue spoken before, whereof it is better to be silent, then to disclose the same,

Also the conceiued fruit otherwhiles falleth downewards before her limited time, whether it be, for that it is sicke or dead, or for that it remaineth not with the face towards the back, with the hands vpon the eies, and the elbowes vpon the knes, as the naturall situation of it is.

Likewise also if the fruit through any disease of the parents, whether it be infected in the seed or otherwise, wherewith also the fourth cause is approued. But if the conceiued seed finde any disease in the Patrix (be it whatsoeuer sickenes or disease that it will) then must the fruite inherite it.

This reason following is also occasion of an vntimely birth: to wit, when a woman is much and vntimeable leane, conceiuing, she will very seldome haue full birth: but if the mother be exceeding leane (whence the fruit must sucke or draw his nourishment) then will it be infibled or diseased, and constrained to passe away, as hereafter shall be moze ampler said and taught.

Women which be mately fat or leane, and neuertheless get a mischaunce euery thirde or fourth moneth that commeth (beside the former causes) of some slimie waterish humours which fall downe into the vaines and sinewes, whereon the secondine is fastened, whereby they do slacke, are loose, and can sustaine the burthen no longer, without falling out of the mothers body.

By the breasts may also a mischaunce be perceiued: for that when they be small, weake, and slacke in women with childe, then is a mischaunce to be looked for and expected. When a childe beginneth to come to his perfection, then hath it neede of much nourishment. And if there be any disease or infirmite there, then will the breasts be small, soft, and slacke, whereof the fruit must pine and die. Or she will be impatient, strueth, and struggleth so long, vntill the secondine breaketh, and the fruit falleth away.

Now if a woman be pregnant with two children, and one breast onely (whether it be the left or right) came to be small and slacke, then is it a signe of the destruction of the childe on the same side.

It is also found that certaine women through stench of the snuffing of a candle, or lampe, haue gotten a mischaunce. Let this suffice of the mischaunce or vntimely birth, we will now teach how the same are to be remedied.

How a mischaunce is to be prevented or hindered. §.10.



We haue before shewed that women conceiued sometimes do get their termes, whereby that weake and spare, yea also dead children be brought into the world, which happeneth not without great perill of their life: wherefore must we write and discourse somewhat thereof.

First, these termes do commonly come with paine of the backe bone, of the belly, and the priuities, which be altogether signes of a mischaunce to come: for that like as we haue said, thereby is the nourishment drawen away from the fruit: whereby it is not onely infibled, but also vged to passe away.

And to obuiate or prevent this, all childe bearing women are first to beware from ouer hot, cold, and ouer moist aire. All meate and drinke which be too fat, too sharpe, and too bitter, shall she also eschue, as Radishes, Parsley, Smallage, Fennell, Pease broth, Cinnamom, Saffron, Galingall, Putnegg, and such like spices. She is also to vse oftentimes thicke red wine, but she is to eschue all great exercise of going, running, leaping, accompanie of a man, anger, and all overburthening: and therewith haue regard that she alwaies haue a soluble bodie: and if so be that be wanting, then is she to vse some meate or drinke which do loose the body, as the decoction of Gallotwies, or Percurie, or stewed Prunes, and such like.

Otherwise she is to leaue all clisters and other diureticall medicines. But if the body be obstructed too much, then is she to eate Cassie wood out of the pipes, or new prepared Cassie, and that especially if she haue any issue or moistnes in the necke of the Patrix: for that the Cassie both

doth cleanse the *Cholera* and *Phlegma* without any trouble: you are also in due time to put *Rubarbe* vnto it; yet *Spanna* is moze commended for it: powdered *Rubarbe* is also to be giuen to conceiued women, as it is; for so it is moze effectual than if she toke the infusion onely.

Item, if so be that there appere in the necke of the *Pother* some slimynesse or moyrnesse in the last moneth, then is she to vse all things roasted, baked, and to do such exercises befoze meate as shall be drying: also take *Pomegranate peeles*, poune them grosse, and seethe them in oyle of *Lillies*, and iniect that into the *Pother*. That is the right meane for to stay the slipperinesse of the *Patrir*.

Afterwards take *Pasticke*, *Myrrha*, and *Gallia Muscata*, of each halfe a *dragme*, *Colegrease* one ounce, dip therein vnkenned shepes wooll, and put it into the places. *Vares rennet*, or the rennet of any other beast is maruellous good for it, whether there be any heat or any impostume instant.

Burnt *Iuorie* and the powder of *Zeduarie* tempered together and strowed on the meate, doth stay also the mischance.

To this end is also to be seene what is witten befoze in the ninth Chapter and 3. S. of the excessiue termes, all which is also meate for this vse.

But she may vse these things following, as the confectiō of *Pearles*, of which *Anicenna* describeth to eate alwaies one *Tabulate* befoze meate, and thereupon to drinke a good draught of wine, as she may do it very commodiously betwene both meale tides twice or thrice a day.

Secondly, take water of *Pints*, of *Dailies*, and water wherein *Cipers nuts* be decocted, of each one ounce, *Sugar* halfe an ounce; drinke this early in the morning altogether at one draught, whether it be colde or warme.

Thirdly, take scrapt *Iuorie*, red and white *Cozall*, *Pasticke*, *Pints*, the inward red peeles of *Chestnuts*, *Acornes*, *Hirtle seede*, and *Cypers nuts*, of each halfe a *dragme*: make pills thereof with the iuice of *Comfrey*, whereof thre are to be taken in the morning with the foresaid water befoze meate, and that afterwards that she hath taken one of the foresaid *Tabulates*.

Fourthly, take *Cypers nuts*, pouned *Gals*, *Hirtle seede*, iuice of *Sloes*, and *Hypocistis*, of each halfe a *dragme*, *Blood stone*, *Amber*, *Dragon blood*, and fine *Bolus*, of each one *dragme* and a halfe, *Refuse of Iron*, which hath bene long decocted in vineger, halfe an ounce, the innermost red peeles of *Chestnuts* one ounce, thre or fower whites of *Egs*; poune all that is to be pouned, and rub it all together a long time in a leaden mortar, then annoint therewith the whole belly from the nauell to the priuities fower times a day.

Fiftly, make this plaister ensuing: Take *Dragagant* and *Gum* both of them roasted, and *Bdellium*, of each one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of *Sloes*, *Frankincense*, *Hypocistis*, and *Sandaraca*, of each one *dragme*, fine *Bolus* & *Dragon blood*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Mare* halfe an ounce, *Paper glew* dissolued in red vineger two ounces, make a plaister thereof, and lay vpon the priuities, let it lie so; and if the same must be taken off for any certaine cause, then lay it on againe by and by: if there be too little *Mare* and oyle of *Pasticke*, then take as much as is needfull of it.

Another: Take *Frankincense*, *Pasticke*, *Dragon blood* and fine *Bolus*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Comin* thre *dragmes*, *Pitch* one ounce and a halfe, thre small *Cypers nuts*, *Mare* and oyle of *Pasticke*, as much as is needfull for to make a plaister: spread them on a cloth, and vse it as is said befoze.

Make also this salve following: Take oyle of *Puts* fower ounces, *Barrowes grease* one ounce and a halfe, thre small *Cypers nuts*, *Pasticke* one *dragme* and a halfe, let them seeth softly the space of fve howers, and therewith annoint the place of the *Patrir*, which is betwene the nauell and the priuities, and behinde vpon the backe ouer against it.

It is also witten, that it is wonderfull good to weare alwaies a *Diamond* on the finger.

Item, if a woman with childe be burthened with an ague, and that a mischance be doubted, then take *Barly meale*, the iuice of *Sloes*, and of *Housleake* as much as you please; make it to a plaister with vineger, and then lay it oftentimes vpon the belly. This plaister doth defend the fruit from all accidents in the ague. This said plaister is also to be laid vpon the liuer; in case that now the woman with childe be assailed with pricking, then haue you befoze in the seconde part the fourth Chapter, and 12. S. how that might be remedied: stamped *Crabs*, the iuice thereof of wong out, and tempered amongst womens milke; it defendeth also the vntimely birth of women,

women, and it is said that it is a sure remedie for it.

Also be that a mischance be feared through much winde, then giue one dragma of good Spizidate, with water wherein Comin hath bene decocted, twice a weeke; for thereby will the fruit be preserued and retained.

These confections of Tabulates following are to be used: Take Pearles and Pyretum, of each one dragma, Ginger, Pasticke, of each halfe an ounce, Zeduarie, *Doronicum*, the seede of smallage, Cassie wood, Cardamome, Nutmegs, Pace and Cinnamome, of each one quarter of an ounce, red and white Behen, long and blacke Pepper, of each three dragmes, Saffron one dragma, Sugar 18. ounces of lesse, decocted with the water of Buglosse, or water of Spints.

How a dead childe is to be expelled out of his mothers wombe. §.II.



Of this we wil first haue remembred all that is described befoze in the 19. chapter and 14. §. of the vnnaturall excrecence *Mola* in the Patrir, whereof that in the second §. of prouoking the termes, and befoze of the mischances, and all that is discouered of the preferringg of the birth, is also mette for the expulsion of delincrie of a dead childe: so that betwene these is none other difference, than that this following is ordained rather for perfect children, of which women do commonly lie in within 5. or 6. moneths. Now for to preuent the same are these remedies following commaunded to be presently used, but first of all must you know whether the childe be dead or not, to the end there be not a sick childe expelled for a dead child: the which is to be knownen by this, and especially if it haue bene dead two or three daies. First, the mother doth get a great paine in the sinewes of the eies, which be *Optici nerui*. Secondly, she doth also feele paine behinde in the necke stretching downewarde along the backe bone, because that the Patrir is fastened vnto it. Thirdly, she doth feele great anguish beneath and paine. Fourthly, if a woman lie from one side vnto another, then doth the burthen alwaies follow towards the lower side, which is of all other a sure token of a dead childe, and that the ligaments of the secondine haue no moze force for to hold the dead fruit in one place. Fifthly, there is a great paine about the priuities, and ouer all the necke of the Patrir. Sixthly, the thickenes of the belly which was aboue is wholly suncken downe. Seuenthly, they do feele a continually colde about the priuities. Eighthly, if one hold a warme hand long vpon the belly and feele no stirring, then it is a sure token that the childe is dead. These be now the signes of a dead childe befoze it beginne to putrefie.

When it hath bene dead three daies, then beginneth it to stinke; the woman is full of agues and getteth a stinking breath; out of the Patrir runneth a foule stinking matter; the belly will be heauy, and stinking windes which do arise in the mother cause swelling thereof. And last of all there will be foule and stinking peeces of flesh expelled through the necke of the mother. When all these things be seene, then hath a Phisition none other thing to do, but to driue out the dead childe. It is also needfull befoze al other things to preserue and strengthen the hart, from all filthie stenches; which may be brought to passe, with this powder following: taking the same oftentimes with brothes, for that it strengtheneth the vitall spirits, and also the hart: it doth also withstand the ascending vapors.

Take white *Diptamus* one dram and a halfe, Citron peeles, and the peeled seedes of the same, of each halfe a dragma, prepared pearles fower scruples, prepared Coziander one scruple, Roses two scruples, sugar two ounces and a halfe: temper them altogether to powder, and vse thereof about one quarter of an ounce at once. Of take this following: Take white *Diptamus*, and Zeduarie, of each one scruple, prepared Pearles, and *Species de gemmis Frigidis*, of each halfe a dragma, mire them together, and giue it hir to drinke, at thrice it withstandeth all stenches, that they infect not the hurt. The fine Treacle doth also driue dead children out of the mothers bodies.

In like manner also the iuice of Merueine, or the herbe stamped and dronken with wine, driueth forth also dead fruit: so doth *Hysope* also.

Take *Troscos de Gallia*, one dragma, giue it with small white Wine, they expell the dead childe, and the secondine, & make an easie birth. Item, take the innermost skins of the matwes of Pens, or of Capons, wash the same in wine, drie them, and pounce them to powder, giue one dragma,

dragme, or one dragme and a halfe thereof with a draught of Wine, or with some broth, or with Rosewater: or, take Betonie and Reue, with the rotes of each, one handfull; powder them to one ounce of the iuice of Salomons seale, white Wine one pinte; let it seeth well; then straine it throu a cloth, and so giue it hir to drinke. Soth Juniper berries in Honie, temper some wine with it, and so drinke it together. Another, Momaes milke dronken should also expell the dead child: Likewise also the pzeious stone *lapis*. This is a common medicine which followeth hereafter: Take *Boreas* one dragm and a halfe, Cinnamom and Saffron, of each one scruple, stampe them together, and giue it with sweete wine, or Bugwort water to drinke, it helpeth much to beare easilie.

It is also saide, that Linseede passeth all things to make women to be easly deliuered; so; if they drinke the water which is decocted therewith, and put the same with clothes beneath into the bodie, or bathe therein; then must the dead fruit auoid. Or take *Mirra*, as much as the quantitie of a Hasell nut, stampe it, and giue it with wine, or with water of Bugwort; the same expelleth much, whether that the childe be dead or aliue. The same doth also Dogs milke, tempered with honie. Item take one ounce of Goats milke, dissolue therein two scruples of *Galbanum*, and so giue it; it expelleth maruellously. Or if the woman be strong; then giue hir as much of the iuice of Carlicke, as will go into halfe an egge shell, with Wine or Honie. If from a woman throug frighting or otherwise, the child auoid; then take a Crab, stampe it, and wying out the iuice, and then temper it with the water of Bugwort, and so drinke it.

For Pils: Take *Trociscos de Myrrha* one scruple, *Galbanum* halfe a scruple: make five pils thereof with *Venitropall* water. Another: Take the fruite of the Sauiue tre one quarter of an pounce, *Asa foetida*, *Ammoniacum*, and Gadder of each halfe a dragme: make eleuen pils thereof, then take thereof at each time one; and that thise a day.

For to vse outwardly. Take these things following: fume the Women beneath with the hoine of the Asses soote, which hath an hidden nature so; to expell the fruite: but if so be that one can get no hoine of the Asses soote, then is the hoine of a horses soote to be burnt: the same operation hath also the seede of *Basilicum*, if it be fumed, and be receiued beneath: likewise also the fume of *Laudanum*: or take *Myrrha*, *Galbanum*, and *Beuerod*, of each a like quantitie.

One may also hold befoze the priuities swines bread, or cotton woll made wet in the iuice of the same. And to put it befoze into the bodie is also marvellous good for this purpose. Item: Take blacke Helleboz, Licbane, Hartwort, Coloquinte, and *Ammoniacum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Dre gals one ounce: the gum is to be dissolued in the water of Bugwort, afterwards temper the rest sodden well amongst it. Or take *Oporanacum*, and Hartwort, of each a like quantitie, and make a plaister thereof with the iuice of Bugwort. If it be too soft, then put a little ware vnto it and so lay it warme vpon it.

Out of all these foze mentioned things may you also make pessaries, and put them into the bodie befoze. For this is also good the plaister de *Galbano*, whereof there be two kindes in the nineteenth chapter, thirde S. Another: Take vnkemmed shayes woll, spread butter and honie vpon it and apply it. Some do aduise to holde a Snakes skin to the priuities: so; that they lay when it beginneth to warme, that nature will cause the dead fruit to follow presently.

For this are also bathes prepared: Take pints ten handfulls; seth it in sufficient water, and sit therein vnto the nauell: this wo; keth maruellously, especially if thereupon be vled the iuice of Swines bread as is befoze said. Likewise doth it also drine out a dead child, the plaister de *Radibus* laid vpon it, and the decoction of Carlicke.

A preparatiue for an easie childe-birth and deliuerie. S. 12.



All beafts haue their certaine time of bearing, except the women onely: so; that women may be deliuered of childe in the seauenth or eight moneth, also in the ninth and tenth moneth, as we haue sufficiently witten befoze: Yea, it hath bin also found, that they haue deferred both to the eleuenth moneth, & also sometimes to the twelfth moneth. It is also read of a woman that happened to lye in of child in the thirteene moneth after that she had conceived: yet it oftentimes cometh to passe, that they be deceiued in their reckoning: therefore it is not needefull to dispute much of the time, so; when the Peare is ripe (as is commonly said) then doth it fall off. Our purpose is here

here onely to discourse and shewe, though what meanes that a fruitfull woman is to be prepared, so; to beare easily and with small paine. For because that on the childe birth dependeth the maintenance of humaine kinde, and that women in their childbirth are to expect all sundry mishaps: therefore haue many famous Physicians thought thereon, and diligently studied, howe that fruitfull women might be prepared vnto their child birth, and therefore haue described these notable meanes: first how the obstruction is to be opened, and how that the pains are to be provoked. Afterwards if a child in necessity of birth, or deliuey chance to die, how the same shall be expelled, whereof also hath bene spoken in the former 11. §. and of other accidents moe, which are to be expected after child birth.

When as now the time of childbirth is at hand, & that a woman is almost past her reckoning, then is she to eate and drinke well without excesse, and to vse such meates which might nourish well; viz. god Sutton, Treale, Hens and Capons: all kinde of field foules, eggs, god brothes, with spices, as with Cinamom, Saffron &c. and to drinke god wine. But she must especially take care, that she alwaies haue an open body, therewith she is to bathe certaine daies togither in this bath following: Take Hollihocke roots with the leaues two ℥. Pallowes and Betony of each one ℥. Bugwozt, Parierom, Pints, and Cammiomill, of each halfe a ℥. grosse beaten Linsede two ℥. make two bags thereof, and seethe them in a great kettle with water: afterwards let it be meetly cold, and then set the woman in it; the one bag must lie behinde vpon her backe, and she must sit vpon the other, or hold it vpon the Pauell. After bathing, take oyle of swete Almonds, of Lillies, and of Violets, of each halfe an ounce, Linsede, Hollihocke rootes, fenegreke, Butter, and Hens greafe, of each one quarter of an ounce, Quince kernels, and Dragagant, of each one ounce, you are to stampe the seeds, and cut the roots: afterwards seethe all togither in raine water, and take out the muscilage, temper the same with oyle, then let the panned Dragagant and Hens greafe seethe so long vntill the muscilage be consumed, and then make a salve of it: with this salve are you to annoint warme beneath the whole backe, both the sides, and all the whole belly, euen to the priuities.

Another: Take oile of swete Almonds, of Lillies, and of Violets, of each halfe an ounce, Ducks and Hens greafe of each three dragmes, white Ware as much as is needfull: but if these salues cannot be gotten, then is oile of Lillies alone to be vsed in their steede.

Also this insuing may be prepared: Take the Muscilage of Linsede, and of Hollihock roots, fresh Butter, the greafe of Hens, of Goose and of Ducks; oile of Lillies, and of swete Almonds, of each halfe an ounce; let them melt by the fire, and temper it well togither. Take Hollihock rootes with the leaues, one handfull, cut it small; Venice Sope one ounce and a halfe, and one pot of god fresh Ware, let it seethe togither vnto the halfe; then will there bee a Salve of it: with this foresaid salve is a Woman to be annointed about the priuities siue or fixe weekes before hir time, euery day after bathing. These and such like meanes do open and soften the obstructions of the Matrix: so that thereby in necessitie of birth, the thowes will not be so great, nor yet any thing like so painfull.

When as now the time of childbirth and the thowes be instant: then may one chuse of these things following, that which according to the importance of the cause is supposed to be most requisite; first of all outwardly. There be sundry famous Physicians which account it greatly auailable to holde certaine things before the priuities, or binde the hip, with manie strange ceremonies moe, which are therewith to be vsed. But if these kinde of things happen without misbeliefe, and that amendement be found thereby, then may they be taken for approved. Amongst the same things which seme also to be like vnto the truth, are Agrimonie with the rootes holden before the Matrix, and immediately after birth to cast it away, to the end that the Matrix be not drawne downe. Also Swines breade bounden vpon the thighs. Item: Penbane rootes, rootes of Polipody, and of Bistorta, should also be very god for it: but what the loadstone, Smaradge, the Egles head, and Cozall, and chiesely with the end (wherewith it hath some fast, if shall be turned toward the Matrix) may well helpe for childe birth: but I cannot comprehend nor vnderstande it: therefore each one may holde and censure the same as he list. That which followeth hereafter, is moze like to be true. Take the rootes of Polipody, and Pallowes, of each one handfull, cut them small and seeth them very mellowe, and laie them warme vpon the priuities: put also as much Bugwozt vnto it, whereof a woman shall presently fall in labour; and after deliuey, it is immediately to be taken away. The common people

ple do commend to lay pouned Bayberries vpon the nauell. For to further birth thereby to take inwardly, is much praised in time of this great neede, the rindes of Cassy, the outtermoſt being blacke scraped off, the weight of thre quarters of an ounce, and beaten very small, giuen to women with red Wine, or with the decoction of red Beafe. Item: Saffron drunke with Wine, helpeth also much to very speedie birth, and to diminishing of the paine: The same doth also Cinamom drunke with Wine. Item: take Bozeas and Cassy pipes scraped well, stampe them very small, and temper them, and giue thereof one dragme, or one dragme and a halfe, it is verie forcible. There is also good for this that which is described in the 19. Chapter and 2. S. for perferment of the Tearmes, like as is also all that which is discovered for the expulsion of a dead childe. Item: Take Hony one spoonfull, put two spoonfulls of water vnto it, and giue it to drinke: Fenugreek decocted with Hony is also very good for it: in like sort do the comon people commend for it very highly the decoction of red Beafe, or Cicers drunke. Take also Beauer cob, *Asarabacca*, of each one dragme, pouned small, and giue it with the decoction of red Beason: in this maner also may be used the seede of Silver mountaine.

This insuing is commended for a forcible and sure powder (maide for this purpose.) Take good Cinamom and Pyrrh, of each halfe a dragme, giue it with small white Wine, it is especially good if a woman haue once sneezed, or hath once vomited.

Take Cinamom one dragme, Saffron halfe a dragme, Cassy woode, and scraped Cassy pipes, of each two scruples: stampe it verie small, and giue it fower or fve times with the decoction of red Beafe: Or take Pyrrh, Beuer cob, red Stozar, of each halfe a scruple, Cinamom, and Sauin tre, of each halfe a scruple, giue it so vnto women to drinke, or make pills thereof. This is commended aboue all other things as this also following is: Take *Mirra*, rootes of *Costus*, and red Stozar, of each halfe a dragm, *Ammoniacum*, Sauin tre, of each halfe a dragme: stampe them very small, and giue it thre or fower times with the decoction of red Beafe: of this also may you make Pills.

For this is also good *Triphera magna* one dragme, or one dragme and a halfe, for it maketh women not vnfruitfull, as some women do falsely report, but doth aduance fruitfulness. Some do aduise, when a woman is past her time, that her mother baine or *Sapha* vpon the scote is to be opened, for that the birth will thereby be the easier, and it cleanseth also the childe, but how farre this is from the opinion of the auncient Physicians, we haue sufficiently declared before. Other do aduise to sethe a Swallowes nest in water, and strayn it thorow a cloth, and then to take foure ounces therof, it will accelerate the birth. The fume also of a Hules fell, of Commin, of Colewort stalks, of Pirrh, of Pirrle, of Stares gall (which one will) receiued beneath, but aboueall Beuer cob, and *Asa fatida*. Some say, that one should giue one spoonfull or twaine of the iuice of Sloes, and alledge also therewith that it is not to be taken but when a childe is ready to be deliuered. But we haue here many better and most apparant things.

When the throwes do not continue in bearing women. S. 13.



Al that hath a strong odoziferous sauour, as *Muscus*, and such like, is to be kept from women with childe, and to be taken away, for that it doth hold back the throlwes, and hindereth the birth or deliuerie. But for to aduance birth, take Betonie thre handfulls, Bugwort one handfull, Cammomill, Bennirogall, and Hyssope, of each one handfull, Linsede grossely beaten two handfulls, cut all the herbs and fill a bag with it, let it sethe well in wine and water. This being done, then foment with this decoction the priuities with a sponge fve or sixe times, afterwards annoynt the place with the oyle of Wallflowres into the neck of the mother, if so be that the same can be conueniently done by the midwife, whereby the woman will be stronger, and the birth be aduanced, especially if the childe is rightly placed.

And if so be that this will not yet help, then make this potion following, and giue her thereof a good draught euery two houres: Take Betony one handfull, Bugwort, Bennirogall, and Hyssope, of each half a handfull, a pinte of Rhenish wine, or somewhat more: let them sethe together vntill about the fourth part be consumed: strayne it, wring it out, and put vnto it halfe a dragme of Saffron. Amongst each draught is to be put halfe a dragme of this powder following: Take of the black scraped Cassie pyppes one dragme, and make a subtil powder thereof, in

in like sort haue you yet moe before. This following will be also much commended: take white beaten Amber half a drag. & giue it with the water of Lillies, or with the decoction of red pease: it quickneth mightely the throves. It doth also chauce sometimes that the throves do auoide at the mouth, for which, take three or foure skaines of boyled warme linnen yarne, and let the woman with child receiue this vapo2, for thereby will the throves fall downewards: euery one may conceiue thereof what he list, it is very like a grosse medicine for clowens.

Of the perillous and hard Childbirth in generall. §. 14.

It is knowne to all the world moze then sufficiently, how hard & slowe that some women lye in labo2, before that they can annoyd the child and secundine: so that it hapneth otherwhiles that young and strong women do dye with the fruit. These perils haue many occasions, so that otherwhiles the women themselves, or the child, be a cause thereof. Such anguish may also procede otherwhiles from the Matric, or from the neck of the same. In like manner the same may be well caused through some obstruction of the Matric, or through any other disease, as an impostume, and such like, in the foresayd parts: this also may be brought to passe through the rudenes and vnhandsomnes of the Spidwife. When as then these foresaid reasons be declared, then may the cause easily be adiuaged of this grieuous and perillous childbirth.

If the disease be of the woman, then hath she had a great former sickness, or she is diseased through hunger: she may be also too yong, and haue conceiued before the due age: or she may be too old, and not haue bozne before at any time, in which the places will be hardly oponed: also if a woman be dismayed, or neuer wont to beare child, be also too fat of bodie, and is ouercooled: then can she hardly be deliuered of the child. Secondly, the fruit it self may cause also a grieuous labour, like as is sayd (yet without foundation) that boyes be easier bozne into the world then girls. Item, if the child be too grosse of bodie or head, and therewith be very small and weak, that through his foebleries it cannot help it selfe to the birth. Item, if the child be dead, haue two heads, or the like double members. Item, if the child with his hands and fete and not with the head, doth lye in the birth place like as behoueth and as is naturall. Further, the Matric may be by nature too narrow or too dry, so that with no moysture the passage can be made slipperie. Item, if the woman before in the neck of the Matric haue had any vlceration, whereby the muskels could not stretch abroad, or that as yet there be some vicer in the neck of the mother: or if it remaineth by the secundine, then is the same so thicke and so strong, that it will not bzeake. This grieuous and very hard labour may also be caused by the stopping of the bodie.

If now this heauy labo2 do procede of the foresmentioned diseases, sicknesses, hunger, and such like outward causes, that may be very well perceiued of the woman. The signes of a feble or dead child are to be found in the 8. and 11. §. But if there be of none of al these signes any instant, and if that a woman is not strong, and that a childe in deliuerie remaine in the birth place, and cannot be brought into the world, then is it a certaine signe that the afterbirth (like as is said) is too strong and not yet broken.

Thus be all perillous accidents of child birth so ioyned to each other, that all of them for the most part are cured with one kinde of remedy, whereof we haue written much before. And because we haue especially admonished here of the secundine, therefore doth our old o2ber require, that we should also discourse somewhat particularly thereof. But because nature obserueth this method, that it first expelleth the childe, and afterwards the *Secundina*, which is the secundine, therefore we will also first of all write perfectly of the childe, and afterwards of the secundine, with all which is ordayned for the same. Lastly, we will shewe and declare all that is mo2te for both of them.

When a woman cannot be deliuered of a childe. §. 15.

The causes of this hard and longsome childbirth are before sufficiently discovered: when as then a child appeareth with a hand or a fote before, which both happ2 very seldome without swelling of the neck of the Matric, and of the parts adiacent, then take Demitropall, Spugwort, and brolone Betome, of each a like quantitie, hack it all together, and let it seeth in milke, lay it then vnder her, before the birth, as warme as she may abide it, about the member of the child, the same driueth away the swelling: or let seething water

under it, when the child feelth the warmth, then doth it draw the member back againe. This and the like things should Midwives know, on whose knowledge & experience is very much depending, the very renowned aduise which is discovered in the 13. S. of Amber, whē the throlwes will not continue: also there is laid vnto it scraped Anicoznes honye. Some be of opinion that first of all the woman should take a spoonfull of oyle, with twise as much water. Other do also aduise, that one should seethe half a drag. of Hare, and so to giue it, this fozeeth also the secundine. If that then a child will not frame himselfe to birth in his mothers wombe, and neuertheles the throlwes & the right time of birth be instant, then take a little Lilly water, and as much good Rhenish wine, & so drinke it together, it will frame it self the better afterwards. For this is also good the iuice of Sloes, wherof we haue spoken befoze. Another: Take fresh well water, and hony as much as you please, temper them together without seething or skimming, and so giue it to drinke, this quickneth the throlwes & paine, so that she wil be the soner deliuered of child, so that the paine expelleth the child and the secundine. Or take the floures of Cyper, seethe them in wine, and drinke a good draught thereof, this should be very certaine, especially if the herb or floures may be gotten fresh. Item, take well poured Linseed, seeth the same in wine, & giue the woman a good draught therof. In like maner may she well drinke wine, which is decocted with Plantaine. Wine wherein Wine leaues haue bene steeped, should also expell birth. Boreas the waight of half a drag. dronken with wine, is also very aduancing for it, as we haue admonished befoze. A stronger: Take Saffron, and pearles of each one scrup. Boreas 4. scrup. giue this also with hony water if the throlwes come not; but if so be that the throlwes be instant, then giue it with Bugwort water, or with sweet wine, it expelleth very swiftly. Now for to vse outwardly, may one chose out of all these things following for a time that which one will, as the seedes of Garlick, Sauintrae, Bugwort, S. Johns wort, Pigeon dung, the honye of an Asses teate, or of a horses teate, Dre dung, Wormewood, & Rue: of all which tempered, or each alone: also to bathe, to make salues, plaisters, and such like. Item, take round Hartwort, Aristologie, Sauintrae, & Cresses, of each alike, stamp and temper them all together with an Dre gall: then afterwards make a great faint moist therein, & put it befoze into the places, it helpeth much to birth. This following doth also expell a child whether it be liuing or dead, and also the secundine very vehemently: Take Sauintrae, round Hartwort, Asarabacca, & Dragon rootes, of each alike quantitie, poune them all together, & temper them with hony: afterwards giue to the woman thereof the waight of one quarter of an ounce, with water wherein Lupins be decocted, and if so be that this expell not sufficiently, then take Opopanacum and Dre gall, of each one quarter of an ounce, Beuered one drag. giue it to the woman to drinke with water wherein the Sauintrae & fenell is decocted: and although all these foresaid medicines be meete and conuenient for to expell the secundine with them, yet we will neuertheles in particular as we haue promised, write and discourse thereof.

Of the secundine or afterbirth, and how the same is to be expelled. S. 16.

This afterbirth do the Latiniſſs call *Secundinam*, which is as much to say, as the second, because it cometh away after that she is deliuered of child, and of such like, wherefoze it is by vs properly called the afterbirth or secundine. This foresaid afterbirth or secundine hath this vse, to wit, when that in lying together both the seedes of the man & woman be tempered in the Matrix, and become like vnto milke, then cometh about the same a caul or belme, which groweth by little and little with the fruit, and is augmented with it. The same is by nature obtained, that the fruit may be therewith as it were with a cloth couered, enclosed about, garded and defended, vntill the day of the birth, which presently after the birth of the child (if all things happen aright) doth auoyde; or remayning behinde, it bringeth very great perill with it, as we haue sayd befoze, that amongst other accidents there do follow agues, stinking breath, paine of the head, swooning, and such like.

If in case then that these afterbirths do thereby tarry behinde, so that a woman is warent to weary & feeble, through the former hard laboz, then must somewhat be giue her, whereby she may get some strength, and might comfort her hart, as *Diamargariton*, *Mannu Christi*, and *Diapirus*. She is also to be caused to nese, and to hold in her breath, whereby the vndermost parts of the belly be pressed downe, and stirred vp to expell that which remaineth. And if so be that the secundine wil not follow, then let the woman rest a little, and annoynt the belly and all other parts about

hont it with oyle of Lillies, and oyle of Eldorne floures: also to keepe the belly very warme, and then to vse those things which are specified in the deliuey of childzen in the 11. §. and also whatsoeuer shall be prescribed hereafter. All those that esteeme much of pretious stones do counsell, that when the afterbirth will not follow, that then the to woman is to be given of the powder of the Aggat, and that thereupon the secundine must follow. It is also commaunded to the contrarie, that whensoever a woman is in labour, that then she is to put away from her all manner of pretious stones, because that they do deferre this childbirth. It is also sayd that corne floures giuen with Lillie water, doth expell the secundine. We haue also said before, that half an eggshell full of the iuice of Garlick giuen with Hony water, doth expell the dead child and afterbirth: but this aduise may we leane for countrey people. Pissing is also especiall good for deliuey and auoyding of the afterbirth.

For to vse outward things therfore is much commended to make a lie of ashes, and to set the fete deepe in them, they should draw the afterbirth downewards. Item, take Birch ashes, and powze seething water vnto it, then let the vapoꝝ ascend from beneath vpwards, and the afterbirth wil follow. Take Perocks feathers, or if you cannot get them, then take hens feathers, kindle them, and let the fume ascend from beneath.

Item, take Hollyhock rootes, sethe them very mellow, and then temper it with Barrowes grease, with Gole grease, and therewith annoynt the neck of the Patric within. This draweth not only the afterbirth, but also all other vncleannes, for this is also chiefly good whatsoeuer be he is described for the advancement and lightning of childbirth, and also for womens termes.

How that the afterthrowes are to be eased. §. 17.



Take Squinant and Spikenard, of each one quarter of an ounce, sethe them together with water of Bugwoꝝt euen to the halfe, & drinke thereof two or thre times, it layeth the paine. Item, take Palmsey, or some other good wine, and make a candle thereof with the yolks of eggs and Cinnamom. Or take Saffron half a dragme, space one scrup. *Triphera magna* halfe an ounce, take this at two times with warme wine, for that this *Triphera* hath such power, that it doth presently asswage the paine. In like manner, this may be annoynted into the neck of the Patric very commodiously. Further, you haue before in the 19. Chapter and 7. §. of the paine of the Patric through wind, of *Triphera* and *Philonium*, and presently afterwards a powder with *Turbith*. Also, how this Velleboꝝ is to be vsed, all which things be very commodious for the afterthrowes.

Item, take small pouldred Woolblabe, temper them as a dough, and bake cakes thereof, and giue it to the woman to eate. Take good fat figs, cut them to peces, and grosse beaten fene grike, of each one handfull; let them sethe together, and the woman to sit oftentimes ouer it, or to foment her beneath with clothes. Item, take the yolks of eggs, temper them with the iuice of Bugwoꝝt, and bake cakes thereof, and lay them behinde vpon the back. The same doth also Hollyhock rootes, or the leaues, if it be beaten, and with warme wine layd vpon it, and oftentimes renewed.

For the excessiue flood after birth. §. 18.



For this you haue before in the 19. Chapter 3. §. of the asswaging of the excessiue termes of women many kinds of remedies which be also very mete for all women in childbed. Yet of the Phisitions of *Augusta* be these following ordained for very speciall remedies: At the first are these women in childbed (be it howsoeuer it will) to take with both fasting one dragme of the same powder with white *Diptamus*, that not long since hath bene described in the 11. §. Afterwards she is to vse this costly confection: Take conserue of Roses one ounce, conserue of Burage, of Buglosse, and of Baulme, of each halfe an ounce, prepared *Bolus* halfe a dragme, prepared Perles one dragme, good Cinnamom one dragme, and a halfe, temper them all together. Item, take conserue of Pionie, it clenseth a woman after birth. Let her vse also this powder following: Take prepared *Bolus* one dragme, sealed earth two scrup. *Dozmentill* halfe a dragme. *Shepherds purse* one scrup. *Species de gemmis frigidis* one dragme, and a halfe, prepared Perles one dragme. *Roses*, *Cotall*, and *Saunders*, of each one scrup. Cinnamom two scrup. and a halfe. Sugar thre ounces, temper them well together, and take it with Venbroth. This following is yet more forcible in staunching:

staunching: Take Bloudstone washed with Plantaine water one drag. and a halfe, red Copall one drag. Tozmentill and *Trociscos de spodio*, of each halfe a drag. scraped Iuozie, and burnt Harts horne, of each one scrup. prepared Perles foure scruples, fine *Bolus* two scrup. *Bursa Pastoris*, and red Saunders, of each a scrup. Cinnamon one drag. Sugar five ounces, make a powder thereof or lozings.

Of the superfluitie of milke. §. 19.

When as now a woman is deliuered of Child, and that the milke so excessively aboundeth and ranne ouer that the child could not sufficiently suck or draw it out, and it were to be feared that it might come thereby to clot or to impostumate, then must good remedies be sought, to which end diuers remedies be described in the second part, the third Chapter and 5. §.

Of diuers other accidents after the birth. §. 20.



It hapneth many times that a woman after that she is deliuered of child, her legs and feete happen to swell. For this, take Wormewood, Cammomill, Centory, Parrow, Southernwood, and Spikenard, of each a like quantitie, sethe it all together to a bath for the feete, and vse it oftentimes. In like manner you haue also before in the third part and fifth Chapter, in the description of the places in women and their accidents, diuers things which be mete for this purpose. Item, take Cammomill and Linsede, of each one handfull, put them in a bag together, and sethe them in wine, afterwards lay it ouer the swelling.

Or take a great Vinion, rost the same in ashes, afterwards stamp it to grout, and make a plaister thereof with sufficient butter, and vse it. These two last things may also be layd vpon the belly against the afterpaines.

As much as then concerneth the descension of the neck of the Matrir, the vnnaturall heate, the ache, and such like accidents, which women in childbed be subiect to, for that are diuers remedies to be found before in the description of the places, neuertheless we will adde somewhat more, and therewith conclude.

If so be that a woman with child come to be broken, then take Comfrey foure handfulls, Self heale one handfull: sethe them together for a bathe for the loynes, and let her sit therein ouer the priuities.

Item, take a long peece of Allome, and put it into the bodie before, then shall the rupture goe together againe, and the entrance will be so narrow as euer it was before.

Or take two ounces of Coperas, foure ounces of Gals, one ounce and a halfe of Gum, sethe them together in sufficient rayne water, and wash you therewith, but this is none other but as it were a right wixing inke.

Loke also further the first Chapter of the third part of the ruptures of the nauell, and all that which shall be written of the ruptures, where one may chose what seemeth best for every one.

The plaister *Diachilon*, whereof we haue so oftentimes admonished, is thus to be made: Take Fenegreke, Linsede, and Hollyhock rootes, of each four ounces, sethe them together, and draw out the muscilage as in the first part the third Chapter and 7. §. is taught: put thereto nine ounces of sallet oyle, litharge of gold three ounces, then sethe them together againe vntill the muscilage be spent, and make a plaister thereof: this plaister mollifieth all hardnes of the liuer, of the milke, and stomach, and of all other parts. There be also two sorts prepared, which are called *Compositum*, and *Magnum*, which be both also more stronger then the former, but they be not so much in vse.

There hath also oftentimes bene spoken of the syrrup *De radicib.* the one called of two kinds of rootes, which is thus made: Take Parsley rootes, and fennell rootes, of each two ounces, let them sethe in sufficient water, afterwards strayne them through a cloth, and make a clarified syrrupe thereof with twelue ounces of Sugar.

The syrrupe of five kinds of rootes is prepared in this manner: Take the rootes of Smalage, of fennell, of Parsley, of *Ruscus*, and of Sperage, of each one ounce, sethe them very melow, and then make a syrrupe thereof with twelue ounces of Sugar. Both these kinds of syrrupes be good against all kind of agues which procede through putrefaction of plegme and choler.

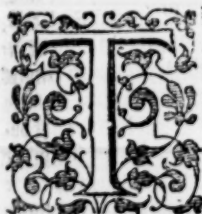
The

The fourth Part of this generall Practise of Phisicke, doth intreate of the out- ward members.



Although the Phisitions, and especially the Anatomists do comprehend all other partes of mans bodie, which be not described in the former thre partes of this Practise of Phisicke in this fourth part; yet will we diuide them into two principall partes: that is, the Armes and Legs. These be the especiallest outward partes, to wit, Armes, hands, fingers and nailes: afterwards the legs, the thighes, the knees, the shins, the ankles, the fete and the toes. These be now the diseases which be generally incident to both these parts. First, that which the Phisitions do call *Gutta*, and we the Gout, is diuided into fower principall Chapters, according to the member which is infected with it, viz. *Arthritis*, which is the right Gout: *Chiragra*, which is the Gout in the hands: *Ischia*, the Sciaticke: lastly, *Podagra* the Gout of the fete. Of all which we will orderly discourse and write, afterwards of Clorations, Clorations, Extenuations, Bruises, and fractures of bones, and by what meanes that each disease is to be holpen. Therefore will we in the name of God begin according to our old custome and method, with the highest partes, which be the Armes, and what is annexed vnto them.

Of the Armes. Chap. I. §. I



These Armes be diuided into thre parts. First, they haue their beginning at the shoulder blade with the Arme pits, reaching vnto the Elbowe. All which with the other parts of the Armes be called by the Grecians and Latinists *Brachium*. The second part reacheth forth vnto the hands and wrists of the armes. The third part is the had vnto the end of the fingers. As much as concerneth now the first two parts. They be subiect vnto all outward & inward accidents or diseases, as bruises, fractures, wounds, impostumations, clorations, diseases of the vaines, and of the sinewes, and to such like accidents mo. All which diseases (according to the qualitie of the cause) are to be holpen with letting of blood, salues, plaisters, baths, fomentations, &c. Whereof in many places before and also shortly hereafter in the Goute and in the Sciatica shall be moze ample declaration made: so that at this present it is needlesse to write any further thereof.

Of the Arme pits. §. 2.



As much as concerneth this part of the armes, we haue therof sufficiently spoken before, as also of the vaines of the Arme pits, and so; what cause they ought to be opened, hath been sufficiently declared in the Introduction, we will here discover and discourse of the lothsome stench of the arme pits, and chiefly in hot and fat folks: because that they haue also much haire in this place, and be mozt of nature; and how naxer that the stench is to the nose, so much the lothsome is it. This stench is augmented through great labour at hot times, through want of shifting and alteration of clothes, through great incontinencie, and through some corrupted humors of the body. Which stench if it do continue very long, it is a sure signe of an incident palse.

Then so; to remedie this stench it is needfull, according to the qualitie of the person, that all such are to be purged and let blood, and that he afterwards do bathe in these odoriferous herbes, as *Pinks*, *Heliotre*, *Lauender*, *Ireas*, and such like.

This being done, the Armeholes and the whole bodie are to be fomented with these things following: Take *Annis*, *Comin*, & *Roses*, of each 2. ounces, *Cypers* roots one ounce, *Spikenard*, and *Spica Roma*, of each one quarter of an ounce, powned *Ireas* one ounce: sethe these all together

in two quarts of water untill about a third part be consumed; & then vse it warme with clothes wet therein, and keepe the body very cleane with clothes & linnen. Afterwards vse some of these things following: Take the Litharge of gold one quarter of an ounce, Allum one drag. Roses and Pyrrh, of each half a drag. beat them al to powder, & wash the Armpits with wine; & then strow the powder vpon it: the Litharge of gold doth the same of it selfe tempered with Rose water: in like maner also the Pirrh. Item, take Coperas one ounce, seth the same in thre ounces of water, let it be cold, and annoynt the stinking place with it. Take Thistle leaues one handfull, seth the same in a pinte of wine and drinke thereof, it taketh away the stench throughout the whole bodie.

Item, take litharge of gold one ounce, Frankincense halfe an ounce, poune all together small when you goe to bed, and temper a little thereof with wine, and annoynt therewith the place, and then in the morning wash it with Vineger. You may also vse so; this the oyle of Spyke.

And if so be that the humors then be so sharp that they excoziate the place and bite open the skinne, then wash it with warme water, and afterwarde strowe the place with burnt Allome, Parmalade with spices doth also expell all stench.

Of the Hands. §. 3.



Naxagoras was wont to say, that men aboue all beaſts were moſt reaſonable, ſo; that they only had hands. But *Aristotle* contraryeth this with great reaſons and ſayth, becauſe that mankind is the moſt ſharp witted amongſt all beaſts, therefore hath nature giuen him hands which be none other then inſtruments of a reaſonable beaſt ſo; to vse them whereto he deſireth, ſo that theſe moſt noble and neceſſarie members be made ſo; to comprehend, to hold, to caſt, and to labour, &c. In like manner alſo that through her feeling to adiudge all that is hard, ſoft, hot, cold, thin, thick, and ſuch like. Beſides this, in ſtead of all weapons wherewith all other beaſts be indued, that they may thereby ſeiſe vpon all manner of weapons wherewith either in time of peace o; warre to guard and defend the bodie. Item, with theſe hands be all renowned ſeats and cunning and alſo all hurtfull woorks atchieued and brought to paſſe, as is dayly ſene. It appeareth alſo by dayly experience that commonly the right ſide is moze forcible and much nimbler then the left, not that it is ſo in euery bodie, o; muſt be, ſo; that it is oftentimes found to the contrarie, whether it be through the cuſtome o; otherwiſe that ſome do moſt of all help themſelues with the left hand, and be much nimbler and actiuer with it.

Further, the hand is commonly deuided into two parts, as in the palme, in the fingers, and one may if he will accompt the nailes with it. They be filled euery where full of ſinewes, wherewith they moſt commodiouſly and ſpeedily be readie to all manner of actions. Inwardly in the palme of the hand be many kinds of lines o; ſtrakes ſene, the which like as the *Chir-mantici* do ſay, be ſignes of good and bad luck o; fortune, whereof we will not here write any further, becauſe that theſe Southſayers arte is by many learned regarded as lyes, ſo; that they haue no foundation, therefore be they alſo iuſtly to be mocked and ſkozned, like as they be alſo taken and acknowledged of all byright Chriſtians to be vngodly, and adiudged to be an illuſion of Sathan. Thus may this ſuffice of the Hands.

For to keepe the hands cleane. §. 4.



It becommeth all men very well with honeſtie, that they haue alwayes cleane hands, and that chiefly when they ſit at table, whether it be that they taſte any meate, o; carue ſo; others: and ſo; to come vnto it, the ſame are oftentimes to be waſhed with faire water, and Venice ſoape. If you will make them ſnell well, then looke what is written thereof in the firſt part in the firſt Chapter, and 2. §. Do prepare in ſtead of the ſoape this enſuing: Take one ſponefull of Hony, two yolks of Eggs well bayed, and a little Roſe water, and Lillie water: temper them, and ſethe them to pap, rub the hands therewith, and afterwarde waſh it off with faire water.

Item, take the whites of Eggs well bayed, ſtirre therein a little wheaten flour, Roſe water, and

and Orange peeles pouned small as much as you will. The iuice of Citrons is also very good for it: or if one cannot get it, then may the iuice of Limons or of Oranges be taken in stead of it. Let the same sethe alone in a glased pot, and stirre it about continually. It is also especiall good against all itchinnes of the hands, and all other parts of the bodie.

Or take the water of Louage, and pouned Argall, temper them together with the white of an Egge, as much as you please of each, bray them well together, and vse them as before is specified.

For to make perfumed hands and gloues. §.5.



Take cleane Barrow grease as much as you please, and lay the same eight dayes in water or in lie, putting euery day fresh water or lie vnto it, and wash it well. Afterwards five other dayes in fresh milke wash also dayly. Then after that wzing it out cleane, and put it into a pot, and put Rose water vnto it, the water of Elderne floures, of Plantaine, and of Lauender, of each a like quantitie. Afterwards put odoriferous spices vnto it, as Cloues, Cinnamon, Putmegs, and so let them sethe together softly vntill the water be wasted away. At the last you are to put vnto it Muscus, Ambra, golden waters, or any other well sauoring things, stir them along time well together. This salve is also good for all scabbines and scurffe, &c.

For scabbie Handes. §.6.



Or this may the foresaide salve or Pomander be vsed which is described in the first part, the tenth chapter, and first §. For this is also very good the gum and Dragagant dissolved in Rose water, and the hands rubbed with it.

It happeneth also many times that the hands be full of the drie scruffe, like to that kind of itche which the Latiniists do call *Impetiginem*: for which this following is to be vsed, and not onely for the hands, but also ouer the whole bodie, whereas is the drie scurffe. Open some eggs, put out the whites and yolks, the egshells are to be laid in a cole place where they will not be bedusted, then wil there gather amongst it a little water, which you are to put into a little glasse, and to annoint therewith the place that is scabbie.

Item, sethe the Elecampane in the creame of milke which is also very mete for this purpose. Or sethe these rotes with Butter and Milke; and when they be mellow and sodden to pappe, then temper some salte amongst it, this is alwaies found to be very good. You haue a sure salve for this before in the first part the third chapter, and tenth §. beginning thus: Take Turpentine, &c. Some do aduise to take the liuers of Tenches, and to put the same in a glasse stopped tight and set in a warme place, and to annoint it with the water that commeth thereof. Item, the iuice which is wzing out of Orange peeles, should be marnellous good for this purpose.

Another: Take the oyle of Juniper, and oyle of Argall, annoint the hands with it and all other scabbines.

Of chops in the Hands.. §.7.



Take foure ounces of Sallet oyle, or oyle of Roses, Ware one ounce; melt them together and annoint the hands with it. Item: Take oyle of Roses, white Ware, Pasticke, Frankinsence, and Hens grease, of each a like quantitie; powne all that is to be pownded, then temper them all together, and make a soft salve of it.

For achie or scabbie Hands. §.8.



Take three ounces of swete Butter, Turpentine two ounces wash together certaine times with Vineger; and then temper with it halfe an ounce of salte, and three drag. of drie Ceruse. Item take a good pece of kie breap, laying it the space of certaine howers in fresh water vntill it be well mollified, then wzing it out throug a course cloth, and wash your selfe therewith.

This

This following is also good and sure. Take Turpentine two ounces, fresh butter one ounce, oyle of Roses halfe an ounce, the iuice of Limons oꝝ Dringes thꝛe quarters of an ounce, and the white of an eg well bzated, salt one dzagme, then temper them altogither with a milde fire oꝝ vpon warme ashes. If so be that you will haue it thicker, then put a little Ware vnto it. Dꝛ take the middlemost rindes of the Juniper tre, and Barrowes grease, of eache a like much: sethe the same together in Coates milke, and salte it well.

Take the oyle of Roses and liquid Stozar, of eache a like quantity, melt them together: this is especiall god, and hath a god sauoz. Item take fresh Elecampane rootes, Gallowes, Docke rootes with the leaues, and fumitoꝝ, of each one handfull: Bꝛan one handfull: sethe them all together in thꝛe pintes of water vnto the halfe, and therewith wash the hands. Dꝛ take Sulfure vife halfe an ounce, small bzused litharge of Siluer thꝛe dzagmes, dzied Ceruse one quarter of an ounce, Barrowes grease one ounce, Camfere halfe a dzagme, the iuice of Dringes halfe an ounce, temper them together, and keepe it in a glasse.

With this following be many people holpen whom nothing would helpe. Take the rootes of Dockes and Elecampane, of each one ounce, Cuckopit and Comfrey, of each halfe an ounce, Agrimony, Belseheale and bzoad Plantaine, of each one handfull, vitriol halfe an ounce, Allome & Sulfure vif, of each one ounce, Saltpeter one quarter of an ounce, Roses one handfull, Pomegranate pils halfe a handfull, wine and water, of each one quart, Sharpe Vineger twelue ounces: let it be all together infused, and then afterwards boyle it. In which are the hands to be bathed euery moꝝning & euening the space of fise dayes. And afterwards be the hands to be moistened with a cloth dipped in this decodion following: Take wash Ceruse one dzagme and a halfe, Allome, white Coperas, and Pastiche, of each two scruples, Camfere halfe a dzagme: this being all beaten small together, then binde it in a fine cloth, afterwards steepe it in two ounces of Rose water, and foure ounces of Plantaine water, whereof wee haue admonished befoꝛe and taught in the former 6. §.

As much as now concerneth all itche oꝝ scurfe, whereof we will by Gods helpe speake sufficiently in the fifth part.

Of the Fingers. §.9.



P the last 6. §. we haue generally wꝛitten of the hands: but now will we think vpon the fingers, which be called by the Grecians *Dactyli*, and by the Latinists *Digit*, by nature haue all men fise on each hand: Othersome fise which be therfoze called by the Latinists *Sedigiti*. The first of these is the Thumbe which is called the greatest and smallest; but by reason of his shortnes is he verily the smallest, but by reason of his thicknes and strength is he indeed the greatest, and therewithall so forcible that he is a helper to the rest of the fingers, that without the same they be very impotent, because that he lying aboue the fingers in holding fast, shutteth them vp. This haue also the most cruell tirants acknowledged, who commaunded to chop off the Captiues Thumbes and not their hands, to the end that they might not handle their weapon, noꝝ doe any other labour. The first finger afterwards is called the fozefinger, in Latine *Index*, that we doe therewith shewe and point at all things. The third doe we name by reason of his place, the middlemost, which the Latinists partly cal *Infamem*. The cause of this name will we conceale at this present. The fourth is the gold finger oꝝ *Anularis*, soꝝ that commonly the same is wont to be garnished and deckt with gold rings. Lastly followeth the small oꝝ eare finger. These fise fingers haue fiftē bones, each thꝛe: albeit some do ascribe to the thumbe but two bones. Thꝛough these bones and mouing of the sinewes. These fingers haue two small ioints, amongst which the thumbe hath no moze but one: All which bend onely inwards, whereby they be mete soꝝ all cunning and subtil actions. But what mischances and diseases these men be subiect to we will now wꝛite and discourse thereof.

Of the numbnes of the fingers in part or in all. §.10.

This numbnes bzingeth with it a hardening of the sinewes, and is caused thꝛough heat, cold, oꝝ dzithe, This numbnes must be holpen immediately, oꝝ the fingers will soꝝthwith lose their

their motion thereby. For this disease must be kept especially a good diet, and first of all are cold windie dwellings to be eschued, and the whole bodie, chiefly the hands and the face to be kept very warm, and then to refraine from all grosse binding and coling meats, as old Beefe, Skins, Paunches, and Sinewes of all beasts. Item, all that is drest with dough, all fish, and especially Celes, Tenches, and Crabs, must be refraine. He must also forbear Pike, Cheese, and all old baked bread: from all kind of Beanes, and from cold herbs, as Lettice, Purslaine, Bats, Pears, and such like, red grosse thicke wine is also not good for him: and if it be possible he is utterly to refraine wine, whether it be drunken, watered or vnwatered. Also he is not to ouercharge himselfe with meat or drinke at any hand. And he is aboue all to beware of Vineger, and from all solye things. Also long sleepe is hurtfull for him, and especially sleepe by day; otherwise he may lye according to his old custome.

As much as concerneth the vse of Phisicke, he may take of these pills following fower or fife every day two houres alwaies before supper, and to continue this a certaine space: Take Aloe two ounces, keepe it two daies in the water of blew flower-deluce, *Agaricus*, and *Turbin*, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Hermodactyl* one quarter of an ounce, *Pasticke* one scruple, *Vineger*, *Annis*, *Cinnamom*, and *Pace* of each halfe a scruple, *Diagrid* two scruples, then pould all small temper them together and fashion fife peeces of each dragma.

Secondly, take oyle of *Spirtles*, and of *Pasticke*, of each one ounce and a halfe, burnt *Tuozie*, Amber, red *Tozall*, and *Sandaraca*, of each one dragma, *Pasticke*, *Frankinsence*, of each halfe a dragma, *Waperglew* thre quarters of an ounce, *Dragagant* and *Gum*, of each halfe a dragma, dissolve the glew in strong red Vineger with halfe an ounce of *Waxe*. When it is almost colde, then temper the other spices with it, & make a tough salve of it, that it may be spread on leather lay it within vpon the bending of the hand, and round about the thumbe.

Thirdly, take a peece of a *Mill Stone*, let it be very thozow hot, lay it in a great panne and besprinkle it with good wine and sharpe Vineger tempered together: and do this so long untill there be about twelue ounces poured vpon it. Duer this vapo: be the hands to be holden being well couered, to the end that they may sweate well; afterwards drie them. This is to be done once every moorning, and afterwards to binde vp the hands in a peece of *fur*.

Fourthly, Take oyle of *Camelina*, and of sweete Almonds, of each two ounces, *Calues marrow*, *Badgers greafe*, *Ducks greafe*, of each one ounce, *Bdelium* halfe an ounce, *Galbanum* one ounce and a quarter, *Saffron* halfe a dragma: dissolve the gum in white Vineger, and then make a soft salve of it with *Waxe*: with this salve are you to annoint all the hands and fingers morning and evening.

Fifthly, take one ounce of the gum of a *Cherrie tree*, *Beuercod*, and *Galbanum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Sallet oyle* fife ounces, *Calues marrow*, *Gole greafe*, and *Hens greafe*, of each one ounce, white *Waxe* one ounce and a halfe, *Saffron* two scruples, *Lignum Aloes* halfe a dragma, and *Muscus* two graines: dissolve the Gum in white Vineger and temper the fatte amongst it. Last of all, put all the other things beaten small vnto it. When as then the patient hath vsed all these foresaid fomentations, salues, and plaisters, the space of ten or twelue daies, then are the hands to be annointed with the first described salve.

When the Fingers be numbed through bruises. §.11.



His cure or healing is commonly committed to the Chirurgians: but if the sinewes be not utterly chopt off, then is there still some hope of health. Now for to remedie this, the patient is like as is said already to keepe himselfe soberly, and to beware of much Wine, of Vineger, and *Venerie*. From stirring the bruised hand too much, and not to wash them with cold water, but is to vse these fomentations following: Take a peece of a *Mill Stone*, make it very hot and put vnto it as before said, then couer the hands very warme. This being done, then are they to be annointed with this salve being made very warme: Take oyle of *Behen*, of *Costus*, and the suet or fat of a *Lyon*. Or in stead thereof mans greafe, the fat of a *Beuer*, of each one fife ounces, *Saffron* two scruples, the *Marrow* of an ore one ounce, pould *Hermodactyl*, *Piony rootes*, *Stechas floures*, and *Southernwood*, of each halfe a dragma, *Waxe* as much as is needfull for to make a tough salve. This being done, then be the hands to be couered warme with unknemmed *shæpes* woll,

wool, and the brused fingers are to be bounden and to be put into warme gloves, to the end they may be kept from al manner of cold. When as this then hath bene obserued the space of eight daies, then is the fomentation to be omitted, and to vse this salue following: Take oyle of *Nerdis* one ounce and a halfe, oyle of *Euphorbium* one ounce, oyle of Saffron, and of Pepper, of each halfe an ounce, *Stechus*, Swines bzead, white Pepper, *Hermodactyl*, Pyony rootes, and Sonthernwood, of each one dragma, *Galbanum*, *Serapinum*, and *Ammoniacum*, of each one quarter of an ounce; sethe the oyle and the gum easily together. When it beginneth to be colde, then temper the pouder in it and make a salue of it, wherewith annoint the hands twice a day, and keepe them alwaies warme.

Of the Fellon or Ancome in the Fingers. §. 12.



This impostumation which some do cal *Panaricium*, and we a Fellon or Ancome, is none other but a sharpe and hot impostumation of the fingers, which bying such a paine with them, that the patient thereby, neither by night nor by day, can rest or sleepe, neither can get any ease by any meanes vntill that the saide impostume be opened.

This impostumation is first to be remedied with cooling things that do also thereby mollifie and ripen, like as this salue following: Take the oyle of Masticke, and burrie Sallet oyle, of each one ounce, clenised *Antimonium* halfe a dragma, prepared *Turic* thre dragms, white Ware halfe an ounce, Rosin halfe an ounce, the Ware, Rosin, and oyle are to be molten together, and the rest to be tempered amongst it; after wards annoint the fingers with it often.

Item, take Sulphure, Garlick, *Carni*, the soote of a Chimney, & Salt, of each a like quantitie; poune all to pap and binde it vpon the hand. Yet one more: Take the innermost skins of Egghels, lay them vpon the finger, and this former salue vpon them, wherewith we will commend, and commit the cure of this accident vnto the Chirurgians.

Of the Nailles on the Fingers and Toes. §. 13.



These Nailles are the outward parts of the sinewes, and haue their roote and foundation, and do growe out of the superfluitie of the same, which increasing cometh not at all in the depth or breadth, but onely like to haire in the length. *Aristotle* saith, that the fingers and the toes are giuen onely for a defence. But *Galen* addeth vnto it, that they be therefore made, for that therewith all small and subtle things might be opened. These Nailles haue of themselves no sence or feeling, therefore do they neede no great remedies; and for that cause will we onely admonish here and discourse of the impostumation of the rootes of the Nailles.

And if so be that there be then any impostumation in the rootes of the Nailles, or there happen any other harme vnto them, then take *Sarcocolla*, Masticke, and Frankinsence, of each one quarter of an ounce, Comfrey, burnt Allome, Hartwort, of each one dragma, *Ammoniacum*, *Mirra*, Verdigrease, and white Coperas, of each one scruple; poune them all to a subtil powder, and strow vpon it. This powder drieth, consumeth, all bad flesh, and it healeth also maruellous well: this may you also vse on the Nailles of the fete.

The second Chapter.

Of the Legs and the Feete.



This second part of the outward members we will onely ad and write this which is, that these legs like the armes also be diuided into thre parts, whereof the vppermost part is the whole hippe even to the knees. The second part is from the knees even to the fete. The third part is the fete with all that is annexed vnto it. As much as now concerneth the diseases of these thre parts, they are to be holpen and healed with the same remedies which be ordained for the armes. But the legs be subiect to other more especial accidents, as broken baines called *Varices*, where.

wherewith commonly the thighes, the knees, and the calves, are burthened like as we will admonished thereof in the first part the first chapter, and first §. amongst other swellings. And albeit that it first of all behooveth to discourse of the uppermost part of the legs: yet we will nevertheless defer it untill that we come where we shall write of the Sciaticke, or gout of the hips, because we will observe our Method.

Of the Knees. §. 1.



So much as concerneth the knees and other members moe, the which have no severall description; therewith is to be dealt like as is said in the chap. of the Armes; but that only for all diseases of the knees, the oyle of Ailes is highly recommended.

In like sort also this salve following which is very requisite for all diseases of the knees, and of all other members, whether that they be hurt through thrusts, through elutions, or wincings: Take the iuce of Sage, of Betony, of Rosemarie, and of Cammomill, of each one ounce: seth these iuces in eight ounces of good wine untill the wine be almost wasted, then put powdered Masticke unto it, and Frankinsence, of each three drag. and let them seth againe untill they be mostely thicke; afterwarde then temper therein one scruple of Saffron, oyle of Roses, of Earthwormes, and of Masticke, of each one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Juniper, pouned Linseed, and pouned Juniper berries, of each one quarter of an ounce, then temper them all together. And if so be that it be too soft, then put a little ware unto it.

When as any bodie hath any colde defluxion fall into his knees, that he can neither goe nor stande, then is this following especiall good, and also many times approued: Take the oyle of Ailes, and of Turpentine, of each one dragme, oyle of Argall halfe a dragme, oyle of Euphorbium one scruple, oyle of Will, and of Juniper, of each one quarter of an ounce; make a salve thereof with a little ware and annoint the knees warme with it.

You shall also finde hereafter diuers sundrie remedies for this in the description of the Podagra, and of Arthritis, which may be also used unto the knees. As much as doth appertaine unto the haies of the knees hath bene written before in the introduction.

Of the Shins. §. 2.



It cometh also oftentimes to passe that there riseth vpon the Shins certaine vlcers which are not so soone to be healed, but continue long, and so corode also hitherwards and thitherwards, and make verie great scabs; for which this following is to be used and thus prepared: Take Ware, and Rosin, of each one ounce, shepes suet two ounces, Pitch, and Sallet oyle, of each three ounces, Masticke, and Frankinsence, of each three dragmes and a halfe, wash Litharge of golde one ounce and a halfe, Ceruse one quarter of an ounce; let the Oyle and the Rosin be sodden together, and then melt the ware amongst it. When it beginneth to be colde, then temper all the other things pouned small amongst it, and so keepe it in a pot. At the first wash these vlcers thrice euerie day with warme swete wine, and then annoint it afterwarde with the said salve.

Item: Take Ceruse, Antimonie, Lytharge of gold, and burnt Lead; all of them washed of each one ounce, molten suet three ounces, Frankinsence, Pomie, Sandaraca, Sarcocolla, burnt Allome, and Dragon blood, of each one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Roses, and of Vineger, of each three quarters of an ounce, Ware, and Rosin, of each one ounce, make a plaister of it. This said plaister is very good for all depascent vlcers which be caused of a burnt melancholike matter, it expelleth heate, it dzieth, it assuageth the paine, it maturateth all hard biles and pulses, and especially it healeth all vlcers of the Shins.

The

The plaister *Sparadrapum* is also vsed foꝛ this, which is thus to be prepared : Take thre ounces of *Schepes* seiwet, oyle of *Roses* and *Ceruse*, of each one ounce, Vineger sower ounces, Litharge of golde one ounce and a halfe, *Rosin* and *Turpentine*, of each one ounce; let the oyle and the fat seethe well together, afterwards put the vineger and all other things vnto it : afterwards adde as much molten *Ware* vnto it as will suffice foꝛ to make a tough plaister of it.

This plaister is also very good; but the patient must aboue all things beware of ouermuch going and wearying the legs.

Of the Feete. §.3.



The feete be as foundations of the whole bodie, which also be in like manner di-
uided into thre partes, viz. the Insteps of the feete, the Plants oꝛ Soles, and the
fine Toes, which be not vnlike to the fingers, but that they be a little shorter: and
that the great Toe doth shut vp and close the rest of the Toes, as the thombe doth
the fingers. They be very helpfull and commodious vnto men that they may stand
the faster, and the better beare the burthen of the bodie.

These feete and the whole legs do othertwiles get the crampe, oꝛ a contracture of the
finewes, whereof we haue wꝛitten much befoze in the first Part, the twelue Chapter, 14. and
15. §. They do oftentimes stinke very much: and to remedie it there is nothing but oftentimes
to change ones sockes, and to bathe the feete in water wherein put leanes, *Cypers* leanes,
Allum, and other well sanouring and odoriferous things be decocted. You haue also befoze in
the second §. of the first Chapter, where is discoursed of the stench of the Arme pits, further instru-
ctions. Foꝛ this it is also mete to keepe cleane the place betwene the Toes, and to vse often-
times warme foote bathes, and then to strowe burnt *Allum* betwene the Toes, which dyeth
the stinking, and also keepeth them cleane.

And bicause the feete be much subiect to be frozen, which yeldeth no small hinderance to a
bodie in going, therefore we will discourse somewhat thereof.

Hereupon do some lay playing cardes wetted and affirme, that they heale this disease in
euery respect whether it be open oꝛ not. Some do counsell that a blew swollen cloute should be
burnt to powder and strowed vpon it. Item, take the whites of fine Eggs, and burne them in a
little Barrowes greafe, and annoint the frozen place with it; but I take the yolks to be better.
This following is best of all: Take *Turpentine*, and put metely much Salt vnto it, stirre
it so long vntill it be thicke like vnto dough: after that spread it on a cloth, and lay it thereon
the space of eight daies; at the least twile a day: if it be vsed immediately after that the feete
be frozen, then doth it cleanse the same, and healeth it presently.

Coznes on
the Toes.

Touching Coznes which come vpon the feete, so it is that in the middest of the same there
groweth a small black oꝛ white callositie, like as it were a wart, the which thꝛough his hardnes
maketh so great a paine that one can hardly tread oꝛ go vpon it. Where to some of these reme-
dies ensuing may be vsed: Take the gall of a Pickerell, and burde it vpon it, oꝛ annoynt it there-
with. Item, make a plaister of red sealing Ware, and lay it thereon. Others do go somewhat
rougher to worke with it, and do take yellow *Arsenicke* (which is *Oxyment*) *Copperas*, and
Allum, of each a like quantitie, and temper it vnto a salue with honie, and annoynt it there-
with. Oꝛ they do take one quarter of an ounce of *Gallbanum*, and let it steape so long in vineger
vntill it be as soft as salue, and lay the same so long vpon it vntill the Coznes weare away.
But this following is oftentimes found to be good, so that the whole Corne falleth away there-
by, and is also very safe: Take of the plaister *Diachylon Magnum*, and pitch, which is *Schoma-
kers* Ware, of each a like much, make a plaister of it; spread it on a cloth, and lay it vpon it the
space of thre oꝛ sower daies beneath on the plants of the feete, and go vpon it; afterwards take
fresh againe so long vntill they be thoroughly whole.

You shall finde no other good thinge in the first Part, where we do discourse of warts, which
be also very commodious foꝛ this purpose.

The third Chapter.

Of the paine in the ioints in generall.



NExt to the forementioned diseases and sicknesses which the armes, hands, legs, and fete be subiect vnto, there be diuers moe and much stronger diseases then the former in the ioints, which be also very needefull to be described. But we will aboute all discourse generally of them, and deuide this matter into two parts, whereof the first part is called by the learned *Gutta*, wherein shall be shewed all the causes, signes, orders, and other things, which be commonly requisite for all paines of the ioynts. The second parte shall we comprehend vnder a generall Colute, or *Arthritis*, and are contained vnder all paines of the ioynts: for most famous physicians do seuerally write of them, and afterwarde we will speake of thæ other sundry species of the Colute, which onely light vpon certaine places of the body, as *Chiragra*, *Ischia*, and *Podagra*.

All sortes of Gouts may manifest them selues in whatsoever part of the body they will, yet are they so like one another, and so allyed together, that many learned men haue written of them all vnder one, and haue onely excepted *Ischia* to be another kinde: which error grew on this sorte; for that all the sortes of it doe after one and the same maner paine all the ioynts of the body. Neuertheles, we will as much as is possible, and as much as the cause requireth, make a seuerall declaration of each by it selfe.

Of the Gowt in generall *Gutta*. §. I.



Like as we haue before admonished, so doe the learned comprehend all diseases and defluxions which doe fall into all the ioynts vnder the name of *Gutta*, which is a passion or payn of the ioynts which falleth into them, & the sinewes of mans bodie by some humors or wind from aboue, or from the next adiacent place: or which is caused through bad disposition of the whole body. This grievous paine may also be caused sometimes through a fracture of a bone, through wrenchings, through great stirrings with a full belly, through falls, blowes, thrusts, through elurations, and through great outward heate or colde; by which meanes all the ioints be weakened. For this also helpeth much, all cold and waterish meates if the same be long vsed; as fruit, great fishes, and especially if they be without scales, swines flesh, water foules, and such like. To be idle, and to liue without any exercise. Also excessive venery, especially after that one hath eaten and drunken. Obstruction of any accustomed course, as of the Pyles, of any open vlcers, of detention of the termes, and such like: whereby nature was accustomed to cleanse her selfe. Item, it is also found by experience that some doe inherite this disease from their auncestors.

In fine, there be two principall causes whereby these kindes of diseases bee prouoked, as first of all the shew of these defluxions. Secondly, the increasing of these defluxions from aboue. Thirdly, feblenes of the members which receiue this superfluity.

The signes of the Colut are manifest of themselves; to wit, if one fele great paine, and that at sundry times on the places where these defluxions doe fall, otherwhiles with swelling, and sometimes without swelling, and whether this procede of heate or colde, that may be perceiued by feeling. If it then come through any outward cause, that may be demanded of the sicke persons themselves, or if that it come through any repletion of the bodie, that appeareth by the signes of the baines, grossenes of the body, fulnes of the pulse, sloth of all the members, by the diminishing of vnderstanding or memorie, losse of appetite, and by the feblenes of the sight. If this disease be then caused through blood, then is it commonly in fat and repleated bodies, with paine of the head, with great vnlustines, with vnquiet sleape, with diminishing of the vnderstanding, with wearines, with rednes of the whole body and of the vaine: there is also heate with it, panting and swelling, and that in the place infected, especially if one haue liued sumptuously. Item, all cold things are welcome vnto him, and all warme things painefull, and if they be vsed too long

long, also hurtfull: Yet this the rather in young persons being full of blood by nature, and if he dwell in a hot countrey. If this disease be caused of *Plegma*, or of colde humors, then is there neither panting nor great paine with it, but remaineth for the most part in one place without remouing hitherwards or thitherwards; neither is there also any great rednes or heate with it, and for the more certaintie that the same is caused through *Plegma*, if the same be so found in an olde person in winter time, after that he hath eaten much colde and moyst meates and drinks, or hath much and long frequented water. Also all warme things be acceptable vnto him and all colde things noysome.

If so be that then this disease proceede of *Cholera*, then is there a strong heat with it, that one can hardly suffer it in the feeling, also a great pain without swelling, with drought & diffention: With this will the patient also perceiue a bitterness of the mouth. And these things will be the rather confirmed if the patient be young and cholericke by nature, or if it be summer time. Also being hot and dry weather &c.

This paine of the ioints proceedeth very seldome, or also neuer through melancholy, if it be not mixed with some subtile moysture, then is there very little paine with it, and also little helpe for it whatsoever is done vnto it: for the place of this disease will bee hard, remaineth blacke without any rednes. And it hapneth not but in olde folkes about winter &c. If this be caused of winde, then is it swollen, thicke without great paine, which oftentimes remoueth from the one ioint to the other, and the patient hath vled much meate and drinke befoze which doe ingender wind. If there be any humors mixed amongst these winds, then must it be considered & passed vpon the foze mentioned signes, whereby will very sone be perceiued what humor hath mixed it selfe amongst these winds, according to which euery one may know how to dispose and gouerne himselfe.

Like as then hitherto in diuers places certaine common rules haue been made, so will wee proceed here also: whereof the first is. For asmuch as the Colicte *Arthritis*, *Podagra*, and such like appeare most of all in harvest by reason of the fruit, eaten the whole summer, therefore must all fruits be eschued. Secondly, for as much as venery is so hurtfull for this disease, and increaseth very much, the same is to be refrained as much as is possible. Thirdly, a quiet idle life, and sleepe by day time doe hinder that the superfluitie cannot be consumed. To the contrary, too great stirring and exercise, whereby the members be ouer heated are also oftentimes the cause of this paine of the members; therefore is the same as much as is possible to be eschued. Fourthly, all Wine, and especially strong wine is very hurtfull for all them that be plagued with the Colicte. Fifthly, all riotting and drunkennes make bad digestion, whereby also the paine of the Colicte is augmented. Sixthly, they that be of hot nature, and addicted to the Colicte, are to refraine from all phlegmaticke meate which is dyest with sundry things, and also from all meate which doe make *Cholera*, and blood, for that when these two humors come together, then doe they bring grosse and undigested defluxions in the ioints whereof then the colicte is caused. Seuenthly, there be some through purging and letting of blood that are freed from this disease, which may most commodiously be done in the spring of the yere. Eighthly, the ayre hurteth them much that be troubled with the Colicte. Ninthly, all great grosse filthes, and especially Celes be hurtfull for the Colicte. Tenthly, sucking Pigs, all water foules and olde Hens are especially hurtfull to the lower members. Eleuenthly, milke and wine eaten together be very noysome for all members, and very hurtfull for the head. Twelfthly, the drinke which is taken without thirst bringeth much hurt to the body. Thirtenthly, like as great surfetting with meat is very hurtful for all the ioints, even so doth a moderate diet refresh them. Fourtenthly, the going too much, or weary walking, and hanging down of the legs, especially presently after meate, is very hurtfull for the ioints. Fiftenthly, to lie vpon the backe is also hurtfull. Sixtenthly, anger is enemy to this disease. Seuententhly, the great sensibility of the ioints, & especially of the feet, cannot suffer any payn. The foze said seuentene rules are only ordained for this purpose, for to free him from the Colicte. But as much as doth concerne the meanes whereby these ioints are to be strengthened and preserved, that the same doe not receiue those defluxions whereon dependeth the principall meanes to free one from it: therefore are these rules following to be obserued. Eightenthly, it is very requisite that the fete be often bathed in Allome water. Ninetenthly, Sage decocted in beere, & the same drunken often times, is commended, as it were a very secret medicine & receit which hath an ineffable operation in all diseases of the ioints. Twentiethly, Almond

floure,

floure, Cammomill, Pyrrhe, Pelilote and Roses be very commodious for the ioints. *Calmus* and ground Iuie haue an especiall vertue for to strengthen all the ioints: the same doth also the Indian Nut kernell. Thre and twentiethly, Merueine laid fresh vpon the scete and so woyn, is very good for the *Podagra*.

These things following do strengthen much the sinewes. The rots Behen and hir oyle doth warme the contracted sinewes: in like manner also *Bdellum* and *Calmus* laid vpon it with oyle of Citron picles, of Cammomill, of Beuercood, Cyperes rotes, Cassie wood and Cyperes: also oyle of *Coffin* and such like oyles are maruellously praised and commended for the sinewes, and Centry in clifters. Item, scete water made of the ashes of a Bay tre. For salve, the mother of Salt oyle is good, and the dregs of the oyle of Lillies, and of all other oyles which be warme by nature. *Opopanacum* is also much commended: but *Pyretum* and Pepper aboue all other to warme the sinewes. For this be also drie swete bathes good, or naturall Sulphur bathes. After purging is Treacle and Spithivate much commended in all colde Goutes, drunken with wine wherein sage hath bene decocted.

But as much as concerneth the curing of these ioint diseases, it is not needfull to discourse any further of them, because that we hereafter will write of this matter at length. Wherefore we will procede in the name of God.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Goute in the Ioints, Arthritis.

The second description which speaketh commonly of the pain in the ioints, whereof we haue briedly admonished before, is that which the Latins do call *Morbum articulare*, and the Grecians *Arthritis*, which is as much to say, as the paine of the ioints, or an inflammation of the ioints, which proceedeth from within the bodie, and the Tendones be annoyed, hurt and pained. In fine, it is none other than a dispersed *Podagra* ouer the whole bodie: the which at one time commeth behinde in the nocke, another time in the shoulber blades; then againe in the backe bone, and in the hands, in the fingers, and in the elboies: the which also sometimes creepeth into the nerthmost ioints, as in the legs, the knees, in the scete and toes. And although in this disease, like as also in other diseases moze, there be many sundrie remedies sought by many sundrie carefull Physicians, according to the qualitie of the cause, and place of the paine; therefore is there but one generall rule to be obserued. First, how one shall be preserved from this disease. Secondly, how that the same is to be cured and taken away altogether. And because the time of the yere importeth not a little therein, therefore is choise to be made of it.

In sommer the matter is thus to be handled. This kinde of patient in the beginning of sommer is to be purged with that which ensueth: Take *Agaricu* one dragma, Sugar one ounce, *Hermoadilis* one dragma and a halfe, water of fiede Cyperes thre ounces, make the water warme, and keepe the rest fower and twenty howers in it; afterwards wyng it hard out, and drinke it warme in the morning, and then fast fure howers vpon it.

Afterwards is this potion following to be used at least eight daies together early in the morning, and to fast fower houres after it: Take one ounce of the honie of Roses, the water of white water spints, and the water of fiede Cyperes, of each one ounce and a halfe; temper them together. We may also take to prepare the humour honie of Roses, *Syrupum de Storchade*, and some of the foresaid waters. The ninth day shall he swallow these pills following: Take *Pittularum de Hermoadilis* and *Feridarum*, of each halfe a dragma; make thereof seven pills with the sirope of Roses, and take them early in the morning.

And if so be that one would take no pills, then take five dragmes of *Hieralogodon* and Turbith beaten small, halfe a scruple, *Diagridon* two graines, Ginger thre graines; temper them together, and take it so, or put some distilled water vnto it.

Some expert Physicians do aduise much to this Clister: Take Treas, the rotes of wilde Cucumbers, fiede Cyperes, and Saint Johns wort, of each two handfuls, sethe them all together in sufficient water; then take of this decoction twelue or fiftene ounces, and temper therewith

Hieralogodon one ounce, oyle of Rye thre ounces, honie of Roses one ounce, the yolke of an Eg well beaten, Salt one dragma, vse it once a day.

In Haruest is the patient once euery fourtene dayes to take one dragma of these pills following: Take Aloe two ounces, *Agaricum* and *Hermodactyli*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Coloquinte one dragma and a halfe, Ginger, Cinnamon, *Asarabacca*, Cloues and Mace, of each one scrup. Turbith and *Epithymum*, of each one drag. Saffron one scruple, stampe each alone: afterwards temper them together, and poure sufficient field Cipers water vpon it, and then let it out to drie in the Sun. Lastly, poure moze of the same water vpon it, and let it drie againe, to the end you may fashion pills of it.

Secondly, there is to be considered holwe that next after purging, betwene the spring and haruest, the matter might be deriued towards another place, and so to expell it, which may be best of all done by those meanes which force vrine, whereto these things following are to be used. First the patient is to drinke about the space of fourtene dayes, euery morning five ounces of *Asarabacca* sugred: or in the steede thereof the water of Padder which is better. There is also good for this both these things following: Take Beafe meate one scruple, old Treacle halfe a dragma; temper them together with two ounces of Smalage water, and so drinke it, and fast five howers after it. Item, take *Troscos de Eupatorio* halfe a dragma. Cromill seede, Cinnamon and *Carni*, of each five graines, *Benedicta laxativa* one dragma and a halfe; temper them together with two ounces of strong white wine, then drinke it and fast five howers after it.

All that shall be hereafter mentioned consumeth the defluxions which be still settled in the ioynts: then is the place of this disease to be rubbed softly, and annoynted with this following, according as the patient can suffer it: Take vnrripe Sallet oyle two ounces, well parched salt one ounce, annoynt the ioynts very warme with it, and then wrap them in warme clothes. The ioynts are to be also fomented with light red wine and vinegar poured on hot stones, that they may sweat well. They are also to be annoynted with this following: take *Sagapennum* one ounce, *Balsellum* and *Ammosium*, of each halfe an ounce, *Sandaraca* one quarter of an ounce: the Ointment is to be dissolved in a little red Vineger, and with Wine make a salve thereof.

Another: Take oyle of Roses and of Cammionill, of each one ounce, thre yolkes of egges, Saffron 3. graines; temper them & vse them together. After the annoynting you are to strow the powder of earth wormes vpon it, and couer it close with shepes wolle. Or take oyle of Roses, oyle of earth wormes, and walsh Turpentine, of each one quarter of an ounce, Salt this dragmas: vse them as before. You are also to annoynt the same places with warme oile of Roses.

This following is also very highly commended: Take Venice Sope thre ounces and a halfe, cut it verie thin, and then let it sethe a wauncie or twaine in five ounces of the water of Juniberry: afterwards you are to put vnto it the oyle of *Euphorbium*, and of S. Johns wort, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of Juniper one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Earth wormes, one ounce: let it then sethe vntill that the water be sodden away: afterwards you are to put vnto it *Pallacie* and *Frankincense*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Sulfure vis, *Euphorbium*, and *Pieretrum*, of each two drag. and a halfe: vse it as is aforesaid.

Oile of earth
wormes.

The oyle of Earthwormes is especiall good for all paine of the iointes, and for all frozen sinewes: the which is made thus: Take Earthwormes thre ounces: walsh the same with Wine, and poure vnto it twelue ounces of Sallet oyle, Wine six ounces: sethe them together by a gentle fire vntill the Wine is sodden awaie, afterwarde strayne them thorough a cloth.

For this disease be all warme baths also requisite. And if they cannot be gotten, then are the same to be made by the aduise of a learned Physitian, yet the most commodious time of bathing is from the middell of April to the end of May.

And because that these defluxions be moze manifest in the spring and Haruest, than in any other time of the yere, vnto which times wee haue appropriated all these foresayd remedies: therefore will we now teach what is to be done vnto it in winter. For this is purging to be vied againe, and that in this manner following, When as September is halfe past, then are these pills to be taken once in the morning: Take *Pillulas de Agarico*, & *de Hermodactilis*, of each halfe a dragma, And salt two graines, make seven pills thereof with the Confection of Roses. The day after is this following to be dronken, the which is thus 8. or 10. daies together to be continued: Take the sirupe of Mallow, and *Sirupum de Eupatorio*, of each thre quarters of an ounce, water

water of Hops, or field Cipers, of each one ounce and a halfe, temper them together: afterwards is this following to be dronken: Take the Confection *Benedicta* three dragms, Inda two drag. and a halfe, water of blew flowers deluce two ounces: temper them all together, make it warme and drinke it.

Afterwards are the foresaid Pills which be ordained to be vsed in Haruest, beginning, Take Aloe &c. to be vsed throught out all the winter.

As much as concerneth other things, these remedies are to be vsed which be ordained to be vsed in summer, only that they must be vsed in more quantity: like as it is aduised in summer to take one drag. in winter one drag. and a halfe: and so also with bathing and other wise.

You shall hereafter haue many sundry things which may be vsed against the Gowt, or ioint diseases: viz. Confected Quinces, Parmalade, and all that may be made of Quinces, except that there be no Specis with it, if the disease be with heat. For this be things also good which shall shortly after be ordained for the Gowt *Podagra*, if so be that there be no especiall heate with it, and that wine may be vsed without any great daunger, then is it his nature that it strengtheneth all outward members, if the same be moderately dronken. Amongst herbe wines are these following much commended for it: viz. of Rosemary, of Wormewood, of Sage, and of Clarie: all which not onely dronken, but also the ioynts annointed with it: or the vapors thereof receiued into the diseased ioints, do also strengthen the same.

When one is come to his former health, then must one looke to it and also beware and take heed from all those things which are wont to cause those kinds of disorders in the said ioints, To which end you may looke all the rules in the first chapter, which be described in the first §. Take good Turpentine the quantity of a Beane, or in stead of that *Opopanacum* or *Sagapennum*, which you will in the like quantity.

There is very mate in like manner, if one take early in the morning halfe a scrup. of *Lignum Aloe*, with an ounce of the water of field Cipers. It is also much aduised to take twice euerie weeke one dragme of good Spithivate, or in steade thereof one Spirobalan *Chebuli* chewed and eaten: or one day Spithivate, and the other day one Spirobalan. All these foresaid things bee not only commodious, but also very safe. Let this suffice now generally spoken of the ioint disease *Arthritis*, and we will now proceede with the *Chiragra*.

The fift Chapter.

Of the Gowt in the handes, *Chiragra*.



Of the second sort of the Gowt will we describe the *Chiragra*, the which wee do properlie call the hand-gowt. But because that betwixt the Gowte of the handes and that of the feete there is none other difference, but that the one commeth in the handes and the other in the feete: therefore will we here referre vs to the Gowte of the feete, where we will thorowly discourse of these two kinds of infirmities.

The sixt Chapter.

Of the Gowte of the Hips *Ischia*, commonly called *Sciatica*.



Esore in the first chapter and first §. in diuiding the sorts of the Gowt, and in the description of *Gutta*, is this kind *Ischia* taken for the third sort, the which of the Philistions that doe not well vnderstand the Græke speech, is called *Scia* and *Sciatica*. This Gowt of the hips is a long lingering paine, and especially when it commeth into the bones of the hips: notwithstanding that it doth otherwhiles appeare in the vppermost parts, which is caused of a cold moisture that falleth downe from aboue: And because that her grosse toughnes cannot easily be consumed, but much rather augmented from day to day & made worse, then falleth it at the last of all into the knees, the legs, into the feete, and so out at the toes. The same tough humors doe

cause also oftentimes through their great, grosse and tough sinewes, that the hip bones be enlarged, although otherwhiles they returne againe to their naturall places, and that when the ligaments of these ioints through this watrish moisture happen to be loosed or resolued, and afterwards ware hard againe, and shrink up as before. But if this foresaid hip bone be long clurated, then doth it come easily to passe, that thereby the whole leg commeth to extenuate; whereof then a more impotency or lamenes might follow: so that this disease afterwards very hardly, but by actuall cauterization may be holpen, whereby the matter may be drawen out with cantery, when one is minded to vse it, is to be done beneath the knees in the Calues, and that in the leg so diseased.

But before and ere we come to the remedy we will first prescribe a generall rule how to governe himself in his order of diet, which not only in this, but also in other sickewesses (according to the importance of the cause and place) may be diminished, augmented and altered. This that followeth here is ordained for them, in whose bodies all grosse, cold, tough and flegmaticke humors tempered with *Cholera* doe abound.

But these must first eschew all colde ayre, low dwellings, and especially they which doe lie nere the water side. The windowes of his dwellings are also to open against the South and East (if it be faire weather) and the rest remaine shut. And if so be that the time of the yere will permit it, then is his chamber to be alwaies kept warme, with a continuall fire, and to be hang the stone wals with Tapestry, or to let it be waincoted, or fensed with bozdes. In like maner he is also to keepe his head well from colde, and to beware of great exercise, especially if he feele any paine, and that so long as any paine is instant, and untill that the ioints be strengthened.

What concerneth further the meate and drinke, one is to keepe himselfe therein moderately, and to vse all such sortes of meats and drinckes which doe yeld small sustenance or nourishment, and be more rather to make one leane then fat, and especially if there be any debility of the stomacke, or any wambling with it. He is also to chew his meate well, and to eschew the varietie of drinckes: Otherwise he is to vse those meates which be warme and drie, and that are best and strowed with any drying and warming things; as with Pepper, Salt, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Fennell, Parsly, Annis, Hyssope, Pinks, Thyme, and such like thinges more. His bread must be a little more then common bread leavened and salted. He is also to eate no other flesh but Hens, Pullets, Pigeons, Fefants, and all kind of feld fowles; yet for the most part rather roasted than sodden. Beale and Button is also very healthy for him. Amongst herbes be Cowworts, Fennell, yellow rapes &c. very good for him: but all colde herbes must he eschew, or at least vse them very seldome & little, & that being alwaies tempered with some warme herbes: red Pease, Lentils and Rice, best with fresh flesh may he eate. Amongst fruits there be none that be more requisite then figs, Raisons, Paelell nuts, Almonds and such like. The sweete odoriferous Grapes be not much forbidden him. He is also to be restrained from butter as much as is possible, because of her slime and moist nature: but rather in steede thereof to vse the oyle of sweete Almonds, Sallet oyle, or oyle of Walnuts. Vineger, Meriuce, Limons, Oranges, or their wine be not much commended, and if one will ever vse them, then must some other warming things, as salt, Pepper, Cinnamon, be tempered with it in eating of other meats. All fish and donghy meates be very hurtfull unto him. The best drinke that he can drinke is hony water, which may prepared as followeth: take twelue quartes of water, and one quarte of Honie, let them sethe together untill eight quartes remaine: if you put Annis unto it, then will it be the better. Certaine later Physition doe aduise (and that with good reason) that these patients should drinke the decoction of *Guaiacum*: and how the same is to be prepared, that shall you finde described hereafter in the first part, in the discourse of the Pore. Out of these forementioned reasons is it easily to be noted and marked, that it were very good utterly to forbear wine: but if it cannot be, then to chuse a thin red wine, or the sirupe of Betony, and *Oxymel* of Squills decocted with Annis water.

How to
make Beade

Further, it is not very good to sleepe much, and chiefly in the day time immediately after meate, for that ingendreth much slime and other tough moistures. One howver and a halfe after supper is he to goe to bed, & to lie first upon the right side, afterwards upon the left. Though much lying upon the backe do the defluxions fall to great prejudice behind in the necke, & in the backe bone. His sleepe shall also not endure longer then seven or eight howers, and the rest of the time is to be spent in watching.

Of the payne in the Hipples or *Sciatica* through
heate. §.1.



A remedy the maner of this paine, is but a little different from all other ioint diseases, because that they alwaies for the most parte procede of colde, and do lie deepe in the iointes of the Hips. For the which in this disease all diureticall medicines be hurtfull, because that thereby the matter will be made so much the grosser and tougher; so that afterwards it can by no means be consumed. Now when this disease is caused through heate, wherein commonly a colde flegmaticke matter is mixed with *Cholera*: yet notwithstanding, *Phlegma* getting the masterye, the same may easily be perceived by the high coloured vyne, and other signes moe. Therefore for a beginning is the liuer vaine to be opened in the arme, and that in the same side where the paine is. Afterwards the vaine (which is named of the disease *Scia*) standeth as is described in the Introduction, vpon the foote, and to let out fower or five ounces of blood. But good hardie is to be taken therein vnto the strength and power of the patient: for that like as we haue said in other places, the vaines in the lower parts do weaken the body moze when they be opened, then those in the vppermost parts.

Other doe counsell, that first the vaine in the foote is to be opened; and if so be that the paine doe not cease in some dayes after it, that then the same vaine should also be once opened in the other foote: and beware of going the space of eight dayes. Likewise is also much commended to let boring cups vpon the Hips, or about the Hips, according to the importance of the disease.

Of the payne in the Hips or *Sciatica* through
colde. §.2.



It is so be that this paine of the Hips procede through colde, like as for the most part it is wont to doe, the which the bleakenesse of the face, the lingring payne, the belching of the stomacke, the wambling and the falling downe of all colde humors doth shewe: then is the patient to be respected and knowen to order himselfe accordingly; yet haue you for an example this ensuing.

For a preparatiue of the matter, make this sirupe following, and then take thereof about two ounces at once, according to that one is bounde or losse of the bodie: and to take fower holwers after it.

Take fennell rootes, Sperage rootes, Parsley rootes, Smallage rootes, and Polypody rootes, of each one ounce, the seede of *Ruscus*, wild Sage, Cromill seedes, Pettie seede, the roots of Saffrage, and the seedes of stone Parsley, of each one ounce, Parts tongue two ounces, Juniper berries three drag. *Hermodactyli* and Turbith, of each halfe an ounce, Hony 18. ounces, Raddish water 24. ounces, make a sirupe thereof.

Item, take all the foresaid things, and put vnto it Ginger, wilde Saffron seede, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Agaricus* three dragmes, stone salt two scruples, Pace two scruples and a halfe, *Sirupus de Stachade* three ounces, Hony as much as before, Rosemary water, of Calmus and of Sage as much as will suffice; afterwards sethe a sirupe thereof. At the last put a little Cinnamon, Pasticke, Cloues, Nutmegs, and Pace vnto it: also a little Puske and Amber.

For to purge: Take the Confection of *Inda* three dragmes, or halfe an ounce, *de Succo rosarum* one dragme and a halfe, water wherein Ginger is decocted three ounces; giue this betimes in the morning, and then sleepe one holwer after it: afterwards take a draught of Barley water after it. But if you had rather take Pills, then take *Pillulas fetidas*, and *Hermodactylorum*, of each apart one dragme, or mixed, of each halfe a dragme.

This also ensuing is to be prepared: take the water of Hony rootes, and the rootes of *Narcissus*, of each two ounces, drinke this for the space of certain daies, early in the morning.

Thereupon you are three holwers after it, to swallow these pills following: take *Pillulas fetidas*, and *de Sarcocolla*, of each halfe a dragme, Swines head one dragme: make thereof twelue pills with the iuice of Smallage.

Other do take washt Aloe halfe an ounce, *Agaricus* one drag. make thereof with the sirups *de Acetoso compositio* 35. Pills: then take of it about the thirde or fourth evening iust before supper, according to the quality of the cause.

Sharpe Clifters with salt, with *Hiera*, with Coloquinte and other appropriate things, be exceeding requisite for this; as also are these ensuing: Take vntwo meaten *Hermobaciles* one ounce, field Cipers, *Stechados*, Saint Johns wort, *Carmi*, and Rue seede, of each one handfull and a halfe; Cammomill, Pellilot, and Will seede, of each one handfull, Saffron flowers one dragme: sethe them all together in sufficient water, and take twelue or sixtene ounces of this decoction, Beuercod oyle thre ounces, Indie salt one quarter of an ounce, *Hiera Colocynthis* halfe an ounce, temper them, and set it metely warme. These Clifters be very mete for to drawe the cold matter from the hips, and to expell winde.

Another. Take Coloquint halfe an ounce, Turbith, wilde Saffron seede, and Polypody rootes, of each halfe an ounce, *Afarabacca*, field Cipers, *Stechados*, Piony, white Pepper, and Rue seede, of each one dragme and a halfe; sethe them all together, and take of this decoction as before, and put vnto it oyle of Costus, and of Beuercod, of each one ounce and a halfe, Saltpeter fower scrup. But vse it not too hot.

The third. Take the pickle of Herings, or salted Limons twelue ounces, oyle of Beuercod thre ounces, minister this Clister, like as the rest. These Clifters be much commended of all later and auncient Physicians: but they vse otherwhiles the Arseguits within, which are hardly to be healed afterwards.

The fourth which is not too strong. Take S. Johns wort, Cammomill, Centoary, Will, *Palowes*, Piony rootes, and fenegreake, of each one ounce, Annis thre dragmes, Coloquint one quarter of an ounce, Stone salt halfe a drag. Bran halfe a handfull, oyle of bitter Almonds, and clarified Hony, of each one ounce; mire them all together.

For a fomentation you are to take Piony seede, Piony rootes, and *Hermobacili*, of each one ounce and a halfe; S. Johns wort, Artichocke leaues, *Stechados*, and the herbe Calmus, of each fower ounces, and eight or ten heads of white Poppie; sethe them all together in thre pintes of water, euen to the halfe, at last put vnto it one ounce and a halfe of Saffron flowers, and afterwards make a great cloth or a sponge wet in this decoction, and foment therewith twice a day the hip and all the buttocke thre or fower times together.

Immediately after fomenting is the Hippe to bee annointed all ouer with this following: Take vnrise Sallet oyle, or oyle of Roses fower ounces, oyle of Costus and of Southerne wood, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Sandaraca* one quarter of an ounce, frankinsence, *Hypocistis*, Piony seede, and *Hermobacili*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Saltpeter, and Saffron, of each one dragme, *Serapinum*, *Opopanax*, and Rosin, of each one dragme and a halfe, red Wine as much as is needfull for to make a salue; temper them all together by the fier. This salue expelleth the paine. The same is also well to bee vled without fomenting; to wit, at none.

Another. Take oyle of Foxes thre ounces, oyle of *Pieretrum*, of Beuercod, Badgers greafe, of each halfe an ounce, Artichocke rootes, *Agaricus* and *Stechados*, of each one dragme, Lettice seede, Pursaine seede, and the seedes of small Endiue, and of water Lillies, of each one quarter of an ounce, Saffron one scruple, white ware as much as sufficeth for to make a weake salue with it, afterwards sethe it in fower ounces of the iuice of Salomons seale vntill the iuice be well waisted: then annoynt the whole Buttocke with it only at night. For it is somewhat colde of nature: According to which one may know how he should gouerne himselfe.

Item, take Turpentine, and small pouned *Hermobacili*, of each a like quantitie; make a salue of it, and vse it as the rest. But if you had not this salue, or desired not to vse it, then may you annoynt the place of the paine with the oile of Lillies, of *Spica*, of Costus, of Foxes, & Baies, and such like warme oiles, whether it be each apart, or tempered together.

Of plasters, these following be good. Take *Aposolicon* one ounce and a halfe, *de Muscilaginibus* halfe an ounce, *Opopanax* and *Galbanum*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Piony rootes, *Hermobacili*, *Calmus*, and white Henbane seed, of each two scrup. Saffron half a drag. then make a plaister therof with ware, & spread it vpon two round peces of leather a span in breadth, & as now lay one vpon it, & then another, and wear them allwaies vpon it, vntill one wil vse the fomentation

mentation at nights. Item, take *Ammoniacum* sixe ounces, *Sagapenum*, *Bdellium*, and *Opopanax*, of each one dragma and a halfe, *Swines* bread, and *Hermodyli*, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Copras* one dragma and a halfe, ware as much as is needfull; make a plaister of salve of it.

When this sicknes beginneth to decrease, and yet neuertheles then both remaine some wearisomenes or anguish in the ioints, then is this plaister following to be made, and to be laid behind vpon the rumpe, and the whole buttocks: and if the same doe make an itch, then is the same to be taken off againe, and the place to be rubbed with rough clothes, and then to lay the same plaister againe vpon it, vntill that the ioynt bee well strengthened. Take Pitch sixe ounces, blacke Sope one ounce and a halfe, *Hermodyli* and *Pyonie* sedge, of each one dragma, *Rosin* one ounce, *Roses*, *Casticke*, and the iuice of *Sloes*, of each sower scruples, *Exphorbium* one scruple, burnt *Copras* one dragma, Ware as much as will suffice for a plaister. In fine, all warming plaisters are very meete for this. The nature of Turpentine is, that it helpeth this *Sciatica*, throught a secret operation: But because the same cannot be well layd vpon it, or annoynted, therefore is it to be tempered amongst the foresaid oyles first mentioned, or of any of them that one will; as the oyle of Saint Johns wort, which is especially commended for it. Some lay a shaples skin vpon it, like as it commeth out of warme lie wherein the leather dyers haue it lying. Item seethe Comin in water, and make a sponge or twaine warme in this warme decoction: wing it out, and foment the Hippe therewith. Or, take Betony, Sage, both or one of both, seethe them in Wine or Must, and whilest it is yet hot, temper this powder following in it: as *Chamedrios*, Betony, Centoie, Harts wort, Gentian, of each halie an ounce: vse them with a sponge as is beforesaid.

Another. Take Clecampane rootes as much as you please, seethe them well in wine, stampe them in Swines grease, and lay it vpon the place. This is also good for all Byles of the Pope.

This following is highly commended: Take Clecampane rootes pouned small 8. ounces, of the best Sallet oyle that may be gotten 24. ounces, *Palmey* one quart: seethe them all together vntill the wine be consumed, and vse it as befoze.

Take a hot loafe and lay vpon it, or let the warme rake or vapoze goe vpon it vntill the place of the paine begin to sweat, and doe this certaine times together. After all this foresaid fomenting, annoynting, plaistering, and applications, it is firmly aduised againe to vse these pills not for the purging, but onely to strengthen the parts diseased. Take well boyled Turpentine halfe an ounce, field Cipers one quarter of an ounce, *Hermodyli* one dragma: make of a dragma sixe or seuen Pills, and take one euery morning and euening. Or, take these following which be almost of the same nature: Take *Chamedrios*, field Cipers, *Hermodyli*, of each one dragma, boyled Turpentine halfe an ounce, make pills thereof with the sirupe of Betony, and vse them as is beforesaid.

Further, it is also needfull that these parts which cause these defluxions be strengthened, the which may be done as followeth. For strengthening of the stomacke hee is oftentimes to vse *Pace*, *Cloues*, *Spints*, *Indy Spica*, *Squinant*, Cipers rootes, and *Lignum Aloes* with his meate, and to vse the Confection *Aromaticum Rosarum*, and *Diacalamintum*. Betony, Balme, and such like, with his accustomed meate. The compounded things are the Confection *Diambra*, *Diamoschu dulcis*, and *de Xyloalos*, & that especially after supper. The kidneies will be strengthened with Almonds, *Hassell nuts*, *Pingles*, *dry* and salt Chese, and with meat which is dyest with shaples milke: but they are to beware of much lying on the backe, and much venerie, especially presently after meate. Item, of diureticall things, as *Barley sedge*, *Annis* and *Smallage* sedges &c. These be now the three principall parts and causes of the defluxions. The other parts are not so highly to be regarded.

And for to consume these kindes of defluxions be all physicians of an opinion that there is no better aduise then to bathe in naturall warme Sulphure bathes, *Copras* bathes, Lime bathes, or Ashe bathes. For that these doe pearce throught the whole body, drie erradically, and do consume also all moysture. And if so bee that one cannot get into such naturall bathes, then are Lies or bathes to be prepared of the foresaid things, but the body must first be well purged. And if the patient cannot bathe, or will not bathe, then are these things following to be vsed, which vehemently consume all moysture: Take *Sandaracca*, *Hypocistis*.

Frankinsence, and the iuice of Sloes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Leigh as much as will suffice for to dissolue these things, and to temper them withall in a mortar, then annoint the ioint therewith twice a day. This following is milder: Take pouned Cipers nuts thre ounces, Beale dust one ounce, temper them together with the iuice of Bayleaves, as aforesaid.

Item, take steeld water five ounces, pouned Roses two ounces, Pasticke, and prepared Iron Drosse, of each one ounce, parched Salt thre dragmes, temper them together in a mortar with the iuice of Teasell leaues, or with water wherein the same herbe is decocted, it is good and approued. But if the paine continue, then is there no other remedie (as is beforesaid) but to vse canterisation which is also effected with plaisters which raise blisters: but befoze this is to be beganne, the same is first to be tried with the fozesaid strong clifters, and after wardes this salve following to be vsed: Take white Mustard seede, and Pigeon dung, of each alike quantitie: then sethe figs in a little water vntill they be almost drie, then poune them together for a plaister which is afterwards to be opened, and the water to be let out. If so be that this helpe not at once time, then is it once againe to be vsed: and if the pain cease not then, and the ioint be elurated, then is it to be cauterised which is burned, that will be done of an expert Chirurgian or learned Whisition. For a conclusion, may pouder be vsed which shall be ordained for the gout in the fete, which beginneth thus: take two kinds of *Chamadrios*. &c.

And if one which is cured fall againe into the same passion, like as it is wont to happen, and especially in those who haue taken small aduise and but little purged, then is this order to be followed. In the beginning of the paine, take Cipers nuts thre ounces, Barley meale one ounce and a halfe, Roses one ounce, Pasticke, Spittle seede, and *Sarcocolla*, of each two dragmes and a halfe: sethe this all together in hard white Wine vntill it be meetly tough like a plaister, then lay it warme vpon it. This insuing is yet more forcible: Take *Sandaraca* one ounce, Cammomill, Pelilot, and Will seede, of each halfe an ounce, Beale dust thre ounces, Roses one ounce: sethe them all together in wine, as in the last is beforesaid, then stir amongst it the yolkes of thre eggs, and vse it as befoze.

But when the paine is increasing, then put vnto one of these fozesaid one ounce of the fat of Chapes woll: but when the paine is at the extremest, then are things to be vsed which do aswage the paine as followeth: Take oyle of Roses, and of Cammomill, of each thre ounces, five yolkes of Eggs, let them sethe very soft, stirring them alwaies about. Last of all, put one dragme and a halfe of Saffron vnto it, and vse it as beforesaid. Or take Colwe milke twelve ounces, Barly meale thre ounces, Pasticke halfe an ounce, Saffron one dragme. You are to let the meale and the milke sethe thicke, afterwards temper the rest amongst it. This is especiall good if there be any heat with it.

But if the paine begin to diminish, then are drying things to be vsed for it: Take Spittle seede, Pasticke, *Sarcocolla*, Plantaine, Biony seede, *Hermodactyli*, and helde Cipers, of each one quarter of an ounce: stampe it all to pouder, and temper it with one of the fozementioned which you will, and you shall find a luckie operation.

The seuenth Chapter.

Of some accidents which this paine of the
Hips doth cause.



We haue in the beginning of this *Sciatica* declared that the Legs happen otherwhiles to extenuate, and especially when the member is elurated or out of iointe, and hath so continued a long time, whereof there followeth further a numbnes and lamenesse: for which by good reason we ought to admonish somewhat thereof befoze we begin to discourse of the fete.

Of the eluxation of the ioints. §. I.



This Eluxation of the ioynts do the Grecians call *Exarthrema*. The Latinists *Eluxationem*, and is thus described. *Exarthrema* is a writhing aside of a ioynt out of his naturall place into another, whereby the free motion is hindered. This disease can not be cured but by manuell operation, and by the knowledge of all the parts of mans

mans bodie, whereby each member which is elurated by thrusting, fals, or by losenes of the ligaments in the *Sciatica*, and strengthenings of the diseased member: and although it chiefly concerne the Chirurgians, neuertheles we will here discourse somewhat of the eluration of the hips of the *Sciatica*.

This plaister following doth maruellous much withstand all dedursions which fall downe into any ioynt, and do weaken the same. But first of all are the places of this disease to be rubbed with this water following, which is to be destilled out of a Calues gather in seething water or *Balneum*, the which is so much the better, if so be that there be Sage, Bzionie, Juniper berries, and such like (acording to the qualitie of the cause) added vnto it. Afterwards boyled Tanse layd warme vpon it is very requisite, the plaister wherof as we haue spoken before, is thus prepared: Take Colosonia and Witch, of each one ounce, the musilage of Hollyhocks thre quarters of an ounce, Galbanum, Mirrha, Ammoniacum, and Frankinsence, of each thre dragm. Polipodie rotes, Hiscleden and Hartwozt, of each one quarter of an ounce, Ware one ounce, Turpentine thre quarters of an ounce, the gums are to be dissolved in vineger, and then to put the Ware, Witch, and Turpentine vnto it, and then let it melt by a soft fire, and to sethe so long untill that all the musilage and vineger be wasted away, afterwards temper the rest being beaten small amongst it, this being now all done, then spread this plaister vpon a cloth or leather, and lay it vpon the place of the disease.

Another: Take Hollyhock rotes thre ounces, small Akozne buds thre quarters of an ounce, fresh Selseheale floures one ounce and a halfe, cut all very small, and stamp it to pap: then take vnrripe Sallet oyle, and oyle of Spirtles, of each thre quarters of an ounce, thich red wine 24. ounces, Selseheale water twelue ounces: sethe all together so long untill the wine and the water be consumed. Then wzing it out with a pzeffe, and put then Frankincense and Spirth vnto it of each one dragme, Bucks sewet one scruple and a halfe, Turpentine halfe an ounce: then let them sethe againe untill all the moysture be consumed. Lastly, put vnto it small dyed siluer skomme which is sifted throug linnen, and sealed earth, of each halfe a dragme, Mm two dragmes and a halfe, Ware as much as will suffice for a plaister, this plaister is not onely good for all Elurations, but also for all fractures of bones, for it swageth all paine, and strengtheneth the sinewes.

Item, take a yong oken pole, and shau off the outwardmost rindes, afterwards the white: these white rindes are to be sodden in bare, and then a wollen cloth made wet therein, and so layd warme vpon it. If you haue no bare, then take wine or water.

Of the extenuated or withered limmes. §. 2.



We haue before declared in the description of the paine of the hips or *Sciatica*, that after eluration of the ioynts, if the same continue long, the legs come quickly to extenuate, and afterwards to be lame.

Now for to remedie these accidents will we here discover certaine things, which it cannot otherwise well be but that both these diseases extenuation and leanenes, must depend one vpon the other, for that because the vaines be bereft of their due nourishment, the sinewes and the tendons be stiffned, then must necessarily ensue thereof such infirmities.

Therefore will we discourse of each apart as much as neede requreth: as much as concerneth the lamenes, it is a disease if there be any contracture of the hands, armes, legs, ioynts, or any other part, or be so lamed and nummed that he cannot vse his ioynts, the which may also grow of many kind of causes, of *Apoplexia*, of the Pocks, of the Cramp, and such like, of all which hath bene spoken before, and shall be written of hereafter: but we will only discourse how that these diseases are to be prevented proceeding of other causes.

Take Malloves, Cammoinill, Sage, Horehound, and Clerueine, of each one handfull, Juniper bzaunches with the greene berries two handfuls, poloze first or sixe quarts of water vnto it, and sethe them so long as Calues fleshy: this may be used the space of thre dayes, afterwards may a fresh be made.

First, take Fore grease two ounces, Capons grease one ounce, melt them together, stirring them alwayes about. When it is now molten, then put halfe an ounce of Balsam oyle vnto it
and

and let it be cold. When as then both these things be readie, then be the lamed limmes to be fomented in some vessel fit for that purpose. If so be that the lamed part cannot lye whole therein, then is he to be caused to sweate about the warme vapo^r, being couered all ouer, pouering the hot decoction now and then vnto it. This bathing or fomenting is to be done euery day two times, & although the first, second or third fomenting do not sufficiently ease, yet is the same then not to be neglected, for that the alteration and ease commeth not before the fourth or fifth day. When as then one hath sufficiently bathed, then is the sweate to be stroken off with the flat of the hand, and to let the part dry of it selfe. When as then this fomenting is thus effected, and whilst that the place is still warme and dry, take of the foresaid salve of the bignes of a pease, and rub it behind in the neck vpon the backbone from one shoulder to the other; but warme the hands oftentimes and so rub the salve well into it. Thirdly, rub also both the elbowes from the hands, and likewise also both the knees cleane ouer beneath and aboue, at last also the toes beneath & aboue with as much alwaies of the foresaid salve as the quantitie of a pease, rubbing it therein. When as this is now so done, then is the patient to rest the space of halfe an howre after it. He may also once in ten or fourtene dayes goe into a sweat bath, but not to farrie aboue one howre in it, and he is the same day to omit the fomentation; but like as is said, one is to proceede with the anoynting and resting. This order is also to be pursued foure, fife or six weekes vntill he can goe againe or vse the rest of his ioynts, by this meanes haue many men found great ease.

Here do follow many moe other bathes and salues, to wit, that men are to bathe the space of ten dayes in decocted *Ebulu* leaues, and that so long as nature may abide it. Afterwards vse this salve following: Take the grease of the iuice of Alpes Goats sewet, and Badgers grease, of each alike quantitie, make a salve of it with ware, and therewith annoynt the nummed limmes morning and euening. Or take Sage, Marierom, S. Johns wort, Hollyhock leaues and the rote, of each two handfulls, Elecampane rootes one handfull, sethe them all together as is sayd.

For to make a pretious salve you must haue readie a good fat Gose, and rost the same as if one will eate it, then take good heede that there come no water vnto it, with the neck and the intrailes do therewith what you please. You must haue also readie with it a yong sound and fat Cat which is thre moneths old, being a male Cat, kill him and flea him (the head and in-trailes being cast away) chop it small, stamp it afterwards in a mortar, and adde vnto it thre ounces of Barrowes larde, cut it very small, Rosen, Frankincense, & Ware, of each one ounce and a halfe, stop these all together into the Gose, and stop it tight that it fall not out againe, and then let it rost by a mild fire: set a dripping pan vnderneath it for to receiue the fat that drippeth off; reserve this fat being cold, and annoynt therewith euery day (in a warme place) the lame and withered members, in like manner also the swollen, and all that haue any payne, the extenuated and withered ioynt will increase and grow againe, and all payne shall be allwaged thereby. The Gose is to be well kept, to the end neither man nor beasts happen to eate it. Another salve: Take the marrow of a haille gelding which died through any mischance or in the warres, as much as you please, Warts sewet halfe so much, melt them together by a mild fire, and then poure *Aqua vita* vpon it, wring it out afterwards very warme thorow a cloth, and then annoynt therewith the diseased place morning and euening, both these be maruellous good, and also very mete.

Item, take the grease of a Beuer, of a Vulture, and of a Badger, of each halfe an ounce, Sage, Bennitropall, and Hollyhock rootes with the leaues, of each one handfull: sethe well the herbs, and then stamp them to grout, then temper the molten grease amongst it, and annoynt the lame place with it.

Take oyle of Wyles and oyle of Almonds, each alone, or tempered together, and annoynt therewith the members. The Pithiuate and both the Treacles do bring the lamed members to right againe and to their former force, being as well applyed outwardly as taken inwardly: but especially these oyles following be good for it, viz. oyle of Juniper, of Nutmegs, of Pepper, and blew Flour de luces. Item, take a yong Fore, make him cleane, and chop his flesh very small, afterwards distill out the water, and then put therein one dragma of small bruised Camfer: then put it into a glasse stopp well, and so leaue it fife dayes in the earth where as Ants haue their abode. Last of all, annoynt you therewith in a warme bath, afterwards vse this salve following:

following: Take a yong Forge made very cleane and burnt to ashes, take thereof the halfe, and temper therewith one quarter of an ounce of bzused Camfer, oyle of Balsam halfe an ounce, Dogs greafe two ounces and a halfe, Snakes greafe one dzagme and a halfe: melt these salues all together and annoynt you therewith after bathing. Both of these foresaid salues are to be vsed against lamenes through heate and cold, soz that they be of a temperate nature, and of the same nature is this also ensuing.

Take Rice as much as you will, steape it a day and a night in a sufficient quantitie of Goats milke, afterwards distill it like as all other waters. This being done, distill it ouer againe, and make oftentimes the lame members moyst in it.

Of the extenuated or withered members especially. §. 3.



As much as then we be entred into this matter, therefore will we not discourse of the same seuerally. Albeit that this extenuation of the members can be also called of their occasions then of the *Sciatica* alone, notwithstanding we will not here discourse of the consumption *Helica*, *Apoplexia*, or of the *Wocks*, but only of the extenuation of some parts, whether it be of the *Sciatica*, or of any other cause whatsoever, soz which these salues following be good: Take wild

Cats greafe, Harts seluet, Beares greafe, Swines greafe, the marrow of Beates fete, Hony, Dogs greafe, and Badgers greafe, of each a like quantitie; seethe all together with wine vntill that the same be thozowly wasted, afterwards pouze it thozow a cloth, and annoynt the withered limmes with it. Item, take Beuercod one ounce, long Pepper one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Ware, of Cammomill, and of Beuercod, of each halfe an ounce, Ware one ounce, make a salue thereof: Take Sage, Pallowes, Pettles with the rotes, Cammomill, and sprigs of Juniper, of each one handfull, fresh Butter, and Dogs greafe, of each thze ounces: chop the herbs and seethe them to grout that one may wyng them thozow a course cloth, then put the greases vnto it, and let it seethe againe together vnto a salue. When as now you will vse the same, then are you first to go vnto a sweate bath, and afterwards your self to be annoynted befoze a warme foynace or fire vpon the place of the disease twice a day: but you are to vse the sweate bath but thze a weeke, and do this the space of fourtene dayes. This foresaid salue is good soz all scabbines. The salue *Dialthea* is fit soz this same disease, whereof there be foure kinds described in the third part the fourteenth Chapter and 4. §.

This ensuing is also very requisite: Take living Crabs and Earth woymes, of each a like quantitie, dzy them in an oven and then stamp them to powder, afterwards temper them with as much Swines greafe, and make a salue thereof. For this, are also good two pretious Balsam oyles, whereof the one is described in the second part the first Chapter and 4. §. and the other in the eight part, beginning, Take *Mirra* elected.

Item, there is yet more good soz this, oyle of Lyles, and oyle of swete Almonds. This ensuing is also accompted soz sure, and is many times proued.

Take Earth woymes, put them in an earthen pot stopt with a couer on the top that the Ants may runne in and out, then set it so in the earth where the Ants abide the space of thze or foure dayes, and there will ingender a water of it, with this water annoynt the withered limmes very warme, this should be certaine and approued.

In case also that the withered members be oftentimes rubbed with distilled Calues gather water which is described befoze, then shall one finde amendement.

But if this lamenes and extenuation be caused through heate which hapneth seldome, then haue you a Bathe soz it which shall be prescribed against the *Podagra*. Item, the salue also of Earth woymes, of Cassy, and other things moe which be mete soz this intent, therefore it is needeles to write here any further of it, but this foot water following is especially ordained soz it.

Take Feuerfew, Stechados, and Colwships, of each one handfull and a halfe, the rotes of *E-ringw* and Pallowes, of each two handfuls, Pather, Hartwozt, of each one handfull and a half, *Peucedann* halfe a handfull, cut them all grosse and let them seethe together, afterwards wash the fete and the lame hands with it. You may also vse a sweate bath, soz that strengtheneth the lame toynts very much.

Of



There commeth sometimes also a hard swelling in the ioints, whereby they lose their motion and bowing: for which these plaisters insuing made harde or soft are to be vsed: Take the grounds of the oyle of Violets which lieth beneath in the pot two ounces, two ounces of the oyle of Lillies, oyle of white *Camelina*, and oyle of swete Almonds, of each one ounce and a halfe, Saffron one scruple, Badgers grease one ounce, white Ware one quarter of an ounce, Rosin as much as will suffice.

Item: Take the plaister of *Oxyroceum*, *Sagapennum*, *Opopanacum*, and *Ammoniacum*, of each halfe a dragma, Rosin three quarters of an ounce, white Ware three dragms, the gums are to be dissolved in sharpe Vineger, then put the plaister, Ware, and Rosin vnto it.

If there be any hard biles with it, then take *Ammoniacum* one ounce and a halfe, *Pieretrum* and *Enphorbiu*, of each one dragma, Saltpeter halfe a dragma, make a plaister thereof with Ware and Rosin.

Herewith will we now conclude the third sort of the gout, and come now to the fourth sort which is the chieffest.

The eight Chapter.

Of the gout in the Feete or Podagra.



The fourth sort of the gout as we haue admonished at the first is the well known gout of the fete *Podagra*; in which we also containe the gout of the hands *Chiragra*: for that vnder these two sorts of goutts there is no small difference, but that the one doth manifest it selfe in the hands, the other in the fete: and this kind of gout is thus described.

Podagra is a desfluxion which verie painefully assauleth the sinewes with heat and cold, wherewith also the parts adiacent, the ioints and the legs be plagued with swelling and paine.

As much as concerneth the name of this disease, which the Latinsk haue taken from the Grecians; this name *Podagra* is naught els, but a snare wherewith birds be caught by their fete, and therefore is this disease of the gout likened vnto this instrument: for that it doth catch men by the fete, and holdeth them caught therewith.

The Poets do also call this disease *Scrupenum Humorem*, which is a stony humour: for that the same will in the hands and fete alter into a stone, so that the same may at last be taken out without any paine: and like as we haue admonished before, that this disease commeth not onely in the fete, but also in the hands which is called by the Grecians *Chiragra*, which is a paine of the hands.

The causes of this gout are manifold: to wit, inward, and also outward: the outward may be caused through great heat, which causeth the matter to melt. Item, through great idleness, or through great labor presently after meate: Also through venerie with a full stomacke, and that the same especially doth cause the *Podagra*. Also the learned do certainly affirme, that no man can be plagued with the *Podagra* so long as he hath not yet vsed the veneriall act. *Galen* doth also confirme the same saying, that he neuer knewe any man which was infected with the gout, either of the hands, or fete, before that he hath had to do with women. Daintie eating and drinking is also a great cause of the *Podagra*.

And that all this is so, we will shew an example. *Plinie* writeth that these diseases were very strange and new in *Italie* in his time: for which cause it is named with that outlandish name *Podagra*. But what made them strange at that time and newe, but that at the same time the *Romaines* lived very moderately in eating & drinking. *Hippocrates* writeth that no Eunuche, nor any woman as long as she hath her tearmes can get the *Podagra*, neither yet can be balde: Touching which *Galen* his interpreter saith, that the same in the time of *Hippocrates* was true: for that the people in those daies did metely much labor, and did eate and drinke soberly. But now he saith, that people do lead another life by going idle and rioting: for that one doth finde now

now a daies Eunuches which be subiect to the gout without lying with any woman at all, which they do get only through their rioting and quaffing. And so is it with women which do also spoile themselves through a disordered life, that they get their tearmes verie little or not at all.

And to the contrarie by meaurable laboꝝ, by moderate eating and drinking, yea by hunger and abstinence from wine, the *Podagra* tarrieth away & is left behind; the which I haue seene by a citizen in my time of Landborough called *Lucas Kesselin*, who living againe according to the pleasure of the world got the *Podagra* againe. And when he was best in health, then he did ride otherwhiles a horsebacke with two seruants, who must lift him vp vpon the horse: but when he came in pouertie and drank no wine, and liued hardly, then did the *Podagra* seke another lodging. So that he being past fiftie yeeres olde, was faine to trot vp and downe the countrey with a pedlars packe on his backe ouer high mountaines so: to get his lining.

This hath then his originall cause: for if there be no superfluous humours fallen downe into those places, then would there be no paine nor griefe; neither would these deuorions settle themselves in the ioints if the bodie were not ouercharged with some superfluitie. And the meane to keepe the bodie free from all superfluous humours, is that the bodie is to be kept with moderate exercise, to the end the meate may be well digested.

Whereby appereth now sufficiently, that the gout is not caused sooner of any thing in the world, then of idleness and excessive riot.

When as now the *Podagra* is caused of any inward occasion, then doth it happen thereby that one hauing weake legs and fete, the matter whether it be blood, *Cholera*, *Plegma*, or *Melancholia*, each alone or mixed might lightly fall into them, wherby it may well be vnderstood that the *Podagra* can be short, long continuing, hot or cold.

It is also sometimes an inheritance of the children from the parents, and hath his vertue in both the sexes, and is imparted vnto the children, so that the goutie fatheres and mothers may also ingender goutie children.

Now may we also write somewhat of the signes which do not onely signifie the gout of the fete or *Podagra*; but also all paine of the ioints.

If this disease be caused through blood, then doth it appeare with rednes, and with great continuall paine and smart; the vyne is thicke and red; the pulse strong and full, and the paine is moze in the morning then in the euening. And if the patient be by nature full of blood and sanguine, then doth the same paine encrease daily. The same happeneth also when the partie is yong, hath liued easily, and if it be in the spring time.

The signes if the gout proceed of *Cholera*, then is the paine sharpe; the place of the paine is yellowish; the vyne verie red and thin; the ordure is also yellow and thin; the pulse is swift; the heate is great, and chiefly on the place of the paine, as one may perceiue the same in feeling of it: al which doth yeld moze assurance if the patient be yong and cholericke of nature, and if he haue done great labour before, or if the weather be hot, and he hath taken much hot meate and drinke.

If this disease come of *Plegma*, then is the paine not verie great: also the parte of the paine is not altered of colour; the vyne is whitish and thicke; the going to stoule is slimie; and the bodie in feeling is alwaies cold. And this manner of gout is commonly alwaies in bodiees which be colde of nature, and that in winter time, and after a disordered life in eating and drinking.

In Melancolicke bodiees the gout commeth very seldome, wherewith is also no great paine; the patient will be leane; the vyne thin and crude. And this happeneth commonly in those bodiees which be of a melancholike nature in the beginning of winter. Sometimes this disease proceedeth through winde, wherby is a great and exceeding paine, the which by windie meates is increased and augmented.

How that the *Podagra* is to be preuented. §. I.



When any one doth perceiue and is assured that this his sickenes or disease commeth through heate, and that the time be at hand wherein he was wont to be assailed with it, then must he before whilst that he is well or in good estate (if he otherwise will by any kinde of meanes be freed) be purged with those medicines which expell *Cholera*, and must refraine wine, euen as all phisitions do aduise, and instead of these

these vse some thin meade or drinke, the decoction of Cinnaom: so that Peade is not onely good for the *Podagra*; but also requisite for all infirmities of the ioints. But if this gout be caused through hot *Cholera*, then is Barly water rather commended, or water wherein Dates be decocted. Item, temper fresh well water also with the iuice of Pomegranats. This also ensuing may be prepared: Take two ounces of Sugar, one handfull of Barly, Reifons one handfull, sethe them together in three pintes of water vnto the halfe: and if one will drinke wine, then is there one halfe of this foresaid water to be tempered amongst it, or to drinke some middle sort of cleere Beere. Further, he must forbear all Hony meates, and from all flesh. Also, he is to eat and drinke very little; but he is to sustaine himselfe with Barly pap, Oaten pap, bread and butter, and such like light meates.

But what greater damages be found in this disease through sursetting is sufficiently shewed before.

The members also which are accustomedly plagued with this paine, are to be restrained from ouermuch motion, or from wearying himself too much, and that especially if the patient be grosse and full of bloud, and hath not a long time bene let bloud nor purged.

Of diuers meanes whereby to free one from the
Podagra. S. 2.



These Pills following are very highly commended, as that through the vse of them manie goutie people be not only freed, but also healed all together: Take *Mirra*, *Aloe*, *Lignum Aloes*, *Cinnaom*, *Spallick* and *Rubarb*, of each one quarter of an ounce, *Musc* fine greynes: make 36. or 40. pills with *Oxymel*, or as many as you please, whereof you are to take two or three euery other day, and to continue this thus the space of thirtie dayes; afterwards, take euery weeke once as much more. But if so be that the *Podagra* do come in the meane while, then are the pills to be vsed after the first manner.

First, take *Aloe*, *Rubarb*, *Species Hiera Galeni*, *Pillula sine quibus*, of each one dragma and a halfe, field Cyppers foure scruples steeped in wine: make pills thereof with *Lauender* water, and vse them as all the rest: they be stronger then the former.

These Pills following hath the Emperour *Carolus* vsed against the *Podagra*: Take yellow *Mirobalani* *Chebuli*, and *Indi*, of each one dragma, oyle of sweete Almonds one quarter of an ounce, the iuice of *Roses*, of *Bozage*, and of *fumitorie*, of each two ounces; temper them together, and let them stand in stepe 24. howres, afterwards make it hot, and wzing it well out. This being all well done, then stepe therein againe halfe an ounce of *Rubarb*, *Indi Spica* halfe a scruple, *Palmetey* a spanefull, *Mozmewood* water one ounce: let it then stand thus together asstepe the space of ten howres, and afterwards wzing it out hard.

Thirdly, take *Aquaticum* one ounce, stone salt foure scruples, *Ginger* one scruple, Hony of *Roses* three scruples, *Oxymel* of *Squills* one quarter of an ounce; stepe all together 24. howres in white wine and wzing it well out.

Fourthly, take *Aloe* which is washed with *Endiue* water, and *Manna*, of each one ounce, fresh *Cassia* two ounces, *Bellinum* two scruples, temper them all together in the foresaid boyles and steeped Colatures. Lastly, all being well tempered, then set them all together in the Sunne, stirring it often about, and when it is well dzed, then forme pills thereof.

Of these pills shall you take once euery morning: they haue a marvellous efficacie in preventing the *Podagra*: so that it is sayd, if one do not ryot, that one shall be holpen thereof in fiftene dayes. In the first part of this booke in the twelfth Chapter in the description of the *Balsam* you haue a very costly salue, beginning thus: Take *Bayberies* &c. which hath one marvellous much of the *Podagra*. Item, if one set his sete in warme *Smithes* water, or foment them ouer the vapo: of the same water: it is also very good to cheve euery morning a little *Spallick*.

How

How the *Podagra* is to be purged. §. 3.



If so be that the *Podagra* be caused only through *Cholera* and heate, then is this Sirupe following to be prepared: Take Endive thre handfulls, Roses one ounce and a halfe, red, white, and yellow Saunders, all together one ounce, sethe it well, and wying it out: then put vnto this decoction twelue ounces of Sugar, and sethe it to sirupe like as all other sirupes be decocted: giue thereof one ounce and a halfe with Endive water soure 3 or 4 times together, and then take

these purgations ensuing after it: Take of the Electuarie of the iuice of Roses sine dragnes with the foresaid water, which is especiall good for the toyns.

Or take fresh figs halfe an ounce, Cozans sine dragnes, the rinds of yello w Spirobaines one ounce, let them steape a whole night, and sethe them a litle: then take of this decoction thre ounces, and temper therein of the foresaid confectiō of Roses, and giue it very warme early in the morning. Or if you had rather haue pills, then take Aloe one dragme, Diagridj sine greines, Roses thre greines, *Hermodytyli* halfe a dragme: make pills of it with the iuice of Roses, they be much commended.

If there happen great paine with this kind of hot gotot, then may two kinds of plaisters be prepared for it, whereof one is to be layd vpon the place of the paine, therewith to stop the defurion, and the other on the top of it for to allwage the paine. The first is thus made: Take spiritte seide, the seede of *Ruscus* and *Bolus*, of each halfe an ounce, red and white Saunders, the iuice of Sloes, Pomegranat blossomes and peeles, Oals, of each one dragme, Rose water and Plantaine water, of each thre dragnes, oyle of Roses one ounce and a halfe, Barly meale as much as will suffice for to make a plaister or pay. The other: Take red and white Saunders, Marsh, and washt Ceruse, of each one quarter of an ounce, Popple seeds halfe an ounce, Camfer one scruple, oyle of Roses thre ounces, unsalted Butter one ounce and a halfe, the seede of Fleawort one dragme and a halfe, and two yolks of eggs, temper them all together, and lay them vpon it as is before said. An easier. Take the oyle of Roses thre ounces, Vineger halfe an ounce, temper them all together, and annoynt the place of the paine with it: it allwageth the paine, and hindereth the defurion.

Now when as these defusions do first of all begin, then be Salues, Oyles, and other things more vsed and applyed vnto it, for which you may take one of these ensuing which you please: Take small poned *Bolus* two ounces, Rose water, and the water of Pightshade, of each one ounce, two or thre drops of Vineger: temper them well together, and strike it thereon with a feather, or dip a cloth in it and lay it ouer the swelling: when it is dry, then take a fresh, but alwayes warme. Item, take oyle of Roses, sethe Earth wormes in it, Passick is also especiall good. This following should be a speciall secret: sethe Earth wormes and Frogs in oyle of Roses untill they be almost all consumed, then wying them out hard through a cloth, and annoynt it very warme on the place of the paine. This ensuing is not unlike to the former: Take of the eldest Sallet oyle that you can get, twelue ounces, and twelue water Frogs, chop them very small and sethe them well: when they be almost sodden ynough, then temper therewith the iuice of Housleke, and the iuice of Stonecrop, of each two ounces: then let it sethe so long, untill that the moisture be wasted away: afterwards wying it out, and vse it as before. Some doe commend aboue all things the musilage of Frogs to be layde warme vnto it, which is thus made: Take in the Spring greene Frogs before they begin to cast their sperme, take out the bowels, and hang them on a thred to dry in the Sunne untill they begin to be somewhat dry, then powre Sallet oyle vnto them, and let them sethe mately well together, then wying them out, it is especiall good for the knetoes. Item, take Badgers grease, and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Frankincense halfe an ounce, Ware as much as will suffice for to make a salue of it. Or take Poplar salve two ounces, small poned *Bolus*, and oyle of Roses, of each halfe an ounce, temper them together vnto a salue. This ensuing is also good for it: Take foure yolks of eggs, Saffron one dragme, oyle of Roses two ounces, temper them well together, and vse them as before. A principall good one: Take Wyne Snailles as many as you will, put them into a pot, and lay a tin lid vpon it: afterwards whelme the same pot ouer another pot, and then let it ouer the fire to the end that they may rost by litle and litle. This being done, the oyle will drop into

into the nethermost pot, and with this oyle annoynt the hot goivts thowoly. Item, sethe ten eggs very hard, cut them ouerthwart, fill the whites with pouned Spirth; afterwards bind them together again, & lay them the space of 15 daies in a seller or longer, then will a water drop out of it, which you may annoynt vpon the goiwt as a salve. In like manner fresh Cassie is also much commended, with the muscilage of fleawort, for all paine of the ioynts through heate.

This ensuing asswageth the paine maruellously: Take the seede of fleawort two ounces, sethe it in sufficient water vntill it be very slimie, afterwards wring it out very hard through a cloth: In this muscilage or slime melt one ounce and a halfe of Clarre, Sallet oyle three ounces, let it then sethe a good while, stirring it alwayes equally about vntill it be cold.

Another of like force: Take oyle of Wallflowers two ounces, oyle of swete Almonds, and oyle of *Camelina*, of each one ounce and a halfe, Butter one ounce, Saffron one dragma and a halfe, white ware one ounce and a halfe, Dill seede, Cammomill, and Ducks grease, of each halfe an ounce, three yolks of Eggs, then temper them one amongst another, and make a salve thereof.

Item, take wheate bran two handfuls, Wine cuist as much as will suffice for to make a poultice of it, Salt one quarter of an ounce: let it sethe a litle together, and then lay it warme vpon it, you shall hardly finde any thing else that doth moze asswage the paine. Item, take Barly meale or Beale meale, and pouned Roses, of each three ounces, white wine as much as will suffice for to make pay thereof, then let it sethe a good while: if you will, you may also put a dragma of Spallick vnto it.

Some do sethe Bran in three parts of water and one part of vineger, and so lay it vpon it, and let it lye sine or sixe howres vpon it.

This also ensuing is thought to asswage all paine whatsoever: Take three ounces of butyre Sallet oyle, Saffron one dragma, foure yolks of eggs, oyle of Roses foure ounces: let the oyle sethe a good while, and when it beginneth to be cold, then temper the yolks amongst it, stirring it alwayes well about: afterwards Starch and Barly meale of each one ounce and a halfe, and at the last Saffron: if you will haue it moze forcible, then put Butter vnto it and *Bedellum*, of each one dragma: then keepe them all together vntill the same be thowoly consumed, and afterwards temper the rest with it. Item, take the crums of white bread, keepe them a good while in swete milke, and then sethe them together to pay: now when it beginneth to cole, then temper a yolke or two of eggs amongst it, and a litle oyle of Roses, and so lay it vpon the swelling and paine. Some do temper Butter, Ducks or Gole grease, and Sugar also amongst it.

Another. Take Plantaine seede, and Linseede, of each two handfuls, sethe them very soft vntill all the water be almost gone, then temper amongst it crums of white bread as much as you please: afterwards stamp them well together, and temper it with the oyle of Roses: and when the paine is very great, then is the iuice of cooling herbs to be tempered amongst it, yea very well three or foure greynes of *Opium*, and one dragma of Saffron, like as the same may be very well done in the foresaid crums of white bread.

This also following is very good: Take Cammomill, and Pelilot, of each one ounce, Pellowes, and Hollyhock rootes, of each halfe a handfull, Fenegrake meale, and Linseede meale, and Barly meale, of each one ounce: cut the herbs small, and sethe them mellow: afterwards wring them out, and stamp them well: last of all, mingle with the said meales oile of Roses, and oyle of Cammomill, of each five ounces, or moze, then make pay therewith, and lay it ouer the paine, and renew the same oftentimes. Item, sethe wheate meale in red wine to pay in fresh swete milke: for this, is also good Beane meale decocted to pay in fresh swete milke. These foure oyles following be also commonly vled for the goiwt: to wit, oyle of Lillies, of Cammomill, of swete Almonds, and of Wallflowers, with which we do commonly temper Cassie extracted with vineger, like as befoze there is also mention made of the oyle of Poplar buds.

And take pouned Venbane seede, put it into a bag, and let it warme well, and so lay it vpon the paine. Item, in great outward paine take Cowmilke five ounces, *Opium* halfe a scruple, crums of kye bread, and these being well powdred as much as you please, make a soft plaister of it. In like manner you may also vde the iuice of Nightshade and of Plantaine being tempered all together, or each apart.

By all these foresaid remedies may easily be marked, that all these simple things following be especial good for the hot *Podagra*: as namely, Nightshade, Ponslake, Lettice, Endiue, *Miri*, *Opusilage*

Muscilage of Fleawort, Vineger, Rose water, Solus, &c. in the 16. Chapter, and 4. §. of the hot Kidneys.

Of the cold gout or *Podagra*, and of his paine. §.4.



If there be found with the paine of the ioints, neither rednes nor heate, and the patient be of a cold nature, and that one be cold in the feeling, then may it easily be perceiued, that the cause proceedeth of cold. For this the patient is to prepare himselfe to purge with these potions following: Take Sage, Cowslips, and field Cipers, of each one handfull: sethe them all together in sufficient water untill the third part be wasted. Unto this decoction put twelue ounces of Sugar, and then make a clarified sirupe of it. If the matter be fluxible of it selfe, then is this following to be prepared: Take Calmus, and Gentian, of each two ounces, Hartwort one ounce, Saint Johns wort, Sage, field Cipers, Cowslips, Bayberries, and *Chamadrios*, of each one handfull, Annis, Fennell, and Piony seede, of each one ounce, Basil seede, Cinnamom, of each halfe an ounce, sethe them all together in sufficient water euen to the halfe: afterwarde wryng it out, and make it with sixe ounces of Honie, and nine ounces of Sugar vnto a clarified sirupe; giue then one ounce and a halfe with some distilled water in the morning fasting. For a purgation is this following to be vled: Take *Turbith* halfe an ounce, *Hermodyli* one quarter of an ounce, *Diagridy* one dragme, Pasticke halfe a scruple, Sugar one ounce: then make a powder of it, and giue thereof the fourth part at once, but no more, for that it is verie strong. If you will, you may make pills thereof without the Sugar: but the pills of *Hermodyli* excēde all other pills, viz. in purging all phlegmaticke humours. They haue also an astringent vertue, whereby they obstruct the conduits where the deslutions take their course. Treacle and *Spithidate* are to be taken of goutie men one dragme, or one dragme and a halfe with great auaille twice a weeke.

Item: Take field Cipers pouldred small halfe a dragme, Turpentine thre dragmes: temper them together, and take it with a wafer, or with fresh broth: it is also good for all lamenes. These patients are also to be bathed and fomented with this insuing: Take Sage, Rosemarie, Penniroyall, Rue, Pints, Hozehound, Parierom gentle, Parierom, Lauander, and Pomgras mate pebles, of each one handfull, sethe them all together in good wine: afterwarde straine the broth thow a cloth, and put thre ounces of butter vnto it, and then put the sate therein; whether it be with paine or without paine, and lay the decocted herbs very warme vpon it.

Item, when the place of the paine is fomented with boiled fenegræke, then will the paine be thereby asswaged. Or take stinging Nettles, sethe them in water and foment with the dampe of the same, and so lay the herbes warme vpon it. The oyle of Foxes is also maruellous good for the *Podagra*, and for all paine of the ioints, like as is also the oyle of Eiles, and oyle of Sulphure, which be both hot and pearcing.

Whereafter do moe plaisters and other things insue to be laide vpon it: and that after the place of the disease hath bene fomented or annointed with any salue, and the asure of humours is somewhat ceased: Take boiled Alehose and laie it therein and hold still the fete. Further, it is much aduised that for the cold *Podagra*, there shall be two kinds of Plaisters prepared. First, take Cipers nuts, Pasticke, Pirrhe, and Frankinsence, of each one quarter of an ounce, Gum, Dragagant, of each thre dragmes, Sage water sixe ounces, Vineger halfe an ounce: pounce all small that are to be poumed, and then make a metely soft pap of it, or a plaister with Barley meale, and then laie it vpon the place of the paine.

Another: Take the muscilage of fenegræke, and of Linseede, of each one ounce, salt Butter, oyle of white *Camelina*, or oyle of Roses, and burnt ashes of Colewort stalkes, of each two ounces, Make as much as will suffice for to make a plaister or salue of it: laie it or spread it vpon the paine of the disease, it asswageth paine. The paister *Diachilon* is also to be vled for it.

Item, take soft Stozar, Beuerrod, *Euphorbium*, *Mirra*, Aloe, and the iuice of Sloes, of each a like quantitie, Wine as much as you please: let it sethe well together, and then wet a cloth therein and laie ouer it. Or dip a clothe in the warme decoction of *Ebulus*. Before certaine plaisters are described, of the crums of white bread; temper with one of the same one dragme and a halfe, or two dragmes of the poulder of *Hermodyli*, and so laie vpon it. Item, sethe Vinions in water, and make a clothe wet in it and lay it thereon. Or rost certaine Vinions, stampe them very small, spread it on a clothe and lay it thereon.

The common people doe vse Cowding, and lay it thereon insteade of a plaister. Also the distilled

skilled Colwdong may be layd vpon it. Item, take the decoction of Kape, and lay it thereon. You are also to poune Turneps, and to temper them with oyle of Roses, and to lay the same vpon it. In like maner temper sodden, stamped and wellsalted Turneps, with about so much Bran as Turneps and with sufficient oyle of Violets, make a plaister of it. Item, take a bag filled with Linsæde: sethe it well, and lay it ouer the paine. These be now simple things which warme the ioints; to wit, S. Johns wort, *Hemodactyli*, *Ammoniacum*, *Euphorbium*, *Mirra*, *Squils*, *Asarabacca*, *Weyercob*, liquid Stozar, Cresses, Colwdung, *Parierom*, Pints, white Mustard seed, Pineapples, Capers roots fiede Cyppers, Cammomill, Clecampane rootes, *Galla*, Radish, Rue, *Sagapenum*, and vineger of Squils &c.

Some doe aduise, that for the *Podagra* there be made an issue, which is a running hole into the leg, which is alwaies to be kept open, wherby the matter may haue issue. How this is to be done, shall be taught in the first part, in the discourse of the plague.

Others do raise blisters the breadth of fower fingers vnder the knees on the outside of the leg, opening the same, and letting the water to run out: wherof we haue in other places moe of this booke made declaration.

An especiall and well approued remedie for the Gout. §.5.



First is this powder to be prepared: Take two kindes of *Chamedrios*, which is field Cyppers and *Chamedrios*, Gentian, Centozy flowers, *Rapontica*, the right *Aristológia rotunda* (whereof is sufficient stoe brought out of Switzerland) of each a like much; stamp each apart: afterwards temper them together, and vse it thus. After the necessary purgation whereof we haue sufficiently spoken before, take the space of forty dayes together, one dragme, euery morning of this said powder in the Summer time with small beere, and in winter with Wine or Beade: Afterwardes vse no more but halfe a dragme, and so prosecute this course the space of a whole yere.

If so be that the body bee bound in the meane while, then is the patient to vse twice euery moneth these pills following: take Masticke, Spirrhe, Cinnamon, Aloe, and Rubarb, of each one scruple; being all powdered small, then make ten pills thereof with hony of Roses, and take two or thre at once. They bee very weake, so that one may vse the more thereof if he please. In the meane while the patient must order himselfe very moderately in eating and drinking. Through this be many goutie persons thorowly healed of the *Podagra*.

The direction for the Gout sent to Charles the Emperor. §.6.



This aduise or remedie was sent to the Emperour Charles his Paicellie of famous memozy, from Francisco Toralto, a Lord in the kingdome of Naples, who had lien most miserably the space of fourtene yeres of the Gout: Take cleane milke of a blacke Goate, and turne it with fig milke, or if you haue it not, wherewith you will: straine out the whay, and let the rest sethe in an earthen pot; scum it well, and let of thre parts twaine sethe away, and then straine it once againe, to the end there remaine no curds in it at all: afterwards, take the vppermost of Burrage a good part, and according to that there is much whay, with some other things moe which be mete for the *Podagra*, and according to that the *Podagra* doth procede through heate or colde, let it steape well therein: afterwardes straine it thorough a cloth, and drinke of it once or twice a day. But if so be that the paine be intollerable great, then steape in the foresaid whay wherein the Burrage and other things be steeped, one drag. or one drag. and a halfe of *Agaricus*: Take of this whay ten or twelue ounces according to the quality of the sickness, and according as he can easily goe to stoele, and temper amongst it *Oxymel* of hony of Roses, or (which is better) *Oxymel* of Squils two ounces: you are to drinke of it in the morning as warme as you can, and to fast fower howers after it at least. Further, he is in the meane time to exercise himselfe with walking and going: afterwards he is during the space of fve or sixe daies to drinke of this whay without *Agaricus*, and that is to be done once euery moneth.

And he is especially to endeouour himselfe to drinke this in winter, for that it is sufficient if he

doe this twice a yeere. And this is especially to be done, when one perceiveth that the *Podagra* is instant, thereby to be free: And although it appeared already, yet are you to proceed forward with it. What remedies are then to be used for it, may be seen and chosen out of the forementioned things: The letting of blood must be principally in the beginning of the spring, and before the paine ariseth; like as one may see and reade more at large in the 2. §.

But about all things is a good diet commended; for if that the same be not kept, then may all other things helpe but little. This is now the principallest and the totall of all that *Toralm* communicated to the Emperours Paestie.

The order of diet which is to be observed in this disease, may you perceive by all that which hath been said before, whereof also you shall finde all things more amply described in the beginning of the first Chapter, where we have discoursed of the paine of the hips, that about all other things, Wine is chiefly forbidden unto all gouty people, as hath been before expressed. The decoction of Cinnamon, Peade &c. are they to drinke, as is there admonished.

When any one doth goe but ill after the Gowte of the fecte. §.7.



His debility of the fecte doth sufficiently shew, that there is still some flegmatike matter present which ought to be expelled, whereto these pills ensuing are to be prepared: Take prepared Aloe halfe an ounce, Coloquinte one dragme, *Diagridon* halfe a dragme, *Hermodactyli* halfe an ounce: temper them altogether, and make seven pills of one dragme thereof: Afterwards, take every fourtene daies five thereof, and fast five howers upon it. In the meane time is he alwaies the fifth day to take one of them before supper.

Secondly, he is to use this Confection following: Take *Species de Xyloloe*, *Species Diatriopiperon*, of each one drag. white Saunders, Violet, and Joyrell seeds, of each one scruple, Sugar five ounces decocted in water of *Asarabacca*, or water of Parsley: make Sugar plates thereof, and then take daily before none and after none, or at leastwise once a day of it, three dragmes at the least, and so continue this the space of one whole moneth.

Thirdly, take one pint and a halfe of Smiths water, and seethe therein fifteen or sixteen Cipers nuts, forty or fifty Gals, *Hermodactyli*, and Pyony rootes, of each one ounce, untill the third part be wasted away. He is afterwards to rub the sick person from the knees unto the soles of the fecte, letting it be made moist, to wit, once a day alwaies before meate.

Fourthly, take virripe Sallet oyle one ounce, *Sandaraca*, *Pasticke*, and burnt Tuozie, of each one dragme: temper this together, and therewith annoint, after the former rubbing, all the parts very warme which be weakened thowow the Gout, and continue it thus with rubbing untill they be thowowly strengthened againe, and growe to be well.

Fifthly, when the sick person hath used certaine dayes to wash and annoint, and findeth nevertheless no perfect amendenient: then is this salve following to be used, like as the other precedent: Take Dragon blood, fine Bolus, *Sandaraca*, the iuice of Sloes, *Pasticke*, frankinsence, and Pirrhe, of each one quarter of an ounce, sealed earth and Starch, of each one ounce, the iuice of Plantaine, and of Roses of each one ounce and a halfe: then temper them a long time together in a mortar unto a salve.

These be now the very best and necessariest remedies, which of all ancient and later Phisitions are prescribed for all the ioints of the body, God almighty the chiefe and best Phisition giue his blessing unto it.

What things they be which conuey other medicines towards the ioints. §.8.

Amongst all other things which be written of the ioints, we haue yet to speake of this: which be the things that conuey the medicines towards the ioints: amongst which, the chiefeest that are to be esteemed, be rosted Squils, Ginger, Calinus, which is the right *Acornus*, *Pennirovall*, *Opananax*, both of these kinde of *Wermander*, the seede *Amomum*, and other more.

The ninth Chapter.

Of the outward accidents of the ioynts and members.



From the third Chapter hitherto we haue discoursed of many kinds of diseases of the outward members, which are most of all caused through outward causes and defluxions: here will we now in this last Chapter adde certaine outward accidents; as, when the outward members of ioynts be beaten or strayned.

Secondly, we will also admonish somewhat of the fracture of the bones. And because that for this there falleth otherwhyles some putrifaction of the bones, therefore will we here also discourse somewhat of it: and because that all this cannot be effected without great paine, then we will shew withall, how that the same paine is to be alluaged. Lastly, how that the numbnes and the insensibleness of the members may be prevented and cured.

Of strayned members. §. I.



If any one haue strayned any one member through falling or beating, and the same hapned to swell without great heate, then take the salue *Dialbea* one ounce, oyle of Cammomill and of Dill, of each halfe an ounce, Make a little, and annoynt the place therewith.

Another, Take salue of Agrippa, of *Albea*, and of the white salue which folloiweth hereafter, of each halfe an ounce; temper them together, and annoynt the place affected with it: for which, the Alabaster salue is also good.

Item, take Barly meale, Fenegræke, and Linsæde, of each one ounce, Gallowes one handfull, Wormewood halfe a handfull, Cammomill and Spelilot, of each one handfull and a halfe: the herbs and floures are you to sethe well, and then to sethe the meale amongst it: then are you with oyle of Roses to make a soft plaister or pap of it. Item, take Beane meale three ounces, Cammomill, Roses, Wormewood, and Bran, of each one handfull: the herbs and floures are you to sethe to pap in good red wine. At last, let the Bran also sethe with it, and then with oyle of Roses make a pap or plaister of it. For this disease, it is also good to open the liuer vaine, and to let out five or six ounces of bloud according to the abilitie of the patient. You may also lay fresh Cow dung vpon this disease, and annoynt the place about it with *Bolus* which is tempered with vineger. The expert Physicians do aduise, that Cow dung should be tempered amongst oyle of Roses.

Item, take the whites of eggs brayed well, and temper amongst it the powder of Wormewood as much as you please, and so lay them vpon the brused place.

The golden waters are also commended for this, but they be hote: But if so be that there be great heate with it, then neede not one stay to open the vaine like as we haue said before. But these diseases would be alwayes suppressed with coling things, for which you haue five kinds of white salues: Take sallet oyle three quarters of an ounce, white ware, and Ceruse, of each two ounces, the white of an egge: the ware and oyle are to be melted by a soft fire, and afterwards to be well tempered with the Ceruse and the white of the egge. This is not onely good for brused members, but taketh away all the blew spots which be come of falls, blowes, and such like occasions. This is the common white salue which is alwayes readie at the Apothecaries, and is called *unguentum Album*. The other salue. If so be that you desire to haue this forementioned salue more coling, then temper halfe a dragma of Camfer well amongst it, and this is then called at the Apothecaries *unguentum Camphoratum*. The third white salue with Camfer. Take five ounces of the oyle of Roses, the whites of three eggs brayed well, white ware one ounce and a halfe, Ceruse five ounces, Camfer broken in Rose water one dragma: melt the oyle and the ware together, and then afterwards temper the Camfer and the whites of eggs amongst it: afterwards put the Ceruse vnto it brused very small, brused Lytharge of gold washt in Rose water one dragma and a halfe, washt Ceruse halfe an ounce and halfe a dragma, oyle of

Roses

Roses thre ounces and a halfe, white ware about thre quarters of an ounce : then melt the oyle and the ware together, and temper the Ceruse and Lytharge amongst it untill it be thozowly cold. All these foresaid vnguents do cole all hot swellings, of whatsoeuer causesthe same may proceede : they do repell all rawe places, and they do also cole all the heate of scalding or burning. The first is *unguentum de Cerusa*, whereof we haue admonished so often in this booke. The same is thus described by *Mesua* : Take Ceruse, and lytharge of gold, of each thre quarters of an ounce, burnt lead, Lytharge of siluer, of each halfe an ounce, Gallsick, Frankincense, of each two dragmes and a halfe, oyle of Roses and vineger, as much as sufficeth for a salve : first powze the dry things into the moztter, and rub it very small ; afterwards powze then some vineger, then some oyle vnto it, stirring it well alwayes about untill it be thick ynough. This salve is also good for all salt *Pblegma*, and for all dry itch.

Of the fractures of bones. §. 2.



These fractures of bones do the Grecians call *Catagma*. And although the setting, splinting, and binding of this fracture, and what else belongeth vnto it, concerneth moze the Chirurgians then Physicians ; notwithstanding doth our common order and method aske a meane whereby this disease might be holpen. Of which there is not alittle spoken befoze, where we haue discoursed of the lamed, extenuated, bused, and strayned members, which all together with the fractures of bones haue a great communion, because they be also caused through such like occasions. First of all it hapneth oftentimes in this fracture, that the marow in the bones (whereby they be sustained and nourished) is consumed and dyled away : for which, you haue a salve in the second part and the fourth Chapter of the marrow of a yong fole, which is maruellous good for it. In like manner there is also described befoze in the seuenth Chapter and 1. §. yet one moze of the marrow of a Stone horse, and other moe which be there recited for the extenuation of the members, and all that is necessarie for such like accidents. You haue likewise foure kinds of *Dialthea* salues in the third part, the thirteenth Chapter and 4. §. which be altogether mete for this. Neither is the crooke back or crooked breast ought else but an eluration or fracture of the back bone and ribs, as in the second part may appeare at large, which may there be seene. The plaister of a Ram is maruellously commended for this, which is described in the third part, the third Chapter, and 1. §.

And for to augment ther remedies which may serue for these fractures, we will ad plaisters, salues, sparadrapes, applications, and all kinde of things that are requisite for the fracture of the bones, which the Chirurgians may vse.

Take Ware five ounces and a halfe, *Ammoniacum*, and *Galbanum*. of each two ounces ; dissolve the gum in Vineger, straine them thozow a cloth, let it sethe vntill the Vineger be wasted away, and melt the ware amongst it.

Then take Cammomill, Baulme with the rotes, and Gallowes, of each one handfull : chop them and stampe them well, afterwarde sethe them in two pound of Bay butter, and a pound and a halfe of Dogs grease, as long as one may sethe an eg hard : this being done, wring it out hard and stir the molten ware with the gums amongst it. When it is almost colde, then take one ounce and a halfe of Beuerod, oyle of Cammomill two ounces and a halfe, of Baies sixtene ounces, temper all together and keepe it in a pot : this salve do the Chirurgians esteeme to be an especiall secret. And if you wil vse it, then take not too much at one time ; make it warme and rub well the place with it ; afterwards lay this seare cloth following vpon it.

Take Ware thre ounces, Rosin one ounce and a halfe, Gallsicke one ounce, *Galbanum*, and Frankincense, of each thre quarters of an ounce : dissolve the *Galbanum* in a little Vineger ; stampe all that is to be stamped ; melt the Ware and Rosin in an ounce of oyle ; straine it afterwards thozowe a cloth, and haue a cloth readie as big as the seare cloth must be. Lastly, soke it therein, and after the anointing apply it vpon the place affected.

Others : take foure ounces of Sallet oyle, melt therein halfe an ounce of Ware : when it is almost colde, then stir halfe an ounce of pouned Gallsicke amongst it, and vse it as befoze.

Item : Take white Ware, and Frankincense, of each halfe an ounce, of oyle of Linseed foure ounces : melt them all together and dyaue a clothe thozowe it. Item : Take Ware and fresh

butter, of each a like quantitie, melt them together: these two be especiall good against all swellings.

Another: Take Fenegrake meale as much as you please: sethe it in water and put pou- ned Comfrey vnto it, vntill it be as it were grout, then apply it to the fracture.

Item: Take Litharge of gold, fine Bolus, and Comfrey, of each thre ounces, Beane meale one ounce and a halfe: poune them all together, and poure good Vineger vnto it, and let it stand so one night: afterwarde put molten Ware and Rosin vnto it, of each thre ounces, Sallet oyle twelue ounces, then temper them all together on the fire, and let it sethe well vntill that the Vineger be consumed: When it is almost cold, then stir two ounces of pouned Dragagant steeped in Wine or Vineger amongst it, that it be like vnto Cellie. Take Rosin five ounces, Saffron, *Euphorbium*, and long pepper, of each one dragme, *Aqua vita* one ounce and a halfe, stampe all that is to be stamped: dissolue the Rosin in *Aqua vita*, and then let it sethe all together vntill that the *Aqua vita* be boiled away, then take Ware as much as is needfull for a plaister: this plaister is also verie good for all other ruptures.

Item: Take Turpentine, and Ware of each 4. ounces, *Galbanum* thre quarters of an ounce, *Ammoniacum* half an ounce: dissolue the gums in wine, and then temper them altogether: when it is almost cold, then put one quarter of an ounce of Spirthe, and as much Turpentine vnto it, and then make a plaister of it. In like maner you haue in the third part, and the third chap. one moze beginning thus: Take Dragon blood, &c. And yet one other in the second part, the third chapter, and fift S. beginning thus: Take Pitch, &c. Item, one moze in the first part, the fift chap. and 1. S. which be all together very good for the fractures of bones.

For the putrifaction of the Bones. § 3.



Take burnt Lead two ounces, Spirthe halfe an ounce, Aloe, *Oporanacum*, Iron dross, burnt Squinant, and the rindes of the fir tre, of each one dragme, then make a powder of it, and strow it vpon the putrified bone; for it separateth the same, and healeth maruellously.

Take Canterburie bels, poune them small, and strow this powder also vpon it. The same operation hath the water also wherein *Sal Armoniacke* is decocted.

Here follow some especiall things for the paine of the ioints. § 4.



It happeneth also other whiles that in the uttermost parts of the members, as in the hands and fete, there cometh great paine, whether it be of the foresaide causes, or of something els that hath fallen, or bene laide vpon them, which may well be caused both of heat and cold.

But if so be that heate cause this paine, then doth it appere with rednesse, with hardnes, and with swelling, which is also a signe of some impostume to come. But if it be caused through cold, then is the paine without any rednes or heate; but with deafenes, pensinenes, palenes, and sometime with a drie itching scurffe.

When as these signes be present, they giue commonly to vnderstand that there might follow of it a palsey or *Paralysis*, and an extinguishtment of all naturall heat.

If this disease come through some outward causes, then loke of the same parts, whether they be redder then any other. When is it to be annointed with coling oyles, as with oyle of Roses, of Violets, of water Lillies, and such like.

The letting of blood is very good for this: as if the paine be in the fete, then open the baine in the arme on the same side, and so forth.

If it be caused through drie the, and that neither rednes nor whitenes can be perceined, and neuertheless the member seemeth to be paler from day to day: then let warme water fall from the height vpon it, and afterwards let it be annointed with the salve which is molten together of oyle and white Ware.

But if you will haue this salve stronger, then vse that *Anodimon* which is described in the second part, the fift chapter, and 18. S. or any other which be specified in the paine of the *Podagra*. But if the place be somewhat greater or swollen vp, and that in feeling it be found somewhat cold,

dish, then is it to be rubbed oftentimes with warme clothes that the pores oꝝ vents might open, and afterwards this fomenting following be made ready: Take Cammonill, Parieroin, and Szechados, of each one handfull; seethe them, and holde the member ouer the vapoꝝ. Or take a sponge being made wet therein, and so lay it warme vpon it: you must also let warme water drop vpon it from on high: Afterwards annoint the member with oyle of Walldowers, of Cassus, of Lillies, oꝝ any such like, which be warme by nature. In eating and drinke hee is to keepe himselfe sober, and to exercise himselfe much, and to bathe. And if so be that this will not helpe sufficiently, then is hee to bee purged of all siegmaticke humoꝝ, as with the pills *de Hermodactilis, Fetidis, and Medicamine Turbith*. Lastly, and in naede he is to vse those things which be described in the first part the twelfth chapter, and 13. S. of *Paralysis*.

Of the vnseñbilenes, shaking, and numbnes of the
Limmes. S. 5.



If all these diseases we haue in the first part very largely and amply written: likewise also euery where in the fourth part: which meanes may also be used in all these accidents: but especially there be very good foꝝ this two sure golden waters, which shall be hereafter described in the last part amongst other vitall waters, whether it be that they be used outwardly, oꝝ drunke inwardly: foꝝ they be good foꝝ all diseases of the outward members and ioints: like as this also following: Take drie Willow wood, and burne it in two pots one aboue the other, like as the oyle of Juniper wood is wont to be made, and with the oyle that runneth out into the neathermost pot, annoint therewith the place affected the space of nine daies.

Another. Take Quinces which rot vpon the tree, Beuercod, Bayberries, Sage, and Juniper berries, of each a like quantity: Stampe them, and cut them metely grosse: afterwards seethe it all together in good wine, and then rub the iointes with it. These two things afoꝝe said be very highly commended of the common people.

If so be that there be any thing discovered, not onely that concerning the fractures of the bones, but also of this whole fourth part of the ioints and outward members, wherein may be any want: thereof must aduise be had with expert Phisitions and Chirurgians, and so we will conclude therewith this fourth part.

The fift Part of this booke, comprehendeth all the
*Accidents and Diseases, which do spread them-
selues abroade ouer the whole body.*



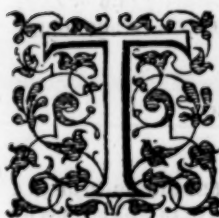
In the foresaid sower parts we haue most of all described all outward and inward parts of mans body, with all their accidentall diseases: this fift part shall discourse of those things which spread themselves abroad ouer the whole body: amongst which, outwardly is the skin, which couereth the whole bodie: inwardly are the vaines, the blood, flesh, sinewes and bones. Item, other accidentall things moe, as heate, colde, *Phlegma, Melancholia, fatnes, leannes, sleepe, sweate, and such like.*

To the Skinne will wee ascribe many kindes of diseases: to wit, what may hurt the same inwardly and outwardly: as all Impostumes, Ulcers, oꝝ Byles, Warts, spots, blisters, cleftes, itchings, scurfe, swellings, *Varices, Carbuncles, and such like.* Item many other corroding vlcers, as fistulaes, Canker, Gangrene, Pore, Leprosie, and many other incurable vlcers, *Cacothetes*. Afterwards wee will discourse of such thinges as hurt the skin on the outside, as burning oꝝ scalding by fier, by water, oꝝ gunpowder, by splints, by thoznes, all kind of wounds,

and whatsoeuer may appertain vnto them. Lastly, of *Cicatrices*, which be left behinde after the cure of the foze mentioned accidents.

The first Chapter.

Of the Skin.



The Skin is by nature giuen to all liuing creatures that haue blood in them, not only for an ornament and defence, but also as a garment of the whole body, which in one place is found thicker, thinner, and softer than in another.

The outwardmost skin is of it selfe insensible, and more fine and thin in mankind, than in any other beaste. The skin within the hand, on the forehead, and for the most part ouer the whole face, and on the heeles, can hardly be sleped off, by reason that they bee throughout knit and wouen with sinewes and muscles. In like maner, if there be no flesh with it, and yet were wounded, it would not be possible to heale the same together againe; like as may be seene in the eyelids, in the foreskin, and other places moe of the body.

What diseases or accidents this skin is subiect to, we haue discovered it befoze, and will also write somewhat moze of it hereafter.

Of the inward causes which harme the Skin. S. I.



As much as this fift part of our practice of Physicke doth not discourse of any other matter but of vlcers, anguishes, impostumations, & such like accidents, which harme the skin: therfoze we will discourse and write somewhat of it in generall at the first, notwithstanding the difference which is betwene the vlcers and impostumes; like as in the third part, the 11. chapt. and 29. S. is declared.

Thus will we vnder the name of impostumations contain all that proceedeth and followeth after, which the Physicians doe thus describe.

An Impostume is a disease or malady, which altereth one member or part of the body from his naturall kinde, into an vnnaturall constitution. As an Impostume is an vnnatural Tumor or swelling of a member, through winde, blood, or water, which hath drawen one of these matters vnto it.

This impostume may be caused of all the sower humors, and also each of a seuerall humor, or of a mixed humor, and that in this maner: When any part is badly qualified, be it of whatsoeuer cause that it will, or that any bad humors, windes, waters, or other superfluities haue accessse from any other part which is stronger then that whither they be sent, which is not able enough to expell the affluent humors from him: therfoze doe they remaine there, and putrifie, and at the last impostumate.

When as such kinds of impostumes be caused onely of blood, then do the Grecians call it *Phlegmonem*, which is an hot swelling, with great paine and beating.

For if any swelling be caused through *Phlegma*, or any other waterish moisture, then be they called *Oedema*, and it is a soft tumor without paine, and it is sometimes seene in dead bodies, in hydropicall persons, and in those parts which are extenuated.

If any swelling be caused through pure *Cholera*, then is the same called *Erysipelas*, which is the Rose. As *Melancholia* commeth a hard swelling, called *Schirrhus*, the Canker and such like: Which maladies do mixe themselues oftentimes with diuers other swellings, and vlcers, and such like, as we shall especially write hereafter, and discourse of diuers and sundry of them. But (as is said) we will begin with the first.

Of the Warts. §. 2.



Whill fauoured this errescence of the skin is to the sight, is sufficiently knowne vnto all men, whereof there be also many kinds, some altogether dye, hard, black, and cleft or chopt: others be moyst, running, itchie, and where the paine is to be felt in handling them. Their principall cause is a very burnt melancholick blood. Therefore ought such things first to be vsed as withstand the ingendering of melancholick blood, as we haue elsewhere shewed, and shall hereafter declare moze at large.

But amongst the things which may outwardly be vsed be these following: Take Willow rinds, and burne them to ashes; afterwards mixe it with Sharp vineger, and annoynt the warts with it, especially if they stand in a secret place, or rub them with Asses milke, afterwards lay the foresaid on them being spread vpon a cloth, then will they fall off without paine.

Item: Take the iuice of Celanvine, and the iuice of Purslaine, of each one ounce, oyle of Sulphure one dragme and a halfe; then temper them together, and annoynt them therewith. The same doth also oyle of Sulphure alone: Take the iuice of Parigolds, and temper it with salve vnto a plaister. Some do take Cranes eies, and temper them with the iuice of Vinions and salt vnto a plaister, and so binde vpon it. It is also saide that red sealing Ware is very good for it: Take a garden Snail, strow it with salt, put it into a glasse, then commeth there an oyle of it in the space of two dayes, then annoynt the warts therewith and they will fall off.

You may also annoynt them with the oyle of Camelina. If they be so great that they may be tyed with a horse haire or any strong silken thred, then tye the thred from day to day fast about them, untill they dye away and fall off.

With this are you also to note, that when there be many warts together, like as commonly hapneth, you begin first at the greatest, so that they haue such a sympathie one with another, that when the greatest (being as the mother) hath her nourishment taken away, that thereby the rest may easily be killed.

Item, burne them with a Rye strawe, and take afterwards pouned Saffron, sethe it in Sallet oyle, and then put salt vnto it and Swines grease, to the end it may be as a salve, and then lay it vpon it.

For this is also mete all that which is discovered in the fourth part the second Chapter and 3. §. for the Coynes. The warts require also a moderate dyet, and that he forbear all that might ingender melancholick blood.

Of the Measels, red Gum, and of the small Pocks in generall. §. 3.



Children are for the most part subiect vnto these diseases, and also auncient folks otherwhiles. And like as the same be perilous in yong children, so be they moze perilous in auncient people. They come also through many kind of meanes, sometimes like red spots: also with waterish blisters which outwardly appeare cleane ouer ones bodie vpon the skinne, as big as Millet seede, which at last dye away and fall off. These be also (to tell the troth) not without great danger, especially if they happen not to bzeake out through cold: or if they haue appeared alreadie vpon the skinne on the out side, and be stroken in againe; for thereby do they make a narrownes of the bzeast, a thort bzeath, hoarsenes, diseale of the thzoate, or of the mouth, and anguish of the whole bodie, with great Agues.

The learned haue sought out the causes of this bzeaking out of the small pocks, Measels, and such like: therefore be they of opinion, that one bringeth the cause of this sicknes with him out of his mothers womb when he is bozne. For that because as the fruit is nourished of the finest blood of his mothers Termes: so doth the vncleannes of that blood remaine in the pores of the children, and in other places moe, which nature afterwards bziueeth out in due time.

And because that all humaine creatures be through such meanes and nourishment sustained and fed in their mothers womb, therefore doth it seldome happen that any kind of people can be old, without getting these Pocks or Measels, whereof this common false opinion is spread and growne

growne amongst many people, that all childezen must once haue these Pocks or Measels, where- by many mothers which haue many childezen, and if any of them get the Pocks or Measels, and be let runne one amongst another, whereby one child is infected of another, and so do catch the Pocks or Measels: saying besides, the truth is, that it is better that they get them in their child- hood, then when they be growne in yeres. But this is none other (like as I haue sayd) but a false opinion, for one may be freed of this sickness through a good dyet.

There be also other causes moe concerning these maladies, viz. stinking ayre, which doth heate the blood and other humors of the bodie, and troubleth them. Like as to be long conuer- sant in the warme sunne: also to ouercharge him with such meate which quickly corrupteth in the stomack, as fish and milke eaten together, through much bad blood, through omitting an ac- customed letting of blood, and such like causes moe.

The signes of these sicknesses be paine of the back, itch of the eares and of the nose, which come of the vapors of the corrupt matter, and are partly pestilentiall: therefore they haue a frightfull sleepe, and the pricking may be felt ouer the whole bodie. With this they haue also a slothfulness in all parts, rednes of the face and of the eyes, and somewhat swelling; and they be so long pinched with sleepines, vntill the Pocks do breake out vpon them euery where.

And although (like as we haue admonished) the Measels and the Pocks haue one kind of cause, yet we will discourse of each apart, as much as is possible.

Of the Measels. §. 4.



This is (as we haue said) a common infirmite of childezen, and it also assaileth aunient and full growen people, so that they ouer the whole bodie (some lesse, other some more) are besprinkled with red spots. There is also great heate of- tentimes with it, and a pursuenes on the breast. In this sickness must one be- ware especially of cold, yea of open ayre, and of hot meate and drinke. And aun- cient persons are to order themselves, as we shall shew in discourse of the small Pocks. Common people do especially commend the conserue of Elberne flowers, and the same rubbed vpon the heated parts. But what is further conuenient for this purpose, you may make choise thereof according to the importance of the cause, out of the description ensuing of the small Pocks, that shall like you best.

Of the small Pocks. §. 5.



When as Childezen be assailed with these foresayde Measels or Pocks, and they will not breake out, then take oyle of Cammimill and good Wine, of each one ounce and a halfe, Salt peter one dragma, sethe it together vntill all the Wine be wasted, and annoynt the whole bodie with it when it is very well warmed. This potion following is very good for all aged people, and also for all yong childezen. Take Citron peeles one quarter of an ounce, sower Dates one quarter of an ounce, Cicorie roots halfe an ounce, the flowers of Buglosse and of Burrage, of each halfe a handfull; sethe them to- gether in a pinte of water vntill about the third part be consumed: afterwarde strain it, and temper amongst it Sir. *Acetosatis Citri* two ounces, *de Corticibus Citri*, *de Succo Acetos.* of each one ounce; giue oftentimes a little of it, for it is very mette and pleasant.

Item, take Oliue leaues two handfulls, Agrimony one handfull; sethe it all together in good wine, and drinke thereof euery morning three or sower spoonefuls: it dryeth vp all affluent humors. But when these Pocks begin to fall away, then are these means following to be used, according to the importance of the cause: Take Ceruse halfe an ounce, oyle of Roses one ounce and a halfe, Camifere the quantity of a Pease, Salt peter halfe a drag. and two or three paled Al- monds, wherewith you are to chase the Camifer. Afterwards temper one amongst the other, and therewith amoint the place of the Pocks: Or take Sallet oyle, and Ceruse as before; then temper them together with a little vinegar and Rose water, and vse it as before. Some doe also aduise to take Strong leigh, which is hereafter described against the burning of gunpowder.

Another.

Another sorte of small Pockes, which be called Swine
pockes. §.6.



Like as we haue said before, these kinde of Pockes be much like to the other be-
fore mentioned, and proceedeth also of the same cause, saving onely that these
whereof we now write, be bigger, broader, and also with greater anguish of the
breast and of the breath: therefore may all be used for this, that is expressed for
the troubled breast in the second part, the fifth chapter, and 9. §. aswell in old as in
young people. But especially is this salve following to be ordained for it: Take
fresh Butter, oyle of sweete Almonds, and Gose grease, of each halfe an ounce, Mace as much as
is needfull. Some doe put vnto it halfe an ounce of Turpentine, and one ounce of liquid Storax:
this is especiall good, and also approued oftentimes.

Aged people be much aduised to eate none other thing but Barley pape, or Maten paps, and
to drinke Barley water. Take solwerteen or fiftene figs, Pistacies one quarter of an ounce,
fennell seede, the seedes of Smalage and Lucea, of each three dragmes, Lentils one ounce and a
halfe, Dagagant halfe a dragme, Roses, Saunders, burnt Quoy, and Quince kernels, of each
halfe an ounce: seethe them all together in three quarts of water vntill a third part be wasted,
and then drinke a good draught thereof in the morning and euening. He is also to vse often-
times *Oxyacchara*, conserue of Roses, conserue of Rapes, the sirupe of Soprell, of Meriuce, and
of Quinces, to make the blood thicke with it, and to cole it. There is especially commended
for this, the water of Lentils when it is boyled in the third liquoz, to wit, the two first being
potized out. If now it be feared that the pockes should hurt the eyes, then is this following to
be used for it: Take *Lycium*, the iuice of Sloes, and Saffron, of each one dragme, Camfere one
scruple: temper this all together in Rose water, and drop it oftentimes into the eyes. Also bee
that now any Pore or any rednes be perceiued on the apple of the eye, then vse *Sisalbam*, and
that according to the quality of the cause: for which you may looke into the Register, where you
shall finde also the manner to make it. But if there doe come any exulceration in the throate
or mouth, then cleanse the same with Barley water, wherein sirupe of Sulberies, wine of
Pomegranates, and such like be decocted, and drinke the same also softly. The iuice of Spints is
also to be draluen vp thorough the nose, tempered with Saunders, Meriuce and Vineger: the
same also suued is good for it. Now when as the Pockes do anguish the Lights, then vse *Dia-
papauer*. If there be any hoarsenes or roughnes of the throat, then looke what is good for it in the
place where we discourse of it. For which is also a gargarisation to be made with Licorice,
Quiubes, Hebestes, and figs decocted in water, and a little Dagagant dissolved in it, and then
to cleanse the mouth with it, and sometime to swallow downe some of it. When as there is no
ague with it, then is it very good that one drinke warme Coates milke. Now for to free the in-
trailes from the Pockes, roasted Quinces are to be taken with Sugar, or the sirupe of the same.
If a scowling happen with it, looke what is described in the third part, the eleventh chapter, and
13. §. Lastly, all renowned and famous Phisitions doe aduise (against the opinion of the com-
mon people) that one should about the seuenth day open the Pockes, if they be ripe, with a gol-
den needle, for to let out the matter, and to the end that through their sharpenes they should not
eate inward, and leaue great Cicatrises behinde them. Make also a powder with Salt, Len-
tils meale, Beane meale, Pease meale, litharge of golde, and Ceruse: strow the parts with it, to
the end that thereby the matter may drie. All which cannot be hurtfull.

Ifso be that after healing of the Pore there do remaine great dents, pits or scars, then may
these things ensuing be used.

Take *Sarcocolla*, Helon seede, washed Rice, whites of Eggs, Chalke, Bolus, or white Su-
gar: temper them with the oyle of Roses, or the oyle of Lillies, and therewith annoynt the Ci-
catrises. Or in steede of the oyle, take Vens grease.

Item take the Caule of a young Goate or Kid, potize Goats milke vpon it, then set it so in
the Sun, and potize fresh milke euery day vpon it the space of one weeke: afterwards lay it
the space of fouer daies in Rose water, and then hang it vp to drie. This being done spread it small,
and put it into a silver beaker, and set it in boiling water: when it is molten, then straine it tho-
rough a cloth, and annoynt therewith the markes and small pockes.

Of

Of clefts in the Skin. §. 7.



You have in the first part the ninth Chapter and 1. §. of the clefts in the lips. Item, in the third part, the fifth Chapter and 2. §. in the description of the places in women. And in the tenth Chapter and 11. §. of the clefts in the Arsegut. Also in the fourth part the first Chapter and 7. §. of the clefts in the hands: all which remedies there described may be used for this our intent, and also all these that follow.

Take the greene rinde of the Elder, steepe it in a sufficient quantitie of Sallet oyle, boyle them together, wring them out hard, and with ware make a salve of them. This salve is also very good to be used against the burning fire.

Item, take oyle of Roses, white ware, Frankincense, Mastick, and Vens grease, of each halfe an ounce, Ginger halfe a dragma; melt the ware, the oyle, and the grease together, and temper the rest amongst it.

Of the Itch in the skin. §. 8.



Before we begin to write of the Scabs, we will first intreate of the dry itch of the skinne. This is called in Latine *Pruritus*, which is a desire to rub and scratch, either the whole bodie or some part of it, by reason of the great itch, which is caused of some sharp humors, which doth yet lye under the skinne.

Also, if the humors (which are stirred up either by heate or by labour) be so touch, that they cannot transpire through the skinne and the pores of the same, then do they cause an itch. Also Lice, fleas, Ants, and woodlice, do cause an itch. Item, if one do but seldome change his apparell.

The inward causes may be an overgreat heate of the liver, which doth ingender sharp and acrid humors: also, debilitie of the vertue expulsive, as doth appeare in aged folks. The signes of this itch are manifest, as that a bodie cannot sleepe for it, and is hindered from doing his businesse aright.

Now to come to the remedies of the itch, the patient shall have a baine opened, be purged, and almost obserue the same order which hereafter is prescribed against scabbednes. A sweating bath and water baths are especially commended for this purpose, which being once used, and not turning away the itch, shew that the humors in quantitie do abound, which cause the same. This bathing is to be reiterated, and the body to be rubbed where it itcheth most with this receipt following: Take white Roses two ounces, beate them thoroughly with vinegar, and adde one ounce of Bran vnto them. The next day following bathe againe, and rub your bodie with pounded Smallage, with greene nut shales, or with fenegreake. These itchy patients are to forbear all manner of salt and hot things, and especially all that might inflame or burne the blood.

If this itch be about the yard or member of a man, then take a quarter of an ounce of Ceruse, Sulphur viue one dragma and a halfe, Opium halfe a dragma; make a salve of it with vinegar: some do adde two scruples of beaten Licebane vnto it. If this itch be in the Arsegut, or in the womb, then take burnt Aloine one quarter of an ounce, Argall one ounce, temper them with vinegar, spread it on a cloth, and so apply it.

Of Scabbednes. §. 9.



Scabbednes is of diuers kinds, some with scales, some with blisters, some with matter, and some without matter, some dry and red; but all of them with an intolerable itch, according to the nature of the humors which cause the same, and are mixed with the blood.

The causes of this infirmitie, are the uses of all kind of hot, sharp, salt, and bitter meates, as spices, strong wine, oyle, hony, want of change in apparell, to lye or deale with them that be scabbed, with many other inward causes, that procede of an inflamed and corrupted blood.

The signes of all manner of scabbednes are apparant: but of what kinde of humoꝝ the same is caused, shall appeare by these reasons following. If it be caused of blood, that may be knowne by the repletion of the bodie, rednes of the parts, and if the blood oꝝ matter do issue forth in the scratching: The patient hath also commonly a swete taste in the mouth. But if this scabbednes be caused of a salt phlegme, then is the skinne yellowish, scaly, and reasonably full of matter: the patient cannot be quiet foꝝ the itch, and after scratching findeth great paine and smarting. If it procede of *Cholera*, then perceiueth he not only a great dꝛought in the ioynts, but also in the scabs themselves, with pricking, burning, and small stoꝝe of moysture: oꝝ if it be caused of *Melancholy*, then is the skinne blackish, dry, with many scales, and without matter.

Now, foꝝ to cure this common and well knowne grieve, are these rules following to be observed diligently. First, because the common cause of this disease is grosse and foule blood, ought first of all a vaine to be opened. Secondly, after the letting of blood, is the bodie to be purged, and especially with the *Scirobalanes*, and *sumitory*. Thirdly, because the itch and scabbednes are ingendꝛed of salt, sharp, swete, and spiced meates, are the same wholly to be foꝝborne. Fourthly, venery is to be shunned, because thereby the humoꝝ is dꝛawne to the out side of the bodie, where it doth rayse hot and stinking vapors, that disperse themselves vnder the skinne. Fifthly, bathing, inunction, and whatsoever else may be vsed outwardly doth small ease, vnlesse the bodie be first thoroughlie purged. Sixthly, in eating and dꝛinking refraine all salt, sharp, swete, and hot things. Seuenthly, soꝝe and moyst meates that do not sodainely putrifie in the stomack, are good foꝝ him. Eightly, because *Peaches* and some other herbs, also fish, milke, and such like do corrupt the blood, are they to be shunned. Ninthly, the patient must foꝝbeare scratching as much as is possible, foꝝ thereby little pusses are turned into great scabs. Tenthly, the moyster that the scabbednes is, the stronger remedies doth it require.

As concerning the cure of this infirmitie, the opening of the *Median* oꝝ *Lyer* vaine is not to be omitted, and that as long as the patient can indure it. Then is the humoꝝ to be prepared with *Oxyacchara*, sirupe of *sumitory*, and *Pease* dꝛoth: after wards to purge with *Cassy*, with *swete Dates*, with *Scirobalanes*, with *Dodder*, oꝝ with *Rubarb* infused oꝝ sodden in whey of milke, but aboue all other things is *sumitory* commended, whether it be the iuice, the sirupe, the conserve, oꝝ decoctiue potions, oꝝ whatsoever else may be made of it.

Sene leaues do the same, whereof thou mayst vse these two kinds of potions in this scabbednes, which are described in the third part and 20. S.

Item, take pouned *Sene* leaues one drag. strowe them vpon steeved *Cozans*, and so eate them dayly: vse them so long, till thou be lose in bodie, and as thy stomacke will suffer ther. Some do commend the golden water which is described in the last part, if a little of it be taken either inwardly, oꝝ annoynted on the scabbednes outwardly. After that the bodie hath bene spoyntly purged, it is a common order to bathe, otherwhyles in faire water, otherwhyles also naturall dry bathes, each as you like it best. But those that cannot intend to trauaile to the dry bathes, may take *Salt*, *Allome*, *Wymstone*, *Argall*, and such like, accordyng as the scabbednes doth require, and so with water make a bath of them.

There are also many kinds of salues and oyles ordayned foꝝ it, whereof diuers shall be specified at this present: Take litharge of *Siluer* finely powdered two ounces, *Vineger* foure ounces, boyle them together vntill one third part be waisted, then adde two ounces of oyle of *Oliues* vnto it, one ounce of *Ceruse*, then boyle them together vntill they be thick stirring them continually.

Another. Take *Ceruse* two ounces, litharge of *Siluer* one ounce, *Pastick*, and *Frankincense*, of each two dragmes; beate them all together to fine powder, and mire them with thꝛee ounces of the oyle of *Oliues*, and in the tempering of them powꝛe now and then foure oꝝ fife drops of *Rose* water and *Vineger* vnto them.

In like manner you haue also in the fourth part the ninth Chapter and 1. S. fife kinds of white salues, which one may also vse with all securitie foꝝ scabbednes.

Item, in the first part the third Chapter and 10. S. there is a good salue beginning thus: Take *Turpentine*, &c.

Item, take *Bayberies*, *Vineger*, and oyle of *Oliues* as much as you please, and temper them all together to a salue, it is very good and safe. Take the rootes of *Historia* one dragme, prepared *Sarcocolla* two dragmes and a halfe, *Sandaraca* foure scruples, prepared *Tulia* one scruple, *Turpentine*

pentine washt with water of Furnitory foure ounces, Camfer halfe a scruple; temper amongst it five ounces of the next following salve of Elecampane rootes.

Take the iuice of Elecampane rootes, and of Dock rootes, of each thre ounces, Salt peter, *Sarcocolla*, the lytharge of Silver and Gassick, of each fiftene greynes, Coperas and Allome, (called *lame mum*) of each two scruples, mortified Quicksilver one dragma, Butter two drag. and a halfe, Turpentine one ounce and a halfe, Pitch one ounce: the Butter, Pitch, and Turpentine must you melt together, and afterwards temper the other ingredients amongst it, and let it sethe with a soft fire vntill all the iuices be consumed: you are then to annoynt the patient therewith by a good fire, and that especially on the places where the most scabbednes is; this salve draweth the corruption outward.

Another. Take washt Turpentine two ounces, washt Butter one ounce, Salt halfe an ounce, the iuice of thre Limons, two yolks of eggs beaten, oyle of Roses halfe an ounce, or as much as is needfull for to make a thin salve: then temper it all together, it is a safe salve.

In the fourth part the seuenth Chapter and 3. S. you haue also a good salve, beginning thus: Take Sage, Pallowes, &c. which one may vse very safely for all manner of scabs. Take Dock rootes, poune them very small, temper vinegar amongst it, and salt it well: with this are you to rub your selfe well in the bath when you will goe out of it, without wetting your selfe after it.

Item, take Dock rootes, and Hollyhock rootes, of each two ounces and a half, Hellebor rootes one ounce, Smalage halfe a handfull; sethe them all together in fresh well water vntill the third part be wasted: strayne it, and put into this decoction one ounce and a halfe of salt, Salt peter one quarter of an ounce, fresh Butter, and oyle of Roses, of each two ounces; let it sethe the second time vntill all the moisture be consumed, afterwards temper amongst it washt Turpentine one ounce, Treacle thre dragmes, the iuice of Limons or of Oranges two ounces, lastly, temper them all together.

Item, take the iuice of Pints, liquid Storax, of each one ounce and a halfe, Salt thre ounces, oyle of Roses two ounces and a halfe, and make a salve thereof.

The plaister *Diachylon* may also be well melted in oyle of Roses, for the same vse: Sulfur bis tempered with Turpentine, is also much commended for this. Make it thus: Take Sulphur bis halfe an ounce, Salt as much also (stamp small together) Sallet oyle two ounces, then make it to a salve with Oile, as thick as you desire. Take Alhes, Salt, and Sulphur, of each one ounce, binde them all together in a fine cloth, and then sethe it in foure ounces of Sallet oyle, and rub the scabbednes therewith.

Another. Take Turpentine, which is washt well with Rose water, two ounces, oyle of Roses, oyle of Costus, and fresh Butter, of each halfe an ounce, Sulfure bis thre dragmes, Saltpeter one quarter of an ounce, and two yolks of Eggs; then temper it vpon warme alhes. Item, take washt Turpentine six ounces, quicke Lime two ounces, Sote of the chimney one quarter of an ounce, and temper them all together.

This salve following is much stronger then the foregoing: take of the salve of Elecampane rootes, not long since described, nine ounces, Pirrhe, Swines bread, Hartwort, pouned all together very small, of each one quarter of an ounce, Bean meale two ounces, Sene powder one quarter of an ounce, *Sal gemme* two scrup. temper them altogether vnto a salve.

Some doe take fresh Butter and Swines bread, of each fower ounces, Ceruse thre dragms, Quicksilver one dragma, stir them so long together that you see the Quicksilver no more, and therewith annoynt the place infected once a day.

Other do make it thus: They do take pownd Bayberries, and fresh Hay butter, of each fower ounces, and melt it by the fire: when it is a little colde, then mixe one dragma of Quicksilver amongst it, and afterwards the Bayberries, iuice of Nightshade, and iuice of Pallowes, of each thre quarters of an ounce: if one cannot get the iuices, then take the pownded herbes, and if so be that the salve be not tough enough, then put a little Turpentine vnto it.

Item, take mans grease, Rose water and Quicksilver, each according to his waight, like as is sayd before in this last salve, and annoynt therewith the scabbed place once a day.

Another. Take a small Cruise full of rayne water, and put therein one dragma of *Mercuri sublimati*, so let it sethe together in a glasse with a narrow neck by a soft fire: and when it is cold, then temper therewith the iuice of Limons, and Rose water, of each halfe an ounce, and vse

ble it as before. Some do take *Aquavina*, and therein do they seethe a little Quicksilver, and therewith annoynt the scabs.

Item, take Swines grease two ounces and a halfe, oyle of Bayberies one ounce, mortified Quicksilver, Frankincense and Galls, of each one dragma, Salt two ounces, the iuice of Plantaine and of Fumitory, of each one ounce and a halfe: lastly, temper one scruple of Opi-ment with it. Or take Barrowes grease twelue ounces, Quicksilver mortified with vineger halfe an ounce, oyle of Roses one ounce, Frankincense, Galls, Birch, *Sarcocolla*, and Ietharge of Silver, of each halfe a dragma, Turpentine three ounces which is washed well in the iuice of Fumitory, Take halfe an ounce, the two last are to be molten together, and temper the Barrowes grease amongst it, and at last the other powders: then stirre all well together untill it be cold. With this salve is the patient to annoynt himselfe twice a day the space of five dayes, and the other five or eight dayes afterwards, then is he to wash him with this water following.

Take Docke rootes and Clecampane rootes both cut, of each five ounces, Bran five handfuls, Sparrowes, Violet leaues, and Fumitory, of each twelue ounces, seethe all together in sufficient water, that one may bathe therein, sit in it methy warme, and comming out of the bath, lay your selfe about the space of an hower a bed.

But here is to be noted, that the salues, which be tempered with Quicksilver, are moze meet for the Dockes than for scabs, as hereafter shall be shewen in moze ample maner.

If any body be plagued with a troublesome scabbednes, which proceedeth of a salt melancholike matter: then take the iuice of Clecampane rootes, and of Docke rootes, of each halfe an ounce, liqur of Sotay, blacke Helleboe, and prepared Tuttie, of each two scruples: temper these all together in a leaden mortar, fower or five howers together vnto a salve.

It hapneth also otherwhiles, that by some disease of the stomacke or of the liuer, this disease doth growe, that doth so spread it selfe over the whole body, that one suppoeth certainly that it is a right leprosie. For this do all expert Physicians knowe good aduise, with letting of blood and purging at the first. And for this kind of scabs is this remedy following found, wherein I my selfe haue found marvellous operations: Take oyle of bitter Almonds sixteen ounces, fifty common Crenets, pounce them, and let them seethe in the oyle: Afterwards wring them hard through a cloth, and temper amongst it eight ounces of the oyle of Eggs, and annoynt you therewith twice a day. For this is also good Sallet oyle, wherein frogs be decocted. Item, take a water Snake, cut off the head and the taile, and cast it away, afterwards cut the rest in small peces, and seethe them in oyle, and straine it.

In like maner you haue also in the fourth part, the first chapter, and 8. S. against the scabbed hands a salve, beginning thus, Take Docke rootes &c. which is very meete for this kind of scab, and erredeeth also all others. The oyle of Eldern flowers doth cleanse, and mollifieth and taketh all scabbednes away from the handes. The oyle of Egges is very commodious of it selfe for all sharp scabs. Likewise also, the oyle of Tiles, Juniper oyle, whether it be drawn out of the wood, or out of the seede, it doth expell all infection of the skin, although it were a Canker, or any olde Ulcer. Also, oyle distilled out of Wheate is much commended for the same.

We haue also in the fourth part, the first chapter, and first S. other remedies moze against the scabbednes and the sozenesse, which may be used for this, and ouer the whole body. Also, the mayden milke is very good for this, which is described in the first part, the first chapter, and 1. S.

Of Tumors. §. 10.

Because we haue sufficiently before discoursed of scabbednes, therefore we will now speake and discourse of certaine swellings, which assaile the skin and the flesh vnder it. And because there can be no impostumes without swelling or ranchling, as also al swelling may be caused of blowes, fells, wounds, fractures of bones, and such like: therefore it is needes to spend any longer time therein, every one may himselfe seeke in the Register, for the member, wherein euery such swelling doth manifest it selfe, where may bee found perfect direction for all: wherefore wee will onely here declare certaine common rules.

First is a Putneg very good for to cleanse all corruption of the blood, and that especially for the swelling of the milt: Conserue of Eldern berries doth also cure all inward swelling. In like manner

manner both Conserue of the same flowers expell all scourings of the belly. Fowler or fine Figs eaten twice a day are also very mete in all swellings. Amongst oyles which may bee annoynted on the out side, are these following: to wit, oyle of Spints, of Will, of Lillies, of Lilies. And amongst all salues, the salve *Alibea*.

There is a kind of swelling, which is softe, without paine, and which spreadeth it selfe farre abroad, which the Grecians doe call *Oedema*, which engendzeth of winde and cold humors: with this manner of swelling are commonly hydropical patients troubled, & those that haue the consumption, or any other long lingering disease. This swelling is also in the foresaid sickness no cause of the same, but only an accident: so that the same hath no neede of any speciall remedy, but onely to apply vnto it *Oxyrrhodinum*, tempered with salt, or salted Sallet oyle.

Of all Botches, Byles, and other hard swellings. §. II.



Now if there appeare any hard swellings, Botches, Byles, or Wenues, in any place of the body, and that at last there besall with it heat, or rednes, with paine, without inclining neuertheles to impostumation: then doe the Grecians call the same *Phlegmonas*: But this name comprehendeth many kinde of swellings, so that by the name *Phlegmone* be vnderstood also the swellings of the groines, the *Bubones*, and such like moe, because that the same be caused of one kind of cause, viz. of blood and *Cholera*. These swellings may also bee caused of fals, of blowes, or of thynstes, through which the humors be drowen towards the hurted place, and there being gathered together, do make such tumors, impostumations, and other swellings. Besides that it hapneth so much the soner, if a body be phlethozicke and full of blood.

The signes of these foresaid swellings, are heat, rednes, paine, and beating, which is felt deep in the flesh, the whole member where this impostume is, thereby appeareth distempered, with heate and inflammation, with great swellings, and desire of cooling things.

And when as the member is more fleshy wherein this impostume commeth, so much greater is the paine: and how much more fleshy it is, so much is the paine & the picking the lesse, and commeth easier to a perfect impostumation. Now for to remedy these kindes of swellings, must we note certaine rules.

First, if the patient be phlethozicke, then is one of his vaines to be opened, and that alwaies in the side where the swelling is not, and according to the situation of the place, where the swelling appeareth. Secondly, if the matter be hot, then must one giue the patient those medicines, which allay the heat. Thirdly, when the matter is well purged, then are repulsive remedies to be vsed vpon the swelling, if it be not that the swelling stand in such a place, whereby nature is wont to expell all superfluity from her. Fourthly, amongst the things which hinder repulsion be grosse and tough humors, cold and abundance of the matter. Fifthly, if so be that a swelling being great, and it seem to be inclined to impostumation, then are no repulsive things to be vsed, but onely maturatiues. Sixthly, when it is certain that the impostume is ripe, and be full of corruption, then is the same to be immediately opened, and especially if it stand nere some noble part; so that if one delayed the opening too long, then might the matter eate inward, and doe more hurt. Seuenthly, the healing of this hot impostume, consisteth onely in staying of the affluent humors, and in discussing matter present.

Now for to heale this impostume, one must imitate the first rule, and in the beginning open the vaine on the contrary side. But if so be that the tumor haue already continued thre or four daies, and the same were very big, then is the vaine to bee opened on the same side where the swelling is. The patient is also to be purged with sower Dates, with Cassie, with sirupe of Roses, with the Confection of the iuice of Roses, or such like, and lay vpon it repulsive medicaments for to lessen the power of the swelling, as cold herbes, Pursaine, Gourds, Endiue, and Rightshade pouned, and their iuices.

When as now the cause is come to the state, and to the highest, then are maturatiues to be vsed, whereof here be diuers discovered.

Some Doctoe Philosophitions do aduise, that do not knowe better, or they that gladly holde the matter long in their hands, that the swelling is the space of thirty dayes together to be fomented with *Marchasita*, but that is very needeles.

This Confection following is of the same quality, and therfore to be also omitted: Take *Serpularia*, Polypody rootes, Betony and Swines bread, of each one dragma, poune them small together, and being tempered with three ounces of Sugar, make a confection thereof. For to apply vnto it might this also be said be boine withal in some sort, so that it mollifieth al hard swellings, like as many other plaisters doe.

Take the muscilage of Hollihocke rootes, of Fenegræke, and of Linfæde, of each one ounce and a halfe, Barley meale two ounces, oyle of Lillies and Vens grease, of each one ounce, Butter halfe an ounce, Saffron halfe a scruple, and one yolke of an eg: seethe the muscilage with the meale by a milde fier, and at last stir the yolke of an eg amongst it. This plaister mollifieth all swellings which bee mired with cold and heat: it swageth also the paine in all the sinewy partes, and such like things moe. Will you now vse it for all cold swellings? then temper amongst it *Ammoniacum*, *Bdellium*, and liquid Stozay, of each halfe an ounce, wherewith it is very commodious to mollifie and ripen all hard swellings.

Another. Take Cammomill one handfull, seethe it in good wine euen to the halfe, then temper amongst it Sallet oyle and Butter, of each one ounce and a halfe, and as much Barly meale, untill it be a pap: then lay it vpon the tumour, it ripeneth and mollifieth all hardnes.

Item, take Cammomill, Helilot, Roses, Will seede, Fenegræke, Hollyhock seede, and Linfæde, of each one handfull, oyle of Lillies, and vnsalted butter, of each two ounces, Saffron one scruple, temper them together by a soft fire vnto a plaister, it mollifieth all hardnes, and easeth the paine.

Another. Take Cammomill, Helilot, Pallowes, and Hollyhock floures, of each one handfull, Barly meale one ounce, oyle of Lillies and of Cammomill, of each one ounce and a halfe: seethe the floures in sufficient water vnto the halfe, wring it out well, and poune it: put then the oyle and meale vnto it: this plaister hath the same operation with the other. Yet one moe, which is very good:

Take Vens grease, Gole grease, and marrow of Petes fæte, of each one ounce, Muscilage of Hollyhock rootes, of Fenegræke, and of Linfæde, of each one ounce, *Bdellium*, *Gallbanum*, and *Ammoniacum*, of each one ounce and a halfe: dissolue the gums in two ounces of oyle of Lillies, and then melt them with the grease and slime. Then poune 24.oz 25. of fat Figs amongst it, and then stirre them all together, and lay thereof vpon the swelling. For to annoynt, is this following to be prepared: Take Beane meale, Allome, Polipody rootes, Swines bred, wild Cucumbers, Hartwoorts, *Serpularia*, of each alike quantitie beaten, Sallet oyle as much as is needefull for to make a salue thereof. This is a very strong salue.

Take well decocted Rosemary rootes, and temper them with Hony: Item, take oyle of Roses one ounce and a halfe, washed Turpentine two ounces, *Mirra* halfe an ounce, the yolks of two eggs, Barly meale as much as is needefull for to make a soft plaister with it. This plaister causeth all swellings to ripen: Take Violets & water Lillies, of each one ounce, oyle of Quinces halfe an ounce, Starch two ounces, Camfer one scruple, fine *Bolu* one dragma: make a salue thereof for to vse for all hot swellings. Item, take Pitch, Turpentine, and Rosen, of each one ounce and a halfe, Ware one ounce, Sallet oyle three quarters of an ounce, let them melt together by a milde fire. The plaister *Diachylon* doth also much mollifie all hard swellings.

In the second part the second Chapter and 7. S. you haue many excellent things which also may be used for this purpose.

But if so be that these hard kind of swellings and impostumes be ripe, which is thereby easily to be knowne, when the heate, the ague, and other accidents do diminish: also, when the hardnes is mollified, then must the swelling be opened, and so kept with taints, and to cleanse it well, so that for certaine dayes together all the matter and corruption may runne out: lay also clouts on euery time with red or any other amper wine, wherein Roses and Cammomill haue bene decocted.

If so be that now after the healing like as it hapneth sometimes in these kinds of hot swellings, there remaine some paine which keepeth the patient disquiet, then lay beaten yolks of eggs vpon it, tempered with oyle of Roses.

Or take crums of white bread, and powze seething water vpon it, then wring it out againe and temper them with oyle of Roses vnto a pap.

Item, seethe Pallowes in common water, stamp them, and temper them with Bran and oyle

oyle of Violets : to all these foze mentioned things are you to temper alwayes some Saffron, because that it hath an especiall power in alaying of all paynes.

Of the Rose, a certaine impediment, called *Erysipelas*. §. 12.



Amongst the hot swellings whereof commonly the foze said impostumes are caused, is also the Rose or *Erysipelas*, which is none other thing but an inflammation of the skin, which in this countrey we call the Rose.

The Latinists do call it *Ignem sacrum*, which is the holy fire, for that when the Rose appeareth in any place of the bodie, then doth it come with a burning heate, with an ague, and with a dry rednes. And to know this impediment from all other inflammations, lay your finger vpon the chiefeft place of the rednes, wying it so easly, if so be that then the place whence you lift vp your finger that you had so wying do seeme white, and in the twinkling of an eye same red againe, then is it a sure signe of the Rose. This swelling commonly assaileth one with a quivering, with heate, and cold, it infecteth also only the skin without piercing (as other swellings) into the flesh, or very seldome, and when this inflammation of the Rose goeth inward into the bodie, then is it a very bad signe.

Now for to heale this infection of the Rose, must haue be taken to these orders following. First, can not one do better, then to purge this hot cholerick matter (whence this swelling hath his foundation) with necessarie medicines : secondly, these cholerick humors (which be as it were a skumme of the blood) be not only a cause of this Rose, by their abundance, but also by their heate and inflammation : wherefore it is not hurtfull for to open a vaine, thereby to cole the blood. Thirdly, the coling of this inflammation may not be vled in all places by laying on of some repulsive things, to the end that the hot matter be not repelled and driuen to any noble part, as to the braynes, the hart, &c. whereby some great mischance might ensue.

Fourthly, no cold things are to be vled for this swelling, if the bodie before be not well purged. Fifthly, it is not needfull for to ripen these swellings, but only to cole them. Sixthly, if this Rose be without any mixture of other swellings, then doth it not hurt, although one drinke cole water, but it is rather a medicine in this disease. Seuenthly, when the swelling is caused of a red Cholera, then is it so much the hotter, therefore strong coling things are to be vled. Eighthly, if so be that this swelling be tempered with another sort of swelling, then is the same so long to be coled, vntill one perceiue that the member hath gotten againe his naturall colour. Ninthly, if the place of the swelling begin to seeme black and broune, then vse no coling things more, to the end that thereby it come not to impostumate and ranckle.

And to prevent these things, this is to be done : first of all purge the patient, for to expell the Cholera with Cassy, *Electuario Lenituo*, *Diaphanicone*, *De succo Rosarum*, *De Sebesten*, as is shewed at large in the third part, the twelfth Chapter, and 6. §. But it were not amisse alwayes to adde some Rubarb vnto either of these medicines.

But aboue all, he must beware of the vse of Scammony, or *Diagridion*. But take 24. or 35. Prunes, so wye Dates one ounce and a quarter, seethe them well in sufficient well water, then take of this decoction thre ounces, and steape therein one dragme of Rubarb throughout the whole night, afterwards wying it out in the morning, and mingle one ounce of the sirupe of Violets with it, or as much as you thinke good, and so drinke it warme. If this purgation be to weake, then take some of the fozenamed, and especially *De succo Rosarum*, and temper therewith one quarter of an ounce. It hapneth also oftentimes, that through the taking of any medicine, paine and marvellous accidents are perceiued, then is the patient presently to take warme water, or this ensuing.

Take Annis, and Fennell, of each halfe a dragme, Roses, Violets, floures of Burrage and of Buglosse, of each halfe a handfull, Saffron thre greynes, seethe it together with water, and drinke a good draught thereof, or lay it vpon the stomach.

Afterwards set a boring cup (vnpickt) vpon the hart, and two behinde vpon the back, and if so be that the age, and the repletion of the bodie may suffer it, then is the luer vaine to be opened : otherwise may it be omitted, for that in this disease letting of blood is not alwayes necessarie.

This whole order of dyet must be coling things, wherefore wine is much forbidden, and

in the skæde thereof, is there nothing moze requisite than Barly water. There may also be vsed sometimes the sirupe of Endiue, of Vineger, of Dorell, and of Poppy heads, or the sirupe and Julep of Roses, and of Violets is also much commended, and if so be that the long vse of Barly water went against him, then may he drinke Well water; as herebefore you haue seene further direction in a hot stomacke and liuer.

For to vse outwardly: Take Lettice, which is somewhat grossly beaten, and lay it vpon the heate of the swelling: or in the skæde thereof, take Lettice water. In like manner may you also vse this following, whether it be tempered, or eache alone, being made wet with a sponge, and so laid vpon it, viz. water of Endiue, of Cozine roses, of water Lillies, of Violets, or the decoction of Roses.

Item, lay Creame of milke vpon it, tempered with Bran, or Crummes of white bread, steeped in milke; and in like manner also *Oxyrrhodinum*. Or take the iuice of Plantaine, and iuice of Houlleke, of each a like quantitie, and temper some Vineger with it. Some doe vse for it the right writing inke. Take Plantaine one handfull, Nightshade and Violets, of each halfe a handfull, Linsæde and Fenegreke meale, of each halfe an ounce; let it sethe together to growte: Afterwardes temper the yolke of an Egge amongst it, and vse it as the other.

Another: Take Barley meale two ounces, Linsæde meale and Roses of each one ounce and a halfe, red and white Saunders of each one quarter of an ounce, fine Bolus, and Camfere, of each one dragm, the iuice of Nightshade and of Houlleke, of each two ounces, and a little Vineger: temper them all together with the oyle of Roses vnto a softe plaister.

This oyle following is also very good for to alluage heate, viz. oyle of Roses, of water Lillies, of Violets, and of Poppy heads. Nevertheless, there is here to be noted, that al oyles and fat things be not very mete for this; so that they are not to be vsed for this disease, but onely for to mixe them with other things.

For to annoint withall, take small powdered litharge of golde, temper it vnto dough with oile of Roses, afterwards put a little sharpe vineger vnto it, and stir it so long together vntill that the Vineger be well tempered amongst it: this is chiesly to be annointed vpon the Rose there, where there be any blisters apparant, thrise times a day. The salue of Roses, and the cooling salue *Galen*, bee very good for this, especially if there bee a little Camfere tempered with both these.

Also this salue following may sometimes bee annoynted vpon it: Take the oyle of Roses, of Cammomill, of Egges, and iuice of Plantaine, of each a like quantity, temper them all together.

Or take this following: Take the iuice of Plantains sower ounces, Rose water, and oyle of Roses, of each one ounce and a halfe. If you desire to make a salue thereof, then let it sethe vntill all the iuice be waisted, & then put some waie vnto it: Otherwise may you dip a cloth therein and lay it thereon, and as then, the last described pay ouer it, beginning, Take Plantaine a handfull, &c.

Item, take Barly meale, Hony, and the iuice of Apples, of each a like quantity, let them sethe together vnto grout, and vse them as the other. You may also vse fomenting, where Roses, Cammomill, and Houlleke be decocted.

Of the swellings of the Groynes, Armepits, and Eares. §. 13.



¶ Haue here before in the common description of the Impostume and swelling admonished, That there is also comprehended by the same name, the swelling of the groynes *Bubones*, as also the Carbuncles or plague sores. But because these swellings doe commonly appeare in man and woman in the armeholes, or in the groynes: therefore haue we in the third part, the second chapter, and first §. written thereof at large. And it is also so with all other anguishes, Byles,

Furunculis, but that they be somewhat moze tolerable.

Of the Carbuncle or plague sore, a perillous swelling. §.14.



This Impostume doe the Greekes call *Anthracem*, which is a Cole; the Latinists call it *Carbonem* and *Carbunculum*, which name we haue retained in our speech, notwithstanding that some make a difference betwene *Anthrax* and *Carbunculus*. This impostume is described as followeth.

Anthrax is an hot impostume, by which the place where it appeareth is inflamed, burneth the grosse blood, and causeth a blacke cole or coze with an intolerable paine. And there is also in trueth no worse impostume amongst all the rest then this *Anthrax*, as all well learned Physicians doe write thereof, and as daylie experience bringeth with it.

The signes whereby these two impostumes be knowen, is first a rednes of the member, with a small blackish, darke blew, or pale pussh, whereon a scale groweth, vnder the which there is some matter or corruption gathered. But by reason these hot Carbuncles, or plague sores, for the most part, and most perillously make thewe in the time of plague (where shall be written at large of this matter) therefore will we not deuide the matter: but all those that are taken with them at other times, we doe remit to the first part of this booke, prouiding there to teach at length whatsoeuer shall seme needefull for it; therefore we will be the briefer at this present.

First must they which be infected with this disease, cause a vaine to be opened, and that on the contrary side, if so be that he be full of blood, and of humors: afterwards vpon the same side: and if that could not be compassed, at leastwise there to set boring cups; afterwarde the patient is to be purged with the whay of milke, with *Epithymo*, with *Agaricu*, or with softer Dates.

For to comfort him withall may he vse Citrons, Limons, and Oranges. In eating and drinking is he to keepe himself, as one that is full of the ague, and according as the heat is great. Outwardly is he not to vse cold things, as in the Rose, for that the matter is somewhat thicker: But one may make a plaister of Gals, Plantaine, Lentils, of crusts of bread, or Bran, tempered with Vineger, Allome molten in Vineger, and then laid with clothes vpon it: for this are also good Pomegranates cut in peces, and decocted mellow in Vineger, and layd vpon it as a plaister: for thereby will the heate and the payne be swaged. Some for to cause this paine to ripen, make a plaister of Figs, of Currans, of Ruts, of Barley meale, decocted with Wine and oyle.

Round about the Carbuncle the salue of fine Bolus, made of Vineger and Rose water, for to defend the parts adiacent from heate.

When as now this anguish is broken vp, then is it to be healed and cleansed with the mundificatiue, which is described in the second part, the second chapter, and §. 9. and to vse drying things so long, untill that they be thoroughly healed, which may be effected with the salue *Basilicon*, which is thus made: take Ceruse five dragmes, Litharge of gold one quarter of an ounce, the Litharge of siluer one dragme and a halfe, Dragagant one dragme; make a powder thereof, and temper it with an ounce of white Ware, and three ounces of oyle of Roses, vnto a salue.

Salue Basilicon.

Of all manner of old Vlcers and old Sores. §.15.



These vlcers or old cozes, whether they be caused of Impostumes, winds, or any other occasions, be alwaies called by the Latinists *Solutionem Continuitatis*, which is a separation of continuities, which alwaies hapneth in al vlcers and sores, where the skin and the flesh parteth a sunder: whercof there be found many kinds, as we also haue described many of them before, and shall doe hereafter againe. But this present §. shall tell only of all old vlcers in generall: for which some of these rules following are to be obserued.

First, if one see that an vlcere or wound doe yeelde much thin matter, then is it a signe that one is to vse drying things. Secondly, if so be that the matter be tough and thicke, then are *Absterfina*, which are mundifying things, to be used. Thirdly when these kindes of vlcers be dressed, then is haede to be taken that the vlcere bee not blownen vpon with the southe winde,

winde, that there come also no cold, no moisture into it, and that especially when the vlcer is moyste and hote. Fourthly, for all wounds drie things be good, and that the rather if the same be drye. Fifthly, because there can be no good flesh engendred, vnllesse that the wound be first well dryed and clenfed, therefore such things must bee vsed for it at times, otherwise should the matter be augmented in the woundes, and be vnpossible for to engender flesh. Sixtly, there will be no flesh at all engendred, if it be not that the salue bee like to the nature of the vlcer: therefore in all dry parts of the body dry things are to be vsed, & in moist parts moist remedies to be applyed. Seuenthly, it must be looked to, that there be vsed no oiles in any vlcer, for that they bring a putrifaction in all deepe wounds & vlcers, and especially in warme time of yeare whether it be in dry or moist complexion. Eightly, it is needfull, that in all qualities of the members, which be hurte with any wound, or vlcer, where flesh must be engendred, the blood must be well cleansed, because that the substance is out of which the flesh must grow: and this not only in the same member, but also ouer the whole body. Ninthly, the drying medicines shall be no higher than drie in the first degre, for that when the same drie too fast, then will the young flesh be consumed and dryed away. Tenthly, all drying medicines be very meete for all dry complexions: like as to the contrary, all moist medicines, be most necessary for all moist natures: whence it then followeth, that drie bodies or dry parties will be cured with drie medicines, and moist with moist. Eleuenthy, if the wounds or sores be moist by nature, then be drie remedies to be vsed for it. Twelfthly, if there be two kindes of vlcers, which be like one another in the matter, & the one were in a dry body, and the other were in a moist body, then in the vlcer in the dry body, are such things to be vsed which be more drie, and in a moist body apply remedies which do drie lesse, for to heale the same: therefore is frankincense, and such like to be vsed in moist bodies, because that it dryeth not forcibly. And on the contrary, Hartwort, Treos, and such like things, which do drie forcibly, are to be vsed in dry bodies. Thirtenthly, the vlcers which yeld a thick matter and be swollen, are to be cured with such drying things which do not bite, as Pomegranat pæles, decocted Plantaine and such like.

Now concerning the cure, there shall be by each description especially declared, how that the purging, letting of blood, & such like shall be vsed: Here will we only discourse, as much as concerneth al old vlcers, what plaisters, salues, and other applications are to be vsed for them.

Take old Barrowes grease, Butter, Bucks suet, Honey, Ware, & Rosin, of each a like quantity, & a little wine: melt the same by the fire: afterwards take sallet oile as much as is needfull for a soft plaister: this being done, then wzing it through a cloth, and let it be cold. This salue and al other salues which here insue, may be freely vsed in all vlcers, obseruing alwaies the difference between heat and cold. Take sallet oyle and vineger, of each 2. ounces, Ware half an ounce, brylled litharge of gold one ounce and a half, Verdigrease one drag, let the Vineger be hot, & temper the other things amongst it, then sethe it together vntill that it be red.

This ensuing is very like vnto it: Take oile and vineger, of each two ounces, Ware halfe an ounce, the litharge of gold one ounce & a halfe, Masticke and Verdigrease, of each one drag, sethe the oile and vineger so long till the vineger be all wasted, and vntill the salue ware red.

Item, take oile of Roses 3. drag. oile of Cammomil one drag. Ceruse one quarter of an ounce, Dragon blood & fine Bolus, of each half an ounce, Camfer one drag. litharge of gold halfe a drag. prepared Tutty one quarter of an ounce, Cozall one drag. Ware as much as is needfull for to make a plaister: then spread it vpon a leather, and lay it vpon it.

But before that there be this or that laid vpon it, the vlcer is to be oftentimes washed with this ensuing: Take white wine fower ounces, Rose water 2. ounces, the white of a hard sodden eg brylled smal, burnt Allom one quarter of an ounce, Verdigrease one drag. sethe them all together by a mild fier, and let it afterwards settle: then straine it, and keepe it well stoppt: and if it be too strong, then take more wine and Rose water vnto it.

This plaister following is called at the Apothecaries *Basilicum*, and of the Chirurgians, the *Salue Basilicum* other-
wise.
water plaister. The same is especial good for all dry sores, which be without matter or moisture, and especially for the sinewes, for that it dryeth, clenfeth, and causeth the flesh to grow, and is thus prepared.

Take Ware, Rosin, Dre suet, Pitch, Turpentine, Frankincense, Pirrhe, & Colophonium, of each a like quantitie: but first you are to melt the Ware, & then the Pitch amongst it: afterwards put the Turpentine into it, & then mixe the Pirrh & the Frankinsence powned smal amongst it.

Now when it is cold, so that it may be handled with the hands, then must it be wrought thoroughly with wet hands. Out of this will also a salve be made with oyle, like as before in the 14. S. you have seene another.

Item, in the second part the third Chapter and 9. S. is there one more, which beginneth thus: Take clarified Hony &c. which may be vsed for all hot and cold vlcers.

The Chirurgians do vse this following vnder the name of the greene plaister: Take Dogs greafe, Mare, Hosen, and Barrow greafe, of each one ounce, Nightshade and Pallowes, of each one handfull: sethe the herbs to pay in Goats milke, vntill it be all together thicke, afterwards poune it all together, and temper it one with another.

Where soeuer there be any Blisters which will impostumate or rankle, which the Chirurgians do call *Coffos exulceratos*, thereto are these salues ensuing to be vsed: Take lytharge of gold as much as you will, scrape the same the space of two dayes in vinegar, and pouze of the vinegar three times, and pouze fresh vpon it againe; stirre it oftentimes about, and then let it stand in the hot Sunne: afterwards stirre it and bruse it the space of two or three hoours in a leaden mortar, putting vnto it in stirring it now and then a little Vineger, Violets, and oyle of Violets, vntill it be thicke: then at the last put two ounces of Ceruse vnto it, the iuice of Plantaine and of Houslecke, of each halfe an ounce, Camfer halfe a dragme, and two whites of eggs, so make thereof a soft salve, and annoynt therewith all Blisters which be caused of heate, and all other exulcerations of the skin. The next day after is this disease to be washed with this water following: Take Dock rotes, Pallowes, and Violet leaues, of each one handfull; sethe all together in faire well water, and strayne it throught a cloth, afterwards temper it with Rose water as much as you please, and vse it oftentimes.

Of a stinking and running vlcet. S. 16.



These vlcers or stinking sores do come of grosse and tough humors. When one will heale them, then is the patient to eate none other but light meates, and to drinke thin drinke, and to purge the watery and melancholy humors, so the more that thereby all affluent humors may be taken away. In like maner is the patient to be let blood, if there be none other thing that letteth it: and to cut out all foule stinking flesh, or to bite or eate it out by some cautery that there may grow new and good flesh in it, for the which these things following are very commodious.

First, for to cleanse the vlcers, therefore is speciall good the salve *Mundificatum Apis*, which is described in the second part. Item, the salve of the Apostles, which may be found in the Register, and is marvellous good for all kinds of vlcers.

This following is also much commended: Take Plantaine water, wine of Pomegranates, and Hony, of each two ounces, Verdigrease and Allome, of each one ounce and a quarter: boyle them together vntill it become thicke, then apply it to the vlcers. Item, take vnripe Waller oyle one ounce and a half, burnt lead three drags, prepared Tutty three quarters of an ounce, Aspick, Frankincense, and Sarcocolla, of each one drag, and a half, sethe all together in 6. ounces of water of Plantaine vntill the water be wasted away: if you will then make a plaister of it, then put as much ware vnto it as is needefull. This salve is to be layd with plegents in the vlcet. This ensuing doth cleanse and consume all bad matter of the vlcet: Take quick lyme foure ounces, oyle 16. ounces, Dore setwet 3. ounces, Ware as much as sufficeth for a plaister or salve: melt them together, and stirre it so long vntill it be cold. Another. Take small sifted Wtemeale eight ounces, the iuice of Parietom and of Nightshade, of each foure ounces, fresh Barrowes greafe 6. ounces, temper them all together, and then lay it so thereon, the same both ripen, cole, & mundifie. There is also well prepared a very costly plaister, which is called *Gratia Dei*, which is especiall good for all stinking vlcers, fresh wounds, & for all bad flesh, iron, glasse, wood, poison, bones, and all that doth hurt in the woundes, doth it draw out and healeth it, which is made thus:

The plaister
Gratia Dei.

Take Turpentine one ounce, Hosen 6. ounces, white ware 1. ounces, Aspick half an ounce, Verueine, Betony, & the great Pimpernell, of each half a lb. Stamp all the herbs & sethe them in strong wine, vntill the third part be wasted: afterwards straine it & wring it out. When are you to sethe in this decoction the ware, Hosen, & Aspick, stirring it alwayes well about, vntill it be well mixed together, then set it from the fire, and then put the Turpentine and the rest into it, then

then stirre it very strong, so long untill it be thow cold. The Chirurgians haue also a plaister, which they do call the blacke plaister, which is verie good for all wounds, vlcers, and fistulaes, and is thus prepared: Take Amber, Herdigrease, Sulphure, Lycharge of gold, Lime, and Bay berries, of each a like quantitie, pouned verie small, clarified Honie, as much as is needefull for to make a plaister of a salue.

The blacke
Plaister.

The salue of Egypt called *Vnguentum Egyptiacum* doth also cleanse exceedingly al fistulaes, Sinking vlcers, and clenseth them of the bad flesh, and is thus prepared: Take Merdigrease fine drag, cleer Honie one ounce and three quarters, strong Vineger 7. drag, then seth them together untill it be thick enough. It is an especial good salue for al sinking sores, to cause the same to dry.

Salue of
Egypt.

Item: take Merdigrease half an ounce, salt peter one ounce, bruse them together vpon a stone & set it on fire with a paper, then will the salt peter be burnt: all that remaineth on the stone, that are you to lay with the stone and all in a moist celler, and the stone lying a way, then in time wil there be an oile run out of it: then temper this oyle with Rose water, or with the white of an egg it is so strong alone, but it healeth passing well.

Item, these oyles insuing be also very good for such like vlcers, viz. oyle of eggs, of Will, of Allicies, of blew Flower deluce, of Walflowers, and oyle of Tiles.

Amongst the waters & such like be also good the two foresaid golden waters, which we shall describe hereafter in the last part, and P. Triskrams water, one of these which one will drinke, or applied to the vlcers.

For this may also be used a certaine leigh tempered with Sallet oile, which hereafter shall be described against the burning with gun powder.

Do make this following: take small cut Hartwort one quarter of an ounce, *Alfa farida* one drag, Centorie one dragme and a half, quicklime halfe a dragme: lay them altogether to steep in a pinte of Leigh, afterwards seth it untill a third part be wasted, wherewith the vlcers is to be washed luke warme. Item, poune Honie suckle to powder, and let it boile wel in wine, afterwards lay this wine vpon the vlcers. The chirurgians haue also sundry powders in vse amongst which there is one very common, which they do call the red powder, and is prepared thus: Take Colophonium one ounce, Comfrey, Bloodstone, or Argall, Dragon blood, and Pompy, of each halfe an ounce, make a powder of all these: the same doth heale all vlcers, wounds, and fistulaes, when they be clenched from all soule flesh. You may also vse it in all wounds. Item, take Beane meale halfe an ounce, mill dust 5. drag, Pasticke halfe a drag, Dragagant, Gum, Pompy, fine Bolus, & Dragon blood of each one scrup. temper them all together, & throw it in the moist vlcers. If this powder may one make also a plaister putting ware and Turpentine vnto it, which most mightily doth dry all vlcers. It is also much commended that all they which be troubled with an olde vlcers, ought to take in one drag, of Pithydate or Treacle, more or lesse according to the ability of the person, and that with the water of Fumitory: the like may be also vse the stomachicall powder which is expressed in the first part, the second chap. and 1. S. beginning thus: take Beane leaues, &c. which powder if so be that the patient doth vse it diligently, he neede not feare at all of any bad vlcers. The Rosemary wine is also much esteemed, for that it consumeth all excessive moisture of the body, and keepeth the body in good health. Item, if one wash the vlcers therewith, then will it both cleanse and heale it.

The red
Powder.

Of the broken vaines called *Varices*. S. 17.



If these *Varices* or broken vaines, is verie much admonished in the fourth part in the beginning of the second Chapter. And although this broken vaine do appere most in the hips, & in the legs: neuertheless the same do also happen in other parts of the bodie, where they be sene knobbed, grane, and blacke. These said vaines of the breast, do sticke full of melancholic blood, and are verie ill to be healed.

They which labour much with the legs, tranell much by land, do beare heauie burthens, and do eat many melancholicke meates, are for the most part troubled with these broken vaines.

Concerning the meanes whereby these broken vaines are to be healed, is that at first the *Basilica* be opened, and that the patient be purged with such medicines as expell melancholicke humours, wherof there be sundry expressed here and there in this Booke, and that is also oftentimes to be done, and he is to beware of all grosse meates.

When as this hath bene continued a long time, then are the broken vaines to be opened, and the blood to be let runne cleane out of it. Some doe also vse the actuell cauterie: yet must the vppermost vaine be opened where it first beginneth, and afterwards to lay vpon it this salve or plaister: Take Ceruse, Antimonie, Lycharge of siluer, and burnt Lead, of each one ounce, shapen suet fower ounces, Frankinsence, Pomie, Sandaraca, Sarcocolla, burnt Allome, and dragon blood, of each three dragmes, oyle of Roses, and Vineger of Roses, of each three dragmes, white Clare and Rosin, of each halfe an ounce: temper them together, and then make a salve or a plaister thereof: this is also good for all old vlcers, for it dryeth and swageth the paine. Item, Take frankinsence, Pisticke, Pirthe, and Pomie, of each one dragme and a halfe, the iuice of blew flower-deluce two dragmes and a halfe, Hartwoort, Southernwood, and prepared earth twozmes dried to powder, of each one dragme, brused small, Lycharge of gold halfe an ounce, burnt Coperas, burnt Lead, Gals, Cypers nuts, the rootes *Cnicum*, white and red Coprall, and Roses, of each two ounces, Dore suet, and oyle of blew flower-deluce, of each one ounce: poune all that is to be poune, but the Rosin, the Turpentine, and the oyle are to be molten by the fire, and so tempered with the rest to a salve. Some do take Lupine meale, and make a plaister with water, wherein *amariscus* is decocted, or with Goats dung and Wine. Also the vppermost members from whence this heauy blood sallety do come, are to be strengthened and their disease cured.

The second Chapter.

Of depascent Vlcers in generall. §.1.



As much as we be now come to write of those vlcers which doe not continue in a place, but corode hitherwardes and thitherwardes corrupting the skinne, the flesh, yea sometimes the bones: therefore is it first to be known that these vlcers be called *Phagedena*: but for the more difference, such like vlcers haue their severall names: amongst which *Herpes*, *Phagedena*, and *Cancer*, be the chiefest: the first whereof, to wit, *Herpes*, doth yelde much thynne and subtile moisture; the *Cancer*, grosse, and tough matter; and *Phagedena*, middle betwene thin and thicke matter; but *Herpes* is not alwaies an open vlcere, but creepeth in time hitherwardes and thitherwardes like a Snake, whereof this disease also beareth her name; the one place healing, and the other extoziating a new: *Phagedena* is a great vlcere, and corodeth very deepe into the place and on euery side of it: *Cancer* (which is the canker) shall hereafter haue his proper description. And albeit, these sores (as is said) do somewhat differ: yet are they for the most part comprehended all vnder the name of a *Fistula*, and it is thought that the *Fistula* is alwaies a cause of the other: therefore we will also first of all write of that.

Of the *Fistula*. §.2.



His name of *Fistula* (or *Fistell* in English) haue the Latiniis first of all giuen vnto this vlcere, which doth signifie a Pipe: for as a Pipe is long and hollow: so is the nature of this vlcere also, being deepe and hauing in the beginning but a small issue: for which cause it is described, as hereafter followeth. A *Fistell* is an vlcere, the which round about it hath a callous skin, deepe, and long, penetrating into the bodie, and verie crooked, which be hard to close vp or to heale: and the which sometimes also in steede of good matter, do yelde a subtile moisture.

It is found also that these *Fistells* which do appere verie little aboue in the skinne, and nevertheless do lie with their rootes deepe and hidden in the flesh, wherefore they be also the more dangerous to be healed, like as you may see in the seventh chapter, and eleuenth §. of the *Fistell* in the corner of the eyes. Item, where we discourse of the *Impossumes* of the eares, and also of the *Fistell* of the gums which are all together described in the first part, & in the second part, the third chapter, and nine §. In like manner also in the third part, the tenth chapter, and twelthe §. of the *Fistula* of the Arsegit. The causes of these *Fistells* may be precedent *impossumes* badlie cured;

cured; or for that one hath stayed too long from opening of them, whereby the matter hath eaten inwards, and so is turned into a fistell. In like manner may also a fistell growe of a wound which is not well mundified, also of fractures of bones, or any other bad humors of the bodie which lye hidden under the skin, and under the flesh, which do there corrupt the same, and be changed into a fistell. The signes be these, viz. when one wounding them, then be they without paine, if it be not that they stand somewhere about a sinew, or had some corruption in them. If so be that this fistell be only in the flesh, then will the matter be white in a short space. Or if the fistell be old, then doth it yeld a long space thick and troubled matter: or if the fistell be in a sinew, then is the matter thin and black, and if one wounding it, then doth there runne out bloudie matter. If so be the same be in the bone, then doth there runne out thin and yellow matter. And if so be that it pearse into the hollownes of the bone, then issueth a fat oyle matter, whereby may easily be guessed that the marrow is spoiled, with other moe such like signes, which be discovered in the same places.

Now for to heale these fistells, must certaine articles be noted: first, because all fistells proceede most of a waterish moisture, therefore are all drying things to be used vnto it, and the patient is to eate those things that make good blood. Secondly, by reason that the materiall cause is rooted in the bodie, then it is necessarie to haue the same prepared and expelled. Thirdly, in old and very deepe fistulæ, is it surest of all (if one will heale the same) that they either by incision or by an actuall cautery be taken away euen to the bottome, as to the contrary: The potentiall cautery because of the sinewes is dangerous and hurtfull. Fourthly, all fistells that goe into the bone will neuer moze be healed, if the bone be not first scaled. Fifthly, they that do go into the flesh, must of necessitie be dilated and opened, to the end that they may be the better mundified and dried.

The cure of this fistell is of great importance, so that the patient is to order himselfe in eating and drinking, according as the first rule giueth notice, and to vse all drying things for it: also he is to leade his life in a dry dwelling, and there to settle himselfe. Fish and such like things be no some for him, good flesh rather roasted then sod is commodious for him: his drinke shall be good wine: but because of the sharp matter, the same is to be somewhat watered. And for to prepare the matter of the fistell, take *Oxymel of Squills*, or *Diureticum* and such like, which may also be used in the fistell it selfe.

These be then the things which may be used outwardly: Take Frankincense and Aloe, of each one ounce, Gummed Hony five ounces, sethe the Hony untill it be thick. When it becometh to be cold, then temper the powders amongst it: at the last put one ounce and a halfe of molten *Assa fetida* vnto it, and then rub it a good while in a mortar. This is a passing remedie to heale the fistell, and also to cure all old blcers, for that it clenseth the same, it consumeth all corrupted flesh, it separateth all scurffe and corrupted bones.

Item, take Turpentine which is oftentimes washed with Sozrell water, foure ounces, the yolke of an egge, temper them together, and put five ounces of the iuice of Smallage vnto it, let it sethe together till the iuice be consumed; then adde halfe a dragma of Saffron vnto it: this clenseth and consumeth all that doth any hurt in blcers or wounds, and it maketh also flesh to growe.

Pert vnto this plaister and salve may ydu vse the water which not long since in the first Chapter and 16. S. is described, beginning thus: Take small beaten Hartwort, &c.

The Chirurgions haue also a kind of plaister which is not only good for all fistells, but also for all wounds, and is thus made.

Take Rue, Betony, *Herba vulneraria*, Buglosse, Agrimony, *Consolida Saracenicæ*, Parsley, Pimpernell, the great and small Plantaine, of each one handfull, poune them all together, and wring out the iuice: afterwards seth it in three pints of good wine, and wring it thorough a cloth; then put it into a Kettle, and put a pound of Turpentine vnto it, Make foure ounces, *Colophonium* eight ounces. This being all done, then seth it sufficiently, and when it beginneth to be cold, then stirre two ounces of pounded Gassir amongst it.

For this is also very good the plaister of *Gratia Dei*, the foresaid water of Hartwort, the salve of the Apostles:

Item, take the vrine of a man child, and rub it a long time in a leaden mortar untill it be thick, afterwards let it dry vnto a powder, and then strowe this powder on the fistell. The powder

potoder of Ireos strowed also thereon, causeth flesh to growe: the powder of Hony suckles is also very good for this vse. Rosemary wine, and such like moe that be discovered in the 16. §. be very good. Celendine pouned small, and so layd vpon the fistell: or the iuice of the same droppt therein, doth heale the fistels. For this may also be used the oyle of old linnen, as hath bene sayd in the first part. Item, make an oyle of water cresses, and spread it or lay it vpon the disease, wherewith it is mundified. Thus much be now witten of the fistula, now will we proceede to speake and discourse of the running vlcers.

Of the corroding vlcers, called *Herpes*. §. 3.



The name of this vlcer is as much to say as a Snake, like as we haue admonished already, so: that it creepeth forwarde like as Snakes do, and remaineth not in one place, but windeth it selfe hither and thither, infecting most of all the skin only, without eating deeper inwards. The cause of this vlcer or soze, is the same with that of the other, to wit, superfluitie of *Cholera*, if she merely remaine and abide in her proper nature, that is, if the *Cholera* be not mixed with any other humo: so: that when this *Cholera* doth spread it selfe ouer the whole bodie, then doth it cause the yellow Jaunders, which by nature is of two sorts. When as now this *Cholera* is thick and grosse, then will the whole skin euen to the flesh be thereby dammed, and this vlcer will be then called *Herpes exedens*, which is the corroding *Herpes*. The other sort of *Cholera* is subtiler, which remaineth (as is sayd) in the vppermost part of the skin, which doth singe the out side as if it were set a fire, the which without any addition is called *Herpes* or *Herpes miliaris*, as having the name of the Pilet seide, so: that this exulceration is like vnto it.

The signes of these vlcers be these: the member loseth his naturall colour, and becometh black, soft, and stinking: also if the pulse and the paine diminish, and in the meane while the vlcer doth so corrode, that if it be not looked to in time, the member must be cut off, or the partie must looke so: death thereby.

The remedies of these vlcers (sayth *Galenus*) be these which are wont to be used for the corroding *Erysipelas*, wherefore we may write so much the lesse thereof. But if it be perceived that it begin to putrefie, then temper sealed earth and fine *Bolus* with Vineger together, and spread it round about the vlcer, and also in it. But if this will not help, then be the corners round about the vlcers to be scarified, or lanced, and also to set boring cups and horse leaches thereon, which may suck out the bad blood: and this plaister following is also to be layd vpon it: Take Beasmeale, or Beane meale and salt, temper all together with the Srupe of Vineger, and lay it as a pap vpon it: the scarified place must also be washed twice a day with Vineger, and then to annoynt this salve following ouer it: Take *Assa foetida*, Pettie seide, and Hartwozt rootes, of each halfe an ounce, Werdigrease one quarter of an ounce, temper it with vineger to the thicknes of Hony, and annoynt therewith the whole disease, and the places about it. And to the end that these vlcers may not corrode any further, then take Werdigrease, Allome, & Hony, of each alike quantitie, and vse it as is before said. The selfesame taketh away all bad flesh, and sustaineth the new flesh. But in case that through these foresaid things the rotting ceased not, but dayly did corrode more and more, and the stench increased, then shall you strowe thereon this powder ensuing, to wit, pouned Hartwozt and Gals, of each alike quantitie. Or take Dragagant and Coperas, tempered together with vineger, and if so be that this foresaid do not profit, then are the eggs yea the whole accident to be cauterised with corrosiues or hot yrons: then take the rootes of Celendine, vnslackt lyme, Coperas, Pirrh, Hartwozt, and Werdigrease, of each alike quantitie, tempered with the iuice of Plantaine, or pouned Myrrour alone tempered with the foresaid iuice. When as then the corrosiues haue done their worke, and the crustes or staves be yet hard, then must they be annoynted with fresh butter vntill they do fall away of themselves, and afterwards those things to be used which are wont to ingender skin and flesh.

The other sort of these vlcers is *Herpes miliaris*, wherof we haue admonished before. Some do call it *Formica*, that is, the Ant. This vlcer is also of sundry natures, and that according to the nature of the humo, wherof it is caused. It is also comprehended in three sorts or species: the one, which runneth hither and thither, which is caused of a subtil moisture, and is also quickly consumed: the second, that creepeth forwarde hither and thither, which is very hurtfull; the

the third is of a grosse and hot *Cholera*, which entreth somewhat deeper into the flesh, and is mixed with some *Phlegma*, and thence cometh the *Formica miliaris*, which is hotter and harder to be cured. Out of all these foresaid reasons be the signes apparant, and befoze sufficiently rehearsed and discovered.

Now for to remedy this accident, is this the briefest way; that first of all be prescribed to the patient a good order of dyet, like as is done in the Agues: for purging is he to vse softer Dates, Cakes, *Epithymum* with Rubarbe, steeped in Endive water, or whey of milke. If it be *Herpes miliaris*, then take *Diarrhiza*. Further, you are to take Gals, Pomegranate pils, & fine Bolus, of each a like quantity: afterwards temper it with Rose water and a little Vineger, and then annoint it thereon with a feather.

Item, take the heads of salted fish, roast them in an earthen pot vpon the fire, untill they be almost burnt, and then mixe them with strong wine, spread it vpon the disease: or take thepes well, and frie it untill it bee blacke, then poune it, and temper as much Rose water amongst it, untill it be thick, and then annoint therewith the foresaid accident clean ouer, twice or thrice a day, and then lay a white or blew cloth vpon it. There be yet diuers other sorts of impostumes and vlcers, which be of the same nature, differing with names, and causes: but because we do comprehend them amongst the foze mentioned, therefore will we omit them, and especially because all they may be cured and holpen with these foresaid remedies.

Of the hard Tumor *Schirrhus*. §.4.



Before we come to the third corroding vlcer, namely, the Canker; we must first of all admonish of this tumor, which the learned doe call *Schirrhus*, of some *Sclirrhosis*. whereof we haue also made mention befoze in the third part, the twelfth chapter and the fifth §. and that by reason that this *Schirrhus* hath great alliance with the *Schirrhus* of the Liuer. This *Schirrhus* is of two sortes, and both those are of the vnnaturall tumors of the body, whereof one is so harde, that it yieldeth not at any hande; yea it is without paine and feeling, which is also accompted for incurable. This swelling is of colour like lead or albes, and is caused onely thorough Melancholy, the which is (as it were) dyeged of all humors. The second hath but a little sence, and also some paine: for it proceedeth out of *Melancholia* and *Phlegma*, which be tempered together, and is of colour like to the other. The same may also be cured, but not easily, as befoze we haue sufficiently written in the first chapter, and 11. §. This foresaid hardnes may be well caused of some former impostume, which is not well cleansed or healed: whereas the corruption remaining doth clog and harden. The difference betwene this *Schirrhus* and the Canker is, that in the compasse of the Canker there is heate, beating, and opening of the vaines; whereof there is none with this *Schirrhus*: for that *Schirrhus* is without heate, without paine, and without any sence or feeling, and also incurable. But soasmuch as this *Schirrhus*, doth appeare as well in other places of the body, to wit, in the liuer, milke, and stomacke &c. and that we haue written sufficiently in sundry places therof, therefore it is not needfull for to discourse here any further of it, but to proceede with the Canker.

Of the Canker. §.5.



This corroding vlcer, which is taken to be a kind of Fissell, hath her name of the sea Crab, which men call in Latine *Cancer*, which the Italians call *Grantzio*, and the Grecians *Carcinoma*, not onely for that it creepeth hither and thither, but also like as *Galenus* witnesseth, for that many times this Canker hath been sene, and especially in womens breasts, in all sorts like vnto the sea Crab, for the vaines doe reach into the Canker (being filled with blacke blood) no otherwise, but as they were the feete of the sea Crab. This Canker is in the beginning very easie to be healed: but if he grow old, and hath trod in too long, then hath it neuer been sene that the same could be healed without incision. The cause of this Canker is a superfluity of melancholike humors. Other do suppose that it is caused of melancholike humors which be burnt by *Cholera*. or bee partly tempered therewith: whereof the Physicians doe make two kinds of tumors; the one being a melancholick and hard swelling, without any vlcer, and with little paine as befoze (in the discourse of *Schirrhus*) we haue

haue shewed. The other sozt is a coroding vlcet, as we haue befoze declared. The signes of a beginning Canker be these; the same beginneth first as a small beane, round, and darke of colour, being tempered with greene and blacke colours, and appearing with some heate and paine: it remaineth also immouable in the same place where it beginneth: but herein hath the Canker a difference with the *Scirrhus*, viz. that the Canker is caused of burnt Melancholy, being tempered with burnt *Cholera*: and the right *Scirrhus* of a thicke melancholicke humoꝝ tempered with *Phlegma*. Secondly, the Canker causeth also great paine and beating, whereof *Scirrhus* is free. Thirdly, the Canker hath blacke and not red vaines about it, as the *Scirrhus* oꝝ the *Phlegmon* hath. Fourthly, the Canker beginneth first to growe of it selfe: To the contrary, *Scirrhus* doth alwaies come after some impostume. Fifthly, the Canker is very sensible, and the *Scirrhus* without any sence oꝝ feeling at all.

For this hard Canker, which is not yet exulcerated, be these rules ensuing ordained: first, the patient is to beware of all meates which ingendꝛeth burnt *Cholera*, of all spices, and of all things, which doe heat the bodie. Secondly, he is to eat no meate, but that which maketh good blood. Thirdly, if at the first and in the beginning of the Canker he lay thereto all that which is necessary for it, then may the Canker be holpen, but the olde Canker can be cured by no manner of meanes without incision. Fourthly, necessity requireth in this sickenes, that the body is to be opened with decocted *Epithyma*, which is also very mete for the lengthening of life, although that it cannot yeelde perfect health. Fifthly, in the beginning is the Median to be opened. Sixthly, when a woman, that is vnder fifty yeeres of age, hath the Canker, and hath not her termes, then must it be inducoured that she get the same. Seuenthly, if it be a man, then is he to open the Pyles. Eighthly, it doth not helpe to purge once oꝝ twice, but the same is to be done often times, for that the humoꝝs which cause this disease are not easily taken away. Ninthly, by this foresaide order, and through all meanes which be possible, are you to inducure, that the hard Canker be not opened.

We must also ordaine an order of dyet. First, regard must be had, that the patient haue his dwelling in a temperate ayze, which is somewhat warme and moyst. Also, he is to take hede of all hot meates that may inflame the blood, and whercof heauy thicke blood might ingender; as Coleworsts, Lentils, Beefe, Spilke, Hares, Gase, salted oꝝ smoaked flesh, Beanes, Pease, hote spices, Dinions, Carlicke, Leakes, Mustard, Cresses, Radish, and such like. Also the patient must beware of doing any kind of laboꝝ in the Sun, oꝝ of ouer heating of himself by any means, & of drinking strong grosse wine. But to the contrary, he must endeuoꝝ himself for to eat & drink none other thing but good hail meate, as Pullets, Hens, Lambe, Gutton, and Partridges: he may also eat all kinde of Riuer fish, which haue scales. Item, Parsley, Burrage, Purslaine, Lettice, Pompeons, and such like, be also not forbidden him: fresh sodden Egges, Waton pap, and Barly pap is also very good for him. His drinke must be clere white Wine, which shall be alwaies somewhat watered.

In fine, his whole gouernment must be moistening and coling: and if so be that there be any heate with it, then may he eat and drinke Buttermilke. And like as the first rule giueth to vnderstand, the Median is in the beginning to be opened, and to let out as much blood as the ability of the patient can suffer: and further to obserue all thinges that the former rules doe teach.

We haue not here to tell of any other remedies, because that we haue already witten in fower places of the Canker, viz. in the first part, the eighth chapter, and fist S. Item, in the second part, the third Chapter and tenth S. of the Canker of the breasts. Likewise also in the third part, the tenth chapter, and twelfth S. of the Canker of the Arsegit. Also in the third part, the 19. chap. and 13. S. of the Canker of the Patir: In all which places one may most plentifully see, by what meanes these diseases are to be remedied. Neuertheles, all that which followeth hereafter is very commodious to be vled, viz. the plaister *Gratia Dei*. But befoze you vse this plaister, some doe aduise, that round about the Canker should be well and deepe scarified, oꝝ to set Leaches about it, and to wash the scarified place thre oꝝ fower times with a sharp leigh, wherein Lentils be decocted, & after wards to fill the vlcet with flat plegents, which be annoynted with the salue of Egypt. But you shall vnderstand that the foresaide salue, like as also powned Agrimony, (oꝝ the iuice thereof, which be much commended for this disease) cause the good flesh to separate from the the bad.

Take Lupine meale, Linseed meale, and Barly meale, of each foure ounces, the iuice of Wormewood, and Salt, of each halfe an ounce, Sope and Leigh, of each a little, seth them then together to pap. Item: Take pouned Allome, and the powder of Earth wormes, of each one ounce. D; take fresh Earth wormes, poune them with the Allome, and so laye them vpon the disease.

Item: Take the Wine lées, and Allome, of each alike quantitie, and so lay it vpon the canker, and chiefly vpon the disease *Herpes*.

For this is also meet the salve of Roses, which is discovered befoze in the introduction. Likewise also the salve of Turia, which is called *Diapampholigos*, or this following: Take Apytharge of gold, and Ceruse, of each alike quantitie, put them together in a leaden morter with oyle of Cammomill, and Rose water, and rub it so long vntill it be as thicke as salve: this is as meete for the hidden and secret canker, as for the canker erulcerated. This insuing doth also withstand the canker that it grow no further, whether it be erulcerated or not: Take sealed Earth, fine Solus, and Ceruse, of each a like quantitie: temper it with the iuice of Lettice, or with the iuice of Woullcke, and then stirre it well together in a leaden morter as befoze, and then spreade it on the canker. The muscilage of Fleawort is also very good being tempered amongst it. The oyle of Sulphure, the oyle of Juniper, whether that it be distilled of the wood, or of the Berries, tempered together or each apart, be verie good for the canker. This powder following is also used to be strowed in this disease: Take burnt bones of a sound man, Cinquefoile, the rotes of *Mandragora*, and Oypiment, of each one quarter of an ounce, make a powder thereof and bestrow therewith the open canker: The Oypiment is very venemous and sharpe; notwithstanding it is commended aboue all other for the Wolfe, the Fistell, Canker, and in the Ulcer *Herpes excelsus*, if one knowe prouidently to vse it. This Oypiment was wont to be tempered with the iuice of Plantaine, or with the iuice of Nightshade, and to make a cloth wet in it: and with the powder of the same to bestrowe the vlcer, and then afterwards to lay the wet cloth vpon it. But when you will vse this Oypiment, then annoint the canker round about with fine Solus, which is mixed with the iuice of Nightshade, for to free the place from any inflammation. If so be that the soze be thereby dis tempered and swollen by with heate, then lay one day or twaine the soze: laid cooling herbes vpon it, the paine will assuage therewith.

If you will know whether the rote of the canker be taken away, that is to be knowne thereby, viz. if it stinke no moze, and if there begin any flesh to grow, like as is wont to happen in all other vlcers when they grow full of flesh, and be couered with the skin. It is a great abuse that some suppose that there is to be layd vpon the canker of necessitie the flesh of Hens, Capons, &c. the which the Canker should eat vp, and should lessen the maladie.

There is also used in the erulcerated canker *Mercurius precipitatus*, for that it is not so strong as the Oypiment. But the foresaid washing with Vineger, Leigh, and plaisters, is much moze surer and rather used. Item: take the rotes of *Verbascum*, and Dorce rotes, of each halie an ounce, the dyed ozdure of a sound man one ounce, make thereof a powder and vse that as the sumer. D; make a powder of Cheruill, temper it with Hony and lay it thereon, it healeth much. The water of *Cardus Benedictus* should haue a great vertue against this disease.

For the heate and inflammation of the Vlcers. §.6.



First, for this inflammation may those things serue, which befoze in the 1. chap. and twelue §. are ordained against the Rose. In like manner also all that which presently hereafter against the burning of fire and water shall be described, and especially this insuing: Take oyle of Eggs, and oyle of Roses, of each one ounce, Vineger halfe an ounce, blacke Bellebor ten graines: this being well tempered together, it is especiall good for all inflammations of all vlcers.

Other moe: Take Wollblade, poune it very small and temper it with Vineger, then lay it vpon the heate: D; steepe Quince kernels in water and annoint the heate with the muscilage.

Take Coyne roses, and Waterlillikes, of each alike quantity, beate them and lay them thereon: if you cannot get them, then take their water. For this is also good, the leaues of the Spulberrie tree: likewise also Poppie leaues decocted in raine water.

In like manner also broad Plantaine, and *Bursa Pastoris* layd thereon after the same order. The herbe of *Cardus Benedictus* decocted and layd thereon, is also good: the iuice of Bloes spread vpon the heate, doth take away the inflammation. But if so be that the inflammation hath gotten the vpper hand already, then is this following very good: Take strong water one ounce, and put therein one quarter of an ounce of Quicksiluer, and let it stand so certaine houres together: afterwards take a feather and annoint therewith the diseale once or twice a day, then shall the Canker begin outwardly, and in other places moe to separate, till that the soule burnt flesh will fall out: afterwards vse the salve *Apostolorum*, or the salve of Egypt with flat pledges therein, and that twice aday, afterwards lay some of the plaisters vpon it which be described against the wilde fire.

Item, for the cooling of this burning, take the oyle of Eldern flowers six ounces, the oyle of Saint Johns wort one ounce, oyle of Turpentine halfe an ounce, let them so mixed the space of certaine daies stand in the sunne, and then keepe it vntill the time of need.

There be many moe sundry things which be very requisite for this, especially in the treatise of the plague, therefore we will not rehearse them at this present.

The third Chapter.

Of the Pockes, and of the Lamenes which is caused thereby.



His sickness and infection of the whole body of man, is placed by god reason next to the aboue mentioned vlcers, because they excēde all other vlcers, except the before said in badnes: the which now a dayes when I did write this hath bene knowen about the space of threescore and ten yeres, and from the time that King Charles of Fraunce 1494. did besiege the Citie of *Neapolis*: so that this diseale vntill this present day is yet therefore called the French Pockes, and in Latine *Morbus Gallicus*. But the same sickness was knowen long before in Spaine, whither long before it had bene brought out of the Indies, and out of the new found lands, like as also vntill this time it is called by some *Scabies Hispanica*: so that before that any one could cure this diseale, people were burnt, launched, and cauterised most miserably, and rather spoiled then healed: but dayly experience brought by little and little moze helpe and mendment for it. And like as the Quicksiluer and such like meanes were not so sure, there hath bene found out at last the vse of *Guaicum*.

Now concerning the remedies of this diseale, I will first of all prescribe a proceſſe of the auncient Phisitians (the which in those daies was found good) and is as yet not utterly to be reiected, and afterwards alledge thre of the most famous Phisitians for this sickness, whereunto we notwithstanding shall at the last adde certaine good things moe, whereof each may chuse which one thinketh him to be most mete, and according to that the diseale doth require.

An order and cure of the auncient Phisitians. §. I.



So soone as a bodie can perceiue that he is infected with this diseale, then is he to keepe himselfe warme, to sweat much in hot bathes, to vse capping, to be let blood twice: afterwards he is to remaine in a close chamber, and to let himselfe be twice a day annoynted with this salve ouer all his ioints, and then to sweate vpon it the space of two howers: and because that euery one cannot abide to sweat, then must hee be had to the strength of the patient, to the ende he fall not thereby in any swooning.

Purging is also needefull for this patient, which may be done as hereafter followeth: Take white Turbith halfe an ounce, Ginger one quarter of an ounce, Calingall, Pasticke, Cloues, and Cardamom, of each halfe a dragme, *Hermodactyli*, *Diagridion*, and Sene leanes, of each halfe an ounce, Sugar thre ounces: take one dragme thereof, or one dragme and a halfe at once, and

fast five howres after it. They write that this powder may boldly be giuen, and that it may be vſed alſo in other ſickeſſes. It is neuertheleſſe very ſtrong, eſpecially if one take one Dragma and a halfe thereof: but in mine opinion two ſcruples is ſufficient in weake men, and a Dragma ſufficient in a ſtrong bodie ſo: to purge ſufficiently.

The ſoſeſaid auncient Phiſitions do alſo aduſe, that one muſt take one quarter of an ounce of prepared black Helleboe, viz. (a ſtrong bodie) ſteeped in Goats milke, and ſtragned, and then drunk, ſo: that it cleaſeth and healeth the Pocks: it is very good, but ſo: ſtrong perſons it is ſtrong ynough.

ſo: as much then as theſe ſoſeſaid medicines be very ſtrong, therefore can I not omit to adde certaine things of the later Phiſitions vnto that of the auncients, and to teach a ſafer meane, which all they which needes muſt vſe Quickſiluer ſhould obſerue. ſo: this you haue ſeene in the third part the 11. Chapter and 20. ſ. the maner to make the infuſion of Sene leaues; and how the ſame ſhould be drunken with ſome kinde of ſirupes. Theſe potions may one drinke thre: or ſoure times, every day once, earely in the morning: and afterwards (as the auncient Phiſitions do aduſe) the patient is to purge with pills *De Fumo terra* one Dragma, this is the common doſe of them, but it may be augmented or diminifhed, according to the abilitie of the patient. You may alſo ſteepe ſumitoy in Goats milke, or let them ſethe together, and drinke thereof in the morning and euening: or you may drinke the water of ſumitoy alone, ſo: the ſumitoy both cleaſe the blood marvellous much.

When as now the patient is well purged, then is this ſalue enſuing to be prepared: Take frankincenſe one ounce, Ceruſe one ounce and a halfe, Lytharge of gold two ounces, Dragon: blood one quarter of an ounce, poune them all together, and liſt it through a Sieue: afterwards take 16. ounces of molten Barrowe greaſe, and ſo poure it as hot as it is vpon cold water, and ſo let it ſtand: this being done, then temper therein one quarter of an ounce of Quickſiluer, ſo long, untill you can ſee it no more. Some do kill the Quickſiluer in Turpentine, or vineger of Roſes, but it is needeles: now then how this ſalue is to be vſed, that haue we ſhewed at the firſt. They deuide the ſalue in ſoure, ſiue, or ſix parts, and they ſpend in the inunction every day one part, according to the abilitie of the perſon. But becauſe that after this inunction the mouth will be ſore, they do vſe ſo: it Allome, and Barly water, and let the patient waſh his mouth herewith: or they take a pinte of wine, and halfe as much vineger, halfe an ounce of Allome, and ſomefulls of Hony, and tempered them together. With this do they gargariſe the mouth when the tongue is excoziated, to wit, with a ragge which is tyed to a ſtick, which hath bene deſcribed in the firſt part, the firſt Chapter, and 3. ſ.

Before times the ſick perſons which were infected with this diſeaſe, were wont to be moze plagued with lamenes, and ſo: that do they vſe this bath following: Take reſiſe of iron, make them glowing hot, and then caſt them into a cloſed tub, afterwards take Cammomill, Parie: rom, and Thyme, ſethe them, and make with both the vapors a bath: then dry off the ſweat with warme clothes, continue this the ſpace of eight dayes together, or ſo long, till that you be whole, at each time, the ſpace of an howre.

Item, take ſmall pouned frankincenſe, temper it with two ounces of *Aqua vite*, ſtirre it ſometimes about, and then annoynt therewith the members which be lame. If ſo be that the patient haue any vlcer, then take ſoure ounces of Barrowes greaſe, Quickſiluer one ounce and a halfe, ſalt Lard, Dogs greaſe, Beares greaſe, and Badgers greaſe, of each thre: quarters of an ounce, temper them all together. But note, that you muſt vſe the ſalt Lard in no other ſalues, but when you haue old vlcers in hand.

ſo: the ſoſeſaid old vlcers is this pouder following to be vſed: Take Salt, and white Argall, of each alike quantitie, burne them together in hot aſhes.

Alſo ſinking vlcers be made wet with this enſuing: Take halfe an ounce of *Mercurij Sublimari*, Allome thre: quarters of an ounce, Ceruſe one ounce, bruſe all together very ſmall vpon a ſmall Marble ſtone, put a pinte of vineger vnto it, and make a cloth wet therein, and there: with waſh the vlcer. Take *Mercurius Sublimatus* halfe an ounce, *Aqua vite* twelue ounces, then annoynt the vlcers with it: this is very ſtrong.

Of the lamenes, and of the extenuation of the members, hath bene ſpoken before in the fourth part, the ſeuenty Chapter and 2. ſ. ſo: the lamed member of the Pocks. This is in ſiue the meanes whereby the auncient Phiſitions were wont to heale the Pocks.

How

How to decoct *Guaiaicum*. §. 2.The decoction
of *Guaiaic*.

Before that we come to the curing of the Pocks which is vsed in our time, which hapneth for the most part by the decoction of *Guaiaic*, called *Lignum guaiacum*, and *Lignum sanctum*, we will first of all teach how this dyet drinke is to be decocted and prepared of *Guaiaic*, as followeth hereafter.

First, take small filed oshauen *Guaiaick* 16. ounces, *Stechas*, field Cipers, rindes of the same beaten small 12. ounces, *Carduus Benedictus*, S. Johns wort, yellow Lillies, and Betonie, of each one handfull, first put the wood and the pouned rinds in a leaden earthen pot, and then powze thereon seuen quarts of water: let them stand in stepe together the space of a whole night, being stoppt tight too: afterwards set the pot to sethe easily, when the fourth part is consumed adde the herbs vnto them, then put two quarts of wine vnto it, couer the pot close, and let them coole. The rinds, wood, and herbs, are to be dyed, and well kept for to haue the same vsed againe another time, as shall hereafter be taught.

The second manner: Take rinds of *Guaiaicum* eight ounces, *Guaiaicum* foure ounces, pouned small together, well water five quarts, let them stand and stepe together about the space of 24. howres, then sethe it all together vntill about the third part be wasted. Take it afterwards from the fire closed very tight, and let it stand so askepe the space of twelue howres: strayne it throuw a cloth, and wring it well out, afterwards powze vnto it as much white wine (which is not swete) as the potion is, then cast two ounces of *Hermoadilis* into it, and keepe this potion as before.

The third sort: Take foure quarts of Renish wine, and eight ounces of grated *Guaiaic*, pouned rinds foure ounces, Betonie, and pouned Licorice, of each one ounce, then let it stand askepe the space of 24. howres, and afterwards sethe it to the halfe: strayne the potion throug a cloth, and drinke thereof morning and euening the space of fortnie dayes, each time foure or five ounces.

The fourth potion: Take thre quarts of wine, rasped *Guaiaic* eight ounces, pouned rinds foure ounces, Licorice two ounces: let them sethe well together, and afterwards powze foure quarts of wine vpon it, and let it sethe againe vntill the fourth part be wasted.

These be now the most vsuall manners to make this decoction, yet may the same be altered according to the importance of the sickness, and according to the strength of the patient: now followeth here what order the Physicians now adayes do obserue in healing the Pocks.

Another manner to heale the Pocks. §. 3.



Before the patient begin to drinke, he ought first to be purged, for which the Cassie is most mete: also he is to be let blood. But especially this is the most fittest meane: Take Sene leanes, Polipodie rootes, and Cozans, of each thre quarters of an ounce, sethe them all together in five ounces of fennell water vntill the third part be wasted. In this decoction are you to stepe the space of a whole night Rubarb and *Agaricus*, of each one dragma: afterwards wring it out, and put vnto it one ounce of the hony of Roses, whereof you are at least euery morning to take one draught thre dayes together, and afterwards to obserue this order following.

The next day after the taking of these potions, must he in the morning betimes drinke foure ounces of the decoction of *Guaiaic*, as is taught before in the second §. and that as warme as he may abide it: then is he to slepe or rest one howre. He is to drinke so much againe and rest, and do this the third time. But after the third draught, he is to arise, and shall according to the old custome breake his fast, and that of such meates which be light of digesture. His drinke that he is to drinke on day times, is thus to be prepared.

Take the wood and the rinds whereof the first drinke hath bene decocted, and then powze water and wine vnto it (as is sayd) and let them sethe together vntill the fourth part be consumed, and this must be his daily drinke, but this may be altered diuersly, according to the quality of the cause.

Against the euening is he to drinke of the first potion a good draught very warme, and an howre

howe afterwards he is to go to supper, and so continue this untill the fift day; but the first day is he to take in the potion with Kubarb. The seuenth day he shall take none other but a spoone full of this composition following: Take small poudred *Guaiaic* one ounce, Haze halfe an ounce, hony of Roses two ounces, temper them together. The eight day he is to begin againe as before, to drinke of the first decoction, and so continue the space of ten dayes together, vnlesse it be found good to augment and increase it. The eighteenth day is he to take againe the infusion of Kubarb, and the two dayes following: Then is he to vse none other thing but Hony tempered with the powder of *Guaiaic*. Afterwards is he euery day thre howes after euery mealetime, to take thre ounces of this potion ensuing.

Take Juniper berries, and Bay berries, of each two ounces, Mustard seede halfe an ounce, poune them all grosse, and sethe them in foure pints of water vnto the halfe.

As long as one doth vse these things, he must keepe himselfe out of the ayre, and remaine in a warme chamber, for that thereby the matter of the Pocks is expelled outward towards the skin: and when you find that it breaketh out, then is he to wash himselfe with these things following: Take a quart of Vineger, Allom, and Verdigrease, of each one ounce, eight well bryed whites of eggs; poune all that is to be pouned, and then wash him with this Vineger: when he hath thus washed him therewith, and specially where there be any scales, then are they to be let drye, and the scales will fall off of themselves. Thus fareth it with this second cure, which is very safe, without any defect of the inward or outward parts, by which meanes there be a great number cured.

And as we haue sayd, his meate must be light of digesture, viz. yong flesh, eggs, and all that is drest therewith; also all other things which make good blood: but Milke, Cheese, fruit, and such like be very highly forbidden in this disease. For this may also be used the golden water which standeth described amongst other in the last part, whether it be drunken or annoynted outwardly vpon it. So is also Treacle highly recommended for the same.

The third cure of the Pocks. §. 4.



His cure ensuing haue I tryed my selfe in a woman, which had bled many sundrie cures, and could not be holpen: but by this meanes following she grew to be so healthie that I knew her twelue yeares after allwayes in very good health, without any hinderance of the same disease. First of all in this disease (like as in all other such like) the patient is to be purged, and that according to the abilitye of the person, and strength of nature. Further, in eating and drinkeing he is to order himselfe like a woman in Childbed.

After the Purgation, he is to take a good warme draught of the first and strongest decoction which is before described. Hauing taken the same, then is he to be couered warme, to the end he may sweate well, euen so much as his power may well permit. The sweate is to be dyed well with warme clothes: and it were very good that the clothes wherewith he hath bene once dyed, should be washed euery time, and that he put on a cleane shirt euery morning: for that if the patient keepe him warme and cleane, then may the potion haue her operation the better.

At meales, and throughout the whole day may he vse this potion following: Take boyled rinds and the *Guaiaic*, lay them to steape as before, and sethe them. This may also be done euen to the third time, and then to mire all the thre decoctions together. When one hath about two quarts of the very strongest decoction, then must one set againe to steape fresh *Guaiaic* and rinds, to the end that one may be times haue more drinke in a readines. If so be that the patient haue any outward soze or scabbednes, then is he to wash the same with the dregs of this potion, or lay it vpon it with a cloth: and if so be that the soze be somewhat dape, then be pledgents to be layd into it which be made wet in the dregs of this decoction.

This is so to be done in the morning after sweating and in the euening one howe before supper.

And if so be that these pledgents were baked therin, like as it hapneth also, then are they to be wetted with a little of the warme potion, and then to lay fresh to it againe.

The clothes wherewith his sozes be once drest, are not to be used againe without washing: Now when as these sozes be almost healed, and the flesh would grow too proud, there is then a

fine powder to be poulded of the rindes, and to be strowed oftentimes thereon; and also to be letten lie vpon it, vntill that there fall off dry scales: this powder dyeth much with all paine. But if so be that it be a rich person, that had need of the vse of this potion, then is he to take of the best Athenish wine, so; that it is moze penetrating than any other, and also not too hot.

Of the fourth cure of the Pockes. § 5.



It is first here to be noted, that in al these medicins ensuing no proper or due rules are prescribed, so; that they be not set downe by one Whistion onely, but gathered together out of sundry mens works, according as the cause requireth: wherefore euery one is (as he thinketh best) to chuse that which liketh him best. And so; that cause be al these remedies ensuing, ordained most so; the which could not be healed by the former decoction.

First it is needefull that the patient aboue all things, and before he vse any Sirupe or purgation, to take one ounce of well washt Turpentine, with a little flesh broth, or water of fumitory, made warme: so; this prepareth the way so; all other Whisticks, so; to penetrate the better thorough the whole body. So; that it hath been found before times, that thereby the working of the medicine hath been perceived euen vnto the great toe.

Whereby it may be knownen, what a power Turpentine hath so; to open the way so; Whisticks. This Turpentine is also giuen with the decoction, or with Palmsey, and it may also be made much stronger.

Take Turpentine as much as you wil, and put it in a glass: afterwards set it in the warme Sun, and temper a little Sugar from day to day amongst it, then stirre it well about. This is especiall good so; the head, so; the breast, so; the paine of the belly, so; the grauell, and so; the laxation of the body.

And to come againe to our purpose: This Sirupe following is especiall good so; the Pockes: Take Sene leaues, *Epithymum*, yellow Pirolalans, Sebestes, Licorice, and *Rapontica*, of each halfe an ounce, field Cipers three dragmes, Polypody rootes, fumitory or the iuice thereof, Hops or their iuice, of each twelue ounces, flowers of Burrage, of Violets, and Comin, of each three dragmes, cut all that is to be cut, and let it sethe together in fise quarts of wine, vntil about a quart remaine: afterwards take of this decoction a pynte, and temper therto the Sirup of fumitory, and of Hops, of each two ounces, Oxymel of Squils one ounce and a halfe, Sirup of Violets one ounce, good Sugar as much as you please; then take thereof three ounces at once, and that with Endine water.

You may also take this decoction with the infusion of Sene leaues, or water of fumitory certaine daies together, augmenting or diminishing the same, according as you would haue it so; to purge: this being done, you are to purge with Cassy or any other thing, according to the quality of the cause, as is before said.

You haue also in the third part, the 14. chapter, and 5. S. many kinds of things, which be all good so; the Pockes.

Of the letting of blood we haue also spoken before, which also doth much good in this sickness, because that the bad blood is thereby diminished.

But therein is no certaine order to be giuen, but you are to order your selfe therein according to the quality of the cause and ability of the person. But it is alwaies especiall good that the Hemorrhoides be opened: so; if they bleed not too much, then do they preserve one of the Pockes, and of Leprosie, as we haue taught in the tenth Chapter, in the beginning of the 5. S.

Before that now the inunction or *Srricado* be vsed, it is first exceeding needefull that one foment the ioints, and that he take so; it, Calmus, Parietom, garden Mints, Horehound, Bay berries, Southernwood, and Docke rootes, of each one lb. cut it all together, and sethe it in Well water, vntill about the third part be consumed: with this decoction before and in the annoynting, foment the members which are to be annointed, and afterwards with warme clothes to drie by the sweat, & then to annoynt them: this is so; to be pursued, as long as the annoynting indureth, which is commonly fower or fise dayes, and vntill the paine doth come in the teeth, the mouth and the flesh of the teeth excoziateth, and the phlegme doth excessively begin to issue and run, then is the inunction to be stayed. For this be many kindes of salues prepared, and

chiefly this following: take Barrowes grease five ounces, Quicksilver killed with the iuice of Sage three ounces, blacke Soap three quarters of an ounce, Argall beaten small one ounce: shake a salve thereof, and stir it together in a mortar the space of halfe a day, that it may be very well tempered together.

This salve ensuing is very much vsed at Augusta: Take fresh Butter halfe an ounce, Barrowes grease two ounces, Treacle and Spithivate, of each one quarter of an ounce, mortified Quicksilver one ounce and a halfe, prepared Litharge of gold and salt, of each one dragma and a halfe, oyle of Roses, and good *Aqua vita*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Saffron five greins: afterwards temper them altogether: this salve is called *Vnguentum Mercuriale*, and is by reason of the Treacle and the Spithivate much safer than any other salve.

Vnguentum
Mercuriale.

Item take Barrowes grease one ounce and a halfe, Turpentine and Quicksilver, of each halfe an ounce, powdered Bay berries one drag. and a halfe, oyle of Juniper one dragma, oyle of *Euphorbium*, and bused Cinober, of each one quarter of an ounce: temper it together. Item take Barrowes grease sower ounces, Quicksilver two ounces and a halfe: sethe it all together in sufficient Vineger, and put vnto it the ashes of Bechen wood two ounces, oyle of Bay one ounce and a halfe, Spallicke one ounce, Frankinsence one ounce and three quarters: temper them all together, so long vntill that the salve be blewish: and then annoynt therewith the patient but once a day, so that the salve is strong.

Note also that in case that any body be annoynted too much with Quicksilver, then is the iuice of the greater Pimpernell to be given him to drinke, wherewith some be holpen, in whom the Quicksilver was scene to lye in the vaines.

And because there appeare sundry accidents through the inunction, viz. Touthach, and of the gums, rawnesse of the throte, swelling of the throte, excessive slabbering, weakenes of nature, binding of the body and such like, wherin one must also be prouident.

first, the paine of the gummes is to be remedied with the iuice of Wormewood, wherein whites of Eggs be dyaed; to wit, if one wash the tæthe and the flesh of the tæthe with it, and cleanse the throte also with it. It helpeth likewise so; this to cleanse the mouth oftentimes with Shepes milke.

Secondly, take Rose water, and honie of Roses, or other clere Hony tempered with Whay.

Thirdly, this ensuing is much commended: take the iuice of Laurel, and cleanse therewith the mouth. Each one may trie this that will.

Some doe aduise that the mouth must be cleansed with cold water, or with the iuice of Nightshade, so that thereby will the sure of the mouth be stopt.

fourthly, chew Linseed, or the rootes of Malblade.

fifthly, this disease is to be eased with a kind of fomenting of the members, which haue bene annoynted before with warme water, wherein Rosemary and Sage is decocted.

Sixtly, it is needefull, that the patient liue very soberly, and doe vse good strong brothes, and other forcible things, and that all his meats and drinks be also mixed with all that, which doth strengthen and fortifie the hart.

Seuenthy, there is to be vsed so; this, Conserues of Roses, of Buglosse, of Burrage, *Manna Christi*, with Pearles, and such like things that strengthen the hart.

Eighthly, there is a common Clister to be set with Hen broth, Sugar, yolkes of eggs, and with salt; thereby to resist all accidents and obstructions of the body: and in great weaknes of nature, is he to vse Sugar of Violets.

Ninthly, prepare this salve: Take Gum, Beares grease, and oyle of Roses, of each a like quantity: temper them together with a little oyle of Balsam: then is the patient to annoynt therewith his face, both the temples of the head, and his hands; so; thereby shall he get againe his naturall colour. Now to pzeuent all those foresaid accidents, giue the patient one ounce and a quarter of Cassy; to wit, after the fourth inunction. And when he beginneth to slabber, then hold againe from annoynting, vntill two daies afterwards; then purge him againe after the third or fourth *Stricado*.

When you doe pzeuent the matter in that maner, then will the putrifaction of the mouth not be so hurtfull.

For the soze and soule gums is this following very good: wash the mouth oftentimes with

Vineger, wherein some Allome is molten. In the euening and morning be the teeth to be annointed with the salue of Egypt: but beware of swallowing the same salue downe. For the rotting or putrifying of the gums reade in the first part, the 13. chap. and 7. S. what is written there against the foule gums.

Item, take hony of Roses and the iuice of Pulberries, of each one ounce, Plantaine water 8. ounces, Allome one quarter of an ounce, then temper them together, and vse it to the washing of the mouth. You may also set boring cups vpon the shoulders.

For the Pockes that haue continued long. §.6.

If so be that this sickness be so stale or olde, that it be not well to be holpen, then giue the patient a Pill with Quicksilver, which is killed with the iuice of Limons, and with as much Rubarb, viz. of each about one scruple. If the paine bee nowe very great, then temper therewith *Opium*, & Saffron of each 2. grains. This is to be done alwaies about the second day, when hes goeth to bed, or that he let himselfe be annointed the space of eight dayes, where other wise he ought to be annointed the space of thre or fower daies. But alwaies after the fourth inundion is the patient to be purged, and to omit the same day the inundion, and afterwards to go on with the inundion vnto the end of the same eight daies, and when the eight dayes be compleat and ended, then is he to drinke the decoction of *Guaiaac*, made after the common manner. When as the third parte of this decoction is spent, then put vnto it two ounces of *Rapontica*, Turbith halfe an ounce, *Cardus Benedictus* halfe a lb. *Agaricum* halfe an ounce, Sene leaues half a lb. the rindes of *Guaiaac* fower ounces, good strong wine one quart, then let so much thereof sethe in againe, as there is wine put vnto it.

If so be that this will purge too strong, then giue him rather the potion of Sene leaues, which is described in the third part, the eleventh chapter, and twentieth S. euery second day. These pills also ensuing may bee vled for purging: Take *Rapontica*, Rubarbe, Hanna and Aloe, of each one dragma, Ginger and *Spica* of Indie, of each five graines; temper them all together with the sirupe of *Fumitorie*, and make five pills of one dragma waight, and take thereof euery euening twaine. The pills *Aggregatina*, and *de Lapide Lazuli*, are also good for this purpose.

If there be great paine with it. §.7.

If now there be great paine with it, then take Frankinsence, Litharge of golde, Argall, Pasticke, Ceruse and Allome, of each one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Bay and *Aqua vita* of each one ounce, Barrowes greafe five ounces, mortified Quicksilver one ounce and a halfe, then temper them together vnto a salue. This salue doth mellow all cozes, and clenseth also all vlcers.

Item, take Sallet oyle, the oyle of Foxes, or oyle of Costus five ounces, and sethe therein one drag. of Quicksilver; the same flyeth away, but the force of the Quicksilver remaineth still. This oyle swageth all paine of the Pockes, maruellously.

Or take the spirit of wine, which is foure times distilled, five ounces, Quicksilver which is mortified in Coperas water, one ounce and a halfe, yellow Saunders thre quarters of an ounce, Allome two drag. *Lignum Aloes* one drag. *Muscus* eight greins, *Ambra* five greines, steepe all these things together in the spirite of wine, and make a cloth wet therewith, and wash all the places, where the paine is: Or make a cloth wet, and lay the same vpon it, and especially vpon all the ioints.

Another: Take oyle of Roses fower ounces, wash Earthwormes and Turpentine, of each halfe an ounce, salt two drag. let it sethe well together, and so lay a cloth dipped in it, vpon all the ioints: you may also temper the oyle of Foxes amongst it, and then it is not onely good for the sinewes, but also especially for all paine of the Pockes.

Of the Byles in the Pockes. §.8.

If there appeare any blisters or biles in this sickness vpon any, then annoynt the same thre times a day with a salue which is before described in the first Chapter, and twelfth S. beginning thus; Take small panned Litharge of golde &c. But the expert Physicians

for the Pockes doe deeme, that there is nothing better for the Byles of the Pockes, then vn-
bleck Lime tempered with blacke Sope, for that this openeth the skin, and thereby will the pain
also be taken away.

You haue also in the fourth part, the first Chapter, and second §. in the description of *Sciatica*,
two very good and safe salues made of Hollyhocke rootes, and Clecampane rootes, for to mol-
lifie all hard nodos or knots. The grey plaister *Diachylon* may also be vsed very well for it.

But in case that the same be so hard, and so irremediable, that they must be opened by a
potentiall cauterie: we will put a mate Chirurgian in trust with the same, yet we will here
teach the making of a Coprosine to be vsed at neede, which is thus to be done.

Take Wine sticke, burne them to ashes, and ashes of Beechen wood, of each a like quanti-
tie, powze sufficient water vpon it, and then let it run slower times through a bagge. Of this
leigh take three quarters, and put vnto it blew Willowe ashes, vnbleck Lyme, ashes of the
Wine and of the Beech tree, of each half a pound: let this stand so the space of eight dayes in a
woodden vessel, stirring it about euery day three or slower times; afterwarde filter it so long
vntill it be very cleere. This leigh are you then to sethe in an iron pan vpon a good fier, so
long till it be sodden thicke enough. Now for to know whether it be enough, sticke a quill
into it, and if the feathers doe fall off, then take the pan from the fire, and holde it on one
side, to the end it may runne altogether, and may be hard. It is also here to be marked,
that when as in sething it beginneth to make bladders, or bubbles (like as pap is wont to
doe) then is it a signe that it is sufficiently decocted, and then cast it on a board, and cut it parcel-
wise: When it is thowowe colde and wares hard, then keepe it in a glasse, stopt very close and
tight in a drie place.

Another: Take vnbleck lyme, Wine ashes, Willowe ashes, Argall, and burnt Saltpeter,
of each a like quantity, poune it all small, and put it in a new pot: afterwards powze sharpe
leigh vpon it, and so let it stand three dayes space, but stirre it oftentimes about: filter this
leigh so often that it be very cleere, at the last sethe it and keepe it as before.

For all open sores in the Pockes. §.9.



Take Ceruse as much as you please, and Sallet oyle as much as is needefull, and
a little Vineger, and Rose water, bruse them together vpon a rubbing stone,
and annoynte therewith the running sores of the Pockes, and other.

Item: Take oyle of Roses, Saltpeter, and pæled Almonds, of each a like
quantity, Camfere a little, then rub it altogether as before.

For this may you also according to the importance of the cause temper small
brused Tutty, for that this healeth marvellous well all sores, and especially those which do stand
about the thyoate: but if it be feared that they eate too deepe inwards, then are they to be an-
noynte before and after meate.

For the Scales and other spots. §.10.



Take oyle of *Camelina*, and oyle of sweete Almonds of each slower ounces, Butter
and Harrow of oxe bones, of each three ounce, the grease of Geese and of Duckes,
of each one ounce, white Ware two ounces: make a salue thereof. This salue
hath a marvellous vertue in mollifying all scales, impostumes, and other scir-
rhosities, which procede of melancholy, and all hardened sinewes. Will you
then haue this salue to allwaie the paine more: then temper the brayed yolkes
of three eggs amongst it, and one dragma of Saffron. If you then desire to haue it to pearce more
stronger, then take *Bellium* and *Ammoniacum*, of each one ounce, dissolve them in Vineger, and
put them amongst it: then sethe them vntill that all the moisture be consumed, and stir it to-
gether one amongst another.

Nowe for to heale all cicatrices, markes, and spots, vse this ensuing: Take a pounce of
Sulphure, beate the same grosse, and sethe it with water in a conered pottle: but looke to it,
that there goe no vapour out of it: afterwards hold the member ouer it, and receiue the vapour
thereof

thereof: afterwards annoint it then with sweet Butter. You shall also finde good things for this in the description of burning.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the Leprosie.



A famous Whilitions do esteeme no disease vpon earth to be moze terrible & hurtfull than the right Leprosie: for that this malady doth so vehemently infect the body, that it not onely enfebleth all the members of the whole body, but spoyleth and putrifieyth also the same on al sides, that the members wil fall parcelwise from the body: & it taketh away utterly his whole natural essence, for that his nose will be crooked, broad, and fallen downe, his lips great, thicke, and swollen, and his eares sharpe: so that these people besides that they be disdained and despised of all the world, as if they were the filthiest creatures on earth, they must liue and die in misery. And to the end that we might partly learne to know the misery, which is caused through the Leprosie, these are the most common signes: the falling out of the haire of the beard, and the ciebrowes, hoarse speeche, a short, heavy, and stinking breath, great continual thirst, hardning and swelling of the spleen, unnatural heat of the liuer and of the kidneies, wherewith is commonly grauell also: the patient will be vexed with terrible dreames, and will be much plagued (as it is commonly sayd) of the night-Mare. He will also be vexed with much winde of the belly, and with great binding. Also the fingers and toes doe ranchle and swell, the nailles do sliner and cleaue, and spoyle, that at last they do fall out. Whersoever they haue any opennes, there runneth out alwayes a blacke, loathsome and stinking matter. Otherwise they haue ouer the whole body, a hot, irksome and itching scabbednes, with blisters and scales, which for the most part do appeare in the throat & in the nostrils, wherby they partly do take away the breath from the patient. He getteth thicke Cornels or knobs on the skin of the thighes, legs and fete, which doe get a numbnes, wherby the naturall liuely colour is altered into a dead black and blew colour. The eies do also get another fourme or fashion, wherby that their sight is darkened.

These be now (like as is said, and shall yet be said) the most common signes of the Leprosie, especially of them which the learned do call *Elephantiasis*, wherby all the foresaid signes do shew themselves not all at one time, but alwaies a good part of them. It hapneth also well, that otherwhiles but one member only, or some part of the body is infected with this disease, and not the whole bodie.

We will also discouer somewhat here of the causes of this sicknes. It may be caused of a bad ayre, as in time of the plague, by conuersation or dwelling besides Leapers, or by much speeche with them; for that thow their venemous breath may one be easilie infected. And this is such a disease wherby the one is not onely infected of the other, but the children also doe inherite the same from their parents; so that whether the man or woman be infected with it, the other will sone take it also. This miserable sicknes is wont also to be caused of great anger, long sorrow, feare and faintheartednes, wherby much melancholicke blood is engendered, and then out of it, the Leprosie. Item, of the long vse of melancholicke meates, as Pease, Beanes, &c. old Cheese, Goates flesh, Beares flesh, fores, Asses, and mealelly Swines flesh, all old salt flesh, grosse fish, milke and fish eaten together, and such like things moe. Item thowrough to hote a liuer, wherby the blood is burnt.

The Leprosie is deuided by the learned into sower partes, and eache species of the same called after a certaine beast, for that it hath a little likenes with the nature of the same beast: wherof the first is *Leonina*, of the Lions: the second *Tyria*, of the venymous Snake *Tyr*: the third *Alopecia*, of the Fore: the fourth *Elephantiasis*, of the Elephant.

The first Species hath her name of the Lion, for that they that be therewith infected, be raging and mad, as otherwhiles the Lions be. This Species is caused through an ouer heated and burnt blood, wherby they also get a deformitie of the face, which is horrible to looke vpon; they doe crie out, and beate their bodie so vehemently, that their owne skin doth thereby harden:

garden: They bee also so hungry and thirstie, that they cannot be satisfied: they are also oppressed altogether of sleepe, untill that at last they be very mad and distraught.

Concerning the second sort, it is well known throughout all the world, that the Snakes doe at a certaine time renne themselves, doe strip off their skin from them, and doe get a newe: the which also hapneth in this sorte of Leprosie, otherwhiles ten or twelue times a yere: so that their skin goeth off with great heate and sharpe paine, out of which runneth a subtile matter, which infecteth the parts round about it: and this not onely therfore, but also so that this kind of Leprosie doth infect and hurt all other people dwelling by. This Leprosie is also contagious, that all whatsoeuer he spoyleth, doth sinke none otherwise, then doe the holes of these sortes of Snakes.

The third species which is called after the Foxe: it is very well known, that this beast is subtle and rauenous, also frequenteth vnknown and secret holes: also commonly twice a yere cometh to cast his haire, and at last consumeth utterly.

This species of Leprosie is also of this nature, so that the patient can by no meanes be persuaded so to vse any counsell, but feareth alwaies that he shall be extenuated. At the first hee admonished, that the patients beards, and his haire of his eyelids will fall out: the same hapneth in this also, so that because his meate and drinke can alter into no naturall nourishment, therfore will not onely the nourishment of the haire be taken away, but also the sustenance of the whole body, whereby the patient must attenuate and consume.

The fourth species receiveth her name of the Elephant: the cause of this Leprosie cometh through the vse of all bad and Melancholike meates, the which cannot sustaine a body, nor ingender sound flesh; but do rather spoile and destroy the same. In like manner do they also cleane change the naturall colour of the body, maketh the same a darke gray, like as is the colour of the Elephant. Other are of opinion that this name proceedeth of a lothsome sight, so that this disease hath a lothsome sight. In like manner also so the alteration of the voice, which smeth like to the voice of an Elephant, with other moe such like things. But so that at the first in all such Leprous people the heads oftentimes, & the whole bodie do swell so, that one may say very well that he is like to an Elephant: their face is sometime so terrible to looke upon, that one should be affrighted of the same, as of a terrible beast: so that their face, fingers, and toes, be full of sores, and those so great as a Nutmeg or Beane, and of the colour of a Mulberry, which is not as yet thoroughly ripe. When as these come to impostumate, then do they yeld (as is saide) a stinking matter: the eyelids do also swell sometimes so thicke as a finger, afterwarde they doe split and cleave. But this is not all, so they do hurt also the mouth, the throte, and the nose, so wonderfully that the patient can hardly get his breath, and do alter afterwards commonly into the cancer, and into all such perill that he cometh to stifle thereby. The eares be also commonly full of sores and scales, and be also sometimes eaten by that they fall off, yea do so eate inwards that they make the patient utterly deafe. The arteries and other vaines of the necke wil be apparently filled full of thicke and clotted blood, whereby the voice will be hoarse, and blcers and blisters do appere in the ioynts with a great hardnes of the splane, and is almost a generall numbnes of all the members, so that they cannot vse them. Lastly (which is most of all to be wondered at) this sickness doth commonly cause the great rupture *Burne*, wherof we haue written in the third part, the first chap. and 8. §.

Out of these fower species of Leprosie may each expert man wel gesse, that the first species is caused through a burnt cholerike Melancholie: the second species out of a phlegmatick Melancholie: the third out of Melancholie which is mixed with blood: and the fourth of a burnt Melancholike matter: therfore this last kinde of Leprosie is much worse than any of the rest. This may suffice of the nature, and causes of the Leprosie. Now will we come to the Phisicall meanes which may be used against it.

For this aboue all are these generall rules to be obserued: first, although the Leprosie hath fetted her roote, yet letting of blood is good, but very little, like as also no strong purgations be good: so when this sickness is confirmed, then is the matter without the vaines and in the outward members; out of which it is not to be expelled: Secondly, this sickness is not to be driven away, but onely in the first through the purging of the Melancholike, and other bad humours: Thirdly, I take that there be much spoiled blood instant, then is a vaine to be opened, whether it be in the arme or vpon the hand. But if there be not much blood instant, then is letting of blood

to be omitted: fourthly, both the baines of the throte (whereof we haue witten in the introduction) are to be opened in great hoarsenes, and that especially if one be afraide of stifling: fifthly, there be in the beginning no strong medicines (especially Helleboz) to be giuen, for that this matter is not to be purged, but it is rather to be put in practise with mild things which do purge Melancholy: sixthly, each one that is infected with this disease shal beware of venery: seventhly, neither bathes nor salues are to be vsed, before and untill that the patient be duly purged, for that the grosse matter doth obstruct the pores: Eighthly, the flesh of the snake *Tyrus*, and all things wherein the same shall be tempered, are verie mete for Leprous people, and aduised to be vsed by all learned men.

Of meanes and medicines against the Leprosie. 1. §.



The famous Physician *Galenus* doth write thus: the Leprosie is an alteration of naturall warmth, which appereth with terrible and itching sores. And yet in another place doth he admonish that (in the beginning of *Elephantiasis*) he hath healed it through letting of blood, and through strong purging of Melancholie: therefore must these sicknesses at the first (and as sone as they can be perceived) be remedied; for which one is to imitate this processe insuing: and although the same be moze inclined to the healing of *Elephantiasis*, then to any of the other kindes, neuertheles the same is mete to heale all Species of Leprosies.

An order of Diet. §. 2.



As much as the Melancholie is of a dry and cold nature, therefore must (to the contrarie) warme and moist things be vsed, and to mitigate the matter according as the humour is waightie, meane, little, and venemous. First then concerning the ayre, the patient is to keepe himselfe in a metely warme and moist ayre, and that especially about rockes that are lying towards the East, the South, or towards the North, and also about some springing fountaines. But if the winde commeth to blow ouer some odoriferous trees, or flowers, then is it the better: but if one cannot get such an aire, and that the time of the yere be very hot; then sprinkle the chamber with fresh water wherein Violets, Waterlillies, and Lettice be decocted. Also lay these Troscisks insuing vpon hot coales, therewith for to fume the chamber: Take Violets, and Waterlillies, of each one ounce, the seeds of Lettice, of Endiue, and of small Endiue, of each halfe an ounce, the seeds of Melons, Pompeons, of Gourdes, and of Cucumbers, all together peeled, of each one dragma and a halfe, Starch halfe an ounce, Camfer one dragma; make Troscisks therof with the iuice of Lettice, each about halfe an ounce in waight. When the same bee dried, then poure them to powder and let the patient therewith fume his dwelling, viz. in the morning, at none, and in the evening.

Although now his dwellings were situated towards the North, and towarde cold winds: yet is this fumigation verie requisite for him, but the leaues of Apple trees, or of swete Pomegranates, or of Almonds, or such like decocted amongst them are to be put vnto it; also all his linnen, and especially his shirts are to be washed with the same water. In like manner also are his clothes to be fumed. Further this bag insuing is to be prepared for to smell vnto it.

Take sealed earth, and fine Bolus, of each one quarter of an ounce, the flowers of Borage, of Buglosse, of Basil, of each one dragma and a halfe, Violets, and Waterlillies, of each one quarter of an ounce, Camfer halfe a scruple, wilde Vine leaues, Brome flowers, and Lettice seede, of each three quarters of an ounce, poune each alone; temper them verie well one amongst another, and then bind it in a fine cloth. We must also beware of all such clothes as do winge the head and the breast too hard, or to be too narrowe. The hands and the feete are in sommer with linnen, & in winter with good warme shayes pelts to be kept warme, and also the head preserved from all cold.

Concerning his meate, it should be very good that all his bread were knead with water of Purslaine, of Lettice, of Endiue, or with some such like waters, a little salted, but metely baked, and not eaten before it be two dayes old. All his flesh must be light for to be digested, as namely Pullets,

Bullets, field Fowles, fat Ducks, Partridges, Pheasants, Finches, wood Pigeons, and such like. Amongst all other flesh is good for him the flesh of yong Goats, Lambs, Calves, yong Swine, of yong Buttons, Harts, and especially of yong Conies, yong house doves, and Hares, shall he not este, because that the melancholick humo^r by them are ingendred. All river fish which is not stony, is very good for him, rather sodden then roasted. All fruit that is swete, as Cherries, Apples, paele Butts, Almonds, Puscadine Grapes, and other swete Grapes, shall not only be permitted, but much rather be advised for to vse them. In like manner, fresh figs, and water drunken upon it, Peaches, sweet Apples, and swete Pomegranates, are very good in this sickness: but all sowe fruit is to be forborne, for that the vineger and all whatsoever is sowe, doth harme much the melancholick persons. Walnuts, Chestnuts, Quinces, Seruices, and such must he forbeare. The decoction of red and white Pease, and these greene herbs, viz. Spinage, Lettice, Botes, Endiue, and Purslaine, be very good for him, and especially if some fennell be chopt amongst them. Item, ripe Melons, because that they coole & moisten, are not ill for him. Hilke is also for this sickness not discommended. All hot spice, as Pepper, Cinnamon, Galin-gall, and Ginger, are hurtfull vnto him, for that the matter thereby is the moze burnt. But for to prevent the consumption, this powder following is to be prepared: Take Saffron one drag. Cinnamon two dragmes, Pace three dragmes, the seede of Violets, of water Lillies, of Sozrell, and of Endiue, red and white Cozall, red and white Saunders, of each one dragme, poune each alone, and temper them together. Item, he may also vse Hens greafe, Ducks greafe, Calves sewet, Gutton sewet, if it be not much salted, for that all these sewets be much better in this sickness then butter. Leekes, Garlick, Sues, and Radishes are to be refrayned, or at leastwise vfed very seldome. In like maner also salted fish, salted flesh, and such like. The stomack, the Luer, the Hart, and chiefly the Splene of what beasts soeuer that they be, is he not to eat, howbeit, that the bzaines of beasts (being sodden) are not ill.

As concerning his drinke, he is to beware drinke of all kind of red thick wine, and also of all white wine, which is strong, and ascendeth or climeth into the head, but a mild, white, and swete wine, which is not strong. And if this kind of wine cannot be had, then is his wine to be tempered with good well water, or fountaine water. When it is cold weather, then may he vse Honey water, which from twentie quarts of water and one quart of Honey is decocted vnto the fourth part. When the Grapes be ripe in foyerpert of winter, then is alsoayes this wine following to be prepared: Take one hundred quarts and a halfe, or two hundred quarts of swete Gull, and steepe therein twelue ounces of greene small Endiue, cut very small, Elecampane rootes eighteene ounces, the seede of Dock, and of Sozrell, of each one ounce, then put it all together in wine, and let the wine stand ouer a yere, and be very cleere. If the wine be now too strong, then temper in the drinke good well water with it, or let it sethe together. If this wine is he to drinke all the whole winter euen to the end of March: but from the moneth of March vntill the end of the moneth of September, then take Gull and fountaine water, of each one hundred quarts, Luerwort, watercresses, and garden Cresses, of each five ounces, greene Citron leaues twelue ounces, cut them very small, and let it sethe all together. When this potion is clenfed, then drinke it as befoze.

The patient is also to see to it, that he eate not without hunger, nor drinke without thirst, and especially if his stomack be not well framed. To the contrary, he is not to fast any longer then till he feeleth that the meate in the stomack be cleane spent. Many dishes or messes be not good for him, but all sponmeates that are thin, are very meate for him. He is to beware of all dry meates. He is also to hold him sober in drinke, that the meate come not to swimme in the stomack. If so be that he finde, after meate, that his meate do trouble him, then is he to take this following for to parbrake it out againe: Take three ounces of water wherein Radishes be decocted, white Sugar and Honey, of each halfe an ounce, Salgemme three greynes, Conium sine greynes, Vineger two ounces, temper them together, and drinke it luke warme. But in case that the vomiting will not yet follow after it, then thrust your finger in your thyoate as deepe as you can, or put a feather in your thyoate as deepe as you can, which is made fat with oyle. If it will not yet be, then must it be looked to, that the meate come not to rot in the stomack, and there ingender an ague of it, which is to be done with this potion following: Take fresh prepared Callie, which is prepared with water of Violets one ounce, water wherein the herbe Percurie hath bin decocted three ounces, then make them warme together, and drinke it at one draught.

Of sleeping, and waking. §. 3.



They that be burthened with this disease, ought to sleepe the space of eight houres at the least, and to go to bed one howe after meate, and to turne oftentimes about from one side to the other. The head is to lye very high, and to sleepe halfe sitting. When it is colde weather, then is he to couer his whole bodie, and especially his head very warme. Reasonable exercise is very good for him, if so be that he can exercise himselfe. His head must he let be oftentimes and softly rubbed. Last of all is he to beware of all motions of the mind, as from anger, sorrow, and such like, for that these things do augment the burning of the melancholie.

Let this suffice to be spoken of the order of dyet, whereof we shall hereafter discourse more at large, and teach also how that this matter might be diminished and expelled.

Of letting of Blood. §. 4.



We haue before expressed in the generall rules, how that letting blood in the confirmed leprosie may not anaye, except it be sene that the patient be very full of blood: for which, letting of Bores is also very commodious, whether that it be in the neck, the shoulders, the thighes, or vpon the calves, and vpon other places more according to the importance of the cause. But if so be that the Leprosie be not rooted, then is first the letting of blood to be vsed, and that for an unburthening of the noysome matter.

But if now the patient be very phlethorick, and the vaines be full of blood, then must one open the patients Median in the left arme, and let out thre or foure ounces of blood. If there appeare such fulnes of blood about the Liver, then is the Liver vaine to be opened in the right arme. But if there be any fulnes in the vaines about the head, then is the head vaine to be opened, and that vpon the hand, about the great thomb. This letting blood is in the beginning of the leprosie, one of the most principallest medicines and meanes, because that the burning blood can through no more commodious way be expelled.

After letting blood (or if it be not esteemed needefull) do all learned commend the potion of *Epirhyme*, whereof there be thre sorts in the first part the twelfth Chapter and 8. §. described, whereof the patient shall take in the morning betimes foure or six ounces very warme, and then to sleepe one howe vpon it, for that it is a very mild laxative, and afterwards he is to fast six howes after it. But if you do desire a weaker potion, then take fresh rotes of *Polipodie*, pounded *Sene* leaues, *Thymus*, and *Epirhymus*, of each one dragma, *Mirobalani Indi* one quarter of an ounce, *Whay* five ounces, *Annis*, *Cinnamon*, wild yellow *Kapelsede*, and *Pace*, of each halfe a scruple, and beate it small, and sleepe it the space of 24. howes in warme *Whay*, afterwards wring it out and so giue it to drinke. Item, take the confectiō of *Sene* leaues thre quarters of an ounce, and temper it with whay of Goats milke, this is a safe and elected medicine. This following is somewhat stronger: Take *Sene* leaues one dragma, *Indy* salt, prepared *Azure* stone, and fine *Bolus*, of each two greynes; then giue it warme with thre ounces of the water of *Pops*. Or take two ounces of the iuice of the leaues of *Polipodie*, temper it with one ounce of good wine vnto a potion. If you will haue this more pleasant, then take the distilled water which is distilled out of the leaues and rotes of *Polipodie*.

Had you rather take Pills: then let these following be prepared: Take *Polipodie*, *Thymus*, and *Epirhymus*, of each five greynes, prepared *Azure* stone, and fine *Bolus*, of each halfe a scruple, *Annis*, *Pace*, and *Ginger*, of each two greynes, *Indy* salt thre greynes, then make thereof 7. or 9. pills thereof, and that with the iuice of *Roses* for to be taken at one time. After this, may one bring together many purging things, but these besaiesaid be sufficient for a pattern and example.

The Clusters may be made thus: Take *Burrage*, *Euglosse*, the uttermost of the *Agaricus* *Eletcampane* rotes, and fresh *Polipodie*, of each one handfull, then sethe them all together in sufficient water vnto the halfe, then take thereof twelve or sixtē ounces for a Cluster, without any other addition.

Another.

Another. Take of this foresaid decoction twelve ounces, Butter halfe an ounce, then temper them all together: Take good sweete wine wherein Gallowes and Violet leaues haue bene decocted foure ounces, confection of Sene leaues and Cassy, of each halfe an ounce, Indy salt one scruple, temper them well together, and then set it very warme as a Clister. Where folloiweth a stronger: Take Coloquinte, *Mitrobalani Indi*, *Emblici*, *Epithymus*, *Thymus*, *Fumitory*, and Sene leaues, of each one handfull, sethe all together in sufficient water euen to the halfe, and vse them without any other addition for a Clister. There may also be taken sixe ounces of the decoction wherein an Hedgehog is boyled, and putting thereto foure ounces of the oyle of Violets, Indy salt one dragma, confection of *Hamech* three quarters of an ounce, and temper this together vnto a Clister.

But this following is the mildest, and notwithstanding the most commodious: Take whey of Goates milke 12. oz. 16. ounces, Cassie one ounce, and set it warme.

If it be sene that the matter do annoy moze the head, then any other member, then is this laxative potion to be vsed: Take the confection *Diasena* and *Hamech*, of each three drammes, the decocted or distilled water of Betony, water of Violets, or of the *Sautin tra*, of each one ounce and a halfe, temper it all together. Also be that the beast be most of all infected, then take *Agaricum* one dragma and a halfe, *Mitrobalani Indi*, one quarter of an ounce, fresh Polypodie, and the huskes of the Sene leaues, of each one dragma, fennell water, and water of Hyssop, of each two ounces: make it warme, and steepe the rest the space of 24. houres in it: afterwarde drinke it warme in the morning earely.

Or if so be that these Melancholike humours do buse the liuer most of all, and of the rest of the intrailles, then is this following to be vsed: Take Annis, *Spica*, Violet seede, *Cuscuta* seede, Horrell sead, and Pasticke, of each halfe a dragma, Roses, and the leaues of the wilde Vine, of each fouer scruples, sethe them all together in sixe ounces of water euen to the halfe: Take of this decoction and temper therein of the confection *Ad Melancholiam Auicenna*.

These be now the things whereby all such noysome humours may be diminished. First, it is to be considered how that the grosse melancholike blood might be drawen from the vitall parts to the outside: for this is very good after the vse of the former purgation, that the patient do soze, stir and exercise himselfe, viz. to go a fote, and to clime vp the mountaines, whereby naturall heate might be prouoked, and the matter consumed.

Secondly, it is verie good that he be rubbed from the necke along the backe bone downe wards, and from the shoulders to the hands, and from the thighes to the fete with hot clothes, vntill that the skin be very red.

Thirdly, he shall bathe in this bath following morning and euening: Take fresh or drye *Fumitory* twelve ounces, the Elecampane leaues, Violet leaues, and small Housleake, of each sixe ounces, Cammomill, Pellilot, and *Spica Romana*, of each eight ounces: sethe them together in so much water as is needefull, in this shall the patient bathe, and to be softly rubbed.

Fourthly, prepare this salue following: Take oyle of *Sesamum* sixe ounces, Cammomill, Will seade, Borrage floures, and *Fumitory*, of each one dragma, floures of Elecampane, and Dock seade, of each one dragma and a halfe: poune them all small, steepe them, and sethe them all together in the foresaid oyle vnto the halfe: afterwarde annoynt therewith the bodie twice or thrice a day and especially the whole back bone, and also all other parts which are infected.

There is also vsed for this hot and blistering herbs, viz. pomev, wherewith the members may be rubbed, whereby the bad humours be drawne outward toward the skin: these herbs be *Parierom*, *Beniroyall*, wild Thyme, Pepe, and Crotsfoote, which haue an especiall power for to draw out the melancholick humours towards the skin, changing them into water, through the blisters which appeare after this chafing. Some do vse *Cantharides*, but they are too strong, for they expell vaine very violently, yea that the blood folloiweth with it, and do excoziate the conduits of the vaine if the same be vsed at any one time in many places.

For this is also good boring cups set on the outward members, and the skin picked. If so be that there be any other sozenes or impostumation with it, then haue you besoze in the 2. s. how that the patient is to parbake, the which is very mate for this.

But in these cases there is nothing better then to open the *Hemoirhoides*, which may be effected by the rubbing of Fig leaues, or by the rubbing with the leaues of Comfrey; also with rubbing with a hairen cloth, which is steaped in an Oxe gall.

There

There may also a small boring cup be set vpon the fundament, and when as the arseget doth appeare and come forth, then may the vaines which do as then appeare be opened with a lancet, and to let them blæde so long, vntill that the thick and grosse bloud do alter into cleere and thin bloud. This is also to be done foure times a yære, for it is very commodious.

For to expell the matter of this sicknes by vrine. §.5.



Afterwards it is also very mæte, that this noysome matter be duiuen out through the vrine, for which you are to vse one ounce or moze of the potion of *Epithymo*, or of the water wherein *Epithymus* is decocted, whereof the patient is in the morning and also at afternone to drinke, for that it duieth out a black and melancholick vrine.

Or take in the morning earely one ounce of the iuice of *Smallage*. Item, take three ounces of the iuice of *Pease*, or the decoction wherein *Pease* be boyled.

There is also *Azure Stone* sodden in the water of *Spillet*, and take thereof three ounces: Take *Indie Spica* one quarter of an ounce, *Mirobalani Indi* three dragmes, sethe them in nine ounces of *Fennell* water euen to the halfe, afterwards strayne it thow a cloth, and wring it out hard, and then drinke it. The floures of *Wome* be also taken for this, *Padder*, *Walerian* and *Spewe*, of each one handfull, let them sethe all together in eightene ounces of water vnto the halfe, and then drinke thereof foure or fve ounces with pouned *Licozice* and *Cromill* seæde, of each halfe a dragme tempered therewith.

Wherewith the Mouth and other parts are to be washed. §.6.



Take the decoction of *Linsæde* foure ounces, and *Oxymel composum* two ounces; temper them wel together, and wash the mouth oftentimes with it alwaies twice befoze supper, and two howers befoze dinner. You may also after the same manner chewe *Swines* breade and spit it out againe: or in the steede thereof chewe *Agaricus*, which is moze forcible and moze safe.

Item, prepare this gargarisme insuing: Take *Mirobalani Indi*, *Violets*, *Burrage* flowers, & *Buglosse* flowers, of each one dragm, the rootes of *Polipodie* one quarter of an ounce, *Indie salt* one dragme, the huskes of *Sene* one quarter of an ounce: sethe them all together in twelue ounces of water euen to the halfe, and vse it warme alwaies one hower befoze none, and an hower befoze supper: to wit, ten or twelue times together. This insuing is also much commended for the *Leprosie*, if it be often washed therewith in the beginning: Take *Spirthe*, and *Sarcocolla*, of each three dragmes, *Ireos*, rootes of *Fumitorie*, of *Spewe*, and *Hartwort*, of each three quarters of an ounce, blacke *Hellebo* two ounces, the seedes of *Pallowes*, of *Hollyhokes*, of *Fumitorie*, and the leaues of *Clecampane* of each three handfuls, cut them and stampe them together, afterwards let them sethe in fower pintes of water vnto three pintes.

In like manner there is also much commended for this the golden water, if that one do take a litle and oftentimes thereof, and do annoint the *Leprosie* therewith. The oyle of *Tiles* is also much commended in the beginning of the *Leprosie*.

But bicause that the most principall cure of this *Leprosie* consisteth in consuming of the melancholike matter of this sickenes, and that the blood must be well clenfed: therefore will we to that end describe certaine good things beginning first with the least.

Whereby the blood in the *Leprosie* shall be clenfed. §.7.



Take the water of *Pops*, and of *Fumitorie*, of each one ounce and a halfe, temper them together, and giue it in the Sommer cold, and in the Winter warme. Item: Take the whay of *Goates milke*, or of *Shepes milke*, and drinke therof in the morning like as is said befoze. This following is also moze forcible: Take fower ounces of *Chese whay* made of *Shepes milke*, and the iuice of *Fumitorie*, temper them all

all together, and so drinke it warme. These three things haue an especiall proprietie with the breast, with the liuer, and with the stomack, and do consume all burnt humors of the same. Item: Take the sirupe of *Epithymo* one ounce and a halfe, the water of *Clecampane*, of *Sorell*, and of small *Endiue*, of each one ounce and a halfe, temper them together, and drinke it certaine daies together: the same expelleth the grosse matter. This followings is also mete for the same: take *Sirapum de Thymo*, *Acetofum compositum de Bizantijs*, of each halfe an ounce, water of *Smallage*, and of *Sumitrie*, of each one ounce and a halfe, and vse them as before.

This insuing is especiall good for the *Melancholie* which is caused through burnt blood, and where it may evidently be seene, that heate of the liuer, of the breast, and of the head is with it: Take the seedes of *Pelons*, of *Cucumbers*, of *Pompeons*, and of *Courdes*, of each three dragm. flowers of *Violets*, of *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, and of small *Endiue*, the seede of *Sorell*, and of small *Endiue*, and of *Waterlillies*, of each one handfull and a halfe, *Sumitrie* flowers, *Clecampane* rootes, red and white *Saunders*, burnt *Tuoze*, red and white *Corrall*, of each one dragme, the iuice of sweete Apples fire and thirtie ounces, fresh *Hallowes*, *Endiue*, *Sorell*, *Hops*, *Purflaine*, and *Lettice*, of each three handfuls, *Docke* leaues, *Clecampane* rootes, *Bistorta*, *Swines* bread, and *Gentian*, of each one handfull, wilde *Vine* leaues, small *Houelleke*, and *Liverwort*, of each three handfuls, sethe this all together (except the iuice of Apples) in fower quarts of water vnto the halfe, afterwards wying it out hard and straine it: this being done, then put to this decoction the iuice of Apples, and three ounces of sharpe *Vineger*, white *Sugar* fire and thirtie ounces, then sethe them all together (alwaies skimming) by a milde fire, vntill that about the third part be waisted, whereof you are to keepe the one halfe, and the other halfe are you to sethe to a sirupe: for that of the first is euerie day to be taken five ounces, and of that which is sodden to a sirupe two ounces, with water of *Agrimonic*, and *Sumitrie*, to wit, of each one ounce and a halfe. This hath done maruels, but it must be continually vsed the space of fire weekes or two moneths.

This sirupe (as also all other) is alwaies to be taken when the meate is digested in the stomack, and afterwards to sleepe an hower or twaine, and then without doing any great labour, to fast five howers after it. In Sommer it is to be taken colde, and in Winter luke warme.

For to consume the remanent matter. §.8.



When you do perceiue that this matter is much diminished, then giue the patient during the space of a moneth, alwaies earely in the morning one dragme of pouned *Spee* with *sharpes whay*, for it is a safe remedy. In like manner you may giue vnto this patient som daies together one ounce of the iuice of *marth* *Hints*, or of white water *Hints*, and that especially in the beginning of this sickness. The powder of burnt *Hedghogs* flesh hath an especiall power for to consume this matter if that one take the waight of a drag. oftentimes with whay, or giue him oftentimes halfe a dragme of *Treacle* with the decoction of *Hedghogs* flesh. These be now sufficient and sure things chosen out of diuers others.

If so be that there remayne any bad matter in the ioynts, then must the same (if one will haue perfect health) be also consumed, to the end that thereby (the same there remayning) the whole bodie be not infected againe. For which, these two bathes are to be vsed at the first: Take *Marieroni* twelue ounces, *Bayberies*, the seedes of *Licebane* and *Mustard* seede, of each five ounces, *Sulfur* vis four ounces, the Earth called *Sinopida* two ounces, then sethe them all together in much water vnto the halfe, then bathe therewith the space of five or six dayes twice a day. When the patient commeth out of the bath, then is his whole bodie to be annoynted with *Treacle*, and the same to be rubbed in well. Afterwards he is to go to bed, and to sweate well vpon it: and although he could not sweate well at the first, then giue him after bathing halfe a dragme of the *Treacle* *Diateffaron*, with a little water of *Violets*, and then couer him close. When he hath thus bathed, then is he to vse this bath following: Take *Fenegreke*, and the seedes of white *Sesamum*, of each twelue ounces, the rootes of *Lillies* five ounces; then let them sethe together to a bath as before, yet in bathing is the bodie to be rubbed with black *Spee*, and then to lye a bed as is sayd.

When as now the matter is sufficiently prepared through bathing, and be drawn towards

wards the skin, then doth the cause require that it might be consumed, whereof stronger medicines be necessarie, like as this ensuing may be prepared: Take Verdigrease, Orpiment, Coperas, and white *Cadmia*, of each five ounces, vnlesct lyme twelue ounces, the rootes of Crowfoote eightene ounces, Allome foure ounces, Salarmoniac eight ounces, poune them all together, and then distill them in a helme, as strong water is wont to be made, and annoynt therewith all scales and blisters euery where.

The third day are you to annoynt them with this following: Take one ounce and a halfe of Starch, and washed lytharge of gold two ounces, vnlesct lyme one dragme and a halfe, Dragon-bloud halfe an ounce, Vineger as much as is needefull for to temper together, afterwards temper them together in a leaden mortar.

Other do vse this following: Take the swete softe of the chimney two ounces, lytharge of gold one ounce, Frankincense halfe an ounce, Pastick five dragmes, oyle of Juniper, and oyle of Wheate, of each foure ounces, yellow ware two ounces, poune all small that be to be pouned, and then temper therewith two ounces of the oyle of Violets, afterwards put vnto it the gold lytharge, the Pastick, and Frankincense, and at last a little Vineger, yet stirring it alwayes about. Other do temper amongst it five ounces of the iuice of Curcopit rootes.

What is to be vsed for the Scales. §. 9.



If that there be any scales vpon any sores, then are they to be annoynted with this salve following: Take the oyle of *Sesamum*, Asses seiwet, of each five ounces, the yolke of an egge, Camfer halfe a dragme, then temper them all together with sufficient whites of eggs, it is also good against all heate of the ioynts, it healeth and cauleth the flesh to ingender.

If so be that these foresaid scales will not fall off of themselves, then do some take them off with Rasors, euen to the roote, yet not all together at one time, but one before, and another afterwards. The bloud do they staunch with pouned lytharge of gold. They do make also a salve with fresh Hares bloud, or with a yong mans bloud, which is very mete for this. The annoynting with this salve is to be done but once in thre dayes, and then to wash the partie with some water wherein Bran is decocted. You haue also moze at large of these things in the Chapter where the Pocks be discoursed of.

When as after all this the matter proceedeth well the space of two or thre moneths, then is one not to foreslow purging in the meane whiles, but to take good heede to these two things ensuing.

First, to the stopping of the nose, which maketh an vnseemely speech, and for to let that, make a long taint of Cotton, annoynt it with the salve of Citron (which one findeth commonlie readie at the Apothecaries) strowe thereon small pouned lytharge of gold, or Hartwort, or in the stead thereof take the confection of *Aurea Alexandrina*.

Further, you are to spout into the nose some lukewarme wine, amongst which, a little vineger of Squills is tempered.

Secondly, because that the haire of the eyelids fallen out do giue a great defoymitie, therefore is it to be looked to that the same be made to grow againe, whereof you may reade in the first Chapter and 8. §. But this ensuing is especially commended in the defoymitie: to wit, that the eyebrowes be rubbed untill they be red, and then are Leaches to be set vpon it: and when as they be fallen off, then haue this salve following prepared: Take fresh Venus haire, and *Laudanum*, of each a like quantitie, seethe the same in oyle of Bayberies, and in a little wine, afterwards wryng them out, and therewith annoynt the eyebrowes, and all other infected places.

If so be that there euer appeare any new matter, or any new impostume, then must one begin to bathe with the last foresaid decoction, and in like manner also to annoynt with the foresaid things, for that in such lingring sicknesses, must the remedies so oftentimes be reiterated as the diseases make returne.

For

For to strengthen the Hart, the Lyuer, and the Braynes in the Leprosie. §. 10.



Because that by the foresaid parts and other moe this Leprosie taketh her beginning, therefore are the same also to be strengthened, for which this following is very good: to wit, the confection *Latificans Almanforis*, whereof giue euery day (halfe an houre before none) one quarter of an ounce with Endiue water, the water of water Lillies, or with water of Agrimonie.

Secondly, the great Treacle is very forcible, for it strengtheneth the naturall heate and the vitall spirits, that it may the moze mightier withstand all venome, if one take halfe a dragma thereof with any distilled water.

Item, take the confection *Diambra*, *Diamoscu*, and *Manus Christi* with Berles, likewise halfe a dragma of *Lignum Aloes*, tempered with two ounces of water of water Lillies, and drinke in the euening when one goeth to bed.

There is also highly commended to take oftentimes one scruple of Berles with one ounce of Basil water.

What concerneth the skin. §. 11.



When as now the skin through great vnnaturall heate is annoyed and hurt, which may be perceined by the corroding and by the sharp matter, then is the same place to be annoynted with the iuice of Lettice, of Purslaine, of water Lillies, and also with vnripe Sallet oyle: but if it be caused through cold, that thereby the vnnaturall heate be extinguished, then is there no better thing then to bathe the place with strong red wine warmed. But if the disease of the skin do not import any thing, then is it better that it be bathed with a mild Leigh, with Pepe, or garden Spints, and if this corroding do increase, then vs this pretious salve ensuing: Take by charge of gold and Ceruse, of each two ounces, oyle of Roses two ounces and a halfe, the iuice of Rue foure ounces, Starch as much as sufficeth, then stirre it the space of certaine houres in a leaden moytar, at last temper one quarter of an ounce of small brused Camfer amongst it.

Of the actuell and potentiall cautery. §. 12.



These actuell and potentiall cauteries are both of them commended by the Physicians in the extreamest neede, to wit, vpon the head, and in the necke, and in moe other places, but because it may not be effected without danger of some other parts (like as also they themselves do acknowledge) therefore we will not write any ampler thereof at this present.

If any one be so hardly assailed of the Leprosie, that he be no other wise to be holpen but by cauterisation, he may take the aduise of those men that haue experience in it. And because that all that which we haue hitherto written is moze mate for the *Elephantiasis*, (like as we haue declared at first) notwithstanding it is also good for all species of the Leprosie, therefore followeth hereafter all that which is commodious for all species of this sickness.

What is requisite for euery sort of Leprosie. §. 13.



Of this, hath Treacle the highest commendation: in like sort the confection of *Hiera* and *Hedgehogs flesh* (whereof we haue admonished before) together it be roasted, fryed, or sodden. Also the flesh of the venemous Snake *Typh* is commended by *Galen* and of other famous Physicians moe. But because that we (God be prayd) haue not this Snake here in this Realme, it is not needfull for to write much thereof, but to speake rather of those things that are to be gotten in this countrie, and may do ease, as the powder of burnt Hares one dragma and a halfe, with foure ounces of wine drinke three dayes together. Take in like manner as much powder of Squills, or the iuice of the same, with the sirupe of Squills, and then temper halfe a dragma moze

more or lesse of *Assa fatida*, with Hony amongst it, and so take it. Item, take poudred Comin fine dragmes, with clarified Hony.

There may also be more written yea a whole booke full of the Leprosie, and how that euery accident of the same is at the beginning to be eased; but if so be that the foresayd remedies will help the sick person, then be the accidents the easier to be holpen, for which, we haue also in many places written much of the foresayd diseases, which altogether may and ought to be bled for this, and therewith we will conclude.

Of the bad vlcer *Cacoethe*. §. 14.

For a conclusion of these corrodings, impostumes, and vlcers, we will also briefly write of those, which the Grecians do call *Cacoethe*, which is a species of the Cancre, and so venomous, that it continueth with a bodie all his life time: for notwithstanding all the counsell which may be done for it, yet is it all in vaine, and it doth remaine incurable, and moreouer (like as is sayd) is very long continuing: yet do some commend this ensuing for some especiall thing.

Take *Soldanella* halfe a dragma, poudred Rubarbe two scruples, giue the same to drinke oftentimes with white wine: when this is taken, then giue to the patient the next day afterwards the sirupe of *Ulozmeiwood*, and of *Cicozie*, with Rubarb, of each one ounce: and so continue euery other day. Afterwardes annoynt the place of the disease with oyle of *Roses*, or oyle of swete *Almonds*.

The fift Chapter.

Of outward infections and woundings of the Skin.

In the beginning of this fift part we haue before declared many things whereby the skin is infected and annoyed within. Nowe both our methode require, that we should write somewhat of the outward accidents of the skin, which be hurtfull to the same, and also to the flesh vnderneath it, and will also begin with the least, which is of the burning or scalding.

Of the burning or scalding with fire, hot water, and of the burning with Gunpowder. §. 1.

If there be any burnt with fire, or scalded with hot water, then haue the things or medicines whereby both these are to be coled and healed, small difference: but concerning the burning with gunpowder, of that we will write after another manner.

Of the burning of fire, or scalding with hot water, there cometh at the first an excessive paine, and diuers blisters whereout water doth run.

Secondly, if one will heale these sores, then is there first to be spread thereon a pap of the powder of *Saunders*, with *Rose water*, and tempered with a little *Camfere*, or with the water of *Sightshade*.

Thirdly, temper fine *Bolus* with vinegar, with *Rose water*, and with water of *Sightshade*: these things are to be layd vpon it so long, vntill the paine be almost gone: For this may also be vled the salve of *Poplar*, mixed with the white of an eg. And if so be that the blisters doe not breake of themselves, then are they to be opened with a needle, to the end that the flesh next vnderneath be not harmed thereby.

This is now a necessary and common manner of doing, viz. at the first: but what is mete to haue more done in it, that shall hereafter follow. And because that such kinds of diseases may be rather healed with salues than otherwise, therefore will we first of all begin with them.

These things following are to be used immediately after the burning, and untill the paine be at the extreamest: Take oyle of Roses and varipe Sallet oyle, of each thre ounces, white Ware, washed Lytharge of golde, and Ceruse, of each one ounce, Starch thre quarters of an ounce; melt the oyle and the Ware together, and then powze it hot vpon the cold water: afterwards wash it thre times, and that with Nightshade water: at last temper the other thinges amongst it. But if you wil haue it more drying, then may you mixe pouned Cipers nuts amongst it, as many as you please.

Item, take Butter, or Swines grease, eight ounces; let it be hot, and powze it vpon colde water: afterwards let it be stiffe again, and then put it into a bish; stir it well about, and powze of the water vnto it untill it be thozow white: at last stir one ounce and a halfe of Peter oyle in it, and therewith annoynt the burning.

But if so be that the burning be two or thre daies olde, then take of the foresaid salve, and spread it vpon linnen as a plaister, and lay it fire or seuen times a day vpon it, according to the importance of the burning; for that how much the oftener it is refreshed, so much the better and sooner is the same also to be healed. If so be that the burning be great and deepe, then doe not bind it tight, to the end the heate may passe out the better.

Item, take Butter wherein an eg is baked and burnt, powze it vpon cold water; when it is stiffe, then wash the same eight times with cold water, & at the last twice with vineger: now take two ounces and a halfe of this Butter, put therto the whites of two eggs well bzaied, Linsæde oyle halfe an ounce, then annoynt it on the burning.

Commonly the oyle of Roses is good for burning, being tempered with salt, Linsæde oyle, Inke, and Oxyration.

Item, take oyle of Roses one ounce, thre yolkes of Eggs, mixe them well together: you may also ad fower or fve grains of Saffron vnto it.

Another: Take oyle of Roses thre ounces, Bolus one dragme, make it very hot: afterwards dip a cloth in it, and lay it thereon as hot as the patient can abide it. But if the paine bee abating, then is there a salve to be chosen of this Lyme ensuing: Take vnbleckt Lime, powze water vnto it; but thrust not the hand into it, but stir it well about with a spone untill that it thun: afterwards strike it off with a feather, and temper it with Sallet oyle: at last annoynt it on the burning: The same is very highly commended. Or take vnbleckt Lyme, & with Sallet oyle make a salve of it, as thicke as pay, and annoynt therewith.

Item, take oyle of Roses 2. ounces, vnripe Sallet oyle one ounce & a half, white Ware halfe an ounce, let it sethe a little all together: afterwards powze it on cold water, & wash it with cold water: this being done, then temper small bzaied Ceruse amongst it thre quarters of an ounce, Frankinsence and Sarcocolla, of each one dragme, prepared Lyme halfe an ounce, Saffron halfe a scruple, washed Lytharge of gold thre quarters of an ounce, then temper all together. This following is a well approued salve for the burning: Take quicke lyme which is slaked with good wine; let the lime drie well, and put in as much Linsæd oile, untill it be as it were a dough: afterwards annoynt the burning with it, and then lay none other vpon it.

But if so be that it ware dry and hard, then spreade more vpon it and take it not off, for that the burning will be sodainly whole: and when it is healed, then falleth it away of it selfe. This is thus by some to be assured; neuerthelesse it is perillous, not to loke to it in long time, for that there might some other thing sticke vnto it.

For this is also fit, the oyle of Saint Johns wort alone or tempered with washed lime, and so spread it vpon the burning, for it coletth maruellous much. Item, take oyle of Roses thre ounces, white Frankinsence one ounce, Ceruse thre ounces, the whites of thre Eggs, Camfer one dragme, make thereof a salve.

Another: Take oyle of Olives fower ounces, pouned Frankinsence halfe an ounce, the innermost rindes of Eldern one quarter of an ounce; sethe them all together with a little Vineger, untill that the Vineger be thozowly wasted, then straine it thozow a cloth and vse it as before.

Item: Take old candle tallow, Goates suet, and Linsæde oyle, of each alike quantitie; let them melt together and put therto the white of Bens dung, as much of the one as of the other things; let it sethe well together and then straine it thozow a cloth, afterwards lay it vpon the burnt place and let it lie thereon a day or twaine; then wash it off with luke warme water, & lay againe a fresh plaister vpon it.

For this is also good all the white salues which are described in the fourth part, the nine chapter, and first §. Item: yet another salue which is to be found in the first parte, the seuenth chapter, and 17. §. This salue following is also very good for all sorts of burning: Take oyle of Roses two ounces, the yolkes of five Eggs, stamped well together, and temper some Salt from amongst it; afterwards spread it on a cloth and lay it vpon the burning, it healeth verie speedily.

Another: Sethe the Mustard seede in the creame of milke, then poune it to pap and wryng it thorow a cloth, afterward annoynt therewith the burning. After the same manner is Linseed also to be sodden, strayned and vsed: or take Water meale, boyle it in creame and vse it as the rest: this is especiall good for scalding with hot water.

Item: Take the iuice of Rapes, or of Dinions, each a part or mired together, and annoynt the burning oftentimes with it, and lay the leaues of the Cherrie tree vpon it.

Take the iuice of an Dinion, and oyle of the kernels of Abzicookes halfe an ounce, temper them together. The sirupe of Oxycraton doth cole much the burning. Incke tempered with the water of *Cardus Benedictus* is much commended for this, if one make a cloth wet therein and lay vpon it.

Item, the leaues of the Waterlillies laid vpon the burning, do cole and also heale. Of the inflammation and heat of the vlcers which is caused within, you haue hard befoze in the second chap. and 6. §.

Of the burning with Gun powder. §.2.



If any haue a shotten pellet cut out of his bodie, then is this oyle following to be layd vpon it: take the oyle of Eldern flowers 12. ounces, oyle of S. Johns wort one ounce, Turpentine halfe an ounce; temper these together, and set them certaine dayes in the Sun. This hath a maruellous efficacie and vertue.

Another: Take oyle of Roses, Nightshade water, Rose water, water of Lillies, and oyle of S. Johns wort, of each a like quantity; and wash therewith the wound oftentimes. Item, for to cole the inflammation, take the water of Nightshade and of S. Johns wort, of each eight ounces, Allome halfe an ounce, Ceruse, Litharge of silver, and Verdigrease, of each one dragma, poune them all small together, and then temper them well together, and then lay it as warme vpon it as may be suffered, three or fouer times together.

Or take Linsede oyle, vnsleckt lime, fine Bolus, and Rye meale, of each a like quantity; stirre them well together, and then spread it on the burning: It draweth out the heate and the powder.

Item, take good Honey eight ounces, let it sethe and be well scummed, then put thereto halfe as much sharpe Vineger of Roses, and then let it sethe all together vntill it be brylons: afterwards put a sponefull of beaten Allome vnto it, and keepe it well: for the elder it is, so much the better it is.

There is also prepared for this, two kindes of leigh: the one which is made of quicke lime, and layd vpon it with a wet cloth: The other is, if one temper strong leigh with Sallet oile, and lay it thereon: This leigh is very good for all heate, whether it be thorough burning with gun powder, or otherwise for all inflammation which doth appeare outwardly.

For all scalles of burning. §.3.



Take Ceruse one ounce and a halfe, Camfere halfe a dragma, Rose water three quarters of an ounce, Starch halfe an ounce; bruse it, and temper it well together in a moztar, with the white of an eg vnto a thin salue, spread it thereon and round about the scalles, and they will dye and fall off.

Befoze in the third Chapter, and tenth §. you haue yet moe other fit remedies for it.

The sixth Chapter

For to draw Splinters and Thornes out of the Skin.



If that any Splinter or Thorne do sticke in the skin, then must one looke to pull out the same immediately: otherwise it must ranckle out with great paine.

Thus for to remedie this: Take Oxe suet, Ware and Rosin, of each a like quantity, Pirola, Beetes, Louage, Ladymantle, and Sannicle, according to the quantity of the former: poune them together, and wring out the iuice: afterwards put it amongst the molten Ware, Rosin, and seiwet, and then boyle it vntill all the iuice be wasted, and there become a Salue of it.

Another: Take two parts of Sallet oyle, and one part of Rosin, or Turpentine, and as much Ware, let it melt together, and stir it well together vntill it be cold.

For this is also good, the plaister *Apostolicum* and *Crassa Dei*, that are described before.

Item, the iuice of Berberries tempered with Barley meale, is also good for it. *Sic de Thorne* draweth out the arrowes, like as before is shewed.

The rotes of Beetes, of Polypody, decocted with their leaues, and layd thereon, draweth also much.

If so be that any body in the spinning get a thine in their finger, then take picked Plantaine leaues, and wring out the iuice, and lay it vpon it, it will quickly drawe out the thine that sticketh in the hand, and heale it.

The seventh Chapter.

Of wounds, and all that concerneth them.



Amongst all outward accidents which harme the skin, and the parts adjacent are the wounds also to be accompted. For which you haue before (in the common description of vlcers) certaine rules which be also necessary for all wounds, and may be applyed vnto them: therefore they are to be added here.

In all wounds (of what cause soeuer they be caused, whether it be of pricking, cutting, shooting, or falling) the Chirurgian must first looke that he cause the blood to be stanchd: but if that be not performed, then both the patients strength and power weare away, and at last his life also. Therefore will we first of all write and discourse thereof.

For to staunch blood. §. i.



Take Gum of Arabia, and Dragagant, of each one drag. red Corall, Bloodstone, burnt Iuoy and Camifere, of each halfe a drag. make this powder with water of Plantaine vnto a dough, and lay it vpon the wounds. Some doe also temper with it *Bolus Armenum*, and Honey, which is not amisse.

Item, take Frankincense, Pasticke, and small cut Hares hayre, of each a like quantity; make a soft salue thereof with the white of an Egge, and lay it vpon the bleeding.

Or take Dragon blood, vnbleckte Lyme, and Frankincense, of each a like quantity: this are you to vse if there be anie great vaine perished: but if the great vaine be hurt the long way, then vse burnt Coperas with it.

Item, Take the white of an Egge, fine Bolus, Dragon blood, Bloodstone, and Frankincense, of each a like quantity; make a soft plaister of it, and then spread it vpon Tow, and so lay it vpon the wound.

Dr. Stamp Peach kernels, and make a plaister of it with the white of an eg.

Item, take yellow Rose lorde, poune it to powder, and temper vinegar therewith unto a pap, and so lay it vpon the bleeding wound, it will stop it.

Resolue Coperas in Vineger, and set it certaine daies in the hot sunne, or let it seethe, afterwards wet a cloth therin, and so lay it vpon it.

The parings of Parchment boyled to Lime, and laid vpon it, is also very forcible for to staunch blood. Burne a hat to ashes and strow it into the wound.

Dyed Swines dung pouned to powder, doth also staunch blood. Item take Egghels, and lay it so long in strong vineger to keepe, untill that they be very soft, and then let them bee hard againe: afterwards poune them final, and vse them as the other.

Hans haire also burnt, and beaten to powder, stauncheth much the bleeding at the nose, and all other maner of bleeding.

The iuice of Shepheards purse stauncheth and cooleth all hot blood. In May are you to take Comfrey with the leaues, and tread it final; this being done, distill it like other water, and drop it in the wound.

The same doe the Chirurgians ascribe to Mayden milke, which is in the first part, the fift chapter and 1. §. described.

Item, for to staunch the blood at the nose, hold vpon the forehead a cold sint stone, blood stone, Calcedony or Carnoyle stones, or put in his hand the rootes of Coz roses: a man is to hang his priuities in strong vineger, or a cloth wet therin and layd thereon, the bleeding will cease immediately.

For to staunch the blood you may also looke into these places following, as of the bleeding of the Eares in the first part, the 9. chapter, and 4. §. of the bleeding of the gums, in the first parte, the 17. chapter, and 7. §. Item, of spetting of blood, in the second part, 5. chapter and 11. §. to staunch the bleeding of the Hemorrhoides, in the third part, the 9. chapter, and 4. §. of pissing blood, in the third part, the 16. chapter, and 11. §. and of womens termes in the third part, the 19. chapter, and third §.

Of the clotted blood in the body. §.2.



If so be that a wounded man, or one that hath taken a fall, hapned to blade inward, then are all meanes to be sought to expell the same with all speed: for otherwise it must inwardly corrupt and putrifie, whereby very perillous agues and other deadly diseases might ingender, whereof in the second part, the fift chapter, and 17. §. (of the spetting blood) is sufficiently written. The common people doe aduise, that in this disease one is to drinke his owne vrine, whereby the clotted blood should be expelled. The same doth also the wine of Parts tong, and all other vulnerall potions which hereafter shalbe described.

This plaister following is much commended: Take Goates milke and Pony, as much as you please, let it be very warme together, and stir fine Bolus therein untill it be a salue, and bind that vpon it, whereby the congealed and clotted blood will be expelled.

Of the stitching of the wounds. §.3.



This stitching of the wounds is committed to the Chirurgians charge, according to the importance of the cause: but I wil only ad this vnto it, and speake of those things that do heale the wounds together without stitching: Take Pastick and Dragon blood, of each one quarter of an ounce, Frankincense one drag. mill dust and Beane meale, of each one ounce and a halfe; make them all to powder, and temper them with the beayed whites of Eggs and Rose water, vnto a pap. Afterwards spread it vpon two long clouts which be somewhat strong, and that are as long as the wound is, & lay one vpon each side of the wound, vpon the whole flesh: this being dry, then sow the wound so close together, as you please, the needle not going thorow the skin but thorow the clouts only.

The golden salue (is also much commended) called *Vnguentum Aureum Mesua*, which is made thus: Take yellow Ware 3. ounce. Sallet oile 12. ounces, Turpentine one ounce, Rosin & Colofony of each one quarter of an ounce, Frankincense & Pastick of each half an ounce, Saffron halfe a

a drag. let the *Ullare*, *Turpentine*, and oyle melt together, and afterwards put the *Rosin* vnto it, & when it be ginneth to be cold, then temper amongst it the *Ballistick*, *Frankincense*, & *Saffron*: this ioyneeth the wounds together, and healeth them. In the first part the 7. chap. & 10. S. there haue you a water described, beginning thus, Take *Litharge* of siluer &c. which is very much renowned for this purpose. In like sort *Dr. Tristrams* water, and other golden waters, with sower kinds of *Balmes* which are to be found in the last part.

Offresh wounds. §.4.



These soe mentioned things be verily the chiefest, which may be vsed without any delay for all fresh wounds. When as now the blood is staunched, and al finished that is needfull to be done, then are these things ensuing commended highly: First, *Dr. Tristrams* water is thought meete to heale all fresh wounds, which may also be done with all golden waters, whether it be that one take them inward, or lay them outwardly vpon them. The oyle of *Eyles* should not onely heale, but also p̄serue the wounds from all putrified flesh: this is also ascribed to the oyle of *Linnen*. The oyle of *S. Johns wort* is also much commended, & the oyle of *Roses*: for that they haue an astringent vertue and efficacie. Likewise the oyle of *Spike*, and oyle of *Lead*. It is also straightly commaunded that all new wounds shall be washed with *Wormewood* or with *Rosemary*: for that both these keepe the fresh wounds cleane, & save from all putrification and are also healing.

But if any one bee but a little wounded, so that it bee not needfull to goe to a Chirurgicalian with it, then vse this salve following: Take *Turpentine* which is thr̄e times washed in wine, and stir the yolke of an eg amongst it, *Barly* meale one quarter of an ounce, *Saffron* 5. grains; temper them altogether: This salve is good for al paine, although it be also in a sinewy part: it maketh flesh speedily to grow. It is also not vnlike to *Vnguento Mundificatiu*. This plaister following will heale the wound in 20. daies, without matter and without paine: take *Ullare* halfe an ounce, white *Cozal* 2. drag. *Colofonia* & *Spomy*, of each 7. drag. *Spirrhe* 2. drag. *Camfere*, loadstone, of each half a drag. oile of eggs as much as is needfull for to mixe amongst all the rest. This salve is thus to be vsed, if any one be cut or thrust, & if that this plaister be laid vpon it within 24. houers, then shall the wounde within 20. dayes without any corruption or any other addition be healed. If so be that then it be a thrust that goeth quite thorow, then is one to haue 4. plaisters in a readines, and to lay 2. vpon it before none, & two at after none, without putting any thing els vnto it. But if so be that it be but a wound, then are two enough: and to the end that there remaine no clotted blood within, is this powder following to be giuen to the patient: take *Spomy* one quarter of an ounce, fine *Bolus* & *Dragon* blood, of each one drag. giue therof to the patient euening and morning, the quantity of an *Asel* nut.

Manykinds of vulnerall potions. §.5.



Every Chirurgicalian will shew his cunning in this: for each one hath a seuerall potion which he kepeth as a *Secretum secretorum*. Also it is indeed of great importance, when as the inward parts be perished, or if there be any blood inwardly congealed, it can in no better way be holpen than by this means: wherefore we haue here rehearsed certain of these vulnerall potions, whereof the Chirurgicalians do much esteeme. Take wild *Bets* (which is *Pirola*) with their roots one *Dr. Consolida saracenic*, the roots 2. *Dr. Bugwort* without roots 4. *Dr.* and powze thereto one quart of wine in a new leaded pot: then stop it tight, to the end therof shie no vapor out: afterwards let it seethe together by a small fire, vntill about the third part be consumed: drink therof morning & euening, according as the disease is great, and according as the body is hot or cold, take strong or small wine. But in winter wh̄ the herbs be drie, then take one ounce of *Bugwort*, *Consolida saracenic* half an ounce, wild *Bets* 2. drag. & seethe it as before in a quart of wine: this is an approued potion for all vlcers, wounds, and all other diseases, being vsed inwardly, & also outwardly. This plaister following is also to be vsed with it: Take clarified *Hony* 8. ounces, wheat flower 2. ounces, Linsed oyle thr̄e ounces, fine *Bolus* one ounce and a halfe, then make therof a plaister, and lay it thereon. Item, take *Consolida saracenic* with yellow flowers, *Bugwort*, wild *Bets*, & *Ladimantle*, of each one *Dr.* seethe altogether in a quart of wine, whether it be *Palmsy*, or any other good wine. This potion hath bene approued oftentimes, and was found very good.

Another: Take wild Bâtes, wild Tanſie, Sanicle, and Agrimonie, being all gathered at a full ſpene, dꝛyed in the ayre, and then ſtamped to powder, when as you will uſe thereof, then take an earthen pot which will hold a quart of moyſture, and then put therein of this ſoreſaid powder, as much as you can gripe at two or thꝛee times betwene your two fingers, and according as the wound requireth: afterwards powꝛe vnto it a pinte of wyne, and couer the pot very tight with a ſlice of bread, then let it ſtand the ſpace of a good howꝛe in a warme place vntill it be cold, and giue thereof to the wounded perſon twice a day. You may alſo ſtrow of this powder in the wounds. Yet another: Take *Conſolida ſaracenica*, Agrimony, wild Tanſie, Bugwort, Cicory, Southernwood, and wild Bâtes, of each alike quantitie, dꝛy the herbs in the ſhadow, and then ſtamp them to powder: afterwards take a quart of wyne, and put thereto an ounce of this powder, then ſæthe it in hot water, vntill the breadth of thꝛee or foure fingers be consumed; afterwards put thereto a ſpenefull of *Aſarabacca* powned ſmall, and giue thereof to the patient when he goeth to bed thꝛee or foure ounces at one time. Another: Take Sanicle, Auence, Agrimony, Bugloſſe, Cerueine, Cicorie floures, *Conſolida ſaracenica*, Betony, Hyſlope, Sage, Bugwort, wild Tanſie, wild Bâtes, and S. Johns wort, of each alike quantitie: ſæthe them all together in wyne, and giue the patient thereof twice a day, at each time thꝛee or foure ſpeneſuls. Item, take *Conſolida ſaracenica*, Agrimony, Sanicle, wild Tanſie, Plantaine, and Bâtes, of each alike quantitie, let it ſæthe together in wyne, and giue thereof warme. Diuers of ſuch like potions are deſcribed in the third part the third Chapter of the fractures of bones.

Of the Plaifters for thruſts and wounds. §.6.



First, for to write of the plaifters for thruſts, there be many kinds prepared for it, as hereafter ſolloweth: Take Ware one ounce and a halfe, Coloſony, and Pomy, of each two ounces, Frankincenſe one ounce, Camfer one ounce and a quarter, bꝛuſe it ſmall, and afterwards melt the Ware and the Coloſony, temper then the reſt amongſt it, and worke it well together, annoynting the hands with oyle of Eggs. Another which is approued: Take Turpentine foure ounces, Coloſony and Roſen, of each two ounces, white *Cadmia* one ounce, Load ſtone one ounce, Frankincenſe two ounces, Paſtick and Pomy, of each halfe an ounce, Juniper oyle one quarter of an ounce, oyle of Eggs, and Camfer, of each halfe an ounce, diſſolue the gum in Wyne or Vineger, and ſtrayne it thorow a cloth into a pan, afterwards let it ſæthe together, then put thereto the *Cadmia* and Ceruſe; when it hath ſodden well, then put the Loadſtone vnto it, and let it wale once againe; afterwards adde the Frankincenſe, Paſtick, and the Pomy vnto it. This being done, let it ſæthe a little moꝛe, and when it is wahren luke warme, then put the Camfer well bꝛuſed vnto it, and then worke it further well together vnto a plaifter.

Item, take Ware, Roſen, Turpentine, oyle of Eggs, and Sallet oyle, of each foure ounces, oyle of Roſes one ounce, ſæthe it all together vnto a plaifter, and then at laſt put vnto it one dragme of Camfer: but if it be too hard, make it ſofter with oyle of Roſes. Another: Take Ware and Coloſony, of each one ounce, Pomy one quarter of an ounce, Frankincenſe, Pirrh, and Paſtick, of each halfe an ounce, white Corall thꝛee dragmes, Load ſtone one dragme, white *Cadmia* one quarter of an ounce, Dragon blood one dragme, Camfer one ounce, make thereof a plaifter. For this, is alſo very good the plaifter of Paſtick ſlackenſtone, which is deſcribed in the ſecond Chapter and the 1. §. Item, take Ware two ounces, Turpentine, and *Gummi Heleni*, of each one ounce, Dragon blood, and Hartwort, of each halfe an ounce, *Gummi Ammoniacum* one ounce, Ceruſe one ounce and a halfe, Frankincenſe, Pomy, Paſtick, and Juniper berries, of each one ounce, Allome one ounce and a halfe, make a plaifter thereof.

Another: Take Ware foure ounces, Pomy, Coloſony, Paſtick, and Frankincenſe, of each one quarter of an ounce, white Corall thꝛee dragmes, Camfer halfe an ounce, oyle of Eggs one ounce, melt the oyle with the ware vpon a milde fire, and then let it be ſomewhat cold, afterwards temper all the other things (beaten very ſmall) amongſt it. This being done, let it ſæthe ſoftly, ſtiring it round about, at laſt temper the Camfer with foure ſpeneſuls of the oyle of Juniper amongſt it.

Item: Take oyle of Roſes and Ware, of each foure ounces, Dære ſewet two ounces, Frankincenſe and Pirrh, of each halfe an ounce, *Galbanum*, Paſtick, and Turpentine, of each halfe an ounce,

ounce, make a plaister of it. This ensuing is not only good for wounds, but also for all blcers : Take Turpentine and Ware, of each foure ounces, Balsick two ounces, Rose leaues 16. ounces, betony, the greater Pimpernell, spiked Plantaine, Nightshade, Diuels bit, Veruine, and Storks bill, of each eight ounces, adde a quart of wyne vnto it; seethe first therein the Roses alone : this being done, powre it thozow a cloth, and wring out the iuice well : afterwards take the other herbs, and put them also into a Kettell, with two quarts of wyne, afterwards let them seethe together euen to the halfe, then wring it well out, and let the decoction be very hot that the Ware may melt in it, then put the Rose wine with the Balsick also vnto it, then seethe it to a plaister, and worke it very strongly with the hands, but you must first annoynt them with butter. This foresaid plaister is not only good for wounds, but also for all blcers. Also you haue in the first Chapter and 15. S. many things which are also very mate for to cure the wounds. The Chirurgians haue yet a black plaister in vse which is made thus : Take frankincense halfe an ounce, Pompy halfe an ounce, Colosony thre quarters of an ounce, oyle of Eggs halfe an ounce, Camfer one dragma, white Ware thre dragnes : melt the Ware and the oyle of Eggs with the pouned Colosony, and then temper the other things pouned amongst it. If it be too hard, adde a little Turpentine vnto it. Item, take clarified Hony eight ounces, fine meale two ounces, Linseed oyle thre ounces, fine Bolus one ounce and a halfe, make a plaister thereof, and lay it vpon the wounds : for this also is requisite the plaister *Gratia Dei*.

Vulnerall Salues. S. 7.



Here be also many kinds of Vulnerall salues prepared, amongst which this ensuing is one of the principallest, which is called *Vnguentum Fuscum*, and is made thus : Take oyle of Violets nine ounces, Ware two ounces, Colosony one ounce, plume Allome thre quarters of an ounce, Pitch, *Sagapennum*, and *Gummi Arabicum* of each one ounce, Balsick, *Galbanum*, *Anamomacum*, *Bdelium*, *Opopanacum*, Frankincense, and Turpentine, of each thre quarters of an ounce,

Vnguentum Fuscum.

the oyle of Violets and Ware are you to melt, and to let it seethe thozowly : after wards temper the Pitch and the Colosony with the dissolved gums amongst it, and when it now beginneth to be cold, then mixe the rest with it. This salue is somewhat attractiue, clensing, and also healing.

This ensuing is sayd to heale all wounds : Take Turpentine thre ounces, Ware seven dragnes, oyle of Cammomill, and oyle of Roses, of each one ounce and a quarter, Frankincense and Balsick, of each one ounce, Birch and Rosen, of each halfe an ounce, good red wyne and vinegar, of each thre quarters of an ounce : let the gum be steeped the space of 24. howres in the vinegar and wyne, afterwards melt it vpon the fire with the ware and oyle, then let them seethe untill the wine be almost all wasted, when it beginneth to be cold, then temper the rest amongst it, and worke this salue with your hands, yet the same being first annoynted with oyle of Balsick. This salue clenseth all wounds, it causeth the flesh to grow, and healeth also very much. Another, which is also very good : Take Louage, *Risforra*, Sage, Plantaine, Parrow, Elecampane leaues, wild Tansie, Sanicle, Cinquefoyle, wild Baites, Pallowes, Betonie, Agrimonie, Veruine, and *Consolida siracenicæ*, of each alike quantitie : tread all these herbs, and then put sufficient swete Butter vnto it; afterwards stamp all these herbs together, and let them so stand certaine dayes. This being done, make it after wards warme, and presse it out hard, and then let it seethe so long together untill the iuice of all the herbs be consumed, then put vnto it Dre suet, Harts suet, Bucks suet, the marrow of an Dre, Ware, Rosen, and Turpentine, of each alike quantitie, according to the quantitie of the Butter, and afterwards melt them all together : when it beginneth to be cold, then put vnto it Frankincense, Birch, Fenegreake meale, Allome, Verdigreace, and Balsick being beaten small all together, then stirre it much together. Another which is briefer : Take Dre suet, Harts suet, Ware, Turpentine, Hony, Louage, Violets, Betony, Agrimonie, and wild Tansie, of each as much as you please, stamp the herbs, and wring out the iuice, afterwards seeths it in the suets untill it be as thicke as a salue. Item, take Rue, Sulfur, *Chamaleon niger*, of each alike quantitie, and Dre suet, as much as will suffice for to make a salue.

For to draw matter out of the wounds. §.8.



Take Ware one ounce and a halfe, Rosin thre quarters of an ounce, Varts suet one ounce, Turpentine, and Sallet oyle, as much as is needefull for to make a salve or plaister: or take clarified Hony, and Turpentine washed with Wine, of each halfe an ounce, oyle of Roses two ounces, let it sethe together untill it be thicke. This cleanseth the wounds of all kind of matter, and withstandeth all ascurions. But if there be any heate with it, then take in steade of common Hony, Honie of Roses, but temper the same not with it untill the other be first boyled.

Of the Taintes. §.9.



If you thinke that the wounds will heale too soone, then cut a dry roote of Gentian for a taint as big as you please, and vse the same in stead of a taint: for when the same wareth most, then doth it swell, and holdeth open the wounds as long as you please, and it is verie holesome of it selfe. Annoint also the taint with the salve *Apotholorum*, or *Egyptiacum*, which be both very mete to keepe open all wounds and vlcers, and also to cleanse them.

For foule Flesh. §.10.



W these two be contrarie: of the first mentioned salve the plaister *Gratia Dei* letteth no foule flesh grow in the wound; so also doth the oyle of Liles.

Item: Take burnt Allome, and fine Bolus, of each alike quantitie, and strow it therein.

Or take Herdigrease, and Trociskes de *Chelidonia*, of each alike quantitie; make a pouder thereof and strow it therein. For this is also verie mete, burnt Varts bones two parts, Salt one part, and vse them as before. Take the iuice of *Narcissus*, of Plantaine, and garden Spints, and the iuice Rue: all these iuices or those that you can get may you take and vse. Item, burne Birchen rindes to pouder, and temper it with burnt Allome, or vse each alone. If so be that then there grow any woymes in the wounds, then temper the iuice of Rue with Vineger and drop it therein.

To staunch the *Synovia*. §.11.



Take the white of an Eg and put a little Saffron amongst, after wards beat them well together with a peece of pouned Allome the bignes of a Hasell nut, and lay it vpon the place whence the *Synovia* issueth.

Another: Take the white of an Eg, and mingle therewith Allome, and Salt, of each one dragma beaten small, and then vse it as the other.

Item, burne Lentils to pouder and strow it therein: after wardes take Turpentine, and Sallet oyle, let them heat together, and then mixe therein the burnt Lentils vnto a salve or plaister: or take Hempseed, poune it untill it yelde oyle, after wards lay it in a fine cloth ouer the disease and bind it vnto it. Item: Take the water of the greater Pimpernell and drop it therein. Item: take Strawberry leaues, and apply them vnto the place. Or take the fruit of Roses, dry them, stampe them to pouder and strow it therein.

When a wounded Member is lamed. §.12.



Or this do the Chirurgians vse this insuing: Take Cow dung, and Goates dung, make a plaister of it with the oyle of Earthwoymes and so lay it warm vnto it: by this meanes do the broken sinewes ware loose. But loke in the fourth part the seventh chap. and 2. §. what is written of the lamenes and extenuation of the member. The like also in the 3. chap. of the Booke where you shall find good direcion of this matter.

To

To cause the Flesh to grow in wounds. §.13.



The Grecians and the Phisitions do call the things which cause the flesh to grow *Sarcotica*. which be for the most part dry in the first degree: for if they be ouermuch drying, then will they not onely dry the humours which do fall into the woundes, but the blode also, and the whole substance of the part. This salve following is verie requisite for it: Take Honey five ounces sethe and skum the same untill it be a little thicke; afterwards temper therein Pirrhe, *Sarcocolla*, and Aloe, of each one dragma and a halfe, powned all together to powder. Item: Take the Lytharge of Syluer, refuse of Iron, Centozie, Aloe, Frankinsence, and Pasticke, of each alike quantitie, make a subtil powder of it. For this is also mete the plaister *Album coctum*, *Triapharmacum*, and *Apostolicum*, which all together ingender flesh, and are prescribed for the same intent. For this also be these plaisters following to be used, viz. *Emplastrum griseum*, or *de lapide Calaminari*, which is thus made: Take prepared *Calaminari* halfe an ounce, Lytharge of gold one ounce, Ceruse one quarter of an ounce, Tutie halfe a dragma, Pasticke one dragma and a halfe, Pirrhe one dragma, Camfer two scruples, make thereof a plaister; if it be too hard, put more Turpentine vnto it: this plaister dryeth; causeth flesh to growe, healeth and cicatrisseth all woundes. The other: Take prepared *Calaminari* fower ounces, Pasticke, Frankinsence, and Dragagant, of each one dragma, the Lytharge of siluer halfe an ounce, Ware three quarters of an ounce, Rosin halfe an ounce, prepared Tutie two scruples, and oyle of Roses, as much as is needefull, this is somewhat weaker then the other. The salve of Tutie, *Diapampholigos*, is verie mete for this vse, so is also the salve *Apostolorum*.

Of that which causeth the Skin to grow. §.14.



Last if you perceiue that the flesh is growen so high, that there wanteth onely cicatrization, then are things to be used which haue an astringent vertue, and which do dry exceedingly without corrosion. For which be most fit all the salues of lime which be described in the fifth chapter, and first §. In like manner also the five white salues which be discovered in the ninth Chapter, and first §. and the last mentioned *Diapampholigos*. This powder following is exceeding good for it: Take lytharge of Syluer, burnt Allome, washed Lyme, burnt Lead, Gals, and Pomegranate peeles, of each alike quantitie, strow it vpon the wound: for this also it is verie fit that the woundes be washed with Wormewood wine, or Rosemarie wine. Concerning the woundes of the head we haue written somewhat in the description of the skull in the first part, the fourth chap. and 1. §.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Cicatrices and spots of the Skin.



When there hath bene any body wounded, or hath had some other eruption healed, then wil there remain on the same place some cicatrice or mark. For as hath bene admonished at the first the skin doth neuer more heale of it selfe, but there must grow a new skin. Also it happeneth otherwhyles that new borne children do bring spots into the world. And because that the same are placed in the face they do make a great deformitie: therefore we will also discourse of them.

Amongst the Grecians be those spots that be white called *Lence*, and by the Latinists *Vitilignes*, which be white spots of the body. Item, there be also blacke spots of the Leprosie. Of the spots which appeere in the face we haue written in the first part, the fifth chapter, and first §. which remedies may also be used ouer the whole bodie. But because there be so many kind of spots we are to write the more at large of them.

Of

Of the moles or markes that children are borne withall. §. 1.



It hapneth also many times, that newborne children do bring with them into the world certaine spots or moles, which are caused by some frighting, strange lusts, and such like, which women (being with Child) may get, as by experience hath oftentimes bene sene. Chew in the morning fasting Mustard seade, and annoynt therewith the spots, do this oftentimes, then will the spots weare away: but loke diligently vnto it, that it come not into the childes eyes: also breath not into his eyes.

There come also otherwhiles certaine marks and other red spots on the skin, for which, the *Basilica* is first to be opened, and afterwards some cooling sirupes, and other cooling potions, but we will write and discourse severally thereof.

Of red spots through heate. §. 2.



If these spots we haue before admonished in the first Chapter and 4. §. that all that may be vsed for it which is o. dayned for the Rose, or *Erisipelas*. But if so be that this be caused through some uncleannes of the blood (as it commonly hapneth) and that notwithstanding there be no speciall heate instant, then can no better thing be vsed for it then the sirupe of *Sumitoy*, and all that may be made of that herb; for that herb hath an especiall vertue for to cleanse the blood, and to take away all itch of the skin. Afterwards are you to vse this salve following: Take vnbleet lyme, & prepared *Tuty*, of each one drag. oyle of *S. Johns wort* two ounces, and a little *Ware*, temper them all together. Or take Camfer, and buse it with an Almond, then temper the same with Rose water, and annoynt the spots therewith. Take oyle of Eggs as much as you please, and temper amongst it a good part of bused lytharge of siluer, then annoynt therewith the spots, this driueth them away how lothsome soeuer they be.

For this, is also very fit the oyle of Juniper, and the oyle of bitter Almonds, and of each alike, or each apart. Also you may vse for this maydens milke, *Lac virginis*, which is described in the first part, the fifth Chapter, and 1. §. Item, take Vellebo; two ounces, stampe it to pap, and put thereto as much of the iuice of Agrimonie, and a little Rose water, then rub the spots with it. Or take lytharge of siluer, burnt Allome, burnt Lead, washed Lyme, Gals, and Pomegranate blossomes, of each one dragme, and make a powder thereof.

Of spots which come by falles. §. 3.

Before in the first Chapter and 6. §. is a salve described, beginning thus: Take the caules of Goats, &c. which is especiall good for all spots, and very safe.

Of spots by stripes or falles. §. 4.



Or this, you haue in the first part, the fifth Chapter and 5. §. two good remedies, without which, you may vse these ensuing, which may be rather vsed vpon the whole bodie then in the face, because that Orpiment is somewhat benemous: Take the iuice of Parierom gentle two ounces, Orpiment halfe a dragme, oyle of Cammonill one ounce, make a salve thereof. Item, take Wormewood three handfuls, Asarabacca and Plantaine, of each two handfuls, Saltpeter, and wild yellow Rape seade, of each one dragme, Comin, and Sulfur bis pouned small, of each three dragmes, Saffron one dragme, two well beayed yolks of Eggs, make a plaister of it with the iuice of *Solidago media*, untill it be decocted hard ynough. But if the foresayd spots be without heate, then are to be vsed for it all kinds of fat of beasts, and of all fowles, or the plaister *Diachilon* molten amongst it, and so vsed. Item, take fresh butter, and the decoction of *spallowes*, temper the gals of Capons with the white of an egge, and vse it as the other. In the fourth part, the seventh Chapter, and 3. §. is a salve beginning thus: Take Sage, and *Palloves*

lowes &c. which is also very good for all kind of spots.

These things following be also much commended; as oyle of bitter Almonds, of Juniper, Citrons salve, the fatnes of an Asses necke, and *P. Tridramis* water.

And to conclude, we will describe a strong salve, which taketh away all spots, and softneth all hard swellings, and doth also consume the same. Take the roots of wild Cucumbers, the roots of white Behen, the Lytharge of gold, and Argall of each one drag. and a halfe, *Sagapenum*, and Pigeon dung of each one scrup. oyle of *Sesamum* three ounces, oyle of Juniper, and oyle of wheate, of each two ounces and a halfe, white Ware one ounce and a halfe, sethe them together in foure ounces of the iuice of Oranges, untill that all the iuice is spent: take afterwards the white of an Egge, small byused Camfere one dragme, Vineger twelue ounces, wash the rest with it, after that all is well tempered together: and afterwards vse this salve.

The ninth Chapter.

Of inward things which spread themselves ouer all the body.



We haue taught befoze of all outward accidents, which outwardly doe infect the skin: but now will we write of these things and parts which are spread within throughe the whole body, which hold the same together, vnderprop it, and sustaine the body vpright: these are the bones, baines, and arteries, with the blood that is in them, and all that concerneth them; howe the same is to bee clenfed, and when it runneth ouermuch, howe it shall be stopped; how that it shall be letten out, and his naturall heate cooled. There shall also be discoursed of the sweat, as a superfluity of all humors. Afterwards we shall discourse of the sinewes, of the tendons and ligaments. Item, of the flesh, and chiefly of that which we do call the muscles. For as much as wearysomenes, fatnes, leannes, sleepe, paine, *Phlegma*, or slime, with many other cold diseases, as well as the blood, *Cholera* and *Melancholia*, may be dispersed in the whole body, and that the blood hath no certaine place in the body, as the *Cholera* in the bladder of the gall, and *Melancholia* in the milke (of which two hath bene written in other places) therfoze we must not pretermitt to write of the nature of *Phlegma*, and must first begin of the bones.

Of the Bones. §.1.



The bones of the whole body, be (as it were) the foundation and stay of the bodie, and also the hardest parts which be in it. These are engendred of the heate of the body, which dryeth the moisture, and hardeneth the bones. *Plato* supposeth that their beginning is of the Sparrow, which should so be dryed away, and hardened throughe heate: wherefoze that *Empedocles* doth ascribe the most part of them to *Vulcano*. that is, the fire. By nature they be drye, earthy, cold, hard, without blood, and also without feeling. They doe get their beginning of the vppermost part of the backe bone, which stretcheth it selfe euen to the thighes. They be all so hard knit together, and bounden throughe the sinewes and ligaments, that there is not one amongst 248. (or as *Albertus* reckoneth, amongst 276.) that are in mans body, the which is not fastned to another bone. When these bones be broken, then do they not growe together againe in their owne substance, but by a certaine liqour, which the Grecians do call *Poros*, the which hardeneth there so foz, that therewith the whole fracture groweth together againe. But whensoever that these bones doe breake, or get any other disease, then loke what we haue written thereof in the fourth part, the ninth chapter and second §.

Of Napsa. §.2.



It hapneth also sometimes that in certaine places of the body such a matter is gathered, that doth so harden and growe out of some bone, that it seemeth to be a right bone, which in Latine is called *Napsa*, and although this ought to bee cured by Chirurgery, wee will neuertheles ordaine this for it: Take Frankincense
one

one ounce, Pastick fine ozag. Ceruse thre quarters of an ounce, quicksilver halfe an ounce; temper them all together with fower ounces of Swines greafe, and rub therewith the *Napa*, at the fire very hard, not regarding what paine soeuer it doth.

The tenth Chapter.

Of three kindes of Vaines in generall.



The vaines are described by *Galen* in this maner: The vaines (saith he) are a fat of the blood, tempered and mixed of blood and naturall spirites, moist and warme, with great sensibility. And vnder this name are comprehended thre sortz: to wit, blood vaines (called by the Latinists *Vena*) Arteries and pulse vaines, *Arteria* or *Vena pulsatiles*, for that they beate continually.

Secondly, the nature of these vaines be warme and moist: what difference there is betwene both these sortz of vaines, besides the beating, that shall appear in this description following: the Anatomists doe accompt 365. vaines in a mans body.

Thirdly, there be sinewes, which be also comprehended vnder the name of vains, which haue no fellowship at al with the blood vains, but only that they do lie spread ouer al the body, wherof in case that one lose her motion and feeling, then will forthwith the whole body, or some part of it (according to the quality of this disease) be without might, and depriued of all motion.

Of the blood vaines. §. 1.



Now for to describe these thre sortz of vaines, we will first of all admonish of the blood vaines, which are called of the Philosophers and Anatomists *Quiesca*, which is still vaines, and that by reason they be naturally quiet and without motion; for when they be moued, that is done by some outward cause.

Alberus and *Aristoteles* would maintaine and defend against *Galenus*, that these vaines did take their offspring from the hart: But according to the opinion of *Galen* and *Hippocrates*, haue they their beginning in the *Luer*, which question we will leaue to the Anatomists to be decided. But we will shew here in briefe what hath moued *Hippocrates* to ascribe the beginning of these vaines vnto the *Luer*, viz. for that in all creatures (which haue blood) there is no greater vaine, then the *Luer* vaine, which appeareth none otherwise but as a branch of a tree, which is thickest beneath in the ground, and at his beginning, and besides his roote stretching forth wide and broad, and the branches about do spread themselves againe in many sprigs or twigs. And thus it is also with the arteries, wherof the foresaid authoers haue also affirmed, that the *Luer* is none other thing but like to a roote and fountains of all other vaines, so that she doth impart her blood first of all to the hart, as to the most noble part of the bodie. This is now sufficiently spoken in generall of the blood vaines, wherof we will speake and discourse moze at large hereafter.

Of the Arteries. §. 2.



Hereof *Galen* writeth thus; the Arteries are vessels of the thin and cleane blood, wherein is moze naturall spirites or ayze, moze heate, dryeth and felling, then in the blood vaines, which remayne alwayes panting and beating.

They haue their offspring of the left concauitie of the hart, and the first branch a little off from his roote is parted in twaine, wherof the one part goeth vppwards, and the other downewards, where (in both places) the foresaid blood vaines are spread abroad, with diuers small vaines, so that there be few arteries without vaines. This altogether is most diligently described by *Aristotle*, *Galen*, *Albert*, and also of *Walter Riss*, and at last with diuely figures it is apparant to the eyes.

These Arteries or pulse vaines be by nature (as is said) much hotter, dryer, thicker, sensibler, and

and harder, than the blood vaines. Partly like vnto the nature of the sinews they also receiue som blood, but it is subtiler and fairer than the blood of the vaines: they be also much more replenished with vitall spirits then the vaines, which is also a cause of their continuall panting & mouing, which happeneth so forcible, that the same is outwardly felt ouer the whole bodie, and especially on the hands, fete, temples of the head, and on other places moe may be sene and felt. All phisitions may deeme thereby whether the nature be strong or feble, and all according as the pulse beateth, swift, slow, hard, soft, steddie, or very trembling.

The auncient phisitions haue bene of opinion that both these sorts of vaines, and especially the arteries (if they be cut or chopt off) could not be consolidated againe; yea that the hart vaines be utterly incurable. But *Galenus* acknowledgeth verily that the same could hardly be effected in men that be old, but in yong people otherwise. Of women and yong children doth he aduise that one should not be discouraged; for that he had (saith he) healed ynough himselfe that were wounded after that maner. For this be also befoze many good remedies in the second part, the fift chapter and 18. §. if a vaine be broken in the breast or any other place, which may also be used inwardly and outwardly for this purpose.

In like manner you may also vse for it this confection insuing: Take Venbane seede, and white Poppie seedes, of each one ounce and a quarter, Sealed earth, and red Corrall, of each five dragmes, old conserue of Roses, the older the better, foure ounces: temper all together, and take thereof in the morning and euening each time halfe a dragma and no more: this is very good and also forcible for all kinds of bleeding. When as now the vaines do swell be it of whatioener cause it will, then annoint them with Treacle or Spithydate.

Of the Blood. §. 3.

It is sufficiently knowen that mans body is ioyned together of fouer kindes of humours or complexion: to wit, of blood, *Cholera*, *Melancholia*, and *Phlegma*; but amongst these is the blode one of the best, partly, for that it is the matter of the vitall spirits, wherein life it selfe hath his being, or for that it is to be compared with the beginning of life, because it is by nature warme and moist: or because it hath more vertue to nourish and to sustaine, than any of the other humours.

In fine it is such a Jewell of nature that if the same be taken away, that then death must insue.

Cholera and *Melancholia* haue their proper places or residences in the bodie, wherein they do gather themselves, as we haue of late declared, from which places they do also shew their power in the ingendring of sicknesses.

But the blood and *Phlegma* are so diuided into two parts of the body, that one cannot so sone open the skin in any place, but immediately the blood doth issue forth, and that the vaines be vessels and habitation of the blood, hath bene declared befoze; without the which there can also no blood be found, except in the least concauitie of the hart. Wherefoze *Albertus* hath bene of none other opinion, but that the vaines do begin there, and not in the liuer.

The nature of the blood is hot and moist; yea so hot, that in the whole body there is nothing hotter; and to the contrarie nothing colder then the *Phlegma*.

Wherefoze this hot and moist blood is giuen to all liuing creatures; not only for a nourishment of all members of the bodie, but also to maintaine them by their naturall warmth, and no otherwise. For example, good wood is layd vpon the fire for to warme a whole chamber with it; in like sort also, as the fire is abated and his burning taken away, if the same be overcharged with too much wood, or if the wood be too moist; also if the wood be pluckt away, or too little laide vpon it: so is it with the heate of the hart, that if the same be too much, or too little; likewise over-cold, vnicurable heate, or is too feble. When the hart shall take these kind of diseases, then will all other members of the body be partakers thereof.

It is also the opinion and censure of all learned, that the blood is the most principall meanes in the mothers body, whereby that the hart as the chiefe part of the body hath his beginning.

Concerning his nature and propertie, then is this not a small miracle of nature that it hath no feeling of it selfe: neuerthelesse it is cause of the same and of life also. And it is found by daily experience that if there run much blood from any creature, that thereby come swoonings, yea that life

life it selfe runneth out with the blode.

Neither is the blood alike in all men, nor in all members, it getteth also through age many kinds of nature. In children it is thin and waterish, in youth hot and sharp, in the men at the fullest and best of all, and in all these aforesaid very much and abundant.

In age there is but little, thicke and blacke, and clotting very sodeinly as well inwardly as outwardly vpon the body.

In like maner it is also sure, that how fatter a body is, so much lesse blood hath he: for that it is through the fatnes consumed, as is sene, that all fat hath no blood in it. Contrarily, how much the leaner, so much the blacker is the blood. Besides these is also womens blood much grosser and blacker than mens blood; & women haue also lesse blood in the outward than in the inward parts.

Moreover, there is no creature fuller of blood amongst all them that haue receiued life, than women, wherefore also nature doth vnburthen them every moneth of all the superfluities of the blood, and they are lesse subiect than men, vnto all sicknesses which procede of blood.

Albeit it hapneth (yet seldome) that they bleede at the nose, or by the Hemorrhoides, then do they quickly find, that they haue their termes the lesse.

Secondly, the blood also in the Hart, Lights, and arteries, is much subtiler then that in the vaines. The grosse blood is drawn away by the flesh, whereby that the foresaid blood is more subtiler, thin and skommy. The vpright good blood, which is without any disease, is light red, sweet in taste, and not too thicke, and in that estate it may be sustained and augmented by good meat and drinke, if one take abundantly therof: but to the contrary, it will be diminished through want of those things. The blood doth especially encrease by good strong wine moderately dronken, it maketh the same also faire and fresh, and especially the wine which is thicke red, for that wine becometh not to be much digested.

In fine, according to that the food is good or bad, thereafter is the blood qualified; for the farther it is engendred from his proper nature, so much the blacker it is. If the same spoyle through abundance, then will in the broken vaines be knots called *Varices*, whereof we haue written in the first chapter, and seuenteenth §. of the fift part; or it will be expelled through the bleeding at the nose, or through the Hemorrhoides; also it is oftentimes altered in impostumations and corruptions. What diseases are caused of the corruption of the blood, that shall hereafter be taught and declared.

Amongst all liuing creatures is the blood of man the most subtiler: as to the contrary, the Asse blood the most grosse. So long as it doth remaine in the bodie, it doth keepe his warme and moyst nature: but as sone as it is out, then doth it thicken; yet one mans blood more than anothers, whence afterwards you may separate the little hairens or *Fibra*. The blood of a Steere is so hard, that it being dronken it is a deadly payson.

Contrariwise certaine beastes blood doth not thicken at all, viz. Hares blood, Conies blood, Harts and Hindes blood, the blood of Hoes, of Swine, of Goats, and such like more. The Philosophers opinion is, that all grosse thick blood doth giue strength; subtiler and thin blood wittines; little blood feare, and very little wit.

But for conclusion this insuing is a marvellous property of the blood, that Nature hath placed such power therein, that the countenance of a man is altered in the twinkling of an eye, as happeneth in great anger, shamefastnes and such, through the concourse of blood.

Contrariwise if the same depart from the face it sheweth feare and fright. And in these alterations of paleness and rednes, doth keepe such a difference, that thereby may be adiudged and knowen, how that the hart and the minde of man is disposed within.

Whereby the blood may be cleansed. §.4.



Albeit that we haue taught enough for all sicknesses, which be caused through the uncleannes of the blood, by what meanes the blood may be cleansed, yet can it not be but necessary to discouer certaine things here which be mete for the same. And first, what things they be: the confected Putmegs are especially commended for this, that they make very good and haile blood: Nevertheless it is not aduised, that they which be hot of nature should vse the same vnlesse it be very seldome.

We haue also declared in other places, that there is nothing that cleanse the blood more then fumitory, and all that is made of fumitory, as conserue, sirupe, iuice, water, and especially if the same be decocted in the whay of Goats milke.

Rosemary is also highly commended for it. In the first part the second Chapter and 1. S. is a powder described, beginning thus : Take Rene leaues, which is also marvellous good for this purpose.

Concerning the drinke, we haue told before that there is nothing better then good red wyne.

Amongst herbwynes, the Burrage wyne, wyne of Buglosse, and of *Tamariscus* is commended: for this, may you also looke into these places ensuing, where there be diuers and sundry things described, whereby the blood may be cleansed, as in the third part, the eleuenth Chapter, and 6. S. Item, in the first part, of the vlcers and of the scabbednes which be commonly caused of vncleane blood, as also the Pocks and the Leprosie, hereafter shall be also spoken of it in the description of *Phlegma*.

How the abundant bleeding is to be staunched. §. 5.



In like manner also there is nothing to be written of this abundant blēding, but only to alledge certaine places where diuers and sundry remedies are set downe for to staunch blood withall, as in the first part the eight Chapter and 7. S. Item, in the first part the ninth Chapter and 5. S. Also in the first part the 13. Chapter and 7. S. Item, in the second part, the first Chapter and 17. S. Item, in the third part, the eight Chapter, and 4. S. Yet againe in the third part, the eleuenth Chapter and 16. S. Item, more in the third part the fourteenth Chapter and 11. S. And if so be that this blēding come vpon women in Childbed too fast, then looke for it in the conclusion of the third part: and before in the seuenth Chapter, where certaine pretious vulnerall potions are described, in which places there may good meanes be found, according to the importance of the blēding.

How to let out superfluous Blood. §. 6.



It is no lesse needefull in many men to take away the superfluous blood, whereby nature is overcharged, and many sicknesses caused, then in others to increase it, and this hapneth most conueniently through letting of blood, through application of boring cups, or through fastning of Leaches.

Of the letting of blood haue we spoken at large in the Introduction, and also written of the 16. vaines of the bodie which are wont to be opened, and likewise in what sicknesses each of them is to be opened, whereby each one that readeth it, shall finde a good direction.

The second meanes whereby this noysome blood may be taken away, are the cups, whereof we haue discoursed at large in the foresayd introduction. Also in like sort of the setting on of the Leaches, thither do we direct the Reader, and so conclude this Chapter.

The eleuenth Chapter.

Of the naturall warmth of mans bodie.



Because we haue now written of the vaines, and also how the same do spread themselves throughout the whole bodie, and other things concerning this, therefore we will admonish of the naturall heate, which with the blood is imparted vnto all parts of the bodie: for that the blood and the naturall heate be so linked one with another and befriended, that one cannot continue without the other, but death must presently ensue. Yea, there is also none other thing that geueth shape in the beginning to all liuing bodies, and afterwards causeth them to increase to the howze of death, but this naturall heate which is bozne with vs.

This

This is the only cause of all working: and it is knowen, that all that groweth and increaseth, yea also all herbs and all plants must haue their nourishment thereby, and each according to the right propertie of his nature, which giueth to each thing according to his neede, both moisture and drought: but how were it possible, that the same may be concocted and altered for the sustenance and increase of mans bodie, if there be no naturall warmth with it: This naturall warmth doth maintaine all health, and consumeth all bad humors, it consumeth also meate and drinke, whereby that all inward parts do receiue their power and strength, and also make them apt to do all things, whereto they were created.

The hardened skin will be mellowed and made thin through this naturall heate, all wounds and vlcers be brought to natural matter, it swageth the payne, it loseth and softneth all contracted sinewes. Item, this naturall heate is that which causeth the wounded head to heale, and fetch it from all his heauie accidents, dryeth the moisture of the same, expelleth all corrupted bones, and taketh away the venome of all corroding vlcers. This naturall warmth doth warme all frozen members, it helpeth all diseases of the Matrix, and priuities, &c. The same naturall heate doth heale all broken bones. But how may that be better sene then by daily examples, which we haue daily before our eyes, and as it appeareth in old folks: for it is sene that how much the naturall heate abateth in them, so much the weaker and the more incurable do they waxe of all diseases: and most manifestly in the dying, where as it is clearly sene, that how much the more that the vnnaturall heate doth abate, so much the nearer is death at hand. Wherefore must heere alwayes be taken that it be kept in his naturall being, for if so be that the same be too great or too small in any body, then can follow none other but heauie sicknesses, and at length death it selfe. The like may be sene in the Plague, and in the Pestilence. Wherefore we will here discover certaine things which sustaine this naturall heate, and do increase and strengthen the same, and afterwards shew what is to be vsed against this vnnaturall heate. First, there be certaine spiced wynes, Claret wynes, Hypocras wynes, and such like commended for it, but they must be vsed with prouidence, to the end that according to the qualitie of nature and of the age, they may be prepared, that they heate not overmuch: for that the right nature of wyne is, that it being moderately broken, doth preserve and sustaine the naturall warmth, and strengtheneth the powers of men. The same doth also Elecampane wyne, and confected Putnegg vsed morning and euening after meate. The conserue of Rosemary doth warme all those which be halfe dead. But what neede is it to write so largely thereof, seeing there is no sickness, which cometh through cold described in all this booke, wherein hath not bene taught how that this weake naturall heate might be holpen: hereafter also shall be spoken of the *Phlegma*, and by that meanes also of cold, and what is to be done for these cold diseases, where further aduertisement may be sought for.

Of vnnaturall heate. §. i.



All hot diseases which haue bene discovered hitherto, be meanes enery where declared, wherewith this vnnaturall heate might be quenched and slaked. But we will here not only alledge the passages where the same is taught, but also declare what may be mete for it. For this, are sundrie things described, as the cooling salue *Galen*, the salue of Roses, the salue of Saunders, and the Pomade. For this is also good the Poplar salue, all which you may mire as you please, or vse each alone. In like manner these oyles following as of Poppie heads, of Roses, of Violets, and of water Lillies, which do coole more then the oyle of Roses, or oyle of Violets. For an outward application, take the water of Cozne roses, and of Nightshade, of each two ounces, sealed earth, and fine *Bolus*, of each one dragma, Camfer ten greynes, temper them all together, and lay it vpon the forehead, or where the heate is.

One may vse inwardly the conserue of Buglosse, of Burrage, of water Lillies, of Violets, of Cicorie, of red and white Roses, confected Cherries, and conserue of Barberies. Item, confected roses of Cicorie, Framboys, confected Peaches (which one may vse in all hot sicknesses) Prunes that be confected. Item, fresh Cassy is very necessary in all vnnaturall and tharp heate.

The towre Dates do coole and purge very mildly, and they do also quench the thirst. The

simple

simple things be Lettice, Endiue, Cicozie, and bread, that is steeped in cold water, Fishes, Limons, Oranges, Pompeons, Melons, swete wyne, Beares, Apples, & Cherries, &c. These foresayd things are not only to be vsed in hot sicknesses, but also to take them moderately bring in health in hot times. There is also a sirupe made of the iuice of Oranges, of solow: Pomegranates, of white Roses, and of Sozrell, the which do coole much in time of the Plague, and in all pestilentiall sicknesses, which do enflame the hart and the stomacke.

The sirupe of Roses laratiue doth especially coole all heate of Agues; likewise also the sirupe of Gerinaice, of Violets, of Endiue, and of Vineger.

In like manner also *Oxyeraton*, *Oxyfaccbara*, Zulep of Roses, and of Violets, the hony of Roses, hath a metely cooling nature, therefore the same may also be vsed in hot Agues.

When as then the patient desireth to drinke in great heate, then be some of these foresayd sirupes to be tempered amongst it, for which the sirupe of Violets, of Burrage, and of Roses, be the most principall, if the same be tempered with well water, or any cooling potion. The same doth also fresh well water alone.

Item, Barly water, or Henbooth dressed with Endiue, watred wyne, Henbooth with Sugar and Barly, and the water of Larks spur drunke thre or foure times aday, these beforesaid do take away the vnnaturall heate, whether it be in the Plague, or in any other hot agues.

Take water of Larks spur and of Buglosse, of each two ounces, Cicozie water one ounce, drinke twice thereof morning and euening: it strengtheneth and cooleth also the Hart in all hot things.

Take a handfull of Reisons, stamp them to pay, and powre vpon it eight ounces of water of Buglosse, Cinnamome one dragme, then wzing it thow a cloth, and afterwards take it, or giue it to drinke with Almond milke.

But if so be that some vnnaturall heate did assaile you without any especiall sickness, then is this ensuing to be vsed for it: Take a black Cockrell of a yere old, chop it aliue one part from another, and take the lyuer, and stamp it very warme in a mortar, then temper with it womens milke of one that giueth suck to a boy, afterwards wzing it together thzough a cloth, and giue thereof to the ouerheated bodie two or thre spoonefuls. Some do commend this very highly, and it may be tryed without perill.

Item, the iuice of greene Butthels be very good against all accidents which may be caused of heate.

The twelfth Chapter.

Of the Sweate in generall.



After the description of vnnaturall heate, we are to write somewhat also of the sweate (which is conteyned in the corrupted blood) and pierceth thzough the whole bodie. The same is thus briefly described of *Galen*. Sweate is a cleansing and an excessive moisture which is mixed with the blood, as the whay is with the milke. Other do expound it more at large. The sweate (say they) is a moisture, which is caused of the vapors of the bodie, which spreadeth it out to the uttermost parts of the bodie, and penetrateth out thzough the skin, whereby the blood is unburthened of much vncleannes, whereof there be two sorts, the one naturall, which in great sicknesses is a good signe, or *Crisin*, which kind of sweate doth breake out also vpon men thzough great labour, or in Sommer time, and is a wholesome and healing sweate, which bringeth great ease and lightening with it. The other kind of sweate is vnnaturall, and also hurtfull, as is seene in them which suffer great paine, or that lye a dying: therefore it is not vniustly said (as also the truth is) that the sweate is a signe of all the moistnes which raigneth in the body. For when as the sweate breaketh forth excessively, then is it a signe of the great abundance of subtile moistures, and of the strength of the expulsive virtue. Like as to the contrary, a little sweate giueth knowledge of the toughnes and thicknes of the same, or debilitie of the expulsive power. If so be that the sweate be red, then is it a signe that the blood hath the maistrie: but if so be that the sweate be yellow, then hath *Cholera* the preheminence; or if it be white, *Plegma*: and if it be blackish, *Melancholia*. And if so be that the sweate stinke, then must the blood also in the vaines whence

the said sweate commeth stinke also. Item, these differences may be perceiued by the tong, that when one will pꝛoue his sweate and the same be swete, then is it a signe that the blood raigneth; and if bitter, then *Cholera*, &c.

The causes of the sweat be ouer hot ayre, great labour, warme weather, bathing, to goe to hot clothed, and a moyst body. But commonly it is caused thꝛough great rioting which is tately committed: the first cause wil be taken away, if one beware of labour, and tary out of warme aire, &c. The second thꝛough purging: but the sweate may come of whatsoeuer cause that it wil, it is alwaies very profitable foꝛ a moyst body and healthfull: therfore is the same to be required in many sundꝛy perillous diseases, viz. in frantickenes, *Phrenitide*, in which the sweate is especially very mete if the same be excessiue pelled.

The positions which be very expert haue taken thꝛough the sweate no small signification of life oꝛ of death, and especially in those dayes which they call *Criticos*, which be these insuing, that do yeld also a good pꝛognostration of health. The 3. 5. 7. 9. 11. 14. 20. 21. 24. 27. 30. 31. 34. and 40. The other which commeth betwene these foresaide daies do signifie to the contrarie a long continuing sickenes. This sweating is also euery where common with all agues, and especially in all hot agues, but after a seuerall oꝛ different manner: foꝛ if the sweate be cold, and that it be onely about the head, in the face, and in the necke, then it is a very bad signe: if it come with a sharpe ague, then is it a signe of death, oꝛ commeth it with a milde ague, then doth it signifie a lingring sickenes: foꝛ which it also signifieth that where the sweate doth bꝛeake out, that there the disease and the sickenes is.

Moreover, we will ad this vnto it, that when the blood is vnmensurable moyst, that thence springeth alwaies a verie græuous sickenes, foꝛ that thereby it will be waterish (like as the whay of the milke) retaining neuerthelesse the red colour, whereby it commeth also that a body sweateth blood otherwhiles.

Foꝛ sweating be also these rules insuing pꝛescribed. First, the sweate is not to be moued before, and yer that the matter be purged (whence that this is pꝛouoked) and so long as the patient feeleth ease thereby, and be not ouer much weakened. Secondly, in consuming maladies, as *Hetica*, and *Phthisis*, sweating is not mete. Thirdly, if the sweating get so much the matterie, that a body is thereby weakened, then is the sweating to be caused to cease by vncouering oꝛ taking away the couerings. And doth it come thꝛough ouer much meate: then is the patient to liue soberly, and to fast. But if so that it doe come thꝛough repletion of the bodie, then is the same moysture oꝛ humour which causeth the sweate to be purged. Afterwardes is the bodie to be annointed with this salue following: Take *Roses* one ounce, red *Saunders*, blossomes of *Pomegranates*, *Galles*, and *Wirtle leaues*, of each halfe an ounce: sethe all together in fower and twentie ounces of water vntill the third part be spent; afterwardes strayne it thꝛow a clothe, and then put vnto it fife ounces of the oyle of *Roses*, and then let it sethe so long vntill all the water be consumed, afterwardes strayne it thꝛow a cloth. With this salue is the patient especially to annoint the side and the bꝛeast. He is also to drinke oftentimes *Zulep* of *Roses*, and of *Violets*, and to moysten the bꝛeast sometimes and the sides with cold water, and also to sleepe alone, but vpon no bed which is filled with feathers, and that but light covered.

The sweating causeth also sometimes swooning which is not without daunger. This patient is not to be bounden, rubbed, noꝛ to kepe in his bꝛeast, like as is done to others which fall into a swooning by some other cause. Foꝛ that the foresaide things doe driue out moꝛe matter and sweate out of the bodie. Foꝛ this also is wine to be eschued, foꝛ that it expelleth also sweate: but the face is to be spꝛinkled with *Rose water*, and with well water. The patient must also refraine from ouer hot labour, and not to couer himselfe too much. We must set his bed in a colde place, and hang the same with cold odoriferous things, as *Roses*, *Saunders*, *Camfer* *Quinces*, *Waterlillies*, and such like.

Whereby Sweate is pꝛouoked. §. 1.



The first are the pꝛes to be opened, as both the oile of *Cammomill*, & of *Will*, if one be annoynted therewith: oꝛ take *Pepper*, *Cinnamom*, *Calmus*, *Rapontica*, *Pieretrum*, *Kubarbe*, *Costus*, *Cassie wood*, *Balsam fruits*, *Parierom* gentle, and the iuice of white *Vints*; temper some of these foresaide things together and sethe them with *Sallet oile* in wine, and annoynt you therewith, it causeth a man to sweate.

Further

Further, these things following are to be used before one goe to bed, therewith to expell the sweat: to wit, halfe a dragma or a whole dragma of Treacle, or Spithivate. Item, take an Onion, and put good Treacle into it, afterwards rost it soft in hot ashes, and eate a good deale thereof, then lay you to bed to sweate therewith, and afterwards drye your selfe cleane with drye clothes.

For bathing, he is to take the quantity of a nut of Conserues of Rosemary, or Conserue of Sumitry, both of them doe expell sweat: the Conserues of Cherne berries is the common peoples Phisicke for this purpose.

Item, take Rose water, Cloymetwood water, and Rue water, of each a like quantity, and vse thereof every morning a good draught: or take one ounce of Ginger, and seethe it in a pinte of red wine; afterwards straine it without wringing, and then drinke five ounces thereof: it causeth also to sweat well, and that especially in quartain agues: Now to the end to abate the heat, then temper amongst it Zulep of Violets. *Oxymel Compositum* doth also moue sweat.

But if one cannot sweat, then take two or three Wycke stones, and make them very hot, and wrap them in a wet cloth, and then lay first one, and then another to the side, vnder the armpits, on the sides of the patient, or betwixne his legs; then will the vapor cause the patient to sweat: And if so be that there bee a stinking sweat instant, like as the stench of the armpits, whereof we haue written in the fourth part, the first chapter, and the second §. and in the second chapter in the third §. then may one with the foresaid vse this ensuing: Take white Coperas halfe an ounce, let it boyle so long in a pinte of water as one would seethe an Egg hard, or somewhat longer, and wash you therewith. Also the sweat will be expelled by annointing with oile of Quinces, or by taking of Sparmalade made with spice.

Of the sweat bath and other. §.2.

It is very common, that sweat is vsually prouoked by bathes, which is attempted after diuers maners, and must be done for many kindes of maladies, as we haue declared in many places, for which now that bathing is noysome and bad, we haue also taught here and there, like as the same may be looked for in the Table.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the Sinewes.

It is a question amongst certain learned men whence the sinewes, which the Latinnists call *Nervos*, haue their beginning. *Aristoteles* was of opinion that they came from the hart, although it cannot bee perceived that there-hence any should come: but *Galenus* with his followers doe say that the Sinewes take their beginning in the Bryaines and the backe bone. And this opinion is not without a foundation and sure ground, because that as soone as the sinewes bee inflamed with any vnaturall heate, the bryaines thereby are so infected, that commonly these men be distraught of their wits and vnderstanding, yea waxeth childish, and as the Phisitions name it *Deliriu*. *Albertus* doth reckon to be in mans body 77. sinewes, as well great as small, hard, soft, and other, and therein doe all learned agree, that they be all of a colde nature, yet the one lesse than the other, and also without blood, wherfore some call them the white vaines. Amongst these be three principall sortes; the first which we chiefly call *Nervos*, which is sinewes: the second *Tendones*, which be the tendones: the third *Ligamenta*, which bee ligaments or binding sinewes. The first sort haue their beginning in the bryaines, of both the skins of the bryaines, and in the backe bone, the which *Albertus* calleth the vicegerent of the bryaines, for that they be both almost of one nature. These *Nervi* or sinewes, the which (by the Grecians is as much to say as bending) be by nature a little warmer, and also dryer then the vaines, or any other sinewes, they are also more sensible than the Arteries, and of such power, that they franke and freely impart vnto the whole body all motion and feeling.

These foresaid sinewes are by nature so placed in the backe bone, and his soles (which be

the said sweate commeth stinke also. Item, these differences may be perceiued by the tong, that when one will proue his sweate and the same be swete, then is it a signe that the blood raigeth; and if bitter, then *Cholera*, &c.

The causes of the sweat be ouer hot ayre, great labour, warme weather, bathing, to goe to hot clothed, and a moyst body. But commonly it is caused throught great rioting which is lately committed: the first cause wil be taken away, if one beware of labour, and tary out of warme aire, &c. The second throught purging: but the sweate may come of whatsoeuer cause that it wil, it is alwaies very profitable for a moyst body and healthfull: therefore is the same to be required in many sundry perillous diseases, viz. in frantickenes, *Phrenitide*, in which the sweate is especially very mete if the same be excessiue & expelled.

The *Phisitions* which be very expert haue taken throught the sweate no small signification of life or of death, and especially in those dayes which they call *Criticos*, which be these insuing, that do yeld also a good prognostication of health. The 3. 5. 7. 9. 11. 14. 20. 21. 24. 27. 30. 31. 34. and 40. The other which commeth betwene these foresaide daies do signifie to the contrarie a long continuing sickenes. This sweating is also euery where common with all agues, and especially in all hot agues, but after a leuerall or different manner: for if the sweate be cold, and that it be onely about the head, in the face, and in the necke, then it is a very bad signe: if it come with a sharpe ague, then is it a signe of death, or commeth it with a milde ague, then doth it signifie a lingring sickenes: for which it also signifieth that where the sweate doth breake out, that there the disease and the sickenes is.

Moreouer, we will ad this vnto it, that when the blood is vnmearurable moyst, that thence springeth alwaies a verie grauous sickenes, for that thereby it will be waterish (like as the whay of the milke) retaining neuerthelesse the red colour, whereby it commeth also that a body sweateth blood otherwhiles.

For sweating be also these rules insuing prescribed. First, the sweate is not to be moued before, and yer that the matter be purged (whence that this is prouoked) and so long as the patient feeleth ease thereby, and be not ouer much weakened. Secondly, in consuming maladies, as *Helica*, and *Phthisis*, sweating is not mete. Thirdly, if the sweating get so much the matter, that a body is thereby weakened, then is the sweating to be caused to cease by vncouering or taking away the couerings. And doth it come throught ouer much meate: then is the patient to liue soberly, and to fast. But if so that it doe come throught repletion of the bodie, then is the same moysture or humour which causeth the sweate to be purged. Afterwardes is the bodie to be annointed with this salue following: Take *Roses* one ounce, red *Saunders*, blossomes of *Pomegranates*, *Galles*, and *Spittle leaues*, of each halfe an ounce: sethe all together in fower and twentie ounces of water untill the third part be spent; afterwardes strayne it throught a clothe, and then put vnto it fire ounces of the oyle of *Roses*, and then let it sethe so long untill all the water be consumed, afterwardes strayne it throught a cloth. With this salue is the patient especially to annoynt the side and the breast. He is also to drinke oftentimes *Zulep* of *Roses*, and of *Violets*, and to moysten the breast sometimes and the sides with cold water, and also to sleepe alone, but vpon no bed which is filled with feathers, and that but light covered.

The sweating causeth also sometimes swooning which is not without daunger. This patient is not to be bounden, rubbed, nor to keepe in his breath, like as is done to others which fall into a swooning by some other cause. For that the foresaide things doe driue out moze matter and sweate out of the bodie. For this also is wine to be eschued, so that it expelleth also sweate: but the face is to be sprinkled with *Rose water*, and with well water. The patient must also refraine from ouer hot labour, and not to couer himselfe too much. He must set his bed in a colde place, and hang the same with cold odoriferous things, as *Roses*, *Saunders*, *Camfer* *Quinces*, *Waterlillies*, and such like.

Whereby Sweate is prouoked. §. 1.



If the first are the pores to be opened, as both the oile of *Camemill*, & of *Dill*, if one be annoynted therewith: or take *Pepper*, *Cinamom*, *Calmus*, *Rapontica*, *Pieratrum*, *Rubarbe*, *Costus*, *Cassie wood*, *Balsam* fruits, *Parierom* gentle, and the iuice of white *Spints*; temper some of these foresaide things together and sethe them with *Sallet oile* in wine, and annoynt you therewith, it causeth a man to sweate.

Further

Further, these things following are to be vsed before one goe to bed, therewith to expell the sweat: to wit, halfe a dragma or a whole dragma of Treacle, or Spithivate. Item, take an Onion, and put good Treacle into it, afterwards rost it soft in hot ashes, and eate a good deale thereof, then lay you to bed to sweate therewith, and afterwards dye your selfe cleane with drie clothes.

For bathing, he is to take the quantity of a nut of Conserues of Rosemary, or Conserue of Sumitoy, both of them doe expell sweat: the Conserues of Cherne berries is the common peoples phisicke for this purpose.

Item, take Rose water, Cloymetowd water, and Rue water, of each a like quantity, and vse therof euery morning a good draught: or take one ounce of Ginger, and sethe it in a pinte of red wine; afterwards straine it without wringing, and then drinke five ounces thereof: it causeth also to sweat well, and that especially in quartain agues: Now to the end to abate the heat, then temper amongst it Iulep of Violets. *Oxymel Compofitum* doth also moue sweat.

But if one cannot sweat, then take two or three Bricke Stones, and make them very hot, and wrap them in a wet cloth, and then lay first one, and then another to the side, vnder the armpits, on the sides of the patient, or betwene his legs; then will the vapor cause the patient to sweat: And if so be that there bee a stinking sweat instant, like as the stench of the armpits, whereof we haue written in the fourth part, the first chapter, and the second §. and in the second chapter in the third §. then may one with the foresaid vse this ensuing: Take white Coperas halfe an ounce, let it boyle so long in a pinte of water as one would sethe an Eg hard, or somewhat longer, and wash you therewith. Also the sweat will be expelled by annointing with oile of Quinces, or by taking of *Parimalade* made with spice.

Of the sweat bath and other. §. 2.



It is very common, that sweat is vsually prouoked by bathes, which is attempted after diuers manners, and must be done for many kindes of maladies, as we haue declared in many places, for which now that bathing is noysome and bad, we haue also taught here and there, like as the same may be looked for in the Table.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the Sinewes.



It is a question amongst certain learned men whence the sinewes, which the Latins call *Nervus*, haue their beginning. *Aristoteles* was of opinion, on that they came from the hart, although it cannot bee perceined that there hence any should come: but *Galenus* with his followers doe say that the sinewes take their beginning in the Braines and the backe bone. And this opinion is not without a foundation and sure ground, because that as soone as the sinewes bee inflamed with any vnaturall heate, the braines thereby are so infected, that commonly these men be distraught of their wits and vnderstanding, yea wareth childish, and as the phisitions name it *Deliriu*. *Albertus* doth reckon to be in mans body 77. sinewes, as well great as small, hard, soft, and other, and therein doe all learned agree, that they be all of a colde nature, yet the one lesse than the other, and also without blood, wherfore some call them the white vaines. Amongst these be three principall sortes; the first which we chiefly call *Nervus*, which is sinewes: the second *Tendones*, which be the tendones: the third *Ligamenta*, which bee ligaments or binding sinewes. The first sort haue their beginning in the braines, of both the skins of the braines, and in the backe bone, the which *Albertus* calleth the vicegerent of the braines, for that they be both almost of one nature. These *Nervi* or sinewes, the which (by the Grecians is as much to say as bending) be by nature a little warmer, and also dryer then the vaines, or any other sinewes, they are also moze sensible than the Arteries, and of such power, that they franke and freely impart vnto the whole body all motion and feeling.

These foresaid sinewes are by nature so placed in the backe bone, and his holes (which be

60. in number, and that they be spread ouer the whole body, giuing each part his sence and action; so that each may adiudge what is hurtfull for him, or payneth any whit. They doe spread themselues abroad ouer the whole body; to wit, (out of the backe bone) as it were a spring, which with many sundry spoutes or gutters is deriued hither and thitherwards, in a pleasant garden, for to moisten the same, and to impart her water vnto it: So is also our body naturally nourished with these sinewes and all other vaines, which (like as is said) receiue their beginning out of the vaines, and fordescend euen vnto the fete beneath. And although this dispersion be so bountifullly and pleasantly performed, notwithstanding there come no sinewes into the bones, except the tæthe, neither yet in the grissels, nor in the fatnes, nor in the ligaments (which be the knitters of the members or ioynts) therefore that all these foresaid parts haue no feeling or motion, neither neede they any.

When as now the foresaid sinewes are spread abroad euery where in the muscles, or lacerts, which (as is said) are instruments whereby we haue all our motion, yet in other places, where need requireth, the other sort are, to wit, the Tendones. These be of a tight compacted substance, easily cut in the length, ouerthwart very hardly, or scant at all. When as they also (like as is oftentimes admonished) be wounded, then are they healed with great trouble. They can also abide no fire, like as the sinewes do; for that whensoever one is wounded or hurt, then doth the same member lose his accustomed action, or will at the least be much weakened. It is also much to be wondered at, to wit, when a sinew is hurt, that then there followeth much pain, and mishap after it; and being hewed or cut quite asunder, that then the patient knoweth not of any paine.

The Tendones or Lacerts be amongst these three sortes of sinewes, the most hardest: contrariwise the ligaments be the most softest, like as shall be shewed hereafter. These Tendones be also not so sensible, as the right sinewes, and be also much bigger.

The thirde sorte of Sinewes the Grecians doe call *Syndesmos*, the Latinistes *Ligamenta*, (which be bondes or knitters). *Albertus* doth call them *Cordae*, that is, Cordes: these haue no feeling where they hold fast in the muscles or bones, but they bind only the muscles and bones together.

Let this now suffice of the nature of the sinewes: and they that desire to haue ampler direction thereof, let them looke into *Aristoteles*, *Galenus*, *Albertus*, and other *Anatomists*, which haue written thereof very largely.

Of hurt and wounded Sinewes. §. 1.



Commonly the perished sinewes doe require such remedies, as be wont to be used for the increase of the enfebled warmth, and doe dye hard and draw, yet without any corrodng and bad propertie. The wounds are also to be kept open long, and if so be that they be too narrowe to make them wider, to the end that all bad matter may run out. Besides that, all diligence is to be used, for to alluage the payne. If now there be any sinewe pricked in letting of blood, or otherwise, then take oile of Cammomil, of Roses, and oyle of S. Johns wort, of each one ounce, three well brayed yolkes of Eggs, and Saffron one scruple; temper them all together and lay it thereon.

For the Paine. §. 2.



If so be that there be any great paine in the wounded sinewes, then vse the salues *Anodyna*, whereby the paine may be allwaged; whereof you may finde sufficiently written in the first part, the 4. chapter, and 12. §. in the second part, the 7. chapter; in the third part, the 16. chapter, and 4. §. also in the third part the 17. chapter and 2. §. This ensuing is also very mete for it: take oyle of Lillies one ounce and a halfe, oyle of Will, and of Cammomill of each one ounce, white ware as much as is needefull, for to make a salue.

Another *Anodynum*, Take Wallflowers three ounces, oyle of swete Almondes, and oyle of *Sesamum*, of each one dragma and a halfe, fresh Butter one ounce, Saffron halfe a dragma, white ware one dragma and a halfe, oyle of Will, of Cammomill, and Ducks greafe, of each

each one quarter of an ounce, one well bayed yolke of an egg then temper them together vnto a salve. For this you haue also before in the third chapter, and 7. §. a salve, beginning thus, Take oyle of Roses &c. and other things moe, which do much allwage the paine.

Item, take the marrow of Calues bones, and very old Sallet oyle, of each 4. ounce, Earthwoymes washed in wine two ounces, sethe them together in water metely well, afterwarde strain the broth thow a cloth: it is marvellous good for the sinewes, for that it allwageth all paine, and mollifieth the sinewes.

These foresaid things be not onely good for the paine of the sinewes, which be caused through woundes, but also for all other paine of the sinewes, as this following is also: Take Ven-bane seade halfe an ounce, blacke Poppie seade one quarter of an ounce, Saffron one ounce, *Hermada* oyle two ounces and a halfe, small bused crums of bread foure ounces; temper them all together, and so lay this warme vpon it, and that thrice in foure and twenty houres: afterwarde annoint the place with oyle of fores, or with any such like oyle, which shall hereafter be discovered: After that strowe the powder of Earthwoymes vpon it; or temper the powder with Honie, and vse it as before. It is also good for all paine of the members, and hardening of the sinewes. There may also a plaister be made of the foresaid Earthwoymes, and apply it. Cold dung tempered with oyle and layd warme vpon it, is also good.

Item, take oyle of fores thre ounces, Sallet oyle foure ounces, Earthwoymes washed in wine two ounces: let them sethe all together, like as is said before, it strengtheneth marvellous much all bused sinewes, and warmeth also the same, when they be wounded. Oyle of Bickis is good for all paine, and all diseases of the sinewes. In like manner the thre sortes of Balsam oyle which be described in the last part.

When the Sinewes be resolved and limber. §.3.



Take Turpentine which is many times washed with Rose water two ounces, pouned Frankincense, and Cornes of the same, of each two dragmes and a halfe, make a salve thereof. This doth also a salve which is made with washed Lym and Sallet oyle, or oyle of Saint Johns wort. Item, there is also good for this all vitall waters.

For Sinewes that be throonke, or for the Crampe of the Sinewes. §.4.



Item, take one ounce of the plaister *Diachilon*, *Ammoniaccum* and *Bdelium*, of each one quarter of an ounce; steape these two gums foure and twenty houres in Wineger, and afterwarde let them sethe vntill all the Wineger be spent, then mire the playster amongst it, and also fine dragmes of Beares grease: when it is now sufficiently boyled, then woike it well together with the hands, the hands being first made wet in Wineger. This Plaister doth mollifie and digest: Take the seades of Hollihokes, of flaxe, and of fenegræke, of each two ounces, oyle of Lillies, and of Oliues, of each one ounce, Ware as much as is needefull for a salve: this salve softeth all manner of hardnes of the sinewes and of the ioints, it allwageth the paine, it strengtheneth the extenuated members.

Take oyle of Behen two ounces, *Ammoniaccum*, *Bdelium*, of each two dragmes, Saffron two scruples, white Ware as much as will suffice for a soft ointment: at the last adde one ounce of Peates sote oyle vnto it. Item, take oyle of Spikenard, oyle of Saffron, of each five dragmes, Beuercod, *Ammoniaccum*, *Sagapenum*, Badgers grease and Beares grease, of each thre dragmes, marrowe of Dre bones halfe an ounce, Ware as much as will suffice, bespinkle them all with Wineger of Squils. If you would haue it digest and drie stronger, adde vnto it Bellitoy of Spaine, Beuercod, *Euphorbium*, and rotes of Costus, of each two dragmes, Saltpeter halfe a dragme; make it all into an ointment: This ointment is good for the Palsey, and coldenesse of the sinewes, but especially for the shaking in the fit of an ague. The salve *Diachilon*, is very good for the contraction and shortening of the sinewes.

Vnguentum
Neruinum.

Item, take Cammomill floures, spigs of the Juniper tree, Sage, Gallowes, Southernwood, and Pettie rootes, of each one handfull, tread and beate them very small, and put vnto them 16. ounces of fresh Butter, Dogs grease 12. ounces, boyle them together vntill all the iuice of the herbs be consumed, then strayne them, and adde vnto them molten waxe thre ounces, *Ammoniacum*, *Galbanum*, of each one ounce, dissolue the gums in Wineger, & mire them with the rest: when it beginneth to cole, stirre amongst it oyle of Beuercod 6. drag. oyle of Cammomill 2. ounces, oyle of Bayes 8. ounces, lastly, temper them well together. The Apothecaries do call it *Vnguentum Neruinum*, but it is not vsed euery where. Item, take Ware, Pitch, and marow of Dre bones, of each one ounce, oyle of Roses 2. ounces, mire them all together, and put vnto them the powder of Earth wozmes, and so annoynt the place agraued with it. As concerning the Cramp (which is nothing else but a contraction and conuulsion of the sinewes) hath bene spoken in the first part the 12. Chap. and 15. §. where also I shewed what might be vsed for it. And this following is very meete for the same: Take the iuice of broad Plantaine, boyle it with strong wyne, and binde it vpon the place where the Cramp is. Item, take the rootes of water-Lillies, cut them in round slices, and so apply them, it hath bene approued oftentimes. When the Cramp commeth in one foote, then bend back one of your toes, or binde it hard with a whipcord: but the best counsell is, to arise presently and walke, and to keepe the foote warme. Cramp rings are also woyme for it, but I finde no great good in them. These oyles following are very commodious for the Cramp, to wit, oyle of Lillies, of Rue, of Wallflowers, and of Turpentine, which is made as followeth: Take Turpentine 3. pound, put it into a body, make fast the head and the receiuer vnto it very close, distill it in sand or ashes with an easie fire. First, there cometh ouer a cleare water with the oyle, next, a yellow oyle, lastly, a darke and grosse oyle, keepe each apart, for they are good for all cold griefes, and especially for them of the sinewes. There is also good for it the oyle of Tyles, oyle of Quinces, which also comforteth the sinewes. The oyle of Cammomill is not only good for the sinewes, but also for all the ioynts. The oyle of S. Johns wort is especiall good for the same. The ridge in the back being annoynted with the oyle of Juniper, restoreth motion into all parts. Oyle of Bayes, of bitter Almonds, and of Beuercod, haue an especiall vertue to soften the hard and contracted sinewes.

Now follow those things which may be vsed inwardly.

Both the kinds of Treacle, and the Pithivate are marvellous good for the infections of the sinewes. Item, take *Calmus*, floures of Stechados, of each thre ounces, Cozans, fennell rootes, Parsly rootes, of each one ounce, Centory, Coloquinte, *Hermoadislu*, of each halfe an ounce, boyle them in a quart of water vnto the halfe, and straine them out hard, then put 12. ounces of Honey vnto it, and let them boyle together againe vntill they be reasonable thicke, afterwards put vnto them fine powder of prepared Agarick one ounce, Turbith halfe an ounce, Ginger and *Diagridion*, of each one drag. and a halfe, Spike of Indie one drag. make an Electuary of them. This Electuary purgeth all phlegmatick, tough, Greene, and waterish matter from all the parts of the body both inward and outward. It allwageth all paines of the ioynts, sinewes, and such like. Giue of it at once foure or fise dragmes with the decoction of Ginger, if phlegme do abound. Contrarywise in chollerick bodies giue it with the water of Surroze very warme, and let him fast fise houres after it, and before he be set downe to dinner, let him drinke a good draught of Peade. For the same purpose also serueth the confectiō of *Diacorum*, and especially the first of them which are described in the last part. Likewise the conferue of Lauender, of Spikenard, of Sage, and the preserved rootes of *Eringum*.

This common drinke shall be Peade, or Honeywater. Amongst the herbed wines are these commended, the wyne of Elecampane rootes, of Rosemary, of Sage, and of Wormelwood. These wyne are all very good for the sinewes, not only taken inwardly, but also the infected places chafed and fomented outwardly. Common glisters are sometimes vsed for to comfort the sinewes, whereof there be diuers described almost euery where, and such as may be vsed according to the place so infected. But a little Coloquint is for the most part added vnto them all.

This contraction and induration of the sinewes, both in time turne to a perfect lamenes, whereof hath bene spoken before in the fourth part in the seuenth Chapter and 2. §. and after that in this fift part in the second Chapter of the Booke, in which places you may finde sufficient

cient stoze of remedies to content your selfe.

These things following are very hurtfull for the sinewes, the continuall vse of strong wines, venery, idleness, slothfulness, warme water, and especially in them that are wounded in the sinewes.

The fourteenth Chapter.

Of the flesh and Muscles or Lacertes.



We must now speake of the flesh of the body which couereth the bones, vaines, sinewes, and in fine, all that is comprehended in the skin. First in respect of those parts which we call Muscles or Lacertes, the flesh in Latin called *Caro*, is very little in quantitie; for the number of Muscles is so infinite, that it hath bene impossible for the auncient Physicians to name them all. Some did take them to be in number five hundred, *Albertus* 529. The flesh and muscles are ingendred of the blood; they are warme and moist by nature, and soft in handling, and those that are colidish by nature (without any euident heate) they haue much and very soft flesh. That which we call flesh, is placed euery where betwene the muscles, only differing in this, that the muscles are contained in a thin subtill membrane, to the end that the sinewes with their small twigs might the better passe through it, and impart their motion vnto the muscles. This flesh is otherwise changed into fat, to wit, in fat men, or in them that liue delicately; or else sometimes it decreaseth and the muscles also vpon diuers occasions. They that are very fleshy haue also big baynes, full of black blood, with great entrayles, and a big belly. These persons are especially commanded by all learned Physicians, that they shall not purge themselves in Sommer tyme.

The other kind of flesh, namely Muscles and Lacertes, are peraduenture so called, because they are not unlike to the Cuets: for *Lacerta* in Latine is a Lizard or Cuet in English, *Aristotle*, *Albertus*, *Galenus*, with diuers others haue witten very curiously of the baynes and sinewes, and haue shewed how they are dispersed and spread abroad ouer all the body, and how by the Muscles they moue and stirre euery member seuerally, whereof we neede not at this present make any further mention. But to speake of them in brieft: the bodie of the muscles is made of three seuerall kinds of substance, for their beginning and the very head of them is full of sinewes. Their middle (which is called the belly of the muscle) is flesh. Their tayle, or the ends of the muscles is harder and more sinewie then the head, whereof the Tendons are made. In fine, these Muscles do consist of sinewes, of flesh, of ligaments, and belmes, so that by the multitude of these sinewes, are all the parts of the body moued inward and outward, vppwards and doownewards, quickly or slowly, to and fro, all as a man will himselfe. Besides this, they are according to their situations of diuers proportions as long, thick, broad, &c. and so strangely coadunated and conioyned, that their vse may easier be perceiued by their motion, then by sight, or by any other meanes whatsoever, but especially, in the face, in the forehead, and in the lips. These muscles may not be wounded without great danger, for by reason of the sinewes which passe through them, must needs by those wounds very great and heauy accidents ensue. But the greatest danger is wounding, hurting, or in any way harming them of the back, so then can the patient neither make water, nor go to the stoele, nor do any other busines at all aright. By these meanes commeth the Cramp, the falling sicknes. I will not speake of the great misfortune that might follow if the same do putrifie. Because therefore the muscles are very sensible they do finde by ouermuch labour, by long walking, by running, and such like, a great debilitie, wearisomnes, and paine; so do the sinewes also and the Tendons themselves. But it were in vaine to shew at this present how all the infirmities that the muscles are subiect vnto might be remedied, because the same hath bene sufficiently spoken of in those places where we haue intreated of Vicers, Wounds, Bores, Leprosie, and such like.

The ffifceneth Chapter.

Of the fat of Mans bodie.



After the description of the flesh it is verie needfull that we write and discourse of the fat in mans bodie. This fat is a deuision of the nourishment in the skin and other parts, heaped insensibly and tight together: this insensiblenes hath the fat of the blood whence it is ingendred; for that the fat is none other thing, but digested blood, which also is insensible. By nature it is most moist; therefore the fat of all beasts, and also the fat of men is wont to be bled for many kind of diseases, as may be seene here and there in this Booke: and (as it is said) the fat hath his beginning of the fattest part of the blood, which runneth through the vaines towards the skin, and setting it selfe on the same and on the sinewes (both which are dry by nature) for to moisten them. But if it happen to touch the partes that be colde and bloodles, then doth it come to congeale and to ware hard there: therefore that doth most of all happen in colde bodies, viz. in women, and in all such beasts which haue bene kept all winter, and be vnumeasurably fat; where to the contrarie, all that be hot by nature, ware leane and weake. Amongst all parts of men and beasts there are none that be fatter then the kidneies, and that chiefly on the left kidneies, more then on the right; yet especially in sheepe wherein that the kidneies be otherwhiles so abundantly couered with fat that they cannot make water, but are constrained thereby to die.

Of the troublesomnes of Fatnes. §.1.



There is no better disposition of bodie, as well amongst new borne children, as other aunient people, but that a man be meately fat, not too leane, nor too fat: or if so be that any of both must be, it is alwaies better to be leane then fat: for that if a bodie be ouerburthened with fatnes, then happeneth it amongst other inconueniences, that a bodie be alwaies slothfull, unfit for labour, and for walking. I say nothing of other diseases and sickeneses which fat people be more subiect to, than the leane. This excessive fatnes commeth of blood, whereby all the partes of a mans bodie be fed and sustained: the fat bodies haue alwaies narrow waynes, and arteries, and therefore also little blood, and fewer vitall spirits; so that when they begin to be old, the naturall heat is wholly abated & verie lightly might be extinguished, or at least wise spilde & lost. Wherefore Hippocrates also saith by god right, that they that be fat by nature, do die much sooner, then they that be leane. But they that are betwene both by nature (saith he) and afterwards ware fat by their daintie and bountifull diet, they alwaies keepe their great vaines, although they increas in flesh and fatnes, therefore in them is lesse daunger, although they be fat, and that their naturall heate be corrupted in them. Also the Philosophers do conclude (like as we also daily see before our eyes) that both humaine and brute beasts bodies which verie fat, do remain vnfruitefull. For that they haue but little and weake naturall seed, because that (as is said) leanness is to be commended farre before fatnes of the body. Wherefore must all men which are inclined to be fat, vse these things following: Take *Sandaraca* thre quarters of an ounce, drinke it in the morning with water, and with *Oxymel*. Item, take the rindes of yellow *Spirobalanes*, roste them (as though that they were halfe burnt) one quarter of an ounce: stampe them all to a subtil powder, and then giue it to drinke with *Plaintaine* water. Take also into the second part, the third chapter, and second §. for the Pills which maruellously hinder fatnes. Item, take euerie morning a crust with vineger wherein a little *Pepper* is tempered, drinke it verie warm. But if one feare that it might hurt the sinewes, then is it to be forborne.

The sixteenth Chapter.

For great Leannes.



The reason why leannes is better for a bodie then fatnes, we haue discovered before: neuerthelesse if the leannes were exceeding much, then is it verie daungerous for healthie folkes: for it behoueth no great p[ro]se that the bodie wa[re]th leane, when it wanteth foode, or when the meate doth not digest, and is not conueied to the approp[ri]ate members, or when people be ouercharged with intollerable labour, with great sorowe, and such like. Likewise do some also fall into great leannes, for that their bodie is too cold and too dry: other will also be leane, for that the digestive and nutritiue vertues, or any of both these be weakened. Item, this extreme leannes is caused also of the consumption *Phthisis*, wherof we haue sufficiently written before, & also in the fourth part, the seuenth chapter, and second §. For this may first be used all that is forbidden in the excessive fatnes: neither is counsell to be deferred ouer long in this disease of leannes: for when as the leannes beginneth to rote, then doth the same not onely p[ro]uoke *Phthisis*, which is the consumption; but also other moe deadly accidents: so that not onely all the flesh of mans body will be consumed, but also all the vertue and strength.

And what might be used for this falling away, is to be sought for in the two forermentioned places, there is especially commended (amongst other outward remedies) the rubbing with the flat of the hand of all outward members. All they that are wont lightly to partake, may not be purged in winter, when this leannes is not caused through some hot agues, but that the meat receiued is not by nature conueied towarde his due place: so that (like as it is wont to chance oftentimes) the ordure is cast out of the mouth, then is the patient to vse good white wine for his drinke, yet tempered with water wherein fennel seade is decocted. For his meat be Hens, Capons, or rather the broth of them, that is w[on]g or stamped out of their flesh. This patient is also to foment often his priuities and there about, with a sponge dipped in the decoction of these things following: Take fenegreke seade, and of the white *Sesamum*, of each fower ounces, Pallowes and Smalage, of each thre handfuls, *Bdellium* half a dragma, Comin thre drag. Caruway, Will seade, *Ameos*, fennell, of each halfe an ounce, field Cipers, Centorie, of each halfe a handfull, cut that is to be cut, and stampe the rest, let it sethe in sufficient water. You are also to vse a warming plaister for the stomacke, wherof there be sene in the third part, the eleuenth chapter, and §. and elswhere described.

This plaister ensuing is also good for it: Take twelue ounces of the broth wherin sheeps suet hath boyled a good while, Sallet oyle and Butter, of each two ounces, Saffron fixe graines, Salt one dragma, slight Sugar one ounce and a halfe, temper it, and set this Clister one hower and a halfe before supper; at which time he is to vse the powder which is described in the third part, the 16. chapter, and §. beginning thus, Take Annis, fennell, &c.

The seuenth Chapter.

Of Wearisomnes.



We haue taught in the description of the Muscles, that the wearynes of the body is caused through great labour, which weakeneth the sinewes and the Muscles, as daily experience doth teach vs: and when a man is weary without this cause, as though one had beaten his members in peeces, then doth it signifie a great imminent disease. The learned doe deuide this wearisomnes into many kind of species, as they that come of vikers, wounds, and such like, which may be apparantly perceiued.

This doth come through great coldnes of the matter, which is very easily to be cured, by warme dwellings, by rubbings, by swete bathes, and such like; which doe warme the members, open the pores, and make the matter in the sinewes and muscles subtil.

Nature

Nature is also to be kept warme with eating and drinking: wherefore every such patient is to keepe himselfe with good white wine which is not too strong, and to vse other things more, which shall seme mete for all cold diseases, whereof we (for a conclusion of this fift part) shall write immediately hereafter. Now we purpose onely to speake of the wearisomnes which is caused of great labour: for the which there is no better nor safer remedy than rest and sleepe. But this following may be vsed for it: Take Rue as much as you please, temper it well with Sallet oile, and therewith annoynt both the fete: it is very good.

Item, take a little Salt in a cloth, bind it fast together, and dip it in the water, cast it into the fire, let it roste untill it be blacke, and run together; afterwards poune it and temper it with Vineger, wet therein a woollen clout, and rub therewith the soles of the fete.

The eighteenth Chapter.

Of Sleepe.



If it be well considered what sleepe is, then doth it not beare in vaine the high title which is attributed vnto it, and because that the sleepe doth also oppresse the whole body, passeth through each part of the same, and bringeth it to rest, therefore it is by godd right placed in that degre. Concerning his title, the learned do write as followeth. Sleepe is a continuing and a moistening of naturall heate, an elected rest of all the members which doth none otherwise couer and suppress all motions of the minde, then as the ashes do the fire, which by a little stirring or vncouering of it, wil immediately burne again. And if so be that this rest, which is imparted to the body by sleepe, and is as it were a remedie of labour, then may it well be thought, that they that cannot rest at all do sleepe vnnaturally, for that it taketh away the wits and all actions of the minde: wherefore sleepe is called of *Ouidius* and *Seneca Tragicus*, a compeller of all mishap, & a rest of the mind, the best part of life, an image of death to come, and Deaths brother. And further, this sleepe is a confuser of the true and false visions, a haue of life, a taker away of wearied sight, and with the Poets, the pleasantest amongst all gods, yea the onelic giuer of tranquility on earth. For sleepe bringeth away sorow, it is the remedie for sorow and care, it frath the hart, and bringeth all things to rest. The foresaid sleepe is a quickening of the weary and weak members, a strengthener of the labourer. It maketh the King and his subiects merry, sozie, and blessed. And to conclude, it is then so needfull for nature, that without sleepe this life cannot be vpholden. You haue before in the first part, the 12. chapter, and 6. S. also in the 10. S. of the lithargy; and in the first naturall thinges in the first parte, the fift chapter, and 10. S. all which may serue for this intent. Yet these be the things which prouoke sleepe, viz. Conserues of water Lillies, Sirupe of Poppy heads, which may be vsed for this purpose: Lettice eaten in the euening for Sallads is also good: The Conserue of Wyony stayeth all fantasies and feare by night, which will hinder men of their sleepe: Sirupe of Citrons, Tloynewood wine, oyle of Will, oyle of Poppy heads, and also that which is beaten out of the heads, and the temples of the head annoynted therewith, are very mete for it.

What hindereth sleepe. S. 1.



Here shall not here be written of *Lethargo*, which is a species of the Palsey, and described in the first part, the twelst chapter, and 10. S. but of that sleepe, which causeth a body to his great hinderance to slep too much, in some kind of grievous agues, phlegmaticke sicknesses, sweating sickenes, and such like.

Now for to keepe sluggish and sleepers waking, therto are merrie folkes fit, and to company with one, pleasant speech, musike, and play, if the patient haue any desire of it: the rubbing of the armes and legs, with or without soft water, cold water, honie of Roses holden in the mouth: in like manner also the annoynting on the temples of the head with cold water, and the same spzynckled in the face.

The nineteenth Chapter.

Of Paine.



We will not here dispute of the outward paine of the body, or the inward paine of the conscience, whereof the Philosophers and Divines do write. Our booke doth only speak of Phisicke sicknesses, wherein the paine is such an accident of humane debility, that there cometh not one so small a sickness wherewith there is not otherwhiles some paine, like as may be seene by all the foresaid infirmities: And as is here in particular discoursed of all sicknesses, & to each is attributed his proper remedie, so to aswage at least the paine of the same, if it cannot be cured: Wherefore we will send the Reader, and every one that hath occasion to take aduise therein, to the titles of all diseases that doe molest the bodie with paine.

The twentieth Chapter.

Of Phlegma.



As we have oftentimes admonished before that the body of man and the most part of al other living creatures are made & sustained of many kinds of humours, that so long also as the same be equally tempered, do bying health with them: contrariwise if that one do raigne aboue another, it doth cause a sickenes.

Of Cholera when it getteth the mastrie, then do hot sicknesses grow out of it, as may further be read in description of the Gal. In like maner also it is taught in the chapter of the hot stomack and in other places moe. Of the burnt blacke blood of Melancholia hath bene spoken in the first part, the 12. chapter and 8. S. and in the second part the fourth chapter, and ninth S. Item, in the 5. chap. and 15. S. also in the third part, 11. chap. and 28. S. and in other places moe.

Concerning the cleane blood, thereof hath bene written not long agoe in the tenth chapter, and thirde S. so that we by good right may also write of the Phlegma, because that the same doth no lesse penetrate the body then the other.

This bodily humour which is called of the Grecians Phlegma, and of the Latinists Pituita, is a waterish moysture which runneth thorow the vaines of all the bodie with the blood, where by the brayns, the necke, the members, the sinewes, and other parts (which draw that humour unto them) be nourished, moystened, and cooled: wherefore it were not good that the same were wholly expelled by purging.

Also Phlegma doth appere by the same matter, smot, spittle, and such like that man auoideth.

In fine, all that is cold of nature and moyst (saith Galenus) that we do call Phlegma: it preserveth also his nature in such proportion, that it is no moyster nor colder in the bodie: and although the same be also thorowly concocted; yet neuertheless doth it remaine alwaies cold, and that not onely in the bodie, but also when it is driven out of the bodie with purging medicines, so that it can be warmed by no meanes.

This cold moistnes (next to the blood) is highest esteemed as it is (because of the foementionned reasons) most needfull to all living creatures.

But this is onely spoken of that kinde which the Phisitions do call the sweet Phlegma, for that it is of sundrie natures, viz. thicke, thin, and like to molten glasse or gippes: that which is tart and solwe, is undigested and crude. The salt waterish moysture or Phlegma when it is putrified, then doth it cause sundrie sicknesses, as unhealthines of the whole bodie, colde swelling, sluggishnes, much sleepe, and headache, and especially where it doth abound greatly, then doth it cause solwe belchings of the stomacke, the goit, and disease of the sinewes: all which sheweth

Sheweth that this waterish moyſture muſt be purged, what Phlegme ought then to be uſed to expell *Phlegma*, is ſufficiently declared ouer the whole booke. But for the better ſatisfaction we will here deſcribe the beſt of them.

Fiſt, there is nothing moze fit, then that all men that ſpend their life in daintines and idlenes (whereby they do gather much wateriſh humours) might obſerue ſuch an order of diet which might be cleane contrarie to their former life, as you ſhall finde deſcribed in the diſcourſe of the ſickenſſes, which be cauſed through *Phlegma*.

Theſe be the ſimple things which conſume *Phlegma*, viz. Pennyroyall, Parietom, Pepe, Sage, Parietom gentle, Hyſſop, wilde Thyme, Rue, Fennell rootes, Smallage, Parſley rootes, Sperage rootes, Pepper, Ginger, Cloues, Payden haire, Hony, Squills, Vineger, and moſt of all whatſoeuer is warme, and dzye by nature. Aloe doth alſo purge *Phlegma*; Caſſie doth by a ſecret vertue expell it gently; *Agaricus* hath power to dzye out all ſlimmes, to attenuate the thicke, and to open all obſtructions; the hot Gumme *Euphorbium* is uſed onely at the greateſt neede; the iuice of wilde Cucumbers *Elaterium* expelleth wateriſh humours moſt forcibly; but it cannot well be uſed without danger about the quantitie of foure graines. In like manner alſo the leaues of *Alexereon* foure graines, or ſire at the moſt.

The ſeeds of *Palma Chriſti* do ſome uſe to the number of thirtie when they be peled, but it is verie much: they do purge the *Phlegma* very well, but with great paine and torments of the patient, for that they do purge vpwards and downewards, and are very hurtfull to the ſtomack. Now when the *Phlegma* lieth deepe in the body and in the ioints, then will it by *Coloquinte* be drawen forth beſt of all.

The *Mirobalani Chebuli*, *Embliei*, and *Belirici*, doe purge very mildly, and that chiefly from the head and the braynes.

The ſeede of wilde Saffron doth expell all moyſture, and eſpecially the dropſie, one quarter of an ounce, or thre dragnes giuen at one time. Turbith is alſo eſpeciall good for it, but it is ſeldome uſed alone, but tempered with other things that hereafter inſue, viz. with Sene leaues, Polipodie rootes, *Sal gemma*, *Stechas*, *Ireas*, *Beben*, *Hermodaſtily*, *Pettle* rootes, Ginger, Colewortes broth, Sugar, Hyſſop, Agrymonie, Pepper, Hartwort, Centozie, Helleboe, *Pieretrum*, burnt Squills, *Sarcocolla*, *Opopanacum*, and *Sagapenum*.

Amongſt mixed and compounded things which do expell *Phlegma*, be fiſt theſe ſirupes following, as both the ſirupes of Vineger, both the *Drymels*, and the *Oxymel* of ſquills, *Oxyſaccbara*, *Hyaromel*, *Syrupus de Calamintha*, de *Praffio*, and ſirupe of *Uiozmewood*; all theſe do expell *Phlegma* through the vzyne. Item, you haue moze in the ſecond part, the fiſt chapter, a very good potion for the breaſt in a dzye cough, called *Decoſſio Pectoralis*, which doth conſume the cold ſlime. The confection *Benedicta*, *Hiera Picra*, *Pillula fatida*, de *Euphorbio*, *Cochia*, ſine quibus, de *Hermodaſtily maioris & minoris*: all theſe do expell and purge. Item, *Diaturbiſh cum Rhabbarbo*, & *Medicamentum de Turbith* and other moe.

For a purging potion is this inſuing to be prepared: Take Parts twong, Agrymonie, and Payden haire, of each one handfull, Annis, Fennell ſeede, *Epithymum*, *Agaricus*, *Cuscuta*, Parſley ſeede, wilde Saffron ſeede, Turbith, ſeede of Smallage, and Sene leaues, of each one quarter of an ounce, ſet theſe together in ſufficient water: or take *Mirobalani Chebuli*, and *Embliei*, of each halfe an ounce, and laye it all together in a warme place to ſteepe: after wardes wzying it out, and make thre potions thereof: then temper of the foresaid ſirupe or *Drymell* therewith one ounce or an ounce and a halfe, and take thereof euery morning. There is alſo prepared for it this laxatiue confection: Take Cinnamon, Cloues, and Nutmegs, of each halfe a dragme, *Maer*, Cardamom, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each one ſcruple, Ginger one dragme, Turbith thre quarters of an ounce, *Diagridion* thre grains, Sugar ſixe ounces, diſſolued in the iuice of *Quinces*, boyle it to the thicknes of Hony, and then temper the reſt amongſt it: when it is now almoſt cold, then take thre dragnes thereof, or halfe an ounce at once: but in hot weather it is not to be uſed, it purgeth *Phlegma* and *Cholera* maruellouſly.

Theſe things following be alſo very good, to wit, conſerue of Roſemary, of Sage, conſected Ginger, *Calmus*, and Nutmegs, &c.

Item, Treacle and *Pythiuate* one dragme thereof taken otherwhiles. *Tyſane* or *Barly pay* is alſo very good.

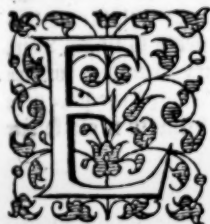
For drinke, is wyne moſtely good to be dronken, for that it conſumeth ſlime, and amendeth all

all diseases which spring of *Cholera*: the same doth also *Betonie* wine, *Elecampagne* wine, the wine of *Auence*, of *Hyssope*, of *Rosemary*, of *Sage*, and of *Mozmeadow*, the *Claret* wine, and other spiced wines, whereof shall be spoken more at large in the last part: likewise also all vitall and golden waters, the sower iuice of *Pomegranates* used in meate or tempered in drinke, is also very good. In the first part, the second Chapter and 2. §. be two pectorall potions discouered, which be very meete for it.

Now for to vse outwardly, you haue in the first part the second Chapter and 13. §. a salve of the roasted *Gose*, which is marvellous piercing, and consumeth the tough slime. The salve of *Roses* doth also delay all pblegmatick deflurations. Item, oyle of *Camomill* and oyle of *Rue*, annoynted on the out side, or used with *Clisters*. Thus much be now spoken of the cold *Pblegma*, concerning the hot *Pblegma*, that concerneth the pestilentiall agues, and other sicknesses, which are caused through heate.

The 21. Chapter.

Of the cold diseases.



Then as we haue discouered thorowly in the discourse of the cold *Pblegma* what here and there throughout this whole booke hath bene declared to be fit for this purpose, the same shall also be done in the discourse of diuers cold sicknesses, of whatsoever occasion that they may be caused, as of age, of deflurations, of the stomacke, of the *Patir*, of the breast, or howsoever the same might be: first of all therefore we will here teach what might inwardly be used for them.

First, there is good for it the conserue of *Cyebright*, which dryeth the braynes: Item, the conserue of *Hyssop* and of *Betony*, of *Gilliflowres*, of *Lauender*, of *Spikenard*, of *Rosemary*, of *Marieroni* gentle, and of *Sage*: in like manner also confectioned *Ginger*, *Calmus*, *Elecampagne* rootes, and confectioned rootes of the greater *Pimpernell*. The confections be also good which be made of horse *Radish*, the *Pharmalade* with spices, both kindes of *Treacle*, the *Pythiuate*, and confectioned *Annis* seedes be also good. *Rosemary* wine is for this a very forcible and healthie drinke. Item, *Elecampagne* wyne, *Hyssope*, and *Lauender* wine, and for moistnes of the head, is very meete the wyne of *Asarabacca* rootes: moreouer, all other spiced wynes, as *Hipocras* and *Claret* wyne, be much commended for it, and if there were any bodie which could drinke no wyne, he may drinke common *Beade*.

Oyle of *Spica* is much commended annoynted outwardly vpon it against all cold diseases of the braynes, of the stomack, of the *Lyu*er, of the *Spleene*, and of all the intrayles: in like manner also these oyles following, viz. of blew *Floure* deluce, of *Beuerco*, of *Bay*, of *Mallowes*, of *Mozmeadow*, and aboue all others, the oyle of *Eyles* or *Bricks*.

In fine, all that is before described for the cold *Pblegme*, and in other places for all cold sicknesses, may serue for this intent, and so we will conclude this fift part.

The

The sixt part of this Booke maketh mention of all such
sicknesses, as are incident to the whole bodie.



We haue treated of many kinds of sicknesses in these five former parts of this booke of Physick, all which pinch and paine one certaine part of mans bodie, and also sometimes in deede the whole bodie, so; that nature hath so knit and combyned all the members of the bodie one vnto an other in vnmeasurable shape and vnto; mitie, that as there is any member anguished with paine or any disease, euen then all the other members impart therewith: so that whensoever the Head, the Hart, the Stomack, the L yuer, or any other suffereth, all the other members (one lesse, another more) must be partakers of this so; said anguish, and in such measure are all of them grieued, according to the quantitie of the infirmite. And so; as much as the Ague is so spread throughout the whole bodie, that (as it is commonly sayd) there is not so small a corner free: yea further (as all famous Physitions witness and alleage so; an infallible saying and *Axioma*) that there is no disease so small, which bringing with it an alteration of nature, that is without the Ague or Feuer: therefore will we comprehend them all in this sixt part, that thereby we may also detect the noysome Plague or Pestilence, which is also a spice of an Ague, and also some other, whereof hitherto in our former parts we haue not sufficiently declared.

The first Chapter.

Of all manner of Agues in generall.



These very common and manifest diseases are called of the Grækes *Pyrros*, that is fire, and with the Latinists *Febris*, that is, a seething or boiling, and in our vulgar tongue we name this sickness the Ague: that is, a superfluous, hurtfull, and unhail heate, that sometimes often, and sometimes more vehement then before commeth againe, and returneth. Or, an Ague is an vnnaturall mixture of naturall spirits in a hotter and dryer nature then is necessary. And in another place, The heate which disealeth the whole body, we call the Ague. * Again, the Ague is an alteration of naturall warmth into a fire warmth, and therefore is a hot and dry disease. The old Masters or Physitions named all such sicknesses Agues, when any stode and complained of griefe without any outward swelling, without the Rose, without anguish, and (to be briefe) without any so; outward. So and if there were any that were payned with the stich in the side, with an inflammation of the Lungs and any such like, then had they their speciall names, whereby they accompt the Ague not to be a particular maladie, but incident and casuall or *Casus*. So that they held opinion none to be right Agues, but such whereas the bad humors in the vaines were inflamed, and yet the outward members felt not any painefulnes.

And these Agues are of so many kindes, that Hippocrates in describing them in a manner forgetteth his old & briefe custome of writing, where he sayth thus: Some are long, byting, and yet milde: other without biting at all, but comming againe: some strong, and mighty: other that quickly inflame the body: some continuing at all times, are small and dry: other that bying no manner of belching or vomit with them. Some are full of filthines, and very ill fauored: other that take one with moisture and sweate. In like sort they haue many kinds of colours, ruddie, Saffron yellow, and some haue very bleake colours. It is not then a great wonder that the cold with the heate do cease at certaine howes: as at one time it continueth, and at another time commeth againe the third or fourth day, or twice on the third day: so that otherwhiles it hangeth on a bodie a whole yeare, yea sometimes ones whole life long. Any one may decipher the

the species of Agues as he will, yet neuerthelesse in truth there be but three sorts of mingled Agues, and euen so they come also through three manner of causes: that is, out of *Cholera*, out of a black and melancholick humoꝝ, and out of *Phlegma*. For euery one of these hath at the first two kinds of properties as an intermission, at one time ceasing and remayning still, or continuance at all times induring alike, which are deuided into many sorts, and also mingled themselves with others, according as the matter or humoꝝ is much or little, or moze or lesse putrified, and also euen as the places or parts be enclined whence the Agues growe and spring.

All such vnnaturall mixtures *Intemperies*, wherof we in the first part, in the first Chapter 1. §. and then afterwards in the second part, in the beginning of the first Chapter and of the part, haue briefly witten, with those as are needefull to be rehearsed againe, are eight in particular, wherof the hot and dry mixtures are the most perillous and noysome, which being first kindled in the hart, and then spread throughout or ouer all the whole bodie, are now called the Agues.

They are also of this nature (specially the Ague of one day) that if one giue not the patient somewhat to eat, that then presently they are moze of force and power: for hunger (in this Ague) otherwhiles dryeth the patient so vehemently, that thereby (as in other dangerous Agues) he will be so grieved in his head, that he seemeth to be out of his wit. The second *Intemperie* is almost like to the first, specially concerning the Ague, but that it is hot and moist. The third, whereas the moisture or the dryouth (be it in what kind of Ague that it will) preuaileth the one ouer the other, but not superabundantly, or aboue meane and measure, this is the best. But when this vniformitie is ouerthrowne and broken, then is it best for all vnnaturall mixtures that they be hindered, whereby (as hath bene shewed) they come not to last long. Of like nature is that, that with cold and heate keepeth a iust meane or temperature: But where the dryouth surpasseth the moisture, therout commeth *Intemperies*. The fourth is a iust meane, to wit, contayning the equall measure in all that hath bene sayd, yet alwayes inclining alittle to the contrarietie. The other foure mixtures are alwayes either cold and moist, cold, moist, or dry and cold. For these mixtures of the humoꝝ are the very same whence all Agues spring in such a wonderfull manner, that it is not possible for the Physicians to discerne them, but only quotidianes from the tertians and quartaine agues, whercon depend all other mingled Agues, so that they out of this *Intemperies* do flow as it were out of a fountaine, and are to be easily perceived & knowne. So that Physicians when as such Agues raigne, must haue speciall care of these three things; to wit, of the strength of the patient, the occasion of the Ague, and to know the spece of the Ague. But for the better vnderstanding of all these things, we wil briefly declare certaine species of Agues, which *Galen* hath collected out of many and diuers other writers, and we will first begin with the very least.

The second Chapter.

Of the one dayes Ague, called *Ephemera*.



Ephemera, of the Greeke word is that Ague called, which usually endureth but 24. houres. These species of Agues come only in the vaines, where they enflame the vitall spirits, wherof we shall moze at large speake hereafter. *Putrida Febres* are Agues where the humoꝝ do putrifie in the vaines; amongst which some are that do cease a certaine time, wherof the chieffest are the aforesaid three sorts, that is to say, the quotidian, the tertian, and the quartaine Agues. The quotidian Ague is bled and ingendred of *Phlegma*, the tertian of *Cholera*, and the quartaine of *Melancho- lia*. *Continua Febris* is an Ague that alwayes without ceasing remaineth continually without intermission. *Causos* of the Greekes, and of the Latinists *Ardens Febris*, is called a burning Ague. This Ague continueth alwayes after one manner, vntill that through the health or death of the patient it be ended. It is such an Ague as burneth still after one manner, and is the very hottest of all Agues: it maketh the tongue black and dry, it bringeth great thirst, and desire of cold things. If you will now reade moze of this vnnaturall heate, then looke in the first part, the 11. Chapter,

Chapter, 1. §. where it is in particular described.

Emphyodes, that hurteth the mouth through her heate, and maketh it full of blisters, whereof it hath this name giuen. *Lipuria*, this coleth the patients hands and feete, but inwardly the whole bodie is inflamed, his water and going to the stoule stopped and stayed, whereby also cometh thirst and hardning of the tongue: the pulse will be feeble and small, and the naturall heate decayeth, and that no otherwise, then as it were altogether ertinguisht.

Rhodes, that is as much as a flire or fire, which hapneth vnto one with great vomiting, cold, shaking, thirst, disquietnes, and feeblenes of the pulse.

Astringens, that is, astringent or binding, is contrary to the other before mentioned, for that thereby the bodie will be stopped, the vomiting stayed, with a strong pulse, it indureth also long, it wasteth the bodie and maketh it leane.

Icteriades, that is mixt with the yellow Jaunders, for it bringeth them with it. This enflameth the Liver, and dyeth the tongue in such manner, that it is terrible to behold: what might be further written hereof, that may you learne in reading ouer the description of the Yellowes.

The Pestilent Agues do come with great heate and intollerable thirst, the going to stoule is with much noyse and great stench: also the vyne sinketh much: the pulses are so feeble, that one can scant feele them, as shortly shall be written more at large.

Languida Febres, are slothfull Agues, that dissemper the head, stuffe the nostrils, stop the vyne, and going to stoule.

Phricodes, that is, when as with the shaking there is a great heate attained, the pulse feeble and scarce to be felt: moreover, the belly doth swell, with many rumblings and noyse, the tongue will be very moist, whereby neuertheless the patient will complaine much of the bitterness and dryth of his mouth.

Quotidiana, is the quotidian Ague, that at a prefixed time either in the day or in the night returneth againe.

Tertiana, is the tertian Ague, wherewith the patient is one day free, and is on the third day vexed therewith.

Quartana, is the quartaine Ague, which ceaseth two dayes, and returneth the fourth day.

Hepialis, is a phlegmatick Ague, whereof the patient sometimes of cold, and otherwhiles of heate complaineth. Some name this also of the similitude that it hath with the molten glasse *Vitreum*. Other name it the rawe and vnconcocted Ague.

Hemitritica, is the halfe tertian Ague, that is a very strong Ague that neuer ceaseth altogether, but hapneth one day gentle, and the other day harder.

Errabunda, are erring and wandering Agues, that keepe no certaine time nor measure, and these thereby do cause the melancholick humors to rot and fester in some place of the bodie, which otherwise in an other place is not touched or moued at all, whereby all such Agues of necessity are ingendred.

Hectica, (whereof also cometh *Marsmodies*) is such an Ague as infecteth the parts of the body, like as the *Ephemera* doth the vitall spirits, and as the *Putrida* or rotten Agues do the *Humors*. Of this Ague proceedeth the consumption, which not only wasteth the flesh, but also the marrow in the bones, as we shall hereafter both of this and other Agues declare more at large.

These are now the most principall sorts of Agues, and at this present shall these briefe notes suffice. We will now proceede with those things that furthermore doe appertain vnto the Agues: Wherefore chiefly it is to be obserued, that euery one of them by the Physicians is diuided into foure. The first, they tearme *Accessum*, which is the beginning of the Ague, thereupon followeth *Incrementum*, the increase. The third, is *Stasus*, that is, when the Ague is in the highest degree, and standeth still. The last part is *Declinatio*, that is, the decrease, or declination, of which parts of the Ague we haue elsewhere more at large giuen intelligence.

There hath bene also a great debate amongst the learned, whether men might knowe euery kind of ague in one day of foure and twentie houres: some thought that no man could rightly iudge of the ague before the third day. So that *Galen* in diuers places derideth them, and confuteth their opinion with many profound reasons. The Simple or compounded Agues

(last)

(saith he) are easie to be knowen, but the compounded very hardly: yet it is not impossible to discern them in one day.

Many agues, and most of all other maladies whatsoever may well be knowen, the second, third (or at the longest) the fourth day: for there is no disease that in three or fourer dayes might not apparantly be indged: so also are all agues according to the humour into which the blood is altered, qualified, and do also giue a certaine signe of their nature. If *Phlegma* be cause of the ague, there of necessitie will it indure verie long, and longer if it proceed and come of the melancholike humours: but if it insue from *Cholera*, then can it not tarie long, fixing it doth vehemently waste the same.

To conclude, all easie agues are ended in fower dayes: as also all violent agues can kill a body in fower dayes, which may be seene in the pestilent feuers.

Thus far haue we generally spoken of agues, now will we shew the meanes and remedies for the same, and will first beginne with the commonest, and with the best knowen; amongst which the most part of the aforesaid agues are comprehended.

The least of them all is, the first recited ague, *Ephemera*, or *Diaria* in Latine, for that the same seldom holdeth the patient (not disorderly eating and drinking) longer than a day, that is four and twentie howers, because it is not fixed so fast in the hart, but onely in the *Spiritus Vitalis*, which we call the Vitall spirits. This ague hath no corrupt or rotten humours that can be incended or can prouoke any swelling of the outward parts.

To conclude, this ague is likened vnto a hot ayre that quickly loseth her efficacy and power.

This ague is thus described: *Ephemera* is an ague wherein the vitall spirits are incended, and so spread ouer all the bodie without any longer permanence. And that is a certaine token of such kind of agues, that they must alwaies haue some cause going before, whereby it is prouoked: as namely wearines, much watching, wrath, great sorrowe, and such like vexation of the minde.

Item, the heate of the sun, cold, great labour, drunkennes, venemous ayre, and heate about the pinnities, be it through swelling, or any other occasion, conuersation with sicke men, or those that be diseased in the lights, vse of indigestible meates, and such like.

The tokens whereby they are knowen are needlesse to rehearse, by reason that they may be perceined and knowen of the patient, thereby the better to remedie the same.

For amongst all others, this disease neuer is moze apparant then in the vyne, and by the pulse: for that in this ague the vyne is commonly higher coloured, then accustomed, and the pulse much swifter: as anger also is deformed by his owne pulse.

Item, great sorrow, and a disquiet minde haue also their owne signes. Also by what observations, and how the *Cholera*, the melancholie, the *Phlegma*, and the blood is knowen: we haue taught also in their due place.

Those that are troubled with the agues that breede through any swelling or vlcers, they feele a continuall swift, and hard beating pulse: they are verie hot burning with a ruddy countenance and white vyne.

And to conclude, they are all commonly *Ephemerick* agues that haue the pulse equall. And albeit the same sometimes be vnequall, yet is it scarcely to be perceined very ill to be.

These are now the most vsuall and conuenient signes of this ague, which we haue said are verie easie to be holpen if men looke vnto it betimes: for being delayed too long, then fall the diseases into agues that are worse, and be of longer continuance: as namely in *Putridas*, and *Heusticis*, so that many by negligent delays fall into their perpetuall destruction.

Therefore vse these remedies following for it: first, a bathe whereby the pores are opened, that thereby all noysome vapours might exhale. For when as they are shut vp, or through exterior cold closed together, then must all such infectious humours remaine in the body, whence diuers perillous agues are caused.

For all those that are infected with the ague through any swelling of the pinnities, is the ayre hurtfull either before or after the bathe: but aboue all things it is in other agues to be shunned. But if any one will tarie long in the bathe, then must he be gently annoynted by the hand with Sallet oyle, especially such as got their agues through labour and trauell.

The diet of the diseased must be such as may ingender good blood of a light digesture. Those

that through the heate of the sun, or by wrath or anger are fallen into this ague, they must vse cooling and moystening things; if through cold, warme things; through watching, sorowes, and cares, moystening things, and such as will prouoke sleepe. All those that are thus afflicted, may well vse wine that is small or watered; for such is alwaies moze fit then water alone, because it expelleth water and sweate.

But in al these points is to be obserued the age of the patient, his strength, his custome of liuing, the season of the yeere, and the nature of the countrey, and such like.

All those are forbidden wine, that in this ague proceeding of the heate of the sun, haue a swelling of the pziities, or of any other part, till such time as all such inflammations be ended: The like also for all such that haue their pores obstructed, and be therewith strou and corpulent of person.

All such as through ouer watching, or through great sorowe are fallen into a small Ague, must after their bathing be fed with moyst meats, that are light of digestion, and make good blood. To those that by reason of long watching are feeble, may the wine bee allowed without further regarde or care, vnesse they had much head ache, or feele great motion of the pulses, in the temples of the head, these common rules, must also be obserued in other feauers.

All those that get the Ague through wrath, sorow, or deepe speculation, they may drinke wine well enough: in like manner also the idle headed, but onely when their fit or madnes is past, before which it is very dangerous to vse the same.

This also is a common rule, first alwaies to seeke remedy for all those accidents that are most troublesome, or to take away the cause of the sickenes, by his contrary, as labour by rest; wrath, sorow, and madnes, with merry and pleasant conceits; watching, with sleepe; those that get it through much speculation must wholly leaue it off: euen so must it be with the swelling and inflammation of the pziities, that the same may heale, and the payne be asswaged.

Here hast thou briefly set downe, what order of diet and other things are to bee obserued in any accident whatsoever. Now will we learne you after the briefest maner we can, what things are to be vsed in any of the foresaid causes.

When as then any body through the heat of the sun, or through a bath, falleth into an ague, the must you annoint his head with the oyle of water Lillyes, Roses & Violets mingled together, or each alone: you may also make a decoction of colde herbes, or oyle of Willowes, or of any of the foresaid oyles mingled with it, and as then let it drop from on high on his breast. If the patient haue great thirst or drought, then giue him to drinke Well water, or Almond milke.

When the ague is past, then let him bathe as hath been aboue said. But if the ague proceed of outward cold, then is sweating good for it: or can he not sweate, then may hee vse warme bathes, wherein hath been decocted wild and garden Spints, Smallage, Fennel, and Parsly, with the rootes.

Also annoynt the head with the oyle of Dill, of Cammomill, or with oyle of Behen: but he must forbear the drinking of water. Likewise lay the patient in a metely warme Chamber, annoynting his body softly, and when the Ague is past and gone, then may the patient vse to eat all maner of land foules, and such like fode. Is he then corpulent and full of blood: then open a baine, and let him vse in this bath Stonerue, Cammomill, Fennell and Stonscleuers &c.

Do come these Agues through the vse of any hot meates, then vse cold things; as Lettice, Purslaine, and the iuice of Pomegranates.

Purge with Cassy, Panna, sower Dates, or with Conserue of Pynnes. Take also of the Confection *Diatrisantalon*, Endiue water, *Oxyfaccbara*, Iulep of Roses, Barley water, with a little Vineger, Camfere, Lettice, Purslaine, and such like colde herbes, or the iuice of them. If this Ague come of drunkenness, of strong wine, or of such like drinke, then must the patient vge himselfe to vomit, or to purge with the foresaid colde things. If there bee adioyned a great payne of the head, then must you annoint it with the oyle of Roses, or with some iuice of colde herbes.

Do if this issueth through great sorow, feare, sight, ouer much watching, madnes, wrath, or such like, then remedie these things as is said, by their contraries; to wit, with mirth, musike, comfort, sleepe, and with such like: he must also shake off and forget all causes of sorow and feare.

Likewise this patient shall smell vnto Roses, Violets, and Saunders, and wet clothes in the

the muscilage of Fleawort, and the iuice of cole herbs, mingled with a little Camfere, and lay them vpon his head. When the Ague proceedeth of wrath, especially in yong folkes, then is the wine to be refrained.

These Agues also proceede aswell of exceeding ioy, as they do of great wrath, albeit the same chaunceth seldome; yet it is by the foresaid meanes in like sort healed.

These Agues may also come very easily thzough excessive labour, by reason that the same heateth the vitall spirits.

For the same must be prescribed light meates, rest, bathes, measurable sleeping.

Or if these Agues be caused of ouermuch sleepe and rest, as often it falleth out, then shall he constrain himselfe to watch, and let his body be rubbed ouer with hot clothes.

These agues are very subiect to all fluxes of the belly, and dysenteries of what cause soeuer the same doe proceede.

For this are all astringent and binding things to be vsed, and to doe all that is fit to be done in such like sicknesses.

Also, Cotton dipped in the oyle of Pasticke, or oyle of Quinces, and laid ouer the stomacke: but vpon the liuer and hart coole things.

If the patient should thirst or hunger, then shall he vse, and especially at the beginning, Barly paps, Daten paps, water bathes, and rest: and for his drinke he shall take water mingled with the iuice of Pomegranates. But if he be cloyed with too much meate, then causeth it lightly an ague to follow: for which Clusters, purgations and sobriety are to be vsed: but if there be any sower belchings vpward admissed, then vse *Diagalanga*, or *Diatrionpipereon*, and annoynt the stomacke with the oyle of Pasticke, the oyle of *Tlozmewood*, or with oyle of Spike, laying shapcs wools thereon. Afterwards when the ague hath left him, let him vse sleepe and sobriety. The agues which proceede of any impostumes, vlcers, Pleurisies, puffing vp of the Lights, swelling of the priuities, which is caused of paine, *Cholera*, heate and thirst (more then the foresaid agues are) these shall you remedie thus: first search out of what humors they grow: if of blood, then must the patient open a vaine, thereby to ease the impostume or any other hot swellings: Or do they come of *Cholera*? then must the patient be purged; and moreover the vlcers or impostumes must be clenfed, ripened, and healed. It hapneth also, that as yong children haue the wormes, they also fall into such an ague: for this all such things are to be vsed, as are ordayned and thought most meete for the destroying of wormes, and especially a salue, beginning thus: Take oyle of bitter Almonds &c. Thus haue we sufficiently spoken of *Diarie Agues*, and mentioned how they are to be dealt withall.

The third Chapter.

Of the continuall Ague, Continua, in generall.



Men termeth these continuall Agues *Continuas Febres*, which from the first time that they enter vpon a man, they indure continually, without intermission if they be not thzough health or thzough death dissolued, albeit that otherwhile they wane a little fainter or slower; yet neuertheless sometimes many dayes, yea weekes, indure still. Of these are chiefly twaine, the one that increaseth the third day, which is more perillous than the other; to wit, than those that change their nature the second day: and by reason of this alteration, the Physicians doe giue these Agues diuers names, whereof the principallest is *Typhodes*, that is burning, which greatly agreeth with the half Tertian Ague. When is there *Synochus*, which proceedeth of a superfluity and inflammation of the blood, mixt with *Cholera*, taketh hold most of all vpon the bodies of yong, temperate and hot persons, wherof we shall hereafter speake more at large. The signes of these Agues be, that 24. houres long their fit continueth, inconstantly beginning and increasing. The pulses of them are swift and hard, the vyne is redder then it was before. These things following are also to be obserued, and well to be remembzed, that in drie and hot weather they are fewe, yet strong and bad Agues do raigne, but without any sweat at all: In wet weather are these agues most rise, and that with sweat.

For so much as then these continuall agues are first of all described amongst hot agues, therefore here will we admonish the Reader, that we make this our discourse so much the longer, to the end we might declare the matter more openly: and that such hot Agues as hereafter follow, may thereby the better be knownen, and easier cured, and that especially in this §. wherein shall be taught the meanes which are to be kept in meate and drinks, in vomiting, sleepe, also what might reuiue those that are so diseased, whereby they should be eased in great heat, and after what order they should gouerne themselves, their ague being gone.

The Ague that is continuall, *Continua.* §.1.



The occasion of all such mighty Agues is the putrifying of the humors within the great vaines: and the cause of the putrifaction aforesaid is a stay and detayning of superfluous tough humors that are caried in the body, the heat wherof approaching to the hart enflameth the same. This commonly hapneth in all such bodies that are filled with tough humors, or that the vaines through heate of the same are ouer dyed. This ague also may ingender of venymous ayre; as in the time of pestilence is to be seene. Item through great cold (whereby the pores be shut vp) through soze labour in the hot Sun, through much watching, through great anguish, grievous thoughts, and through a great flure of the belly.

The common signes of this mighty ague, are paine of the head and great heat (easily to be felt) watching, great thirst, swift and vnequall pulse, red, thicke, and yellowish vyne, the patient rageth in his sleepe, his senses are troubled, and complaineth of terrible dreames. If he be yong, and the season of the yere be hot, and that he dwell in a high and hilly country, then are all these recited signes the likelier to be certaine and true.

The order of dyet in time of hot Agues. §.2.



If so be that these patients desire to be rid of these agues, then is it very needefull that they haue a good gouernment or order in eating and drinking, and they must haue speciall care to be fed with such meats, through which they may be cooled, the blood purified and moistened, whereby the heate and drought may be withstood. In like maner shall the patient be kept in the beginning of his sickness (whilest he is in strength) sober in eating and drinking, and encrease the same according to opportunity. In like sorte with the letting blood, if the patient be red in the face, his vaines full & yong, then he is to be let blood (in a very hot ague) vntill he fall into a swoone.

But if the patient be so weake, that such forcible letting of blood may hurt him: then let it be done at diuers howers, every tyme a little, two or thre daies together, for some are to be dealt withall more gentler than other, and require that the *Saluatella* vpon the right hand (to wit, by the little finger) may be opened, and that there shall about five ounces of blood be let out.

We haue tofore giuen order what kindes of meate this patient is to vse, that the same must be cooling and cleansing the blood, as Cicozy, and Endiue, with the rootes, water Cresses sodden in his meate; and in like sorte also a Sallet made of the same herbes and rootes, with oyle and Vineger; and there is chieflie to be put into the same Sallet Linertwort (that vseth to growe besides the water Cresses) which is passing good. Also the iuice of Dreniges, Pomegranates, or Limons are to be vsed with his meate; and amongst other herbes, Spinage, Wates, and Turneps, with their leaues are excellent good. Item, Lettice, Endiue, and Parsley, and mingle amongst them sometime a little Sparierom, Penniroyal, and wild Thyme, and Hyssope (but once) for that it is warme of nature. Of fruits let him vse Damaska Pynes, Dreniges, & Pomegranates. And of flesh let him be serued with that of Calues, Hens & Capons, the which are to be broyled and eaten with the broth, also make sops with Vineger, mingling the yolks of eggs & Sugar amongst it. Item, Partridges, Fefants, field soules, and such like are not hurtful: it is also to be noted, that with the flesh is to be sodden Parsly rootes, Cicozy rootes, & Meriuiue, with a little Sparierom and Hyssop. Moreover, the seedes of Lettice, Melons, and Cucumbers, are passing good; yet not all together, but sometime of the one, & sometime of the other. Baked Barley sodden with Ven broth is much set by: and also Ven broth alone, wherein a little bread is soaked.

Item,

Item, shins of bread soaked in water, and the water powred out, and afterwards the iuice of Pomegranates powred thereon, and bestrowed with Sugar, is verie good meate for all such maladies. Some are of opinion that the flesh of a Haggy, is a certaine good medicine for the Ague: and some suppose that young Haggies with the feathers distilled, and the water of them given to the patient to drinke, and it were not amisse, that in the distilling of them, there were put the rootes of Parsley and of Elecampane.

For these hot agues may fountaine water be dronken, or any other cleare riuer water, that hath been sodden once before, or powred a good while and often out of one pot into another. And you may mingle with this water Zulep of Violets, or Zulep of Roses, and so drinke it vn-sodden. Early water is a very fit drinke for all such maladies, & may be mingled with the foresaid Zulep.

Wine (though very little) is otherwhiles permitted: and also Sugar water, and sodden Pen both (the fat blowen off) is very good.

Common rules for Agues. §.3.



According to the prescribed ordinance or gouernment of the life, we are to shew in like maner the remedies & cures. But first we will declare certain rules, which in all hot agues must be obserued: that thereby for all such maladies a better order may be had & kept. The first rule is, how to discerne easily, that the patient cannot come to his health, vntil the putrified matter of the Ague be purged away.

Secondly, the eyes are to be fixed vpon that matter that ingendeth the ague, that the same be prepared for purging, the ague which is present be corrected, & that which is to come be hindered. Thirdly, when this putrified matter is to be taken away, then must care be had how to open the obstructions, which are the foundation of the Ague, for otherwile there can no good be done. Fourthly, if the Ague be forcible and hot, and the patients strength very small to resist the same, that it is vnpossible for the patient to tolerate the violence of the ague, then must the patient not be suffered to vse many cold things before, that thereby the naturall heat be not quite extinguished: but if he be strong, & may withstand the sickness, then cut off the cause, expell the matter, keepe the patient sparingly, and let him not vse ouer cold things. Fifthly, if naturall strength in the Ague be very weake, then must the Physition strengthen the same, wole the vn-naturall heat, & with meete food to comfort the debility of the body. Sixthly, the cooling of the ague is not to be effected with drying nor binding things, vnles it be when the materiall cause is expelled. Seuenthly, if the nature and quality of the ague be doubtfull, then must the patient liue sparingly, & especially when the Ague assaileth, that it may find an empty stomack. Eighthly, all fresh fruit are very hurtfull, by reason that they will some stinke and putrifie in the stomacke. Ninthly, while the patient is in good strength, and hath blood enough, or is full of humors, then first of all let him bleed, and especially when as his vyne is red & thicke, and when it is doubted, that the Cholera will get the vpper hand. Tenthly, and if so be (as is rehearsed) that nature be of ability, then vse those things first which loose the body mildly: afterwards open a vaine, & then purge. Eleuenthly, in these kind of agues there is no strong purgation to be ministered. Twelfthly, if by the wambling or paine of the stomacke, it be perceiued, that the corruption falleth into the stomacke, then shall you minister to the patient a vomit: but if through the rumbling of the belly it be perceined, that the matter be fallen downe into the bowels, then is it to be expelled with purgations. Thirtenthly, those medicines that might hurt the bowels, be noysome, & not commodious, in case that the patient haue not vsed preparatiues before, be it in heate or cold: or in case that the corruption made not the patient starke mad, or that he were in doubt to fall into a greater mischief. Fourteenthly, as the blood preuaileth, and that a vaine must be opened, then is the preparation of the matter to be expected, by reason that the same concerneth the other bad humors, and not the blood. Fifteenthly, when the Crisis is nere hand, you must forbear to minister any medicine.

But if the same be vnperfect, then is it to be ayded, and to helpe nature in that, which she can not performe of her selfe, that is in strengthening her, and in right vse of the medicines. Sixteenthly, if the letting of blood be thought meete, then is the same to be done at the first, for otherwile it will not doe so well: for when the patient is ouerweakened, then might the same be a means of his death. Seuententhly, the patient is to bee purged when the Ague is weakest.

Eightiethly, wine bathes and fomentations are to be abstayned in forcible and strong Agues, and rather drinke cold water, which hath great efficacie to cole the heate of the Ague, but not to expell the putrified matter through the pores, or through the vaine. Ninetiethly, when the principall parts of the bodie (as the Hart, the Head, the Luyver) be strong, and the Ague is vehement and hot, then may you boldly giue the patient water to drinke, yet not if he be in pæres, for those are not very strong of nature. Twentiethly, if there be much blood, much tough Ayne or steame, and binding of the bodie present, then first of all let the patient blood, afterwards attenuate the matter, and lastly open the pores and warme them. One and twentiethly, aboue all things haue regard to the strength of the patient, and if he be strong ynough and that he haue neede of purging, then is the same to be executed without any care: But if his strength be small, then let it alone at any hand, except it be some gentle thing, and after that he be somewhat strengthened. Two and twentiethly, if in the *Febris putrida* be any obstruction, then hæde is to be taken to open the same, the which if it be caused of some humours, then are they to be euacuated. If those humours be tough and grosse, attenuate them. And if the Ague be mixt, then prepare your medicines accordingly. Thre and twentiethly, because the cold attraded ayre penetrateth to the hart, and other inward parts, let him thereby be refreshed, opening all manner of windowes about him. Foure and twentiethly, if hapneth otherwhyles, besides the grauoulnes of the disease, and the presence of diuers accidents, that sometimes there are those things giuen to the patient that are hurtfull for the Ague, as in the swoonings in the Ague, for the which of necessitie wyne and flesh booth are to be giuen to the patient; wherein is to be considered, that the greatest extremitie is first to be eased. Fiue and twentiethly, if neede require that much blood or humors are to be taken away, and that the strength of the patient will not abide it, then must the same be done by little and little at diuers times, and not at one time, euen as is befoze expessed at large. But if the strength of the patient will permit it, then is it to be done at once. Sixe and twentiethly, In these forcible and vehement Agues must the Phisition be prouident and warie, how to expell and purge, for it is better to leaue one part of the matter in the bodie, then to expell it all at one time. Seven and twentiethly, the Phisition must alwayes be bold and liberall in comforting the patient; for although healthfull meates bræde some inconuenience, yet are they better then too much abstinence. Eight and twentiethly, minister alwayes vnto the patient for his mouth such things as will keepe his throate moist, that through great heate it by not too soze, the which is accomplished by the muscilage of fleawort, the iuice of Pomegranates, the muscilage of Quince kernels, by Purslaine and Licorice, which things also are good for to quench thirst.

Of common things for hot Agues. §. 4.



After the description of the common rules (which are to be noted) we will now treate of this, namely, when it is found that an Ague doth approach, then must the patient take sowze ounces of the water of *Cardus Benedictus*.

Item, take the rootes of Cicorie, cut them, poune them, and wyng out their iuice, drinke a sponefull thereof halfe an howze befoze the Ague assaileth: but it is to be noted, that the inward hart of the roote is to be taken away. Or take pouned rootes of Cicorie, as many as you thinke good, and polwe wyne thereon, boyle them in *Balneo*, and then drinke thereof thre or sowze times, to wit, morning and euening: it is also passing good for such as are swollen with the Ague: Cheruell water is very good to drinke away the Ague.

A maruellous water of the auncient Phisitions: Take a sponefull of Fennell seedes, and as much Salt, poune them together, and let it runne through a Carse or hairon Sieue, then take good Vineger, and the vaine of a man child, about sixe ounces of each, giue to the patient thereof thre or sowze times, to wit, when the Ague beginneth to assaile, and haue regard that he vomit it not by againe. This doth all Phisitions vse, but hereafter follow many better and sifter things.

Out of the foresayd things easie it is to be noted, that for all hot Agues these waters enking are

are passing good, as water of Endiue, Cicory, Burrage, *Cuscuta*, Sozrell, Hayden haire, and such like.

All Aguish diseases may freely vse these sirupes, or any of them which one listeth, as sirupe of Vineger, of Meriuiue, Violets, Cicorie, with Rubarb or without, of Citrons, Roses, Endiue, or of Sozrell. Item: *Syrupum de Iuiubis, de Bytantijs, Acetosum compositum, de Radicibus, Oxymel,* and *Melicratum*, and if there be not much Cholera abounding, then vse the hony of Roses, which is good for all Agues: take thereof which you will, and mingle it with the water of Lyuerwort, of Endiue, and Fumitory, Sozrell, or with the water of Hayden haire, and such like. Of these confectiōs following, you may vse which you please, as *Diarrhodon, Trisantal,* *Troiscos de Spodio, cum Semine Acetosa, de Eupatorio, de Berberis*, pounded, and mingled with any of the foresayd waters, and drunken. And the whay of Bilke is chiefly commended. These are the meates that an Aguish bodie may well and commodiously eate and vse.

Of the lothing of meate in them that be assayed with
the Ague. §. 5.



As much as in all hot Agues the appetite of feeding is taken away, whereby nature is suppressed and wareth fainte, and thereby scarce able to resist the Ague; therefore it is very requisite that herein good counsell be had and taken.

For this you finde in the third part, the eleuenth chapter, and ninth §. what is to be done herein: likewise you may vse for it any of these things insuing.

Take conferves of Roses two ounces, confected Citron rindes, sirupe of Apples as much as you thinke good; mingle them together, and vse thereof fasting at each time halfe an ounce.

There is also a confectiō or compound, that is called the Kings sauce, the which is verie good to prouoke appetite, and the same is to be made with Sozrell, Cinnamom, Cloues, and Vineger. Others make it of Vineger, Sozrell, fennell, and Parsley.

The third sort, take the iuice of Parsley, Sugar, and Vineger. Item, one may compound sirupe of Vineger with *Oxymel*. In like sort there is good for it both the sirupes of Pints. After meales it is very good to vse prepared Coziander seede, Annis seedes, and Almonds confected. Item, Cinnamom, Parmalade, conferves of Roses, and hony of Roses, rost or baked Peares, are also excellent good.

Euery such patient is to be outwardly annoynted with the salue of Saunders on the place of the Lyuer, and on the Kidneyes, with the coling salue of Galen. This water here next following is also very soueraigne to be vsed thereto for the washing of the seete.

Take Sage, Cammomill, and Bayberies, of each a handfull, Parierom halfe a handfull, Citron rindes, and Orange pills, of each halfe an ounce, a pinte of strong wine, and common Lye, as much as shall suffice: let them all satche together, and vse it oftentimes, for it will prouoke appetite.

For the thirst in hot Agues. §. 6.



Because continuall Agues prouoke great thirst, therefore we will not cease to giue some knowledge and caueat how the same may be holpen and remedied, the which will be effected with barely water, and with cold and moyst things, and also with such losings as be prepared & made with the muscilage of flearwort, the muscilage of Quince kernels, and with Dragagant.

Sugarcandie, and the kernels of Pomegranates, are also very often to be vsed, and he shall receiue the cold and moyst ayze. Before in the third part, the twelfth Chapter 10. §. there are also diuers things declared, being all very good to slake or quench the thirst.

Item, take sirupe of Violets one ounce, Barly water three ounces, Cinnamom water one ounce, oyle of Citrioll three or foure scruples, mingle them together, they will become a red potion with a tarte or sharp taste; but because there are other moze pleasanter things, do I counsell you to leaue out the oyle of Citrioll.

Of purging and such like. §.7.



god for the expulsion of this matter or corruption in the best manner thereto is verie soneraigne, washit Aloe which is described in the introduction. The common plague pils be also passing good for the same, the which pils are called de Tribus, and are to be mingled with Kubarbe.

Also once a weeke at the least, let the patient take in some cooling and laxative medicine: as namely, conserues of *Idunes*, and *Cassie*, the which are good in old maladies; and therefore is commonly to be given an ounce and a halfe, with halfe a drag. of *Kubarbe*. *Manna* is excellent good for it, and the confections of *Diamanna cum Rhabarbaro*, the which are to be had in all well furnished Apothecaries shops. There are some that give counsell (and that verie well) that the next day following the patient is to take three ounces of laxative sirupe of *Roses* mingled (if it please him) with some distilled water. Also there is good for it the lozings de *succo Rosarum*, *Diaphanicon*, de *Psyllo & Diacatholicon*: or use this potion following: Take sove Dates one ounce; breake them in *Cicoie* water, and strayne it throught a cloth. This done, mingle *Cassie* and conserue of *Idunes*, of each halfe an ounce, halfe a drag. of beaten *Kubarbe*, and fine graines of *Spica* amongst it. Take this in the morning early, and thereupon fast afterwards sixe houres.

There are also cooling clisters used for it which the Physicians do call *Lanatina* (that is cleansing clisters) by reason that they are for none other purpose, but to strengthen the bowels, to make them slipperie, and to warme them, as these insuing: First, take *Barley* water and *Sugar*, or broth made of a shepes portnance, wherewith is mingled fresh *Butter*, or *Hogs grease*, otherwhiles *Betes*, and *Percurie*. Likewise there are many clisters of *Sallet oyle*, and oyle of *Violets*, and also (in the payne of the belly) of *Linsede oyle* without putting any other thing thereto, but twelve or sixteen ounces taken at one time for one clister. And when the going to stoule and vyne are to be prouoked, then use thereto fresh broth that is most common and fit, wherein *Barley* is sodden and is mingled with oyle. And if you will haue it stronger, then take an ounce of any of these confections mingled amongst it, as de *Sebestia*, *Hiera*, *Diaprunis*, *Cassie*, *Thomas Sugar*, oyle of *Violets*, *Hony* of *Roses*, or of *Violets*.

For the vomiting in the Agues. §.8.

All that lie of hot Agues may easily be brought to vomite, and that chiefly after their taking of any medicine, and to prevent it, looke into the third part, the 20. chap. 7. §.

For the losse of Sleepe. §.9.

They that are plagued with the Agues are easilie barred from their naturall sleepe, and to further the same, looke into the fift part, the 18. chap. where is sufficiently treated what hereto belongeth.

For to relieue them that be sicke of the Ague. §.10.



Furthermoze, there are many things that reuiue these patients whereby their heauines (that proceedeth from the heate of the ague) might be cleane taken away: to wit, that fresh linnen and sheetes be given often vnto them, their beds often rowled and made, also set in their sights glasse bottles filled with faire water, put often faire water out of one pot into another in the presence of the patient. Charge him to smell often to a glasse filled with faire water, *Rose* water, and good *Kenish* wine, and give them *Pomegranats*, *Oranges*, and *Kenish* wine to sucke vpon, and especially before meat. Let their hands and face be often annoynted before and after meate with some pleasant odoriferous things.

For

For the releefe or comforting of the sicke. §.11.



These kind of hot maladies require also, that sometime the diseased haue somewhat giuen them, whereby the naturall spirites may bee reuiued, quickened, strengthened, and cherished. Therfore it is requisite that we write somewhat therof.

Hereto is very soueraigne the black confected Cherries, red and dyed Cherries, with the Conserues of the same, and all that may be made of Cherries.

The confected Muscadell peares, with or without wine, according to the qualitie of the Ague are passing good.

Item, conserue of Berberries, and the sirupe of the same, are also very good for it: And in like manner all that may be made of Raspes.

Item, Conserue of Buglosse, of Burrage, and of Roses, each apart or mixed together.

Sugar of Roses melted in Well water, and so dronken, is also passing good for the same: and in like maner the Sugar of *Mann Christi*.

Some vse for lauing a shine of bread soaked in Rosemary wine, for that it strengtheneth and quickeneth appetite; but it is better for the colde than for the hot Ague. If so be that the patient doe get blisters in the mouth, or the tongue furre, and the throte doe burne, as chancreth oftentimes, then looke into the first part, the thirtieth chapter, and second §. where you shall find very good remedies for the same.

Ordinances for all those that are recovered of a long sickenes. §.12.



Now if it come to passe, that sicke folkes begin to amend, and the disease weare away, the breath beginneth to be free, the paine to cease, the sleepe to come, and haue lust and appetite to their meate, then may be freely sayd, that the patient beginneth to recouer: then is the patient to be kept very sober in his diet of eating and drinking, and not feede vpon any other meats then are requisite for such like diseases, like as Barly grout, Cozans, and broth wherein the roots of Parsley and Cicorie are sodden, for that all these things doe strengthen and moisten. There must also be vsed outwardly for the strengthening of the stomacke, oyle of Spints, of Pasticke, of Wormewood and of Spica. You may also make a salve for the stomacke, with the foresaid oyles, being mingled with Cloues, Putnegg, and Cinnamon, and with a little molten Ware.

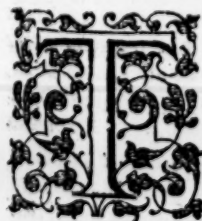
Item, the plaister of Pasticke, and other plaisters more, that are specified in the description of the stomacke, are very good for it, being laide on the stomacke outwardly. Concerning the patients binding of the body, you may vse any cooling things, specified in the third part, the eleuenth chapter, and 20. §.

Above all the rest, that is spoken of before, for the reconery of all diseases, it is passing good to alter the place or situation, especially to draw nere to the mountaines or hils, whereas it is drie, and far from the sea, and from all noysome and stinking lakes.

Aromaticum Rosatum doth strengthen wonderfull much.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the halfe third daies Ague, called Hemitritæa.



This is also a kind of continuall Ague, the which is one day sacker than an other, & appeareth in the outward members, at one time with great heat, and another with great cold; therefore must you haue daily care to mark how it taketh one, and what humors there be that doe raigue most of all in the same ague, that there may the better order be taken for redresse thereof, like as in the beginning of the continuall agues, and hereafter shall be taught in the description of the Quotidian, Tertian, & Quartaine agues. The mixture of these agues is of *Cholera* and *Phlegma*, for which cause

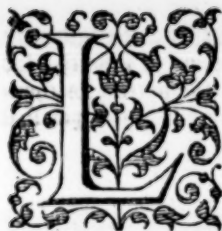
cause it is ioyned halfe with a tertian, and halfe with a quartaine ague, whereby groweth a continual ague. And when the *Cholera* getteth the vpper hand, then is the tertian the moze stronger: and when there is most of the *Phegma*, then is the quartaine the mightiest.

So that when they are both of equiualent efficacie, then it is onely called *Hemitritea*, that is, when both these humours do worke equally, and haue their operations alike.

There is for the heate of these agues giuen commonly to the patient Barley water, that is sod with Helon seedes, Gourde seedes, Endiue seedes, and such like. For the colde, is Pepper, Cinnamon, and Annis seede, and the Wormelwood much praysed, especially *Oxyfaccbara*, be it of whatsoeuer humo; this ague doth proceed.

The fift Chapter.

Of the Tertian Ague.



Like as we haue in the former chap. made mention of the tertian Ague, and haue numbrzed the same amongst the hot Agues (whereof we nowe do speake) so both our methode now require to adde these and all other hot agues vnto them.

This Ague doth alter her selfe into many kinds of sorts and species, according as it mingleteth it selfe with other agues, which oftentimes happeneth.

But if this Ague remaine in her owne proprietie, then do the learned call it *Exquisitam*, & *Legitimam*, that is as much to say, as nete of it selfe and vnmingled: and it is such a kinde of Ague, wherein the proprietie of the person, his age, the time of the yere, the state of the body, and the whole former order of diet do agree one with another, and acco;rd with the humo; which causeth this ague. This exquisite tertian ague commeth not aboute seuen times, and it is wholly without perill.

The second sort of this Ague, they terme *Tertianam notham*, o; *Spiriam*, that is as much to say, as a bassard Tertian Ague, whereof we will speake and declare hereafter apart. Now to speake of the right nature and proprietie of the tertian Ague, they are commonly subiect vnto it which are cold of nature, and of a middle age, because that in them the Gall most of all aboundeth: also in sommer time when the *Cholera* raigneth, there happen many hot and burning *Causones*, whereof we shall hereafter make mention.

This tertian Ague raigneth most in hot dry countries, in hot dry dwellings, and in hot aire. All bodies that do labour soze in the sommer, watch much, liue in great sorrowe, are nourished with subtile meates and such like, are most subiect to these sorts of agues: as also all they that vse too much Phisicke, they that are hot and drye of nature. And although all species of the tertian ague (as also the *Exquisita*) are the verie hottest; yet haue they neuerthelesse with the ague *Causone* this difference, that the foresaide tertian ague so;reth much gall with the blood into the vaines, and there inflameth the same.

To be brieife, these are called *Tertiana exquisita*, for that they come vpon the third day, expelling the *Cholera* through vomits, going to the stoule, and through sweat.

And whereas none of these foresaid things appere thereby at all, then is it to be called only *Tertiana*; for that the same thereby onely differeth from the *Exquisita*.

For when this tertian ague maketh apparance which continueth many howers, to wit, the whole space of the tertian ague, the which remayneth continually 28. 30. 30. o; 40. houres, the same doe the learned terme *Tertianam extensam*, that is, a lengthened o; extended tertian ague.

In like manner they terme that *Tertianam duplicem*, which is mingled with the quotidian ague.

Item, *Hemitriteam* whereof we haue declared befoze, and many moe that we omit for breuitie sake.

It commeth to passe that all Tertians appo;ch with a greater and with a moze trembling cold, and haue commonly this nature that they do not continue long, no; yet (as is also said) keep not their fits aboute seuen times. And if there be any that giueth hir occasion by some ill diet that the

the same continue any longer: yet doth she alwaies alter her owne nature into another ague, the which may be prevented though good government of life. The occasions of this ague are partly declared before, to wit, soze laboꝝ, oꝝ great exercise, and that chiefly at hot times, long vse of things that increase the *Choleram*, and inflame the humours, as Garlicke, Pepper, and al that is drest therewith, also Ginger, and fined strong wine, and such like.

The signes of the verie true tertian ague are these, when it doth assaile you with great shacking, and cold, which is moze violent in this tertian, than in any other ague.

Afterwards the heate followeth vpon it, a strong swift pulse, and breath of the tongue, and of the whole body. The patient feelth a pricking ouer all his bodie, as if he were prickt with nailes: the vaine is red as fire, and you may perceiue the heat by the feeling: there is great disquietnes with it, and no sleepe at all; yet without any paine in the head, vnlesse it be not an exquisite tertian, but a mingled ague. Also if there be any great thirst, madness, and frowardnes with it, there commeth a sweat in the end vnto it: & these signes are the moze surer, if the patient be yong and cholerick, in the summer time, in a leane bodie, and that hath liued verie continently, and is much inclined to vomit *Choleram*.

It is first to be considered that all the common rules, that we haue before collected in describing the continuall ague, are also verie requisite herein, as these rules following shall further declare.

First, the exquisite Tertian oꝝ third dayes ague that proceedeth of red *Cholera*, must be well moistned and cooled.

Secondly, soꝝ as much as the *Cholera* is the hottest and dyest humour of the body: therefore it is requisite that it be expelled which is fallen into the stomacke by vomits: and that which falleth downe lower, is to be expelled and purged by going to the stole, be it by potions oꝝ clisters.

Thirdly, all moistning meates are verie good, except such as putrifie quickly in the body.

Fourthly, the recovery soꝝ this and all other putrified agues consisteth herein, that all putrified humours must be cleane purged out, and the vnnaturall heate quenched: soꝝ if in the exquisite tertian, the corruption be lesse then the heate, then the moze diligence ought to be had soꝝ to coole the same, then soꝝ to purge the humoꝝ.

Fifthly, if the patient be much bound in bodie, then is he in the beginning to be opened and loosed with moderate clisters, that the bad humours may be somewhat expelled and diminished.

Sixtly, bicause all fruits are hurtfull soꝝ all agues, therefore they ought to be soꝝborne.

Seuenthly, two oꝝ thre howers before the ague commeth, the patient is to eate somewhat, and likewise also when the ague is departed.

Eighthly, when by the preparatiue medicines the humoꝝ is made to vanish a little, and to be concocted (which may be perceiued by the vaine) then is it high time that the same be purged, and that by that way whither it most inclineth.

Ninthly, if after the assault of the ague, and after the departure thereof there followeth sweat, then must the same be suffered to take his course, vnles that some swooning, oꝝ such like accidents are feared.

Tenthly, at the beginning of the ague the patient must shun drinking and sleepe, to the end that the humoꝝ thereby be inclosed in the bodie, and that the drinking hindreth the vomiting vp of the humoꝝ.

Eleuenthly, the letting of blood is neuer good soꝝ the third daies ague, before that the patient haue had it thre oꝝ fouer times.

Twelfthly, there are no Piobalans to be given to the patient at the beginning of this ague, because they purge at the first, and afterwards binde the body.

Thirteenthly, he ought also to be secluded from *Diagridion*: soꝝ it inflameth.

Fourteenthly, he must not take any fouler thing with any thing made of Barly, soꝝ that the one spoyleth the other, albeit either of them by themselves are commodious.

Fiftenthly, Rubarb purgeth *Choleram*, but it warmeth somewhat, and leaueth a heat behind; therefore the same is to be taken in the water of Endiue.

Sixteenthly, if it be perceiued that there do any hot vapours ascend into the head, they are to be withdrauen, by a moderate Clister, thereby to draw them downewards, and to

to strengthen the head, that it receiue them not so speedily.

And to come to the cure thereof, it is requisite that we make some mention of such things as are declared in the foresaid rules, which I hope shall neuer a whit mislike the reader. This is the opinion of all expert Physicians, and the nearest way, and about all other (so far as is possible) to coole and moisten the body; for because this ague is hot and drie, therefore must it be cured and corrected with contrarie things, to wit, with cold and moist things.

When as then the *Cholera* lighteth in the mouth of the stomacke, then must the same thorough vomits be expelled: but if it descend, and fall into the bowels, then must it be purged downeward, albeit the nature of an exquisite Tertian be such that it commonly expelleth the same of it selfe, either by sweat, or by vyne. The *Cholera* is also lightly to be purged downeward, and that through a milde Clister, whereof there be diuers described before in the third chapter §. 7.

And if so be that neede require any stronger, then take of the foresaid decoction twelue or fifteen ounces, mingled with *Benedicta laxativa*, Cassie, and course Sugar, of each halfe an ounce, confection of *Venercod* two dragmes, *Sal gemma* one dragme, Sallet oyle, and oyle of *Sesamum*, of each one ounce and a halfe, mingle them all together, and exhibite this Clister at least an houre before meate.

For the prouoking of vyne, there is a potion to be made wherein Smalage or Will hath been steeped.

If you would vse stronger, then loke in the third Part, the eighteenth Chapter, and the first §. &c.

When as then the humors is purged through Clisters, and is expelled through the vyne, then doe some famous Physicians giue counsell, that the patient should open the *Saluatella* vpon the hand, and afterwarde to purge him with milde and cooling medicines, as hereafter shal loweth.

Take softer Dates and Cassie, of each a quarter of an ounce, Rubarb one scruple, Tully of milke three ounces: mingle them together, and drinke it, and fast sixe houers after it.

Take of the decoction of fruits, called *Decoction fructuum*, softer ounces, steepe two dragmes of Rubarbe in it all a night: early in the morning wryng it out hard, and mingle therewith two ounces of Panna, one quarter of an ounce of *Diacatholicon*, take it fasting: but of the *Diacatholicon* may you take more or lesse, according to the ability of the patient. There are moe such like in the description of the continuall ague.

After gurgling, let him drinke siue or sixe dayes one after another, of this potion following: take *Oxyfachara* one ounce, Sirupe of Violets halfe an ounce, water of *Soyrell*, and of *Cicory*, of each an ounce and a halfe, and mingle them together.

But when as you perceiue that the corruption beginneth to be concocted, then may be giuen to the sicke body without feare the iuice of *Mozmelwood*, drest in this manner: Take the highest sprigs of *Mozmelwood*, poune them to pap, and then straine out the iuice: and afterwards take euery morning hereof a spoonfull, and fast two houers after it: so doe also at nights two houers after supper. Some vse to steepe the *Mozmelwood* in *Meliceraton*, and drinke thereof.

This following is an especiall medicine, for the grieve in the stomacke of *Cholera*, to wit, to vse often bathing in fresh water, for thereby is the *Cholera* washed, coled, and moistened, if the same be vsed twice a day, and may remaine therein so long as it liketh the patient, but it must alwayes be vsed with moderation, and at opportune times.

Secondly, he must obserue such an order of diet, whereby the *Cholera* may be auoyded, whereof is sufficient mention made in the description of the Gall, and stomacke.

But briefly to expresse the meaning of *Galen*, which is, that in *Tertiana exquisita* such gouernment is to be kept, that the patient drinke no wine so long as the disease endureth: but the disease being cleane gone, that then wine is first to be taken watered.

All cold and moist meates are perfect good for this malady, wherewith the patient may cherish himselfe as long as he thinketh meate, and as his stomacke can digest them.

Amongst all Greene herbes, these be good: Drage, Blites, Dockes, Pallowes, Lettice and Gourds. Likewise also Barley paps, and all riuer fish: and amongst foules, let those suffice as haue soft flesh, and of other the wings onely. Item, all wood foules, the brains and fatte of Hogs, reere sod Eggs, and especially the yolkes be better than the whites.

He may vse all fruits that are not hard of digestion : but he must so beare at any hand *Po-ny*, *Sustard*, salt meates, and all hard meates. All this hath *Galen* left behind and described for a diet in the mixed tertian ague.

There is to be noted that at all times the patient shall eate at least fower or five howers before that the ague approcheth, that it may finde an empty stomacke : and in like manner he shall not eate vntill two or three houres be past after it.

The sixt Chapter.

Of the counterfet and bastard Tertian, that is, a false third daies Ague.



The third daies ague which the Latinists terme *Notham Spuriam*, that is a bastard Tertian, is so called, by reason of her due cause which proceedeth not of mere *Cholera*; and because that the *Cholera* is mixt with *Plegma*, so that both of them are conuerted into one kinde of humour. And the difference of them which is betwene the late described *Hemitritia* and this *Notha*, is that the first appeareth in the beginning with two kindes of humours, and the *Notha* commeth with one onely, and hath but one kind of putrifaction of two seuerall humours

The signes wherby this counterfet tertian may be knowen from the exquisite tertian, are these : first, this *Notha* (as is aforesaid) is not exquisite, but mixed. The exquisite tertian cometh not aboute seven times, except the patient or the Physician haue committed an error, wherby it is continued. And the bastard tertian heateth not the bodie so greatly, and all the symptomes are not so vehement as accusometh in all other Agues; so this Ague lasteth longer then twelue howres, and otherwhiles remaineth two moneths, specially in old phlegmatick persons, and that in winter season.

These signes also following do manifest how to know the difference betwene it and the right tertian Ague, to wit, that the humour or matter of this Ague departeth not so soone, and abateth not the bodie so quickly, neither doth this Ague end with such a sweate.

These are the common rules to be obserued for this Ague: first, euen as this counterfet tertian Ague differeth from the right tertian Ague, so require they seuerall kinds of cure. Secondly, as the same is mixt with *Cholera* and *Plegma*, so must also the medicines that serue for the same, be mingled, and must be both digestiues and purgers. Thirdly, so that the sirupe of vineger doth attenuate *Plegma*, and doth digest *Cholera*, therefore is the same very commodious to be vsed for it. Fourthly, because the same Ague cometh not so speedily to the state or highest, the patient may eate and drinke moderately, least so want thereof he lose his strength, and may expect the state of the Ague.

And to speake farther hereof, it appeareth plainly, that touching these Agues, the old proverb may be verified, where men vsually say, the Ague hath three deadly enemyes, namely, purging, fasting, and letting of blood : which three in truth do not only gall these bastard tertians, but also all other Agues. But in this Ague, whereof we haue spoken, which is not so exquisite and pure as the former, there must be regard taken that the sickness increase not, least thereby the sick persons be quite ouerthrowne, because (as aforesaid) there are two sundry kinds of impediments at hand, it is scarce possible therein to keepe a meane : yet specially is abstinence good, that the more the same is vsed, so much the more will the sickness be discusse and spent, but the same febleth greatly the strength of the patient; so how much the greater it is, so much the more doth it abate and weaken the patient. But to the contrary, the more that the patient sweeth, so much the more doth the maladie increase, wherefore speciall care is to be had, that that be alwayes done or left vndone which is most requisite and profitable, so that in strong natures the abstinence, and in weake good nourishment be prescribed, which not only in this, but in all other maladies is to be specially obserued and kept.

In this counterfet and mixt tertian Ague, at the first the patient is not to bathe, but onely when it beginneth to abate; and the patient must not haue euery day meate to eate, but e-

uery

very other day, and must keepe himselfe quiet, couer close his bzeast, & otherwhiles vse a Clitter.

Item, for purging you must take halfe an ounce of Cassy, *Diaphanicon* two dragmes and a halfe, and whay of milke thre ounces mingled together. For a preparatiue of the humour vse this potion following: Sirupe of vineger one ounce, *Syrupum de Eupatorio* halfe an ounce, mingle them together with water of Sozrell, of Cicozie, and of Fennell, of each one ounce; drinke it off in the moyning fasting cold or warme: this is continually to be taken, till his vyne begin to ware paler, and certaine small cloudes be percciued in the bottome.

Afterwards, let him take these things following: take Cassy prepared with Cicozie water thre ounces, Rubarb and *Agaricu*; of each one scruple, *Spica* of Indy, and Ginger, of each foure grains, decoction of Welons, Gourds, and Citruls thre ounces, mingle them together with the rest, and so giue it him warme.

There is also to be vsed for these Agues, letting of blood, and that at the very beginning. The whole ordnance of gouernment of dyet must not be cold nor moyst, as is sayd of the right Tertian, but must be such that it warms, digest, and open. It is also very good to dresse all his meate with Parsley, Fennell, and such like things, and his Barly paps with some Pepper. Item, let him vse Honywater, wherein Hyssop, Marierom, and Spikenard hath bene steeped or sodden. Also all things that prouoke vyne (except such as warme and dry too fast) are passing good, and likewise *Syrupum acetosum compositum*. If you desire mo other things, then looke what is before written thereof.

And you must not faile, but to giue euery seuen dayes once to the patient for this Ague the iuice of *Mozmetwed*. *Oxymel* is also passing good, and especially that which is made of Squils, which openeth all obstructions. Some also accustome to giue for these species of Agues *Pethidate* or Treacle, according to that the same is ouerhot or cold. To conclude, vomit after meate is so requisite for all Aguish persons, that thereby only many are freed and holpen.

Some will haue many things to be vsed for this Ague, as there be many will giue counsell thereto, when all meanes and wayes haue bene tryed, then take two ounces and a halfe of the salue of Poplars, and mingle it with cobwebs, and so lay them vpon the pulse thre howres before the ague commeth. Some bind it vpon the pulse before the Ague commeth with Cinquefoile. Item, take a handfull of Eldern leaues, Lauender and Salt, of each a little, mingle them well together with Sallet oyle, and so lay it vpon the pulse, this should also durye away the Ague.

The seuenth Chapter.

Of the burning Feuer, called Caufon.



If this Ague is reherfall made amongst other Agues in the first Chapter of the sixt part, that it is (like to the right tertian Agues) the hottest of all other Agues, euen as we haue also sayd in the fifth Chapter, in which two places her properties are expressed, for the obseruation therofe of our accustomed methode, we will here shew and reherse somewhat hereof.

First, this Ague is thus described: *Caufon*, that is, burning feuer, it is a very forcible and continuall Ague, and proceedeth of a red *Cholera*, which putrifieth and enflameth in the vaines nere the hart, in the lyuer, and in the mouth of the stomack, or about any part of the body. The occasions thereof are sometimes the very hot time, great labour that is done in the heate of the Sunne, hot meates, wrath, inflammation of the lyuer, and of the blood in the vaines, and other causes moe, that are rehearsed in the two places aforesmentioned.

The signes of the same Ague are a continuall heate, and neuer cease burning, and that rather inwardly then outwardly, with many mo terrible accidents: also, there is great drought of the tongue, which at the first is yellowish, and afterwards burnt and wareth blackish, with great thirst, without any sweate (if a *Crisis* be not at hand) the pulses beate freely, the eyes are hollow, the appetite faileth utterly, and the water or vyne in this Ague is fierie, and yellow of colour: yea, it chaunceth otherwhiles that hearing, seeing, and speech is taken away by this Ague, with a great binding of the bodie.

In these perillous Agues that commonly make a dispatch of one in sower, five (or at most) in seven daies through death or health; these common rules following are to be obserued, and also all those that are herebefore noted in third chapter, and third §.

First, hasten to expell and mitigate the humour.

Secondly, when the vaine is yellow, or yellowish, and the pulse slowe, then must you not let blood; so that the *Cholera* thereby will be the more inflamed, because the moist blood which belongeth *Cholera*, might thereby be drawn out.

Thirdly, if the vaine is red and thicke, and the pulse strong and mightie, then first of all must you open a vaine.

Fourthly, if it do seeme that it is good to let blood, then must it be done at the first: for afterwards it is not allowable, least that thereby great feeblenes, yea death it selfe be procured.

Fifthly, when the heate is almost past, then are you to giue the patient to eate and drinke sparingly; yet in such measure, that the naturall strength be not thereby too much infeebled: otherwise force the patient (although against his will) to vse cooling meates.

Sixthly, you must also giue the patient oftentimes cold water to drinke, and let him suffer no thirst.

Seuenthly, when his nose or any other part happen to bleed during his sickness, then must you speedily staunch the same, that he lose no manner of strength thereby.

Eighthly, that the hot vapours of this *Cholera* may not ascend into the head; the same therefore must be cooled with the oyle of Roses, Vineger, Saunders, and with Rose water. And when as the patient cannot sleepe at all, or happeneth to fall into any frenzie, the same must be cured with meate things, as may be found out in the register.

Ninthly, first of all must this *Cholera* be expelled (be it by vomits or stools) and sake afterwards to coole the great heate, which cannot more conueniently be done, then that there be sufficient cold water giuen vnto the patient to drinke.

Tenthly, euen as to fore we haue exprest, these diseased are commonly much bound in the belly, which must be prevented the first or second day with milde clisters.

Eleuenthly, the patient must also haue a drinke giuen him wherein Dates and sower Dates haue bene sodden: also heed must be taken that he goe twice or thrice a day to stoele.

Twelfthly, the hart must be comforted (which is inflamed with this heate) with cooling cordiall waters without all delay. And these are the common rules which are to be obserued in this burning feuer.

Concerning his order of diet, his dwelling place should be coole, airie, and be sprinkled with water and Vineger. His head must be set with Wine braunches, Willow boughes, and other coole Greene things: for the same do coole and alter the aire, that by the lungs is drawn towards the hart, whereby the heate of the hart is chiefly cooled.

Secondly, euen as is exprest in the third rule, if the patients vaine be red and thicke, then must his Median or *Basilica* be opened, and the same day or the day following must he vse these medicines following, thereby to prevent all terrible accidents of the hart.

Take flowers of Burrage, Buglosse, and Violets, of each halfe an ounce, twentie or five and twentie Dates; sethe them all together in sufficient water till the third part be sodden away, then take three or sower ounces of this broth, and put therein Cassie and sower Dates, of each three quarters of an ounce, Rubarbe steeped in Endiue water half a dragma: afterwards giue it to the patient earely in the morning.

Item, to coole and to prepare the humour make this sirupe: Take great and smal Endiue, Lettice, Purslaine, Agrymony, Liuerwort, sprigs of Poppie leaues, and Greene Payden haire, of each a handfull, Violets, Waterlillies, Roses, and *Lens palustris*, of each one ounce, seedes of Lettice, Endiue, and Purslaine, and of small Endiue, of each a quarter of an ounce; sethe them all together in sufficient water till there be eighteen ounces remaining, then put as much Sugar thereto, and let it sethe againe and clarifie it: put thereto Endiue water, Rose water, and the iuice of Pomgranates, of each sixe ounces, burnt Quozie, red and white Saunders, Camfer, and white Poppie seedes, of each a dragma and a halfe; then afterwards sethe them all together into a sirupe, giue thereof sower times in sower and twentie houres tempered with Barley or fountaine water.

And when you perceiue the next day that the ague is abated, and thereby make shew as though

though the fourth day it would end: then must you not giue the patient to eate (but as necessitie requireth, & as the fift rule sheweth:) crums of white bread soaked in fountaine water are good for him. Likewise Almond milke is also good for him, if the same be made with Helons or Cucumber seedes. You may also mingle amongst his drinke strupe of Vineger, Pusillage of Endiue, of Purslaine, and Helon seedes: and in like manner the strupe of Poppie heads, and chiefly of blacke Poppies. But in case there light vpon any yong patient any intollerable thirst, and thereby longeth to drinke cold water, then must you let him haue it, and that so much as he may drinke vp at a good draught: and then afterwards if the thirst and heat yet continue with the patient, then giue it him once againe to drinke. But note that olde folkes haue not any such drinke. Secondly, good heed must be taken that none of the principall parts thereby be damaged: but onely let such haue it as it is meete for. Thirdly, it must not be giuen at all if the ague proceede of any cold humour. Fourthly, it must not be ministred when the naturall strength is much decayed. Fifthly, if there be no great obstruction at hand. Sixthly, if the sicknes be not increasing, but decreasing. Seuenthly, it is not tollerable, vntlesse the thirst and the lust to drinke water be verie extreme. Eightly, if there be any feare of any great feeblenes, then must you mingle that water with the iuice of Pomegranates, or with Meriuiue, Ven broth, wherein Lettice, Purslaine, and Cucumbers are sodden, is also verie meete for him.

Item, raw Butter milke well sugred and with crummed white bread in it, is marvellous medicinal. But if there come any sweate, then must speciall care be had that the patient continue in it, and sweate as long as his strength will abide it. With the blood must be dealt as is said in the eight rule.

The eight Chapter.

Of the Ague which is called Synochus.



Amongst all other continuall Agues is this also comprehended, which the Greeks call *Synochus*, wherof we haue also spoken befoze in the third chap. that the same groweth through the superfluitie of the blood, being mingled with *Cholera*. The learned describe two manner of these agues: wherof the one is prouoked of the blood that is not putrified, and the other sort of a putrified and noysom blood in the vaines. The cause of the first ague is, if the partie be by nature sanguine and full of blood, and therewithall vbleth daily meates that ingender much blood: as namely, good delicate fleshy and wine, yolkes of eggs, and such like (little or too much) lacke of exercise, vapours of superfluous and ouer hot blood, that draweth vpwardes and neuer findeth any issue: because the pores and all inward passages are obstructed. The signes of this ague are, when the pulse doth beate alike strong and swift, if the heate be not extreme, then may it best of all be perceined in the palme of the hand: the vaine for the most part is like vnto that of healthfull persons, yet the same is often red and thicke, and specially in a corpulent bodie. Herewith may appere also a rednes of the bodie, and of the face, with a fulnes of the vaines, and there is no cold nor shacking, but a troublefome breathing: otherwhiles they fall into a dead sleape; as if were into a *Lethargus*, wherof we haue spoken in the first part, the twelfth chapter, and tenth S. Befoze that any do fall into this ague, he feleth first a great wearisomnes ouer al his bodie, and an itching of the nose, ach of the head, and in his sleepe he seeth many red and bloodie fantasies: about al this the speech is troublefome vnto him.

For this bloodie ague are described these rules following. First it is the opinion of all learned Physicians, that all such patients are to be letten blood euen vntill they beginne to fall into a swoone. Secondly, if it appere very waterish and cholericke, then must the same be cooled and thickened. Thirdly, if the same be too grosse and too thicke, then must the same be made subtil and thin. Fourthly, the body must after letting of blood be well frothed, that the pores may be opened. Fifthly, when as the letting of blood is neglected (and the patient yet strong enough) then is the same to be done still, yet at all times with the counsell of a learned Physician. Sixthly, if the patient will not abide letting of blood, then must altering, penning, and expulsive things be vsed, wherby the superfluous humors and blood may be abated. Seuenthly, the letting of blood and drinking of colde water woꝝke and effect so much, that you neede not vse any other things. Eighthly,

Eighthly, this Ague requireth great abstinence, if nature may abide it. Ninthly, when this Ague proceedeth of sursetting in meat, then must the letting of blood not be vsed before the 2. or 3. day: notwithstanding that the malady is such wherein the opening of a vaine may not be omitted, so that it quickly annoieth: wherefore must the first rule be forthwith applied, by letting him blood in the Median, so long til he begin to swoone. And if the same cannot be effected at one time, then is the same to be done at sundry times, every time a little. Afterwardes let the patient vse cooling things, as namely, sirupe of Meriuce, of Purslaine, of Pomegranates, and of Limons, or of Soze cell, much cold water is also to be given to the patient to drinke, yet with such direction, as be seene in the description of the Ague *Causon* hath been shewed.

Let him haue bread to eate that is steeped in the iuice of Pomegranates, or Meriuce.

Barly water is the most commodious drinke that he may drinke; & sirups of Roses may be mingled amongst it, if he go not to the stoule, then make him a chicken broth wherein Mallows are sodden.

Purge the patient also with sower Dates, with Conserue of Pines, Cassy, or with Spanna, and so proceede with cooling things till the heat be clean extinguished.

Of the Ague *Synochus*, with putrified blood. §. i.



The other sort of this continuall Ague is also very strong, proceeding of a putrifaction of the blood. And hereof is a disputation also amongst the learned: for some say, that when as the blood commeth so to putrifie, that then it is no longer blood, and therefore this Ague *Synochus* cannot be ingendred of blood. The causes are the same that are of the other, but that only with the former there are many inward vapors without any putrifaction of the blood. In like manner the signes of both these Agues, are the same, but that in the first, the heat is greater, and all other symptomes more violent, than in this. In fine, herein do they both agree, that there neuer is any increasing or abating of the fit, as may be observed in other continuall agues. Now to cure this ague, the patient must be let blood out of hand, if the stomacke be not overcharged with meate, & that the age and the strength will permit the same, and then upon purge, as is taught for the former Ague. And if it fall out (as it accusometh to fall out) that with this ague there were adioined a feblenes of the Liver, then must these Trocises following be prepared for it.

Take burnt Suoꝝ, Diagagant, and Starch, of each a dragme, seedes of Purslaine a quarter of an ounce, Licopice a quarter of an ounce and one scrup. make therof then Trocises, with Diagagant, dissolved in Endiue water; they doe coole and comfort the stomacke, and also the liver.

Another: Take two scrup. of Roses, two scrup. and a halfe of Berberies, seedes of Pelons, Cucumbers, Citruls, Purslaine, and burnt Suoꝝ, of each a scrup. Diagagant, Gum, and Almonds, of each halfe a scrup. Kubarb, Saffron, and Camfere of each seven greins: make thereof Trocises, and minister one dragme of them at once with Barly water: you may also mixe the aforesaid Trocises with conserue of Roses, and so vse them.

For this are also commodious the lozings *Diatrion santalon*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, and that for both sorts of these agues, because both of them do aske one and the same kind of remedies.

Of the order of diet. 2. §.



Both of these Agues doe require a sparing diet, as Barly pottage, Watens paps, Ven broths wherein Lettice or Meriuce is sodden, and such like. One may also seethe Lentils by pouring out the first broth therof, and dressing the second with Parsley, and a little Vineger, or iuice of Pomegranats. The broth of red Bease, with Sugar, stewed Apples, Pears, and fresh Gourds dressed with Almond milke, are speciall good. We may also eate otherwhiles Pelons, Citruls, Endiue, Lettice and Purslaine. But if the patient be bound in the body, then may you seethe in the Almond milke, Spinage, Percury, and such like: or take Conserue of Pines, sower Dates, Cassy, and Spanna, of which you will: also mild Clifters may be vsed and taken for this purpose.

And if the patient haue great headache, then delay the same with oyle of Roses, Vineger, or with Oxymorino. In like manner may you also vse a little oile of Violets, or oile of water Lillies,

being dropt into his eares, and to hold Roses, Camfere, or Saunders before his nose. If the patient cannot take any sleepe or rest, and that no lithargy be feared, then is the iuice of cold & moist herbes to be vsed, and in like maner of small & great Housleake, of Nightshade, Lettice, Purslan, and of Poppie leaues, or Poppy heads, Poplar salue, and such like: dip a cloth therein, and lay it vpon his forehead. The very best & most vsuall drinke that can be vsed in this sickness is Barly water: but in great heate you must mingle therewith (as is said) the iuice of Pomegranates or Merinice. Item, cold water with sirupe of Pomegranats, or any other cooling sirupe, and if there chanceth any swooning called *Cardiac* with it (whereof we haue admonished in the second part, the first Chapter) then is the same to be holpen with cooling and fragrant things: euen as hath bin shewed in the foresaid places, and especially apply this plaister following to the Liuer: Take red, white, & yelow Saunders, of each three drag. Roses & Barly meale, of each one ounce, Camfere a quarter of an ounce: make a plaister therof with Rose water. If so be that he fall into a great sleepe, then must you chase the hands and the feete very vehemently with Vineger, poluizing the same also vpon a hot stone, that the vapor thereof way ascend into his nose: You must also call earnestly vpon him, pull him by the haire, or by the nose, and vse such like things more so; the same, as is shewed in the first part, the 12. chapter, §. 10. so; when as these vapors do ascend forcibly into the head, then is the dead Palley to be expected. Whereas is vnquenchable thirst, there must the water be mingled with Vineger, and holde these losings following vnder the tong: Take of the iuice of vnripe Grapes, of Sorrel, of Lettice, wine of Pomegranates, and white vineger, of each an ounce, put thereto white Sugar and Sugar candie, as much as is thought meete, letting it sathe so long together, as shall suffice to make losings of it. Here is nowe sufficiently intreated of this *Synocha*, and of other hot agues.

The ninth Chapter.

Of the Quotidian Ague, Quotidiana.



Because of this daylie Ague proceedeth of a putrified *Phlegma*, and slimy corruption which nature forceth towards the exterior partes of the body, and there ingendreth such a colde, which may be called rather a shaking, than right cold: wherewith it so burtheneth and suppresseth nature, that thereby the Pulses are faint, and vnnaturall heate stirred vp, and the Pulses are found vnequall. When as the cold auoydeth, then by and by followeth the heate, which is shorter than the cold; continueth longer because of her slowness, and by reason of her toughness: wherby this Ague commeth to her state very slowly, and declineth very sodainly. So that it hapneth therein, as if one lay greene wood vpon the fire, where the moisture withstandeth and suppresseth the heate, and remaines so long without burning, till all the moisture be consumed, and then sodainly burneth away, as long as there remaineth any wood.

The occasion of this ague is outwardly colde and moyst ayre, the long vse of colde and moyst meate, as fish, fruit, and such like, and vnaccustomed idleness, to bathe much in sweete waters, and great ryoting.

Item, if the body be ouercharged with ouer moyst and slimy humours, that putrifie in the body, goe out of the vaines, and send stinking vapors towardes the heart, whereof an Ague might ensue.

This Ague is also very easilie (by her signes) to be knowne from the Tertian Ague: for it beginneth not by and by after the first day with colde, but beginneth by little and little: also the pulse altereth not, as it doth in the Tertian ague. The patient complaineth of no great heat, of no short breathing, neither of any great thirst. His vyne is like vnto the vyne of such as haue newe gotten the quartaine Ague, not knowing of any sweate at the beginning, but in time doth he perceiue it: so that these signes are so manifestly differing from the Tertian Ague, that they seeme to haue no communion at all.

Also, one may perceiue by this patient, that the heate is somewhat mirt with a vapor which appeareth outwardly. Also the pulses of this ague be much fainter than of the Tertian or Quartaine agues. The tong is moyst, and he is quickly prouoked to vomit, whereby he

casteth by much filth, and in like manner is the going to the priuie colde by nature, moyst, vndigested, waterish, and full of vapors. The vyne is white and thin, and otherwhile thicke and troubled, and the whole body full of waterish humors: all bodies that liue in quiet, are fat & moyst, haunting daily rrottousnes, and surfering, much bathing in fresh waters, and such as haue their habitations nere to moyst places, are most of all subiect to this disease. To conclude, this ague long enduring, is not without perill of life.

Now to remedie and cure this Ague the better, you must aboue all obserue these rules following. First, this patient is to vse that which warmeth, and attenuateth the humor.

Secondly, if the patient can hardly cast or vomit, then it is a signe that the tough phlegme of the stomacke must be incided.

Thirdly, you are in the beginning of the Ague to force the patient to vomit, whereby the matter of humor might partly be abated.

Fourthly, these inciding and attenuating medicines must be vsed from the beginning, to the very ending of the maladie, yet now and then, as the Physition thinketh mete.

Fifthly, All kinde of agues in the beginning do accord with these three things, to wit, that the nature be brought through easie meanes to be laxative, to prouoke vomit, and moreover to vse such things that doe incide and attenuate the matter, and expell vyne.

Sixthly, so: as much as the debility of the stomacke and of the Liver is an occasion of many filthy humours, therefore neede requireth that you seeke to comfort and open the same, and also the Splene.

Seuenthly, so: that this ague from the beginning, till it come to the highest state, requireth much time: therefore are you to consider of the patient accordingly, and to giue him much or little meate.

Eighthly, one must in the beginning of the Ague, and likewise as often also as it assaileth, keepe the patient awake, and that so long till it begin to decline, that the expulsion of the humors be not thereby hindered.

Ninthly, he is not to be fed so long as the fit of the Ague indureth, but a good space before, and afterwards, vnesse that some debility and weakenes require the contrarie. And howe these Agues are by medicines to be cured, that is before in the fifth part, the twentieth chapter, sufficiently taught and expessed: whereby euery one may gouerne himselfe, and especially these Pills here following are to be prepared for these phlgmaticke Agues. Take the rindes of *Mirbalani*, *Chebuli*, *Rubarb*, *Cinnamom*, *Cardamome*, and *Cloues*, of each a dragma, *Aloe* three dragmes: beate all these together very small, and with the iuice of *Sints*, wherein a dragma and a halfe of *Agaricus* is steeped: then make pills therof, and euery morning and euening take halfe a dragma at once.

You are also to receiue a potion that is described in the third part, the twelfth chapter, beginning thus, Take *Gentian*, &c.

You are generally at the first to vse alwayes for these Agues *Oxymel* and other things moe that prouoke vyne, as it hath been taught in the third part, the eighteenth chapter.

This patient is also to vse none other meate, than such as doth separate the tough phlegme, and expelleth it. In like maner, when the Ague is at the state, then must care bee had for the mouth of the stomacke, like as there are therefore diuers medicines ordained in the description of the stomacke in the third part, the eleventh chapter. Vomiting is for these Agues passing good, for thereby will many stinky humors be expelled: And how to prouoke vomite, you may search and finde in the first Register.

The tenth Chapter.

Of the Quartaine Ague, Quartana.

When as these quartaine Agues are mixt with other Agues, then hath shee her beginning of Melancholy, as the Quotidian Ague of *Phlegma*. And because the blacke melancholicke blood hath his residence in the Splee, it will commonly be felt in the same place at the beginning. This ague is (as her cause is) cold and drie. Albeit the same humors are very grosse, colde, and heauy, yet doth their

cold nature not appeare forthwith, to wit, in the beginning, or the first day, but by little and little, as it ingendzeth: so that the cold when the Ague is at the highest, doth not otherwise shew it selfe, then it doth vnto such as are stiffened by extreame cold in the hard winter: and it is to be likened by a stone, mulke, or bone, which lying in the fire, and being hot, cannot well know the heate till you feele it.

So fareth it also with melancholick humors, when they happen to kindle, then remaineth there no moisture till they be cleane burnt, and therefore are they the longer before they kindle, then any other, for that (as is sayd) the corruption commeth to kindle by little and little.

By the foresayd occasions it commeth to passe also, that the pulse beateth very slowe, faint, and longsome, yea (in yong folke) so very faint, that they may be likened to old folke, for as this Ague beginneth to increasse and attaine to the highest, then will the pulse be the more swifter and forcible, yet not so strong as it is in the tertian Ague, whereof we will further write and make mention.

The causes of this quartain Ague are (euen as abovesaid) first the melancholick blood, time of the harvest, and after that the winter, for that at these seasons these humors are not only stirred, but also augmented more vehement and durable, so that otherwhiles they endure vntill winter, whereas to the contrarie the same are shorter in Sommer: and the rather, if the nature of the countrey be enclined that way, and the time of the yeare otherwhiles is such, that it engendzeth foule blood, whereby then such and other Agues are caused. Wherefore good hede must be taken to all these foresayd things, and in like manner whether the patient be not of melancholick nature, and hath not vied before to eate such kinds of meates, whereof this melancholick blood is ingendzed or increased, as bread of Millet, Lentles, Beanes, Chestnuts, salt Cheese, salt fish, Basse, Hares, Harts, Cabbages, & such like. Item, all other things that inflame the blood, as Garlick, Cresses, Pepper, Mustard, strong & spiced wyne, burnt wyne, & all kinds of hot spice or fruits; but specially great labour, trauell in the heate of the Sunne, long anger, great sorrow, and long former Agues, whereby the blood and other humors are burnt and putrified, and are altered by the great heats in *Adelancholiam* before they be expelled, whereof you haue further instruction in the description of melancholy, and of the stomacke.

Item, haue speciall care whether the Spite of the patient be not swollen, or haue any other infirmities. Or whether the patient haue before had no erratick Ague, for that the quartaine Ague neuer commeth alone, but commonly alwayes after another ague.

You must alwayes marke well, whether the vyne be white, thin, and waterish, in these things, as also in the pulse and cold doth it altogether differ from the tertian, but regard not you the vomiting of the gall, for that is the only nature of the tertian ague; but if you finde by the motion of the pulse or otherwise, after that the ague is gone, or if there be any signes of the ague, then is there no doubt at all but that it is a quartaine ague.

As to cure this ague, we will first of all shew you certaine rules: and for the first, if the pulse be forcible, and beateth swiftly, the water be red, and grosse, the patient be yong and full of blood, then shall you not omit, but open the *Basilica*, or Spite vaine on the left hand: but if the blood be red and clere, then stop it againe; but if it be thick and black, then let it runne, and that so long as the parties strength be able to beare it. Secondly, if so be that the patient haue not much blood, let him then not bleed at all. Thirdly, you must not giue to any that is taken with the ague any strong purgation at the first, by reason that all melancholick humors are very tough and grosse, and the same may not be purged in the beginning, but mild purgations must be vied, and gentle Clisters. Fourthly, all meates and drinks that are prepared daily for the patient, shall be laxatiue, that he may alwayes haue some vacuation. Fifthly, against such time as the ague appoacheth, the patient must at any hand refraine fode, that nature thereby may worke the better on the matter of the ague, also the easier expell and withstand it. Sixthly, he may not bathe vntill the ague begin to decrease. Seuenthly, he must forbear all fruits, by reason of their grosse moisture, that lightly doth putrifie, and may prouoke obstructions. Eighthly, these patients must take hede of the cold ayre, and settle themselves in temperate dwellings. Ninthly, they that haue any obstruction in their vaines, are to vse such meates and drinks that warme and moisten. Tenthly, because that this humour is compact, and the state thereof a great while after it beginneth, the patient is not to be kept ouersparingly, but let him be cher-

shed with meate, that he may retaine his force and strength, and expect the *statum* of the disease. Eleventhly, for this kind of sickness you must not give him any overhot and dry things, for feare that the ague be not thereby doubled, prolonged, and altered into a continuall ague. Twelfthly, you are not to use overcold remedies, because they do thicken and harden the matter, wherefore milde meanes are alwayes to be used and taken.

Out of these foresaid rules it is easily to be understood, that no strong medicines are to be used in the beginning of this ague, except one see that there is great store of blood at hand, at which time the Median may be opened in the right arme.

Also if the blood be black and thick (as it hapneth to be of such that have a diseased spleene) then may one let it runne the longer, but if it be red and cleane, then must it be presently stoppt.

The ordinance and government of his life must be such, that he feede not upon any thing that prouoketh or breedeth winde, but use all meates that ingender good blood, and keepeth the bodie open and soluble: and if any defect be hereof, then must a milde clister be ministred. Also, he shall forbear hogs flesh, and all meates that are limie, and hard of digestion, and of all that which might make the bodie cold and dry.

His drinke must be thin white wine, his meate all manner of field sowles (but no water sowles) fish of light digestion, and not limie, salt meates and Mustard may be also use. Also he may sometimes use the confection *Diatrion pipereon*, or *Diaspolicicon*: and although the patient did drinke every day a little Pepper with water, it were not amisse: this patient shall not wholly forbear from riding, from walking, and from bathes, if he hath bene accustomed to it, yet is the bath not very good for him.

If this quartaine ague be not very strong, nor yet continue long, then can it not hurt, if the patient upon his free dayes do execute his affaires and busines. But about the time as is supposed that the ague is come to the highest state, then must the patient feede very moderately, yea more sparingly then euer before, keeping himselfe very quiet, and annoynt the belly with such things as may keepe the bodie open and soluble: and also use such things as prouoke vyne, whereof you shall finde good instruction at his due time and place.

And as some as one perceiueth that the humors begin to auoyd, then are those things to be used that expell melancholy, and that not once, but as often as neede shall require.

Also to prouoke him to vomit, and that after meate, and (if neede be) let him take a little Black Elleboze therewith to ease and further the vomiting.

But they that cannot vomit, must be purged, Treacle is also passing good for them. Yet it is to be noted, that none of these foresayd things may be used, before that the sickness be at the highest, for thereby might of a single quartaine ague be made a double, and lastly of a double quartaine, a three double ague.

Galen writeth, (out of whome this counsell is gathered) that he knew a Physician, who (before the quartaine was at the highest) gaue his patient Treacle, whereby the same ague so increased, that he dyed thereof.

When as this order hath bene obserued in this ague, then do the later Physicians teach, that these things following are very fit to be used.

Take Ginger one ounce, cut it small, and then seethe it in red wine untill there remaine five ounces, then mingle therewith one ounce and a halfe of Zulep of Violets, and so drinke it, to wit, two howezes before the ague commeth upon you, and the same will make you sweate thoroughly.

Item, take an ounce of the iuice of Plantaine two howezes before the fit of the ague approacheth, it will remoue the ague. The water of *Cardus Benedictus*, or the herb sod in wine and drunken, cureth the ague. The common people take the powder of this herb, and strow it upon a shiue or twaine of bread that is soaked in burnt wine, or *Aqua vine*, and so eate the bread before the ague come. *Oximel scilliticum compositum* openeth all obstructions in the quartaine and tertian agues.

Some commend the wyne of *Asarabacca* rootes, for this rote hath the nature of the Elleboze, it dryeth all inward parts, and prouoketh vyne, and will therefore also expell the ague. The like virtues are ascribed to the wines of Harts tong, of Hyssope, and of *Tamariscum*. The fruite of *Oxyacchara* is also passing good.

Of the consumption or Ethicke Hellica.



This is one of the most perillous Agues that may light vpon a man, for by her hot and dry operation, she dryeth vp all naturall moysture of manis bodie. This *Hellica* is not satisfied with the hurt that it doth to all naturall moysture, and vitall spirits, but it dryeth also all nourishing partes, and all the flesh of the whole bodie (yea the marrowe of the bones also) so that it may duly and rightly be called the consuming Ague.

This destroying heate beginneth first in the hart of the Ague, which is tearmed *Causon*, that is, the burning Feuer, whereof we haue witten in the seuenth Chapter, which continueth there so long, vntill it consume the very sap and moysture of the hart. And albeit that it doth not consume and waste all the moysture of the hart, yet doth it burne and spoyle the same. For it fareth with the hart, as with a weke in a Lampe, that at the beginning doth burne bright and cleare, but the longer that it burneth, the harder, and the more burnt the dryer it wareth, where by a little and a little it loseth light & ertinguisheth: and albeit more oyle be pouzed vnto it, yet burneth it not then the brightest, but the flame remaineth small and slack, and the longer that it burneth, the darker it is, till at the last of all it goeth cleane out of it selfe. So fareth it also with this *Hellica*, with or without an Ague, as plainly may appeare in very old men, which are commonly sayd to dye lyke a Lampe or Candle. This is to be noted also in Childzen, that sometimes also vse to abate and fall away.

This consumption, namely that which is without an Ague, is called of the Grækes *Marasmus*, that is, a consumption; and of the Latinists *Senectus*, that is old age, whereby we may call it the infection of the hart, whereof we haue spoken in the second part, the first Chapter and ninth S. In like manner in the description of the consumption, in the first Chapter, 22. S.

When this *Hellica* spreadeth her selfe ouer all the whole bodie, drying it altogether vp, then is it (as we haue already told) called *Marasmus*.

This sickness is incurable, and aboue all mens help, for that the naturall heate would quickly like a tree (thorough very great age, or in them that lye about the fire, thorough extreame heate) be dried away.

The causes of this *Hellica*, are all outward things, which doe heate the partes of the bodie, whereby many Agues might be prouoked, whence at the last this consumption is founded and springeth.

Item, the hunger and thirst, if they be not remedied betimes, the which for the most part hapneth to cholerick and leane men, who falling into a quotidian Ague, are thereby lightly turned into a burning, and lastly into this Ague *Hellica*.

Item, the perishing of the Lights may very well be a cause of this *Hellica*, whereby is hindered that the fresh ayze may not cole the hart sufficiently, and there be moe other occasions, whereby the hart may be inflamed.

We will now admonish somewhat of her signes. They that fall into *Tabem*, that is, into a consumption, are easily to be discerned; for before that one come to feele their pulles, one may see how that their eyes be sunke and fallen into their heads.

The apples of their eyes will be dry in this agonie, and wrinkled, and the flesh round about the eyes fallen away, so that one may otherwhiles almost see the bones of their browes.

It cometh also otherwhiles, that these diseased persons face is so bedusted with dry dust, as it is in them that haue gone the whole day through the dust in the heate of the Sunne. Also the liuely ruddines and colour ouer all the whole bodie is vanished and gone, and likewise the skinne of their forehead so hardened and thynke, that they seeme to close their eye lids very badly, and sleeping, they lye with their eyes halfe open, which can be no due sleepe, but rather an ouer great

great watching, and the flesh in the temples of the head doth so wast away, that there seemeth to be a great hollownes. To conclude, there remaineth no more then the very skin and the bones, so that when one seeth them naked, he would iudge none other, then that the carcase were covered with a dry skin, and that all the intrayles are taken out, or lye hid in the breast, and when as one toucheth the skin and plucketh it hard, then shall he finde it thorow dry, and it seemeth that by plucking it will follow. These sick persons haue a hard pulse, and at the first touching of them doth one perceiue small heate, but when you hold your hand long vpon them, then may you feele the heate vnder your hands increafe, and diuers such like signes more.

Of this maladie *Hellica* and *Tubes* is a great disputation, whereof here we will not make many words, but will commend that matter to the learned: yet neuertheles, before we come to the cure, we will briefly admonish thus much, that such as be of a moist nature in the beginning of the consumption, are not assailed with this Ague *Hellica*, but they only that be dry of nature, and somewhat hot, and therewith do great labour, watch much, and liue in carefulnes, whereby their naturall moisture is wasted and spent, these presently are taken with this Ague *Hellica*, and specially such as chafe much, liue in extreme sorrow, or frequent great heate. And although this sickness, when it hath long endured, and is once rooted into the body be thought incurable, yet neuertheles men must not disdaine the help and meanes which God the Lord hath ordained for the vse of man, but pray hartely vnto him, that he will blesse them for the glory of his holy name.

Wherefore these rules following are to be obserued and imitated, for thereby may be gathered a perfect cure of this sickness. First, it is needefull for the languishing persons, that they vse all things that may moisten and coole. Secondly, because these diseased persons must neither be purged, nor warmed, therefore the warme bath is also hurtfull, for thereby the heate is increased. Thirdly, all their meate and drinke must be cooling and moistning, or at the leastwise temperate, as Barly pape, *Prisana*, *Wenbroth*, and *Panada*. Fourthly, the curing of this *Hellica* is like to that in the mouth of the stomack, whereof we haue written in the third part, the second Chapter, 7. §. Yet are cooling things hereto required, by reason of the great heate of the Ague. Fifthly, if neede require that other meates are to be ministred vnto him which are not cooling, as namely, wyne, and fresh broth, yet neuertheles therewith are cooling things to be vsed. Sixthly, if the Ague proceede of any impostume, or brule of some other part, then must speciall regard be had, for the healing thereof, and that the lyuer be cooled and brought in good course. Seuenthly, a good cole ayre is one of the principall helps, and therewith fresh linnen also that is washed in water, where *Roses*, *Willow leaues*, or *Trocisci de Camphora* be steeped. In like manner Rose water is very commodious for it. Eighthly, the smell of Campher, Rose water, fresh Popple heds, *Roses*, *Saunders*, and such like, is very requisite and profitable for this patient. Ninthly, all cooling plaisters, (wherein no astringent things are intermingled) are to be layd on his best. Tenthly, if this diseased person desire to haue health, then must he (so farre as is possible) encline himselfe to sleepe, and to all quietnes and rest, and keepe himselfe from thirst, hunger, penurienes, anger, hatred, & much sorrow. Eleuenthly, he must not sleepe vpon any thing but a mattresse. Twelfthly, it is also marvellous good for this sickness to sleepe by the noise and rushing of waters, or by springing fountaines. It is very good to hang vp all greene things about his bed, or to sprinkle his chamber with the water wherein such herbs are or shall be sodden. Thirteenthly, Goats milke or Ases milke, wherof that is best of them that are fed in a meadow where cole herbs growe, is a most soueraigne medicine for this maladie. Fourteenthly, womens milke surpasseth all other milks. Fiftenthly, Buttermilke is likewise very good for this sickness. Sixteenthly, to conclude, for consumptions are all manner of milks from the beginning to the ending thereof very excellent good; and also good fresh *Wenbroth* sodden with Lettice, *Parlaine*, and *Meriuice*, is exceeding profitable for the patient.

But aboue all things, speciall care is to be had, that he obserue and keepe a good dyet, wherefore he is to eate and drinke but little, vsing alwayes such meates as do nourish well, to wit, *Pheasants*, *Partridges*, yong *Quailes*, and such like, as *Hens flesh*, *Meale*, *Button*, and *Lambs flesh* &c. wherein Lettice, *Parlaine*, and such like cooling herbs are sodden.

And as we haue declared before, let him vse alwayes Goats milke, or Ases milke, and aboue all, womens milke: for all these are so highly commended for this disease, that it is not possible to tell of any thing that may exceede them, to helpe and cure this maladie. For if he vse any of these

these, or any other good milke, yet in such measure that he be not cloyed by taking too much thereof at once, but to take it the oftener, and namely, betimes in the morning, metely warme, or when it is new milked, and that about two ounces thereof at once, and then afterwards in the day time fower times moze, about three or fower ounces at once, so that five draughts bee taken within 24. howers.

This meate must be (as is said) Barley pap that is dressed with fresh broth, and pap of Starch, or that is made with grated bread, and wherein also one of the foresaid herbes are sodden, sometimes one of them, and sometime another. Deale broth wherein Vens or any other thing is sodden, or of it selfe, is passing good.

The very best drinke for this disease, is Barley water wherein Sugar pennets is dissolved: and to retaine the patients strength, you are to permit unto him thin white wine, that which is very clere, being mingled with faire water, when he sitteth at meat: but the meale tide being past, let him drinke nothing but Barley water.

They that are quelled with this maladie, haue for the most part alwaies a very drie month, drie tong, and great thirst; whereto prepare these Confections following, and hold them in his mouth to refresh the same therewith: Take the seedes of Fleawort, and Quince kernels, of each three ounces; steepe them seven or eight howers together in lukewarme water, presse out the muscilage, put thereto afterwards the iuice of Pomegranates two ounces, Sugar Candy one ounce and a halfe, Starch as much as is mete for to make it in forme of a Confection. If you will haue it to drinke after the maner of a Zulep, then leaue out the Starch, and put thereto the water of Purslaine and of Citruls, of each eight ounces, and so let it sethe a little together; and lastly clarifie it with the white of an Eg. If one hold greene Lettice or Purslaine in his mouth, that refresheth it much.

You haue also in the third part, the twelue chapter, and ten S. and afterwarde in the seuentene chapter, and seven S. verie many things which are all good against the thirst, where you may haue choise of that which is best for this maladie.

These cooling and comfortable medicines following are to be daily used for refreshing and comforting: namely, conserues of Roses, conserues of Waterlillies, and the the sirupes of them both, conserues of Cicorie. In like manner also the rootes of the same in a sallad or Confected, are very mete for it.

The confected Citrons, and the iuice thereof; the iuice and sirupe of Oranges, Conserues of white Roses, and all that is made thereof, is for this purpose highly commended: for they coole moze then red Roses.

Secondly, the Rhomeies and backe bone are also through this malady very much tormented, with a great heate; whereto is very commodious the salve of Roses, wherewith he must be annoynted six or seven times in 24. howers. Also it is very good to moyssen the backe bone often with milke, and also to annoynt it with oyle of Roses, or with oyle of Violets.

Thirdly, there hapneth otherwhiles to this patient (that is feeble already) a soze sweat, which may cast the patient altogether downe, which may by the foresaid meanes be hindered. But if that will not helpe, then besprinkle the face and the whole body often with this water following: Take twelue ounces of Rose water, a quarter of an ounce of Camfere, Purslaine seedes and red Saunders of each a dragma, a quarter of an ounce of Starch; mingle them all together.

This drinke following is also highly commended: Take six or seven riuier Crabs, lay them in a quarte of water, then cast therein a handfull of ashes, and let them stand fower howers long; afterwards rub them well therewith, and wash them cleane with faire water three or fower times, and so sethe them, and take the tayles of them, cut them very small, and sethe them againe with a quarte of Barley water, till they be almost consumed; then straine the broth thorough a cloth, and giue thereof three or fower ounces euery time to the patient to drinke, when you will. But if you will haue this water to coole moze, and nourish lesse, then sethe the Crabs whole and vncut, and not so long time as is aforesaid.

After this manner may you also dresse a Moxtoyle, that liueth in fresh water, and is excellent good for this disease.

The small fishes that are taken in fresh waters, are very commodious for this disease, if they be taken without spice.

In the description of the Consumption *Phthisis*. in the second part, the first chapter, §. 22. are many kindes of remedies prescribed for this *Hectica*. and afterwards also in the first chapter, of the panting of the hart through heate are diuers Cullises described, that are very good and profitable to be drunken.

You may also prepare these confections following for the same: take of the white fleshy of a yong Hen or Capon five ounces, Starch one ounce and a halfe, new oyle of swete Almonds five ounces, five whites of new layd Eggs; let the oyle, Starch, and Eggs seethe together on a soft fire untill it be thicke: afterwards mingle the fleshy of a Capon being chopt small amongst them, and make cakes thereof, whereof the patient may vse a little at each time, and as often as him pleaseth; which also is as good as if he toke much at once, seldome, and better. Or prepare this following: take white Poppie seedes, peeled seedes of Melons, Citruls, Cucumbers, and of Pompeons, of each a quarter of an ounce, Almonds, Walell nuts, Pistacies (all of them shaled) and Beestes of each three dragmes, Pingles (that haue bene steeped 24. howers before in Rose water) five dragms, Conserues of Burrage, Buglosse, & *Species Diarrhodon Abbatis*. of each one quarter of an ounce, Conserue of Roses five dragmes, *Manna Christi*, with Pearles and Sugar Bernets, of each halfe an ounce, roasted Capons fleshy two ounces, white fleshy of Hens, that is stust and drest with Buglosse, Balme, Burrage, and Endiue, three ounces; cut both of these small, and then mingle therewith *Species Diambra* and *de Gemmis*. of each halfe a dragme, *Duronicum*, Saffron, Cinnamon, Roses, and red Corall, of each five dragmes, *Species Diatriasentalon*, and Graines, prepared Pearles a quarter of an ounce, Sugar sodden as thicke as honey, as much as neede requireth for to make a Confection; mingle them well, and vse it as aforesaid, one quarter of an ounce at once.

There is also vsually made for this, a Confection of oyle of swete Almonds, Starch and Sugar. The preserved Gourds are also wonderfull good against this vnnaturall heate.

Of the Ague *Hectica*, with a paine in the breast *Empyema* and *Phthisis*. 1. §.



In this compounded Ague, which is placed amongst the *Putrida* or putrified Agues, there doth appeare besides the former signes, cold, and a very stiffenesse of cold, which cometh at vncertain times, sometimes by day, and other whiles by night, and that alwaies vntill fast, which hapneth by the diuersity of the humours, whereof now the one, and then the other is stirred by and inflamed. The corruption which is gathered together in the breast, out of the head, or out of the vaines, doth chiefly cause this consumption which lyeth there putrified and mingled with the blood, is cast out and expelled: and albeit that this kind of consumption, and also the former be incurable, yet you must be marvellous diligent by these meanes following, to accomplish health as far as it is possible.

First therefore you must refraine and shun all things that are sharpe and salt, as Mustard, Radishes, Onions, Garlicke, and such like.

Item, all flatulent and windy things, and all that is cold by nature, and hard of digestion, as vnsodden milke, porrage of Pease or Beanes, vnleauened and dough baked bread, Meriuike and Limons &c.

His drinke must be good common clere Beere, or any thin red swete wine: but he must refraine from strong wine and beere. But if he cannot beere wine nor beere, then giue him to drinke good sugred Barley water.

Yong Lambs fleshy, yong Swine, Puttous of a yere old, and Calues, are very wholsome meate for him. Also Larkes, wood foules, Partridges, fелants, and Hares, and specially riuier Crabs, sod in Barly water, or milke, are passing good.

Coleworts sodden, stewed Barly drest with Starch, Calues fatte sodden in Wineger, the lights of all beasts, but chiefly of ffores and Hogs, rere sodden Eggs, or the same drest with other meate, fleshy butter, and Cheese but little salted, milke pay, three or fower drie figs eaten before meales, and swete Pomegranates roasted in the warme ashes, are all of them much nourishing. After meate let him also eat three or fower roasted Walell nuts, and Saffron and Cinnamon in his meate measurably.

These

These confections following are also most commodious for him: take white Poppie seeds an ounce, roasted flesh of a Capon fower ounces, Starch three quarters of an ounce, prepared Pingles fower ounces, peled Almonds three ounces, Roses three dragmes, yellow Saunders and Pace, of each a quarter of an ounce, Cinnamon three quarters of an ounce, Cloues halfe an ounce, *Lignum Aloes* two dragmes and a halfe, Putinegs a dragme, Amber two scruples, Pistike five greines, fresh oyle of swete Almonds fower ounces, Sugar which is sodden with Rose water and Balme water, as much as neede requireth for a confection: mingle all these well together, beaten and thread small: Take therof euery morning & euening halfe an ounce every time before meate.

And when as this disease falleth out of the head into the breast, and that this Ague *Helica* hath from thence her beginning, then must speciall care be had for to comfort the bzaines, which may thus be compassed. First, let the head be shorne bald, and then vpon the naked shorne head lay this plaister following: Take *Laudanum* a dragm and a halfe, Rosin and red Stozay of each three quarters of an ounce, Pasticke, Roses, and white Cozall, of each halfe a dragme, *Sandaraca* a dragme and a half, Pace two scruples, Cloues one scruple: dissolue the Gum and Rosin in vinegar that is not too eager: then mingle it altogether with molten Mace, and make therof two round plaisters, which you may lay thereon, now one, and then another.

Secondly, take a little peece of Pasticke, chewe the same once a day at the least a long time, and then spit out the moisture, and about the third euening, let him alwayes after meate swallowe by a peece of Pasticke.

Thirdly, the first night when he goeth to bed, let him take a drag. and a half of this confection following: Take of the Confection *Diapapaner* halfe an ounce, Frankincense and *Sandaraca* of each eight greines, and mingle them altogether.

Fourthly, take of the Confection of *Loch de Pino*, and *de Papanere*, of each an ounce, prepared Fore lights one quarter of an ounce, Greas two scruples, flowers of Centoꝝ halfe a scruple, make a Confection thereof with Wine cuide, whereof the patient is to take euery morning two or three dragmes, and likewise at night as much more, to wit, two howers after meate. Also you may drinke it mingled with warme Barley water, or with swete wine, and so drinke it. Also the patient may take of this Confection into his mouth, and so swallowe it by oftentimes.

Fifthly, take two ounces of Currans, a dragme of sliced Licorice, Hyssope and Horehound, of each two scruples, yellow seeds of Roses two dragmes, prepared Fore lights one dragm and a halfe, Dragagant and Gum, of each a dragme: melt the Gum in Wine cuide, halfe a scruple of Saffron, white Pepper five greines, and white Sugar thrice as much as all the rest doe wey; make it to powder, whereof let him eate a spoonfull after dinner and supper.

Sixtly, when as the patient hath vsed ten dayes long the foresaid three things, then let him take these things following other ten daies: Take distilled Colewort water two ounces, water of blew Flouredeluce flowers, and of Horehound, of each half an ounce, powdered Elecampane rootes, and House eare (that groweth on the mountaines) of each a scruple: which the patient must take luke warme early in the morning, and fast fowers after it.

Seuenthly, take Knotgrasse, Pouleare, Roses, red Cozall, Bloodstone, and yellow Amber, of each one scruple, Dragagant halfe a scruple, Hony of Violets, and Sugar Pennets, of each three quarters of an ounce: afterwards let the Hony and Sugar till it be thick, and then mingle them with it, and take thereof an hower before supper a spoonfull, and againe as much more at midnight.

Eighthly (this being done) you must vse this Confection following: take fresh rootes of blew Flouredeluce one ounce, fresh Elecampane rootes halfe an ounce, Comfrey, Daylies, iuice of Sloes, Dragagant and Gum, of each a scruple, Frankincense, Pasticke, and *Sarcocolla* (prepared with womans milke) of each halfe a dragme, Bloodstone, yellow Amber, Dragon blood prepared Fore lights, Centoꝝ flowers, Spittle seed, Knotgrasse, Pouleare, and Hyponie, of each two scruples, dissolue all the Gums in the muscilage or slime of Sebeckes, that were steeped in warme hony water, let them lye therein, scumming it alwaies: and when it is sod to pap, to wit, the herbs and the rootes, then straine out the iuice through a cloth, and put thereto two ounces of swete wine, Currans halfe an ounce, and ten or twelue Dates: poune all the same very small, and mingle then the Gums with the rest of the foresaid things: also halfe a dragme of Saffron, powdered Sarsifrage a dragme and a halfe: whereof giue the patient a spoonfull in the

the morning, and halfe an houre before both his mealtides halfe as much, and let him swallow it downe by little and little. This clenseth the breast ingendzeth fleshy, and withall dammifieth not the breath.

Ninthly, when the patient hath used this confection fouer daies long, then let him take nine of these pills following: to wit, in the morning betimes thre, and thre more before none, and also before supper other thre more. This must he continue fouer daies together or longer, euen as the cause requireth. Take Lungwort, Knotgrasse, Comfrey, Daisies, of each a dragm, Saffron, Licorice, Sarsifrage, of each one scruple, Starch, Sealed earth, prepared Tutie, and Dragagant, of each two scruples; make pills thereof with the iuice of Comfrey, and foure eight to a dragme.

Tenthly, if occasion serue that the hart must also be strengthened, and to quench and refresh all drought, and to cole and to moisten all heate: for which you shall take new conserues of Roses two ounces, conserues of Buglosse one ounce, burnt Iuorie, Roses, seedes of Endiue, of Pursaine, and Lettice, of each a dragme and a halfe, peeled Melon seede, Pompeon seede, Gourdes seedes, and peeled Cucumber seedes, of each five dragms, Sugar pennets two ounces, Starch one ounce, prepared Crabs tailes (as in this chapter not long agoe is taught) fouer ounces; poune all verie small, and mingled into a confection: then when he hath used the pills, let him take a spoonfull thereof, and that in the morning earely, and likewise againe an houre and a halfe before both mealtides, and after them halfe as much.

Last of all, this patient must lay this small bag vpon his left breast: Take Violets, Water-lillies, burnt Iuorie, Roses, red and white Corall, Harts bones, and *Doronicum*, of each a dragm, and a halfe, the Iacynth stone, the Smaragde stone, and Saphyre stone, of each halfe a scruple, pearles a dragme and a halfe, thre leaues of beaten Gold, and Gace a dragme and a halfe, Saffron a scruple, Cardamom, and Galingall, of each five graines; poune each alone, and then mingle them all together, and lastely make it into a silken cushion or little bag.

But if you couet to haue the Braynes strengthened, then looke in the beginning of the first part for the paine of the head, and after that where the Braynes are described.

The twelfth Chapter.

Of the Ague Marasmode.



If this Ague and of the nature thereof we haue in the former described *Helica* made a plaine demonstration. This is of some taken for to be a second *Helica*.

In fine, they are both such kind of Agues, that there is small helpe of man to be had against them.

This properly is that which the Physicians call *Senectam*, that is the olde age, to wit, a consuming of the whole bodie. The cause of this is, that the heate and the drought get the masterie, which might be caused when one is fasting and hath a cold stomacke. In like manner also when one is ouer heated, and straight way drincketh cold water vpon it: also the hot aire and the heat of the time may well prouoke and raise that, which wasteth, dryeth vp, and oftentimes expelleth the naturall heate, whereby the body is sustained, whereof the cold and drought do follow.

Moreouer, this sickness may be caused of the debilitie of naturall heate which cannot nourish the whole bodie: and in like manner of cold vapors that ascend towards the hart and ouercole the same. Likewise of all cold causes that lye hidden in the bodie, as may be seene by verie old folks.

These are signes of this maladie that it is without any ague, but with a slow pulse, with an attenuation of the whole bodie, without heate, and in feeling may a generall cold be perceiued. The vyne is thin, white, and waterish.

In fine, there are no other signes to be found then age, as are to be seene in very old folks.

Now to come to the remedies of this kind of consumption, this patient shall vse as nere as he may, all warme and moist things. He must often bathe himselfe in fresh warme water and be many moistening clusers, as the broth of Lambes heads, of Trypes, of Venis, and the like:

for these are very commodious for him because that they moisten the bowels, and refresh, and nourish the liver.

But you must put hereto neither Salt, nor any spice that they be not too sharpe, and may be held in the longer. You must also take for this Clister not above six ounces of broth at once, but in fower and twentie howses you are to minister three or fower.

Also the rubbing or bathing of the externall parts after meales, is also greatly commended, and as Honey in the Ague *Helica* is very hurtfull; so is it in this disease *Marasmode* very commodious. Further all light meates are passing good for him that are not slimie, as fresh broth, reare Eggs, with a thin and pleasant wine, being measurably used, and such like.

Item, all the Salues, Plasters, and other things which are prescribed for the feuer *Helica*, may also be used in this sickness.

But for these diseases speciall heed is to be taken of cold, and of all things as in any way consume the radicall humidity.

Those that will haue any further declaration of this infirmity, let them read that which hath bene said in the description of the consumption or feuer *Helica*.

The thirteenth Chapter.

Of the long lingring Agues.



The long continuing of Agues dependeth upon three kindes of causes. First, when any one hath an outward sore which hardly wil be cured. Secondly, if the patient or the Physician euer mistake, or keepeth some bad order.

Thirdly, this is also procured by some outward occasion, as by the time of the yeare, by continuall rayne, by the nature of the countrey, by the unhailnes of the dwelling place, by great care, and troubles of minde.

But when it is known that there are none of these foresaide occasions, then must it of necessity depend on the fourth cause, that is on a grosse, tough and slimie humour. If therfore you wil haue remedie against the continuance of Agues, then must you cure and take away the foresaid causes with their contraries. For that these long continuing Agues are commonly caused by an obstruction of the liver, whereto these things following are principall good: to wit, *Syrup. Diarrhodon. de Cicorio. de Lupulis. de Eupatorio. de capillo Veneris. Oxymel compositum. de Bysantijs. de Radicibus.* Item, the decoction of *Adiantum. Warts tong. Agrimonie. Worme wood. Endive. Cicorie.* of all, or of some of them. The common pestilentiall pills (called *Ruffi*) and *Kubarbe. Cassie. Hiera picra. conserue of Ijunces. Agaricus.* and sirupe of *Roses laxatiue.* are also excellent good.

Item, you must boyle also Parsley rootes with your meate: the wine shall be mingled with water wherein Cinnamon, Annis seed, Coziander, and fennell rootes are sodden.

You must annoint the liver with the salue, that in the third part, the twelfth chapter, and third S. is described, beginning thus: Take oyle of bitter Almonds, &c. In which place you shall finde many moe other remedies against the obstruction of the liver through heate and cold. for the liver being deopilated and opened, then will the long lingring Ague be easily mitigated.

The fourteenth Chapter.

Of swellings that follow after the Ague.



It cometh oftentimes to passe that some haue their feete swollen after the long continuing of an Ague: then use a bathe to sweate in, and take one ounce of the distilled water of Cammiomill flowers which hath bene drawn onely out of the yellow seeds of the flowers. You must boyle in the water of this bathe whole leaues, and therewithall bathe and sweate. In the bathing you shall forbear from drinke: but this bathe is moze commodious after some Phlegmaticke Agues

Agues, then after any hot agues, and what order of dyet is to be obserued after a lingering ague when the patient beginneth to recouer, hath bin sufficiently shewed and declared in the third Chapter and 12. §.

The ffteeneth Chapter.

Of the Plague.



His most noisome, terrible, and perillous maladie of the Plague, is called of the Greekes *Epidemia*, and of the Latines *Luas*, *Pestis*, and *Pestilentia*, which last name we also vse. This maladie is described by *Galen* after this manner.

The Plague is a sickness that doth infect all, or at the least very many men, and is caused of the venomous ayre. As thus: The Plague is a disease that either speedily killeth, or some taketh a man.

And where such sicknesses get the upper hand, there distresse and misery aboundeth; for it hath bin sene by experience, that it hath made away men, cattell, and foules of the ayre, yea many thousands of fishes in the waters, and that not onely Villages and townes haue bin depriued thereby of all their inhabitants, but also great Cities and countries haue by the same been made desolate.

The causes of the Plague. §. 1.



If the naturall causes of the Plague there are as many opinions amongst the Philosophers, as there are causes that procure it: as namely of venomous vapors of the earth that are infected by some earthquakes. As if a countrey be hot, moyst, full of stench, full of lakes, or still standing waters, and cloyed with stench of dead bodies (as it oftentimes befalleth after great wars and slaughters) but especially is the ayre infected as is abovesaid through sinne, whereby it may

merely be venomed.

Also when the ayre is warme and moyst, and that it doth raigne much in time of heate, with a Southerly winde: wherof we will not at this present make any further discourse: but they that desire to haue any ampler description hereof, they may reade ouer the Philosophers, & other learned Positions.

But howsoeuer this is the most certaine cause of this sickness, that God the Lord for our manifold finnes and wickednes, to wit, idolatrie, incredulitie, and ingratitude, hath used this Plague and many afflictions moe, as hunger, warre, and shedding of blood, to punish the foresaid sinne and transgressions. These are his rods and scourges (euen the ministers of his wrath) to chastise the wicked world, as (through his Prophets) he hath foresaid and threatned the world, and as both holy Scriptures and heathen writers testifie, that it hath afterward ensued accordingly.

Signes of the Plague to come. §. 2.



First, it is a certaine signe that the ayre is infected, and that a Plague is to be expected, if in the end of Sommer there appeere Cometes, or any other Impressions, which men call flakes of fire, Starres that fall or shote, and such like in the element, which procede of vapors that are drawn vp out of the earth into the ayre, and there are kindled, whereby both men and cattell are infected.

Secondly, when any vnacustomed heapes of beasts are sene, as of Frogs, Toades, Grasshoppers, Spice, and Molems, which oftentimes hath bene approued heretofore.

Thirdly, when in the winter the South or East winds abound, mistie or foggie weather, full of vapors, and glowing or dyowlic, and like as it would rayne, and yet not rayneth at all: these are signes that the ayre is not as it should be. Also if the spring of the yere be cold and dry without rayne, the wind Southerly, the ayre foggie and lowing, and standeth so at a stay eight dayes

dayes long, and then altereth into warmth: if these alterations often chaunce, then is it a certaine and infallible signe that the Plague is at hand. In like manner also, is it a sure token of the Plague to ensue, when in the Sommer time it is hot a dayes and cold a nights.

Item, when the Sommer is not hot, but glomie and clowdie, and one day hot and another day cold, then must we looke for a Plague in harvest. In like manner also if two or three dayes be very hot, and afterwards very cold, as it often chaunceth, then doth it prognosticate a Plague.

How to prevent the Plague. §. 3.



There is no more christian nor certaine meanes for to escape this great punishment, then for a man to reconcile himselfe to his heavenly Father, and to pray vnto him with much contrition and hartie repentance of his sinnes, that it would please him to withhold his threatenings and punishments for our due deserts, and that we acknowledge him from the bottome of our hearts to be the right only and true Religion that will and can preserve vs, be it living or dying, in perpetuall health and welfare.

Yet notwithstanding hath he not in vaine created naturall meanes, nor forbidden vs to vse them, but rather all things, as Physitions, Physicks, rootes, herbs, seedes, and the ayres, yea all that is aboue and vnder the earthy for the benefite of man, and to serue him, therefore we ought duly to accept and receiue the same as a most godly benefit and noble blessing of so good a God, and in no manner of wise to despise the same, and therefore are all learned Physitions most highly to be esteemed that haue found out so many meanes for all kinds of diseases, as also for this present infection, and haue reuealed and made them knowne vnto mankind: and to the end men may haue a good instruction how this sicknes may be holpen with the foresaid remedies, there shall be obserued these three principall points, the first whereof is for the healthie, that thereby they may knowe what order is to be kept whereby they might be freed from this venemous contagion.

Secondly, we are to shew that if any be taken with the ague, or other signes, with sores or biles, or not at all, what ought to be done to them, or what is to be left off.

Thirdly, we will speake of all such as keepe those that are so diseased, and are to minister and serue them, for the which there be many approued and famous medicines selected, both by the auncient and latter Physitions, our most louing and mercifull God giue vs his gracious blessing and prosperitie to finish them.

First then it is generally concluded by all learned men, that for as much as the hart requireth a swete, cleane, and healthie ayre, like as the bodie requireth meate and drinke; also that nothing is more venemous, noysome, nor hurtfull for the same, then a soule stinking ayre, for thence commeth it especially if a loose and vnstayed life, either in excesse of meate, drinke, exercise, incontinencie, wrath, and such like be adioyned, that the venemous ayre with other infections, the sooner hurt the hart and inner parts, and by their contagion diseale the whole bodie, and lastly bereaue man of his vitall breath.

How the healthy may be kept and preserved from the infection of the Plague. §. 4.



When as we haue oftentimes heretofore admonished, so will we now shew by what meanes the haile and healthie may in the time of the Plague be freed and preserved from this contagious maladie; therefore is it first of all needefull to obserue a good dyet in eating and drinking, and further a faire cleane dwelling, which must be smoked and perfumed, thereby to correct and take away the corruption of the ayre. For this, must be used all fragrant things, to keepe the bodie loose with laxative medicines, and to comfort the hart with cordials, and alwayes to take somewhat whereby all the parts of the bodie and the vitall spirits might be comforted and defended against the venemous ayre, and contagion of others that we might be conuersant with, all, with many more things as hereafter shall appeare.

And first of the order to be obserued in dyet. It is passing good, and very needefull for every bodie

bodie that wisheth to lue out of the danger of the Plague, to take great hēde that his bodie be not pestered with ouermany humoꝝ, noꝝ ouercharged with meate and drinke, but to lue very soberly, and that all such meate as he taketh, must be moze drying then moistening, foꝝ that whereas there is an vnmeasurable fulnes of the stomack, there are many bad humoꝝ ingendred, which afterwards by this contagion very easily are infected. Neither ought any bodie to eate befoꝝe that he feele and finde that his foꝝmer meates are digested, and when nature by hunger oꝝ thirst requireth foode, then satisfie her without longer delay: foꝝ as the ouercharging of the stomack is a great cause of coꝝruption, euen so also doth an emptie stomack procure bad humoꝝ. It is likewise very commodious, that all the patients meate be rather cold then hot in operation, which must be dressed with slowe and eager things, as we shall hereafter instruct you moze at large. His bread must be of good wheate, well raised, baked, and seasoned. Of fowles, the Partridges, landfowles, Bullets, Hens, Capons, and yong Pigeons. Item, yong Weathers and Weale (yet rather roasted then sodden, oꝝ else if it be sodden) then must it be dressed with slowe things. And foꝝ that the Plague oftentimes infecteth all fourested beasts, as Oxen, Sheepe, Swine, and sometimes the very birds of the ayre, therefore great hēde must be taken that then neither the flesh noꝝ the milke of them in any way be vsed. Also the Magistrates ought not to permit any of the flesh of those beasts so infected to be sold.

Note also that in the time of the Plague all slowe things are very wholesome, and therefore that vinegar is highly commended, with all kind of meates, and especially vinegar of Roses oꝝ of Sillydours, oꝝ of Framboys. Item, horse Radish with Vineger and Soꝝrell beaten foꝝ sauce, Pomegranates, S. Johns Grapes, oꝝ *Ribes vulgaris*, Meruice, preserved Cherries, conferves of Barberies, and all Sirupes that are made of these foresaid things, vnripe Grapes dressed with their meate, newe Limons and Citrons, these are all very good to be vsed in time of the Plague.

Item, foꝝ all such as haue no paine in their eyes noꝝ ach in the head, are roasted Vinions (oꝝ the same softened in faire water) passing good: but Garlick aboute all the rest (being dressed in meates) is wonderfull good, and much esteemed foꝝ a preseruatiue against this kind of infection. Therefore it is commaunded, that men dip their bread in vinegar, wherewith the iuice of wild Thyme and of Garlick is tempered: also to eate the kernels of two oꝝ thꝛe Nuts dipped in the same. And you may vse this sauce following with your meate: Take Vineger, and iuice of Limons, temper it as you thinke good with pouned Walnuts, and with a little grated bread, and you may also (if you please) put thereto some Saffron and Cinnamon.

And you may make a temperaturs also with Coꝝrans, and Vineger, flesh broth, Cinnamon, poched Eggs are also permitted, if they be vsed with Meruice.

Of fruits, all that be sower are onely tolerated. And you may strow this pouder following vpon the meate: Take prepared Pearles a quarter of an ounce, red Coꝝrall, and fine Bolus, of each halfe a dragma, Cinnamon two dragmes and a halfe, and then mingle them all together.

The meates that are foꝝbidden to be vsed foꝝ the healthie are these: to wit, Pilke, and all that is dressed therewith, all swete fruits, stewed Apples and Peares are allowed, muddie oꝝ slimie fish are especially prohibited, as Eeles, Tenches, and such like; but such fish as are taken from sandie ground are not bad: olde powdered flesh, oꝝ salt fish are also suspected. But be it flesh oꝝ fish, let the same be alwaies dressed with some sower thing, as with Vineger, the iuice of Limons, Meruice, and such like. And you may vse these Sauces following: Take the iuice of Pimpernell, of Soꝝrell, Buglosse, of Scabious, of Rue, of Lettice, of Endiue, of Saulme, of Elecampane, all together, oꝝ some of them, as it pleaseth you, and mingle them with Vineger and bread, as you thinke good.

Item, Capers with the iuice of Limons, oꝝ of Citrons, is also a healthie sauce to be vsed. All water foules, as Duckes, Geese, Hernsewes, and such like, let him not eate; notwithstanding that the Duckes blood is thought to be a preseruatiue against venom.

And foꝝ your drinke you must not vse any but onely to slake thirst withall, oꝝ according as the partie hath eaten: the best drinke is white clere and thin Wine (which is not swete) being tempered with steeled water, oꝝ that wherein Gold hath bene extinguished. But there can be no better thing then to drinke faire fountaine water, which is tempered with Vineger and Sugar, oꝝ water wherein the iuice of Pomegranates is mixed. You may also make a drinke of Barberies, and Juniper berries, whereof you neede to take but now and then a little draught.

And

And you must also note here, that it were not amisse to drinke euery mealetide a draught of Wormewood or Sage wine, or in steede of them to take a bit of bread that is steeped in the wine of Cleampane, and wine of Zeduarie.

These are the ordinances that in the time of the plague are to be kept and obserued in meat and drinke, hauing alwaies a good regard (as we haue all readie said) of the time of the yeare, of the constitution of the patient, of his accustomed manner of diet, and so forth, whereby either of the foresaid things may be vsed or omitted.

How their dwellings ought to be. §.5.



It is also verie needefull for a preservation against this sicknes, that the house, and all the chambers (as well as the bodie) be kept neate and cleane. Therefore euerie houlholder ought if he lone the health of himselfe and his family to loke diligently that his house, or place of his dwelling be kept very cleane. All tame beasts, & especially Swine ought to be kept far apart from al your dwelling houses. Your house is to haue many windowes in it, and that such windowes as do stand towards the West and South must you keepe close and shut: but the windowes that be towards the East and North must be opened wide, so that the plague be not in those quarters nere hand. Warne stoues are verie vnhaill, and especially if they do lye low: but in the chimney it is best to burne bywood, and most of all Juniper wood, drye Vine bzaunches, Firwood, Ash, Wkes, Cipres wood, Bay trees, and Rosemarie stiches, & that according to the nature of the place where euery kind of wood is best to be had, and chiefly the Beech tree: for that there is no kind of wood that moze taketh away the venemous vapo: or infection of the plague, then the Beech tree doth.

Moreover, you must cause the house to be swept wherein you dwell at least twice a day, and be sprinkled with Vineger, or Rose water, and then to smoke it with some of these things following: to wit, with Juniper berries, Hyssop, Parierom, wild Thyme, Spints, Rosemary, Parierom gentle, and Basill, with Lauander, Benniropall, and Apples parings, or such like. And for rich men you may make diuers compounded things, whereof we will write at large, which you may vse as neede shall require.

First there are perfumes which the Apothecaries do call *Ozyletes*: for this must you vse Juniper, yellow Saunders, Paradise wood, Frankinsence, and Juniper berries, of each thre drag. Amber, Juniper, Gum, Sandaraca, and Rosemarie flowers, of each a dragme, Putmegs, and Cloues, of each a dragme and a halfe; poune them all together to powder, and then put to it of *Laudanum* one ounce and a halfe, *Benzoi*, and red Stozar, of each a quarter of an ounce, blacke Frankinsence, thre dragmes, Lilly coles that are to be sprinkled and moistened with *Aqua vite* being beaten small, halfe as much as all the rest: afterwards make the moztter and the pestle verie warne, and then put therein the *Laudanum* with a little Turpentine, temper them together till they be as soft as dough, and mire then therewith all the foresaid things, and make hereof a strong dough with mollified Dragagant, and roule it on a Table that is rubbed ouer with oyle of Spike, and make the candles as great and as small as you list to haue them, making them vnderneath with thre fete that they may stand and let them dry in the sun: and when you set those candles in a close chamber to smue, they will for certaine erpell all the venemous ayze of the plague.

These things following are bled for this at Angburch in high Dutchland, to wit, *Laudanum* two ounces, blacke and white Frankinsence, of each one ounce, red Stozar halfe an ounce, *Benzoi* thre quarters of an ounce, Cloues, Roses, Cinnamon, blacke Coziander, Pastick, Sandaraca, Cypres wood, Bayberries, yellow Saunders, and Putmegs, of each a dragme beaten small, Li quid Stozar two ounces, Ware one ounce, Turpentine two ounces and a halfe, burnt wine, or *Aqua vite*, as much as is needefull, the *Laudanum*, Stozar, Ware and Turpentine, is to be molten in a warne moztter; and hereof may you make candles as is before taught: if the dough be hard, then make it soft with burnt wine. Another: Take Paradise wood, Saffron, Cinnamon, Cloues, yellow Saunders, and Roses, of each halfe a dragme, Pasticke, red Stozar, and Frankinsence, of each a quarter of an ounce; poune them verie small, and then make it vp with Li quid Stozar into dough: but temper not too many Lilly coles amongst it, that the vertue of the other things be not thereby abated, and soyme them as afoze.

Take Benzoin, *Gallia Moscata*, red Storax, & roots of Costus, of each halfe an ounce, *Diptamus*, *Tormentill*, Citron peels, & Setwall, of each a drag. red & white Behen, of each halfe a drag. red, yellow, and white Saunders, Roses, of each half a drag. poune al that are to be pouned, melt the *Laudanum* with Rose water in a warme mortar, & then forme candles therof, as is aforesaid: These candles are specially good against the pestilent ayre. But for that the right Costus roots & Behen are ill to be gotten, are these candles but seldome made.

These following are also used: take *Laudanum*, red Storax, Pirrhe, & Pistick, of each a quarter of an ounce, Rosemary leaues, wild Galingall, & Roses, of each halfe an ounce, Cinnamon, Cloues, yellow Saunders, & Putmegs, of each a drag. Willy coles moistened with burnt wine or *Aqua vite*, some ounces, then forme them as before.

Yet other: Take Cipers wood & Juniper, of each half a drag. smal beaten Juniper berries (the kernels taken out) Rosemary leaues, and wild Galingall, of each thre drag. blacke and white frankincense, of each halfe an ounce, *Laudanum* thre quarters of an ounce, Willy coles as aforesaid.

In the stee of these fuming candles, men vse to make also cakes of all the foresaid doughes (but only the coles left out) and in winter time you may vse them laid on the coles, or on the hot furnace of your stoue.

Item, take yellow Saunders, Benzoin, and red Storax, of each a quarter of an ounce, white frankincense one drag. Putmegs & Cloues, of each half a drag. Roses, Clozander, and Sugar, of each a scrup. beat all smal to powder, and then mingle them together with Dragagant dissolved in Rose water (as afoze is taught) in a mortar, and in summer then prepare them with fresh Roses, to wit, that each cake be couered with a Rose leafe, and then pressed flat: but if you would haue them costlier, then put vnto it fower greines of Muske, and two greins of Amber dissolved in Rose water, and then will they be exceeding pleasant.

These are also usually made at Aulburgh: Take Benzoin thre quarters of an ounce, the roots of Cipers halfe a drag, red Storax, and white Saunders, of each 3 drag. Cloues & prepared Clozander, of each a drag. Calmus and frankincense, of each half a drag. Muske two greins, white Sugar six ounces: then make cakes hereof with dissolved Dragagant.

Item, take ben Cipers & Juniper wood, of each thre drag. Rosemary flowers, & Juniper berries, of each a quarter of an ounce, white and blacke frankincense, of each halfe an ounce: beat them very small, and temper them with as much *Laudanum*, that it cleaue together, or with dissolved Dragagant, Turpentine, or Storax.

Take Juniper berries, Bayberies, Roses, Wormwood branches, Pistick, frankincense, Cardamome, Rue, and Cloues, of each a like quantity: then mire them together with dissolved Dragagant as aforesaid, and then lay it on the furnace in your stoue.

Here followeth now a very costly water to temper with these kindes of Cakes, Candles, and Pomanders.

Take good Rosewater one pinte, Lauander flowers thre ℥. Cloues & Cinnamon, of each half an ounce, yellow and white Saunders, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Pace a quarter of an ounce, Roses one ℥. Benzoin and red Storax, of each two drag. poune them smal, and powze the Rosewater thereon, or Muscadel wine, or any other strong wine, eight ounces, *Aqua vite* one ounce: let it be close stopt one moneth or twaine, and so stand in the sun: Afterwards distill it in sathing water, stopt very exceeding tight and close, with a Helme. And with that which is killed temper Muske and Amber, and then set it in the sun againe.

This Rose water following is also very excellent for the same, or any such like intent: When you will distill the Roses in common Stills, then must you not set them in sand but in ashes, and then put some Roses into it, and cast on it the powder of Cloues, then lay on it moze Roses, and so doe till the Still be full: then put on the helme, and make it tight and close, taking heede of burning. But if you will haue it stronger, then put to them moze spices, as Benzoin, and such like. Lastly, then may you strengthen the saour of the water distilled with Muske and Amber: both of these waters may also be used for other things as is aforesaid. But if you wil spare this labour, then may you vse the foresaid things each apart, or mixed together (as you please) with hot coles, and so let it saour and fume.

In like manner may you prepare these powders following: Take Benzoin, red Storax, Paradise wood, Muske, Amber, Cloues, frankincense, Pirrhe, Pisticke, and *Gallia Moscata*,
Et 1 which

which oꝛ as many of them as you will; poune them to powder: foꝛ this powder you must omit (the coles) the *Laudanum*, and the other dissolued things, the which otherwise are commonly vsed in the compositions befoꝛe.

Item, take grated oꝛ powdered Cipers wood a ℥. also of prepared Cipers half as much, beaten Rosemary halfe as much as of the Cipers, blacke and white Frankincense, of each halfe an ounce, Bay berries shaled cleane a quarter of an ounce, being grossely beaten, mingle them well together, and strow a little of it on the coles; foꝛ it is a most pleasant sauour.

And if you feare that such odoꝛiferous sauours were too hot in summer, then may you put thereto some of the leaues & seeds of Spittle, also to augment the quantity of Camfere, Saunders, and Citron peels; sprinkle it also with vineger oꝛ Rosewater. In stead of fire strow the chamber with Rose leaues, and let them be swept out at night that they be no cause of stench; and befoꝛe you go to bed you must fume the chamber well.

It is also very mete that you keepe lying in the chamber where you sleepe, odoꝛiferous Anices, Citrons, Apples, Peares, Oranges, and such like. When they begin to rot, then must they be had away, and other layd in their places.

Also in summer you may prepare this powder following: take Roses, Spittle seeds, Citron peels, red, yellow, and white Saunders, Sorell seeds, & wild Wine leaues, of each one drag. & a halfe, Spirrhe, Paradise wood, and Dragagant, and Gum, of each two dragmes, Camfer a drag. all stamped small, & put them together. You may also make it vp into cakes with dissolued Dragagant. If it be in winter, then take Spirrhe, Paradise wood, Pisticke, red Sotax, and Frankincense, of each a drag. Cloues, Citron peels, and the roots of Cipers, of each halfe a drag. Camfer a scrup. *Gallia Muscata*, ten greins, Puske and Amber, of each five greins; beat them together into a powder. You may also make cakes of it with liquid Sotax, & Rosewater: if you will put *Laudanum* to it, then make the same warme as aforesaid, & fashion your cakes as big as you will haue them. Foꝛ the common people and foꝛ the husbandmen the Bay tree is very good, oꝛ if the country yelde it, Juniper wood, with his berries, & with drie Hen dung fumed: & take powdered Wormewood and Bay berries, of each a like. The rich folkes doe vse to lay also with their clothes odoꝛiferous bags, foꝛ which all the powders that are befoꝛe mentioned foꝛ fumes, and hereafter foꝛ Pomanders, are very good, excepting the *Laudanum*, the which is not to be powdered, and other moe such soft things. This following is very common in France: Take Treos fower ounces, Roses two ounces, wild Galingall, Cloues, and Parierom gentle, of each two dragmes, yellow Saunders, and *Benzoin*, of each two ounces, red Sotax halfe an ounce, then mingle them all together and put them in a bag. If you will you may put thereto Puske and Amber, oꝛ Camfer. In the first part, the twelfth chap. you haue also an especial bag foꝛ to strengthen the head, as thus: Take Treos ec. the which is very commodious foꝛ this our purpose. Also you haue in the second chap. and elsewhere, applications foꝛ the strengthening of the hart; the which are not onely profitable, but also very necessary foꝛ this intent.

What exercise is to be vsed in the Plague. 6. §.



In the time of infection the healthy are to exercise themselves moderately, and rather vse an easie walking than a great pace, that thereby the venemous ayre may not ouer much bee drawn into the body, as it hapneth to such as at such times doe greatly labour and trauaile; but when a man abideth in a cleane place, voide of pestilent ayre, and will exercise his body according to his old accustomed manner, that cannot but be thought passing good.

Of the sleepe in this sickenes. 7. §.



At such time as the Plague raigneth, some think that it is better to sleepe by day than by night, euen seuen oꝛ eight howers long; first vpon the right side being metely well couered, and his head raised high. But seeing the same is not accustomed with vs, then must they eat but little in the euening, and sleepe the foresaid time of seuen oꝛ eight howers. But if he could not sleepe a nights, then must he about 12 a clocke, being two howers after his meale compose himself to sleepe. Others

Others counsell to sleepe a nights in a chamber that is well fumed, and close shut, but not very long, for that though much sleepe the body is too much moistened, the which must alwaies be inclined to dryouth as much as possibly may be. They also forbid sleepe by day, & that chiefly in winter.

Also, you must take hede of excessive and ouer much watching, for that greatly dryeth and weakeneth nature.

Of Purging and letting blood. §.8.



Are most also be had that the body be not too much bound: and if the going to stoule come of it selfe, it is the better; if not, then must the partie bee holpen with Suppositories, and milde Clusters, with Cassy, Panna, sower Dates, and such like meanes, whereof we haue here and there spoken at large; but especially in the third part, the eleventh chapter, §.20.

Other would haue that yong cholericke bodies should generally be purged in the summer, and in the beginning of winter, with the foresaid cooling and laxative thinges, and also with yelow Spirobalaus boiled with Plum-pozredge: but in the end of Autumne, and in the winter with stronger medicines, to wit, with Agarick, with Turbith, and with Polypody; but they must be vsed with great hede and discretion.

Touching letting of blood: When the partie is once purged, and aboute sixtē yeres olde, being full of blood and strong, and without any obstruction of the liuer, then may he haue a vaine opened. In like manner also women, if their termes or flowes be stopped, and if they be without piles in the fundament, then may they in May and in Autumne, let blood, and if occasion serueth, once a moneth, to wit, in the Liuer vaine, or milke vaine, every time three or sower ounces, for this taketh away the boyling of the blood and the Cholera in the vaines. Yet for this infection must sometimes one, sometimes moze be opened, but especially that which is fullest of blood.

But great regard must (as hath been said) be taken of the age and weakenes of the patients also whether a woman haue conceived or not; or whether she haue her termes or not, or haue the Hemorrhoides or not, with many such circumstances moze, that the weaknes of the party thereby be not augmented.

Above and beside all this must the patient abstaine from venery as much as may be.

Of the motions of the minde. §.9.



As concerning the motions of the mind, as sadnes, feare, sodaine motions of the minde, and such like, doe greatly alter and spoile the blood, whereby it may the sower receiue the pestilent ayre, and anger especially inflameth the hart, like as also doth ouer much gladnes: notwithstanding moderate gladnes is most commodious for the hart.

Of bathes and other common causes. §.10.



Such times take hede of bathing, for that thereby is the body moistened, the pores opened, and all the members made the readier to receiue the infection of the Plague.

It is therefore very ill done (yea a temptation of God) in time of the Plague to frequent common bathing houses, for that the plague can by no meanes bee sower, gotten by reason that as well the pores of the infected as of the sound are opened, whereby the venomous vapour of the infected is let forth, and may easily be receiued of the healthy: wherefore it is much better (as the custome of this our countrey is) to refraine wholly from bathing.

In like manner it is not good at such times to wash the head, for thereby are the vitall spirits weakened, but onely to combe their heads with an Iuoy combe.

But the hands must often be washt, sometimes with wine, and otherwhiles with vineger, & especiallie with Rose vineger.

How one shall gouerne himselfe without dores. §. II.



It is very good that at this time euery man obserue a good dyet within dores, and not accompany himselfe with many men, for amongst many are as well those that be infected, as those that are healthie, whereby the diseased infect the healthie with their breath: but for that it is vnpossible to forbear it, by reason that euery man hath busines with others, it is therefore best that euery one defend himselfe from all ill ayres. Wherefore first we counsell the common sort, and men of occupation (which cannot beare greater charge) to obserue these rules following, to wit, that he in the morning betimes before he goe abroad, or settle himselfe to worke, take three or foure dry figs, three or foure kernels of pines, and fiftene or sixtene leaues of Rue, with a little salt. This composition or medicine is so sure and appoyned, that men haue used the same euery where for all manner of plagues three hundred yeres before the birth of Christ: and the same was found out by I. Hippocrates that waged warres with the Romanes. Some adde to it a few Almonds, and make it to a confection with clarified Honey. It is also passing good for all such as be not afrayd of the bitterness, that they vse in the morning fasting a peece of the roote of Gentian, and especially when he hath used of the premises. Other do also giue counsell to eate but one fig and one Pine kernell, but it is too little for a full grown person, for children it will suffice.

It is also very good before the going forth in the morning to breake ones fast, and thereupon to take a little Unicornes hoorne, Tormentill, Gentian, Angelica, Diptamus, Citron peels, or a bit of Zeduary, and hold it in your mouth: or to wash the mouth with vinegar wherein Cloymewood hath bene decocted.

For this also confection Calmus is much commended, taken before the going into the ayre, for it hath an especiall vertue against all venomous ayre. Also some do counsell not to go out of dores before that the mouth and nostrils be cleansed with wyne wherein Treacle is mixed.

This composition following is commended for an especiall preservation if inundation be made with it: Take the iuice of Garlick and Rose vinegar, of each an ounce and a halfe, Treacle three quarters of an ounce, Benecod two dragmes, mixe them together, and therewith annoynt the mouth, lips, and nose.

Some do vse this salve following, therewith to annoynt the hart before they go out of the house, the which is not good only for the healthie, but for all such as are already infected: take Treacle three quarters of an ounce, Saffron and Campher, of each ten greynes, the iuice of Limons and vinegar, of each alike much, or as much as is needfull to make a salve.

Or in the stead of these, he may weare the cordiall shield which is described not long since with the cordiall bag in this manner: Take Burrage &c. It is also very good to weare gold rings wherein are set precious stones, as Rubies, Carbuncles, Saphires and Facints, both within the house and without dores.

It is also much forbidden that any stirre out of dores before the Sunne rising, as also before the going downe thereof to repaire and keepe himselfe in his perfumed house or chamber.

Further it is very good to cary some odoriferous thing in their hands, when one must deale with other folke, that through this pleasant smell the braines and the hart may be comforted and defended from all pestilent and contagious vapours.

It is also not amisse for the common people that they carie in their hands a little bore of Juniper made full of holes, wherein a little sponge moistned with vinegar and Rose water, and strowed with the powder of Cloues, be held in the hand all the Sommer time, whereto also some leaues of Rue may be added dayly refreshing them, that they continually smelling to the same. In this manner also mayst thou hold some fruits in thy hand, as Apples, Peares, Quinces, Oranges, and such like: but if it be in the winter, then take Parierom gentle, Rue, Balme, Valeriana, Juniper berries, or some other thing steeped in vinegar, put it into thy bore, and vse it as is aforesaid. Also thou mayst bestrow thy moist sponge with Saunders, Campher, Saffron, Paradise wood, Cloues, or Treos. But the rich and able folk do vse Poma Ambra, which we call Bomanders, whereof there are made many sorts, as here may appeare.

Yet men must note here that all such strong odors whereas there is any paine of the head proceeding either of heate or cold, then are they neither so good nor so often to be used but in such sort as hereafter followeth, whereby the same paine as it often falleth out, be not augmented.

and

and women must beware of these smells, and especially those that are vexed with the suffocation of the Mother. And if it be in winter, and the patient be cold of complexion, then are you to prepare these pomanders: Take *Gallia Muscata*, *Roses*, *Cloues*, *Zeduary*, *Pace*, *Putmegs*, and *Paradise wood*, of each a drag. *Saffron* a scrup. red *Stozar* a drag. and a halfe, *Ambra* & *Muscus*, of each v. greines, poune them altogether except the two last, and then make hereof with prepared *Dragagant* a Pomander, euen as is taught in the first part and the second chapter.

Item: Take yellow *Saunders* a quarter of an ounce, *Paradise wood* a dragme and a halfe, *Roses*, *Cloues*, *Seduary*, *Pace*, and *Putmegs*, of each halfe a dragme, *Cloues*, *Cardamom*, *Coziander*, and blacke *Coziander*, of each a dragme, all of them beaten to fine powder, *Laudanum* one ounce, *Benzoin* halfe an ounce, dissolue them with *Rose water* and make thereof an odoriferous *Apple* or *Pomander*; and if then you put thereto *Muske* and *Amber*, it is at your choise and pleasure. This Pomander is speciall good against a bad foggie eye, and this following may also be vsed in winter: Take *Laudanum* and red *Stozar*, of each halfe an ounce, *Cloues*, and *Cinnamom*, of each a dragme and a halfe, *Putmegs*, yellow *Saunders*, *Roses*, *Basill*, and yellow *Amber*, of each halfe a drag. poune them all together, but dissolue the *Laudanum* in warme *Rose water*, and then make thereof a Pomander.

Also the moztter (wherein these things haue bene tempered) must be wiped about with a little hemmed shypes wooll, and then wrap the Pomander therein, afterwarde binde it by in red sarcenet and then they will keepe their sent the longer.

Another: Take cleane *Laudanum* halfe an ounce, *Benzoin* a quarter of an ounce, red *Stozar* three dragmes, *Paradise wood*, yellow *Saunders*, white *Frankinsence*, and yellow *Amber*, of each a dragme, *Rosemarie flowers*, *Parierom gentle*, garden *Pints*, and *Basill*, of each halfe a dragme, *Cloues*, *Putmegs*, *Cardamom*, *Cucubes*, and *Coziander*, of each a dragme; temper them all together, and forme it into a Pomander with a little liquid *Stozar*, and at the last put a little *Muske* and *Amber* vnto it.

But if it be in Sommer, or that the person be of an hot complexion; then take water like flowers, *Pints*, *Violets*, wild *Vine leaues*, *Roses*, *Spittle seed*, white and yellow *Saunders*, *Citron peels*, dyed *Quinces*, dyed *Bunes*, of each halfe a dragme, *Saffron*, and *Campher*, of each a scruple, *Gallia Muscata* ten graines, make them vp into a Pomander with *Wineger* wherein fine *Bolus* is dissolved: with this maist thou also vse *Wineger* and *Rose water*.

Item, take *Roses*, *Violets*, *Buglosse*, and *Burrage flowers*, of each halfe a dragme, yellow and white *Saunders*, of each one dragme, *Ireos* three dragmes, *Baume*, *Citron shels*, of each two dragmes, dissolued *Laudanum*, skant as much that it may be tempered with the rest and made vp into a Pomander with *Dragagant* dissolved in *Rose water* and at the last adde a little muske. There are also diuers Pomanders prepared that are good at all times; amongst which first these three following are to be vsed in the time of the plague.

Take *Roses* a quarter of an ounce, red and white *Saunders*, of each a dragme and a halfe, *Campher* one scruple, *Ambra* halfe a drag. *Muske* 4. greines, *Paradise wood* two scrup. *Citron peels* half a drag. *Cinnamom*, *Pace*, and *Putmegs*, of each a scrup. red *Stozar* half an ounce, *Laudanum* one ounce, beate them very small, but dissolue the *Laudanum* with liquid *Stozar*, and then make thereof a Pomander.

Another: Take *Roses*, *Violets*, and floures of *Buglosse*, of each two scrup. *Pirrh*, *Calmus*, *Putmegs*, *Spica of Indy*, *Sandaraca* & *Pastick*, of each a scrup. *Muske* & *Amber*, of each halfe a scrup. red, white, & yellow *Saunders*, of each a drag. *Roses* 3. drag. iuice of *Burdaine* & of *Oranges*, of each 4. ounces, water lillies, & parched *Coziander*, of each one quarter of an ounce, red *Cozall*, & burnt *Quoy*, of each half a drag. sirupe of *Citrons* & fine *Bolus*, of each halfe an ounce, lealed earth a quarter of an ounce, poune all that are to be pouned except the *Amber* and *Muske*, let them in the Sunne in a close stopped pot, or on a warme soznace vntil all the iuice be dried in, afterwards take foure ounces of *Laudanum*, that is dissolved in *Rose water* & *vineger*, and *Turpentine* washed in *Rose water* as much as is needefull for a masse, and hereof make them Pomanders. Item, take *Roses*, *Cloues*, *Pace*, *Spica of Indy*, water Lilly floures, *Violets*, *Parierom*, *Asarabacca* & *Steebas*, of each halfe a scrup. red & white *Saunders*, red and white *Cozall*, the seed and peels of *Citrons* and *Cucubes*, of each xv. greines, *Saffron*, *Ambra*, of each one scrup. *Campher*, *Frankincense*, *Pastir*, fine *Bolus*, and *Sandaraca*, of each halfe a scruple, *Paradise wood* one dragme, *Muscus* three greines, *Specierum cordalium* halfe a dragme, *Laudanum* one

ounce and a halfe, dissolue it in Rose water, and with the rest make a pomander.

Yet another, at all furnished Apothecaries you may finde diuers preparatiues of pomanders, so that thou neede to adde nothing but Muske and Amber, of the which we will describe foure sundry sorts.

Take *Laudanum* three ounces, red Storax three dragmes, *Parierom* gentle, Roses, Campher, red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each a dragme and a halfe, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, Cloues and Spice, of each a drag. Paradise wood two scrup. dissolue the *Laudanum* (as is afoze, said) and then make thereof pomanders, vntill such time as you will adde some other thing to it.

The second is made as followeth: Take *Laudanum* and *Benzoin*, of each three drag. Paradise wood, and Cinnamon, of each a drag, and a halfe, Cloues, Nutmegs, and Cucubes, of each halfe a drag. red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each a drag. Saffron a scruple, poune all that is to be poune, and forme hereof a pomander as befoze, and if you list you may prepare it with Muscus, Ambra, and Campher.

Thirdly, take red Storax and floures of Buglosse, of each two scruples, Cloues one dragme, white and red Behen, of each a scruple, Paradise wood two scruples, *Surtha*, Calmus, Nutmegs, Spica of Indy, Frankincense, Juniper gum, and Pistick, of each halfe a drag. red, yellow, and white Saunders, of each a drag. Roses three dragmes, Coziander a drag. and a halfe, make it up as afozesayd.

Fourthly, take Roses two drag. yellow and red Saunders, of each a drag. and a halfe, a scruple of Campher, Amber halfe a scruple, Muscus foure greines, Paradise wood two scruples, Citron peeles halfe a drag. Cinnamon, Spice, and Nutmegs, of each a drag. red Storax halfe an ounce, *Laudanum* an ounce, afterwards make a pomander thereof as befoze.

Some take an ounce of pure *Laudanum*, and cut the same as small as may be, and mire therewith poune Citron peeles and their seeds, of each a dragme, Saffron and Campher, of each halfe a drag. and tye them altogether in a peece of Sarcenet, or if you will you may make a pomander of it, tempering it with the iuice of Basil.

Preseruatiua, or preseruatiues, that defend men from the Plague. §. 12.



Here are also diuers things that men (being in health) may vse in the time of the Plague, whereby they be not so sone infect of other men, for the which first of all these simples are for the most part good, to wit, Citron seedes, Scabions, Pimpernell the great, Rue, Valerian, Cicorie, Sorrell, and both their waters, Elecampane, Diptamus, Gentian, Tormentill, *Carduus Benedictus*, *Angelica*, & Bayberies, one of these things holden in the mouth, taken in powder, or drunken, are all speciall good against the Plague, and they may be used in many other compositions, as may be seene by these following.

All famous Physicians do for this sickness counsell, first, that men should speedely fflye farre from the contagious places, and returne backe againe with leasure: for he that is a farre off from the Plague, shall not be infected therewith, euen as no man is slaine in the warres, that is not present there. Also it is to be noted (as hath bene already sayd) that men ought to be loose bodied, and freed from all superfluous humidities and vncleannes. Wherefoze those that are aboue the age of eleuen yeres, are to be oftentimes purged with these common pills hereafter described. Also care must be taken that the hart and all other principall parts of the bodie be comforted and kept dry, which may be done by the right Boile armeneck. In like manner also with Spithivate and Treacle, if that euery weeke, or at the least euery ten dayes a dragme in waight be taken with the water of Sorrell, sweating after it, & keeping within doores all the day after.

Here is also to be noted, when any one will take of this Treacle or Spithivate, that he haue eaten nothing afoze, nor eat not any thing afterwards in five or sixe howres. But amongst all other medicines & preseruatiues, these last befoze mentioned pills beare the prick and price, which are to be had at the Apothecaries, called *Pestilentialia Russi*, *Communes*, *de Tribus*, and *sue Cura*, which the principall Physicians haue described and commended so highly, that it hath neuer bin seene that such as used the same orderly were killed of the Plague, which also any one may at all times, be the person yong or old, vse without any danger: for like as it is with a pot beginning to fethe, it casteth up scum, and is cleansed through scumming, euen so do these pills take away all superfluities and vncleannes which is gathered together about the principall partes, and preserue the blood from all kinds of putrifaction. These pills are made in this sort:

Take

Take Aloe one ounce, *Pirra* and *Saffron*, of each halfe an ounce, beate them altogether with good pleasant wine, hereof are you to take euery weeke a dragma, or euery third day three pills as big as a great pease, and thereupon drinke a pretie draught of white wine that is delayed with Rose water, or with *Sorell* water, yet ought women with Child to abstaine from them. These pills are of great force in the time of the Plague, and do also drine out all superfluities of the stomacke.

Others take Aloe three quarters of an ounce, *Pirra* three dragmes, *Saffron* one dragma, *Rubarb* a quarter of an ounce, prepared *Agaricum* one dragma, *Cloues*, *Citron* seedes, and the peels, and *Spica* of *Indie*, of each a scruple, *Tormentill*, and red *Saunders*, of each a dragma and a halfe, fine *Bolus* three dragmes, *Campher* ten graines, poune them well all together, and make pills hereof with sirupe of *Citrons*.

Item, take the iuice of *Sorell*, the iuice of *Buglosse*, and of *Cicorie*, of each two ounces, fine *Bolus* one ounce, mire them all together, and stirre them often in 24. houres, afterwards add these things following, Aloe three ounces, *Camfer* two scruples, *Saphirs*, *Jacints*, and *Smaragdes*, of each halfe a scruple, *Perles* one dragma, *Citron* seede a quarter of an ounce, *Paradise* wood, *Saffill* seede, *Amber*, red *Cozall*, and *Zeduary*, of each eight graines, *Roses*, *Violetts*, *Sorell* seede, *Burrage* floures, and floures of *Buglosse*, of each halfe a scruple. Stamp them all together, and mingle it well, and afterwards set it in the Sunne or in any other warme place till all the iuice be dyed away. This being done, then powze more iuice thereon againe, and so do three times. Now when you desire to vse hereof, then make seven pills of one drag. with some *aqua composita*, and take hereof euery morning or euery euening one pill, and that before meales.

These following are also highly commended: Take of the common Plague pills (that are heretofore described) fower scruples, prepared *Agaricum* halfe a dragma, *Seduary* and *Angelica*, of each one dragma, *Rubarb* one scruple, *Troiscorum* *Albandali* fine graines: then make pills hereof with water of *Carduus Benedictus*: take of these pills one drag. once a weeke, three houres after supper, and in the morning drinke a good draught of the decoction of *Pease*, and eat some what three houres after.

Some vse these pills following: Take Aloe and *Agaricum*, of each one dragma, *Pirra* and fine *Bolus*, of each a quarter of an ounce, *Saffron* a dragma: then make pills hereof with *Balmie* water, or water of *Buglosse*, and so vse them as hath been said.

These pills following do not purge, but defend the hart and all inward parts from all bad infection: take *Paradise* wood halfe a dragma, burnt *Harts* hoze two scruples, red *Saunders* one dragma, *Tormentill*, *Citron* seede, *Terra sigillata*, and red *Cozall*, of each halfe a scruple, *Sorell* seedes, *Diptamus*, and *Seduary*, of each a scruple, fine *Bolus* three dragmes, *Species de gemmis frigidis* a dragma and a halfe, *Lignum Balsami* halfe a dragma, *Camfere* 4. graines: then make hereof pills with sirup of *Citrons*, or with the iuice of *Ribes*.

These following are yet more forcible: Take *Paradise* wood halfe a dragma, *Tormentill* two scruples, *Diptamus* one scruple, *Seduary* and *Lignum Balsami*, of each halfe a dragma, *Saffron* one scruple, *Cloues* fine graines, *Merueine* halfe a dragm, burnt *Harts* hoze two scruples, red *Saunders* one scruple, red *Cozall* and *Sorell* seedes, of each halfe a drag. fine *Bolus* three ounces, *Species de gemmis frigidis* three drag. *Camfere* fower graines, make pills hereof with sirup of *Citrons*, or with the iuice of *Ribes*.

Others that are good for the hart: Take *Citron* seedes two dragmes, *Jacint*, *Smaragdes*, *Doronicum*, and bones of a *Stags* hart, of each one scruple, *Seduary*, wood of *Paradise*, of each two scruples, the rootes of fine leaved *grasse*, or *Cinquefoile*, of each a quarter of an ounce: then make pills hereof with sirupe of *Citrons*.

All these foresaid pills may be used which you please, and when you please, therewith to comfort the hart, and defend it from all ill ayre.

There are also diuers Confections prepared for preseruatiues, that you may vse in stead of pills, to wit, morning and euening, wherby nature is ayded, thereby the better to withstand the pestilent ayre.

For these, take *Terra sigillata*, white *Diptamus*, fine *Bolus*, *Pirra*, *Tormentill*, *Blue*, *Sca* *bious*, *Wimpernel*, *Sorell*, and *Seduary*, of each a dragma, *Aristology*, *Tormentill*, and *Bay* *berries*, of each a dragma and a halfe, fine or fire kernels of *Walnuts*, ten or twelue new *Figs*, *Spithydate*, and *Treacle*, of each an ounce, *Saffron* and *Camfer*, of each a scruple, *Anicomes*

horne, prepared Pearles, bones of a Staggs hart, burnt Parts horne, and Smaragds, of each one dragma and a halfe, pceled seedes of Citrons halfe an ounce, Make one dragma: poune all that is be poune, and then temper all together with sirupe of Citrons to the consistence of a confection. This Confection killeth all venome of the Plague, and preserveth men very marvellously from her infections, if they take thereof in the morning and evening, to wit, in winter time with a draught of Palmesey, and in summer with Rose water. But if you have not these confections, then use that of Putts and Rue, that herebefore is described in the cleventh §.

Another Confection that is most excellent: take Janiper berries, Cloves, Elecampane roots, and Putwags, of each one dragma, Aristology and Gentian, of each three quarters of an ounce, Burdaine and Hazrel seedes, *Doronicum*, red and white Behen, *Spodium de Cama*, bones of a Staggs hart, Paradise wood, red and white Cozall, Hauings of Juozp, Bayberries, Gallick, and Rue, of each two scruple, Figs, Raisons and Dates, of each an ounce, Saffron two scruples, Cinnamon and Licorice, of each halfe an ounce, Tozmentill and rootes of Auence, of each three dragmes, white *Dipramus*, Almonds, Bingles, pceled Melonsede, Gourd seedes, Citrul seedes, and pceled Cucumder seedes, of each one ounce, prepared *Agaricus* three quarters of an ounce, the roste of *Peucedanum*, *Terra sigillata*, *terra S. Pauli*, and fine Bolus, of each two drag. Pomy, and Seduary, of each one dragma, Camfere halfe a dragma, *Species Diatriasantalum*, and *Diarhodon*, of each two dragmes, Citron peels, Smaragdes, of each a dragma, *Muscus* a scruple, Treacle, *Diatessaron*, and *Miridatium*, of each an ounce: poune all that is to be poune, and hereof make a Confection with sirup of Citrons. Item take Conferues of Roses, of Violets, of Burrage and of Buglosse, of each halfe an ounce, Smaragde, Jacinct, and Pearles, of each one dragma, bones of a Staggs hart, filed gold, Citron seedes, fine Bolus, and sealed earth, of each halfe a dragma: poune all that is to be poune, and then make thereof a consctien with sirupe of Citrons.

Another: Take conferue of Roses, of Buglosse, of each an ounce and a halfe, *Doronicum*, bones of a Staggs hart, Jacincts, Smaragds, Sapphires, of each halfe a scruple, yellow Saunders, Cinquefoyle, and Paradise wood, of each three dragmes, Sugar one ounce, wine of Granada, and sirup of Limons, of each halfe an ounce, ten or twelue gold leaues: then mingle altogether to the consistence of a confection.

Another that is very good and approued: Take Conferue of Roses, of Buglosse, and of Burrage, of each five ounces, *Doronicum*, Seduary, Basil seede, Pace, Saffron, and *Adiantum*, of each one dragma, bones of a Staggs hart, Jacincts, Smaragdes, and Sapphires, of each a scruple, Pearles one drag. five leaues of beaten gold, sirupe of Apples, and of Citron peels, of each two ounces, Violet water three quarters of an ounce, white Sugar fower ounces: let the sirup and Sugar with water enough, till it be as thicke as Honey, and afterwards temper the spices therewith: then beate it well together, and put thereto Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, that hath ben steaped fower and twenty howers in Palmesey: Lastly ad thereto Puske and Amber, of each fower greins: This being done, mingle them all together, and keepe it safe (being well stoppt) in a glasse.

Item, take Pithydate and Treacle (that at the least is ten yere olde) of each halfe an ounce Citron seede, and fine Bolus of each halfe a dragma, Rose water (with the which *Muscus* is dissolued) as much as is needefull for a confection: Hereof may you use every day one drag.

All that are sound and whole, as also those that are infected, may use the waight of a quarter of an ounce of this confection following, morning and evening, without any danger: Take Jacincts, Granadoes, Smaragds, Sapphires, Pearles, bones of a Staggs hart, and Paradise wood, of each halfe a dragma, Red and white Saunders, red and white Cozall, burnt Juozp, Tozmentill, fine bolus, *terra sigillata*, Camfere and small filed gold, of each one scruple: beate them all together very small, and then take Sugar five ounces, that is sodden with Rose water to a sirupe: then temper it so thick as you wil haue it, with sirup of Citrons. Open may use also otherwhiles in Reas of this confection, two or three dayes together, of this drinke following, which also is a wonderfull preseruatiue a gainst the Plague, and may be used as well of yong as of old folke, yea also of yong childzen, and women with child: Take fine Bolus a dragma and a halfe, beat it to fine powder, and drinke it with white wine and with Rose water, very warme in the morning: and eight daies after you must take a dragma of Treacle or Pithydate, in the winter with wine, and in the summer with Rose water.

These

These foresaid medicines are not only good against the Plague to come, but also against that that hath already infected.

And so far as much as those foresaid confectiōs are made of many costly things, that may be too deare for the common people, for this cause haue we of purpose described the confectiō of Putts and Rue, which they may vse in steade of those. Take the kernels of Putts, Rue, and Juniper leaues, of each a like quantity; poure them all well together, and with Vineger make there of a confectiō, whereof euery morning you may take the bignes of a Nutmeg.

In like maner may one also prepare this following: take eight and twenty or thirty Put kernels, and forty or forty and two figs, Wormewood Rue, Scabious, and Sozrell, of each half a lb. Aristologie two dragmes and a halfe, Tozmentill, Pimpernell, and white *Dipsamnus* of each one dragme, fine Bolus halfe a dragme, red and white Cozall, Sozrell seedes, of each halfe a dragme, Citron seedes one dragme, Juniper berries three dragmes: chop and stampe all that must be stampd, and hereof with clarified hony make a confectiō: hereof may one take at one time the bignes of a Walnut.

Also make another, which is called the confectiō of Juniper berries, as followeth: Take Put kernels, Juniper berries, of each two ounces, beat them wel together, put thereto sower ounces of clarified Honie, and temper with it, Cinnamon, Ginger, Spice, and Cloues, of each a dragme, white *Dipsamnus*, Tozmentill, Seduary, Citron peeles, Rue, *Cardus Benedictus*, and St. Johns wort, of each a quarter of an ounce, Cardamome, Paradise wood, blacke Coziander, *Angelica*, white and red Behen, fine Bolus, and sealed earth, of each a dragme; then mingle them all together. If the quantity of Put kernels, Juniper berries, and Hony be too little, then may you take twice so much. And for the common sort it is also excellent good, that euery morning he doe take eight or ten Juniper berries that haue been steeped in vineger.

Now follow certaine powders that preserve men from the Plague: but (as hath been said before) great regard is to be takē in the time of the plague, that the hart may be defended from all pestilent infections as much as is possible. To this end are all the abovesaid medicines, also manye powders, confectiōs, cordial waters, and other such like, as hereafter followeth prescribed: Take Rubies, Granates, Jacints, Smaragdes, & Saphires, of each half an ounce, white & red Cozall, and shauing of Iuoy, of each three quarters of an ounce, shauen Parts hony, & Sozrell seedes, of each halfe an ounce, prepared Pearles a quarter of an ounce, Saffron ten greines, beaten gold sower leaues; mingle them all together.

Item, take prepared Rubies, Saphires, Jacints, Emrodes, and Pearles, of each halfe a dragme, red Cozall, burnt Iuoy, shauen Iuoy, Anicoyes hony, *Dipsamnus*, Seduary, Cinnamon, and Tozmentill, of each two scruples, *Doronicum*, Aristologie, red, white, and yellowe Saunders, Citron peeles, and Sozrell seedes, of each halfe a dragme, Saffron two scrup. white Amber one scruple, red and white Behen, of each two scruples and a halfe, Sugar six ounces and a halfe; mingle them all together, and then take halfe an ounce thereof euery time.

These following doe the Apothecaries call *Species liberantes*, that are very much esteemed, and much used at Ausburg, by reason they defend the hart and all inward parts very maruellously against against all venemous ayre; they are made in this manner: Take prepared Bolus and sealed earth, of each three quarters of an ounce, Tozmentill, Sozrell seede, seede of Cardine, peeled seedes of Citrons, and prepared Coziander, of each three dragmes, red, white, and yellowe Saunders, prepared Pearles, red and white Cozall, yellow Amber, shauen Iuoy, bones of a Stags hart (that hath been steeped a while in Rose water) red and white Behen, *Doronicum*, Cardamome, Spice, Paradise wood, Cinnamon, Saffron, Seduary, and Cassy wood, of each a dragme, Emrodes, Saphires, Granates, and like woymes nests (chopt as small as may be) of each a scruple, Camfere sixteen greines, Muske and Amber of each six greines, Sugar candy, and Sugar pennets, of each a quarter of an ounce: beate all very small, & mingle it together: ye shall giue one dragme of this powder in the winter with wine, and in summer with Sozrell water.

The Emperors powder against the Plague: Take Pimpernell, Gentian, Tozmentill, Dragon, Rue, Wormewood, Put kernels, prepared Granats, and Juniper berries, of each a like much; make them into powder, and vse it vpon a tosted peece of bread. If you will make a confectiō of this powder, then put thereto Rose vineger, and Treacle, as much as shall suffice.

Another

Another powder: Take fine prepared Bolus one ounce and a halfe, Cinnamon one ounce, Lozmentill, and white *Diptamus*, of each halfe an ounce, Pimpernell, *Angelica*, and Gentian, of each a quarter of an ounce, prepared Coriander three dragmes, Saffron, Sealed earth, Citron peeles, red and white Behen, red Corall, yellow Sanders, Hauen Juozie, & prepared Pearles, of each a quarter of an ounce, burnt Juozie, Paradise wood, and bones of a Stags hart, of each two scruples, Granates, Sapphires, Jacincts, Emrods, and Rubies, of each halfe a dragme, Spike of Indie three graines, Amber fire graines, Spuske two graines, Campher fire graines, Sugar as much as all the rest do weigh: temper them well together and make them into a subtile powder, and vse it as afoze.

Another like vnto this: Take fine Bolus very small beaten two ounces, Lozmentill, *Doronicum*, *Diptamus*, and red Sanders, of each one dragme, Hauen Juozie, burnt Juozie, and Citron peeles, of each halfe a dragme, Pearles two scruples, Rubies, Emrods, Granates, Sapphires, and Jacincts, of each one scruple, bone of a Stags hart a dragme, Unicoznes hozne halfe a scruple: temper them together and giue halfe a dragme hereof at once. You may if you will put Sugar vnto it.

Item: Take Citron seedes, and Sozrell seedes, of each two dragmes, *Diptamus*, Gentian, and Lozmentill, of each two dragmes and a halfe, fine Bolus, and Cinnamon, of each one ounce, Pearles, Sapphires, and bones of a Stags hart, of each one dragme, red, white, and yellow Sanders, and small Basill seedes, of each a dragme and a halfe, make powder thereof. But if you wd make a Confection of it, then take an ounce and a halfe of the foresaide powder, and twelue ounces of Sugar: and when you haue taken of it, then drinke a draught of Sozrell water after it.

Montagnana writeth that he neuer sawe any that haue died of the Plague, which diligently vsed this medicine.

Of all these foresaide powders may also *Manus Christi*, or Sugar Cakes be made. The common custome is to take one ounce and a halfe of powder, and twelue ounces of Sugar.

When the Arche Duke *Maximilian* that now is Emperoz of Rome toke his iourney into Spaine, then was this powder following ordained for him as a preseruatiue against all bad ayre: take Zeduary, Cloues, Putmegs, Spittle kernels Cinnamon, & Ginger, of each a quarter of an ounce, Gentian, *Diptamus*, Lozmentill, Elecampare rootes, and Aristologie, of each a dragme, and a halfe, Putmegs, Sage, Rue, Baulme, Piony seedes, Citron seedes, Sozrell seedes, Basill seedes, Bayberries, Basticke, *Doronicum*, Frankinsence, fine Bolus, Sealed earth, and burnt Juozie, of each halfe a dragme, bones of a Stags hart, red Corall, and Pearles, of each one scruple, conserue of Buglosse, and of Burrage, of each halfe an ounce, Rose water, and Scabious water, of each three ounces: then mire with them ten graines of Campher, and boyle them with eight and twentie ounces of white Sugar to the consistence of a confection: and when the same be ginneth to be cold, then temper the specis with it, and so make *Manus Christi* of it.

These Sugar cakes following are very common at Heydelbourough in high Germanie: Take *Species Diamargariton* a quarter of an ounce, *Liberantes* fower scruples, Zeduary, and Citron peeles, of each one dragme, *Doronicum*, *Angelica*, and Pimpernell, of each halfe a dragme, Conchenele two scruples, Cinnamon a dragme and a halfe, Cloues one dragme, Unicoznes hozne halfe a dragme, Smaradges ten graines, *Muscus* two graines, beaten Gold, three leaues, white Sugar nine ounces: dissolve the Sugar in water wherein red crimson like is sodden, and make hereof *Manus Christi*.

This following do the Physicians call *Alexipharmacum*, that is, such a medicine that can expell all manner of venom, and whatsoeuer els is hurtfull to the bodie: Take Sallet oyle of one hundred yeres old or moze, & if you cannot get such oyle, then boyle it vntill it wareth eger and sharpshe, thirty ounces: Turpentine three ounces, *Euphorbium*, and Beuercod, of each halfe a dragme, betw or raine Wormes (washed in Wine) halfe an ounce: afterwarde put therein eightie or nintie Scorpions, and in the Dog daies take the Adder that is called *Viperam* cut in peeces, and let the oyle sethe in boyling water the space of fower howers, afterwarde set it ten daies in the hot sunne. This being all done, adde to it Zeduary, Gentian, Lozmentill, white *Diptamus*, Aristologie, and Rubarbe, of each halfe an ounce, Hollyhocke leaues, Saint Johns wort, Dancs weede, and Rosemarie, of each halfe a handfull, Treacle, and Spithivate, of each halfe an ounce: then poune all that is to be pouned, and temper them together: and then being close stoppt, burie it

it in horse dung for the space of three moneths. Lastly presse it through a strong strainer, and all that you can get out shall you reserve in a pewter bottell.

This medicine must be used in manner as followeth: to wit, that you take it cold, and not warme. It sufficeth also to annoynt the hart, the pulses, and the temples of the head but thrice a day, leaving two howers onely betwene euery inundation.

At Pisa is a custome that the Magistrates euery yere giue to the Vniuersitie two prisoners that haue deserved death for to anatomie, which is a good meanes to proue this medicine. When as they giue vnto one of these prisoners one scruple of Kats bane, and eight howers before his death annoynte him with this salve as is aforesaid; then find they indeed that such men might afterwards liue five daies longer. These foresaid receipts haue bene of others described but falsly.

This mixture following is highly commended to annoynt withall: Take Amber halfe a dragma, Arnis seede halfe a scruple, Paradise wood, *Laudanum*, red and white Behen, of each a quarter of an ounce, Pace, and Citron peeles, of each two dragms and a halfe, Nutmegs, white Copall, red and white Saunders, of each one dragma, beaten Gold fire leaues, Basil water, water of Saffron flowers, and Rose water wherein Muske is dissolved, of each five ounces, Vineger two spoonfulls, Balsmey two ounces; temper them well together a great while, and annoynt oftentimes the pulses therewith, the temples of the head and the face, and reserve it being stoppt very close.

In Sarony they haue a salt of Wormewood, called *sal Absinthij*, which will free and defend men from the plague without any further care.

We will also here describe certaine drinks against the plague: first, it is not unknownen what power there is in the compounded *Aqua vita* against the plague, and against all venomes, as is sufficiently rehearsed in the eight part.

An approued water: Take Tormentill, Valerian, Pimpernell, Dragons, *Diptamus*, sealed earth, fine Bolus, drie Vineger dregs, and long Pepper, of each half an ounce, Saffron one drag. Amber halfe a drag. Treacle an ounce, *Nux vomica*, and *Cardus Benedictus*, of each three quarters of an ounce; poune them all small together, and powze as much thin white wine vpon them as you please; let it so stand foure dayes, and of this drinke a spoonfull at once, sweat vpon it, and fast five howers after it.

For the common people you may prepare this following: Take Valerian, the roots of great Burs, *Bardana*, *Diptamus* of Candy, Gentian, Biskorta, Tormentill, and Pimpernell, of each a like measure: beate altogether grossely, and powze *Aqua vita* vpon it as much as will couer it; insolate it fourtene daies long, stirring it about euery day. This being done, then must you not take about a spoonfull of it at once. Also you may distill it, and vse it by it selfe: but by my counsell this should not be used in summer.

This drinke following hath been approued of many thousands: Take in May the rootes of great Burs, called *Bardana*, sixteen ounces, of the middle rinde of the Ash tree two pound chop it small together, and distill it: giue of this water to drinke three or foure ounces, to wit, when hee is thought to bee infected of the Plague: it is also wonderfull good against all biting of madde Dogs.

Another: Take Rue, Wormewood, Roses, and Juniper berries, of each a handfull, twenty or twenty five kernels of Peas; stampe these all together to pap, powze wine and vineger thereon of each one pinte, and stop it tight: then let it seethe in *Balneo* foure and twenty howers: this being done, then straine it, and of this giue euery morning fasting two spoonfulls to drinke. Item, take fiftene or sixtene heads of Leeks, pare off the vppermost shales, and stampe them small, and afterwards mixe thin white wine with them, and vineger of Rue, of each a good pinte or a pint and a halfe, and good Treacle one ounce, and keepe it close stoppt in a glasse. And when you will vse it, then giue thereof a spoonfull or twaine to drinke in the morning betimes. It drieth out sweat, and expelleth venemous ayre. This sirope following is highly commended: Take Citron peeles, rootes of Capers, Mercurine, red Saunders, and burnt Quoy, of each a quarter of an ounce, Cloues, Buglosse, Baume, Burrage, Calmus, of each halfe an ounce, Sorell, Liverwort, & Pallowes, of each three drag. Cicorys seeds, Melon seeds, seeds of Pompeons, Gourds, of Cucumbers, and violets, of each two ounces, *Thymus*, *Epithymus*, of Polypody, *Mirobalani* *Chebuli*, and yellow Pirobalans, of each one ounce, *Agaricus* and Rubarb, of each halfe an

an ounce, the iuice of Fumitory, of Wormewood, of Dane-wæde, and of broad Plantaine, of each sixe ounces, the iuice of Quinces eightene ounces, *Diagridum* a quarter of an ounce, white Sugar twenty fower ounces; make hereof a sirupe: And when it is almost sufficiently decocted, then pōize therto fower ounces of the iuice of Quinces, and then let it boyle till his consistence. This sirupe is marvellous good in the time of the plague; for it dryeth the body moderately, and clenseth also the same of all superfluous humors: it strengtheneth the hart, the liuer, and also the inward parts: You may take of it one ounce and a halfe, or two ounces every wake with the water of Buglosse, early in the morning, and then to sleepe thereupon a while, or at the least to lie still an hower after it.

Whitherto haue we described many medicines, whereby the healthy (in time of the plague) may be preserved. All these things must be vsed in good order, like as these medicines following also, to wit, that you vse sometimes the one and sometimes the other, and not alwaies one and the selfe same, that nature not accustome her selfe to it, and in the end doe thinke the remedy to be rather a sove than a medicine, so that it by that meanes cannot haue her operation.

The sixteenth Chapter.

When any are infected with the Plague.



IN this Chapter shall onely intreate of those that are already infected with the Plague, be it by what meanes soever that they haue first gotten the same; as with Agues, swellings, plague soze, or such like.

Of the Ague in the Plague. §.1.



HE Plague commonly commeth alwaies first with an Ague, whereupon presently followeth the Tokens or Carbuncles.

Of the causes of these twaine hath been spoken before; whereby it hath also been said, that in the time of heate, as in the Dog dayes (when heate of man is drawn inward) that the hart as then is inflamed through an unnaturall manner of heate: then also the outward ayze (wherein we continually abide) increaseth the heate, and the hart is so set on fire, that the heate spreadeth over the whole body, and thereby quickly causeth a pestilent Ague, especially if there be such humors in the body that are subiect to inflammation, but if the body be not thereby inclined, then can there be no cause (how violent soever it be) of such infection.

Of the signes whereby this sicknes is knowen. §.2.



WEN as all other sicknesses haue their certaine signes, whereby they are known, so is it with this venemous ague, which manifesteth her selfe with seuen kinds of accidents: whereof the first is, and unnaturall cold and shaking, whereupon straight way followeth a great heat: albeit the same oftentimes altereth, so that sometime first the heate and afterwards the cold insueth. Secondly, let this happen howsoever it will, there followeth alwaies after it a great and intollerable thirst. Thirdly, bitterness and vnsauery of the mouth. Fourthly, losse of appetite. Fifthly, heavines of all parts of the bodie, with wearisomnes and sleepe. Sixthly, a binding of the bodie and the going to the stoole is by constraint, and with great stench: the vaine also commeth with a great quantitie and sinketh much: lastly, bereaving of sleepe. And albeit these foresayd signes manifest sufficiently the violence that nature suffereth, it is to be wondred at, neuertheless that at the first neither by the nature and qualitie of the ague, nor by the pulse, nor by the vaine this infection is to be discerned, for it often hapneth that the vaine of all men so infected is very like the vaine of the sound, and that the heate is also much slower and obscurer then that of any other agues, and the pulse also quiet and scant to be felt.

Now when all these signes or any of them shall appeare, or that there be a plague soze, or other signes moe, then all aunient and latter Physicians conclude with one consent, that there

is nothing moze profitable and requisite then that the patient do sweate well, and be delt with-
all as hereafter followeth.

By what meanes the patient is prouoked to sweate. §. 3.



First, they ordaine these confectiōs following, whereof shall be taken the quan-
tity of an halfe nut : Take one ounce of Treacle, Pimpernell, Gentian, *Bystor-*
ra, Tozmentill, Sage, Rue, Mozmewood, Juniper berries, and nut kernels, of
each one dragma, stamp them all together, and then with vineger make it into
a confectiō. Use this confectiō following, called *Rozoarctica*, one dragma
warmed in Sozrell water, or in water of *Carduus Benedictus*, at what time so e-
uer you will, and then couer him very well, and then let him sweate thre or foure howres (if he
be able) for the moze he sweateth, the better hope is there of his recovery. But if the patient be
vnder the age of twelue yeres, yet aboue five yeres, then must you giue him halfe a dragma,
and further deale as is abouesaid. It is also needefull, if the patient may abide it, that he sweate
morning and euening, this confectiō is made as followeth : Take of the best Treacle and
spithzidate, of each halfe an ounce, Pimpernell and Angelica, of each ten greines, Cardamome
five greines, Campher thre greines, Cinnamom ten greines, put them all together. But if you
haue none of this confectiō at hand, then a dragma of Treacle or spithzidate with any of the
foresaid waters, or take of the golden egge, which is described after two manner of wayes as
followeth.

Take a new layd hen egge, and make a little hole in the top that the white may issue out,
and the yolke tarry within, then fill it vp with good pouderd Saffron, and shut to the hole on the
top againe with the white of the eg and eggshell, then rost it by a mild fire so long as the shell
will hold, and that it be cleane all browne. This being done, take off the shell, and poune the
inner part very small, then mingle it with white Mustard seedes, *Diplamius*, and Tozmentill, of
each a quarter of an ounce, *Nux vomica* a dragma : lastly, adde good Treacle to it in waight as
beane as all the rest, then temper it all together two or thre howres together, and make hereof
a hard confectiō, which men call the golden Egge, and will remayne good twentie or thirtie
yeres.

The golden
Egge.

The second : Take all that is before rehearsed except the quantitie of the Treacle, and put
thereto Angelica, Pimpernell, Zeduary, Campher, and good Treacle, of each as much as of the
other, and that in waight : but I thinke that there is too much Campher, and too little Treacle.

Whereas it is not a little auailable to know how this confectiō is to be used, therefore
you shall vnderstand, that whensoever as this sickness first beginneth with cold, then must you
(if it be a man) before that twelue howres be past, giue to him the waight of a ducat, to a wo-
man as much as a kichenish gilbern wayeth, and a child or boy half as much, with a small wine.
But if this sickness taketh one with heate, then take in the place of wyne water of Cicorie, or if
you cannot get it, then take halfe wine halfe vineger, and sweate vpon it. This confectiō may
be used at all times against all bad humors and venime, yet then must the *Nux vomica* be
left out.

In the fifth part the twelfth Chapter 1. §. is likewise shewed how to prouoke sweate. The
ancient Physicians accustomed to vse this powder following for to cause sweate : take Male-
rian rootes thre quarters of an ounce, Gentian, white *Diplamius*, and dry Rue, of each one
ounce, good Saffron one dragma, red Corall, and Pace, of each a dragma and a halfe, temper it,
and poune it all together, and giue one dragma thereof with a draught of wyne.

A marvellous oyle for to procure sweate : Take a glasse bottell as big as you will, fill the
same half full of Elder floures, and put thereon the third part of Wallphack floures, or floures of
Ebulus, & againe thereupon a third part of the floures of S. Johns wort, so that with these thre
things the glasse be full : this being done, powze thereon old Sallet oyle (the older the better) and
at last stop it very close, and so let it stand all the Sommer a sunning, with this oyle must you
rub the bodie very warme thre or foure times a day. It hath bin approued, that this oyle
through the abundant sweate that it prouoketh, expelleth all contagion of the Plague.

Here follow now Diaphoreticall potions : Take Rue, Mozmewood, and the vppermost
tops of the blackberries, of each a handfull, Celandine a handfull and a halfe : powze thereon a
pinte

pinte of vinegar, afterwards stop the pot very close that there come out no vapour, and then let the third part sethe away; then strayne it out, and keepe it close stoppt, and when any are infected with the Plague, or in any wise poysoned, then giue him of this drinke, to wit, two or three ounces, and let him sweate after it, and not sleepe at all.

The water of *Geranium* is also very good against all venim, and therefore good to be used in time of the Plague, whether there appears any swelling or any other accidents, or not.

Some also commend this composition following to be an especiall remedie, and it is in deed not to be disdained. Take a great Onyon, cut off the top, and make a hole therein, and then fill him with Treacle and the iuice of Rue and vinegar, of each one dragme, then close the top to againe with the peece which you clipt and cut off, and fasten it with two sticks, and wind it in wet towle: this being done, roast it in the hot ashes till it be very mellow, afterwards stamp it to pap, and then strayne it thorow a cloth, and it will be a broth, then preserve this broth till time of neede. If one then be found that he be poysoned, then giue him a dragme thereof, and hold tolled with vinegar before his nose that he cast it not by againe, and let him lye downe on the bed that he may sweate. But it is to be noted, that sleepe in sweating is forbidden and hurtfull, wherefore the patient shall not sleepe till the sweate be gone, that the venim passe not towards the vitall parts, afterwards he may sleepe, that he waxe not impotent and weake, yet he is otherwhiles to be awaked. And if the age or might of the patient will permit it, then ought he to be let blood, that the contagious matter which corrupteth the blood and hurteth the principall parts, might be let out, and the inflammation lessened.

Herein do many Physicians and Barbers dote and erre very absurdly, which straightway as soon as they suppose it to be the Plague, not perceiuing any signe thereof, begin their cure with letting of blood. For albeit that it may not be delaied too long, yet ought it not rashly to be done by reason of the former causes.

When the patient thus sweateth, then must the same be wiped from his face with a cloth, and hold before his Nose Rose vinegar, Rose water, or such like: also let the ayre of the chamber be cleansed and perfumed with fire or sprinkled with Vineger; but especiall heed must be taken that the sweat strike not againe into the body. As he hath now sweate well and is wiped cleane, then must he be layd in another bed: for the exchange of beds is very good; for thereby they are the lesse infectious, which otherwise increaseth still more and more, and is more hurtfull for the diseased person.

Some are of opinion that the patient should not take any thing within an hower after his sweate, that nature first might be able to indure and beare it the better.

Besides the airing and sprinkling of the chamber, it is good counsell for the riche that there be a cloth wetted in Rose water, and hanged in the night before the bed of the patient; and when it is dry that it be moistened againe.

How to comfort those that are infected with the Plague. §. 4.



As much as there are many causes in this sickenes whereby the patient may be weakened, which the disease of it selfe bringeth with it, as great heat, much watching, thirst, pain, sweat, & such like things more: wherefore good regard must be had how that the hart might be comforted and naturall strength be maintained: For the which this water following is ordained for the common sort of people, which not onely strengtheneth, but also driueth out the sweate: Take

new distilled water of the kernels of Shuts fower ounces, powdered Hierueins one dragme, good Treacle, two scruples, Saffron seven graines: then mingle it all together, and so giue it warme.

It profiteth much also that the patient alwaies haue in his hand odoriferous things, wherewith the hart, the braines, and all inward parts may be comforted, and the bad vapours taken away; for the which this Pomander following is very commodious.

Take red, white, and yellow Saunders, and Roses, of each one dragme, Saffron, and Campher, of each one scruple, Muske, and Amber, of each five graines; then make hereof a Pomander with Dragagant that is dissolved in Rose water, and then binde it in red sarcenet as is before mentioned.

Of these Pomanders, as well hot as cold of nature are herebefoze diuers described, where we haue treated of the preseruatiō of the healthie. And these sweating patients must not abstaine from meate, for that the emptines of the stomack is very hurtfull for them; and what meate and drinke is good for them, that shall be shewed hereafter. If the sicke person be so weake and feeble that he may not be let blood nor purged, then giue vnto him this drinke following, that shall do him good: Take white *Diptamus*, *Comentill*, white *Cozall*, *Gentian*, fine *Bolus*, sealed earth, and *Merueine*, of each one dragma, beate them all very small together, and take thereof one quarter of an ounce, good Treacle one dragma, iuice of Scabious foure ounces, Vineger halfe an ounce. But if you cannot get the iuice, then take the water of put kernels, and let him drinke it warme: yet in winter giue him wine in stead of these waters. The next day giue to the patient fine *Bolus* tempered with as much conserue of Roses, and foure ounces of Scabious water after it. Sometimes also must the common pills be vsed.

There is also to be made this cordiall confection as followeth: Take prepared Rubies, Iacints, Granats, Smaragdes, fine *Bolus*, Perles, bones of a Stags hart, fine filed gold, and small filed *Unicoynes* honye, of each one scruple, rawe like that is cut very small, Roses, Amber, Citron peeles, and Hauē Tuozie, of each halfe a dragma, white Sugar dissolved in the iuice of Limons as much as you please, sethe the same as thick as hony, and mingle the rest amongst it to a confection. Giue of this to the patient two or thre dragmes with fresh broth, for it strengtheneth marvellous much all the vitall parts, it resisteth all vapors, and breaketh the force of the Ague.

In like manner there are cordiall waters to be outwardly applyed, whereof some shall be shewed hereafter.

Take Rose water sixtene ounces, water of Endiue, Buglosse, Nightshade, Baume, and of Sorrell, of each eight ounces, Vineger, and good white wine, of each thre ounces, red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cozall and Roses, of each one dragma, burnt Tuozie, Saffron and Campher, of each halfe a dragma, then mingle them all together, and so wetting in it a double cloth, lay it ouer the hart.

Or take water of Buglosse, and of Sorrell, of each thre ounces, water of Willow leaues, Roses, Mozmeiwood, Grasse, Baume, and of the wild Vine leaues, of each two ounces, *Spec. Cordialium temperatarum* a dragma and a halfe, Saffron eight greines, Pirrha, *Diptamus*, *Gentian*, Paradise wood, yellow Saunders, Basill seede, red and white Behen, Iacints, and Smaragdes, of each halfe a scruple, iuice of Limons thre ounces, Vineger one ounce, *Palmesey* five ounces, put them all together.

Item, take the water of Buglosse, of Scabious, Violets, and of Burrage, of each six ounces, Rose water wherein Huske is dissolved eight ounces, *Specierum Cordialium* one ounce and a halfe, Campher halfe a scruple, white Cozall foure scruples, prepared Pearles a dragma and a halfe, beaten Gold eight leaues, *Palmesey* foure ounces.

Note that you must temper the water and the *Palmesey* together: and when you haue taken twelue ounces of the same, then must you take a dragma of this powder and mixe with it, and vse it as is befoze rehearsed.

Another: Take Sorrell water, and *Cardus Benedictus* water foure ounces, Vineger of Cillow flowers one ounce, *Species de gemmis frigidis* a quarter of an ounce, Saffron two graines, Campher five graines, *Palmesey* halfe an ounce, temper them all together.

When as these cordiall waters are laide on the hart, then may you annoint the sicke bodie left breast pap with this salue following: Take an ounce of the best Treacle, iuice of Limons, and of Vineger, of each halfe an ounce, Saffron, and Campher, of each one scruple; then mingle them together, and spread it on a cloth or on a red crimson clout.

This following is stronger: Take good Treacle two ounces, Rubarbe, and *Carlina*, of each one dragma and a halfe, olde oile of Olive twelue ounces, fortie or 45. Scorpions: poune all that is to be poured, and then let it sethe in water in a pot alone five or sixe houres long; afterwards straine it thowow a cloth, and first annoint the hart, the pulses, and the temples of the head. Afterward he must be annoynted vpon all outward signes or sores of the Plague, and at the last round about the necke: and this annoynting must be done once euery sixe houres very warm: the chamber must also be kept fumed and continually sprinkled.

We haue also made mention here befoze in the first part, the second chapter, and tenth S. and shortly

shortly after in the Ague *Helica* of many things wherewith sicke folke are to be comforted and reuined.

What is to be done after sweating. §. 5.



When as then the patient hath sweat, is wiped, and layd in fresh bedding, then do some counsell to giue him out of hand one dragma of fine Bolus, to wit, with Rose water if a great heate be adioyned, or with wyne if without heate, and that not at one time only, but euery day: but it importeth very much whether you haue the right fine and ozyent Bolus or not, for there are many kindes of earths vsed in stead of it.

Further, let him take immediately after his sweating, to wit, thre mornings (one after another) of these sirupes following, for the cooling of these hot Agues, to warme the same first in hot water, and in case that he afterwards feele a sweating againe, then let him forthwith continue in his sweate if he can abide it.

Take sirupes of Limons one ounce, sirupe of Citrons halfe an ounce, water of *Cardum Bene dictum*, of *Soyrell*, and of *Bourage*, of each one ounce, mixe them all together for a potion.

And if so be that after the vse of these thre potions the patient should be purged (which in this Ague is seldome needefull) then must it be done with this following:

Take of the common plague pils ten greines lesse then a dragma, and ten greines of *Agaricus*, *Kubarb* one scruple, then make hereof small pils, and giue them all to the patient at one time.

Another regiment when any one is infected with the Plague. §. 6.



First, these pils following are to be giuen to the patient in the morning betimes: Take of the common plague pils a dragma and a halfe, that are formed with sirupe of Citrons, and then let the patient (if the infirmities may beare it) sleepe afterwards alittle: the next day after shall he thre or foure dayes after other alwayes in the morning betimes, take a dragma and a halfe of fine Bolus powdered either with wine or with Rose water, as the time of the yere requireth. This is a maruellous good medicine and without all danger, but only that it somewhat bindeth the bodie, which may be prevented with mild Clisters, which must be made of oyle only.

It is not amisse for this intent to vse these confectiōs following euery other day, which strengthen the bodie, and make it sound: Take good Treacle one dragma, prepared Smaragdes seven greines, then mingle it with wyne, and so giue it him.

But if the partie can hardly take this, then let him vse one of these Sugar plates following: Take *Jacints*, *Granats*, *Rubies*, *Smaragdes*, *Sapphires*, and bones of the *Sfags hart*, of each one dragma, red and white *Saunders*, and red *Cozall*, of each one scruple, burnt *Iusie*, fine Bolus, prepared *Berles*, sealed earth, and *Vinicoznes horne*, of each foure scruples, filed gold one dragma, Sugar sod in Rose water *Artiene ounces*, make it vp into *Manus Christi*, or Sugar plates, and take two or thre dragmes of them at one time.

As soone as the patient feleth himselfe infected, let him presently take this potion following, and if he vomit not the same vp againe, but sweateth after it, then it is a good signe of amendment, and a manifest token of health.

Take white *Deptamius*, *Cozmentill*, white *Cozall*, *Gentian*, fine Bolus, sealed earth, and burnt *Harts horne*, of each one dragma, *Smaragdes*, *Camfer*, and prepared *Berles*, of each halfe a dragma, *Pisth*, *Saffron*, and *Citron sedes*, of each one scruple: beate all very small, and take of it a quarter of an ounce, Treacle a dragma and a halfe, *Soyrell water*, and good white wyne, of each one ounce and a halfe, mixe them for a potion, and giue it to the patient warme lying in his bed, that he may sweat well, and that as long as he may suffer it: afterwards wipe him well, and lay him in another bed. But if the time of the yere be cold, and the Ague not very hot, then may you put the more wyne to the foresayd potion: and contrarywise, if it be hot weather, and the Ague hot also, then let *Soyrell water* be mingled therewith.

But speciall care must be had that the patient cast not vp the potion againe, for the which

it is god, that there be a great cup set vnder his stomacke, without opening of the skin, and some good sauer be holden before his nose, his hands dipt in cold water, or smell to tosted bread that is moistened with Vineger, and such like things moe.

Some forbid that men in sweating shall either eate or drinke; which were somewhat indid if the patient be strong enough: but when he is feeble, then haue you for this a good direction before.

How to purge those that are infected with the
Plague. §.7.



At the end of the foresaid fifth §. we haue declared, that purging for this sickness is not greatly commended: neuertheless, if great neede require, then is there nothing moze fit than the common Plague pills, with somewhat tempered therewith. This potion following may also be giuen him with all safety, for that it doth cleanse the blood of all superfluities: Take of the confectiō *Triphera Persica* and *Manna*, of each thre quarters of an ounce, *Rubarbe* one dragma, then mingle them together in fower ounces of *Soyrell water*. Or take *Cassy* and sower Dates, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Confection of the iuice of *Roses* one dragma, then temper them together with *Soyrell water*.

Item, take *Triphera Persica*, halfe an ounce, prepared *Agaricke* and *Rubarb*, of each one dragma, and mingle them as before.

Another. Take the Confection *Diasena* and *Triphera Persica*, of each thre dragmes, *Confectio Hamech* a quarter of an ounce, of *succo Rosarum* halfe a drag. mingle them with the decoction of fruits, or with *Buglosse water*.

But if the patient be so feeble that you dare not giue him a purging medicine, then let him haue a Clister of fresh broth or herbs, with *Cassie*, the yolke of an Eg, course *Sugar*, oile of *Violets*, and *Salt*. For all such diseases are the Conserue of *Burrage* and *Buglosse* very commodious, euen as they are also for all pestilent Agues, for they are both very comfortable; they reuiue the hart, resist venime, take away all weakenes, make men glad, and cleanse the blood.

We haue before in the fourth §. written of other things moe that also doe comfort the patient. This shall suffice that we haue spoken of the beginning of the Plague: we will now proceede and make mention of other accidents of this disease, and teach their due remedies.

Of the vnnaturall heate in the Plague. §.8.



Amongst the other seuen accidents of this contagion (that we haue heretofore spoken of, and are alwaies permanent with the pestilent Agues) there is commonly great headach adioyned. Now to strengthen the head and braines, haue we set downe many goodly instructions and directions, in the first part, the first chapter, §. 2. and also afterwards in the headach of heate.

This potion following may you vse for the same: take *Tormentill*, burnt *Harts hoene*, red *Cozall*, and fine *Solus*, of each one dragma, prepared *Pearles* halfe a dragma, *Camfere* sower greins; beate them all together to powder, and then giue thereof the weight of a drag. tempered with *Soyrell water*. For this also serueth this *Zulep* following: take the iuice of *Baume*, of *Burrage*, *Buglosse*, *Soyrel*, and of *Cicozie*, of each one ounce and a halfe, *Rose water* and white *Vineger*, of each thre quarters of an ounce, the iuice of *Citrons* or *Lemons* halfe an ounce, *Sugar* as much as you please: sethe the *Sugar* to a sirupe, and when you will vse the same, temper it with *Barly water* vnto a *Zulep*. Or take Conserue of *Roses* sower ounces, conserue of *Buglosse* two ounces, *Species Triasantal* one ounce & a halfe, burnt *Iuory*, *Soyrell*, *Helon seedes*, peeled *Gourd seedes*, *Citron seedes*, and *Cucumber seedes* peeled, and chopt small of each one ounce and a halfe, *Sugar* one ounce, *Pearles* sower scruples, and sixe leanes of beaten gold; then temper them well together for a Confection: hereof may the patient vse as often as he will.

For this also is good the Conserues of *Burrage* and *Buglosse*, of water *Lillies*, of the iuice of *Dynges*, and all that therewith may be made.

For the vnſatiable and great thirſt. §.9.



The ſecond accident of theſe peſtilent Agues is thirſt, that by little and little getteth the vpper hand, ſo that the diſeaſed falling into a frenzies, thereby ſeeketh to leape into the water, or into Welles, thereby to coole themſelues, and quench their thirſt.

To coole the ſame, and to alay it, you maie vſe this Zulep following: Take water of Roſell, of Scabious, of water Lillies, and of Endiue, of each ſire ounces, Granada wine ſoure ounces, Vineger two ounces, the iuice of Limons two ounces and a half, white Sugar as much as you wil: ſeethe it ſo: a Zulep, & then let the patient drinke hereof as much as he thinketh good. Another: Take Bugloſſe water, and of Roſell, of each ſire ounces, water of Cicory, Endiue, and Willow leaues, of each ſower ounces, ſirupe of Citrons two ounces, ſirupe of Vineger, and of Oxyſacchara, of each one ounce, Granada wine eight ounces: let them boyle a little all together, except the Granada wine: this being clarified, put the Granada wine vnto it. In like manner is alſo good the ſirupe of Citrons, Limons, S. Johns grapes, or berries, Roſes and Endiue, being mingled with ſome cooling water: or els with Well water or Barley water. Item, Well water which hath been once diſtilled: but aboue all things that can be deuised, is nothing better to quench the thirſt, to withſtand poiſon, to comfort the hart, then the iuice of Limons or the ſame being pared, and cut in ſlices, and ſrowed ouer with Sugar, and ſo to vſe them, and to take the liquoz of them with a ſpone.

Item take Quince kernels one ounce, let them mollifie one whole night in eight ounces of Sugar water, then ſtrayne them: this being done, then temper therewith one ounce of the ſirup of water Lillies, and often times vſe it.

As ſo: the thirſt, you haue diuers remedies thereto in the third Part, the twelfth Chapter, and tenth §. which are altogether very good. And afterwards yet more, to wit, in the ſeuenty Chapter, in *Diabete*, and alſo in the deſcription of the Agues.

Of the bitterneſſe in the mouth. §.10.



The third accident is the bitterneſſe of the mouth, which proceedeth of an inflammation of the Gall, wherof we haue written more at large in theſe other places, to wit, in the third Part, the eleuenth Chapter, and ſixt §. Alſo in the ſixteenth Chapter, and tenth §. Item againe, in the third Part, the twelfth Chapter, and ſixteenth §. in which places you may reade it. All ſuch patients muſt often hold the leaues of Roſell in his mouth, or chew the ſeeds of the ſame.

We maie alſo very well holde in his mouth Gum Arabick, and ſwallow it downe by little and little.

Of the want of Appetite to meate. §.11.



The fourth accident in this Ague is the loſſe of appetite: whereas this ſickneſſe requireth that the patient in this malady, more than in any other, ſhould be fed and kept in full ſtrength and power: therefore it is needefull in this diſeaſe, that the appetite be ſtirred vp: whereof we in the third chapter, and ſixt §. and beſore that in the third Part, the eleuenth chapter, and ninth §. haue treated at length.

Eſpecially you may prepare this ſtomachicall vnguent ſo: it: Take Parmalade two ounces, Gaſtacke, Spica of Indy, Roſes, red Corall, of each one dragma, Agaricus one dragma and a halfe, beate them well all together, and then annoynt the ſtomacke therewith, or lay it on plaſterwiſe. Make alſo theſe Sugar plates following: take Parmalade made with Sugar two ounces, burnt Quoy, Gaſtacke, water Lilly flowers, and Roſes, of each one ſcruple: rub the Parmalade in a mortar with ſirupe of Citrons, and forme the cakes of the waight of halfe an ounce: then take hereof at all times, to wit, morning and euening.

Of

Of the weakenes and sleepines. §. 12.

The fift accident: Albeit we knowe well that nature grievously striveth with this maladie, and thereby is wearied, weakened, and void of all strength, that is no wonder, for that cause it is highly commaunded that men must haue especiall regards to the strength of the patient, for the which also are diuers meanes set downe howe to preserve his strength; so that it is needeles to rehearse the same at this present. Also it hath been shewed in the fift Part, the seuenteenth Chapter, and in moe other places.

Of the binding in the body. §. 13.

The first accident is the binding of the body, which is augmented by the heate. And to remedy the same are no strong things required, for strong purgations are not good in this sicknes; yet if great neede be, you haue had befoze in the seuenth §. also in the third part eleuenth Chapter, and 20. §. of the binding in the bodie diuers fit remedies, amongst which many easie and cooling purgations may be chosen; wherefoze those that will cure this sicknesse, let them beat foure ounces of *Sebestens*, and steape them in water, and then giue to the patient many times of it to drinke. But if you will haue it moze forcible, then steape with them the leaues of the lesser Juice.

Of the losse of sleepe. §. 14.

In the seuenth accident of these pestilent Agues is losse of sleepe. For this must you take Violets, water Lillie and Elecampane rootes, of each one drag. seedes of Dill and Saffron, of each one scruple; make them into powder, then binde them vp in silke, and hold it continually befoze the nose, and smell to it. But of this haue you further discourse in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter, and first §. the which you may reade ouer, and vse it for this purpose.

When a Plague sore appeareth. §. 15.

When these foresaid meanes haue bene vsed, and that there appeare a Plague sore, then must you followe such thinges, as hereafter shall be set downe: but befoze we intreate of that, it is not demaunded in vaine whence this Plague sore *Anthrax* proceedeth, and of what nature that it be: whereof the learned doe write in this manner.

Anthrax proceedeth of grosse and hot humors: which when they begin to putrifie, then doe they alter into a very hurtfull poyson: sometimes it is red, otherwhiles yellow, and sometimes blacke, which is the very worst and most venomous. For this manifesteth that nature is not strong enough to expell the venomous matter into the vtmost and furthest partes, whence of necessitie followeth, that the foresaid venomous humors are dispersed in the noble partes of the body inwardly. To remedie the same you shall begin with the letting of blood, and that vpon the same side wheras the Plague sore is: Afterwards you must vse boring and picke the same deepe, whereby the grosse blood maie bee drawen out: Lastly, you must purge the patient with some of these foresaid purgations, that are set down befoze in the seuenth §. And speciall heed is to be taken, that for this Plague sore men lye not thereon (as men vse to do in other swellings, that the matter might be repelled) but attractive things are to be vsed in this, so; to drawe the matter outwards, and that chiefly in the onely place of the Plague sore.

In like maner you must lay no hot nor moist thing thereon, that ingender matter or corruption, but rather such things as drie greatly, and are reasonable cold by nature, that they may take the heate, and hinder the vapor thereof.

But if that there appeare any rednes in any place of the bodie that would not impostumate,

mate, then are you to vse these things following : Take the inside of a Radish, the Radish leaues, Elderne floures, and Bayberies, of each halfe a handfull ; seethe them all together to pap, and then put halfe an ounce of white Mustard seade amongst it, afterwards make a soft plaister thereof, and lay it on the rednes. Item, take a black Cockrell, plucke him aliuie ouer all his belly, and then bind his belly ouer the rednes, or ouer the swelling, for the naturall warmth of the bird will draw out the venime into him. Other slit his belly aliuie, and so lay it thereon liuing. Or take a liuing Pullet, cut him by underneath, and so bind him open against the swelling : hold the head in thy hand, and so let him dye. Then shortly after take another, and do as befoze. Further, lay thereon ripening things and cure it, as the other swellings. Some lay thereon liue Frogs.

Or take beaten Tormentill and Ginger, of each alike quantitie, and put thereto as much Treacle : afterwards put it into an Dynion made hollow, and rost the same in a mild fire, or amongst the ashes : lastly, stamp it to pap, and stirre thre yolks of eggs amongst it, and then lay it thereon.

And the better to draw out the rednes and swelling, the old Physicians accustomed to make a plaister of Elderne leaues, of Scabious with the rootes, (to wit, of each alike) and to mingle the same with leauen, and so to lay it thereon.

Some do counsell also that you may temper therewith Salt, salt Peter, and Comfrey. And if you will haue it yet stronger, then are you to put pouned Mustard seade thereto, and in like manner Pigeon dung, for that draweth out the swelling exceedingly, and maketh it great, all which aforesayd things you must often cause to be renewed.

This next following hath very great force to draw out the venime : Take coles of the Willet tree, and make them glowing hot, afterwards spinkile them with wyne and vinegar : when as they are flaked, then bind them warme in a cloth that is wetted in the foresaid vinegar and wyne, and wung out againe, then lay these coles warme thereon, and when as the cloth is waren yellow, then put it away, and take another.

Item, take the rootes of Crowfoote bzused small, and apply it on the place where the paine is, and the venime shall be drawne out very much. Others do vse this thing following, which is also maruellous good to draw out the Anthrax, that is, the Plague soze. Take a great Dynion wherein Treacle is rosted (as is lately taught) or lay thereon a plaister of *Oxyrocium*, which is alwayes found readie at the Apothecaries, and temper as much *Diachilon cum gummi* thereto. You may also make this plaister of leauen, Elderne floures, and Treacle tempered together : for as it is admonished, this Treacle is aboue all other things to be commended for this sickness, both inward and outward. Also all Surgeons are here to be admonished, that they haue care to open these swellings befoze they be maturated, be it by the actuall cautery, or by incision, and that they hold open the same as long as is possible.

Item, the foresayd plaister of *Diachilon* only is also very good for to maturate and ripen it.

Or take of the common plaister *Diachilon* thre dragmes, & the iuice of Celandine, and make thereof a salue with a little waxe. Or seethe Colewortes with a little Baron, and lay that thereon, and when you see that the swelling beginneth to impostumate, then are you to vse these plaisters, salues, and other things following : Take Hollyhock rootes, Scabious, and Pallowes, as much as neede requireth, seethe it, and stamp it altogether to pap, and make thereof with Barrowes grease a mild plaister. Or temper wheate meale with Sallet oyle till it be a pap, and lay the same thereon.

Another. Take Pallowes, Hollyhock rootes, Linseede, beaten altogether, & wheaten meale, of each alike much ; seethe them altogether, and poune it to grout : then mingle it well with Saffron, & so lay it warme thereon. Now when as the swelling is once maturated, then you must open it out of hand, be it with an actuall or potentiall cautery or by incision, & so keepe the same open. In the meane time while this swelling is a healing and runneth as yet, you must dayly giue the patient a spoonfull or twaine of Scabious water, or Rose water with fine Bolus, and sometimes *De species liberantes*, that thereby the poyson may be expelled from the hart. This plaister following doth also ripen very much : Take the middlemost rinds of Elderne, stampe them very small, and temper them with white vinegar, afterwards straine them through a cloth, and put thereto white Mustard seade beaten, but not too much, for it is very sharp, and make

make a pap thereof, and lay it on the swelling. Some suppose that this swelling of the Plague doth ripen much if one rub it ouer by day and night with a Saphire stone: but they that haue powned it, and found it to be true, they may write *probatum est*.

If the Plaguesoze be of a very bad nature, then must the same be burat out of hand, or a cosine laid thereon: but if it be of no maligne nature, and not too hard, then must you vse drying things, that corrode not.

Others bind Bullets or yong Pigeons vpon it: and after that they haue set cups or Dozle- leches thereon, wherewith they intend to draw out the venome, to strengthen the part, and to alay the paine.

Some haue also for a custome, when as the Plaguesoze doth shew it selfe any where, that they make an issue with a corrosiue on some place of the patients leg, and keepe the same open, wherby all venemous matters therby might haue their course. Whē as now the Plague raig- neth throughout a whole realme or countrey, then is it no bad counsell to do the same, when the patient hath first bin purged, and the same may be done on the right leg, foure fingers broad vnder the knē, on the outside of the leg. And this also is good for them that are troubled with the Gout. You may vse also in the stead of the actuall or potentiall cautery these salues following: take *Cantharides* two ounces and a halfe (the heads and wings pluckt thereof) pounce them finall to powder, & temper it with one ounce of Barrows grease, molten ware, and hony, of each halfe an ounce, Campher and Dragon bloud, of each a drag. and a half. This being well mingled, you must then spread thereof as much as will couer halfe a Doller vpon a cloth, and lay it ouer the place where the Plaguesoze appeareth, and it will in fise or seuen howyes draw a blister, then open the same that the matter may run out. This being done, let not the patient sleepe in ten or twelue howyes, nor drinke wine in thre dayes. And so: as much as through these accidents there is commonly great anguish and paine, then you must for alaying thereof vse this potion: take Treacle and Phithydate, of each halfe a drag. iuice of Scabious foure ounces, temper them all together, and giue it the patient to drinke moztely warme.

Now for to kill the Plaguesoze: Take two or thre yolks of new layd Eggs, and temper therewith about halfe an ounce of powned salt, and lay it thereon new euery quarter of an houre. This reiterating must so often be done, because these plaisters are infected themselves through the venome, specially when the soze is broken. And if this be not ynough, then take therewith Scabious, Comfrey, and Pallowes, of each as much as you please, and thereof make a plaister. And if that the soze would corrode further, then take fine Bolus, Dragon bloud, Vineger, Rose water, and the whites of eggs, as much as you please, and spread or lay the same plaisterwise round about the soze.

Another. Take soote of the chimney, beaten salt, Sage, and wheat that is chued in the mouth, of each alike much, and make a plaister thereof with black Sope. And if so be that this Plague- soze will not be killed through these foresaid things, then put thereto some Scabious and Com- frey, and then cleanse afterward the soze with *Mundificatium de Apio*. Take Louage, one ounce, Barly meale two ounces, seethe them together in water to pap, and put thereto Sallet oyle. You must also often wash this Plague soze, to wit, with water of *Cardus Benedictus*, for that denseth and healeth. These vlcers do many times spread wide abrode, whereby the flesh about it is spoyled: for this, you must vse stronger remedies, as the salue of Egypt, *Mercurium precipi- tatum*, or that which is better, burning with an hot yron or gold, wherby all putrifying is taken away, and the part fortified: for the actuall cautery is an effectuall remedie that strengtheneth the parts that be of a cold nature, and both defend them from putrifaction. Some also do scarify the vlcers round about with a razor, and then spread fine Treacle therein. But as the black edges of these vlcers increase, notwithstanding all these applications, then is it a signe that this venome is very strong, wherefore must you burne it deeper, and annoynt the escarres with swete Butter, or with pap of Hollyhock rotes, or of Pallowes and Butter together. But whē the swelling or vlcers do yeld matter, then you must lay no more maturatiues thereon, that thereby the matter augment not, and the healing be the more hindered. Lastly, you must haue care to ingender flesh and skin, whereof we will write and treat further in their due place.

When as this Anthrax or Plague soze is thozowly kild, then take Scabious, Comfrey, of each a handfull, and a little salt, then temper it together with fresh Barrowes grease, and lay it warme thereon, and change it new thre or foure times in a day and night.

Another. Take Scabious foure handfulls, Treacle one ounce, Barrowes grease one ounce and a halfe, stamp the herbs and make a plaister thereof, and refresh it often, euen as is afoze said. You are to cense the blcers with salue of Turpentine, iuice of Scabious, and the yolks of Eggs, especially when all other accidents are past. This plaister following is also especiall good: Take greene Rue one handfull, leauen halfe an ounce, Pepper one dragme, Salt a dragme and a halfe, thꝛe oꝛ foure dry figs, poune them all well together, and make a plaister thereof, and refresh it twice a day. It is of a wonderfull operation, foꝛ it will separate the bad flesh from the good, and that in the space of two dayes.

When these swellings come to impostumate, and haue neede of clensing, then are you to vse the salue *De Apio*, and therewithall you may pꝑare these things following: Take Turpentine (that hath bin often washed with water and Scabious) one ounce, Saffron seuen greines, and temper amongst it the yolks of two Eggs.

Use this thing following to cense and to ingender new flesh: Take Turpentine that is washed with the iuice oꝛ water of Scabious foure ounces, Barly meale one ounce, two yolks of Eggs, Saffron *Sarcocolla*, Pastick, and Frankincense, of each halfe a drag. temper it all together.

Thirdly, take small beaten *Sarcocolla* halfe an ounce, and hony of Roses as much as neede requireth foꝛ to make a mild salue thereof, and vse it so long till it be thoroughly whole. foꝛ this also may you see what hath bin written in the sixt part the first Chapter 16. S. And further in the sixt part the seuenth Chapter and 14. S. where this matter hath bin treated of at large.

When as there is no Plague fore perceiued. §. 16.



If then there appeareth no Anthꝛax oꝛ Plaguesoze, and yet neuertheles the pulse and the vꝛine sufficiently shewed that a pestilent feuer were at hand, and that the patient by reason of his age and power may suffer well the letting of blood, then must his L yuer vaine be opened in the right arme. Other do counsell when as the Ague endureth, and his strength good, that the *Salmatella* on his left hand should be opened, and to let out foure ounces of blood.

For letting of blood in the Plague. §. 17.



We haue befoze declared that amongst all other remedies foꝛ this swelling, the letting of blood is beneficiall, but to the end when neede requireth it be not omitted, you shall obserue these instructions following. When as after sweating you finde that any thing appeare (be it a black blister, oꝛ any thing else) and that the patient is aboue thirtene yeres old and be strong, then must you let him blood on the same side, and vnderneath the swelling, and make a good issue that the blood may issue foꝛth the better. If the swelling appeare behind the eares, which the Physicians do call *Parotidas*, oꝛ *Gemellos*, euen as we in the first part the 9. Chapter 4. S. haue shewed, then must you open the head vaine on the same side in the arme, and if it will not blæde, then must you open that vaine in the other arme. If the swelling appeare in the arme pits, on the bꝛest, oꝛ on the ribs, then must you open his L yuer vaine in the arme on the same side. Some giue counsell that there should be put thereto thꝛe oꝛ foure Leaches one holwe after, that they might suck out a good deale of that venemous blood. But if this Anthꝛax oꝛ Plaguesoze be any where about the pꝛiuities oꝛ in the groines, then must you let him blood in the vaine vpon the fote, oꝛ betwene the great Toe and the next vnto it. And if that will not blæde, then must you open the vaine in the other fote, and let out moze oꝛ lesse according to the age and the abilitie of the patient. Some also haue annoynted the swelling behind the eares with Vens grease: afterwards you must giue him in the confection *Philonium persicum*, yet at all times by the counsell of a learned Physician: also in like manner the *Trocisci de Carobe*, and herewith we will conclude.

The

The government of life in the Plague. §. 18.



As much as first belongeth to the meate: you must note, that it is not w^odesfull that one n^ode not in a pestilentiall feuer to forbear meate, as in other hot and strong Agues, as in the Plurisie, or continuall Ague, and other such like: but the neede requireth here, that there may be often giuen to the patient (yea as some suppose euery th^o or foure howres) to eat and drinke in the time of the Plague. And it hath in dede bene found, that all those that haue forced themselves to eat, were much sooner cured then the other; wherefore do they well, that sate such a patient often with light meates that are dry and cold by nature, whereby they may withstand the heate of the ague by their cold, and the moisture of the bad and stymie humors by their dryth. These are strayned Pease, Barly pap, Oaten pap, Haskell nuts, Capon broth, Hen broth, or of any other pong flesch, wherewith Buglosse, Bourage, and such like herbs are sodden, whereof you may make *Panadella* with grated bread. And it is to be generally noted, that you may dresse all his meate with sowe things, as with Vineger, Meriuce, iuice of Limons, and such like. But if the fresh broth be too swete, then may you therewith temper two yolks of eggs, which are first to be beaten with Rose vineger, and so make thereof a sowlissh broth. All sowe things are also good for it, for that they prouoke appetite, which presently is taken away in these Agues by the putrifaction in these diseases, which specially febleth the stomack, in so much as very often they are addicted to vomit, whereby the patient will also be weakened; for if the patient can keepe no meate in his stomack, then can the bodie retaine no nourishment of the meate that is taken. But to returne againe to the wholesome meate for the plague, there are also good small Damask Prunes, conserues of Cherries, conserues of Raspes, and such like. Also all gr^oene herbs are to be stewed, to wit, Bourage, Lettice, Sorrell, with a little beaten Saunders added thereto. The iuice of Limons, of Oranges, and of Citrons, is a speciall sauce for all his meates.

The most commodious drinke that he may drinke is Barly water, with iuice of Limons, Oranges, Sorrell, Pomegranates, or tempered with the sirupe of the same. Also it may be sodden like a Zulep, and the sirupe tempered amongst it. The common sort may sethe amongst it Berberies, Sorrell with the rootes, or Quinces chopt small. But when the patient is weary of this drinke, then may he vse a draught of Almond milke, or thin Beere; and he may also drinke for this sickness well water tempered with Rose vineger. Distilled waters, as the water of *Carduus Benedictus*, Sorrell, Bourage, or water of Buglosse, are very good for him. Item, water wherein vnripe Grapes are sodden, or mixed with veriuce: also the sirupes of Roses, of water Lillies, Violets, and of Citric, and their Zuleps, are much commended for this sickness. And with all these foresayd meates and drinks is *Manus Christi* prepared with Berles for this maladie much commended. Item, conserue of Violets, of Roses, of Gilloflonnes, and specially conserues of Cuckowbread, taking the bignes of a Walnut of it.

Contrarywise, the patient must utterly forsake wyne, and all meates that are drest with Spices. fish, Pilke, and all rost meate is hurtfull vnto him, and after meate the patient must keepe himselfe very quiet.

Of a conuenient ayre for the Plague. §. 19.



The ayre that is good for such sick folkes, must be cold and dry, because the sickness requireth all cole things, and that by the drowth all putrifaction may be withstode. Wherefore must the chamber (as it is sayd) be sprinkled with Rose water, and with Vineger wherein Saunders and Camfer are tempered. Item, the chamber must be sprinkled with all cold and fragrant herbs and floures, and in case there be any bad sauors or vapours in the chamber, then are the fuming candles or odoriferous cakes to be vsed, whereof we haue largely w^oritten before, and shewed how they are to be made. Besides these, it is also good counsell that there be kept a good fire burning in the same house, to wit, of Juniper wood, or any other swete wood. But if so be there be no bad ayre in the patients chamber, then are you not to kindle any fire in that chamber, but rather vse any cold and odoriferous things; and you may hang clothes that are made wet in Rose water or Rose vineger, and wung out againe here and there about his bed or couch.

How they shall gouerne themselves that escape this Sicknes §. 20.



So for all them that recouer from this Plague or any other lingering sickness, all things are good that strengthen the stomacke, and prouoke appetite to meate, and mildly open the body, as these confectiōs following: Take *Mirabolani Chebuli, Indi, Rubarb, Cinnamom, Cardus Benedictus,* and Clones, of each one dragma, Pistliche a quarter of an ounce, Aloe three dragmes; mingle them all together with the iuice of spints wherein halfe a dragma of Agariche hath bene steeped, then take thereof morning and euening the bignes of a Chestnut. For this may you also loke the foresaid third chapter, and twelfth §. where you may find a further discourse of these causes: and further if it be needful (as is rehearsed) then loke into the second part the eleuenth chapter, where touching these things a perfect direction is giuen.

The seuenteenth Chapter.

An exhortation for them that keepe these Patients.



First, they that assist and keepe them that are infected with the Plague, must haue care that the patient be laid vpon a high couch or bed, that the venemous damps and stench may rest aboue and be the lesse hurtfull to the standers by. And it were also not amisse that there be a burning fire alwaies betwene the patient and the standers by. If there be a chimney in the chamber, then loke what is spoken thereof before.

Secondly, when one commeth nere or toucheth the patient, then must his mouth be kept close shut, and draw his breath onely at his nose. He shall annoynt his nostrils with wine wherewith fine Treacle is tempered. The standers by are also to vse every other day the Plague pills every time a dragma, or a dragma and a halfe. He must also take oftentimes Sythiate.

Thirdly, fine Solus p̄serueth men from all infection of the plague if a dragma and a halfe of it be taken with Wine and Rose water.

Fourthly, if you take as much of the golden Eg as the bignes of an Hasell nut one day one, and another day another: to wit, pills or any such like, and so forth. All they that dist them that be sicke of the plague must wash their mouthes with Wineger, wherin Willowmeadow and Rue is sodden, before he come at them, and eate some Carlick with a bit of bread. Further, they shall alway hold a Pomander in their hand before their nose.

All what is described in the beginning of the Plague, to wit, how the healthie are to gouerne themselves with them that haue the plague, is also verie requisite for this purpose.

All that is hitherto set forth for this disease are very passing and good meanes, which God through his gracious godnes hath ordained and created for the good and welfare of man, wherefore he will of vs for these his benefitts be praised, and be acknowledged for the onely Whisition both of the bodie and of the soule: and therefore we ought especially to pray vnto him for his blessings, and thanke him for the gifts receiued: for without him all Whisicke is in vaine, and of no effect.

The eighteenth Chapter.

Of the Scuruie, Scorbuticus Morbus.



The Scuruie which is called in Latine *Icteria nigra*, or *Scorbuticus Morbus*, is none other but a spreading abroad of melancholike humours throughout the whole body, chiefly caused & proceeding of the obstruction of the spleene. These sicknesses are for the most part incident vnto them that leade an idle life, and feede on grosse meates and drinckes.

They that are burthened with this disease haue commonly a bleake and leadish colour, their breath stinkt with an oppression at the hart, and a lost appetite, wearisomnes of the whole bodie, the gums are blew and swollen,

swollen, quickly prouoked to blæde and putrifie; otherwhiles blew o2 grænish spots ouer all th^e body, stiffenes in the knæes, and most commonly they haue blacke small speckles like fleabits vpon the shins, and aboue that their v2ine is commonly browne red.

Thus to cure this sicknesse the patient is first to receiue an easie purgation, as the potion made of *Decoſtum laxatiuum*, of *Benedicta laxatina*, o2 of Sene leaues: this being done, then may one open his Median vaine and let him blæd well, if he otherwise be full enough of blood.

The next day after you must prepare for him this græne potion following, whereof he must every day th2e o2 sower times take a good draught: to wit, in the morning and befoze none one time, after dinner two times, and after supper and going to bed a good draught more.

Take *Becabunga* and *Watercresses*, of each two handfuls, stampe them in a stone o2 wooden mortar to pay, powze thereto a pinte of wine, and a pinte of small bëre: afterwards stir them all together, and straine them thozough a cloth, then gine thereof to the patient to d2inke as is abovesaid: and you must continue this till that the patient be thozow whole.

Another. Take the rootes of *Holeradish*, which is called *Raphanus sylvestris*, as much as you thinke good, grate the same, o2 beat it smal to pay, and powze vnto it the moytie Whay of milke, and the other halfe Rhenish wine, o2 you may take some small bëre as much as you please, and then mingle it with stamped *Holeradishes*: afterwards straine it thozow a cloth, and d2inke thereof th2e o2 sower times a day, as is abovesaid.

Item, take *Scurry* grasse two handfuls, o2 as much as you please, stampe it to grout in a stone o2 wooden mortar, temper it with as much small bëre and wine as you thinke mete, o2 after as you can d2inke it, for the stronger the better: lastly, straine it thozow a cloth, and d2inke thereof as aboue.

And if it come to passe, that in this sicknes of the Scurby, the gums of the patients mouth were bitterly spoled and putrified: then wash the mouth with wine, and annoynt the gums with srupe of Mulberries, and with hony of Roses; and if nede so required, then must you annoynt your gums with the salue of Egypt, called *Unguentum Egyptiacum*. This may suffice for the cure of the Scuruie.

The nineteenth Chapter.

Of the detestable sicknes, Dronkenesse.

I will perchance offend the gentlemen drunkards, that I haue here put their sicknes of dronkennes after the infectious Plague, and Agues, and that I haue compared their sicknes to those: but I wil omit here the losse of euerlasting life, disuaine of humanity, and credite, consumption of two2ldy wealth, strife, murther, blasphemy of God, disclosing of secrets, whoredome, and many more vngodly wo2kes that ensue thereof: wherefoze we will here onely treat of the hurt that the body may hereby take thereof, and let other iudge afterwarde, whether this sicknes bee not worse than the Ague, yea worse than the Plague it selfe. For *Salomon* speaketh not in vaine, that Drunkennes hindereth al wisdoome, which cannot be otherwise confirmed than that it maketh a man a foole; darkeneth it not the vnderstanding: infæbleth it not the b2aines, the memozy, & al the senses: b2ingeth it not more so2getfulnes with it, than is perceiued in yong children: Behold only how the hands, the fæte, the head, yea the whole body tremble and quake, how the sight is darkened, the t Wong stammereth, and how that there is not one member of the bodie that is able to discharge his duety aright, yea, say they, this sicknes hath neither nede of the Phisitions no2 Apothecaries counsell, make thereof as waightly a sicknes as you can, it may be helpen with a berie pleasant medicine, that is with a swæte sleape. Whereto I say and answer: Oh good drunkard, there followeth with the time some other thing thereof, to wit, that thereby the good complexion of your liner is spoled, so that it doth not ingender any good blood, but other bad humors, whereby the Dropsie afterwards ensueth, o2 it doth so inflame the same with his flames, that the whole body will be filled with *Cholera*, that lastly spoyleth and freth the whole masse of blood, whereof then is caused fearefulness, frightings, speaking in the sleape, heavy dreames, the losse of all good colour, of naturall sæde, vnfruitfulness, leprosie, and lastly, a madnes it selfe.

Item,

Item, the Palley, lithargie, the falling sicknes, and diuers such cold diseases. Is there not prouoked thorough this drunkennes a corruption of the stomacke: the parbaking of limy and grosse humors: weakening of all the members: the gout: and to conclude, an untimely death: so that it hath beene scene, that some in their drunkennes haue remained dead. Who is it then that doth not take this drunkennes and swelling or gulling, for the most contagious, perillous, and sodeinest sicknes: wherefore to helpe this extream sicknes, there is no certainer nor speedier remedy, than *Sobrietas*, which is sobriety, and fasting or abstinence: and albeit that this receipt seeme to be altogether bitter, sower and vnpleasant for these Ale knights, yet notwithstanding it will expell the foresaid malady, it sharpeneth the vnderstanding and wits, it maketh a good stomacke, whereby good blood is ingendred, and bringeth to the body none other but health. I conceale that it strengtheneth the vitall spirits of all healthy bodies, causeth godlines to serue their creator, to seeke his glorie in holines and righteousness, and to obey his commandements.

Whereas then some haue so weak a stomack that they of necessitie are constrained to drinke wine: notwithstanding are so feeble of brayne that how soberly soeuer they drinke it, it disturbeth their heads and maketh them drunken. For this purpose may these things following be vsed: to wit, iuice of Quinces, or raw Quinces well chewed, and the iuice taken downe: like wise the iuice of Citrons, & Limons, or of their sirups, do hinder drunkennes: Honey is also much commended if it be taken after much drinking of wines: for thereby will the vapors of the wine be so dyuen downwardes, that it cannot weaken the vnderstanding nor the braynes. Bitter Almonds confected, conserues of Gilloflowers: after that you haue drunken much, do prevent drunkennes. In the olde time men did make a Garland of Saffron flowers & did weare it on their heads: the same vertue is ascribed to the blewe Violets. And it is said that white Coleworts cut into sallads and the same eaten, or the seeds thereof chewed in the mouth should hinder drunkennes: for the iuice of Coleworts, or the pith of the stalkes doth stay the vapors of the wine from ascending into the head. The pretious stone Amethyst should also preserve men from drunkennes.

But for to defend and prevent all contagions that proceed of drunkennes, we will adde some things more. First, he must be vged to vomit with Drymel of squils, with Radoth sode, with a feather dipped in oyle and put into the throte, and thereupon he must fast & sleepe: and after he awaketh againe, you must froth his members, to wit, his hands, and feete, with warme water wherein is sodden, Roses, Cammomill, and a little Salt, and tempered with some oyle of Violets, whereby the vapors may be drawn downwardes.

Item, lay a cloth vpon the head that is made wet with the iuice of Cucumbers, Purslaine, or in any of their waters: the patient must keepe himselfe herein very sober, & vse lights meates, Coleworts, Lentils, yong Pullets, and yong Pigeons dressed with the iuice of Limons, and Pomegranates: the prepared and confected Cozlander is also verie good, and sleeping thereupon untill that all the wine be digested, which may be scene by the concoction of the wine. It chaunceth oftentimes that drunken folkes haue great thirst, which if it cometh not through the abundance of wine, then giue them faire fountaine water to drinke, and sower fruits to eate.

You haue also an especiall thing in the first part, the twelfth chapter, and sower S. which is good for drunkennes, and thirst after drunkennes. There is also a great difference in drunkennes, and that according to the nature of them that are drunken.

He that is Sanguine doth sing, daunce, laugh, and is merrie: he may be compared to children that sone laugh, and for the most part know not why no: wherefore: and when as a long time they haue bene merrie, then begin they to sleepe till that they haue slept it out.

The Cholericke man is in his drunkennes angrie, raging, clamorous, addicted to fighting, and will not be corrected nor admonished of any body, one cannot bring them to bed, they haue much babling, and are much bragging.

The *Phlegmatici*, they will be weary, lasie, sleepe, and keepe themselves quiet.

The *Melancholici* are sorrowfull, bewaile sometimes their sinnes, their friends diseale, and that is the greatest imperfection of their drunkennes: they are therein like to the Apes, but in this they are all alike, that they stammer with their tong, they raile, and tarrie not by their right wits.

How hurtfull also drunkennes is, both appeare in many places of this our booke of Physicke, where

where we admonish al men to refrayn it, & that not only of this vnmearurable dzinking, wherof we now make mention, but also where all expert Phisitions doe forbid wine. And we will fo; a conclusion adde this to the rest, that the Rape wine and Bære wine dzunken after meate, doth make one moze dzunken and slepie, then any other kinde of Whennish wine. And it is a common opinion that watered wine doth soner infect the head, then pure wine. But this is to be vnderstood of grosse and thicke wine, which by the putting to of a little water is the moze subtiler, whereby the vapo; soner fumeth into the head.

You haue also many remedies befoze in the first part and first chapter, eight S. that are com-
mofious fo; the paine of the head thzough dzunkennes.

The twentieth Chapter.

Of Frighting and Feare.



Et no man wonder that we speake of Frighting amongst other sicknesses; fo; it is not onely found by experience, that thzough many soxes of distemperature of the blood many sundry sicknesses are prouoked, but also a sodaine death it selfe: whereof commeth not onely the afozementioned, but also thereby is caused an inestimable feare and faintnes of hart, whereby they become most vnfit fo; all woorthy and knightly pzoewesse, and are depziued of all counsell and indeuours. Of this fainthartednes and feare, the Philosophers doe write, that the same fo; the most part do raigne and dwell in the hart of such, as are of a cold nature, which being sodainly and hastily set vpon, their subtillest blood runneth with such a streame to the inward parts of the body, and towards the hart, that it seemeth, that the naturall heat should be suffocated; wherby commeth such bleaknes and quaking, yea sometimes swoonings, debility of the sinewes and muscles, that it makes frighted persons very feeble and weake, whereby also the motions of the muscles are so disturbed, that both ozdure & vaine slides from them, their teeth chatter fo; cold, they are thirsty, and the whole body shivering and shaking.

fo; this are two principall and also certaine remedies (euen as *Horatius* saith) to wit, that one shall build a wall of Steele about him, that is, shall alwaies haue an vpright conscience, that cannot accuse him of any misdealing. Secondly, that he feare God, and haue righteousnes alwaies befoze his eyes: which medicines doe so free men of all frighting, that (like as *Dauid* saith) it will alwaies go well with him: and know fo; certaine that God of his godnes hath with his holy Angels (as it were a strong towre) compassed him round about, whereby hee will defende him.

But the faintnes of hart is also to be holpen with naturall medicines. Note therefore, that when the blood thzough frighting is stirred, and runneth towards the hart (as it in dede happeneth) then must of necessity the trembling and quaking follow after it: fo; which you haue in the second part, the first chapter, and seuenth S. a very good Eldern water, and many other things described. When a woman with childe (especially) is frighted, then do some bid, that there should be taken a quarter of an ounce of clarified hony, and therewith some scraped Putmeg, and so eat it all together.

Wine moderately dzunken, maketh the fearfull and faint-harted men, stout and courageous.

And it is a common custome, if any be soze frighted, that he be admonished to make water, and if there be anie that after such frighting can come hardly to himselfe, and fell into a swoone, then is he to vse things that strengthen the hart, fo; which there are many remedies described in the second part, the first chapter, and first S. and also afterwards in the description of the hart.

The 21. Chapter.

Of Trembling.



As much as the trembling or quaking is a signe or token of feare, (yea so; the most part is caused thereby.) therefore it might be needefull to write somewhat amply thereof: But we haue made in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter, and twelfth §. a long discourse thereof, and there with also shewed that this is a disease of the Braines.

Also, of the trembling and panting of the hart, hath bene spoken at large in the second Part, the first Chapter, from the third §. unto the first §. Wherefore I doe suppose, that it were needeles to discourse any further thereof at this present.

The 22. Chapter.

Of the impediments that come of Fals.



As to what diseases men may fall, by fals, stumblings, blowes, pinches, and such like, is sufficiently knowen to all men: whersof we haue also written in diuers places, and especially in the second Part, the first Chapter, of the vomiting of blood: and also in the eighteenth §. of the clotted blood, where very good remedies are described, and therefore here are but a few declared. But if any be abused much through a fall, then haue the Chirurgians a speciall experiment, that they speedily slep off the skin of a Leather, the which they must lay warme roundabout the abused or wrenched member, and keepe it warme, and this should helpe in one day.

Brimstone sodden in strong wine, is also very good: In like maner, pouned Carlick tempered with Barrowes grease.

Item take Bran of Rye neale, the rootes of *Ebulu*, of each a like quantity, sethe them together in a little Vineger, and so binde it vpon the wrenched or abused part.

There was once a childe fallen out of his Cradle, who thereby had got a swelling on his arme; which was healed by annointing it with the oyle and salue of Roses.

For this also doe serue all golden and waters of life, principally if any swelling were at hand, the same waters broken and layd vpon the abused member, and annoynted, both heale. And if the dead Palsey or falling sickness ioyne with it, then looke into the first Part, the twelfth Chapter, in the end of the thirtieth §. where are shewed some good remedies commodious for this purpose.

And if the ioynts be remoued from their naturall places, then reade the description of the Crokebacke, in the second Part, the fourth Chapter, and second §. In like manner also of the dislocation in the fourth Part, the seventh Chapter, and first §. where verie good remedies are described.

The end of the sixt part.

The

The seuenth Part of this Booke speaketh of certaine
Poysons, Venoms, Plants, Metals, and
of Beasts.



The miserable life of Man is not subiect to sickenes and diseases enough, as well inwardly as outwardly, but there must be diuers venomous things to hurt and annoy the same, which are almost amongst al creatures, and with such hurtfull qualitie indued that they bereaue men of their liues, some soner, and some later. But God of his godnes hath ordained innumerable and wholsome meanes for it, and that almost in the smallest creatures, as in Herbes, Rootes, Earths, and other: amongst which the simplest in sight haue otherwhiles the most vertue to resist the strongest poyson; preserving both man and beast from death, euen as hereafter may be seene in many places, which ought to admonish vs

to praise and thanke God almightie for our health, and to acknowledge him for to be the fountaine of all godnes. And to speake and treat thereof in this our Booke of Physicke we purpose to rehearse them in this seuenth Part, wherein shall be onely admonished of such poysons as are knownen in Germany and (as one may speake) are euerie day before our eyes. For what poysons are or may be found in the East, and in Aphyrica, it were superfluous to speake of them at this present. We will part these poysons or venims into three kindes; whereof the first shall be the vegetables, as Herbs, Rootes, Plants, Seeds, Juices, & such like. The second sort are the venomous Beasts. The third sort are certaine Beasts, and whatsoeuer else commeth from them, whereby men are harmed; so that the sum of this seuenth Part consisteth in two things. First, to know al the venims wherby heed may be taken to eschue them. Secondly, if it so chance that any one haue taken any of them unwittingly, or were ministred vnto him by another; how that one may helpe him, & shew how that venome might be withstood, and how to ertinguish his deadly qualitie. For it is very needefull that euery Physitian or houtholder be prouided with good remedies against all manner of venim, whereby he as sone as neede requireth, may haue somewhat in readines that he may minister against the venime so taken. For in all such causes there serueth no delay; as there be but a few venomes of beasts and other, which if they be not remedied out of hand, do so infect that afterwards they remaine irremediable, as we haue also shewed in other places.

And therefore must we match and mete with these venomous and hurtfull things, imitating the first rule, if any man be poysoned by meate or drinke, then is a vomit the principallest remedy. And if he haue receiued any venome through thrusts or biting, then must you set cups or bores with pricking thereon, scarifieng or cauterizing the sound flesh about the wounds, and at the last if need be cut off the whole ioynt or member. And those thrusts and bits are to be cured by some iniection and application, so to hinder the violence & operation of the poyson. The poyson taken inwardly is subdued through tart and sharpe wine, and other meanes: and lastly, through purging, sweating, and such like, as hereafter shall be taught. Regard is also to be had of the qualitie of the venome, and of the strenght of them that haue taken it; that the strongest poysons may be expelled with the strongest remedies; and the smallest venomes with mild medicines and remedies. Also regard must be had to the time of the yere, and to the age of the poysoned person. This is nowe brieely prefixed for a Preface, we will nowe procede to the remedies.

The first Chapter.

Of all those things that are good against Poyson.



Al that by the learned may be vsed against Ppyson, that shall here be described and specified; and we will shew and name those things that are well knowen, and easily gotten. For what may it profit vs to counsell any man to take the gall of an Olyphant, the blood of a Crocodile, and the eggs of a Loztoyle in the sea? First, Meriuiue (which is of himselfe good alone) or a sirupe made thereof, is verie good, for it withstandeth all Poyson.

The rootes of Valerian, browne Betony, and Rue, of each a dragma, taken with wine, is also good against Poyson. Conserues of Gilloflowers and their wine are also good for the same: the Beuercob, the conserues and wine of Burrage do also withstand poyson. In like manner also the iuice and the sirupe of Citrons, and all that is made thereof.

Cardus Benedictus leaues are also maruellous good against all venome (it is said that *Fredericke the Emperoꝝ* was the first that brought the same herbe out of *Exce* into *Germanie*) for the iuice, water, pouder, and seed of it are all good against poyson.

Fennell seede is also much commended, Sealed earth (if it be right) is of all Pphitions accounted for; a noble medicine agaynst all venome.

Peucedanus and wilde Kabbith are also much commended.

Wine of Harts tong is also vsed for the same, albeit the auncient Pphitions doe make no mention thereof.

The Conserues of Elderne flowers is also very good, and is accounted a Conserue for the common people.

The Conserues of Hyssope, and the wine of the same, both also contende with venime.

Pep, Comin, and Caraway, are moze stronger then the Fennell seede. *Agaricum* is good if a man will purge.

Angelica is of all Pphitions accounted good against all manner of venim, and recommended by the name *Aserpitium*.

Cringus withstandeth all venim. The Oleander which the Grækes call *Nerion* and *Rhododendron* is also commended. The long Hartwozt is also good. Rue hath an especiall efficacye against all poyson: and in like manner the seeds of wild Rue; Rosemarie is also praised of some; the learned write not any thing thereof. *Sagapenum* and *Serapinum* is also accounted good for it.

Wormewood, and all that is made of Wormewood is marvellous good against all venim. The compounded things that are commodious against all venim shall hereafter followe.

An exhortation for all those that are afraide to be Poysoned. §.2.



Auncient Pphitions were wont to haue an olde Prouerbe, and to say, that *Uenom* is so proud that it dwelleth commonly in Gold and Siluer: whereby they ment that great personages that eate and drinke out of Gold and Siluer, are in greater daunger to be poysoned then the common people that do eate and drinke out of earthen dishes; wherefore must such high personages that are afraide to be poysoned, diligently take heed of the meats and drinke that they eate, and that are dyest of diuers things.

Also they must not take too much of all swæte, salt, and sower drinckes; and they must not eate too eagerly nor too hastily, and they must at all times haue great regard of the first taste of their meate and drinke.

But the most surest way is, that befoze the meale tide he take somewhat that may resist venim, as Figs, Rue, or Spits, each by himselfe or tempered together. The Citrons, Kape seede,

ppp.

pepe, or any of those that are described before, the waight of a dragma taken with wine, now one and then another, is verie much commended. Somtimes also two figs with a little salt, then againe Pithidate or Treacle, and such like moe may be vse before the mealtide.

When any bodie perceiueth that he hath taken
Poyson. §.3.



It if one be sure and perceine, or certainly knowe that he hath taken Poyson, then must there be no long disputing what is to be done: for in case that one wil be long a counselling what shal be done: then will the venime in the mean time infect his blood and other vitall parts: whereby the partie may be neglected, and afterwards also remaine incurable. Therefore must the common means be vsed (as is said before) to prouoke him to vomite and cast, and that through the taking of luke warme water tempered with Sallet oyle or with swete Butter.

There are here and there in this Booke diuers remedies expessed, whereby vomiting is to be furthered, which may be vsed for this purpose, and you may seeke for them in the Table. And as sone as the patient hath vomited, then are you to cause him to haue a loose and open bodie, which may sone be brought to passe with a strong clister, whereby the remaining sharpenes of the venin, that might remaine behind in the stomack, or in the bowels, might be dzinen out and expelled.

The signes when one is Poysoned. §.4.



Beit that the signes of those that be poysoned, and the nature of the Poyson taken, or the biting of a venemous beast are diuers (as shall hereafter be more at large declared:) neuerthelesse cannot it not be but god and requisite to comprehend them all vnder one. First, they get a vehement paine in the stomacke, in the belly, and in the bowels, paine of the liuer, the kidneies, and the bladder. Often they get a hoarlines, gnawing and biting, shivering, cold, dummes, and conuulsion of the finewes, feblenes of the pulse, the Lethargie, swimming of the head, darkenes of sight, and a shortnes of breath, yea that they seme to choke, great thirst, bleeding, lacke of appetite, great heat, great feblenes of the face, losse of vnderstanding, of might, & moe such like symptomes; yet herby cannot sufficiently be knowne the nature of the poyson that hath bene taken. For example, if any man hath taken *Cantharides* (which are Spanish Flies) he getteth diseases in the tong, in the stomacke, and in the kidneies, the bladder is inflamed, he can scarcely make water, to wit, without infinite paine, blood, and great sharpnes. The Caterpillers of the fir tree called *Buprestes*, and the *Salumandra*, do also cause these foresaid accidents.

Item, all those that haue taken *Opium* doe fall into a verie deepe sleepe, or altogether into a maladie, that is called *Lethargus*, to wit, the sleepe sicknes, they get bleake spots, they ware sluggish, cold and stiffe, and are depriued of all their senses.

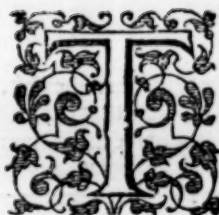
The like chaunceth to them that haue taken the iuice of *Mandragora*, or the iuice of *Hemlocke*.

The Henbane seed maketh men not only foolish and raging, but as it were mad, or as if they had taken *Aconitum*: they be not onely choked that haue taken *Aconitum*; but also those that do take Lead stoles, Ceruse, Cippes, and Dre blood: but (as it is saide) we shall hereafter further discourse and admonish at large of this matter.

Here we will most of all treat of those Poysons especially that growe, and whatsoeuer else proceedeth thereof, and ad vnto them their Latine and Graeke names.

The second Chapter.

Of the venemous Plants and such like.



The *Mandragora* is not otherwise called in Latin nor in Græke, and is by god reason placed amongst the venims, for that by her nature which is cold in the third degré, it doth choke one: and when one taketh too much of the iuice, then causeth it a sleepe vnto death. It is also very dry, yet may with discretion the waight of one dragma be giuen thereof as neede requireth: for the learned write, that if any man be too sore frighted or feared, so that he must be cut or burnt, then must there be giuen one drag. of this roote vnto him, and he shall then fall into so deepe a sleepe, that he shall thre or foure howres long remaine vnsensible, in which space the Chirurgion haue time ynough to do their worke.

But what the Toothawners or Pountibanks do with this roote of *Mandragora*, (making the people beleue that they growe vnder the gallowes of the vyne of the hanged thæurs, hauing the forme of a man) is knowne to all men.

Penbane is called of the Grækes *Hyscyamus*, and at the Apothecaries *Insquiamus*, which is almost as much to say as hogs beanes, and that by reason that this herbe is a deadly popson for swyne, if they be not presently well washed, and drinke much, or do eate Creuets, which haue a special operation against this popson.

This Penbane is of thre kinds, the one hath red floures and black seede: the second hath yellow floures and yellow seedes, and are both by their very cold nature venemous: the third hath white floures and white seede, and is also cold to the third degré, which of the Physicians is very aptly vsed in some causes: but if you cannot get the white, then take the yellow, and leaue the black. You may make of the new seede a iuice, which is dyed in the Sunne, but it may not be kept aboute one yere. When you haue taken this iuice, then will it make one frantick, and as he were dronken, but by certaine medicines the same will quickly alway. You must take therefore the milke of an Asse, or in stead thereof Goats milke or Cow milke.

Item, Hony water is very good for it, if he drinke much thereof: when you are weary thereof, then ceasse, and then drinke againe afresh. Water wherein Figs were sodden, is also very good for this. Cucumber seedes or Bingles sodden in wyne and so vsed, are good for this purpose. Item, wyne that is somewhat salted, and tempered with Barrowes grease is also not ill.

Item, there is very commodious for it Pettie seede, Cicorie rootes, white Mustard seede, Cresses, Radishes, Dinyons, or Garlick, any one of these taken with wyne, and then afterwards the patient layd to sleepe, euen as one that is dronken.

Coziander is a knowne seede, called in Latin *Coriandrum*, and in Græke *Corion*, or *Coriannon*. The learned haue diuers opinions of it, *Dioscorides* writeth, that it is cold, but *Galenus* and his followers doth reiect this opinion, and sayth, that it is hot, or at least somewhat warming. And albeit this seede be somewhat venemous, yet may the same easily be corrected, to wit, when it hath bene steeped in vineger, and is dyed againe, and then may it be vsed in many medicines as you may find euery where &c. Take prepared Coziander &c. The nature of his venim is, that when one eateth too much of this seede, or drinketh too much of the iuice, then will the head be thereby so out of frame, as if a man were dronke: it maketh one hoarse, and as if he were dumb, or if he speake, yet are they but vnreuerent words. In fine, it is not without great danger: for it hath bene often found, that after the taking of the iuice death hath folloved, therefore it is good counsell, that you vse of this a little, and but seldome: yea, some will correct the Physicians that dayly vse this seede for strengthening of the head, by reason that it is much contrary to the head, and noysome. Now to take away the venim of this seede, you are first to cause the patient to vomit, and that with oyle called *Irinum*, or in stead thereof, with oyle of Olives, both of them taken with the warme decoction of Wormewood. Also you may fry an Egg or two in this oyle, and mixe it with pickell of salt fish, and so drinke it, or the pickell alone, well salted

Penboth,

Open b2oth o2 Close b2oth. In like sort sodden wine, mingled with leigh, are very good for it. *Nardus* seeds o2 *Nigella* seeds, called in Greeke *Melanthion*, & in Latine *Nigella*, by reason of his blacknes. There are sower kinds of it, two black, the which (by reason of their pleasant smell) are planted in the gardens: Another which groweth of himselfe in the fields: The fourth sort is yellowish, & hath no difference from the black kinds. The nature of them all is hot & dry, which maketh them venomous, when one taketh too much thereof he is in danger of death. And herein is a wonderful wo2ke of nature, that contrariwise it resisteth poyson, and in olde time (by reason of his pleasantnes) was baked in bread. For what diseases then this seed is good, that is shewed and taught in more other places.

Spilke thistle. This roote the Greekes call *Chamaeleonta*, for that the leaues do alter their colour after diuers sortez, according to the nature of the ground, now blacke, and then greene, now blew, and then yellow, and into diuers other colours: In Latine this herbe is called *Carduus Suaris*, that is, Solowthistle, for that it killeth Hoge, if they eate this herbe, mingled with Barly meale. In like maner it killeth Kats and Gise, if they eate thereof, and drinke not thereafter immediately. The Apothecaries call this herbe *Cardopastium*. Because that this is hurtfull to the said beasts, therefore cannot it be but hurtfull to men, if they take too much thereof. And the same is manifested by his nature, for that it is hot in the second degree, and drie in the third: yet this roote is often v2sed for many things, & highly commended, & that most of al against the venom of the Plague. There are two sortz, blacke and white Spilke thistle, both of one nature. Forwithstanding there is here to be noted, that the blacke is to be v2sed onely outwardly.

The Pewtree, do the Greekes call *Smilax*, & the Latinists *Taxus*. This tree is well knownen, he groweth prosperously in cold and shadowy places, for such is his nature. That he is placed amongst the venims, is not without cause: for it hath been tried, that if bottels be made of it, and the wine kept therein a certaine time, that it killeth a man. In like maner doth the fruit of the same tree, which groweth in Spaine. Howeuer it is said, that whosoever slepeth vnder the shadowe of this tree, o2 vpon the leaues, and specially vpon his blossomes, must die, for that the whole bodie will be thereby ouer coled, that a man must die sodainly. His leaues are not hurtfull for the wild beasts, but only for such beasts as do not chew their Cud, as the Swine, Horses, Ases &c. they are killed with it. It is said also, that if a copper nail be strooke into his stem o2 body, then will his venom banish away. His smoake should kill Gise. And that his venom will also be taken away by the same meanes, that hereafter is prescribed against the venom of Hemlocke, where you may seeke and finde the same.

Wilde Cucumbers and their iuice *Elaterium*, whereof is so many times admonished, that men must deale with it warily, and vse but a very little at one time, except it be in grieuous sicknesses: as the Dypsie, and such like. The Greekes call this herbe *Sicyagron*, which is wilde Cucumbers, for that the same are like to the same Cucumbers. When these wilde Cucumbers are ripe, are softly handled o2 w2rong, then break they open, wherefore you must looke to your eyes, for they are hurtfull. In Latine it is called *Cucumis Anguinus*, *Sylvestris*, and *erraticus*. The Apothecaries and common people call it a wilde Cucumber. His iuice is *Elaterium*: it is made aswell of the rootes, as of the leaues: but it is not so forcible as that which is made of the fruit. Of all medicines, there is none that continneth longer good than the same: for *Theophrastus* writeth, that it hath been found good & forcible 200. yeres, & it ought not be v2sed vntill it be 3. yeres old. It is hot & dry by nature, for which cause *Dioscorides* doth place it amongst poysons. It is so vehement, that when a woman vseth it in pessaries, it killeth the fruit. But we haue written of it also in the introduction.

Flea wort. The Greeks do cal the seed of this herbe *Psyllium*, the Latinists *Pulicarium*, by reason that the seed is like to fleas, o2 that it hind2eth the breeding of such vermin: The Apothecaries do keepe both the Latin & Greeke names. It is (as some say) cold in the second degree, & is measurably drie and moist. Others do ascribe great cold vnto it, wherewith this following doth agree. Albeit this seed be commodiously v2sed (as many places of this booke may witnes) yet hath it neuertheless his venom, to wit when one vseth too much thereof, for that it maketh the whole body cold, sluggish, feeble, and vnapt. Against this may be v2sed that which is prescribed for Coziander. Croue sorte the Greekes doe call *Batrachion*, the Latinists *Ranunculum*, that is Frogwort, either because it willingly groweth (as Frogs do) in moyst places, o2 for that the Frogs gladly hide themselves vnder it. Some call this herbe *Flammulam*, by reason of his burning nature:

for being applied greene, it doth not only excoziate the place with paine, but also if the flowers lie long thereon, it maketh a hard escarre: The Beggars haue learned this so well, that therewith they open their legs, and make them soze, that they are loathsome to behold, to the end that thereby they may get the greater almes. As much as appertaineth to the venom of this herbe, it is by nature hot and drie; so that it burneth not only the outward parts, but also the inward parts, when it is taken inward. The roote dried prouoketh næfing: if one hold it a good while at a tow, it dzieth it so much, that it falleth to pæces.

Aptastum, which the Apothecaries doe call *Apium risu*, is also of the same nature. We call it water Crowfoote: it is with vs very sharpe, but much sharper and moze venemous in the Island *Sardinia*. All that eate therof are depriued of their vnderstanding, the finewes of their mouth and lips are so mightily conuulged, that the patient seemeth alwaies to laugh, when neuertheles he dyeth: whereof that bulgar prouerbe is spzong, *Sardinia risu*, which is Sardins laughing, that is as much, as when one laugheth where he had moze neede to wepe.

Now to cure this venom, you are to giue to the harmed abundance of honie water & milke to drinke, & annoint the body with some warming salve, or to put the patient into a bath of warme water, amongst which oile is tempered; and in fine to vse all things for this purpose, that is to be vsed for the cramp and conuulsion of the finewes.

Spightshade do the Greeks call *Strichinos* or *Trichnos*, and the Latinists *Solanum*, the which name the Apothecaries haue turned into *Solatrū*. Hereof are fouer kinds described by the learned, whereof the first is garden *Spightshade*, which may be eaten amongst other pot herbs. The second sort are the winter Cherries, whereof we will not write any thing. The third sorte prouoketh sleape. The fourth sort maketh men mad and out of their wits, wherefore it is called in lowe Dutch, *Dulcrant*, that is, maddingswort. The *Spightshade* that prouoketh sleape, is cold in the third degre, like to *Opium* (whereof we will speake shortly) but it is not altogether so cold. And albeit that sometimes the roote of this herbe is taken for the Droopie, yet notwithstanding that the same be so; bozne: for it hath often hapned, that when one hath taken too many of the berries, that he thereby is become raging & mad; yea so stiffe ouer al his body, as though al his ioints were dislocated. This stiffenes accustometh commonly to indure thze daies, so that some deceiuers accustom to vse the same to bring men into a misbelief (as *Pliny* writeth). If one take the waight of a drag. of this roote, it maketh a man lusty, friendly, and causeth wonderfull fantasies, so that they seem to be foolish, and to haue forgotten all shamefastnes. And such as take two drag. therof, they wil be wholly mad and raging, & if one take half an ounce, then wil death folloze; for the said *Ph-nium* writeth, that the Greeks with such like meryments haue plaid the soles. Wherby may easily be noted, that these two species of *Spightshade* ought not to be vsed for any medicine inwardly: and this foresaid making mad, is none other, than that the Greeks call *Dorycnion*, which was vsed in old time for the poisoning of Arrowes. The taste of this herbe is like milke, it prouoketh hoarlines, it hurteth the tong by his moisture, it expelleth blood by vomit, dzieth out matter and filth by stoule, euen as they that haue the red or bloody fluxe. Thus befoze those & such like accidents do appeare, you may vse these remedies following, to wit, that the patient take much hony water, wherein Tiolets are sodden, & then vomit it out againe. In like maner may you vse the milk of an Asse, Goats milke, or new warme wine, wherein Annis seede is tempered, or wherewith bitter Almonds are mingled. The water wherein Spussels, Crabs, and such like are sodden, is very commodious to be dronken for it, yea Spussels themselves eaten raw, and likewise clifters: and in fine, all that may draw the venom out of the body.

Spælingwort is of two sorts, to wit, white & blacke *Spæselworts*. The Greeks call it *Elleborus*, and the Latinists *veratrum nigrum*, whereof we haue at large discoursed in the introduction. We take this herbs name of the operation, because it vzegeth næfing. The auncient Physicians make much a doe with it, and committed many follies by it. Both these roots are in vse, yet it is with them as with other things, that whosoever taketh therof too much it is poyson, and bringeth him into the perill of death.

These rootes are hereby knownen to be venemous, when as they are digged vp, & that the vapoz of them riseth into the face of the digger, that thereby he hath great paine in the head, & swelleth much: wherefore it must be digged vp speedily, and the digger ought to stand with his back to the wind, & to eat some Garlicke befoze, and then drinke a good draught of wine after it. Black *Spælingwort* killeth horses, oxen, and swine, and purgeth downewards. White næfingwort is not

not so hurtfull for cattell, and purgeth vpwards. The Physicians specially forbid, that none of these roots shall be vsed in women, old folks, nor children, nor in them that haue a short breath.

Poppie heads, and the iuice of them, called *Opium*, the which is knowen with vs very well, is called of the Greeks *Mecon*, and of the Latinists *Papauer*. Some of them haue red flowers, which are *Corneroses*, the which if one plant, they beare white, graye, and blacke seedes; of which the white are the best, and the blacke the worst. All their natures are cold vntill the fourth degree, therfore not onely the seede, but also the whole herbe prouoketh sleepe. There is also a yellow sort, but the same is hot and dry by nature. And by reason of the extreme colde, is this herbe numbered amongst venims, not (if it be measurably vsed) that it bringeth any hurt with it, for that the seede thereof is baked in bread, but only when one taketh too much thereof, and that chiefly of the blacke, which is much stronger then the white, in prouoking sleepe: for thereby is the sleepe sickness *Leibargus* caused. And of this blacke Poppie seede, or of these heads (the which growe not in this countrey, but elsewhere) is the iuice made, dyed, and afterwards is called *Opium*, which is vsed in many places of this booke. But if you are to vse it inwardly, then must it (as we haue often admonished) be warily taken in hand: for if there bee too much thereof giuen at once, then doth it cause a man to sleepe so long till he die: Therfore there are a number of ancient Physicians that affirme that none ought to be vsed little or much of it, to wit, inwardly; but to leaue and refuse it as a very hurtfull poyson. But if it happen that any haue taken thereof too much, then are you to giue vnto him salt with *Oxymel* to drinke, euen as is to be done when any body is poysoned with *Toadstoles*.

Toadstoles, doe the Greeks call *Mycetes*, the Latinists *Fungi*: whereof are many kinds, & some when they are dyest cannot hurt, yet at all times giue no good nourishment, for that they are hard of digestion, and are auoided downewards, as they were taken. In fine, all learned men agree in this point, that some through a secret nature, and other through their quantity, doe kill one no otherwise, then as if they were strangled with a corde or rope. Therfore it is rather abauery, and an intolerable lickerishnes of them that eate the same, and put their health in danger, than any part of wisdom.

Do not we reade of the Emperour *Claudius*, & of whole families that meeting together at banquets, and eating of these *Toadstoles*, haue dyed instantly? We speake not here of those that eat the same moderately, and only for pleasure; and yet that they doe no great good to those that vse them: for they augment the cholerick humors, and inflame all other bad humors of the body. One may know them hereby, that in dressing they ware hard: they also get a venemous nature if they grow about rusty Iron, or of any foule thing. Item, by any venemous beasts, as Adders, Snakes, Toads, and such like, when they haue their holes there about, & so infect the same.

Therfore it is to be well noted, that when any haue taken thereof, and find any hinderance of the breath or otherwise find himselfe ill at ease, that then the patient must immediately be caused to vomit, whereby the poyson may be cast vp; which may be done by the taking of pickle of fish, & leigh mingled together, or by the decoction of *Parierom* & *Hyssop*. The force of this venim may also be layed by *Wens* dung taken with vinegar.

Esula, all the venemous herbs that giue milke, are seuen in number, described by the auncient Physicians, and all of them are called of the Greeks by one name, *Tymalon*, and of the Latinists *Herba lactaria* (as milke herbes) the Apothecaries call it *Esula*: of these herbes there are some species vnknown; wherefore we will not waste much time in describing them. Altogether (yet the one more than the other) are hot in the fourth degree, and drie aboue measure: so that if one break a sprig thereof, & holdeth the same to his tong the space of many howers, he cannot be rid of the burning. Also if you lay the powned herb on the whole skin, then beginneth the same withwith to inflame and burne, so that it seemeth that a cole of fire lieth thereon.

In like manner also doth this root manifest his venim first in the digging vp, whereby the digger & also the preparer, are to expect more danger than hath been told of *Spellingwort*, and by reason of her great venim, is this root but seldome vsed by famous Physicians for the purging of superfluous *Cholera* and *Melancholia*, euen as you may see in some places of this booke: but how a man shall prepare this root, that haue you before in the introduction.

The herbe *Wolfsbane*, and specially the root, is of the auncient Physicians & Poets accounted the most venemous plant; so that when they will once talke of poyson, they call it *Aconitum*, with which name the Greeks & the Latinists call *Wolfsbane*, which is of two sorts, whereof

the one is called *Pardalianches*, (for that it choketh the Panthers) and hath a roote, that at the end is like the tayle of a Scorpion, which is called of the Apothecaries *Una versa*, or *Lupina*. The other sort is called of the Grækes *Lycollanon*, which is Wolses bane, for that specially moze then any other beasts it straightway strangleth the Wolfe, notwithstanding that it also killeth the fores. Wyne, and all other wild beasts, if the powder of this roote be strowed vpon any thing that they come to eate. In fine, of all venims there is none that sooner killeth, and taketh out of the world, and that not only when one taketh it inwardly, but also if one touch it: For if one touch any the cattell therewith about their members, then must they dye the same day. His nature is to corode continually inward, and maketh the parts that it toucheth sinking. Both of these sorts grow much in Germany, in the valleyes, and on high hilles. And verely there is another wonder of nature with it, to wit, that this venim most mightely withstandeth all other venims: As for example, when one taketh this Wolses bane, or Spohns hoo, then must he expect none other then present death, vnlesse there be another poyson before in the same bodie, as if one were stung before by a Scorpion.

Wolses bane finding another poyson in a mans bodie opposeth it selfe against it after a most vehement manner, and expelleth it, yea and combateth against it no otherwise, but as a warrior, that omitteth all other things, and setteth only vpon his enemy, in which strife they remaine both slayne, and the man retayneth his life. As soone as then one hath receyued this poyson of Wolses bane, there cometh a swimming vpon him: chiefly if he would arise his eyes will runne, he feleth great anguish in the brest, and in all inward parts: his breath will be short and grievous; therefore it is needefull that you endeavour to expell this poyson by vomits and Clusters. First, there is good for it sodden Parierom, Rue, Horehound, Wormewood, and Wormewood wine, Houselake, Southernwood, milke Thistle, wild Cypress, and moe such like. In like manner also the right Balsam, if you giue it him with the waight of one dragma with Hony, or with Milke, Beuercod, Pepper, and Rue, of each one scruple, may be taken with wyne for this purpose.

Also the rennet of a yong Kid, of a yong Hare, or young Roe buck dronken with Vineger, is also very good.

The wyne wherein a peece of glowing gold, a peece of siluer, or a glowing yron is quenched, is also highly commended for it. Or Lye and Wyne, wherein a Ven is sodden. Fresh broth made with Basse, mingled with Wyne and dronken. The herb of wild Cipresse is also very requisite for it.

Hemlock is well knowne euery where, and is called of the Grækes *Conion*, of the Latinists and Apothecaries *Cicuta*, but by vs it is called Hemlock. It killeth men and that very excremely, if any one take of his iuice. It is a very cold herb, and therefore very venemous. With this herb haue the Athenians gotten the name of Wyzants, for that therewith amongst many other they murdered *Socrates*.

Against this poyson, it is very good that one do drinke much strong wyne, and that betimes, before the poyson passeth to the parts of life.

It is also taken to be certaine and sure, that if his iuice be tempered with wyne, and dronke, that there is no counsell nor help to be expected against it.

Outwardly the Hemlock is to be vsed in some accidents with aduantage, as hath bene shewed in diuers places of this booke.

All they that receiue of this poyson, their head seemeth to run round, and their sight so darkened, that at last they can see no moze, they ware hoarse, they lose their vnderstanding, the outward parts ware cold, and are conuulsed as if they had the Crampe, the pulse will be still, the breath targeth behind, and they dye miserably. Wherefore (as in all other venims) the patient is straightway to be made to cast and vomit, to minister Clusters, and continually ply him with wyne, giuing him Asles milke, Cow milke, Wormewood, and Pepper, tempered with wyne & Rue. Item, iuice of Spints tempered with wine, is here much commended. In like manner also *Ameos*, *Cardamomum* or Storax, the waight of halfe an ounce, Pepper with Pettie seede, and Bayberies dronke with wyne. Item, Wine cuist excellently dronken, and vomited vp againe, are against this sort of poyson much commended.

Dogs bane, are called of the Grækes *Ephemeron*, for that they kill a man in one day. And that we may make difference of this roote from such as are not venemous, namely from the *Liri-*
confan

constantly, we will adde *Colchicon* with it, by reason of the countrey where it groweth in great abundance, and most venemous: the Latinists call the same *Bulbum agrestem*, and the Apothecaries *Hermodactylum*. They grow almost in all meadowes in Germany, and are sweete in the mouth, whereby the ignorant by reason of their pleasant tast, may be easily deceiued, and allured to eate thereof, whereby they are in danger of death: for as soone as they come into the stomach, by and by they feele a burning & a paine ouer all the whole body, as if they had bin burnt with pectles, they feele also a gnawing in the bowels, the stomach will be hot and oppressed, and in time there commeth a lask after it, so that the scrapings of the bowels, and bloud doth follow, and lastly death it selfe. For this, are all remedies good that are prescribed against the venom of toadstoles, to wit, vomiting and Clusters. It is good before the venom get the maistrise to drinke water wherein is sodden Wken buds, Acornes, Pomegranate pæles, or wyld Thyme, and is mingled with milke. Item, you may also vse one of these iuices following, as the iuice of Cicorie, of Blackbery leafe, of Spirtles tempered with wine, the inward pæles of Chestnuts powdered, and mingled amongst it, is also very good. In like maner it is especiall good to drinke Parierom with Lye. And aboue all things, there is nothing better then Cow milke, or the milke of a Buffell dronken in great abundance, and held in the mouth: for if one haue such milke, it is no counsell to seeke any further for any other things.

The third Chapter.

Of the venemous Metals, and such like.



As we haue spoken in the description of the foresayd venemous plants only of such as are well knowen in this countrey, so we will here treat of certaine Pectals, & of all that commeth thereof, and teach also thereby when any body is poisoned therewith, how that venime is to be resisted.

Cerusse. the Latinists call it *Cerussam*, and is taught by *Dioscorides*. that the same is made of lead by the vapoꝝ of the vineger. This art was found long ago, but now at this time it is made moze easie. The *Cerusse* taken inwardly, is deadly. Thzough the taking in of *Cerusse* followeth hoarse-nes, cough, dꝛowth of the tongue, coldnes in the outward parts, losse of vnderstanding, and the members will be thereby weary, sluggish, and feebled. These accidents are to be holpen by these meanes following, as with hony water, with sodden Violets, or Wallows water, with warme milke, with beaten seede of *Sesumum* sodden in wine, with Lye that is made of Tline ashes, with oyle of Parierom, or with *Oleo Irino*, or with water wherein Peach kernels are sodden. Digrons eggs with Frankincense, sod Barly and Pjunes, you may giue of any of these things which you will, and as often as you will, and cast them out againe. In like manner there is good for this *Scimmonea* sodden with hony water.

Gippes is very like vnto Chalke, for it is made of many stones by calcination, and also digged out of the earth. His nature is, that when it is made soft with water, it is immediatly altered againe into a hard stone: the same doth it also in the body of man, whereby it strangleth presently: wherefore all that is prescribed against the venom of the toadstoles, is also good for this. Item, oyle that is sodden with Wallows in stæde of water, by reason that it is fat it pꝛouoketh a slipperie passage for vomiting, & hindereth also the exulceration of the passages. Likewise there is also good the oyle of hony water, or dry figs sodden therein and so dronken. The Lye which is made with the ashes of the fig tree is marvellous good for it: or in the place thereof you may take the ashes of Wken wood, and eate figs. Also you may vse the ashes of the Wine, and temper the same with wyne, and drinke much thereof, and then cast it or vomit it out againe.

Lime and *Gippes* are very like one to another, and they match one another with their venom. The red myne, whereby some do vnderstand the red lead, and some sinople, or mine of the quicksilver, *Sandaraca*, *Auripigmentum* which is oppiment, they are for the most part all of one nature, that they torment the intrailles with an intollerable paine, and in case that there be no remedie had for the same in time, then doth it kill him. We wil also adde to the former the yellow, red, and white Kats bane, or *Arsenicum*. For this, is commodious all that expelleth venom, abateh his sharpnes, & loseth the belly, whereof there is much written before. The iuice of Holboekes and of Wallows is speciall good for it, by reason that they are both of them mollifying. For this also you are to giue him a potion wherein Linseed & Rice are sodden, or milke tempe-

red with hony water must he drinke vnmeasurably. In like manner also all fat flesh b2oth.

Quicksilver is called in Greeke *Hydrargyron*, which is water siluer, and in Latine *Argentum vivum*: we call it in this countrey Quicksilver, and is of *Plinie* called a venim exceeding all other venims. It doth also manifest the same in mans bodie, not only taken inwardly, but also annoynted ouer the out side. That it is such a poyson not only of the blood, but also of the venemous Vocks, and of other maladies moe, as you may see and reade befoze in diuers places of this booke. Some do say, if one drinke it, it presently runneth through the bodie: but if any such thing happen, yet notwithstanding there remayneth somewhat thereof behind in the bodie that doth hurt the same and the intrailles. For the remedie of this poyson, one must drinke much milke, and then vomit it vp againe: or in stead thereof, *Mozmewood* wine, or water wherein Smalage, the seedes of Clary, and Parierom, or Jlop are sodden. For this is also very requisit small filed gold, which doth draw the Quicksilver vnto it in a wonderfull manner, as by experience may daily be seene at the Goldsmiths and other, how quickly it cleaueth to the gold, and when it is warme, it minglet it selfe with the gold, where neuertheles all other things that are cast vpon it are expelled fro it, and swim on the top of it, and letteth them not fall to the bottome. There may also be well vsed against the venim of Quicksilver all that standeth witten against the litharge of gold. Further, it is well knowne to all the world, that there is no stronger venim then the *Mercurius sublimatus*, like as all Chirurgeons and Pockmaisters do find by experience, when as they do vse the same in any vlcers. Now one shall prepare the litharge of silver, *Plinius* doth teach the same diuersly, we will here admonish of his poison. When the same is drunken, then doth it make in the bodie and in all the intrailles not only an angust, but also an extreme pricking and paine, it pearceth the inward parts, by his waight it stayeth vrin, it swelleth the body, and procureth a leaden colour. When as then the patient hath vomited exceedingly, then are you to giue him wine to drinke with the seedes of Clary sodden in it, *Pyrrh*, *Mozmewood*, *Jlop*, seedes of Smalage, *Pepper*, *Lignistrum*, or dreyed Pigeons dounge.

The fourth Chapter.

Of the venims that come of Beasts.



What great commodities almightie God hath giuen vnto vs in Beasts, is sufficiently knowne vnto all the world, and the same is to be seene in the foresayd parts of this booke, and in diuers medicines. For behold, what is moze base and lesse esteemed then the earthwormes that b2ede in the stinking dunghills, and also liue therein, neuertheles are they vled in grievous sicknesses both inwardly and outwardly with great god. The venomous Scorpions and Tippers are wholesome medicines against venim & other diseases, and yet moe such like, whereof one might write whole bookes, as the bookes of all Philosophers do testifie: yea it hath bin found oftentimes, that the ordure of some beasts hath holpen in deadly sicknesses.

But to the contrary, there are foure little beasts not fearefull but hurtfull, against which hurts and harmes there are here very god remedies taught to defend and preserve one from them. For what is a moze friendlyer beast towards men then the Dog? What beast is moze obedient, and can be lesse without the companie of men: yet it is not vnkowne to all men how hurtfull and perilous the biting of a mad Dog is, for if there be not presently very god remedies vled against it, then will the same man be mad also, and all other men that shall be bitten by the sayd mad man. Wherefoze we will in this fourth Chapter speake of certaine venomous beasts and wormes, whereof we by the grace of God (in regard of the South countries) haue but a few here in Germany. Wherefoze we will omit *Basiliscus*, *Amphisbana*, *Cerastes*, *Dipsades*, and such like venomous beasts moe, which are to be found only in *Aphrica*, and admonish of those that are knowne of vs, and adde vnto them the remedies that are requisite against their venim.

The first are the Ants or Pismers which truly are prouident and laborious little beasts, whereof we will not here describe the nature, but will discourse so much as serueth to our purpose. When it is found, that men through their pissing scle in their skinne. The which is moze greater then is the stinging of Nettles, for the place thereof swelleth. They annoy also thereby all herbs and trees. And soz to driue away the same from thence, you are to take

take Colowdung, and temper it with vineger, and therewith annoynt the body of the tree, or take Pitch or Rosen for it. They shun also the smoke of Brimstone, and the fume of Saffierom in such sort, that thereby they forsake their holes. Some affirme the same also of Cicorie, or (that is better to be beleued) of *Esula*, which herbs and the smoke of the sulphur, doth not only hunt them away, but also killeth them. These Ants and their eggs are also used in Phisicke.

When as any man is stung of Bees, Wasps, or Hornets, then doth he not only complaine of great paine and heate, but also of great swelling of the place where he is stung, whereto you may vse this following most commodiously: Make a plaister of Linseed meale and salt tempered with vineger: or stamp Hollyhock leaues and lay them moyst thereon. You may also do the same with the floures of Balme. The same doth wild and tame Rue, the milke of new Figs, salt fish, and the pickell of the same. Item, Seawater, when the place is often moistened therewith. Take Treacle or Githydate as big as a hemp seade, and annoynt it thereon, or if you haue nothing els, then take the moyst earth out of the garden, and annoynt it therewith. It is said, that if one be once bitten of a Scorpion, that then neuer afterwards neither Bee nor Wasp will bite him. The same is also written of the wormes that grow on Colewortes, when they are tempered with oyle, and annoynted therewith. This is also worthe to be thought vpon, that when one beareth any odouriferous things, that then the Bees are the readier and greedier to sting the same partie then otherwise. Although that there be no *Cantharides* or Spanish flies in Germany, yet are they common at all Apothecaries. They are also very much used of the Chirurgions, and of other, as may be seene before in many places: but by reason that some most imprudently take the same in hand, and also will vse them inwardly, therefore cannot I conserue their poison. These Spanish flies breede of the Caterpillers or little wormes of the fig tree, Pearre tree, fir tree, and Rose tree, &c. and when one drinketh them, then followe there afterwards all manner of painefull symptomes, so that one may saue from the mouth euen to the neck of the bladder a sharpnes and great erulceration: and he suppoeth that he alwayes smelleth pitch, the right side swelleth inwardly, the vaine will hardly voyd, and passeth away with blood, and in going to the priuie, there auoydeth the scrapings of the bowels, like to them that haue the bloudie flire. They lye in great smart, are also feeble and impotent. The head swimmeth so much, that otherwhiles they fall to the earth, vntill at the very last they are bereft of their vnderstanding. And to remedie these grievous accidents, there must be giuen to the patient Sallet oyle, or some such thing to drinke, so to bring him to vomit. And when this is done, then are you to minister vnto him a Clister that is sodden with Rice, Hollyhock rootes, fenegreke, Linseed, Gallowes, and such like. If one may get the right *Nitrum*, then is it very commodiously used with *Oximel* (our Salt-peter is not the right *Nitrum*) whereby the rest that remaine sticking in the stomack and in the bowels might be washed off and expelled. Afterward you are to giue him Wyne, and sodden Pust to drinke, wherein is sodden Pingles, or Cucumbers seade. This may also be effected with milke, or Hony water: and in like manner also Gosegrease, and sodden wyne. There is a pay of Barly meale to be layd vpon the swollen place, made with Hony water. It is also to be noted, that at the first there must no plaister be layd thereon, so that will do moze hurt then good.

When all hath bin done that is abovesaid, then are you to annoynt the bodie with oyles that be warme by nature, and then to bathe after it, so that thereby all that may hurt the body might be brayen out. You must also see that the patient haue alwayes a loose bodie. He may eate Cockrels, yong Bucks or Birds, and Swynes flesh that is very fat. And he shall also see the Linseed with it, so that mollifieth and dampeth the eagernes of the poison. He shall drinke exceedingly swete wyne. The rindes of Frankincense and sealed earth, the one or the other, the waight of a quarter of an ounce, taken with Pust, is also much commended. Item, there is good so the decoction of Pennyroyall. Item, Drage, stamped Rue, and the iuice of the same dronken with Wyne. In like manner also Cowmilke that is described in the third part, the twelfth Chapter 11. §. beginning thus: Take Centian &c.

But aboue all these are the *Antidota* good, as also both the Treacles, the Githydat. *Alexipharmacum*, and such like.

It hapneth also oftentimes, that the people that trauell thorow the countrey, doe vnbawres drinke an Hopsleach, which according to the old wont without interceassing, sucketh blood within the bodie. But if it remayne hanging within in the throate, then

may it be sene. But when this hapneth, then must good haide be taken, that you venter not to get it out with any tongs or other things, for that commonly they leaue their teethe sticking in the flesh, whereby afterwards growe grievous impostumes, and it boteth not thereto that they be cut off, they leaue not therfore their sucking: and if they fall deeper into the body, and come to hang at the mouth of the stomacke, that is easie to be knowen by their drawling. Thus for to cure this accident, he is to drinke Pickle of fish, or any other salte water, holding it in the mouth, and to gargarise therewith. Item, *Angelica* sodden with beates. Further, take Rue, seethe it in Vineger, and drinke it, or hold it in the mouth, according to the place where the woyme is fastned. Or, take Vineger that is heated with a glowing iron, melt Butter therein, and giue the patient to drinke of this Vineger. For this is also very good the meale of Lupines, tempered with water, and the same holden in the mouth. The wood lice are a filthy stinking vermine; neuertheles, they are said to be good against all venime, which if they be burnt, and the fume of them receiued, they cause the Hoysesleaches to fall off.

The Flea is a vile troublesome and blood thirsty little beast, which vereth both man and beast. To drine them away or to kill them, there is no fitter meanes, then that you keepe the chamber alwaies very cleanly, spzinckle it with water, and sweepe out the same cleane: for that they do growe of dry dust. Item, you may also vse these things following: Seethe Coziander in water, and therewith bespzinckle the chamber, and also let the linnen bee washt therein. This same drineth also Lice away: yet note that of late was written of the Coziander, that thereby the head take no hurt. Item, take Coziander, wild Thyme, seede of *Tribulus aquaticus*, and Eldern leaues, seethe them in water enough, and spzinckle the chamber therewith; this drineth away and killeth the fleas. The same vertue is ascribed to the smoake of Benniropall, and the powder of Rue, throwed in the chamber. And all those things may bee vsed for Lice and Woodlice.

The Italians and other nations moe, haue a minde to eate Frogs, which other nations doe abhorre. But we will dissuade all the world from them, and specially such as bende in sinking poudes and waters, and are dunne, which are not like the right Frogs: for they prouoke a swelling of the whole body, with a bleake and yellow colour, like vnto the Hollis tre: Whereupon followeth a short stinking heavy breath, hoarsenes, and effluxion of the naturall seade. Now then for to remedie this mischance, you must let the patient vomit mightily, and drinke ouer much wine. For this also may you giue him of the Cipers rote beaten a quarter of an ounce.

Further, you are then to admonish the patient, that he indeuour himself mightily to run, and walke much, or take some other exercise in hand, thereby to sharpen the body: and he shal bathe euerie day.

We haue said befoze, that there is no moze perillous venime then that of a mad dog. And concerning the madnes of a dog, it is most perillous in hot times: as when the Sun entreteth into Leo, to wit, in the moneths of July and August; which thirty dayes, we do not only call the dog daies of the Dog star, but also for that dogs in those dayes are most inclined to madnes, and then hurt men most of all: wherefore the hunters during these thirty dayes ought to giue to their Hounds meat tempered with Hens dung. This madnes ceaseth also of it selfe, when it beginneth to freeze, and that but seldome.

The signes of a mad dog are these; he will neither eate nor drinke, and hee someth at the mouth and nose, beholdeth euery one ouerthwartly, and with a heauie looke, and byteth as well men as beastes.

If a man be bitten by him, then is there at the first no other accident perceiued, but only that the wound cleanseth it selfe, and is very painefull. Afterwards there followeth thereby a maruellous extremity, which the Graekes doe call *Hydrophobos*, which is the feare and fright of the water, which oftentimes in the dogs and men is so forcible, that they come out of their wits. Notwithstanding that they feare most of all the water, yet neuertheles they throw themselves into it and drowne themselves. This feare of the water they get not all at one prescribed time, but they get chiefly the same (that neglect the bit most) about the fortieth day, some after the first moneth, yea some also very well a yeare afterwards.

The auncient Philosophers do write, that this frantickenes of the biting of mad dogs hath manifested it selfe seuen yeres after that they first were hurt by them.

They

They that are infected with this disease, doe also get a conuulsion in all the sinewes of the whole body, and chiefly of the face, it will be red, and thereby commeth a great sweat, and extreme feiblenes.

Some can abide no light, and others are vexed with an intolerable headach, many haue like Dogs, and bite all others that they can come by, who will be afterwards as mad as they. The ancient Physicians write also that there be very few that do recover.

Yet for this hath bene founde many wholesome remedies, wherof we shall speake hereafter.

There are two kinds of meanes: the one common, which is good against all bitings and stings of all venomous beasts: the second, that is, good alone against all biting of mad Dogs, if one do presently put it in practise. But if it be deferred too long it is vsed in vaine. First, there are some things that a body must prouide to haue alwaies in a readines, that the same may immediately be adhibited.

Take for this Creuts, and burne them with as much of the rotes of Wyonie to ashes, then poune them small and preserue them. Secondly, haue alwayes in a readines some small beaten rotes of Gentian: and then if there be any bitten, cast in twelue ounces of strong wine, two spoonfulls of the ashes of Creuts, and a spoonfull of the foresaid rotes, and then drinke this at fower times, to wit, in the morning early.

Item: for this is also commended the shels of the Lobster if they be powdered in drinke.

Item, one other moze that is made of Creuts, and is very like to the former, to wit, as hereafter followeth: Take Creuts that are taken in July and August, burne them alieue to powder in a luted pot, and then giue the powder in drinke with Treacle, to wit, one dragme and a halfe with water of Scabious.

Take also two or thre dragmes of this powder, and drinke it certaine daies together with the water of Fumitory.

Another: Take Gentian, and Pirrhe, of each one dragme, Ashes of Crabs a quarter of an ounce, giue thereof every morning with wine: or if the patient be full of heate, then take fountaine water instead of wine.

Item, the iuice of Baulne is also very good for this: or to beate the leaues to powder and druncken with wine. In like manner one may also twice a weeke take a dragme in waight of the great Treacle, or of the Treacle *Diatessaron*, be it with Wine or any other distilled water.

You haue also in the first Part, the sixteenth chapter, and twelfth S. a water of the great Bur, which is also wonderfull good against the biting of a mad dog.

Now a daies is much commended (and that by experience) the iuice of Quinces if one take thereof once a day thre or fower ounces, that the same will maruellously preserue one from this vniue.

And now to preserue this iuice, you must let it sethe so long by a milde fire till that the skum is separated and taken away: then you may preserue it in a glasse with a narrow mouth, and powre thereto a little Sallet oyle: it is also good for all other venims.

It is also written that clarified Hony taken daily should preserue one that he cannot be annoyed with the biting of mad Dogs. In like manner if one eate the liuer of the same mad dog, that the same should preserue the bitten person from all symptoms.

The wilde Roses powdered and druncken, are also found very good for it.

Besides all these foresaid remedies, one may vse things that cleanse the infected blood, which one may do with these medicines following, if the same be druncken fourtene daies together: Take sirupe of Fumitory, of swete Apples, and Pomegranates, of each halfe an ounce, water of Fumitory, Buglosse, and Cicorie of each one ounce: mingle them together and drinke it fasting. Afterwards vse this purgation: take new Cassie thre quarters of an ounce, Confession of Hamech one quarter of an ounce, Iuda one dragme, make a Bolus or bit thereof with Cinna-mom and Sugar, swallow it downe in the morning, and fast fower howers after it. For this is specially commended, *Hiera*, with Coloquinte: For this is also good, thicke milke, called *Lac Scitum*, for that it loseth, and doth withstand the venime. And as soone as the body is purged, and after that all the foresaid remedies haue ben vsed, it is then requisite, that one thinke vpon the biting or wound. first the byting is not to be healed, but it must bee well rubbed with

Garlicke,

Garlicke, Vineger and Salt, so long till it come to bleed apace. Some bind thereon lining Vens and Bullets: but looke what is written thereof in the description of the Plague, whereas we haue spoken of the Plague soze.

Take also a salve of the iuice of Dinions, iuice of Rue, Vineger, and Vonie, wherewith annoynt the wound thze oꝛ foure daies together keeping it cleane; the which will bzing all things in securitie,

This doth also Garlicke, fried with Butter & laid thereon. Oꝛ an Dinion made hollow & filled wꝛith Treacle and roasted in the ashes, whereof we haue before admonished. And you may also take two handfuls of Rue, frie it twice in Butter and apply it twice a day to the wound. Others take Garlicke, Rue, Salt, Frankinsence, Purche, of each alike much, beaten all together and a plaister made thereof with Wine.

Take Cheruill seed, seethe it in faire water and drinke thereof; wash the wound also therewith: this is good without and within.

The powder of Mercurie is also commended foꝛ it that is gathered betwene both our Ladies daies foꝛ to grow on the wound.

There is also good foꝛ it al Pettie waters drunken: likewise the Pettie seed to grout stamped and laid vpon the wound. The fennell roote is vled after the same manner. These are now things that may be vled outwardly, and that not onely thze oꝛ foure daies as some suppose, but also some daies together with other things moe.

foꝛ as we haue admonished before, this Venim doth otherwhiles not appere in a twelue month after it. As may be sene, if one be bitten with a mad Dog, and handleth a Rauen with in a yere after, that the same foule will be mad, oꝛ the man will be mad againe.

It is also especiall good that the wound be annoynted within and round about with Treacle oꝛ Pitch, date. foꝛ this also are requisite the pees of new Pelons, and Pompeons, beaten and mingled with wine, and layd ouer the wound.

Item, new Dinions tempered with Vineger: oꝛ if the same cannot be had newe, then are the same to be sod and to drinke the decoction, and lay it also on the wound, oꝛ tempered with Vony and wine, and so let it lye thze dayes thereon. The kernels of Ruts being chewed by one fasting and layd vpon the wound, should do marvellous much good.

Oꝛ take great rootes of Smalage, seethe them in water and drinke the decoction thereof; stampe the rootes and lay them on the wound.

Item, Rue mingled with Salt, these and the like things may be vled at the first without all danger. But in case that the venim of this mad Beast lieth hidden and dead awhile, and the patient thereby supposeth to haue escaped all perill; the which neuerthelesse, yet sheweth it selfe afterwards, wherfoze there are diuers that haue a manly hart, and had leuer liue a paynfull life, then to die a painfull death.

Of the actuall Cauterie and incision.



Some that will play surely and will pꝛeuent al these before mentioned mischiefs, do begin this cure at the first by incision & aduision, so that they cut out the sound flesh round about the wound according to the situation of the member; and also draw out the blood and make the wound much wider: foꝛ how much larger the wound is, so much the better will the blood be drawen out; and the better is the wound to be handled, which is to be committed to expert Chirurgions: but burning is better then cutting foꝛ it; & it is commended to be moze surer and moze sozeible, because the fire sameth all venims and letteth not the same pearce any deeper into the body; and also the wounds heale not so fast, which must be kept open so long as may be.

These things following are very requisite foꝛ to hold the wounds open, as all salt things, powned wilde Garlicke, iuice of Dinions, and powned Wheate that is made moyst. These things make the wound wider: and after such kind of incision oꝛ aduision set on bores and scarifie the sound flesh, that thereby the infected blood may be sucked out. And if it be perceiued that the wound heale too fast, then must the same of necessitie be opened againe with fire, oꝛ with incision, that there be no venim included. How the wounds are to be cured, that is knowen to all Chirurgions.

To conclude, this is to be added, in case that neither the easie remedies now mentioned, neither yet the incision nor aduulsion had bin vsed at the first, then are they to be omitted & left altogether, and not put the patient to such paine in vaine, for then cannot the venime that is spread ouer all the bodie, be drawen any more to the wound, neither be drawen out.

An order of dyet for them that are bitten by a mad Dog.

All they that are bitten with a mad dog, must vse those things that doe withstand poison, and interrupt the violence thereof, that the same penetrate not to the inward parts. For this doth first of all serue strong wine sodden thozowly, and milke for his drinke: it is also good that you put into his meate, Garlick, Onions, and Leekes: let him vse Treacle and spithivate sometimes. He shall fede euery day vpon eager and sower meates that doe hinder the venim. Sweating before and after meate is also very good for him. But aboue all things is the Elleboze highly commended, if he vse the same but once in forty dayes; for it is proued already, that those that were vexed with the feare of the water, that they were only cured by the taking of Elleboze, when as they had vsed all other meanes and remedies before.

Loades are beastes well knownen, that are full of colde venime. Against this is to be vsed all that which is described against the venim of the frogs that haunt sinking holes.

That Lice be loathsome and filthy vermin, or beastes, is knowen to the whole worlde, and hath sufficiently been shewed in the first Part, the third Chapter, and eighth S.

Spilke that is turned doth sometimes very quickly strangle them that doe drinke the same, for that through her clotting it stoppeth the pipes of the Lights. Against this must the Whay of milke be tempered with Vineger, and giuen to the patient to drinke, and the patient compelled to take it. The same doth also dyed Beep, and the iuice thereof. In like manner also *Angelica* tempered with Vineger and water. Item, *Thymus* with wine and leigh, and some Ashes with it. All salt things must be shunned, for thereby will the milke be turned more. In like maner must haue be taken from vomiting, for the clots might very well strangle one.

Dre blood is very grosse when it commeth first from the Dre, it will be sone hard and clotted. This stiffeth a man also if he drinke thereof for it setteth it selfe at the *Vuula*, and strangleth a man, it refrigerateth the finewes of the throte, whereby the same is stoppt: the tong will be red, and one may see some part of the blood sticking betwene the teethe. He must also be kept from vomiting; for the clotted blood remaineth in the throte. In this must the blood be resolued and the body opened. And for this are speciall good great Figs that are not very ripe, and yet full of milke, when they are giuen with vineger and water. The iuice of Beane strawe with Vineger, and *Colegras* eaten, or vsed otherwise is also very good. All they that do recouer of it, do auoid much filth and other matter through their stoles, and the belly and stomack must be often annointed with Barly meale and Hony tempered together.

Catterpillers (which are the right destruction and spoyle of all plants and gardens) are also in some sorte venomous; yet the one more then the other: but they that liue on the Firre trees are the most venomous. If it chanced that any body swallowe one of these, then presently doth he get a great paine throughout the whole mouth, and therewith a swelling of the belly, of the tong, and the stomack, with a paine in the belly, that it seemeth that his belly is full of worms; his whole bodie will be burning, and getteth a great disemperature in the stomacke. This venim is to be remedied with those thinges, that are ordained against the venim of the Spanish flies: but in the steede of Sallet oyle, the oyle of Quinces is much better.

Snakes and Adders are of diuers sortes throughout the worlde, and *Aphrica*, *Media*, *Ecbatana* and *Troglodytis*, are maruellous much plagued therewith, euen as now adates Italy is in some places. Wherefore may Dutch and English men accompt it for a blessing of God, that they cannot say, as men doe of *Aphrica*, that there moe men are slaine by venime than by the sword. And because this seuenth part discourseth onely of poison of venomous beastes, we will adde here to the rest all the principallest thinges, that are set forth by the learned against the biting of Snakes, and such like venomous beastes.

Wherefore we will speake first of the roote of *Aron*, that is, *Cuckopit*: when Snakes are smoaked therewith, then will they be all as if they were dronken, and remain stiffe. In like maner, when this roote is beaten to powder, mingled with oyle of Bayes, annointing the place there,

therewith where they doe vse, then will they be hunted away. This roote is also to be dꝛonken in red wine against all venim.

If the fruit of the tree *Platanus* be taken with wine, then doth it withstand all stings of Snakes and Scorpions.

Elecampane rootes dꝛonken in Wine, are also good against all the stinging of venomous beasts.

The roote of *Mandragora* is also good for it, principally if any must be cut or aduised for these venomous beasts bytings, for it bringeth the patient into a deepe sleepe, and maketh him wholly insensible, even as before we haue taught.

If *Ebulus* be set on fire, then doth the smell of the same dꝛiue away all manner of Snakes. The leaues thereof laide in wine, and dꝛonken thereof, are also good against all kindes of poysons.

The leaues of the Ash tree wꝛong out, and the iuice thereof dꝛonken, and layd vpon the biting, withstandeth the poyson of Snakes as vehemently as any thing in the world: for this tree hath such an antipathy with the venim of Snakes, that the Snakes shun the shadow of this tree. *Plinius* writeth also, that if one compass them in one place with fire, and in another place with Ashen wood, that they had rather run into the fire then to be touched with that wood. This bad woꝛme doth also not cꝛeep out of his winter hole, before and vntill that the Ash tree beginneth to blow; the which is a marvellous woꝛke of nature. Moreover, the Ash tree shall not let his leaues fall, before and vntill that the Snakes be cꝛopen againe into their holes.

Right Balsam is commended against all venim of Snakes. But by reason that we haue not the same, there are many kindes thereof distilled, wherein euerie one is to vse all diligence that he can to attaine to the right Balsam as nere as he can possibly: whereof you shall finde diuers descriptions in the last part, where you shall also haue liuing and Golden waters which are very crimmobious for it. And for that Dutchland and England (as is already said) are almost free from these bad beasts: we rest contented with the easiest & best knownen things: in like manner leane the *Balsamum artificialem* to the charge of the Chirurgions.

Tencrium do the auncient Physicians say to be the most pretious remedie against the venim of Snakes, whether it be taken in dꝛinke or layd vpon the bite. In like sort the great *Tencrium* whether the same be taken greene, dꝛy, decocted, or the iuice thereof.

Spugwoꝛt is also taken to be very good for the biting of Snakes if the same be layd in wine, some thereof dꝛunken and layd vpon the wound.

Betony and all herbes of that vertue, as Gilloflowers, &c. the auncient Physicians do write to haue such a power against the biting of a Snake; that if this herbe be layd round about her, she had leuer be killed then cꝛeep ouer the same herbe: for which cause the wine and conserue of this herbe are highly esteemed; so is also the pouder and seeds of the same.

Beuerdod is good for many things, as is sufficiently before declared in the description of other sicknesses. And amongst other it is also good against the biting of Snakes, and biting of other venomous beasts, if the same be mingled with other things according to the importance of the beast that hath so bitten. This if it be vsed in time of neede, you may take thereof, halfe an ounce with wine.

Buckes and Goates haire set on fire dꝛiue away all Snakes.

Pennirovall withstandeth Snakes by nature, by reason of the saour or smell: wherefore it is to be strowed vpon the place, where as the Snakes haue bitten one and be dꝛunken with wine.

Purflaine eaten and applyed also vpon the sore, dꝛaweth out the venim. It is also good for all other kindes of poyson, if one dꝛinke the sap thereof with wine or hony: but the wild Purflaine is the best.

The iuice of the flowers of Selfeheale, dꝛonken with wine, should be good for all the venime of beasts.

The nuts of the great and small Cipers trees, which may bee had at enery Apothecarie, stamped and dꝛonken with wine, are also good for this. In like manner the same Cipers herbe (which is to be found in many gardens) is very highly commended, for that it withstandeth all poison of Snakes, if it be dꝛonken with wine.

Nardus seede is renowned to dꝛiue away Snakes by his smell and saour.

Will mingled with Rue, and stoynes bzed, with Pepper, and so giuen to eate, is god against the biting of Snakes.

Acornes are also god to be dzonken against this venim.

Hens eggs hard sodden, and tempered with Cresses, are god, being layd vpon the biting of Snakes.

Merueine steeped in wyne and dzonken is very god likewise, if it be layd thereupon.

The roote of Gentian is in diuers maners god against venim, as befoze hath bene declared, but chiefly against biting of Snakes: it is commended aboue all others if one take a quarter of an ounce thereof with wyne.

Deafe meale tempered with Vineger, dzonken and layd vpon it, is also very god.

The smoke or fume of Altes lights will also dzine away venemous beasts.

Venemous beasts cannot abide the smoke of Ferne, wherefoze it is god that it be strowed vpon the places where they haunt.

Fennell, and specially the seede of wild Fennell dzonken with wine, is much commended fo: it.

Haire of Womens heads burnt, hath a maruellous power to dzine away Snakes and Spiders.

Galbanum is a gum that dzineth away all venemous wo:mes. The herb Cuckowbzead the waight of a dzagme dzonken with wyne, hath bene many times approued.

Barly meale layd on with vineger, withstandeth venim. Some do giue the roote of Celandine, the waight of thre dzagmes with wyne, or make thereof a salve, and lay it on the venemous biting of a Snake.

The dzaynes of a Cock or a Capon are also god fo: this, being vsed in meate.

The seedes of Hewe is amongst other seedes most commended if the same be dzonke with bitter Almonds, or the iuice of this herb with bitter Almonds and with wyne. In like manner also if one be annoynted with the oyle thereof, then doth it preserve him against the biting of Snakes.

Hares rennet is very forcible against the venim of Snakes, and also fo: moe other things.

Heath *Erica*, is much commended against the venim of Snakes.

Harts horne hunteth them also away thzough his smell.

The round and long Hartwozt the waight of two dzagmes dzonke with wyne, or tempered with Vineger, and layd thereon, is also much commended.

Dogs garlick that groweth in vineyards, is also very forcible against the venim of Snakes.

Cleners haue also a speciall force against Snakes and their venim, if one dzinke the waight of a dzagme of them.

Peilot hath this nature also, that it is sayd that there was neuer scene a Snake to haue come nere this herb. In like manner, the seede of it is much commended being taken with wyne.

Garlick dzuieth away all Snakes thzough his sauour and smell: it is also very god against all venemous stingings of beasts; and if one mingle it with bzead and hony, then may it be eaten fo: that intent.

Colewozts with Barly meale layd thereon, or the iuice thereof tempered with Vineger and fenegrake seede, is also very commodious.

Coyne mints do also dzine Snakes away.

The dung of all fourefooted beasts tempered with wyne, and layd thereon, is also commended.

Crabs that are caught in fresh water, and in the Sea, are also very commodious fo: this, as we haue admonished in other places moe.

Wylb Thyme hath also great vertue fo: it when the leaues thereof be dzonke with wyne: and the smoke thereof dzuieth them also away.

All pickell of salt fish is also highly prayed fo: this vse, as hath bene taught elsewhere.

The rootes of Louage with Barly meale, or tempered with wild Baulme, and layd thereon, is also very commodious.

Bayberies tempered with wyne and dzonken, is god against all cold venim.

Eringus the waight of a *Dzagine* dzonken, tempered with water, and layd thereon, is also good.

A liue *Houſe* applyed to the place hath a ſpeciall vertue ſoꝛ to dzaw out the venim: hotobet *Hens*, *Pullets*, and *Frogs*, are alſo very commodious ſoꝛ it, as we haue oftentimes ſhewed befoze.

Puſt dzonken is an vtter enemy to *Snakes*; ſo is alſo all ſodden and unfalſified wyne. *How* forcible puts be (not only againſt *Snakes*, but alſo againſt all venim) if one vſe them with *Figs* and *Kue*, we haue oftentimes declared befoze.

Oleander, which the *Greekes* call *Rhododendron*, is maruellous, ſoꝛ his leaues are venim to all ſourefoted beaſts, and yet a medicine ſoꝛ men againſt the venim of *Snakes* ſodden with *Kue* in wyne.

Care waꝛe rubbed on the byting, awageth the paine out of hand.

Piony rootes, whereof there are two ſoꝛts, are both of them good ſoꝛ this purpoſe.

Pepper is ſoꝛ all cold poiſons meaurably vſed, taken ſoꝛ a ſpeciall medicine, euen as we haue declared in other places moe.

Diſtaries are alſo very good againſt all poyſon.

That *Kue* is good againſt all venim, and againſt the biting of *Snakes*, we haue alreadie ſayd in many places.

The rennet of *Faunes* that dye in their dams bellies, is commended to be marvellous forcible ſoꝛ it.

ſoꝛ this is likeliſe commended the *Padder*.

Radiſhes ſodden with water and vineger, and layd thereon, is accounted very good.

Great *Centoꝝ*, which is called *Reponica*, the waight of a *Dzagine* of it giuen with wyne.

The water of *Larks* ſpurre is ſayd (being dzonken) to be good againſt the biting of all venomous beaſts if the biting be waſhed with it. The ſame is alſo vſed againſt the *Plague*.

The iuice of white water *Hints* a quarter of an ounce dzonken with thꝛe oꝛ foure ounces of wyne, and the biting waſhed therewith, is much commended.

The ſedes of yellow *Rapes* oꝛ *Turneps*, and alſo the rootes and the herb carryed about one, will preſerue him from the biting of *Snakes*: and if any bodie be bitten, then muſt the ſede with the greaſe of any birds be ſtamped and layde thereon. The ſede of the common *Rapes* is very good againſt venim, being taken in the ſtead of *Treacle*.

Salt is alſo very good againſt all poyſon.

Sugar is to be tempered with oyle, and layd thereon.

Swynes bzed hath a great vertue againſt all venime, as we haue admoniſhed in mo other places.

The iuice of *Scabious* is alſo taken to be very good againſt all venime of *Snakes* and *Scorpions*.

The thꝛe ſoꝛts of *Dragons* do dzine away all venomous beaſts if one carrie the roote about him. It is alſo good (being dzonken) ſoꝛ them that are bitten of them.

Leakes are alſo good when they are tempered with Vineger.

Puſtard ſed is to be mingled with Vineger, and applyed thereon.

They flye from the ſaſking ſpettle of a man, and if they get it in their mouth, they muſt dye thereof.

Southernwood ſtrowed on the place where the *Snakes* haunt oꝛ where ſume and ſmoake thereof is, dzineth them away. Alſo *Southernwood* is good againſt all venim, being taken inwardly and applyed outwardly.

Codwort (which in Latine is called *Aſter*) is alſo ſoꝛ this highly renowmed.

Syrax *Calamita*, as the ſent thereof is very acceptable to all men: ſo contrariwiſe there is nothing that *Snakes* may leſſe abide.

Tamarifow is good againſt all poyſon.

Woodlice (albeit they be lothſome woꝛmes) neuertheles they are aboue all things commended of the renowmed *Phyſitions* againſt the poyſon of *Snakes*, and alſo againſt all other poyſon.

If the venemous Snakes euer come to sent oꝝ smel the leaues oꝝ wood of Juniper, then crāp they away: they are also good against all venemous beaſts.

Lyſimachia is also commodious foꝝ all theſe things.

The iuice of Dinions applyed to the biting of a Snake and tempered with Hony, against venom is very good.

The Snates that plague beaſts and men with their ſting in Sommer, and in like manner all plants, are depelled by the ſmoake of Pomgranates peeles, and of *Galbanum*, also by the ſmoake of *Nardus ſeed*, and *Lupins*.

But foꝝ as much as (thꝛough the grace of God) we haue no Scorpions here in England noꝝ in Dutcland; therefore it is no great need to write much thereof, by reason that all that is written against Snakes, is also requisite foꝝ the ſame: yet cannot we conceale this miracle, that the Scorpions themſelues are a remedy against their owne poyſon, if the ſame be beaten and layd thereon: oꝝ if he be roſted and eaten. In like manner you haue their oyle and other their vertues mo deſcribed here and there thꝛoughout this whole booke.

Spiders are well knowne beaſts, whereof there are many ſoꝝts deſcribed by the auncient Philoſophers, which as they do differ in faſhion, colour, and in weauing their webs, ſo do they also differ in poyſon.

Albertus doth deſcribe eight kinds of them, which we haue all here in this countrey. Some do liue by catching of Flies: others by catching of water woꝝmes and ſmall fiſhes. Some also are enemyes to the Loade and Snake; foꝝ that it hath bin ſene that ſuch Spiders haue letten themſelues doꝛne by one of their thꝛebs vpon the heads of ſuch beaſts, and leaue them not befoꝛe and vntill they haue killed them. Other are deadly enemyes to the young Cuckes, which thꝛough their ſpinning do binde the Mouth to, and do ſmother them, and hale them into their neſts, that thereby they might ſuck out all the moyſture of them, and by the diuerſitie of the venemous nouꝛiſhment altereth also their venemous nature, whereby the ſame is ſometimes moꝛe ſoꝛcible oꝝ moꝛe milde. Also their manner of dwelling is not all one: there dwell many in houſes, other in the field, and in the hedges. Some dwell willingly by the water ſides, but we will not write here any moꝛe of their natures, but diſcouer their venims. Of all the venims of the Spiders, that which the Grekes call *Phalangium* is the moſt renowned, and albeit that the ſame is not knowne in England noꝝ Dutcland, yet we will deſcribe the nature of this venom, whereby one may be taught to aſſwage all the leſſer ſtingings, and the harme that may come thereby, and how the ſame may be cured. The Grekes call this ſpecies of Spiders the Wolfe, foꝝ a difference from other Spiders that are not ſo noꝛſome. Theſe Spiders are heary, and haue a great head. The ſpe Spider (which only ſpinneſh) bringeth thꝛee hundred yong ones at one time, and it receiveth also the reward of her noꝛſome fruitfullnes, to wit, that ſhe is killed of her owne yong ones, and afterwards ſucked out, which they would also do to their father if he with might did not withſtand them. If then any be ſtung of this *Phalangia*, then will the place of the ſtinging be red, neuertheles without paine oꝝ heate, howbeit, that it yeldeth ſome moyſture, and as ſone as there is vſed any medicine against it, then beſinneth the bodie to ſhake, the ſinewes of the knees and the inward parts will be ſiable, and they will be conuulſed as if it were the Cramp, they take a great anguiſh in the members, the patient can ſcarcely make water noꝝ go to ſtole, he getteth a ſweate thꝛoughout all his bodie, his eyes runne, and are dimme. Against this, muſt the alhes be vſed that are burnt of the fig tree, tempered with ſalt and wyne, and ſo layd thereon. Item, Hartwoꝝt, Barly-meale, and vineger tempered to a pap.

You are also to waſh the ſting with ſome water wherein Smallage was ſodden. To bathe often is also very good. Foꝝ this, one is to take a quarter of an ounce of any of theſe ſeeds following with wyne, to wit, the ſeede of Southernwood, Annis ſeede, Hartwoꝝt ſeeds, the rindes of the trees *Platanos*, oꝝ the ſeede of *Peſilot*. Item, the fruit oꝝ rind of *Tamarifcus* oꝝ wild Cipers ſodden in wyne.

Some will ſay if one take the iuice that is ſtrayned out of Crabs with milke and ſeeds of Smallage, that thereby the patient will immediately be whole.

Plinius writeth of the water of Smallage, that the ſame hath a ſpeciall vertue against the ſtinging of the Spider.

And there may be vſed against the Spider *Parierom*, *Nardus ſeede*, Southernwood, *Hyalcinthum*,

cinthum, iuice of *Sulberies*, field berries, and *Jramboys*, being tempered with *Hony*, and *Wyne*, or each also alone.

Woodlice, albeit that they be good against diuers other venims, yet neuertheles are they very lothſome to all men, ſpewidly biting, and bloudſhirkie, whereby they take away a bodie's ſweete ſleepe, and ſpecially vere the yong childzen, for which there hath bene much counſell ſought to dꝛine them away.

For this is very good the ſmoke of the great *Ferne*. Item, if *Voſſeleches* be caſt on the fire, and they be ſumed with it.

Birchboyes ſet in the chamber dꝛine them also away.

The water that we uſe dayly for our neceſſitie hath (by nature) no venim in it, yet if one dꝛinke it too cold, likewise ſtrong wyne, and by and by after bathing, or after that one hath runne hard: then doe there enſue great paine and ſitches, which diſeaſes may be expelled thꝛough letting of bloud, and purging.

Of the woꝛmes that bꝛede in the belly grow diuers diſeaſes. In like manner also of ſuch that growe in the fingers, in the arſegut, in the wounds, and other places moꝛ. What is to be done thereto, that haue we ſufficiently declared elſewhere.

Thus for a conſclusion of theſe venims of beaſts, and of the ſeuenth part of this booke, there is yet ſomewhat to be added that ſome account for witchery, to wit, when there is giuen in to any bodie that excitateth loue, by which commonly ſuch miſeries do folloꝛ, that they that receiue the ſame become mad and ſoliſh, like as dayly experience doth teach vs.

Onidius writeth, that *Philtre* do weaken the wits, and by their virtues they make men ſoliſh and mad. This do we call the louers herb, as if witchery had power to commaund one to loue another.

This witchery (or rather this poſſoning) do women uſe moſt of all, intending thereby to conſtrayne men that they ſhould loue them. The vngodly heathen that haue excelled therein, and chiefly the *Theſſalonians*, haue taken great delight therein, and also ſtrange miſbeliefe, that are rather to be concealed then diſcloſed.

It is very difficult to ordaine any certaine remedie for it, becauſe it cannot well be knowne (for that there be ſo many kinds of them) by what meanes it hath bene put in practice, ſo that the ſame muſt rather be iudged by the ſignes apparant to the eyes, then by any other things: yet haue I found out two things deſcribed by famous *Philiſtions* which are very good for this purpoſe: but the firſt thereof is very ſtrong, and is not to be uſed without counſell, but the other is ſomewhat ſafer, and eaſily approued.

Take a *Valerian* roſe, with the herb, ſiue or ſixe roſes of *Gentiana*, *Cruciata* a ſmall handfull of the roſes of wild *Cucumbers*, and a quart of wyne, with halfe as much water: afterwards ſethe it ſoftly about a quarter of an houre, and dꝛinke thereof moꝛning and euening. And you are to ſethe therewith a little *Cinquefoyle*.

The other: Take the middlemoſt graine rinds of *Eldern* ſhꝛead ſmall one handfull, let it dꝛy well, afterwards ſethe it in a pinte and a halfe of *Goats* milke till about the halfe, ſtrayne it, and dꝛinke it as aforeſayd. Whereof will ſome ſay, that the ſame purgeth all things whatſoeuer hath bene giuen vnto any bodie by women (to this intent) although it had bene done thꝛee yeres befoꝛe.

The end of the ſeuenth Part.

The

The eighth and last Part of this Booke,
Containeth sundry things.



The eighth and last Part of this generall practise of Physicke, is ordained for those things that doe not concerne any especiall diseases, which are before sufficiently described, but that are mete and good for to helpe sicke persons, to strengthen the weake, and to maintaine health: which also may be vsed in the kitchen for pleasure, and for other purposes moe; as Eleuaries, Potions, Conserues, & Confections of all kinds of fruits, of flowers, of Rotes, and of other Plants: Sydes, Sirupes, and Juices: Golden and vitall Waters: Herbed and Aromaticall wines, and such like; whereof otherwhiles hath been admonished, how that the same may be prepared, and to the end that the virtue of al of them might be knownen. Wherefore we will also declare their virtues and operations.

The first Chapter.

The Confection of Calmus.

This very precious and necessary Confection, is prepared after sundry maners, for besides this, that it is very common, it is also very pleasant and acceptable. But first of all there is to be noted, that the auncient Physicians had another roote, and not the yellow Lilly roote, which we haue now in vse: yea ours is not to be compared to the old *Acoro*, neither in virtue nor in operatio. The learned do esteem the *Calmus* to be the right *Acorus*, which is also very requisite for this Confection. Other be of opinion, that it is the great Galingall, which is also good for it: Wherefore (in mine opinion) this first Confection is to be vsed rather than the other following. And if so be that you had rather haue it with the taste of Sugar, than of hony, then boile Sugar to a sirup. First, we will describe one of the Confections of *Mesua*, whereof there is alwaies one found ready in all well furnished Apothecaries Shops, and afterwards one other sorte moze, whereof each one may take that liketh him best: Take the roote *Saccul*, or in the seed of it, take of our pouned *Calmus*, and prepared Pingles, of each sixe ounces; seth the rotes in faire well water, & stamp them to growt: afterwards put sixe pound of the best well scummed Hony vnto it, & then seth it all together by a soft or gentle fire, vntill the moisture of the rotes be all consumed, and stir it about, to the end, that the rotes burne not: when as it is decocted thicke enough, then take it from the fire, and temper these things following amongst them, pouned very small; to wit, Pepper one ounce, long Pepper, Cloues, Ginger, Roses, and Pace, of each halfe an ounce, Putmegs, Galingall, and Cardamome, of each three drag. temper them well together. This Confection is marvellous good against all diseases of the sinewes, it sharpeneth the wit, it alluageth the head ache, and is also good against all old sicknesses, but especially against all rheumes, which fall out of the head into the breaſt.

The second: Take *Calmus*, which beareth the yellow Lillies, which groweth in moist places, and is faire and of a hoysseſch colour, 16 ounces, make it very faire and cleane; afterwards cut it in thin slices, and seth it so long in faire water, vntill that they be mellow, then straine the water wel from it, and powze a pot of red wine vnto it, and let it boyle wel, then powze the wine from it, and stamp it all to growt, and put sixe pound of clarified Hony vnto, and let it seth wel with the wine vnto a Confection, at last put vnto it sixe ounces of Ginger, Cloues, Putmegs, Pace, Cardamome, long Pepper, and Galingall, of each one ounce and a halfe, Pepper three quarters of an ounce, beaten all together very small.

The third: Take *Calmus* prepared as before, and chopt small, two pound, clarified Hony foure pound; seth the rotes very well in red wine, afterwards put them to the hony, and let it so

sethe by a milde fire vntill it be very thicke; then temper therewith small chopt Almonds, eleuen ounces, Ginger fower ounces, Pepper halfe an ounce, long Pepper and Cloues, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cinnamon one dragma and a halfe, Galingall, Cucubes, Cardamome, Nutmegs and Pace, of each one dragma, stir them so long together with a wooden Pestle, vntill that it be cold.

The fourth: Take drie sliced *Calmus* one pound, and sethe it in two quarts of small wine; after wards poune it to grout, and take Honie or Sugar two pound, let it sethe till it be thicke, when it is a little cold, then temper with it small cut Ginger five ounces, poured Cloues, Nutmegs, Pace, and Cardamome, of each one dragma and a halfe, long and common Pepper, of each three quarters of an ounce, Galingall one drag. and a half, Greins one quarter of an ounce, temper them all together.

The fift: Take *Calmus*, cut it in shins, and take twenty ounces of it; sethe it in three pintes of red wine, so long vntill all the wine be consumed; stampe it, but not too small, then take a pinte of clarified Honey, and let it boyle by a small fire, after wards put the prepared rotes vnto it, and 8. ounces of small sliced Ginger, then let it boyle again by a milde fire, vnto a Confection: when it is luke warme, then temper with it common & long Pepper, Cloues, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, and Ginger, of each halfe an ounce, Galingall, Pace, Cardamome, Cucubes, and Greines, of each a quarter of an ounce beaten small together, temper them so long vntill they be all wared cold.

The sixt with Sugar: Take *Calmus* as before, 12. ounces, sethe it in Puscadine vntill that the wine be all wasted, stampe it to grout, and put thereto fower pounds of common clarified Sugar, with as much wine or water, then put the rotes vnto it, and let it sethe vntill it be thicke; when it is a little cold, then temper amongst it Ginger cut very small foure ounces, Cinnamon, Cardamome, Nutmegs, Pace, Cloues, *Calmus* and Cucubes, of each three drag. temper them well, and let them sethe so long as one would sethe Eggs hard, then keepe it in a gally pot.

How to make Veriuiue for the Kitchin, and for Phisicke. S. I.



Veriuiue is to be prest out of the best Grapes a good while before they be ripe, & if so be that one will keepe it long, then must the same be sodden: but if so be that you will vse this Veriuiue in the kitchin, then temper a good deale of Salt amongst it, and stir it the space of an whole houre, after wards put it into a small vessel, and cast some vnripe Pedlars into it, then shake it well about, to the end it may tooke and be clere. But if so be that you will keepe the Veriuiue for

Phisicke and without salt, then fill a glasse with a narrow necke, and powze vpon it some Sal let oyle, then will it remaine good the space of a whole yere.

There may also be made of this vn salted Veriuiue a sirupe called *de Agresta*, to wit, in this maner: Take the iuice of vnripe Grapes, when it is first prest out, fine parts, white Sugar three parts, and let it sethe softly vnto a sirupe: further then clarifie it with the white of an Eg. This sirupe is marvellous good in great heat, it swageth thirst, alayeth all wambling, parboaking, and laske, which is caused of the gall: it is also very meete in hot Cholericke agues, and about all measure good for all women with childe, which be inclined to vomiting, so; that it strengtheneth the stomacke, and withstandeth all venim.

The second Chapter.

Of the artificiall Baulme which may be vsed in steede of the right *Balsamum*.



Because that the right Balsam is no where to be gotten, or although it be brought vnto vs, yet common people cannot haue the same by reason of the dearenes: wherefore haue many Phisitions endeououred themselves for to distill such an oyle, which might haue the same efficacie, and virtue, and verily the Phisitions & Chirurgicals haue found therein an especial operation, wherefore I cannot pretermitt the description of some of them.

first,

first, this ensuing is a very pzeious remedie against the Pore, against all diseases of the mother, and of the stomacke.

Take faire cleane oyle of Turpentine sixteen ounces, stop it very close; afterwards take Lauander, Sage, Betony, Roses, Rosemary, Mints, and Bayleaves of each a small handfull, rootes of Angelica, of Treas, of Valerian, Elecampane rootes, and *Diptamus* of Candy, of each one dragme, flowers of Burrage, of Buglosse, of Lauander, and flowers of Spike, flowers of Sage of Cammomill and *Stechas*, of each one quarter of an ounce, Annis one drag. and a halfe, Pyony rootes, Licorice and *Spica* of Indy, of each one dragme, peles of Citrons, and of Oranges, of each two scruples; stamp them all small together, and then powze vnto it the oyle of Turpentine, and so let it steepe the space of a whole day, with meetely much water with it, that it be covered therein: Afterwards distill it out againe in water, at the first with a gentle fire, vntill it be warme, and that so long as any oyle or water doth come out of it, afterwards separate the oyle from the water.

Secondly, if you will distill it once againe, then put to the foresaid water and oyle 3. ounces of liquid Storax, and distill it as before.

Thirdly, take red Storax two ounces, Frankincense, Myrrhe, Lacca, Masticke, Bdellium, and Benzoin of each one ounce and a halfe, stamp them all together and distill it as before.

Fourthly, Take Ginger, Galingall, Seduary, and Gentian, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cubebes, Cardamome, Greines, and Pepper, of each one dragme and a halfe, selected Rubarbe and Saffron, of each halfe a dragme, Nutmegs, Pace, Cloues, and Calmus, of each one ounce, stamp them all small together, and put it into a glasse body; then put vnto it againe the foresaid oyle and water, let it so stand and steepe, and distill it afterwards, then separate the oyle from the water, and keepe it well stoppt.

You haue also in like maner in the second Parte, the first Chapter, and third §. an artificiall Baulme which was ordained for the Emperour *Ferdinandus*, and another in the first Part, the 12. Chapter, called a *Hypobalsamum*.

This following is also highly renowned: Take selected Myrrhe, Aloe, Indie *Spica*, Dragon blood, Frankincense, Bdellium, Balsam fruit, Saffron, Masticke, Gum, *Stechas*, red Storax, *Laudanum*, and Beuercod, of each one quarter of an ounce, Turpentine three ounces and a halfe, yelow Cowslips halfe a handfull: further distill them all together as is before saide.

These three last be very forcible against all Balleyes, if the lame members be annoynted therewith, and if that one doe drinke a drop or twaine thereof with wine, is also very good. These Baulmes be also good for all fresh wounds, so that they may be healed in two or three daies therewith. They be also very good against all diseases of the sinewes.

Another which is common with all Chirurgians: Take selected Myrrhe, Aloe, *Spica* of Indy, Dragon blood, Frankincense, Myrrhe, *Опорнасит*, Bdellium, *Ammoniacum*, *Sarcocolla*, *Laudanum*, Balsam fruits, Saffron, Masticke, Gumme, and liquid Storax, of each one quarter of an ounce, fresh Beuercod two dragmes and a halfe, *Muscus* halfe a dragme, Turpentine sower ounces and a halfe, ponne all that is to be pouned, and adde the Turpentine vnto them with a little water, and distill all together in seething water, as is said before.

Of Beere. §.1.



Common Beere is made in this countrey of many kindes of Graine, as of Oats, of Barley, and of Wheat; whereby it is also of sundry natures: That which is made of Barley is cold of nature, in comparison of wine: that which is made of Barley and Oats, that is lesse binding, and maketh also sower windes, and doth also nourish lesse: that which is brewed of Wheat or of any other graine, is hotter, warmer, and more binding, the thicker it is, the worse; the thinner the better: that which is well Popt, causeth one to pisse freely, and loseth the body, but it is not wholesome for them that haue weake bzaines; and that is vnhollomer wherein the seedes of Rue be decocted, for that the drunkennes of such Beere weareth away much slower, then the drunkennes of wine, for that it maketh grosse vapors in the head, and a tough slime, which will hardly be digested. If it be not well sodden, then doth it cause much winde, puffeth vp the belly.

belly. But very old and beere well sodden, doth make people fat, increaseth the blond, and (in women that giue suck) the milke, and that especially if the same be brewed of good cozne. Thus for to keepe beere long, take about halfe a pound of prepared Coziander vnto a barrell of beere, and sethe the same in two quarts of the same beere, afterwards strayne it, and wzing it out, and powze it warme into the vessell, yet make it tight, and let it stand so still a day and a night. Some do take a new earthen pot, knock the same in peces, and cast it into the vessell, and put also vnto it a new layd egge.

The third Chapter.

Of Claret wyne, Hipocras, and of Herbwinnes.



These aromaticall wynes and such like haue no certaine prescription, for that each one maketh them according to his owne god liking, and pleasure, the one putteth much spice vnto it, the other much Sugar, and another lesse of the one or of the other. Some do also make them with Hony, like as hereafter some do follow for an example.

Take elected Cinnamon three ounces, censed and small cut Ginger and Greines, of each one ounce, Calingall one ounce and a halfe, Putmegs, Cloues, Cardamome, and Cucubes, of each one quarter of an ounce, being poumed altogether grossely, powze a quart of wyne vpon it, and stop it tight, afterwards set it a whole night in a warme place. This being all done, then take foure quarts of wyne, and one quart of cleare skummed Hony, powze the Hony vnto a little wyne, and so let it sethe softly together: afterwards then powze the foure quarts of wyne vnto it, and all the steeped Spices, and let it cole a little, then powze it so thorow a streining bag, and that so oftentimes together untill the wyne runne cleare thorow it. This Claret wyne may be put into a little vessell, and the spices thorow which the wyne hath runne, are to be hanged in the vessell in a long bag, then will it remayne good a long time. This potion is very good against all cold and moyst diseases of the head, of the braynes, and the stomack. It is also good for all cold women, and for all old people: it strengtheneth the digestive virtue, prouoketh naturall heate, and consumeth the Phlegma.

Another: Take *Species de gemmis frigidis* three dragmes, *Aromatici Rosati* one dragme, Cinnamon one quarter of an ounce, white Sugar seven ounces, good strong wyne one quart, steape them therein, and powze it oftentimes thorow, as is sayd before. Of this Claret wyne are they to drinke oftentimes which haue a weake stomack, and an obstructed Luer, or to steape sometimes therein a peece of bread.

A common Claret wyne: Take Cinnamon, Pepper, and Greines, as much as you please, clarified Honny also as much as you list, powze it then all together thorow a wollen bag, as before. You may also take Cloues, Putmegs, and other Spices: in like manner also Sugar in stead of the Hony.

You haue also in the third part, the eleventh Chapter and 5. S. a Claret wyne called *Stelladia*, which is much vsed in Italy. There is also another sort made which is almost like vnto some of the former, but there be not so many spices taken for it: to wit, but halfe an ounce of poumed Ginger, Cardamome one dragme, and Sugar halfe a pound, or more, vnto a quart of wyne, and so sifted together.

There is also an aromaticall wyne which is called Hipocras made thus: Take Cinnamon 2. ounces, sliced Ginger one ounce, Greines one quarter of an ounce, Calingall, Cloues, Putmegs, Cucubes, and Cardamome, of each one drag. of these grosse poumed spices you shall take vnto a quart of wyne one ounce and a halfe, according to that you will haue the Hipocras strong, Sugar halfe a pound or more: then set it in a warme place to steape a whole night, and afterwards powze it thorow the bag as all the rest. There is commonly taken for this red wine. This Hipocras hath the same virtue as the Claret wyne hath: yet are all yong people to refrayne from such like drinks, and of Palmesey and of Pistacell, to the end that they do not increase heate by heate. This Hipocras and Claret wyne may also be well made for all weake bodies, that it be somewhat laxative.

But if so be that there be any sick persons which be forbidden wyne, or if that he drinke not

the same willingly by nature, and that neuertheles the decoctions did not agree with him, then may this potion following be made, called *Hippocras fontis*: Take Cinnamon, figs, Cloues, and Ginger, of each one quarter of an ounce, Greines one dragma, good well water a quart, which is coloured well with red Saunders, and then put the spices beaten grosse into it, and let it boyle a little. If you will haue this potion sweeter, then put in some Sugar in the seething, or some Hony, and then let it distill thozow the bag, as is sayd before.

You haue also in the third part the twelth Chapter and 4. §. another aromaticall wyne, which might be placed among these.

In the end of this part shall moe aromaticall wynes be described.

Of Clifters and their vse. §. 1.



If one know to vse these Clifters aright, and to prepare them, then can there be no moze profitable, nor yet safer medicine inuented. Therefore there be before and almost in all sicknesses so many kinds ordained, and thereby taught, how that the same shall be prepared, that it is almost needeles to write any moze of them. Neuertheles to prosecute this our methode, we will here discouer certaine common and milde Clifters. In small Agues, and when the patient is weake or scant as yet recovered of some long sickness, then are these ensuing to be used.

Take Pallowes, and Violet leaues, of each one handfull, boyle them well together; take of this decoction twelue or sixtene ounces, mingle Cassy, Hony, and course Sugar of each thre quarters of an ounce with it, oyle of Oliues thre ounces, Salt one dragma or somewhat moze, temper them all together, and minister it reasonable warme: for such like Clifters may you take Hen or Button broth.

Another that relaxeth and coleteth: Take Violet leaues and Pallowes, of each one handfull, Mercurie, Betes, and water Lillies, of each halfe a handfull, Lettice and Purslaine, of each somewhat lesse: seethe them in sufficient water, and take thereof as much as is before, oyle of Violets foure ounces, Salt one quarter of an ounce, and minister it moderately warme.

In hot Agues: Take Betes, Pallowes, Mercurie, and Violet leaues, of each one handfull, boyle them all together in sufficient water, and then take thereof twelue or sixtene ounces, Cassy, Hony, Sugar, Salt and Oyle, as is sayd before.

When the patient doth complaine of great paine and wind in the belly, then boyle therewith grosse pouned Fennell seede, Annis, Comin, and Caruway.

There is also an especiall Cassy prepared for a Clifter, in this manner following: Take Violet leaues with the floures, Pallowes, Mercurie, Betes, and Pelilot, of each halfe a handfull, seethe the same in a little water, strayne it and wring it out, then wash therewith the Cassy out of the Pyppes, for to get all the black out of them, and afterwards then seethe it short, untill it be thick, when as then you haue six ounces thereof, then put nine ounces of Sugar vnto it, and let it seethe untill it be thick ynough. This Cassy doth lase very mildly.

Of confected Seedes. §. 2.



Ere we will now speake only of all seedes which be confected with Sugar, as Coziander seede, Fennell seede, Annis, Comin, Caruway, and such like. Item, of some fruits, as Almonds, Pingles, Pistacies, halell puts, Cucubes, and of other moe confected rotes, which may be confected with Sugar: and because the same by reason of the Sugar and otherwise are very pleasant, wherby they will not only serue for the kitchen, but also for Phisick, wherefore we will here describe the nature & operation of them all.

We haue in the senenth part often admonished of Coziander, and given a caueat of his venim, that the same ought not to be used vnprepared; otherwise it is by all Phisitions aduised, that morning and euening confected Coziander should be used, for it dryeth up the ascending vapors of the Stomack, it strengtheneth and dryeth the Braynes, it is good against all swimming of the head, and against the Palsie; it is good for the Stomack, and procureth sleepe, in so much as then these vertues be ascribed to the Coziander, to which the Sugar addeth only the pleasantnes, you may looke what the Table sayth of all the other seedes.

The confected Annis seeds are good for them which haue a sinking breath, and cannot sleepe, it prouoketh vrine, it quenbeth naturall thirst, it taketh away the windines of the belly, it is good for all paines of the stomack, against all diseases of the Luer, of the Lights, of the Matric, and it helpeth the digestion. It is also good against all hoarseness, shortnes of breath, and especially for all cold diseases of women, and for all them which be much plagued with the Whites. Lastly, it augmenteth also much the milke in women.

The confected Fennell seed is good against all poyson, and especially against the venim of Snakes, it moueth womens termes, it warmeth the backe, it asswageth the payne of the same, it breaketh the Stone, it expelleth vrine, the Stone, grauell, and the slime whereof the grauell is ingendred, it increaseth womens milke, it cureth sower belchings of the stomacke, it is good against all wambing and vomiting, it alayeth the Cough, and all hoarseness of the throte. But aboue all is this Fennell seed commended against the darkenes of the eyes, for it preserveth people from all belmes on the eyes, it sharpneth the sight if one take the same moyning and evening, to wit, after meales, and cheweth the same long.

Comin doth grow much in *Apulia*, it hath the same vertue with the Caruway. It is also very good for them which be plagued with the grauell, and can hardly make their water.

The Caruway seed is hotter and dryer by nature then the Annis or Fennell, therefore it is stronger and more forcible; and especially doth it warme the stomack, and all inward parts, it openeth all obstructions, it forceth vrine, it breaketh the Stone, it expelleth sand and grauell, it driueth out winds, and it taketh away all paine and colick of the belly.

The confected Almonds are good against all diseases of the Lights, and the Throte, against all dry Coughes, and narrownes of the breast, it strengtheneth all weake people, and all them which do consume away. The bitter Almonds do expell vrine and grauell, they do dry the Braynes, and do hinder the ascending vapors, they withstand all dyntennes, and be good against many diseases of the breast, and of the lights.

The hassell nuts haue in some sort the same nature with the Almonds: but they with the red shales haue an especiall operation and vertue for all scowings and larks, and especially to staunch the bloudie fluxe. All sorts of hassell nuts be more wholesome confected with Sugar then otherwise, as one may see and reade in many places of this booke.

The Pingles be also of the same nature with the Almonds, and be especiall good for all leane folks, for that they strengthen much: yet are the kernels to be layd 24. howres befoze to sleepe in Rose water, and then to be dyed againe, for they augment much humane seede.

Of the confected Spices, Peeles, Rootes, and such like. §. 3.



The Ginger, the Cinnamon, the Cloues, the Nutmegs, the Pace, Cardus, Orange peels, Citron peels, Parierom, and the sliced Licorice, are likewise confected with Sugar. These sozelayd do keepe all alike the properties of their natures, and be especiall good in time of the Plagus, for that they make good breath, which will not lightly be infected.

It is also to be noted, that all that which is to be confected for Whisick, must be conered very thin with Sugar, but only the Spices may well be confected somewhat thicker.

The common baked Ginger sugar is thus prepared: Take one pound of Sugar, and sette it with well water, clarifying it as the Sugar is wont to be boyled for baked Sugar, and when it beginneth to be cold, then mixe thus dragmes of pouned Ginger amongst it, and when you see that it beginneth to be thick, then powze it vpon a stone or a table, which is made fat with a little Waller oyle.

Yet another baked Sugar: Take Ginger two dragmes and a halfe, Cinnamon one quarter of an ounce, Cloues one dragme, Pace and Nutmegs, of each halfe a dragme, Sugar one pound, sette it, and do as befoze. You haue in like manner also in the third part the eleventh Chapter and 20. §. a baked Sugar, which purgeth mildly, whereof one may take a quarter of an ounce at once.

The fourth Chapter.

Of preferued Fruits, Floures, and other things.



At the end that all Fruits, Floures, Kindes, and in fine, all that is preferued with Sugar or with Honey, be not parted from the former, therefore we will in this Chapter comprehend all that is preferued in Sugar, or decocted, as Conserues, and also declare their virtues.

How to confect the Elecampane roote. §. 1.



At the spring of the yere is this roote to be digged out of the ground, and the outtermost pales to be cut off, the roote made very cleane, afterwards cut it in somewhat thickish shiues or slices: this being done, then sethe the same very softly in two Kindes of water one after the other, to the end the bitterness may be taken away, and be very mellow. Then lay them on a cleane cloth, to the end they may ware somewhat dry. Put them in a leaded pot, and powze metely hard sodden Sugar vpon them (but that it be not too hot) vntill the rootes be couered. This shall stand so a day and a night, then shall the Sugar draw all the moisture vnto it, which as yet is in the roote, and afterwards powze the Sugar of againe, and boyle it vnto a sirupe: this being done, then powze it luke warme vpon it, and do this so often as the rootes giue any moisture from them.

These preferued Elecampane rootes be a very good medicine for all cold diseases of the bladder. They take away the piping of the breast, and the shortnes of breath. They be also good against the Cough, the spetting of blood, against the payne of the sides: they strengthen the stomacke, and the digestion: They cleanse also the same from all vncleane humors: They breake the Stone, and moue womens Termes: They separate also all tough phlegme of the breast, they heale the vlcers of the Lights, and all inward parts, and especially they warme the stomacke and the Matrix.

To preferue black Cherries. §. 2.



Take black Cherries as they come from the tree, and then cut off the stalks, for two pound of Cherries take one pound of Sugar, and sethe the same, and clarify it: when it is then halfe boyled, then put in the Cherries, and then let them sethe all together softly, to the end the Cherries do not breake, and that so long, vntill that the Sugar be drawen betwene the fingers with small threds. And when as now the broth is almost cold, then put the Cherries in a leaded pot with the stalks vpiwards, for so they will remayne good a whole yere. And in this manner shall red Cherries also be preferued.

These Cherries be not only acceptable for them that be sick, but also good for all kinde of heate, they moisten the dry mouth, the tongue, and the throte, they quench thirst, they make appetite, and refresh debilitie. The conserue of Cherries is thus prepared.

Take black Cherries as many as you please, let them sethe well in wyne, wying them thorough a cloth, or thorough an hearen streiner, and afterwards let it sethe againe vntill it be thick, stirring it alwayes well about. Vnto three pounds of this iuice put two pound of Sugar, and afterwards sethe them together to the full thicknes. There may also a conserue of Cherryes be made with spices, as hereafter folloiweth: Take of the foresayd conserue whilst that it is yet warme one pound, and temper poudred Cinnamon amongst it, and Nutmegs, of each one quarter of an ounce, Ginger and Galingall, of each one dragme, Cardamome, Cloues, Pace, and *Lignum Aloe*, of each halfe a dragme. This latter conserue doth strengthen the hart more then the former.

Conserue of Eibright. §.3.



Take Eibright in July with the white flowers, strippe the leaues and flowers from the stalkes; afterwards chop them small, and take one pound thereof, and stamp amongst it two pound and a halfe of Sugar, and then set it in the sunne, and stir it well oftentimes about. This is the Conserue of Eibright which is verie commodious for the Eyes, as in the first Part is sufficiently declared. It sharpeneth also all dark sight, it dryeth the braines of all cold superfluous humors, it strengtheneth the liuer, and openeth all obstructions, it expelleth the yellow Jaundise, and the Ague that proceeds of an vncleane stomacke. In conseruing of all flowers and herbes is to be noted, that al they that are hot and dry, as Lauander, Parierom, Saulm, Sage, Spints, and such like, that one is to take to one pound of them, two pounds and a halfe of Sugar: but all that is moyst, as Burrage flowers, and Buglosse flowers, &c. is but two pound to be taken.

Conserue of Betonie. §.4.



Btonie is very highly and worthily reputed of all Physicians, whereof there be three kindes, to wit, browne Betony which is the vpright Betony, and also the Conserue which we will here describe. The second kinde are our Gilloflowers. The third sort be Cowslips, wherof we will speake hereafter in their due place. This Conserue of Betony is therefore not vniuersally commended, seeing these vertues insuing be ascribed vnto it. Some do write that it is good against the crampe, against the palsey, and against the falling sickenes; it is also good against madnes, against spitting of blood, and against the *Sciatica*; this herbe is also good against all payne of the stomacke, of the kidneies, and of the bladder, of the liuer, milt, and of all inward parts, it expelleth vrine, it loseth, and it helpeth digestion: it is also good against belching, it cleanseeth the breast, it withstandeth the dyspnie, the Ague, and it moueth womens termes. In fine, it is especiall good for all inward sicknesses: lastly, it is also good against all venim. If that one desire to make a conserue of it, then take onely the flowers for it which are to be poured together with Sugar, like as is taught at the first.

How that the grater Pimpernell rootes are to be preserved. §.5.



Take the rootes of the greater Pimpernell which be about one finger thicke, wash them well, scrape them, and cut them in peeces about the length of a finger; but cut them longwise, & take out the hart of it, then poure fresh well water vpon it, and let them sethe like as is said of the Elecampane rootes, but they must not utterly lose their bitteresse. This being done, powre decocted Sugar, or Honey vnto it: and when it is waterish, then boile it againe, and that so often as is needfull. These rootes expell vrin, grauell, and the stone, they strengthen the kidneies and the bladder, they cleanse them from all vncleannes, they assuage all paines of the bowels, which do come through cold causes, and they be good against the suffocation of the mother in time of the plague, they be good against all bad ayre if they be holden in the mouth.

How that Peares are to be preserved after two waies. §.5.



You may take such Peares as you thinke good which be new gathered from the tree, but none other but those that be sound. If they be too hard, then let them lye in a warme place the space of three or fouer weekes, vntill they begin to be somewhat melow: but handle them not much, for that thereby will they quickly rot. Also be you will preserve them, then haue an earthen pot ready and lay in the bottome of this pot some dyed Wine leaues or Nut leaues, & thereon a laie of Peares, & so forth, leaues & Peares vntill that the pot be full: afterwards fill vp the pot with old wine,

wine, and lay some heavy thing vpon the top of it that the Peares may not swim. These Peares may be vsed for meate, and also for sicke persons for a comfort. The common people which haue no wine may do it after the same manner with water. But if you desire to haue them of a better taste, then take Ginger which is made very faire, cut the same small and strow it betwene each rowe. Item, take a new pot and put Peares into it (like as is saide before) make the pot as close to as is possible: afterwarde lay it so in a vessell with wine, then will they remaine fresh and good the space of a whole yeare. These Peares may otherwhiles be roasted in the ashes and strow them with fennell seeds; and also after supper to eate them, thereby to close vp the stomacke, to the end the bad vapors may not ascend towards the head: they strengthen also the braynes, and be especiall good for the sight.

If one will preserue Huske Peares, then are they to be gathered in faire dry weather, and in the decrease of the Moone, and when they be very ripe; then take out the very fairest and soundest of them, pare them very thin, cut off the stalkes and the flower on the top: then make ready a cleane sirupe of white Sugar which is well boyled: when you will take the same off from the fire, then laye the prepared Peares therein, and let them sethe two or thre waumes together, afterwards coole a day and a night. This being done, sethe the Sugar once againe, and then luke warme poure it vpon the Peares, and do that so long vntill that you see that the sirupe waxeth no more, otherwise they cannot continue. If you will haue them pleasanter, then put Cinnamon vnto them, and they will be the better for the stomacke. These Peares do comfort and refresh all sicke folkes that do loath meate, and they close vp the stomacke against the ascending of all bad vapors: if they be eaten at the first sitting downe to meate, then doe they binde the belly. But if one can get no Huske Peares, then may other be taken in their steed which be likest of all vnto Huske Peares in smell and taste, and to prepare them as is expressed.

How that Oranges are to be preserued. §. 7.



This Apple is wont very seldome to be confected, but his peeles very often, the which are thus prepared: Take fresh Orange peeles, cut the white out, and cut the yelow longwise: afterwards let it sethe so long as one would sethe an Egg hard, and afterwards let the broth runne off. This being done, then poure Sugar vpon it which is well boyled vntill that they be well couered, and so let them stand the space of eight daies in the same, then be they prepared. Oranges are prepared also as followeth: Take the outtermoost of fresh Orange peeles and cut the yelow the longest way; afterwards sethe the same in water vntill that the bitterness may come out of it. Poure the liquoz from it, and then let it sethe againe vntill that they be thowow melowe (so wit in good wine) then stampe them to grout, and at last put good Spalmey vnto it, and so much Sugar as you please, and so let it sethe well together stirring it alwaies well about. Some do lay them to steape in a strong leigh, and afterwards steape them in water. But it is not so good, for that their force will be thereby much abated; so that it is better to sethe them in two or thre waters, to the end that they may lose their bitterness. They strengthen the hart and the vitall spirits, and therewith also the stomacke; they do helpe the consumption, and dry the braynes.

Conserue of Burrage. §. 8.



Amongst the learned there is debate whether the name betwix Burrage & Buglos, be exchanged, but therein is no great importance by reason that both of them are of one nature, to wit, that the same are to be vsed in all venemous and pestilentiall Agues; they do strengthen the hart and all vitall spirits; they withstand all venim, and all heauines of minde; and they do also cleanse the blood from all melancholy. In fine, they coole all inward parts. This Conserue is made of the blew flowers as we haue taught before.

How

How that Calmus is to be preserued. §.9.



Take faire perfect Calmus, powze faire Well water vpon it, and let it sethe together vntill it be thowow mellow, and that it lose some of his bitternes: afterwards make these rotes faire from the outwardmost pæles, and from all other uncleannes. If so be that now some do swel too thicke, then cut them longwise; and in case that they be too bitter, then let them sethe once again in water: and then afterwards lay them to drie in a sieue. The Sugar is certaine times to be decocted, like as is taught before, vntill that all the moisture be wasted. This confected Calmus is most in all his force like vnto the Ginger, and especially it is very good for all debility of the stomacke, that is burthened with some cold humors, for that it consumeth the same humors, and besides, this strengtheneth the stomack: if it be taken in the morning, then doth it keep folks from all pestidentall ayze, and maketh a swete breath: it expelleth water, and is especiall good for all diseases of the bladder and the kidneies; it forceth the stone, and the grauell, and it prouoketh womens termes: it is warme and drie by nature, and hath an especial operation for to open all obstructions &c.

How that Citrons are to be preserued. §.10.



Common manner to preserue Citrons in Sugar or in Honie, is this, that one peele off the yelloiw rindes, and cut the white pith in round or long peces, and then to separate the sower with the seedes from it. Further, the same is to bee boyled in a water or twaine, to the end that the bitternes come from it, and therewith may be mellow and soft: afterwards is boyled Sugar to be powzed lukewarme vpon it, and deale with them like as is taught of the Ciecampans rotes. This preserue is very good against all venim, it strengtheneth the hart, and all vitall powers: it is moist and cold in the first degre, and it is very safe to be taken.

How that Citron peeles are to be preserued. §.11.



Take the pæles of Citrons, which be not peled too thin, but that there remaine some of the white with it, and do therewith as is said of the Dzenge pæles. These pæles be warme and drie vnto the third degre, wherefore they are but seldome to be used: but in cold sicknesses they do help digesture, they withstand all melancholicke humors, and also all diseases which may procede thereof.

How Berberies be preserued. §.12.



You must take of the very fairest Berberies that you can get, and wash the same very cleane, afterwards sethe them in a sirupe of good Sugar, and when the sirup is sodden thort enough, then cast the Berberies into it, and let it sethe so softly a thort time, so that the berries do not bzeake, and then preserue them in a glased pot. They be good against all heate and all other inflammation of the blood, and especially of the stomacke and liuer; they comfirt the sicke person in great thirst, they moisten the drie tongue, the throate and all the mouth. There is also a conserue made of this fruit, and that in this manner following: Take Berberies as before, and sethe the same in wine: afterwards straine them thowow a sieue, or searce, or thowow a cloth, and then let it be sodden vnto a Conserue, stirring it alwaies about. This Confection stoppeth the bloody sure, and coleteth the blood which is inflamed of Cholera, it obstrudeth womens termes, and maketh appetite to meate, it is alwaies somewhat stronger then the conserue of Ralpes. Otherwile hath it the same virtue or operation. The Apothecaries do call it *Rob de Berberis*.

Conserue of Fumitorie. §.13.

This bitter herbe Fumitory, is very well knowen; if you will make a Conserue of it, then take the flowers of it, and pounce the same with Sugar, as other Conserues, and as we

have taught of Eyebright. This Confection is especiall good for all them which be full of vnclean blood, and also for all them that be plagued with scurffe, with the Pore, and with such like vncleanne: it keepeth men in health, and also from all venemous ayre. Of this conserue may freely be taken, as much as the quantity of a great nut, before that men will bathe, for that it expelleth out the sweat, and all bad humors of the body: therefore it is also good in the beginning of the Dropisie, for that it openeth the liuer and all obstructions of the inward partes: it driueth out the yellow Jaundies by the vyne, and is very commodious for many other things.

How the Conserue of the fruit of the wild Rose tree
is to be made. §.14.



When as the fruits of these wild Roses (which be called Priestes pindle) begin to be ripe, then take as many as you please, and seethe the same with red wine vnto pap, afterwards wyng it thozow a sieue, or searle, & so let it seethe well without putting any other thing vnto it, with a continuall stirring about, as another Conserue. This Conserue hath a marvellous operation for to stop the scouring or laske: it is also good for all wambling of the stomacke: others do make it to a Conserue with Ruff halfe decocted, wherewith they seethe it againe, and they cast certaine slices of Parmalabe vnto it, which is especiall good for a cold stomack. This Conserue is more in vse with the common people, then at the Apothecaries, wherefore we will speake the lesse thereof.

How that Abricokes are to be preserued. §.15.



The skins of these Abricokes are to be pluckt off softly, then poure vpon them Sugar decocted hard, not ouer hot: then let it stand so the space of one day, or somewhat longer, afterwards seethe the Sugar againe, and that so long as the Abricokes do yeld any moisture from them. Their vertue and operation are like to Peaches.

Conserue of Elderne berries. §.16.



It is for to write of the Conserue of Elderne berries, the same is holden by the auncient Philosophers, and also amongst the common people, almost in stede of Treacle. and that not without cause, as you shall heare hereafter: and is thus prepared: Take ripe Elderne berries, strip them with a caule from the stalkes, wyng out the iuice and let it seethe by a milde fire vnto a pap. This Conserue is to be taken against all inward venim, it cureth all vlcers and swellings, it expelleth by sweat all bad humors and corruptions: wherefore it is to be taken before that one doe goe to the bath: but this cannot be done but onely after purging, and that fasting. If this be so vsed, then doth it consume the Dropisie at the beginning. It hath also bene found, if that this conserue be spread vpon the Rose, that thereby it will immediately weare away.

If thou wilt make Conserue of the flowers, then take the flowers when they be very ripe, shake the flowers from the stalkes, and let them drye betwixen two clothes; afterwards spread them small: vnto a pound of flowers, take two pound and a halfe of Sugar, poune them well together: afterwards set in the sun, and stirre them oftentimes about. This Conserue openeth the liuer, driueth away all swelling of the belly, and all beginning of Dropisies, &c.

How that Ginger is to be preserued. §.17.



Take faire white Ginger, of the fairest Races, and lay the same to keepe the space of certain daies, or so long untill that the vppermost peles will be pared off, then take them off, and make them very cleane, afterwards then poure fresh leigh vpon them, and let them steape, so the end that they may swell thozowly: and when as they be wahren very mellow (which may be perceived by cutting them thozowly) then poure of the leigh, and wash them well with sweet fresh water, pick them oftentimes with a small knife onerthwart, and afterwards lay them a day and a night in sweete

swæte water, to the end that the sharpnes of the leigh may be taken away, and doe this so long untill you can perceiue no sharpnes of the leigh any longer: then spread the Ginger vpon a fower cornered linnen cloth, that the linnen may draw the moysture out of it; but if so bee that the cloth be thorow wet, then lay them on another drye cloth againe. Some doe spare this labour, and lay it vpon sieues, when it is then very drie, then haue a sirupe ready, which is made of Sugar, or clarified Hony, and then doe therewith like as is taught of the Clecampane roots; but aboue all haue good regard that the sirupe be not powzed too hot vpon it, for that thereby the Ginger will shrinke, yea be hard and vnpleasant: then keepe this Ginger in a Gally pot. This confected Ginger is very good vsed for all cold phlegmatick sicknesses, and for a cold weak stomack: it taketh away all vapors that doe ascend from the stomacke towards the head; it warmeth all the body, and all inward parts. At euening when one goeth to bed a good peece taken of it doth dry maruellous much the bzaines: Thereby will also the parts of generation in men and women be strengthened. But this may be gotten preserved greene out of the Indies, which is much better, then that which is preserved in this countrey. The same was wont before times to be preserved after an easier maner, to wit, in this manner following: Take white Ginger as much as you please, bury it the space of 14. daies in moist sand, and wash it afterwards with a sharpe leigh, lay it afterwards againe the space of foureteene daies in Rose water; this being done, make a sirupe of Sugar, or of Hony, or both of them tempered together, clesed and scummed well, and then lay the Ginger in this sirupe: But I cannot commend this maner of doing.

How that Raspes are to be preserved. §.18.



You must take the Raspes as they hang vpon the hedge, wash the same very cleane, and make them faire, if there be any vncleannes with them, and then make ready a clarified sirups of Sugar, and when as now the sirupe is almost boyled, then cast in the berries, and let them sethe softly therein a good while that they may not bzeake, and doe not also cole. Their Conserue is made as followeth: when the berries be very ripe, then strip them from the stalkes, and wring the iuice thorough a cleane cloth; afterwards let it sethe softly, stirring it alwaies about untill it begin to be thicke, then put as much Sugar vnto it as you please, and sethe it away like as all other Conserues. You may also boyle this iuice without Sugar, and it is also better for Whisicke. The Apothecaries doe call the same *Rob de Ribes*. This Conserue hath an especiall virtue to slake thirst, and to moysen the drie tounge, and all other inward parts, it maketh appetite, and that especially in hot times. In like manner may also this decocted iuice be tempered with wine, and vsed as a sauce amongst other meates.

How the Conserue of Hyslope is to be made. §.19.



In July, take the flowers of this herbe, and Sugar also with it, ponne them well together, like as we haue taught of Eyebright. This Conserue is very good for the bzeast, the lights, and such like parts: it is also good against the Cough, the narrownes of the bzeast, and against the short bzeath; it consumeth and dryeth all cold rheumes; it exceedingly warmeth the bzeast; it strengtheneth the stomacke, the head, and the bzaines; it taketh away all ascending vapors; and is good against all popson, and also very meate against all coldnes of the inward parts.

Of the Conserues of Lauander and of Spikenard. §.20.



Of these herbes are found to agree so niere in operation that the *Spica* is called the male, because it hath bigger leaues and eares, and the Lauander the female. Of both these herbes are the flowers only taken, and for euery pound of flowers, two and a halfe of Sugar, or otherwhiles thre pound of Sugar, because they be strong: beate them well together. This Conserue is very good for all cold diseases of the stomacke, and for all windines of the same, it easeth the paine in the belly, and the ascension of the pother, it openeth all obstructions of the liuer, it moueth vyne, it

it dyeth the cold and moyst bzaines, it is good for the sinewes, Palsey, and lamenes that proceedeth of them, it restoreth the lost speech, it taketh away all cold rheumes that fall out of the head into the eyes, teeth, and other parts, and this conserue is especiall good against the corruption of the gums.

How to preserue the *Eryngium* roote. §. 21.



This herbe is called of the Philosophers *Eryngium*, the rootes onely of this herbe be preserued. The same are digged vp in the spring time or in harvest, wash and scrape the same well; afterwards cleaue them in the length and take out the hart, then cut them in meane peeces, sethe them and prepare them as you did Calmus and the greater Pimpernell rootes: or you may leaue them long, put onely the pith of them out and sticke it about with Cinnamon and Cloues, which giueth it a pleasantnes. These rootes be also verie good for all them that haue any disease in the liuer, they do take away all paine of the milt, the kidneies, and backe, they drie away the colicke, they moue bzaie and the womens termes; they be also good against all venim, & against all purfuenes in the bzeast, they free one from the crampe, and of the falling sickenes, they do warme the parts of generation, and be especiall good for a cold stomacke.

Conserue of Marierom. §. 22.



If this herbe are the leaues onely to be taken, and poume them with Sugar like the Siebight: this conserue is of a drye and of a warme nature, it is especiall good for all moyst and cold diseases of the bzaines, of the head, and of the stomacke, it openeth all obstructions of the liuer, and all inward parts, it doth strengthen the hart, and it hath the same vertue with the conserue of Lauander, and of Spikenard.

Conserue of Baulme. §. 23.



Conserue of this herbe is especiall good for all biting of Scorpions, of Spiders, and of waspes, and is also good for all biting of Adders, the same being eaten or layd vpon it: it moueth womens termes, it allwageth all tooth ache and paine of the ioints, it freeeth one from the poison of the Toadstoles, it stayeth the scouring *Dysenteria*, and taketh away all colickes, it dryeth away all penfuenes, it strengtheneth a cold stomacke, it warmeth the bzeast, and giueth a light bzeath, it cleanseth all vlcers, and is good against all darke sight: of the white flowers of this herebe is also a Conserue made like as of all other flowers, which neuertheless is not much in vse.

How that Nutmegs are to be confected. §. 24.



If Nutmegs take the very best, lay them to steepe in sharpe leigh which is made of woodashes, and let them lye so long therein vntill that they be thoroughly steept, yea mellow and soft: afterwards poure away they leigh and peele off the vppermost graye skins. This being done, poure fresh water oftentimes vpon it to the end that the sharpenes of the leigh may be drawen away againe: then let them dry in the shadow in a sieue; prepare afterwards a sirupe of Sugar which is well decocted, and so poure it lake warme vpon them; and if it ware waterish, then sethe the same againe, and that once euery three or fouer daies vntill that the sirupe continue thicke. These Nutmegs be of a drye and warme nature, they strengthen the head, the bzaines, the hart, and all vitall spirits, they increase naturall heat, and all naturall powers, if so be that one take the same in the morning fasting, and in the euening after meate. They do consume all noysome and superfluous humours of the inward parts, they do strengthen the stomacke and make fresh blood, they yeld a good and odoriferous bzeath, they ease all swellings and hardnes of the spleene, and they be especiall good against

against all cold diseases of the liuer: but they be not so good for the lights; they haue great power for to dry a moyst head. Now a daies be they brought out of Indie preserved greene which be much better and forible, then they which be preserved in this countrey.

Conserue of Gilloflowers. §.25.



There be of these wel known flowers, the red well sauozing be the best to make a Conserue of, cut the vndermost white from it and vse the leaues alone, and the white are you to cast away; the same is to be pouned with Sugar like to other Conserues. This Conserue hath the same vertue that the conserue of Betony hath, for they are also a kind of Betony. These Gilloflowers are especially commended against all venime: this Conserue is also very good for the head and the braynes, drying and warming the same, it alayeth also the shaking and shiuering of the quartaine Ague: it is also somewhat bitter, and is therefore good against all woymes taken fasting, it is good against the paine of the teeth, it withstandeth drunkennes, and breaketh the stone. This may also be vled as a preseruatiue in time of the plague.

How Walnuts are preserved. §.26.



About Saint Johns tye take greene Walnuts and pricke them thorow with a botkin, and peele off the greene bitter shales from them; afterwards lay them 8. or ten dayes in fresh water or in running water which is moze better, and they need not so much time also for it. When as now they be quit or rid of their bitternes, then let them seethe softly vntill that they be somewhat melow, but not thorow soft: and afterwards let them dye in a sieue, and then sticke their holes with Cinnamom, Cloues, and Orange peeles; also seethe the Sugar somewhat short, as we haue taught in the preseruing of the Elecampane rootes. Some doe pricke it about, but they put Cloues, Cinnamom, Galingall, Pace, Cucubes, and Cardamom in the sirupe, each according to his good liking: but if so be that you will preserve them with Honie, then it is not needfull that one peele them. These Ruts be commonly vled at banquets, notwithstanding that they be also good for the whicke: they that be preserved with spices, doe helpe digestion and do warme all inward parts; they close vp the stomache after meate, and do stay the ascension of the vapors, yet they are very seldome vled in this Booke. Here we will also admonish and teach how that one shall keepe ripe Walnuts a long time fresh that the kernels may be peled: for this are you to take good new nuts, bury them in sand, and when you will vse them then wash away the sande. Take a new pot, and strow therein a laye of dried Wineleaves, and then a lay of Ruts, and so forth, vntill the pot be full, wherein they will last long and keepe their taste.

Conserue of Buglosse. §.27.

We haue before admonished in the description of the Conserue of Burrage, that both of these be of one nature and of one operation, wherfore it is not needfull to discourse thereof moze at large.

How Apples are preserved. §.28.

Apples may be preserved as we haue written of Peares, some do poure vpon them wineleaves, and they wash them when they will vse them: Apples do coole the hot stomache, they do attenuate the tough slime and quench thirst.

Conserue

Conserue of Pionye. §.29.



Take the leaues of Piony flowers (which do blow in May) and poune them very small, vnto a pound of flowers take 2. pound & a half of Sugar, & let it the space of thre moneths in the sunne stirring it about euery day. This Conserue is very good against all fantasies, against the hag or nightmare (as some terme it) against the falling sickenes, and swimming of the head, against the diminishing of the sight, and all diseases of the braines: it moneth womens termes, and cleanseth them after childbirth; it is also good for the grauell, and for the yellow jaundise, it suppresseth the vapors of the stomacke, it refresheth women that be vexed with the suffocation of the Matrir, it is also marvellous good against the panges of children, and it letteth the growing of the stone in them: if so be that the children be too small that one cannot giue it them, then are the nurses that giue sucke to vse this conserue in abundance.

How to preserue Peaches §.30.



When the fruit is ripe, then is the same to be pluckt off with the hand that it may not be brused: these Peaches are esteemed to be the best to preserue which be ripe about Saint Johns tye, and be somewhat smaller then the other: the vppermost skin is at the first to be peled off with a knife, and the sirupe (like as is said of the Puske Peares) to be sod vntill it be thicke. They haue almost the same nature that the Puske Peares haue, they comfort and strengthen the sicke persons, they be good for the thirst, they moisten the dried tong, they do coole all inward parts, and be very good in all hot sickeneses. In this maner be the red & the wine Peaches preserued, peele the same & take out the stone; afterwards lay them in an earthen pot and poure vpon them clarified and thicke Hony. These Peaches be not so pleasant as the other, but they be well as forcible as the small, and they may also be prepared with Sugar. And bicause that some people may not abide the taste of Hony, it may be washed off before they be vsed with water; it is also in the third Part (where we speake of the bloodie fire) declared how these Peaches are to be dyed and vsed. Item, the hurt which these Peaches do through their cold and moisture, that will be remedied through eating of their kernels, or with draught of wine.

The flowers or blossomes of Peaches may also be preserued with Sugar as other flowers: this conserue is very necessaric for children against the woymes, bicause that children can hardly vse worme seede by reason of the bitterness: and this conserue doth not onely expell woymes, but letteth that none other can come to ingender. And if one haue suspicion of woymes, then it is aduised that it be giuen, for that it strengtheneth much the stomacke.

For to make Conserue of Prunes. §.31.



Take of the great Damaske Prunes or other great horse Prunes which be somewhat sowrish, as many as you please, cut them open and plucke out the stones; then let them sethe in a pot, afterwards strayne them thorow a strainer, and then let it sethe againe vnto a pap, this cooleth all heate and quenched the thirst in Agues. If you will haue a laratiue conserue then take sweete Prunes. There is also made at the Apothecaries a laratiue conserue called *Diaprunum solutium*, which you are to seeke in the Table. Some do take for the first described Prunes conserue of the one halfe of Sugar, whereby it is also pleasant, but it is in hot sickeneses much more commodious to be vsed without Sugar.

But if you will onely preserue Prunes, then take the foresaid Prunes of Damaske, and then poure as much clarified Hony vpon it which is not too hot, stirring it alwaies well about. If it now be seene that the Hony be waterish, then must it be decocted againe like as it is oftentimes admonished before.

How

How that Quinces and other things are to be preserved. §. 32.



If these noble and odoriferous Quinces haue many auncient and also later Phisitions witten much, and vled after sundry manners, whereby it is now come to passe, that there is scant any household of account where one findeth not alwayes something prepared of Quinces, wherefore we will discourse somewhat ampler thereof, and first of all describe diuers confections.

The Apothecaries do call the one *Diacydonium simplex*, for that there is none other but Sugar or Hony in it, and is thus made: Take Quinces as many as you please, wherein the kernels be put out, and cut them very small, afterwards sethe them in well water to the end they may be soft, then strayne them thowow a Strayner or Sieue, so that there remaine nothing but the parings in the Sieue. Then take thre pound thereof, Sugar or Hony that is well clarified about foure pound, or as much as you please, then sethe them together vnto a conserue or confection, stirring it about continually.

Another. Take cut Quinces which be cleansed from the sedge, put them into a pot, and couer it on the top with a pewter potlid, turne it afterwards about into another pot which is full of water, and let the same sethe, that the vapo: may ascend, and the Quinces, through the vapo: of the nethermost pot, may be mellow, that they may be afterwards driuen thowough a Sieue, take foure pound thereof, Sugar thre pound, and let it sethe so together to a conserue. Some do take but halfe so much Sugar as Quinces, but therein may each one do his pleasure, how lesse Sugar that there is with it, so much the better be they for Phisick. Other do boyle or foment the Quinces with good old wyne, which is also not to be reiected. This following is moze forcible: Take as many Quinces as you will, grate them very small, and presse out the iuice, afterwards powze it vpon other sliced or cut Quinces, and then let them altogether sethe thowowly with Sugar or Hony. This is an especiall medicine for to strengthen the stomacke, it stoppeth all scowzing and wambling, it strengtheneth the inward weake parts, besides the digestiues and retentiuue vertues, and it prouoketh appetite. But note this well, if one will stop the scowzing, that one must take it before meate, and against the vomiting after meate.

At the Apothecaries is prepared a *Diacydonium compositum*, or *cum Speciebus*, as hereafter followeth: Take thicke foddren iuice Quinces, wherein is neither Sugar nor Hony, eightene dunces, clarified Hony one pound and a halfe, sethe it metely thicke. When it is now wahren luke warme, then temper these spices following (pounded small) amongst it: to wit, Cinnamon thre quarters of an ounce, Ginger halfe an ounce, Pepper and Salingall, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloues and Nutmegs, of each one dragma and a halfe, Indy Spica, *Lignum Aloes*, Space, and Cardamome, of each one dragma, Zeduary halfe a dragma: afterwards powze it into bores, and make a hole about on the top or twaine. It is also well aduised that one take Sugar in stead of Hony.

If you will haue a purging conserue of Quinces or Pharmalade, then take of this foresayd conserue (whilst that it is yet warme) with the spices 22. ounces, and temper halfe an ounce of pounded *Diagridion* amongst it, and stirre it very long, to the end it be well tempered. This foresayd conserue of Quinces with the spices is moze forcible for all the foresayd diseases, then the other, it causeth the winds to auoyd, it expelleth all bad smells, it maketh a good colour, and it strengtheneth the naturall powers. For the Kitchen and for housekeeping may this ensuing be prepared. Pare as many Quinces as you please, grate them euen to the coare, and put all that is grated into a strong cloth, afterwards wring the iuice well out, and keepe it in a pot. This being done, take other Quinces, pare them and cut them in fowze peces, put out the sedge, and sethe the same in water vntill it be almost as mellow as pap, and all the water be consumed, but put out the sedes cleane, and put it in a pot apart, and powze water vpon it, then let it sethe well, and strayne it thowow a cloth. Tye also a course cloth ouer an earthen pan, and lay thereon a good deale of mellow Quinces, and rub them thowough it, so that the best may goe thowough, then take afterwards faire white Sugar, and powze thereon some of the decoction of Quinces, let it sethe metely hard, (then needeth not the conserue of Quinces to sethe so much) then take of this decoction of Quinces one part, and two parts of the other, and let it sethe vntill it be halfe thicke ynough, afterwards put the Sugar vnto it, & then let it sethe thicke ynough,

stirring

stirring it continually: when as it beginneth to be cold, then put it into the bores. And if this *¶*armalade be not faire enough, then take off the vppermost skinne with a knife. It is also to bee noted, that if it be not decocted drie enough, then can it not last aboute a yere.

Now for to make clere and perspicuous *¶*armalade: Take faire great Quinces, wash them very cleane, grate them verie small, wring out as much iuice as you please; take afterwarde other Quinces, cut them in fire pices, put them into a pot, let them bee vapoured with hot water, like as we haue taught before, vntill that they bee thozow mellow, then take halfe a pot full of the former iuice, and powze it vpon the former stewed and cut pices, breake it well together, and then put the rest of the iuice amongst it, wring it thozow a thin cloth, vntill it bee clere: Of this iuice shall you not see the moze at once, then for to fill a bore therewith, and put white Sugar vnto it (beaten very small) as much as you please. If the iuice be troubled, then let it passe once or twice thozow a cloth, or so long vntill it bee thozow clere: afterwarde see the it speedilie away ouer a slight fire; when it is boyled enough, then powze it into the bore, or wherein else you will, which might be made wet before: and when they haue stode one night, then may they be taken out. Note also here, that you must not take too little of the pap of the vapoured Quinces; for that the *¶*armalade should bee very tough, and if one let the same see the long, then would it be very howne.

If you will make course *¶*armalade, then take the Quinces that remaine, whereof the best is strayned out, and rub it thozow a hayzen sieue, and afterwarde put moe vapoured Quinces vnto it, and let it see the away with Hony or Sugar. This serueth to dresse withall, or otherwise.

A *¶*armalade not sodden: Take twenty or twenty fine Quinces, pare them, and cut the halfe thereof in small pices, the rest grate small, and presse the iuice well out; powze that vnto the cut pices, and stew them vntill all be soft; afterwarde wring them thozow a cloth, and stir as much poudred Sugar amongst it, as you please, and then put them in a bore, and so let it drie vpon an open.

Item, take ripe Quinces which be not stony, pare them, and take out round pices so deepe, till you come to the stones. You are to grate these Quinces, and to wring out the iuice, to the end that you may haue a good deale of it; then powze this iuice vpon the pices that you cut out, and then let it see the vntill it be thozow mellow: then put clere decocted Sugar vnto it, as much as you please, and then drye them with a soft fire, then put them in the bores, and let them drie well.

Another: Take sower ounces of fresh Quince kernels, let them keepe a day and a night in well water, or in the iuice of Quinces, in a warme place, afterwarde wring out the same thozow a cleane cloth, and then put thereto sower pound of the iuice of Quinces in a leaded pot, and let it see the all together by a soft fire: yet it is to bee strayned then thozow a cloth againe, and afterwarde also take two pound of Sugar, and see the it vntill it bee thicke enough.

Yet another course *¶*armalade: Take of the pith whence the best iuice is wring out, and put warme water vnto it, and see the it well; then rub thereof thozow as much as you can, and put clere Hony vnto it as much as you please, and then put some Pepper vnto it, and see the it very thich. If you will now know when these *¶*armalades be decocted enough, then let some fall vpon a cold Iron, and be cold, if it be enough, then will it easily part from the iron, and mayneth not hanging on the fingers, but it goeth cleane and drie off.

All these sorts of *¶*armalades, or Conserues of Quinces are very good for the stomacke, and helpe the digestiu power. The same may mozeouer be tempered in Palmsey, in Claret wine, and Hippocras, and may also be vsed in stee of a sauce with meate.

It is also here to be noted, that all *¶*armalades, which are prepared with wine, spices, and such like, are good only for old folkes, and for cold women, and for all them which be cold by nature. Contrariwise, they that be prepared with water and iuice of Quinces, be meetely hot, because the fruit is cold in the first, and drie in the second degre: wherefore they be meete for all people which be hot by nature, and for all them whose gall ouerfloweth much in the stomacke.

Nowe white *¶*armalade is also to be made in this manner: Take pared Quinces, cut them in foure or fine pices, and cut them out within: afterwarde put hony vnto them, and let them

them steeve in a pot, untill that they be mellow: then take them out, and let them be cold, and sticke them about with cut Cinnamom and Cloues, put hony vnto it againe, and then set it so in a sellar, that it may remaine moyst, and lay some heauy thing vpon it, that they swimme not. Item, take Quinces as many as you please, prepare them as befoze, powze wine vnto it, but let them not be stued too mellow, especially if one will keepe them a certaine time: let them afterwards drie vpon a cloth: if you will sticke them about, as befoze, that is wholly in your power; if not, binde in a cloth Cinnamom, Cloues, Spice, and lay it in the decoction: afterwards take one part wine, and two parts of Hony, and let it sethe so long untill that all the wine be wasted, then afterwards powze Hony vpon it, but not too hot, to the ende that thereby they be not too hard.

Befoze times, these were wont to be made in this manner following: Take a rough cloth, and rub off therewith the uttermost parings of the Quinces, or pare them very thin, and then cut them in fower peeces, and take out the coare within, afterwards powze vpon them two partes of wine, and one part of Hony which is clarified, then sethe them so long untill the skin doe wrinkle, then be they enough; put them out, and let them be colde, lay them in a pot and strow some spice vpon each row; afterwards powze the decoction (sodden thozt) like warm vpon it. Item, take Quinces, take out the coares, and lay them in a pot close to one another, and let them stand steewing in an ouen, untill that they be mellow, so that they may easily bee pricked thozow with bodkins; afterwards let them be colde, and then put them againe into another pot, and powze clarified Hony vpon it, lay some beanie thing vpon it, that they swimme not about, then will they remaine good a whole yere, and haue the same virtue of the common Pharmalade. You haue also befoze in the description of Peares, how that they shall be made close to in a pot, and should then bee layd in a fat of wine, you may also put the same in practise with the Quinces.

Lay the Quinces all the winter in small chopt strawe, and couer them well, but lay none other fruit with it, and keepe them from the ayze. Other doe take flockes, some Bran, or Hay. But the very surest is, if one will keepe them the whole yere, that they be conered in their owne leaues, and afterwards couer them with Lome, let them drie, and set them some where in a cold drie place. There may also be made many kinds of things of Quinces, viz, the sirupe *Mina*, and oyle, and also the seedes thereof be used and the pæles.

Conserue of Roses. §.33.



Conserue of Roses which is ready at all Apothecaries, and common in all houses, is thus prepared: Take red Rose buds, which be pluckt in drie weather, as many as you please, clip them off vnder the white with a paire of sheeres, then laie them on a cleane cloth, and one double cloth ouer them, that they may be well couered, let them lie so still vpon a table two or thre dayes, that they may wither a little, and afterwards stamp them in a mortar to grout; and to one part of the poudred Roses, take two parts of Sugar, and stamp them well together; afterwards put this Conserue in a glasse, & stop it close the space of thre moneths in the sun; yet stir them about once euery day, with a wooden spatine: if so be that you thinke that they will be too hard, then set them afterwards in a sellar, that they relent somewhat. It is here also to be noted that if so be that you cannot get the right red Roses, then take the Carnation coloured, yea also the wilde Roses, of the which I haue found my selfe, that the Conserue it selfe is of very good taste, and moreover very forcible in working. This Conserue of Roses hath an especiall virtue to strengthen a weake stomacke, and to alay all cholericke humors; it strengtheneth the brains, it quickeneth & strengtheneth the hart, it coleteth the heate, & all inflammation of the inward parts. This Conserue of Roses may wel be tempered with Rose water or well water, & be wearing thozow a cloth, & so in all hot agues to comfort the sick persons with it: it moisteneth also the drye tounge, the throat, the breast, and the lights, & especially that which is new made: that which is now oldish hath another nature of binding in all scourings and fluxes, it swageth the pain and sharpnes of the same &c.

The purging Conserue of Roses is made thus: Take twelue ounces of Sugar of Roses, and temper amongst it at the least half an ounce of smal poudred *Diagridion*. This Conserue of Roses

is also very good in sundry sicknesses, and especially in lingering diseases. There is halfe an ounce thereof giuen, or at the most thre quarters of an ounce at once, when as the *Diagridion* hath been tempered amongst it at the least two moneths before.

The white Conserue of Roses is made like to the red. Some do make all Conserues of Roses with Honey in steede of Sugar, but this conserue is hotter, and is seldome vsed.

There is also Conserues made of Damaske Roses, after the foresaid manner, which is very pleasant, and loseth mildly.

Conserue of Rosemary. §.34.



This Conserue is very pleasant, not onely for Phisicke, but the flowers and the herbe is also vsed in the Kitchin, with wine and otherwise. But as much as concerneth the Conserue, the Apothecaries do call it *Conserua Antbor*, and is made thus: Take flowers of Rosemary which are to be gathered in the spring, and in harvest, poune them to pay, and to one part of these flowers, take thre partes of Sugar, and poune it very well together, then set it in the sunne, stirring it oftentimes about. This Conserue is warme by nature, it attenuateth also all tough grosse and flegmaticke matter of the inward parts, it dryeth and strengtheneth the bzaines, it refresheth the hart, and maketh merry; it strengtheneth the mortified naturall heate, it expelleth the yellow Jaundies, and withstandeth the Dropsie, it warmeth and clenseth the bzeast, it maketh a good bzeast, it driueth out phlegme, and strengtheneth digestion, it withstandeth all venim, that might hurt the hart, it taketh away the Collicke or griping of the belly, it causeth one to sweate well, whereby it expelleth all bad humors out of the body, it cleanseth the blood, hunteth away all heavines and pensiuenes, and strengtheneth all weakenes.

To preserue the rootes of all red Beetes. §.35.



You are to stee these rootes with a little water, when they be mellowe, then put thereto little peeces of Hoserabith, and put them in a pot, and strow it with Caruway: afterwards pouze halfe wine and halfe vineger vpon it, untill that they be well couered, and then lay some heauy thing vpon them, that they may not swim: in the same maner may you also prepare all the roots that serue for Gallads: the rootes which are too great are to be cut ouerthwart. These and such like rootes are not to be vsed for Phisicke, but for meate.

Conserue of Sage. §.36.



Conserue of Sage is also made of the flowers, like vnto all other: it both strengthen the stomack, it openeth all obstructions, it consumeth al bad humors of the stomack, it strengtheneth all members, and is very good for all diseases of the head, which procede of cold, it is good against all Palsies and lamenes, it is also meate for all diseases of the finewes.

How Sloes are to be preserued. §.37.



Take very ripe Sloes, with their stalkes, and put thereto two parts of Honey, and one part of wine, and let them sethe so long untill the wine be thorowly sodden away: afterwards lay the Sloes in a pot, with the stalkes on high, and pouze the same Honie vpon it, and couer it with a trencher, and lay some heauie thing on them, to the end that they may be couered with the liquor, and then set them in a cellar. Another way to preserue Sloes, thus: vnripe Medlars, ripe Sloes, ripe and pared Quinces, when the coares be cut out, of each as much as you please; if you will, you may sticke them about with spice: likewise also the Medlars, which you shall sethe with the Quinces in Honey, like as is first of all sayd of the Sloes, and lay some heauy thing on the top of it.

Conserue of Cowslips. §. 38.



There be two kinds of these floures, whereof the one is wild, and without smell, which is mate for nothing; but take of the yellow that smells well, and cut thereof behinde the long pipe, and with Sugar make a conserue thereof. This conserue is of a warme and dry nature, it is very good for the head, it strengtheneth and warmeth the braynes, it is also good for the Walley, for which cause it is also called *Herba Paralyfis*. This conserue is also of all them (which be enclined to the Walley) much used, and it strengtheneth also the hart: but it is perchance not much used, for that it is a kinde of Betony, or of Willowfloures, which be more acceptable.

Conserue of water Lillies. §. 39.



Likewise there be two sorts of these floures, to wit, yellow and white, take therefore of the white, and the white leaues only of the floures, make a conserue thereof like vnto all other conserues. This conserue strengtheneth much, and cooleth in very hot agues, and also in pestilentiall agues. It is also very good for them that consume away, and that haue the Pleurisy. It taketh away all dry coughs, for that it cooleth and moisteneth the breast, the throte, and the dry tongue: it quen- cheth thirst, it cooleth through her cold the Luer, the Spilt, and all inward parts, and it prouoketh sleepe. All haile people and they that be cold of nature may not vse the same, for that if the same be used too much, then taketh it away the fleshy desire, and it obstructeth also the sperma- ticall fluse if it be heate.

Conserue of Violets. §. 40.

Take blew odoriferous Violet floures, pluck the floures from their husks, and poune them to pay. Vnto a pound of floures put two pound of Sugar, and then stamp them well together, and so set them in the Sunne. This conserue is cold in the first, and moist in the second degree. It cooleth and moisteneth with mildnes, and it allwageth also the paine of the guts, but it is not so good for the stomack. It alayeth also the cholerick heate which com- meth through moisture. It loseth and also taketh away thirst. It may well be giuen to young children (in all heate) very freely, for that it is good against their panges, it keepeth the belly open, it strengtheneth the braynes and the hart, and it taketh away all stitches. The yellow Violets are also preserved otherwhiles.

Conserue of the floures of Cicorie. §. 41.

Take the leaues of the Cicorie floures, and make a conserue thereof, like as is taught of all other. This conserue is especiall good for the Luer, it openeth the obstruction of the same, it clenseth all inward parts, and also the intrailles of all cholerick humors, it expelleth them out thorow the stoule, and withstandeth thereby all putrifying agues, therefore this conserue is also to be used in the beginning of the Dropsy, it reuiuethe the weake and ouerhea- ted hart, and also the stomack. In fine, it is very good in all hot sicknesses. The rootes of Cicorie are also preserved, which are digged vp before that they begin to sprout out. Being digged vp, make them cleane, and cut them the long way, and then take the innermost hart of it. After- wards cut it in peeces the length of a finger, and then let them boyle well in fresh water, that the bitterness may come out, and the rootes may be mellow. When as they be now metely dry, then powze thick boyled Sugar vpon it, and if the rootes be still somewhat hard, then let them boyle in the Sugar vntill they be mellow, and let them be cold. But if that the Sirrupe be thin through the moisture of the rootes, then seethe the same thick againe, and that so often vntill it remayne thicke. These rootes be of a cold and dry nature, and they haue the same virtues with the conserue.

How

How red Cherries are preserved. §. 42.

Red Cherries be preserved like as we have taught before of the blacke. They haue also one kinde of operation, and are thus preserved: Take picked red Cherries which be not bruised, put them in a small Waken vessel, afterwards take clarified Hony, and let it seethe with a little wyne, vntill all the moisture be consumed, and powre then this Hony watine vpon it, otherwise would they breake through heate. This being now done, then stop the vessel tight, and lay it in a Seller, and rotate it dayly from one place to another, and do this the space of foureteene dayes, or thre weekes.

There is also made of these Cherries a conserue as hereafter folloiweth:

Take Cherries as many as you please, stampe them alittle, and then powre yet more other Cherries vnto it, and boyle it without any other moisture: all that which will remayne thick, that is to be rubbed thorough a Sieue, to the ende that there do not remayne any other thing in the Sieue, then skinnes and stones: then seethe it in an earthen pot. You may also put Sugar vnto it, as much as you please, and then seethe it vnto a conserue. For this, is no kinde of Spice mate, if so be that one desire not to put alittle Cinnamon vnto it.

This conserue is very good against all dyspeth of the mouth, throte, and tongue, if sick persons be washed with it. It quenbeth thirst in all hot Agues, and otherwise. It is also good for all Cholera of the stomack, it maketh appetite to meate, and it cooleth the hot Reynes. The kernels do expell grauell. In Sommer time is wyne to be mingled with this conserue, and to be used for sauce with rostmeate.

If one now desire to keepe Cherries long fresh, then are picked Cherries to be taken for it, and to dip the same in molten ware, viz. when it beginneth to be cold, to let them be well closed in Claye, and afterwards to sement the same with Lome vntill it be thoroughly closed, then are they to be hanged vp in a cole place, and they will remayne fresh a very long time.

How that ripe and vnripe Grapes are to be preserved.

§. 43.

The vnripe Grapes shall be confected lyke to all Barberpes, but you must cut euery berry from the cluster, to the end that they may keepe their stalks, and put therewith like as is sayd of the black Cherries: then let them not seethe long, that they do not breake and get a bad taste. They haue the same power as the Barberpes. The ripe Grapes are to be confected, like as we haue written of Peares.

Of that which commonly keepeth all fruits fresh.

§. 44.

All that is layd in Hony, whether it be flesh, fruit, and plants, or any other thing, doth remayne a long time before it spoyle, therefore haue dead carcasses beforetime bene powred full of Hony. If you haue then any fruit, fowles, Wenison, or any other such like things that you will keepe good the space of a yere; or any plants, or floures, and such like throughout the winter, then looke into P. Tristrams water, whereof all aunient Physicians haue had a good opinion. The same also do all vitall and golden waters, which follow immediately hereafter.

The sixth Chapter.

Of the golden and vitall waters, and elixers of life.



These kinds of potions and artificiall waters, are ordayned most to this end, for that they should strengthen the most principall parts of the bodie, as the head and the hart, to keepe it from debilitie and swooning, especially if the same procéde of cold. Thus we will describe some of them, whereof there be two, which the auncient Physicians call golden waters for their especiall vertues. Take fine Sage seven ounces, Nutmegs, Cloues, Ginger, and Greines, of each half an ounce, Cinnamom, peeled Bayberies, and Beuercod, of each one ounce, Spikenard one dragma, peeles of Citrons one quarter of an ounce, temper them all together grossely beaten, then powze two quarts of wyne vpon it, and so let all together stand the space of fouretene dayes stopped close, stirring it well about euery day. Afterward distill it in water in an Helme luted well and tight. This water doth keepe all manner of meates by their naturall taste and virtue, it expelleth all bad humors of the bodie, it maketh all wyne cleane and of a good taste, if one temper a little amongst it, annoynted outwardly vpon one, or bled. It is very good for all inward parts, as the Stomack, the Splene, the Luyver, and the Lights. It is also good for all bzuses, and to annoynt the bzuses with it. In like manner it is good for all falles, for all byles, and all paines of the head. It is good (namely at the first) against all Dropsies, against the Palsey, and also against all venim. If one haue any thing in the stomack that he cannot digest, then will it be consumed thereby, it maketh a good memozie, and it withstandeth the Leprosie, it healeth all scabbines, and also all vlcers, if one drinke it, or lay it vpon them.

Another. Take Lauender floures, Hyssope, and Sage, of each foure ounces, cut them very small, Nutmegs, Ginger, Cinnamom, and Cloues, of each halfe an ounce, Greines two drags, beate all small, afterwards powze vpon it thre quarts of the best wyne, and let it the space of fouretene dayes in the Sunne stopped very close. Thus may you vse the first. Item, take good Palmsey two quarts, and steape these things ensuing in it, being stopt very close, and then set it in a dunghill which lyeth in the East the space of thirtie dayes, afterwards distill it, as is before sayd. Take fine Sage with the floures, of each halfe an ounce, Bourage floures one ounce, one Orange, Rue thre dragmes, Rosemary thre ounces and a halfe, Rosemary floures halfe an ounce, the tops of Parierom gentle foure ounces, the floures of Buglosse thre quarters of an ounce, red Roses two ounces and one quarter, Hyssope halfe an ounce, *Carduus Benedictus* halfe an ounce, Ireos thre dragmes, Camfer thre quarters of an ounce, prepared Perles halfe a dragma, oyle of Spike and liquid Stozar, of each halfe a dragma, pouned Cinnamom foure ounces, Galingall thre dragmes, long Pepper and Greines, of each halfe an ounce, Cucubes and Cardamome, of each one ounce and a quarter, Zeduary thre dragmes, Ginger one ounce, beate this altogether grosse. Here is to be noted, that there will be so little wyne, and that freely there may thre or foure quarts of wyne be taken for it. Now followeth here a water, called the elixer of life, and is thus made.

Take Cinnamom and Cloues, of each one ounce and a halfe, Nutmegs one ounce, red Roses ten handfuls, white Roses as many, Hyssope two handfuls, Lauender floures seven handfuls, powze vnto it a quart of Palmsey, and so let it stand the space of nine dayes, and distill it afterwards, as is sayd before. Now for to distill a common vitall water is thus to be done. Take Cinnamom one ounce and a halfe, Ginger one ounce, Cloues, Nutmegs, and Greines, of each halfe an ounce, *Lignum Aloes*, Gassick, Pace, and long Pepper, of each two dragmes, Sage sixtene ounces, Cardamome, Cucubes, and Galingall, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Roses one quarter of an ounce, Baulme thre dragmes, Citron peles thre quarters of an ounce, Rue, Bayberies, and Stechas, of each halfe an ounce, Rosemary, Parierom, Lauender, and Betony, of each thre quarters of an ounce, Spica and Beuercod, of each one dragma, steape it in thre quarts of Palmsey, and so let it stand the space of ten dayes, then distill it like as is taught of the other. Some haue also an especiall water, which is called *Aquam Spiritualem*, for that it strengtheath

strengtheneth much the vitall spirits: Take the herb Lauender with the floures, and Liriconfany, of each two ounces, Rosemary floures, and Betony, of each thre dragmes, Sage, and Sparierom gentle, of each one ounce, Baulme halfe an ounce, Hyssope, Mints, the greater Pimpernell, Tormentill, Rapontica, Angelica, and Bistorta, of each one quarter of an ounce, Piony rootes, and of Valerian, of each one dragme, Auence, and Juniper berries, of each halfe an ounce, Bayberies and Beuercod, of each one drag. cut the rootes, and poune them grossely. The herbs are you to take dry, and to cut them small, and then put them in a glasse which is narrow above, afterwards powze five pintes of spirit of wyne vpon it, and stop it tight, then set it the space of eight dayes in the Sunne, or in another warme place, and distill it afterwards, as is sayd in the beginning. In all that which is distilled out are you to lay in stepe, Ginger and Galingall, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cloues halfe an ounce, Cucubes one quarter of an ounce, Cardamome and Putmegs, of each halfe a dragme, Greines one scruple, Citron peeles one quarter of an ounce, Pomgranat peeles halfe a dragme, *Lignum Aloes*, and white Mustard seed, of each one scruple, Saffron halfe a dragme, Indy Spica one scruple, Annis halfe an ounce, Fennell one quarter of an ounce, Treacle one ounce, Turpentine thre dragmes, prepared red Corall one dragme, *Manus Christi* with Pearles halfe an ounce, conserue of Roses one ounce, clarified Hony foure ounces, then poune it all grosse that is to be pouned, and so let it stand the space of foure dayes in a warme place, afterwards you shall distill it, and then temper amongst it *Muscus* and *Ambra*, of each one scruple, *Spermacei* one drag. god Rubarb one quarter of an ounce, Camfere ten greines, Sugar candy one ounce, then wyng it out oftentimes, and keepe it stoppt close.

Another. Take dry red Rose leaues halfe an ounce, floures of Sage, of Rosemary, of Bourage, & of Buglosse, of each one quarter of an ounce, Liriconfany one ounce and a half, Baulme, Citron peeles, Betony, and red Gillofloweres, of each one ounce, Putmegs & Pace, of each one drag. Cardamome & Cucubes, of each halfe a drag. white & yellow Saunders, of each one quarter of an ounce, poune all these things very small, then take a pinte of god spirit of wine, and put therein 2. ounces of Cucubes, the stones taken out, & then cast them to the foresaid small beaten herbs, and let them all stand to stepe in a warme place, vntill that the wyne hath drawne the virtues of these herbs vnto it, the which will be done in the space of two moneths. You may also set it in the Sunne all the whole Sommer, strayne it at last through a fine cloth. You may also put vnto this Puske, pretious stones, Amber, Perles, Cinicoznes horne, and such like things, for to strengthen the same therewith. These foresaid vitall waters be especiall god against all swooning, against all debilitie of the braines and of the hart, they strengthen also the sinewes, & the memorie, they warme the chilled and bad digesting stomack wherein is much slime, if they be taken fasting. If one perceiue any losse of his memozy, then is he to annoynt therewith the forehead, the hinder part of the head, and the temples of the same. They be also very god against all lamenes of the Palsy: they be also god against trembling & shaking, against swimming in the head, and such like diseases. But note, that here will be too little burnt wyne, but one may take more. In like manner, you haue also in the first part the twelfth Chapter and 5. §. a very god water of Pay Lillies. This following is also an elixer of life, and is thus prepared: Take Rosewater 4. ounces, water of Bourage & of Buglosse, of each 3. ounces, *Manus Christi* 1. ounce, and a half, prepared Perles one drag. and a half, temper them altogether, and so giue it him that hath great heate of the head and of the lyuer, and whereas is great faintnes of the hart. This vitall water ensuing is very common at *Augusta* in Germany.

Take culled Cinnamon thre quarters of an ounce, Ginger halfe an ounce, Cloues, Putmegs, and Greines, of each one quarter of an ounce, Pace, *Lignum Aloes*, and long Pepper, of each one drag. Cardamome, Pastick, Cucubes, Galingall, and *Calmus*, of each halfe a dragme, Baulme floures five ounces, Citron peeles thre dragmes, peeled Bayberies and Stechas, of each one quarter of an ounce, Rue, Rosemary, Sparierom, Lauender, Baulme, and Betony, of each halfe a handfull, Indy Spica, and Beuercod, of each halfe a drag. stepe them altogether in two quarts of Muscadell, or in any other strong wyne, and let it stand so 10. or 12. houres space. Afterwards distill it in seething water, then are you to hang Puske and Amber, of each fiftene graines, to wit in a fine cloth, and then keepe it close stoppt.

This following is a very odd,iferous water to be vled for what one will: Take the flowers of Spike, and Lauender flowers, of each one handfull, Cloues, Cinnamon, Putmegs, Pace,

of each one dragma and a halfe, Puske the quantitie of a Pease, then poure vnto it thre pintes of Rose water and so let it in the sunne.

There is yet another odoriferous water in the first Part, in the fiftene chap. and 5. §. which may also be vled for diuers purposes.

Cinnamom water is also exhibited to sicke folkes for a strengthening, and they are annoynted therewith, and is to be further vled for many confectiōs, Parche panes, and other pleasanties, the which is thus to be made: Take fower ounces of good Cinnamom, poune it very small and put it into an helme, afterwards poure a pinte of water vpon it and lute it close; then distill it in seething water, and that which commeth out first is whitish, and strongest, and is onely to be kept, and the rest to be receiued in another glas.

The 7. Chapter.

Of Hand waters.



Take Lauander or Spikenard where out the water is before distilled, and put vnto as much raine water vnto it vntill the helme be more then halfe full; afterwards distill it in seething water and let it in the sunne, it smelleth strong enough and it remaineth good certaine moneths.

For to make May Cheese. §.1.



Take a new earthen pot, wash it well with hot water and rub it with Salt with in, afterwards make a hole in the bottome and put in a small tap; then take fresh milked milke and rennet it like as Cheese is wont to be rennetted, and so let it stand from morning to euening; then plucke out the tap that the whay may run out: afterwards put every day a saucer full of new milke with it, according to that there is much or little in the pot: stir it well about, and then let every euening the whay run out: besides al this, you are to salt the milk a litle in rennetting of it.

How to make Wafers of Sugar. §.2.



That the Wafers be (which are wont to be set vpon the table a nights) is well knowen to all men, thus for to confect them and to make them onley of Sugar, is thus to be done: Take faire white Sugar pouned very small and sifted throgh a fine sieue, make paste therof with Dragagant dissolved in rose water: the which is to be stamped in a mortar to the end you may make thereof thin flat Wafers: this being now done, then is the same beneath & aboue to be bestrowed with wel pouned Sugar that it cleaue not to, then wind them on a round stick and lay them vpon a sieue to dry, to wit in a warme place, but not in the sunne; if you will you may also put Muscu vnto it. In like manner you may take for it pouned Sugar, and Cinnamom tempered together, and roule the same also vpon a round staffe with dissolved Dragagant; the which being bounden to the space of fourteene daies may remaine good, and they are made like Cinnamom pipes.

Honie water, Hydromel. §.3.



Any water or our course Beade do the Grecians call Hydromel, and the Latins *Aquam mulsam*; this water is to be vled for many things, and especially in Whisicke for two kinds of things: the first if one will lose the belly or procure vomit, then temper the same with two parts of old raine water, and one part of Honie, and so let it stand in the sun. This Honie water is to be tempered with Oyle if the cause require it, and being luke warme vled for vomiting: the other Honie water is to be sodden and vled also for many kinds of things, as we in this Booke haue in many places declared.

The eight Chapter.

For to make Iuleps.



Iuleps are made after diuers manners, and most of all of distilled waters, but the commonest and most knowen they are to be boiled of Rose water, and Violet water with Sugar, as both these in the third Part, the 12. Chapter, and 10. S. be described: both these Iuleps be very much vsed in hot and dry causes.

The ninth Chapter.

For to take Spots out of all Clothes.



For to take Spots out of al clothes, take two parts of Beechen ashes, and one part of Lime, and make Leigh thereof with Raine water, filter it oftentimes, and therewith wash the Spots. Item, take Argall one handfull, three Dregals, Venice Sope two ounces, Allome halfe an ounce, and a pinte and a halfe of water; seethe it all together vntill that the fourth part be wasted, and then wash the spots therewith. But aboue all should distilled water of Loadstones be very good to take al spots out of clothes, they may trie that will. For to take the spots out of Chamlet and, Silkes rub it out with Turpentine oyle.

Spice Cakes which be excellent good. §.1.



If fine Hony take a quart, Clarifie it well, and halfe a pinte of Palmsey, Cloues two ounces and a halfe, Ginger two ounces, Nutmegs one ounce, fine Peale or flowre fine pound; let the Hony and Palmsey seethe together, then knead the Peale in it and make Cakes of it as you desire to haue them, then bake them in an Ouen

The tenth Chapter.

Hereafter follow Confections.



Here shall follow now all kinde of purging confections which are commended to be vsed in this Booke, to the ende that not onely the bare vnknowen name, but also their vertues and operations might be declared: therefore we will comprehend them in a short sum, and vse the names that are best knowen at the Apothecaries; and besides that we will interperet and English their names the best we can.

Confectio Anacardina. §.1.



First of all we will speake of the *Anacardina*. This Confection doth sharpen the vnderstanding and the memozie, and is also good against all payne of the stomack which cometh through cold, it cleanseth the blood, and maketh good colour: it is also called a confection of the Sage men.

Antidotum Hemagogum.

This Confection hath her name of the blood wherein it doth also raigne; the which also the Graeke name doth giue to vnderstand.

Electuarium

Electuarium de Baccis Lauri. §.3.

This is a Confection of Bayberries: this confection is for the griping and payne of the belly which is caused of wind, the very best medicine that may be deuised, and moreover against all inward maladies which proceed of cold.

Benedicta Laxatiua. §.4.

This confection is called a blessed Laxatiue, it is very much vled & found ready at all Apothecaries: it is made of many simples, wherefore we omit hir description: it is very good to purge all tough stymie matter, and especially that which lieth in the ioints, as in them which haue the ioint disease or the gout, it cleanseth much, and purgeth also all stymie matter of the kidneies, and of the bladder, &c.

Bezoartica. §.5.

Such like Confections there are very many prepared in time of the plague for to prouoke sweate; of which we haue described one in the first part, the 16. chap. §.3.

Electuarium de Calamintha. §.6.

Confection of the fiesle Pints is described after thre wayes by the Physitions; and when we make it, which happeneth seldome, it is in soume of Tabulates: but that which *Galenus* describeth is made as followeth: Take the seedes of field Pints, of Penniroyall, of Parsly, and Silver mountaine, of each one dragma, the seedes of Smalage, and of Thyme, of each one quarter of an ounce, the seede of Louage one ounce, Pepper thre ounces; make thereof Species. You are to take Sugar accordyng as you wil make a confection or tabulates, & that in such quantitie as thereto belongeth. This confection is very good for all them that haue a wambling of their meate, for them that haue a bad breath, and a bad stomacke, and be much plagued with the wind of the stomacke.

Confection of Cassie after three waies. §.7.



How highly that the Cassie is commended in Physicke, and especially in hot sickeneses is discovered in many places of this Booke, and especially in the introduction, where it is also taught how that the same is to be dryuen thowow a sieue. Secondly, there is a confection made thereof, to wit, *Diacassia cum Manna*, which is to be vled against the binding of the belly. The third is here before in the third chapter described, in the first §. where we did discourse of Clusters, and in other places more.

Electuarium de Castoreo. §.8.

This is the Confection of Beuercod which one findeth very seldome, vnlesse it were prepared of purpose for any body.

Catharticum Imperiale. §.9.

This is as much to say as an Emperiall purgation, for that especially it is a purger of the head, maketh swete breath, and expelleth black melancholy, and gall out of the stomacke: this confection is not common at all Apothecaries.

Catholicon. §.10.

This Greeke name is as much to say as vniuersall, and the ancient Physitions haue given that name vnto this Confection, for that it is not meete for all diseases: therefore it is also kept

kept prepared at all Apothecaries. And because that the same can be made by no householder, therefore we will not set downe her description. It is not onely good for all strong diseases, but also for all the extreamest sicknesses, it alayeth and altereth the same, it strengtheneth all them that haue any infirmity of the Liuer, or in the Spleene; it purgeth melancholicke, cholerick, and phlegmaticke humors, and is a safe medicine; as it is also used in many places of this booke.

Electuarium de Cineribus. §.11.

This Confection of Ashes is hardly to be found ready at anie Apothecaries, but by reason of her profitableness, to shew that the auncient Physicians haue not pretermitted to make it knowen, therefore it is described in the third Part, and hath an especiall vertue in expelling of the stone, and of the grauell.

Electuaria varia, de Cytoniis. §.12.

There be sundry Conserues of Quinces, or of Parmalade, like as you find them before in the fourth Chapter, and 32. §.

Electuarium de Corticibus Aurantiarum. §.13.

The preserved peeles of Oranges, both one find ready at all Apothecaries, and are good for all paynes of the stomacke.

Electuarium Ducis. §.14.

This Confection was prepared for a Duke, and is compounded of many things together: wherefore we will not describe the same here, for it is found commonly at all well furnished Apothecaries: it is also very good for all windy and bad digesting stomackes, and against all cold of the inward parts: it is also good against all griping of the belly, and especially for the stone; for which cause it is principally ordained in this our booke of Physicke.

Electuarium de Epithymo. §.15.

This Confection is very seldome used, but the flowers and the *Thymus* is very common in Physicke. This Confection should be very necessary, and helping women vnto fruitfulness, like as it is also prescribed in this booke for the same.

Electuarium de Gallia. §.16.

This, for the profitableness and commodity that it hath in the paine of the guts, and in *Phlegma*, and for that it is easie to be made, is described in the third Part the 15. Chapter and 6. §. for it is not knowen at the Apothecaries.

Confectio Hamech. §.17.

This Confection is of two sorts, and is compounded of many things, and is very common at all Apothecaries: wherewith the humors of the Gall, especially the salt humors which cause scabbiness, the Leprosie, the Canker, and all other diseases which excoziate and inflame the skin by their sharpnes. The lesser Confection *Hamech*, purgeth Melancholy, and is also good against all frenzie, giddines, forgetfulness, and all infections of the skin.

Hiera Picra simplex. §.18.

This Confection is at all Apothecaries euery where prepared, and it is not onely very well knowen to the Physicians, but also to the common people: Take Cinnamon, Balsam wood,

wood, *Asarabacca*, *Spica Indica*, *Saffron* and *Pasticke*, of each one *Dragma* and a halfe, *Aloe* 25. *drag.* clarified and skummed *Hony* thirtene ounces; make a *Confection* thereof. But if you will haue it to strengthen rather than to purge, then take washed *Aloes*, in steade of other. This *Confection* is very good against all rotting and stinking humors, which do keepe themselves in the mouth of the stomacke, and in the bowels. In like manner it is also good for all them that haue lost their naturall colour, and against all inward diseases of the sight; it worketh very mildly, and her operation penetrateth no further, but into the *Liu*er, it strengtheneth the stomacke, notwithstanding that it is partly hurtfull for them that haue a hot *Liu*er, but because of her great virtue, it is much vsed.

Hiera logadion. §.19.



This *Confection* is also found at all Apothecaries, the which is made out of many sundrie things, wherefore wee will not describe the same here: it is good against all old madnes, against all *Melancholy*, against all falling sickness, and all other ragings of madnes, against the gibbines, and all paine of the head. Item, it is very good against all paulsies, against all shaking, and against all hartbeating. It is also good in the *Pleurisie*, in all sicknesses of the *Liu*er and of the *Splene*, it prouoketh womens termes; and is also good against all Gouts, against all poyson, Leprosie, and scurfe. Of this *Confection* may one take a *Dragma* at once with wine, if there be tempered a little salt with it.

Hiera Pachy Ruffini. §.20.

The first *Hiera* is now of late come againe in vse amongst the Physicians, it is marvellous good for many kinds of things, not vnlike to the aforesmentioned. In this our booke of Physicke is otherwhiles mention made of it.

Electuarium Indum. §.21.

Of this *Confection* there be two sortes, a greater, and a lesser; yet both doe expell bad humors, especially such as breede winde in the stomacke, and other nutritiue partes, they amend also the bad accidents which arise thereby, as swelling vp of the stomacke, the griping of the belly, paine of the kidneies, and such like.

Electuarium Lenitium. §.22.

This is a laxative *Confection*, which expelleth gently, without any paine, the phlegmaticke, cholerick, and melancholick humors. It is also good against all Agues, and it is found ready at all Apothecaries, howbeit that it is very seldome vsed in this our booke of Physicke.

Electuarium de Lepore Combusto. §.23.

There is also a *Confection* prepared of the burnt Hares head, which is marvellous good against grauell, and is described in the third Part, the twelfth Chapter and 4. §.

Letificans Almanforis. §.24.

This pleasant *Confection* is now a daies made rather in Losings, than in forme of a Confection: but how the Species be made, that do you find described in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter and 8. §.

Electuarium de Manna. §.25.

This *Electuary* of *Manna*, is a very noble *Confection*, wherein come many easie laxative things, it cleanceth the blood, withstandeth Cholera, and *Melancholia*; it is very good for a hot liuer, and cleanceth also the body.

Electua-

Electuarium ad Melancholiam. §.26.

This Confection is not made, if it were not, that it is especially ordained, and it is also but once used in this Booke.

Michleta. §.27.



This Confection *Michleta* is prepared at all furnished Apothecaries; it is especiall good against all superfluous bloding of the Piles, and against the griping of the bel- lie, and it is exceeding good in all taskes, as in *Lienteria* and *Dysenteria*. It is also used in *Diarrhaa*.

Mithridatium. §.28.



This high renowned and very wel known Confection, hath next to *Treacle* the highest commendation and price above all other confectiōns and compounded medicines, the which of very many and diuers simples is composed together; wherefore we will pretermitt her description here. It is also older then the *Treacle*, & was found out by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus* three hundred yeres before Christs birth, and so named after him. This foresaid Confection did the King use against all venim, and with such commoditie, that when he was in greatest extremitie and had taken poyson, he could not die of it. Wherefore and bicause that the same is oftentimes ordained in this Booke; therefore we will briefly rehearse her vertue and vigoz. First it hath almost in all things the same power of the *Treacle*; but that only the *Treacle* is somewhat hotter & more forcible against all venim of snakes; other wise it is good against all paine of the head which proceedeth out of cold, and chiefly against all melancholike diseases, and also for them that liue in great heauines (without cause.) It is also good against all heauy fancies and madness: and further it is also good against the falling sickenes, against the giddines, and all olde payne of the head. Likewise it is a very good medicine against all running and diseased eies, it sharpeneth the sight, and it is good against all sisting of the eares, and against all paine and falling of the gums if the same be layd vpon it. Besides that it is much commended for the squinancie, it cleanseth and healeth all vlcers of the throat. It is a speciall medicine for all them that be taken with the palsey, and them that haue a disease in the lights; as it is also for all them that cough much, spet blood, and complaine of pursiuenes. It is also especiall good for all cold and moyst stomackes, it maketh appetite, it strengtheneth the digestiue vertue, and maketh a good colour. It asswageth all gripings, all scourings, and the bloodie fluxe, it openeth the obstruction of the liuer, and the Spleen: and it is a medicine for all inward parts, it dryueth also the crampe away, and all conuulsions of the sinewes, it expelleth the grauell, and the stone of the bladder, it swageth all payne and vlcers of the same, it expelleth water, and moueth womens termes: it is very necessarie for all maladies of the Matris, it is also especiall commodious for all them that be plagued with the gout in the hands and feete; but especially it is given against all poyson: this doth it not onely taken inwardly, but also layd vpon the outside. In like manner doth it apparantly worke in the tertian and quartaine Ague, if that the same be taken an hower before or per the ague commeth, with wine. The common waight that one taketh thereof is a dragma; the which neuertheless according to the abilitie of the person and of the sickenes, may be augmented or diminished, or also omitted all together.

Electuarium Oculista. §.29.

This is a Confection for the eies, whereof you shall find two sorts in the first part, the 7. chap. and 20. §.

Electuarium de Olibano. §.30.

These present Confections of Frankinsence is selbome used and prepared, but it is good against all payne and rheumes of the head, and also of the eies, it swageth all bad throates which

which procéde of deflurions, it is also auailable against the Cough and spitting of blood, it stayeth all wambling and vomiting. Further, it is also good for all diseases of the Lights, and for the Pleurisy, whereas the matter is coughed vp; it stayeth the running of the Raynes, and womens termes, it is also used against the scouring.

Electuarium de Ono. §. 31.

How that this pretious confection of the golden Eg is to be made, is after two wayes described in the first part, the 16. Chapter, and 3. §. and also taught thereby, how that all haile and sick folks ought to vse the same.

Electuarium Diaphenicon. §. 32.

This confection of Dates is also to be made in Tabulates. It is meetely strong for to purge therewith in the Quotidian and Tertian agues. It purgeth *Phlegma* and *Cholera*. It hath a maruellous efficacie against all paine of the stomacke, and other like paines of the guts, which are caused through any rough stumy humors, therefore it is also oftentimes prescribed in this booke.

Philonium. §. 33.

This confection is also called according to them which haue found it out, to wit, after *Philon*. It is made after sundry manners, whereof there be twaine, which be accompted the chiefe, viz. *Romannum*, and *Persicum*. The first is good against the Cough, and against all diseases of the Lights, viz. heauie breath, spitting blood, disemperance of the stomacke, paine of the Luer, of the Splene, and against all infirmities of the priities, and of the bladder.

The other, to wit *Persicon*, is very good for to staunch blood, like as womens termes, or when the Moyles runne too fast; also in all scourings and bloudie flure, and whereas blood is auoyded, then is it an especiall medicine. It is also exceeding good for women which haue first conceaued, for to preserve and keepe the fruite.

Electuarium Diaprunis. §. 34.

Here before in the fourth Chapter, in the description of the preserved Prunes, is exprelled of her power, and how it is made.

Electuarium de Psyllio. §. 35.

This is also one of the commonest confectiions, which one findeth readie at all Apothecaries, it expelleth the cholerick matter, and is very good for all hot agues, which otherwise are hardly to be expelled. Pozeoner, it is good against the giddines and all paine of the head, which is caused by the vapours of *Cholera*, and mixed with other humors. Item, for the falling Sicknes, and for enflaming of the Luer etc.

Electuarium de Raphano Syluestri. §. 36.

How that this is to be prepared, and of what potwze it is, that is to be seene in the third part, the 17. Chapter, and 4. §.

Electuarium Regium. §. 37.

Albeit that it is called a kingly confection, and is very good, yet it is neuertheless no where in this booke used, but only in the spetting of blood.

Electuarium

Electuarium de succo Rosarum. §. 38.

This present Confection named of the iuice of Roses, is one of the chiefest purging confections, and because that it is very easy to be made, therefore we will describe it here. Take the iuice of red Roses and white Sugar, of each eight ounces, *Diagridij* three quarters of an ounce, red, white, and yellow Saunders, of each three dragmes, burnt Quozie one dragme and a halfe, Camfer halfe a scruple: the iuice and Sugar is to be sodden vnto a mæte thicknes, and when it is almost cold, then temper the rest amongst it, being all beaten very small. This may also well be made after the fourme of lozings. This Confection purgeth *Cholera* without any anguish, and it is also good for all paine of the members, which be caused thorough hot cholerick rheumes, also for the Tertian Ague, and to other moe such like hot accidents.

Diasatyrium. §. 39.

This is a Confection of Magwort rootes: how that the same is prepared and vsed for the increase of humaine nature, you may reade in the third part the first Chapter and 4. §.

Electuarium de Scoria Ferri. §. 40.

The Confection of the refuse of Iron doth *Rasis* describe. It is seldome made or vsed. It stoppeth the flux and all blood.

Electuarium de Sebesten. §. 41.

This is also a very vsuall confection: how that the same is to be prepared, and what it hath for an operation or power, you may reade that in the third part the eleuenth Chapter, and 20. §.

Dia Sena. §. 42.

This Confection of Sene, is also very common at all Apothecaries. It is good vsed in all melancholick, frantick, pensive, and such like sicknesses, which procede of melancholick blood: and it cureth them that complaine of the Spleene.

Theriaca magna. §. 43.

The occasion wherefore that this high commended Confection is not here described, is, for that it is made of so many things. Also because there is a contention as yet amongst the learned, then for that certaine things (which must be vsed in it) be not to be gotten, and especially in this Country, as the flesh of the Snake *Tyrus*, whereof this Treacle hath the name: but it is neuertheles needefull and well worthie that we here describe her operation and vigo.

This Treacle and the *Pithidate*, be amongst all other confections the most renowned and worthiest. The first, was by *Andromacho Neroes* Whisition found out first, but afterwards by *Galen* brought into a better order, and in such manner amended, that it may very well be kept for so pretious a icwell, which is neither with gold nor siluer to be compared: thus for to speake of her vertue. First, it is good against all poyson, whether it be of Beasts or otherwise, for to the same end it is giuen: and it is layd vpon the biting of mad dogs. In like manner, it hath an especial power against all bad ayre, against the Plague, and all pestilentiall Agues. It is also good against all old paines of the head, against the falling sicknes, the giddines, and all darknes of the eyes. Item, it is commended for all infirmities of hearing, and for losse of sent. And briefly to speake thereof, it doth also amend all debilities, the infirmities of the mind, and also of the brayne. Moreover, it strengtheneth also all weakenes and swoonings of the heart, it openeth all obstructions of the Luer, and of the Spleene, and mollifieth or suppleth all their hardnes,

hardnes, it openeth the breaſt, and is good againſt the wheaſing, and alſo againſt the ſhort breaſt. It alayeth the Cough, and ſuppleth all rawnes of the thyoate, it doth prouoke the tough humors to be coughed vp, it withſtandeth ſpitting of bloud, and ſwelling vp of the baynes. It erpellet the yellow *Cholera* and the *Droſie*, it healeth all inward diſeaſes and blcers, it alluageth all inward diſeaſes where there is no heate nor ague inſtant, if the ſame be taken with wyne, or otherwiſe the ſame muſt be taken with ſome other diſtilled water. Likewiſe it is alſo good for all bad ſtomacks, it caſeth the *Conſumption*, it erpellet *Tlozmes*, and all windines of the guts: alſo it is good againſt all gripings and paine of the guts, it is alſo very fit for all diſeaſes of the *Kaynes*, it is very commodious and helping to all them which be bered with the granell or the ſtone, for that it erpellet the ſame, it healeth all blcers of the bladder, and all conduits of *byrin*, it erpellet *byrin* and womens termes; in like maner alſo dead children out of their mothers bodies. To all melancholick, which be full of anguiſh and penſiuenes without cauſe, and halfe diſtract of their wits, is this giuen with great aduancement. In ſine, it is very good for all lingering ſickneſſes, as the *Leproſie*, old Agues, and chiefly *Quaraine Agues*. Wherefore it is aduiſed to ſuch as are to trauell in the cold, that euery morning faſting they ſhould take ſomewhat thereof, for that it warmeth the inward parts, and defendeth them from all cold. It ſtrengtheneth alſo the lame members, and bringeth them againe to their power, and when the greateſt paine of the Gout is paſt, then is it taken with great aduantage, ſo that it preferueth the bodie from all corruption.

But here is eſpecially to be noted, that this Treacle is not good for yong people, eſpecially in Sommer time, or when it is hot weather, if ſo be that great neede do not require, and then ſhall not aboue halfe a dragma be giuen at once, for that it is too ſtrong for ſuch yong natures. All they that be of middle age it is good for, bleſd oftentimes, ſo that it cannot here be told, how much thereof may be giuen at once. The commonest waight is a dragma, and if ſo be that neede require not the ſame, then is ſeldome any more to be giuen: yet according to the importance and abilitie of the perſon, the ſicknes, and ſuch like, is the ſame to be augmented or diminiſhed with wyne, or any other water.

Theriaca Diateſſaron. S. 44.



This Confection hath her name of the Grecians, for that it is made of foure kindes of things, namely in this manner following: Take Gentian, freſh Bayberies, *Myrrha*, and the right Hartwort, of each two ounces, ſtamp all together very ſmall, with one pound and a halfe of well ſcommed Hony, then keepe it well where you pleaſe. This Treacle may the common people commodiouſly uſe in ſtead of the great Treacle, for that it withſtandeth all peſtilentiall agues, and all venim, therefore do the people of the Country alſo giue it to ſick Cattell, and that with very great aduantage. It is alſo good againſt all diſeaſes of the baynes, of the ſnewes, and all ſickneſſes, which procede of cold, as falling ſickneſſes, *Palfie*, lamenes, and the Cramp, it ſtrengtheneth the ſtomack and her digeſtiue power, it openeth the *Lpuer*, the *Splane*, and the *Kidneyes*, therefore it is alſo good for the yellow Jaundie, the *Droſie*, it erpellet windines, and all paine of the guts. There may one dragma or one dragma and a halfe be taken thereof, to wit, in the morning faſting, but Cattell muſt take more of it.

Triphera. S. 45.

Of ſuch like Confections are many kinds deſcribed of the *Philiſtins*, like as we ſhall ſhew hereafter. The firſt is *Fanonis*, and is the leſſer. It is good for all exceſſiue fluxes, for womens termes, for the bleeding of the *Pyles*, and againſt all debilitie of the ſtomacke, it cauſeth all groſſe and tough humors to anoyd, it amendeth the naturall colour, it ſtrengtheneth the bladder, and ſtayeth the ſcourings.

The other is *Triphera magna*, that is the greater. The ſame is uſed for all cold paine of the ſtomacke, as ſone as one hath taken thereof, then ſweate doth breake out vpon one. It is good for all melancholick women which cannot ſleepe, and they that haue gotten this anguiſh and beration through any diſeaſe of the *Matrrix*. Likewiſe alſo for thoſe which be burthened with

with any slimy matter in the lights, & for al them that spet blood, whether it be beneath or aboue; and if that one leaue out the *Opium*, then should the same be good for to aduance the fruitfulness of women.

The third is, *Triphera Persica*, which is made of many kindes of things, it is good against all agues, which procede out of the stomacke, and also against the yellow Jaundies, which proceedeth of great heat, it openeth all obstructions, it amendeth the sight which is infirmed thorough cholerike vapours, it quencheth thirst, and defendeth one from all hot sicknesses.

The fourth is *Triphera Saracenicæ*, which with her heate strengtheneth the digestion of the stomacke and of the liuer, it consumeth all windines of the same, it maketh a good breath, and is very commodious for the whole body; it keepeth a body healthy, it prouoketh desire of venery, and it obstructeth all the bleeding of the *Uoles*: whereof is from one dragma to three dragmes to be taken, and that according to the importance of the person.

Electuarium vitæ. § 46.

This is called a Confection of life, and is described in the first Parte, the second Chapter, and first §.

Of Leigh. § 47.



The auncient Philosophers, as they were very diligent and curious in searching out the virtues of all thinges, thereby to withstand all diseases of mankind, so haue they not omitted to search out the nature of *Albes*, for to discerne (of whatsoeuer wood that the same bee burnt) which should bee the most commodious and fit, and they haue in trueth found no small efficacy and power in them, as is shewed here and there in this booke.

For to make excellent Spice or Sugar cakes. § 48.



albeit that these cakes may be vled for the strengthening of the stomacke, and of the head in Physicke, neuerthelesse they be more eaten of licentiousnes; but for their abuse we will not omit their description. First, take wheate and Rye flowre, of each about a pound and a halfe, clarified Hony as much as is needefull for to kneade this flowre to dough; then temper amongst it these spices following, all beaten small, to wit, Cinnamon two ounces, *Ceynes Nutmegs* and Cloues of each halfe an ounce, long Pepper one quarter of an ounce, *Sage* and *Salingall*, of each one dragma, Cucubes one quarter of an ounce, prepared Coziander one ounce and a halfe, then make thereof round or long Cakes, and let them bee slowlie baked, when they be then almost baked, then annoint them oftentimes with wine, then doe they get shone an orient or pleasant colour.

The right Sugar cakes be made thus: Take a pound of Sugar, which is decocted to a sirupe, and when you haue taken it from the fire, then temper amongst it fower ounces of wheate flowre, and about fower ounces of Rye flowre, and make a paaste thereof: at last put these spices vnto it, viz. Ginger two ounces and a half, Cinnamon two ounces, Cloues halfe an ounce, Nutmegs, long Pepper, of each one quarter of an ounce, prepared pouned Coziander halfe an ounce, Annis (also unbeaten) three quarters of ounce, and so let them drie together.

Other which be dayly vled: Take Sugar two pound, and powre a quarte of water vnto it, let it seethe together, and clarifie it well with whites of Eggs, when as now the water is sodden to the halfe, then kneade amongst it siue pounce of flowre, two ounces of Ginger, two ounces & a halfe of Cinnamon, Nutmegs and Cloues, of each one ounce, Pepper one dragma, and let them drie. If you will make them of Hony, then take three pintes of Hony, and a quart of water, let it seethe, and clarifie it, then put therewith as is before rehearsed.

The *Bisket* cakes be thus made: take of the olde baked cakes, as many as you please, and grate them on a grater, then put Honie and spices vnto it, and then bake them once againe.

The Rozenberger Sugar cakes be made after this manner: Take one pound and a halfe of Sugar, Cinnamom thre ounces and a halfe, Putmegs two ounces, Ginger 3. ounces, Cloues and Cardamome, of each halfe an ounce, cut them, but not too grosse, and then take thereto one pinte of Honie, set it on the fire, that the Honie may melt, and afterwards take the Sugar, stir the same beaten very small amongst it, and so let it seethe very softly, that it do not burne nor run ouer, stirring it alwaies well about, then mire therein as much flowre and spice as is needfull, & worke it vpon a table; at last make Cakes thereof about the waight of five ounces, and worke each apart, and bake them afterwards as becometh.

Loch, Lobot. §.49.



Thus doe the Apothecaries name certaine milde Confections, which haue but little difference from other Confections, and therefore be they separated from the other, that one might know how to aske for them.

Loch ad Asthma, that is for a heauy breath: this *Loch* is not much in vse, it is good for a heauy wheeasing breath, for an olde cough, and it doth cause all tough matter of the Lights to auoide.

De Cancris, of Crabs: this *Loch* is very good in the Consumption.

De Farsura, of folefote leaues: this *Loch* is to be vsed as all the rest.

De Papauere: this *Loch* is somewhat troublesome to be made, and is commonly made at all Apothecaries: it is good against all coughes, and roughnes of the thyoate, which be caused of a hot defurion, which may be perceiued by the thin and subtile spetle, and it maketh the same thicke.

There be 2. other Confections moe made of Poppies, vnder the name of *Diacodion*: amongst which that is which *Mesua* describeth, and is thus made: take greene Poppy heads, that bee somewhat withered, siue oʒ five in number, and faire raine water 10. ounces; let them seethe togither, so that there remaine a third part: vnto this colature adde wine, and when the two third parts be wasted, then put vnto it one ounce and a halfe of good Honie, half an ounce of soft *Acatta*, Saffron, Pirrhe, and Pomegranate blossomes, of each half a drag. *Troisci Ramich* one quarter of an ounce; temper them all togither, as appertaineth: but there will be too little Honie, therefore must more be taken. It is to be noted, that this may also be made into lozings: they be very good for them that haue any subtile defurion falling on the breast, great coughes, & other diseases moe.

De Passulis, of Currans: how that it is to be prepared, and what his virtues are, loke in the first Part, the fift Chapt. and 12. §.

De Pino, of Pingles: this is to be sought for in the first Part, the fift Chapter, and 6. §. which is good for all old coughes, & for the short breath; it causeth all tough siegme of the Lights to auoid.

De Portulaca, of Purslain: this is not often vsed by vs, but there are two kinds made in Italie, which follo to hereafter: take the clarified iuice of Purslain 12. ounces, *Troisci* of sealed earth, and *Opium*, of each one drag. *Troisci de Carobe*, and Dragon blood, of each halfe a drag. burnt Hares haire, and Bloodstone, of each one scrup. white Sugar 6. ounces, then seethe it like other *Loch*. This is especiall good against spetting of blood, especially if it be tempered with this Confection following: take Venbane seede, white Poppy sead, of each 10. drag. red & white sealed earth, of each siue drag. Conserue of Roses 4. ounces; temper them togither, giue it in the morning and euening, each time halfe a drag. The other: Take of the aforesaid thre quarters of an ounce, *Philonij Persici* 3. drag. *Troisci de Carobe* one drag and a halfe, *Species Diarragacanti* bi frigidis halfe an ounce, temper them togither with Purslaine water as before.

De Pulmone Vulpis, of the lights of a fore: how highly the same is to be praised, and how the same is to be prepared, is to be read in the first Part, Chap. 5. and §. 12.

Sanum expertum, that is as much to say as healthy and approued, viz. for all old coughes and shortnes of the breath &c.

De Scilla, of Squils: how the same is to be prepared, and vsed for all old coughes, that may you reade in the first Part, the fift Chapter, and 7. §.

The 11. Chapter.

We will discourse in this 11. Chapter of many sundry causes, as follo weth hereafter.

Almond

Almond milke. §.1.



Almond milke is prepared after many maners, and that according to the quality of the sickness. If so be that one will strengthen nature, then is the same to be made the stronger and the thicker, and one must take the more Almonds, and lesse water. But this is the common fashion to make it: Take Almonds as many as you please, put them in hot water, and let them steape so long therein, untill one can péele them: then powze cold water vpon them, that through the heate of the water, they lose no virtue: afterwards poune the péeled Almonds very small, and take them in a very cleane cloth, powze theré o2 sower sponesfuls of faire water vpon it, and then with a spone rub out the strength, and so powzing only more and more faire water vpon it, you are to continue this straining, viz. so long as you suppose that there commeth out any whiteness: then put as much Sugar vnto it as you thinke good. If you will vse it for sleepe, then poune a little white Poppy seedes, and rub that thorough with the Almonds. If you desire that the Almond milke be more cooling, then stamp a little Melon seede with it: if one will vse it against the sore, then is the water to be stealed: for the breast be Currans and Licorice to be sodden in it: there be also Pingles otherwhiles pouned, Vassell nuts, and such like things with it, all according to the quality of the malady. And albeit that this Almond milke be vsed for the kitchin, yet it is also good for many kindes of infirmities and sicknesses.

Manus Christi. §.2.



How these losings are to be prepared after two manner of sortes, with Perles, and also without Perles, that is in the first Part, the third Chapter, and ninth S. described, and they be very much in vse, so that the comon people esteeme them only to be a strengthening of the hart, although there are more forcible things prepared for it.

Marchpane. §.3.



Take good fresh Almonds, as many as you please, and péele them, as we haue taught of Almond milke: o2 if one haue so much leysure, lay them a whole night to steape in cold water, then will the pées goe off: afterwards poune them small in a stone mortar, and powze a little Rose water vnto it: at last you are to poune amongst it as much Sugar as you please, whether it be much o2 little: this dough o2 paaſte is to be spread on wafers. But if the dough be too moist, then passen not with baking: otherwise will it be full of bladders. These Marchpanes bee most metely baked in an ouen, the top and bottome couered with a mild fire, laying the Marchpane very drie therein, and there is laid for the more certainty a paper beneath vpon the bottome of the panne o2 ouen. Will you haue the Marchpane verie white: then must you make the fire verie slow. But if you will make a Marchpane to strengthen one (for which it was first of all found out) then must you adde Pingles, Pistacies, and other spices vnto it, and also water of Spike, of Lauander, of Cndine, o2 take any other waters, as Cinnamon water, and such like. The Sugar is also to be sod metely hard: and when it is well clarified, then stir it, and mixe afterwards the pouned Almonds amongst it.

For to counterfeit Marrow of bones. §.4.



Take péeled Almonds, poune them very small, and make them often wet with Rose water, afterwards then temper sower ounces of beaten Sugar amongst it: and to the end it may be harder, in rolling it put two ounces more of Sugar vnto it, and strow that on the outside vpon it, then fourme it as you thinke good, and bake it like Marchpane.

Medicamen de Turbith. §.5.

The maner to make both these pouders, and their virtues haue we declared in the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 20. §.

Melicraton. §. 6.

This do we call in english wyne meade, whercof the auncient Phisitians do make two sorts, for the one they take two parts of sowze wyne, and one part of Hony. When this is waren old, then it is nourishing: when it is metely old, then it is very requisit for the stomack and the belly, and it expelleth also vrin: but after meate it is not very wholesome to be dronken. If one will vse the same quickly, then must these two things be boyled together. Orther do take five parts of Husk, and let the same be hot, then do they powze a quart of Hony vnto it, and when it hath boyled awhile, then do they pferue the same. This *Melicraton* is before, time much moze vsuall then now adayes, and especially with the Romanes, which called the same *Vinum Muscum*.

Of Meade, a common drinke. §. 7.

The Hony water and the Meade are not only inuented for their vertus, but also for necessity, chiefly in such Countreys where no wyne groweth, or may not be vsed. And it is very true, that this drinke is moze wholesome then soltered wyne: for although the Meade be hot by nature, yet it is tempered with moisture, wherfore it cannot ouerheate nor ouerdry one. And albeit that this Meade may be made according to the fashon of euery Countrie, diuersly: yet neuertheles is this the commonest manner, viz. that one take eight quarts of water vnto one quart of Hony, and so let it sethe by a gentle fire, skimming it so long untill it begin to be cleare. It is also here to be noted, that how much longer you thinke to keepe the Meade, so much the longer are you to sethe the same. When it is cold, then put it into a vessell, and let it be thre fingers empty, to the end it may worke. If so be that you desire to haue the same stronger and moze forcible, then hang these spices following in it, viz. Ginger, Cinna-
mom, Cloues, Calingall, Nutmegs, and such like, and that in waight, as we shall write here-
after of the aromaticall wynes. Some do take also Saffron vnto it, not only for the colour, but also for his vertue, and for that it yeldeth a good sauour to the Meade. When it hath spured or wrought, then is the same to be letten lye stopped the space of thre moneths. But in case you desire to vse it presently, then sethe the same not long, and expect not her working, but drinke it freely as sone as it is cold, and then the next day make new againe. In Liefeland they haue in some places a custome, that they hope their vessels with yron, and so bury the Meade vnder the earth, and this will be stronger then any wyne, but we will permit such Countreies to keepe their customes. If you do desire to make quickly a good Meade, then take a good Nutmeg, and one ounce of Cinna-
mom cut small, and powze thereon thre quarts of water, then let the third part sethe away, and then put vnto it halfe a pound of clarified Hony: this being done, let it sethe againe together, vntill that there remaine about a good quart.

In old time was this Meade following to be made: Take hony combs, wash the same well with lukewarme water, and afterwards let it sethe well. But if it be not swete ynough, then put moze hony vnto it, and scomme it well: afterwards put thereto prepared Coziander halfe a pound, Sage and Hops, of each one handfull, let a third part sethe away, and so kepe it in a fir fat, at last hang Valerian, Cinna-
mom, Cloues, Nutmegs, and Pace therein.

Another sort: Take as much skummed Hony as you please, put the same into a cleane leaded pot, and powze as much water vnto it as you please, then take Sage and Marierom (according as you desire it to be strong) If you will put any Cinna-
mom vnto it, that is also not amisse, then let it so sethe together, and skumme it well. If so be that you desire to haue it browne, then take two or thre spoonefuls of Hony, and let the same sethe well, and stirre it well about untill that it be strong, as sone as you take it from the fire, then powze presently water vpon it, it will boyle together, and then powze the rest vnto it, strayne out the herbs, and then kepe it in a seller.

The common vertues of these Meades be, that they quench thirst: It is also good for all cold diseases of the braines, of the backbone, of the sinewes, and for all other diseases, for which wyne is hurtfull, by his penetrating virtue and force, it clenseth and openeth the breast, it taketh away the cold dry cough, it clenseth the kidneyes, the raynes, the conduits of vrin, and the bladder, of all cold limy matter wherof the grauell and the stone doth grow, and it expelleth also

also all hurtfull matter out of the guts, wherefore the same is to be vsed in all diseases of the baines, as in the giddines, in the falling sicknes, and in lamenes which is caused thereby. In like manner it is good for them that be plagued with the Cramp, and the hot *Podagra*.

The 12. Chapter.



This twelfth Chapter hath no more then two sorts of compounded things, as oyles, and some other which be made with vineger, which be therefore called *Oxymel*, *Oxyrator*, *Oxyfaccchara*, and such like. First we will write of Oyles, whereof there is much declared, and adde thereto, for what they are to be vsed: amongst which there be some first of Plants, of fruits, and of Seedes, as well pressed, as beaten out: other by the addition of certaine herbs, floures, rootes, and other things which be decocted therewith. Some are distilled, and by force of the fire be drawne out of Rootes, out of Spynes, out of Pettals, and such like things: and the manner of making them is diuers, wherof we will write hereafter, and also declare thereby for what each of them shall be good.

Oyle of Poplar buds. §. 1.



Because that in the making of all oyles there must haue be taken that the herbs, floures, rootes, and such like be not put too moyst into the oyle, the same must first of all be withered a little, and afterwards be chopt small, to the end the virtue and force may come the better out of it. If you haue not the hot sunne, then let it sethe in a narrow pot in hot water. If so be that you renew the herbs 2 or the floures two 2 three times, then is the oyle the more forcible. And now to come to our oyle of Poplar buds: Take Sallet oyle twelue ounces, white wyne twelue ounces, fresh Poplar buds (which be pouned) nine ounces, then let them scape the space of seuen dayes in the wyne and oyle, and stirre them oftentimes about, afterwards boyle it in a narrow pot in water, untill all the wyne be wasted, and afterwards wryng it thorow a cloth. It is also to be noted, like as is before said, that if so be you do renew the Poplar buds two 2 three times, that then the oyle will be the more forcible, which may also be well done. This oyle is very good against headach, paine of the ioynts, of the raynes, of the kidneies, and against the paine of the Gent, with other paines moe.

Oyle of *Mandragora*. §. 2.

It is oftentimes before declared, what force that the *Mandragora* hath, to wit, that it causeth sleepe, and causeth insensiblenes. This oyle is prepared and made in the same manner as all oyles of other rootes are made, but it is very seldome vsed but when great neede doth require.

Oyle of Amber. §. 3.

All they that delight in distillations, and haue endeouored themselves to draw out the purest and clearest out of all things, they haue also found great virtue in the oyle of Amber: for which there hath bene made especiall ouens, glasses, and other preparati-
ons, &c. which were here too long to discourse, but we will only declare her vertue & vse. First, there is nothing more forcible against all venemous ayre, if one rub a drop thereof in the nostrils. In like manner the sowings are also good, amongst which two 2 three drops of this oyle is tempered. The same is good against all sicknesses of the head, as against Palsey, and against the falling sicknes, if one take it with Betony water, 2 with any such like water, and annoynt it outwardly vpon the neck: but that is especially good which is distilled of the white Amber. It is also very good for all diseases of the sinewes, as for the cramp, the lamenes, and such like, it expelleth the stone, and the grauell, if the same be giuen with the water of Parsly: it furthereth also Childbirth if it be giuen with water of Merueine, so doth it also if one annoynt the nauell on the outside with Snakes grease and it together. It is also very commodious against the suffocation of the mother, if one annoynt the same in the nostrils, and vpon the pit of the

hart. The loſings wherein this oyle is baked, be eſpeciall good againſt all cold rheumes, they ſtrengthen the bzaines, they be good againſt all ſwooning and hartbeating, and they do alſo ſtrengthen the digeſtiue power of the ſtomack. In fine, this oyle may be vſed in ſtead of the true and naturall Balme.

Artificiall Balme. §. 4.

Of this artificiall Balme, and how the ſame is made after diuers manners, and diſtilled, we haue declared befoze in the ſecond Chapter ſufficiently.

Sallet oyle, or oyle of Oliues. §. 5.

This Sallet oyle is of all people ſo well knowne, that whereas oyle ſtandeth without any ſurname, thereby alwayes Sallet oyle is underſtoode: and it is alſo a gracious gift of God, that people may vſe the ſame for ſundry neceſſaries, which were too long to diſcourſe, for how many kinds of Plaiſters, Salues, Oyles, & Chiſters &c. be prepared of this oyle: But as much as concerneth this Sallet oyle, there be three ſorts of the ſame vſed for Whiſtick, to wit, one that is thowow ripe, the ſecond, that which is not thowow ripe, the third, which is very old, for that each one of the three hath his proper nature: that which is cleane ripe is of a warme nature, ſo that it defendeth the bodie from all cold being annoynted thereon, it reſreſheth all the members, and maketh them fit for laboz, it ſuppleth all the whole bodie and the ſkinne, it aſſwageth all payne of the ioynts, it cleareth the ſight, it is good againſt all venim if one drinke the ſame often, and vomiteth it vp againe, ſo that the auncient Whiſtitions haue left a prouerb behind them, Wyne ſustaineth the bodie within, and Oyle outwardly. When the oyle is about a yere old, then doth it loſe much of her pleaſantnes, and the beſt driueth alway about, which is contrary in Honey, wherein the beſt doth lye alwayes vnderneath, and the beſt of the wyne is alwayes in the middle. The oyle which is preſſed out of the vnripe Oliues, that is called *Omphacinum*, the ſame hath power for many kind of things, and eſpecially in Salues: it is alſo very meete for the ſtomack through her aſtringent virtue, likewiſe it doth ſtaſſen the gums and the teeth. The old oyle is hotter then the other, and hath alſo moze virtue to digeſt, it ſtrengtheneth much the ſight if it be annoynted vnder the eyes: if one can get no old oyle, then looke befoze into the introduction how that the oyle is to be prepared.

Oyle of Behen. §. 6.

This oyle of the rootes of red and white Behen, is not very vſuall, howbeit that we doe ſometimes remember it in this our booke.

Oyle of *Pyrethrum*. §. 7.

It is an oyle which is very hot, and that is not made at the Apothecaries, but only if the ſame be preſcribed to be made, therefore we will write no further thereof.

Oyle of Beuercod. §. 8.

The Apothecaries do make a certaine oyle of Beuercod, which is made of many kind of things for all cold diſeaſes, and eſpecially for all diſeaſes of the ſmelwes, and paine of the ioynts. It is very good for the Walſy, and ſtiffnes of the neck. It alayeth the cold in the Agues if the backbone be annoynted with it. But we will here deſcribe that which is eaſie to be made: Take Beuercod one ounce, *Euphorbium* three dragmes, *Morba* one quarter of an ounce, white ſtrong wyne eight ounces, Sallet oyle twelue ounces; let it ſetthe ſo long together untill the wyne be thowowly conſumed, afterwards ſtrayne it and keepe it.

Oyle of Led. §. 9.

This oyle of Led is thus made: Take dry Ceruſe one pound, vineger which is two times diſtilled, one quart or moze, and ſetthe it in a narrow pot in ſetthing water an houre ſpace, but

but stirre it often about, and let it settle: afterwards distill it thozough a filter, to the end the vineger may runne thozough it, and the oyle tarry in it: do this two or thre times; then set this oyle in sand, and distill it slowly, then will there come out of it that which is faire and cleane. This oyle healeth all vlcers maruellous well, as we in the sist part the fourth Chapter and 4. §. haue taught. Another. Take Lead as much as you please, and beate it very thin, then poure as much distilled vineger vpon it vntill it be well couered, then will it be lead white. When it is now cleane consumed, then set it certaine dayes in the whot sunne, or in hote dung, and afterward then distill it in sand, vntill that the water which distilleth do alter, then set another receiuer befoze it, and there commeth a ruddy oyle out of it.

Oyle of Penniroyall. §. 10.

This oyle is made like oyle of Cammomill. You may adiudge the virtue by the proprietie of the herbe, yet it is not much vsed.

Oyle of Purslaine. §. 11.

This oyle is prepared like as the oyles of other herbs, but it is made very seldome.

Oyle of Cammomill. §. 12.

This oyle is thus made: Take well sauoring Cammomill as much as you please, put it into a pot, and poure vpon it as much old Sallet oyle, vntill all the Cammomill be well couered, and then set it the space of fourtene dayes in the sunne, or in some other warme place: afterwards let them sethe in a narrow pot in seething water, and then put out the Cammomill, and put in fresh againe, and let it sethe againe, then wring it out well, and do this thre times one after another, and then keepe it vntill you haue occasion to vse it. This oyle is good for many kind of things, it openeth the pores and sweat vents, it expelleth vapors, it alayeth rheumes, it is good for the sinewes, for all paine of the ioynts, and it asswageth also the paine of the guts.

Oyle of Capers. §. 13.

The oyle of Capers is most commonly made at the Apothecaries in this manner: Take Capers rootes one ounce, rinds and leaues of Tamariske, the seedes of *Agnus Castus*, Harts tongue, and Cipers rootes, of each one quarter of an ounce, Rue one drag. Vineger and good wyne, of each one quarter of an ounce, ripe Sallet oyle twelue ounces, poune the rootes grossly, and let them steepe a whole night, afterwards sethe them in an especiall pot in boyling water, strayne and keepe it. This oyle is especially good for all hardnes, obstructions, and payne of the Splene, but you may in seething put some moze wyne and vineger.

Oyle of *Costus*. §. 14.

Take of the very true and good rootes of *Costus* one ounce, Cassy wood, or Elecampane rootes (in stead of it) halfe an ounce, sprigs of Parierom gentle foure ounces, oyle of *Sassa-*
num 18. ounces, and wyne as much as sufficeth. Let it steepe two dayes and two nights, afterwards let it sethe altogether in water vntill the wyne be thozoughly wasted, which you may perceiue thereby, if that you let one drop fall into the fire, and that it hisse no moze. This oyle is of a warme nature, it openeth the obstruction of the stomack and of the Luer. It is good against all diseases of the sinewes, it auoydeth the growing of gray haire, it pfecteth the bodie in his naturall colour.

In the first part you haue two other sortes of oyle of *Costus*, which may also be vsed for aduantage, and they be also hotter then this present oyle is.

Oyle of Dill. §. 15.

The oyle of Dill is made of the herb, of the floures, & of old oyle, like as oyle of Cammomill is made. This oyle asswageth all paine, it openeth the pores, it consumeth wind, also all

cold and hard swellings, it taketh away the shaking of an Ague, it maketh one to sleepe, and taketh away all paine of the head in hot Agues, if the backe bone be therewith annointed.

Oyle of Eggs. §.16.

How this oyle is made, and what it hath for efficacie, and power, is taught in the first part, the third Chapter, and sixt §.

Oyle of Annis. §.17.



This oyle of Annis is made by distilling in this manner: Take one pound of smal beaten Annis, and put it into a glased helme, and powze so much water vpon it vntill the helme be halfe full: but distill it the first time with a milde or slowe fire in boyling water, vntill it begin to be hot, afterwards make a good fire, vntill that the oyle and the water do go ouer together. Now being distilled, then separate the water and the oyle one from another, with a glazen funnel, so that the oyle swimmeth alwaies on the top: This oyle hath a great force against the giddines of the head, and against the Collicke, and is also highly commended against the falling sicknes, if one giue thereof three or fouer drops. It is here to be noted, that if one will distill any such like, that one is alwaies to take for one pound, two or three pound of water.

Oyle of wilde Cucumbers. §.18.

This oyle is not vsuall in this countrey: But for what it is mete, looke for that in the Table.

Oyle of Euphorbium. §.19.



This oyle is thus made: Take Euphorbium halfe an ounce, oyle of yellow Violets and good wine, of each five ounces, let it sethe so long vntill that all the wine be consumed; afterwards wring it thorough a cloth: it is especiall good for the cold brains & sinewes: In like maner it is also good against the paine of the head, Cephalalgia, Hemicania, and against the sleepe sicknes, if one annoint it in the nostrils. Item, for all paine of the ioints, of the Liuer, and of the Splene, if it procure of colde.

Oyle of Foxes. §.20.

Before in the second part, the fourth Chapter, and 15. §. there is found this oyle of Foxes, and therewithall also his operation.

Oyle of Lillies. §.21.



Take the white leanes of Lillies, and prepare the oyle, like as is said of the Camomils; this oyle healeth all cold payne of the breast, of the raines, & the bladder, & especially of the Spatir, and also all payne of the guts. For that it is of an hot nature, it hath power to digest, it allwageth the cough, it ripeneth all impostumations, it dryeth all bad sores of the head, and it diminisheth also all swellings, if one temper a little Saffron amongst.

Oyle of Hemp seede. §.22.



Of Hemp seede is this oyle beaten: it warmeth and dryeth much, therefore it doth consume naturall seede; yea if one eate too much of the same, then doth it the same hurt that Coziander doth: wherefore the same is verie seldome, and that very little used in Physicke, as also thereof but twice hath bene spoken in this Booke.

Oyle

Oyle of the kernels of Abricockes. §.23.

Out of the kernels of this fruit is oyle pressed, like as is done of Almonds, but it is very seldom prepared in this countrie.

Oyle of Elderne flowers. §.24.

You are to make oyle of Elderne flowers and of olde Sallet oyle, as oyle of Camomill is made, it asswageth the paine, it cleanieth, and is very good for the yellow jaundise, and all diseases of the liver, and also for their obstructions: likewise it doth also take away all payne of the toynets.

Oyle of Saint Johns wort. §.25.



If this herbe, you must take the tops when it beginneth to ripen, to wit, the uppermost sprigs three ounces, keepe them three dayes long in good Wine: afterwards wring them out well, and then put other in againe and let it seethe together. Being sodden, wring it againe euen to the third time: and if the wine were sod away, then put more vnto it. Lastly, take three ounces of Turpentine, old Sallet oyle six ounces, Saffron one scruple; put this all together in a seuerall pot, and so let it seethe in seething water so long vntill the wine be consumed: then wring it hard thorow a cloth and let it settle; so do the Apothecaries make it. The Chirurgians doe make it in this manner: Take fouer pound of the uppermost sprigs of Saint Johns wort, put them into a pot of the quantitie of five quarts, and poure to pound of Sallet oyle vpon it, and as much white Wine vntill the herbes be well couered; then stop the pot tight, and so let it stande the space of six weekes: afterwards make it open and put one dragma of Saffron vnto it, but stop the pot by and by verie close, and set it in a kettle with seething water, and so let it seethe the space of ten houres. This being al done, then afterwards poure it al together in a linnen bag and binde it verie fast vnto it, and presse it hard out whilst that it is yet warme, put it in a glasse and set it in the sunne, or in another warme place; then will the oyle come on the top, lade it off then continually, and keepe it well stoppt in a glasse. This oyle is hot and dry, and hath an especiall astringent vertue; therefore it doth also heale all wounds and all wounded sinewes; yea all burning of fire, it asswageth all paine of the hips, of the bladder, and doth expell vaine, &c.

Oleum Irinum. §.26.

There are two kindes described and are both verie troublesome to be made, they be also not much vsed.

Oyle of Cherrie Kernels. §.27.

This oyle is also very seldome vsed, and is made like as oyle of Almonds by pressing, and is much commended for moving of vaine.

Oyle of Melilot. §.28.

So is it also with this oyle of Melilot, they be also seldome made, and also very seldome vsed.

Oyle of Cresses. §.29.

This oyle is also very seldome made, yet it is made like all oyles of herbes.

Oyle of Copper. §.30.

This oyle doe the Alchymists distill, like the oyle of Lead, whereof there bee two kindes described before, and there is difference between them, but that the Copper is somewhat smaller to be cut, and must be beaten somewhat thinner.

Oyle of Gourd seeds. §.31.

This oyle is not vsuall with vs, and is very seldome vsed.

Oyle of Lineseede. §.32.

The vertue of this oyle may be gathered by the properties of the seed, out of which it is beaten, and also out of many places of this booke, wherein they be commanded to be vsed.

Oyle of white *Sesamum*. §.33.

This oyle is made of the seede *Sesamum*, and is also beaten out of the foresaid seede, like as the Lineseede oyle, it hath a speciall power for to ease all rough throats, to take away all hoarsenes, and to make one haue a good voice: wherefore it is vsed in many parts of Physicke.

Oyle of Linnen cloth. §.34.

How that this oyle is to be vsed, we haue told it in the first Part, and also taught therewith how the same is to be made. It is to be vsed for all running eyes.

Oyle of Bay. §.35.

This oyle is brought vnto vs by the marchants in great quantity out of Italy: it is warme by nature, it openeth all obstructions, and asswageth all paines of bowels, also all cold paines of the bellie, of the liuer, of the spleen, the kidneies, the Matris, of the sinewes, and of the ioints, and is also very good for all cold sicknesses.

Oyle of Mace. §.36.

This oyle is brought vnto vs out of Indy, and vsed for diuers cold accidents.

Oyle of the seedes and flowers of Poppy. §.37.

First of all there will be made of this plant and of the white flowers an oyle, which is more milde than the red and carnation flowers be, and will be made with Sallet oyle, like as Cammonill oyle is wont to be made, yet at sundrie times renewing the infusing of the flowers, according to that one desireth to haue it strong. This oyle asswageth all hot paine, it cooleth much, and is very good for all them, that cannot sleepe well, if the temples of the head be annoynted therewith: and as the hot vapors do draw to the head, in any hot sicknesses, also the nostrils, the eares, and the temples of the head may be annoynted with it.

The oyle which is made of the seedes of this herbe, is made of the white, gray and blacke seede, and beaten out of it, as the oyle of Lineseede is made, it maketh fat, it asswageth the paine of the throte, heate of the Agues, and all heavy dreames.

Oyle of sweete Almonds. §.38.

There be two kindes made thereof (of swete and bitter Almonds.) This oyle is pressed out or beaten out vpon a pouning mill, like as the oyle of Lineseede is beaten out. But if one will drinke the oyle, then take Almonds well dried, which haue a fresh and swete taste, as much as you please, pounce them very small, and parch them a little, afterwards put a Rosewater vnto it, and presse it well out with a strong presse. But the oyle of swete Almonds is much vsed. The oyle of swete Almonds is good against the roughnes of the throte, of the breast, of the lights, and against all brought of the same. Further, it asswageth all paine of the ioyntes, it is also very pleasant for to be occupied in all meates, & good for all them which beginne to consume, it maketh fat, and augmenteth humaine nature, it quencheth thirst, it layeth the heate of the vyne, and all payne of the bladder, together with all vlcers of the
100,

womanhood, if the same be annointed thereon or iniected therein.

The oyle of bitter Almonds doth assuage all hardnes of the sinewes, it openeth all obstructions, it consumeth wind and all bad vapors, and it is especiall good for deafnes, and all bad hearing, for all sitting of the eares, and it taketh also away all spots.

Oyle of Marierom gentle. §. 9.

TAke the herbe Marierom gentle fower handfuls, wilde Thyme two handfuls, Martle leaues one handfull, Southernewood and Pints, of each halfe a handfull, Cassie wood two ounces, vnripe Sallet oyle as much as will suffice for to couer all the foresaid; then stop it tight, and so let it stand the space of eight daies in the sun: afterwards wyng it out hard, and lay fresh again therein: do this thus thre times together. This oyle is especiall good for all diseases of the bzaines, and of the sinewes, and it is especiall good in bathing against all lamenes, or consumption of the Palsey Paralysis: if the same be annointed in the eares and in the nose, it taketh away all sittings: it moueth womens termes, and it withstandeth all venime of Scorpions. Some doe make this oyle onely of the leaues, like as Cammomill oyle is made, and it is made most so.

Oyle of Masticke. §. 40.

THe manner to make this oyle, and also his virtue is described in the third Part, the eleuenth Chapter, and fift §.

Oyle of Narcissus. §. 41.

This oyle is called by the Philosophers *Oleum Narcissum*, and is made like as oyle of Cammomill is wont to be made. This oyle is very good for the hardening of the womanhood, or if the same be shut too close: it is also vsed for the Palsey that commeth of fals.

Oyle of Mirtles. §. 42.

Of this oyle be two kindes made: that which is made of the sedge, hath an astringent virtue, wherefore it is also good for all hot vlcers, and for the chaps of the Arsegut: it strengtheneth the slacknes or loosenes of the sinewes, and it stayeth sweat. But that which is made of the leaues, strengtheneth only the bzaines, the sinewes, the hart, and the stomacke: but because that we can get no fresh, they are first to be infused in good wine, & to put vnripe Sallet oyle vnto it.

Oyle of Mints. §. 43.

This oyle is made of Pints, and vnripe Sallet oyle, like as the oyle of Cammomill is wont to be made. This oyle warmeth the cold stomacke, it taketh away vomiting, it maketh appetite to meate, it helpeth the Consumption, and it consumeth all hard swellings.

Oyle of Motherwort. §. 44.

This oyle is very seldome vsed, and is made as other oyles, yet in this booke it is but once ordayned.

Oyle of Nutmegs. §. 45.

This oyle is made like as the oyle of Almonds is wont to be made, that is, by pressing it out.

Oyle of Cloues. §. 46.

TAke good fat Cloues halfe a pound, poune them very small, and distill it, like as befoze in the 18. §. hath bin said of Annis seed. A pound of Cloues doth seldome yeld moze than an ounce
and

and a halfe of Oyle. In the same manner may oyle of Nutmegs be also distilled, and there is hardly moze gotten out of it then five dragmes out of a pound: both these oyles are moze sozible than the same spices.

Oyle of Walnuts. §.47.

This oyle of Walnuts is pzeft out of old Nuts, like as oyle of Almonds: his vertue do we finde described in sundry places of this Booke.

Oyle of Pepper. §.48.



We will refer the pzeparing of this oyle to the Apothecaries; but it is god for all cold diseases of the sinewes, as for the palley, the cramp, convulsion of the mouth, shaking, falling sickenes, paynes of the hips, and other diseases moe of the ioints. In like manner it is also god for a colde stomacke, for the guts, for the raynes, and for the cold bladder: for that it warmeth, it auoydeth all Symmes, it openeth all obstructions, it breaketh the stone of the bladder, and also of the kidneies.

There is also oyle distilled out of Pepper, like as is saide of the Annis.

Oyle of Peache Kernels. §.49.

This oyle is also pzeft out like to the oyle of Almonds.

Oyle of Quinces. §.50.

The vertue and nature of this oyle, and also the manner of making it, is described in the third Part, the 15. chap. and 5. §.

Oyle of Rue. §.51.



This oyle is to be made of fresh Rue, like as oyle of Cammomill is made: it is warm by nature, it openeth & swageth the payne, it is god for all cold kidneies, for a cold Patrir, and for the payne of the same, if the belly be annoynted therewith, or if one set a clister with it. It is very moete for the sinewes, for the crampe, and it expelleth all colde humors.

Oyle of Earth woormes. §.52.



At the fourth Part the fourth Chapter, is the vertue of one of these oyles shewed, and the manner how to make it. But there is also another made, which both warme moze, both penetrate moze, and strengtheneth all the ioynts: Take Cammomill, Sage, Agrimonie, and felds Cipers, of each halfe a handfull, Rosemarie halfe as much, Juniper berries one quarter of an ounce, Earth woormes decocted in Wine sixe ounces, white Wine one pinte, Sallet oyle sixtene ounces: let it seethe together until the wine be thozowly consumed, and then wying it out thozow a cloth.

Oyle of Priuet. §.53.

The Physicians and Apothecaries do name this Priuet *Lignistrum*. This oyle is made as the oyle of Cammomill, it strengtheneth all sinewie parts, and hindereth the hayre to be graye.

Oyle of Rubarbe. §.54.



Rake Rubarbe nine ounces, *Agaricus* thre ounces, Turbith thre ounces and a halfe, rootes of Polipodie fower ounces, Cinnamon, and Juniper berries, of each halfe an ounce, red, white, and yelow Saunders, of each fower scruples, long and round Partiwort, Gentian, rootes of blew flower deluce, of Costus, *Asarabacca*, Zeduarie, Ginger, Galingall, Elecampane rootes, and Calmus, of each one quarter of an ounce, Tozmentill, and rootes of *Cardus Benedictus*, of each one dragme and a halfe, Nutmegs, Cloues, Bayberries, Spice, and Cucubes, of each one dragme.

the same of *Sorrell*, of *Purslaine*, red and white *Behen*, and *Doronicum*, of each halfe a dragma, *Lignum Aloes*, red and white *Coyrall*, scraped *Juozie*, *Pasticke*, *Spica*, and *Campher*, of each one scruple, burnt *Juozie* one dragma; poune them all grosse, and then poure vpon it the clarified iuice of *Burrag*, and of *Baulme*, of each five ounces, the iuice of *Oranges* three ounces; let it steepe certaine daies together, stirring it oftentimes about to the end it do not sinke: afterwards you are to distill it in seething water, then doth it first of all yeld a water: but as sone as you perceiue that it begins to get another colour, and that it beginneth to drop slowly, then augment your fire and receiue your oyle in another receiuer, and keepe it well stoppt, at last set it the space of 30. daies in the sunne. This oyle is somewhat ruddie, and smelleth verie well; so that if one put a drop in a great deale of well water, then getteth it a sauour accordingly. This oyle doth purge very mildly if one giue halfe a dragma thereof more or lesse, according to the qualitie or importance of the patient. This oyle is most meetely giuen with Coates milke: it is also especiall good against the *Quartana*, if the patient haue governed himselfe well before in his order of diet. In like manner it is also good in all other Agues, which the Phisitions do call *Putridas*: it killeth and dyueth out the wormes if it be giuen with purslaine water or with Wine. This oyle is also especiall good giuen once euerie five daies against the Pockes: it is also good against the rheumes, against the payne in the head *Cephalalgia*, against the gibbines, and against the payne of the kidneies, it obstructeth womens termes, and the fluxe of humane seede. It is good against the gout of the fete if once euerie fourtene daies two or three drops of this oyle be giuen with the decoction of fiede cipers. It is also verie good against all running fistulaes, against all vlcers, and against the canker: also for all diseases of the places in women, and of the *Matr*, if one iniect halfe a dragma thereof with the decoction of *Feuerfew*, it prouoketh also fruitfulness. The water that cometh out before the oyle hath his vertue also, for that it prepareth all humours which cause any sickenes in the bodie, if one once or twice a day take thereof halfe an ounce at each time with three ounces of *Endiue* water.

Oyle of Roses. §.55.



After the common fashion is this oyle of *Roses* prepared, and is verie meete for diuers matters. It is made of *Rose* buds as the oyle of *Cammomill*. This oyle coleteth much, and hath an astringent vertue; it is good for all manner of heate of whatsoeuer occasion that the same may be caused, bled outwardly, or in clisters inwardly, and it strengtheneth also all the ioynts which be annoynted therewith, like as they be ordayned for it throughout the whole Booke.

This oyle is made very seldome of white *Roses*; and it coleteth also more, then that which is made of red *Roses*.

Oyle of Saffron. §.56.

The oyle of *Saffron* is not vsed by vs, but yet is prescribed in some places of this Booke.

Oyle of *Sandaraca*. §.57.

This oyle is also utterly vnknownen, it is but once prescribed in this Booke.

Oyle of Sulphur. §.58.



This oyle of *Sulphur* is an Alchimistickall oyle, and is made in diuers manners: some do put one quarter of *Amber* vnto it; other do put *Petroleum* vnto it. In *Italy* do they take *Sulphur* vis, and poure the vrine of a man child vnto it, and so bury it in horse dung; and afterwards distill the oyle out of it. But after these two manners following is this oyle chiefly made: Take five pounds of smal beaten *Sulphur* and temper oyle of *Tiles* amongst it: afterwards lute the helme very tight, and at the first make a small fire, and afterwards increase it. There is gotten out of the foresaide five pounds of *Sulphur*, no more then about one ounce of oyle: this oyle must with great prouidence be giuen, to wit, in winter time two drops with vitall waters or with *Palmsey*, and in sommer with *Endiue* water. This oyle doth asswage all griping of the belly, whether it be in the vndermost or in the vppermost guts; as also all paine of the stomacke which proceedeth of winde and cold humours.

humours: the same may also well be used outwardly. It is likewise very good annoynted in the childrens mouthes when they haue the canker, or any stinking vlcere in the mouth. Further warts are also taken away with it, and it maketh the teeth white.

To make the other oyle of Sulphur: Take Sallet oyle and poure therein a good deale of small pouldred Sulphur, & let it stand so long vpon the fire vntill that all Sulphur be cleane melted, stirring it well about: then are you to quench glowing peeces of coales in it, vntill the oyle be thoroughly suncken into the tyle stones. This being done, poune these stones and put them alone in the helme: the rest that ouersloweth, and also the Sulphur is to be done away, and then distill further all that is put into the helme. The first oyle that commeth out of it doth appere somewhat bleake in the helme; and when it beginneth to be white, then set another receiuer vnder it. This oyle seemeth to gild if it be annoynted vpon Iron, or vpon any other thing.

Oyle of blew Flower-deluce, §.59



This oyle is to be made like to the oyle of Lillies, but it will be somewhat strenghtened through the rootes: it is somewhat strong, but it allwageth all payne and meloweth all swellings, it is especiall good against all hardnes of the ioynts, it warmeth the Matric, & dyueth away the crampe, and taketh away all payne and sitting of the eares: lastly, it doth withstand the canker of the nose, &c.

Oyle of Scorpions. §.60.



Because that we (God be praised) haue no Scorpions in *Engl.* therefore is the oyle brought vnto vs out of Italy, and is made thus: Take ten or twelue Scorpions, cast them in twelue ounces of oyle of bitter Almondes, and so let it stue or fire waxes in the sunne; afterwarde strayne it and keepe it so; to vse. This oyle breaketh the stone of the bladder, and of the raines, and it dyueth the same also out, if it be annoynted vpon the raines, and vpon the priuities, or if it be iniected into the bladder: lastly, it is also good for many other things more, &c.

Oyle of water Lillies. §.61.



This oyle is made as well of the yellow as of the white water Lillies, but vniuersal Sallet oyle is taken for it, and it is made as the oyle of Violets. The oyle of the white water Lillies hath also the same vertue with the oyle of Violets, but that it is somewhat colder, but not altogether as cold as that of Poppie heads: wherefore these oyles are commonly tempered with other oyles, according to the quality of the disease. It is verie good for them that cannot rest, and for the paine of the kidneies, of heate: also it is passing good against all venereal lustes if the priuities be annoynted with it. It is also used for diuers other matters, as may appere in diuers places of this Booke.

Oyle of Mustard seede. §.62.

This oyle is very seldome used, for that it is so hot.

Oyle of Spikenard. §.63.



Under the name of *Oleum Nardinum* be there two sorts described: we will commend the greater to the Apothecaries, because it containeth diuers doubtfull things, but the smallest is thus prepared: Take good Spikenard three ounces, Wine and Water, of each two ounces and a halfe, oyle of white *Sesamum* eighteene ounces; sethe them together in hot water vntill that all the moysture be consumed, then strayne it. This oyle doth heate, digesteth, and refineth all that is thicke and grosse, and is somewhat astringent: it is good for all cold diseases of the braines, of the stomacke, of the liver, of the spleene, of the kidneies, and of the bladder, it cleanseth the head if it be annoynted in the nose, it maketh a good colour, and also a good sauour. It is brought now a daies metely good and reasonable cheape out of Fraunce.

Oyle

Oyle of Antimony. §. 64.



This oyle is thus prepared: Take a pound of Antimony, poune it grosse, and set it in the fire in a melting cruce, when it beginneth to smoke, then cast halfe a dragma of Bezeas vnto it: when it is molten, then powze it vpon a flat stone and let it be cold, then stamp and melt it againe, like as befoze, and so do thre times: afterwards poune it to fine powder, and powze vinegar vpon it which is distilled two or thre times, then put it into a glasse being stopped very tight and close, yet stirre it often about, and that so long vntill the vinegar begin to be red, which is wont to happen in the space of a moneth or twaine. This being done, put all together into an helme, luted very close, and distill it with a mild fire so long, vntill the rednes be discerned, and as sone as that is perceiued, then augment your fire, and fasten another receiuer to it, and make a good fire as long as one drop of oyle comes out of it. Out of a pound of Antimony you cannot haue aboue one dragma or twaine, according to the goodnes of it, or the oyle is well made. This oyle hath a red browne colour, it is also vsed for healing of wounds, and of old vlcers, like as also for all fistules, Leprosie, and for the Pocks, yet neuertheles according to the importance of each sickness, if there be a drop or twaine taken tempered with any thing else. The vlcers are washed with the water, but it is very sharp. Another: Take one pound of Antimony, poune it small, and put vnto it one quarter of an ounce *Mercurium Sublimatum*, put it then into a glas retort, and giue it presently a good fire: there doth come no water out of it, but only (sine or sine howes after) cleare oyle.

Oyle of Steele, or oyle of Iron. §. 65.

Take small filed Steele, or Iron, and white Flint, pouned very small, of each halfe a pound, put it in a glasse helme, and distill it in sand, first with a mild fire, and afterwards alwayes greater, it giueth first water, and afterwards red oyle, which hath a very pleasant smell, euen like to Balsam. Now for to distill this oyle, then are you to make an ouen after the fashion of a Retort, as the Alchymists do know. These things are rather searching out of the secrets of nature, then necessary Physick.

Rocke or Peteroyle. §. 66.



Some of these oyles be white, some yellow, and there are also some black, which is called *Napha*. This Peteroyle doth runne in Italy and also in other places out of the rocks: it doth heate, dry and consume: it is also good for the falling sicknes, for the Palsy, for dotings, and for the enfebled memorie.

Oyle of Turpentine. §. 67.

The manner to distill this oyle haue we shewed in the first part the thirtieth Chapter and 4. §.

Oyle of Violets. §. 68.

This oyle is made of blew Violets and vnripe Sallet oyle, it is somewhat colder then the oyle of Roses, therefore it doth the more coole all heate, especially the heate of the raynes and of the kidneys: in like manner it doth allwage the dry heated beaust, and is moreouer good for many other things.

The oyle of Wallflowers is prepared also of the flowers, and of old oyle, it is very good against the conuulsion of the sinewes, it driueth away all diseases of the beaust, the kidneies, and the bladder, and it is also good against all paine of the sinewes and of the Spatrix: also, it allwageth and melloweth all other diseases.

Oyle of Ireas.

The oyle of Ireas is vtterly vnknowne vnto vs.

Oyle

Oyle of Vitriol, or of Copperace. §. 69.



This oyle is very highly commended, it getteth an especiall sweetenes, which is a miraculous worke of nature, and is made thus: Take foure pound of Vn-
garie Copperas, stamp it very small, and then put it in a great body, then let it
dry certaine dayes: afterwards poune it againe, and so let it in a warme place
couered with a fine cloth, to the end that the sauour of Copper may thereby a-
uoyd. This being done, poure foure pound of the best spirit of wyne vpon it
which is well rectified, lute it well, and so keepe it fortie dayes in a warme place, or dunghill, and
afterwards distill it, then shall you see the oyle swim on the top of the wyne. There be yet mo-
lenger and mo other meanes for to distill this oyle, but this is the commonest manner. Concer-
ning the vertue of this oyle, and her force, it is very needefull that it be prouidently dealt with-
all, it must alwayes be mixed with somewhat else, for that it is too sharp, that it will inflame the
entrailes, otherwise hath it the same force of the oyle of Sulphur, but it is much stronger, and
penetrating. It is very good against all filth, and infection, and against the Plague it is especiall
good: it hath also great power to cause the matter of the Pleurisie to auoyd out of the breast,
it is good for all tough fleame and corruption of the breast to fetch it out, it suffereth also no stone
to grow in the bladder, and healeth the burned or perished bladder. There is no more but thre
or foure drops to be given with wyne. There may also losings be made of it. Also this oyle is
used by some, according to the importance of the cause, like as is admonished in certaine places
of this booke. This oyle doth strengthen the cold stomach, it consumeth *Phlegma*, it causieth all
tough and slimy matter to auoyd, it is good for the griping of the guts, and against all red sures,
it quenchem thirst, it withstandeth all wambling and parbaking.

Because that these oyles must be driuen vp through strong fier, it doth happen otherwhiles
that the glasses leape in pierces, by which all the cost, the trouble, and labour is lost. Now for to
preuent that, are the glasses to be hardened in this manner following: first are the bodiees to be
luted very well with lome, and before that you will vse the same, annoynt them oftentimes
with Allom water, and so let them dry: and if so be that they happen for all that to breake, yet
may they afterwards be souldered together, that they may hold water in this manner: Take
Venice glasse, red Lead, Linsede oyle, Gill dust, and the white of an Eg, mire it well together,
and then spread it metely thick vpon the cracks, and let it dry after wards.

Of the oyle of Wheate. §. 70.

The oyle of Wheate is made like as the oyle of Annis seedes is made.

Oyle of Iuniper berries. §. 71.

This oyle is drawne out of the powned berries. It may also be distilled like as the oyle of
Annis seedes, but because that there is very much brought to sell of it, the same may be
bought better cheape then made. That which is distilled out of the wood is made as fol-
loweth: Bury a pot in the ground that it stand about thre fingers out of it, then take another
pot which sitteth well the vndermost, and fill the same with small chips of Iuniper wood, then
make ouer it a latten lid with many small holes, that the moisture may drop thorow it, and
that the chips fall not into the vndermost pot. This being done, then whelme both these pots
one ouer the other, and then make a fire round about the vpper pot a good while, then gather the
oyle together which is dropt into the vndermost pot. This oyle is very good against all that
that doth outwardly infect the skin, as old vlcers and cankers, but especially against the *Varices*.
The oyle which is drawne out of the wood, hath an vnpleasant sauour, but that which is drawne
out of the berries, hath a very pleasant sauour and smell. They haue both of them one ope-
ration.

Oyle of Willow leaues. §. 72.

The leaues, floures, and fruits of this tree haue an astringent vertue, whereby they draw
the wounds together and heale them, withstand the spitting of blood, and take away all
spots

spots of the face. The oyle thereof is good being dropt in the eares, against the paine of the eares: and if the same be annointed on the outside, then it is very good against the Gout, and it taketh away all brachastnes. There may also oyle be drawn out of Willow wood, as it is drawn out of Juniper wood.

Oyle of Argall. §.3.

Take fower pound of Argall, poune it very small, and set it to burne in a pot bakers oven; afterwards poune it again, and then put it into a wollen bag, & so hang it in a cellar, then will there drop out cleere moysture, which is rather a water than an oyle.

Oyle of Wormewood. §.4.



Ancient Physitions doe make this oyle, of Wormewood which groweth in Ponto, and with vnripe oyle, like as is said of the oyle of Cammomill: but because that we haue not that Wormewood, therefore are we to take that of ours; and one must take halfe so much Rholes as Wormewood. This oyle hath an especiall power to warme, it strengtheneth also all that is cold, and especially the stomacke, it maketh an appetite to meate, it openeth all inward partes; and if one annoint it on the Paucell, it killeth the wormes, without any hurt: wherefore it is moze profitable for yong and old people, than the Wormesede.

Oyle of Tyles. §.5.

This oyle is to be distilled after two wayes, as the same is to be seene in the Table.

Oxycraton. §.76.



These things following doe keepe the Greke name with the Physitions and with the Apothecaries, for Oxys is Vineger: afterwards do they ad somewhat vnto it, which is tempered with the foresaid Vineger, like as with the Oxycraton, where wine, water and vineger are tempered together, which of the Latiniſts is called Posca: for which the same is now to be vsed, that is to be seene in many places of this booke.

Oxymel Simplex. §.77.

This Oxymel is described in the first Part, the second Chapter, and first §. It is very often vsed, and praised for many things.

Oxymel Compositum. §.78.

This is therefore named so, for that it is made of sundrie things, which is also described in the first Part, the second Chapter.

Oxymel Scillinum. §.79.

This is also described in the same place, and vsed oftentimes.

Oxyrrhodinum. §.80.

This is another compound than the former. It is much vsed against the paine of the head, laid vpon it on the outside, there be two kindes of it, as is taught in the second Part.

Oxyfaccchara. §.81.

This compound, and her virtue and operation, is described in the first Part, the eighth chapter, and second §.

The 13. Chapter.

This Chapter is a gathering together of all kindes of Plaisters and Pills, which be described in this booke.

Oyle of Vitriol, or of Copperace. §. 69.



This oyle is very highly commended, it getteth an especiall sweetenes, which is a miraculous worke of nature, and is made thus: Take foure pound of Hungarie Copperas, stamp it very small, and then put it in a great body, then let it dry certaine dayes: afterwards poune it againe, and so let it in a warme place couered with a fine cloth, to the end that the sauour of Copper may thereby auoyd. This being done, poure foure pound of the best spirit of wyne vpon it which is well rectified, lute it well, and so keepe it fortie dayes in a warme place, or dunghill, and afterwards distill it, then shall you see the oyle swim on the top of the wyne. There be yet mo longer and mo other meanes for to distill this oyle, but this is the commonest manner. Concerning the vertue of this oyle, and her force, it is very needefull that it be prouidently dealt with: all, it must alwayes be mixed with somewhat else, for that it is too sharp, that it will inflame the entrailes, otherwise hath it the same force of the oyle of Sulphur, but it is much stronger, and penetrating. It is very good against all filth, and infection, and against the plague it is especiall good: it hath also great power to cause the matter of the Pleurisie to auoyd out of the breast, it is good for all tough steame and corruption of the breast to fetch it out, it suffereth also no stone to grow in the bladder, and healeth the burned or perished bladder. There is no more but three or foure drops to be given with wyne. There may also losings be made of it. Also this oyle is bled by some, according to the importance of the cause, like as is admonished in certaine places of this booke. This oyle doth strengthen the cold stomack, it consumeth *Plegma*, it causeth all tough and slimy matter to auoyd, it is good for the griping of the guts, and against all red flures, it quencheth thirst, it withstandeth all wambling and parbaking.

Because that these oyles must be diuen by thorough strong fier, it doth happen otherwhiles that the glasses leape in pieces, by which all the cost, the trouble, and labour is lost. Now for to preuent that, are the glasses to be hardened in this manner following: first are the bodies to be luted very well with lome, and before that you will vse the same, annoynt them oftentimes with Allom water, and so let them dry; and if so be that they happen for all that to breake, yet may they afterwards be souldered together, that they may hold water in this manner: Take Venice glasse, red Lead, Linseed oyle, Gill dust, and the white of an Eg, mixe it well together, and then spread it metely thick vpon the cracks, and let it dry after wards.

Of the oyle of Wheate. §. 70.

The oyle of Wheate is made like as the oyle of Annis seeds is made.

Oyle of Iuniper berries. §. 71.

This oyle is drawne out of the pouned berries. It may also be distilled like as the oyle of Annis seeds, but because that there is very much brought to sell of it, the same may be bought better cheape then made. That which is distilled out of the wood is made as foloweth: Bury a pot in the ground that it stand about three fingers out of it, then take another pot which fitteth well the vndermost, and fill the same with small chips of Iuniper wood, then make ouer it a latten lid with many small holes, that the moisture may drop thowto it, and that the chips fall not into the vndermost pot. This being done, then whelme both these pots one ouer the other, and then make a fire round about the vpper pot a good while, then gather the oyle together which is dropt into the vndermost pot. This oyle is very good against all that that both outwardly infect the skin, as old vlcers and cankers, but especially against the *Varices*. The oyle which is drawne out of the wood, hath an vnpleasant sauour, but that which is drawne out of the berries, hath a very pleasant sauour and smell. They haue both of them one operation.

Oyle of Willow leaues. §. 72.

The leaues, floures, and fruits of this tree haue an astringent virtue, whereby they draw the wounds together and heale them, withstand the spitting of blood, and take away all spots

spots of the face. The oyle thereof is good being dropt in the eares, against the paine of the eares: and if the same be annointed on the outside, then it is very good against the Gout, and it taketh away all brachelines. There may also oyle be drawn out of Willow wood, as it is drawn out of Juniper wood.

Oyle of Argall. §.3.

Take fower pound of Argall, pounce it very small, and set it to burne in a pot bakers oven; afterwards pounce it again, and then put it into a wollen bag, & so hang it in a cellar, then will there drop out cleere moisture, which is rather a water than an oyle.

Oyle of Wormewood. §.74.



Ancient Physicians doe make this oyle, of Wormewood which groweth in Ponto, and with unripe oyle, like as is said of the oyle of Cammomill: but because that we haue not that Wormewood, therefore are we to take that of ours; and one must take halfe so much Roses as Wormewood. This oyle hath an especiall power to warme, it strengtheneth also all that is cold, and especially the stomacke, it maketh an appetite to meate, it openeth all inward partes; and if one annoint it on the Jauell, it killeth the wormes, without any hurt: wherefore it is more profitable for young and old people, than the Wormeslade.

Oyle of Tyles. §.75.

This oyle is to be distilled after two wayes, as the same is to be seene in the Table.

Oxycraton. §.76.



These things following doe keepe the Greeke name with the Physicians and with the Apothecaries, for Oxys is Vineger: afterwards do they ad somewhat vnto it, which is tempered with the foresaid Vineger, like as with the Oxycraton, where wine, water and vineger are tempered together, which of the Latinists is called Posca: for which the same is now to be vsed, that is to be seene in many places of this booke.

Oxymel Simplex. §.77.

This Oxymel is described in the first Part, the second Chapter, and first §. It is very often vsed, and praised for many things.

Oxymel Compositum. §.78.

This is therefore named so, for that it is made of sundrie things, which is also described in the first Part, the second Chapter.

Oxymel Scillinum. §.79.

This is also described in the same place, and vsed oftentimes.

Oxyrrhodinum. §.80.

This is another compound than the former. It is much vsed against the paine of the head, laid vpon it on the outside, there be two kindes of it, as is taught in the second Part.

Oxyssachara. §.81.

This compound, and her virtue and operation, is described in the first Part, the eighth chapter, and second §.

The 13. Chapter.

This Chapter is a gathering together of all kindes of Plaisters and Pills, which be described in this booke.

Emplastrum album Coctum. §.1.

WE do commonly call this, the white plaister. How it is made, is to be sought for in the Table.

Apostolicon Plaister. §.2.

After two waies is this plaister made; whereof one is called *Triapharmacum*, for that there commeth not aboute three things into it: You may looke for both of them in the Latine Table.

Emplastrum de Raccis Lauri. §.3.

The manner how to make this plaister, and also her vertue, is described in the third Parte, and the eleventh Chapter.

Basilicon. §.4.

Her preparation and vse is described in the fift Part, the first Chapter, and 15. §.

A Plaister for the Rupture. §.5.

There be diuers specified of these in the third Part, the third chapter, and §.1.

The Plaister *Ceroneum.* §.6.

If there be any that desire to make this plaister, he may looke for the same in *Nicolas*, for that it is very seldome vsed.

Diachilon. §.7.

Of this *Diachilon* there be three kindes made: the common *Diachilon*, is described in the third Part, the twentieth Chapter, and twentieth §. The great *Diachilon* is found at the Apothecaries, it melloweth and ripeneth all hard swellings.

The Plaister *de Galbano.* §.8.

How this plaister is made, and also her operation is to be sought for in the Latine Table, vnder the name of *Galbanum*.

Gratia Dei Plaister. §.9.

That is as much to say as Gods graces Plaister. The maner to make the same is found in the fift Part, the first chapter, and 16. §.

Emplastrum Griseum de Lapide Calaminari. §.10.

WE call this the gray plaister: It is also made after two waies, and it is described in the fift Part, the seventh chapter, and 12. §.

Hysopi Cerotum, sive Philagry. §.11.

This Plaister is made very seldome, and vsed but three times in this booke.

Emplastrum de Meliloto. §.12.

This is a Plaister of the flowers of Melilot, and is made of many kindes of things: wherefore we will pretermitt her description, and whereto it is to be vsed, shall you finde here and there in this booke.

Em-

Emplastrum de Muscilaginibus. §.13.

For what this plaister is to be vsed, and how the same is made, that is found in the first Part, the first Chapter, and seventh §.

Emplastrum Oxycroceum. §.14.

After these manners is this Plaister described: it hath her name of the Wineger, and of the Saffron. Of her excellent operation may you reade here and there in this Booke.

Emplastrum de Pelle Arietis. §.15.

Looke for this in the third Part, the third Chapter, and first §. how highly the same is commended for all manner of ruptures.

Emplastrum de Radicibus. §.16.

This Plaister of rootes is but once vsed in this booke, and that in the third Parte, the twentieth Chapter and eleventh §.

The Plaister of Saunders. §.17.

This plaister is called at the Apothecaries, *Ceratum Sandalinum*, which may be made to a salue, as it is described in the third Part, the eleventh Chapter, and sixteenth §.

The blacke Plaister. §.18.

Whereof there be two sortes described, to wit, in the first Part, the fourth Chapter, and second §. and in the fifth Part, the seventh Chapter, and first §. for that they be very much vsed of the Chirurgians.

Sparadropum. §.19.

These Sparadrops are described in the fourth Part, the second Chapter, and second §.

Emplastrum Viride. §.20.



This Plaister doe the Chirurgians vse much in olde stinking vlcers, as the same is described in the first Part, the first Chapter, and fiftenth §. And because that now all the Plaisters must bee boyled, therefore it is taught in the first Part, the fourth Chapter, and third §. how to make a pzoofe, whereby it may be knowen, when the same are sodden enough, and must be taken from the fire.

The second part of this Chapter speaketh of Pills.



The most of all compounds and mixtures of Pills, be composed together of many things, and they be vsed but one dzagme alone at one time, and not with whole or halfe ounces, as the Confections or Conserues are, wherefoze it is not needefull for to adde their description here: and also seeing that each houlholder may buy the same for a small summe of money at the Apothecaries: but we will neuertheles discover the virtues and commodities of all the Pills, which be in this booke commemozated, and for what sicknes that they are to be vsed.

Pillula de Agarico. §.1.

Pills of *Agaricus* be good for al them that be short on the bzeff, or be vexed with any old cough, and much tough phlegme.

Pillula Aggregatina. §.2.

These Pills be very good in all lingring Agues, in all diseases of the head, of the stomack, and of the Liuer, they expell *Cholera*, and all stumy matter.

Pillula Elephantina. §. 3.

These Pills do cleanse the stomack, the bꝛaynes, and the head, from all tough, grosse, and stymy humors: they do strengthen the stomack, and her digestiue virtue: they be also very common and safe.

Pillula de Aloe lota. §. 4.

How that *Aloe* is to be washed, and Pills prepared of it, you may see in the introduction of this booke.

Pillula Azaiareth. §. 5.

These do expell the *Cholera* and the *Phlegma*, and are good for all rheumes which cause the Cough.

Pillula Aurea. §. 6.

These cleanse the head, sharpen the sight, expell winde of the guts, and doe lose without paine.

Pillula de Bdellio. §. 7.

These Pills be very good against much blæding of the *Wyles*, and against womens flowes.

Pillula Benedicta. §. 8.

They do purge the *Phlegma*, and especially that that falleth into the ioynts. They do also cleanse the kidneyes and the bladder.

Pillula Cochia. §. 9.

These do purge the head very mightely of all grosse, tough, and stymy matter, in like sort also the sinewes, therefore they are also much used.

Pillula de Cynoglossa. §. 10.

These Pills haue a maruellous operation in staying all kind of thin and subtile defluxions that fall into any part of the body, and to ease one of all manner of paine: but they are very seldome used, vnlesse it were in great extremities.

Pillula de Euphorbio. §. 11.

These Pills haue a mightie power to expell the water in the *Dropsie*, and all other matter which is caused of any tumour. They be also good for all paine of the raynes, and for the *Podagra*, which is caused of any humor: but they be not much used.

Pillula Fatida. §. 12.

These purge all grosse, tough, and stymy humors: therefore they be also good for all species of the Gout.

Pillula de fumo Terræ. §. 13.

These Pills of fumitory, do purge all salt and sharp humors of the gall, therefore they be also good for all diseases of the Skinne.

Pillula

Pillula de Hermodactylis. §. 14.

These Pills be especiall good for all diseases of the gont, and for other causes moe.

Pillula de Hiera simplici. §. 15.

These be very good for all diseases of the Stomack, that be caused of any manner of limie humours.

Pillula de Hiera composita. §. 16.

These are good for all infirmities of the head and sinnewes, which are caused of limie humours, and for other matters mo.

Pillula de Hiera cum Agarico. §. 17.

These Pills of Hiera is a little *Agaricus* added. They doe emptie the stomacke and the breast from all grosse and tough humours, and they be good against the sitting of the Cares.

Pillula Iliaca. §. 18.

Because these Pills are made with small trouble, viz. for all paine of the guts, therefore be they described in the third part the sixteenth Chapter and 6. §.

Pillula de Inda. §. 19.

These sorts of Pills be described, where we do treat of the hardnes of the Splene, for that they be especiall good for it, as they be also very necessarie for the Melancholy, against the Canker, the Leprosie, bad ulcers, heauines of the minde, and against the Quartaine ague.

Pillula de Lapide Armeno. §. 20.

These do purge Melancholy, and the burnt Cholera very mildly, they be also good for all maladies which do procede out of them.

Pillula de Lapide Lazuli. §. 21.

These Pills of Lazure stone be used against all diseases of Melancholy, and also for all others, which be caused thorough burnt gall.

Pillula Lucis. §. 22.

They do cleanse the head of all Phlegma, and strengthen the sight, like as their name doth testifie.

Pillula Masticina. §. 23.

These Pills do defend the stomack from all Sicknes, they loose mildly, they do strengthen much, and let not the humours putrifie, they do great pleasure and vertue vnto all them that vse the same, against all paine of the stomack, of the head, of the belly, and the Spasmodic. Item, for all pensiuenes be they also especiall good.

Pillula de Mezeryco. §. 24.

These Pills do expell very vehemently the Dropsie, wherefore they are also used in *Anasarca* and *Ascite*.

Pillula de Opopanaco. §. 25.

These be good for the Palsey, against the conuulsion of the mouth, against the weakenes of the knees, against the *Podagra*, and moe other paines of the ioynts, and also for all diseases of the sinewy parts.

Pillula pestilenciales, siue Ruffi. §. 26.

How these common Pills and other moe be prepared, we haue declared in the first part the fiftieth Chapter and 12. §. and admonished also thereby how that the same hath an excellent virtue for to preserve one from the Plague, and to expell all stinking humors from the stomach.

Pillula de quinq. generibus Mirobalanorum. §. 27.

These purge the Melancholy, the *Phlegma*, and the *Cholera*, and do also cleanse the blood.

Pillula de Rhabarbaro. §. 28.

These Pills be especiall good in the beginning of the Dropsy, and in the obstruction of the Liver: in like manner also in all lingering agues. Looke further *Rhabarbarum*.

Pillula de Sandaraca. §. 29.

These Pills be selome made, and also scant used.

Pillula de Sarcocolla. §. 30.

They expell the *Phlegma*, and all Sickneses which are caused of it.

Pillula de Serapino. §. 31.

These Pills haue an especiall power in the paine of the hips, the gout of the fete, and of the ioynts: they be also very good for the Stomack, and further womens Terms.

Pillula sine quibus esse nolo. §. 32.

These Pills do maruellously purge *Cholera*, *Phlegma*, and the Melancholy, and are especiall good for all Rheumes, and be especiall good for all darke sight. They are also good for the paine of the Eares, and for all paine of the guts.

Pillula stomachica. §. 33.

These Pills expell *Phlegma* and the *Cholera* out of the stomach, and mozeouer out of the head, and they be also good for many moe diseases.

The foureteenth Chapter.

The Philistions and Apothecaries haue certaine conserues in vse of some fruits, and other things, where as they temper nothing but Sugar with it, which they call *Rob*: amongst which the commonest is the *Rob de Berberis*, and *De Citonijs*, that is, *Rob of Quinces*, and *De Cornubus*, that is, of *Cadises*, *Rob Nucum*, that is, of *Nuts*, *De Ribes*, that is, of *Raspes*, &c.

Hony of Roses. §. 1.

Hony of Roses is made after diuers manners, like as such is taught in the first part the third Chapter and 4. §. whereas his vse and virtue is declared.

Vineger

Vineger of Roses. §. 2.

Take red Rose buds, cut off the white beneath, and powre red wyne vineger vpon it, to the end that they be well couered with it, and then let them stand so the space of two moneths in the hot Sunne. In this manner is also made all manner of vineger of herbs, and of her floures.

Vineger of Rue. §. 3.

This vineger is made after the same manner as the vineger of Roses.

The fifteenth Chapter.

This Chapter is none other, but a gathering together of certaine Salues, Sief, which be Eye pouders, Sirupes, and Specis which be remembred in this booke, and vsed dayly at the Apothe caries.

Egyptiacum. §. 1.

VVe will now speake first of the salue of Egypt, whose preparation is described in the fist part, the first Chapter and 16. §.

Salue of Agrippa. §. 2.

Take Biony rootes twelue ounces, rootes of wilde Cucumbers five ounces, Squills three ounces, Treas one ounce and a halfe, rootes of Ferne, of wild Eldern, and water nuts, of each one ounce, white Ware seuen ounces and a halfe, Sallet oyle 24. ounces, take the rootes all fresh, and let them steape the space of eight dayes in oyle, afterwards sæthe them and wyng them out, you are then to melt the Ware in this decoction. This salue is maruelous good for the Dyoply, and all swelling of the body, it is also good for all diseases of the sinews, it dzyueth out the water, and if it be annoynted on the outside, then doth it lose the belly, and is especiall good for all paine of the Kidneyes.

Salue of Alabaster. §. 3.

This Salue is also very seldome vsed, and in this booke was it spoken of but once.

Vnguentum album. §. 4.

In the fourth part of this booke be described five kinds of these white salues, and therewith declared for what they be made. These white salues are so rise and common, that the skin can scarce get any disease for which the same are not vsed.

Vnguentum de Althea. §. 5.

This salue of Hollyhock rootes is very common, whereof there be foure kinds, and also their virtues described in the third part the fouretenth Chapter and 1. §.

Vnguentum Anodinum. §. 6.

The Grecians do call those salues *Anodina*, which do assuage all manner of paine, whereof there be sundry described in this booke, which you may loke for in the Register.

Vnguentum mundificatiuum de Apio. §. 7.

This is a mundifying salue, made of Smalage, her preparation is described in the third part the third Chapter and 9. §.

Vnguentum Apostolorum. §.8.

This salve of the Apostles and her efficacy is described in the third part, the eight chapter, and third §.

Vnguentum Arogon. §.9.

This salve is much used, but is verie troublesome to be made, it helpeth all cold diseases of the bodie, all conuulsions of the sinewes, the weaknes of the ioints, and all payne of the same.

Vnguentum de Artanita. §.10.

Of *Mesua* there be two kinds of this salve described which are verie seldome made, they be especiall good against the dropsie, they kill worms, and expell the same, they lose the stomacke very mildly, if one annoynt it verie fat vnderneath the nauell, like as is wont to be done in vomiting.

Vnguentum de Cernissa. §.11.

This salve is described in the fourth Part amongst other white salues.

Vnguentum Citrinum. §.12.

All Apothecaries this salve is alwaies readie, but it is somewhat troublesome to be made: it dziueth away the spots in the face, it is good against all roughnes, against all rednes of the eies, and it softeneth all hardnes, but it is not much used in this Booke.

Vnguentum Comitissa. §.13.

This salve is verie good against all mischaunces of women, it stoppeth the bleeding of the Wyles; and is also very good for the kidneies, but it is very hard and troublesome to be made.

Salues for Scabs. §.14.

Sundry of these salues are described in the first Part, the third chapter, and ninth §.

Vnguentum infrigidans Galeni. §.15.

This cooling salve is in the first Part, the first chapter, and first §. described, and therewithall also her vertue and operation.

Vnguentum Martianum, vel Martiatum. §.16.

There are three kinds of them described by the Whistions which be compounded of many things together, and are also of sundrie operations, yet here too long to discourse.

Vnguentum Mercuriale. §.17.

This salve of Quicksilver is much used for the Pockes, and is described in the first Part, the third chapter, and fift §.

Vnguentum Neruinum. §.18.

The description of this sinewe salve do you finde in the first Part, the 13. chapter, and 2. §.

Vnguentum Nihili. §.19.

Her preparation is to be found in the first Part, the seuenth chapter, and foure §.

Vnguentum Peſtorale. §.20.

Whereof be two sorts described in the second Part, the first chapter, and fift §.

Pomada,

Pomada, Pomadoes.

The manner to make this salve shall you find in the first Part, the eleventh chapter, and first §.

Vnguentum Pompholigos. §.22.

The preparing of this Tutie salve is described in the second Part, the second chapter, and second §. and her vertue is to be found in the table of the Tutie.

Vnguentum Populeonis. §.23.

This Poplar salve is rife at all Apothecaries, and is verie troublesome to be made; wherefore is the same to be fetched at the Apothecaries: it is good against all vnnaturall heate; and if it be annoynted vpon the temples of the head, then procureth it sleepe.

Vnguentum Rosatum. §.24.

The preparation of this salve is described in the first Part, the first chapter, and second §. and is there also taught how that it is good against all hot payne of the head, and other paynes which be caused through heate.

Vnguentum Sandalinum. §.25.

This salve of Saunders is much vsed in efflurion of humane sence, and is described in the third Part, the first chapter, and first §. This and other salues be vsed for many other things, which (as the cause shall require) are to be sought in the table.

The second Part of this Chapter, of Sief.

We haue discovered before that the Physicians vnderstand through this Arabian name *Sief*, all manner of fine and impalpable eie powders, whereof some haue bene described in this Booke.

Sief album Rafis §.1.

This *Sief* is vsed for all red, soze, and waterish eies, and is described in the first Part, the seventh chapter, and first §. for what it is further to be vsed, looke for that in the second table vpon the name *Sief*.

Sief de Fellibus. §.2.

The manner to prepare this *Sief* is to be found in the first part, the seventh chap. and first §.

Sief Memithe. §.3.

His preparation is in the first Part, the seventh chapter, and first §.

Sief de Plumbo. §.4.

This is described in the first Part, the seventh chapter, and tenth §.

Sief de Rosis. §.5.

This *Sief* of Roses is described against soze eies in the first Part, the seventh chap. and first §.

Sief de Thure. §.6.

This *Sief* of Frankinsence is set downe in the first part, and seventh chapter.

Sief Viride. §.7.

This *Sief* shall you finde in the first Part of this Booke, the first chapter, and first §.

The

The third Part of this Chapter of Sirups.

Of the Sirups and Iuices ingenerall.



Both of these things, as Sirups and Iuices be almost innumerable that be vsed in Physicke, to wit, the iuices of fruits, herbes, flowers, rotes, and such like things, sometimes alone, but tempered for the most part alwaies with other things, according as each pleaseth, as may be discerned throughout all this Booke. Wherefore it is not our purpose to gather here together such things, but onely those which are most vsed: but we will as much as is possible most truly expound and translate their names into English, and also adioine therewith their operations and powers. First you haue in the introduction how all iuices are to be clarified. Secondly, it is also a general rule that no sower iuices, as the iuice of vuripe Grapes, Barberries, neither wine nor vineger are to be sodden in Copper vessels, for that they may get an hurtfull taste: but the same are to be decocted in earthen leaded pots. Thirdly, you haue also in the first part, the first chapter, and first §. how that the compounded sirupes are to be decocted. Fourthly, because that it importeth much that the sirupes be not decocted too hard, to the end they come not to candise, and that they be not sodden too thin, & come not to be mouldie; wherefore the p[ro]se also is described in the introduction, whereby may certainlie be vnderstood when as they be enough: like as is also sufficiently admonished of each sirupe that they may be clarified.

Syrupus de Absinthio, that is of Wormewood. §. 1.

Take Romish Wormewood, or if you cannot get it, then take of the common Wormewood five ounces, red Roses two ounces, Indie Spica three dragmes, good white Wine, and the iuice of Quinces, of each sower and twentie ounces; let them steape altogether in an earthen pot the space of one whole night, and afterwards seth it to the halfe: this being done strayne it, then put sower and twentie ounces of cleare Hony or Sugar vnto it, and then let it seth to a sirupe. This sirupe is especiall good for the stomacke, for the liuer, and for all nourishing parts: it maketh appetite to meate, and helpeth to digest the meate: it is good for the falling sickenes, it expelleth winde, and dryueth out all bad humours by the vyne. In the table vnder the name of Wormewood is her vertue described at large.

Syrupus de Acetosa, of Sorrell. §. 2.

Take the iuice of Sorrell three parts, Sugar two parts; let it seth together, skum, and clarifie it well untill it be sufficiently decocted. This sirupe is good for all hot pestilentiall Agues; it quengeth the thirst, and the inflaming heate of the hart, and also of the stomacke, and it strengtheneth the same. See further in the table of the Sorrell.

Syrupus Acetosus, of Vineger. §. 3.

In the third Part, the 11. Chapter, and 9. §. is taught how that this sirupe is to be made; and one may also reade her vse there.

Syrupus Acetosus compositus, also of Vineger. §. 4.

How this sirupe, and also *de Radicibus* is to be made, is to be seene in the third Part, the 11. chapter, and 9. §. where both their operations be described.

Syrupus Acetosus de Cytonis, which is of sower Quinces. §. 5.

Her preparation is described in the third Part, the eleuenth chapter, and first §.

Syrupus

Syrupus Acetosus Diarrhodon, that is, of Vineger, and
of Roses. §.6.

This Sirupe is very seldome vsed, but for what it is good, you may reade that in the table of
the Roses.

Syrupus de Actositate Citri, of the iuice of Citrons. §.7.



Take the iuice of Citrons, which is strained thozough a cloth without wringing,
otherwise the iuice will be thicke when it is cold, like as pap, then sethe away
this iuice, with halfe so much Sugar. This sirupe hath the same virtue of the
sirupe of Dzeniges, whereof we will speake shortly, but that it is moze forcible.
This sirupe is made thus in *Cypro*, like as hereafter followeth. Take cleere iuice,
Sugar halfe so much, then stop it tight, and set it in the sun. This sirupe remai-
neth allwaies cleere. Both these sirupes be good against all venime, but especially for the Plague
and all other putrifid humors: it strengtheneth the stomacke, it cooleth the hart, and all other
inward parts, it quencth thirst, it byingeth sleepe, it stayeth all vapours of the stomacke, espe-
cially if one drinke too much. Reade further in the Table of the Citrons, and their virtues.

Syrupus de Agresta, of Veriuiue. §.8.

For what Veriuiue is good and how the same is to be made, we haue taught in the first
Chapter of this eighth part: for the sirupe are you to take five ounces, short sodden and vn-
salted Veriuiue, and thre ounces and a halfe of Sugar; then let them sethe together vnto a
sirupe.

Syrupus de Aurantijs, of Oreniges. §.9.

Take the iuice of sweete Dzeniges, which is wrung thozow a cloth, and well clenfed, two
parts, Sugar one part, sethe them together vnto a sirupe. This sirupe is very good for all
heat caused of *Cholera*. Likewise it is also good in all pestilentiall Agues, and it allwageth
the thirst singular well: it may also be made of lowze Dzeniges, for that the same is much moze
forcible than that of Citrons.

Syrupus de Artemisia, of Mugwort. §.10.



This sirupe is very troublesom to be made, wherefore we wil commend it to the Apo-
thecaries: it is very good for all diseases of the Matrix, it keepeth it in her due place,
it expelleth all winde, and all paine of the same, it strengtheneth the sinewes, it ope-
neth the pores, it maketh good blood, and it forceth womens termes. For what pur-
poses els it may be vsed, looke in the Table of Mugwort.

Syrupus de Barberis, of Barberies. §.11.



Take Barberies which be very ripe, & let them sethe well in wine vntill that they be
mellow, then wring it thozough a cloth, & boyle the colature with Sugar, as before.
Item take the iuice of ripe Barberies, and let it sethe apart, afterwards scum it
well: when it is well clenfed, take as much Sugar as iuice, sethe it all together vn-
to a sirupe. Her virtue is to be read in the Table of the Barberies.

Syrupus de Betonica, of Betony. §.12.

The description of this sirupe is very long, wherefore we will pretermitt it. Her virtue may
be adiudged by the description of the herbe Betony in the Table.

Syrupus Byzantinus. §.13.

Take the iuice of Endiue and of Barberies, of each five ounces, the iuice of Hops and of Bu-
glosse, of each thre ounces, sethe al together, clarifying it vntil there remaine twelue ounces,
then

then put seuen ounces and a halfe of Sugar vnto it, and let them sathe all together to a sirupe. This sirupe maketh all the tough slimie matter to auoide, and it openeth all obstructions, wherefore it is also good for all yellow Jaundies, like as there be many other sirupes.

Syrupus de Burragine, of Burrage. §.14.



We haue befoze admonished in the fourth Chapter in the description of the Conserue of Burrage, that there is none, or indæde very small difference betwene the Burrage and the Buglosse: neuerthelesse there be made at the Apothecaries two kindes of sirupes, and commonly mixed with other medicines; wherefore is an houtholder to pzeare it thus. Take the iuice of both these herbes, of each 8. ounce. the iuice of both these floures, of each one ounce, sathe the same with foure ounces of Sugar, and scum it as behoueth, and ought to be; you may also suffer the flowers to sathe in some water, and powze the iuice vnto it. This sirupe is good against all diseases of the hart, and it maketh a merry minde: and of her power you may reade further in the Register of Burrage.

Syrupus de Buglosa. §. 5.

Of this Sirupe is sufficiently witten in this foresaid Sirupe of Burrage.

Syrupus de Calamintha, of field Mints. §.16:



Take of field Spints and white water Spints, of each two ounces, the sæde of Louage, of the greater Wimpernell (in stead of *Dauci cretici*) and Squinant, of each fine dragma, Raisons sixe ounces, hony 24. ounces, let them sathe, all that is to sathe, scum and wzing it out well; then make with Hony, or with as much Sugar a sirupe of it. This sirupe is especiall good for a hard Splene, and all hard intrailles; and also for an olde Cough, of all old people, which be plagued with a feeble and short breath: like as you may reade further of Spints in the Table.

Syrupus Capillorum Veneris, or of Mayden haire. §.17.

This sirupe doth cost very much labour befoze the same may be made, like as we haue admonished vnder the name of Mayden hayze in the Table.

Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhabarbaro, of Cicory. §.18.

All Apothecaries this sirupe is very rise: it clenseth and withstandeth all poyson, and especially the Carbuncle, and such like: it strengtheneth the hart, and al nutritiue parts: it is also good for all pestilent Agues, it expelleth all bad matter, by the stoule and by the vyine: it causeth also appetite and slæpe.

Syrupus de Cytonijs, of Quinces. §.19.

This sirupe is like to all other sirupes, made of Sugar and iuice of Quinces: you shall reade of her virtue and efficacie in the Register in the description of Quinces. There is another sirupe described befoze of sower Quinces, called *Mina Cytoniorum*. Further, there are iuices or thicke sirupes pzeared vnder the name of *Mina*, whereof there be some described in the third Part, the eleuenth Chapter, and 17. §.

Syrupus de Citro, of Citrons. §.20.

Some doe take not onely the sowernes of the Citrons, but also the iuice of the white rindes, so that not onely the outwardmost peeles and the sêdes are separated: but this sirupe is not so forcible as that which is pzecribed: yet they be both made and used in all hot sicknesses.

Syrupus de corticibus Citri, of Citron peeles. §.21.



Take the outwardmost fresh peeles of Citrons, cut in small peeces, one pound, powze thereon five times as much water, and let it sethe to the halfe: then wzing it thozough a cloth, afterwards put a pound of Sugar vnto it. When it is almost sodden to a sirupe, then put sower greines of Puske vnto it, broken in Rose water. This sirupe cooleth not like the former, but it warmeth and strengtheneth the hart, the bzains, all inward parts, and the vitall spirites. It strengtheneth the weake stomacke, maketh a good bzeath, and defendeth from the Plague &c.

Syrupus de Cucurbita, of Gourds. §.22.

This sirupe is seldome vsed, and in this booke but onely in two places.

Syrupus de Endiuia, of Endiue. §.23.



If this herbe be many sundry sirupes made. That which is called *Simplex*, is made thus: take the iuice of greene endiue one pound, and when it is clarified thzough sething, then put ten ounces of Sugar vnto it, sethe it alway, like as all other sirupes be. This sirupe is good against all inward heate of the Liuer, and other nutritiue parts, it is vled for many kinds of things, as may be sene in the Register.

Syrupus de Epithymo. §.24.

All well furnished Apothecaries this sirupe is rise, whereas the same is to be fetched: it expelleth the burnt cholericke humozs, it doth therfore withstand all sicknesses which spring or come thereof, viz. the Leprosie, Canker, bad vlcers, and Fistulaes: like as his name shall shew in the Table.

Syrupus de Eupatorio, of Agrymonie. §.25.

The opinion of many learned men is, that our Agremony is the true *Eupatorium*: Of this is also a sirupe made, which is very troublesome to be made: wherefore we will not describe the same here. It hath a speciall power for to helpe the cold & obstructed liuer, to expell all Dropsies and such like sicknesses, for to make all grosse stume thin, and to strengthen the liuer: it also moueth bzine. Loke further of her virtue in the Table of Agremony.

Syrupus de fumo Terra, of Fumitorie. §.26.

Take the iuice of Fumitoy, and of the sprouts of Hops, of each one pound, clarifie it and temper it like as we haue taught, & then decoct it vnto sirupe with one pound of Sugar. At the Apothecaries there is an other made of many sundry things, which here we will not describe. These sirupes be both good for to open all obstructions of the stomacke, and of the liuer: for to strengthen the same also, and to cleanse the blood, that thereby all scabbednes, all bad sores, and such like accidents may be suppressed, and auoided. Wherefore they bee also good against the Pockes, against all old vlcers, Leprosie, and other such like diseases mor.

Syrupus de Glycyrriza, of Licorice. §.27.

The common people do make this sirupe thus: Take a pound of small sliced Licorice, and powze thereon two pots of water: afterwards let it sethe so long, vntill the virtue come out: then straine it, & then put to this decoction one ounce of Tragagant, and let it sethe together vntill it be thicke enough. This sirupe is very good for the Cough, and for all toughnes of the bzest. But this following is the right sirupe of Licorice: Take small sliced Licorice one ounce, Payden haire halfe an ounce, Hyssope one quarter of an ounce, put a quart of water vnto

unto it, and let it all together infuse the space of fower and twentie howers; afterwards put vnto it cleare Hony, Sugar pennets, and white Sugar, of each fower ounces, Rose water thre ounces, sethe it together vnto a sirupe. This sirupe clenseth the breaſt, and the lights, it is very good for all cold coughes, and also for the pleuriſie, as you may read in the table of Licorice.

Syrupus Granatorum, of Pomegranates. §.28.



This is a great abuse to wyng out the sower and swete Pomegranates together, by reason that the sower and the swete each a part are moete for sundrie diseases, but the foresaid mixture we will leaue alone for Cokerie: thus, take two quarts of Pomegranates wine, and sethe it so long untill it be well clarified, then temper amongst it halfe a pound of Sugar, and so set it in the sunne untill it come to worke, and then afterwards preserve it in a cellar.

And for to write a part of the sower Pomegranates: Take thereof five pound of the iuice, and white Sugar thre pound, sethe it together to a sirupe skimming it alwaies about. This sirupe is verie forcible in all hot agues which be caused of Cholera.

The sirupe of swete Pomegranates is prepared in all sorts as the former, like as the same is taught in the table at large of the Pomegranates, and euerie one may direct himselfe accordingly.

Syrupus de Hyssopo, of Hyssop. §.29.



You must take dry Hyssop, the rotes of Smallage, of Fennell, Barley, and of Licorice, of each five dragmes, peled Barley one quarter of an ounce, the seede of Pallowes, of Quince kernels, and Dagagant, of each one dragme and a halfe, Payden hayre thre dragmes, Zuiubes, and Sebestes, of each fourteene or fiftene, Currans thre quarters of an ounce, Figs, and Dates, of each five or sixe, Sugar pennets twelue ounces, then make a sirupe thereof. This sirupe is verie forcible

for all the diseases of the breaſt, and of the lights: it causeth all tough hume to auoide which may hardly be coughed vp, like as shall be moze at large taught thereof in the English Register, vnder the name of Hyssop.

Syrupus de Ireos, of Ireas. §.30.

This sirupe is made, as in the third Part, the tenth chapter, and ninth §. is taught, wher as it is ordained against the dropſie *Tympanites*, like as also the table vnder the name of Ireos doth giue to vnderstand.

Syrupus de Iuiubis. §.31.



If Zuiubes take thirtie or thirtie sixe, the seede of Violets, and of Pallowes, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Payden hayre, peled Barley, and Licorice, of each halfe an ounce, Quince kernels, white Poppie seede, the seede of Pellons, of Lettice, and Dagagant, of each one dragme and a halfe; sethe them together in well water, and to this decoction strayned put twelue ounces of Sugar, and then let it sethe to a sirupe. The same sirupe is good against all hoarſnes, against the cough, and against the pleuriſie; and also to other diseases moe, like as the table doth expresse.

Syrupus de Limonibus, of Limons. 32.

This sirupe is made of fresh Limons, euen as the sirupe of Oranges is made; but it is far stronger then the sirupe of Citrons, like as the same may be ſene in the register vnder the name of Limons.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Lupulo, of Hops. §. 33.



Take the iuice of the sprigs of young Hops one pound, and the iuice of sumitory halfe a pound, which be both very cleare decocted, and skummed, afterwards sethe them with a pound and a halfe of Sugar vnto a sirupe. The iuice of Hops may also be taken alone. This sirupe cōleth much, it expelleth the pel- low Jaundise: moreouer, all humors and also the Droisie through the scale, and is also good for all other things, like as is sufficiently declared vnder the name of Hops in the Table.

Syrupus de Menta, of Mints. §. 34.

There be two kinds of Sirups of Mints, as the same and also their virtues are described in the third part the eleuenth Chapter and 17. §. where it is also admonished, that it is especiall mete for the Lare. For what causes moe the same is profitable, that may you reade in the Table vnder the name of Mints.

Syrupus de Myrto, of Mirtle seede. §. 35.

In the third part the eleuenth Chapter and 17. §. is this Sirupe also specified, which is very commodious for many things, like as you may reade in the Table.

Syrupus de Nymphaea, of water Lillies. §. 36.



Take of the white leaues of waterlilly floures one pound, let them wame by in wa- ter, afterwards wring them hard out through a cloth, and then sethe this de- coction skimming it, with a pound of Sugar to a sirupe. This sirupe is very metely bled for all hot sicknesses, like as before is taught in the fourth Chapter and 39. §. It mooueth, it cōleth, and furthereth slepe. Another, which is com- monly prepared at all Apothecaries: Take the leaues of white water Lillies one ounce, yellow water Lillies halfe an ounce, seedes of fleawort and of Sozrell, of each halfe an ounce, the seedes of Melons, of Citruls, of Gourds, and of Cucumbers (all together peeled) of each one quarter of an ounce; the seede of Lettice, of Endiue, of small Chdiue, and of Pursaine, of each one dragma; fennell rootes halfe an ounce: shred it all together very small, and let it sethe in Barly water: afterwards strayne it thow, and wring it out hard. Now being clarified, then put five ounces of white Sugar vnto it, Vineger and the iuice of foure Pomegranates, of each one ounce, then let them sethe all together againe vnto a sirupe; at last temper yellow Saun- ders with it, and Indy Spica, of each two scruples. This sirupe doth marvellous much with- stand the hot Cholera, and besides all hot Agues, and procureth also slepe: it is also to be used for moe other things, like as the Table vnder the name of water Lillies doth set forth.

Syrupus de Papanere, of Poppie heads. §. 37.

There be two kinds of these sirupes made, the one called *Compositum*, is thus made: Take black and white Poppie heads which be very fresh, of each 25. dragmes, Papden haire seven dragmes and a halfe, Licorice 22. dragmes, Zuiubes listene dragmes, Let- tice seede two ounces and a halfe, Gallowes seede and Quince kernels, of each three dragmes, sethe them all together in a pot of water euen to the halfe: afterwards wring it out, and sethe this decoction againe with Sugar and sugar Bennets, of each foure ounces vnto a sirupe. This sirupe is very good against all dry Coughes, against the Consumption *Phthisis*, and a- gainst all rheumes, it maketh slepe, and is also good for moe other causes, like as the Table maketh mention.

Syrupus

Syrupus de Perscis, of Peaches. §.38.

This sirupe is made of the iuice of the selfe same fruits, hir virtues are described in the fourth chapter, and wherefoze it is further good, loke soz that in the table of the Peaches.

Syrupus de Plantagine of Plantaine. §.39.

This sirupe is very seldome vled, and besides made with greater trouble; it is also vled but once, to wit, in the obstruction of the Pyles: it is made onely of the iuice like as all other sirupes.

Syrupus de Pomis, of Apples. §.40.

Of Apples there be two kinds of sirupes made, like as the same be described in the second Part, the first chapter and fourth §. their vse is declared in the register vnder the name or title of Apples.

Syrupus de Portulaca, of Purslaine. §.41.

This sirupe is also made of the iuice of the herbe, but vled very seldome, like as one may read in the register vnder the name of Purslaine.

Syrupus de Prassio, of Horehound. §.42.

Take Horehound one ounce, Licorice halfe an ounce, Spayden hayze, and Hyssop, of each thre dragmes, Currans, Annis, Notes of smallage, and of Fennell, of each two dragmes and a halfe, of the greater Pimpernell seede, of Fenegræke, and Treos, of each one dragme and a halfe, Linseed, and Quince kernels, of each one dragme, Currans one ounce, eight or ten figs, Sugar pennets, and Sugar, or Honey, of each twelue ounces: then make a sirupe thereof like as is taught before. This sirupe is very good against all diseases of the breast, and of the lights, which be caused of cold tough symines, and be hard to be expelled: but it is especiall good soz all olde and ancient people which haue stuffed breasts. The register teacheth further soz what this sirupe is mete.

Syrupus de Pyris, of Peares. §.43.

This sirupe hath the same power which the sirupe of Peaches hath: it is also made and vled soz the selfe same sicknesses.

Syrupus de Radicibus, of Rootes. §.44.

There be also two sorts made of this, the one of twaine, and the other of fve kinds of roots, like as the same in the third part, the 20. chap. and 20. §. are described, where be also their vertues discovered. But whereto the same be further mete, loke soz that in the register vnder the name of the sirupe of rootes.

Syrupus de Ribes, of Raspes. §.45.

Take thre pounds of the iuice of Raspes, and two pounds of good Sugar, sethe the same vnto a sirupe. For what it is good, loke before in the fourth chapter, where it is described how that the same is to be made after sundry fashions.

Syrupus infusionis Rosarum of Roses. §.46.

Take fresh Rose leanes twelue ounces, put them in a pot, and powze vpon it thirtie ounces of hot Rose water: afterwarde stop the pot close, and so let it stand a space the space of eight howers: this being done, then wzing it out and put fresh Roses vnto it againe, then let it stand a space as before: then being wzing out againe, put twentie ounces of Sugar vnto it, and sethe it together softly vnto a sirupe: this sirupe

Syrup is especiall good for to slake thirst, to coole all heate, and hot Agues, and also to streng, then the stomacke: It withstandeth all rotten humors: wherefore it is also very good for the plague, it withstandeth windes and other diseases moe, like as the Table maketh mention at large.

Syrupus de Rosis siccis, of drie Roses. §.47.

Also there is a Syrupe made of drie Roses which loseth not, but bindeth, but it is not much vsed, and is made like as in the first part, the thirtieth Chapter, and fourth §. is shewed: loke for this in the Table vnder the title of hony of Roses.

Syrupus Rosarum solutiuus, purging syrupe of Roses. §.48.

Also there be sundrie Syrupes of Roses laxatiue prepared, as liketh each phisition best; whereof in the first Part, the second Chapter, and seuenth §. are described the two commonest sortes, and their virtues and operation added vnto it. For what they be now further to be vsed, loke into the Table vnder the name of Roses.

Syrupus de Rosis albis, of white Roses. §.49.

Although this Syrupe bee very profitable, neuertheless it is not much vsed: it cooleth much moze than the red syrupe. Some doe commonly take onely the iuice wrong out of the flowers, and they seethe it thort, with Sugar vnto a syrupe, to the ende, that it might the better retaine his virtue. Loke further into the Register of white Roses.

Syrupus sapor Regni. §.50.



Take the iuice of Buglosse and of Burrage, of each five ounces, the iuice of sweet Apples nine ounces, let them stand and settle, and afterwards put one ounce of bene hushkes vnto it, let them so infuse 24. howers, and then let it seethe a waime or twaine, and afterwards seethe it with nine ounces of Sugar, vnto a syrupe; further, hang with a little bag, halfe a dram of Saffron in it, and wying it oftentimes out.

This Syrupe is onely to be occupied in *Melancholia*.

Syrupus de Stechade, of Stechas flowers. §.51.



Thereof be two kindes described, but we will commend them vnto the Apothecaries: they be also good for all cold diseases of the braynes, and of the sinewes, also for the Palsey, for the falling sicknes, for the Crampe, for the conuulsion of the mouth, for the shaking: they doe strengthen the stomacke, and all other inward parts, like as the Register further declareth, vnder the name of Stechas.

Syrupus de Thymo, of Thyme. §.52.

This Syrupe is vsed very seldome, and in this booke it is onely vsed against the Leprosie.

Syrupus Violarum, of Violets. §.53.



This present Syrupe is also described after three kindes of sortes: the first is made by infusion, like the Syrupe of Roses: the same is good against all inward burning, against all heat of Agues, of the Liuer, of the Hart, against all roughnes of the throat, against thirst, and against the obstruction of the belly. The purging Syrupe of Violets is made laxatiue like the Syrupe of Roses, which is described in the first Part. The third Syrupe is made as hereafter followeth: Take one ounce of fresh Violets, Nynce kernels, the seede of Wallowes, of each halfe an ounce, Juices and Sebelles, of each ten or twelue, water of Gourds as much as will suffice, let it then

sethe together vntill the third Part be boyled away. This Sirupe doth open the breast, the obstruction of the Lights, it allwageth all roughnes of the thyoate, and all cough which is caused of heate, it is also good for the Pleurisie, and for all dythe: it is very much vsed, like as the Register maketh mention vnder the name of Violets.

The fourth Part of this Chapter, of the Species
and of Loosings.



Throughout all this booke, there be many kindes of Powders or Species vsed, which at all furnished Apothecaries be composed together and prepared of sundrie thinges, of which all kindes of cordiall waters, Confections, and other thinges be made. But because the same be tempered together of many sundrie thinges, and by reason that there cannot be made many at one time, therefore we haue refrained from writing much of them.

Species de Ambra, of Amber. §.1.



Because that this Powder and Confection that is made of it, is very much vsed and very requisite, therefore we will here describe the same: Take Cinnamom, *Doronicum*, Cloues, Pace, Putmegs, Clove leaues, and Galingall, of each three dragms, Indie Spica, Cardamome, & Greins, of each one drag. Ginger one drag. and a halfe, yellow Saunders, *Lignum Aloes*, and long Pepper, of each one quarter of an ounce, Amber one drag. Huske halfe a dragme: temper them, & poune them all together very small, it is very forcible for all debility of the head, and of the whole body, it prouoketh naturall heate, it is also very good for all them that be vexed with cold humors, and in like manner for the ioints and against the wambling of the stomacke, that can keepe no meate or food, it causeth appetite and strengtheneth the hart. For what this powder or this Confection may be further vsed, that is here and there to be found throughout the whole booke.

Species de Aniso, of Annis. §.2.

These Species be very troublesome to be made, and they be not very much vsed. For what they be further good, looke into the Table vnder the name of Annis.

Species de Anthus, of Rosemary. §.3.



If the flowers of Rosemary take half an ounce, Violets, Roses, and Licorice, of each three dragmes, Cloues, Indie Spica, Putmegs, Galingall, Cinnamom, Ginger, Seduary, Pace, *Lignum Aloes*, Cardamome, Annis and Dill seede, of each two scruples, temper them altogether. If you will haue Tabulats of it, then take eight ounces of Sugar, and make them vp. These Species and Loosings be especial good for all melancholicke and feeble persons, it maketh merrie, it strengtheneth the stomacke, and is very mete for many moe other thinges, like as the Table vnder the name of Rosemary doth specifie.

Species aromaticum Rosarum. §.4.

These Species are vsed for the debility of the stomacke, and is described in the third Part, the eleventh chapter, and list §. You shall further finde their virtues in the Register of Roses.

Species de Calamintha, of field Mints. §.5.

Booze is declared in the tenth Chapter, and list §, how that three kindes of mixtures be described by the phisitions, which be all made of Spintes, but by reason their Species be much

much more vsuall than their Confection: therefore we will here notifie them, like as *Mesua* describeth them. Take field Mints, Parierom, the seedes of Siluermountaine, and of Parsly of Macedony, of each one thre dragmes, Ginger one dragme and a halfe, the seedes of Smalage and spizgs of Thyme, of each one dragme, Louage seide thre dragmes, Pepper thre quarters of an ounce, then temper the together: These species be very good against all cold stomacks, lost appetite which be vexed with winde, and against shortnes of breath, and also for other causes moe, like as the Table maketh mention vnder the name of Mints.

Species de Capparis, of Caper rootes. §.6.

These species are vsed very seldome, but the workings thereof be only once in this booke ordained, viz. against the Splene.

Species de Caryophyllis, of Cloues. §.7.



These species be also called at the Apothecaries *Aromaticum Caryophyllatum*, and be made of many sundrie things, they doe strengthen the hart and the stomacke, they expell the wambling and parbaking, and doe separate all tough slimynes of the stomacke, they doe warme all nourishing parts, and also expell all winde: looke further in the Table vnder the name of Cloues.

Species de Cinnamomo, of Cinnamom. §.8.

In the third Parte, the eleuenth Chapter and fift §. be these species described after two waies, and also their vertue thereby declared. For what they be further good, looke for that in the Table vnder the name of Cinnamom.

Species Cordiales, for the hart. §.9.

Of these species be sundrie prepared, like as *De Gemmis*, and *Diamargariton*, and others moe, which be altogether made for the hart. There be also a certaine sorte of these species in the second Part, the first Chapter and eighth §. described.

Species Diacostu, of Costus rootes. §.10.



These species bee very seldome prepared, for that there come certaine doubtfull things into it. But they be good for all inwarde paine, and for the beginning of the Dropsie: but they be not more than once ordained in this booke, against a diseased Luer.

Species de Croco or *Crocoma*, of Saffron. §.11.



These species be commonly called with a wrong name, *Diacurcuma*: They be (because of certaine things, which bee put into them) very troublesome to bee made, and be also not much bled. Their vertue is to correct all lingering sicknesses of the Splene and the Luer, as when a body is inclined to the Dropsie: they be very good against all slimy cold humors of the stomacke, they do cause winde to auoyde, and also all paynes of the Kidneies, and of the bladder; but especially they expell water. Looke further for it in the Register, vnder the name of Saffron.

Species de Cymino, of Comin. §.12.

Take Comin seide one ounce and one scruple, let them steepe in Vineger the space of 24. howers, and drie againe; Cinnamom & Cloues, of each two drag. and a halfe, Pepper & Ginger, of each one quarter of an ounce & 5. greins, Galingall, Hauery, and field Mints,

of each halfe a scruple, the seede of *Ameos* and of *Louage*, of each one dragma, and eightene greines, long Pepper one dragma, *Indy Spica*, Cardamome, and Nutmegs, of each two scruples and a halfe, make a powder of it. This powder is good for the diseases of the sinewes, for a heauie breath, for the Cough, for the Stomack, and it openeth all obstructions: but it is most vsed in losings, like as the Table teacheth the same vnder the name of *Comin*.

Species de Tragacantha, of Dragagant. §. 13.

There be also two kinds made thereof, to wit, cold and hot species of Dragagant: the hot you may finde in the first part the fouretenth Chapter and 4. §. and the cold be also described there, and there be declared their properties, and vses, like as you may see in the Table vnder the name of Dragagant.

Species Ducis. §. 14.

These be tempered together of many kinds of things: they be very good for a cold windy stomack, and for all inward cold parts. Item, for all cramping and paine of the vpper, most bowels, and also for the Stone.

Species de Galanga, of Galingall. §. 15.

This species and Confection are also made every where and vsed: Take Galingall, and *Lignum Aloes*, of each seuen dragmes, Cloues, Pace, and Louage seede, of each one quarter of an ounce, Ginger, long and white Pepper, *Calmus*, and Cinnamon, of each one dragma and a halfe, garden Mints, Cardamome, *Indy Spica*, the seede of Smalage, of fen-nell, Annis, and Comin, of each one dragma, pound them very small vnto a powder. This powder is especiall good for all wind, for all belchings of the stomack, it helpeth much for the digestion of the stomack, it warmeth the L yuer and also the Stomack. For what this as well in powder, as also in losings is vsed, that is to be found in the Table vnder the name of Galingall.

Species de Gemmis, of pretious stones. §. 16.

Before in the cordiall species is admonished, that these may be called cordiall species, whereof we haue written downe five kinds, viz. in the second part of this booke, the sixth Chapter and 9. §. And for what the same is vsed in Physick, that is declared in the Table vnder the name of pretious stones.

Species Hierae simplicis. §. 17.

These species be made like as in the third part the eleuenth Chapter and 20. §. is shewed: and for what they be further good, is sufficiently taught and declared throughout all this booke.

Species de Yreos, of Yreas. §. 18.

These species be described in the first part, the fouretene Chapter and 2. §. their power and operation are to be found in the Register vnder the name of Yreas.

Species Iustini. §. 19.

For as much as the description of this species is very long, we will omit here to describe the same, as also for that they are not much vsed. These species and the losings which be made thereof, be very good against all paine of the Kidneyes, they breake the Stone, expell grauell, and open the passage of vaine. For what they may be yet further vsed, that is taught sufficiently here and there, where is discoursed especially of the paine of the bowels, and of the grauell.

Species

Species de Lacca. §. 20.

These Species be made of many kinds of things, but yet very seldome vsed: they be good against all obstructions, and against all swellings, they do mollifie the hardnes of the Kidneyes and the Luer, they expell all causes of Dropsies, they moue womens Termes, and be good for all old yellow Jaundise, like as the Table doth shew at large vnder the name of *Lacca*.

Species Latificantes, and Latitia Galeni. §. 21.

Both of these Species haue the names, to make merry. The first is described in the first part the twelfth Chapter and 8. §. But we do not describe the other, because that both of them haue the same virtue. They both do strengthen the inward parts, they refresh the vitall spirits, they do help naturall heate, they expell all bad cogitations, they make a good colour, they ease the digestion of the stomack, they make merry, and they stay gray haire, like as is aduised in mo other places.

Species Liberantes. §. 22.

These Species are vsed in the time of the Plague, like as the same are described in the first part, the fiftenth Chapter, and 12. §.

Species Lithontribon. §. 23.

These Species be expressly ordained for the Stone and the grauell, wherein there be indede fiftie kinds of things mixed together, as the Table doth shew.

Species de Margaritis, of Pearles. §. 24.

Here are two kinds of these Species, to wit, cold and hot, the hot spices are described in the first part the twelfth Chapter and 12. §. the cold sort which are most vsed are made in this manner: Take the paled seedes of Pompeons, Courds, Citruls, and Cucumbers, Purslaine seede, white Poppie seede, white, yellow, and red Sanders, Ginger, Roses, Burrage flowers, water Lillie flowers, and Pirtle seede, of each one drag. make them all to powder: this powder comforteth all fixled bodies that are readie still to swoone, whether the cause of swooning be in the hart, or in the stomack. It strengtheneth all inward parts, it is also good against the cough, against the consumption, for those that by long sicknesses are greatly weakened. But regard must be had to hot and cold diseases, as this also severally is noted vnder the name of Pearles in the Table.

Species de Mentha, of Mints. §. 25.

These Species are prepared at the Apothecaries, but they are seldome vsed; and you may see their virtues in the Table vnder the name of Mints.

Species de Moschu, of Muske. §. 26.

These Species are described after two wayes, to wit, vnder the name of swete, and of bitter Species of Muske, and because their composition is not a little troublesome, we haue here omitted to recite them. They are good for the panting of the hart, against all bad dreames, against the tumours of the ioynts, against a cold braine, against giddines, falling sicknesses, and against the shortnes of bzeath. The bitter Species are much stronger then the swete, and that especially for the moisture and corruption of the stomack, &c.

Species Nere. §. 27.

These species are for the most part mixed with other compositions, and made as followeth:
Take Amber one ounce, *Lignum Aloes* three dragmes, Sulke halfe a scruple, Campher five greines, mixe and beate them all together.

Species de Olibano, of Frankincense. §. 28.

These species (by reason of the *Opium* and *Benbane* seede which be put into it) are selldome used inwardly, and therefore made but selldome. Whether they be made in powder or in a confectiō, yet be they alwayes good for all paine of the head, they stay all rheumes, they be good against the Cough, and spetting of bloud, and they do also expell all wambling of the stomacke, they be also good for all those that haue any impediment in the Lights, and them that haue the Pleurisy and spet matter, they stay the effluxion of naturall seede, and *Satyriasis*, besides that also womens Termes, if they runne too much, for which in this booke they be commended to be used: further, looke into the Table vnder the title of Frankincense.

Species de Papauere, of Poppie seede. §. 29.

Take the iuice of *Licozice*, *Dragagant*, and Gum, of each five dragmes, white Poppie seede, and sugar Pennets, of each ten dragmes, pceled Almonds five dragmes, Starch, Quince kernels, and Purslaine seede, of each two dragmes and a halfe, pceled Gourds seede, the seedes of Pompeons, Cucumbers, and Lettice, and of *Shallowes*, of each one dragme and a halfe, thred them, and stamp them very small: of this may commonly be made a confectiō with Sugar, like as they are also in the Table vnder the name of lozings to be found.

Species de Penidio, of sugar Pennets. §. 30.

These species be also described in the second part, the first Chapter, and 6. §. and also therewith declared for what the same is wont to be used.

Species Paonia, of Piony. §. 31.

These species be very selldome used, and that but once in this whole booke.

Species Diaphaniconis, of Dates. §. 32.

This mixture and her operation is described in the third part, the eleuenth Chapter, and 5. §. for what the same is now to be used, that is to be seene in the Table vnder the name of Dates.

Species Philanthropon. §. 33.

This is a very great composition, so that there come indeede some 50. things into it. It is selldome made, and is used in this booke but once, viz. in the obstruction of the Kidneyes.

Species Pliris Arcoticon. §. 34.

In these kinds of Species there are put many kinds of things: they be very good against all melancholick and pensive people, against weake stomachs, and also against all swoonings which procede of any debilitie of the hart, they quicken the vnderstanding and the memorie, they be also very good for all them which haue the falling sickness, and a short breath, and also for other things moe.

Species de Prasio, of Horehound. §. 35.

This is also one of the very greatest compounds, for that it is made of some lxx. things. It is made in manner of a Confection, and also in forme of lozings. It is good against all dazeling

dazeling and darkenes of the Eyes, it clenseth the thyoate, and all parts adiacent, it dryeth the moysture of the Tuula in the thyoate, it asswageth the toothach, and it is especiall good for the heauie bzeath, and for all that which causeth the same, it expelleth the paine of the Luer, and strengtheneth the same, it strengtheneth the Stomack and the Pilt, it expelleth all payne and also all wind of the bowels, it clenseth the Kidneyes and passages of vyne from all grauell, and when the same is often vsed, then doth it make good colour, it furthereth womens Termes, and also is good against the Tertian and Quartain agues. In fine, all they which often vse these Losings or Confections, they are freed and defended from many kinds of sickneses, but because of their vnpleasantnes, they be seldome vsed, as in the Register you may see vnder the title of Horehound.

Species Diarrhodon Abbatiss, of Roses. §. 36.



Albeit that this composition be made of many things, yet it is neuertheles oftentimes vsed, wherefore we will here describe the same: Take red and white Saunders, of each two dragmes and a halfe, Dragagant, Gum, and burnt Iuorie, of each two scruples, Asarabacca, Gallick, Indy Spica, Cardamome, the iuice of Licorice, Saffron, Lignum Aloes, Cloues, Galla Muscata, Annis, Fennell, Cinnamon, Rubarb, Basil, Verberies, the seedes of small Endiue, of Purslaine, peeled Melon seede, Courd seede, the seedes of Cucumbers, of Pompeons, and of white Poppie seede, of each one scruple, Pearles and bones of the Stags hart, of each halfe a scruple, Sugarcandy and Roses, of each one ounce and three dragmes, Campher seven ounces, Muscus three greines and a halfe, pounce each apart, and then temper them all together. These species be especiall good for all hot Stomacks, for the heate of the Luer, the Pilt, of the Lights, and for all paine of the intrailles, and of the whole bodie. For what these species or their confection be moete, looke for that in the Register, vnder the name of Roses.

Species Electuarij de succo Rosarum, of Roses. §. 37.

These species be before in the tenth Chapter, described amongst the Confections: out of which species there be purging losings wont to be made. In the Register shall you also finde (vnder the name of Roses) for what the same are to be vsed.

Species Rosata Nouella. §. 38.

These kinds of species be very seldome prepared: they be especially moete for all hot and dry Stomacks, Harts, Lights, and Luers. They do quench thirst, stay vomiting, they fortifie the Stomack, they draw the resolued inward parts together, and they be very necessarie for all that haue any panting or beating of the hart, they do withstand sweate, and strengthen them also which be recouered from a long lingering Sicknes.

Species de Seminibus. §. 39.

These be also very seldome vsed, and be made of these seedes following, viz. of Annis, Fennell, Caraway, Comin, Parsly seede, Ameos, seede of Smallage, Anonum, of each alike quantitie: let all these steape together in Vineger, and dry againe, and afterwards be pounced to powder. They are vsed in all cold paines of the Kidneyes, in the grauell, and it moueth also vyne.

Species Triaxantalum, of Saunders. §. 40.

Take red, white, and yellow Saunders, Rose sugar, and Sugar, of each three dragmes, Rubarb, burnt Iuorie, and the iuice of Licorice, of each one quarter of an ounce, and xv. greines, Dragagant, Starch, Gum, peeled Melon seede, Pompeon seede, seedes of Courds, of Cucumbers, and of small Endiue, of each one dragme and a halfe, Camfer one scruple, temper them all together pounced very small. This is especiall good against all heate of the Luer, and of the Stomack: it is also good against giddines, and the yellow Saunders.

Species Triom-Pipereon. of Pepper. §.41.

Take long, white, and blacke Pepper, of each five dragmes, Ginger, Thyme, and Annis, of each one quarter of an ounce, Indie Spica, *Ameos*, *Ammoniacum*, or (in steede thereof, *Cucubes*, or *Calmus*) Cinnamom, one dragme, Cassie wood, the seedes of Smallage, of Silver mountaine, *Asarabacca*, and Elecampane rootes, of each halfe a dragme, make a powder thereof. This is verie good against all cold stomacks, against all belchings, against the quartaine Ague, against all diseases of the liuer, and also against the cough.

Species dia Turbith, of Turbith. §.42.

These species be described after two waies, to wit, as they be ordained in the third Part, the eleuenth chap. and 20. §. against the obstruction of the bodie.

Species de Xyloloe. §.43.

Now for as much as these species be very common, therefore we will not permit to describe them here: Take *Lignum Aloes*, and ioles, of each one ounce, Cloues, Indie Spica, Pace, Putmegs, *Gallia Moscata*, *Cucubes*, Cardamom, Graynes, Pasticke, Cinnamom, Cyper roots, Squinant, red and white Beben, Spiknard, red Silke, Pearles, red Cozall, Amber, Citron leaues, *Basilicum*, Pints, garden Pints, Parierom, long Pepper, and Ginger, of each halfe an ounce, Pulke one scruple, Amber one dragme and a halfe; poune it small, and then temper them together. These species be good against all infirmities of the stomacke, of the hart, of the liuer, and also against all other inward diseases which be caused of cold. Item, for all swoonings, for the bad digestion, and for a stinking breath; they do also make merrie, as you shall find described in the Table under the name of *Lignum Aloes*.

To make strong Water. §.44.



For a conclusion of this former Chapter, we will adde vnto it this strong water: Take Allome, and Coperas, of each one pound, Saltpeter halfe a pound; put them all together pouned small into a bodie, and then distill it in sande. Make first a milde fire, and so a little stronger and stronger: and when the fume in the glasse receiuer beginneth to be red, then giue it a stronger fire; and when the rednes beginneth to be gone, then draw out the fire and let it be cold, then keepe it stopt very close. Although not onely the Chirurgians, but also the Goldsmiths, and other more do vse this water: yet it is neuertheless very good against the paine of the teeth, but it must be wisely taken in hand, or else must be wholly omitted the Quicksilver wherof the powder precipitate is made, and also is calcined with it.

Species Berchtoldi. 45.

The occasion wherof we haue not adioyned this Species with other, is therefore, for that these species are onely vsed in the kitchen and for fish: the same is tempered with some good Wine; they be not onely pleasant, but also very healthie. And to alaye the moistnes of the fish: Take Ginger halfe an ounce, long Pepper one quarter of an ounce, Cinnamom three quarters of an ounce, Greines one dragme and a halfe, Galingall one dragme, Saffron halfe a dragme, Sugar ten ounces; poune them all small, and then temper them together. Another: Take Cinnamom, halfe an ounce, Ginger three dragmes, Greines halfe a dragme, Cloues, Galingall, and Cardamom, of each one scruple, Saffron halfe a dragme, Sugar two ounces; poune them all together and make it moist with Wine: afterwards temper it in a moztar, and let it dry in a warme place, then vse it at last to powder againe.

The

The 16. Chapter.

In this Chapter be certaine Potions described, as also certaine powders for meate, and Trociskes, which here and there be ordained in this present practise of Phisicke: wherefore we will first begin with the Potions.

Decoctiones Aperitiue, Potions that do deobstruct. §.3.

There be some of these described in the third Part, the eleventh Chapter, and twentieth §. viz. called the common, and with Rubarbe, which bee verie necessary for to keepe an open bodie: notwithstanding that one may vse the same commonly, for to mire other Confections with it.

Decoctio Epithymi, of Dodder. §.2.

This Potion is prepared as it is described in the first Part, the twelfth Chapter, and eighth §. viz. in three kindes of wayes. Her operation may you reade in the Register vnder the name of Dodder.

Decoctio fructuum, a Potion of certaine fruits. §.3.

This Potion is described in the third Part, the third chapter, and fift §. where we do speake and discourse of the Rupture.

Decoctio pectoralis, The pectorall Potion. §.4.

This Potion is very good for al them which haue a short breath, for the Cough, and for the rheume, whereof there be two discouered in the second Part, the 2. chapter, and 2. §. and in the second Part, the 5. chapter, and 5. §. For what the same is further vled, is to be found in the Register, vnder the name of a pectorall potion.

Decoctio & infusio Senae, A potion of Sene leaues. §.5.

This Potion is described in the third Part, the eleventh chapter, and 20. §. where it is ordained for the obstruction of the belly, as the Register doth witnesse the same, vnder the name of Sene leaues.

A water of Mans blood. §.6.



After the discourse of these foresaid potions, I cannot p̄etermit to adioine with this a new inuention, whereof some p̄inces haue very great estimation, and haue also vled otherwhiles for to remaine thereby in their force, and to liue long (as they thought) which was this, viz. that one should chuse a yong strong man, which was as yet in his flourishing youth, like as of 25. yeres, which was somewhat cholericke by nature: the same is to be fed the space of one moneth, and be well dyeted with light and healthy meats, also with all kindes of spices, and with good strong wine, who also is to be kept with mirth: this being so done, then are both his vaines to be opened in his armes, and so much blood to be let out as he may tolerate and abide; and vnto fire pound of blood mire one handfull of salt: then put these together in a glasse body, stopp well and tight, and set it a whole moneth in horse dung, yet euery eight daies in fresh horse dung: afterwards distill this blood in ashes, when the water is then distilled out of it, then powze it againe in the body, by all that which remained therein, to the end it may be soft againe, and in this manner distill it seven times together. Other be of opinion, that as often as it is distilled, that then it is to be set againe in horse dung. Some suppose that it ought to be but three times

times distilled, and that at the most: put the dry feces into a Retorte, and distill it with moderate fire, and then will it yeld a stinking oyle. Afterwards poure oftentimes water vnto it, and distill this oyle as many times with the water, vntill it lose her sanour or stench. This water is to be gtuen in thre or fower times a yeere, each time one ounce; but not aboue thre or fower drops of the oyle. Each one may beleue this as far as he will.

Concerning all other drinckes, as Beere, Claret wine, Aromaticall wines, Barley water, Juleps, Almond milke, Peade, and such like: of them wee haue written elsewhere. In the end of this booke we will admonish and discourse of moe other herbed wines.

The second Part of this Chapter, of certaine powders for Meate.



We will not here admonish of any powders, which be seruiceable & méte for any sicknesses: but we will only speak of them that are vsed for pleasure, and for to warme the stomacke, or that may be strowed vpon wine sops, as this ensuing: Take elected Cinnamom one ounce and a halfe, Ginger thre ounces, Greines and Pepper, of each one dragme and a halfe, Putmegs, Cloues, and Pace, of each thre drag. poune all verie small together, Sugar as much as you please, and according as that you desire to haue it strong. Item, take Cinnamom one quarter of an ounce, Putmegs one drag. Pace, Greines, and Cloues, of each halfe a drag. Sugar as much as you please: Or take Cinnamom one quarter of an ounce, Putmegs one drag. Pace and Greins, of each halfe a drag. prepared Coriander and red Roses, of each two scrup. Sugar as much as you please, but not too much. These powders be very good, vsed as well at meales, as afterwards. Another, take blacke, white, and long Pepper, of each half a drag. Thyme, Annis, and Ginger, of each fine greines, Sugar 5. ounces, then temper them altogether. This is speciall good for all cold stomackes.

The third part of this Chapter, of Trociskes.



Trociscus is a Græke name, and is as much to say as a round shiue, or round Cake, like as these *Trocisci* bee made: but the Apothecaries doe commonly make them nowe adaves fower square, and about the waight of one dragme, which is of small importance. These Trociskes be made diuersly, whereof be many mentioned in this our booke: whereof wee will onely describe the name and force of them that bee troublesome to make, to the end the same may be asked for at the Apothecaries, when there is vse for them.

Trocisci de Absinthio, of Wormewood. §.1.

These be ordained onely against the obstruction of the Luer, and bee described in the third Parte, the twelfth chapter and 4. §.

Trocisci Adulphi. §.2.

These doe take their name of the Sulphure, like as you may finde written in the second Part, the fifth chapter, and fiftenth §.

Trocisci de Agarico, of Agaricke. 3. §.

These Trociskes are found prepared at all Apothecaries, to the end that the bad qualitye of the Agaricke may be taken away thereby. The manner to prepare them is described in the Introduction. Their vse shall you finde in the Table, vnder the name Agaricke.

Trocisci

Trocisci Alhandel, of Coloquint. §.4.

The preparation of these Trociskes, is also described in the Introduction of this booke, for to strengthen other purgations with it, like as stands admonished in the Register, under the name of Coloquinte.

Trocisci Alkakengi, of winter Cherries. §.5.

These be also troublesome to be made, they be good for al diseases of the Raines, and the bladder, and for *Dysuria*. Look further in the Register under the name of winter Cherries.

Trocisci de Berberis, of Barberries. §.6.

Of the iuice of Barberries take one quarter of an ounce, burnt Iuoy, *Lignum Aloes*, Sorell seade, Pasticke, *Gallia Moscata*, and Indy Spica, of each one ounce, Gum thre dragnes, Roses sine dragnes, and Rose water as much as is needefull for to temper them together. You shall find their vse under the name of Barberries.

Trocisci de Bolo Armeno. §.7.

These Trociskes be in no vse, but they are aduised to be used for a cold stomacke.

Trocisci de Camphora, of Camfere. §.8.



Dhat these Trociskes be very much used, therefore wee will describe the same: Take Roses halfe an ounce, burnt Iuoy and Licoize, of each one quarter of an ounce, paled seedes of Pelons, of Pompeons, of Gourds, and of Cucumbers, Dragagant, Saffron, Gum, and Indy Spica, of each one dragme, yellow Saunders two dragnes and a half, *Lignum Aloes*, Cardamome, Starch, and Camfere, of each two scruples, White Sugar and Panna, of each three dragnes: then fashion them with the Pucelage of fleawort, which is made with Rose water. These Trociskes be very good against all hot Agues, against all inflaming of the blood and Cholera, against a bad stomacke, and bad liuer, and also against thirst, which is caused thereby, they be also good against the yellow Jaundies, against the Consumption, and against the distillings of the head: like as you may further perceiue in the Register, under the name of Camfere.

Trocisci de Capparis, of Caper rootes. §.9.

These Trociskes be very selbome made: They be good against the hardened Epilt, like as you may further reade in the same place of the hardened Splene.

Trocisci de Carabe, of Amber. §.10.



Take a quarter of an ounce of yellow Amber, burnt Varts hohne, parched Gum, burnt Cozall, Dragagant, the iuice of Bloes, *Hypocistis*, blossomes of Pomegranates, Pasticke, *Lacca*, and parched blacke Popie seade, of each two scruples, Frankincense, Saffron, and *Opium*, of each halfe a dragme, then make thereof Trociskes with the slime of fleawort. These Trociskes stop the blood, out of whatsoeuer place it should flowe: as womens termes, the Piles, and excessive making of water: it healeth also all inward erulceration, viz. of the Liuer, and of the Lights: look further in the Table of Amber.

Trocisci de Chelidonia, of Chelidony. §.11.

These Trociskes are used alone in this booke, for soyle flesh in vlcers.

Trocisci

Trocisci de Corallis, of Corall. §.12.

They be very troublesome to be made, and be very seldome vsed; they be onely good against the Piles.

Trocisci de Eupatorio, of Agrimony. §.13.

Take the iuice of Agrimony, and *Manna*, of each one ounce, *Roses* halfe an ounce, burnt *Iuorie* three dragmes and a halfe, *Indie Spica* three dragmes, *Rubarbe*, *Asarabacca*, and *Annis*, of each two dragmes and a halfe; poune them verie small to powder, and temper them together with water of *Cuscuta*, then dry them in the shadow. These be especiall good for all obstructions of the liuer and of the spleene, and also for all agues which proceede of it. Item, for the yellow Jaundise, and dropsie: loke in the register for Agrimony.

Trocisci de Lacca. §.14.

They are verie troublesome to be prepared; they open the obstructions of the liuer and spleene, and cure the agues that are caused thereby; they do also expell the dropsie *Ascites* by vaine, as hath bene shewed in the name *Lacca*.

Trocisci de Mirrha. §.15.

Take *Mirrha* one dragme and a halfe, *Lupins* two dragmes and a halfe, *Rue*, white water *Sints*, *Diptamus* of Candy, *Comin*, *Spadder*, *Asa Fetida*, *Sagapenum*, & *Опорначум*, of each one drag. then make thereof Trociskes with the iuice of *feuerfew*. These Trociskes do moue womens termes, and asswage al paine, which may be caused by their obstructions: such like Trociskes of *Myrrh* haue you described in the third Part, the 19. chapter, and 2. §. loke further in the Table of *Myrrha*.

Trocisci de Olibano, of Frankinsence. §.16.

The description of these Trociskes you haue in the third Part, the 11. chap. and 12. §. loke further in the Table vnder the name of Frankinsence.

Trocisci de Rhabbarbaro. §.17.

Take good *Rubarbe* five drag. the iuice of *Agrimonic*, and bitter *Almonds*, of each one quarter, of an ounce. *Roses*, *Indy Spica*, *Annis*, *Spadder*, the seed of *Smallage*, *Wormewood*, and *Asarabacca*, of each halfe a dragm; then make Trociskes thereof with water of *pleatwort*. These open the obstructions of the liuer, they take away all paine and swelling of the same; they be good against the dropsie, and the yellow jaundise, and also against all distemperance of the bodie, like as you may read in the Register vnder the name of *Rubarbe*.

Trocisci Diarrhodon. §.18.

These Trociskes doth *Nicholas* describe, and they be easily made: Take fesh *Rose* leaues halfe an ounce, burnt *Iuorie*, and red *Sanders*, of each one dragme and a halfe, and seven graines, white *Sanders* one dragm and twelue graines, *Saffron* two scruples and seven graines, *Camfer* two graines; make Trociskes of them with *Rose* water. They be verie little vsed, like as is admonished in the Table of *Roses*.

Trocisci de Rosis, of *Roses*. §.19.

By *Rosis* these be described in this manner following: Take *Roses* halfe an ounce, *Lignum Aloe* one quarter of an ounce, *Casticke* one dragm and a halfe, *Wormewood*, *Cinnamon*, *Indie*

Indie Spica, Cassie wood, Squinant flowers, of each one dragma; fashion them with old Wine, They be verie good against all paine and bad digestion of the stomacke, against all cold agues, and the beginning of the dyspsie; but especially they be very good for all them which lose their naturall colour: looke further for this in the Table of Roses.

Trocisci de Santalis, of Saunders. §.20.

These be not made but when the same be prescribed of purpose; they be very good against the diseases of the liuer, and against the dyspsie, like as our table of Sanders both shew.

Trocisci de Spica. §.21.

These Trociskes be not used, and there is mention made but once of them in this Booke, and that onely against the pursuenes of the breast.

Trocisci de Spodio, of Iuorie. §.22.

These be prepared as they are described in the third Part, the eleuenth chapter, and fourteenth §. and ordained for the laste *Lienteria*; for which they be further necessarie, that doth the Register make mention of Juorie.

Trocisci de Terra sigillata. §.23.

If more then twentie be things these Trociskes made, wherefore we do leaue them to the Apothecaries. They be very much used, for that they be forcible against spetting of blood if the same be giuen with the water of Knotgrasse: they be also good against the bleeding at the nose if the same be annoynted on the fore-head; and also for womens flowers if they passe away too excessive fast: likewise for the bleeding of the pyles, and for pissing of blood, if it be spouted into the yarde, like as the same is mentioned in the Register vnder the title of sealed Carth.

Trocisci de Violis, of Violets. §.24.

You must take Violet leaues which be somewhat withered one ounce and a half, Turbith one ounce, the iuice of Licorice, Manna, and Diagridion, of each halfe an ounce; make Trociskes thereof with the sirupe of Violets. They are very sel-dome used alone, but sharpened with three greines, or with any other pills if they be giuen to any bodie that is hard to be purged. They are made also without Diagridio, and they be also otherwhiles mixed with some other Trociskes: looke further for it in the Register of Violets.

For to make writing Incke. §.25.

We must not pretermitt the description of this Incke (being a necessarie matter.) It is also made in sundrie manners; but this is the commonest manner for to make Incke: Take poulted Gall nats one pound, Coperas halfe a pound, raine Water five quartes; seethe them all together vntill the third part be wasted, then let it settle, afterwards strayne it thorow a cloth: put fower ounces of Gum vnto it, and then stir it oftentimes about. Some do not boyle it but let it stand and kepe, stirring it very often and well: but take for it no more but three quartes of water, and let the Gum be first dissolved in good wine Water vntill it be all dissolved, and then put the other substance vnto it, and thus it is also best of all and doth remaine alwaies without moulding.

For to make common Vernish. §.25.

Vernish is made after sundry waies, and there are also sundry sorts of them, each for an especiall vse: the one is made thus, and the other so. But we will here describe onely and teach how that it shall be most fitly made, and for what it shall be requisite for each one.

one. First, take olde Linsed oyle, and sethe it so long untill it be as thicke that if you do take a drop of it out, and let it be cold, that when you presse vpon it with the finger it spinneeth two or thre threads, or glueth to the finger. This oyle being now so sodden, put Rosin vnto it as much as shall suffice for to make the Vernish thicke enough: then let the Rosin decoct together with the oyle so long untill it do stand wholly still. This Vernish is good for the Smithes, for the Trencher-makers, for the Trunch-makers; and further for to Vernish all light things.

Of Painters Vernish. §.27.



Take olde Linsed oyle & sethe the same as is aforesaid; afterwards put amongst one pound of the oyle, halfe a pound of Pisticke or somewhat more, and so let it sethe together a good while. This being done, then set it in the sunne, in a leaden Basen, and powder one part of water vpon it, and stirre it well together; then will the oyle come vpon the top, and let it stand so clarifieng in the sunne and ayze the space of two or thre moneth. But it is to be noted that you must alwaies take good heed of the faire weather, and of the raine, and also of the night: for if so be that it did raine, then would your oyle run ouer and so you lose the same: wherfore must you haue alwaies ready a board or plancke for to couer the same oyle, as well from the raine, as from the night, vpon aduerture least that it should raine at night, &c. You may make also a faire Vernish of the oyle alone, to wit, thzough the sething it away, and then let it clarifie as is before said.

For to make odoriferous Vernish. §.28.



For to make this odoriferous Vernish you are to take a new earthen pot which is well leaded, and put into it one pound of oyle of Spike, and let the same be boyling hot: afterwards you are to take halfe a pound of Sandaraca, or somewhat more, and strow the same amongst it being beaten small, alwaies with a little at once, and stirring it well about; then let this Vernish to clarifie as is said before. This Vernish dyeth very hard and with a faire glosse: it hath an especial good saour, and may be vsed for all things that you please.

The 17. Chapter.



In this Chapter do come no compositions, but onely those which be tempered with blew Violets and wall flowers, whereof we haue oftentimes written before, whereof each is to be found in the Register: as the Rule of Violets, that you shall find in the third Part, the twelfth Chapter and tenth §. The sirupe of Violets in the sixtene Chapter, and 53. §. The Conserue before in the fourth Chapter. The oyle of Violets in the twelfth Chapter, and 69. §. viz. in this eighth Part. The Vineger of Violets is made, like as the Vineger of Roses is wont to be made.

The 18. Chapter.

Of all kindes of Wines.



In this Chapter be all Wines contained, which be made with any kinde of Herbs, and such like things, viz. all such as may be accounted amongst the phisicall remedies: and because they are commonly prepared with Wine or Must, therefore we will write first of them, and that in the briefest sort: for that to write of all kind of Wines were a matter without end.

Of Wyne in generall. §. 1.

Is most true, that this noble Plant is made of God for diuers necessities of mankind, notwithstanding that man doth dayly abuse this noble gift of God so shamefully, and so in stead of doing good thereby, harmeth his body, and prouoketh sickness, wherefore we must discourse and treat somewhat of both these things.

In this do all learned agree, and dayly experience doth teach vs, that Wyne is so commodious and necessarie for mans life, and for his health, that there can no better drinke be deuised. Moreover, it withstandeth all poyson, and is especiall good for all sozenes of the Kidneyes, and for all paine of the Bladder. But especially for wyne strengtheneth the stomack: further, it doth prouoke digestion, it sustaineth naturall power, it strengtheneth all inward and outward parts, it keepeth a body with a good colour, it maketh fresh and healthie blood, it maketh the languishing merry, the dismayd couragious, it carrieth the well digested meate into the inward parts, it consumeth the slimy humors, it strengtheneth and dryeth the Braynes, it refresheth the hart, it sharpneth the wits and the vnderstanding, wherefore it is of the heathen endued with a godly name, and is called *Liber*, that is free. Further, it bringeth with it the pleasant sleepe, it prouoketh venery, and maketh women fruitfull. In fine, Wyne hath so many vertues, that *Aesclepiades* sayd, That the power of wine may well be compared with the Gods. *Esdra* doth write (which I cannot pretermitt) that Wyne is stronger then men that drinke it, that it altereth the wits, that it maketh Kings, wise, more, and rich men, it assureth and sharpneth the vnderstanding, it causeth all paine to be forgotten, it satisfieth all concupiscence, it careth neither for King, nor Princes, and it vttereth all that it listeth and pleaseth. These be now the commodities and auails which Wyne can bring with it.

But what shall I say to the contrary of those things which it doth if it be superfluously vsed, but we haue ynough spoken thereof in the first part and eightene Chapter, where we discourse of the Plague; but we will procede with those things that are more fit for our purpose. We haue before admonished, that there can no more commodious nor healthier potion be found for mans nature then wyne, and of all other are best the faire, cleane, light red, and they that haue colour like Geese sexe. But for to haue a full and perfect instruction of wyne, and for what sickness each wyne is prescribed or forbidden, that is to be seene in the table of the Wyne. In like manner, there is also found here a perfect instruction of Must, of vine cride, and of spirit of wine, also of vineger, and for what the same is good within and without, and for what it is also hurtfull. Lastly, we will describe sundry herbed wynes, to wit, how that they be made, and also what operation they haue.

Of sundry natures of Wyne. §. 2.

Is also very needefull, that one do know the nature of wyne, for that some of them do alter their nature, according as they be yong, old, white, red, thick, subtil, small or strong. The white wyne is warme in the first degre: the very old wyne in the third degre: but the wyne of a yere old keepeth the middle meane. The thick red wyne maketh much blood, because it needeth no great alteration, but the thin, white, and for wyne, giueth little nourishment. The thick and troubled wyne obstructeth the belly, the Luer, the Spleene, and the Kidneyes, so that all they which vse the same too much, are wont to be troubled with the Dropsie and Gravel, and especially the old folks. Out of this may each one chuse such wynes which be most mete for him.

Of Must. §. 3.

The wyne which we call Must, that is new wyne, which is first press out, and not long cellered, and hath not as yet wrought thoroughly, like as the same is knotone vnto all men: this Must hath his proper nature, but there is almost no Must which doth any good, but many that are hurtfull. But Must is commonly vsed when one will make any herbed wyne.

Of vine cuist, or decocted wyne. §. 4.

The Whistions do call this wyne *Sapam*, it is commonly decocted so long of Must and other strong wyne, vntill that of thre quartes there remaine but one. This decocted wine is vsed in Whisick very much inwardly and outwardly.

Of burnt wyne, or spirit of wyne. §. 5.

The burnt wyne is for the most part burnt of the drosse, or lase of wyne, which is not vsed so much for Whisick, as that which is distilled of cleare wyne, and is rectified two or thre times ouer againe.

Of Vineger. §. 6.

That Vineger is made of solwe wyne, is apparant to enery bodie. It is also a marvellous woꝝke of nature that it spoyleth wyne, and altereth it out of his naturall course, and maketh some other thing thereof, which is a thing by it selfe, and vsed as well in Cokerie as for Whisick, which is no lesse pleasant then wyne it selfe. For *Dioscorides*, and other mo learned ascribe to vineger many innumerable vertues, like as we find by dayly experience, therefore is also the red as well as the white vineger ordained in Whisick for many kind of causes, as it is also in some diseases forbidden. The lase of the vineger is also otherwhiles mentioned in this booke.

The ninetcenth Chapter.

Of Herbed wines and such like.



Here, we will teach here how this Wine is here to be prepared, the which is effected after sundry manners, and as liketh each one best. The common manner is, that the herbs are to be gathered betwene the middest of August, and middest of September: but the fittest time is, when they beare their floures. These herbs are to be dyed in the shadow, or at least in a luke warme Chamber where it doth not dust, vntill you will vse the same. If now you will make any Herbed wyne, then take a small vessell as big as you will, and put therein Berchen or haseell chips into it, strow vpon it a good deale of dyed herbs, without wꝛinging, and afterwards one part of chips againe and herbs: do this so long vntill that all the whole vessell be full, and afterwards fill it with Must. If so be that it be strong, then may you drinke of it the sower, and fill it full againe. But to procure further aduise thereof, therefore we will adde vnto this how to make other sorts of herbed wines. If one will keepe these wines swete, then is one part of the Must to be decocted away with a light fire, and that according as the Must is strong, or thin. Other do prepare their herbed wines by a certaine distillation with such herbs as they will themselves, so that they keepe their smell, power, and vertue, that if so be that one put but two or thre drops of it into a quart of wine, that then all the wine will taste of it, so that thereby many expences, laboꝝ and trauell is spared. But because that such experiments be not knowne vnto all men, therefore may they vse these things following: Take such herbs as you will, whether they be floures or rootes, which be very dry, poune them, and powze vpon them good burnt wine: afterwards stop it tight, and let it stand so askepe the space of certaine dayes; afterwards strayne them out thorow a cloth, and then pꝛeserue it in a glasse. When as then you will haue such wine, then powze thereof whether it be much or little into it; and if so be that you haue no burnt wine, then take good old strong wine in stead thereof. But excepting the boyling or distilling of it, the wine it selfe is of that nature, that very shortly it draweth to it the power, smatch, sauoz, and vertue of those things which are infused therein. Some suppose, that one must cast into the vessell only the herbs, rootes, seedes, floures, or any thing else that one will, and to powze new Must vpon it, whether it be much or little, according to that the wine or any thing that is in

in it be strong or weak. Other do cast the rootes, herbs, and other things in it when the wyne is a yere old. Some do take the herbs or rootes &c. greene: some dry. Some do shred the herbs, some do stamp them to powder, and so hang them in a bag. Each may take out of this which liketh him best. Let this suffice for the making of these wynes.

The wyne of Elecampane rootes. §. 1.



His wyne is prepared after diuers sorts, but the best manner is which also needeth not much trouble, as hereafter followeth: Take Must first troden out of the Grapes, and let it seethe without any smoke about it euen to the halfe if that you desire to haue it swete. In this are you to seethe Elecampane rootes, which be digged vp in the spring time, and cut into slices, and dyed on a thred. Seethe them so long in it untill they haue lost all their bitter taste: and if one will often vse this wyne, then are the rootes so much the oftner to be sod with new wyne that the wyne may abide by his power, and the vessel is alwayes to be filled vp againe with wyne. This is a very profitable potion for the head and the braines, in like manner also for to warme and strengthen the sinewes if the same be vered with rheumes. This wyne is also good against all cold diseases of the Lights, and of the breast, it clenseth the same, it strengtheneth all bad digestive stomacks, it refresheth naturall warmth, it warmeth the sinewes, it openeth the passages of vyne, it is good against all winds, it strengtheneth the Matris, and it clenseth the same of all cold phlegmatick moisture, and it prouoketh also the termes.

Eyebright wyne. §. 2.

This wyne is made of the herbe, as we haue taught before, his virtues are described in the first part, the seuenth Chapter, and 20. §. and in other places moe.

Wyne of whole Grapes. §. 3.

If one will make this wyne as it ought to be, then take whole red or white Grapes taken from the stalks, and well clenfed, and put them into a vessel with chips (as we haue taught before) fill the white with white Must, or with ferne wyne, and the red with red wyne. Some do boyle it in Must, and that according to each ones pleasure, as also some there be which put no chips vnto it, but they do put Sage leaues vnto it, and let them lye a certaine time in it. There be spices also wont to be hanged therein, so that the wyne may get thereby not only a pleasant, but also a strong and good taste.

These wynes are first of all very commodious for all hosts and householders, so that all that which remaineth of other wynes and is not dronken may be powdered vnto it. Such wynes be very acceptable, but if one do drinke too much thereof, then do they hurt the head, for they do disemper the braines, and that chiefly in the euening after supper, for that they be much subtiler, and moze ascending then other wynes. They make a bodie quickly very sleepe, they prouoke vomiting against euening, but in the morning they make merry: and amongst all other there be none that hurt the braynes moze then this, wherfore they are both dronken moze for lust and pleasure, then for commoditie of health.

Wyne of Auence. §. 4.

These odoriferous rootes do the Apothecaries and Physicians call *Garyophyllata*, the same is to be digged vp in the spring time, but chiefly in March, in which time the rootes be most forcible. Let these rootes dry well, and when they be clenfed, then hang them afterwards in the wyne, it will get thereby a very pleasant sauor and taste which refresheth the hart and strengtheneth: it openeth the obstruction of the Luyer, warmeth the cold and moyst braynes, dyeth and strengtheneth the cold slimy stomack, it assuageth also all paine of the Matris.

Betony wyne. §. 5.

This wyne is made of browne Betony, as all other herbed wynes be: it is especiall good against all belching and wambling of the stomack, it withstandeth the overflowing of the gall, it is many times approued in a cold Matris, and against all inflammation of the same,

it strengtheneth all inward parts, it warmeth and healeth also the same, it openeth the obstructions, it consumeth all cold humors, it expelleth all venemous matter by the vyne and by the stoule, and in like manner also the yelow Jaundise: and if the same be oftentimes vsed, then it is very requisite against the falling sicknes, against the *Sciatica*, against the sicknes of the Lights, and against the Consumption. It is also very necessary against the Cough, against short breath, and it expelleth also all Agues which do come out of a foule stomack. The same power haue the red Gilloflowes, like as the same be also a kinde of Betony, whereof hereafter we will speake further. This wines vse and operation you shall finde described in other places moe.

Bourrage wyne. §. 6.



We haue admonished befoze of the description of the Conserue and Sirrups of Bourrage, how there is small difference betwene this herbe and the Buglosse, wherefoze also both these herbs may be taken for this wyne, like as we haue taught befoze; or the iuice of the same may also well be vsed with this wyne; which wyne doth driue away all poyson from the hart, it clenseth the blood, it maketh merry, it refresheth the vitall spirits, it driueth away all pensiuenes and all bad thoughts, it is also very necessary for all them which do fall easily into any swooning, and is of a full temperate nature, &c.

Wyne of Asarabacca. §. 7.

This wyne and other moe be prepared against grauell, like as in the third part, the 17. Chapter and 4. §. is described, and you shall further finde in other places moe, for what it is moze commodious.

Wyne of Framboys. §. 8.

This wyne is made like as the wyne of the whole Grapes is made: it hath the nature of the same berries; it is much commended in the Plague and Squinancie, but if one put none other wyne vnto it, then is it not very pleasant, wherefoze it is not commaunded to be vsed in any other places of this booke.

Wyne of Harts toong. §. 9.

There be two kinds of Harts tonges, viz. the *Ceterach*, which is the right Harts tong, and the long Harts tong, which is hairie about the stalks, they may be taken both together, and to make this wyne as all other wynes: it is not very pleasant of taste, but it is of great force, for that it openeth and strengtheneth the Spleene, it is good against all poyson of Snakes, and being dronke warme, it asswageth all cramps and scowring of the belly, it taketh away the yelow Jaundise, and also obstructions of the L yuer: it is also very good for all them which be vexed with the stone, and with the grauell: it is also good against all melancholy, and expelleth the quartaine Ague, it consumeth all clotted blood which is caused in the breast through fals, it openeth also the conduits of vyne, and healeth all diseases of the same. For what this wyne is further mate, that is to be found described in other places of this booke.

Wyne of Hylope. §. 10.

This herbe is hot and dry by nature, which virtue the wyne also hath, wherefoze it is good for all old persons, for that it warmeth all inward parts, it asswageth the cold and moist Cough: it is also good against the falling sicknes, for that when the same is vsed often and long, then doth it take away the same, and that especially in yong folks. It is also good for the breast and the Lights, for that it warmeth the same, and consumeth all tough slimy matter, and also all Agues which may spring out of the same: it openeth the pipes of the Lights, and it maketh a cleare voyce; for that it clenseth the breast, and healeth all anguishes of the same: it taketh away the shortnes of breath, and is especiall good against the Droisie, like as is admonished and described in mo other places of this booke.

Winter Cherry wyne. §. 11.

This wyne is also made like as the wyne of whole Grapes: it is very much vsed against the stone, the grauell, and is also especiall good for all them which can hardly make water.

Cherry wyne. §. 12.

Vpon the Riuer of Rhene and euery where else all wynes, which be made of red or black Cherries, are called Cherry wynes, and they make the same as hereafter followeth. Pluck the Cherries from the stalks, and pounce them in a stone mortar with stones and all, and then powre red or white wyne vpon it; but this wyne will be very small, wherefore it is prepared after another manner with whole Cherries as followeth. Lay in a vessell of beechen or hawthorn chips as many as you please, and then one part of Cherries vpon it, and so further untill it be full, like as we haue sayd and taught of the wyne of Grapes, fill then the vessell full of wyne, and so let it lye thre or foure dayes, then shall it be sufficiently coloured. This wyne is of a good tempered nature, it is very requisite in Sommer time in great heate for to allwaie therewith thirst, and to moisten the inward parts. It openeth also the Luer, it expelleth vyne, especially if the kernels with the stones be broken in it, for these kernels expell the grauell. Some do hang some spices therein, which cannot be good, because that his nature is altered thereby. Look into the Table of the Cherries.

Lauender wyne. §. 13.

There is but little made at once thereof in a small vessell, whereof may not be broken long. There is a long bag hanged in it with Lauender flowres, and interbastated or quilted, to the end that not all the flowres fall in a heape. This wyne is especiall good for a cold head, and for most lyaines, for the giddines, for the falling sicknes, and such like diseases.

Of Malmesey. §. 14.

Albeit that this wyne be tempered neither with herbs nor with spices, but by nature and of it selfe is a noble and pleasant wyne, which is brought vnto vs out of Grecia, and other Countries adiacent, yet shall it neuertheless not be against our purpose, because that the same is very much vsed in Physicke, that his power and vertue be shewed at this present, look for it in the second part, in the 6. Chapter, and in the third part, the 11. Chapter, and 14. §.

Wyne of Marierom. §. 15.

This wyne is prepared as all other herbed wynes are: it strengtheneth the vyaines, and warmeth all inward parts: it is very good for all them which be enclined to the Dropsie, it allwageth the paine of the belly, it expelleth vyne, and moueth womens termes: it is a very good potion for to warme the head, and to strengthen the memoire, as you finde described in diuers places of this booke.

Wyne of Cinnamome. §. 16.

This aromaticall wyne is so called and placed amongst Claret wyne, whereof we haue admonished before in the eighth part, the third Chapter. This wyne is to be prepared in the haruest, and will keepe good thowout the whole yeare. It hath all the vertues of Hypocras. Take one and a halfe, or two barrells of Must, seethe the same as we haue taught of the wyne of Elecampane rootes: when it is cold, then put it into a cleane vessell, and put thereto as many whole Grapes pluckt from the stalks as will go into the third part of the vessell: afterwards make a linnen bag, and put therein two pound of Cinnamome, Ginger one ounce, Galingall one ounce and a halfe, Pepper and Greynes, of each halfe an ounce, Cloues and Nutmegs, of each one quarter of an ounce, Cubebs, Cardamome, and long Pepper, of each one dragme, Pace thre dragmes, pounce all grosse, and then hang these herbs in it. This

Cinnamom wyne may be vsed foꝛ all cold diseases of the head, as all other aromaticall wines are to be vsed. Item, foꝛ all cold and vnfruitfull women: but to the contrary, all young and hot people, and all they that be burthened with hot agues must shun this wyne as poyson. Of this foꝛesayd wyne is admonished in many places of this booke.

Muscadellwyne. §. 17.

This wyne groweth in Candie, from whence it is bꝛought to Venice, and bꝛought thence vnto vs, and is often vsed in Physick, like as is admonished in many places.

Wyne of Gilloflowres. §. 18.

This wyne is made of red Gillofer flowres, and made after the same manner as the wyne of Betony is made, which hath also the same foꝛce, like as both these herbs be taken to be of one efficacie, and is recommended in sundꝛy places of this booke.

Wyne of Buglosse. §. 19.

Looke foꝛ it befoꝛe in the 6. §. of the wyne of Burrage.

Wyne that purgeth. §. 20.

These purging wynes be made after many kinds of wayes, like as you finde them described in their places, whereof you haue one foꝛ an example in the third part, the 11. Chapter, in the end of the 20. §. which may be vsed foꝛ a common opening of the bodie.

Wyne of whole Grapes. §. 21.

It is befoꝛe described in the 3. §. wherefoꝛe we will heꝛe not discourse any further thereof.

Vinum Punicum. §. 22.

This is no artificiall wyne, but it is a wyne which is of it selfe so growen without the addition of any thing vnto it. It is very healthy, and also good of taste. The same is dꝛonken in Germany not onely at great feasts, but also vsed foꝛ Physick, like as is sufficiently admonished thereof in the Table.

Rosemary wyne. §. 23.

This Rosemary wyne is marvellous much commended, and taken foꝛ a very wholesome potion, especially in all cold sicknesses. It strengtheneth the digestive vertue of the stomack, it causeth appetite, it fortifieth the hart, the bzaines, and the sinewes, it giueth a faire pleasant colour, not only dꝛonken, but also the face washed therewith, it consumeth all inward putrified humors, and it preserveth the bodie from all sickness. If the mouth be often washed therewith, then both it make a wel-sauoring breath, it strengtheneth the teeth, and the flesh of the teeth: wherefoꝛe it is also very good, that all outward vlcers, viz. the Canker, fresh wounds, and such like soꝛes be washed therewith. Further, this wyne is good foꝛ all diseases of the Lights, foꝛ the consumption, and especially foꝛ all them that are rheumatick, and moyst of bzaines. It is also good against the Palsey, against the falling sickness, against the lamenes, and against the cold Patirix, it heateth and dꝛyeth the same, and maketh it also mete foꝛ conception. Thus if this wyne must be made in haste and not be kept long, then may you take Rosemary floures, Harts tong, and also rinds of Thamariske, of each halfe a handfull, then powꝛe vpon it seuen pots of Must, and then let it so stand and worke oꝛ runne ouer, and fill by the vessell alwayes with other good wyne. Item, take Rosemary and Harts tong, lay it all a night to steape in wyne, and then vse this wyne in stead of the foꝛesayd wyne if the same cannot be gotten. His vertue and pꝛower is described in many sundꝛy places.

Wyne

Wyne of Sage. §. 24.



This wyne doth heale all sozenes of the mouth, it setteth fast the teeth and also the gums, it strengtheneth the sinewes, and all lame ioynts, it dryeth the moyst bzaines which is hurt through *Phlegma*, it freeth from the Cramp trembling and shaking, and also from the falling sicknes, the same being dronken, and the L yuer annoynted therewith, or the hot vapoꝝ thereof receiued: for what it is further mate, that is admonished here and there in this booke.

Wyne of Clary. §. 25.

The deceiptfull falsifiers of wyne haue made this pretious herbe (which is a species of wilde Sage, very suspitious, so that it is esteemed hurtfull: but it is in truth not so, for if with this herbe as with all other herbs the wyne be prepaerd, then is it very fit for the head and for the stomacke, for that it dryeth and warmeth the cold moyst bzaines. It is also much to be compared with the wyne of Sage and of Rosemary for his vertue, and this is also the cause wherfore we make so little mention thereof in this booke.

Wyne of water Lilly floures. §. 26.

This wyne is prepared very seldome, as also it is but once remembꝛed in this booke, and that in the consumption.

Tamariske wyne. §. 27.

This plant doth willingly grow in moyst places, and to this wyne is alwayes vsed the middlemost rinds: it hath the same power of the wyne of Harts tong, wherfore they are commonly vsed together, as may be seene in many places of this booke. This wyne may also well be dronken for to cleanse the bloud with it, and to consume melancholick humoꝝ which do cause the quartaine Ague and the Scuruy, and such like sicknesses. What virtues this wyne hath moze, looke for that in the Table in the description of the wyne of Harts tong.

Wyne of Wormewood. §. 28.



Although that this wyne hath a bitter and vnpleasant taste, yet hath it neuertheless a marvellous great vertue, and is vsed aboue all other herbed wynes. First of all it killeth wormes, it withstandeth poyson, and it expelleth the hurtfull phlegme: and if one drinke the same often, it cleanseth and strengtheneth all inward parts that they cannot receiue such matter, it dryeth the vapoꝝ of the stomacke, that they cannot ascend into the head, it maketh appetite, it openeth all obstructions of the inward parts, viz. of the L yuer and Splene, and it taketh away also the yellow Jaundise which is caused thereby, it freeth from the Palsey, the falling sicknes, and all lamenes, it restoreth lost speech, it strengtheneth the weakened ioynts if the same be well rubbed and fomented with it: and if mens or beastes wounds be washed with it, then is the same kept faire and cleane, and suffereth no foule flesh to grow in them, but healeth them: it cureth also all scald heads if the same be washed with it. If any one would go to sea, then is he to drinke certaine dayes before some of this wine, for that thereby shall he be freed of the sea sicknesses. Moreover, this wyne is an especiall preseruatiue against the Plague, and against all venomous ayre, if one take a good draught thereof, before that such patients be visited, it bringeth also sleepe with it, and taketh away heauie dreames. But by reason the common people hath not alwayes this wyne in a readines, the iuice of Wormewood may be tempered amongst wyne, and be vsed in steede of the Wormewood wyne. This wyne is mate for many mo other diseases, like as may be read here and there in this booke.



Take in the beginning of winter one barrell and a halfe of Must, let it sathe softly, like as is described of Clecampne wine; afterwards put it into a cleane vessel, and then put these spices following vnto it: Take good Cinnamom one ounce, Zeduary halfe an ounce, Cloues one quarter of an ounce, Ginger, Cardingall, Graynes, and long Pepper, of each one dragme, poune them all together grosse, to the end (that when the power of the Zeduary is gone) the spices may dry, and take out the Zeduary of it and put fresh vnto it: if so be that you desire to keepe this wyne long, then is the same to be filled vp with decocted wyne, and not with common wyne. This wyne hath the same efficacie and power with all aromaticall wynes, and may also be vsed in Steele of them.

How the infirmities of all Wynes are to be mended. §. 30.



Care here not to write too largely how all the infirmities of wyne are to be amended, but are to commend that to the wyne sellers, by reason that thereof diuers booke are written: so: amendment of all wynes doth serue very well. Tristrams water, which is described in the first part the first Chapter and 1. §. In like maner also all golden and vitall waters which before in the eighth part and first Chapter are described, if there be powred a little of them in wyne which is dead or lowe and stirred well about. Item, in the moneth of May you are to take a bzaunch of a young greene tre, shau off the vppermost rindes, and lay them the space of thre dayes in fresh water: afterwards wash them well, and then powze fresh water againe vpon them. This being done, let them lye the space of thre dayes, wash them well againe, and then dry them in the shadow. If you haue now any wyne which beginneth to be dead, then take thre or foure of these rinds all of a length, and binde them to a thred, and hang them in the wyne, it will thereby be very good and cleare.

There be here and there described diuers sorts of wynes, which be prepared for sundry sicknesses and parts of mans bodie, viz. for the Head, for the Luer, for the Spill, for the Hart, and for the Raynes, &c. each one may looke for them in their places for which they will vse them.

Herewith we will in the name of God finish this our Booke of Whisicke, and commend the same vnto our most true Father through Iesus Christ our Lord, the most true Whisition of all our diseases, that he will most graciously extend his blessings ouer it.

Amen.

The end of the eighth and last part of
this Booke.

The

The first Table

Contayneth the names of all diseases, accidents, and
infirmities: Also all manner of Compositions, Con-
ferues, Confections, Electuaries, Syrupes, Iuleps,
Trocisks, Pils, Potions, Salues, Plaisters, Oyles,
Baulmes, Waters, and Aromaticall Wyne, with di-
uers other things more, which are mentioned
in this Booke.

A.

A <i>Bortu</i> , abortion.	508
Abricocks how preserued.	715
Accidents that may followe after childbirth.	518
Accidents caused through payne in the hips.	536
Accidents diuers in the Plague. 673.674.&c.	516
Afterbirth how to expell.	517
Afterthrowes how to be eased.	76
Egilops.	12
<i>Agaricus</i> prepared.	12
<i>Agaricus</i> vsed.	622
Agues description in generall.	623
Ague of one day called <i>Ephemera</i> .	668. 673
Ague pestilentiall.	642
Ague Quotidian.	643
Ague Quartain.	624
Ague <i>Hepialos</i> .	633
Ague <i>Hemitritea</i> .	624
Agues wandering.	646
Ague <i>Helica</i> .	627. 628
Agues continuall.	634
Ague Tertian exquisit.	637
Ague Tertian bastard.	638
Ague burning called <i>Canfon</i> .	640
Ague called <i>Synochus</i> .	641
Ague <i>Synochus</i> of putrified bloud.	649
Ague <i>Helica</i> , with an vlcir in the breast.	646. 651
Pag.	652
Ague <i>Murasmode</i> .	679
Ague long lingering.	671
Aire conuenient for the sicke of the Plague.	342
Pag.	8
<i>Alcola</i> and clifts of the tongue.	710
<i>Aliptamuscat</i> prepared.	163
Allome calcined or burnt.	739
Almonds confection.	8
Almonds swollen.	
Almond milke prepared.	
<i>Aloe</i> how to know it.	

<i>Aloe</i> prepared.	8
<i>Ammoniacum</i> prepared.	8
Ancome, looke Fellon.	
Appetite vnsatiable to meate.	381
Appetite lost, looke hunger lost.	334
Appetite lost in hot Agues.	631
Apples preserued.	718
Appoplexy.	134. 159. 160
Aprecokes preserued, looke Abricocks.	
<i>Aqua Iohannis</i> .	163
Armes description.	519
Armpits description and stench.	<i>ibid.</i>
Arseguts canker, looke Canker.	
Arseguts descent, or prociencie.	302
Arseguts description.	<i>ibid.</i>
Arseguts impostume.	304. 314
Arseguts itch, looke itch of the funda- ment.	
Arseguts paine.	304
Arseguts relaxation.	303
Arteries description.	604
Artificiall Baulme.	706. 707
Ascension of the Matrix.	489
Asthma, purfineffe.	238

B.

B Ack, and back paine.	211. 212
Bag to bee vsed in the falling sicknes.	
Pag.	156
Bags to be layd vpon the stomack.	330. 334
Barley water.	45. 219
Barley parched in broth.	349
Baulme pretious to comfort the hart.	263
Barrennes description.	295
Barrennes through cold and moystnes.	298
Barrennes through drythe.	297
Barrennes through heate.	296
Barrennes through ouermuch fatnes.	297
Barrennes through superfluitie of bloud, and obstruction of the termes.	299

The first Table.

Bathes for sweating.	611	Pag.	596. 59
Baulmes prepared.	706	Bloudy fluxe in generall.	359
Baulmes diuersly prepared.	707	Bloudy fluxe, looke Dyfentery.	
Beards description	116	Bole prepared	9
Beards falling out preuented	48. 117	Bones fracture	549
Beards growth procured	117	Bones corruption or putrifaction	550
Beeres description	709	Bones description	603
Belching vp of gall, or boyling in the sto- mack	369	Borches	500
Bellies paine, of all manner	428	Bowels paine in generall	421
Belly bound or obstructed	424	Bowels paine in yong children	431
Bils of the pocks	580	Bowels description	420
Biles, looke tumours, nodes &c.		Bowels payned in the vppermost part of them, called <i>Iliaca passio</i> .	421
Binding in the bodie	360	Bowels paine, called <i>Colica</i> .	422
Birth how to aduance	514	Bowels paines difference	423
Birth vntimely	508	Bowels paine of binding in the belly	424
Birth vnnaturall, called <i>Mola</i> in the mo- ther. 500. How remedied.	501	Bowels paine of slimines in the guts	<i>ibid.</i>
Birth her signes	515	Bowels paine of windines	426
Bladders description	465	Bowels or belly paines remedies	425. 426.
Bladder or necke of the Bladders infection			427. 428.
Pag.	473	Bowels paine of an impostume	429
Bladders neck impostume.	<i>ibid.</i>	Bowels paine with heate	430
Bleeding before and after what ought to be done	23	Bowels paine with grauell	431
Bleeding too much how to be preuented.		Braines description	117
Pag.	23. 607	Braines the beginning of sinnewes	<i>ibid.</i>
Bleeding at the nose	98	Braines how to dry them	118
Bleeding at the nose remedied	99	Breath which is short and whealing,	241.
Bleeding at the eares, looke eares that bleede.			242.
Bleeding of the gummes, looke gummes that bleede		Breaths shortnes, looke Lungs obstruction.	
Bleeding of the Piles remedied	306. 308	Breath that is stinking	256
Blindnes, looke eyes that are blinde.		Breath that stinketh of a bad vlcir in the stomack	377
Blisters how to draw them	155	Brests description	203
Bloud not to be drawne fasting	23	Brests of women that hang downe too lowe	
Bloud in the Leprosie how to be clenfed	588	Pag.	204
Blouds nature	605	Brests of women that are schirrous and hard	
Bloud when to be drawne	21	Pag.	208
Bloud letting signes of the Calender not to be vsed	22	Brests tumours	209
Bloud letter, admonition	22	Brests impostumes	<i>ibid.</i>
Blouds superfluitie diminished	20. 607	Brest oppressed or stopped through phlegme	
Bloud cleansed	606	Pag.	236
Blouds description	605	Brimstone prepared	14
Bloud vaines	604	<i>Bronchocoele</i>	187
Bloud melancholick how to purge	419	Bucks bloud prepared	9
Bloud stone prepared	9	Bucks bloud distilled	<i>ibid.</i>
Bloud spitting by some infirmitie of the Lights	243. 247	Bucks lyuer prepared, looke Liuer &c.	
Bloud congealed in the brest	246	Buglosse conferue	718
Bloud by vrine	448	Burning of Fire, hot water and gunpowder	
Bloud stanchd	595. 607	Pag.	592
Bloud clotted or congealed in the body		Burnings remedie	593
		Buttocks description	302

C.

Cakes for the rheume	196
Cakes or spice cakes prepared	729

Calmu

The first Table.

<i>Calmus aromaticus</i> comforteth the head	39,	<i>Collyrium</i> , drying and astringent	76
	705	Colour good, how to make it	59
<i>Calmus</i> preserved	714	Coloquint prepared	10
Campher prepared	10	Confection of Horseradish	394, 57
Cankers description, causes and signes	571,	Confection of ashes	457
	572	Confection of Pope Innocent against blind-	
Canker in the nose,	94, 95	nes	92
Canker called <i>Carcinoma</i>	571	Confections of all sortes, preservative, purga-	
Canker in womens breasts	210	tiues &c.	729
Canker in the Arsegut	316	Confection to strengthen the liuer	283
Canker in the Mother	498	Confection of Iuniper berries	665
Capitall powder	189, 197	Confection of a burnt Hare	457
Capon water, how to make it	255	Confection for the obstruction of the Liuer	
Carbuncle, looke Plague sore.		through cold	390
Cassie prepared	10	Confection of Currans	238
Cassie vsed	10, 364	Confection of Prunes	361
Catarrhe	79	Confection of <i>Paulus Riccius</i> Phisition vnto	
<i>Catharticon Imperiale</i>	730	the Emperor	39
Cauterization for the rheumes of the head		<i>Confectio Anacardina</i>	729
pag.	74	Confection of seeds	709
Cherries preserved	725	Confection against the swimming or giddi-	
Childbirths remedies	515, 516	nes in the head	123
Childs easie deliury	512	Confections of Citrons	326
Childs growth, at what time, and in what		Confection against Melancholy	31
maner	503	Confection <i>Aromatica rosata</i> diuersly prepa-	
Childs deliury, delayde	515	red	325
Children how to purge them	33	Confection <i>Diacinnamomum</i>	324
Childrens teeth, looke Teeth.		Confection <i>Diamargariton</i>	138
Childs weakenes in the mothers wombe		Confection <i>Diatragacanthum</i> the cold	186
pag.	506	Confection <i>Diatragacanthum</i> the hot	<i>ibid.</i>
Child dead how to expell it	511	Confection purging	424
<i>Cholerica passio</i>	338	Confection for panting of the hart through	
<i>Cholera</i> hath a proper seat in the body	603	heat	266
	607	Confectd things to coole the stomack	333
Chops of the hands	521	Confection for the Franticke	129
Cinnamon water how to make it	727	Confection in the falling sickenes.	154, 157
Citrons preserved	714	Confection for <i>Melancholia adusta</i>	133
Cicatrices of the skin	601	Confection of <i>Calmus</i>	705
Citron shels preserved	<i>ibid.</i>	Confection of spices, peeles, and roots	710
Claret wine how to make it	708	Confection of field Mints	730
Clestes in the Arsegut	315	Confection of Cassie after diuers waies	<i>ibid.</i>
Clestes in womens places	289	Confection called <i>Benedicta laxativa</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
Clestes in the skin	556	Confection of <i>Montignana</i> for a bad sight	90
Clestes in the eyelids	63	Confection <i>Catholicon</i>	730
Clestes in the tongue	171	Confection <i>Hamech</i>	731
Clenfing of the head	97	Confortation for them that haue the Ague	
Clifters for the rheume	196	pag.	632
Clifters to comfort the hart	268	Conserue of red Cherries	725
Clotted or congealed blood, looke blood		Conserue of Lauander	716
that is congealed.		Conserue of Betony	712
Cocke water	250	Conserue of Gadriles	354
Cods description	276	Conserue of Elecampane rootes	711
Cold diseases	621	Conserue of Berberies	714
<i>Colica</i> , colicke, a griping in the neathermost		Conserue of the fruit of the wilde Rose tree	
guts	422	pag.	715
		Con-	

The first Table.

Conserue of Elderne berries	715	Desire vnfatiable of going to sleepe, looke	
Conserue of Hyssope	716	<i>Tenebris.</i>	
Conserue of Gilloflowers	718	<i>Diamargariton</i> , looke confection <i>Diamargariton.</i>	
Conserue of Pyonies	719	<i>Diapenidion</i> prepared	230
Conserue of Eiebright	712	<i>Diatragacanthum frigidum</i> , looke confection	
Conserue of Succorie flowers	724	<i>Diatragacanthum.</i>	
Conserue of Raspes	716	<i>Diaprunis lenitua</i>	361
Conserue of Prunes	719	<i>Diaturbith</i> prepared	362, 776
Conserue of Roses	722	Digestion of the stomacke how to be kept,	
Conserue of Burrage	713	pag.	320
Conserue of Rosemarie	723	Dotage, or doting childishnes	124
Conserue of Sage	<i>ibid.</i>	Drunkenness, a very bad disease	681
Conserue of Fumitory	714	Dropsie in generall	400
Conserue of Violets	724	Dropsie called <i>Anasarca</i>	401
Conserue of Marietom, and of Baume	717	Dropsie called <i>Ascites</i>	402
Conserue of Cowslips	724	Dropsie called <i>Tympanites</i>	406
Conserue of water Lillies	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Dysenteria</i> described	352
Constipation in the bodie	360	There are two kinds thereof	352, 358
Consumption	520		
Consumption diuers remedies	254		
Consumptions signes	251		
Contraction of the Mother	495		
Conuulsion of the sinewes	147, 149, 613		
Conuulsion of the mouth	145		
Corall prepared	10		
Cornes on the toes	526		
Coriander seede prepared	11		
Coughs description	225		
Coughes remedies	227		
Cough that is drie remedied	228		
Cough moist and cold	229		
Coughing vp of phlegme	232		
Cough which is old	231		
Crablice killed	50		
Crampe	147		
Crampe through emptines and heat	149		
Crampe through wounding	<i>ibid.</i>		
Crampe of the sinewes	613		
Crookebackes remedies	213, 215		
Cupping and boxing for what it serueth	27		

D.

D Andrill or scales of the head, beard, and	
eyebrowes	49
Dead child, looke Child dead.	
Deafnes	113
Debility of the stomacke, looke Stomacke.	
<i>Decoction aperitiua maior</i>	363
Decoction of Sene	364
Decoction of <i>Guaiacum</i>	576
<i>Decoction pectoralis</i> purging the rheume	229
<i>Decoction fructuum</i>	282
<i>Decoction Epithymi</i> , decoction of Dodder,	777
Decoction aperatiue, prepared	363
Decoction common prepared	<i>ibid.</i>

E.

E Ares description	103
Eares whereinto something is gotten	
pag.	113
Eares paine in generall	104
Eares full of noyse	106, 107
Eares impostumes	108, 111
Eares that bleede	111
Eares stopped	112
Earewigs gotten into the eares	<i>ibid.</i>
Effluence of seede in women after the act of	
copulation	508
Effluxion of vrine continuall and inuolun-	
tarie	472
Eies described	65
Eies paines remedied	66
Eie water for all paines of the eies	76
Eie powder	66
Eies blearednes called <i>Ophthalmia</i>	67
Eies that bered	68
Eie salue	69
Eies full of heate remedied	<i>ibid.</i>
Eies full of hot blisters	70
Eiewater of the Emperour <i>Fredericke</i>	88
Eies how they are defended on all sides	59
Eies hurt with the haire of the eyelids	64
Eies that itch and are sore	70
Eies that run and water	71
Eies that run of a cold cause	73
Eies that do matter	74
Eies impostumed of externall causes	76
Eies that bake together in the sleepe	<i>ibid.</i>
Eies spotted	77
Eies before which Gnats or flies seeme to	
swarme	

The second Table.

swarme	80	Faces pulthes and heate	<i>ibid.</i>
Eies growen ouer with skins	83	Face how to cleere it	59
Eies misty and cloudy	85	Fals, blowes, and bruses, cause many sicknes	684
Eies that stick out as if they would fal out	86	Falling sicknes <i>Epilepsia</i>	151
Eies that are burned	87	Falling sicknes in children	152
Eies that haue had a blow	87	Fat of mans body described	616
Eies wherein something is gotten	87	Fats of diuers beasts prepared,	113
Eies that are best by day or by night	91	looke Marrowes.	
Eies that are blind	87, 92	Fatnes, her troublefomnes to man	616
Eies squintnes	92	Feare and frightening	383
Eie beames dilation	85	Fetters diseases how cured	326
Eie corners fistulaes	76, 79	Felon or Ancome of the fingers	325
Eie corners infections	66, 67	Feuer burning called <i>Causon</i>	638
Eielids that will grow together	64	Fingers described	322
Eielids turned	63	Fingers numbed	<i>ibid.</i> 323
Eielids with Warts	<i>ibid.</i>	Fingers numbed through bruses	323
Eielids chapped	<i>ibid.</i>	Fistulaes causes and signes	568, 569
Eielids itching	62	Fistulaes description	568
Eielids swollen diuersly	60	Fistula in the corner of the eie	79
Eielids description	59	Fistula in the gums	175
Eie waters and other things diuersly prepared	72, 76	Fistula of the breasts	211
Eie water for running eies	71, 72	Fistula in the Arseget	316
Eie salue for all kind of running and mattering	72, 75, 76	To cause flesh to grow in wounds	601
Electuary of <i>Calmus</i> prepared diuersly	705	Flethes description	615
Electuary for giddines of the head	123	Flixe and red Flixe	343, 352
<i>Electuarium de Psyllio</i>	734	Flood too abundant after deliury of child,	
<i>Electuarium Diaphænicon</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	pag.	317
<i>Electuarium de Citro</i>	326	Flowers how long they may be kept	7
Eiecampane rootes confected	711	Flowers in women, looke Termes	
<i>Electuarium de succo rosarum</i>	735	Flowers of women in general	476
<i>Electuarium de Sebesten</i>	362	Flowers how to preferre them	477
<i>Electuarium vita</i>	737	Flowers obstruction, how remedied	478,
<i>Electuarium de Munna</i>	732	479. 480. 482.	
Electuaries moe	731, 733, 734, 735 &c.	Flowers excessive course, how to bee stoppt,	
Eluxation of the ioynts	536	pag.	484
Emperour Charles his prescriptions & rules in the Gout	346	Fluxe of seede through heate, looke running of the raines.	
<i>Epihyms</i> or Dodder prepared	11	Fluxe of seede in sleepe	293
Eryngus rootes preserved	717	Fluxe of seede through cold	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Esula</i> prepared and vsed	15	Fluxe white in women, how to be remedied	
<i>Euphorbium</i> prepared	11	pag.	488
<i>Euphorbium</i> vsed	<i>ibid.</i>	Fomentations for the stomacke	334
Excoration of the bladder	473	Fractures of bones	549
Extraction for all obstructions and binding of the body	398, 399	Frenfines	124
Exhortation to the keepers of the infected with the plague	680	Frenfines, of blood	127
Exulceration in the Kidneies	447	Frenfines with a hot Ague	125, 126
Exulcerations in the stomacke	376	Friction in the falling euill	159
		Fruits of all sortes, how to keepe them fresh,	
		pag.	725
		Fruits increase in the wombe	503
		Fruits weaknes in the mothers wombe	506
		Fruitfulnes, how it is caused in man and woman	300
		Fruitfulnes, her signes	502
		Fruit-	
F.			
Faces description	56		
Faces rednes	58		

The first Table.

Fruitfulness in woman, how furthered 296

G.

G <i>Albanum</i> plaister prepared	487
<i>Galbanum</i> plaister <i>Galen</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
Gals description	407
<i>Gallia muscata</i> prepared	342
Gargarismes for all infirmities of the mouth	
pag.	164
Gargarisme for giddines of the head	123
Gargarisme for losse of speech	173
Gargarisme for rheumes	196
Generation members	274
Giddines of the head	121
Ginger prepared	715
Glisters diuersly prepared	709
Golden Egge prepared	669
Gloves how to perfume	521
Going ill after the Gout in the feete, how to	
remedie it	547
Gout	527
Goutes signes	<i>ibid.</i>
Goutes rules that are to be obserued	528,
	529
Gout of the hands called <i>Chiragra</i>	531
Gout in the feete	540
Gout of the feete his preseruatiues	542
Gout of the feete how to prevent it	541
Gout of the feete or <i>Podagra</i> , howe purged	
pag.	543
Gout of the feete which is cold	545
Gout of the feete his remedies	542, 543,
	544
Gout of the hips called <i>Sciatica</i>	531
Grapes preserued	725
<i>Gratia Dei</i> plaister	566
Grael, sand, or stone of the kidneies	451
Grauels increase hindered	452
To expell grauell	454
Outward remedies for the grauell	461
Grauels paine delaied	454
Grauell remedied	454, 455, &c.
Griping of the hart	270
Groynes swollen	274
Gum Amoniacke, looke <i>Ammoniacum</i> .	
Gums of the teeth	173
Gums bleeding	174
Gums vicer	161
Gums fistuled	175
Gums resoluing	176
Gums putrifying	<i>ibid.</i>
Gums impostumating	173
Gunpowder burning	594
Gats paine, looke Bowels paine.	

H.

H Ag or mare	150
Haires description	45
Haire to make it to grow	46
Haire made yellow	<i>ibid.</i>
Haire made blacke	<i>ibid.</i>
Haire made to curle	47
Haire that it waxe not gray	<i>ibid.</i>
Haire taken away	<i>ibid.</i>
Haire drawn out	47, 48
Haire infected diuersly	48
Haires falling out preuented	48, 49
Haire on the brests, what it signifieth	211
Hands end and vse	520
Hands description	<i>ibid.</i>
Hands how to keepe them cleane	<i>ibid.</i>
Hands how to make them sweete	521
Hands that are scabbed	<i>ibid.</i>
Hands that are chapped	<i>ibid.</i>
Hand waters, or lotions for the hands	521
	522, 523
Hardnes of the <i>Matrix</i> or Mother	495
Hartburning	334
Harts heauines	271
Harts panting or beating	263
Harts panting through heate	264
Harts panting through a bad stomacke	271
Harts panting through cold	268
Harts panting through frightening	271
Harts opression	200
Harts description	256, 257
Harts infirmities in generall	258
Headache	30
Headache, <i>Hemicrania</i>	35
Headache <i>Congelatio</i>	30, 136
Headaches causes	31
Headache with an Ague and a laske	33
Headache of inanition	35
Headaches <i>Hemicrania</i> , & <i>Cephalaa</i> cured	<i>ibid.</i>
Headaches remedies	<i>ibid.</i>
Headache of the Sun	36
Headache of drunkennes	<i>ibid.</i>
Headache of blowes or fals	37
Headache of colde	<i>ibid.</i>
Headache of colde, and an especiall remedy	
for it	39
Headaches that be old	195
Head which is cold, how to purge it	37
Head broken out	51
Head broken out healed	51, 52
Heads giddines, looke giddines of the head.	
Head vaines vse in opening of it	24
Head wounded	43, 54
Hearing	

The first Table.

Hearing that is bad	107	Impostume of the necke of the bladder	473
Hearing deminished	113	Impostume of the neck of the mother, looke Mothers impostume.	
Healthy how preserued from infectiō of the plague	654	Impostume of the Spleene, looke Spleenes impostume.	
What exercise to be vsed of them	658	Impostume of the stomacke	374
How their dwellings ought to be	656	Inappetencie or lost appetite, how reined	334
Their gouernement without doores	660	Incke how to make it	781
Heat of vrine, looke vrine that scalleth.		Infections of the liuer diuersly cured	395
Heat of vlcers, see inflammation.		Infection of the plague	668
Heat vnnaturall in the plague	673	Signes thereof	<i>ibid.</i>
Heat vnnaturall	680	Infected with the plague how to comfort, pag.	670
Heat of the head with Melancholie	34	And what things els are to be obserued	672
Herbes, rootes, and flowers, how to preserue them	6	Infected how to be purged	673
Herbes when they ought to be gathered	6	Inflammation in womens places	289
Herbes and rootes how to be reserued	6	Inflammation of vlcers	573
Herbed wines prepared	708, 784	Inflammation <i>Erysipelas</i>	562
Hermodyctyles vsed	12	the signes and remedies thereof	<i>ibid.</i>
Hickcoughs in generall	378	Joyns hardnes	541
Hickcoughes description	378	Ioynnt disease called <i>Arthritis</i> , 529, 530, 531	
Hickcough, of repletion and windines	379	Joynnt-ache, or paine in generall	527
Hickcough, of inanition	380	<i>Ischia</i> the hips Gout	531
<i>Hiera logodion</i>	732	Itchednes or scabbednes	556
<i>Hiera picra</i> prepared	731	Itche in the fundament	317
Hipocras or Claret wine howe to make it, pag.	708	Itch of the hands	521
Hipocras <i>fontis</i>	709	Iuice of wild Cucumbers prepared	11
Hoarsnes	185	Iuices of herbes, flowers, and rootes prepared	13
Hony water prepared	92, 728	Iuice of Sloes prepared	14
Hony of Roses	165	Iulep prepared	729
Horsleaches prepared	11	Iulep of Roses how made	396
Horsleaches vsed	27	Iulep of Violets	<i>ibid.</i>
Humaine seedes vnnaturall effluxion, looke running of the raines.		Iulep for the obstructed liuer through heate, pag.	387
Humaine seede increased	294	Iuory prepared	11
Humors melancholicke, how to purge	414		
Hunger, Cow-hunger, or <i>Bulimos</i>	382		
Hunger called hounds hunger	381		
Hunger lost remedied	334, 335		
Hunger with swooning, called <i>Syncopalis</i>	384		
Hunger vnsatiable	381		

I.

I <i>Liaca passio</i> , a griping in the vppermost smal guts	421
Impostumation of the gums	173
Impostume of the <i>Matrix</i> , hard to be cured, pag.	496
An hard Impostume of the Kidneies	444
Impostumes in the nose	95
Impostumes of the stomacke, of cold nature, pag.	375
Impostume of the bladder	473
Impostume of the liuer, looke Liuers impostume.	

K.

K Eepers of the infected with the plague, what to obserue	680
Kidneies description	439
Kidneies exulcerated	445, 447
Kidneies exulcerated outwardly	450
Kidneies impostume	444
Kidneies impostume through cold	447
Kidneies impostume through heat	446
Kidneies obstructed	441
Kidneies paine, of heat	442
Kidneies paine, of cold	439
Kidneies paine of heat eased	442, 443
Kidneies paine of windes	441
Knees description	525

Lac

The first Table.

L.

L <i>Ac Virginis</i> , that is Maiden milke prepared	57
<i>Lacca</i> prepared	12
<i>Latificans Almanforis</i>	132
Lamenes, looke Palsey	537
Lamenes caused by the poxe	574, 575
Laske	343
Laske called <i>Tenasmus</i>	366
Laske with parbraking, looke vomiting with a scouring	340
Laske <i>Lienteria</i> proceeding of Choler	344
Laske <i>Diarrhea</i>	347
Laske of the Liuer	351
Laske that is bloody, looke Bloody fluxe.	
Laske that is bloody, another kind	358
Laske remedied	343, 344, 347
Laurels vse	15
Lead prepared	9
Leannes remedied	617
Leaprofies description, signes, and causes, pag.	582, 583
Leaprofies remedies	584, 585, 586, &c.
Leprosies of all sortes what is requisite	591
Legs described	524
Legs <i>Varices</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
Letting of blood, looke blood letting.	
Lice killed	50
Lice, a water for them	50
Lice salve, looke Salve for lice	50
Lights description, see lungs.	
Lights obstructed	225, 227
Lims extenuated or withered	537
Lims vnseñsiblenes	551
Lims shaking or numbnes, looke members.	
Lips chapped	115
Lips described	115, 116
Lips trembling	116
Liuer description	384
Liuer diuersly remedied	395
Liuer of a Wolfe prepared	15
Liuer of a Bucke prepared	91
Liuer diseases in generall	385
Liuer obstruction in generall	<i>ibid.</i>
Liuer obstruction of cold	389
Liuer obstruction of heat	316
Liuer hardnes or scirrosity	392
Liuer ouer cold	<i>ibid.</i>
Liuer impostume	393
Liuer paine	385
Loathing of meat	337
Loathing of meate in agues	631
<i>Loch de Pulmone vulpis</i> described	239

<i>Loch de Canceris</i>	254
<i>Loch of Squils</i>	231
<i>Loch de Pino</i>	231
<i>Looch sanum & expertum</i>	231
Longings of women with child	505
Loofings diuersly prepared	201
Loofings for the cough and rheume diuersly prepared	<i>ibid.</i>
Losse of tasting	168
Losse of speech	173
Lousie euill	50
Lungs description	225
Lungs exulceration called <i>Empyema</i>	248
Lungs infection called <i>Peripneumonia</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
Lungs stopped	225, 227
Luxation of the ioints	536

M.

M Adnes	124, 130
Madnes called <i>Mania</i>	118, 124
Madnes called <i>Melancholia</i>	124
Mad mens dwelling place	127
Mans body deuided into fower parts	605
Maidens milke	57
Maie cheefe	728
Manna vsed	12
<i>Manus Christi</i> with pearles	16, 45
Marchpane prepared	739
Markes and spots in the skin	601, 602
Marmalade diuersly prepared	721
Marrow of diuers beasts prepared	11
<i>Matrix</i> description	474, 475
<i>Matrix</i> Canker and vlcer	498
<i>Matrix</i> vse in women	474
<i>Matrix</i> suffocation or ascension	489
<i>Matrix</i> impostume how remedied	496
Matter made with the vrine	449
Meade for the oppression of the breast	236
Meade, how to make it	532, 740
Measles, or the Red-gum in children	553,
	554
<i>Medicamen de Turbith</i>	362
Melancholy	124, 130
Melancholicke humors how to be purged, pag.	419
<i>Melancholia</i> hath in the body a certain place pag.	603, 605
<i>Meliceraton</i>	740
Members accidents	548
Members extenuated	539
Members luxation, looke Luxation.	
Members lamed	600
Members numbed	551
Members shaking	<i>ibid.</i>

Mem-

The first Table.

Members strained or bruised	548	Neckes description	187
Memories description	118	Neefing of a cold rhematicke head	42
Memory strengthened	120	Neefing, what it is	ibid.
Mettals that are venomous, looke venemous.		Neefings causes	ibid.
Methridate	733	Neefing powder	ibid.
<i>Mexereon</i> , her description	14	Neefingwoort, or Hellebors vfe	13
Milkes abundance	204	Nipples chapped	211
Milke curded or clotted	207	Noses Canker	94, 95, 97
Milkes description	205	Noses description	93
Milke in women defeeted	ibid.	Nose exulcerated	*93, 95
Milkes superfluity	206, 418	Nose obstructed	93
Milt, see Spleene		Nose obstructed in children	95
Mirobalanes prepared	12	Noses extirpation of flesh	ibid.
Mirobalanes vsed	122	Noses impostume	ibid.
Mischance in women with child	508	Noses infection called Polypus	97
Mischance preuented	509	Numbednes	136
Miseries of mankind, three causes	3	Nutmegs preferued	717
Miseries of mans life	1		
Miseries of new borne babes	2	O.	
<i>Mina</i>	355	Oile of S. Iohns woort	745
<i>Mina Citoniorum aromatica</i>	ibid.	Oiles for the stomacke in vomiting and scouring	341, 344
<i>Mola</i> , an vnshapen peece of flesh in the Mother	500	Oile of Antimony, of Steele, and Iron	751
Moles or markes that children are borne withall	602	Oile of Amber	741
Mothers Canker or vlcer	290, 498	Oile of Abrecock kernels	745
Mothers descension	491	Oile of Cammomill	743
Mothers description	288, 474, 475	Oile of Capers	ibid.
Mothers impostume	495	Oile of Costus	142, 743
Mothers necke conuulsed	ibid.	Oile of Beuercod	742
Mothers paine, of winds	493	Oile of Eggs	49, 744
Mothers paine, of cold	494	Oile of Euphorbium	744
Mothers paine, of heate	495	Oile of Annis feedes	ibid.
Mothers schirrofitie or hardnes	ibid.	Oile of blew Flowerdeluce	750
Mothers suffocation, looke suffocation of the Matrix.		Oile of Roses	749
Mothers vse in women	474	Oile of Sulphur	749
Mouthes description	161	Oile called Hypobalsamum	143
Mouthes conuulsion	145	Oile of Mandragora	741
Mouthes exulceration	161, 162	Oile of Rubarbe	784
Mouth stinking	163	Oile of Marierom gentle	747
Murre described	97	Oile of Scorpions	750
Murre cured	ibid.	Oile of Cloues	747
Muscilage, looke Slime.		Oile of Pepper	748
Muscles and Lacertes described	615	Oile of Rue	ibid.
Mustard seede prepared	14	Oile of water Lillies	750
		Oile of Spikenard	ibid.
		Oile of Elderne flowers	745
		Oile of Violets	751
		Oile of Nutmegs	747
		Oile of Vitrioll	752
		Oile of the seeds and flowers of Poppy	746
		Oile of Earthwormes	530, 746
		Oile of Dill	747
		Oile of Linnen cloth	747
		Oile of Lead	747
			Oil

The first Table.

Oile of Masticke	331	Order of dyet for giddines of the head	114
Oile of Foxes	212, 744	Order of dyet for those that are pursue,	234
Oile of the blossomes of Walnut trees	114		235
Oile of Wornewood	753	Order for them that recouer frō the Plague,	
Oile of Oliues	8, 742	or any lingering sicknes	680
Oile of Poplar buds	741	Order of dyet for an hot impostume of the	
Oile of Iuniper berries	752	Kidneies	446
Oile of Tyles	102, 753	Order of dyet in falling downe of the Paller,	
Oile of Quinces	331	pag.	167
Oyle of sweete Almonds	364, 746	Order of dyet in the Ague <i>Synochus</i>	641
Oile of Lillies	744	Order of dyet in hot rheumes	202
Oile of Hempseede	744	Order of dyet in obstructiō of the Liuer	391
Oile of diuers kindes	744	Order of dyet for outward vlcers of the Kid-	
Oile of bitter Almonds	746	neies	451
Oiles diuers moe to be prepared	744, 745,	Order of dyet for the Grauell and stone	462
746, 747, &c.		Order of dyet for the Dropfie	407
Oile of Copperas	745	<i>Oxyroceum Vigonis</i>	212
Ointment of Roses described by <i>Mesuer</i> ,		<i>Oxyraton</i>	755
pag.	32	<i>Oxymel</i> diuersly prepared	44
Ointment in Consumption	255	<i>Oxymel</i> of Squils	38
Ointments or oyles for all cold stomackes.		<i>Oxyfaccchara</i> prepared	94
pag.	330		
<i>Opium</i> prepared and vsed	13		
Order of dyet in the Rupture	287		
Order of dyet in the headache, of heat	35		
Order of dyet in a cold headache	43		
Order of dyet for watering & rūning eies	71		
Order of dyet in bleeding at the nose	98		
Order of dyet in diseases of the eares	105		
Order of dyet for weake memory	119		
Order of dyet in the sleeping diseafe	135		
Order of dyet in the dead Palsy	147		
Order of dyet in the Falling euill	152		
Order of dyet in <i>Bronchocela</i>	187		
Order of dyet in cold rheumes	198		
Order of dyet in the Pleurisie of heat	218		
Order of dyet in the sperting of blood	246		
Order of dyet in the Consumption	252		
Order of dyet in the debility of the hart	259		
Order of dyet in swounings	261		
Order of dyet in the Pyles	305		
Order of dyet in the paine and windines of			
the stomacke	332		
Order of dyet in a hardned Spleene	414		
Order of dyet in the inuoluntary effluxion of			
vrine	464		
Order of dyet for women with childe	504		
Order of dyet in the Canker	572		
Order of dyet in the Leaprosie	584		
Order of dyet in hot Agues	628, 629		
Order of dyet for them that recouer after a			
long sicknes	633		
Order of dyet in the Plague	679		
Order of dyet for them that are bitten with a			
mad dog	699		

P.

P alsy or <i>Paralysis</i>	134, 135, 137
Palsy through fals or blowes	144
Pallet of the throate falling downe	166, 167
Pallets description	166
Paine in the head, looke Headache	
Paine in the eyes, looke Eies paine.	
Paine in the eares, looke Eares paine.	
Paine in the teeth, looke Toothache.	
Paine in the ioints, looke Iointache.	
Paine in the backe, looke Backe paine.	
Paine of the Pyles, looke Pyles pained.	
Paine of the stomacke, looke Stomacke.	
Paine in the left side vnder the short ribs,	
looke Spleene pained.	
Paine in the right side vnder the short ribs,	
looke Liuer pained.	
Paine in the Kidneies	443
Paine in the mother through cold	494
Paine in the same through heat	495
Paine in the hips or <i>Sciatica</i> , through heate	
and cold	533, 534
Paine of the <i>Podagra</i> , or Gout of the feete	
pag.	545
Paine in the Poxe of long continuance	580
Paine in the throate through <i>Pblegma</i> and	
cold taking	193
Paine in the teeth through outward causes,	
	177, 178
Palsy that is shaking	137
Palsy that is dead	139, 140
Paine in the bowels, looke Bowels pained.	
Paine	

The first Table.

Paine in the belly, looke Bowels pained.		Plague prevented	654
Paine in the belly remedied	428	Plague sore or Carbuncle	564
Paine in the belly of yoong children	431	Plague sore, what	564, 675
Paine in the Kidneies	442, 443	whence it proceedeth	ibid.
Paine of retention of vrine	466	when it appeareth, how to be remedied,	
Paine of the mother	493	pag.	675, 676, 677.
Paine of the ioints, an especiall remedy	550	Plague sore not appearing, what is to bee	
Paine of wounded sinewes remedied	612	doone	678
Paines description	367, 368, 619	Plaister Diachilon, how made	518
Parbraking with a laske, looke vomiting.		Plaisters in the rheumes	198
Patients before whose eies Gnats seeme to		Plaister <i>Basilicum</i>	565
appeare, what to refraine	83	Plaister for headache	31
Peale of the eie	78	Plaister <i>de Muscilaginibus</i>	64
Peaches preferred	355, 719	Plaister to heale the corners of the eies	77,
Peares preferred	712	79	
Pearles prepared	9	Plaister for the rednes of the eies	69
Peccorall potion prepared	229	Plaister for watering eies and cold rheumes,	
Peccorall salue	ibid.	pag.	72, 74, 200
Pestilentiall agues, looke Agues pestilentiall.		Plaister of Bayberries	329
Phlebotomies cause and commoditie	20	Plaister called the blacke plaister	567
Phlebotomy forbidden	21	Plaister of Falkenstone	569
Phlegmes description	603, 605, 619	Plaisters for Rupture	277
Phisickes commendation	4	Plaister <i>Gratia Dei</i>	566
Phisicall bookes diuision	5	Plaister for wounds	598
Phisickes description	4	Plaister called <i>Emplastrum griseum</i>	610
Phisickes necessitie	ibid.	Plaister <i>Apostolicum</i>	313
Phisicke is a sure pawne	ibid.	Plaister <i>de Pelle Arietis</i>	278
Phisicke waights	29	Plaister <i>Oxycroceum</i>	213
Piles called <i>Verrucales</i>	312	Plaister of <i>Cerussa</i>	275
Piles called <i>Hæmorrhoides</i>	304	Plaister <i>Diapompholigos</i>	265
Piles that hang far out	312	Plaister <i>de Crustapanis</i>	341
Piles that bleede ouer much, looke bleeding		Pleurisie diuersly remedied	219, 220, 224
pag.	306, 308,	Pleurisie a dangerous disease of the breast	216
Piles opened	309	Pleurisie of heate	217
Piles, their paine	310	Pleurisie, an expedite cure	220
Pils pestilentiall	662	Pleurisie, of <i>Cholera</i>	ibid.
Pils <i>Inde</i> prepared	413	Pleurisie, of <i>Phlegma</i>	221
Pils for all kind of laskes, and the tearmes in		Pleurisie, of <i>Melancholia</i>	222
women	357	Pleurisie bastard	ibid.
Pils that moue vrine	398	Pleurisie in women with child	223
Pils for the plague especiall good	663	Small pockes	553, 556
Pils of Amber	324	Small pockes called Swine pockes	555
Pils of diuers kindes	755	French pockes	574
Pils to preferue health	237	Sundrie waies to cure the same	575, 576, 577
Pils to binde	350	578	
Pils for the Gout of <i>Charles</i> the Emperor	542	For the pockes that haue long continued	580
Pissing of blood	448	Pockes cured	574, 576, 578
Pissing of matter, look matter made by vrine		Poisons remedies	692, 693, 695, &c.
Pith prepared	8	Poison how to preuent it	686
Places in women described	288	Poisons that grow out of the Earth	688
Places exulcerated by copulation	289, 290	Poisoning how to be preferred from it	686
Plague	653, 654, 645, &c.	Poison taken the signes	687
Plague described	ibid.	Polypody prepared	10
Plague cured	668, 669, &c.	Pomado prepared	116
Plaques causes and signes	653	Pomanders for the plague	36

The first Table.

Pomanders for the headache	40
Pomanders for a cold headache	<i>ibid.</i>
Pomanders, how to be made	<i>ibid.</i>
Pomanders for a bad sight	89
Pomanders for the rheume	197
Pomanders for the infeebled or lost smelling	102
Potion of Dodder for all melancholy diseases	132
Potions that purge	363
Potions for the stone	454, 455, 459
Potions diuersly prepared	777
Potions to expel wind of the stomacke	370
Potions for the liuer obstructed through cold	390
Potion for hoarsenes	186
Powders for meate	90, 123, 325
Powder of the Emperour against the plague, pag.	665, 666
Powder that is red for Chirurgians	567
Powder for Melancholy maruellous good	133
Powder passauant	362
Powder of Sene	363
Powder <i>Medicamen Turbith</i>	362
Powder for memorie	120
Powder for the shaking palsey	138
Powder of Rafis for the eies	66
Powders for panting of the hart	266
Precious stones prepared	9
Preparation of diuers things	8
Preseruatiues against the plague	662
Preserued blacke Cherries	710
Preserued red Cherries	725
Preserued Orange peeles	710, 713
Preserues that comfort the stomack	711, 714
Preserued Citrons	714
Priuities and their diseases	274, 275
Prunes Conserue	719
Purgations for the rheume	197, 201
Putrification of the bones	550
Pursiuenes with a sore old cough	238
Purgations vsed in hot Agues	632
Purgations diuersly prepared	361, 362
Purgatiue potions	361
Purging what is to be done in it	17
Purging, who must forbear	<i>ibid.</i>
Purging past what afterward is to bee done, pag.	18
Purging Tabulates of Ginger prepared	362

Q.

Q Vicksiluer, how mortified	51
Quinces purging Conserue	720
Quinces preserued	720

R.

R Aspes preserued	716
Raines, and their paines	301
Rednes of the eies, looke eies that be red.	
Redgum and Measles, looke Measles.	
Outward remedies for obstruccion of the liuer through cold	391
Outward remedies for a cold stomacke	330
Remedies for the cold Peurisie	224
Remedy approued for the Gout	546
Retention of vrine in generall	465
Rheumes that will not passe thorough the nose	203
Rheumes description in generall	194
Rheumes that are cold	195
Rheumes that are hot	200
Rheumes that fall on the lights	225
Rheumes with Agues	202
Ribs described	216
<i>Rob de Granatis</i>	343
<i>Rob de Cornubus</i>	354
Rootes of the greater Pimpernell preserued, pag.	713
Rootes of red Beetes preserued	723
Rose, a certaine inflammation called <i>Erysipela</i>	562
Roses signes	<i>ibid.</i>
Rosin prepared	9
Rubarbe prepared and vsed	19
Rules for such as are recovered of the pleurisie	224
Rule of liuing in the Consumption of the Lights	252
Rules for Agues	639
Running of the raines	290
Running of the raines with heat	291
Running of the raines with cold	293
Rupture	276
Rupture which is fleshie	283
Rupture of broken vaines called <i>Varicosa</i> , pag.	284
Rupture called <i>Buris</i>	284
Rupture about the Cod	277
Rupture in the Cod	280
Rupture thorough windes	281
Rupture, called the water Rupture	<i>ibid.</i>
Rupture through blood	282
Rupture with the falling down of the bowels	285
Rupture in children	286
Rupture in children incurable	277
Ruptures reuerfion how to stay	286

Salcu

The first Table.

S.		Seede of man increased	294
Salve for running and sore eies	75	Sene leaues prepared and vsed	14
Salve of Orenge	437	Sewets of diuers beasts prepared	11
Salve for the rednes of the eies	69	Shaking of the ioints	351
Salve to kill Lice withall	50	Shaking through feare	683
Salve of Roses	32	Shaking Palsey	137
Salve cooling of <i>Galen</i>	<i>ibid</i>	Shins description	325
Salve for the lousie disease	51	Short breath, looke Breath	
Salve of the Apostles	95	Shoulder blades described	215, 216
Salve laxatiue	365	Sicknes that is cold described	621
Salve of <i>Gallia</i>	487	<i>Sief de Fellibiu</i>	86
Salve of Basill	564, 565	<i>Sief of Roses</i>	72
Salve of Egypt	567	<i>Sief Memithe</i>	66
Salve for the poxe	579	<i>Sief, diuers kindes</i>	761
Salve for wounds, looke wound salues.		Sights strenthening	515
Salve called <i>Vnguentum Fuscum</i>	599	Signes of instant deliuerie	516
Salve for shrunken sinewes	143, 148	Simples that conduce to the head	43
Salve of <i>Agrippa</i>	749	Sinewes that are slacke or resolued	613
Salues of diuers kindes	759, 760	Sinewes conuulsed through the Palsey	147
Salve of Saunders	293	Sinewes conuulsed, looke Conuulsion	
Salve called <i>Vnguentum Anterum Mesue,</i>		Sinewes description	611
pag.	596	Sinewes paine remedied	<i>ibid.</i>
Salve for tumors of the groine	274	Sirup of Sorrell	762
Salve preserving from the dead Palsey	143	Sirupe of Wormewood	<i>ibid.</i>
Sand of the Kidneies and bladder, looke		Sirupe of Sene leaues	365
Grauell.		Sirupe for the paine in the head	95
<i>Sarcotica</i> , that causeth flesh to grow	601	Sirupe how to prepare or make it	35
Scabbednes	556	Sirupe of Roses	44
Scammony prepared	14	Sirupe of Mulberries	164
Scammony vsed	<i>ibid.</i>	Sirupe of Nutshels	165
Scabs on the shins, how remedied	524	Sirupe of Mints	355
Scalding of vrine	471	Sirup of Quinces	345
Scalding with hot water	592	Sirupe of Ireas	766
Scalles of burning	592	Sirupe of water Lillies	767
Scall or scurfe of the head	31	Sirupe of Mirtles	356
how to plucke it away	54	Sirupe of Vineger	762
Drie scurfe of the hands	521	Sirupe of Citrons	763
Schirrosity of the stomacke	378	Sirupe of Veriuice	<i>ibid.</i>
Schirrositie of the Liuer	392	Sirupe of Orenge	763
Schirrosity of the mother	495	Sirupe of Berberies	<i>ibid.</i>
Seedes confected	709	Sirupe of Byzantine	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Sene preparata puluis</i>	365	Sirupe of Burrage	764
Scouring proceeding of the stomack & liuer		Sirup of field Mints	<i>ibid.</i>
pag.	351	Sirup of Citron peeles	766
Scalding in the throate, looke Hartburning.		Sirupe of Fumitory	<i>ibid.</i>
Scouring by stoole, looke Laske.		Sirupe of Pomegranates	765
Sculs contusion	55	Sirupe of Hissope	<i>ibid.</i>
Sculs description	54	Sirupe of Apples	266
Sculs fracture, an especiall salue for it	55	Sirupe of Iulibes	768
Scruies description	680	Sirupe of Poppy heads	767
the signes thereof	<i>ibid.</i>	Sirupe of Horchound	768
remedies to cure the same	681	Sirupe of Roses laxatiue	332, 632
<i>Sciatica</i> , looke Gout of the hips	531	Sirupe of Violets	769
Seandine expelled	516	Sirupe de <i>duabus Radicibus</i>	518
		Sirupe de <i>quinque Radicibus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>

The first Table.

Skin of the head described	54	Stone of the bladder	
Skins description in generall	551, 552	To breake and expell the stone	454, 455
Skin infected how	552	suffocation of the Matrix	489
To cause the skin to grow	601	Sweating good for all Dropfies	405
Skins external infection	592	Swellings after an ague	652
Skinne making or cicatrising medicines,		Hard swellings	560
pag.	600	Swellings of groins, armpits and eares	563
Skinnes that coner the braines wounded		Swelling of womens places	289
pag.	56	Swine pockes	555
Sleepe procuring remedies in Agues	632	Stitch in the breast, looke Pleurisie.	
Sleepes description	618	Stinking breath, looke Breath.	
Sleepes hinderances	ibid.	Stomachicall confections	324
To procure sleepe to the franticke	128	Stomachicall powders	325
Sleepe procured diuersly	618	Stomackes description	317
Sleeping diseafe <i>Lethargia</i>	118, 134	Stomackes mouthes description	318
Slime or Musilage of seedes & rootes	49	Stomackes digestion preserved	320
Sloes preserved	723	Stomacks debilitie in generall	323
Smell lost	100	Stomacks debility, of cold	324
Sope, to take away her bad smell	33	Stomacks debility, of heat	332
Sope bals for a cold head	40	Stomacks debility, of drythe	334
Sores of the head, looke head broken out.		Stomacks wambling, looke Wambling.	
Sores, looke vlcers.		Stomacks paine in generall	367
Sore caught through carnall copulation,		Stomacks paine of heate	368
pag.	290	Stomacks paine of colde	369
For all manner old sores	564	Stomacks paine of winde	369, 370
For sores in the pockes	581	Stomacke swollen	372
Speech hindered, looke toongs slownesse.		Stomacke pained of melancholy	373
<i>Species liberantes</i>	665	Stomacks impostume	374, 375
<i>Species Hiera</i>	360	Stomacks paine through <i>Phlegma</i>	372
Species of diuers kinds	270	Stomacke exulcerated	376
Spetting of blood through Lights diseafe,		Stomacks schirrosity or hardnes	378
pag.	242	Stones, see Testicles.	
Spleene vaine, looke vaine of the Spleene.		Stone of the bladder hindered from grow-	
Spleenes description	408	ing	452, 453
Spleenes obstruction with heate and Agues,		Strong water	776
pag.	409	Sugar cakes made	737
Spleenes impostume	411	Sugar penners prepared	16
Spleenes obstruccion without agues but with		Sugar clarified	15
paine	411	Sugar plates	16
Spleene pained	409, 411	Suppositories	360
Spleenes schirrositie	412	Suppositories for windines	370
Spleenes externall remedies	415	Sweat in plague how to be procured	669
Spleenes melancholicke humors	418, 419	Sweate describe	609
Splinter, looke thorne.		Sweate prouoked	610, 611
Spots of fals	602	Swouning	258
Spots taken out of cloth	729	Swouning called <i>Syncope</i>	260
Spots of the skin	601	<i>Synovia</i> how to stay it	600
Spots of heate remedied	602		
Spots of the face cured	57		
Squinancie, looke tumor in the throat	190		
Squintnes, looke eyes squintnes.			
Straines of the face	57		
Steele prepared	15		
Stretch of the Armeholes, how remedied	519		
Stone of the Kidnoies	451		

T.

TAbulates how to make them, look cakes
 Terms in women, their description 476
 Termes in women procured 477, 478
 Termes in women to be stayed 484
 Teeth that stand on edge 181
 Teeth kept good 184
 Teeth

The first Table.

Teeth made white	184	Tumour of the throte with heate	191
Teeth cleansed	183	Tumour of womens breasts, looke breasts	
Teeth doubled	<i>ibid.</i>	swollen	
Teeth drawne and fallen out	182	Tumour of the groynes	274
Teeth that are loose fastened	<i>ibid.</i>	Tumour of the Cods through water, looke	
Teeths description	176	Rupture	
Teeth in children furthered	177	Tumour of womens places	289
Teeth that are hollow and rotten	180	Turbith his preparation and vse	15, 362
Teeth with wormes, looke wormes	<i>ibid.</i>	Tuty prepared	15, 69
Teeths gnashing	181		
Testicles description	276, 288	V.	
Tenasmus described	366		
The remedies for the same	367	V Aines which are to be opened in euery	
<i>Theriaca magna</i>	735	diseafe	24
<i>Theriaca diateffaron</i>	736	Vaine of the head	<i>ibid.</i>
Thirst in hot agues	631	Vaine of the lyuer	<i>ibid.</i>
Thirst through drythe of the Lyuer	395	Vaine Median, or Median vaine	25
Thornes or splinter how to be drawne out		Vaine of the arme pits	<i>ibid.</i>
of the skinne	595	Vaine of the Spleene.	<i>ibid.</i>
Throte stopped of something gotten into		Vaine of the hips	<i>ibid.</i>
it	189	Vaine of the Mother	<i>ibid.</i>
Throte with a horseleach in it	<i>ibid.</i>	Vaine of the knees	26
Throtetumor, looke Tumour		Vaine of the forehead	<i>ibid.</i>
Throte exulcerated	194	Vaine of the eyes	<i>ibid.</i>
Throwes in Childbirth prouoked	514	Vaine in the temples	<i>ibid.</i>
Throwes after Childbirth eased	517	Vaine of the nose	<i>ibid.</i>
Toes their commoditie	526	Vaine in the lips	<i>ibid.</i>
Tongues description	167	Vaine of the tongue	<i>ibid.</i>
Tongues slownes	169	Vaines of the neck	27
Tongue moystened	176	Vaine that is broken in the brest or lights.	
Tongues <i>Alcola</i>	171	Pag.	245
Tongues impostume	172	Vaines that are broken. called <i>Varices</i> .	524,
Tongue swollen	<i>ibid.</i>	567	
Toothach of inward causes	177	Vaines description in generall	24, 604
Toothach cured	178, 179	Venemous beafts	694
Toothach in the Poxe	180	Venemous mettals	693
Toothach by touching of cold things	181	Venims of diuers kinds	685
Treacles vertues and operation	735	Veriuiue how to be made	706
Trembling	684	Vernish how to be made	781, 782
<i>Triapharmacos</i> plaister	313	Vineger of Roses	759
<i>Triphera</i>	736	Vineger of Squils	624
<i>Trocisci de Olbano</i>	343	Vlcers of womens places	290, 498
<i>Trocisci de Myrrha</i>	780	Vlcers in generall	564
<i>Trocisci</i> diuersly prepared	114	Vlcers that run and stinke	69, 566
<i>Trocisci de sulphure</i> , or <i>Adulphi</i>	239	Vlcers corroding in generall	568
<i>Trocisci de Spodio</i>	345	Vlcer corroding called <i>Herpes</i>	570
<i>Trociscos</i> of Roses	324	Vlcers inflammation cured	573
Tumour which is hard, called schirrous	571	Vlcer <i>Cacoethe</i>	592
Tumour after agues	652	Vlcers of the shins how healed	525
Tumour, nodes, Byles, and other hard swellings	560	Vlcers in the kidneies	445
Tumours of the skinne in generall	559	Outward vlcers of the kidneies, 450. and	
Tumours of the throate or Almonds in the same	163	how remedied	450, 451
Tumour of the throte called Squinancy	190	Vlcer of the Matrix	498
		Of all manner old vlcers	564
		Vlcerations of the priuie members	69
		Vvna-	

The first Table.

Vnnaturall heate	608	Wombs description and vse	474, 475
Vnnaturall things that are fixe	28, 234	Wombs descension, looke mother.	
<i>Vnguentum neruinum</i>	614	Good for childbearing women	502
Vomiting through weakenes of the stomack	338	How to know whether a woman be with childe. <i>ibid.</i> and whether with a boy or a girle	503
Vomiting with a scowring	340	What commonly appeares in women with Childe	<i>ibid.</i>
Vomiting in Agues	632	Waters called golden waters, and elixers of life	726
Vomiting of women with Childe	506	Waters for to wash the hands	728
Vomitories	135	Water for lyce, looke lyce water.	
Voyce described	185	Wearisomnes described	617
Voyce cleered	186	Whites in women	488
Vrine to moue in the Drop sic	404	Wilde Cucumbers, looke iuice of wilde Cucumbers.	
Vrines abundance	462, 472	Wilde Saffron prepared	13
Vrine that scaldeth or burneth	471	Wine of <i>Asarabacca.</i>	46
Vrines retention by obstruction of the passages	470	Wine forbidden in all infirmities of the finewes.	138
Vrines effluxion	462	Wine of Eyebright to strengthen the sight.	88
Vrines effluxion through cold	<i>ibid.</i>	pag.	
Vrines effluxion through heate	463	Wine of diuers sorts	782, 783, 784, 785
Vrines retention by the debilitie of the vertue retentive	467	Wine for the cold headach	39
Vrines retention through falles or blowes.	469	Wines amended that haue a fault	790
pag.		Womens priuities. 288. looke places.	
Vulnerall plaisters	598	Women made narrow like maydens	290
Vulnerall potions	597	Women with child. 502, 503. for to comfort the wombs vertue retentive	299
Vulnerall salues	599	Women with childe their strange longings.	

W.

W Afers how to make them	728	Wolfs lyuer, looke lyuer of a Wolfe.	
Walnuts preferued	718	Wormes in the Arsegut called <i>Ascarides</i>	438
Wambling of the stomack	337, 338	Wormes preuented	433
Warts	553	Wormes of the belly	432
Warmth naturall of man described	607	Wormes of the teeth	180
Water that bindeth the body and stayeth the laske	34	Woundes and all that appertaineth vnto them	595
Water of the Emperour Frederick for the eyesight	88	Wounds stitched	596
Water of M. Tristram	57	Wounds to make them matter	600
Water for all manner of madnes	137	Wounds with proud flesh in them	<i>ibid.</i>
Waterish moysture of mans body, looke <i>Pblegma.</i>		Wounds fresh	597
Waters for diseases of the lyuer	395		
Water of beanes	459		
Waters to wash the mouth and other parts in the Leprosie	588		
For him that cannot hold his water, looke vrines effluxion.			
Williams potion for the stone	455		
Wines for the grauell and stone	460		

Y.

Y Arde exulcerated in the acte venereall	
pag.	374
Yards vnnaturall erection, called <i>Priapismus</i> and <i>Satyrisinus</i>	275, 276
Yellow Iauandise	396, 397, &c.

The end of the first Table.

This second Index containeth all the Simples that are
specified in this Worke, as Rootes, Herbs, Flowers, Fruits, Plants, Iuices, Gums,
Woods, Stones, Barks, Metals, Minerals, and Earths; Also
all the parts of Beasts and of the body of man, that are.
or may be vsed in Physicke.

A.

A Bacoakes, or Peaches, are called in
 Latine *Mala armeniaca*, *Mala prae-*
cia, and *Bericocia*, others do call them
Mala tereacina, and the common sort name
 them *Chrysomela*, but this is the right and
 true Latine name of the Orange: it is a
 fruite sufficiently knowne, and growing
 in this our Countrey.

Adders tong, is called of Plinie *Lingua*, and
Lingula, of the Herbarists *Echioglossum*,
Ophioglossum, *Lingua viperina*, *Lingua serpen-*
tina, and *Lingua vulneraria*. This herbe is
 to be gathered only in Aprill and in May,
 it groweth in moyst medowes and lowe
 grounds, and that at no other time then in
 the abovesayd moneths. It is vsed in vul-
 nerall potions, oyles and salues.

Alecoste, or Indish Pepper, in Latine *Lepi-*
dium, *Piperitis*.

Alehoose, or (as some say) Harehoose, is called
 in Graeke and in Latine *Chamaecissus*, *Seli-*
nitis, *Hedera humilis*, and *Corona terra*, by the
 Herbarists *Hedera pluvialis*, and by the A-
 pothecaries *Hedera terrestris*.

Allium alpinum, it is also called *Allium reticu-*
latum, *Victoralis*, and *Victoralis longa*, to dis-
 tinguish it from *Gladiolus segetalis*, which
 by diuers authoꝝ is called *Victoralis rotun-*
da, although in very deepe they differ great-
 ly. The leafe of this heerd is not much vn-
 like to that of Parselowt, the roote is long
 and hairie, twisted together, as if it had
 bene done of purpose with the hand, where-
 of two of them are layd crosse one ouer ano-
 ther as the legs of man or woman other-
 whiles are placed. This roote do the coſe-
 ning Merchants (I meane the Mount-
 banks and Quackſaluers) sell for the right
 Handagoza, or Handake, saying that
 they haue digged it vp under the gallows
 with great hazard of their liues; thus do
 they beguile and seduce the common sort of
 men with vntruths, which ought by the
 Magistrates to be seuerely punished, and
 so; a small peece of siluer to be permitted,
 otherwise I feare they shall be called to an
 accompt for it, when it shall be sayd, *Redde*
rationem uillicationis tuae.

Allum, *Alumen*, *Alumen liquidum*, *Alumen lipa-*
rinum, *Alumen rubrum*, the Apothecaries
 call it *Alumen de Rocha*.

Amber, in Latine *Ambarum*, *Ambar*, *Ampar*,
Succinum orientale, and at the Apothecaries
Ambra, it is a pretious liquoꝝ, and a kinde of
 sweete smelling earth.

Amethyst, *Amethystus*, a pretious stone.

Ammy, *Ameos*, *Anamim*, *Anam*, *Cuminum ve-*
gium *Hippocratis*, *Cuminum Alexandrinum*,
 and *Cuminum Ethiopicum*, it is a kinde of
 plant, which beareth a sharp & sweete taste,
 which the Apothecaries do call *Ameos*.

Anacardus, or *Anacardum*, is a strange fruite
 so called.

Angelica, is called by diuers & sundry names,
 for that there be diuers sorts of it, as *Hippi-*
atricus, *Lasaron Gallaticon*, in Graeke, *Las-*
er Gallicum, *Laserpitium Gallicum*, and of the
 Herbarists *Imperatoria*, *Ostrutium*, and *A-*
strutium, the Apothecaries do call it *Astra-*
ntia, and *Magistrantia*.

Anthoza, is called of Paulus *Egineta*, *Arnabo*,
 and of the Arabian writers *Zurumbet*, of the
 Simplicists *Zurumbetum*: It is a sweete
 smelling roote like to Ginger, but it is bitter
 in taste. It is commonly called *Zedoaria*,
 but vniuſly; for there is no small difference
 betwene *Zurumbet*, that is *Antbora*, & *Ze-*
doaria of the Arabians, as manifestly ap-
 peareth by the words of Auen and Scra-
 pio, who do write of thele two in sundry
 chapters severally: wherefoze the *Zedoaria*
 of the Arabians is not our *Antbora*, al-
 though that it hath bene falsly vsed in ma-
 ny compositions for it, but it is the roote of
 Seduary.

Anthoza, is an herbe not much unlike the les-
 ser Wolfsbane, but that it groweth some-
 what higher, and the flowers are a little
 lesse and yelow. It hath two black rootes
 round like vnto an olive, blackish without,
 and as it were withered; within white,
 and solide. It groweth in great quantitie
 on the hills in Sauiy, and about Genewa, also
 about Salines in high Burgundy, and on the
 hills of Switzerland. The latter Graeke wi-
 ters call it *Zadura*, *Zaduaria*, *Zedura*, *Zu-*
dar, *Zaduara*, *Zadur*, *Zadara*, *Zaduar*, and
Zedar: Scrapio calleth it *Zedoaria*, *Auicenn*
Zeduar,

The second Index.

Zeduar, *Gieduar*, and *Napellus Moysi*. The Simplicists name it *Anthora*, *Antithora*, and *Anthulla*: wherefore whensoever you shall finde *Zurumbet* in any composition, then be sure to take *Anthora*, but if you reade *Zedoaria*, then take *Doronicum*.

Antimony, in Græke *Stibi*, *Stibium*, or *Stimmi*, of Galen *Gynacium*, and of Plinie *Platyophthalmion*: it is called at the Apothecaries by the barbarous name *Antimonium*. Plinie also calleth it *Alabastrum*, which name is proper only to *Alabaster*; it is a minerall like to *Lead*, and knowne of all men.

Argentine, *Argemone altera*, *Inguinaria* Plinij, *Anserina*, *Argentina*, *Tanacetum sylvestre*, *Agrimonia sylvestris*, *Potentilla*, and *Potentilla*. This herb is sufficiently knowne, and much vsed for all paines and gripings in the belly, which are without any binding.

Aristology the round, vide *Hartwort*.

Aromaticall wyne, is a wyne made with spice, and a kinde of *Hippocras*, *Aromatites*. *Hippocras* is called in Latine *vinum Hippocraticum*: the *Claret wine*, *Clarea*, *vinum Claretum*, and at the Apothecaries *Claretum*.

Artichokes, are called in Græke and in Latine *Scolymus*, *Cinara*, *Cinarus*, *Acantha*, *Caſtus*, *Carduus altis*, *Sirobilus*, *Carchosilus*, *Articocalus*, and *Articoca*.

Ars smart, in Græke and in Latine *Hydropiper*, *Piper aquaticum*, *Piper caninum*, *Herba panonis*, *Panonaria*, and *Perficaria*, of Hippocrates, *Polycraton*, or *Polycriton*. It is a well knowne and contemned herbe, but very good for wounds; it is hot and dry. The other kinde, which by the unskilfull without any regard is vsed for the true *Ars smart*, is somewhat bigger, & hath blewish spots on the leaues, it is also something colder & dryer by nature then the former, and it is called *Perficaria maior*, and *Perficaria maculata*, and of Plinie *Plumbago*, and *Molybdæna*. The first sort is the right *Ars smart*, which is not only vsed in wounds, but also for the Piles, and the iuice of it for the women.

Asarabacca, *Asarum*, *Nardus rustica*, *Vulgago*, and as some say *Vulugo*: the Apothecaries call it *Asarum*, and some *Asarabaccara*.

Ash tree, in Græke and in Latine *Melia*, and *Fraxinus*, it is a common and well knowne tree.

Azure stone, *Cyanon*, in Latine *Lapis Cyaneus*, *Lapis ceruleus*, and *Lapis stellatus*, at the Apothecaries *Lapis lazuli*.

Auence, or herb bennet, *Gariophyllata*, *Auanitia*, *Sanamunda*, *Oculus leporis*, & of Plinie, *Geum*. *Axungia vehicularis*, or *Vnguentum vehiculare*, is a composition of Tarre and Tallow that countrey men doe vse to grease their cart wheeles withall, it is vsed for ruptures or hernyes.

B.

Bacon, is called of Plinie in Latine *Lardum*, and of Plautus, *Laridum*.

Badger, *Meles*, *Taxus*, *Tossus*, *Taxo*, it is a well knowne beast.

Barbery tree, in Græke and Latine *Oxyacantha* Galeni, *Crepinus*, and at the Apothecaries *Berberus*, and *Berberis*.

Barly, in Græke & Latine *Crithe* & *Hordenum*.

Bay tree, in Græke *Daphne*, in Latine *Laurus*.

There are two sorts of Bapes, the male & female kind. The female is the common Bay tree which beareth the berry: the male is altogether like to the former, but that it beareth no berries: the female is called of Plinie *Laurus baccalia*, and of the Herbarists *Laurus femina*, *Laurus baccifera*, and *Laurus fecunda*. The male is called *Laurus mas*, and *Laurus sterilis*. Both kinds are planted in Gardens with vs.

Baulme, *Melissophyllon*, *Meliphylon*, *Melittum*, & *Melittana*, in Latine *Asistrum*, *Citrargo*, & *Citraria*, of the Herbarists *Citronella*, *Melissolum*, & *Cedronella*, at the Apothecaries *Melissa*. *Nicolaus Myrepsus* calleth it in Græke *Melissochortum*, that is, *Herba apum*. Our baulme vndoubtedly is the right *Melissophyllum* of the auncient Physicians, although diuers will gaine say it, for both in forme, virtues and operation do they agree. There be also two kinds of this herbe, the one, which is common & dayly vsed, of the which in this place we speake. The other hath long & tagged leaues, & browne flours, and it beareth the smell of a strong & odorous Limon, and it is called *Melissa Cretica*, and *Melissa Turcica*, to distinguish it from the other: both kinds are in vse.

Bearefoote, *Acanthus sen Acantha*, *Herba Topiaria*, *Herpicantha*, *Pæderos* or *Pæderotes*, *Melampphyllon*, of the simplicists *Branca Vrsina Italica*, to seuer it from our common Bearefoote, which is the right *Spondylium* of our auncelsters. The wild Bearefoote or *Acanthus*, is very common euery where in Germany, it groweth willingly in low and moyst medowes, and is there called of the common

The second Table.

common people *Graskol*. It is there ordinarily vsed in the pot amongst other pot-herbs. *Dioscorides* calleth it *Acanthus sylvestris*, the *Simplicists* call it *Carduus pratensis*, and *Brassica pratensis*.

Bære, *Cernisia*, *Zythum*.

Bætes are called of the *Grecians* *Tentlon*, *Tentlis* and *Seutlon*, of the *Latinists* *Beta*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Cicla*. There are two kinds of it, the white and red **Bætes**: the white **Bætes** are called *Beta candida*, & *Beta scula*, whence the barbarous names *Cicla*, and *Sicla* first began. The red **Bætes** are called *Beta rubra*, in English red **Bætes**, of which there are also another sort with a darke red coloured leafe, called *Beta nigra*. The white is vsed in *Phisick*, and the other in the *Kitchen*.

Bætings in *Græke* *Trophalis*, in *Latine* *Colostrum* and *Colostræ*.

Behen or **Ben**, are two rotes, the white and the red, they are seldome vsed seuerally. The white is knowne of all *Simplicists*, and it is called *Cardianthemum* of *Dioscorides* *Ocymastrum*, we know no other name for it but **Behen** or white **Ben**. The other sort which is brought vnto vs from *fozraine* countries, is called the red **Behen**, and but little accounted of with vs. Some do vse the rotes of *Tormentull* or of *Wimpernell* for it, and that indeede not amisse, for that the rotes of the red **Ben** is both without smell and taste, and also vncertaine.

Benzoine: *Benioninum*, *Belzoinum*, *Benzoinum*, and *Benzuinum*, is a sweete smelling iuice, which is called at the *Apothecaries* *Asa dulcis*: it is very seldome vsed alone, but is alwayes vsed in compositions, whether it be fuming candles, or sope balles.

Beryll: *Beryllus*, or *Beryllus*, it is a pretious stone palegreene coloured. There is another kind of it that is somewhat yellowish, and is called *Chrysoberyllus*, that is, a yellow **Berill**. The **Berill** is vsed for all infirmities of the hart, being mixed with other things.

Betony, in *Græke* and *Latine* *Cestron*, *psychotrophon*, *Betonica*, *Vetonica*, *Serratula*, & *Scribonius* doth call it *Hierabotanæ*, that is *Sacra herba*, otherwise is *Merueine* called *Hierabotanæ*.

Beuercod, *Castoreum*.

Bisnet, *Panis nauticus*, *Biscoctus*, *Bucellatum*, *Dipyrites Hippocrati*, it is bread twice baked.

Birdlime in *Græke* *Cleos*, in *Latine* *Viscum* or

Viscum, *gluten auiarium*, and *gluten ancupum*. *Bistoria*, in *Græke* and *Latine* *Bretanica*, *Briannica*, of the *Herbarists* *Serpentaria rubra*, *bistoria*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Serpentaria*, or *Colubrina*.

Blackbery bush, or **Bzier**: *Batus*, *Rubus*, *Morus Vaticana*. The fruite of this shrub is called the **Blackbery**, in *Græke* and *Latine* *Morabati*, *Morambi*.

Blites, in *Latine* *Blitum*, of the *Herbarists* *Beta insipida*, and *Beta fatua*. There be foure kinds of it: the first is the common **Blites**, and knowne by that name, *Blitum*, *Blitum album*. The second kinde hath red leaues, and is well knowne and common in euery Garden, called red **Blites**: the *Simplicists* do call it *Blitum rubrum*, and *Olus rubrum*. The third groweth on euery dunghill, it is much lesse, and is called wild **Blites**. The fourth kinde is brought vnto vs from *fozraine* countries, but now it is common in all Gardens, and it is called *Hungarian* or *Indian* **Blites**, the *Herbarists* do call it *Blitum Indicum*, *Blitum Vngaricum*, and *Blitum Topiarium*. The common **Blites** shall be vsed in all compositions, to wit, where **Blites** is named without any addition.

Bozrage, or **Burrage**: *Buglossum*, *Eupbrosynum*, *Nepenthes*, *Burago*, *Lingua bonis*, *lingua bubula*, and *Corago*.

Bozras, *Chrysocola fascitia*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Borax*. There is another kinde of *Chrysocola*, which the *Goldsmiths* were wont to vse in soldering, this is called of the *Grecians* *Chrysocola*, and in *Latine* *Anrightinum*, *Gluten auri*, and *Chrysocola natina*, but that is not taken inwardly as the common **Bozras** is.

Bzand, *sursur*, *Cantabrum*.

Bzimstone, in *Latine* *Sulfer*, *Sulphur*: there are two kinds of it, the one as it is digged out of the *Pine*, which is called *Sulfer vise*, in *Græke* *Theon Apyron*, and in *Latine* *Sulphur ignem non expertum*, and *Sulphur viuum*. The other kinde is the common sulphur or dead sulphur, in *Græke* *Theon pepyromenon*, in *Latine* *Sulphur ignem expertum*, *Sulphur fascitum*, and *sulphur mortuum*: but when soeuer *Sulfer* or **Bzimstone** is found in any composition, then shalt thou vnderstand *Sulfer vise*.

Bzyonie, in *Græke* *Ampelos Lence*, *Bryonia Lence*, *Psilothrum*, *Ophiosaphilos*, *Melotrum*, *Archisosthis*, *Cedrostis*, *Hippocrates* calleth it *Echitrostis*, *Plinie Madon*. In *Latine* *Bryonia*,

The second Table.

Vitis alba, and *Bryonia alba*, *Vua serpentina*, *Vua anguina*, *Rorastrium*, of *Apuleius*, *Dentaria*, and *Apiastellum*, in the Arabian tongue *Alphefera*, and *Fescera*. The other kind is called the black *Byponie*, but it is not so common with vs as the white: the leaues of this are not much unlike to the long Hartwozt leaues, but they are somewhat longer and tenderer, fashioned like a Hart: it runneth by into the hedges like the white. This black *Bziony* is called of *Dioscor.* *Ampelos melana*, *Chironios ampelos*, *Bucranium*, and *Plinie* calleth it *Cynacanthé*. In Latine *Bryonia nigra*, *vitis nigra*, *vitis chironia*, *Batanuta*, *Betisalca*, and of *Plinie* *Apronia*. The Herbarists call it *Tamarus*, *Taminus*, *Tamus*, and *vua taminia*, the Arabians *Alfessin*, and *Fessin*, yet it is altogether unknowne to our Physicians and Apothecaries. It groweth very much about *Lauterberge* in the woods and hedges thereabout. Whosoever thou dost find *Bypony* in any composition without any addition, then shalt thou vnderstand the white *Bziony* only.

Bzome, is altogether unknowne to the Grecians, *Plinie* calleth it *Genista*, at the Apothecaries *Genesta*, and *Genestra*. The Simplicists call it *Spartium scoparium*, and *Genista scoparia*, for a difference of the Spanish *Bzome*, which *Dioscorides* calleth *Spartium*.

Bucke, *Hircus*, of this beast are many things and parts vsed in Physick.

Buffle, *Bubalus*.

Buglosse, *Oretong*, *Lang de beuf*, in Latine and Græke *Buglossa*, *Buglossum*, *Lingua bouis*, *Lingua bubula*, the Grækes do also call it *Embrofynon*, or *Nepenthes*: these are the true names of the *Buglosse* of the auncient Physicians. The herbs that now adayes are called *Buglosses*, are in number 8, whereof three are tame or garden *Buglosses*, and five wild. The first kind is called the Spanish *Buglosse*, which is the true *Buglosse* of *Dioscor.* as euery one doth acknowledge that compareth it with the description, the Simplicists call it Spanish *Buglos*, *Buglossum semper virens*, and *Mesues* calleth it *Buglossa domestica*. The second kinde is called *Bozrage*, *Borago*, and *Corago*, it is both common and well knowne. Many do take this to be the right *Buglosse*, but indeede the former is to be taken for the right. The third is our small ore tongue, or *Lang de beuf*, which the Apothecaries do dayly vse, and is called the lesser *Buglosse*, and of the Her-

barists *Buglossa minor*, *Buglossa officinarum*. The fourth kind of *Buglos*, although with vs it be planted in gardens, yet notwithstanding it is a wild *Buglosse*, for by *Merburge* in *Lotteringe*, and also in *France* it groweth very common in euery field. It is called the greater *Buglosse*, Italian *Buglosse*, *Buglossum Italicum*, *Buglossum Gallicum*, and at the Apothecaries *Buglossa maior*, *Mesues* doth call it *Buglossa sylvestris*, and other will make a kind of *Echium* of it. The first kind (and the second among the wild *Buglosses*) groweth not about one sote in height, it beareth a purple floure admired with blew, it is commonly found in woods, & in sandy grounds: it is both in smell and taste like the lesser *Buglosse*, and is called also the lesser wild *Buglosse*. The Simplicists call this fifth kind of *Buglosse*, *Buglossa sylvatica*, *lingua ouina*, and *Cynoglossa minor*. The first kind (and the third wild *oretong*) groweth not about a span and a halfe in height, it is very sharp & prickling, it beareth a light blew floure, it is found in gardens, and in other well tild places of it selfe: the Herbarists call it *Buglossum Echiotis*, & *Buglossum sylvestre spinosum*. The 7. *Buglosse*, (and the fourth among the wild ones) is also commonly so called, it groweth euery where by the high way sides, and dry places, it is well knowne to euery man vnder the name of *Buglosse*, it is called in Græke & Latine *Echium*, *Alcibiaceum*, and of *Egineta* *Alcibiadium* and *Doria*, of the Simplicists *Buglossum viperinum*, & *Buglossum sylvestre*. The 8. kind & fifth wild *Buglosse*, is called red *Buglosse*, because that it hath red rotes, it is called in Græke and Latine *Anchusa*, but *Matthias sylvaticus* doth call it *Lactuca asinina*, the Herbarists call it *Buglossa rubra*, & the Apothecaries *Alcanna*, but *Alcanna* is otherwise taken for *Lignstrum*. The first six kinds of tame & wild *Buglosses* are moyst and metely warme, in time of neede they may be vsed one for another.

Bull, *Taurus*.

Burre the greater, in Græke, *Protopis*, *Protopium*, in Latine *Arcium*, *Personata*, *Personatia*, *Bardana*, and at the Apothecaries *Lappa maior*.

Butchers bzome, or *Kné holme*, in Græke *Oxymysine*, *Myrsine agria*, *Myrtacantha*, *Myacantha*, *Schinbus*, *Scingus*, *Catangelos*, *Gyrenia*, *Ocneron*, *Cine*, & *Chamamyrtus*. In Latine *Myrtus sylvestris*, *Myrtus aculeata*, *Myrtus*

The second Table.

Myrtus acuminata, *Myrtus humilis*, *Myrtus terrestris*, *Genitura Herculis*, *Ruscus* and *Spina murina*, the Herbarists do call it *spina vesperilionis*, *palma murina*, the Apothecaries *Bruscus*, and *Dioscor.* *Hiera myrtus*, that is, *sacra myrtus*. This butchers brome is only planted in Gardens in Germany, although his rootes and red berries be daily used of the Apothecaries. In France it groweth very common in diuers places, to wit, about Orleans, and Montargy.

C.

Cabbage, or Colewozt, a Cabbage is called in Græke *Crambe*, *Cephalote*, and *Nicander* doth call it *Gaster*: In Latine *Caulis imperialis*, *Brassica capitata*, *Brassica tritiana*, *Caulis capitatus*, *caulis albus*, *Brassica alba*, and the Apothecaries name it *Caputium*: this is most common of all other kinds of Colewozt, we call it a Cabbage. The other sort of Cabbages is called of *Plinie* *Lacuturris*, & of the *Simplicists* *Brassica lacuturria*, or *Brassica sabaudica*, of some Sauoy Colewozt. The third kinde is called the red Cabbage, in Græke *Cauloder*, in Latine *Brassica cumana*, *Brassica leuis*, & *Brassica rubra*. The fourth sort is named crisped, or crumpled Colewozt, this is much sweeter then any of the rest, and it hath crumpled or wrinkled leaues, like to the headed Lettice, for which cause it is called in Dutch *Lat-toucoule*, that is, Lettice colewozt, and by *Plinie*, *Brassica Sabellica*, & by the Herbarists *Brassica crispa maior*, and *Brassica dulcis*. The fifth sort is the lesser crumpled Cabbage, in Græke *Selinoides* or *Selinusia*, and by *Asbenus* *Brassica crispa minor*, *Brassica Apiana*, and *Caulis crispus minor*. The sixth kind is the common Colewozt, and is also used in phisick, it is called *Crambe*, *Caulis*, or *Brassica* without any addition. The seventh sort is the cauliflowery or flowered Cabbage, *Plinie* calleth it *Brassica Pompeiana*, & the *Simplicists* *Brassica Cypriana*, and *Florecaulis*. The eighth kind is called *Rapercule*, or *Rapocaulis*, but this sort was altogether unknowne to our predecessors.

Calamine, is the ore of brasse, *Cadmia*, *Cadmia fossilis*, *Cadmia natua*, for a difference of *Cadmia fastidia*, or Tutty, *Plinie* nameth it *Lapidem erosum*, the Apothecaries barberously call it *Climiam*, *Cathimiam*, & *lapidem calaminarem*, and those that worke in mines name it *Cobaltum*. This minerall stone is

much used amongst Chirurgions, and is the very best of all the sorts of *Cadmia*, as *Galen* witnesseth.

Calcedony, *Calcedonium* is a pretious stone, and a kind of *Onyx*.

Calmus was by the auncient Physicians called *Acorus*: some do take the great Galingall for it, & although the same be not the right *Acorus*, yet is their error more tollerable then of those that vse the *Ireas* roote in stead of *Calmus*.

Calmus Aromaticus, is the right *Calmus* of the auncient Physicians, and it is called *Acorus* and *Piperapum*: but the right *Calmus Aromaticus* is a sweete smelling reede, which is neuer brought vnto vs, and therefore we do vse *Acorus*, that is *Calmus*. which doth now supply the place both of *Calmus* and of *Calmus Aromaticus*.

Camelina is called of *Dioscorides* *Myagrum*, of *Theophrastus* *Erysimum*, of Herbarists *Camelina*, of the Apothecaries *Sesamum*. And although it be not the right *Sesamum* of the auncient Physicians, yet doubtles it may safely be used in stead thereof, because as yet the right *Sesamum* is not knowne. It hath power to warme reasonably, and to ease all manner of paine: wherefore it is much better to vse a thing in place of the true *Sesamum*, which is well knowne, then a thing altogether unknowne & vncertaine.

Camell, *Camelus*.

Cammiomils, in Græke and Latine *Chameamelum*, *Anthemis*, *Leucanthemis*, & *Leucanthemum*, the Apothecaries do call it *Chame-milla*, and *Camomilla*, *Chamemils* are hot and dry in the first degree.

Campher, *Caphora*, *Camphora*, in Latine and in Græke *Caphura*, it is a strong smelling iuice, or sap of a tree in Indy. It is cold and dry in the third degree, and it is much used in phisick. There is yet another kinde of Campher, which is a kind of minerall or of Amber, called Campher of the mine, that is hot and dry by nature. This kind of Campher is altogether unknowne to the Physicians, for which cause also it is not in vse.

Canker, in Latine & Græke *Carcinoma*, *Carcinus*, & *Cancer*, a virulent & corroding vlcere.

Canterbury bels, in Latine *Smilax lenis*, *volubilis*, *Campanula*, *Convolvulus*, *Campanella*, *Sandulaca*, *Coniugulum Catonis*, and *funis arborum*. This herb is knowen euery where.

Capers, in Græke & Latine *Capparis*, & *lustris*. **Capone**, *Capus*, *Capo*, and *Gallus Spado*.

The second Table.

Caruway, in Græke and Latine *Carum*: *Aetius* calleth it *Careum*, *Carium*: *Simeon* termeth it *Carnabadium*, others call it *Caroum*, and *Careosemen*. The Apothecaries call it *Carni*: and *Athenaeus* *Pastinaca maior*.

Carbuncle, in Græke and in Latine *Anthraxes*, and *Carbunculus*.

Carduus Benedictus, *Atractylis Hirsuta*, *Carduus Sanctus*, and *Carduus Benedictus*.

Carpe, in Græke and in Latine *Cyprinus*, *Carpo*, and *Carpio*: *Erasmus* doth call it *Carpa*.

Carot, *Carota*, *Pastinaca Rubra*.

Cassie canes or **Pipes**, in latine and in Græke *Cassia*, *Casia*, *Cassia Fistularis*, *Siliqua Egyptia*, and *Cassia Carthartica*.

Cassie wood, looke for *Cassia lignea*, or *Xylocassia* in the Latine Table.

Caterpillers, in Græke and in Latine *Campe*, *Eruca*, and *Brachus*: some men do call them *Erucula*: they are wormes sufficiently known that eat and spoyle all græne herbs, as Cabbages, leaues of hedges & trees. They that liue on the Pine trees and fir trees are called in Latine *Eruca Pinorum*, and *Eruca Piccarum*, in Græke *Pityocampe*.

Cats Pints, **field Pints**, **wilde Benniroyall**, *Calamintha agrestis*, or *Arvensis* and *Pulegium agreste*. Of *Mesua*, *Calamintha domestica*, *Calamintha felina*, and *Cattaria*.

Celendine, in Græke and Latine *Chelidonium maius*, *Crataea*, *Philomedium*, *Othonium*, *radix Pandionia*, *Aubium*, *Fabium*, and of the Alchymists *Celidonium*, of *Serapio* *Cauroch*, *Curcuma*, and of the Apothecaries *Celidonia*. It is an herbe common and well known: the Simplicists doe call it *Herba hirundinaria maior*. The second kinde is called the lesser **Celendine**, **Wilewozt**, or **Figwozt**: in Græke and in Latine *Chelidonium minus*, and *Triticum sylvestre*, of the Herbarists *Herba hirundinaria minor*, *Testiculus Sacerdotis*, *Scrophularia*, or *Scrophularia*, and at the Apothecaries *Celidonia minor*. The former kind is alwaies vnderstood if it be without any addition.

Centozie, in Græke and Latine *Centaurium minus*, *Lymnesium*, *Lymneum*, *Libadium febrifuga*, and *Fel terre*.

Ceruse, in Græke and Latine *Psymmitbium*, *Cerussa*.

Ceterach both great and small. The lesser **Ceterach** is called in Græke & in Latine *Scolopendrium*, *Hemionion*, *Asplenium*, of *Scribonius Largus* *Calcifraga*, of the Herbarists *Scolopendria vera*, and *Scolopendria minor*, *Splenium*, *Asplenium*, and *Ceterachum*. The Apotheca-

ries do call it *Ceterach* as the Arabians do, it is the true *Scolopendrium* of the auncients: *Theodorus Gaza* calleth it *Mula*, or *Herba Mula*. Our vnskillfull Physicians and Apothecaries doe vse the *Harts tong* *Phyllitis*, for the true *Scolopendrium* without any regard or care. If *Rosemary* were not so common, they would take the *Juniper tree* for it, and settle for *Parieroin*: wherefore it is a great grace that old women do so well knowe the herbes, otherwise would they often be deceived, sacking their whole trust and credite relyeth on the *Herbe-wines*. The other kind of *Ceterach* is also called *Harts tong*, of *Dioscorides* *Lonchitis altera*, of the simplicists *Scolopendrium maius*, *Scolopendria maior*, *Asplenium*, *Asplenium maius*, *Spicanum*, *Scolopendrium*, or *Asplenium sylvestre*, because it groweth in darke and moyst woods. Both these herbes doe take their names of the worme *Scolopendra*, which is called an *Carewig* or worme with many legs, because the leaues seeme to be noted with it. Both these herbes haue the same operation, for they are both hot in the first, and drye in the second degree: they are the best splenetical herbes that are to be found, for they are good for all maladies of the spleene.

Chasse tree is called in Græke and in Latine *Amiromianum*, *Agnos*, *Lygus*, *Agonus*, *Tridactylum*, *Lecrisilicum*, *Vitex*, and *Salix Armerina*: of the Herbarists *Piper agrestis*, *Piper Monachorum*, *Arbor casta*, and of the Apothecaries *Agnus castus*. There are two kinds of it, to wit, the greater and the lesser **Chasse tree**. The great groweth in height like the *Willow tree*, and hath also leaues most like it, it smelleth very pleasantly, the flowers are white and purple coloured. The other kind hath altogether purple flowers, it is fuller of bzaunches, hath whiter leaues, and is much lesse than the former.

Charuill, *Carephyllon*, and *Cherefolium*, and of the common Physicians and Apothecaries *Cerefolium*.

Chestnut tree, *Castanea*, *Glans Sardiana*, *Iouis glans*: the fruit is called *Nux Castanea*: there are diuers kinds of them that are not needfull to be rehearsed at this present.

Cherries, *Cerasa*, there are two kinds of them, swete and sower, and each of them may bee subdiuided into mo kindes. The hard, swet, and great **Cherries** are in some places called **Spanish Cherries**, and in Latine *Cerasa duracina*, or *Pliniana*, they haue a very swete

The second Table.

swēte and pleasant taste: amongst these are the white Cherries also comprehended. The common red Cherries are called *Cerasa mellea*, for their great and pleasant swētenes. The red and swēte Cherries that leaue a bitternes in the mouth behinde haue first bēen graffed on a Bay tree, whēce they as yet do kēpe their bitternes, and are called *Cerasa amara*, and *Laurea*. The black tame Cherries are called *Cerasa aliana*, *Aliana*, *Caciliana*, and *Cessiana*. The little wilde and black Cherries are comprehended vnder the *Aliana*, and in like sort also the little wilde and red, vnder the great red and domesticall or tame Cherries. Of the sorte Cherries there be two sortes, to wit, white and red; the red are called *Apro-niana cerasa*: others call them *Iuliana*, and *Aquea*. The black are named *Cerasa Amarina*, and *Amarena*: but amongst all kinds of Cherries are the wild blacke, the red, and the domesticall blacke Cherries vsed most in phisicke, and aboue all other those black ones that are called *Amarena*. Wherefore if one finde the name of Cherries in any receipt without any additiō, then are the black Cherries or *Amarena* to be vnderstood & taken for it.

Chickwode, in Grēke and Latine, *Alfne*, at the Apothecaries *Morsus Gallinae*, of the Herbarists *Pabulum anserinum*, and *Pauerna*. This herbe is cold and moist.

Cichelings, in grēke and latine *Lathyrus*, & of Pliny, *Cicercula*: they are white sower square Peason, sufficiently knowen of euery man.

Cichoy or **Suckery**, in Latine and Grēke *Pictus*, Chrestian, *Cichorium*, *Pancratium*, *Troximum*, *Intybus*, or *Intubum erraticum*, *Cichorium agreste*, *Seris Syluestris*, *Amarago*, *Cicorea*, *Ambubeia*, and of Celsus, *Ambugia*, of Pliny, *Cichorea*, & of the Arabians, *Taraxacon*, and *Altaraxacon*. Of the other kind of *Intybus* loke in E. for **Endiue**: Galen calleth all these kinds of Cicozies and Endiues *Intybolarbana*, that is, *Intybacea olera*.

Cinamom, in Grēke and Latine *Cinamomū*, *Cinnamomum*, and *Cinnamon*: it is a swēte smelling barke, and a well known spice: it is also called *Canella*. It is hot and dry in the third degree.

Cynquefoyle, in Grēke and Latin *Pentaphylon*, *Pentapetes*, *Chamazelon*, *Pentafolium*, and *Quinquefolium*.

Ciper rootes, or **wild Galingall**, in Grēke and Latine *Cyperus*, *Erysiſcepitum*, *Cyprus*, *Iun-*

cus quadratus. it is called of Celsus and Pliny, *Iuncus angulosus*, *Iuncus triangulus*. There are two kindes of it, the one hath a rounde roote, and is called *Cyperus rotundus*: the other a long roote called *Cyperus longus*.

Cipresse tree, *Cupressus*, *Cyparissus*.

Citrō tree, *malus Cyria*, *medica*, or *Persica malus*.

Citrons, in Grēke and Latine *Cidromelum*.

Cochimelon, *Malum citrium*, *Malum medicū*,

Malum citraum, *Malum assyrium*, *Malum*

Hesperium, and *Malum citrinatum*, and at

the Apothecaries *Citrinatum*.

Citrus, *Citrullus*.

Clary is called of the Herbarists in Latine

Ornula, *Ornalla*, *Sclarea*, *Scarlea*, *Matrisalua*,

Galli crista, *Totabona*, and *Herba sancti Io-*

hannis: at the Apothecaries *Gallitricum*, and

Centrum Galli: it is a kinde of *Orminum*, or

Horminum, although it be neither of them

that Dioscorides doth write of, yet may it by

reason of his similitude, properties, and vir-

tues, be vsed either with or for *Horminum*.

The other kinde of Clary is the wild Cla-

rie, that groweth euery where in the fields,

it hath deepe iagged leaues with a blew

purple flower, and is called *Scarlea sylue-*

stris, or *Sclarea syluestris*, and *Gallitricum syl-*

uestre. But whensoever Clary is prescri-

bed, then ought the garden Clary to be vsed.

Clauers, loke in T. for three leaved grasse.

Clay, *Argilla*: M. Cicero calleth it *Terra Si-*

gillaria, *Columella*, *Terra singularis*. This

Clay is vsed in this booke for the bleeding

at the nose.

Cloues, in Grēke *Caryophyllum*, at the Apo-

thecaries *Cariosilus*, or *Gariosilus*.

Cocke, *Gallus Gallinaceus*.

Cockle, vide **Cozne rose**.

Codwozt, in Grēke and Latine *Bubonium*,

Asterium, *Aster Atticus*, *Asteriscus*, *Hy-*

ophthalmus, *Herba inguinalis*, and *Inguinaria*,

of the Herbarists *Stella attica*, *Oculus suis*,

and *Albinum*. There be sower kindes of it,

to wit, the first with the blew flower, which

is commonly knowen by the name of **Cod-**

wozt. Some simplicistes do call it for a dif-

ference *Bubonium caeruleum*. The second is

almost like the former, but that the leaues

and the flowers be somewhat bigger, and

the flowers yellow, and starre wise like the

blew: this groweth by the riuier of Rhene.

The Herbarists terme it *Bubonium luteum*,

and *Inguinaria lutea*. The third kind grow-

eth on dry hills, whereof the leaues are lesse,

double, wrinkled, and bended almost like a

halfe

The second Table.

halfe mone, the flowers are very yellow, and lesse than the aforesaid: the Simplicists call it *Bubonium lunatum*. The fourth kinde hath long and picked leaues, with three or fower sinewes like to the lesser Plantaine, and hath a faire starre like flower, yellowe euery where, and euery flower hath five smal leaues vnder it, placed also like a star. This kind did we first get from *Marselles*, for which cause it is now called *Bubonium Massilioticum*, and *Stella Massiliotica*: but when and wherfoeuer Codwozt is named with any addition, there is alwaies the common Codwozt with the blew flower to be vnderstood. This may also be called *Ramicaria* or Rupture weede, because it is especiall good for the Rupture.

Coloquint, in greeke and latine *Colocynthis*, *Sicyona*, *Cucurbita sylvestris*, *Cucurbita syluatica* and *Cucurbitula*.

Conie, in greeke *Dassipus*, of *Polybius*, and *Galen Cnilius*, in latine *Cuniculus*: it is a well known beast in all countries.

Copper is called in greeke *Chalcos*, in latine *Aes*, as *Cyprium*, *Iuprum*.

Coriander, in greeke and latine *Corianon*, *Corion*, and *Coriandrum*.

Cozke tree, in greeke *Phellus*, and of *Theophrastus*, *Ipsos*, and of *Theocritus* *Scoliaſtes*, *Aunryca*, in latine *Suber*. It is a kind of Oake, and very common in Italy, they haue a thicke rinde or barke, of the which our Cozke is made.

Coznerose or Cockle, in greeke *Lychnis agria*, in latin *Lychnis sylvestris*, of the Simplicists *Caryophyllus aruenſis*, *Pseudomelanthium*, *Githago*, and *Nigestrū*: *Dioscorides* calleth it *Atocium*, *Hieracopodiū*, *Tragonatiū*, *Lampada*, and *Semura*: some vnſkilful Physicians and Apothecaries haue vsed this herbe for the *Melantiū* or *Nigella* of the auncients, the which error diuers Apothecaries & fond fellows haue so imbibed, that they will rather follow their owne foolish opinions, than be better instructed of others.

Cozal, in greeke and latin *Coralium*, *Corallium*, *Gorgonia*, *Lithodendron*, *Dentrites*, & *Eurallitū*.

Costus roots, *Costū*, & *Costus*: of this roote there be two kinds, to wit, the bitter & the swete *Costus* roots. The bitter roote is alwaies vsed for the *Costus* without any addition.

Coutsenille, in greeke & in latin *Coccus baphica*, of *Pausanias*, *Hyſſe*, *Coccum infectiorum*, *Coccum tinctorum*, *Gramum infectiorum*: in the Arabian tong *Kermes*, and *Chermes*. The

like dyers for a differēce of the crimson colour haue named it *Kermesinum granum*, for the crimson colour and *Kermes* of the Arabians is not one & the self same. The Coutsenille is called *Kermesinum*, by reason of her bzaue colour, which is somewhat like vnto scarlet. Also the crimson colour called *Kermesinum* is takē from the roots of certain herbs, and it is an externall thing from the rootes, (although it grow with them) for it is also found to grow on the barks of certain trees, and hath no virtue or vse in Physicke at all, as the Coutsenille doth, which is the natural fruit of a little tree, not vnlike to our Butchers bzaume, but that it is somewhat lesse, with fewer leaues & fruits: wherefore they doe erre greatly that take the crimson colour *Kermesinum* for the Coutsenille, & vse it for the same in their compositions, & medicaments. But the Apothecaries doe erre moze grossely, that do vse the Goseberries in steede of the Coutsenille, & (that which is worse) the vnſkilfull Physicians doe beare with it, & let it passe for good. sothat it may well be said of them that one blind man leadeeth another: but wo be to the patiēt, for he ought not to be ielled withal, seeing y Coutsenille is not vsed but in extream debility of the hart, for which neither y crimson colour nor the Gose berry hath any vertue at all. The Coutsenille is also vsed of womē with child for to confort & strengthen their child in their bodies, & to preuent all mischances, for the which it is very meete & requisite. The Goseberry is of a quite contrary nature.

Cowslips, **Cowsllops**, of some Lady keyes, or *Primeroſes*, in greeke *Phlomis*, *Arthritica*, in latine *Verbasculum*, the Herbarists do call it *Herba paralyſis*, *primula veriflora*, *Primula veris*, *Brachaculi*, and *Herba primiflorū*, & at the Apothecaries *Ashretica*, & *Betonica alba*, the which is indeed the right white Betony. There are three kinds of the: the first kind are the common Cowsllops, with the yellow flowers, that growe euery where in drie meadowes, and on grassy hills. These are called of the Herbarists *Verbasculū odoratum*, by reason of their pleasant smell. The second kind groweth in the woods, & is much bigger than the comon Cowsllops; it hath a pale yellow colour, but without any smell at all, & it is called *Verbasculū sylvestre*, & *Verbasculū albū*, & when this kind is set in gardens, it groweth as big againe as before. The third kinde are the double Cowsllops, that

The second Table.

that are set in gardens, & they are much fairer, greater, and more pleasant than the common, & are called *Verbasculum multiplex*.

Crenets, in Græke and in Latine *Astacus sinuatis*, *Cammarus*, *Gammarus*: it is a kinde of shell fish very common and wel knownen. This fish is euen now a dayes of diuers learned men called *Cancer* vniuersally, for that there be no *Canceri* in Germany; for the true *Canceri* haue no tayle as our Crenets haue, which are in all points like to the Lobsters, but that they are much lesse.

Crabs or wild Apples, *Malum sylvestre*, or *Pomum sylvestre*, they and their leaues are vsed for the laske.

Cresses, in Græke and Latine *Cardamum*, *Nasturtium hortense*, and of the common Herbarists *Cressio*.

Cricket, *Grillus*, a little twoyme very common in all Bziew houses.

Criskall, *Chrysalis*, and *Chrystallum*.

Crowfoote, in Græke *Batrachion*, and *Batrachis*, in Latine *Ranunculus*, *Herba Sardonia*, *Herba scelerata*, *Sirumea*, and *Herba strumea*, at the Apothecaries *Flammula*, and *Pes Corni*. *Plinius* calleth the double Crowfoote *Polyanthemum*, it is called here Watchers but tons, and of the Symplicistes *Ranunculus multiplex*. There are diuers kindes of it, but because they are not all of them vsed in Physicke, we will only speake of the lesser sort, which by reason of the rounde roote that it hath it is called *Ranunculus rotundus*, and at the Apothecaries *Flammula*, and of some (for to distinguish it from the other sorts) *Flammula minor*, and *Flammula rotunda*: and this kind of Crowfoote is only to be vsed in Physicke.

Cuckoe, in Græke *Coccyx*, in Latine *Cuculus*, a bird too common and well knownen.

Cuckoe beead, in Græke and Latin *Oxys*, *Oxytriphylon*, *Trisolum acetosum*, *panis Cuculi*; and at the Apothecaries *Alleluia*.

Cuckoe pit, *Pisitis pintle*, or *Wake Robin*, in Latine *Pes Vuli*, *virile Sacerdotis*, *Serpentaria minor*, and at the Apothecaries *Aron*.

Cucubes, in Græke *Carpesium*, of *Athariis*, of the Arabians, and at all Apothecaries *Cubeba*.

Cucumber, *Cucumis*, *Cucumer*, and *Cucumis sativus*, in Græke and of *Aristophanes Sicyis*, and *Sicnos*.

Cumfrey, of *Dioscorides Symphytum aliterum*, *Symphytum maus*, & *Pecton*, of *Apuleius Pectis*, *Anacetesis*, *Hemostasis*, *Consolida maior*,

and *Alus Gallicus*, of *Scribonius Inularustica*, *Consolida*, *Confirmamajor*, *Conserua maior*, and *Solidago*: it is a common herbe, whereof there be two sorts, the one with purple flowers, and the other with white. There is yet a third kinde called *Symphytum petraum*, of *Apuleius Xylophyton*, and *Anachylis*, of the Herbaristes *Consolida petraea*: this groweth on hills and stonie places.

Comin, in Græke and Latine *Cuminum*, *Cyminum*, *Cuminum sativum*, *Cuminum hortulanum*, and *Cuminum Romanum*.

D.

Daffodill, it is called in Græke & in Latin *Hemerocallis*, *Lilium sylvestre*, *Lilium Sarcenicum*, and at the Apothecaries *Affodillus*, for *Asphodelus*, but vniuersally: and although it be not the true *Hemerocallis* that *Dioscorides* describeth; yet it is a kinde of it, and becrielike it in vertues and operation. The right Daffodill is called in Græke and Latine *Asphodelus*, *Hastula regia*, *Albucum*, the flowers with the skalle *Anthericos*. It is now by the diligent and expert Physitions brought into vse againe.

Damaske Prunes, *Pruna Damascena*.

Dandelion, *Pisitis Crowne*, wilde or yelow *Cichorie*, in Græke *Hedynois*, of *Theophrastus Aphaca*, and of the Herbarists *Seris urinaria*, *Herba urinaria*, *Seris somnifera*, *Caput monachi*, and *dens Leonis*. The Apothecaries and vnskillfull Physitions do call it *Taraxacon*, and *Altaraxacon*, which names are due to *Plantaine*, as may be seene by *Serapius* and the Arabians. For that which *Dioscorides* calleth *Intybus sylvestris*, that doe they call *Taraxacon*, or *Altaraxacon*. This herbe is cold by nature, it prouoketh sleepe, it openeth all inwarde obstructions, it moueth vryne abundantly.

Dane woode, in Græke and Latine *Chamaeciste*, *Ebulus*, *Sambucus pumila*, *Sambucus humilis*, *Sambucus aruensis*.

Dates, in Græke and Latine *Dactyli*, *Caryote*, *Caryotides*, and *Palmula*, sower Dates are called *Tamarindi*.

Date tre, in Græke *Phœnix*, and in Latine *Palma*.

Daylies, in Græke *Bellis*, in Latine *Bellis*, *Bellium*, and *Bellus Flos*, by the Herbaristes *Pascanthemum*, and *Herba Arthritica*, *Herba margarita*, and at the Apothecaries *Consolida minor*. The other kind is called *Bellis maior*,

The second Table.

maior, Bellū maius, & of the *Herbarists Chennanthemum, Consolida media vulnerariorū*.
Diamond, *Adamus*, a well known gem oꝝ pꝛecious stone.
Dill, *Anethum*, it is hot in the thirde, & drie in the second degꝛe.
Diptamer, *Diptamus*, in græke & latine *Polemonia*, oꝝ *Polemoniū*, *Phyletaria*, *Chiliodynamis*, *Fraxinus pumila*, *Fraxinula*, *Frassinula*, *Fraxinella*, *Frassinella*, and *Distamus albus*. The *Apothecaries* call it *Diptamus*, and *Distamus albus*. This plant hath bene taken a great while foꝝ *Paeonia mascula*, but it is the true *Polemonium* of the auncients.
Dishwasher, a little birde called *Motacilla*, *Cauda Tremula*, and of *Hesichius*, *Cyrillus*, it is a common and well known bird.
Dinels bit, *Morsus Diaboli*, *Succissa*, *Iacea nigra*, and *Premorsa*. It is a kind of *Scabious*, and is not unlike the same, onely that the leaues of it be not iagged, as the *Scabious* leaues are.
Docke, in græke *Lapathum*, in latine *Rumex*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Lapathum*. There are fīre kindes of Dockes: The first hath long piked leaues, like *Sorrell*, but something sharper, and it is called in græke to distinguish it from the rest, *Oxylapathum*, in latine *Lapathum acutum*, *Lapathum acutifolium*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Lepathum acutum*. The second kind hath great broad leaues, not much unlike the former, but somewhat bigger, the *Herbarists* do call it *Lapathum latifolium*, *Lapathum platiphylon*, and *Lapathum non acuminatum*, which is almost altogether in vse vnder the name *Lapathum acutum* vniuersally, but amongst the vnskilfull *Physitions* and *Apothecaries* a sote oꝝ twaine bꝛeakes no square. This groweth in meadowes, and other moist places. The third kind hath yet bigger, but softer oꝝ gentler leaues: it is solwen in gardenes, especially in France, where they vse it amongst other pot herbes in their porrage, the roots of it are bigger thā the other, somewhat yelow, not much unlike to *Rubarb*: it is called in græke *Lapathon Cepæon*, in latine *Lapathum domesticum*, *Rumex sativus*, & by the *Herbarists* *Rhabarbarum monachorū*, and *Patientia*. some do call it *Lapathum latifolium sativum*, to distinguish it from the former. The fourth kind hath very great leaues, & piked befoꝛe, it groweth in pondeꝛ & other waters, & is called in græke *Hydrolapathon*, and *Hippolapathon*, in latin *Lapathum equinum*,

Rumex equinus, *Lapathum aquaticum*, *Rumex aquaticus*, & *palustris*, the *Grecians* doe also call it *Bulapathon*. The first kind hath leaues like the first & the common Dock, with many red spots & vains, and it is found in gardenes, it is called of the *Herbarists* *Lapathū sanguineum*, *Rumex sanguineus*, & *Sanguis Draconis*. The first kind is *Sorrel*, wherof *Malbe* spoken elswhere.

Doronicum, the *Arabians* do call it *Doronigi*: it is mingled with other things that serue foꝝ comfortinge of the hart. Some will affirme that it is venemous, because the second kind of it is such, that it killeth both man & beast: Wherefoꝛe if our *Doronicū* be poison, then must of necessity follow, that the herbe *Antitoxa*, oꝝ *Antitoxa*, be also venemous, because the one is as like the other in leafe, flower & roote, that the one can hardly be knowen fꝛo the other. But y our *Doronicū* is no poison, hath experieñce taught vs many yeres ago.

Dragons, in græke *Dracontium*, *Dracontea*, *Dracontia*, *Isariū*, *Biariū*, *Iariū*, *Harmagrimon*, & *Sigimolium*. *Apuleius* calleth them *Pythonū*, *Archomanoꝛ*, *Sauchromaton*, *Typhonū*, *Crocodyliū*, *Therū*, and *Therionphonū*, in latine *Serpentaria*, *Columbina*, *Colubrina*, *Mauriaria*, *Dragontea*, and *Collū Draconis*: of the *Arabian Physitions* *Luf*, *Luph*, oꝝ *Alliss*: the *Simplicists* do call it *Dracunculus*. There are thꝛee kindes of *Dragons*, to wit, the first, which we doe call the greater *Dragons*, *Dracontium maius*, *Dracunculus maior*, & *Colubrina magna*, they by to know it from the other two sorts. The second kind is somewhat lesse, and like to the *Cuckopit*, it is called *Dracontium minus*, *Dracunculus minor*, oꝝ *Colubrina minor*, and of *Athencius*, *Aronia*: *Cordus* doth call it *Dracunculus*, *Hemicophyllon*, and *Luph planum*: the greater they call *Luph crispū*. Others do call it the lesser *Dragons*, that is *Serpentaria minor*. The third kind groweth nere the water, vpon a stubbed root, with many stalkes vnto it, and on euery stalk one onely leafe, much like to *Juy*, & euery stalk bringeth a bunch of berries like *Cuckopit*: it is called *Dracunculus palustris*, *Dracunculus aquatilis*, *Colubrina palustris*, and *Arū palustre*. We call the water *Dragons*. Some simple *Physitions*, & *Allic Apothecaries* do vse the *Bisforta* roots foꝝ y roots of *Dragons*: but what great distance is betwē the, what difference in their virtues and operations, is sufficiently knowne to the learned.

Dragon blood, *Cinnabaris indica*, *Sāgnis Draconis*,

The second Table.

nis, and *Lacryma Draconis*, it is the sap of a tree in the Indies called *Draco*.
 Ducke, he oꝝ the, *Anas*.

E.

Earth sealed, in græke *Sphragis*, in latine *Terra lemnia*, *Sigillum lemnium*, *Lutum lemnium*, *Rybrica lemnia*, *Minium lemnium*, *Lutū sigillatum*, & at the Apothecaries *Terra sigillata*: This earth is maruellously falsified and counterfeited, wherfoze great heed must be had in the vse of it. Our hedge Whisttons will rather vse clay, thā want earth in their receipts.

Earthwozmes, *Lumbrici*, *Vermesterreni*, *Intestinaterra*.

Cele, *Anguilla*, the wel known fish, that will not be held by the taile.

Clecampane, in latine *Helenium*, *Enula*, *Enula campana*, and *Terminalium*.

Elderne, in græke *Alle*, & in latine *Sambucus*.

Eline, in græke *Ptelea*, in latin *Vlmus*: there are 2. kinds of it, the comon is called *Vlmus campestris*. The other kind groweth on hills, & is called in græke *Oripetea*, in latine of *Gaza*, *Montulmus*, & of others *Vlmus Mötana*.

Endiue, in græke & in latine *Intybus*, *Intybum*, *Intybus sativus*, & *Seris*, at the Apothecaries *Endiua*: it is a kind of tame Succory, and is knowne at this present in euery place.

Endiue the white, oꝝ y lesser Endiue, in græke and latine *Intybum sativum angustifolium*, *Seris sativa angustifolia*, *Seris sativa minor*, & *Seriola*: the Apothecaries do cal it with a Barbarous name *Scariolam*.

Eryngium, in græke & latin *Eryngium*, of the Verbarists *Herbapleuritica*, *Acus veneris*, *Capitulum martis*, *Centumcapita*, and at the Apothecaries *Iringua*. There are two kindes of it, the one, which is common with vs, and by the name of *Eryngium* sufficiently known. The other kind hath broad leaves, and is not so prickling as the former, it hath also a faire and bigger top, and a faire skie coloured flower, it is planted in gardē's, it groweth otherwise at the sea side: the Simplificists call it *Eryngium marinum*. Some vnerpert Whisttons and Apothecaries doe vse the star Whistle foꝝ *Eryngium*, but erroneously, foꝝ it is a little Whistle, much lesse than the *Eryngium*, it hath many little heads, with purple flowers, and prickles about them standing out like a starre, it hath a small roote, that perisheth in winter, it groweth euery where in dry places. The Verba-

ristes doe call it *Cardum Stellatus*, *Carduus Calcestragus*, *Tribulum stellatum*, *Acanthasterion*, *Spinastella*, *Calcitrapa*, and *Calcitripola*: *Valerius Cordus* doth call it *Polyacantha*, but it is not the *Polyacantha* of *Theophrastus*. Others doe call it *Eryngium minus*, that is, the lesser *Eryngium*. And although this Whistle do also moue vaine, oꝝ prouoke the termes in women as *Eryngium* doth, yet neuertheless it is not the same, but it is much stronger than the *Eryngium*; foꝝ if one vse too much of it, then doth it expell blood with the vaine: wherfoze the same is dulle to bee vsed, and in steade of *Eryngium* vse the common Whistle, oꝝ Squilles foꝝ it: *Rondolētius* doth call *Eryngium* by the name of *Coronopus*.

Escharbot, in græke *Cantharus*, in latine *Cantherium*, *Scarabaeus*, and *Pilularius*.

F.

Fearne, in græke and latine *Pteris*, *Blechnon*, *Dasyclonon*, and *Felix*, a well known hearbe, and common in all woods and heathes: it is called of *Nicander*, *Betruis*.

Fenegræke, in græke *Telis*, *Agoceros*, *Cernisus*, of *Pliny*, *Carphos*, of *Theophrastus*, *Buccraus*, of *Hippocrates*, *Epiceras*; in latine *Fennugracum*, of *Pliny*, *Silia*, of *Varro*, *Silicula*, and of the Verbarists *Trifolium gracum*: it is an herbe, whose seede is onely in vse.

Fennel, *Foeniculum*, *Mararum*, it is a common and well known herbe.

Felant, *Phasianus*, *Fasianus*, and *Facidis anis*, it is a common birde, which ought to be vsed foꝝ meate in many diseases, as hath bene shewed in diuers places of our booke.

Feuerfew: it is called of the Verbarists *Pseudoparthenium*, *Amarella*, *Solis oculus*, *Matrovaria*, and *Matronella*, the practitioners and Apothecaries doe call it *Matricaria*. This Feuerfew hath vntill this present day bene taken foꝝ the true *Parthenium* of the ancients, albeit that the most famous & learned Whisttons *Antonius Musa Brassauolus*, *Leonardus Fuchsius*, *Gulielmus Rondolētius*, and diuers others haue long since sufficiently shewed, that the bitter and stinking Cammomils (of some called dogs Cammomils) are the true *Parthenium*, foꝝ it is not onely in all poynts correspondent to the description of it, but agreeth also in the virtues and operations with it, and hee that readeth *Dioscorides*,

The second Table.

is constrained to affirme the same: wherefore it is a great wonder, that many men will be so obstinate, that although one do shew them the truth it selfe, yet will they like swine tumble in their dirt, and stick to their vngrounded opinions, whereby they seeme to seeke the ouerthrow of all truths. The true *Parthenium* are the stinking camomils, which are called of the Herbarists *Herba virginea*, *Cynanthemum*, *Busonaria*, *Aneibum caninum*, *chamamelum foetidum*, and *Cotula foetida*.

Field berries, loke Buckle berries.

Field Cypres, in Græke and Latine *Chamaepitys*, *Abiuga*, or *Abiga*, at the Apothecaries *Iua*, & *Iua arithetica*, or *Arithetica*: of Plinie *Thus terra*, of the Herbarists *Herba apoplectica*, *cucurbitularis*, and *Pinus pumila*.

Fig treë, *Ficus*.

Figs, Dried figs, *Ficus*, *ficus passa*, *Carica*, there are three kinds of them brought vnto vs, the first are they that come in frayles, and they are the meanest: the second kinde are the lease figs, that are brought frō Candy and Cypers, these are fatter and better then the former. They are called lease figs, because they are packed and made vp with Bay leaues betwene them. The third kind are lesser and pleasanter then the rest, they are brought from Pouence, they are called figs of Marselles, and these are the best of all for Physick.

Figwort, the great Scrofulary, this herb hath been vnknewne to the auncients, and now adayes it is called of our Physicians *Scrophularia* or *Scrofularia*, and also *Millemorbia*, or *Castrangula*.

Firre treë, in Græke *Elate*, in Latine *Abies*, there are two kindes of it, the first is the common firre treë, which of the Simplicists is called the white firre treë, or *abies candida*, the second kinde of firre treë is called in Græke *Peuce*, in Latine *Picea*, and of the Herbarists *Abies nigra*, which is the red firre treë. But where thou findest firre treë in any receipt without addition, there is the common firre treë meant.

Fitches, in Græke *Bicion*, or *Aracium*, in Latine *Vicia*, there are two kinds of them, the first is that which is knowne to all men by the name of fitches, the other kinde groweth of it selfe here and there, they are called wild fitches, *Dioscorides* doth call them *Apface*, in Latine *Vicia sylvestris*. But if the name of fitches be found without additiō,

then shalt thou vnderstand the first kind of them. Our vnskillfull southlayers and Apothecaries do take the fitches for the true *Ernum* of the auncient writers, but it is an open deceit, which ought to be punished by the Magistrates, and to call such careless fellows in question for their false *quid pro quo*. Flax, in Græke and Latine *Linum*, Plinie calleth all that *Linum* that may be spun.

Fleawort, in Græke and Latine *Psyllium*, *herba pulicaris*, *pulicaria*, of Plinie *Cynoides*, & *Cynocephalon*. The seede only of this herb is vsed in physick, it is cold in the second, and dry in the first degree.

Flint or pible stone, in Græke *Chalix*, in Latine *Silex*.

Flour deluce, *Lilium caeleste*, and *Iris Germanica*. Although this our flour deluce do not agree in euery respect with the *Ireus* of Italy, yet it is a kinde of it, and much stronger in purging, for which cause it is about all other kinds vsed in the Dyopsie.

Fole foote, in Græke *Bechium*, and *Chameleuce*, in Latine *Populago*, *Tussilago*, of the Herbarists *Vngula caballina*, & *herba Dni Quirini*, at the Apothecaries *Farfara*, of Theophrastus *Aphyllantes*, because that it bloweth without any leaues, wherfore it is also called of some *filix ante patrem*, others do likewise terme it *populus humilis*, or *pumila*, *farfarella*, *farfargo*.

Framboys, in Græke & Latine *Batus Idæus*, *Rubus Idæus*, *Rubus Cernuus*, *Cernitubus*, the whole shrub is called the Framboye hedge, the fruite Framboys, *mora rubi Idæi*.

Frankincense, in Græke and Latine *Libanus*, or *Libanum*, *Libanotis*, Thus, Tus, *Opolibanum*, *Incensum*, and at the Apothecaries *Olibanum*. There are foure kinds of it, the first is very white, round, and little cornes or graines, it is called in Græke *Stragonias*, of Plinie *Thus masculum*, of the Simplicists *Thus testiculatum*, at the Apothecaries *Olibanum testiculatum*, in english white frankincense, and this is the best of all the kinds. The second kinde is gray, yellowish, and is that which is left after the former is picked out, & it is only called frankincense. The third is also vsed, and it is full of barks, to which the frankincense sticketh, and it is taken frō the treë: and although it be thought vncleane, yet hath it his place in Physick as well as the best. This is called *Thuris cortex*, *Thus corticosum*, and at the Apothecaries *Olibanum corticosum*, in english rindes or barks of frankincence. The fourth kinde are

The second Table.

are the reliques that are left after the former three kinds are taken out, all these kinds do come of one and the same tree: but there is yet another condemned kinde of Frankincense at the Apothecaries, and also at the Dyuggists, that is not worthe to be numbred amongst the former kinds, because it is only a deceit and knavery used in stead of good ware, wherefore it ought by god right to be thowne out of dozes. This is made of the gum of y Pine tree, & so prepared deceitfully, it is called *Thus Adulterinum*, in English counterfeited Frankincense.

Frankincense the black, *Timiama*, in Græke *Nascaphthum*, *Narcaphthum*, of others *Thymia*, & at the Apothecaries *Thymiana*. It is a sweete smelling barke which is used in sweete vnguents, or fuming candles: some do call it *Incensum nigrum*.

French Beanes, *Phascolus*, *Phasolus*, *Dolicus*, *Phaselus*.

Frogge, *Rana*.

Fumitory, in Græke and Latine *Capnosumaria*, & *Fumus terra*, the Herbarists call it *Cerisolum felinum*, & *Columbinum*. It is a well knowne herbe, and is hot and dry in the third degree.

G.

Gadise tree, a tree called in Græke and Latine *Crania*, *Cornu*.

Galingall, *Cyprus Babylonius*, and *Galanga*, a well knowne spice, whereof there be two kinds, to wit, the great & the lesser, but the lesser is the true Galingall, and is to be used in stead thereof, but the great is called *Galanga maior*. This is used of some for the true *Acorus*, that is *Calmus*: but they erre greatly, for *Acorus* is our common *Calmus*, as hath been shewed elsewhere.

Galles, *Galla*, they that growe on our Oakes are altogether unmete for Physick, they are called of Galen *Onicicida*, that is, *acina galla*.

Garlick, in Græke *Scorodon*, and in Latine *Allium*.

Gilliflowres, are called of the Herbarists *Cariophyllus flos*, *Cariophyllus hortulanus*, *Cariophyllus domesticus*, *Betonica altisilis*, & of Plinie *Cantabrica*, the Apothecaries call it *flos cariophyllorū*, but there are diuers other herbs that are called *Herba tunica*, but some suppose *Carduus Benedictus* to be the right *herba innica*, where they should reade *herba turca*

or *turca* and not *tunica*. *Gordonius* doth call our *Ocymastrum* that is Behen, *herba tunica*, so that almost each autho hath his owne *herba tunica*. Some do call our Gilliflowres *flos tunica*, to distinguish it from *herba tunica*, which is Behen, and they do very well, for a thing well distinguished preuenteth many errors.

Gentian, in Græke and Latine *Narce*, *Aloe Gallica*, and *Gentiana*.

Gentian the lesser, in Græke *Phytanma*, in Latine *Cruciata*, *Gentiana Cruciata*, and at the Apothecaries about the River of Rhene, *Herba diui Petri*. This herb is used vnen at this present for them that haue taken somewhat to fall in loue with another body, or that are bewitched. It is also a true remedie experimented, if it be used as it ought.

Germander, in græke and Latine *Chamedrys*, *Chameroys*, *Lynodris*, *Trisago*, *Curcula*, & *Serratula*. Whensoever thou wilt use German-der, take that with the blowne red flowers, which is a kind of *Tencrinus*, for that is the true Germander, and is called of some *Calamandrina*, and *Morsus mulierum*.

Ginger, *Zingiber*, a well knowne spice, called also *Gingiber*, & at the Apothecar. *Zinzaber*.

Gips, in græke and latine *Gipsus*, or *Gypsum*: there are diuers kinds of it, but the best is that which is most like to chalk.

Gitte, in latine and græke *Melanthium*, *Gith*, and at the Apothecaries *Nigella Romana*. There is yet another kind of it, whereof the plant is bigger, and moze pleasant to behold, but the seede is not so strong in smell, and is called Damaske *Nardus*, of the Herbarists *Nigella Damascena*: but the first kind is only used in Physick. They are both of them hot and dry in the third degree.

Glew, in græke *Colla*, and *Xylocolla*, in latine of *Virgil*, *Gluten*, of *Varro* and *Salustius* *Glutinum*, otherwise also *Glutinum taurinum*, and at the Apothecaries *Gluten ligni*. It is used in plaisters for the rupture.

Gnat, in græke *Conops*, and of *Hesichius* *Nopis*, in latine *Culex*.

Goat, *Capra*.

Goldfinch is called in græke *Acanthis*, in latine *Carduelis*, and is good in meates for them that haue a cold stomack.

Gose, *Anser*.

Gosegras, in græke *Aparine*, *Omphalocarpus*, *Philanthropus*, in latine *Aspergula*, *Asperula*, and *Speronella*, it is a well knowne weede, hot and dry by nature.

The second Table.

Courdes, *Cucurbita esculenta*, *Cucurbita ventricosa*, *Cucurbita cameraria*, *Cucurbita pericalis*, and at the Apothecaries *Cucurbita*.

Graye, looke a Badger. B.

Gromell, in Græke and Latine *Lithospermum*, *Gorgonium*, of Theophrastus Dioscorus, and at the Apothecaries *Milium solis*. Dioscor. calleth it *Lithospermum*, and *Semen Leoninum*. There be two kinds of it: the first groweth in the fields and untilled places: the second is like the former which is used at the Apothecaries, but it groweth not above a span in height, and the seede is also much lesse, it is called *Lithospermum aruense*: the other hath small leaues like to Flaxe, and betwene euery leafe a little seede, not vnlike to the true Gromell: the Herbarists do call it *Lingua passerina*, *Lithospermum syluestre*, & *Lithospermum nigrum*: in English black Gromil, to distinguish it from the white which is daily used. Some also doe adde to the former kindes *Lachrima Iouis*, calling it *Lithospermum maius*, although it haue no communion with them: the first is most used.

Graines, *Cardamomum maius*, at the Apothecaries *Granum Paradisi*: it is used commonly both at the Apothecaries, and in the Kitchen.

Grasse, in Græke and Latine *Agrostis*, and *Gramen*.

Grashopper, *Cicada*.

Greenefinch, *Acanthus*, in Græke and in Latine *Spinus*, and of Theodorus Gaza *Ligurinus*: it is a well known bird, and used commodiously in meates for all cold rheumes.

Gum, in Latine *Gummi*, at the Apothecaries *Gummi Arabicum*.

H.

Hare, *Lepus*, it is a common and well known beast, especially in rich mens houses.

Hares foote, in Græke and in Latine *Lagopus*, *Lagopodium*, *Pes leporinus*: the Herbarists do call it *Trifolium Leporinum*, *Trifolium felinum*, and *Trifolium Trinitatis*. This herb is much used for the laske.

Harts ease, in Græke and Latine *Diosambos*, *Phlox*, *Phlogium*, *Herba flammea*, *Herba clauellata*, *Herba Trinitatis*, and at the Apothecaries *Iacea*. Gaza calleth it *Flammula*: it is otherwise called of the Herbarists *Flos Iouis*. It is an herbe common in all gardens and fields, it is much used, and especially the

water of it.

Harts tong, in Græke and Latine *Phyllitis*, & *Lingua Cernua*. It is of diuers vnlearned Phisitions taken and also used for the *Asplenium* of the auncients, or for the true *Scolopendrium*; where notwithstanding the true *Scolopendrium* is common enough.

Hartwort or *Aristolochy*, *Capnos Chelidonia*, *Capnos phragmites*, *Pes Gallinaceus*: of the Herbarists *Pseudaristolochia*, & *Radix Concaua*. The rootes of this herbe haue the vnskillfull Phisitions brought in use for the true *Aristolochy* the round, and is vnto this day used for the same at many Apothecaries, which neuertheless is nothing like it. So besalseth it commonly that we will see and decerne what is done in the heauens amongst the stars, and do not knowe those things that are beneath on earth, and belonging to our Art. This herbe is a kinde of fumitorie, which *Ætius* and *Plinie* haue so described it as may appere by their writings. Here is to be noted that as often as you finde either round *Hartwort*, or round *Aristolochy*, that the right round *Aristolochy* is to be taken for it. The true *Aristolochia rotunda* is called in Græke and Latine *Aristolochia*, and *Melocarpus*: otherwise it is called for a difference *Aristolochia rotunda*, and *Malum Terra*.

Hassel, or *Hassel nut*, in Græke *Carya*, in Latin *Corylus*, and *Nux auellana*. There are two kinds of it, the one that groweth euery where in the woods, and the other that is planted in gardens called a *silberde tre*. The Nuts are called in Græke *Leptocaryon*, *Nux auellana*, *Nux pontica*, *Nux prænestina*, *Nux Hæraclæotica*, & *Auellana*. The tame *Hassel Nuts* are called *silberds*, *Lombardy Nuts*, that is, *Nux Longobardica*. The wood of the *Hassel* is cut in chips as the wood of the *Ash*, and also used in the making of aromaticall wines.

Hawthorne, is called of Theophrast. *Cynosbaton*, of *Plinie* *Cynospaston*, & *Neurospaston*, of *Dioscorides* *Oxyacantha*, of *Gaza* *Cantrubus*, the fruits are called *Hawes*.

Hawke, *Accipiter*, of *Virgil* *Sacer ales*.

Heath, *Erica*, of Theophrastus *Tetralix*.

Hedgehog, *Echinus*, a well known beast, it is full of prickles ouer the whole body, so that his skin will not serue to fur a pare of mittens.

Hemlock, is a very venemous herbe; it is called in græke *Conion*, *Cathechumenion*, *Abiaton*, *Ægynot*,

The second Table.

Aegynos, Apseudes, Ethusa, Ageomera, Apolegusa, Timoron, Volia, Palyanodinos, Amantrosis, Dardanis, Aphros, Creidion, Catapfxis, Cote, in latine *Cicuta*: it groweth here and there by hedges, in meadowes, and in other grassy places, it hath a very stinking and hurtfull saour.

Pempe, in græke and latine *Schænostraphon, Asterion, Canabis*, or *Cannabis*: it is but seldom vñed in Physicke: it is oft called *Walterweede*.

Henbane, in græke and latine *Hyoſcyamus, Dyoscyamus, Enmanes, Dithyrbion, Typhonium, Pythonium, Altercum, Apollinaris, Fabulum, Faba lous, Faba suilla, Herba calicularis, Faba lupina, Mania*, and at the Apothecaries *Iusquiamus*. It is cold in the third degree, especially the white, which only is vñed in Physicke. The gray and black Henbane seedes by reason of their great colde, are taken for poyson, wherefore neither of both ought to be vñed inwardly.

Herbe bennet, loke *Auence. A.*

Herbe twopence, is called of *Theophrastus, Ereſtedanum*, in latin *Centimorbia, Centimorbium*, or *Centimorbium*: at the Apothecaries *Nummularia, Serpentina minor*, and *Serpentinaria minor*. Some do also call it *Hirundinaria*: it is a common vulnerall herbe.

Hermodyctyles, in greeke *Colchicon*, in latine *Ephemerum deliterium, Ephemerum lethale, Bulbus agrestis*, of the Herbarists *Canineca, Panis Ciconie*, and *Bulbus Caninus*. Our Physitions & Apothecaries do call them *Hermodyctylus*. But because that diuers other plants are called *Hermodyctyles*, it is needefull to distinguish them here, that no man put either himselfe or any body else in danger: for our common *Hermodyctylus*, is the *Hermodyctyle* roote, and the true *Colchicum*, which *Galen* calleth *Ephemerum deleterium*: *Amicenna, Serapio*, and other Arabian Physitions do affirme the same: and it auayleth nought, that some will distinguish the *Colchicum* of the Grecians, from the *Hermodyctylus* of the Arabians: their false and erroneous opinions are easily withstood, for you neede but only compare the chapter of *Hermodyctyles* of *Serapio*, with the chapter of *Colchicum* of *Dioscorides*, then shall you evidently perceiue that it is one and the same roote: for *Serapio* being a diligent follower of *Dioscorides*, hath taken his chapt. de *Hermodyctilo*, out of the chapt. de *Colchico* *Dioscoridis verbatim*, word by word; as he hath also

done in all other plants that are described of *Dioscorides*, as all they may perceiue that haue conferred both these authoꝝ together. Wherefore it is most sure that the *Colchicum* of the Grecians, and the *Hermodyctylus* of the Arabians, which now also are vñed for *Hermodyctyles*, are one and the same. But *Dioscorides* and *Serapio* affirme their *Colchicum* and *Hermodyctylus* to bee a poyson as well as the venemous *Moade-stoles*, wherefore also they commaund, that they be in no wise vñed or eaten: And although *Serapio* doe saie that the *Hermodyctyles* be good for the Coute, and other ioint diseases, yet he addeth, that if one vse too much of them, that thereby the muscles & the stomacks are maruellously weakened: but then he speaketh of the roote of the white *Hermodyctyles*, and supposeth that they that are red and blacke should altogether kill one. Seeing then they are so dangerous these rootes ought not to be tolerated at the Apothecaries, and much lesse to be vñed inwardly. Whereas then we know sufficiently that our *Colchicum*, or *Hermodyctylus* is so venemous, therefore must they needes lie extreamely, that bragge that they can cure all ioynt diseases with it. For it is most true, that they that vse these *Hermodyctyles* for the Coute, whether it be in Pills, Potions, or any other way, doe ware worse and worse euery day, and at last are constrained to die an vntimely death, as hath beene seene in diuers men, and at diuers times: notwithstanding that diuers learned men haue warned them that vse such dogged medicines, but no man will be taught of another, which is the onely cause that we will not leaue our owne opinions and errors, which thing doth not onely be- reauē many a man of this life, but also of the life to come. Wherefore I would admonish and warne euery man to take heed of them, and where he findeth *Hermodyctyles* in any receipt, that hee omit them. And because that there bee Pills made with *Hermodyctyles*, which would be verie commodious for the Coute, if they were left out, therefore I would wish the *Hermodyctyles* to be omitted, & to put *Turbit*, or *Agaricke* instead thereof, or to take *Medulla Carthami* for it: for they that haue obserued this order, haue found great good by it. But if you take the rootes of the true

Me-

The second Table.

Mechoacan for it, that would be much better, for I my selfe haue approued the same: this done, you need not feare any mishap or daunger, from which I coulde not omit to warne euery good body. It is very true that diuers Grecian writers, as *Aetharius*, and *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, haue left vnto vs certain compositions, wherein are both the white and the red *Hermodactyles*, as in *Aurea Alexandrina Nicolai*, and *Diamoscu Aetharij*, but these authoꝝ haue not meant the *Hermodactyles* of the Arabians, or the *Colchicum Dioscoridis*, but they haue meant the *Behen album*, and *rubrum*; which very well ought to be noted, that this pretious consecution be not defiled with the *Hermodactyles*, *Turbith*, or with *Mechoacan*. *Dioscorides* hath also his proper *Hermodactyles* which he calleth otherwise *Pentaphyllum*, and it is called in English *Cinquefoile*, whereof hath bene spoken before.

Peron, in Latine *Erodium*, *Rhodius*, *Anis Diomedea*, and *Ardea*: it is a birde euery where well known.

Hollyhockes, in Greeke and in Latine *Alibea*, *Aristalibea*, and *Dendron Malache*, of *Etrus* and *Galen Ebiscus*, *Ibiscus*, *Hibiscus*, and at the Apothecaries *Maluaniscus*, and *Bismalna*: the leaues and flowers are hot and dry in the first degre.

Hony, *Mel*.

Honyfuckle, in Greeke *Periclymenum*, *Periclymenus*, *Agine*, *Carpathon*, *Splenion*, *Calycanthemum*, in Latine *Volucrum maius*, *Inuolucrum maius*, *Pileolus Veneris*, & of the Herbarists *Maurisylua*, *Matersylua*, or *Vinciboscum*, of *Scribonius Sylua mater*: the Apothecaries do call it *Caprifolium*, or *Lilium inter spinas*. There are two kinds of it, first the common sort which is known euery where by the name of *Honyfuckle*: the other kind is only set in gardens, and is very like the former, but that the leaues are somewhat broader, and grow close to the stalkes much like the *Thysoware*: the floures are a litle shorter than those of the former, and white of colour intermixed with purple, and smel very pleasantly. In *Prouence* and *Italy* is this sort as common as the other is with vs; for it groweth in euery hedge, &c. The Herbaristes doe call it for a difference from the former, *Caprifolium Italicum*, *Caprifolium perfoliatum*, or *Periclymenum Italicum*, and *Periclymenum perfoliatum*, both these plants are hot and dry by nature: the leaues and

the flowers are vsed for sinking vlcers, & *Stulacs*, canker, and *Pockes*.

Pops, in Greeke *Bryon*, in Latine *Lupulus*, *Salsitarius*, *Lupulus*, *Humulus*, and of *Mesues Volubilis*, or *Volubilis magna*, *Lupus reptans*, *Habiola*, and *Bruscandula*. It is hot and dry in the second degre.

Popchound, in Greeke and Latine *Linostrophon*, *Phyllopharis*, *Camelopodium*, *Prassium*, and *Marrubium*.

Horse, *Equus*.

Horse Leache, *Hirudo*, *Sanguisuga*: it is a well known water woꝝme, it is often vsed to drawe out blood of the body of man

Horse Radish, *Sinapi Persicum*, at the Apothecaries *Raphanus maior*, of the Herbaristes *Raphanus condimentarius*, & *Raphanus obsonarium*. The Arabians do call it *Nasturtium album*. This roote is euery where well known, and is taken of diuers vnskillfull phisitions and Apothecaries for *Armoracia*, and *Raphanus minor*, or *Sylvestris*, the which are the names of wild Radish.

Horse tayle, in Greeke *Hippuris*, in Latine *Equisetum*, *Canda equina*, and *Asprella*, *Dioscorides* doth also call it *Ephedron*, and *Anabasis*. There are two kinds of it the greater and the lesser: the greater is that whereof we haue now spoken: the lesser is called *Hippuris minor*, *Equitium*.

Horse tong, in Greeke and Latine *Hippoglossum*, *Hypoglossum*, *Epiglossum*, *Epiphyllocarpon*, *Lingua pagana*, *Bonifacia*, *Vuularia*, and *Bislingua*.

Hounds tong, *Cynoglossum*, or *Cynoglossa*, *Lingua Canina*: it is colde and dry in the second degre.

Houelleke, in Greeke *Isoon*, *Hypogressum*, *Stergethron*, *Zophthalmion*, and *Athales*, in latine *Sedum semperuiuum*, and of *Apuleius Vitalis*, *Caulis Iouis*, of the Herbarists *Herba tonitru*: the Apothecaries doe call it *Barba Iouis*. The second kind is the lesser *Houelleke* called of the Grecians *Triethales*, *Eristhales*, *Geoffitis*, and *Petrophytes*, in latine *Aizoon minus*, *Sedum minus*, *Vermicularis*, *Candamuris*, of *Plinie Digitellus*, of the Herbaristes *Herba vermiculata*, at the Apothecaries *Crassula minor*: both these herbes haue like operations, for they do dry, cole, and are astringent, but colde in the third degre.

Huckle berries, field *Berries*, *Bilberries*, *Pseudomyrtus*, *Vitis Idea* *Theophrasti*, it is a plant growing on hills and in woods very common. These blacke *Berries* are seldy taken

The second Table.

taken for Spittle seedes of the southsayers and vnllearned crue, as they also do with the leaues in stead of Spittle leaues, for they could neuer gesse by the signe and course of the Moone, nor by any other stars influence, what the right *Myrtus* is, for which cause they vse this plant for it; but one must take heede not to vse them for Spirtles, for they neither haue the virtues nor operation of them.

Hyslope or *Slope*, *Hysopus*, or *Hysopum*.

I.

I Acinth, in Græke and Latine *Hyacinthus*. It is a pretious stone of a light violet colour. It is called an orientall, or Bohemish Amethyst. It is dealt withall of the vnskilfull as it is with diuers other simples, for the Chrysolite hath bene vfed many yerres for the Jacinth, but how erroneously that hath bene done, may appeare by the writings of *Plinie*, who sayth, that the Jacinth is like the Amethyst. Wherefore it is apparat that the *Hyacinthus* hath his name of the violet coloured floure *Hyacinthus*, which is most like to y natural Amethyst, so that the *Chrysolithus* hath falsely ben vfed for the *Hyacinthus*. Also the yellow stone *Prasius*, or *Chrysoprasium* hath falsly bin called *Chrysolithus*, by which meanes these stones haue bin confused & confusedly vfed the one for the other: wherefore *Hyacinthus* is the Bohemish or orientall Amethyst, & the Chrysolite is a false Jacinth, & *Chrysoprasius* is the false Chrysolite: this haue I thought good to shew, by reason of the great errors dayly committed, to the end that moze warily might be dealt hereafter in the like cases.

Jasper stone, it is a pretious stone, whereof there be diuers kinds, to wit, græne red, light red, darke blew, liuer coloured, and spotted, yellow like Turpentine, and gray with smokie colours: all these kinds are in the fields about *Niurnoy*, and also here and there in *fraunce*, also in *Germany* in sundry places, except the græne and darke græne Jaspers, which only are brought out of *India*, these two last kinds are the best. The darke græne Jasper is called *Heliotropius*: the light græne like a Smaragde is called *Lapis viridis*, this is vfed for the Smaragde but vniustly. The liuer coloured is called at the Apothecaries *Lapis Hepaticus*. The yellow Jasper is called of *Dioscorides* *The-*

rebintizusa, and the blew Jasper *Aerizusa*: Jewes lime, in græke *Asphaltos*, in latine *Bitumen*, and at the Apothecaries *Bitumen Iudaicum*, it hath his name by reason that it was wont to be brought vnto vs from *Iudea* out of the salt sea, wherein the *Jordan* doth exonerate it selfe, which also hath bin taken for the very best of *Galen*, *Dioscorides*, and of diuers other auncient wryters: but that which is now adayes found at the Apothecaries is only a deceipt and a counterfeited Jewes lime, to wit, made of Pitch, and *Oleum petre*, which is both bought and sould of Jewes, and other conuetous Merchants, wherefore it is much better to vse of our Dutch Pitch (which is the right *Bitumen*) then to take one that is counterfeited. Pitch or Jewes lime is very seldome vfed alone, but it is alwayes mixed with other things.

Jewes stone, in Græke and Latine *Tecolithus*, *Phœnicites*, *Pyrene*, and *Eureos*. All these names doth *Plinie* attribute to the Jewes stone, yet he doth also call the sponge stone *Spongites Tecolithus*, but this name is only due to the Jewes stone. It is called of *Dioscorides*, *Lapis Iudaicus*, by which name it is also knowne at the Apothecaries.

Incke, *Atramentum scriptorium*, *Atramentum librarium*, the Apothecaries do call it *Encanistum*.

Indian nut, in Græke *Caryon Indicon*, in Latine *Nux Indica*, & of *Serapio Neregil*. It is a fruit like to the great Pompeons whilst it is græne, but it is brought vnto vs dried: the shale of it is as hard as a hozne, black without, and as big as a common bowle. It is also well knowne in this cuntry: within it hath a white pith or kernell, it is vfed at all Apothecaries. The kernell is hot in the second, and moyst in the first degré.

Ireas, of *Dioscorides*, *Iris*, *Vrania*, *Thaumasos*, *Thelpide*, or *Thalpide*, and *Catheron*: of *Athenaus*, and *Theophrastus*, *Hieris*, in Latine *Iris*, *Operitritus*, *Radix marica*, and *Radix consecratrix*, of the Herbarists *Sirapula odorata*, *Radix violacea*, and at the Apothecaries *indeclinabiliter in casu genitino*, *Ireos*, or *Irios*. There are five kindes of it, the first is strange, and is only planted in Gardens, it hath a faire white and odoriferous floure: the roote is also white and swæte smelling: it is called
of

The second Table.

of the Herbariſtes *Iris alba*, *Iris domeſtica alba*. The ſecond kind is alſo planted in gardens, it is very like the former, but the flower is blew and within of diuers colours, not vnlike to the raynebowl: the roſe is ſomewhat grayer than the firſt, and not ſo odoiferous: it is called the blew flower belnce, of the Herbariſts *Iris carulea*, *Iris domeſtica carulea*, and *Lilium caruleum*. The third kinde groweth of it ſelfe in the woods, it is much like to the laſt mentioned, but that the flower is bigger and ſomewhat declining to the Violet or purple colour, with in diſtinguiſhed with many colours like a raynebowl. This is called wilde Ireas, of the Herbariſts *Iris ſylueſtris*, *Lilium caeleſte ſylueſtre*. The fourth kind hath ſmall, yet long & narrow leaues, and a faire blew flower without any ſmell: the roſe is ſomewhat leſſe than of the others, but not odoiferous, yea almoſt without ſmell, but very ſharpe and biting in taſte. It groweth commonly nere the Rhene in marſhes: it is called of the Simpliciteſtes *Iris paluſtris anguſtifolia*, *Lilium caruleum paluſtre minus*. The fiſt kind groweth alſo in moiſt places nere the Rhene, it hath broader & ſhorter leaues then the former with a blew flower: the roſe is very ſharpe on the tong but without any ſent. It is called of the Herbariſtes *Chamaeiris*, *Iris pumila*, *Iris paluſtris minor*, *Iris paluſtris latifolia*, *Gladiolus paluſtris latifolius*, *Gladiolus paluſtris minor*, and *Lilium caruleum paluſtre minus*. Dioſcorides commendeth the *Iris Illyrica* or *Sclanonia* aboue all other kindes. This is ſomewhat leſſe then the common kind of Ireas: it is alſo ſomewhat reddiſh and of a pleaſant colour, and ſweete in ſmell. But the Italian Ireas and that which groweth in Apulia, both not only excēde the former in odoiferouſnes, but alſo in operation: wherefore it is alſo commended of all learned phiſitions aboue that of *Illyria*. The Herbariſts do call it *Iris Italica*, *Iris Florentina*, *Iris Apula*: in Engliſh the white Ireas roſe. If thou therefore find Ireas in any compoſition with any addition, then ſhalt thou take the *Iris Florentina*, which is common at all Apothecaries.

Iſope, loke Hyſſop. *H.*

Iuiubes, in Græke and Latine *Sericum*, *Zyzophum*, and at the Apothecaries *Iuinba*: it is a kind of *Prunus* that are well knownen.

Iron, *Ferrum*, it is very much uſed in Phiſick:

for it is made red hot and extinguished in water, wine, milk, and many other liquors more.

Juniper tree, in Græke *Arceuthos*, in Latine *Iuniperus*. There are two kinds of it, the great and the leſſer Juniper tree: the leſſer is common on euery hill and knownen to euery man: in Græke and of Dioſcorides it is called *Arceuthis*, and *Acatbalis*. of Theophrastus *Oxycedrus*, in latin *Iuniperus minor*, *Iuniperulus* and *Iupicellus*, in Engliſh the Juniper Shrub. The great Juniper tree hath bigger, ſtronger, and more prickling leaues, then the leſſer, and it is a moſtly great tree: the berries and fruits are thicke bigger then thoſe of the former: it groweth on high hills and in woods. It is called in Græke of Dioſcorides *Arceuthos*, and *Acatara*, of others *Oxyarceuthis*, and of Theophrastus *Cedria*, in Latine *Iuniperus maior*, *Iuniperus acuta*, and *Cupreſſus ſylueſtris*. They are both of ſundry virtues and operations in Phiſick, & therefore they may be uſed without indifferently **Iuozie**, *Ebur*, *Ebor*, *Dens Elephantis*, but *Iuba* both call the **Iuozie** or Elephants tooth *Cerata*.

Iuie, in Latine and Græke *Ciſſus*, *Hedera*, *Edera*, and *Hedera*.

K.

Kite, *Ictinus*, in latine *Miluus*, and *Miluius*. **Knotgras**, in Græke *Polygonum*, in latine *Proſerpinnaca*, *Herba ſanguinalis*, or *Sanguinaria*. There are three kinds of it, to wit, the male, the female, & the leſſer knotgras: the male is ſufficiently knownen by the name of Knotgras, it groweth euery where on the high waies and vntilled grounds: it is called in græke *Polycarpon*, *Carcinethron*, *Tentalis*, *Myriopetalon*, *Cnepodium*, *Pedalion*, in latine *Polygonum mas*, *Sanguinaria*, *Herba ſanguinalis mas*, *Seminalis*, *Vergis miris*, *Proſerpinnaca*, of Apuleius *Clinopodiontes*, *Scorpinaca*, *Stratumarina*, and *Mifereminium*. The Herbariſtes do call it *Polygonum Heracleum*, or *Herculeum*, *Corrigiola*, *Mulinodia*, *Centumnodia*, *Gramen Porcinum*, of Aetius *Heliobotane*, that is, *Herba ſolis*, Dioſcor. both alſo call it in græke *Cynochala*. The ſecond kind is a kind of *Doſe* ſtale, and is called of the common people the leſſer *Doſe* ſtale, & of Dioſc. to diſtinguiſh it from the other *Polygonum femina*, or *Sanguinalis femina*. The third kind and the leſſer knotgras groweth willingly in the fields amongſt Turneps, and it hath ſmall ſtar like

The second Table.

like leaues, & great stoze of seede: the Herbarists doe call it *Polygonum minus*, *Centinodia minor*, *Multinodia minor*, *Corrigiola minor*, *Sanguinalis minor*, *Seminalis minor*, and *Ruella*: but whensoever any mention is made, then must the first kind be vnderstande.

L.

Lady mantle, the greater Sanicle of *Valerius Cordus*, it is called in græke *Drosin*, *Drosifera*, and *Psidiu*: the Herbarists doe call it *Alchimilla*, *Stellaria*, *Sanicula maior*, *Pes leonis*, and *Planta leonis*: it is a wel knowen veneral herb, yet altogether vnknowen to the auncient Physicians. It is hot and dry in the second degre, it is used in all manner of vnerall potions, salues, and oiles.

Ladythistle, in græke and latine *Sylbū* of the Herbarists *Cardus diana Maria*, *Cardus marianus*, at the Apothecaries *Chameleonta*, as they are taught by the vnskillfull Physicians.

Larke, in græke *Corydes*, & *Corydalis*, of Pliny in latin *Galeitia*, & *Alanda*. The Larke is much comended for the paine of the belly & many other infirmities.

Larks spur, of *Dioscor.* *Cuminū syluestre alterū*, of the Herbarists *Pleuranthemū*, *Calcaria*, *Herbadus Otisla*, *Flos regius*, *Cymnū cornutū*, *Cymnū siliquosum*, *Cymnū corniculatū*, & *Calcatrippa*, although the Startthistles in Italy be also called *Calcatrippa*, at the Apothec. *Consolida regia*, and *Cōsolida regalis*, *Ruellius calletū* it *Cornuta*.

Lauander, *Lauādula*, *Lauādula*, & *Lauendādula*. There are 2. kinds of it, sufficiently knowen to euery man, to wit, the great & the lesser: the lesser kind is comonly called *Lauander*, & is euery where knowen by that name: the greater is called *Spikenarde*, & of the Herbarists *Spica hortulana*, and *Pseudonardus*. In olde time, as well as in this our age, haue these herbs bin planted nere Beehiues, because the Bees do loue both the smell & the tast of the Lauander flowers. The ancient Physicians haue called this herbe *Casia herba*, *Casia coronaria*, & *Cneoron*: whereby they haue meant both the Lauader & the Spikenard: for there are 2. kinds of the herbe *Casia*. The vse of both these herbs is very common with vs in Physicke: not only vsed of it self, but mixed also with other things.

Laurel, or *Rozel*, in græke *Daphnoides*, *Eupetalō*, *Pelasgū* Plinij, *Peplom* *Dioscoridis*, in latine *Laurcola*, and *Piper montanum* of the Herbarists: it is a wel knowen plant, that groweth

in the woods, & dangerous to be vsed: some vnskillfull Physicians & Apothecaries do vse it for the true *Mexereon* of the Arabians.

Lead, *Plumbum*.

Leauen, in græke *Zyme*, of *Theophrastus*, *Phyrama*, in latine *Fermenium*.

Lemon, *Lemoniū malū*, *Limonium malū*, *Pomum Lemonium*, and *Limonium*, it is sufficiently knowen euery where.

Lentils, in græke *Phacos*, in latine *Lens*, and *Lenticula*. They are meane between hot and cold, but dry in the third degre.

Lettice, in græke *Thridax*, in latine *Lactuca*, a very common & well knowen herbe. There are many kinds of it: first the comon Lettice which is called boade Lettice: secondly the crumpled Lettice, called *Lactuca crispa*, and *Lactuca cappadox*: the third kind is the headed Lettice, *Lactuca sessilis*; of Pliny, *Lactuca Laconica*; of Columella, *Lactuca Cecilians*, & *Lactuca medica*; of *Arbenamus*, *Astilius*; and of *Pithagoras*, *Eunuchio*, because that it hindereth the generation of humane seed: the fourth kind is wild, & is called wild Lettice, in græke *Thridax agria*, in latin *Lactuca sylvestris*, of the Herbarists *Chenoglossū*, *Lingua anserina*, and *Carduus Hepaticus*. Some blunt Physicians do vse this for *Endiue*, although the *Endiue* be very comon & knowen of most men, which is no small error.

Licebane, or *Stauesacre*, in græke *Asiaphys agria*, *Staphys agria*, and *Phittolotonum*, in latine *Vua sylvestris*, *Pedicularis*, and *Herba pedicularis*, of the Herbarists *Piper murinum*, and at the Apothecaries *Staphisagria*: of the whole plante is only the seede vsed.

Licozire, *Glycyrrhiza*, *Glyceraton*, *Glycephyton*, *Adipsos*, *Sylitra*, *Lybestafon*; and *Theophrast.* calleth it *Euryglycea*, in latine *Radix dulcis*, *Radix Scythica*, & at the Apothecaries *Liquiritia*, & of some barbarous people *Regulitia*: it is a wel knowen roote, & especially about *Wamberge*, where it groweth in that abundance, that it doth not only serue Germany but many other countries moze.

Lighe, *Lixium*, and *Lixinia*, of *Columell.* *Spuma caustica*, of *Martialis*, *Spuma Batana*.

Lignum Aloes, in græke *Agallochum*, of *Aetius*, *Simeon Sethus*, *Nicolaus*, and *Aluarius*, *Xyloaloes*, in latine of Pliny, *Tarum*, of the later writers *Lignum aloes*, *Xylum aloes*, and *Xyloaloes*. The Druggists do call it *Calambucum*, *Lignum Taprobanum*, *Lignum paradisi*, and *Lignum sancta crucis*. In the Bible hath it onely bene called Aloes: it is an

The second Table.

odoriferous kind of wood which is brought out of the Isles of *Scyria*, or *Taprobana*: There are many kindes of it, the heaviest is the best, and that which is hard and spotted black, and very sappy, is also taken for the best.

Lilly, in græke and latine *Crinon*, *Lirium*, *Lilium*, *Rosa lunonis*, or *Iunonia Rosa*, *Nicander* calleth it *Crinanthemum*. The Apothecaries call it for a difference of the others *Lilium album*, that is the white Lilly: and by the name of Lillies in this booke are alwaies the white ones ment.

Liriconfancie or **Day Lillies**, or Lillies of the vallies, of *Theophrastus*, *Lilium vernum*, of the Herbarists and common Physicians *Lilium conuallium*. Some would haue it to bee the *Cacalia* of *Dioscorides*, but they are deceived. The flowers of this herbe are only used.

Litharge of golde or siluer, *Lithargyrium*, there are two kinds of it: the first is the Litharge or dross of siluer, *Argyrus*, at the Apothecaries *Lithargyrium argenti*. The second kinde is the Litharge of golde, and it is somewhat redder than the former. There is yet another kinde called of *Pliny*, *Molybdus*, & of other *Spuma plumbi*, that is, the scum of Lead. Otherwise it is also called *Lithargyrium argenti*, also *Lithargyros*, and of *Pliny*, *Spuma argenti*, as the Litharge of golde is called of some *Spuma auri*. These 3. kinds haue the same qualities and operations, yet is the litharge of gold taken for the best; the scum of lead; lastly the litharge of siluer.

Loadstone, in græke of *Galen*, *Magnetis*, and *Heraclea*, of *Callimachus*, *Heracleotis*, and of *Porphyrius*, *Magnes*, as it is also called in latine. It is called of *Pliny* *Sideritis*, because it draweth Iron vnto it.

Robber, *Cancer marinus*.

Louage, in græke *Hippocelinum*, in latine *Apium equinum*, of *Theodorus Gaza*, *Equapium*, of the Herbarists, *Pseudoligusticum*, of the Apothecaries and common Physicians *Lenisticum*. Because they haue used it many yeres for the true *Libysticum*, or *Ligusticum*, therefore will they (according to their old custome) remaine in their error, & will by no means be better instructed, let the poore patient spee as he list: Notwithstanding that the true *Libysticum* of the auncients be in great abundance brought out of *Italy*, for it groweth verie common in *Liguria*, and other *Provinces*: but diligent and careful

Physitions do plant the same in their gardens. Others that haue not the true *Ligusticum*, vse the *Angelica* for it, or the *Oustrum*: for both these herbes haue the same virtues with the *Ligusticum*: the which all Physicians and Apothecaries ought to imitate, vntill such time as they attaine to the true *Ligusticum*. If we did so much trouble our selues about the knowledge of herbs and simples, as we do about the making of Calenders & Prognostications, we might haue this and many simples more which now we want. The *Ligusticum* is also called *Panacea* of *Dioscorides*.

Lupines, in græke and latin *Lupinus*, *Thermus*, and *Faba Lupina*.

M.

Mace in græke and latine *Macer*, *Xylomacer*, *Macis*, and *Nucis myristica inuolutum*: It is a well knowne spice, hot and drie by nature.

Madder, in græke and latin *Erythrodanum*, of *Nicander*, *Scyron*, *Rubia*, *Rubia tinctorum*, *Rubia infectoria*, *Vena tinctoria*: at the Apothecaries *Rubia tinctorum*, and *Vena tinctorum*. There are two kindes of it, the wild & the tame: the wild groweth euery where in the woods, & it is much better & fitter for Physicke than the other, which my self haue approued to be true at sundry times: the rote is only in vse, for the herb hath final virtue.

Maggie, *Pica*, and *Citta*.

Palmsie, in græke and latin *Momembrasites*, *Vinum aruissum*, *Vinum Creticum*, *Vinum chiu*, and *Nicolaus Myrepsus* calleth it *Vinum Momembrasiticum*, the common Physicians and Apothecaries call it *Vinum maluatium*, and *Vinum maruissum*, or *Maluissum*.

Pallowes, in græke *Malache*, in latin *Malua*. There are 4. principall kinds of it, wherof the first is the tame Pallowe, which groweth in gardens & elswhere: it is called *Malua satina*, *Malua hortensis*, of the Herbarists *Malua maior*, *Hippomalache*, and *Malua caballina*: this is the right Pallowe, or *Malua satina* of the auncients, notwithstanding that it groweth in all places of it self. The second kind groweth euery where by hedges & ditches, & it is much lesse than the former, it is called in græke *Malache agria*, and in latine *Malua syluestris*, or *Malua agrestis*, of the Herbarists *Chenomalache*, *Maina anserina*, *Malua leporina*, and *Malua pumila*, in English the

The second Table.

the lesser *Pallowes*. The third kind is now adaies planted in gardens, and it is called crumpled *Pallowes*, it is moze moyst than either of the former, although that first it came from them; for by the arte of Gardening it is so changed, as many other plantes also are. It is called of the *Herbarists* *Maluaromana*, or *Maluacrispa*. The fourth kind is called a winter *Rose*, in græke *Moloché*, and in latine of *Apuleius*, *Hastularegia*, of the *Herbarists* *Rosa transmarina*, *Rosa hyemalis*, *Rosa autumnalis*: the *Apothecaries* call it *Malua arborea*. The first two kindes are meane warme and moyst by nature, but the lesser disagreeeth somewhat from the other. The crumpled *Pallowes* are much moyst by nature than the other, and is but seldome vsed in Physicke, and that because the two first are much stronger. The winter *Roses* are middle meane warme, but astringent withall, that as the former kindes doe lose the belly, so this doth bynde the same: wherefore it is also vsed for the *Laske*: They therefore doe lie falsely, that commendeth this kinde aboue all the *Pallowes* of *Dioscorides* and *Galen*.

Pandzake, *Mandragora*, *Antimelon*: this is called of *Pythagoras*, *Anthropomorphos*.

Paniple is a handfull, or as much as one can hold in his hand, of hearbs, flowers, roots, and such like thinges, in græke *Dracos*, *Dragma*, and of the later *Grecians* *Dimidion* in latine of *Cornelius Celsus*, *Manipulus*, of *Scribonius* and *Marcellus*, *Fasciculus*, of *Pliny*, *Fasciculus manualis*.

Panna, *Melligo*, *Salina siderum*, *Ros syriacus*, *Melaerium*: of *Galen*, *Aromeli*, *Drosomeli*, at the *Apothecaries* *Manna*, or *Manna celestis*, to distinguish it frõ the *Frankincense*, which is called *Manna Libani*, and *Manna Thuris*. There are two kinds of *Manna*, the one is soft & thin, which is gathered in stone pots, & that is called of *Galen* *lib. tertio de alimentorum facultatibus*, the principal *Aromeli*, that is, *Melaerium*, and *Mellibani*. The *Arabians* do call it for a difference from the other *Tereniabin*, & *Auerroes* *Tergebun*. The *Simplicists* do call it *Manna liquida*. But nowe adaies it is neither found nor vsed any longer, as it was wont to be in the time of *Galen*, & of other writers. This *Manna liquida* both *Hippocrates* call *Mel cedrinum*. The other kind is drie and hard like *Sugar*, & is differing according to the place where it is col-

lected, so that y one is called *Manna Calabrina*, & *Manna Bombycina*, this is brought out of *Calabria*, & it is accepted the worst kind, and it is not so sweete as the other. The other kind is called *Manna Brianfona*, it is in compacted, hard, and fatty graines, it is also sweeter than the former, and moze forcible in operation. The third kind is whiter, and the graines of it are not much unlike to the of *Pastick*, it is also called *Mānagranata*, or *granulata*, or *Mastichina*, & it is the very best. *Marchasite*, in græke and latine *Pyrites*, at the *Apothecaries* *Marchasita*, it is a minerall stone, it is vsed in *Guns* & *Winder bores*. There are many kinds of it, whose names do all differ according to the minerall that they containe.

Harierom bastard, loke *Dzany O*.

Harierom gentle, in græke *Sampsychus*, in latine *Amaracum* or *Amaracum*, of *Egineta* and at the *Apothecaries* *Maiorana*.

Harigold, of *Virgil*, *Columella*, and *Pliny*, *Caliba*, and of the *Herbarists* *Solsequium aureum*, *Verrucaria*, *Caliba poetica*, to distinguish it frõ the *Caliba* of *Dioscorides*, which is the *Chrysanthemum*: it is otherwise called *Calendula*, & there are 2. kinds of it, to wit, the common *Harigold*, that groweth in euery garden, & is called *Calendula*. The second kinde hath fair great & double flowers, it is called *Calendula multiplex*. The third kind is much lesse than both the former, but very like to y first kind with flowers, leaues, & roots: this kind groweth euery where about *Worms*, & also about *Reingau* in ploughed fields, & it is much better & fitter for Physick than the former, it is called the wild *Harigold*, *Calendula sylvestris*, and *Arnenfis*: some call it *Calibula*, because it is the least of the three.

Pastick, in græke and latine *Mastiche*, *Resina lentiscina*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Mastix*.

Paudinwort, in græke *Chrysocome*, & *Chrysis*, in latine *Coma aurea*, *Aureola*, and *Amaranthus*, of *Galen* & the *Herbarists* *Amaranthus luteus*, *Amaranthus aureus*, *Tinearia*, *Silphanthemum*, *Stachas citrina*, *Stichas citrina*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Stichados citrinum*. This herbe is knowen to most men, and is hot & drie by nature.

Pault is prepared *Barly*, whereof the beere is made, it is called in græke of *Ætius*, *Byne*, and in latine *Maltum*.

Pay Lillies, or flowers, loke *Lirycosancie*. L.

Parth garlick, in græke & latine of *Dioscorides*,

The second Table.

Scordium, *Scorbinum*, *Dysofmon*, and *Mithridation*, of *Apuleius Scordilum*, *Mithridation*, and *Hama Elinos*, of the *Herbarists Trixago palustris*, *Trixago palustris*, *Trixago aquatica*, *Chamadrys aquatica*, and of *Apuleius Sanguis Milui*. There are three kinds of it: the first is very like the true *Germander* both in the flower and in the leaf; but that the leaves are somewhat softer and of a light green colour, and smell like *Garlicke*: the second kind is much like to the former, but that it is in every respect somewhat greater: it hath soft leaves somewhat rough & gray, but in smell it is like to the former. The first kind is called of the *Herbarists Scordium minus*, & the second kinde *Scordium maius*: the third kinde hath a square stalk and white flowers like to the *Hozehound*: the leaves are bigge and much jagged, the smell is like *Garlicke*, but not so strong as the other two. *Plinius* calleth it *Scardotis*, the *Herbarists Scordium alterum* *Pliny*, or *Scordium Plinianum*, *Scordastrum*, *Marrubium palustre*, or *Marrubium aquaticum*: in English water *Hozehound*. The *Apothecaries* and such like *Southsayers* have taken the wilde garlick for the true *Scordium* but how falsely that is apparant enough to all the learned. The first and second kind are used promiscue the one for the other: but it auayleth not, seeing they are both of one operation. The water or marsh *Hozehound* is as yet unknowne at the *Apothecaries* & not used at all. The *Scordium* is used in many compositions.

Payden haire, in greek and latine *Adiantum*, *Polytrichon*, *Gallitricbon*, *Ebenotrichon*, *Capillus Veneris*, *Supercilium terra*, & *Herba Capillaris*. There are two kindes of it: the first is called *Adiantum nigrum*, or *Adiantum gallicum*, because that it is brought out of *Fraunce* unto vs: all the English names (as *Venus haire*, *Payden haire*, &c.) are proper unto this kind, and whensoever you find either of them in any compositions, then shall this kind alwaies be vnderstood: the second kind is called *Adiantum album*: it is a common and well knowne herbe here and elsewhere: some men call it *Onoperti-um*, *Filicula Asellorum*, *Ruta muraria*, and *Salvia vicia*. Note in *V*. for *Venus haire*.

Speade or Honey water, in greek *Hydromeli*, *Melicratum*, and in Latine *Aqua mulsca*.

Spedler tree, *Mespilus*.

Spelilot, it is called of the *Herbarists Melilotus*

Nobilis, *Herba flauca*, *Herba leperina*, *Melilotus coronata*, *Sertulavergia*, and *Coronavergia*. It is a well knowne herbe, it groweth in high meadowes and hils about a span and a halfe in height (to wit in the Low-countries) with small Clauers; it hath a fine yellow flower which doth both smell and taste like hony; it is not much unlike the flower of *Pealon*. It is used euery where instead of the true *Melilotus* of the auncients, because it hath the same vertues and operations that are ascribed to their *Melilotus*. But in all Germany is the *Saxifragium luteum* most used, and the *Melilotus Saxifragus*, and *Trifolium vrsinum*, which *Dioscorides* doth call *Lotus Libyca*, *Lotus sylvestris*: this is much more forcible than the common *Spelilot* as hath bene approued. And although this kind be *Melilotus sylvestris* with *Dioscorides*; yet there is another kind of it, to wit, *Melilotus Anicenna*, whereof he maketh two kinds, the one with white, & the other with yellow flowers; both which do smell very sweet and are altogether bitter in taste; yet do they digest and bind, which qualities *Dioscorides* and *Galen* do also ascribe to their *Spelilot*: wherefore it is aduised to take the great *Spelilot Anicenna*, and it is used at the *Apothecaries*. The white *Spelilot* is not common in all countries, wherefore it is sown in gardens in many places. The white is called at the *Apothecaries Melilotus alba*, and the yellowe *Melilotus lutea*, the *Herbarists* doe thus distinguish it from *Lotus satina*, they call it *Lotus alba*, *Lotus lutea*, as they also call the *Lotus satina* and *Lotus cerulea*. *Serapio* hath also his proper *Spelilot*, to wit the lesser *Clitcher*, which after the flower is fallen away it getteth little huskes like bird clauers. Some doe vse the lesser small *Spelilot* that grow in meadowes, which is something lesse then the common *Spelilot*, calling it *Melilotus minor*, we call it the lesser *Spelilot*. *Diosc.* calleth his *Spelilot* that groweth in *Campania*, *Sertula Campana*, and *Cato Sertula Campana*.

Spelons, *Melon*, *Melopepon* and *Melo*.

Spithizate, *Antidotus Methridatica*, *Methridaticum*, & at the *Apothec.* *Methridatū*. It is a pretious confection against all poyson which first was made by King *Mithricate*, & hath called it by his owne name.

Spewe, *Anethum sylvestre*, *Anethū vrsinum*, *Anethum tortuosum*, & *Meum*: some doe call it *Seseli Creticum*, but care not for them, for it

The second Table.

is the true *Meum* of the auncients, as euery one may see and finde to be without deceit, that shal confer it with y^e description of *Dios.*
Spilke Thistle, in Greeke and Latine *Chamaeleon niger*, and at the Apothecaries *Cardopastinum*, some do also call it *Carlina nigra*.

Spill dust, in Greeke *Pollen*, *Farina volatica*, at the Apothecaries *Farina volatilis*.

Spill stone, *Lapis molaris*, of *Virgil* *Lapis incusius*.

Spillet, in Greeke *Cenchros*, of *Sirabo* *Cenchrus*, of *Hippoc.* *Paspale*: it is euery where in Germania well knownen, & is daily vsed in meats.

Spillet of Indie, it is called in Latine *Melica*, of *Plinie* *Milium Indicum*, of the Herbarists *Panicum Indicum*, *Meliga*, *Sorghum*, and *Sagina*. The Portugales call it *Milium sabursum*. It is a plant not much vnlike to the Sugar canes, and beareth a bowone seede like a Lettice, but somewhat sharpe. It is now adapes soluen in gardens.

Spiskledene, in Greeke of *Plinie* *Ixos*, and of *Virgil* *Astilis*, of *Hesichius* *Stear*, *Stelis*, in Latin and of *Virgil* *Viscum*. It is an excrecence of trees, and groweth commonly on Peare and Apple trees: also on the Hawthorne tree and Birch trees: but that which groweth on Oakes, Ellet trees, Chestnut trees, or Haelers, is commended aboue the rest in Whiske. It is vsed for the falling euill and swimming of the head.

Spisse, in Greeke *Bryon*, *Sphagnum*, *Alnion*, and *Amnion*, in Latine *Muscus*, *Muscus arborum*, and *Lanugo arborum*: at the Apothecaries and of the Arabians *Vsua*.

Spouse, *Mus*, a domesticall animall.

Spouse eare, *Auricula muris*. The herbs that are called Spouse eare are folwer in number, although there be but one of them that is called so of the auncient wryters: the first and greatest kind is called of some Spouse eare, others Lungwort: it groweth commonly in darke Bechen woods & olde wals, it hath broad rough & hayzie leaues that lie downe flat on the ground, and a stalke that is diuided into thre or folwer sprigs, on the top whereof are yelloe flowers: this stalke being squised it yeldeth a white milkie iuice like to the wild Lettice: the Chirurgians do call it *Lactaria consolida*: the Herbaristes *Pilosella maior*, *Auricula Muris maior*, and *Pulmonaria Gallica*, bicause it also serueth for the disease of the lights. The second kinde is called *Pilosella media*, and *Pilosella*, or Spouse eare, by which name it is euery where knownen as also in this

Booke it is called no otherwise. The thirde kinde is called the lesser Spouse eare, of the Herbarists *Flos Angelicus*, and *Pilosella minor*. It groweth in barren groundes, it hath faire white and purple flowers. The fourth kinde is called the blew Spouse eare or blew Eyebright, of *Dioscorides* *Myosotis*, *Auricula muris*, and of the Herbaristes *Euphrasia carulea*, and *Auricula Muris carulea*. This herbe is nothing like to the former thre kinds in operation and virtue: for the water distilled of it is vsed for the dimmes and blaerndnes of the eyes. The auncient Physicians haue onely vsed it for the bad eyes. But our common Spouse eare is onely vsed in potions for woundes and ruptures, and such like compositions: notwithstanding that it hath his proper vse of it selfe.

Spouse of the Alpes, *Mus Alpinus*, whereof the grease is vsed against the lamenes and extenuation of the ioynts.

Spugwort, *Artemisia* it is an herbe sufficiently knownen, hot and dry in the second degree.

Spulberrie tree, *Morea*, *Sycaminus*, in Greeke, in latine *Morus*, and *Arbor sapiens*: the fruit is called *Morum*, or Spulberrie.

Spummie, *Mumia*: there are two kinds of it, the one is digged out of the Graues in Arabia and Syria of those that are Balsamed, and is brought vnto vs: it is called *Pissasphaltum salitium*, of the Arabians *Mumia*, at the Apothecaries *Mumia*. *Serapio* calleth it *Mumia sepulchrorum*, to distinguish it from this kinde following. The Physicians call it *Mumia Arabum* for a difference from *Mumia Gracorum*. The second kind is onely an equall mixture of the Jewes lyme, and *Bitumen*: in Greeke *Pissasphaltum*, in Latine *Picibitumen*, and of the Simplicistes *Cera montana*, *Cera terrestris*, *Pissasphaltum nativum*, and *Mumia natua*. But as often as Spummie is named in this present worke, is not the Jewes lyme meant, but the Spummie of the Arabians, to wit *Mumia sepulchrorum*, which is found at all Apothecaries vnder the name of *Mumia*.

Spuscadine, *Vinum Apianum*, *Vinum Muscatulum*, *Vinum Muscatellinum*, and *Muscatellum*.

Spuske, *Muscu*, *Moscu*, *Muschu*, it is the dyed matter of the impostume of a certaine beast which is called of the Barbarians *Gazella*.

Spusse,

The second Table.

Must, in Græke *Glencos*, and *Dencos*, in Latine *Mustum*, and *vinum Mustum*, the wine first pressed out of the grape is called of *Columella*, *Mustum Lixivium*, of *Plinie* *Protropion*. This wine was wont to be inclosed in Tunnes, and they well hoped, to the end it should not clarifie, and that it might continue swæte. It is called of some *Vinum coactum*: it is called of the Grecians *Aiglenes*, that is, *semper mustum*. It is often used for physick, but very seldome alone.

Mustard, in Græke and Latine *Sinapi*, *Napi*, and *Sinapis*. There are two kinds thereof, the wilde and the tame Mustard. They are both of them hot and dry in the fourth degree: the tame kinde is more commended for physick then the wilde.

Mustard seede the white, or Rocket, in Græke *Eufomus*, or *Eufomum*, in Latine *Eruca*: there are four kinds of it, the first kind is sown in gardens, and is knowne every where by the name of Rocket, or white Mustard seede: this is the true *Eruca* and *Eufomum* of the auncients. The second kind groweth of it selfe in the fields, not unlike the former, but somewhat lesse; it is called of the Herbarists *Eruca sylvestris*, with vs, wild rocket. The other two kinds, to wit, the third, and fourth, do grow about the water side, and haue much bigger leaues then the former, whereof many leaues lye downe flat on the ground about the stalk: the one beareth white, the other yellow floures, they are called of the Herbarists *Eruca aquatica*, *Erucula marina*, in English water rocket.

Mints crumpled, *Menta crispa*, *Mentha sativa* or *Mintha*, it is hot in the third, and dry in the second degree: the Grækes do call it *Hedyosmum*.

N.

Narcissus, in Græke and Latine *Narcissus*. There are three kinds of it, the first is sufficiently knowne by the name of *Narcissus*, the Herbarists do call it *Rhodionarcissus*, and *Narcissus Roseus*, this is the true *Narcissus*. The second kind is very like the former, but it is somewhat bigger in euery respect, it is called of *Theophrastus* *Leucoium*, that is *viola alba*, and this kind is most of all used at the Apothecaries. The third kind is like the first in leafe and roote, but a little bigger, and the floure is yellow, the

Herbarists call it *Narcissus Autumnalis*, but this is only to be understood of the floure that groweth in harvest without any leuca. The rootes of it is called *Colchicum*, and *Ephemeron*, as hath been said of the *Hermosdactyles*.

Nep, at the Apothecaries *Menta felina*, *Cattaria*, it is used of diuers men for *Calamintha montana*, because it hath the same virtues, so that it may be done without any harme.

Nettles, that do burne, or burning nettles, *Vrtica pungens*, *vrtica vrens*.

Nettles, in Græke *Acalyphe*, *Acalephe*, *Cnide*, in Latine *Vrtica*, there are three kinds of them, first, the great and common burning nettle which is knowne to all men, this is called *Vrtica mas*, or *Vrtica maior*. The second kinde groweth not with vs, but must be sown in gardens, this bringeth her seed in heads like to flax, and indeede it is not vnlike to *Linesede*, but that it is somewhat lesse and whiter. This nettle is called of *Dioscorides* and *Plinie*, *Vrtica sylvestris*, and of the Herbarists *vrtica romana*, *vrtica italica*, *vrtica femina*. The seede of this nettle is more fit for physick then the former, and it is also more forcible. It is called the *Italian*, *Romish*, or *Garden nettle* *vrtica hortulana*: notwithstanding that sometimes it hath been taken for the wild nettle. The third kinde is the lesser and hotter of all, *Plinie* calleth it *Cania*, and the Herbarists *vrtica minor*. The seedes of all kinds of nettles are hot in the end of the first, and dry in the second degree: the rootes & leaues do warme, resolue, and discusse.

Nettles, stinking or dead nettles, *Vrtica iners*, *vrtica mortua*, *vrtica labeo*, *Anonium*, there be commonly four kinds of it, they are called in Græke of *Dioscorides* *Galiopsis*, and of *Plinie*, *Galeopsis*, *Galeobdolon*, or *Galephos*, in Latine *Vrtica labeo*, *vrtica fetida*, in English stinking nettles. The second kind is bigger and hath yellowish floures, it is called of the Herbarists *Archangelica*, and *archangelica lutea*, or *Anonium luteum*, it is also a kind of *Lanium*, (although *Plinie* do describe but one kind of *Lanium*) and is called the yellow archangell. The third kind hath white floures, the leaues are altogether like to the nettle leaues, wherefore they are also called dead nettles: it is called of *Plinie* and of the Herbarists *Lanium album*, to distinguish it from the former, *Archangelica alba*, *vrtica mortua*, *vrtica iners*, *vrtica lactea*, and *Anonium*.

The second Table.

nium album. The later Chirurgions do call it *Herba panaruij*: this is the right *Laminum Plinij*, and *urtica mortua*, dead Nettles, or white archangell. The fourth kind is a presie herb, not unlike to the nettle, with faire purple floures, with a strong smell like to bauline; it groweth in thickets and woods, it is called of *Plinie urtica Herculanea*, or *urtica Herculea*, *urtica odorata*, also *urtica scarlata*, and that by reason of her strong and pleasant smell, they are also called wood nettles, *urtica syluatica*. Here is to be noted, that when dead nettles are any where prescribed, that you must take the white archangell *urtica lactea*.

O.

Oake, *Quercus*, *Arbor Iouis*.

Oates, in Græke and Latine *Bromus*, and *Avena*.

Oleander, in Græke *Rhododendron*, *Nerium*, *Rhododaphne*, the Herbarists do call it in Latine *Laurus rosea*, *rosea arbor*, *Rosago*, *Oleander*, and *Oleandrum*. It is a tree with græne leaues like to the Bay tree, but the leaues are somewhat longer and lesser, not much unlike to the leaues of the Oliue. It beareth a pleasant hoyselish coloured rose, and is planted in gardens. It is hot in the beginning of the third, and dry in the second degree.

Oliue tree, *Olea*, and *Olina*. There are two kinds of it, the tame, and the wild Oliue, the tame is named as before: the wild is called in Græke and Latine *Agriæla*, *Cotinus*, and *olea sylæstris*: the tame Oliue is called of *Virgill Palladia arbor*.

Onion, in Græke and Latine *Crommyum*, *Cepa*, *Cepe*, and *Cape indeclinabiliter*. There are many kindes of it, to wit, long, round, great, and small Onions, red, blewne, and yellow: the long ones are much stronger then the round, and the yellow stronger then the white. *Plinie* deuidenth them into two kinds, the one doth he call *Cepa condimentaria*, and hath no head at all, but the tops are only used, and it is called *Cepa pil-lacana*. The other kinde is called *Cepa Capitata*. Amongst all onions, are greatest accounted the best for meate, they that are flat like Turneps: they are called *Cepa Africana*. Next after them are the Spanish onions, but they are lesse, longer, and sharper, yet bigger then any onions in this countrie.

There are also two kinds of them, the one is red, and the other white, but whensoever thou wilt vse onyon seedes in any composition, then shalt thou take the seedes of our onions, for that is much more fit for this sick, but the Spanish onions are better for meate.

Oxage, in Græke *Atraphaxis*, and *Chrysolanum*, in Latine *Atriplex*, *Atriplexum*, and *olus Aureum*, it is a common potherb, cold in the first, and moist in the second degree.

Oxange tree, *Narantia malus*.

Oxange of *Athenaus*, in Græke *Chryseon*, of *Nicander Nerantzion*, of *Virgil Aureum malum*, and of the common people *Malum Nerantium*, *pomum Arangia*, *Arantium*, and *Aurantium*.

Oxgane, grosse or course Parierom, in græke and latine *Origanus*, or *Origanum*, *Conila*, and *Cunila gallica* of *Apuleius*. There are 3. kinds of it, the first is called in Spanish *Dosten*, in latine and græke *Origanus Heracleotica*, or *Origanum Heracleoticum* of *Mesues* *Origanum Persicum*, and of the *Simplificists* *Origanum Hispanicum*, because it is brought vnto vs out of Spayne: but we needed not to fetch it in Spayne, if we did but looke about vs here in Germany, we should find this noble herb *Dosten* in a sufficient quantitie here: but our nature and disposition is such, that we must alwayes haue some new fangle, and to forsake that which is present with vs. This course Parierom, or *Dosten* hath small and smooth leaues like to the common course Parierom, the floures are also very like it, but it groweth somewhat higher, it hath a pleasant aromaticall smell, nothing like to the common course Parierom, it groweth in great abundance nere the Rhene on the hills. The second kind of course Parierom is brought vnto vs out of Candia, and it hath white leaues like the Spanish *Dosten*, it is like to the wilde Parierom, both by the stalke, floure, and also by the hairines, so that there is no other difference betwæne the Spanish *Dosten* and our wilde Parierom, but that the *Dosten* of Candy is somewhat subtiler in sight, and something more pleasant in smell then the other, which must be ascribed to the nature of the countrie, because that the *Dosten* groweth there in the fields, and ours must be planted and sowed in Gardens: for we do find the same by other

The second Table.

ther plants that do also grow in fields with vs, that they which grow abroad are much stronger then they which are set in gardens, although they be greater & more pleasant to sight. This kind of course *Parierom* or *Ozane* is called of *Dioscorides* and others in *Græke* and *Latine* *Onitis*, *Origanum onitis*, and of the *Herbarists* *Maiorana sylvestris*, *Sampfichus sylvestris*, *Origanum asininum*, *Ouriganum*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Origanum creticum*. They that vse our wild *Parierom* when that of *Candy* cannot be had, erre not at all, for it is one & the same herb. The third kinde groweth also in *Candy*, and is set in gardens with vs: it hath commonly fine or fixe stalks growing out of one roote, the leaues are very like to the wilde *Thyme*, and the floures like *Dennyropall*, it smelleth also very well, it is called in *Græke* *Tragoriganus*, in *Latine* *Tragoriganum*, and *Origanum hircinum*. The fourth kind is our common *Parierom*, sufficiently knowne by that name, it is called in *græke* *Agrioriganus*, in *latine* *Origanum sylvestre*, and of the *Herbarists* *Origanum panaceum*. Note, that if you finde course *Parierom* in any composition, then is *Spanish* *Dosten* to be taken for it, which is called *Origanum Heracleoticum*.

Oster, in *Græke* *Enydria*, in *Latine* *Lutra*.

Ore, *Bor*.

Drymel, is a syrupe made with *Wineger* and *Hony*.

Oyle of Spikenard, *Oleum Spicanardi*, and *Oleum Nardinum*.

Oyster, in *Græke* & *Latine* *Ostreum*, of *Plinie* *Ostrea*, it is a kind of shell fish.

P.

Palma Christi, in *Græke* *Cici*, *craton*, *seseli cyprion*, *pentadactylon*, and of *Erodotus*, *cillipyprion*, in *Latine* of *Plinie*, *Ricinus*, *Trixis*, & *Sesamum agreste*, of the *Herbarists* *Palma Christi*, and *Mannus Christi*, of the *Apothecaries* *Cataputia maior*. The *Arabians* do call it *Cberua*, *Kerna*: it is a plant common almost in euery garden. The seede whereof is called *granum regium*, it is hot and drye in the second or third degree.

Panick, in *Græke* *Elymus*, and *Melymus*, in *Latine* *Panicum*, and *Panigo*.

Perchment, *Membrana*, & *charta pergamena*.

Parfnep, in *Græke* *Staphylinus*, in *Latine* *Pastinaca*, of the *Simplicists* *Carotis*, & *Carota*.

There are foure especiall kindes of it, the first hath yellow rootes, and they are called yellow carrots, of *Herbarists* *Staphylinus luteus*, *Carotis lutea*, and *pastinaca lutea*, this is the most common sort of all the same kinds, and it is the true *pastinaca sativa*, but I trouble not my selfe with them that seek to place another kind in stead of it, thereby to couer their grosse errours, if they did looke on the true signes that *Dioscorides* ascribeth vnto it, they would sone be led from that their blindness, although they were but children in iudgement. The second kind of these rootes is very like to the former, but that it is altogether white, and is called of the *Herbarists* *Carotis alba*, *staphylinus albus*, *pastinaca alba*, in *English* a *Parfnep*. The third kind are the garden *Parfneps*, these are most like to the two former in leafe, roote, and floure. But the roote is of a darke red colour, which yeldeth also a iuice of a darke red colour, but in tast it is altogether like the foresayd. This is the true *Pastinaca nigra* of *Theophrastus*, of the *Herbarists*, *Staphylinus ruber*, *Pastinaca rubra*, *Carotis rubra*, we call them red carrots. These three kinds are comprehended vnder the name of *Pastinaca sativa* of *Dioscorides*: yet they that would haue the same *Parfnep* with the broad leafe to be a kinde of stone *Parfnep*, because it is sweete in tast, I could wish they would bethinke themselves otherwise, for they two are as like, as the *firre tree* is to the *Wore tree*. This is the true *Elaphobosum Dioscoridis*, as euery one must confesse that readeth the description of it: *Dioscorides* doth also call it *Ophiozonum*, *Cerni ocellus*, & *Pabulum cerni*. The *Herbarists* do call it *Pastinaca ceruina*, but especially the wild kind that groweth of it selfe in hilly medowes, and is most like to the same kind, differing only in the place where they grow: also the wild kind is fitter for Physick, although they be both vsed for meate. The fourth kind is the wild *Parfnep*, and it groweth euery where in the *Winepards* and *cozne fields*, it is much like to *staph*, or garden *Parfnep*, the roote is whiter, and sharper in tast then of the other, the floures are white, and of the same kinde yellow: they that knowe the wilde *Parfnep* may also know the same kinde very well, and may sone perceiue the errors of others: it is called wild yellow carrots, or *Parfnep*. This is that *Parfnep* that

The second Table.

that all authors will haue vsed in this
sicke: the Herbarists do call it *Pastinaca er-
ratica*, *Staphilinus erraticus*, *Carotus syl-
vestris*: the Apothecaries doe call it *Bau-
cia*, others (but vniuersally) *Daucus*, and
would make *Baucia* and *Daucus* to bee one
and the same.

Partridge, *Perdix*.

Pauls Betony, *Betonica Pauli*, *Veronica*, it is
a common herbe and daylie vsed.

Peach tree, *Persicus*.

Peare tree, *Pyrus*.

Pearles, in Græke *Margarites*, *Cinadus*,
of Theophrastus, of Lucianus, *Erythraus lapis*,
of Arrianus, *Lapis Indicus*, of Strabon, *Ery-
thraus lapillus*, of Virgil, *Bacca*, and *Bacca
conchea*, of Pliny, *Vnio*, of Cicero, *Marg-
garita*, and of Saint Hierome, *Granum mar-
is rubri*, of others *Perla*: it is a Gemme
or precious stone wel known vnto almen.

Peason, *Pisum*: there are diuers kinds of the,
but the very best are the Hastings.

Peacocke, *Pano* and *Pannus* in latine, of Ouidi-
us, *Imonia anis*.

Pellitory of Spaine, in græke and latine *Py-
rethrum*, *Pyritus*, *Pyroton*, and *Pes Alexan-
drinus*: it is hot & drie in the third degree.

Pellitory of the wall, in græke *Helxine*, *Eu-
sine*, *Eltis*, *Chanocersea*, *Amelxine*, *Amor-
gine*, *Scotachos*, *Psychuacos*, *Melampelos*,
Anatetamenon, *Polyonymon*, *Clibodion*, *Chybetis*,
and *Chybatis*, in latine *Perdicium*, *Urceolaris*,
Vitriola, of Celsus, *Herba muraria*, *Muralium*,
Vineago, *Herba urceolaris*, *Herba vitria-
ria*, and of Auicenna, *Herba vitri*, of Apu-
leius, *Herba Pedicularis*, of the Herbaristes
Helxine muraria, and *Parietaria*. There are
two kindes of it, to wit, the common *Pa-
rietaria*, which is the biggest, and groweth
euery where in old wals, and it is called of
the Herbaristes for a distinction, *Parietaria
maior*. The second kind is somewhat lesse
and groweth not outright like the former,
but creepeth only along the wals, & hath red
and thicke stalkes, like to Purslaine: the
leaves are like vnto Purslaine, but thinne,
soft and limber. This kind groweth plenti-
fully at Pontemons, on the Citie wals, and
in many other places of France, also at
Coblence, nere the Rhene: It is most
like vnto the great Pellitorye in virtues
and operation, they haue also an abster-
sive and astringent quality: they are colde
and moyſt.

Pennirovall in græke and latine *Glechon*, *Ble-
chon*, *Apuleium*, *Abuolum*, and *Pulegium*, it
is hot and drie in the third degree.

Pepper, in græke *Peperi*, and in latine *Piper*,
There are three kindes of it, white, blacke
and long Pepper, sufficiently knowen to
euery bodie: the white Pepper is gather-
ed befoze it bee thorough ripe, it is much
stronger and forcibler than the blacke, it is
called *Piper album*. The blacke is called *Pi-
per nigrum*. The long Pepper is a thing of
it selfe, and is called *Piper longum*.

Perwinckle, in græke *Clematis*, *Clematis Daph-
noides*, *Myrsinoides*, *Polygonoides*, *Daphnoides*,
and of Pliny, *Chama laphne*, in latine *Vinca
peruinca*, *Vnicordia*, *Palma Virginea*, *Co-
rona Virginea*, *Pervinca*, and *Viola mortuo-
rum*. It is a common hearbe, and groweth
eth in shadowie places. There is yet ano-
ther kinde of it, which is set in Gardens,
it hath a darke blew flower, and it is a
little bigger in euery respect than the
common sorte is: It groweth in diuers
places of France of it selfe: they are
both of them hot and drie in the third de-
gree.

Petroleum, in græke *Naphta*, and of Plu-
tarchus, *Naphtas*, of Nicolaus Myrepsus,
Petræleon, of Suidas, *Pharmacum*: in La-
tine *Bitumen liquidum*, *Bituminis Cola-
mentum*; at the Apothecaries *Petroleum*,
and *Oleum Petra*. There are two kindes
of it, the first is the white, which is brought
vnto vs from Naples, and out of Italy: of
the blacke kinde we haue sufficient store in
Germany in the lande of Wittche, halfe a
mile from Wlerte, in the mountaines, be-
tween Hagano and Weyſenburch, nere
the towne Lamperts loch: there is a spring
in a balley, that in April and May yeldeth
as much of this oyle, that the men in that
place may gather as much of it, as will
serue them all the Winter to burne in
their Lampes, and to grease their Cart
wheales with it, of which oyle the Quack-
saluers and other such like impostors, doe
gather and fill great bottels, and then sell
it againe in strange countries, as if they
had fetched it farre, and had hazarded
their liues greatly for to get it: which is
little obserued of diuers Physicians, that
wil rather imploy & apply theſelues to the
making of Prognostications, in the specula-
tions of Astronomy, & in presaging diuers

The second Table.

Strange matters to come.

Phlegme, Slime, a waterish moisture, in græke and latine *Phlegma*, some doe call it *Pituita*.

Pible stone or **Flint**, in græke *Chalix*, and in latine *Silex*.

Pigeon, in græke *Peristera*, and *Peristeros*, in latine *Columba*, and of *Catullus*, *Columbus*.

Pilewort, loke **figwort** in F.

Pils, in græke *Catapodium*, of *Hippocrates*, *Gongylium*, and *Gongylidium*, of the comon *Phistions* *Pillula*, and *Pilula*.

Pimpernell the great, *Petroselinum*, and *Apium* *sexatile*: It is not our common Parsley, which the auncients do call *Apium*, as shall be shewed in the description of Smallage, but our great Pimpernell is nought else but the true *Petroselinum*, which groweth commonly on stonie rocks or hilles, and also on walles. The first kinde groweth in stonie fields; but in the Vineyards, there groweth the bigger of the two, and it yieldeth a yellowish iuice, it hath leaues like to the great Parsley; it is called of the Herbarists *Pimpinella maior*, *Tragofelinum maius*, and *Pimpinella Hircina maior*, and in English great Pimpernell. The second kinde is somewhat lesse, and groweth on grassie hilles; it is called *Pimpinella*, *Pimpinella alba*, *Tragofelinum*, and *Pimpinella hircina*, without any other addition, that is the common Pimpernell. The third kinde hath smal jagged leaues, almost like to the crumpled Parsley; it groweth willingly on stony hills, walles, and olde trees: it hath a very sharpe roote, and is the least of all the other, it is called *Tragofelinum minus*, *Tragofelinum petraum*, *Pimpinella minor*, and *Pimpinella petrea*: Some authoꝝ wil accompt these herbes amongst the *Daucor*, but they do abuse them greatly, for they are the right stonie Parslies, and haue the same operation with Parsly. The last kinde is called the lesser Pimpernell. As often as either Parsley seede, roote, or iuice is mentioned in anie composition, then is the greater Pimpernell to be vnderstood.

Pingles, in græke *Strobili*, *Pityides*, *Nuclei pinei*, in latine *Nuces pinea*, and of *Hippocrates*, *Coccali*.

Pistacies, in græke and latine *Pistacium*, and *Pistaceum*, of *Possidonius*, *Listacium*, of *Nican-der*, *Psitacium*, at the Apothecaries *Pi-*

stachium, and *Fisticum*. It is a strange fruit like Hasell nuts, that growe in Syria. The tree that beareth these fruits is called *Pistaceus* and *Pistacius*, and it is planted in Gardens in Italy, France and Germany.

Pitche, *Pix*: there are two kindes of it, to wit, harde or stone Pitche, and liquid Pitch or Tarre. The stone Pitch is called *Pix arida*, *Concreta*, seu *excolta*. The other kinde is called Tarre, in Latine and Græke *Pissa Hygra*, *Pix liquida*, *Pix fluida*.

Plaister, in Græke *Emplastros*, in latine *Emplastrum*.

Plantaine, in Greeke and Latine *Arnoglossa*, *Arnoglossa*, *Arnim*, *Stelephnos*, *Probation*, *Thefarica*, *Tarbelodatum*, of *Theophrastus*, *Ortyx*, of *Apuleius*, *Tarbidolopium*, *Plantago* and *Olus agninum*. There are six kindes of Plantaine, whereof the first is the common great Plantaine, that groweth in all highwaies and fields, it is knowen sufficiently, and is called for a difference *Heptapleuron*, and *Polynuron*, in Latine *Plantago maior*, of *Apuleius*, *Plantago lata*, and *Septinervia*, of the Herbarists *Plantago rubra*, *Plantago latifolia*, and *Mulinervia*. The seconde kinde is called *Shæpes tong*, *Pentapleuron*, *Quinquenervia*, *Plantago minor*, *Lingua Agni*, and *Lingua Onina*, *Lingua Arietis*, and *Plantago media*. The third kind is called picked Plantaine, or Poundes ribbe, in Græke *Hippopleuron*, and *Cynopleuron*; in latine *Plantago acuta*, *Plantago lanceolata*, *Costa Equina*, *Costa Canina*, and *Lanceola*: this kinde groweth in Meadowes, it is well knowen to euerie bodie. The fourth kind hath round leaues like the great Plantaine, but they are somewhat lesse and moze limber, and each leafe hath but thre ribbes; it groweth in woods, and is called of the Herbarists *Plantago syluatica*, *Plantago trinervia*, and *Plantago latifolia minor*. The fift kind is planted in Gardens for pleasure, the leaues are like vnto the great Plantaine, on the vpper ende of the stalkke doth it gette manie little græne leaues, they growe double like vnto a Rose, wherefore it is also called, Rose plantayne, or *Plantago rosea*. Otherwise they haue the same operations and virtues with the other

The second Table.

other Plantain. The first kind groweth in wettes and waterish places, it hath long, boade, and sharpe leaves at the ende: it is called water Plantaine, of the *Herbaristes Plantago aquatica*, *Plantago palustris*, and *Cochlearia palustris*. But when thou findest Plantaine in any composition, then shalt thou take the first kinde, or the great Plantaine.

Plane tree: it is not the tree, which wee call *Opulus*, but *Platanus* is a tree that groweth in Italy.

Plume allum, in græke and latine *Amiantus*, *Bostrychites*, *linum vinum*, *linum saxatile*, and at the Apothecaries *Alumen plumeum*, or *Alumen plumosum*: which the common Whistons and Apothecaries doe saile use for *Alumen scissum*, which hath no likelihood with any kinde of Allum: I will omit the virtues and operations, which it should haue equall with Allum: for they are as like one to another, as an Apple is like an *Opster*.

Polypodie, in græke and latine *Polypodium*, *Filicula*, of *Cato*, *Felicula*. The roote of it is onely used, and when you find Polypodie with addition, then is the roote onely to be taken.

Pomegranate tree, in græke *Rhoa*, *Rhea*, and *Sida*, in latine *Malus punica*, and of the common Whistons *Malus granata*.

Pomegranates, *Rhea*, *Sida* in græke, and in latine *Malum punicum*, at the Apothecaries *Malum granatum*, and *granatum*.

Pompeon, in græke *Pepon*, in latine *Pepo*: There are many kindes of it, first the common Pompeons, known to euery bodie; secondly the sugar *Belons*, *Pepo saccharinus*, *Pepo muscatellinus*, and *Pepo Turcicus*.

Poplar tree, in græke *Lence*, and in latine *Populus*.

Poppie, *Papauer satium*: There are two kindes of it, to wit, the white and the blacke Poppy, the white is called of *Dioscorides*, *Thylacites*, and *Papauer satium*. or *Hortense*: and at the Apothecaries *Papauer album*: The blacke which is also placed amongst the same kindes, is called of *Dioscorides*, *Pithilis*, and *Papauer sylvestre*, and at the Apothecaries *Papauer nigrum*, of *Hesychius* is the white Poppie called *Cynolephaleon*: The toppe or head is called in græke *Codia*, in latine *Caput Papaueris*: the leafe of it is called of

Theocriti Scoliasles, *Platagonion*. Note that wheresoever Poppie is named alone, to take the white.

Prinet, or Primpinte, in græke and latine *Cypripus*, *Ligustrum*, *Auicenna* and *Serapio* doe call it *Alchanna*, *Alchenna*, *Henne*, *Alkanna*, and *Aleanna*: But the Druggists and Apothecaries doe call the rootes of the red Dre tung *Alcanna*: *Virgil* doth call the flowers of *Prinet alba Ligustra*: and *Columella* doth call the fruit of it *Nigra Ligustura*. This plant is verie common in all Europe. The leaves, flowers, and berries are in vse, and they haue an astringent and drying qualitie.

Purflaine, in græke *Andrachne*, in latine *Portulaca*, and *Porcellana*: it is colde in the thirde and moyst in the second degree.

Pyneapple, in græke and latine *Strobilus* and *Conus*.

Pyonic, in græke and Latine *Paonia*, *Pentorobum*, *Glycyfide*, of *Apuleius*, *Glycyfis*, and *Paonium*, *Orobelum*, *Orobax*, *Hemagonum*, *Pasade*, *Menogonium*, *Manium*, *Panthiceratos*, *Aglaphotis*, and of *Alianus*, *Aglaphotis terrestris*, *Cynostaffus*, *Dactylus Idæus*, *Theodonium*, *Selenium*, *Selenogonium*, of *Theophrastus*, *Dichomenium*, of *Apuleius*, *Gludus*, *Rosa Fatuina*, of *Dioscorides*, *Herba Casta*, and of *Iosephus Historicus*, *Baaras*. *Dioscorides* doth also call it *Phthipsis*, and *Auerroes*, *Rosa Asinorum*. The *Herbaristes* do call it *Rosa benedicta*, *Rosa sancta*, *Rosa lunaris*, or *Lunaria*, *Rosaregia*, and *Rosabasilica*. There are three kindes of it, which are all planted in Gardens: of the first kinde, to wit, of the female, there be two sortes, the one with faire darke red flowers, and manie knottie rootes, about the thickest of ones thumbe, and some lesse, much like to *Acoznes*: this is knowne euery where. This kinde is called of *Dioscorides*, *Paonia femina*, and *Dactylus Idæus*. The other kinde is like to the former, but the leaves are something lesse, and iagged not so deepe, and of a light græne colour, and paler than the other: the rootes are also longer, and paler than of the other, almost like to the male Pyonie, so that it seemeth to bee a mixture betwene both male and female. *Dioscorides* maketh no mention of it,

The second Table.

but Pliny calleth it *Pionia mascula*, and the Herbarists *Paonia femina altera*, and *Paonia promiscua*. The third kind is like to the first with leaues and rotes, the flowers are red as blood, faire, great and double, it is called *Paonia multiplex*. The fourth kind hath leaues like to a Walnut tree, the flowers are like to the former in colour, but something lesse; the roote is white, thicke, long, and deuided into two, it smelleth very strong and pleasant. This is the true male Pyony, *Paonia mascula*, of the auncient writers. *Aetius* and others doe call it *Ephialtia* and *Ephialtium*, of the Herbarists *Paonia alba*, and *Herba Dini Valentini*, we call it the white Piony: This kinde is alwayes to be vsed, or else the compounded kinde besopenamed in the Steele thereof.

Q.

Quicke lime, in græke *Conia*, and *Asbestos*, in latine *Calx viva*; Pliny calleth it *Ferru cementorum*.

Quicksiluer, it is called in græke and latine *Hydrargyron*, *Argentum aqueum*, and *Argentum vinum*, of the Alchymists *Mercurius*: it is a minerall knowen to euery bodie. There are two kindes of it; the one is found in the Pynes, which is called *Hydrargyron natium*: the second kind is made of Sinople, and it is called *Argentum vinum*, or *Hydrargyron factitium*. The Alchymists do ad yet thre other kindes vnto the former, the one made of Lead, which they doe call *Mercurius Saturni*: the other made of Tinne, which they doe call *Mercurius Iouis*, or *Fel Draconis*: the third kinde is made of gold, which they call *Mercurius solis*, or *Viscum solis*: But the two first are onely vsed in Physicke; and the thre last kindes, to wit, of Tinne, Lead and Gold, wee doe commit and commend to the Alchymists.

Quinces, in græke and latine *Cydoneum*, and of *Hesychius*, *Lasiomalum*, of *Nicander*, *Chnoaum*, of Pliny, *Malum lanatum*, of *Virgil*, *Malum canum*, of others *Cotoneum*, *Malum Cotoneum*, *malum Cydonium*, and at the Apothecaries *Cydonium*, and *Cittonium*. There are thre kindes of them, the lesser yellowe Quinces, that are so odoziferous, are most common and most fit for Physicke. The other kinde is bigger and longer like a

Peare, and in colour pale yellowe, much slighter both in taste and smell than the former: this kinde is called in græke and latine *Struthium* and *Struthiomelum*: the Simplicists doe call it *Cydonium maius*, *Cotoneum maius*, and *Pyrum Cydonium*. The third kinde is the middle sozte: both the former are grafted from a tree on a stalke of another; this kind is called of Pliny, *Malu milianum*, and of the Simplicists *Cydonium*, or *Cotoneum uothum*, with vs the bastarde Quince. The first and least are the very best, then the bastard Quinces, & the worst are the greatest.

R.

Rabish, in græke and latine *Raphanus*, or *Raphanis*, *Radix*, and *Radicula*.
Ragwort, Dogs stones, Gandergrasse, in græke *Satyron*, of *Apuleius*, *Panion*, in latine *Satyrium*, of *Mesues*, *Testiculus Vulpis*, & of *Apuleius*, *Testiculus leporinus*. There are two kindes of it knowen to *Dioscorides*, but wee haue many kindes with vs, which wee doe knowe, amongst which *Orchis* and *Orchis Serapias* are placed. *Theophrastus*, *Plinius* and *Apuleius* haue comprehended them vnder the name of *Satyrium*, and confounded them together. The first and true *Satyrium* is called of *Dioscorides*, in græke *Satyron triphyllon*, or *Satyrium trifolium*. The second kinde is called red Ragwort, of *Dioscorides* in græke *Satyron Erythronicon*, *Satyrium Erythraicum*, and *Satyron Erythron*, of *Apuleius*, *Entaticum*, *Priapicum*, and *Satyrisem*: in latine *Molorticulum Veneris*, *Melum aquaticum*, *Testiculus Satyri*, and *Arrethorium*. The third kind is called *Satyrium regium*, or *Satyrium basilicum*, of the Herbarists *Manus Christi*, *Palma Christi*, and *Palma Veneris*, the Arabians doe call it *Bucheiden*, and *Buzeiden*, of *Auicenna*, *Digitus citrinus*, *Satyrium basilicum maius mas*. The fourth kinde is like to the former, but the leaues are full of spots, it is called of the Herbarists *Satyrium basilicum maius femina*, and *Lacryma Maria*. The fifth kinde hath small leaues, like to *Saffron*, it beareth a faire purple flower, with a pleasant smell: the rotes are also like the two other small handes. The Herbarists do call it *Satyrium basilicum*, or *regium minus*, *Satyrium odoratu*, *Amayathus veneris*, *Pal-*

The second Table.

Palma Christi minor, *Palomula Christi*, or *Palomula Veneris*. The first kinde hath leaues like to the white Lilly, but narrower and lesser, it hath two kinds of floures, the one is of a darke red colour, like to that of Hartwort, the other as white as snow. This kind hath two rootes of the bignes of an Olive, and very swete in taste: *Dioscorides* calleth it in Greeke *Orchis*, and *Cynorchis*, in Latine *Testiculus*, and *Testiculus canis*. The Herbarists do call it *Orchis maior mas*. The seventh kind is somewhat like the first, but that the leaues be lesse, it beareth a floure of a Chestnut colour, it is called of the Herbarists *Orchis mas minor*. The 8. kinde hath soft leaues, not unlike the Lilly leues, but somewhat lesse: the floures are partly of a darke red colour, and partly incarnation, with many white streakes, the rootes are like Cocks stones, it is called of the Herbarists *Orchis femina maior*. The ninth kind is much lesse then the former, but very like the same in floures, leaues, and rootes, it is called of the Herbarists *Orchis femina minor*. Some do call it *Orchis odorata*, or *Testiculus odoratus* it groweth on dry hills. The tenth kind hath lesser leaues then the white Lillies, the floures are purple, it hath three rootes, much lesse then Olives, whereof two are of one bignes, and the third lesse, and longer, so that these three are like the member of a man. It is called in Greeke of *Dioscorides*, *Orchis Serapias*, of *Agineta*, *Triorchis*, of *Apuleius*, *Serapion*. Yet are there three kinds more, whereof we haue spoken elsewhere. Otherwise there is another kind of this herb, which is placed with the *Cynorchis*, or *Testiculus canis*, which here for breuities sake we do omit. The Apothecaries do vse all the former kindes of Ragwort for *Satyrion*, without any difference, and although there be but a small difference betwene all these kinds in operation, yet it were better only to vse that which hath three leaues like Lillies for the true *Satyrion*, for it is the *Satyrion* of the auncient Physicians, to the end no error be committed. All these before named herbs and rootes are hot and moyst, and haue an attractive virtue.

Raisons, in Greeke *Astaphides*, and *Staphides*, in Latine *Vua passe*, at the Apothecaries *Passule*: There are three kindes of them in vse, the first kind is the best, and are called *Vua damascena*, and *Vua zibeba*, at the Apo-

thecaries *Zibeba*, & *Passule damascena*. The second kinde is somewhat lesse, they are brought from Cyprus, Spayne, and Provence, these are the best in virtue and operation, and also in taste, and are called of the Physicians *Vua passe maiores*, *Vua massiliotica*, at the Apothecaries *Passule maiores*. The third kinde are the Currans, and are called in Greeke *Appryne*, in Latine *Vua passe Corinthiaca*, *Passula Cilicia*, *Passula Ehemisina*, that is, *Passule sine nucleis*, and at the Apothecaries *Passule minores*: but when we finde in any composition *Passule*, then are these to be taken. The Arabian Physicians call them *Kesmes*, & *Chesmes*, that is, Raisons without stones.

Ramme, in Greeke *Crios*, and in Latine *Aries*. *Rapes*, in Greeke *Gongyla*, *Gongylus*, in Latine *Rapa*, *Rapum*, and *Golfonium* is called in Greeke *Raphys*, and *Raps*. These Rapes or Turneps are of foure kindes, for some are round, some long, some white, some small, some great, but we neede not make any long rehearfall of them, seeing they haue all one kind of operation. There are certaine Turneps solen in Lottering, and in the vpper Burgundy, to the end to make oyle of their seedes, but this kind of Turneps is wild, and altogether vnfit for meate, but the seede is more fit for Physick then that of the same Rapes. This kinde is called in Greeke *Gongylus agria*, and in Latine *Rapum sylvestre*.

Rapontica, in Greeke and Latine *Centaurium magnum*, *Maro*, *Maronia*, and of *Apuleius* *Maronium*, *Plectronia*, *Pelectronia*, *Chironia*, and of the Magicians *Sanguis Herculis*, *Limnestus*, *Nessium*, *Vnefera*: the Herbarists do call it *Pseudoraponticum*, at the Apothecaries is it vnto this day falsely called *Rhaponticum*, and *Rhapontica*, because their vnskillfull physicians do take to be the same, where neuerthelesse the true *Rhaponticum* may be had sufficiently. But these blinde bayards haue so dazeled their eyes with gazing at the starres, that they are blinde though they seeme to see, and they do draw and hold other men into their errors. The true *Rapontica*, is a roote outwardly dark, gray, and lesse then the common *Rapontica*, and spongiouse: also being broken, it hath many white gaines much like to *Kubarb*, with an astringent taste, it is brought vnto vs from *Pontus*. This is in vse amongst curious and careful Physicians.

At

The second Table.

It is called with vs Pontick Kubarb, to distinguish it from the roote of the great Centoꝝ, which we do commonly call *Rapontica*. It is called in Greeke *Rha*, *Rheon*, *Rheum*, in Latine *Raponticum*, *Rapontica*, *Rheum ponticum*, *Rheon ponticum*, of *Plinie Rhacoma* oꝝ *Rhecoma*, of *Celsus*, *Radix pontica*.

Rhapontium, it is called of the Herbarists *Rapuntium*, *Rapontium*, *Rapunculum*, *Raponcelus*, *Raponculus*, and *Pes locustæ*, it is a kind of wild Rapes, of which there is yet another kinde: it groweth commonly in shadowy woods, it hath round leaues belowe, and beareth a browne purple and hairie flower, and a thick roote, it is very sweete in taste as the former also is: they are both used in Sallets and in meates. The second kind is called the wild *Rapuntium*: the Herbarists do call it *Rapontium*, *Rapunculus siliaticus*, and *Rapontium Alopecorum*.

Raspes, at the Apothecaries *Ribes*, it is a kind of *Ceanothus Theophrasti*, which we do call *Coleberies*, and they are like in euery respect, but that the Raspes hath no thornes, and they may be used in stead of the *Coleberies*. The Raspes are cold and dry in the second degree.

Rauen, in Greeke *Corax*, in Latine *Coruus*.

Red Arsenick oꝝ *Ozypment*, *Sandaraca Gracorum*, and at the Apothecaries *Auripigmentum rubrum*.

Red Lead, in Greeke *Sandyx*, and *Syricum*, in Latine *Minium secundarium*, of *Vitruuius Sandaracha*, at the Apothecaries *Minium*, of *Dioscorides*, & *Plinie*, also *Minium*. It is our *Sinople Cinnabaris Metallica*: but red Lead is made of Lead, which is burned oꝝ calcined vntill it be red. This is used most commonly in Salues and Plaisters, and especially in the vnguentum *Syricinum Mesuis*, which the vnskilfull sort doth call *unguentum Sericinum*, and they do suppose that *Syricum* should be *Sericum*, and so in stead of red Lead, they put Silke into the salue.

Red Poppy, coꝝne *Roses*, in Greeke *Mecon Rhæas*, and *Oxygonum*, in Latine *Papauer erraticum*, of *Geza*, *papauer fluidum*, and of others *papaueralis*, and *papauerina*, of the Herbarists *papauer caducum*, *papauer puniceum*, *papauer caninum*, *papauer Rhæas*, *rosella*, and at the Apothecaries *papauer rubrum*. There is another kind of it very like the former, but much lesse, whereof each flower hath but foure leaues, it groweth in the Rye

and Wheate, and it is called the lesser red Poppy. The Herbarists do call it *papauer erraticum minus*, *papaueralis*, and *papauerina minor*, it hath also the same virtues with the former.

Ræde, in Greeke and Latine *Calamus*. *Arundo* and *Harundo*, the Apothecaries call it *Canna*, *Plinie* in his sixteenth booke, and 36. chapter, and in the 24. booke & 11. chapter, accounteth 29. kinds of them, but we do acknowledge but five kinds of them, whereof the first is called *Nastor*, that is, hard and compact, and smooth betwene the ioynts, whereof the arrowes were wont to be made, it is called *Sagittaria Arundo*, and *Calamus Sagittarius*. The second kind is the female, whereof the Cornets tongues are made, and it is called of *Dioscorides*, *Calamus fœmina*, and of *Plinie*, *Calamus Auliticus*. The third kind is called in Greeke *Syringias*, in Latine *Calamus*, and *Arundo fistularis*, and it is hollow from one end to the other: there are writing pens made of it, & it is without knots, wherefoze it is called *Harundo enodis*. The fourth kind is also hollow and thick, it groweth in ponds and great lakes, in Greeke *Donax*, in Latine *Harundo Cypria*, *Calamus Cyprius*, *Harundo aquatica*. The fifth kind is thick and strong, it is used for hedges, it is called in Greeke *Phragmites*, and of *Theophrastus Chabacius*, in Latine *Calamus vallis*, and *vallatorius*, *Harundo vallatoria*, *Harundo sepiaaria*, and *Sepicularis*. The first kind is planted in gardens in diuers places of Fraunce and of Germany, it is faire, great, and pleasant to sight, it is brought vnto vs from India, and therefore it is also called *Arundo Indica*. Some call it *Spanish Canes* oꝝ *Ræde*, because it was first brought vnto vs from Spayne.

Rice, in Latine and Greeke *Oriza*, *Risum*, *Rizum*, of *Theophrastus*, *Orizum*, at the Apothecaries *Oriza*, it is knowne to euery bodie.

Rocket, loke *Gussard* seeds the white in *q*.

Roebuck, in Greeke *Dorx*, in Latine *Capreu*, of *Virgil Capreolus*.

Rose, in Greeke *Rhodon*, of *Theocriti Scolia*, and of *Homer Thronon*, in Latine *Rosa*. There are many kindes of it, to wit, the same *Roses* which are planted in gardens, are in number seuen seuerall kinds: of the wild ones are foure kinds, which is in all eleuen kinds. The first kind is of a darke blond red colour, and are common in all gardens,

The second Table.

gardens, some are single, some double, and are called of *Plinie Rosa Miesia*, of the *Herbarists Rosa purpurea*, and *punicea*. The second kind is of a light red colour, it is called of *Plinie Rosa trachinea*, of the *Herbarists Rosa rubra*: at the *Apothecaries* and of the common people are they called *Rosa rubra*, and red *Roses* without any distinction, neither skills it greatly, by reason they are all one in virtues and operations. The third kind is the incarnation *Rose* with a pleasant smell, and are called *Provence Roses*, of *Plinie Rosa Alabandica*, of the *Herbarists Rosa prouincialis*, *Rosa persica*, *Rosa incarnata*, and at the *Apothecaries Rosa purpurea*. This kind of *Roses* are laratiue, and are vsed for the laratiue syrupe of *Roses*. The fourth kinde are the double white garden *Roses*, the commonest amongst all tame kinds, and are called *Rosa alba*. The fift kinde is also white, and hath been knowne with vs but of late yeares, but they are somewhat lesse, & pleasanter to sight then the former white *Roses* are, many of them being double growe together vpon one bzaunch, but five of them are scant as big as one of the tame ones, yet very pleasant in smell: some do call them white *Duske Roses*, any other name as yet is not knowne. The first kinde of tame *Roses* is the yellow *Rose*, euery where common and knowne, without any smell, and altogether unfit for Physick. The *Herbar*. do call it *Rosa lutea*, *rosa Egyptia*, *rosa Africana*, and *rosa vulpina*. The seventh kind are the pleasant *Damask Roses*, they are called of *Plinie Rosa coroneola*, of the *Herbarists rosa moscata*, or *rosa muscata*, *rosa syriaca*, *rosa Damascena*, and *rosa Alexandrina*. The first kinde of wilde *Roses* are called hedge *Roses* or wilde *Roses*, they are called in *Greece Cynorodon*, of *Hesichius Cynocentron*, of *Galen Cynomoron*, in *Latine Canirubus*, and *rosa canina*. Some do call it *Eglen-teria*, and *Englenteria*. The second kinde of wilde *Roses* are much lesse then the first, & are of an incarnation colour like the former, but they are very fragrant, as well the *Rose*, as the leafe of it. It groweth in hedges, and on hills, and is called of the *Herbarists Rosa diua Maria*, *Spina diua Maria*, *Oenorhodon*, *uinifosa*, and *rosa cinamomina*. The third kind of wilde *Roses* groweth here and there in tild fields, and especially in fields of *Dates* nere the *Rhene*, it is the very least kinde of all wilde *Roses*, but it hath bigger

leaves, inwardly purple coloured, it is called of the *Herbarists chamaerhodon*, *rosa pumila*, *rosa Aruensis*, and *rosa auenaria*. This kind of *Roses* is so odoriferous, that it seemeth to excell all tame kinds. The fourth kind of wilde *Roses* is very like the former, they are also white *Roses* without any smell: they blow very late, to wit, in June, they grow in dry hills, and fields, and are called white field *Roses*. The *Herbarists* do call them *rosa campestris*, it is most contemptible of all other kinds. Amongst all these kinds are the double & single red *Roses* the very best that may be vsed for Physick, and in like manner also the *Daten Roses*: wherefore if one finde *Roses* without any addition in any mixture, then are the red or *Daten Roses* to be taken for it.

Rosemary, in *Greece* and *Latine Libanotis coronaria*, of *Apuleius Iteritis*, *herba salutaris*, & *libanotis coronalis*, of the *Herbarists Dendrolibanum*, *rosmarinus coronarius*, and *libanotis coronaria*, to distinguish it from the other kind of *libanotis*, which is called by them *libanotis umbellifera*. The *Apothecaries* call it *Rosmarinus*. It is a well knowne plant, and so common in the *Provinces*, that they make bawens of it to heate their ouens withall, and here with vs it groweth only in gardens.

Rosin, *Resina pinus*, and *resina*: but *resina* is a common name for all gums, but because that *Rosin* is dayly in vse, it is called *resina*. The other gums are named with additions, wherefore whensoever you finde *Rosin* in any composition, then shall you vnderstand the *resina pinus*.

Rubarbe, in *Greece Rheon barbaricon*, and *Rheon barbarum*, *Rheum barbarum*, *Rhusceniticum*, *Rhemusceniticum*, & *radix barbarica*.

Rubye, there are five kinds of it, the first and most pretious is the *Carbuncle*, which is cleare, sterie and perspicuous aboue all other gemmes, it is called in *Greece Approtus*, and *Anthracites*, in *Latine Carbunculus*. The other kind of *Carbuncle* is the *Ruby*, a well knowne pretious stone, and it is called *Carbunculus*, *Amethystizon*, in *Greece Anthrax amethystizon*, and *Pyropus*, and at the *Apothecaries Rubinus*. This is next to the *Carbuncle*, and very much vsed. The third kind is the *Grenate*. The fourth kind is somewhat paler then the other former kinds, it is of a light red colour, it is called in high *Dutch Ballas*, in *Greece Aitrios*, or *Aste-*

The second Table.

Asterios, of *Augustine* in the 21. booke de ciuitate Dei, *Aster*: of the *Duggists* *Balgins*, *Ballasius*, *Pallasius*, *Pallenca gemma*, *Ballenca gemma*, *Carbunculus candidus*, and *Spinalus*. The fift kind is of a yellowish red, & light in colour, it is called in *Græke* & *Latine* *Lychnis*, *Lychnites*, *Carbunculus gilvus*, and *Carbunculus pallidus*. The first kinde is called *Carbunculus alabandicus*, and *Lapis alabandicus*. Amongst all these kinds are only the Ruby & the Granate in vse for Physick.

Rue, in *Græke* and *Latine* *Peganum*, *Rhyte*, and *Ruta*. There are foure kinds of it, to wit, two tame, and two wilde: the two tame kinds are so like that they can hardly be distinguished, if one looke not well vpon them, and they are vsed without any difference one for the other. The first kinde of wild Rue is called Rue of the mountaines, of *Dioscorides*, *Ruta montana*, or *Rhyte montana*. This is most like to the garden Rue, but that it is much lesse, it groweth here and there on the hills in Italy, but with vs it is set in gardens. The second kind of Rue groweth in diuers places of Germany of it selfe, and it is also otherwhyles set in gardens: it hath longish leaues, a strong and vnpleasant smell, and white floures, out of which three square heads do grow that containe the seede, somewhat bigger then those of the common Rue, and by the name of wilde Rue is this commonly vnderstande. The other wild or mountaine Rue, is only called Rue: this last kind is called in *græke* *Peganon agrion*, of *Galen*, *Moly*, *Armala*, *Harmala*, and *Besasa*: but *Moly* is another plant with *Dioscorides* and *Hippocrates*. The *Verbarists* do call this wild Rue with *Dioscorides* *Ruta sylvestris*. *Auicenna* and the *Arabians* do call it *Alharmel*, *Armel*, and *Harmel*. Some vnskillfull Physicians do take Hemlock for Harmel, or *Ruta sylvestris*, and so do they follow their blinde leaders *Mathæus Syluaticus*, and *Iacobus Manlius*, that haue composed the *Lumen maius*, and haue translated Harmel for *Cicuta*, and haue expounded Armel to be the wild Rue, all which is most false: for it is most sure that Armala, and Harmala of the *Grækes*, and alharmel, alarmel, armel and harmel of the *Arabians*, is one & the same plant, to wit, wild Rue, which *Galen* doth call *Moly*, wherefore these fellows do lye falsely, and shall not be able to make answer for it hereafter, that they do mixe the seedes of Hemlock in the pillula

fœtida and aggregatina in steede of the seedes of wild Rue, thereby not only deceiuing the people, but hurting and spoiling them: so that great heede ought to be taken in all places where these pills are prepared with the seede of Hemlock in steade of the seede of wild Rue, which I could not omit at this present to shew and make knowne to the reader; for to vse venim in steade of Rue seed is no small errour.

S.

Saffron, in *Græke* and in *Latine* *Crocus*, *Crocum*, and *Cynomorphus*, of the *Magicians* *Sanguis Herculis*, of *Serapius* and *Auicenna* *Sabafaram*. It is called barbozouly *Saffranum*. The very best Saffron that is to be had in Europe is the Dutch Saffron, which is set about Vienna, and Spier in Germany.

Sage, in *Græke* *Eleisphacos* and *Crosmis*, in *Latine* *Salvia*, of *Apuleius* *Corsaluim*. There are foure kinds of it, two tame, and two wilde: the first, is called great Sage, or broad Sage, in *Latine* *Salvia Maior*. The second kinde is the lesser or eared Sage, in *Latine* *Salvia Crucata*, *Salvia Auriculata*, *Salvia Minor*, *Salvia Acuta*, and *Salvia Nobilis*. The third kind is the first of the wilde Sages, which *Theophrastus* calleth *Sphacelus*: it groweth commonly among Chestnut trees, and vpon woody hills, it hath greater, rougher, and more wrinkled leaues then the great garden Sage hath, and it looketh as if it were withered with dryeth, it hath a pretie blew floure. The fourth kinde is the second wild Sage, which is knowne to diuers by that name, and is called *Salvia Sylvestris*, *Salvia Bosci*, *Boscifalua*, *Scorodiana*, *Scordiana*, of *Cordus* *Scorodiana*. By Sage without any addition, shalt thou vnderstand the garden Sage.

S. Johns wort, *Hypericon*, *Perforata* and *Fuga demonum*, of the *Verbarists* *Ruta Solis*, *Herba Solis*, it is a common & well knowne herb, hot and dry by nature.

S. Johns bread, in *Græke* *Xylocerata*, or *Xylocaracta*, at the Apothecaries and of *Aluarius Carrubia*: Others do call it *Panis diui Iohannis*, it is the fruite of a tree, longish and sweete, and hath certayne kernels within it.

Sal armoniac, is called *Sal armoniacus*, or *Sal hammoniatus*, and at the Apothecaries *Sal Armo-*

The second Table.

Armoniacum. This Salt was wont to be digged out of the Sands in *Africa*, and was thence brought unto vs, which now adayes we want: But there is another chemicall Salt, made of pisse and other things, vsed in stead of the former, the which of many vnskillfull men is taken and vsed as well inwardly as outwardly for the right *Sal Armoniac*, but woe to them that take it inwardly: but because that we cannot get of the right *Sal Armoniac* any more, we may vse in his place the stone salt, or salt of the mines, which is a kinde of the true *Sal Armoniac*, and hath also the same vertue and operation. I would wish no man to vse the common *Sal Armoniac* vnwarly.

Salamander, in *Greeke Molge*, in *Latine Salamandra*: it is a very benemous worme like to a great Cret, with black and yellow spots, it liueth commonly in the water, and poysoneth the same.

Salt, *Sal*. There are foure kinds of it. The common Salt is called *Cato Sal Popularis*. The second, called *Sal Marinus*, is made of the Sea water, in *English* bay Salt. The third kinde is *Sal Palustris*. The fourth is stone salt, *Sal Fessinus*, *Sal Crystallinum*, or *Sal Montanum*.

Salt peter, *Nitrum Nitre*, and *Sal Petra*: the *Arabians* do call it *Baurach*, it is a kinde of naturall Salt. Some do falsely vse the common Salt peter for it, which is a great deceipt.

Sanicle, in *Latine Sanicula*, and *Sennicula*. There are thre kinds of it, which now adayes are called by the names of *Sanicle*. The first kinde and their true *Sanicle*, hath leaues like to the *Vigne*, but somewhat leffe, and deuided into fve seuerall parts: it continueth greene all the winter tyme, and is knowne by many men by the name *Sanicle*, and is properly called *Sanicula*, otherwhiles to distinguish it from the other kinds, *Diapensia*, *Sanicula Quinquefolia*, *Sanicula Vitiginea*, and *Feraria Asinor*. The seconde kinde groweth on high snowy hills, and hath fat leaues, not much vnlike to *Plantaine*: The flowers are somewhat like to *Colwicks*, some blew, some purple coloured: The *Herbarists* doe call it *Arctocium*, *Auricula Vrsi*, *Paralytica Alpina*, *Sanicula Alpina*, and *Arbitraria Alpina*.

pina. The third kinde of *Sanicle* groweth on high, wooddie, and cold hills: it hath leaues almost like *Angelica*, and a blacke hairie roote. It is called of the *Simplicists* *Sanicula Femina*, or *Astrantia Nigra*, in *English*, the or female *Sanicle*. But this hath another operation then the *Sanicle*, for the roote of it purgeth like *Elleboze*, for which cause, it is of some called *Sanicula Cathartica*. The *Herbarists* call it wilde *Angelica*. But where and whensoever *Sanicle* is found in any composition without any addition, then shalt thou vnderstand the first kinde of it.

Sapphire stone, in *Greeke* and *Latine Sapphirus*, by *Marbodeus*, *Syttites*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Saphirus*. There are foure kinds of it, of the blew which is knowne by that name, we haue spoken befoze. And to distinguish it from the others, it is called *Saphirus Caruleus*, and *Dionysius Afer* calleth it *Cyanus Saphirus*. The seconde kinde declineth somewhat from the blew to the greene, and is called in *Greeke Prasitis*, and *Saphirus Prasitis*. The *Druggists* do call it *Saphirus Viridis*, in *English*, a greene *Sapphire*. The third kinde declineth from the blew to the yellow, and is called in *Greeke Chrysis*, and *Saphirus Chrysis*: of the *Simplicists* *Saphirus Aureus*, in *English*, the yellowe *Sapphire*. The fourth kinde is betwene blew and white, in colour like *Butter-milke*, altogether perspicuous and cleare, called *Saphirus Candidus*, in *English*, the white *Sapphire*.

Sarcocolla, in *Latine Sarcocolla*, or *Carni-glutinum*, at the *Apothecaries* *Gummi Sarcocolla*, of *Serapio*, and other *Arabian* writers *Anazarot*, or *Anazarut*, it is a gum of a thorne in *Persia* much like to *Frankincense*.

Sauery, in *Greeke* and *Latine Thymbra*, *Cunila*, and *Satureia*: there are two kinds of it, and there is no difference betwene them both, but that the wilde kinde groweth of it selfe, and is called *Thymbra*, and *Cunila Rustica*: The other kinde is planted in gardens, and is more sauory and acceptable to meate then the former: but for whisick, the wilde hath more vertue then the other. It is hot and dry in the third degree.

The second Table.

Sauin or **Sauintræ**, in Græke *Brathy*, *Brathus*, *Barathrum*, and *Barithon*. In Latine *Sabina*, and *Sauina*. It is a well knowne shrub. There are two kinds of it, the one hath rough leaues like to the *Cypres fræ*, the other like the leaues of the *Tamariske*, they are both of them planted in the gardens with vs, they are both attenuating and drying in the third degré.

Saunders, in Græke and Latine *Santalum*, *Santalus*, and of *Aëtuarius*, *Xylon Santalon*, that is, *Lignum Santalum*. There are three kinds of it, that are all brought vnto vs from the Indies, to wit, yellow, white, and red Saunders, all of them very common and well knowne at all Apothecaries. The yellow kinde, is called *Sandalum Flauum*, and at the Apothecaries *Sandalum citrinum*. The Arabians call it *Santalum Machaziri*, *Machabari*, and *Machazari*, that is, *Santalum Aromaticum*, or *Santalum odoriferum*, because it is the very best and most fragrant of all the kinds. The red Saunders are called *Santalum Rubrum*, of others *Rhododysantalum*, that is, *Santalum Rosaceum*, and at the Apothecaries *Santalum Rubrum*. The white Saunders are called *Sandalum Album*. The best Saunders amongst all of them is the yellow kinde, next to that the white, and last of all the red. Whensoever one findeth Saunders in any receipt without addition, then is there the yellow Saunders alwayes understood. There is also a false kinde of red Saunders founde at some Apothecaries, not vnlike to the true red Saunders, yet without any smell at all: this is a kinde of *Brasill*, but it hath a darker red colour. The Druggists call it *Sandalum Spurius*, it may be called in English, bastard Saunders, neyther ought it by any meanes to be vsed in Physick.

Scabious, of the Herbarists in Latine *Sabiosa*, and *Herba Apostematica*. There are five kinds of it; all of one vertue and operation. *Psora Ety* is that common Scabious vsed at all Apothecaries.

Scammony, in Græke and Latine *Scammonium*, or *Schamonia*, *Apopleumenon*, *Dactylion*, and *Sanilum*, of the Simplicists *Volubilis Syriaca*, *Volubilis Antiochena*, and *Vo-*

lubilis Colophonia: *Dioscorides* calleth it *Colophonium*, and *Sanilum*: at the Apothecaries *Schamonea*, and of the Arabians *Sachmunia*. It is a plant that groweth in Syria nere *Antiochia*. It hath long sapie stalks, three square leaues, and white floures like bells. It hath also a long sapie roote as thick as ones arme, and white in colour. *Dioscorides* calleth this roote *Radix Colophonia*, and *Radix Schamonia*. The iuice which is prest out of this roote is also called as the plant *Schamonia*, or *Scamonium*. Some do call this iuice in Græke onely *Dactrydion*, that is, *Lacrymula*, and at the Apothecaries *Schamonea*. But our Physicians now adayes do vnderstand by *Dactrydion* onely the prestured *Scammony*, which the common Apothecaries and Physicians do call *Dagridium* or *Diagridium*, and *Schamonia Preparata*.

Scorpion, *Scorpius*, *Scorpio*, a marvellous venomous little beast, in Italy and other countreys very common. If it bite or sting a man, and that he vseth no present remedie for it, he is constrained to dye.

Sea bails, in Græke *Sphæra thalassia*, of *Galen* in Latine *Sphæra Marina*, *Pila marina*, at the Apothecaries *Balla marina*, and *Nicolaus Myrepsus* calleth it *Palla marina*: *Dioscorides* doth name it *Primum Genus Alcionij*. It is a kinde of Sea sponge dyed, and round like a ball, whence it hath the name *Pila marina*.

Sea Shells, *Concha marina*, *Conchilium marinum*.

Sea Wormewood, in Græke and Latine *Absinthium thalassium*, *Absinthium marinum*, *Absinthium Seriphium*, *Helmintobacane*, *Helmintopea*, *Seriphon*, and *Seriflum*, at the Apothecaries *Sementina*, or *Zina*. The kinde of it is only vsed at the Apothecaries, to kill and expell the Wormes of the belly, they call it *Semen Zina*, *Semen Lumbricorum*, *Semen Alexandrinum*, and *Semen Zedoaria*. In *Wionence* that is in France, is another kind of sea wormewood, or wormewood found, which is very like the garden *Cypres*, but it hath lesse stoe of siede then the former & in the expulsion of wormes altogether as forcible. This plant is called *Santonichū*, *Absinthium Santonicum*, at the Apothecaries *Sandonichū*, *Santonicum*, *Absinthium Santonicum*, *Centonica*, &

Herba

The second Table.

Herba cantonica. By all these names doe they also vnderstand the Wormeseede, or sea Wormewood, for they doe confound these, and many others moze. They do call the seede *Semen Sandonicum*, and *Semen Sanctum*, by which they do vnderstand both the former seedes.

Selfheale, *Prunella*, and *Herba Diui Anthony*.

Sene leaues, are called in *Græke*, *Latine*, and in the *Arabian* tongue, *Sena*, and *Senna*. *Mesues* called them with a *Persian* name *Abalzemer*. There are two kinds of them, the lesser groweth in *Syria* and *Egypt*, and are called, to distinguish them from the others *Sena Syriaca*, *Sena Egyptiaca*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Sena Alexandrina*, and *Sena Orientalis*. The greater *Sene* leaues do growe in *Italy* and elsewhere, these are called of the *Simplicists* *Sena Italica*, or *Sena Prouincialis*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Sena Florentina*. They are much weaker in operation and vertues then the lesser kinde, and therefore moze vnfit for *Physicall* vses. Some there are that affirme *Sena* to be a kinde of *Colutea*. Others would haue the *Colutea Theophrasti* to be *Sena*, or at the least a kinde of the same, but both of them do erre. Loke also in the introduction of this booke for *Sene* leaues.

Seruicetree, in *Græke* *Oa*, or *Oe*, in *Latine* *Sorbus*, it is a well knowne tree, whereof the fruit is called in *Latine* *Sorbum*, and it is like to a little *Pear*.

Sebestes, are little black berries, called in *Græke* *Myxa*, or *Myxaria*, of *Aëtiarius*, in *Latine* *Sebestena*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Sebesten*. They are black berries, as big as *hassell* nuts, or little small dyed *Prunes*, they are well knowne at all *Apothecaries*.

Sheepe, *Onis*.

Shepherds purse, *Bursa Pastoris*, and *Pera Pastoris*.

Silkewormes nests, *Folliculus Bombycis*, they are called in *Latine* *Sericum crudum*, or *Sera cruda*, at the *Apothecaries*, *Sera cruda*.

Siluer, in *Græke* *Argyros*, and *Argyriion*, and in *Latine* *Argentum*.

Siluermountayne, in *Græke* and *Latine* *Seseli*, and of *Plinie* *Seselis*, and *Sili*, of the *Herbarists* *Seselinum*, at the *Apothecaries* *Seselenos*, and *Seselios*, *Indeclinabiliter*. There

are five kinds of it, the first hath leaues like *fennell*, but somewhat bigger, with a smooth stalk, the flowers are not vnlike to them of *Dill*, and after them followeth a little sharp seede: the roote is long and odoriferous, and it groweth on stony hills. It is called in *Græke* *Seseli Massilioticum*, and *Platycyminum*, in *Latine* *Seseli Massiliense*. The *Herbarists* do call it *Seselinum Massiliense*, at the *Apothecaries* *Sisileos*, *Siler montanum*, in *English* *Siluer mountaine*, or *Siler mountaine*. The second kind is called *Siluer mountaine of Ethiopia*, the stalk is of the thickness of a finger, woody, and of a darke red colour. The leaues of it are very like to them of *Honyuckles*: they are smooth, and pale greene in colour. It hath vpon it foure or five goodly yellow tops like *fennell*, but the seede is somewhat bigger then that of *fennell*. It is called in *Græke* and *Latine* *Cynophrycon*, *Seseli Ethiopicum*, and of the *Simplicists* *Seseli Ethiopicum Fruticans*. The thirde kinde is our common black *Siluermountaine*, which of many is taken for *Seseli Ethiopicum*, because it hath the same vertues and operations. But the *Herbarists* do call it *Seseli*, or *Seselinum Ethiopicum Herbaceum*, thereby to distinguish it from the afozenamed. The fourth kinde is our white *Siluermountaine*, called in *Græke* and *Latine* *Seseli Peloponnesiacum*, *Seseli Peloponense*, and of the *Herbarists* *Seselinum Cernuum Album*. The fift kinde is the *Tordylum* of *Dioscorides*. This herbe as yet is not thoroughly knowne, because the description of it is so briefly set downe by the auncient writers, which do only make mention of the seede of it. This is called in *Græke* *Tordylon*, *Tordylon*, of *Plinie* *Syreon*, of *Paulus Aegineta* *Gorgylon*, and in *Latine* *Seseli Creticum*. But when and where soeuer thou findest *Siluermountaine* or *Siseli* in any composition, then and there shalt thou alwayes vnderstand and vse the first kind of *Siluermountaine*. *Sinober* or *Sinople*, *Tiermillion*, in *Græke* *Cinnabaris*, in *Latine* *Cinnabrium*. There are two kinds of it, the first is naturall, and digged out of the *Pine*. It is called in *Græke* *Miltos Ammon*, in *Latine* of *Dioscorides* and *Plinie*, *Cinnabaris Fossilis*, *Minium Natium*, in *English* *Sinober*, of the *Pine*. The other kinde is made by the *Alchimists* of *Quicksiluer* and

The second Table.

- Wimstone**, and it is called of the Simplicists *Cinnabaris Faclitia*, *Cinnabrium Artificiale*, and *Minium Artificiale*, with vs *Germillion*.
- Suēt**, in Græke of *Aetnarius Zapetion*, in Latine of the Simplicists *Zibethum*, *Zibettum*, *Algalia*, and at the Apothecaries *Zibēta*. It is the fat or suēt which is taken from the cods of the Suēt or muske Cat: At the first it smelleth very badly, but afterwards turneth to so fragrant an odour that it farre surpasseth the Puske and Amber græce: It is hot and moyst by nature. It is vsed for the increafe of humane seede, and for the infirmities of the Patir.
- Slow treē**, or black thorne, in Græke *Agriococcymela*, and *Coccymela agria*. In Latine *Prunus Sylvestris*, and of Virgill, *Spinus*.
- Smallage**, in Græke and Latine *Eleoselinum*, *Hydroselinum*, *Apium Palustre*, and *Palu-capium*. Here is to be noted, that as often as any mention is made in this booke of Smallage seedes, leaues, iuice, or rootes, that the greater *Wimpernell* rootes are alwayes to be vnderstode for it, for that is the right *Apium* of the auncient Physicians.
- Smaragde**, in Latine and Græke *Smaragdus*, of *Horatius*, *lapis viridis*, it is a græne precious stone.
- Snake**, *Serpens*, *Anguis*.
- Snayle**, *Cochlea terrestris*, a Snayle house and all: The house of the Snayle is called in Græke by *Dioscorides* *Celyphos*, of *Galen* *Ostracon*, of *Sammonicus*, *Cochlea Domus*, and of *Plinie*, *Calyx*. The vine Snayles and garden Snayles are called *Cochlea opercularis*. The dew Snayles are called *Limax* and *Cochlea Nuda*.
- Solidago Media**, *Sengræne*, in Latine *Symphytum Medicum*, *Solidago Media*, *consolidamēdia*, *consolidago media*.
- Soote of the chimney**, *Fuligo caminorum*.
- Sophia**, in Græke and Latine *Thaliotrum*, and *Thaliotrum*, of the Chirurgions and Herbarists *Sophia*, and *Herba Sophie*. Some Authours would haue this herbe to be *Absinthium Seriphium*, but they shall neuer approue it to be true, for although they were the greatest Alchimists in the world, yet should they neuer transmute the one into the other. This Sophia I will not denye to be very good for the *Wormes* of the belly, yet doth it not there by follow that it is *Absinthium Seriphium*, for if all the herbs should be of *Smecchia Seriphia*, that should expell *Wormes*, then should we haue an infinite companie of them. Of this *Absinthium Seriphium*, loke vnder the title of sea *Wormewood*.
- Sope**, in Græke and Latine *Smegma*, or *Sapo*, of *Martialis* *Mattiaca Pila*. Sope is prepared diuersly, but amongst all others is the blacke Sope best for Physicians.
- Soyrell**, in Græke of *Dioscorides* *Oxalis*, *Anaxyris*, and *Lapathum*, of *Galen* *Oxylapathum*. *Dioscorides* doth otherwhiles call the Docke *Oxylapathum*, because it hath picked leaues: But *Galen* doth not call Soyrell by this name, because it hath picked leaues, but that it is amper and slowe: for *Oxylapathum* is *Lapathum Acidum*, slower Docke: the Apothecaries do call it *Acetosā*. There are foure kindes of it: The first, is that which groweth euery where in Gardens. The seconde kinde is as big againe as the common Soyrell, and groweth very plentifully in the Vineyards nere Rhene: it is also planted in Gardens for Sallets, and is called *Oxalis satina*, or *Acetosā satina*. The third kinde is set in the Gardens in France and high Burgundy, it hath round leaues, and is much slower then the common Soyrell, it might be called round Soyrell, of the Herbarists *Oxalis Rotundifolia*, *Acetosā Rotunda*, *Oxalis Francica*, and *Oxalis Gallica*. The fourth kinde of Soyrell groweth in the common fieldes, and dry places, it hath small narrowe leaues, and may be called *Shapes* or wilde Soyrell: of the Herbarists *Oxalis Tenusifolia*, *Oxalis minor*, *Oxalis Veruccina*, and *Oxalis Aruensis*: at the Apothecaries *Acetosā minor*, and *Acetosā ouina*: But as often as you reade Soyrell in any composition, thou shalt alwayes vnderstand the common Soyrell, although the round be the best.
- Slow milke**, in Græke of *Plinie* *Oxygala*, in Latine, *Lac Acidum*, or *Lac Acetosum*.
- Solues bread**, or **Swines bread**, in Græke *Cyclaminus*, *Ichthyotheron*, and *Chelonium*, that is, *Icestudinaria*, and *Chylina*: in Latine *Cyclamen*, *Vmbilicus terra*, *Rapum terra*, *Rapum Porci*, *Orbicularis*, and *Herba orbicularis* *Tryumphaltes*, *Panis Terra*, *Archanita*,

The second Table.

ibanita, and *Haribanita*. Of the barbarous writers *Panis Alcuist*, *Panis Fanni*, *Cassanum*, *Cassanum*, and *Quessanum*. Of the Arabian Physicians *Bothor Maria*. It is a roote whose leafe is like to Hartwozt, but somewhat litherer, & fuller of spots. There is yet another kind of Solwes bread which is very like to the former, but somewhat lesse, no bigger than a gall; this groweth in *Apulia*, on the hill *Garganum*, it is called *Cyclaminus minor*.

Southernwood, in græke *Auroesie*, or *Wardrobe*, in latine *Abrotonum*, *Thelyphorium*: The female kinde of Southernwood is called garden Cipers, *Abrotonum femina*, it is called *Chamaecyparissus*, but truly; for *Chamaecyparissus* *Plinij*, is not great and woody, as the garden Cipers is, but it is a little hearbe, about one span in height otherwise it is very like to the garden Cipers: it is called with vs the female Southernwood: the Herbarists do call it *Abrotonum femina*, *Cyparissus*, and *Cypessus hortulanus*, & *Sandolina*.

Sparrow, in græke *Psar*, *Struthos*, *Colmus*, and in latine *Passer*: a well known bird.

Sparrowhawk, in græke *Spizius* and *Spizites*, in latine *Accipiter*, *Fringellarius*, and *Nisus*: it is a birde common and well known.

Sperage, in græke and latine *Asparagus*, or *Aspharagus*: at the Apothecaries *Sparagus*. There be two kinds of it, to wit, the wilde and the tame Sperage: the same kinde groweth euery where nere the Rheine: the wild Sperage hath lesser leaues, and seeds: this groweth on the hills, for which cause it is called *Asparagus petraeus*.

Sperma Ceti, in græke *Halos anthos*, in latine *Maris flos*: of the Herbarists *Sperma balenarum*, and at the Apothecaries *Sperma Ceti*: It is used for clotted blood, being mixed with other things.

Spider, in græke *Arachne*, in latine *Aranea*, *Araneus*. There is yet another kind, called of *Pliny*, *Phalangium*: this is big, and popposeth in biting or stinging; it is onely found in hot countries, and especially in Italy, where it is called *Tarantula*.

Spike of Rome, *Salinuca*, *Nardus Celtica*, *Nardus Romana*, *Spica Celtica*, *Spica Romana*, *Nardus Gallica*, and *Spica Gallica*: the Herbarists do call it *Flos dina Magdalena*: it is a well known herbe, warme in the first, and drie in the second degree.

Spikenard oile, loke oyle of Spikenard.

Spinage, in græke *Scutomalache*, and *Tentomalache*, in latine *Beta Maluatica*, *Spinaceu*, or *Spinacea*, *Spanachia*, and *Spinachia*, *Olus Spinaceum*, and *Olus Hispanicum*. It is cold and moist in the first degree.

Sponge, in græke *Spongus*, and in latine *Spongia*.

Spurge, in græke *Tithymalus*, in latine *Lactaria herba*, of *Celsus* and *Columella*, *Lactuca marina*, of *Pliny*, *Lactuca caprina*, and at the Apothecaries *Esula*, or *Ezula*. The Arabians doe call it *Xauser*. There are eight kinds of it; the first is called in græke and latine *Characias*, *Tithymalus characias*, *Tithymalus vallis*, *Amygdaloides*, *Cometes*, *Tithymalus cometes*, *Cobius*, *Tithymalus cobius*, of *Apuleius*, *Alypus*, *Gobius*, and *Meconites*, *Tithymalus masculus*, *Lactuca marina*, and *Gemitura Maris*: of the Herbarists *Esula*, or *Esula Papaueracea*, *Esula Vallaris*, *Esula amygdalina*, and *Esula comosa*. It is a very big kinde of Spurge, it hath great long leaues, not vnlike to the Almond tree, red stalkes and branches, it is called *Lathyrus sylvestris*, and *Cataputia sylvestris*. The second kinde of Spurge hath thicke and picked leaues, like to the Spurtle: it is called in græke and latine *Myrrites*, *Tithymalus myrsinites*, *Tithymalus femina*, *Caryites*, *Tithymalus Caryites*, of *Apuleius*, *Caryon*, of *Theophrastus*, and the Simplicists, *Tithymalus myrsifolius*, *Tithymalus myrsiphyllus*, *Tithymalus myrtaceus*, of *Apuleius*, *Multilago Capraria*, of the common Herbarists *Esula*, or *Esula myrsifolia*, and *Esula myrtacea*. This kind of Spurge groweth not with vs of it selfe, but is planted in gardens. The third kind of Spurge groweth about one spanne in height, and hath red branches, rounde leaues, white flowers, and seeds as big as small Peasons: it is called sea Spurge, in græke and latine *Paralius*, *Tithymalus Paralius*, *Tithymalus maritimus*, *Tithymalus lactariolus*, *Tithymalis*, and of *Theophrastus*. *Coccus*: of the Herbarists *Lactariola*, *Herba lactariola*, and *Esula*, or *Esula marina*. The fourth kind of Spurge groweth euery where in gardens, and near hedges, it is an herbe not altogether a span in height, with red stalkes and branches, it hath round leaues like Purslaine, and it beareth a pelloe flower, and turneth with the Sunne, in græke and latine *Helioscopium*, *Tithymalus helioscopium*, *Tithymalus Solissequum*, or *Solissequum*, *Dentritis Apuleij*, (ob *Arbuscula similitudinem*) *Cicer columbinum*,
Ca-

The second Table.

Caprago: of the Herbarists *Lactaria solisegua*, *Esula*, or *Esula solisegua*, or *solisegua*. The first kind of Spurge, is the lesser kinde of Spurge, which is like to the small field Cipers, it groweth here and there in sundrie gardens, and in tilled ground, and it is called the lesser Spurge, in græke and latine *Cyparissias*, *Tithymalus Cyparissias*, *Tithymalus cupressinus*: of the Herbarists *Esula*, or *Esula cupressina*, and at the Apothecaries *Esula minor*: this plant is called of Mesues, *Scebram minus*, and *Alscebram minus*. The first kind of Spurge is the greatest of all; it groweth on rockes or stony places: it is like to a little tree, the leaues are narrower, than they of *Esula Myrtacea*: it is called in græke and latine *Dendrodes*, *Dendroides*, *Tithymalus Dendroides*, *Tithymalus leptophyllus*, *Tithymalus tenuifolius*, *Tithymalus Petreus*, *Tithymalus arborescens*: of the Simplicists *Esula*, or *Esula Arborescens* and *Petreus*. The seventh kind hath great broad leaues, and is called great Spurge, and sweete Spurge, in græke and latine *Tithymalus platyphyllus*, *Tithymalus latifolius*, *Corymbitis*, and of *Apuleius*, *Persites*, in latine of the Herbarists *Tritum*, or *Titum*, at the Apothecaries *Esula*, or *Esula latifolia*, and *Esula dulcis*. The eighth kind is the *Esula* which is also called *Pityusa*, of Mesues, *Alscebram*, or *Alscebram mains*, of *Anicenna*, *Mebeze beregi*, at the Apothecaries *Esula maior*: there hath been spoken of this kind in the title of Turbith T. Also if *Esula* or Spurge be named in this booke, then is the *Esula Cyparissia* to be vsed.

Squinanth, in latine & græke *Schœnus*, *Schœnanthum*, *iuncus odoratus*, *Pastus Camelorum*, at the Apothec. *Squinanthu*: the flowers are called in græke *Schœnanthos*, that is, *Iuncus flores*: they are now brought vnto vs again, although they be not common euery where.

Stag, *Cernuus*.

Stauesacre, loke for Licebane in L.

Stechados, or **Stechas**, It is called of *Dioscorides* in græke *Stichas*, of *Galen*, *Stechas*, of others *Sincliopa*, *Alciadiades*, *Styphonia*, and *Styphonia*, in latine *Stichas*, *Stechas*, *Stechas*, *Oculus Pythonis*, or *Sciolechina*, and at the Apothecaries *Stichados indeclinabiliter*. There are two kindes of it, the one commeth from *Arabia*, which hath leaues very like to *Lauander*, but they are somewhat tagged, and to each stalk are three or fouer compacted paires, and each one hath a little stalk, with

pretie little purple flowers, of a very pleasant and fragrant smell, & it is now aduaies with vs planted in gardens: this kinde is called *Stichas Arabica*, and at the Apothecaries *Stichados Arabicum*. The other kinde groweth in *Spaine*, *Italy*, and in other places: it is not much unlike the former, but that it is somewhat bigger, and the leaues are not tagged: the Herbarists doe call this kinde *Stichados Europea*, it hath also oftentimes a name of the place where it groweth, as that of *France* is called *Stichas Gallica*: the *Italians* do call their *Stichados*, *Stichadem montanum*: the *Portingales* doe call that which groweth in *Arabia*, *Rosmarinum Mauritauorum*. The authoꝝ do commend that of *Arabia*, aboue all the other kindes; but because it is brought so farre, and that it loseth his virtues by the way, do the learned Physicians vse only that which groweth in *Europe*.

Stæle, in græke *Calys*, and of *Pollux*, *Stomoma*, in latine *Chalybs*, of *Pliny*, *Nucleus ferri*, and *Acies ferri*.

Stonecrop, *Illecebra*, *Piper murinum*, and of *Dioscorides*, *Sedi tertium genus*.

Stone Parley, or **Parley** of *Spacedone*, *Petroselinum Macedonicu*: they that haue great store of small skill in simples, haue hitherto vsed the Parley of *Alexandria*, for that of *Macedonia*: Others, because they had no Stone parley, haue vsed the greater *Dimpernell* in steede of it; of which opinion *Hieronimus Tragus* (my Master) was the first, because that kinde of *Dimpernell* is stronger, and agreeth better with the Stone parley than the other. But now hauing gotten the true Stone parley, and planted it in diuers gardens, it is not needefull to vse any other thing for it. The Parley of *Alexandria*, hath also her proper vse in Physicke, and it is called of *Dioscorides*, *Smyrnum*: of the Herbarists *Petroselinum Alexandrinum*, *Petroselinum Cilicum*, *Apium Alexandrinum*, *Apium grande*, and *Olusatrum*: these herbes are seldome vsed alone.

Stozar, loke *Syrax* in the latine Index or Table.

Stozke, in græke *Pelargus*, in latine *Ciconia*: It is a bird comon inough beyond the seas.

Stozkes bill, of *Dioscorides*, *Geranium alterum*, of the Herbarists *Pes columbinus*, and *Peristopodium*: it is one of the smallest kindes of Stozkes bill, with round leaues, like to the lesser *Phallow*.

Strow

The second Table.

Strawberry, *Fragum*.

Sturgeon, *Accipenser*, *Sturio*: it is a common and well known fish.

Succozie, loke *Cicory* in *C*.

Sugar, in græke *Sacchar*, *Saccharon*, *Meli*, of *Arrianus*, *Calaminon*, in latine of *Pliny*, *Sal Indus*, and *Saccharum*, at the Apothecaries *Zuccarum*. There are five kinds of it: the first kinde is refined Sugar, which artificially hath been purified, and is called of the *Simplicists* *Saccharum valentinum*, *Saccharum finum*, *Saccharum resinatum*, and *Saccharum Tabazeth*. The second kind is *Padery Sugar*, which is brought from the Island *Madera*, this is the second in goodness, and is called in latine *Saccharum Maderiense*, or *Mederiense*. The third kinde is *Canary Sugar*, which is next in goodness to the *Padery Sugar*, in latine *Saccharum Canarium*. The fourth kinde is the *Malta* or powder Sugar, it is brought from *Malta*, and it is called of the *Simplicists* *Saccharum Malianum*. The fifth kind is a browne and soft Sugar, it is brought from the Island *S. Thomas*, & it is the very worst of all the kinds: it is called of the *Simplicists*, *Saccharum Thomasinum*, *Saccharum Thomaeum*, and at the Apothecaries *Saccharum rubrum*. The first kind is the sirup that floweth from the Sugar in refining, it is known euery where by the name of *Sirup*, *Mel Saccharinum*, and *Remel*. Whensoever any mention is made of Sugar, then is either the *Padery Sugar*, or the *Malta sugar* to be taken and used.

Sugar Parsnep, in græke and latine *Sisarum*, & *Sifer*: this is the true *Sisarum* or *Sifer* of the auncient writers, and not our common *Parsnep*, as some suppose; for the *Persnep* with the broad leafe is the true *Elaphoboscum* *Dioscoridis*. If we did alwaies distinguish our herbes, after the best manner, we should not fall and run into so many confusions and errors.

Sulphure, loke for *Bimstone* in *B*.

Suppositoie, is used to procure stools, and is called in græke and latine *Balanus*, *Glans*, and at the Apothecaries *Suppositorium*.

Swallowe, in græke *Chelidon*, in latine *Hirundo*.

T.

Tamariske, in græke *Myrica*, in latine *Tamarix*, of the *Herbarists* *Bryaria*, and at

the Apothecaries *Tamariscus*: it is a well known tree and groweth abundantly in many places of Germany.

Tansie, the *Herbarists* doe call it *Tanacetum*, and *Athanasia*.

Tassell, in græke and latine *Dipsacum*, *Onocardium*, *Labrum Veneris*, *Carduus Veneris*, *Virga Pastoris*, *Carduus Fullonis*, and *Lanagrum Veneris*.

Three leaved grasse, loke for *Clauers* in *C*.

Thorough ware, *Persfoliata*.

Thunderbolt, *Phrygius lapis*, of *Dioscorides*, and at the Apothecaries *Lapis lycis*. The gentle reader is here to be admonished of the great abuse, harme and deceit, that hath hapned these many yeres, at the Apothecaries, in the use of this simple. For the unskillfull Physicians, which doe not much trouble themselves with the true knowledge of simples, are as yet of opinion, that the Thunderbolt should be engendred in the ayre, and they do vse it in their compositions to expell vyne, grauel and stone, and especially in the *Lisbontribon magnum Nicolai*. But the stone which they call *Lapis lycis*, or *Lyncurium*, is called of *Galen* and *Dioscorides*, *Lapis phrygius*: for the *Wyers* in *Phrygia* do vse it in their dyings. This forseid stone (as *Dioscorides* witnesseth) groweth in *Cappadocia*; but neither *Galen* nor yet *Dioscorides* doth say, that this stone should be engendred in the ayre, for it is a thing that groweth of it selfe, as the *Calamine* doth, and (as *Galen* saith) it hath the same virtues with the *flint*, but that this may not be used inwardly. By this may appeare how greatly they haue erred, that haue called this stone *Lapis lycis*, or *Lyncurium*. Also how diuersly men haue bene deceiued & their infirmities increased, in ministering vnto them diuers compositions, wherein this stone is put. Wherefore euery careful Physician ought diligently to reade the booke of *Dioscorides*, *Galen*, *Pliny*, *Ætius*, and of *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, that he might thereby perceiue his owne defaults, and turne back from his errors. *Dioscorides* in his second booke *De re medica*, and the 74. chapt. writeth after this manner of the Thunderbolt: It hath been thought that the water of the ayre, which is called *Lyncurium*, should congeale into a stone, but it hath bene found false, and all whatsoeuer else hath been said of it; for the *Lyncurium* is that which is called of some *Electrum Perigophoron*, Amber,

The second Table.

o; white Amber, and is brought unto vs in great abundance from *Pressia*: these are the very wordes of *Dioscorides*. The like false opinion doth *Pliny* detect *libro 37. cap. 3.* Here may you evidently perceiue, that neither auncient writers haue helde any thing of that false and fained opinion; for they do all affirme that *Electrum*, *Succinum*, and *Lyncurium*, is one and the same thing, which hath bene sufficiently sene by the wordes of *Dioscorides*. It doth also appeare in the writings of *Atius*, and *Nicolaus Myrepsus*, that they meant nothing els by their Thunderbolt *Lyncurium*, o; *Lapis lyncis*, but onely *Succinum*, that is the Amber. Also that the Amber cometh not out of the aire but out of the sea, that is sufficiently knowen to al the world. But whether that unskilful crue had said that it were engedged of a certain water in the ayre, o; that it is the vrin of a beast congealed into a stone, that were a final erro; if they had vsed the right Amber in their compositions. What Amber hath power to expell the stone, vrin, and grauell (which virtues are ascribed to the *Lyncurium*) that is sufficiently knowen to euery expert Philition: and that the white Amber is the right *Lyncurium* o; *Lyncurium*, that may be shewed by the wordes of *Atius*, who calleth it *Electrum*, *Lyncurium*, and *Succinū*, and distinguisheth the yellow Amber from it, calling it *Chryseletrum*, that is, *Aureum Electrum*. And *Dioscorides* in the former chapter calleth the white Amber *Electrum Pterigophorum*, and in the first booke de medica materia, doth he cal y yellow Amber *Chrysophorum*. Hereby do we cōclude that *Lapis lyncis*, *Lyncurium* o; *Lyncurium* (as the Grecians terme it) is nought else but the white Amber: wherfore hee must be taken, that thou vse the white Amber in all compositions, that haue the *Lapis lyncis* in them. Of the virtues of the Thunderbolt, looke for Amber.

Thyme, in græke and latin *Thymum*, *Thymus*, *Serpillum Romanum*, o; *Herba Thymiana*, at the Apothecaries *Timus*. There are two kinds of it, and both of them are set in gardens: but in hot countries doe they growe euery where of themselves. The first kinde is white, and hath long eares o; heads like to *Stachados*, it hath a very pleasant smell, it is called in græke and latine *Thymum capitatum*, *Thymum Candidum*, *Thymum creticum*, *Thymum Spicatum*, and *Thymum ara-*

maticum: we call it white Thyme. The second kind is rougher, & of a darke greene colour, and it is common in al gardens and well knotwen by the name of Thyme. The first kind is much better for Physicke than the other, if it may be gotten: they are both of them hot and dry in the third degree.

Lillet tree, in the *Philyra*, in latine *Tilia*. There are two kinds of it. The common Lillet tree, and the wilde Lillet tree, which groweth in the shadowy wood and hils, it is very like to the tame kinde, but that it is much lesse; it bloweth also flower, and at the last the blossomes fall off without any fruit. It is called the wild Lillet tree, o; stone Lillet, because the wood of it is harder and more compacted than the tame: it is called in latine *Tilia filuestris*, and *Tilia m.s.* The blossomes and the fruites of it are vsed in Physicke.

Toade, in græke *Phrynus*, of *Troil*, *Enso*, and of *Pliny*, *Rubeta*. Some vnfailfull Philitions doe take *Rubeta* to bee the leaf Frog, which is a great erro; for they are as like as an Apple is like to an *Oyster*; because the Loade is hurtfull and venenous, and the leafe Frog without all hurte o; harme.

Termentill, is called of *Dioscorides*, *Chrysogonon*, and of others *Heptaphyllon*, of the Herbarists *Septifolium*, *Betularis*, & at the Apothecaries *Termentilla*.

Toxogly, in græke *Chelone*, o; *Emys*, of *Hesichius* and *Aristoteles*, *Mys*, in latine *Testudo*: the shell of it is called in græke *Chelonium*, and of *Nicander*, *Chelium*, in latine *Testudinis operimentum*.

Treacle, in græke and latine *Theriaca*, at the Apothecaries *Teriaca*: We haue mentioned in this booke of two kinds of Treacle to wit, of *Theriaca Andromachi*, o; *Theriaca magna*, and the common Treacle, called *Theriaca Diacassarōn*: but whersoever Treacle is named without any addition, there must the great *Theriaca Andromachi* be taken and vsed.

Turbith, of *Athuarus*, *Turpetum*, in latine of the Herbarists *Turbetum*, of the Arabians *Turbith*, and *Turbeth*. There are sower kinds of it: the first is the white Turbith very common at al Apothecaries, this kind is called of *Dioscorides* in græke, *Alpum*, of *Athuarus*, *Alypias*, and *Turpetum album*, at the Apothecaries *Turpetum Orientale*, o; *Turpetum Alexandrinum*, and in English white Turbith. The second kind is called

The second Table.

of *Dioscorides* and *Almarius*, *Pityusa*, *Clema*, *Crabion*, and *Canopicon*, of the *Herbarists* *Turpetum nigrum*, and *Esula maior*: also of the *Arabians* *Alscebram maius*, or *Scebram maius*, in english blacke Turbith. The third kind is called in græke *Thapsia*, *Hypopis*, and *Pancranium*, in latine *Ferulago*, and *Ferula sylvestris*, of the *Herbarists* *Turpetum cineritium*, and *Turpetum Mesuis*, and *Mesues* hath vnderstood by his Turbith nothing els but *Thapsia*. The fourth kind is the *Turpetum Serapionis*, who also hath his severall Turbith. *Dioscorides* calleth it *Tripolum*, *Psyche*, *Meris*, *Stachyites*, of the *Herbarists* *Turpetum Serapionis*, and *Aster maritimus*: but when thou findest Turbith in any composition with any addition, then is the white Turbith to be vnderstood for it.

Turnericke, *Cyperus Indicus*, the *Apothecaries* call it *Curcuma*, and *Terra merita*, *Rafis* calleth it *Vena citrina*.

Turneps, looke for *Rapes* in *R*.

Turpentine is called *Resina Terebinthi*, *Terebinthina*, or *Terminthina*, of the *Arabians* and *Apothecaries* *Terbentina*, *Terpentina*, & *Termentina*. It is not the comon Turpentine, that floweth from the fir tree, as the vnskillfull suppose, but it is the true Turpentine of the *Turpentine* tree.

Turpentine tree, in græke *Terminthos*, of *Nicander*, *Trimithos*, in latine *Terebinthus*, of *Auicenna*, *Arbor granatirides*.

Turtle Dove, in Græke *Trygon*, in Latine *Turtur*.

Tuttie, at the *Apothecaries* *Tutia scititia*, *Cadmia botrytis*, or *Cadmia Acinosa*, and *Cadmia officinarum*.

V.

Valerian, in græke and latine *Phu*, *Valeriana*, *Genicularis*, *Herba benedicta* and *Marinella*. There are fouer kindes of it, and two of them only in vse: the first is the common Valerian, which onely ought to haue that name. The second kind is planted in gardens, although it be otherwhiles found in woods and on hills: it hath much greater leaues than the common Valerian, and also a bigger roote, of the thickenes of a finger, & this is the true *Phu* of the auncient writers. It is called *Phu Pouiccu*, in english great Valerian, the *Herbaristes* do call it *Theriacaria*, *Herba diu Georgij*, *Georgiana*, & *Herba diu Maria*. This is commended be-

fore the former Valerian, if it may be gotten. They are hot in the first, and dry in the second degree.

Venus haire, in græke *Trichomanes*, *Callitrichon*, *Eupteron*, of *Hippocrates*, *Calliphylon*, of *Apuleius*, *Tricophys*, *Selinophyllon*, *Dyphyes*, *Scholibrochon*, *Amianthon*, and *Adianton*: although *Dioscorides* do describe another kind of *Adianton*, to wit, *Gayden* haire, yet notwithstanding is *Venus* haire the true *Adiantum Apuleij*: in latine *Herba Capillaris*, *Barba Herculis*, and *Pinnula*, of *Apuleius*, *Herba crinita*, *Capillus Veneris*: the *Apothecaries* call it *Polytrichum*. There are yet two kindes more of it, to wit, the greater and the lesser *Gayden* haire: the greater kind is called of the *Herbarists* *Polytrichum aureum*, *Adiantum aureum*, & *Capillaris aurea*. The lesser is called *Adiantum aureum minus*. Some haue take both these kindes for *Polytrichon Apuleij*; but they erre greatly, as doth appeare by the description of it. But when thou readeest *Venus* haire in any composition, then shalt thou take the common *Venus* haire.

Verdigrease, in græke *Chalcon anthos*, in latine *Flos aris*, or *Erugo*, at the *Apothecaries* *Viride aris*.

Vinum punicum, or *Vinum Histricum*, *Vinum puniceum*.

Violets, in græke *Ion*, & *Ion porphyreon*, of *Theophrastus*, *Ion Melan*, and *Melanion*, of *Dioscorides* *Dasipodium*, *Priapeion*, *Cybelion*, in latine *Viola purpurea*, *Viola muraria*, *Viola nigra*, and *Setialis*: of the *Herbaristes* *Viola Martia*, and *Viola Quadragesimalis*: it is also sometimes called onely *Viola*, in english a Violet: the *Apothecaries* call it *Flos Viols*. The leaues of the *Violets* are called *Violaria*, and *Mater Violaru*. There are five kindes of them, that are all of one & the same operation. The first kind is common euery where, and knowen to all men. The second kinde are the white *Violets*, which are very like to the former, but that they be very white: they are set in gardens notwithstanding that they are found in fields: the *Herbaristes* do call it *Viola alba*, and *Viola Martia alba*. The third and fourth kindes are the white and blew double *Violets*, that growe in gardens: The blew double *Violets* are called *Viola multiplex*, *Ion polyphyllon*, and *Viola purpurea multiplex*. The double white *Violets* are called *Viola alba multiplex*. The fift kind of *Violets* are the

The second Table.

wilde Violets, which are like to the tame Violets in euery respect, but that the leaues are somewhat lesse and longer, and the flowers are of a light or purple blew, like the other, but without any smell, where neuerthelesse, all the other kindes are very fragrant. The first kinde is called *Ion agrion*, *Viola syluestris*, of the Herbaristes *Viola fatua*, or *Viola canina*.

Viper or **Adder**, in græke *Echis*, and *Echidna*, in latine *Vipera*, and of Cicero, *Excerta*: the Italians doe call it *Marassius*. It is a venemous Snake, vnknown with vs, but very common in Italy.

Virga aurea, *Solidago saracenica*, *Consolida saracenica*, *Herba fortis*, and *Virga Aurea*.

Unicorne, *Vnicornium*, *Cornu Monocerotis*.

Unripe Grapes, in græke *Omphax*, in latine *Vua immatura*, and *Vua acerba*.

Vulture, *Vultur*, and of Plinius, *Vulturius*, it is a well known rauening bird.

W.

Walflowers, in græke *Leucoium*, *Viola lutea*, *Hesperis*, at the Apothecaries *Keyri*, *Kenri*, and *Cheyri*.

Walnut tree, in græke *Caryon*, *Caryon basilicon*, and of Pollux, *Caryon Persicon*, *Nux basitica*, *Nux regia*, *Iuglans*, and *Nux Persica*. There are three kindes of it, to wit, great, middle, and lesser nuts: the lesser may bee called stonie nuts, because they haue such hard shels. The second kinde are the common Walnuts, *Nuces media*, or *Iuglandes media*. The third kind are the biggest, and are called *Nuces equina*, or *Iuglandes equina*.

Water cresse, in græke and latine *Sisymbrium aquaticum*, *Nasturtium aquaticum*, and *Cardamine*.

Water Lentils, *Lens palustris*, or *Lenticula aquatica*.

Water Lillies, in græke *Nymphaea*, *Rhopalon*, *Heraction*, *Androgynus*, of Apuleius, *Lotometra*, *Madon*, of Theophrastus, *Madonias*: in Latine *Clanys Veneris*, *Digitus Veneris*, *Alga palustris*, *Lilium palustre*, *Papauer palustre*, *Clana Herculis*, *Rosa palustris*, of Apuleius, *Protea*, and *Mater herculanea*: The Arabians and Apothecaries doe call it *Nenusar*, or *Nenuphar*. There are fower kindes of it: the first kinde groweth in Pondes, they are very common, and beare a faire white flower, known to euery man: it

is called *Nymphaea alba*, of Pliny, *Nymphaea Heractia*, with vs white water Lillies. The other kinde is like the former, but not so common, it beareth a yellow flower, and is called of the Herbaristes *Nymphaea lutea*, of Dioscorides, *Nymphon*, the Rowers *Blepharon*, and *Blephara*, with vs yellowe water Lillies. The third kinde hath small leanes, like to Crowfoote flowers, and small white flowers, it groweth commonly in swete and running streames, and it is called of the Herbarists *Nymphaea minor*, in English the lesser white water Lillie. The fourth kinde is like to the great water Lillie, but that it is somewhat lesse, it beareth a pretie yellow starry flower, it is called of the Herbaristes *Nymphaea lutea minor*, we call it the lesser yellow water Lilly.

Water Torch, in græke and latine *Typha*: the Herbarists do call it *Typha aquatica*, and *Typha palustris*, to distinguish it from the Turkish Cozne, and the Ginny wheate, both which are also called *Typha*: whereof shall bee spoken moze at large when opportunity shall serue. The Water Torch is but once mentioned in this whole worke.

Water Willow, in græke and latine *Lyfimachium*, or *Lyfimachia*, *Lirum*, of the Herbarists *Salicaria*. There are three kindes of it, the first is the common water Willowe, which is called the yellow water Willow, in latine *Lyfimachia lutea*, or *Lyfimachia melina*. The seconde kinde groweth in moyst places, it hath narrow and picked leaues, with a pretie purple flower: it is called of Pliny, *Lyfimachia*, for the first kind is *Lyfimachia Dioscoridis*: of the Herbarists *Lyfimachia Pliniana*, *Lyfimachia purpurea*, or *Punicea*, *Lyfimachia Spicata*, and *Salicaria purpurea*, in English the purple water Willow. The third kinde groweth about the running waters or streames, it hath small leaues, like to the Willow, but a little iagged, it beareth a pretie small purple flower, like to the lesser Roses, out of which cometh afterwards a little cup, which containeth some small seedes. It is called of the Herbarists *Lyfimachia filiquosa*, and *Filius ante patrē*, in English hozned water Willowes, that is, *Salicaria cornuta*, *Salicaria filiquosa*, and *Lyfimachia cornuta*. But if thou finde water Willowes without any addition, then shalt thou vnderstand the yellow water Willow, or *Lyfimachia Dioscoridis*.

Wate,

The second Table.

Waxe, in græke *Ceros*, in latine *Cera*.

Whay, *Serum*, *Aqua lactis*, and *Aqua Casei*.

Wheale, in græke *Gale*, and *Spondyle*, in latin *Muscula*.

Wheate, in græke *Pyros*, in latine *Triticum*.

There are three kindes of it; the first kinde doe we call **Wheat**, without any addition, of *Columella*, *Robus*, of the *Simplicists* *Triticum robus*: this is the very best in waight and whitenes. The second is a kinde of ruffed wheat, in græke *Pyros Trimenos*, or *Setanias*, in latine *Triticum Trimestre*, and *Halicastrum*, of *Columella*, *Setanium*, or *Sitanium*, of the *Herbarists* *Triticum sitanum*. The third kind is called in græke *Selignis*, in latine *Siligo*, and *Triticum Siliginum*.

Wheate ruffed, in græke *Zea*, in latine *Semen*, of *Columella*, *Fav clusium*, and of others *Spelta*. There are two kindes of it, the first is the common ruffed wheat, it bringeth two huskes close together, with two graines in them: this is called *Spelt*, and *Zeadiococcus*. The second kind is called *S. Peters coyne*, it bringeth but one seede or graine, to wit, in a rowe, as the former bringeth the two: it is called in græke *Zea monococcus*, and in latine *Zea simplex*, and *Semen simplex*: it is a kinde of graine which is a meane betwene *Barley* and *Wheate*.

Wheate ruffed-prepared, *Alica* or *Halica*, in græke *Chondrus*, *Zea deglubita*, ruffed wheat peeled.

White water Pints, in græke *Minthe agria*, *Hedysmos agrios*, in latine *Mentastrum*, and *Mentha sylvestris*, of the *Herbarists* *Mentha equina*, *Mentha caballina*, and *Balsamita fessina*. There are two kindes of it: the first hath rough, white, & round leaues, and a hairy and rough stalk, this is the true *Mentastrum Dioscoridis*. The second kinde is not rough, but hath long picked leaues, and a browne hairy flower: they growe nere to the water side; this second kinde is called *Mentastrum acutum*, and they haue both one and the same operation. *Apuleius* and *Pliny* haue also their seuerrall *Mentastrum*, which they doe call *Glechion agrion*, and *Pulegium agreste*: It is the seconde *Calamintha Dioscoridis*, which wee haue called *Calamintha arvensis* before.

Wilde Beetes, of the *Herbarists* *Apiophyllon*, *Herba pyrifolia*, or *Pyrifolia*, *Consolida pyrifolia*, *Pyrola*, and *Pyrola*: It is a vnlnerall herbe, hauing leaues like a *Peare tree*, it

groweth in the shade wie woods, and continueth græne both winter and summer. There is yet another kinde of it, which groweth in medowes, nere hils, which is like to the former, but that it hath longer leaues and stalkes, whereon there bee white flowers: the *Herbarists* doe call it *Pyrola*, or *Pyrola pratensis*: they are both of one nature and operation: they are drie in the third degree, they doe consolidate mightily: but by wilde Beetes shalt thou vnderstand that which groweth in woods.

Wilde Cucumbers, *Cucumer Asininus*, *Cucumer sylvestris*, *Cucumer anguinus*, and *Cucumer erraticus*. It is a well known hearbe, but it groweth not with vs vnles it bee sown in gardens. There is a iuice prest out of the fruit of it, and prepared, which is called *Elaterium*, whereof shall bee spoken elswhere.

Wilde flare, in græke and latine *Ossris*, of the *Herbarists* *Herba vrnalis*, and *Linum beata Maria*, at the *Apothecaries* *Linaria*.

Wilde Grapes, in Græke *Ampelos agria*, in Latine *Labrusca*: the blossomes of the wilde Vine is called in græke *Oenanthe*, in Latine *Flos labrusca*, *Flos vitis sylvestris*, and at the *Apothecaries* *Flos lambrusca*.

Wilde Peares, *Pyrum sylvestre*: the tree is called in græke *Achras*, in latine *Pyraſter*, in English a wilde Peare tree: these Peares, their leaues, and the water distilled of them is vsed for the Laskie.

Wilde Radish, *Armoracia*, *Raphanus sylvestris*, at the *Apothecaries* *Rapistrum*: There are two kindes of it; both of them do grow in fields that are sowne. The first kinde is that whereof now hath been spoken: The second kinde is like the first, but it hath fewer and broader leaues; the flowers are white, and is commonly called white wilde Radish, *Rapistrum album*, that is, *Lapsana Dioscoridis & Galeni*. They that call our Hoyle radish *Armoracia*, doe erre greatly: for *Armoracia* is *Raphanus sylvestris*, a wilde Radish. Look for this in the description of *Dioscorides*, and the trueth will soone appeare.

Wilde Saffron, in græke *Cnicus*, *Cnecus*, *Gnicus*, and *Gnecus*, in latine, *Cartamus*, or *Charitamus*. There are two kindes of it, the first is the wild well known Saffron, which groweth in many gardens; this is called *Cartamus domesticus*, of *Serapio*, *Kartan*, of

The second Table.

Auerroes, *Elcraus*, of the *Herbarists* *Crocus hortulanus*, *Crocus sylvestris*, *Crocus saracenicus*, *Crocus sativus*, it is barbarously called *Zaffranum sylvestre*, and *Saffranum sativum*. *Auerroes* calleth the seede of it *Semen de Papaga*. The second kind groweth on drye hills and vntilled and drye fields, it is called wilde fiede Saffron, in græke *Atrachylis*, and *Cnicus agria*, in latine *Colus rustica*, *Fusus agrestis*, and of the *Herbaristes* *Cnicus sylvestris*, *Cnicus campestris*, *Cartamus sylvestris*, *Eracantha*, and *Carduus amoris*: but the tame kinde is onely vsed in Physicke, to wit, the flowers and seede of it, which is also called *Semen papagalli*, or *Semen Pisticæ*. Note that *Cartamus* with *r*. doth signifie wilde Saffron, and *Cardamus* with *d*. Cresses seedes, *Nasturtium*: wherefoze great heede is to be giuen of it.

Wilde Thyme, *Serpillum*, *Cunilago*, and in græke *Herpyllum*,

Willow tree, in græke *Itea*, in latine *Salix*, of *Homerus*, *Fragipera*: There are five kinds of it; the first is called with vs the red Willow, of *Theophrastus*, *Salix nigra*, or *Punicea*, of *Pliny*, *Salix viminalis*, of *Columella*, *Salix Sabina*, and *Salix Amerina*: this is the very best kinde of all the rest. The second kinde is the white Willow, and of the *Herbarists* *Salix candida*. The third kinde is called of *Pliny*, *Salix vitellina*, of *Columella*, *Salix Græca*, with vs water Willow tree. The fourth kind is called of the *Herbaristes* *Salix platyphyllos*, *Salix latifolia*, and *Salix cinerea*. The fifth kinde is the least of all, called of *Theophrastus*, *Salix belix*, of *Pliny*, and *Columella*, *Salix Gallica*: of the *Simplicists* *Salix pumila*. These five kindes of Willows are sufficiently knowen to all men.

Wine, in græke *Oenos*, of *Cratinus*, *Tryx*. There are fower kindes, each according to the countrey, to wit, the least, smallest, middle, and strong wine: but we will speake but of two kinds at this present, to wit, of strong and of small wine: the strong wine is called *Vinum Oenodes*, *Vinum polyphorum*, and *Vinum multiferum*. The common wine is called *Vinum oligopobrum*, *Vinum pauciferum*, *Vinum aquosum*, and *Vinum Cibarium*, this is only spoken and meant of Rhenish wine.

Winter Cherries, in græke *Halicacabus*, *Phyalis*, in latine *Solanum vesicarium*, of *Pliny*, *Vesicaria*, of the *Herbaristes* *Solanum rubrum*, or *Solanum rubrum*, *Cerasum Indorum*,

Cerasum terra, in the Arabian tongue *Alkekengi*, or *Alkakengi*: they are cold and astringent in the seconde degree, but meane moyst.

Weather, *Castron*, *Vernex*.

Woad, in græke and latine *Isatis*, of *Pliny*, *Glastrum*, of the *Herbaristes* *Guadam*, and *Pastillum*, it is an hearbe well knowen to diuers. There are two kindes of it, one tame, and one wilde; the tame Woad groweth in France, and in During, with vs onely in gardens for physickall vses: it is called *Isatis satina*, *Egne*, and *Glastrum sativum*. The second is the wilde kinde, it is lesser than the former, it groweth here and there in the woods and fieldes; it is called *Isatis sylvestris*, *Isatis minor*, *Glastrum sylvestre*, and *Glastrum minus*. They are both drying and astringēt, but the wilde Woad is much stronger than the tame.

Woodcocke, in græke *Scolopax*, of *Hesychius*, *Varino*, *Nemesiano*, in latine of *Gaza*, *Gallinago*, of *Heradianus*, *Perdix sylvestris*, of other *Perdix rustica*, or *Rusticula*, of *Niphus* and *Volaterranus*, *Gallinella*, of the *Simplicists* *Rostrulula*, and *Gallinacea*.

Woodpecker, *Picus Martinus*, *Turbo*, in græke *Driocalaptes* of *Arist.* *Driocolaps* of *Hesych* it is a well knowen bird; it is mentioned otherwhiles in some dyets in this worke.

Woolblade, or *Longwort*, in græke *Phlomis* or *Phlomis*, of *Apuleius*, *Pycnitis*, in latine *Verbascum sceminalis*, *Lucumbra*, *Candela regis*, *Candelaria*, *Lanaria*, at the *Apothecaries* *Tapsus barbatus*. There are fower kindes of it, wherof the first is the common Woolblade, with the white woolly leaues, and yellow flowers; it is called *Verbascum albisolum*, and in græke *Leucophyllon*. The second kinde is like the former, but that the leaues are blacker and broader; it is called blacke Woolblade, in græke *Phlomis melanophyllus*, in latine *Verbascum nigrum*. The third kinde is the wilde Woolblade, it hath a long stalk with great leaues, much like to the great Sage, it hath yellow flowers, in græke *Phlomis agris*, in latine *Verbascum sylvestre*: of the *Herbaristes* *Verbascum salusolum*. The fourth kinde is most like to the first, but that the flowers are white, and it is called white Woolblade *Verbascum album*, and *Verbascum femina*.

Wolfebane, in græke and latine *Aconitum*. There are six kindes of it, the first hath round

The second Table.

round leaues not much unlike to the lesser Cucumbers, with pretie yellow floures, not unlike to the of *Doronicum*. The rootes are round, with many ioynts, the little rootes about it are very like a *Scorpion*, it is called in Greeke and Latine *Pardalianches* *Thelyphonum*, *Aconitum Thelyphonum*, *Theriophonum*, *Aconitum Theriophonum*, *Myoetionum*, *aconitum Myoetionum*, and *Scorpion*. The second kind of *Wolfsbane* hath leaues like to the Italian plaine tree, but somewhat deeper iagged: the roote is blacke, with many hairens about it. This plant is sufficiently knowne by the name *Wolfsbane*, it groweth on high hills, and is called in Greeke and Latine *Lycostionum*, *Aconitum Lycostionum*, *Cynoetionum*, and *aconitum Cynoetionum*. The Herbarists do call it *Aconitum Lycostionum luteum*: the Apothecaries *Luparia*. The third kinde is called of the Herbarists *Aconitum Lycostionum Caruleum*, there are also thre kindes of it, and it is common in all gardens. The fourth kinde of *Wolfsbane* is *Aconitum Lycostionum caeruleum magnum*: *Anicenna* calleth it *Napellus*, it is a very venemous herbe. The fift kinde hath yellow flowers, and is called yellow *Wolfsbane*, of the Herbarists *Aconitum Lycostionum luteum minus*. The first kinde groweth in darke and shadowy woods, the stalke is about one span and a halfe in height, and about the middelt of the same are foure darke greene leaues, standing opposite one against the other: it getteth a blacke berry, vnder which, many little leaues are placed each opposite to other. It is called of the Herbarists *Aconitum saluterum*, *Sigillum Christi*, *Cruz Christi*, *Sigillum Veneris*, and *Herba Paris*. It is a very hollesome herbe, and may be vsed inwardly very well against many diseases. Many learned men would haue it to be *Aconitum pardalianches*, but it is as like it as an apple is like an oyster. By *Wolfsbane* shalt thou vnderstande the yellow *Wolfsbane*.

Wormewood, in Latine and Greeke *Abinthium*, *Aloina*: there are thre kindes of it: The first, is the common *Wormewood* that groweth euery where, called *Barypicron*, *Barypicron*, and *Abinthium rusticum*. The second kinde is like to the former in leaues and floures, but it is somewhat lesse, and it groweth not aboue a span and a halfe in height: it is also bitter like the former, yet somewhat more pleasant to be vsed; it groweth on hilly places. This kinde will neuer be greater although it grow in fertill grounds. This is the same *Wormewood* which *Dioscorides* doth call *Abinthium ponticum*, *Mesues*, *Abinthium Romanum*, of the *Simplicists* *Abinthium montanum*, and *Plinie*, *Abinthium Italicum*. The third kinde is very like the great *Wormewood*, but it hath lesser leaues and stalks then the mountaine *Wormewood*, it groweth also somewhat higher: The leaues are white and soft. This groweth on sandy ditches. It is called *Romish Wormewood*, to auoyd all errors, and we leaue the name of mountaine *Wormewood* vnto the second kind. This *Wormewood* is called of *Galen* *Abinthium ponticum*. But *Mesues* and other authoers do take the second kinde to be the true *Abinthium ponticum*. Whensoeuer thou findest *Wormewood* by it selfe in any composition, then is the mountaine *Wormewood* to be taken and vsed; and if that cannot be had, then must you take the common *Wormewood* that groweth in the fields, and not that which groweth in gardens; for the garden *Wormewood* is not so strong, neither can it perforce that which the wilde *Wormewood* doth that groweth on dry grounds. *Wormewood* is hot in the first, and dry in the third degree.

Perrow, *Roseblade*, or *Pillwoyle*, in Greeke *Stratiotes*, *Chilophyllos*, *Supercilium veneris*, *Herba militaris*, and *Millefolium*. It is a common herb, it is drying and astringent. *Pelue*, *Taxus*, *Smilax*, *Milos*.

The end of the second Table.

This

The third Index.

This third and Latine Index, containeth all the Latine, Greeke, and other strange names of all Simples, especially of those which are mentioned in this Booke, as Rootes, Herbs, Floures, Fruits, Plants, Iuices, Gummes, Woods, Stones, Barks, Metals, Minerals, Earths, Deere, and what soeuer else is used in Physick: Also all mixed and compounded Medicines, as Electuaries, Confectures, Syrupes, Iuleps, Conserues, Cakes, Pils, Salues, Oyles, Portions, and distilled waters, with their names, not only as they are called by the auncient Greeke and Latine Physitions, but also as they are now named amongst the common Physitions and Apothecaries: In like sort also all inward and outward parts and members of the body, with all the diseases that euery one of them is subiect vnto.

A.

A Balzener Arabum, Sena, Dene.
Abies, a Firre trée.
Abies candida, a white Firre trée.
Abies nigra, a black Firre trée.
Abiga, Chamapitys, small Cipres, or wilde Cipres.
Abioten, Abiotos, Demlock.
Abortus, an untimely birth.
Abrotonum, Sothernwood.
Abrotonum femina, Sothernwood female.
Abcessus, an impostume, or botch.
Abinthium, Wormewood.
Abinthium bathypicron, common wormewood.
Abinthium Italicum, Italian wormewood.
Abinthium ponticum, Wormewood gentle, or Wormewood ponticke.
Abinthium montanum, Wormewood of the hill.
Abinthium Romanum, Wormewood Romane.
Abinthium rusticum, common or rurall Wormewood.
Abinthium thalassium, sea Wormewood.
Abinthites, Wormewood wine.
Abuolum Plinij, Pulegium, Pennyroyall.
Acacia, the iuice of a thorne of Egypt, in stee whereof we vse the iuice of Sloes.
Acalephe, Vrtica, Nettles.
Acalypha, a Nettle.
Acanthus, or *Acantha*, Branke vsine, or Beareberch.
Acanthus sylvestris, wilde branke vsine.
Acantha Germanica, Branke vsine.
Acatilis, Iuniperus minor, a little Juniper.
Acatara, Iuniperus maior, a great Juniper.
Acetosa, Sorrell.
Acetosa satina, Garden Sorrell.

Acetosa rotunda, round Sorrell.
Acetosa Gallica, French Sorrell.
Acetosa minor, the lesser Sorrell.
Acetosa ouina, thepes Sorrell.
Acetum, Wineger.
Acetum scillinum, or *Scilliticum*, Wineger of sea Onyons.
Acetum Rosaceum, Rose vineger.
Acetum Rutaceum, vineger of Rue.
Acinus, wilde or small Basill.
Achras, Pyraister, a wilde Pearetrée.
Aconitum, Wolfsbane.
Aconitum cynoclonum, or *Aconitum cynoclonum luteum*, yellow Wolfsbane.
Aconitum lycoclonum, or *Aconitum lycoclonum caruleum*, blew Wolfsbane.
Aconitum lycoclonum magnum caruleum, blew Wolfsbane the great.
Aconitum lycoclonum luteum minus, the lesser yellow Wolfsbane.
Aconitum Myoclonum, a certayne kinde of Wolfsbane.
Aconitum Pardalianches, Lybards bane.
Aconitum salutarium Herbariorum, one berry.
Aconitum Thelyphonum, a kinde of Wolfsbane.
Aconitum Theriophonum, another kinde of Wolfsbane.
Acorum or *Acorus*, Calmus, the great Galingall.
Acle, Sambucus, Elder.
Acylos Aristotelis, Glans quercina, an Acorne.
Adamas, a Diamond.
Adiantum, Venus haire, or well ferne.
Adiantum album, the white Venus haire.
Adiantum Apuleij, Trichomanes Dioscoridis.
Adiantum Aureum Herbariorum.
Adiantum Gallicum, French Venus haire.

Adiantum,

The third Index.

Adiantum nigrum, black Venus haire.
Adipos, *Glycyrrhiza*, Licorice.
Erizusa, a Jasper stone like the ayze.
Eris flos, *Viride aris*, Tierdegreace.
Egoceros, *Fenum gracum*, fenegræke.
Egyne, *Caprifolium*.
Egyos, *Cicuta*, Hemlocke.
Eromeli, *Manna*, a manner of dew congealed on trées and plants.
Eruco, *viride aris*, Tierdegreace.
Es vstum, burnt Copper.
Affectus animi, affections, motions, or passions of the minde.
Affodillus officinarum, Daffodill.
Agallochum, *Lignum Aloes*, a swæte wood so named.
Agaricum, or *Agaricus*, a Mushyung growing on trées.
Agasilus, frutex qui *Hammoniacum* *Thymiana* gignit, the herbe whereof *Hammoniacum* is made.
Ageomoron, *Cicuta*, Hemlock.
Aglaophoris Apuleij, *Peonia*, is named of *Elia-nus* *Aglaophoris terrestris*, Diony.
Agnus vitæ, *Agnus castus*, Chaste trée.
Agnus castus officinarum, the same.
Agonius, *Vitex*, *Agnus castus*, the same.
Agræsta officinarum, Meriuce.
Agriælea, *Olea sylvestris*, wilde Oliue trée.
Agrimonia officinarum, *Eupatorium Græcorum*, *Egrimony*, or *Agrimony*.
Agrimonia sylvestris *Herbariorum*, *Potentilla*, wilde *Agrimony*.
Agriocinara, *Cinara sylvestris*, wild Hartichock.
Agriococcymela, *Prunus sylvestria*, Sloes.
Agriococcymela, *Prunus sylvestris*, Slo trée, or Slo bush.
Agrioriganos, *Origanum sylvestre*, wild D;gane.
Agrostis, gramen, Grasse.
Agleuces, *Sempermustum*, Wyne alwayes mustie.
Arbales, Sengrene or Houfelleke.
Azoon agrion, *Sedum sylvestre*, wild Sengrene.
Azoon, *Semperuiuu*, Sengrene or Houfellek.
Azoon minus, *Semperuiuum minus*, the lesser Sengrene, or Wyckmadame.
Alabandicus lapis, a red stone mixt with blew.
Ala, *Axilla*, the arme pit.
Alarmel Arabum, wilde Rue.
Alarum fector, *Tragonia*, stinking of the armes pits.
Alabastrum Plinij, a Parble stone.
Albucum, *asphodelus*, Daffodill.
Album coctum officinarum or *Chirurgorum*, a plaister of Ceruse, or white Leade.

Album gracum officinarum, *Stercus caninum* album, a white dogs turd.
Alcanna Arabum, *Ligustrum*, Pziuet, or Pzimpzint.
Alkakengi Arabum, *Alkakengie*, or winter Cherrie.
Alchenna Arabum, *Cypus Pziuet*.
Alcibiadium, wilde Langdebæfe, or oretong, or wild Buglosse.
Alcibiadium Egineta, *Echium*, wilde Buglosse the lesser.
Alchimilla, Ladies mantle.
Alcibiades, *Stæchas*, French Lauender.
Alcocalus, *Scolymus*, a Hartichock.
Alcyonium primum Dioscoridis, *Balla marina* officinarum, the some of the sea indurate, or a Sea ball.
Alcyonium quintum Dioscor. *Spuma marina* officinarum, the some of the sea.
Alexander, or *Alexandrum officinarum*, Parsely of Alexandria.
Alexipharmacum unguentum, a medicine against poyson.
Alfescera Arabum, *Vitis alba*, white B;pyony.
Alfescresin, *Vitis nigra*, black B;pyony.
Algalia, *Zibetum*, Siuet.
Alga palustris, Keites, or a sea wårde so named.
Alharmel, wilde Rue.
Alibium, *Aster Atticus*, an herbe so called; Codwozt.
Alica, or *Hulica*, a meate made of Wheate.
Alipta muscata.
Albandal Arabum, *Colocynthis*, Coloquinte.
Alkanna Arabum, *Ligustrum*, Pziuet.
Alkekengi, winter Cherries.
Allium, Garlike.
Allium Alpinum, *Victoralis*.
Allium caninum, Dogs garlike.
Allium reticulatum, *Allium Alpinum*.
Allium sylvestre, wilde garliche.
Alleluya officinarum, wood Sorrell.
Allus Arabum, *Dracontium*, Dragonwozt, or Dragons.
Aloe, *sempernium marinum*, a very bitter herb.
Aloe caballina, the grosser kinde of Aloes.
Aloëpatica, & *Aloëpaticum officinarum*, the same.
Aloë Gallica, Centian.
Aloë lignum, *Lignum aloës*, a swæte and precious wood.
Aloina, *Abstinibium*, Mo;melwood.
Alopecia, *Capillorum defluuium*, a disease, causing the haire of the head or beard to fall off by the rootes.
Alfescera Mauritanoru, *Vitis alba*, white B;pyony.
 Alfce-

The third Index.

Alsecebram, oꝛ *Alsecebram maius Arabum*, *Pityu-
sa*, *Esula*, **Spurge**.
Alsecebram minus Arabum, *Esula minor officinarū*.
Alfine, *pauerina*, **Chickwæde**.
Altaraxacon officinarum, *Aphaca Theophrasti*,
of some a kinde of **Eare**, of others a kinde
of **Cicorie**.
Althæa, *Maluanifcus*, **Hollyhocke**.
Altercum, **Penbane**.
Alumen, **Allome**.
Alumen fecis, **Dregs of wyne**, oꝛ **wyne lée**.
Alumen iamentum officinarum, *Alumen capillare*.
Alumen capillare, the same.
Alumen liquidum.
Alumen liparium.
Alumen plumosum officinarum, *Alumen rubeum*.
Alus Gallicus Scribonij, *Symphytum*.
Alypias Actuarij, *Turpetum album*.
Alypus Apuleij, *Tithymalus Dioscori*, *Esula*.
Alypum, *Turpetum album Actuarij*.
Amara Dulcis.
Amarantibus aureus, gold flower.
Amarātus Galeni, **Spaulden wort**, oꝛ **Baltasar**.
Amarantibus Luteus, the same.
Amarantibus Veneris, flower gentle, of some
ragwort.
Amaracus Dioscoridis, **Pariozane**.
Amaracus Galeni, **Feuerfew**.
Amarena Cerasa, black **Cherries**.
Amarena passa, dyed **Cherries**.
Amarella, *Parthenium adulterinum*, **Feuerfew**.
Amaurosis, *Cicutia*, **Hemlock**.
Amber, *sive Ambarum*, **Amber**.
Ambarum, **Amber**.
Ambar, the same.
Ambra grisea officinarum, **Ambergræse**.
Ameos officinarum, *Ammi Amy*.
Amethystus, a gemme, oꝛ pꝛetious stone, called
an **Amethyst**.
Amianton Apuleij, *Trichomanes*, **Paydenhaire**.
Amiantus, *Linum saxatile*, **Plume Allom**.
Amictomianum, *vitex*, *Agnus castus*, **chaste tre**.
Ammi, *sive Ammium*, **Amy**, the herb and seede.
Ammoniacum, oꝛ *Hammoniacum*, is called of
the Apothecaries *Armoniacum*. It is the
inice oꝛ gum of a tre growing in *Africa*
called *Agassilis*. Of this gum there are two
kinds, the one faire and cleane, very like
Frankincense: this sort of the auncient
Physitions hath bene used foꝛ a swæte sa-
nour oꝛ smell, it is named of *Etius*, of *Paulus*
Egineta, & the other *Græke* writers,
Ammoniacum Thymiana, oꝛ *Hammoniacum*
Thymiana, and this is the best foꝛ physick.
Plinius calleth it *Thrauston*, and *Thrausma*.

The other kind is foule and uncleane, such
is very common in the Apothecaries shops,
and is called of *Plinius* *Apyrama*.

Amnion, *Bryon*, **Wosse**.

Amnion Pliny, *Cinnabaris fossilis*, a soft red stone
in mynes called **Cinoper**.

Amomum, a strange shꝛub as yet vnknowne,
although the vnskilfull Physitions vse it
not, foꝛ they in stead of this haue in their
common shops a dead and wilde **Wardley**
seede (when indæde the right *Amomum*
hath alwayes bin a pleasant and swæte
smelling shꝛub accounted of the auncient
Physitions) which is as like the right *A-
momum* as an apple is like an oyster. Let
euery one therefore take heede of this *A-
momum*, also of all such medicines which are
mired with it. Some take the Rose of *Ierico*
foꝛ the right *Amomum*, which the *Verba-*
ristis call *Rosa Hierichuntea*, and *Rosa Diue*
Maria, but they are deceived. *Galen* sayth,
that *Amomum* and *Calmus* in vertue are
very like, and therefore seeing that we haue
not the right *Amomum*, we may vse *Calmus*
very well in his place.

Amorgine, *Perdicium*, **Wellitoye** of the wall.

Ampar, *Ambarum*, **Amber**.

Ampelos, *vitis*, the **Vine**.

Ampelos agria, *vitis syluestris*, a wilde **Vine**.

Ampelos lence, *vitis alba*, white **Bypony**.

Ampelos melena, *vitis nigra*, black **Bypony**.

Ampeloprasum, *Porrum vineale*, wilde **Leke**.

Amydam officinarum, **Starch**.

Amygdalum, an **Almon**.

Amygdalus, the **Almon tre**.

Amygdala amara, bitter **Almons**.

Amygdalogala, *Amygdalinum lac*, **Almon milke**.

Amygdaloides, **Spurge**.

Amylum, **Starch**.

Anacardium, *sive Anacardus*, a tre (growing in
India, and on the fire mountaines of *Sicily*)
so named.

Anabasis, **Wosse tayle**.

Anagallis, *Corchorus Theophrasti*, *Sapana*, *Ma-
cia*, *Nieteris*, *Zelaurus*, **Chickwæde**.
There are thre sundꝛy kindes of **Chick-
wæde**, whose leaues are all alike, but differ
in flower: the one hath prettie little purple
floures, and is called in *Græke* *Anagallis*
phœnice, *Anagallis punicea*, *Anagallis rubea*,
Anagallis purpurea: *Paulus Egineta* calleth
it *Corallium*, oꝛ *Corallia*, this is **Chickwæde**
with the red floure. The other is called *A-
nagallis carulea*, *Anagallis femina*, that is,
Chickwæde with the blew floure. The
thirde

The third Index.

third hath yellow flowers: this groweth not about vs except it be set oꝛ sowne. It is found in the upper Burgundy. in a field betwene Dolen and Besanson. This is called *Anagallis lutea*, Chickwæde with the yellow flower. They are all hot and dry, and may be used in woundes and fractures.

Anagallis mas, Chickwæde with the red flower, oꝛ Chickwæde male.

Anagallis femina, Chickwæde with the blew flower, oꝛ Chickwæde female.

Anagallis pœnicea, Chickwæde with the red flower.

Anagallis punicea, *Purpurea*, the same.

Anagallis lutea, yellow Chickwæde.

Anastorium Theophrasti, wilde flage.

Anangelos, *Ruscus*, knæhull, knæhulme, petigre.

Anastrophe, *Inversio ventriculi*, an inuersion of the stomacke.

Anasarca, *Hyposarca*, the dropsie.

Anatamenon, Pellitory of the wall.

Anaxyris, *Oxalis*, Sozrell.

Anaferefis, Comfrey.

Anchomanes Apuleij, *Dracōtinum*, Dragonwort, oꝛ Dragons.

Androgynos Apuleij, *Nymphaa*, a water Lilly, oꝛ a water Rose.

Andrachne, *Portulaca*, Purslaine.

Anesum, *Anisum*, Annise.

Anetum, Dill.

Anetum caninum, *Cotula fetida*, an herbe like Cammomill.

Anetum sylvestre, wilde Dill.

Anetum torulosum, the same.

Anetum vrsinum, the same.

Angelica, *Angelica*, oꝛ Imperiall.

Angina, *Inflammatio faucium*, a swelling in the throate. The Angine.

Anchusa, wilde Buglos, oꝛ Wychanet.

Animi accidentia, troubles of the minde.

Anisum, Anise.

Anonium, a dead nettle.

Anonium album, the white dead nettle, oꝛ Arckangell.

Anorexia, a disease of the stomack.

Arnum, Plantaine.

Arnoglossa, *Arnoglossus*, a kinde of Plantaine.

Arnachylis, Plantaine.

Anthemis, *Chamamelum*, Cammomill.

Anthericos, the flowers and stalks of Paragon.

Anthera, the yellow seede that is within the Roses.

Anthracites, a gem, oꝛ precious stone.

Anthrax, *Carbunculus*, a Cole.

Anthrax, *Amethystizon*, *Carbunculus lapis*, a precious stone, a Carbuncle.

Anthora, is taken of some foꝛ the right Zeduar roote, but it is not so.

Antulla, hath no english name, it is called in Greeke *Anarbo*, in high Dutch, Zuwan.

Antidotus, oꝛ *Antidotum*, is *Alexipharmacum*, a medicine against payson: but there are other medicines so likewise named.

Antidotus Nutridatica, *Githidate*, a medicine like Treacle against payson.

Antimelon, *Mandragora*, Pandage.

Antimonium officinarum, a kinde of minerall.

Antiphthora, oꝛ *Antitora*, *Napellus sulmiferus*, Honks hode.

Anthophyllus officinarum, refuse of Cloues.

Antora, Honks hode.

Anthropomorphos, Pandage.

Anazarot, sine *Anazarus Arabum*, *Sarcocolla*, a gum of a tree in Persia like the powder of Incense.

Apepsia, bad digesture of the stomack.

Aparine, *Aspergula*, Cluvers, oꝛ Gosegras.

Aphaca Theophrasti, a kinde of Cichorie.

Aphaca Dioscoridis, *vicia sylvestria*, wilde tares.

Aphros, *cicuta*, Hemlock.

Aphyllantes, *Tussilago*, Fole scote, Colts scote, oꝛ Horse hofe.

Apiastrum, *Melissophyllon*, Balme.

Apiastellum Apuleij, *Bryonia*, Wypony, oꝛ the wilde Vine.

Apium, Smalage.

Apium Alexandrinum, Stone Parsly.

Apium Equinum, Louage.

Apium grande, called also *Smyrnum*.

Apium palustre, *Paludapium*, Smalage.

Apium risus, water Crowfoote.

Apium saxatile, the greater Pimpernell.

Apiophyllon, *Pyrola*, wilde Wates.

Apoletum, *Pulegium*, Pennyroyall.

Apolegnusa, *Cicuta*, Hemlock.

Apolinaris, Henbane.

Apoplecticus, one that hath the Palsye.

Apopleumenum, Hammony.

Apoplexia, the Palsye.

Apostema, *Abcessus*, an impostume oꝛ byle.

Appetitus syncopalis, appetite with a sowning.

Appetitus Caninus, an immoderate hunger, oꝛ dogs hunger.

Apronia Plinij, *Vitis nigra*, black Wypony.

Apseudes, *Cicuta*, Hemlock.

Apyseni, Cozrans.

The third Index.

Apyritus, *Carbunculus*, a Carbuncle.
Aqua erosa, or *Aqua area*, water of Copper,
 or that hath the vertues of Copper.
Aqua extinctionis Argenti, water in which
 siluer hath bin quenched.
Aqua extinctionis Auri candentis, water in the
 which gold hath bin quenched.
Aqua casei, Chesse-whay.
Aqua extinctionis Chalybis, water in which
 Steele hath bin quenched.
Aqua Chalybata, Stealed water.
Aqua decoctionis Cinamomi, sodden Cinamome
 water.
Aqua florum omnium officinarum, *Aqua stilla-*
tiua stercoris vaccini, the water of Cow-
 dung.
Aqua decoctionis Glycyrrhizæ, the decoction of
 Licorise.
Aqua lactis, Milke-whay.
Aqua marina, Sea-water.
Aqua mulsa, Meade, or Hony-water.
Aqua pluvia, or *Aqua pluuialis*, Rayne-wa-
 ter.
Aqua fortis, Goldsmiths water.
Aqua salsa, Salt water.
Aqua saccharata, *Aqua decoctionis sacchari*, Su-
 gared water, or the decoction of Sugar.
Aqua extinctionis silicium candentium, water
 in the which hot Flint stones haue bene
 quenched.
Aqua sulphurea, Wymstone water, or that
 hath the vertues of Wymstone in it.
Aqua vitæ, in this booke by *Aqua vitæ*, are
 meant the compounded waters, or *Aqua*
vitæ composite.
Aqua vitis, *Lachryma vitis*, the water that
 droppeth out of Vines being cut.
Aquilegia, a Columbine.
Aquilina, the same.
Arantium, an Orange.
Arbor casta, *Agnus castus*, Chasse trée.
Arbor Iouis, *Quercus*, Oke.
Arbor sapiens, *Morus*, the Mulberry trée.
Arceuthos, *Iuniperus*, Juniper.
Arceuthis.
Arceuthides, *Bacca Iuniperi*, Juniper berries.
Arceuthites, *Iuniperinum vinum*, Juniper wine.
Archangelica, or *Archangelica lutea*, Archang-
 gell with the yellow flower.
Archangelica alba, *Lamium album*, white Arch-
 angell.
Archezoitis, *vitis alba*, Wypony.
Artion, or *Artium*, the great Burre.
Arctotium, seu *Auricula vrsi Herbariorum*,
 Sanicle the great.

Area, *Alopecia*, the fallings off of the haire by
 the rootes.
Argentina Herbariorum, wilde Tansye.
Argentum aqueum, Quicksilver.
Argentum vinum, Quicksilver.
Argilla, Clay.
Argyritis, *Lythargyrum*, Lytharge.
Aristoltea, *Bisnialua*.
Aristolochia longa, long Hartwozt, or Birt-
 wozt.
Aristolochia rotunda, round Hartwozt.
Aristolochia officinarum, Hartwozt.
Armoniacum officinarum, Armoniack.
Arnica Galeni, *Ruta sylvestris*, wilde Rue.
Armoracia, *Raphanus sylvestris*, wilde or horse-
 radish.
Armel Auicenne, *Ruta sylvestris*, wilde Rue.
Arnabo Pauli Egineta, *Zurumbetum*, Seduar.
Aromaticum gariophyllatum, a confectiō of
 Cloues so termed.
Aromaticum Rosatum, a confectiō of Roses.
Aromatites, an aromaticall or spiced wyne.
Aron, *Cuccopit*, priests pintle, or wake robin.
Aronia Athenai, Dragons.
Arqueus morbus, the yellow Jaundise.
Arsenicum, Arsenick, or Katsbane.
Arectorium.
Arthenicum, Katsbaine.
Artecocha, Artichock.
Artemisia, Mugwozt.
Arteria, arterye, or vaine.
Arteria aspera, the winde pipe.
Arthanita, *Cyclaminus*, *Panis porcinus*, Solwes
 bread, or Swines bread.
Arthetica officinarum, *Arthritica*, Cowslips.
Arthrica alpina Herbariorum, Sanicle the great.
Arthritis, *Morbus articularis*, the gout.
Articoca, Artichock.
Articocalus, the same.
Arum, Curcopot.
Arum palustre, the same.
Arundo sagittaria, a great Reede to make
 darts.
Asa dulcis, Benzoin.
Asa fetida, a stinking gum.
Asara baccara, *Officinarum*, *Asarum*, *Asara-*
bacca.
Asbestos, loke Conia.
Ascalis, *Palmes*, the branch of a Vine.
Asclepias, *Vincetoxicum*, Swallow wozt.
Ascites Barbarorum, *Ascites*, that kinde of
 droppe that maketh the legs and belly swell
 onely.
Asparagus, Sparage.
Asparagus alutis, common Sparage.

Asparagum

The third Index.

Asparagus Horelaccus, *Asparagus altilis*.
Asparagus regius, common Sparage.
Asparagus petraus, wilde Sparage.
Asparagus myacanthinus, wilde Sparage.
Asparagus palustris Galeni, wilde Sparage.
Asparagus sylvestris, the same.
Asparagia, Corrudago, wilde Sparage.
Aspera arteria, *Canna pulmonis*, the winde pipe.
Astergula, *Aparine*, *Cluicrs*, o2 *Cosegras*.
Astergula, *Asperula*, the same.
Aspalium.
Aspalus, siue *Asphaltum*.
Aphodelus, *Daffodill*.
Aspis, a little Serpent.
Asplenis, *Asplenium*, o2 *Asplenium*, *Scaferlane*, o2 *Fingerferne*.
Asplenium sylvestre *Herbariorum*, the same.
Aphella, *Hippuris*, *Woxletayle*.
Asa dulcis officinarum, *Benzoine*.
Asa fetida officinarum.
Asilaphydes, *Rapsons*.
Asilaphis agria, an herb called *Staphis Agria*.
Aster atticus, an herbe also called *Inguinalis*, o2 *Codwort*.
Aster Augustini, a Ruby.
Asterion, *Cannabis*, *Hempe*.
Astrios, *Ballasius*, a Ruby.
Asterium Eubonium, *Share*, *Starre*, o2 *Codwort*.
Astericus, *Inguinalis*, the same.
Asthma, a stopping of the breath with whee-ling.
Attilis, viscum, *Birdlyme*.
Astrantia officinarum, *Imperatoria*, *Angelica*.
Astrantia nigra, *Sanicle*.
Astrios, *Ballasius*, a Ruby.
Astrutium officinarum, *Angelica*.
Atylis, headed Lettice.
Aza dulcis, *Benzoine*.
Aza fetida officinarum, a stinking gum.
Azara baccara officinarum, *Asarabacke*.
Athanasia, *Tanacetum*, *Tansye*.
Atosium, *Lycobis sylvestris*, wilde *Saffron*.
Auretylis hirsuta, *Carduus benedictus*.
Auramentum Coriariorum, *Coperas*.
Auramentum Librarium, *Juke*.
Auraphaxis, *Atriplex*, *Drage*, o2 *Drache*.
Atriplex sylvestris, the wilde *Drage*.
Atriplex, siue *Atriplexum*, *Drage*.
Atrophia, *Nutrimenti cessatio*, a *Consumption*.
Attonitus, *astonished*.
Anantia Herbariorum, herbe *Quance*, o2 herbe *Blessed*.
Aubium, *Chelidonium maius*, *Celandine* the

greater, o2 *Swallowes herbe*.
Auena, *Dates*.
Auellana, *hasell Nut*.
Aurantium, an *Orange*.
Aurea Alexandrina, a confection so called.
Aureola Herbariorum, *Amaranthus luteus*, *Waudenwort*, o2 *Baltasar*.
Aureum malum, an *Orange*.
Auricula muris, the herbe *House-eare*.
Auricula muris maior, *Houseare* the great.
Auricula muris minor, *Flos angelicus*, the lesser *Houseare*.
Auricula muris carulea, blew *Houseare*.
Auricula muris, *Dioscoridis Myosotis*, *House-eare*.
Auricula ursti, *Sanicle* the great.
Aurigo, the yellow *Jaundise*.
Auripigmentum, *Arsenicum luteum*, *Wpment*.
Axilla, *Ala*, the arme pit.

B.

B *Auras Iosephi Historici*, *Peonia*, *Wpony*.
Bacca, and *Bacca conchea Virgily*, a *Pearle*.
Bacca Lauri, a *Bay berry*.
Balanus, *Glans quercina*, an *Akozne*.
Balanus, *Suppositorium officinarum*, a *Suppositoary*.
Balanus Egyptia, *Mirobalanus*, it is the fruite of a tre, and is called *Ben*.
Balanus myrsica, *Glans vnguentaria*, the fruite of a tre much like *Myrice*.
Balaustium, the flower of a *Pomegranate*.
Ballagius, o2 *Ballasius*, a Ruby.
Balla marina, *Alcyonij primum genus*, a sea ball.
Ballenea gemma, *Carburculus candidus*, a Ruby.
Ballis, *Bellis*, *Daisies*.
Balneum Sulphureum, a bath that hath the vertues of *Wimstone*.
Balsamita, *Felina Herbariorum*, mountayne *Pints*.
Balsamum Indaicum, *Opobalsamum*, *Balme naturall*.
Barba Herculis Apuleij, *Trichomanes*, *Warden haire*.
Barba Iouis semperuiuum, *Wengrane*.
Bardana, the great *Burre*.
Baratrum, *Sabina*, *Sauine*.
Batypicron, *Bathypicron*, common *Wormewood*.
Baryton, *Sabina*, *Sauine*.
Basilica dextra, the *Lyner vaine*.

The third Index.

Basilica sinistra, the vaine of the Spilt, oꝝ
Spleene.

Basilica herba, *Basilicum*, Basil.

Basilicum minus, the lesser Basil.

Basilicum crispum, a kinde of Basil.

Basilicum aquaticum, water Basil.

Bathypicron, *Absinthium rusticum*, Tilo; meadow.

Batitura aris, refuse of Basse.

Batanuta, *Vitis nigra*, black Bionye.

Batrachis, *Ranunculus*, Crowfoote.

Batrachium, Crowfoote.

Batus, *Rubus*, Bramble, Blackberry, oꝝ Byper
bulb.

Batus Idem, *Rubus Idem*, Framboyse, Raspis,
oꝝ Hindberry.

Bauca, *Passinaca sylvestris*, wilde Parsenep.

Bechica officinarum, a medicine for the cough.

Bechion, *Bechium*, Folefoote, oꝝ Hozsehoſe.

Bedegar, oꝝ *Bedeguar*, the white byper.

Beletzici, *Bellirici*, one kind of Piobalans.

Bellerici, *Mirobalani bellerici*, the same.

Bellis, *Ballis*, a Daiſye.

Bellis maior, the great Daiſye.

Bellium, a Daiſye.

Bellios flor, the same.

Bellirici, one kind of Piobalans.

Benedicta Laxativa, a purging Eleduary.

Beniouinum, Benſoine.

Benzoinum, oꝝ *Benzuinum*, the same.

Berberis, oꝝ *Berberus*, Berberry tre.

Berberus, the same.

Bericocia, *Malapracocia*, Abzecock tre.

Beryllus, a pretious ſtone called Beryll.

Besusa, *Ruta montana*.

Beta, Bætes.

Beta sicula, white Bætes.

Beta sativa, *Blitum*, wilde fine Wyrage, oꝝ
Blite.

Beta insipida, *Blitum*, Blites.

Beta nigra, black Bætes.

Betarubra, red Bætes.

Beta maluacea, *Spinacea*, Spinage.

Betifalca, *Bryonia nigra*, black Bypoye.

Betonica, Betonye.

Betonica alba officinarum, Cotwſlips.

Betonica alba vera, white Betony.

Betonica altitilis, Betony.

Betonica Pauli, *Veronica*, Paules Betony.

Betula, Birch tre.

Betularia, *Tormentilla*, Tormentill.

Bdella, *Hirudo*, a Hozſelach.

Bdellion, oꝝ *Bdellum*, the name of a gum.

Baarium, *Dracontium*, Dragons.

Bibinella, *Pimpinella*, Pimpernell. *Theodorus*

Gaza taketh *Bibinella* for a kinde of wool

blade, which is called *Thryallis* of *Dioſcori-*
des and *Theophrast*.

Bicion, *Vicia*, Vetches.

Bilis, Gall.

Bislingua, *Vularia*, Hoſe tong.

Bismalna, *Althea*, marſh Mallow.

Biſorta.

Bitumen, a kinde of naturall lyme oꝝ clay.

Bitumen Indaicum, Jewes lyme.

Bitumen liquidum, *Naphta*, a kinde of clay.

Blacca byzantia, oꝝ *Blacca byzantia*, oꝝ *Blatta*
byzantia officinarum, in Greeke *Onyx*: it
is called of *Actuarius*, and *Nicolaus Mi-*
repsus, and the other new Grecians *Blat-*
tion, *Conchyla Indica*, *Vegula odorata*, *Va-*
guis Aromaticus, *Oſtrum Indicum*, and
Conchylis Indici operculum, a Puſſe ſhell of
India. This is brought hither out of In-
dia, as there they are taken up out of the
poles, in the which the ſweete ſmelling
leaves *Malabathra* growe. Of theſe, there
be two ſorts, the beſt are white and fat,
theſe are found in the red ſea. The other
are black, and are brought from *Babylon*.
They are both well ſmelling, and while
they be burning, they ſcent as ſtrong as
the *Scuercod*.

Blechon, *Pulegium*, Penniropall.

Blechon, *Filix*, Fern.

Bletus Nicandri, *Filix*, Fern.

Bletum, *Blitum*, Blites.

Blitum album, white Blites.

Blitum Indicum, Blites of India.

Blitum rubrum, red Blites.

Blitum ſylveſtre, wilde Blites.

Blitum Vngaricum, Blites of Hungary.

Boletus, oꝝ *Boletus cerui*, a Puſh;um that may
be eaten.

Boletus cerui, the same.

Bolus Armenus, Bole Armenack.

Bombasum, ſue *Bombax officinarum*, Cotton.

Bombax, *Bombasum*, the same.

Bonifacia Herbariorum, *Vularia*, Hoſe
tong.

Borrage, Bozrage.

Borax officinarum, Bozrace.

Borax officinarum, *Chryſocolla factitia*, the same.

Bosciſalvia, *Salvia ſylveſtris*, wilde Sage.

Botor Maria Arabum, *Cyclaminus*, Sol-
bread.

Brabela, *Pruna Damascena*, Damask Prunes,
Dammofens.

Brabyla Theocriti, the same.

Bracha cuculi Herbariorum, *arthritica*, Cotwſlips.

Bradypepsia, a long digeſture.

Brancha

The third Index.

Brancha vrsina officinarum, Blanke vrsine.
Brancha vrsina Italica, Italian Blanke vrsine.
Brassica, Cabbage o2 Colewort.
Brassica alba, white Cabbage.
Brassica apiaria, a wrinkled Cabbage.
Brassica crispata maior, the great wrinkled Cabbage.
Brassica camana, the broad red Cabbage.
Brassica cypria, flowered Coleworts.
Brassica pratensis, *Acanthus siliestris*, wilde
 Bearebitch, o2 Blanke vrsine.
Brassica marina, Sea coale.
Brassica rubra, a red Cabbage.
Brassica Sabaudica, Sauoy Coleworts.
Brassica sabellica, crisped Coleworts.
Brassica tritiana, headed Coleworts.
Brathy, o2 Brathys, Sauine.
Britannica, Scurvygras.
Bursa Galeni, Secale, Rye.
Prunus, Avena, Dates.
Trucus, Eruca, Rocket.
Bruscus officinarum, *Ruscus*, Knæholme.
Bruscandula Herbariorum, *Lupulus*, Hoppe.
Bryaria, *Tamarix*, the Tamariske tree.
Bryon, *Lupulus*, Hoppe.
Bryon, *Muscus*, Mosse.
Bryonia, Bryony.
Bryonia alba, white Bryony.
Bryonia melena, blacke Bryony.
Bryonia leuce, *Puls* alba, white Bryony.
Bubonium, *Aster alticus*, Codwort.
Bubonium caruleum, blew Codwort.
Bubonium luteum, yellow Codwort.
Bubonium Massilioticum, Codwort of Palestine.
Bucerus, *Foenum graecum*, Fenegreke.
Bucheden Arabum, *Palma Christi*.
Buchormarien Arabum, *Cyclaminus*, *Panis porcinus*, Solwe bread.
Bufoaria, *Parthenium*, Maiden weede.
Buglossa, *Buglossum*, Buglosse.
Buglossa domestica, *Mesues*, Burrage.
Buglossa minor, the lesser Buglosse.
Buglossa maior officinarum, the great Buglosse.
Buglossa officinarum, Buglosse.
Buglossa siliestris, wild Buglosse.
Buglossa sylvatica Herbariorum, the same.
Buglossum, *buglossa*, Buglosse.
Buglossum Dioscoridis, Buglosse.
Buglossum Gallicum, french Buglosse.
Buglossum Hispanicum, spanish Buglosse.
Buglossum italicum, Italian o2 great Buglosse.
Buglossa semperuiuens, same Buglosse.
Buglossa siliestre spinosum, *Herbariorum Echium*, wild Buglosse.

Buglossum viperinum, *Herbariorum Echium*, wilde Buglosse.
Buglossum rubrum, *Herbariorum Anchusa*, red Buglosse.
Buglossites, *Vinum buglossatum*, wine made of Buglosse.
Bulbus agrestis, our Ladies Conslips.
Bulmus, *Bulmos*, Colwunger, o2 an vniuersall appetite of meate.
Bulimia, *bulmus*, an vnnaturall hunger.
Bunias, *Napus*, Rape, o2 pauet.
Bulapathum, *Lapathum palustre*, Docke.
Buris, a kinde of soze proceeding from Melancholie.
Bursa pastoris, Shepheards purse.
Butemariam, o2 *Buthomarien Arabum*, *Cyclaminus*, Solwe bread.
Butyrum, Butter.
Buxus, Bore.
Buzeicon Arabum, *Palma Christi*.
Byne, *Malum*, Pault.

C.

C *Acochymia*, a corruption of al the humors in the body.
Cacoete, *ulcus malignum*, an vlcration hard to be cured, a roding vlcer.
Calus cinara, Hartichocke.
Cadmia, Tuttie.
Cadmia, *Botrytis*, Tuttie.
Cadmia fossilis, *Lapis calaminaris*.
Cadmia natua, a kind of Minerall.
Cadmia officinarum, *Cadmia ocina*, Tuttie.
Caducus morbus, the falling sickness.
Calamandrina, Germander.
Calamentum, Minte.
Calamintha agrestis, wilde Minte.
Calamintha arvensis, the same.
Calamintha felina, *Cattaria*, Cats minte.
Calamintha montana, wild mountaine Mints.
Calamites, *Rana viridis*, a græne Frog.
Calamus aromaticus Calmus, a swete smelling Reede, which is brought out of India: We vse the common *Calamus* roote in Reede of it.
Calamus odoratus, o2 *Calamus vnguentarius*, the same.
Calcarea, *Consolida regalis*, Larkes spur.
Calcitrepola, Star thistle the lesser.
Calcedonius, a pprecious stone.
Calcifraga, *Saxifraga*, Saxifrage.
Calcifraga Scribonij Largi, *Asplenium*, Fearn.
Calendula, *Caltha*, Parigolde.
Calendula arvensis, wild Parigolde.

The third Index.

- Calendula multiplex*, double Parigold.
Calendula sylvestris, wild Parigold.
Calenum, see *Carenum*.
Calliphylus Hippocratis, Trichomanes, Maiden
 hayze.
Callitrichum, *Adiantum*, the same.
Caltha of Virgil, Columell, and Pliny, *Calendula*,
 Parigold.
Caltha poetica, *Calendula*, Parigolde.
Caltha Dioscoridis, *Chrysanthemum*, Golden
 knappe.
Caltha Plinij, See *Caltha Virgilij*.
Calycanthemum, *Caprifolium*, Woodbinde.
Calyx Plinij, *Cochlea domus*, a Snail's shell.
Calx conia, Lyme.
Calx vina, Quicke Lyme.
Calomelopodium, *Prasium*, Horehound.
Camomilla officinarum, Cammomill.
Campe, *Eruca*, Rocket.
Campanella, *Volubilis*, *Campanula*, the flower cal-
 led Canterbury bells.
Campanula marina, *Soldanella*, sea folefoote.
Cammarus, *Gammarus*, a Crab.
Camphora, *Caphura*, Camfere.
Cannabis, Hemp.
Cancer, a Crab.
Cancer carcinoma, the Canker.
Cancer marinus, a sea Crab.
Candela regis, *Verbascum*, Wallblade, or Tozth
 herbe, or Longwozt.
Candelaria, the same.
Canella, *Cinamomum*, Cinnamon.
Canineca, *Colchicum*, *Herniaria*.
Canina fames, *Cynorexia*, unnaturall hunger.
Canirubus Dioscoridis, *Cynobatus*, Eglantine, or
 Swate byper.
Canirubus Theodori Gaze, *Cynobatus Theophra-*
sti the Hawthorne tree.
Cania Plinij, *Vrtica minor*, the little Pettle.
Canna, *Calamus*, *Arundo*, a Reede.
Canophicon, Turbith.
Canthabrica Plinij, *Caryophyllus hortulanus*, a Ge-
 lyflower, a Celouer.
Canthabrum, *Furfur*, Bran.
Cantharides, *Cantarides*, or Spanish flies.
Cantharus, or *Catherus*, a blacke Beetle.
Caphura, *Camphora*, Camfere.
Capillaris, *Capillus Veneris*, Venus haire.
Capillus Terræ, *Adiantum*, Maiden haire.
Capillus Veneris Apuleij, our Lady haire.
Capillaris aurea *Herbariorum*, yellowe Hayden
 haire.
Capnos, *Capnus*, *Fumaria*, Fumitozpe.
Capnos chelidonia, *Pseudaristolochia rotunda* offi-
 cinarum, Hartwozt, or Aristology.
- Capnos phragmites*, the same.
Caprago Apuleij, *Efula*, Spurge.
Capparis, Capers.
Caprifolium, Woodbinde.
Caprifolium italicum, *Caprifolium perforatum*,
 Woodbinde of Italy.
Caput monachi, *Hedysmum*, yellowe Cicorie.
Caput papaveris, *Codia*, Poppy seede.
Capitum barbarorum, headed Colewoztes,
 Cabbage.
Carabe, *Succinū*, yellowe or white Amber.
Carbo, *Carbunculus*, a Plague soze or botch.
Carbunculus, *Anthraxes*, a Carbuncle stone.
Carbunculus Amethystizon, *Anthrax*, a Ruby.
Carbunculus candidus, *Spinalis*, Spinalc.
Carbunculus Alabandicus, *Lapis Alabandicus*, a
 kind of Ruby.
Carbunculus Gilvus, or *Carbunculus pallidus*, a
 yellowe Carbuncle.
Carbunculus carchedoniicus, or *Carbunculus Ga-*
ramanticus, *Granatus*, a Granate.
Carchedoniū, *Gemma*, the same.
Carchosilus, *Carduus Altilis*, Artichocke.
Carcinethron, *Polygonum*, Knotgras.
Carcinoma, Cancer, the Canker.
Cardamine, *Nasturtium aquaticū*, Water cresse.
Cardamomum, a spice comming out of India.
 There be two soztes of this *Cardamomum*,
 the greater, and the small or lesser. The
 greater, we call graines, *Nicolaus Myrepsus*
 calleth it *Meniges*: *Serapio* termeth it *Sa-*
cola, and in Apothecaries shopp it is *Granū*
Paradisij: the Arabians name the common
Cardamomum, *Cacola*, Heilbague and is the
 lesser *Cardamomum* of the Arabians. The
 lesser sozte is that which we commonly call
Cardamom, it is called both in graeke and
 in latine *Cardamomum*, of the simplicities
Cardamomum Indicum, of Apothecaries *Car-*
damomum minus, of the Arabians *Cardume-*
num, or *Cordumenum*. If any one will vse
Cardamomum, let him alwayes take the
 lesser.
Cardamomum maius officinarum, *Granum Para-*
disij, Graines.
Cardamomum minus, Cardamome.
Cardamomum Indicum, the same.
Cardanum, *Nasturtium*, Cresse.
Cardiaca, *Mediana*, the Mediane, or Liner
 bayne.
Cardiaca, *Potherwozt*.
Cardialgia, grieft or paine at the hart.
Cardianthemū *Herbariorum*, *Ocimum*, Behen.
Cardopatum officinarum, *Chameleon niger*, Milke
 thistle.

The third Index.

Carduemennum, See *Cardamomum*.
Carduus Altilis, *Cinara*, *Hartichocke*.
Carduus amoris, *Airastylis*, an hearbe called
Cneus syluestris, bastard Saffron, or wilde
 Saffron.
Carduus benedictus, blessed Thistle.
Carduus Fullonius, *Dipsacus*, Fullers Thistle, or
 Teasel.
Carduus hepaticus, *Lactuca syluestris*, Lettice.
Carduus marianus, our Lady thistle.
Carduus niger, Milke thistle.
Carduus pratensis, *Cinara syluestris*, wilde Hars-
 tichocke.
Carduus sanctus, blessed Thistle.
Carduus strobilus, *Cinara sativa*, Artichocke.
Carduus sativus, *Chameleon niger*, milke Thistle.
Carduus varius, the lesser milke Thistle.
Carduus veneris, *Dipsacus*, Teasel.
Carenum, or as *Brassanolus sativus*, *Calenum mu-*
stum ad tertius cotium, Pus, or newe wine,
 that hath bene sodde till the third part re-
 maine.
Cariosemen, *Semen Carni*, Caruway seede.
Carica, *Ficus passa*, Dried figs.
Carium, *Carum*, Caruway.
Carnabadum, *Carnabum*, *Carum*, Caruway.
Carnabum, the same.
Carniglutinum, flesh lyme.
Carolina, Gentian.
Carota, *Carotis*, Parsnep.
Carotis lutea, a yellow Carrot.
Carotis rubra, a red Carrot.
Carotis syluestris, *Pastinaca vera*, a wilde Car-
 rot.
Carpathon, *Cuprifolium*, Woodbinde.
Carpobalsamum, *Fructus Balsami*, the fruit of
 Balsamum. But that which is nowe com-
 monly used in the Apothecaries shops, is
 not the fruit of the true Balsamum, but it is
 the seede of *Hypericon petraeum*, which also in
 the time of *Dioscorides* was used for true
 seede of Balsamum: and the unskilfull phi-
 sitions as yet use it for the same in their co-
 positions: but in deede with them all is one,
 for so it beare the name onely, it is good
 enough.
Carpobos, *Senegrae*.
Cartamus, *Cnicus*, wilde Saffron.
Cartamus domesticus, Saffron.
Cartamus syluestris, wild Saffron.
Cartilago, *Chondrus*, a Cartilage or gristle.
Carni officinarum, Caruwaies.
Carya, *Nux auellana*, a Hasell nut tree.
Caryon, *Juglans*, a Walnut tree.
Caryon basilicon, *Nux regia*, the same.

Caryon Indicum, *Nux Indica*, an Indian nut.
Caryon Persicum, *Nux Persica*, a Nut tree.
Caryon Theophr. *Tithymalus myrtaceus*, Spurge.
Caryites Apulei, Spurge.
Caryophyllum, Cloves.
Cariophyllata, Auence.
Caryophyllus flos, Carnations, and double Sil-
 loflowers.
Caryophyllus Arvensis, Carnations.
Caryophyllus domesticus, Carnations.
Caryophyllus hortulanus, the same.
Cassium officinarum, *Cyclaminus*, Solmes
 head.
Cassia, Cassie.
Cassia Alexandrina, *Cassia fistularis*, Cassie.
Cassia flos, or *Cassia medulla*, or *Cassia cribrata*,
 prepared Cassie.
Cassia lignea, *Xylocassia*, a swete smelling rinde
 like Cinnamon.
Cassia herba, *Lauendula*, Lauander.
Cassuta, or *Cassya*, Bindewerde, or Winde.
Cassia coronata, Lauander.
Castanea, a Chestnut.
Castanea aquatica, *Tribulus aquaticus*, water
 puts.
Castoreum, the Beuerod.
Castrangula, Pilewort the great.
Catagma, *Offum fractura*, a fracture of the bone.
Catapodium, *Pillula*, a Pill, or a little ball.
Catangelus, *Ruscus*, Banaholme.
Catarrhus, a Rheume.
Catharticum imperiale, is a purging medicine
 so called.
Cataputia maior, *Ricinus*, a tree called *Palma*
Christi.
Cataputia minor, *Lathyrus*, Spurge.
Cataputia syluestris, wilde Spurge.
Catheron, tree, flowerdeluce.
Cataputris, *Cicuta*, Hemlocke.
Catechomenium, the same.
Cathimia officinarum, *Cadmia*, Luttie.
Caucasis, bastard Parsnep.
Cauda muris, *Cassula minor*, Blood strange.
Caulis, a Colewort.
Caulis Iouis, *Houllicke*, or Sengrene.
Causon, or *Causus*, a hot burning Feuer.
Ceanothus Theophrasti, Goleberry.
Ceanothus asper, the same.
Ceanothus levis, Raspe.
Cedria Theophr. the great Juniper tree.
Cedromelum, *malum Citreum*, a Citron.
Cedronella, *Citraria*, Baume.
Cedrosus, *vitis alba*, Wypony.
Celidonia officinarum, Celandine the greater, or
 Swallowes.

Celi-

The third Index.

- Celidonia minor*, *Chelidonium minus*, Pilewort,
 or Figwort.
Celyphos, *Cochlea domus*, a Snayles shell.
Cenchrus or *Cenchrus*, Milum, Pill, or Millet.
Centaurium magnum, the greater Centoꝝy.
Centaurium minus, the little Centoꝝy.
Centimorbia, *Centimorbium*, Verbe twopence.
Centinodia, *Polygonum*, Knotgras.
Centinodia minor, *Ruella*, Knotgras the lesser.
Centuncapita, *Eryngium*, Seaholme or Sea
 holly.
Centonia, *Ulmifæde*.
Centumodia, *Polygonum*, Knotgrasse.
Cepa, *Crommium*, an Onion.
Cepa, the same.
Cepa Pallacana Plinij, Leekes.
Cepa Africana, Onions of Africa.
Cepa Hispanica, Spanish Onions.
Cephalæa, *capitis dolor diuturnus*, a continuall
 headach.
Cephalalgia, *capitis dolor*, headache.
Cepa maris, Sea onion.
Cephalica, the head baine.
Cepuli, *Chebuli*, a kind of Pirobalans.
Cera, Ware.
Cera montana, *Pis asphaltum*, a kinde of Lyme or
 Clay like Pitch.
Cera terrestris, *Picbitumen*, the same.
Cerauis, *Fœnum gracum*, Fenegræke.
Cerasa, or *cerasia*, Cherries.
Cerasia amarella, or *Laurea*, bitter Cherries.
Cera Theophrasti, or *Ceria*, a certaine drinke.
Cerasites, *vinum ex cerasis confectum*, wine made
 of Cherries.
Cerasum, a Cherrie.
Cerasum Indæorum, or *Cerasum terra*, a winter
 Cherry.
Cerasus, a Cherry tree.
Ceratia, and *Ceratonia*, the fruit of the tree Si-
 liqua.
Ceratium or *Cerotum*, it is called of Galen Cero-
 tum, or Cerote: This is a plaister made of
 oyle and ware, and is prepared diuersly.
Ceratium album Galeni, a cold or coling plaister
 of Galen.
Ceratium Sandalinum, a salue made of Saun-
 ders.
Cerebrum, the bzaïne.
Cerefolium officinarum, Cheruill.
Cerefolium columbinum, *Herbariorum Fumaria*,
Fumitory.
Cerefolium Felinum, *Herbariorum capnos*, Fumi-
 toꝝy.
Cerefolium Hispanicum, *Charophyllum*, Spanish
 Cheruill.
- Cerefolium sylvestre*, *Pseudomyrrhis*, wild Cher-
 uill.
Cerniucellus, *Ophiozonum*, a kind of Parsnep.
Cernicornula tenella, Harts hozne.
Ceruina radix, Siluermountaine.
Cernirubus, *Rubus Idæus*, Raspis or Frambois.
Ceruus volans, Escarbot.
Cerusa or *Cerussa*, *Psymmitis*, Ceruse or white
 leade.
Cestrum, *Betonica*, Betonie.
Ceterach, or *Ceterachum Arabum*, *Scolopendri-
 um*, Harts tong.
Charephyllum, or *Charefolium*, Cheruill.
Chachite Serapionis, sea Folefote.
Chalcantum, *Vitriolum*, Coperas, or Vitrioll.
Chalix, *Silex*, a Flint.
Chalybs, or *Chalyps*, Stæle.
Chalyps, the same.
Chameacite, *Ebulus*, Danewort, Bloodwort, or
 Wallwort.
Chamaecissus, *Hadera terrestris*, Alehose, or
 Harehose.
Chamaecyparissus, Heath Cyppers, or dwarte Cy-
 pers.
Chamedaphne Plinij, *Perninca*, Perwinckle.
Chamedaphne Dioscoridis, *Laureola*, Laurell,
 Lowꝝy, or Lozell.
Chamedrys aquatica, *Scordium*, water German-
 der.
Chamadrys, *Triffago*, Germander.
Chamaleuce, *Populago alba*, Coltes hose.
Chamamelum, Caminomill.
Chamamelum fætidum *Herbariorum*, *Partheni-
 um*, *feuerfelw*, *Paydenwæde*, or *Pother-
 wort*.
Chamamyrtus, *Ruscus*, a pickled shub, of some
 Butchers bꝝome, of others Inacholme.
Chamarhodon, a certaine wilde Rose.
Chamepitys, field Cipers.
Chamarops, *Chamadrys*, Germander.
Chamaplatanum, *Spondylium*, Bearesfote.
Chamaleon niger, the blacke Whistle.
Chamaleon albus, *carlina*, the white or milke
 Whistle.
Charabe, *Succinum*, Amber.
Characias Dioscoridis, wilde Spurge.
Chartamus, or *Cartamus*, bastard Saffron.
Chebuli, a kind of Pirobalans.
Cheiri vel Cheyri, *Lencium*, a Wallflower.
Chelidon, *Hirundo*, a Swallow.
Chelidonium minus, Pilewort, or Figwort.
Chelidonium maius, Celandine.
Chelone, *Testudo*, a Toystoile.
Chelonium herba, *Cyclaminus*, Solves bread.
Chenanthemum Herbariorum, *Bellium maius*,
 the

The third Index.

the greater Daisie.

Chenoglossum, *Lactuca sylvestris*, wild Lettice.
Chenomelacha, *Malua anserina*, Goose mal-
 lows.

Chermes, *Granum tinctorum*, Touchenill.

Chermesinum, Crimson.

Cherna Arabum, *Ricinus*, *Palma Christi*.

Cheyri, *Sæke Cheiri*.

Chilophyllus, *Supercilium Veneris*, Parrow.

Chiragra, the gout in the fingers.

Chironia, *Centaurium magnum*, great Centoꝝy.

Chironia, *Ampelos vitis chironia*, Wypony.

Cholera, *Cholerica passio*, is called of *Anrelian*
Felliflua passio, that is a great paine in the
 belly with pricking and shooting, and auoi-
 ding of Choler both by vomit & stoule. The
 unsaifull Physicians and others take Cho-
 lera for Bilis: and ouer all this booke Bilis is
 taken for Cholera.

Chondrus, *Cartilago*, a gristle.

Chrysanthemum, Goldknap.

Chryselestrum, *Electrum aureum*, yellowe Am-
 ber.

Chrysis Plinii, *Chrysocome*, Gold knaps.

Chrysis, *Lithargyrium auri*, Litharge or burnt
 Lead.

Chrysis gemma, *Saphyrus aureus*, a yellowe Sa-
 phire.

Chrysocolla Bozas.

Chrysocolla aurifabrorum, *facilita*, Bozas.

Chrysocome, *Amaranthus Galei*, Gold knap.

Chrysanthemum, Dyaage.

Chrysomela, or *Chrysomilla*, yellowe Quinces.

Chrysolitus, a kind of Jasper.

Chrysogonum, *Tormentilla*, Tormentill.

Chrysophorum, *Dioscoridis*, *Electrum aureum*, yel-
 low Amber.

Chylus, *Cyclaminus* Solues bread.

Chylus, a certaine white iuice that cometh of
 meate and drinke digested in the stomacke.

Cicada, Grasshoppers.

Cicer, Cich or Cich pease.

Cicer columbinum, *Apuley*, *Tithymalus solisegnum*,
 Spurge.

Cicer columbinum, *Dioscoridis*, the white Ciche.

Cicer candidum, or *album*, the same.

Cicerbita, *Sonchus aspera*, Sow thistle.

Cicerula Plinii, *Lathyrus*, Cicheling, Cæres,
 Peason cerres, petite Ciche.

Cicula, *Turdus*, a Blackbird or Dusell.

Cici, *Ricinus*, *Palma Christi*.

Cicla officinarum, Beta, Bâtes.

Cichorea officinarum, *Cichorium*, Cicoꝝy.

Cichorium, the same.

Ciconia, a Stozke.

Cicuta, Hemlocke.

Cicutaria, *Myrrhis*, wild Cheruill, Car, Ker,
 ASSE parley, or mocke Cheruill.

Cidonium, a Quince.

Cilia, the eyelids.

Cimex, a stinking woꝝme breeding in wood.

Cinara or *Cynara* or

Cinarius or *Cynarus*, an Artichocke.

Cinamomum, Cinnamome.

Cine, *Ruscus*, the Bore tree.

Cinis, Ashes.

Cinnabaris Indica, *Sanguis Draconis*, a liquoꝝ or
 gunn brought out of Africa.

Cinnabaris metallica, Cinoper.

Cinnabaris metallica natua, a certaine red mine
 or Cinoper.

Cinnabaris metallica facilitia, common or coun-
 terfainted Cinoper.

Cinnabaris fossilis, Cinoper of the mine.

Cinnabaris artificialis, counterfainted Cinoper.

Cinnabrium, *Cinnabaris*, Cinoper.

Cinnabrium natuum *sive* *fossile*, Cinoper of the
 mine.

Cinnamomum *sive*

Cinnamum, Cinnamome.

Circinalis, *Spaiden haire*.

Cission, *Aclepias*, Swallowwoꝝt.

Cissus, *Hædera*, Ivy.

Citrea, *sive* *Citrus*, a Citron or Dzenge.

Citream malum, the same.

Citrago, *Citraria*, *Citronella*, Baulme.

Citrullus, a Citrull.

Citrus, *Citrea*, a Citron or Dzenge tree.

Citta, *Pica malacia*, the affection of longing in
 women with childe.

Clareta or *Claretum*, Claret or spice wine.

Clana Herculis Nymphae, water Lilly, or wa-
 ter Rose, or Penuphar.

Clanus Veneris Apuley, *Nymphae*, the same.

Clema, *Palmes*, the branch of a Vine.

Clema, *Pityusa*, Spurge.

Clematis herba, and

Clematis Daphnoides, Perwinckle.

Clibodium, *Parietaria*, Pellitoꝝy of the wall.

Climia officinarum, *Cadmia*, Tuttie.

Clinopodium, *Apuley*, *Polygonum*, Knotgras.

Clibodium, *Helxine*, Pellitoꝝy of the wall.

Clibatis Nicandri, or

Clibetis Nicandri, the same.

Cnicus, *Cartamus*, Saffron.

Cnecus, *Cartamus*, wild Saffron.

Cnicus sylvestris, and

Cnecus campestris, wild Saffron.

Cneoron, *Sæke Cassia coronaria*.

Cnopodium, *Polygonum*, Knotgras.

The third Index.

- Coagulum*, the ruen of a beast that turneth milke.
Coagulum capreoli, a Kids matwe.
Coagulum Leporis, a Hares matwe.
Cobaltum metallicorum, Cadmia, Lutfy.
Cobius, Spurge.
Coccali Hippocratis, Nuces Pineæ, Pingles.
Coccognidum, *Granum Thymelææ*. In this booke you must not take it for *Mezerion*, that is *Rozell*, but for *Lathyrus*, which is Spurge.
Coccum insectorium, Graine wherewith cloth is grained.
Coccus Theophrasti, *Paralius*, sea Spurge.
Coccus Baphica, *Granum tinctorum*, Graine wherewith cloth is grained.
Coccimela, a Plum tre.
Coccimelon, *Prunum*, a Plum. *Diphilo* taketh *Coccimelon* for a Citron.
Coccimelea agria, Sloes.
Cochlearia, *Brassica marina*, sea Folewote.
Cochlearia palustris, *Plantago aquatica*, water Plantaine.
Codia, *Papaveris caput*, Poppy huskes.
Coelidonium chymistarum, *Chelidonium*, Celandine.
Coere, *Cicuta*, Hemlocke.
Colatypus avis, a Stare.
Colchicum, Dogs bane, Dogs stones, or meadowe Saffron.
Colica, the Colick.
Colla, Gluten, Glew.
Collum draconis, Dragons.
Colon, or *Colon*, or *intestinum colon*, a great gut so called.
Colocynthis, a kinde of wilde Gourd purging phlegme.
Colophonia radix, Scammony.
Colophonium, Scammonium, the same.
Colostrum, or *Colostrum*, Bestings.
Columbaris, *Veruena*, Tereuine.
Colubrina officinarum, *Britannica*, Harts tong.
Colubrina vera, Dragons.
Colubrina magna, great Dragons.
Colubrina minor, the lesser Dragons.
Colubrina palustris, water Cuckoe pit.
Columbrina, *Verbena*, Tereuine.
Columbrina, *Dracontium*, Dragons.
Colubea Theophrasti, Sene.
Colus rustica, *Attractylus*, wilde Saffron.
Colycea Theophrasti, a kinde of nuts called also *Pistacium*.
Columbas, *Oliua conditanea*, preserued Oliues.
Coma aurea, *Chrysocome*, Gold knaps.
Cometes, *Caraputia sylvestris*, wild Spurge.
Comitialis morbus, *Epilepsia*, the falling sicknesse.
Concha marina, sea Shells.
Conchylii Indici operculum, or *Tegumentum*, Shell of India. Seeke *Blacca Byzantia*.
Condiloma, a swelling of the fundament.
Conion, *Cicuta*, Hemlocke.
Confectio laticians Almanforis, a certain confection so called.
Confectio laticians Galeni, such another confection as that afoze.
Confectio Anacardina, a confection so termed.
Confectio Aromaticarum rosata, called also *Aromaticum rosatum*.
Confectio de gemmis, the confection of Gems or precious stones.
Confectio Hamech, a certaine purge so called.
Confectio Iustina, a confection so named.
Confectio de Xyloaloe, a confection made of *Lignum Aloes*.
Conserua maior, *Symphytum alterum*, Comfrey.
Confirma maior, Comfrey.
Congelatio, Stupor, benumbing, insensiblenes.
Conila Apuleij, *Origanum*, *Marioram*.
Coniungulum Caronis, Bindweede.
Conserua Buglossæ, the conserue of Buglosse.
Conserua Hyssopi, Conserue of Hyssope.
Conserua Melissæ, Conserue of Baulme.
Conserua Nympharis, Conserue of water Lillyes.
Conserua florum paralysis, Conserue of Cowslips.
Conserua Pæonia, Conserue of Piony.
Conserua Rosarum, Conserue of Roses.
Conserua Antbos, Conserue of Rosemary.
Conserua primula veris, conserue of Primroses.
Conserua Saluæ, Conserue of Sage.
Conserua Spicanardi, Conserue of Spikenard.
Conserua Trifolij acetosi, Conserue of wood Sorell.
Conserua Violarum, Conserue of Violets.
Consiligo Plinij, Longwozt.
Consolida, *Symphytum*, Comfrey.
Consolida lallaria, Houseleare.
Consolida media Herbariorum, Setwall or Bugle.
Consolida media vulnerariorum, the same.
Consolida minor, *Bellis minor*, Daylies.
Consolida media, Bugle or Setwall.
Consolida petraea, Comfrey.
Consolida pyrifolia, wild Bætes.
Consolida regalis, Larkes spur.
Consolida Saracenicæ.
Conuulsiolus, *Cissampelos*, Bindweede.
Conuulsiolus marinus, sea Bindweede.
Conuulsiio, *Spasmus*, a conuulsion or Crampe.

The third Index.

Conysa, wild Spints.
Corago, Burrage, o2 Buglosse.
Corallia, & *Corallia*. *Anagallis mas*, he Pimpernel.
Corallium, Corall.
Corchorus Theophrasti, *Anagallis mas*, red o2 hee Pimpernell.
Cordus palpitatio, *Cordis saltus*, panting o2 beating of the hart.
Corda Barbarorum, *Nernus*, a Spinetwe.
Cordumenum *Arabum*, *Cardamomum Gracorum*, Cardamome.
Coriandrum, the herbe Coziander.
Corianon, o2
Corion, the same.
Corona regia, Melilotus, Helilot.
Coronata terra, Alchwofe, o2 Wigh.
Corona virginea, *Clematis daphnoides*, Perwinckle.
Cornu cervi, Harts hozne.
Cornus, Dog treë, o2 Gad rise.
Corna, the fruit of the same.
Cornu Monocerotis, the hozne of an Unicorne.
Corsalinum Apuleij, *Salvia*, Sage.
Corrigiola, Knotgras.
Corrigiola minor, Knotgras the lesser.
Corruda, *Asparagus sylvestris*, wild Sperage.
Corruda Gaza, *Asparagus Regius*, Sperage.
Corruidago Gaza, *Asparagus sylvestris*, wilde Sperage.
Corylus, an Hasell o2 filberd treë.
Cortex thuris, the bark o2 rinde of frankincense.
Coryza, the pose.
Corymbites, a kind of Spurge.
Costa Asinina, Plantaine the lesser, Ribwort.
Costa equina, *Plantago acuta*, the same.
Costum, o2 *Costus*, comonly called herbe Maria.
Cotinus, Oleaster, a wilde Oliue treë.
Cytisus amarus, a Quince treë.
Cotonemum, a Quince.
Cotoneum maius, the greater Quince.
Corula fatida, wilde Cammonils.
Cotum officinarum, Cotton.
Crambe, Brassica, Cole, o2 Colewort.
Crambe cephalote, *Brassica capitata*, the headed Colewort o2 Cabbage.
Crambion, *Pityusa*, Spurge.
Cranium, the skull o2 braine pan.
Crassamen, o2 *Crassamentum vini*, wine lés.
Crassula minor, Pickemadam.
Crassula maior, Houslecke.
Crataea, *Chelidonium maius*, Celandine the greater, o2 Swallowes herbe.
Cridon, *Cicuta*, Hemlocke.
Cremor lactis, Creame of milke.

Crespinus, a Barberry treë o2 bush.
Cressio Barbarorum, Cresses.
Creta, Chalke.
Crinanthemum, *Lilium*, a Lilly.
Crinis vitis, haire of the Vine.
Crinon, *Lilium*, a Lilly.
Criue, *Hordeum*, Barley.
Crocum, o2
Crocus, Saffron.
Crocus fatuus, *Carthamus*, wilde Saffron.
Crocus hortulanus, tame o2 garden Saffron.
Crocus Saracenicus, *Carthamus*, wilde Saffron.
Crocus sylvestris, wilde o2 field Saffron.
Crommium, *Cepa*, an Dinion.
Crosmis, *Salvia*, Sage.
Croton, *Ricinus*, *Palma Christi*.
Cruciata, Gentian.
Cruix Christi herba, *Aconitum salutiferum*, Wolfes bane.
Cuculus herba, Nightshade.
Cucumer, o2
Cucumis, a Cucumber.
Cucumer Anguinus, o2
Cucumer Aspinus, the wild Cucumber.
Cucumer erraticus, o2
Cucumer sylvestris, the same.
Cucurbita, o2
Cucurbita esculenta, a Gourd.
Cucurbita hylatica, *Colocynthis*, *Coloquintida*, o2 the wild Gourd.
Cuminum, o2 *Cyminum*, Comin.
Cuminum Alexandrinum, Ammy.
Cuminum cornutum, Larkes spur.
Cuminum regium Hippocratis, Ammy.
Cuminum sylvestre alcerum Dioscoridis, Larkes spur, o2 wilde Comin.
Cuminum, *Sativum*, *Hortulanum*, *Romanum*, tame o2 garden Comin.
Cunila, *Satureia*, Sauoy.
Cunila rustica, wild Sauoy.
Cunila bubula, Spariozane.
Cunila Gallica Apuleij, the same.
Cunilago, *Serpillum*, wilde o2 running Thyme.
Cupressus, a Cipres treë.
Cupressus hortulana, *Abrotanum femina*, Southernwood.
Cupressus sylvestris, a Juniper treë.
Cupula glandis citarui, Acozne cups.
Curcuma, *Cyperus Indicus*.
Curallium, *Corallium*, Corall.
Cuscuta officinarum, *Cassia*, Windwæde.
Cyanos, lapis *Cyanus*, a Turquoyle.
Cybelon, *Viola maritima*, a Violet.
Cybeles, *Pomum Martialis*, *Conus*, a Pine apple.

The third Index.

Cyclamen, orbicularis, Solves bread, or rape violet.
Cyclaminus, *Cyclamen*, the same.
Cyclaminus minor, Rape violet the lesser.
Cydonia malus, a Quince tree.
Cydonium maius, the greater Quince.
Cydonium nothum, a bastard Quince.
Cyminites, vinum ex *Cymino confectum*, Wine made of Comin.
Cuminum, *Cuminum*, Comin.
Cuminum dulce, *Anisum*, Annise.
Cuminum siliquosum, a kind of Comin.
Cynanthemis, *Parthenium*, Motherwort.
Cynanche, *Angina*, the Squincie.
Cynobatus Theophrasti, or
Cynobatus Dioscoridis, the Eglantine or Sweet byer.
Cynocentrum Hesychij, a wilde Rose.
Cynocephalon Hesychij, *Papauer nigrum*, the blacke Poppy.
Cynocephalon Dioscoridis, *Psilium*, Fleawort, or fleabane.
Cynogala, *Polygonum*, Knotgras.
Cynoglossa, or *Cynoglossum*, Hounds tong.
Cynoglossa minor, the lesser Hounds tong.
Cynomazum, *Chameleon niger*, the blacke Thistle, or Chameleon.
Cynomorphus, *Crocus*, Saffron.
Cynomoron Galeni, *Rosa canina*, the wilde Rose.
Cynopleuron, *Plantago acuta*, Ribbe wort.
Cynorhodon, *Rosa canina*, a Byer bush.
Cynopaston Plinij, *Canirubus Gaze*, the Hawthorne tree.
Cynospathos Eliani, *Paeonia*, a Pionie.
Cynorexia, *Appetitus caninus*, a greedines and an unnaturall appetite of meate.
Cynozolum, *Chamelecon niger*, a stinking Thistle.
Cynoxylon, *Card. pitium*, Wolfes bane.
Cyparissus, *Cypressus*, a Cypress tree.
Cyparissus hortulana, Southernwood.
Cyparissia, *Tubymalus*, *Cyparissimus*, Spurge.
Cyperus, a kind of Galangall.
Cyperus rotundus, the round Galangall.
Cyperus longus, or
Cyperus Romanus, the long Galangall.
Cyperis, Galangall.
Cypripus, *Lignstrum*, Priuet.
Cytinus flos mali punice sativa, the bud or flower of a Pomegranate.

D.

D *Athyli*, Palmule, Dates.
Dactylon, *Scammonium*, Scammonie.

Dactylitis, *Aristolochia magna*, Aristology.
Dactylus Idæus, *Herba Peonia*, Piony.
Dacrydion, *Lachrymula*, is the iuice of the herbe Scammony.
Dacrydion officinarum, *Dacrydion* Scammony.
Daphne, *Laurus*, a Bay tree.
Daphneleon, *oleum Laurinum*, oyle of Bayes.
Daphnides, *Bacca lauri*, Bay berries.
Dardanis, *Cicuta*, Hemlocke.
Dapsipodium, *Viola martia*, a violet.
Daucus, or
Daucum, a Carrot.
Decoctio officinarum, a decoction or boyling of the Apothecaries.
Decoctio aperitua, a decoction that openeth obstructions.
Decoctio communis, a common decoction, which is made of two sundrie wayes at the Apothecaries, with the which we mire Electuaries or Syrupes to prepare & purge the humors.
Decoctio fructuum, a decoction of fruites, which is commonly made of the Apothecaries.
Decoctio pectoralis, a decoction for the breast.
Decoctio Senæ, a decoction of Seneleaves.
Defrutum, *Mustum ad tertias decoctum*, newe Wine sodde till one third parte remaine.
Delirium, dotting or raving.
Dementia, madnesse.
Denirites, *Corallum*, Corall.
Deniritis Apuleij, *Tubymalus soliseguius*, Spurge.
Dendrodes, and *Dendroides Dioscoridis*, *Tubymalus arborescens*, a kind of Spurge.
Dendrolibanum, Rosemary.
Dendromalache, *Althea*, the marsh Mallow.
Dens Elephanti, an Elephants tooth.
Dens Leonis herba, *Hedypnois*, *Dadelon*, Priests crowne, wilde or yellow Cicorie.
Desipientia, foolishnes.
Deucos, *Mustum*, Must, or newe wine.
Diacalamentum, or
Diacalamenta, a certaine confection made of Spintes.
Diacaryon, or
Diacarydion, *Rob hucum officinarum*, a Conserue of Walnuts.
Diacapparis, or
Diacapparum, a conserue made of the rotes of Capers.
Diacatholicon, a purging confection so termed.
Diacinamomum, a confection of Cinnamon.
Diacinamomum cum Rhabarbato, and electuary of Cinnamon and Rubarbe.

Diachilon,

The third Index.

Diachylon, Emplastrum Diachylon, a playster of salve so termed.

Diacitonidon officinarum, or *Diacitoniton simplex*, *Diacidonium*, and *Diacidonites*, a conferue made of Quinces.

Diacitoniton compositum, or *cum speciebus officinarum*, a compounded conferue of Quinces.

Diacitoniton laxativum, or *Solutium officinarum*, a purging conferue of Quinces.

Diacodion, a confection made of Poppy.

Diacodium, a conferue so called.

Diacrocoma, *Diacrocuma officinarum*, a certaine confection also called *Diacrocum*.

Diacrocum, the same.

Diacrocuma, the same.

Diacydonites, seeke *Diacitoniton*.

Diacydonium, seeke *Diacitoniton*.

Diacydonium Catharticum, *Diacidonium solutium*, seeke *Diacidonium laxativum*.

Diacyminum, or *Diacuminum*, a confection of Romaine Cumin.

Diaireos or *Diiris Solomonis*, a confection made of Treas or the roots of flower de luce. It is thought that Solomon was the first author of it.

Diaireos, or *Diiris simplex*, another confection of the roote Treas, and is also called *Diaireos*, or *Diiris Nicolai*.

Diiris simplex, the same.

Diiris Solomonis, seeke *Diaireos*.

Dialacca, a confection so called.

Dianthon, or *Dianthos*, a confection made of Rosemary flowers.

Dianthos, the same.

Diabetes, *Diamnes*, vide *Diamnes*, an unnatural and extreme making of urine.

Diagalanga, a confection made of Calangall.

Diamanna, *Electuarium ex Manna*, an Electuary of Manna.

Diamargariton Calidum, or *Diamargaritum A-micenne*, a hot confection of Perles.

Diambra, or *Diambarum*, or *Diampar*, a confection of Amber græse.

Diabyssopum, a confection of Hyssope.

Dialibea, *unguentum Dialibea*, a playster of marsh Mallowes.

Diameniba, a conferue of Hints.

Diamnes, or *Diamnes*, an unnatural yielding of urine.

Diamoron, *Rob mororum*, a confection of Mulberries.

Diamoscum, a confection of Puske.

Diamoscum amarum, vide *Diamoscum*.

Diamnes, vide *Diamnes*.

Diabolbanum, or *Electuarium de Olibano*, an Electuary of Frankincense.

Diagridium officinarum, *Diacyridion Scammonea preparata*, prepared Scammony.

Dianisum, a confection of Anise.

Diapapaner, *Eclegma de papanere*, or *Loch de papanere*, an Electuary, or lick of Poppy.

Diapenidion, a confection of Sugar pennets.

Diapenidion sine speciebus, the same without spices.

Diapensia, *Sanicula*, *Sanicle*.

Diaplis officinarum, *Electuarium plerisarcoticon*, or *Electuarium plerisarchigon*, a confection so named.

Diaphœnicon officinarum, *Diaphœnicon*, *Electuarium ex dachylis*, a purging Electuary of Dates.

Diaprunis laxativa, or *Lenitiva officinarum*, *Diaprunum solutium*, a purging confection of Punes.

Diaprunum, vide *Diaprunis*.

Diaprunum simplex, the same.

Diaphragma, *septum transversum*, the Diaphragme, a skin that separateth the stomacke and breast from the belly.

Diapompholigos officinarum, *Unguentum Diapompholigos*, an ointment made of Tuffy.

Diaprusium, a confection of Horehound.

Diarrhodon abbas, a confection of Roses.

Diarrhodon sine speciebus, a simple confection of Roses.

Diaria, vide *Ephemeræ*.

Diarrhœa, *profluvium alui*, a large or fire of the belly.

Diastyrion, a confection made of Ragwort.

Diasena, a confection of Sena.

Diaspolticon, a confection so called.

Diamtharon, a certaine confection.

Diatriagagantum calidum, a warming confection.

Diatriosantalon, a confection of Saunders, called *Triasandali* at the Apothecaries.

Diatriospipereon, a confection made of the three kinds of Pepper.

Diatriagagantum frigidum, a cooling confection.

Diaturbith, or *Diaturbethum*, a confection of Turbith.

Diaturbith cum rhabarbaro, a confection of Turbith with Rhabarb.

Diaxyloaloes, a confection of *Lignum aloës*.

Diachomenum Theophrasti, *Peonia*, *Piony*.

Diellamum, or *Diellamus*, or *Diellamus alba*, french Diptamer.

Didymi, the stones of men or women.

Digitellus Plinij, *Pickmadam*.

Digitus citrinus Anicenna, *Priests stones*, or *Rag*.

The third Index.

Ragwort.

Digitus Veneris, *Nymphaea*, the water Lilly.
Disemidion, *Manipulus*, *Fasciculus*, a handfull.
Dioscyamus, *Hyoſcyamus*, Henbane.
Diosporus, *miliun ſolis*, Pill, or Pilllet.
Dios Anthos, *Viola Trinitatis*, herbe Trinity,
 or Harts eafe.
Diptamus, or *Diptamum officinarum*, *Polemoni-um*, white Diptamer.
Dipsacus, Teafull, or fullers Thistle.
Dipyrites Hippocratis, *Panis biscoctus*, Bisket.
Discus ſolis Chymiſtarum, a kinde of Quick-ſilver.
Dithyambion, *Hyoſcyamus*, Henbane.
Dolia, *Cicuta*, Hemlock.
Dolzegine Italonum, ſwete Calangall.
Domine miſerere, *Ilaca paſſio*, a paine in the ſmall guts.
Dorcis, *Diptamus Cretica*, Diptamer of Can-
 dia.
Dorycnium, a venomous herb, with the which
 darts were wont to be poiſoned; it grow-
 eth by the ſea coaſt, and hath been taken
 for Hemlock.
Dracontea, or *Dracontia*, Dragons.
Draco in iſulis Maderia & Canaria arbor eſt,
ex qua ſanguis draconis deſluit, the tree whole
 iuice is called *ſanguis draconis*.
Dracos, *Fasciculus manualis*, *Manipulus*, a hand-
 full: it is alſo called *Dragma*.
Dracunculus, *Dracontium*, Dragons.
Dracunculus aquaticus, water Dragons.
Dracunculus Henicophyllos, the leſſer Dragons.
Dracunculus polyphyllos, Serpentine the grea-
 ter.
Dracunculus minor, the leſſer Serpentine.
Dracunculus maior, the greater Serpentine,
 or Dragons.
Dragma, a dramme.
Dragantum officinarum, *Tragacantha*, vel *Tra-
 gacanthum*, the gum Tragacanth.
Dragontea, *Dracontium*, Dragons.
Drangea Nicolai Mirepſi, *Tragema*, *Tragea*, a
 powder uſed for ſauce.
Droſera Herbariorum, and *Droſum Alchimilla*,
 Sanicle the great.
Droſomeli, Honyſew.
Dryocolaps Heſychii, and of others *Dryocolaptes*,
Picus martius, a Stare.
Dulcicibinum, *Trasum*, *Cyperus eſculentus*, ſwete
 Calangall.
Duodenum, the ſtomack gut.
Duracinum, *Pericum*, a Peach.
Dura mater Barbarorum, *Pericranium*, the ſkin
 that is next to the braine pan.

Dyspnaa, *Spirandi difficultas*, purſines.
Dyspnoici, they that are purſy, or haue a
 ſtreightnes of breath.
Dyspeſſia, *Concoctio deprauata*, ill concoction.
Dysenteria, *Cruenta alui deiectio*, the bloudie
 ſtice.
Dysſomon, *Scordium*, water Larks.
Dysuria, *Vrina difficultas*, a ſtopping of the
 vrine.

E.

E *Biscus*, *Althea*, marſh Mallowes.
Ebenotrichon, *Adianum*, *Clenus*, Hayden,
 or our Lady haire.
Ebor, dens *Elephantis*, Elephants tooth, or
 Juoꝝ.
Ebulus, Dane or Bloudwort.
Ebur, Juoꝝ.
Ecbetroſis Hippocratis, *Vitis alba*, Wyony.
Echidna, *Vipera*, a Wiper.
Echinus, *Erimaceus*, a Hedgehog, or Archon.
Echis, *Vipera*, a Wiper.
Echogloſſum, *Ophiogloſſum*, Adders tong.
Echium, *Bugloſſa ſylueſtris*, wilde Bugloſſe.
Eclegma, *Illinctus*, *Ecligma*, a lick or confection,
 which is licked by without any chelwing.
Ecligma de papanere, vide *Diapapaner*.
Elctamum Hippocratis, *Veratru album*, the white
 Elleboꝝ, or Paſſetwort.
Edera, *Hedera*, Iuic.
Effluxio, a ſtice of the ſeede or ſperme.
Eglenteria Herbariorum, *Rosa canina*, a hyper-
 buſh, or wild Roſe.
Egne Dioſcoridis, *Igne Hippocratis*, *Iſatis*, *Woads*
 or new Aſh of Jeruſalem.
Eilbagus Arabum, *Cardamomum maium officina-
 rum*, Graines.
Elaphoboſcum, *Ceruicocellus*, a kind of Parſnep.
Elate, *Abies*, a firre tree.
Elatarium, the iuice of wilde Cucumbers.
Elcratis Arabum, *Cartamus*, wilde Saſſon.
Electarium, *Electuarium*, a Confection, an E-
 lectuary, or compounded medicine.
Electrum, *Succinum*, Amber.
Electrum aureum, *Chryſelectrum*, yelloꝝ Am-
 ber.
Electuarium Arantiorum, an Electuary of O-
 ranges.
Electuarium aureum, *Electuarium de ovo*, an E-
 lectuary called the golden Egge.
Electuarium de baccis lauri, an Electuary of
 Bay berries.
Electuarium Bezoarticum, *Electuarium veneno
 reſiſtens*, an Electuary of the Beſoar ſtone
 for

The third Index.

for poison.
Electuarium de Calamentha, an Electuary of
 hoyle mints.
Electuarium de castoreo, a confection of the Be-
 uerced.
Electuarium Catholicum, vide *Diacatholicon*.
Electuarium de Citro, an Electuary of Citrons.
Electuarium de corticibus Arantiarum, an E-
 lectuary of Orange peeles.
Electuarium de Epithymo, a confection of Dod-
 der.
Electuarium lenituum, a lenitive Electuary.
Electuarium de passulis, an Electuary of Raze-
 sons.
Electuarium ad melancholiam Auicenne, an E-
 lectuary of Auicenne against melancholy.
Elect. Mirobalanorum, a confection of Piro-
 balans.
Elect. Montagnane oculis, an Electuary to
 comfort the sight.
Electuarium de onno, vide *Electuarium aureum*.
Electuarium Plurifarchigon, vide *Diaplrus*.
Elect. de Psillio, an Electuary of Fleawort.
Elect. ex Prunis, vide *Diaprunum*.
Electuar. de scoria ferri, a confection of Iron.
Electuar. Nucum, an Electuary of Walnuts.
Electuar. vita Pauli Rixij.
Elenium, *Elecampane*.
Eleoselinum, *Paludapum*, *Smallage*.
Eliis, *Parietaria*, *Pellitory of the wall*.
Elephantiasis, *Elephantia*, the Leprey.
Elleborastrum, a kinde of Peselewort.
Elleborus, *Veratrum*, *Peselewort*.
Elleborus albus, the white Ellebo; or Pese-
 lewort.
Elleborus niger, the black Ellebo;.
Elaxatio, *Exarthrema*, *luration*, or putting out
 of isoynt.
Elymus, *Panicum*, *Paniche*.
Emblici, vide *Mirobalani Emblici*.
Emmanes, *Hyscyamus*, *Benbane*.
Emphyodes, vide *Febris Emphyodes*.
Empeitici, vide *Mirobalani Emblici*.
Emplastros, *Emplastrum*, a plaister or salve.
Emplastrum album coctum officinarum, or *Empla-*
strum de Cerussa, a salve or plaister made of
 Cerusse or white Leade.
Emplastrum Apostolicum officinarum, *Emplastrum*
triapharmacum, vulgo *Apostolicum*.
Emplastrum Diagylon officinarum, *Emplastrum*
diachilon, a salve so called.
Emplastrum diagylon cum gummis officinarum,
 or *Emplastrum diachilon magnum*, the same
 salve with the gums.
Emplastrum de crusta panis, a salve of the crust

of bread.
Emplast. de baccis lauri, a salve of bay berries.
Emplastrum de Galbano, a salve of the gum
Galbanum.
Emplastrum griseum, or *Emplastrum de lapide*
Calaminari, a Salve made of Calamine
 stone.
Emplastrum de Meliloto, a salve of Melilot.
Emplastrum de Muscilaginibus, *Emplastrum de*
muccaginibus, a salve made of Pusclilages.
Emplastrum de pelle Arietis, a salve made of a
 Rams-skin.
Emplastrum Triapharmacum, vide *Emplastrum*
Apostolicum.
Emplastrum viride Chirurgorum, a greene salve
 of the Chirurgions.
Empyrotomos, *pronus raptus*, a kinde of Cramp.
Empneumatosis, *Condensatio Spiritus plurimi in*
ventriculo, *ventositie* or windines in the
 stomache.
Empyema, *Parulenta excreatio*, a spitting of
 corrupt matter out of the chest of the body.
Endivia, *Intubus*, *Endiue*.
Eglentaria, *Rosa siluestris*, *Eglentine*.
Enneaphylon, *Consiligo*.
Entomum, *Helleborus albus*, *Peselewort*.
Ephemera Febris, a light feuer that continueth
 but one day.
Ephemerum Colchicum, or *Ephemerum delete-*
rium, or *Ephemerum lethale*, *Hermodactyls*.
Ephialtia, or *Ephialtum Atij*, *Paonia mascula*,
 a kinde of Diony.
Ephialtes, or *Epiates*, *Suppressio nocturna*, a dis-
 ease called the Mare.
Ephydron, *Cauda equina*, *Hoyle tayle*.
Epiates, vide *Ephialtes*.
Epielottis, *Sublinguium*, the couer of the throte,
 the flap.
Epielossium, *Vuularia*, *Hoyle tong*.
Epicerus Hippocratis, *Fenum gracum*, *Fence*
græke.
Epidemia, *Pestis*, the Plague, or Pestilence.
Epiphyllocarpon, *Hippoglossum*, double tong.
Epilepsia, *Comitialis morbus*, the falling sicknes.
Epilepticus, he that hath the falling sicknes.
Epithymum or *Epithymus*, *Dodder*, that is, *Cassi-*
ta thymi.
Equapium, *Smallage*.
Equicauda, *Hippuris*, *Hoyle tayle*.
Equisetum, the same.
Equitium, *Hippuris*, *Hoyle tayle*.
Eracantha, *Carduus amaris*, *Wild Saffron*.
Erestdanum Theophrasti, *Centimorbia*, herbe
 twopence.
Ergasma, a kinde of Pirrh.

Erica,

The third Index.

Erica, Heath.
Eristalis, *Canda muris*, stone crop.
Eruca, *Enzomum*, white Mustard seed.
Eruca sylvestris, wilde Rocket,
Erynum, *Orobis*, Tares, or bitter Detches.
Eryngium, Sea holine, or Sea holly.
Eryngium marinum, Sea holly.
Eryngium minus, *Coronopus Rondoletij*, *Spina Stella*, *Eryngus* the lesser.
Erysimum Theophrasti, *Camelina Herbariorum*.
Erysipelas, an inflammation called the Rose.
Eryisceptum, *Cyperus*, wilde Galangall.
Eryreus, *Lapis Luciani*, *Margarita*, a pearle.
Erythrodanum, *Rubia*, Wadder.
Esula, *Tithymalus*, Spurge.
Esula Amygdalina, *Catoputia sylvestris*, wilde great Spurge.
Esula arborescens, great Spurge.
Esula camosa, wilde Spurge.
Esula lactariola, sea Spurge.
Esula maior, *Pityusa*, the great Spurge.
Esula dulcis, a kinde of Spurge.
Esula laifolia, broad leaved Spurge.
Esula marina, sea Spurge.
Esula minor, the lesser Spurge.
Esula papaueracea, a kinde of Spurge.
Esula petraea, stone Spurge.
Esula solisegua, or *solsequia*, a kind of Spurge.
Esula vallis, the common Spurge.
Ethusa, *Cicuta*, Hemlocke.
Euphrasia, Eyebright.
Euphrasia carulea, *Myosotis*.
Eunuchium, headed Lettice.
Eupatorium, Agrimony.
Euphorbium, the iuice or gum of an herbe also called *Euphorbium*.
Euphrosynon, *Buglossa*, Buglosse.
Euphrosine, *Euphrasia*, Eyebright.
Eupetalon, Lozel, or Laury.
Euphrosinum, Bourage or Buglosse.
Eupteron Apuleij, *Trichomanes*, Paydens haire.
Europs, *lapis Iudaicus*, a kinde of stone.
Eusine, *Parietaria*, Pellitory of the wall.
Eutaticon, *Satyrion Erythronium*, a kinde of Ragwort, or dogs stones.
Eutyglycea Theophrasti, Licozice.
Enzomum, or *Enzomus*, Rocket.
Exarthrema, luration, vide *Eluxatio*.
Excerta, *Vipera*, a Tiper.
Exuvia Vipera, a Tipers skin.

F.

F *Aba*, *cyanium*, a Beane.
Faba Iouis, *Hyoscyamus*, Henbane.

Faba Lupina, *Lupinus*, Lupines.
Faba sulla, *Hyoscyamus*, Henbane.
Fabium, *Chelidonium*, Celandine.
Fabulum, *Hyoscyamus*, Henbane.
Fagus, a Beech tree.
Falerum, *Vinum Apianum*, Muscadell.
Farcusum, ruff-eard wheate.
Farfara, *Bechium*, folefote.
Farfarago, *Tussilago*, the same.
Farfarella, the same.
Farina volatilis, mill dust.
Farrago, *Secale*, Rye.
Fasciculus manualis, a handfull.
Fascolus, french Beanes.
Faseanus, a fefant.
Fastidium, *Fastidium stomachi Ciceroni*, *Ciborum* horror *Aureliano*, *Fastidium in cibis Plinio*, *Anorexia*, lothing of meate.
Febres errabunde, or *erratica*, a wandring ague.
Febres languida, a faint or lither ague.
Febres phrycodes, Agues that come with heate about the Shoulders.
Febres putride, Agues, which are caused of putrifaction of the bloud in the vaines.
Febris, in Græke *Pyretos*, an ague.
Febris ardens, *Causas*, *Causas*, *Causas*, a very hot and burning ague.
Febris astringens, an ague that bindeth the bodie.
Febris continua, or *continuata*, *Syneches*, a continuall ague.
Febris Diaria, or *Febris Ephemera*, or *Ephemeros*, vide *Ephemera*.
Febris Empyodes, an Ague, which by reason of heate rayseth blisters in the mouth.
Febris Ileriadis, an ague that bringeth the yellow Jaundise.
Febris Hepiala, or *Epiala*, by *Aelunarius Epialus*, a flegmatike ague.
Febris Hemitritica, a bassard tertian ague.
Febris Helica, a consuming ague.
Febris Lippyrria, an ague with an extreme outward cold, and violent inward heate.
Febris marasmodes, *marcor*, *Febris helica cum marcore*, a pining ague.
Febris quartana, a quartane or fourth dayes ague.
Febris quotidiana, a continuall ague.
Febris Rhodes, an ague with a fire.
Febris tertiana, a tertian or third dayes ague.
Febrisfuga, *fel terra*, Centozie.
Fecula, *Alumen fecis*, calcined wine leafe.
Fel Draconis Chymistarum, a kinde of Quick siluer.
Felicula, *Polypodium*, Polypody.

Ferraria

The third Index.

Ferraria minor, *Sanicula*, *Sanicle*.
Ferri rubigo, the rust of iron.
Ferri sex, or *Ferri scoria*, or *Ferri sterciu*, the refuse of iron.
Ferrugo, the rust of iron.
Ferrumen camentorum, white lyme.
Ferula sylvestris, *Thapsia*, *Fenell* giant, or herbe Sagapene.
Fescera Arabum, *vitis alba*, white Bygony.
Fesim Arabum, *vitis alba*, the same.
Fex vini, wine lase.
Fex vini vsta, vide *Fecula*.
Ficulna folia, *Figitæ* leaues.
Ficu, a fig tree.
Ficu passæ, dyed Figs.
Ficu, *Marisca*, *Sycou* and *Sycosis*, the pyles or hemorhoydes in the fundament of a man.
Filicula, *Polypodium*, *Polipody*.
Filicula asellorum, *Onopretum*, Hayden haire.
Filipendula, *Oenanthe*, *Saxifraga rubra*, *Drops wort*.
Filius ante patrem, *Lysimachia corniculata*, or *Silquosa*, loose strife, or water willowes.
Filix, *Pteris*, *Ferne*.
Fisticum, a kinde of nut called also *Pistacium*.
Fistula, a continuall issue.
Flammula officinarum, *Ranunculus rotundus*, vide *Flammula*.
Flammula Gæza, *Herba trinitatis*, *Harts ease*.
Florecaulis, flowered Cabbage.
Flos angelicus, *Auricula muris minor*, the lesser *Spoufcare*.
Flos anserinus, *Bellum maius*, *Daisies*.
Flos dñi Iohannis, *S. Johns wort*.
Flos louis, *Harts ease*.
Flos Garryophyllorum officinarum, *Gillofers*.
Flos lactis, *Creame*.
Flos diua Magdalena, *Spica romana*, herbe magdalenic.
Flos regius, *Warks spurte*.
Flos maris, *Parinacitty*.
Flos Rosarum, *Anthera*, the yelloe seede within the Rose.
Flos tunicus, *Gillofers*.
Feniculum, *Fenell*.
Feniculum porcinum, *Peucedunum*, dog fenell.
Fenum gracum, *Fenegreæke*.
Folia lauri, *Bay leaues*.
Folium, *Folium Indicum*, *Malobathrum* or *Malobathrum*, *Betrum*, *Batrum*, or *Betrum Indicum*, seu *Batrum Indicum*. This is called of the Arabians *Tembul*, or *Tembucum*, of the Greeks *Malabathron*, *phyllon*, *phyllon Indicum*, of *Etiou* *phyllon Scylmatos*, *Indian leafe*. It is a sweete smelling leafe of India, which

there is found in the standing poles, and driueth on the water without any roote. The inhabitants there gather them, and dry them. Our Apothecaries vse the leafe of the Cinamom tree in stead of it, although the right *Malobathrum* may easily be gotte: but y^e commoⁿ erro^r wil hardly be amended.

Folium Indicum, vide *Folium*.
Folliculus bombycis, *Silkewoymes nest*.
Fontanella, a *Fontanel*.
Formica, an *Ante*.
Formica, *Herpes*, a coroding vicer.
Formica miliaris, *Herpes miliaris*, the same.
Fragaria, *Strawbery leaues*.
Fragula, the same.
Fragum, a *Strawbery*.
Frassinula, or *Frassinella*, or *Frassinella germanica*, white *Diptamer*.
Frassinula Italica, *Polygonatum*, *Salomons seale*.
Fraxinus, an *Ash tree*.
Fraxinus montana, the lesser *Beech*.
Fraxinus pumila, *Diptamer*.
Frons, the forehead.
Fuga demonum, *S. Johns wort*.
Fuligo camini, soote of the chimney.
Fumaria, *Fumitory*.
Fumus terra, the same.
Fungus Abietis, a *Guthrome* of the Firre tree.
Fungus laricis, a *Guthrome* of the Turpentine tree.
Fungi, *Loadestwoles*.
Fungi Iuniperi, the *Guthrome* of the Juniper (tree).
Funis arborum, *Jupe*.
Fursur, *Wanne*.
Furfures capitis, the white dust of a mans head.
Furnunculus, a bile.
Fusus agrestis, *Attrachylis*, wilde *Saffron*.

G.

G Agates, *Zeate*.
Gaiacum lignum, vel *Guaicum*, a tree growing in the new found Isles.
Galbanum, or *Galbanus*, in Græke *Chalbane*, of *Plinie* *Stagonitis*, of the Arabians *Chene* and *Bezard*, of the Apothecaries *Galbanum*: it is the iuice or gumme of the herbe *Metopium*, which groweth in Syria.
Galanga, *Cyperus Babilonicus*, *Galangall*.
Galanga maior, the great *Galangall*.
Galanga sylvestris, wilde *Galangall*.
Galanga sylvestris rotunda, the round wilde *Galangall*.
Galanga sylvestris longa, long wilde *Galangall*.
Galeobdolon, *Galiopsis*, a kinde of dead nettles.
Galba-

The third Index.

Galbanus, *Pilula*, *Nux Cupressi*, a Cipresse put.
Galla, *Galles*, the fruite of an oake: but those that grow on our oakes will not be dyed, they are called of Galen *Onicicida*, and *Galla Asinine*.
Galls cristæ, *Clary*.
Gallia muscata, a sweete smelling confection of the Apothecaries so called.
Gallicus morbus, the french Pocks, the great disease, the Crinkomes, or Menus badge.
Galluricum, *Clary*.
Galluricum sylvestre, wilde *Clary*.
Gammarus, a Crab.
Gangites, *Gagates*, *Teate*.
Gariophyllata officinarum, herbe benet, herb blessed, or hares eye.
Gariophyllus officinarum, *Cloues*.
Gariophyllata herbariorum, herbe benet.
Gariophylla herbariorum, little or single Celofers.
Gariophyllum, or *Gariophyllus*, *Cloues*.
Garemantites, *Granatus*, a kinde of Ruby.
Gaster Nicandri, *Brassica capitata*, headed Cabage.
Gaster, *Ventriculus*, the stomach. (bage.
Gararia, *Nepita felina*, *Pep*.
Galatina cidoniorum, *Pharmalade*.
Gemelli, *Parotides* impostumes behinde y eares.
Gemma, *Lapillus pretiosus*, a Gemme.
Genista, *Wisme*.
Genicularis, *Valerian*.
Geniculata, *Polygonatum*, *Salomons seale*.
Genichella, the same.
Geniculum, or *Geniculus*, the same.
Geniculus latifolius, or *Geniculus maior*, the greater *Salomons seale*.
Geniculus angustifolius, or *Geniculus minor*, the lesser *Salomons seale*.
Genitale cerni, a Harts pisse.
Genitalis, *Gladiolus*, flags.
Genista, *Wisme*.
Genitura maris, *Spurge*.
Genitura herculis, a Bore tre.
Gentiana, *Gentian* or bitterwozt.
Gentiana, *Cruciata*, the same.
Georgiana, a kinde of *Valerian*.
Geostitis, the lesser *Houfelaëke*.
Geranium alterum Dioscoridis, *Pes columbinus*, *Pigeons fote*.
Geranium Robertianum, *Stozks bill*, *Pinkneedle*, *Shepherds bodkin*.
Gethyllis, or *Getium*, *Lækes*.
Gethyum, the same.
Geum Pliny, herba benedicta, herb benet.
Gieduar, *Zedoaria*, *Anthora*, *Seduary*.
Gigartha, *Vinacea*, the kernels that are in *Grapes* or *Kapsons*.

Ginger, *Zingiber*, *Ginger*.
Gingidium, *Ceresolium Hispanicum*, a kinde of *Gub*, *Nigella*, the herbe Gifte. (Cherwill.
Githago, *Pseudomelanthium*, *Cockle*.
Gladiolus, *Sedge*, or *Gladen*.
Gladiolus Arvensis, the same.
Gladiolus luteus, *Iris lutea*, the yelloſe floure *deluce*, or *Gladen*.
Gladiolus palustris angustifolius, the lesser *gladen*.
Gladiolus palustris latifolius, the greater *gladen*.
Gleos, *Viscum*, *Birdlime*.
Glandis calix, or *Glandis putamen*, the outward *Acozne huske*.
Glans Dryobalanus, an *Acozne*.
Glans Egyptiaca, or *Glans unguentaria*, the fruit of a tre also called *Ben*.
Glans Iouis, a *Chestnut tre*.
Glans sardonis, the same.
Glans quercina, an *Acozne*.
Glans unguentaria, vide *Glans Egyptiaca*.
Glans, a *Suppositoꝝ*.
Gladium, *Isatis*, *Wloade*.
Gladium minus, wilde *Wloade*.
Gladium sativum, *Wloade*.
Gladium sylvestre, wilde *Wloade*.
Glancium, is called of the Arabians *Memithe*: it is the iuice of a strange herbe growing in *Syri*. it is vsed only in this in *Sief Memithe*, which is called of the Greæks *Collyrium dsa*.
Gliba armena, *Bole armeniack*. (glancion.
Glechon, *Pulegium*, *Pennpropall*.
Glechon agrion, wilde *Spints*.
Gleffum, *Succinum*, *Amber*.
Gleucos, *Mustum*, new wine.
Globulus Cyparissius, a *Cypresse nut*.
Gluten, common glue.
Gluten anium, or *Gluten aucupum*, *Birdlime*.
Gluten auri, *Chrysocolia*, *Bozas*.
Gluten ligni, *Joiners glue*.
Gluten taurinum, or *Glutinum*, glue.
Gludis, *Paeonia*, a *Piony*.
Glyceraton, *Glycyrrhiza*, *Licozice*.
Glycyphyron, the same.
Glycyrrhiza, *Licozice*.
Glycis Pausania, *Sodden wine*.
Glycyfide, or *Glicifis*, *Piony*.
Glycyfites, or *Glycyfides*, *Vinum ex Paeonia*, con-
 feſtum, wine made of *Pionyes*.
Glythris Athenas, *Sodden wine*.
Gobius Apuleij, wilde *Spurge*.
Golfonium, *Rapum*, a *Rape rote*.
Gongyle, or *Gongylis*, the same.
Gongylis agria, *Rapum sylvestre*, a wilde *rape rote*.
Gonorrhæa, the running of the raynes.
Gorgonia, *Corallium*, *Coꝝall*.

The third Index.

Gorgonium, Gillet.
Gorgylon, *Pauli Torvillium*.
Gossipium, o2 *Gossipitium*, Cotton.
Gramen, *Agrostis*, Grasse.
Gramen porcinum, Knotgrasse.
Grana, vulgo *Granum tinctorium*, Couchenill.
Granata acidodulcia, o2 *Granata musa*, a kinde of Pomegranates.
Grana turdorum, Juniper berries.
Granatum officinarum, o2 *Granatum malum*, a Pomegranate.
Granatus officinarum, *Carbunculus garamanticus*.
Granum chermesinum, Couchenill.
Granum infellorium, the same.
Granum maris rubri dñi Hieronimi, *Margarita*, a Perle.
Granum paradisi, *Cardamomum officinarum minus*, Graines.
Granum tinctorium, Couchenill.
Guttacium lignum, a tree growing in the new found Isles so called.
Ginguedes Arabum, the vaines in the necke.
Gula, the thoroate.
Gulibca, *Cortex exterior nucum*, the outward shell of a Walnut.
Gummi Arabicum, Gum Arabeck.
Gummi Cerasi, the gum of a Cherry tree.
Gummi Iuniperi, the gum of the Juniper tree.
Gummi Sarcocolla, vide *Sarcocolla*.
Gynacium, *Stimmi*, Antimony.
Gypsum, o2 *Gypsiu*, a plaister.
Gyrenia, *Ruscus*, Baneholme.

H.

H *Abilla*, o2 *Habiola Herbariorum*, *Lupulus*, Hops.
Hemoptis, o2 *Hemaptisis*, a spitting of blood.
Hemorrhoids, *Sanguinis profluvium per venas ani*, the blading of the Hemorrhoides o2 Pyles.
Hemorrhoides verrucalæ, the Pyles.
Hemorrhoides nasi, an ulceration of the nose.
Hemostasis Democriti, *Symphitum*, Comfrey.
Hemagonum, *Pæonia*, a Piony.
Hemictinus, *Scordium*, water Lilies.
Hematites, *sanguinarius lapis*, a blood stone.
Hatica, *Chondrus*, a kinde of cozne.
Halicacabites, winter Cherries.
Halicastrum, Wheate.
Halmestera, Olives.
Halicacabus, *Solanum rubrum*, winter Cherries.
Halpastos, *Oliua conditanea*, Olives.
Halmas, the same.
Haloxanthum, and *Halfonium*, *Sputa maris*, the

froth of the sea.
Halos anthos, *Parnacitay*.
Harmala, *Ruta sylvestris*, wilde Rue.
Harmel, *Besaja*, the same.
Harmagrimon, *Dracunculus*, Dragons.
Harpax, *Succinum*, Amber.
Harundo Enodis, *Calamus fistularis*, a kinde of reede without ioynts, which hath been used in steele of quills to make pens.
Harundo Sepiaria, o2 *Harundo Sepicularis*, a kinde of reede.
Hartanita officinarum, *Cyclaminus*, Solves bread.
Haslularegia Apuleij, *Rosa Autumnalis*, winter Rose.
Haslula Dioscoridis, *Asphodelus*, the same.
Hedera humilis vel terrestris, Alehoof, o2 highoe.
Hedera, a wasting o2 consuming feuer.
Hedera pluvialis, vide *Hedera humilis*.
Hederalis, *Asclepias*, Swallow wort.
Hedypnos, Dandelion, o2 yellow Cichory.
Hedysmus, Garden mints.
Heilbague, o2 *Heilbane Arabum*, *Cardamomum minus officinarum*, Graines.
Heilbane, the same.
Helenium, Elecampane.
Helioharane Atij, Knotgrasse.
Heliotropius lapis, *lapis viridis*, a Jasper stone.
Helix, *Capreolus vitis*, the little tendzels of vines.
Helleborum, o2 *Helleborus*, Paslewort.
Helleborum nigrum, the black Paslewort.
Helmintobotane, vide *Zeduria*.
Helxine, *Perditum*, Pellitory of the wall.
Hemerocallis, Daffodill.
Hemicrania, o2 *Hemicrane*, a kinde of headach, when but one side of the head is grieved.
Hemionium, *Asplenium*, Scalserne, o2 fingers ferne.
Henne Arabum, *Cyperus*, *Alcanna*.
Hepar, the Liver.
Hepaticus, one that is diseased in the Liver.
Hepatis oppilatio, an obstruction o2 oppilation of the Liver.
Hepatica, the liuer baine.
Hepatica herba, Agrimony.
Hepatica fontana, Liverwort.
Hepatica saxatica, stone Liverwort.
Hepiala, vide *Febris hepiala*.
Hepsema, *Mustum coctum*, sodden new wine.
Heptapleuron, broad Plantaine.
Heptaphyllon, *Tormentilla*, Tormentill.
Heracleotis Calimachi, o2 *Herachea Galeni*, the Roade stone.
Herba dñi Anthonij, Selseheale.

The third Index.

Herba Apoplectica.
Herba Apotemmatica, Scabious.
Herba apum, Melissa, Baulme.
Herba Aritritica, Cowslips.
Herba Basilica, Ocimum, Basil.
Herba benedicta, Valeriana, Galeriane.
Herba calicularis, Henbane.
Herba capillaris, Venus, Hayden, or Lady
haire.
Herba capillaris Apuleij, the same.
Herba casta, Paeonia, Piony.
Herba clauellata, Harts ease.
Herba crinita Apuleij, Hayden haire.
Herba cincinnalis, Tereuine.
Herba columbaris, wilde Cypresse.
Herba cochlearis, Brassica marina, sea cole.
Herba centonica officinarum, Absinthium mari-
num, sea Wormewood.
Herba diua Maria Magdalena, Phu ponticum,
a kinde of Galerian.
Herba diua Otilia, Consolida regalis, Larks spur.
Herba diui Petri, the lesser Gentian.
Herba diui Quirini, Wolfe howse.
Herba diui Georgij, Phu ponticum, a kinde of
Galerian.
Herba diui Ruperti.
Herba diui Valentini, Paeonia alba, a kinde of
Piony.
Herba flammea, Harts ease.
Herba flauca, Melilotum nobile, Melilote.
Herba fortis, Consolida Saracenica.
Herba fullonum, Taffell.
Herba hederalis, Asclepias, Swallow wort.
Herba hirundinaria minor, the lesser Celandine
or Wylewort.
Herba inguinalis, Bubonium, an herbe called also
Affer.
Herba Iouis, Sedum, Houslecke.
Herba lactaria, Tithymalus, Spurge.
Herba lanaria.
Herba leporina, a kinde of Hallowes.
Herba Mercurij, Mercurialis, herbe Mercury.
Herba margarita, Daisies.
Herba militaris, Millefolium, Parrot, or Pose-
blæde.
Herba mula, Asplenium, Fingerferne.
Herba muralis Celsi, Bellitory of the wall.
Herba ocularia, Eyebright.
Herba ophthalmica, the same.
Herba orbicularis, Cyclaminus, Rape violet.
Herba panarcy Herbariorum, Lamium album, a
kinde of dead nettles.
Herba paralysis, Cowslips.
Herba paucis, Persicaria, Ars smart.
Herba pedicularis, Staphisagria, Licebane.

Herba perdiculis Apuleij, Perdicium, Persicary.
Herba pulicaris, Persicaria, Ars smart.
Herba primi floris, herba paralytica, Primroses.
Herba pyrifolia, seu perifolia Herbariorum, Pyrola,
wilde bætes, or winter græne.
Herba Roberti, and Herba Ruperti, herb Robin,
Herba regia, Basil.
Herba sanguinalis, Polygonum, Knotgrasse.
Herba sanguinalis mas, the male Knotgrasse.
Herba sanguinalis femina, Polygonum femina,
Knotgrasse female.
Herba sardonica, Ranunculus, Crowfoote.
Herba scelerata, Idem.
Herba scorbuti, Brassica marina, Scurvygrasse.
Herba salutaris Apuleij, Rosemary.
Herba solis Herbariorum, S. Johns wort.
Herba solis Etij polygonum, Knotgrasse.
Herba Sophia Herbariorum.
Herba sortis, Consolida saracenica.
Herba stataria, Pencedanum, Dogs fenell.
Herba sacra, Verbena, Tereuine.
Herba Trinitatis, Harts ease.
Herba topiaria, Bearefoote.
Herba tonitru, Sedum, Houslecke.
Herba tunica officinarum, Celosers.
Herba tunica, Gordonij Ocimastrum.
Herba tunica Minsiedi, Celosers.
Herba turca, Carduus benedictus, or blessed
thistle.
Herba Thymiana Herbariorum, Tyme.
Herba vermicularis, Sedum minus, Prickmadam.
Herba virginea, Parthenium, Feuersew.
Herba vitriaria, Bellitory of the wall.
Herba vitri Auicenna, Perdicium, the same.
Herba urinaria Herbariorum, Hedipnois, Dan-
delion.
Herba vrceolaris, Bellitory of the wall.
Herculeus morbus, the falling euill.
Hermodactylus Arabum, Dogs bane.
Hermodactylus Dioscoridis, Pentaphyllon, a kinde
of dogs bane.
Hermodactylus Aluany, the roote of Behen.
Hermodactylus Nicolai Myrepsi, the same.
Hermodactylus albus, white Behen.
Hermodactylus Rubens, red Behen.
Hernia, Ramex, a rupture.
Hernia Osceana, a great rupture.
Hernia Oscealis, the same.
Herpicantha, Acanthus, Bearefoote.
Herpes, a coroding bleer, or wolfe.
Herpes exedens, the same.
Herispila, Erysipelas, an inflammation called
the rose.
Herpillum, Serpillum, wild tyme, or Ladies bed,
Hesperis, Viola lutea, Wall flowers. (draw.
Hibiscus,

The third Index.

Hibiscus, a kinde of *Shallow*.
Hieracopodium, *Lychis sylvestris*.
Hiera pichy, a purging confection so called.
Hierobotane *Dioscoridis*, *Verbena*, *Mercurine*.
Hierobotane *Scribonij*, *Betonica*, *Betonie*.
Hieralogodion officinarum, 02
Hiera lagadij, the name of a purging confection.
Hiera picra, 02
Hiera picra simplex, a very bitter confection.
Hiera Russi, a purging confection.
Hiera Athenai, and
Hiera Theophrasti, the *Flourdeluce*.
Hieromyrtus, *Ruscus Anacholine*.
Hilbane, *Granum paradisi*, *Graines*.
Hippocras fontis officinarum, *Aqua Hippocratica*,
Hippocras.
Hippocras officinarum, *Vinum Hippocraticum*, the same.
Hippocraticum vinum, the same.
Hippocistis officinarum, vide *Hypocistis*.
Hippolapathum, a water *Docke*.
Hippoglossum, *Adders tong*.
Hippomalache, *Malua equina*, horse *Shallows*.
Hippofelinum, *Angelica*.
Hippoplenon, *Houndes ribbe*, a kinde of *Plantaine*.
Hippuris, *equisetum*, Horse *taile*.
Hirundinaria, a Horse *leach*.
Hirudo, the same.
Hirundo, a *Swallow*.
Hispanach Arabum, *Spinachia*, *Spinage*.
Hordeum, *Barley*.
Hordeum Galaticum, *Rice*.
Hordei cremor, *Pisana*, *Barley hulked* and *soden* in water.
Humeralis vena, the *shoulder vaine*.
Humerus, the *shoulder*.
Humor Scirpaei poetarum, *Podagora*, the *Gout*.
Humulus, *Lupulus*, *Hoppe*.
Hyacinthus, *Helodius*, *Porphyrantes*, a purple flower that we call *Crowtoes*. There are sower kinds of it, two of them (as the greater and lesser) are most in vse: the other two sortes I will passe ouer for breuitie sake. The first kinde hath narrowe leaues like the wilde *Dionion*, with a stalk about one span in height, vpon this on euery side grow flowers of a light purple colour, much like the *Amethyst*, or *Jacinth* stone: on the top of all are the flowers somewhat lesser, & sadder in colour. This is the right *Hyacinthus* of *Dioscorides*; it groweth commonly in tiled grounds, and of some is called *Hogs opinion*, because *Hogs* greatly delight in cat-

ting of it: the *Herbarists* call it *Hyacinthus maior*, and *Bulbus porcinus*. The other is somewhat lesse, and groweth in woods; it flowreth in *March*, and hath pretie little blew flowers, not much vnlike the *May Lillies*, or *Liriofantie*, the roote is like little *Dionions*. This is called in some places blew *May flowers*; of the *Herbarists*, *Hyacinthus minor*, *Allium caninum*, and *Bulbus caninus*. *Palladius* also maketh mention of a blew *Hyacinthus*. In like sorte is the yellow *Lillie* *Lilium luteum*, or *Hemerocallis*, the *Hyacinthus* of *Ouid*, which *Theocritus* calleth *Hyacinthus scriptus*, to make it differ from the right *Hyacinthus*: the *Herbarists* call it *Hyacinthus poetarum*. *Virgil* calleth it *Hyacinthus suane rubens*, & *Hyacinthus mollis*; and *Pausanias* termeth it *Comosandalon*.
Hyacinthus maior Herbariorum, 02
Hyacinthus Dioscoridis, *Crowtoes*, vide *Hyacinthus*.
Hyacinthus minor Herbariorum, vide *Hyacinthus*.
Hyacinthus Palladij, vide *Hyacinthus*.
Hyacinthus poetarum, *Hemerocallis*, vide *Hyacinthus*.
Hyacinthus Ouidij, vide *Hyacinthus*.
Hyacinthus mollis Virgilij, yellow *Lillies*.
Hyacinthus scriptus Theocriti, vide *Hyacinthus*.
Hyacinthus suane rubens, vide *Hyacinthus*.
Hyacinthus gemma, a *Jacint*.
Hydrargyrum, *Argentum vinum*, *Quicksiluer*.
Hydrargyrum nativum, *vomica liquoris aeterni*, & *verum omnium venenū Plinio vocatur*, *Quicksiluer* of the *Pine*.
Hydrargyrum factitium, *Quicksiluer* which is made of *Cinoper*.
Hydrolapathum, *Lapathum palustre*, water *Dockes*.
Hydromeli, *aqua mulsa*, *Peade*.
Hydrophobus, a rabid cane morsu, hee that is bitten of a mad dogge: he that is asfeard of water.
Hydropiper, *Periscaria*, *Arse smarte*:
Hyppofelinū, *Apium palustre*, *Louage*, *Alisander*.
Hyophthalmus, *Aster atticus*, the herbe *Bubonium*.
Hyoscyamus, *Henbane*.
Hypericum, *S. Johns wort*.
Hypericum petraeum, is that which is now taken for *Carpobalsamum*, but vniually.
Hypochyma, *Pitche*.
Hypocistis is also called *Barba hircina*, and *Orobetrum*, it groweth at the roote of the herbe *Cistus*, much like the flower of the *Pomegranate*, and is full of iuice which being wrough

The third Index.

Wringing out and dried, is also called *Hypocistis*. and of Apothecaries *Hippocistis* or *Hypoquistidos indeclinabiliter*.
Hypogessum, *Sedum maius*, *Houllacke*.
Hypopium, *Thapsia*, *Turbith*.
Hysge *Pausania*, *Gratum tinctorium*, *Couchenill*.
Hysopites, wine of *Hysope*.
Hysopum, or
Hysopus, *Hysope*.
Hysopus humida officinarum, *Oesypus*, *Wool* of the flanke of a sheepe.
Hysteria, *Vterus*, *Loci*, *Matrix*, the Pother in women, or *Patrir*, or *Uombe*.
Hysteralgia, paine in the belly or *Patrir*.

I.

I *Arum*, *Cuckoe pit*.
Iacea, *Harts ease*.
Iacea nigra, *Morsus Diaboli* *Diuels bit*.
Iamenum officinarum, *Alumen scissile*, vide *Alumen*.
Iaspis, a *Jasper stone*.
Iaspis, a *greene Jaspis*.
Ichthiotheron, *Cyclaminus*, *Solves bread*.
Ibisus, *Althea*, *marsh Mallowes*.
Icteria, the *yellow Jaundies*.
Icteria Apuleij, *Libanotis coronalis*, *Roseniary*.
Icterus, *Morbus regius*, the *yellow Jaundies*.
Iecur, the *Liver*.
Ignis Hippocratis, *Isatis*, *Woad*.
Ignis dui Anthonij, or
Ignis sacer, *Erysipelas*, the *Rose*.
Ileos, or
Ileus, or
Iliaca passio, or
Iliaca, a *wringing in the small guts*.
Ilecebra, *Piper murinum*, *Stonecrop*.
Illinctus, *Ectegma*, a *medicine which is licked*
bp and not swallowed.
Imaginatio, an *imagination* or *conceit*.
Imperatoria, *Angelica*.
Impetigenaria arborea, *Lichen arboreus*, a *kind of*
Liverwort.
Impetigenaria petraea, *Lichen saxatilis*, *Liver*
wort.
Impetigenaria saxatilis, *Lichen*, the *same*.
Impetigo, a *Ringworme*, or *dy scab*.
Inanitis, *emptines of the body*.
Incesum, *Thuis*, *Frankincense*.
Incrementum, the *increasing of a sickness*.
Incubus, *Ephialtes*, *Fannorum in quiete ludibri-*
um, as *Pliny* saith, the *night-mare* or *Bag*,
it is a *little falling sickness*, and is a *signe of*
madnes to come, or of the *falling euill*, or
Walsey &c.

Infusio Senae, the *infusion* or *steeping of Senae*
leaves.
Inguinalis, or
Inguinaria Dioscoridis, the *herbe Bubonium*.
Inguinaria Plinij, *Anserina*.
Intemperies, *Intemperatenes*.
Intestina gracilia, the *little guts*.
Intestina terrae, *Lumbrici terrestres*, an *Earth*
worme.
Intestinum duodenum, *Intestinum primum*, *Pilo-*
rus, the *gut next to the stomacke*.
Intestinum iejunum, *Nestis*, the *empty gut*.
Intestinum monoculum.
Intestinum cecum, the *blind gut*.
Intestinum primum, vide *Intestinum duodenum*.
Intestinum rectum, *Longanum*, the *Arsegut*.
Intubum, *Endivia*, *Endiue*.
Intubum sativum angustifolium, a *kinde of En-*
diue.
Intybus, &
Intybus sativus latifolius, *White Endiue*.
Inturis, *Capparid*, *Capers*.
Inversio ventriculi, *Anastrophe*, an *inversion of*
the stomacke.
Inula, *Helenium*, *Elecampane*.
Inula rustica Apuleij, *Symphitum magnum*, *Com-*
frey.
Ion, *Viola*, a *Violet*.
Ion porphyryon, *Viola purpurea*, a *Parch Violet*.
Ion melan Theophrasti, *Viola nigra*, the *same*.
Ion polyphyllon, *Viola multiplex*, *double Violets*.
Ion Agria, *Viola sylvestris*, *wilde Violets*.
Ireos sine Iriis officinarum, *Iris*, the *flouredeluce*
Iris, the *same*.
Iris alba, the *white flouredeluce*.
Iris Apula, the *same*.
Iris domestica, the *same*.
Iris Florentina, the *same*.
Iris Germanica, the *blew flouredeluce*.
Iris lutea, *yellow floweredeluce*.
Iris palustris latifolia, a *kinde of floweredeluce*.
Iris Seblanonica, the *flouredeluce*.
Isatis, *Glastum*, *Woad*.
Isatis minor, *wild Woad*.
Isatis sativa, *tame Woad*.
Issopus humida officinarum, *Oesypus*, *Wool* of the
flanke of a sheepe.
Ischias, *Coxarius morbus*, the *Sciatica*.
Ischiatica barbarorum, the *same*.
Ischuria, *urine retentio*, a *stopping of urine*.
Itea, *Salix*, a *Willow*.
Iuinba, *Arabum* & *officinarum* *Zizifum*, a *kind*
of fruit so called.
Iua officinarum, *Anga* or *Abiga*, *wild Cypress*.
Iuglans, a *Walnut tree*.

Iuglans

The third Index.

Juglans equina, the great Walnut.

Julebum oꝝ *Julepum*, a Julep.

Junci flos, *Schœnû Anthos*, *Squinanthum*.

Juncus angulosus Plinij, *Cyperus*, a kinde of Galangall.

Juncus odoratus, *Squinanthum*.

Juncus quadratus, *Celsi Cyperus*, a kinde of Galangall.

Juncus triangulus Plinij, *Cyperus*, the same.

Juniperus, a Juniper tree.

Juniperus acuta, the greater Juniper tree.

Juniperus maior, the same.

Juniperus minor, *Juniperulus*, and *Jupicellus*, the lesser Juniper tree, oꝝ the Gooseberry bush.

Juniperi bacca, vel

Juniperi grana, Gooseberries, oꝝ Juniper berries.

Innonia, *Rosa* Plinij, *Lilium*, a Lilly.

Isiquianus officinarum, *Hyoscyamus*, Henbane.

K.

K *Artam Arabum*, *Cnicus*, *Cartamus*, wilde Saffron.

Kanroch Arabum, *Chelidonium*, *Celandine*.

Keiri, *Leucoium*, Wallflowers.

Kerna Arabum, *Ricinus*, *Palma Christi*.

L.

L *Abrum Veneris*, *Dipsacus*, Tassell.

Labrusca, *vitis sylvestris*, the wilde Vine.

Labrusca flos, the blossome of the wilde Vine.

Lac amygdalinum, Almond milke.

Lac acidum, *Oxylacha*, sower milke.

Lac ebuteratum, Buttermilke.

Lac chalybatum, Roed milke.

Lac ouillum, oꝝ *Oninum*, Ewes milke.

Lactis cremor, *Pinguis*, *Flos*, vel *Pinguedo*, Creame

Lac scistum, Curded milke.

Lacca, *Cancanum*, a Gum so called.

Lacerta, oꝝ

Lacertus, a Reuet.

Lachryma draconis, a gum called *Sanguis draconis*.

Lachryma Iobi, *Lithospermum maius*, Gromill.

Lachryma Juniperi, *Sandaraca*, the Gum of the Juniper tree.

Lachryma Mariae.

Lachryma medica, *Assa fœtida*, a Gum so called.

Lachryma Syriaca, the same.

Lachryma vitis, *Aqua vitis*, Sappe of a Vine.

Lactaria Tithymalus, Spurge.

Lactuca, Lettice.

Lactuca cappadox Plinij, crumpled Lettice.

Lactuca asinina, *Ancbnsa*, Dychanet.

Lactuca Betica *Columelle*, great Lettice.

Lactuca Cecilians *Columelle*, white Lettice.

Lactuca crispata, curled Lettice.

Lactuca caprina, oꝝ

Lactuca marina, *Tithymalus*, Spurge.

Lactuca marina *Apuleij*, *Cataputia sylvestris*, great wild Spurge.

Lactuca Laconica Plinij, oꝝ

Lactuca sessilis, oꝝ

Lactuca capitata, headed Lettice.

Lacturris Plinij, *Brassica lacturra*, a kinde of Cabbage.

Lada, oꝝ

Ladon, oꝝ

Ladanum, oꝝ

Laudanum, this is called of *Dioscorides*, *Ledum*, *Laden*, and *Leden*. In the Apothecaries shop it hath his common name *Laudanum*. It is the dyed iuice of an herbe so called. The Herbarists call it also *Cistum laudaniferum*, and *Fruticem laudaniferum*.

Latitia Galeni officinarum, vide *Latificans*.

Lagopodium, oꝝ *Lagopus*, Hares foot.

Lagopus, the same.

Lamium Plinij, dead Nettles.

Lampfana, *Rapistrum album*, Cadlocke.

Lampas.

Lana succida, unwashed woll.

Lanaria, *Saponaria*, the herbe that Fullers vse in scouring of cloth.

Lana arborea, oꝝ

Lana xylina, Cotton.

Lanceola, narrow Plantaine.

Lanugo arborum, Moose.

Labdannum barbarorum, vide *Lada*.

Lapathum Dioscoridis, *Oxalis*, Sozrell.

Lapathum Galeni, Docke.

Lapathum acidum, a kind of Docke.

Lapathum acutum, a Docke.

Lapathum aquaticum, water Docke.

Lapathum cepcon, oꝝ

Lapathum sativum, Honkes Kubarbe.

Lapathum domesticum, oꝝ

Lapathum latifolium sativum, Herbe patience.

Lapathum equinum, water Dockes.

Lapathum latifolium,

Lapathum non acuminatum;

Lapathum platyphyllon, the greater Docke.

Lapathum barbarorum, vide *Lada*.

Lapillus Eriureus, a Pearle.

Lapis calaminaris officinarum, *Cadmia natina*, the Ware of Basse.

Lapis cœruleus, an Azure stone.

Lapis corrosivum, a corrosiue oꝝ corrodng stone.

Lapis

The third Index.

Lapis Cyaneus, an Azure stone.
Lapis Indicus, *Margarita*, a Pearle.
Lapis Indicus, a stone that purgeth Pelau-
 choly, or a Jewes stone.
Lapis Hepaticus, a Liver stone.
Lapis Lazulus officinarum, the Azure stone.
Lapis Eritraeus, *Margarita*, a Pearle.
Lapis Lyncis officinarum, *Lapis phrygius*, of some
 white Amber, of others a Thunderbolt, of
 others a stone that groweth in *Phrygia*.
Lapis Stellatus, or *Caruleus*, the Azure stone.
Lapis viridis, an *Vemeraude*.
Lapis vini, *Argoyle*.
Lappa maior, *Bardana*, the great Burre.
Lapsana, *Rapistrum album*, a kinde of Mustard
 seede.
Lasaron, *Galacticon*, *Angelica*.
Lascaphrum, *Naraphrum*, blacke Frankin-
 sence.
Laserpitium Gallicum, *Angelica*.
Laser medicum, or
Laser Syriacum, *Assa foetida*.
Lasomalum, *Cydonium*, a Quince.
Lathyrus, *Caraputia minor*, the lesser Spurge.
Lathyrus sylvestris, wild Spurge.
Lathyrus cicercula, the fruit or seede of Spurge.
Lauacrum Veneris, *Weasell* or fullers thistle.
Lauendula, *Lauander*.
Laureola, *Laurell* or *Lozell*.
Laurus, a Bay tree.
Lauri bacca, Bay berries.
Lauri folia, Bay leaues.
Laurus Baccalis Plinij, or
Laurus Baccifera, or
Laurus foemina, the she or female Bay tree.
Laurus mas, or
Laurus virilis, the he or male Bay tree.
Laurus rosea, *Nerion*, *Rose laurell*, or *Mlean-*
der.
Lecriscicum, *Vitex*, *Agnus castus*, the Chasse
 tree.
Lemonium malum, a Limon.
Lens palustris, or
Lenticula aquatica, water Lentils.
Lentiscus, the Pasticke tree.
Lentiscinum oleum, oyle of Pasticke.
Lentiscinarenina, Pasticke.
Lepra, the Leapry, a disease that maketh the
 skinne rough, with blacke wannish spots,
 and dye parched scales and scurffe.
Lepra leonina, a kinde of Leapry, in which the
 diseased groweth mad.
Leptocaryon, *Nux auellana*, a Walell nut.
Lethargus veteris, the Lethargie, a heauie
 and drowsie disease, in which the senses and

reason it selfe seemeth to sleepe.
Lencena Galeni, *Castanea*, a Chestnut.
Lence, *Populus alba*, the white Poplar tree.
Lence, *vitilago alba*, of the Barbarians *Mor-*
phaea alba, a white and drie and continuall
 scurfe.
Leucanthemis, or *Leucanthemum*, the hearbe
 Cammomill.
Leucoium Dioscoridis, *Viola lutea*, the winter
 Gilloflower.
Leuconia, *Candidum oni*, the white of an Egge.
Leucophlegmatias, *Hydros*, *Anasarca*, a kinde of
 Dropsie.
Leusticum officinarum, Louage.
Libadium, *Centaurea minor*, the lesser Centoyp.
Libanotis, wine made of Rosemary.
Libanotis Coronalis, Rosemary.
Libanotis Fernacea, or *Libanotis umbellifera*
Herbariorum, a kind of Rosemary.
Libanotis umbellifera, the same.
Libysticum, Louage.
Libanum or *Libanum Thue*, Frankincense.
Libyestason, *Glycyrrhiza*, Licorice.
Lichen, *Hepatica*, Liverwort.
Lichen, *Infectio*, & *Asperitas summa cutis*, cum
maxima prurigine, a Tettar or Ringworme.
Lichen Arboreus, *Pulmonaria officinarum*, Lung
 wort.
Lichen petraeus, or *Saxatilis*, Liverwort.
Lien, *Splen*, the Spleene or Pitt.
Lienteria, *Intestinorum lenitas*, a kind of fluxe of
 the stomacke, when the meate and drinke
 runneth from a man as he toke it, utterly
 without concoction or alteration.
Lignum Aloes, a kind of sweete wood so called.
Lignum guaiacum, or *Guaiaicum*, a tree growing
 in the new found Isles.
Lignum Indicum, *Lignum sanctum*, a kinde of
 wood so called.
Lignum paradisi, *Lignum Aloes*, a kind of sweete
 wood so called.
Ligamenta, sinewes.
Lignum sancta Crucis, *Agallochum*, a kinde of
 wood.
Ligusticum, Louage.
Ligula, *Vuula*, a little peece of flesh in the rose
 of the mouth.
Ligustrum, *Cyprus*, *Prinet*, or *Primpzint*
 tree.
Lilium, *Crinon*, a Lillie.
Lilium album, a white Lilly.
Lilium caeleste, *sylvestre*, the flourelace.
Lilium conualium, *Liriconfancie*, or *May Lil-*
lyes.
Lilium carneum, the blew flourelace.

Lilium

The third Index.

Lilium caprinum, *Periclymenum*, *Wolbblinde*, or
Honyfuckle.
Lilium inter spinas, the same.
Lilium luteum, *Hemerocallis*, vide *Hyacinthus*.
Lilium palustre *Herbariorum*, a water Rose.
Lilium Saracenicum, *Lilium sylvestre*, the Daff
sodill.
Lilium verum *Theophrasti*, *Lilium conuallium*,
May Lillies.
Limnæis, *Hirudo*, an Horseleach, or bloodsucker
Limnæis Apuleij, *Centaurum maius*, the greater
kind of Centooy.
Limonium malum, a Limon.
Linctus, *Eclegma*, *Lambetium*, a medicine or co
fection that is not chewed, but licked in, and
is called of the Apothecaries by an Arabian
name *Loboch*.
Lineleon, *Oleum Lini*, oyle of flaxe.
Linaria, wilde flaxe.
Lingua Asserina, Cose tong.
Lingua Arietis, *Arnoglossum*, water Plantain.
Lingua Bœtis, Buglosse.
Lingua Canina, *Cynoglossum*, Hounds tong.
Lingua Cervina, *Phyllitis*, Harts tong.
Lingua Onina, *Schœpes* tong.
Lingua pagina, *Hypoglossum*, double tong.
Lingua Ophioglossum, Serpents tong.
Lingua Serpentina, *Lingua Viperina*, *Echioglossum*,
the same.
Lingua vulneraria *Herbariorum*, the same.
Lingulæ, or *Lingua Plinii*, the same.
Linosyris, *Chimædrys*, the herbe Germander, or
English Treacle.
Linosyris, *Marrubium*, Horehound.
Linosyris, *Mercurialis*, French Percurie.
Linum, flaxe.
Lupatudo *Ophthalmia*, blearednes of the eyes.
Lupatymia, *Defectus animi*, *Deliquium animi*, a
fwooning, wherein one seemeth to be dead.
Liquiritia Officinarum, *Glycyrrhiza*, *Licozice*.
Liquor medicus, & *Liquor Syriacus*, *Asa fetida*.
Lirium, *Lilium*, a Lilly.
Litaium, a kind of nuts comonly of the Apo
thecaries called *Fistici*.
Lithargyrii, *Spuma argenti*, *Litharge* or white
Leade.
Lithargyrium argenti, the same.
Lithargyrium Auri, a kinde of Litharge.
Lithiasis, *Calculus renum*, & *Vesica*, the disease of
the stone in a mans body ingendred.
Lithodendron, *Corallium*, Corall.
Lithonitron, *Confectio calculum frangens*, a con
fection of the Apothecaries so called, which
drieth away, and breaketh the stone in a
mans body.

Lithospermum nigrum, *Lithospermum sylvestre*,
wild Gromill, or Graymill.
Lithospermum sylvestre, the same.
Loch Arabum, *Linctus*, *Lambetium*, *Eclegma*, a
thin confection, of the Arabians called *Lo
hoch* in plurali numero, which is *Eclegma*.
Loch ad Asthma, a thin Confection against the
extreame & vehement stopping of the bzeā.
Loch de Cancris, a confection made of *Crevisses*.
Loch de Farfara, a kind of confection so called.
Loch de Papauere, *Disapauer*, a cōfection made
of Poppies.
Loch de Passulis, a Confection of Raysons.
Loch de Pino, a certain Confection so called.
Loch de Portulaca, a Confection made of *Pur
saine*.
Loch ad Phibisim, a confection so called.
Loch de pulmone Vulpis, a confection made of the
lungs or lights of a ffore.
Loch sumum, & *expertum*, a Confection so called.
Loch de Scilla, a certaine Confection.
Loboch, *Eclegma*, vide *Loch supra*, a liquid con
fection.
Lonchitis altera, *Asplenium maius* *Herbariorum*,
Ceterach, *Scalferne*, or *fingerferne*.
Longanum, the Arlegut.
Lotus alba, Clauer, or thix leaved grasse, also
Helilot.
Lotus carulea, *Lotus lutea*, garden or tame *He
lilot*.
Lotus lutea, the same.
Lotus lybica *Diosc.*, *Lotus sylvestris*, wild *Helilot*.
Lotometra *Apuleij*, *Nymphaea*, the white water
Lilly or Rose, white Penuphar.
Lucumera, Lungwort, *Wolblade* or *Toxch
herbe*.
Lues, a Plague or Pestilence.
Lus Arabum, *Dracontium*, *Dragonwort*, or *Dra
gons*.
Lumbricus, and *Lumbricus terra*, a certaine
long worme in the earth, or in a mans body.
Luparia officinarū, *Lycostonū*, a kind of *Aconitū*.
Luph Arabum, *Dracontium*, *Dragons*.
Luph planum *Herbariorum*, *Dracontium minus*,
the lesser *Dragonwort*.
Luph crispum *Herbariorum*, *Dracontium maius*,
the greater sort of *Dragons*.
Lupinus, a kind of Pulse so called.
Lupulus, *Wops*.
Lupus reptans, and *Lupus salictarius*, *Lupulus*,
the same.
Lusciosus, or *Lusciosus*, *Nyctala*, it is one that
seeth very little in y night or in the morning.
Lutum Armenum, *Bolus armenus*, *Bolcarne
nicke*.

The third Index.

Lutū Lemnium, and *Lutum sigillatū*, is the right *terra sigillata*, which is brought vnto vs frō the Ile Lemnos.
Lychnis gemma, and *Lychnites*, *Carbunculus gilvus*, a kind of Ruby.
Lychnis agria, or *Lychnis sylvestris*, Rose Capion
Lycium, *Pyxantha*, *Spina buxea*, and of *Pliny Buxacanthus Chironius*, a medicine made of the iuice or decoction of the Bramble roste.
Lycostomum, one of the kindes of *Aconitum*.
Lycostomum ceruleum, the same.
Lyncurium, and *Lyncurius lapis*, *Succinum*, a precious stone congealed of the vaine of the beast *Lynx*.
Lymneum, and *Lymnesium*, *Centaureū*, *Cento*, or
Lypiria, vide *Febris Lypiria*.
Lysimachia, or *Lysimachium*, Willowe herbe, *Losestrife*, or water Willow.
Lysimachia cornuta, a kind of water Willow.
Lysimachia lutea, yellow *Losestrife*.
Lysimachia Dioscoridis, the same.
Lysimachia Melina, the same.
Lysimachia Plinij, a kind of Willow herbe.
Lysimachia purpurea, *Puvicea*, and *Spicata*, the purple water Willow or *Losestrife*.
Lysimachia punicea, the same.
Lysimachia filigiosa, bytowne Willow herbe.
Lytum, *Lysimachia*, Willow herbe, *Losestrife*, or water willow.

M.

M *Acer*, *Macis*. it is commonly taken for the spice called *Macis*.
Macheronium, the floured eluce.
Macia, *Anagallis*, white, or the *Dimpernell*.
Madon Plinij, *Nymphaea*, the white water Lily or Rose.
Madonais Theophrasti, *Nymphaea*, the same.
Magistrantia officinarum, *Pasterwort*, *Angelica*.
Magnes, and of *Galen*, *Magnetis*, the Loadstone
Magudaris sive *Magydaris*, a certaine herbe so called.
Maiorana, *Sampsysches*, french *Parierom*.
Mala armeniaca, an *Abzecoche*, or hasty Peach tree.
Mala precocia, the same.
Malabathrum, vide *Folium Indum*.
Malache, *Malua*, *Malloves*.
Malache agria, *Malua sylvestris*, wild *Malloves*
Malacia, *Pica*, a corrupt appetite by reason of humors gathered about the mouth of the stomacke, that is the affection of longing especially in women.

Malarocissus, a kind of herbe like vnto *Juy* so called.
Malicorium, *Cortex mali punici*, the outward shell or rinde of a Pomegranate.
Mali punici corium, the same.
Malobathrum, a certaine Indian leafe.
Maltum, *Spault*, such as *Betwers* put in their *Bere*.
Malua, *Malloves*.
Malua arborea, or *Malua arborecens*, *Hollyhocks* or marth *Malloves*.
Malua agrestis, wilde *Malloves*.
Malua Anserina, *Chenomalache*, cut *Malloves*.
Malua caballina, or
Malua equina, wild or horse *Malloves*.
Malua crispata, crisped *Malloves*.
Malua hortensis, or *Malua sativa*, garden *malloves*
Malua Leporina, a kind of *Malloves*.
Malua maior, *Malua equina*, the great wilde *Malloves*.
Malua pumila, or
Malua minor, the lesser *Malloves*.
Malua Romana, *Malua crispata*, romish *Malloves*
Malua transmarina, *Hollyhocks*.
Malua sativa, vide *Malua hortensis*.
Malua sylvestris, wild *Malloves*.
Maluaniscus, *Alibea*, *Hollyhocks*.
Malum pomum, an Apple.
Malum Assyrium, a Citron.
Malum aureum, an *Orange*.
Malum canum, a Quince.
Malum Citrium, vel *Citrenum*, a Citron.
Malum Citoneum, a Quince.
Malum granatum, a Pomegranate.
Malum Cydonium, a Quince.
Malum Lemonium, a Limon.
Malum Hesperium, a Citron.
Malum Lanatum, a Quince.
Malum Limonium, a Limon.
Malum Miluanum, a Quince.
Malum punicum, a Pomegranate.
Malum sylvestre, a Crab or wild Apple.
Malum Nerantium, an *Orange*.
Malus, an Apple tree.
Malus Cydonia, or *Malus Cotonia*, a Quince tree
Malus granata, a Pomegranate tree.
Malus Nerantia, an *Orange* tree.
Malus punica, a Pomegranate tree.
Man Arabum, a certaine kind of dewe.
Mania, *Furor*, *Rabies*, madnes.
Mania, *Herba Apollinaris*, *Penbane*.
Mandragora, the *Pandage*.
Manna, a kind of sweete dewe.
Manna bomicina, or
Manna Calabrina, a kind of *Panna* or dewe which

The third Index.

which is brought from Calabria: this is the common *Spanna* of the Apothecaries.
Manna Brianfona, a more excellent kinde of *Spanna* than the aforesaid.
Manipulus, *Fasciculus mannalis*, a handfull.
Manus Christi, *Radix palma Christi*, a kinde of *Ragwort*.
Manus Christi, *Frutex*, *Ricinus*, *Palma Christi*.
Marasmodes, vide *Hellica*.
Marassius, *Vipera*, an Adder.
Marasbrum, *Feniculum*, *Fennel*.
Marchasita officinarum, *Pyrites*, a kind of stone.
Margarita, or *Margarites*, a Pearle.
Marinella, *Valeriana*, *Valerian*.
Mariscus, *Ficus*, *Sycosis*, *Tuberculum in ano ad fici similitudinem*, the Piles.
Maro, *Centaurium magnum*, the greater *Cetozy*.
Marrubium, *Prassium*, *Hozehound*.
Marrubium aquaticum sine palustre, water *Hozehound*.
Maspeta, *folia Silphij*, the leaues of the hearbe *Silphium*.
Mastiche, *Resina Lentisci*, *Passicke*.
Mater Caryphyllorum, or *Caryophyllorum*, *Bothers cloues*.
Mater Herculeana Apuleij, *Nymphaea*, water *Roses*.
Mauicaria, *Feuerfew*.
Matrisalua, *Scarlea*, *Clary*.
Matrisylua Herbariorum, *Caprifolium*, *Honisuckle*.
Matrix, *Mediana vena*, the *Pedian vaine*.
Matrix, *Vierus*, the *Uombe*.
Matronaria sine Matronella, *Feuerfew*.
Mattiaca pila, *Martialis*, *Sapo*, *Sope*.
Mauiraria, *Dracontium*, *Dragons*.
Mecon, *Papauer*, *Poppy*.
Meconitis, *Cataputia sylvestris*, wild *Spurge*.
Meconrhoeas, *Papauer erraticum*, a *Cozne rose*.
Mediana, the *Pedian vaine*.
Medicamen de Turbul, a purging medicine.
Medulla, *Parrow*.
Mebezeregi Auicenna, *Pityusa*, *Spurge*.
Melanphyllon, *Acanthus*, *Bearcs claw*.
Melampodium, *Veratrum nigrum*, the blacke *Peese wort*.
Melampelos, *Helxine*, *Bellitozy* of the wall.
Melaerium, *Hony dew*.
Melancholia, *Mentis alienatio ex atra bile nata*, *moestitia metu coniuncta*, *Melancholy*, a kind of madnes.
Melanium Theophr, *Viola nigra*, a kind of Violet.
Melanthium, *Nigella*, *Bigell*, *Gitte*.
Mel, *Hony*.
Mel anacardinum, the *Hony* of *Anacardium*.
Mel esdrinum Hippocr, *Manna liquida*, *Hony dew*

Mel Mirobalanorum, the sirupe of *Pirobalans*.
Melroreum, *Hony dew*.
Mel rosaceum, sine *Mel rosarum*, *Hony* of *Roses*.
Melega, *sorghum*, a kind of *Spillet* brought fro *India*.
Meli Calaminon Arriani, *Saccharum*, *Sugar*.
Melia, *Fraxinus*, an *Alphe tree*.
Melicratum, wine & hony sodden together.
Melica Herbariorum, *Indian Spillet*.
Melilotum, or
Melilotus, *Spelilot*.
Melilotus Auicenna, great *Spelilot*.
Melilotus alba officinarum, white *Spelilot*.
Melilotus coronata, a kind of *Spelilot*.
Melilotus lutea officinarum, yellow *Spelilot*.
Melilotus minor, the lesser *Spelilot*.
Melilotus nobilis Herbariorum, a kind of *Spelilot*.
Melilotus Serapionis, a kind of *Spelilot*.
Melilotus Catonis, or
Melilotus Dioscoridis, *Italian Spelilot*.
Meline, or
Melinnus, *Panicum*, *Panicke*.
Meline Varronis, *Milium*, *Spill* or *Spillet*.
Meliphyllon, *Melissa*, *Baulme*.
Melissa, *Citrage*, the same.
Melissa Cretica, or
Melissa Turcica Herbariorum, *Turkish Baulme*.
Melissochortus Nicolai Myrepsi, or
Melissophyllum, *Baulme*.
Melittes, *honed wine*.
Melittana, and
Melittia, *Melissa*, *Baulme*.
Melizoron, *Mulsam*, *sweet wine* or *Peade*.
Melum aquaticum, a kind of *Ragwort*.
Melligo, *Manna*, *Hony dew*.
Melo, and
Melon, a *Pelon*.
Melocarpon, *Aristolochia longa*, long *Hartwort*.
Melopepo, *Melo*, a *Pelon*.
Melothrum, *Vitis alba*, *Byony* the white.
Menianthes, *trifolium bituminosum*, water *Clauer*.
Menium, *Peonia*, *Pyonie*.
Menogonium, *Pyony* flowers.
Meninges, *involucra duo*, *Cerebrum circumquaque contegentia*, quorum exterius, quod aduersus cranij impressiones cerebri veluti propugnaculum est, tegumentum, *Crassum* sine *dura Meninx* appellatur, & *Chirurgis dura mater*. Aliud quod tenuissimum est, & cerebro penitus coniunctum, *Choroides* appellatur, *Chirurgis Pia mater*: the two skins that copasse or wrap the baine.
Menses, or
Menstruum, the flowers or termes in women.
Menstruum album, the whites in women.
Meniba, *Miniba*, *Pints*.

The third Index.

Mentha aquatica, water Pints.
Mentha caballina, or *Mentastrum*, horse Pints.
Mentha crispata, ruffled Pints.
Mentha equina, horse Pints.
Mentha felina, *Nepeta felina*, Pep.
Mentha rubra, a kind of Pints, red Pints.
Mentha sativa, garden Pints.
Mentha sylvestris, wild or horse Pints.
Mentagra, *Menti impetigo*, a scabbednes of the face.
Mentastrum, *Mentha sylvestris*, wilde or horse Pints.
Mentastrum acutum Herbariorum, a kinde of wilde Pints.
Mentastrum Apuleij, or
Mentastrum Plinij, *Pulegium agreste*, wilde Pints.
Mentis error, Madnes.
Mercurialis, *Linosyris*, herbe Mercury.
Mercurius Chimistarum, *Hydrargyron*, Quicke Silver.
Mercurius precipitatus, Precipitate.
Mercurius sublimatus, Sublimate.
Meris, *Tripolium*, a kind of Turbith.
Meri Arabum, *Oesophagus*, the mouth of the stomacke.
Meseraica vena, certaine little vaines in the Liuer.
Mespilum, a Medlar or open arse.
Mespilus, a Medlar or an open arse tree.
Metallum, Pettall.
Metopium, *Ferula galbanifera*, the herbe of the which the gum Galbanum is made.
Metra Hippocratis, *Vernus*, the Wormbe.
Men Arabum,
Meon, or
Menm, Petwe.
Mezerion Arabum, *Lorell* or *Laurell*.
Mica thuris, *Mania thuris*, the fragments of Frankincense.
Micanalus, *flos gitaginis*, a Cozne rose.
Micbleta, a Confection so called.
Milax barbarorum, *Smilax*, *Taxus*, a tree like Fir
Milium, Millet.
Milium Indicum, sine
Milium saburrum, Indian Millet.
Milium solis, *Lithospermum*, Cromill.
Milifolia, or
Milifolium, Parrow, Peseblade, or Pilfoile.
Milimorbia, or
Milimorbum, Figwort.
Milos, *Taxus*, a tree like Firre.
Mistos Plinij, *Cinnabaris nativa*, natural Cinoper
Miluius, or
Miluius, a kite.

Minij gleba Celsi, *Terra lemmia*, *Terra sigillata*, or sealed earth.
Minium, red lead.
Minium Dioscoridis, or
Minium Plinij, *Cinnabaris metallica*, Cinoper.
Minium lemmium, terra lemmia, sealed earth.
Minium artificiale, artificiall Cinoper.
Minium nativum, *Cinnabaris metallica nativa*, naturall Cinoper.
Minium officinarum, or
Minium secundarium, red or burnt Lead.
Mintha, *Mentha*, Pints.
Mintha agria, *Mentastrum*, horse Pints.
Misceremum Apuleij, *Polygonum*, Knotgras.
Mitridanum Dioscoridis, *Trixago palustris*, water Germander.
Mitridatis, *Antidotus mitridatis*, Pithydate.
Mitridatium, or *Mitridatia Apuleij*, *Scardus*, water Germander.
Mina Cydoniorum, and *Mina Cydoniorum simplex officinarum*, *Syrupus Cydoniorum simplex*, the sirupe of Quinces.
Mina Aromatica officinarum, *Syrupus Cydoniorum Aromaticus*.
Mnion, *Muscus*, Poisse.
Mola, a piece of flesh without shape growing in a womans wombe.
Molge, *Salamandra*, a Salamander.
Moloch, *Malua maior*, the great Pallowe or Hollihocke.
Molotriculum Veneris.
Moly Galei, *Ruta montana*, wild Rue.
Molybdana Plinij, *Persicaria maior*, *Persicaria maculata*, the greater sort of Arselmart.
Molybditis Plinij, *Spuma plumbi*, *Litargyrii plumbi*, Litargy or white Lead.
Monembasites Nicolai Myrepsi, *Vinum Maluaticum*, wine made of Pallowes.
Monoceros, *Vnicornium*, an Unicorn.
Montulmus Gaza, *Vlmus montana*, a kinde of Clme.
Mora poma, sine fructus mori, Mulberries.
Morabati, Bramble berries.
Mora Celsi, Mulberries.
Mora rubi, Brambleberries.
Mora rubi Idai, Frambois.
Morbus arquatius, *Morbus regius*, the yellowe Jaundies.
Morbus caducus, *Morbus comitialis*, *Herculeum*, *lunaticus*, the falling sickness.
Morbus comitialis, vide *Morbus caducus*.
Morbus Dni Fiacari, *Condyloma*, the Emerods.
Morella Herbariorum, *Solanum*, Nightshade.
Morea, Mulberrie tree.
Morsus Diaboli, Devils bit.

Morsus

The third Index.

Morsus galline, running Burweate.
Morsus mulierum, Germander.
Moron, *Morum*, a Hulberg tree.
Morus, *Morea*, the same.
Morus vaticana, blackberry bush.
Moscu, *Muscu*, Puske.
Mosehocaryon, *Mosehocarydion*, a Nutmeg.
Mucago, *Mucilago*, and of the Apothecaries
Mucilago : it is a slime or iuice which is
drawen either out of herbs, rootes, or seedes.
Mula herba Gazæ, *Hemionium*, Harts tong.
Mulsum, swæte wine.
Multinervia, *Plantago maior*, the great Plan-
Multinodia, *Polygonum*, Knotgrasse. (taine.
Multinodia minor, the lesser Knotgrasse.
Mumia Arabi, *Pissasphaltum facilius*, Gummy.
Mumia Gracorum, *Pissasphaltum*, the same.
Mumia sepulchrorum, the same.
Muria, salt water, pickell, or bryne.
Muria Colymbadum, *Muria Olinari*, the liquo-
of Olives.
Muria Lemoniorum, the bryne of the Limons.
Muria Olinarum, Olive bryne.
Muralium, *Helixine*, Pellitory of the wall.
Muscattellum vinum, Muscadell.
Muscus arborum, Boske.
Mustum, new wine, or Puske.
Mustum coctum, foddren wine.
Myacantha, a Palme tree.
Myacantha Eginete, *Asparagus myacanthinus*,
Sparage.
Mycet, *Fungus*, a Toadestole, or Puske.
Myosotis, *Eufrafia cerulea*, blew Eyebright.
Myrex, *Formica*, an Ant, Emnot, or pismire.
Myrapia, or *Myrapidia*, *Pyræ muscatella*, a kinde
of pleasant and odoriferous Peares.
Myrica, *Tamarix*, a Tamariske tree.
Myricites, *Vinum Myricinum*, or *Tamaricinum*,
wine made of Tamariske.
Myrobalanus, *Bellerica*, a kinde of fruite grow-
ing in India.
Myrobalanus Cepula, vel *Chebula*, the same.
Myrobalanus curinus officinarum, *Myrobalanus*
flava.
Myrobalanus Empellica, or *Emblica*.
Myrobalanus inda, *Myrobalanus nigra*.
Myrobalanus Gracorum, *Myrobalanus unguen-*
taria, a strange fruite called Ben. Loke for
Ben or Behen in the second Index.
Myrrha, a swæte gum called Myrr.
Myrrha Troglodytica, a very excellent gum
so called.
Myrrhis, *Cicutaria*, *Rex*, *Cax*, also Parsly,
mock Cherull.
Myrsine, *Myrrhus*, or *Myrtus*, the Myrtle tree.

Myrsine agria, *Ruscus*, *Linæholme*.
Myrsinides, *Vnicordia*, *Bernicle*.
Myrtillus officinarum, *Bacca myrti*, the berries
of the Myrtle tree.
Myrtacantha, *Ruscus*, *Linæholme*.
Myrtus, a Myrtle tree.
Myrtus aculeata, *Myrtus acuminata*, a kinde of
Myrtle.
Myrtus humilis, the same.
Myrtus terrestris, *Ruscus*, *Linæholme*.
Myxa, or *Myxaria*, a kinde of fruite so called.

N.

N *Nacaphthon Pauli*, *Nacæanton*, *Narcaphthon*,
black or common Frankincense.
Naphta, *Petroleum*, *Bitumen liquidum*, and *Bi-*
tuminis Calamentum, a kinde of maunde or
chalkie clay.
Napellus, *Tota*.
Napellus, *Mossis Auicenna*, *Napellus salutaris*,
Antishora, it is a roote much like unto *Sed-*
uary, but yet is not the right *Seduary*,
but an other unknowne roote.
Napi, *Sinapi*, Mustard seede, or the herb it selfe.
Napus, sine *Napum*, a Turnep.
Narce, *Gentiana*, & *Centaureum magnum*, *Gent-*
tian, *Bitterwort*.
Narcissus, the white Daffodill.
Narcissus Autumnalis, *Flos Colchici*, a kinde of
Daffodills.
Narcissus luteus, a yelow Daffodill.
Narcissus Roseus, *Rhodium narcissus Herbariorum*.
Narcissus verus, a Daffodill.
Narcissus officinarum, *Leucoium Theophrasti*, an
Italian Daffodill.
Narcissus Virgilij, *Narcissus Theophrasti*.
Narcotica, or *Narcotica pharmaca*, *medicamen-*
ta, qua frigiditate torporem adferunt, it is a cer-
taine medicine which maketh people stu-
pefactive, or some of their members in-
sensible.
Nardinum, Oyle of the Spikenard.
Nardus, *Pardus*, or *Spica* from India, *Nardus*
Indica.
Nardus Celtica, *Nardus Romana*, *Nardus Gal-*
lica, a kinde of Spikenard.
Narcaphthon, *Thymiana*, a kinde of Frankin-
sence.
Nascaphthon, the same.
Nasturtium, *Nasturtium hortense*, towe Cresse,
garden Cresses, or Polesmart.
Nasturtium aquaticum, water Cresses.
Nasturtium album, *Raphanus marinus*, horse ra-
dish.

Nausea,

The third Index.

Nausea, a disposition, or will to vomit.
Nebula oculorum, the dimness of the eyes.
Nectris, or *Netris Pollucis*, *Olin conditanea*, an Oil.
Nephritis, *Renum dolor*, a griefe, or sickness in the reynes.
Nepeta, or *Nepita*, *Calaminta*, *Peper*.
Nepenthes, *Buglossum*, *Buglosse*.
Nenuphar, or *Nenuphar Arabum*, *Nymphaea*, the flower deluce.
Neregil, *Nux Indica*, an Indian Nut.
Neranzia malus, an Orange tree.
Neranzion, or *Neranzium malum*, the same.
Nerion, *Nerium*, *Rhododendron*, *Rose lawrell*, *Bay Rose tree*, *Oleander*.
Nervorum resolutio, or *desolutio*, is a dissolving or weakening of the sinewes, called *Paralysis*.
Nervus, a sinew.
Nesum Apuleij, *Centaurium magnum*, the great Centoey.
Neurospaston Plinij, *Oxyacantha Dioscoridis*, the Barbery tree, sharp or Tartbery tree, the white Thorne tree.
Nigella, *Melanthium*, *Coziander of Rome*, *Parde*, *Peperwort*.
Nigella alba, *Melanthium album*, white *Peperwort*.
Nigella Romana, *Coziander of Rome*.
Nigellastrum, *Cozne rose*.
Nihil album officinarum, *Pompholyx*, *Lutty*.
Nihil griseum officinarum, *Spodium Gracorum*, *Tutia Arabum*, gray *Lutty*.
Nil album officinarum, *Lutty*.
Nil griseum officinarum.
Nitrum, *Salt peter*.
Nonifolium, *Enneaphyllum*, wilde *Peperwort*.
Nucis myristica involucreum, *Nucis muscata involucreum*, *Macis*, the spice called *Pece*.
Nucis regia Iuli, the blossoms of the nut tree.
Nuclei pinei, the kernell of a nut so called.
Nucleus ferri, *Chalybs*, *Steele*.
Numularia, *Centummorbia*, silver grasse.
Nursina, *Pila Martialis*, *Napus*, a *Kape*, or *Turnep*.
Nux, *Nut*, and *Nut tree*: by this word *Nut*, is understood all fruites having hard shels like a *Nut*.
Nux auellana, a *hasell nut*.
Nux aromatica, a *Putmeg*.
Nux Basilica, a *Walnut*, or *Walnut tree*.
Nux castanea, a *Chestnut*.
Nux cyparissi, *Pilula cyparissi*, a *Cypresse nut*.
Nux equina, a *horse nut*.
Nux Indica, an *Indian nut*.

Nux Ingians, a *Walnut*.
Nux Longobardica, *Lombardy nuts*.
Nux Myristica, a *Putmeg*.
Nux Moscata, or *Muschata*, a *Putmeg*.
Nux Graca, *Amygdalus*, an *Almond*, or *Almond tree*.
Nux Heracleotica, a *hasell nut*.
Nux Myrepica, a *Putmeg*.
Nux Persica, a *Persian nut*, and *nut tree*.
Nux Pineae, *Pingles*.
Nux Pontica, a *hasell nut*.
Nux Regia, the same.
Nux Tassia, an *Almond*.
Nux Vomica.
Nux vnguentaria, a *Putmeg*.
Nyctalops, *Lusciosus*, one that is purblind.
Nycterus Aty, or *Nycterus*, a *Rearemouse*, or *Bat*.
Nymphaea, the yellow flower deluce, or water Lilly.
Nymphaea alba, the white water Lilly, or *Rose*.
Nymphaea heraclea Plinij, the same.
Nymphaea lutea, yellow water Lilly, or *Rose*.
Nymphaea minor, the lesser *Nenuphar*.
Nymphaea lutea minor, the lesser yellow water Lillyes, or *Roses*.

O.

O *A*, *Sorbus*, the *Servus tree*.
Ocimum, vide *Oxymum*, and *Oximum*.
Ocneron, *Ruscus*, a kind of shrub so called.
Oculus canis, *Conyza*, a certaine herb so called.
Oculus leporis, *Gariophyllata*, *Auens*.
Oculus suis, *Aster Aulicus*, *Sbare*, *Stirre*, or *Codwort*.
Ocymastrum, *Cardianthemum*, a kinde of *Gilliflowers* so called.
Ocymum, *Basilicum*, *Basill*.
Oedema, *Vndinia chirurgorum vulgo*, an impostume coming of *Stegmatick matter* without griefe.
Oenanthe, *Flos vitis sylvestris*, *Flos Labrusca*, the blossoms of the wilde vine.
Oenanthe herba, *Filipendula*, *Droptwort*.
Oenaron Pampinus, a vine leafe, or *græne branch*.
Oenomeli, *Mulsam*, *Swæte wine*.
Oenolithos, *Lapis vini*, *Tartarus*, or *Tartarum*, *Argoile*, or *Winestone*.
Oenorhodon, *Vini rosa*, *Wine rose*.
Oenos Vinum, *Wine*.
Oesophagus, *Stomachus*, *Orificium ventriculi*, the mouth of the stomack.
Oesipum, or *Oesipus*, the filthy oyle that is in the

The third Index.

the flanks of a Sheepe.
Olea, *Oliua*, the Olive tree.
Olea sylvestris, *Oleaster*, the wilde Olive tree.
Oleaster, the same.
Oleis *sex*, *Amurca Olei*, the Drege of Oyle.
Oleander, or *Oleandrum*, *Barbarorum Rhododendrum*, *Oleander*.
Oleum, *Olium*, Oyle of Oliues.
Oleum Anisi, Oyle of Annise.
Oleum Antimonij, Oyle of Antimony.
Oleum Amygdalinum, or *Oleum Amygdalarum dulcium*, Oyle of Almonds.
Oleum Amygdalarum amarum, Oyle of bitter Almonds.
Oleum balatinum, *Oleum glandis unguentaria*, Oyle of Bechen.
Oleum Camelinum, *Oleum sesaminum officinarum*, Oyle of Cammonill.
Oleum Chamæmelinum, the same.
Oleum Nucleorum Persicorum, Oyle of Peach kernels.
Oleum Caryophyllorum, Oyle of Cloues.
Oleum Cōstinum, Oyle of Costus.
Oleum Cucurbitinum, Oyle of Gourds.
Oleum Cucumeris Asinini, Oyle of wilde Cucumbers.
Oleum Cicinum, vide *Oleum Ricinum*.
Oleum cydoneorum, Oyle of Quinces.
Oleum Euphorbij, Oyle of Euphorbium.
Oleum Hyperici, Oyle of S. Johns wort.
Oleum Irimum, Oyle of the flower deluce.
Oleum florum nucis Juglandis, Oyle of the blossoms of the Walnut tree.
Oleum de Kerna, *Oleum ricinum*, Oyle of Palma Christi.
Oleum de lateribus, *Oleum philosophorum*, Oyle of bricks.
Oleum Laurinum, Oyle of Bayes.
Oleum ligustrinum, *Oleum cyprinum*, Oyle of Priuet.
Oleum Liliorum, Oyle of Lillies.
Oleum Lini, Oyle of Lin, or Flax.
Oleum macis, Oyle of Mace.
Oleum mastichinum, Oyle of Masticke.
Oleum matricaria, Oyle of sweete Parietome.
Oleum melinum, Oyle of Quinces.
Oleum de mentha, Oyle of Mints.
Oleum menthaceum, the same.
Oleum Myrtinum, Oyle of Myrtles.
Oleum myrtillorum officinarum, *Oleum Baccarum myrti*, the same.
Oleum Narcissinum, Oyle of Narcissus.
Oleum nucum inglandium, Oyle of Walnuts.
Oleum nucis Indice, Oyle of Indian nuts.
Oleum nucis muscata, *Oleum nucis myristice*,

Oyle of Nutmegs.
Oleum nensupharis, or *Oleum Nymphae*, Oyle of Penuphar, or white water rose.
Oleum Olinarum, oyle of Oliues.
Oleum Omphacinum, oyle of Oliues not full ripe.
Oleum Onorum, oyle of Eggs.
Oleum florum papaueris, oyle of Poppy.
Oleum seminis papaueris, oyle of the seede of Poppy.
Oleum petrae, *Petroleum*, an oyle that naturally runneth out of a stone.
Oleum Philosophorum, oyle of Bickes.
Oleum de Piperibus, oyle of Pepper.
Oleum Piperinum stillatum, oyle that is distilled out of Pepper.
Oleum Ricinum, oyle of Palma Christi.
Oleum Rosaceum, oyle of Roses.
Oleum Syocinum, *Oleum Cucumeris asinini*, oyle of wilde Cucumbers.
Oleum Syinum, oyle of Lillies.
Oleum Staphidis agrie, oyle of Stauesacre.
Oleum Sesaminum officinarum, oyle of Cammonill.
Oleum sulphuris, oyle of Brimstone.
Oleum scorpionum, oyle of Scorpions.
Oleum Sinapis, or *Oleum Sinapinum*, oyle of Mustard.
Oleum Stimmios, *Oleum Antimonij*, oyle of Stibium, a stone so called.
Oleum viride, *Oleum Omphacinum*, oyle of vnripe, or greene Oliues.
Oleum Vitrioli, oyle of Vitrioll.
Oleum lumbricorum, *Oleum vermium terrestrium*, oyle of earth worms.
Oleum cyprinum, *Oleum ligustrinum*, oyle of Priuet.
Oleum Raphaninum, or *Oleum seminis Raphani*, oyle of Radishes.
Oleum Rhabarbari, oyle of Rhabarbe.
Oleum Sandaraca, oyle of Juniper gum.
Oleum vermium terrestrium, vide *Oleum lumbricorum*.
Oleum seminis Raphani, vide *Oleum Raphaninum*.
Oleum Absinthij, oyle of Wormewood.
Oleum Leucocini, *Oleum cheyrinum*, oyle of Wiolets.
Oleum Cheyrinum, *Oleum leucocinum*.
Oleum granorum Iuniperi, oyle of Juniper berries.
Oleum Nardinum, oyle of Spikenard.
Oleum ex immaturis Olinis confectum, oyle of vnripe Oliues.
Oleum Spicae nardi, oyle of Spikenard.
Oleum Tartari, oyle of Tartar.

Oleum

The third Index.

- Oleum resine abietis*, oyle of Turpentine.
Oleum Theriacinale officinarum, oyle of Turpentine.
Oleum Tritici, oyle of Wheate.
Olibanum officinarum, *Olibanum*, white Frankincense.
Olibanum testiculatum, a kinde of Frankincense.
Olina, *Olea*, an Olive tree.
Oliua conditanea, Oliues.
Oliuum, *Oleum Oliuarum*, oyle of Oliues.
Olius arum, Alisander, or Louage.
Olius aureum, *Auriplex*, Orage, Arch, or golden herbe.
Olius rubrum, *Blitum rubrum*, red Spinage.
Olius Hispanicus, *sive Olius Spinaceum*, Spinage.
Olius agninum, *Plantago*, Plantaine, or Weyby.
Omentum, vulgo, Zirbus, the caule, or selwet, wherein the bowels are lapt.
Omphacinum, vulgo, *Agresta*, *succus à labrusca*, vel *uis acerbis*, Veriuce.
Omphalocarpus, aparine, Coeshart.
Omphax, *Vua immatura*, *vua acerba*, an vnripe Grape.
Onicida, *Galla asinina*, a kinde of Gaules.
Oniscus, *Asellus*, a kinde of fish so called.
Onitis, *Origanum Creticum*, bassard Pariozam, Spanish Origan.
Onocardium, *Disfach*, Fullers Thistle, or Teazill.
Onopretium Herbariorum, *Fellicula asellorum*, *Adiantum album*, Payden haire.
Onoriganum Herbariorum, *Origanum asinum* sic dictum, quod solum eius asinis pabulo sit gratum, *Onitis*, bassard Pariozam, or Spanish Origan.
Onyx, *Blattium Bizantium*, vide *Blucca Bizantia*.
Ophioctonum, *Cerviocellus*, a Parsenep.
Ophioglossum, Serpents tong.
Ophiostaphylos, *Vua anguina*, a kinde of shrub so called.
Ophthalmia, *Lippitudo*, blearednes of the eyes.
Ophthalmica herba, *Enfrasia*, Eyebright.
Opiototonus, a kinde of Crampe.
Oppertius, *Iris*, flower deluce.
Oppilatio, a stopping of the breast.
Opion, *Opium*, *Liquor*, vel *lachryma*, e vulneratis *papaneris nari Capitulis fluens*, a certayne dyed sap of the black Poppy, which of the Apothecaries is called *Opium*.
Opopanax, *lachryma panacis*, officinis *opopanaxum*, the dyed sap or gum which is pressed out of the roote of the herbe *Panax*, which as yet is so called of the Apothecaries.
Opobalsamum, *liquor Balsami*, *Balsamum Indicum*, naturall or Jewish Balsamum.
Opulbannum, *Thiu*, Frankincense.
Opopras, a consecration so called.
Opos Medicos, and *Opos Syriacos*, *hec est Succus medicus*, & *Syriacus*, a kinde of iuice so called.
Opulus, dog tree.
Orbicularis, Solwes bread.
Orchis, *Testiculus*, Gandergrasse, Ragwort.
Orchis mas maior, the male Gandergrasse or Ragwort, with the broad leaves.
Orchis mas minor, male Gandergrasse with the narrow leafe.
Orchis femina minor, the female Gandergrasse with the narrow leaves.
Orchis Odoratus, sweete Ragwort.
Orchis Serapias, a kind of Ragwort.
Origanum, *Origanum*, bassard Pariozam, or Spanish Origan, Origan.
Origanum Asinum, *Onitis*, vide *Origanum*.
Origanum Hispanicum, vide *Origanum Heracleotica*.
Origanum Hircinum, *Tragoriganum*, vide *Origanum*.
Origanum panaceum, *Origanum sylvestre*, wilde or common Origan.
Oriptelea, *Montium*, *Vimus montana*, an Elme.
Orminum officinarum, *Gallitricum*, Clary.
Orobax, *Paeonia*, Piony.
Orobelsum, the same.
Orobethron, *Hycostis*, a certaine iuice so called.
Orchus, *Eryum*, a kinde of pulse bigger then Vetches, bitter Vetches, Tares.
Orneoglossum, *Lingua asis*, & officinis *semen fraxini*, the seade, or keyes of Ash.
Ornus, *Fraxinus montana*, an Ash.
Orthopnea, a straighnes of breath, by stopping of the lights, that one cannot breathe but holding his neck vp right.
Oryx Theophrasti, *Herba genus Plantago*, *Planu*.
Ornula, *sive Ornalla Herbariorum*, Clary. (taine.
Oryza, *Risum*, Rice.
Os Sepis, a Cuttlebone.
Os de corde cervini, *Ossea cartilago cordis cervini*, est *propago quadam nerva durifcula*, *crucis similitudine*, the bone that is in a Stags hart.
Ostracium Indicum, *Blattum Byzantium*, an Indian shell, vide *Blatta Bizantia*.
Ostracum Galeni, *Cochlea domus*, a Snail shell.
Osyris, vel *Osyris*, wilde flare.
Othonium, *Chelidonium majus*, *Celandine* the
Oxalis, vulgo *Acetosella*, *Sorrell*. (greater.
Oxalis arvensis, *Oxalis minor*, *tenuifolia veronica*, the lesser Sorrell.
Oxalis gallica, or *Oxalis rotunda*, round Sorrell.
Oxalis

The third Index.

Oxalis sativa, tame **Sorrell**.

Oxyacantha Galeni, *Officinis Berberis dicitur*, the **Berberis tree**.

Oxyacanthus, **Berberis wine**.

Oxyarcentis, the greater **Juniper tree**.

Oxyeraton, *sive Oxyeratum*, water and vineger together, called **Pofca** in Latine.

Oxyrocceum, *vide Emplastrum Oxyrocceum*.

Oxyzonum, *Papauer erraticū*, the red coze rose.

Oxydrus Theophrasti, *Juniperus minor*, the **Cosebery tree**.

Oxylapathū Dioscoridis, *Lapathū acutū*, **Docks**.

Oxylapathū Galeni, *Lapathum acidum*, **Sorrell**.

Oxymelon persicon Læoni, *Prunum*, a **Prune**.

Oxymel sive Oxymel simplex, **Syrupe made of Vineger and Hony**.

Oxymel compositum, *Oxymel diureticum*.

Oxymel de radicib. a kind of compounded **Syrupe**.

Oxymel Scillinum, *sive Scilliticum*, a **Syrupe of sea Onions, Vineger and Hony**.

Oxymel simplex, *vide Oxymel*.

Oxymyrine, *Ruscus*, **Unscholme**.

Oxyphænica, *Palmule Indica*, *Tamarindi*, the fruite of the tree **Oxyphænix**.

Oxyrrhodinum, *Oleum rosaceum aceto dilutum*, **Oyle of Roses and Vineger together**.

Oxyfacccharum, *Officinis Oxyfaccchara*, a **Syrupe so called**.

Oxyfacccharum compositum, a compounded **Syrupe of Vineger and Sugar**.

Oxytriphylum, *Asphaltum*, **woode Sorrell**.

Ozæna, *sive Ozæna*, a soze in the nose causing a stinking savour.

Ozylete officinarum, or *Ozylete*, **perfuming candles**.

Ozimum, *Ocimum*, or *Ozymum*, **Basill**.

Ozimum aquaticum, **water Basill**.

Ozimum Cariophyllum, or *Ozimum minus*, the lesser **Basill**.

Ozimum crispum, **crisped Basill**.

Ozimum minus, *vide Ozimum Cariophyllum*.

P.

P *Abulum aserinum*, *Alfne*, **Chickwæde**.

Pabulum camelorum, *Scænanthum*, *Squinanthum*.

Pabulum cerui, *Elaphoboscum*, a kind of **Sage**.

Paderos, and *Paderotes*, *Acanthi*, **Beares sote**.

Paderotes, *vide Paderos*.

Peonia, **Piony**.

Peonia alba, **white Piony**.

Peonia femina, **Piony the female**.

Peonia femina altera, **red Piony**.

Peonia mascula Plinij, *Peonia promiscua*, the same.

Peonia mascula Dioscoridis, *Peonia alba*.

Peonia multiplex, **double Piony**.

Peonia promiscua, *vide Peonia mascula Plinij*.

Peonium Apuleij, *idem quod Peonia*, **Piony**.

Pasæde, *Peonia*, the same.

Pala marina Barbarorum, *Balla marina officinarum*, **sea balles**.

Palimpissa, *Pix excocta*, **Pitch twice sod**.

Palatium leporis.

Palma Phœnix, the **Date tree**.

Palma Christi, a tree so called.

Palma Christi minor, *Satyrium Basilicum minus Herbariorum*, three leaved **Sandergrasse**, **Kagwort**, or **Dogstones**.

Palma veneris, *Satyrium Basilicum*, the same.

Palma virginea herbariorū, *Perninca*, **Peruinckle**.

Palmos, the **panting of the hart**.

Palmule, *Dactyli*, *Phœnices*, **Dates**.

Palmula acida, *Palmula indica*, *Palmula nigra Tamarindi*, **solwer Dates**.

Palmula Indica, *vide Palmula acida*.

Palmula nigra, *vide Palmula acida*.

Palmula veneris, *Satyrium regium minus*, a kind of **Kagwort**.

Palpiatio cordis, the **panting of the hart**.

Palpebra, *gena*, *Blepharon*, an **eye lid**.

Paludapiū, *Eleoselinum*, **wild parfly**, **Smallage**.

Pampinula, *Pimpinella*, **Pimpernell**.

Panaritium Barbarorum, *Paronychia*, a disease often breeding in ones fingers.

Panada, *Panarella Practicorum*, a **pap made with bread**.

Panacea, *Ligusticum verum*, **Louage**.

Pancarpos, **Pilkethistle**.

Pandionia radix, *Chelidonium maius*, **Celandine the greater**.

Pancranum, *Thapsia*, a kinde of **Lurbit**.

Panicum, **Panick**.

Panicum Indicum, **Indian Panick**.

Panigo, *Panicum*, **Panick**.

Panion, *Satyrium*, **Dogs stones**.

Panis alcarit Barbarorum, *Cyclaminus*, **solwes bread**.

Panis bis coctus, *Panis nauticus*, **Wisket**.

Panis ciconia, *Colchicum*, **Hermoadactiles**.

Panis cuculi, *Trifolium acidum*, **Cucroebread**, **wood Sorrell**.

Panis fauni Barbarorum, *Cyclaminus*, **solwes**.

Panis Dini Iohannis, *Carrubia*, *Siliqua*, (**bread**).

Panis nauticus, *vide Panis bis coctus*.

Panis terra herbariorū, *Cyclaminus*, **solwes bread**.

Panthiceratos, *Peonia*, **Piony**.

Papauer, *Mecon*, **Poppy**.

Papauer album, **white Poppy**.

Papauer caninū, *Papauer erraticū*, **wild Poppy**.

The third Index.

Papauer caducum, red Poppy.
Papauer erraticum, vide *Papauer caninum*.
Papauer erraticum minus, the lesser red Poppy.
Papauer fluidum Gaza, *Papauer rhœas*, the same.
Papauer sativum, white Poppy.
Papauer hortense, the same.
Papauer palustre, *Nymphaea*, the white water Lilly, or Rose.
Papauer nigrum, black Poppy.
Papauer puniceum, *Papauer rubrum*, red Poppy.
Papauer rhœas, vide *Papauer fluidum*.
Papauer rubrum, vide *Papauer puniceum*.
Papauer sylvestre Dioscoridis, *Papauer nigrum*, wilde Poppy.
Papaueralis, red Poppy.
Papaueralis minor, the lesser Poppy.
Papaueris caput, Codia, the tops of Poppy.
Paralius, *Tithymalus marianus*, a kind of Spurge.
Paralysis, *paraphlegia*, *neruorum resolutio*, a disease called the Palsie.
Paralytica, or *Paralytica herba*, Cowslips.
Paralytica, Alpina, Sanicle.
Paralyticus, one that hath the Palsie.
Paraplegia, vide *Paralysis*.
Paraphara, *Delirium*, vide *Mentis error*.
Pardalianches, a kinde of Wolfewort.
Parietalia, the temples of the head.
Parietaria, and *Parietaria minor*, *Perdicium*, Bellitoz of the wall.
Pavon Italicum, *Iliaca*, a paine in the guts.
Paronychia, *Panaritium Barbarorum*, a disease growing in the fingers.
Parotes, *Abcessus secus aures*, an impostume behinde the eares.
Parthenium, *Cotula foetida*, Feuerfeto, or Pothertwort.
Pasaphan Italicum, a powder so called.
Pascanthemum Herbariorum, *Bellis minor*, Daisies.
Paspale Hippocratis, *Milium*, Millet.
Pastinaca, a Parsenep.
Pastinaca alba, a white Parsenep.
Pastinaca ceruina, *Elaphoboscum*, a kinde of Parsenep.
Pastinaca erratica, *Pastinaca vera*, wilde or yellow Parsenep.
Pastinaca nigra Theophrasti, *Pastinaca rubra*, a Carrote.
Pastinaca lutea, *Carotis lutea*, yellow Carrote.
Pastinaca sylvestris, *Pastinaca vera*, wilde Parseneps.
Pastinaca maior Athenai, *Careum*, Comin.
Pastillum, *Isatis*, Tloade.
Pastus Camelorum, *Scœnanthum*, Squinanth.
Passule officinarum, *Vua passa*, Rapsons.
Passula Chemesina, *Passula sine nucleis*, Cozans.

Passula corinthiaca, vide *Passula silicia*.
Passula Damascena, *Vua Ziziba*, vel *Zibeba*, a kinde of Rapsons.
Passula minores, Cozans.
Patientia, the herbe Patience.
Pauerina Italicum, *Alfina*, Chickwæde.
Pauonaria Herbariorum, Arsefmart.
Pellis Apuleij, *Symphytum magnum*, Comfrey.
Pedaliū Apuleij, *Polygonum*, Knotgrasse.
Pedicularia.
Pelasgum Plinij.
Penidia, *Penidiorum*.
Pentapetes, *quinque folium*, fuelcated grasse.
Pentaplextron, Hounds rib, or the lesser Plantaine.
Pentaphyllon, Cinckefoyle.
Pentorobon, *Pæonia*, Piony.
Pentadachylon, *Ricinus*: *Palma Christi*.
Peplion, wilde Purflaine.
Pepo, *Pepon*, a kind of Melons called Pöpecons.
Pepo muscatellinus, a kind of Pompecons.
Pepo saccharinus, another kind of Pompecons.
Pepo saracenicum, a kind of Pompecons.
Pepo Turcicus, the same.
Pera pastoris, *Bursa pastoris*, shepherds pouch.
Perdicium, Bellitoz of the wall.
Perfoliata, Thorough ware.
Perforata officinarum, S. Johns wort.
Pericardium, the skin that compasseth the hart.
Perichlymenum perfoliatum, vide *Perichlymenum Italicum*, sine *Perichlymenū perforatum*, Woods binde, or a kinde of Honyfuckle.
Perichlymenum, *Perichlymenus*, Honyfuckle.
Peristerion, *Columbaria*, Tuerneine.
Peripneumonia, an inflammation or impostume in the Lungs, with a vehement feuer.
Peristeropodium, *Pes columbinus*, Stozks bill.
Perla, *Margarita*, a kinde of pretious stone.
Periscaria Herbariorum, Arsefmart.
Persicum, a Peach.
Persicus, and *Persica malus*, a Peach tree.
Persites, *Tithymalus dulcis*, a kinde of Spurge.
Personatia, or *Personata*, Clote, or great burre.
Peruinca, *Peruincle*.
Pes Alexandrinus, *Pyrethrum*, Bartrame, or wilde Bellitoz.
Pes columbinus Herbariorum, Pincknæde, shepherds bodkin, or Stozks bill.
Pes gallinaceus, Hartwort.
Pes Leporinus, Hares foot.
Pes Leonis, *Wedelion*, or Lions foot.
Pes vituli, a kind of Cuckowpinte.
Pestilentia, *Pestis*, a Pestilence, or Plague.
Pestis, vide *Pestilentia*.
Petralæon, *Petroleum*, an oyle y naturally runneth

The third Index.

neth out of a stone.

Petroselinū, a kind of parfly growing on stones.
Petroselinum Alexandrinum, *Herbariorum*, stone

Parfly.

Petroselinum Cilicum, *Petroselinum Alexandrinum*, the same.

Petroselinum Macedonicum, the same.

Peuce, *Abies nigra*, a firre tree.

Peucedanum, dog fenell.

Phagedena, a running canker, or pock.

Pharmacōn Suide, *Petræleon*, an oyle naturally running out of a stone.

Phasganum, *Gladiolus*, Sedge, or Gladen.

Phaselus, *sive Phaseolus*, a kind of pulse or long pease.

Phasolus, *Phaselus*, the same, a turkish beane or pease.

Phemialis, *Phlomis*, a kind of Primrose.

Philanthropus, *Aparine*, a kinde of burre that cleave to mens coates.

Philonium, *sive Philonium Romanum*, a confecti on so called.

Philonium persicum, a confectiō so called.

Philomedium, *Chelidonium minus*, *Celandine* the greater.

Phlegma, the humoz in the body called scume.

Phlegmone, *Inflammatiō*, an Impostume, or blood inflamed.

Phlogion, *Viola Trinitatis*, hearbe Trinitie, or Harts ease.

Phlomis, *Verbasculum*, Cowslips.

Phlomis, *Melanophyllos*, *Verbascum nigrum*, Longwozt, Wiltblade, or Toztch herbe.

Phlomis agrios, *Verbascum sylvestre*, wild Wiltblade.

Phlox, flower gentle.

Phoenix, *Palma*, a Date tree.

Phenicitis, *Lapis Iudaicus*, Jewes stone.

Phrenitis, a phrensie.

Phrycodes, *vide febris phrycodes*.

Phrygius lapis, Amber.

Phthiriasis, *Morbus pedicularis*, the lousie euill.

Phthirioctonum, *Pedicularia*, Licebane.

Phthisis, a kinde of consumption.

Phthisicus, one that hath a consumption.

Phu *Valerian*.

Phu ponticum, the same.

Phyleteria, *sive Phyleterium*, *Dictamnus alba*, a certaine herbe so called.

Phylira, *Tilia*, the Linden, or Willet tree.

Phyllitis, *Lingua cernua*, Harts tong.

Phyllon, *sive Phyllon Indicum*, an Indian leafe, *vide Malabathrum*.

Phyllipharis, *Marrubium*, Hozehound.

Phylurum, Louewæde.

Phyrania, *Fermentum*, sotwer doive.

Physalis, *Halicacabus*, Alkakengy.

Pia mater, a little skinne that couereth the bzaines, *vide Meninges*.

Picacuta, *Malacia*, a disease of longing vnnaturallly in women with childe.

Picea, *Abies nigra*, a Witch tree.

Picibitumen, *Pissphaltum*, Witch, and the lime called Bitumen mingled together.

Pilula, *Catapotium*, *Barbaris Pilula*, *per duplex L. Pillies*.

Pilula cyparissi, *Nux cypressi*, a Cipresse nut.

Pilule Alephangine Arabum, *Pilule aromatica*, a kinde of pillies.

Pilule aromatica, *vide Pilule Alephangina*.

Pilula aurea, a kind of pillies.

Pilula de agarico, pillies of *Agaricus*.

Pilula Assaiereth, pillies so called.

Pilula de Aloë lora, pillies of washed Aloes, or Sengrene.

Pilula aggregatiua officinarum, *Pilula Polychrestæ*, pillies so called.

Pilula de Lapide Armeniaco, pillies of a stone so called.

Pilula de Bdellio, pils made of $\frac{1}{2}$ gum *Bdellium*.

Pilula benedictæ, certaine pils so called.

Pilula cochia, pils that purge the head.

Pilula communes, *Pilula Russi*, *Pilula sine cura*, *vide Pilula pestilenciales*.

Pilule de Cynoglossa, pils of Hounds tong.

Pilule de Euphorbio, pils of the gum called Euphorbium.

Pilula foetida, pils of *Assa foetida*.

Pilula de Hiera, pils of Aloes.

Pilula de Hiera composita, pils of Aloes, and other things.

Pilule de fumo terre, pils of Pigeons Chernill, or fumitory.

Pilula de Hermodactylis, pils of *Hermodactiles*.

Pilula iliace, pils for the colick, or paine in the small guts.

Pilula Inde, pils of Indian *Sirobalans*.

Pilule de Hiera cum agarico, pils so called.

Pilule de lapide Lazuli officinarum, *Pilule de lapide Cyaneo*.

Pilula mastichina, pils of mastick.

Pilula de mezereo officinarum, pils of *Lopezil*.

Pilule de Chamelæa, the same.

Pilula opthalmica, pils for the eyes.

Pilule de quinque generibus Sirobalarum, pils of five kinds of *Sirobalans*.

Pilula de Opopanaco, pils of the gum *Opopanax*.

Pilula polychrestæ, *vide Pilula aggregatiua*.

Pilula pestilenciales, *Pilula Russi*, pillies against the Plague.

The third Index.

Pilula ruffi, vide *Pilula communes*, and *Pilula Pestilentiales*.
Pilula de Sarcocolla, Pills of a gum called *Sarcocollum*.
Pilula sine quibus, *sive*, *sine quibus esse nolo*, Pills so called, which some call *Pilula sine cura*, because they may be taken or used without all feare.
Pilule de Sandaracha, pills of the gum of a *Zuni* per fræ.
Pilula de Serapino, pills of the gum *Serapinum*.
Pilula de succino, pills of white Amber.
Pilula de tribus, *Pilula pestilentiales*.
Pilula de Rhabarbaro, pills of *Rubarbe*.
Pilula sine cura, vide *Pilula Alephangina*, *Pilula pestilentiales*, *Pilula communes*, *Pilula sine quibus esse nolo*.
Pilula Stomachica, pills for the stomach.
Pimpinella crispa, *Pimpinella petrea*, *Pimpinella minor*, *Burnet*, or *Pimpinell*, *Pimpinell* the lesser.
Pimpinella Hircina, a kind of *Pimpinell*.
Pimpinella Italarum, *Sanguisorba*, *Pimpinell*.
Pimpinella maior, the great *Pimpinell*.
Pimpinella minor, vide *Pimpinella crispa*.
Pinaster, *Pinus sylvestris*, the wilde *Pine* fræ.
Pineſtella, *Pineſtellum*, dog ſjennell.
Pinea officinarum, *Nux Pinea*, the fruite of the *Pine* fræ.
Pingue lactis, *Pinguedo lactis*, *Creame*.
Pinguendo succidarum Lanarum, *Oefpus*, the oyle that brædeth in the ſlancke, or neck of a *Pinus*, a *Pineapple* fræ. (ſhepe.
Pinus ſylveſtris, vide *Pinaster*.
Pinus pumila, a kinde of *Pine* fræ.
Pinula, *Trichomanes*, *Payden haire*.
Piper, *Pepper*.
Piper album, white *Pepper*.
Piper agreſte, *Vitex*, *Agnus Caſtus*.
Piper Aquaticum, *Hydropiper*, water *Pepper*, *Arsenick*, *Kilridge*, or *Culrage*.
Piper caninum, the ſame.
Piper Eunuchorum, *Piper Monachorum*, *Agnus caſtus*, vide *Agnus caſtus*.
Piper longum, long *Pepper*.
Piper monachorum, vide *Piper Eunuchorum*.
Piper montanum, *Lozrell*.
Piper nigrum, black *Pepper*.
Piperitis, *Lepidum*, *Indiſh Pepper*, *Alecoſſe*.
Pira muſcatellina, muſke *Peares*.
Piraster, wilde *Peare* fræ.
Pirola, *sive* *Pirula*, or *Pirola pratensis*, wild *Bætes*.
Piſſa hygra, *Pix liquida*, *Tarre*.
Piſſaſphaltum, *Picbitumen*, *Pitch*, and the lime called *Bitumen* mingled together.

Piſſaſphaltum Arabi, *Mumia officinarum*, the ſame.
Piſſaſphaltum Græcorum, *Piſſaſphaltum nativum*, the ſame.
Piſtaceum, *sive* *Piſtacium*, *Piſtachium*, a kinde of nuts commonly of the Apothecaries called *Fistici*.
Piſtaceus, a kind of nut tree.
Piſtachium, or *Piſtacium*, vide *Piſtaceum*.
Piſum, a *Peaſe*.
Phutis, *Papaner nigrum*, black *Poppy*.
Pituita, *Phlegma*, *Fleumic*.
Pnydes, *Pinea nucs*, the fruite, or nuts of the *Pine* fræ.
Pnyſa, *Eſula maior officinarum*, *Eſula*, *Spurge*.
Pix, *Piſſa*, *Pitch*.
Pix arida, *Pix concreta*, *Pix excolla*, hard, or ſtone *Pitch*.
Pix Bruta, *Pix græca*, a kind of *Pitch*.
Pix Fluida, *Pix Liquida*, *Tarre*.
Pix navalis, *Pix radulana*, *Ship*, or ſaylers *pitch*.
Plantago, *Plantaine*, or *Talapread*.
Plantago acuta, *sive* *Lanceolata*, *Sharp Plantaine*.
Plantago Aquatica, *Plantago P. luſtru*, water *Plantaine*.
Plantago lata Apulei, *Plantago latifolia*, broad leaved *Plantaine*.
Plantago lanceolata, *Plantago acuta*, prickle leaved *Plantaine*.
Plantago latifolia minor, *Plantago trineruia*, *Plantago ſylveſtica*, the leſſer broad leaved *Plantaine*.
Plantago maior, the great *Plantaine*.
Plantago media Herbariorum, *Plantago minor Dioſcoridi*, *Wapthead*, or *Ribgraffe*.
Plantago minor Dioſcoridi, vide *Plantago media*.
Plantago acuta, vide ſuprà.
Plantago rubra, *Plantago maior*, red *Plantaine*.
Plantago trineruia, vide *Plantago latifolia minor*.
Plantago roſca, a kind of *Plantaine*.
Planta leonis, *Alchimilla*, *Ladies mantle*.
Platagonia, *Folium papaveris*, the leaf of *Poppy*.
Platanella, *Spondylium*, *Beares ſote*.
Platanus, a *Plane* tree with broad leaves growing in *Italy*, whom ſome do take for *Opulus*.
Platyophthalmos Plinij, *Stimmi*, a kinde of purging glaſſe, called *Sibium*.
Pleuritis, the *Pleurſie*.
Plectronia, *sive* *Peleibronia Apuleij*, *Centaureum magnu*, *Sentoxy* the greater, vide *Rapontica*.
Plectranthemum, *Conſolida regia*, *Larkſpurre*.
Pleuriticus, one that hath the *Pleurſie*.
Plumbago Plinij, *Perſicaria maculata*, a kinde of *Plumbum*, *Leade*. (Arſmart.
Plumbum viſtum, burnt *Leade*.
Podagra, the *Gout*.
Podagra lini Herbariorum, *Caffyta*, *Winderwaede*.
Podex,

The third Index.

Poda, an Arsehole.
Polemonia, *sive* *Polemonium*, *vide* *Diptamus*.
Pollen, Bealedust.
Polyanodinos, *Cicuta*, Venilocke.
Polyanthemum *Plinij*, *Ranunculus multiplex*, a kind of Butter flower.
Polycarpon, *Polygonum*, Knotgras.
Polycraton Hippocratis, *sive* *Polycriton*, Arsefinart.
Polygonoides, *peruina*, Berwinckle.
Polygonatum, *Sigillum Salomonis*, Salomons seale.
Polygonatum angustifolium, *Polygonatum minus Herbariorum*, Salomons seale the lesser.
Polygonatum latifolium, *Polygonatum platyphyllon*, the great Salomons seale.
Polygonatum minus, the same.
Polygonatum minus, *vide* *Polygonatum angustifolium*.
Polygonatum platyphyllon, *vide* *Polygonatum latifolium*.
Polygonum, *multinodia*, Knotgras.
Polygonum Heractium Herbariorum, *Polygonum mas*, Knotgras the male.
Polygonum semina, *Hippuris minor*, Knotgras the female or Horse tayle.
Polygonum masculum, *vide* *Polygonum Heracleum*.
Polygonum minus, *vulgo* *ruella*, the lesser Knotgras.
Polyneuron, broad Knotgras.
Polygonum, *Perdicum*, *Paricaria*.
Polypodium, *Felicula*, Polypody.
Poppiu, a certaine impostume in the nose.
Polytrichum officinarum, *Trichomanes*, Hayden hayre.
Polytrichum Apuleij, the same.
Polytrichum Dioscoridis, *Polytrichum verum*, a kind of Venus haire.
Polytrichum aureum Herbariorum, the same.
Polytrichum verum, *vide* *Polytrichum Dioscor.*
Pomada, *sive* *Pomata*, a sweete sinelling salve made of Apples.
Pomata, *unguentum Pomatum*, *vide* *Pomada*.
Pomela, *Herbariorum*, Lungwort.
Pompholyx nigra, gray Tutty.
Pompholyx Tutty.
Pomum Arangia, *Pomum Nerantzii*, an Orange.
Pomum Lemonium, *sive* *Limonium*, a Limon.
Pomus sylvestre, a Crab or wild Apple.
Poplis vena, the vaine of a mans ham behind the leg.
Populago, *Bechium*, *foleswote*, *Alhose*, or Horse haid.
Populeum officinarum, *Unguentum populeum*, Poplar salve.

Populus, the Poplar tree.
Populus humilis, *sive* *Populus pumila*, a kind of Poplar.
Porcellana, *Herbariorum*, *Andrachne*, Purslaine.
Poros, that matter which consolidateth the broken bones within.
Porrus, a Leake.
Porrus avicinum, *Porrus Capitatum*, headed Leakes.
Porrus scitilis, *sive* *Porrus scitium*, Leakes.
Porrus Tarentinum, Leakes.
Porrus sylvestre, *sive* *Porrus vineale*, *seu* *Ampeloprassum*, wild Leakes.
Portentilla Herbariorum, *Argemone altera*, wilde Tanisie, or Siluer herbe.
Posca, *Oxycraton*, a kinde of small household wine. mixed with water in the presse: *vide* *Oxycraton*.
Pramorsa Herbariorum, *Morsus Diaboli*, Devils bit.
Prasus gemma, a kinde of Saphyre.
Prassium, *Marrubium*, Horsehound.
Priapeion, *Viola nigra*, a kind of Ciolets.
Priapicon, *Satyrion*, *Erythronium*, a kind of Candergras.
Priapismus, *satyrismus*, *satyriasis*, *satyriasmus*, a disease wherby the priue member of a man standeth alway, without appetite or lust of generation.
Prapus Cervi, Pisse of a Hart.
Primula veriflora Herbariorum, *sive* *Primula veris*, Primrose, or Cowslips.
Probatum, *Plantago*, Plantaine.
Proetium, *Veratrum nigrum*, blacke Hælewort.
Proserpinaca, Knotgras.
Protopium, *sive* *Protopis*, the great Wurre.
Protopium, wine new pressed out of the Grape.
Protea Apuleij, *Nymphaea*, the white water Lilly.
Pruneola, *Pruna sylvestris*, Sloes.
Prunella Herbariorum, Selseheale.
Prunidaetyla, Damaske Prunes.
Pruna Auenaria, a kind of Sloes.
Pruna Asinaria, or *Pruna Asina*, great Prunes.
Pruna Cerea, *sive* *Cerina*, a kind of Prune.
Pruna Cerina, *sive* *Cerea masora*, great Italian Prunes.
Pruna Damascena, Damaske Prunes.
Pruna Hiberica, *Pruna Hispanica*, Spanish Prunes.
Pruna hordearia, white Prunes.
Pruna equina, Horse plumbes.
Pruna Syriaca, *vel* *Pruna Syriacana*, Damaske Prunes.
Pruna Nana, harnest Prunes.
Pruna sylvestris, Sloes.

Prunum,

The third Index.

Prunum, a *Wune*.
Prunum passum, a dyed *Wune*.
Prunus, a *Plumtree*.
Prunus sylvestris, a *Sloe tree*.
Prurigo, *Pruritus*, *Itche*.
Pseudoacorus, *Gladiolus luteus*, *Swete Cane*.
Pseudarietolochia, *Capnos*, *Chelidonia*, *Swallowes herbe*.
Pseudoligusticum, *Louage*.
Pseudomelanthium, *Cozne rose*.
Pseudonardus, *Spica hortulana*, & *Lauendula*, *Spike*.
Pseudopastinaca, a *Parstney*.
Pseudomyrtus, *vitis Idea*.
Pseudoparthenium, *Potherwort*.
Pseudorhaponticum, *Centaureum magnum*, great *Centoze*.
Pseudosantalum, false *Saunders*.
Psidium Herbariorum, *Alchimilla*, *Sinnau*.
Pistachium Nicandri, *Pistaceum*, a kind of nuts so called.
Pilotrum, *Vitis alba*, *Byronic*.
Psora Aetij, *Scabiosa*, *Scabious*.
Psora Plinij, *fera scabies*, a certaine kinde of *scurvie Itche* so called.
Psyche, *Tripodium*, a kind of *Turbith*.
Psychotrophon, *Betonica*, *Betony*.
Psychuacos, *Perdicium*, *Varietary*.
Psyllium, *Fleawort*.
Psymithium, *Cerussa*, *white Lead*.
Ptelea, *Vlmus*, o2
Ptelea, an *Elme tree*.
Pteris, *Felix*, *Sterne*, *herbe Dismund*, o2 *Wzake*.
Pterygophoron Dioscoridis, *Licuriu*, *Electrum*, *Amber*.
Pisana, *Cremor bordet*, a decoction of *Barley*, *Dzgemond*.
Pugio Gaze, *Gladiolus*, *flowerdeluce*.
Pulegium, *Pennyroyall*, o2 *pudding grasse*.
Pulegium martis, *Dictamnus Creticum*.
Pulegium agreite sine sylvestre, *wilde Pennyroyall*.
Pulicaria, *sue*
Pulicaris, *fleawort*.
Pulmonaria, *Lungwort*.
Pulmonaria arborea, *Lichen arboreu*, a kinde of *Lungwort*, that groweth on trees like *Hosse*.
Pulmonaria maculata, *Sage of Jerusalem*.
Pulmonaria Gallica, *Auricula muris maior*, the greater *Houfear*.
Pulmonaria Vegetij, *wild Pæfelowort*.
Pulvis Montagnane contra pestem, a certaine powder for the *Plague*.
Pulvis nobili officinarum, *Tuttis*.

Pulvis Senta preparatus, the powder of *Sene* prepared.
Pyon, *pingue lallis*, *Creame*.
Pyra Apiana, o2
Pyra Muscatellina, o2
Pyra bordearia Plinij, a kind of *swete Peare*.
Pyra chya, the same.
Pyrama, *Ammoniacum impurum*, the foule and impure gunn *Ammoniacke*.
Pyraister, *sue*
Pyrus sylvestris, a *wilde Peare tree*.
Pyrene Plinij, *Tecoluthus lapis*, the stone called *Lapis Iudaicus*.
Pyretrum, *Pellitory of Spaine*.
Pyretos febris, a burning ague.
Pyrites, *Pyrethrum*, *Pellitory of Spaine*.
Pyrites lapis, *lapis luminis*, *Marchasita*, the *Pine of Bassa*.
Pyrola, *sue*
Pyrola, *wild Bêtes*, o2 *winter greene*.
Pyrola pratensis, *sue*
Pyrola pratensis, *wild Bêtes*.
Pyrum, a *Peare*.
Pyrum Cidoneorum, a *Quince*.
Pyru, a *Peare tree*.
Pythonium Apuleij, *Dracunculus maior*, *Dracons*.
Pythonium Dioscoridis, *Hyoscyamus*, *Henbane*.
Pyxantha, o2
Pyxanthus, *Chironius Plinij*, the *Barberry tree*.
Pyxos, *Buxus arbor*, the *Wore tree*.

Q.

Q *Vassamus barbarorum*, *Cyclaminus*, *Solwes bread*.
Quartana, a *Quartaine ague*.
Quercula, *Trixago*, *Chamedrys*, *Germander*.
Quercus, an *Oake* o2 an *Ako*, *ne tree*.
Quinquesolium, *Cinquefoile*.
Quinqueneruia, *Plantago minor*, the lesser *Plantaine*.
Quotidiana, a *Quotidian* o2 *dayly Ague*.

R.

R *Adicula*, *Raphanus*, a *Radish*.
Radix, *Raphanus*, a *Radish*.
Radix barbarica, *Rhabarbarum*, *Rubarbe*.
Radix concana Herbariorum, *Partwort*.
Radix colophonia, *Scammonie*.
Radix consecatrix, *Iris*, *Flouredeluce*.
Radix pandeonia, *Telandine*.
Radix pontica, *Rhaponticum*.
Radix Scammonia, the roote of *Scammony*.
Radix

The third Index.

Radix Scythica, Glycyrrhiza, Licorice.
Radix violacea vulgo dicta, the floured clure.
Ramex varicosus, a rupture of swollen vaines.
Ranunculus, Crowfoote.
Ranunculus multiplex, Polyanthemū, Batchelers buttons.
Ranunculus rotundus, Flammula, the lesser Golden knap or Butter flower.
Rapa, sine
Rapum, the Rape roote.
Rapaneolus Herbariorum, genus Rapi sylvestris, a wilde Rape.
Raphanus condimentarius, sine
Raphanus obsoniorum, an Hoxleradish.
Raphanus sylvestris aromatica, a wild Radish.
Rapocaulis Herbariorum, Rapcoleworts.
Rapunculius, sine Rapontium.
Rapontium, vide Rapunculius.
Rapunculius,
Rapuntium, sen
Rapunculum Herbariorum, the same.
Rapuntium syluaticum, the wilde.
Rapontium Alopecurum Herbariorum, the same.
Rapum porcinū Herbariorū, Cyclaminus, Sowes bread.
Rapum sylvestre, wild Rape roote.
Regulitia Barbarorum, Glycyrrhiza, Licorice.
Repletio, fulnesse of the body.
Res non naturales.
Resina, Rosin.
Resina pinus, sine resina pinea. Gum of the Pine tre, or the Rosin of the Pine.
Resina Laricis, sine Larigna, the common Turpentine.
Resina Lemiscina, Mastiche, Mastix, Masticke.
Resina Therebentina, Venetian Turpentine.
Rha, Rheon, Rheum, Rhaponticum.
Rhabarbarum, Rhebarbara, Rubarbe.
Rhabarbarum ponticum Herbariorum, herbe patience.
Rhacoma Plinij, sine Rhecoma, the same.
Rhapontica, sine Rhaponticum, the same.
Rhaponticum, sine Rhaponticum officinarum, the roote of the greater Centoꝝ.
Rhaa, sine Rhoea, the Pomegranate tre.
Rhagadia, sine Rhagades, Chaps and cleftes in the hands, and other parts of the body.
Rhagades, the third rinde or skin that compasseth the eye.
Rhaspe Nicolai Myrepsi, Rhaspatitium vinum.
Rhecoma Plinij, sine Rhacoma.
Rheon, vide Rha.
Rheon Barbaricon, sine Rheon Barbarū, Rubarb.
Rheuma, a rheume or distillation of humors.
Rheum barbarum Monachorum, Rumex sati-

um, Ponkes Rubarbe, Patience.
Rhododendriū, sine Rhododendrum Nerion, Dleander.
Rhodonarcissus, Narcissus Roscus, red Parcellus.
Rhododaphne, Laurus rosea, Nerion, a kinde of Dleander.
Rhodon, Rosa, a Rose.
Rhodinum, Oleum rosarum, oyle of Roses.
Rhodofantalum, Santalum rubrum, red Saunders.
Rhodes, vide Febris Rhodes.
Rhopalon Apuleij, Nymphaea, white water Lilly.
Rhyte, Ruta, Rue.
Rhyte montana, Ruta montana, a kind of Rue.
Ribes officinarum, Raspes.
Ricinus, Cici, Palma Christi.
Risum, vel Rizum, Rice.
Rob Arabum, est succus medicatus qui ignis calore densatur, Latinis sapa dicitur, Anglis, a certaine confection, which the Arabians call in plurali numero, Robub, which is Sapa, the iuice of any herbe or fruit defecate.
Rob de agresta, succus medicatus de Omphacio, Meriuiuce.
Rob de Berberibus officinarum, succus medicatus ex Baccarum Oxyacanthæ succu, a confection of Berberies.
Rob Cornorum, sine rob de Cornis, a Confection made of Dogtree.
Rob de Cydonijs, sine rob Cydoniorum, a Confection of the iuice of Quinces without Sugar.
Rob granatorum, succus medicatus ex succo malorum Punicorum, a Confection made of the iuice of the Pomegranate without Sugar.
Rob mororum officinarum, Diamoron, the iuice of Mulberries.
Rob nucum officinarum, Diacaryon, sine Diacarydion, a certaine confection made of the iuice of a kinde of Nut, with Sugar sodden with it till it be a thicke sirupe.
Rob de ribibus officinarum, the iuice of a certain berry with Sugar sodden together like a sirupe.
Rob Vuarum, a Confection of Grapes with sugar sodden lik a sirupe.
Robertaberba, sine Robertiana, a kind of Crowfoote.
Robertiana, vide Robertaberba.
Robub, Sapa, vide Rob.
Robus Columella, Triticum, Wheate.
Robertiana Crowfoote.
Rorastrum Apuleij, Vitis alba, Bzpony.
Ros Syriacus, Manna, Honey dew, or Spanna.

Rosa

The third Index.

Rosa, Rhodon, a Rose.
Rosa Egyptia, a yellow Rose.
Rosa Alabandica Plinij, a kinde of Rose so called.
Rosa alba, a white Rose.
Rosa Africana, a yellow Rose.
Rosa Arvensis, *sine Rosa Avenaria*, a kinde of Coyne rose.
Rosa Autumnalis, a winter Rose.
Rosa Alexandrina, a kind of Rose so called.
Rosa Basilica, *vide* *Paonia*.
Rosa benedicta, *vide* *Paonia*.
Rosa spinorum Auerrbois, *Paonia*, *Pyonie*.
Rosa canina, Byer bush, or Byer tre, or Byer tre.
Rosa Campestris, a wild or field Rose.
Rosa Cinnamomea vel Cinnamomea, a kinde of Rose so called.
Rosa Caroneola, a Damaske Rose.
Rosa Dina Maria, Ladies rose, some there are that take it to be Rose of Iericho, *vide* *Rosam Hierichuntis*.
Rosa Damascena, a Damaske rose.
Rosa Satina, *Paonia*, *Pyony*.
Rosa Hierichuntis, *sine rosa Dina Maria*, Rose of Iericho.
Rosa byemalis, Winter rose.
Rosa incarnata Herbariorum, Carnation rose.
Rosa lunonis, *sine Rosa Innovia*, a white Lilly.
Rosa lutea, a kind of yellow Rose.
Rosa milefia Plinij, purple Rose.
Rosa muscata, *sine Moschata*, Muske rose.
Rosa purpurea officinarum, purple Rose.
Rosa palustris, a water Rose.
Rosa punicea, a kinde of Rose.
Rosa regia, *Paonia*, *Pyony*.
Rosa pumila, a field Rose.
Rosa rubra, a red Rose.
Rosa sancta, *Paonia*, *Pyonie*.
Rosa Syriaca, a Muske rose.
Rosa Trachinia Plinij, *Rosa rubra*, the red Rose.
Rosa vulpina, a yellow Rose.
Rosago, *Nerium*, *Oleander*.
Rosarum apices, the yellow laxe which is with in the Rose.
Rosata nouella, a Confection of Roses so called.
Rosea arbor, *Rhododendrum*, *Oleander*.
Rosella Herbariorum, *Papaner erraticum*, wilde Poppie.
Rosmarinum, *sine Rosmarinus*, *sen Rosmarini Coronarium*, Rosemary.
Rosmarinum Coronarium, Rosemary.
Rosmarinum Mauritanorum, *Sticas Arabica*, French Lauender, or Lauender gentle.

Rostrum Ciconie, Stokes bill.
Rubia, *Erythrodanum*, Badder.
Rubia tinctoria sine tinctorum, *sen rubia Infectoria*, a kind of Badder.
Rubinus, *Gemma*, a Ruby, or precious stone.
Rubrica armena, *Bolus armenius*, Bolcarmonniacke.
Rubrica lemmia, *Rubrica sigillata*, *Terra lemmia*, Terra sigillata, Sealed earth.
Rubus, the Bramble, Blackberry, or Byper bush.
Rubus Cernuus, *Rubus Idæus*, a kind of Bramble.
Ruellia, *Polygonum minus*, a kinde of Swines grasse.
Rucula Aquatica, *sine Rucula marina*, Rocket.
Ruellus, a belching or breaking of winde upward.
Rumex, Sorrell.
Rumex aquaticus, *sine palustris*, *Hydrolapathum*, a kind of water Sorrell.
Rumex palustris, *vide* *Rumex aquaticus*.
Rumex sativus, *Rhabarbarum Monachorum*, Ponkes Rubarbe, Patience.
Rupertiana, *Herbaruperti*, Stokes bill.
Ruscus, a certaine rough and prickling shrub so called, Butchers brome, or Pettigrew.
Ruta, Rue.
Ruta montana, a kinde of Rue so called.
Ruta muraria, *Adiantum candidum*, Menus, Padden, or our Lady hayze.
Ruta sylvestris, wild Rue.
Ruta solis, *Hypericum*, S. Johns wort.
Rutinalis, *Spondylium*, Beares tote, or Beares clawe.

S.

Sabina, *Sauina*, the herbe called Sauine.
Sacchar, *Saccharon*, *vel Saccharum*, Sugar.
Saccharum Cantium, *Candum*, *sine Candium*, Sugar candie.
Saccharum Cibale, common kitchen Sugar.
Saccharum Canariense, Canary sugar.
Saccharum Christallinum, white Sugar Candy.
Saccharum finum, *sen refinatum*, *sine Saccharum Valentinum*, fine Sugar.
Saccharum Maltanum, *sine Melitum*, kitchen Sugar.
Saccharum Maderiense, *sine Mederiense*, a kind of Sugar so called.
Saccharum Miscellaneum, a kinde of Sugar.
Saccharum Penidium, a kind of Sugar so called.
Saccha-

The third Index.

Saccharū Tabartzet Arabū, *Saccharū purissimū*, or *albissimū*, *Saccharū finum*, fine Sugar.
Saccharum Thomasiū, fine *Thomasum*, *Saccharū rubrum officinarum*, S. *Thomas' sugar*.
Saccharū sem Conserua florum Caryophyllae, a conserve of Cloisters.
Saccharum Florum Lamendulae, a conserve of *Lamander flowers*.
Saccharū florum Melissae, a conserve so called.
Saccharum Buglossatum, a conserve of *Buglosse*.
Saccharum Borraginatum, conserve of *Bozage*.
Saccharum florum Hyssopi, Conserve of *Hyssope*.
Saccharum florum Nymphaeae, conserve of *water Roses*.
Saccharū florum Pseudonardi, conserve of *Spike*.
Saccharum florum Persici, a conserve so called.
Saccharum Rosarum, Conserve of *Roses*.
Saccharum floru Rosmarini, Conserve of *Rosemary*.
Saccharum Saluiatum, Conserve of *Sage*.
Saccharum Trifolij accidi, conserve of *Cuckoes head*.
Saccharū floru verb. sculi, conserve of *Cowslips*.
Saccharū Violarū, *losaccharo*, conserve of *Violets*.
Sacerdotis Virile, *Arum*, *Cuckopit*.
Sacra herba, *Verbena*, *Aerucine*.
Sigapenum Serapiniū officinarum, a certaine kind of stinking gum growing in *Syria*, which the Apothecaries call *Serapinum*.
Sagina Italarum, *Sorgum*, an herbe so called.
Sabafaran Arabum, *Grocus*, *Saffron*.
Sal Ammoniācus, fine *sal Hammoniācus*, a kinde of *Salt*, the which hath heretofore been digged out of the sand in *Africa*, and hath been brought hither, which as yet is used amongst vs.
Sal Armoniācum officinarum, a certaine compounded salt of the Alchemists, the which offsome men hath falsly been taken for the right salt of *Africa*, and is called *Salarmoniacke*.
Sal Christiālinus, *Sal natiuus*, *Sal Fossinum*, fine & clere or chrisfall salt.
Sal fusilū, melting Salt.
Sal gemma officinarum, *Sal gemmens*, *Chrisfall salt*.
Sal Indus, a kind of *Sugar*.
Sal marinus, sea salt.
Sal popularis, common salt.
Sal palustris, sea salt.
Sal saxeu, stone salt.
Sal Absinthites, *Wlozmelwood salt*.
Salicaria, *Lyfimachia Droschoridis*, fine *salicaria lutea*, yellow water Willow or *lofestrife*.
Salicaria Cornuta Herbariorum, a kind of water Willow.

Salicaria punicea, fine *propurea*, *Lyfimachia Plinij*, seu *salicaria Spicata Herbariorum*, a kinde of *byowne lōfestrife* or *water Willow*.
Salua siderum Plinij, *Manna*, *Hony dewe* or *Spanna*.
Saluunca, *Spica*, *Celtica*, vide *Spica Celtica*.
Salix, *Itea*, the *Sallo w tree*.
Salix Amerina, *Salix marina*, sea *Sallo w tree*.
Salix marina, vide *Salix amerina*.
Salix leporis, an herbe so called.
Saluatella, the *Liver baine*.
Salua, *Eleisphacos*, *Sage*.
Salua auriculata, *Salua acuta*, *salua minor*, *Salua nobilis*, *Salua cruciata*, the lesser or eared *Sage*.
Salua acuta, vide *Salua auriculata*.
Salua Boschi, seu *Boschi salua herbariorū*, wild *Sage*.
Salua cruciata, vide *salua auriculata*.
Salua maior, great *Sage*.
Salua sylvestris, wild *Sage*.
Saluianita, fine *Salua vite*, *Adiantum album*, *Glenas*, *Paiden*, or our *Lady hayze*.
Sambucus, *Elder* or *Bometræ*.
Sambucus Aruensis, *Sambucus humilis*, fine *sambucus pumila*, *Ebulus*, wilde *Elder*.
Sambucus humilis, vide *Sambucus Aruensis*.
Sambucus pumila, wilde *Elder*.
Sampsycheu, *Maiorana*, *Pariozam*.
Sanamunda, *Quence*.
Sanclonicum officinarum, *Santonicum*, a kinde of *Southernwood*.
Sandaracha Gracorum, *Auripigmentum rubrum*, red *Arsenicks*.
Sandaracha Viruuij, *minium secundarium*, *Sinople*, red *Lead*, or *Wermilion*.
Sandaracha Arabum, *Gummi Juniperi Sandarax*, the gum of a *Juniper tree*.
Sandarax Arabum, vide *Sandaracha Arabum*.
Sandalum, *Sandalus*, the spice called *Saunders*.
Sandalum album, white *Saunders*.
Sandalum Citrinum officinarum, *Sandalum flavū*, yellow *Saunders*.
Sandonicum officinarum, *Santonicum*, a kinde of *Southernwood*.
Sanguinalis mas, *Polygonum mas*, the male *Knotgrasse*.
Sanguinalis femina, *Polygonum femina*, the female *Knotgrasse*.
Sanguinalis minor, *Ruella*, *Knotgrasse* the lesser.
Sanguinaria, *Knotgrasse*.
Sanguinaria mascula, the same.
Sanguinaria femina, the female *Knotgrasse*,

The third Index.

oꝝ Hoꝛsetayle.
Sanguis artus lapis, Hematites, the Bloodstone.
Sanguis Draconis, *Lachryma Draconis*, Dragon's blood.
Sanguis Draconis herba, an herbe so called.
Sanguis Herculis Apuleij, *Centaureum magnum*, great Centaury.
Sanguis Herculis Dioscoridis, *Crocus* Saffron.
Sanguis milui Apuleij, *Scordiu*, a water Loeke.
Sanguisorba, the herbe Burnet.
Sanguisuga, a Hoꝛseleache.
Sanies vini, Wine lees.
Sanicula, *Diapensia*, Santicle.
Sanicula Alpina Herbariorum.
Sanicula cathartica Herbariorum, *Sanicula femina*.
Sanicula femina, vide *Sanicula Cathartica*.
Sanicula quinquefolia sine sanicula vitiginea Herbariorum.
Sanicula maior, *Alchimilla*.
Sanicula vitiginea Herbariorum, vide *sanicula quinquefolia*.
Sanilum, *Scammonium*, Scammony.
Santalum, *santalus*, Saunders.
Santalum album, white Saunders.
Santalum aromaticum, *Santalum flauum*, yelow Saunders.
Santalū machosiri, vel *mazabari*, seu *marchazari Arabum*, *santalum flauum*, the same.
Santalum machazari Arabum, vide *Santalum machosiri*.
Santalum machaziri, vide *Santalum machosiri*.
Santalum odoriferum, *Santalum flauum*.
Santalum rosaceum, *Santalum rubrū*, red Saunders.
Santalum rubrum, vide *Santalum rosaceum*.
Santalum spurium, *Santalum adulterinum*, *Pseudosantalum*, bastard Saunders.
Santonium, *Abinthium santonium*, siue *marinū*, sea Wormewood.
Santolina Herbariorū, *Abrotonū femina*, Southernewood the female.
Sapa, new wine boyled to the third part.
Sapana, *Anagallis*, Chickwede.
Saphea, *Saphena Barbarorum*, the wombe vaine oꝝ the vaine of the Patrice.
Saphena Barbarorum, vide *Saphea*.
Sapphirus, vide *Sapphirus*.
Sapo, *Smegma*, Sope.
Saponaria, *Fullons grasse*, oꝝ *Crotwefope*.
Sapphirus, *Saphirus*, a Sapphire stone.
Sapphirus aureus, *Chrysis*, a yelow Sapphire.
Sapphirus candidus, a white Sapphire.
Sapphirus caruleus, siue

Sapphirus Cyaneus, a blew Sapphire.
Sapphirus Chrysis, *Sapphirus aureus*, a yelow Sapphire.
Sapphirus prafitis, vel
Sapphirus viridis, a greene Sapphire.
Sarcocolla, *gluten carnis*, *Carniglutinum*, a kind of Clewe.
Sarcotica, Incarnating salues.
Sarda, vel
Sardius lapis, *Corneolus*, a hard red stone.
Sardonia herba, *Crowfwote*.
Sardonyx, *Sardius onychinus*, a stone of the colour of the naille of a mans hand.
Sarmentum, a branch of a vine growing on the tre.
Satyron, Dogges stones, Candergrasse, oꝝ *Kagwort*.
Satyron basilicum, *Satyrium regium*, *Kagwort* the male.
Satyrium basilicum maius mas, the greater male *Kagwort*.
Satyrium basilicum maius femina, *lachryma Maria*, the greater *Kagwort* female.
Satyrium basilicum minus, the lesser male *Kagwort*.
Satyrium Erythron, oꝝ
Satyrium Erythronium, red *Kagwort*.
Satyron Triphyllon, oꝝ
Satyrium trifolium, *Kagwort*.
Satyrium odoratum, a kind of *Kagwort*.
Satyrium regium, vide *Satyrium basilicum*.
Satyrium regium minus, *Satyrium odoratum*, a kind of *Priests pintle* oꝝ *Kagwort*.
Satyriscus Apuleij, *Satyrium erythronium*, redde *Kagwort*.
Satyrismus, a disease whereby the priuie members of a man standeth alwaies.
Satureia, siue
Saturegia, *Sauoꝝy*.
Sauchromatum, *Dracontium*, Dragons.
Sauina, *sabina*, the Sauiue tre.
Saxifragia, siue
Saxifraga, *Saxifrage*.
Saxifraga alba, white *Saxifrage*.
Saxifraga lutea, yelow *Saxifrage*.
Scabies, a scab, oꝝ itche.
Scabies Hispanica, the Pore.
Scabiosa, *Scabious*.
Scala celi, *sigillum Salomonis*, *Salomons scale*.
Scambonia radix, *Scammony*.
Scammonia, siue
Scammonium, *Scammony*.
Scammonia preparata, prepared *Scammony*.
Scandulaca, *Kopewede*, oꝝ *windwede*.
Scariola officinarum, *Seriola*, *Endiue*.

Scarlea

The third Index.

Scarlea Herbariorum, Gallitricum, Clary.
Scarlea sylvestris, wilde Clarie.
Scebram maius Mesues, Tithymalus maior, the greater Spurge.
Scebram minus Mesues, Tithymalus minor, the lesser Spurge.
Scieles, the vaines of the Pitt 02 Splene.
Scelerotes barbarorum, 02
Scelerotes Gracorum, Durities, schirrus, a hard impostume, kernel, 02 swelling, which yieldeth not being pressed, and is commonly called Schirrus.
Schœnanthum, Squinanthum,
Schenoprasum, porrum festinum, Garlicke.
Schœnostrophon, Cannabis Hempe.
Schœnus, Schœnanthum, Squinanthum,
Scinus, Lentiscus, the Gallicke tree.
Scinus Plutarchi, sea Dinions.
Scia Barbarorum, Ischias, an ache in the Hip.
Scingus, Ruscus, Buxeholme.
Scincus, Cracodilus terrestris, vide Sincus.
Scincus herba, Ruscus, Buxeholme.
Scilla, Cepa marina, sea Onion.
Scioebius, Stachys, Lauander gentle.
Sclarea Herbariorum, Scarlea, Clary.
Sclarea sylvestris, wild Clary.
Scleros, Durus, in hoc libro pro serro intelligitur.
Sclerotes, scirrus.
Scolibrochon Apuleij, Trichomanes, Hayden haire
Scolopendria, sue Scolopendrium, Warts tong.
Scolopèdria vera, 02 Scolopendria minor, the herbe called Ceterach.
Scolopendrium maius, Lonchitis altera, the greater Warts tong.
Scolopendrium sylvestre Herbariorum, a kinde of Warts tong.
Scolymus, Cinarra, the Artichoeke.
Scordastrum Herbariorum, Scordotis Plinij, Marsh Garlicke 02 water Germander.
Scordiana Herbariorum, 02
Scordonia, 02 Scordiana Herbariorum, Salvia sylvestris, wild Sage.
Scordilum Apuleij, Scordiū, Chamædrys aquatica, water Germander.
Scordium, Trixago palustris, marsh Garlicke.
Scordium alterum Plinij, a kind of marsh Garlicke.
Scordium maius, the same,
Scordium minus, the lesser marsh Garlicke.
Scordium Plinianum, vide Scordium alterum.
Scoria ferri, the refuse of iron.
Scordotis, xarrubium palustre, marsh Garlicke.
Scorodon, Allium, Garlicke.
Scorpiacea Apuleij, Knotgrasse.
Scorpio, a Scorpion.

Scorpion, a kind of Spurge.
Scotomia, 02
Scotoma, a giddinette of the head.
Scrophularia, sine Scrofularia, &
Scrophularia maior, the greater Celandine, 02 the greater Figwort.
Scrophularia minor, Chelidonium minus, the lesser Figwort 02 Pilewort.
Scrotum, the cod 02 skin wherein be the stones of a man.
Scrupus humor, the Colic.
Sebel Arabum, the skin of the ruddy eies.
Sebeste, sine
Sebestena Arabum, Myxaria, the fruit also called Mixa.
Secale, Briza, Rye.
Secundina, the secundine 02 skin wherein the child is wrapped in the wombe.
Sedum, Semperuium, Houslecke.
Sedum minus, Crassula minor, Pitchmadame.
Sedi tertium genus Dioscoridis, Illecebra, little Thrist 02 Stonerop.
Segatolis, Gladiolus arvensis, Flags.
Selinastrum Herbariorum, Ranunculus aquaticus, water Crowfoote.
Selinitis, Corona terra, Alehoofe.
Selinoides, Brassica crispæ, wrinkled Cabbage.
Selinon, sine
Selinum, Apium, Smallage.
Selinophyllon Apuleij, Trichomanes Dioscoridis Hayden haire.
Selinusia, the lesser Cabbage.
Semen simplex, Zea monococcus, Bere-barley, 02 Spelt.
Semen Alexandrinum officinarum, alias Semenci-na, Sementina, sine semenzina, Wozmesæde.
Semencina officinarum, vide semen Alexandrinum.
Semen leoninum, milium solis, Gromill.
Semen lumbricorum, officinarum, semen Absinthij marini, Wozmesæde.
Semen de papaga, Aneurhoi dicitur Cartami semē, alijs semen papagalli, & semē psitaci, wild Saffron seæde.
Semen sanctum officinarum, Wozmesæde.
Semen Zedoaris officinarum, semen Absinthij marini, sea Wozmelwood seæde.
Seminalis Apuleij, Polygonum masculum, Knotgrasse.
Seminalis minor Herbariorum, Ruella, a kind of Knotgrasse.
Semperuium, Aizoon, Houslecke.
Semura, Pseudomelanthium, red Poppy.
Sena, Senna, Sene.
Sena infusio, vide Infusio Senæ.
Sena Egyptiaca, Syriaca, Alexandrina, Orientalis,

The third Index.

lis, the lesser Sene, oꝝ Alexandrian Sene.
Sena Florentina, Italica prouincialis, common oꝝ
 great Sene.
Senella Vipera, Exuvium Vipera, the skinne of a
 Vipser.
Semula, Snaicula, Sanicle.
Sepiesolum, Tormentilla, Tozmentill.
Septimernia, Plantago maior, the greater oꝝ broad
 Plantaine.
Serapion Apuleij, Orchis serapias, a kind of Can-
 dergrasse.
Serapium, vide Symplicium.
Serapium officinarum, vide Sagapenum.
Serica, Zizipha, a kinde of fruite so called.
Seriphium, seu Seriphon, Absinthium maritimum, a
 kind of Wormwood growing in the sea.
Seris, Cichorium, Cicory oꝝ Endine.
Seris sativa angustifolia, the lesser Endive.
Seris sativa minor, the same.
Seris somnifera, sue Seris urinaria, a kind of En-
 dive.
Serpentaria Dioscoridis, Dracontium, Dragons.
Serpentaria officinarum, Bisfortia, Dragons.
Serpentaria minor, the lesser Dragons: of some
 it is also called *Aron, Serpentaria minor.*
Serpentaria rubra Herbariorum, Bisfortia, Dra-
gons.
Serpentaria minor, Numularia, Siluergrasse, oꝝ
Dragons.
Serpillum, sue Serpillus, wild Thyme.
Serratula maior Herbariorum, Betonica, Betony.
Serratula minor, Chamedrys, Germanander.
Serta Campana, Catonis, Sertula Campana Diosco-
ridis, Melilotus, Melilote.
Serum, Whay.
Sesamum, Sesama, it is an vnknown seede, foꝝ
 the which the Apothecaries vse the seede of
Camelina.
Sesamum officinarum, Camelina.
Sesamum agreste, Sesamum agrion, Ricinus, Pal-
ma Christi.
Seseli, Seselium, & Seselis, Siluermountain seede
Seseli Ethiopicum, blacke Siluermountaine.
Seseli Ethiopicum herbaceum, the same.
Seseli cerninum albu, Seseli Peloponnesiacu, white
Siluermountaine.
Seselinum, Seseli, Siluermountaine.
Seselinu Peloponnesiacu, vide Seseli cerninu albu.
Seseli Cypriou, Palma Christi.
Setanias, sue setanium, a kind of Wheate.
Setialis, Viola maria, a kind of Violet.
Seutomalache, sue Seutomalachon, Spinachea,
Spinage.
Seutlon Beta, Bêtes.
Sicla officinarum, Beta, Sicula, Bêtes.

Sicys, Sicys, Cucumis, a Cucumber.
Sicys agrion, Cucumer hlyestris, Cucumer africanus,
a wilde Cucumber.
Sideritis, Magnes, the loadstone.
Sida, malus punica, the Pomegranate tree.
Sidon, Malicorium, the Pomegranate huske.
Sief Arabum, Collyrium, vel Collyrium siccum, di-
citur latinis, Gracis Xerocollyrium, a medicine
foꝝ the eyes.
Sief de Felibus, Collyrium de Felibus, a medicine
foꝝ the eyes made of Gals.
Sief de Plumbo, Collyrium de Plumbo, a medicine
foꝝ the eyes made of Lead.
Sief de Rosi, Collyrium de Rosi, a medicine foꝝ
the eyes made of Roses.
Sief de Thure, Collyrium de Thure, a medicine foꝝ
the eyes made of Frankincense.
Sief viride, Collyrium viride, a medicine foꝝ the
eyes of a greene colour.
Sigillum Christi Herbariorum, Herba paris, a kind
of Liberts oꝝ Wolfs bane.
Sigillu lemmium, Terra sigillata, sealed earth.
Sigillum Salomonis, Polygonatu, Salomons scale
Sigillum Veneris, Herba Paris, Wolfs bane.
Signigialium, Dragons.
Siler, Salix pumila, Salix aquatica, a kind of Will-
ow oꝝ Wythie Dwar.
Silermontanum officinarum, Sefeli Massiliense, a
kind of Siluermountaine.
Silex, a Flint stone.
Sili Hippocratis, Sili, vel Sefelis Plinij, Silaers
mountaine.
Sili Plinij, Sili Hippocratis.
Silicia Plinij, Fœnum gracum, Fenegreke.
Silicula Varronis, Fœnum gracum, the same.
Silphanthemū, Amaranthus luteus, Cudwæde oꝝ
Chaffewæde.
Sili Cypriou Herodoti, Ricinus, Palma Christi.
Siliqua Arbor, the Silicke tree.
Siliqua Egyptia, Cassia fistula, round Cinna-
mom pipes.
Sinapi, vel Snapis, Mustarde.
Sinapi Persicum, Raphanus maritimus, a kinde of
Mustard.
Singultus, yering oꝝ sobbing.
Spinalis, Carunculus Candidus, a kind of Car-
buncle.
Siselos officinarum, Sefeli, Siluermountaine.
Sisarum, vel Siser, the Skirret, the white Car-
rot, oꝝ yellow Parsnep.
Siser, vide Sisarum.
Sirupus, vide Symplicium.
Sisymbrium, water Pints.
Sisymbrium aquaticum, the same.
Sitanium, Saint Peters wheate.

Smilax,

The third Index.

Smilax, Taxus, Windwæde, or Zaic.
Smilax laevis, Ropewæde, or Wædebinde.
Smyrna, Myrrha, Myrry.
Smyrnium, Lonage.
Soda Arabum, *Capitis Dolor*, headach.
Solanum, *Strychnus*, Nightshade, or deaths hearbe.
Solanum sativum, the same.
Solanum vesicarium, *Halicacabus*, winter Cherry, or Alkakengie.
Solanum rubrum, the same.
Solanum officinarum, *Solanum*, Nightshade.
Solanum rubrum, *Halicacabus*, Alkakengie.
Solbastrella, *sive Sorbastrella*, Wimpernell.
Soldana, *sive Soldana officinarum*, *Volubilis marina*, Sea cole.
Solidago, *Consolida*, Wallwort.
Solidago media, Bengerne.
Solsequium Aureum, a Paragold.
Solidago serotina, a kind of Wallwort.
Solutio continuatilis, a dissolving of that which necessarily belongeth to another.
Sonchus, *Cicerbita*, Sowthistle.
Sonchus aspera, *Sonchus sylvestris*, wilde Sowthistle.
Sorbus, *Sperba*, the Seruis tree.
Sorbus, the same.
Sorgum, *sive Sorghum*, Millet of Indy.
Sophia, *Thalistrum*.
Spanachia, *Spinacea*, Spinage.
Sparagus officinarum, *Asparagus*, Sparage.
Spasmus, *Convulsio*, the Cramp.
Spaula odorata, Iris, the flower deluce.
Species Diambra, a powder of Ambergræce.
Species Dianisi, a powder of Annis seedes.
Species Dianthus, *sive Dianthos*, a powder of the flowers of Rosemary.
Species Aromatici Rosati, a powder of Roses.
Species Aromatici Caryophyllati, a powder of Cloves.
Species Diaculaminthos, a powder of wilde Spints.
Species Diacroci, *sive Species Diacircuma*, *sive Diacrocoma*, a powder of Saffron so called.
Species Diacosti, a powder so called.
Species Diacymini, a powder of Comin.
Species Diatragacanthi frigidi & Calidi, a powder so called.
Species Diacinnamomi, a powder of Cinna-mome.
Species Cordiales, a powder for the hart.
Species Ducis, a powder so called.
Species Diagalanga, a powder of Galangall.

Species de gemmis frigida, a powder so called.
Species de gemmis Calida, a powder so called.
Species de gemmis Temperata, a powder of tempered Pearles.
Species Hieræ simplicis, a powder so called.
Species Diariris, *sive Diaireos*, a powder of flower deluce.
Species Iustina, a powder so called.
Species Dialacca, a powder so called.
Species Latificantes, a powder whereby the hart is made glad and toyfull.
Species latitia Galeni, the same.
Species lithontribon, a powder so called.
Species Liberantes, a preferuative powder.
Species Diamargariton frigida, a very cooling powder made of Pearles.
Species diamargariton Calida, a warming powder made of Pearles.
Species Diameniba, a powder of Spints.
Species Diamosci amari & Dulcis, a powder so called.
Species Nera, a powder so called.
Species Diaolibani, a powder of Frankinsence.
Species de Papanere, a powder of Poppy.
Species Diapenidi, a powder so called.
Species Diapenonj, a powder of Diony rootes.
Species Diaphœnicon, *vide Diaphœnicon*.
Species Philanthron, a powder so called.
Species pliris Arcoticon officinarum, *sive Species Diaplirisarcoticon*, a powder so called.
Species Diaprasij, a kind of powder.
Species Diarhodon Abbatis, a powder of Roses.
Species Eleſtuarij de succo Rosarum, a powder of the sap of Roses.
Species Rosata novella, a powder of Roses.
Species de seminibus, a powder of certayne seedes.
Species Diatrionpipereon, a powder of three kinds of Pepper.
Species Triasandalon, a powder so called.
Species Diaturbith, a powder of Turbith.
Species Bartholdi, a powder so called, which is used to be eaten with fish, and with cold Hens and Capons.
Species Diaxulsoles, a powder so called.
Spelta, Sea, Spelt.
Sperma Balenarum, the spawne of a Whale.
Sperma ceti, the same.
Speronella, *Aparine*, Goshart.
Sphacelus Theophrasti, a kind of Sage.
Sphæra marina, *Sphæra Thalassia*, sea balles.
Spharion, *Spharitis*, *Nux Cyparissi*, a Cypresse Nut.

The third Index.

Spit.
Sphagnum, *Muscus arborum*, *Holle*.
Sphecle, keefe of wine.
Sphocle, the same.
Sphondilum, *Bearebzeech*, or *Beares claw*.
Sphragis, *Sigillum lemnium*, *Sealed earth*.
Spica Celtica, *Spica Romana*, *Spica Gallica*, the long *Spikenard*.
Spica hortulana, a kinde of *Lauender*.
Spica indica, *Nardus indica*, a kinde of *Spikenard*.
Spica Romana, vide *Spica Celtica*.
Spicantum Herbariorum, *Lonchitis altera*, an herbe so called.
Spinacea, *Spinaceum*, *Spinachia*, *Spinage*.
Spina Dina Marie, a kinde of *Rose* so called.
Spina Buxea, *Pyxantha*, the *Berberie tree*.
Spina murina, *Spina vesperilionis*, *Butchers brome*.
Spinalis, *Carbunculus candidus*, a *Carbuncle*.
Spinus Vergily, *Prunus syluestris*, a wilde *Plumtree*, or *Slothere*.
Spiritus vitales, the lively *breath*.
Splenium, *Harts tong*.
Splen, *Lien*, the *Splett*.
Splenetica, the *Splett vaine*.
Spodium gracorum, *Pompholix nigra*, a kinde of *scote*.
Spolium Vipere, the *skin of a Vipere*.
Spongiola, *Rosa canina*, *Spondagos Marcelli*, *Bedgear*, that groweth on a swete *byer* or other trees like a *sponge*.
Spondylia, *ridge bones*.
Spongites, *Lapis spongia*, *Sponge*, or *Jewell stone*.
Spuma auri, *yellow Lithargie*.
Spuma argenti, *Silver dross*, or *white Lithargie*.
Spuma Barua martialis, *Lixinium*, *Lye*.
Spuma Caustica martialis, *Lixinium*, *Lye*.
Spuma maris, *sea foame*, or *froth*.
Spuma Plumbi, *Lithargie* or *white Leade*.
Squinanche, & *Squinantia Barbarorum*, the inflammation of the muscle of the inner *gargill*, the *Squince*, *Alias Angina*.
Squilla, and *Squylla officinarum*, a certayne herbe so called.
Stachyites, *Tripolium*, a kinde of *Turbith*.
Staele, *Syrax liquidus*, the flower of *Pyrrh*, vide *Storax liquida*.
Stachas Galeni, *Stichas Dioscoridis*, *French Lauender*, or *Lauender gentle*.
Stachas citrina herbariorum, *Amarantus luteus*, *Paudentwozt*, *Cudwæde*, or *Chaffe*.

wæde.
Stasis agria officinarum, *Staphys agria*, *Staueacre*, or *Licebane*.
Stagonus, a certayne herbe in *Syria*, from the which the gumme *Galbanum* cometh, vide *Galbanum*.
Staphylinus, *Pastinaca*, a *Parfenep*.
Staphylinus albus, *Pastinaca alba*, a white *Parfenep*.
Staphylinus erraticus, *Pastinaca vera*, a wilde yellow *Parfenep*.
Staphylinus luteus, *Pastinaca lutea*, a yellow *Parfenep*.
Staphylinus ruber, *Pastinaca rubra*, a kinde of red *Parfenep*.
Staphylodendrum, a kinde of *Spits* so called.
Staphydes, *Vua passe*, *Kaysons*.
Staphys agria, *Staueacre*, or *Licebane*.
Statumaria Apuleij, *Polygonum*, *Wnotgrasse*.
Stear, *Viscum*, *Pitteto*.
Stella Attica, *Bubonium*, *Codwozt*.
Stella Mossilitica, *Bubonium Mossiliticum*, a kinde of the same.
Stelladia Italarum, an *Hypocrasse* drinke in *Italy* called *Stelladia*.
Stellaria Herbariorum, *Alchimilla*, *Ladies mantle*.
Stelephurus Theophrasti, *Plantago Angustifolia*, narrowleaved *Plantaine*.
Stomphyla, *Vuarum expressum* retrimenta, pressed, or dyed *Grapes*.
Stercus caninum album, *Vulgo album* *gracum* dicitur, the white dung or ordure of a dog.
Stercus Diaboli officinarum, *Assa fetida*, a kinde king gumme.
Stergetron, *Sedum*, *Houfclerke*.
Sternutatio, *Snæking*.
Stibi, *Stibium*, *Antimonium*, a kinde of glasse so called.
Stichas Dioscoridis, *Stachas Galeni*, *Lauender gentle*.
Stichas Arabica, *Arabian Lauender*.
Stichas Citrina herbariorum, *Amarantus luteus*, *Paudentwozt*, *Cudwæde*, or *Chaffe* wæde.
Stichas Gallica, a kinde of *Lauender gentle* so called.
Stichas montana, *Italian Lauender gentle*.
Stimmi, sue *Stimium*, a glasse so called.
Stimicus officinarum, *Scincus*, *crocodilus terrestris*, an earth *Crocoble*. Our dotting soles vse the water Cuert for it, which is as like it, as an Apple is like an *Wyter*.

Stypho-

The third Index.

Stiphonia, sine Styphonia, a kinde of Lauender gentle.
Stomachus, the Stomack.
Stomoma, Chalybs, Steele.
Storax officinarum, & Storax Calamintha, Storax, sine *Styrax Calamitis*, a certaine odoriferous and well smelling gum, proceeding of a tree also called *Styraz*.
Storax liquida officinarum, Styrax liquidus.
Stæle, a swæte smelling iuice of *Pyrrh*.
Strangulatio, strangling, choking, or stopping.
Strangulator medicorum, Vulgo *angina*, the Squince.
Straguria, Urine stillicidium, the Strangurie.
Stratiotes, Millefolium, Pillspe, Parrow, or *Posebleede*.
Strobilus, Coniu, a Pine apple tree.
Strobili, nuclei Pini, a Pine apple.
Strobilus, Cinara, an *Artechoke*.
Struthionacum, Struthium. *Wurit*, herbe *Phislip*, fullons grasse, or *Crowsope*.
Struthium, vide Struthionacum.
Strutos, Passer, a Sparrow.
Strichnum, sine Strichnus, Solanum, *Nightshade*.
Stupe factina, a disinaying medicine.
Stupor, Paraplexia, sodaine pziuation or lacke of sense of feeling.
Suber, Phellus, Corke.
Subethi Arabum, Charos, a kinde of sleeping disease.
Subersio ventriculi, the turning vpside downe of the *Stawe*.
Succinum, Electrum, Amber.
Succinum Orientale, Ambarum, Amber.
Succio Macoby, Persicum, a Peach.
Succisa, Morsus Diaboli, Devils bit, or *Rempe*.
Sucotachos, Perditium, Pellitoze of the wall.
Succus malorum Puniceorum, sine vinum malorum puniceorum, the sap or iuice of a *Pomegranate*.
Succus medicus, Succus Syriacus, Assa fetida, a stinking gumme.
Suffusio fellis, Suffusio bilis, Iterus, the yellove Jaundise.
Sulphur, Sulfur, Brimstone.
Sulphur vivum, Sulfur vise.
Sulphur mortuum, Sulphur factitium, Brimstone.
Sulphur factitium, the same.
Sumich Arabum, Rhus Grecorum, a kinde of sæde which of the Apothecaries is called

Sumach.
Supercilium terre, Adiantum, Venus, Hayden, or our Ladies haire.
Supercilium Veneris, Millefolium, Pillspe.
Suppositorium officinarum, & Barbarorum Glaus, Balanus, a *Suppeltioze*.
Suppressio nocturna, Ephialtes, Incubus, a disease in ones sleepe when one is almost stifeled, and cannot well fetch his bzeath, nor speake. The *Mare*.
Sutura capitis, the seame in the skull.
Sycaminum, Morum, the Mulberry tree.
Sycodes, Ficus, the *Hemo:rhoides*.
Sylua mater Scribonij, Honyfuckle.
Symphytum alterum, Symphytum minus, Wallwort, Ake care, or *Comfrey*.
Syncipus, the fore part of the head.
Syncopalis fames, an extreame or cutting hunger.
Syncope, a fowning for feble nesse.
Synchiopa, Stachas, French Lauender.
Syndesmi, Ligamenta, Bonds.
Synochus, an ague so called.
Syraum, mustum ad tertias coctum, new wine or must thysie sodden.
Syreon Plinij, Tortyle, sine Tordylium, the sæde of the herbe *Seselis*.
Syrium, Minium secundarium, Sinople, red Leade, or *Uermilcon*.
Syrites, Saphirus lapis, a Sapphire.
Syrupus, sirupus, serapium, and of *Nicolas Myrepissus* it is called *Drosatum*, a *Syrupe*.
Syrupus de Absinthio, sirupe of Wlozmelwood.
Syrupus Acetose, Syrupus de succo Oxalidis, Sirupe of sower Docks.
Syrupus acetosus simplex officinarum, Syrupus acetatus simplex, sirupe of Vineger.
Syrupus acetatus simplex, Syrupus acetosus simplex.
Syrupus acetosus compositus officinarum, vel Syrupus acetosus de radicibus, Syrupus acetatus compositus de radicibus, Syrupus acetatus diureticus, a kinde of sirupe so called.
Syrupus acetosus compositus.
Syrupus acetosus de Cythonijs officinarum, Syrupus acetatus de Cydonijs.
Syrupus acetatus de radicibus, vide Syrupus acetosus compositus.
Syrupus acetatus diureticus, vide Syrupus acetosus compositus.
Syrupus acetatus de Cydonijs, vide Syrupus acetosus de Cydonijs.
Syrupus acetatus Diarhodon, vide Syrupus acetosus Diarhodon.
Syrupus acetosus Diarhodon, Syrupus acetatus Diarhodon.

The third Index.

Diarhedon, Sirupe of Vineger and Rofes.
Syrupus adiantini, vide *syrupus de Capillis Veneris*.
Syrupus de Arantijs, sine *Arantiorum*, Sirupe of Oranges.
Syrupus de Artemisia, Sirupe of Bugwort.
Syrupus de Berberibus, *syrupus de Oxyacantha*, Sirupe of Berberies.
Syrupus de Betonica, Sirupe of Betony.
Syrupus de Byzantijs, *syrupus Danarij*, *syrupus Byzantinus*, a Sirupe so called.
Syrupus de Boragine, Sirupe of Burrage.
Syrupus de Buglossa, Sirupe of Buglosse.
Syrupus de Calamintha, Sirupe of Calaminte.
Syrupus de Cichorea, sine *de Cichorio*, Sirupe of wilde Cicozie.
Syrupus de Cichorio cum Rhabbarbaro, Sirupe of Cicozie and Rubarbe.
Syrupus Capillorum Veneris, *syrupus Adiantini*, Sirupe of Venus, Hayden, or our Ladies haire.
Syrupus de corticibus Citri, Sirupe of the shels of a Citron.
Syrupus de Cucurbita, *syrupus Cucurbitini*, Sirupe of Gourds, or Pompeons.
Syrupus Cydoniorum, *Mina Cydoniorum*, Sirupe of Quinces.
Syrupus de Endivia, *syrupus de Intybo*, Sirupe of Endiue.
Syrupus de Epithymo.
Syrupus de Eupatorio, *syrupus de Agrimonia*, Sirupe of Agrimony.
Syrupus Danarij, vide *syrupus de Byzantijs*.
Syrupus de Agrimonia, vide *syrupus de Eupatorio*.
Syrupus de Fumaria, *syrupus de Fumo terra*, Sirupe of fumitoze.
Syrupus de fumo terra, vide *supra*.
Syrupus de Glycyrrhiza, officinis *syrupus de liquiritia dici*, Sirupe of Liqueozice.
Syrupus granatorum, *syrupus ex succo malorum Punicorum*, Sirupe of Pomegranates.
Syrupus de Hyssopo, Sirupe of Hyssope.
Syrupus de Intybo, Sirupe of Endiue.
Syrupus de Irijs officinarum, *syrupus de Iride*, *syrupus Irius*, Sirupe of the flower deluce.
Syrupus de Iuiubis, *syrupus Iuinibinus*, *syrupus Zyzphorum*, or *Zyzphinus*, a Sirupe so called.
Syrupus de Lemonibus, sine *syrupus aciditatis Lemoniorum*, Sirupe of Limons.
Syrupus de Lupulo, *syrupus Lupulorum*, Sirupe of Hops.
Syrupus de Mentha, Sirupe of Mints.
Syrupus de Myrto, sine *syrupus Myrtinus*, Sirupe

of Myrtles.
Syrupus Malorum Neranziorum, Sirupe of Oranges.
Syrupus conditura Mirobalanorum, Sirupe of the confectiō of Mirobalans.
Syrupus de Nenuphare officinarum, vide *syrupus de Nymphaea*.
Syrupus de Nymphaea, *syrupus de Nenuphare officinarum*, Sirupe of water Lillies.
Syrupus de Papanere, sine *syrupus Papanerinus*, Sirupe of Poppy.
Syrupus de Omphacio, vide *syrupus de Agrestia*.
Syrupus de Oxyacantha, vide *syrupus de Berberis*.
Syrupus de succo Oxalidis, *syrupus de succo Acetose*.
Syrupus Persicorum, Sirupe of Peaches.
Syrupus de Plantagine, Sirupe of Plantaine.
Syrupus de Pomis, Sirupe of Apples.
Syrupus de Pomis Saboris Regis.
Syrupus de Portulaca, Sirupe of Purslaine.
Syrupus de Prassio, Sirupe of Horehound.
Syrupus de Tyris, Sirupe of Beares.
Syrupus de radicibus, vide *syrupus de quinque radicibus*.
Syrupus de duabus radicibus, Sirupe of two rotes.
Syrupus Ribium, Sirupe of Raspes.
Syrupus infusionis Rosarum, *syrupus Rosarum*, Sirupe of Rofes.
Syrupus rosarum, vide *syrupus infusionis rosarum*.
Syrupus rosarum solutius, sine *Syrupus incarnatarum rosarum*, a lartative Sirupe of Rofes.
Syrupus de rosis siccis, sine *Syrupus rosarum siccarum*, Sirupe of dyed Rofes.
Syrupus rosarum albarum, Sirupe of white Rofes.
Syrupus Saboris Regis, sine *Syrupus de pomis Saboris Regis*, a certaine kinde of Sirupe so called.
Syrupus sena, sine *syrupus seniticus*, a Sirupe of Sene.
Syrupus de liquiritia officinarum, vide *syrupus de Glycyrrhiza*.
Syrupus de Stachade, Sirupe of Lauender gentle.
Syrupus de Thymo, Sirupe of Thyme.
Syrupus Violarum, Sirupe of Violets.

T.

T Abes, Phibis, a consuming and wasting of the bodie.

Talus

The third Index.

Talus Leporis.
Tamarindi, *lower Dates.*
Tamariscus officinarum, a *Tamariske* tree.
Tamarix, the same.
Tamarus, *Vitis nigra*, black *Bzony*.
Tannus, *sine Tamiu*, the same.
Tanacetum, *Tansie*.
Tanacetum sylvestre herbariorum, *Anserina*, wild
Tansie.
Tapsus Barbatu, *Woolblade*.
Tarantula, *Phalangium*, a kinde of *Spiders*.
Taraxacon Arabum, *Cichorea*, *Intybus sylvestris*,
Cicorie.
Taraxacon officinarum, *Aphaca Theophrasti*,
the same.
Tarbelodathium Dioscoridis, *Plantago*, *Plan-*
taine.
Tarum Plinij, *Azallochum Gracorum*, a swete
wood so called.
Tartarus, the lees of wyne.
Taxus, *Smilax*, a tree like *Firre*, a kinde of
Pew.
Tecolihu, *Lapis Iudaicus*, *Jewes stone*.
Telephium, an herbe so called.
Telephium Album, a kinde of white *Dy-*
pine.
Telephium purpureum, a kinde of *Dypine*.
Telis, *Fenegræke*.
Tembul, *sine Tembulum Arabum*, *folium Indum*,
vide Malabathrum.
Tendones, the cords or sinnewes.
Tenesmus, *Tinesmus*, a disease so called.
Terebentina officinarum, *resina Terebinthina*.
Terebinthina, *Turpentine*.
Terebinthum, the *Turpentine* tree.
Terebinthina resina, *Turpentine*.
Terebinthizusa, a kinde of yellow *Jasper*
stone.
Tereniabin, *sine Tergebin Arabum*, *Manna li-*
quida, *Honny dewe*, or *Hanna*.
Terpentina officinarum, *Resina Terebinthina*,
Turpentine.
Terra figularis Columella, *Argilla*, *Potters*
earth.
Terra lemnia, *Terra sigillata*, *sealed earth*.
Terra sigillaria Ciceronis, *Argilla*, *Potters*
earth.
Terra viridis, *Bozasse*.
Terra Sancti Pauli, an earth so called.
Tertian, a *Tertian Ague*.
Tertian exquisita, a right *Tertian Ague*.
Tertian extensa, a *Tertian Ague* of foetie
bowers.
Tertian duplex, a double *Tertian Ague*,

which is also mixed with a *Quotidian*
Ague.
Tertian *notha*, *sine Tertiana spuria*, a *bastard*
Tertian Ague.
Testiculus, *sine Testiculus Canis*, *Orchis*, *Dog*
stones.
Testiculus leporinus, *Satyrium*, *three leaved Can-*
dergrasse.
Testiculus sacerdotis, *Chelidonium minus*, the
lesser Celandine.
Testiculus odoratus, a kinde of *dog stones*.
Testiculus Satyri, *Satyrium erythronium*, a kinde
of *three leaved Candergrasse*.
Testiculus vulpis, *Satyrium*, a kinde of *Ag-*
wort.
Testudinaria, *Cyclaminus*, *Solwes bread*.
Teucrium, *great Germander*.
Teucomalache, *Spinacea*, *Spinage*.
Tentalis, *Polygonum*, *Knottgrasse*.
Tentilis, *sine Tentlon*, *Bætes*.
Tetanus, a kinde of *Cramp*.
Thalidrum, *Sophia*.
Thapsia, a kinde of *Turbith*.
Thanmastos, *Iris*, *flower deluce*.
Thelpide, *vel Thalpide*, *Iris*, the same.
Thelyphonum, an herbe so called.
Thelyphorium, *Abrotonum*, a kinde of *So-*
thernwood.
Theriaca, *Treacle*.
Theriaca Andromachi, a kinde of the best
Treacle.
Theriaca Diatesaron, *common Treacle*.
Theriaca magna, another kinde of the best
Treacle.
Theriacara, *Phu verum*, a kinde of *Wale-*
rian.
Theriophonum Apulej, *Dracontium*, *Dragons*.
Theriophonum Dioscoridis, *Pardalianches*, *Li-*
barus baine.
Theriophonum Aconitum, *Pardalianches*.
Therium Apulej, *Dracontium*, *Dragons*.
Therma sulphurea, *Brimstone bathes*.
Thermus, *Lupinus*, *Lupines*.
Thesarica, *Plantago*, *Plantaine*.
Thion apyron, *sulphur fossile*, *feu ignem non exper-*
ium, a kinde of *Brimstone*.
Thlaspi Cratena, *Thlaspi aliterum Dioscoridis*, *Ra-*
phanus marinus, *Kayfort*, *treacle Huffleard*,
houres or *dish Huffleard*.
Thorax, the *Brest*.
Thraustma, *sine Thrauston Plinij*, *Ammoniacum*,
Thymiana, a certaine kinde of *gum Armo-*
niack, *vide Ammoniacum Thymiana*.
Thridax, *Lactuca*, *Lettice*.

The third Index.

- Thridax agraria*, *Lactuca sylvestris*, wilde Lettice.
- Thronon Homerii*, Rosa, a Rose.
- Thryalles*, the leanes of the herbe called rose Campion.
- Thus Olibanum*, Frankinsence.
- Thus Corticosum*, the refuse of Frankinsence.
- Thus adulterinum*, bastard Frankinsence.
- Thus granulosum*, crombed Frankinsence.
- Thus masculum*, *Thus testiculatum*, white Frankinsence.
- Thus terre Plinij*, *Chamaepitys*, Heath, or dwarfe Cypres.
- Thylacitis*, *Papauer album*, white Poppy.
- Thymiana*, *Narcabutum officinarum*, *Thymiana*, blacke Frankinsence.
- Thymiana herbariorum*, *Thymum*, Tyme.
- Thymum Candidum*, *Thymum Capitatum*, *Thymum Creticum*, *Thymum siccum*, *Thymum Aromaticum*, white Tyme, or Tyme of Crete.
- Tilia*, *Philyra*, the Tylee tree.
- Tilia femina*, *Tilia sativa*, the Linden tree.
- Tilia mascula*, *Tilia sylvestris*, the wilde Tylee tree.
- Tilphantemum*, Cold flower.
- Timoron*, *Cicuta*, Hemlock.
- Tithymalus arborescens*, wilde Spurge.
- Tithymalus Characias*, a kinde of Spurge.
- Tithymalus Caryites*, a Spurge so called.
- Tithymalus Cobius*, wilde Spurge.
- Tithymalus Cometes*, the same.
- Tithymalus Cupressinus*, or *Tithymalus Cyparissius*, Pine spurge.
- Tithymalus Dendroides*, *sive Dendroides*, Stone spurge.
- Tithymalus femina*, the female Spurge.
- Tithymalus leptophyllus*, Stone Spurge.
- Tithymalus latifolius*, broad leaved Spurge.
- Tithymalus myrtifolius*, *sive myrtiphyllus*, or *Tithymalus myrtaceus*, a certaine spurge so called.
- Tithymalus masculus*, Wols milk.
- Tithymalus petreus*, Stone spurge.
- Tithymalus paryphyllus*, a certaine spurge so called.
- Tithymalus solsequius*, *sive solsequius*, Wert-grasse, or Wertwoxt.
- Tithymalus tenuifolius*, narrow leaved Spurge.
- Tithymalus vallis*, wilde Spurge.
- Tonilla*, the kirkels growing within the mouth.
- Topiaria*, Italian Bearedorch, or Beares claw.
- Tordylum*, *Tordylion*, *Seseli Creticum*, Siluerr mountaine of Candy.
- Tormentilla*.
- Termina*, fretting or wounding in the belly or guts.
- Torpor*, a debilitation or febleness of the minde.
- Tota bona herbariorum*, a kinde of Spinage.
- Toxicum*, a kinde of venim or poyson, where with the heads of arrowes are poysoned.
- Trachea*, the wescin or pipe of the lungs, the windepipe.
- Tragacantha*, *Tragacanthum*, a kinde of gum.
- Tragea*, *Tragama*.
- Tragorigarum*, *sive Tragoriganus*.
- Tragonatum*, *Caryophyllus Aruensis*, Coyme rose.
- Tragonia*, *Tarragon*.
- Tragofelinum herbariorum*, *Pimpinella alba*, white Pimpernell.
- Tragofelinum maius*, *Pimpinella maior*, the greater Pimpernell.
- Tragofelinum minus*, the lesser Pimpernell.
- Tremor*, quaking, trembling, or great feare.
- Tripharmacum officinarum*, *Emplastrum tripharmacum*.
- Trisantal*, *Triasandalon officinarum*, Locke *Dis-trisandalon* in the letter D.
- Tribulus aquaticus*, *Tribulus enydros*, water Chefnut.
- Tribulus marinus officinarum*, *Tribulus aquaticus*, the same.
- Trichomanes*, *Gardens haire*.
- Tridactylum*, *Vitex*, *Agnus castus*.
- Trifolium*, *Triphyllon*, thre leaved grasse.
- Trifolium acidum*, *sive Acetosum*, tower Trifoly, or Woodflower.
- Trifolium acutum*, *Columelle Asphaltium*, pickled Trifoly.
- Trifolium album*, white Trifoly.
- Trifolium felinum*, *Lagopus*, Hares foot, Hares cummin, *Trinitie* grasse, or herbe *Trinitie*.
- Trifolium graecum*, *Fenegræke*.
- Trifolium incarnatum*, *Herbariorum*, a kinde of Trifoly.
- Trifolium odoratum*, *Vergerij*, *Asphaltium*, garden Clauer.
- Trifolium pratense*, thre leaved grasse, or Trifoly the red.
- Trifolium purpureum*, the same.
- Trifolium sylvestre*, wilde Trifoly.
- Trifolium Trinitatis*, *Lagopodium*, *Trinitie* grasse.
- Trifolium versinum*, *Herbariorum*, *Lotus sylvestris*, wilde

The third Index.

wilde Helilote.
Trinitos Nicandri, Terebinthus, the Turpentine tree.
Trinitatis herba, hearbe Trinitie, or Hartes ease.
Triompiperion officinarum, vide Diatriompiperion.
Triorchis Aeginetia, Orchis serapias Dioscoridis, Gandergrasse.
Tripetalon, Callimachi, Trifolium pratense, a kind of Trifoly.
Trifera magna, a confection so called.
Trifera fenonis, a certaine confection.
Trifera Persica, a confection so called.
Trifera Saracenicæ, a certaine confection.
Tripolium, Turpetum Serapionis, a kind of Turbith.
Triffago, Chamedrys, Chamedrys.
Triffago aquatica, siue Palustris, Chamedrys aquatica, vide Tencrimum.
Triffia, vide Trisca.
Tribales, a kinde of Hostiecke.
Triticum siluestre, vel Triticum terrestre, Chelidonium minus, the lesser Telandine.
Tritum Apuleij, Tithymalus dulcis, a kinde of Spurge.
Trixago, Triffago, Germanander.
Trixago palustris, vide Tencrimum.
Trixis Plinij, Palma Christi.
Trocisci pastilli: Officina nonnihil deprauata Appellatione Trociscos nominant siue aspiratione, a certaine kinde of round cakes, which are prepared for medicines.
Trocisci Adulphi, vide Trocisci de sulphure.
Trocisci de Absinthio, little cakes of Worme-wood.
Trocisci de Agarico, cakes of Agarick.
Trocisci de Albandel, Trocisci de Colocynthide, little cakes of Coloquintida, or wilde Gourds.
Trocisci de Alkakengi, Trocisci de Halicacabo.
Trocisci de Berberis, siue de Berberibus, Trocisci de Oxyacantha, little cakes of Berberies.
Trocisci de Bolo Armeno, cakes of fine Bolus.
Trocisci de Camphora, cakes of Camphire.
Trocisci de Capparibus, siue Trocisci Capparum.
Trocisci de Charabe, siue Trocisci de succino, cakes of Amber.
Trocisci de Chelidonia, cakes of Telandine.
Trocisci de Colocynthide, vide Trocisci de Albandel.
Trocisci de Corallijs, cakes of Corrall.
Trocisci de Crocoma, vide Trocisci de Lacca.
Trocisci de Eupatorio, cakes of Agrimony.
Trocisci de Lacca, cakes of Lacca, siue Trocisci de Crocoma.

Trocisci de Halicacabo, vide Trocisci de Alkakengi.
Trocisci de Gallia Moscata.
Trocisci de Diarbodon, Roserakes which do retayne the name Diarbodon, or cakes of Diarbodon.
Trocisci de Myrrha, cakes of Myrrh.
Trocisci de Olibano, cakes of Frankincense.
Trocisci de Oxyacantha, vide Trocisci de Berberis.
Trocisci de Rhabbarbaro.
Trocisci de Rosis, Rose cakes.
Trocisci de Sandalis, cakes of Lignum Aloes.
Trocisci de Sulphure, siue Trocisci Adulphi.
Trocisci de Spica, cakes of Spikenard.
Trocisci de Spodio, cakes made of a kinde of scote so called.
Trocisci de Terra sigillata.
Trocisci de Violis, Violet cakes.
Tricophyes Apuleij, Trochomanes, Hayden haire.
Trichnus, Solanum, Nightshade.
Trymthalites, Cyclaminus, Solwes bread.
Turbetum, Turpetum, the Turbit roote.
Turbit, the same.
Turpetum Aethuarij duplex, nigrum, & album, white and black Turbith.
Turpetum album, Alpum, white Turbith.
Turpetum Alexandrinum, Turpetum Orientale, the same.
Turpetum Cineritium, Thapsia, a kinde of Turbith.
Turpetum Serapionis, Tripolium Dioscoridis, a certaine kind of Turbith so called.
Tussilago, Bechinum, Foles scote.
Tussis, the Cough.
Tutia Arabum, Pompholyx nigra, gray Tutty.
Tutia officinarum, Cadmia fornacia, Tutty.
Tutia factitia, Tutty counterfeited.
Tunescæ, vocabulum ungaricum, Pruna Passa, dyed Prunes.
Tympania, siue Tympanites, the Tympany.
Typhodes, a kinde of continuall ague.
Typhonium Dioscoridis, Apolinaris, Venbane, or Venquaile.
Typhonium Apuleij, Dracuntium, Dragons.
Typha Theophrasti, Typha aquatica, Typha palustris, Cats tayle, or water toych.
Tyrus, Vipera, a Tiiper.

V.

V Accinum, Vitis Idææ Theophrasti, a blackberry.
Valeriana, Marinella, Valerian.
Varices, broken vaines in the legs, or in any other

The third Index.

other part of a mans body.
Vena, a Vayne.
Vena Cava, the great Iyuer vayne.
Vena Citrina, *Cyperus Indicus*, a kinde of Cypresse roote.
Vena communis, the Median vaine.
Vena corporalis, the same.
Vena manifesta, the mother vaine.
Vena nigra, the median vaine.
Vena pulsatilis, the pulse vaine.
Vena tinctoria, *rubia infectoria*, Dadder.
Vena vniuersalis, *Mediana*, the Median vaine.
Vena quiera, the bloud vaines.
Ventriculus, the stomacke.
Veratrum adulterinum, *Pulmonaria Vegetij*, wilde Pæsewozt.
Verbena, *sive Verbenaca*, Merucine.
Verbasculum, Cotwslips.
Verbasculum album, white Cotwslips.
Verbasculum odoratum, Cotwslips.
Verbasculum multiplex, double Cotwslips.
Verbascum, *Phlomis*, Longwozt, or Woolblade.
Verbascum album, *Verbascum femina*, Woolblade the female.
Verbascum saluifolium, *sive Verbascum syluestre*, wilde Woolblade.
Vermes terreni, *Intestina terra*, a long woyme breeding in the earth.
Vermicularis, *crassula minor*, the lesser Houslaeke.
Vernilagium, *sive Vernilago*, *Chameleon niger*, the common Thistle with a great long stalke.
Vernix Sandaraca, the gumme of the Juniper tree.
Veronica, Paules Betony.
Verrucales, *Hemorrhoides*, the Pyles or Hemorrhoides.
Verrucaria quorundam, Haregolds.
Vertebra, *Spondylia*, the ioynts or knots of the backbone, the Spondiles.
Vertex, the top or crowne of the head.
Vertigo, a giddinesse of the head.
Vesicaria, *Halicacabus*, winter Cherries.
Veternus, *Letbargus*, a drouisie disease causing a continuall sleepe.
Vetonica, *sive Betonica*, Betony.
Vicia, a Vetch.
Victorialis.
Victorialis longa.
Victorialis mascula.
Victorialis femina, *sive Victorialis rotunda*.
Vinca peruinca officinarum, Pertwinkle.
Vincetoxicum, *Asclepias*, Swallow wozt.
Vincibosum Herbariorū, *Periclymenum*, Woodbinde, or Honyfuckle.

Vineago, *Perdicium*, Pellitory of the wall.
Vini rosa, a kinde of wilde rose or Egentine smelling like Cinamome, a Cinamome rose.
Vinum ex Absinthio, *Wolmetwood wine*.
Vinum aquosum, *vinum oligophorū*, a small wine.
Vinum ardens, *vinum sublimatum*, *Aqua vite*.
Vinum aruifum, *Galmeſey*.
Vinum Apianum, *Huscadine*.
Vinum atrum, thicke red wine, *Aligant*.
Vinum Buglossatum, *vinum ex Buglossa*, *Buglosse wine*.
Vinum Cerasorum, *Cherry wine*.
Vinum Chium, *Galmeſey*.
Vinum Claretum, *Hippocras*.
Vinum ex floribus, *Cariophyllea*, wine of Gills.
Vinum Creticum, *Galmeſey*. (ſers.
Vinum Coactum, a kinde of Puſt.
Vinum dilutum, water and wine mixed toge-
Vinum Hippocraticum, *Hippocrasſe*. (ther.
Vinum Iuniperinum, *Juniper wine*.
Vinum mellitum, *Honeyed wine*.
Vinum maluaticum, *Galmeſey*.
Vinum Multiferum, strong wine.
Vinum Granatorum, *Pomegranate wine*.
Vinum Maluifanum, *Galmeſey*.
Vinum muſum, ſweete wine.
Vinum malorum puniceorum, *Pomegranate wine*.
Vinum Muſcatellum, *ſeu Muſcatellinum*, *Huſcadine*.
Vinum Marneſianum, *Galmeſey*.
Vinum Muſteum, *Puſt*.
Vinum Muſiceum, a kind of wine ſo called.
Vinum Monenbaſiaticum, *Galmeſey*.
Vinum Nenupharinum, wine of water Lillies.
Vinum Oenodes, *sive vinofum*, strong wine.
Vinum polyphorum, *Vinum multiſerum*, the ſame.
Vinum pauciferum, *Oligophorum*, ſmall wine.
Vinum ex Peonia, *sive Peonites*, *Piony wine*.
Vinum ex floribus Pſeudomardi, *Spikenard wine*.
Vinum ruſſum, *rubrum*, *vel rubrum*, red wine.
Vinum rubellum, reddiſh wine.
Vinum raſpatitum, wine of whole Grapes.
Vinum ſublimatum, *Aqua vite*.
Vinum Saluiatum, *Saged wine*.
Vinum Seniticum, *Vinum ex ſena conſectum*, wine of Sene.
Vinum temperatum, *sive vinum dilutum*, wine mixed with water.
Viola, a Violet.
Viola alba Dioſcoridis, white, yellow, & browne Violets.
Viola alba Theophraſti, a kinde of winter Gills.
Viola alba multiplex, white double violets. (ſer.
Viola Canina, a dog Violet.

Viola

The third Index.

Viola fatua, a wilde Violet.
Viola Martia, a March Violet.
Viola Martia alba, a white March Violet.
Viola mortuorum, *Pervinca*, Perwinckle.
Viola muraria, March Violets.
Viola nigra, the same.
Viola purpurea, idem quod *Viola nigra*.
Viola purpurea multiplex, double Violets.
Viola Quadragesimalis, March Violets.
Viola sylvestris, wild Violets.
Violaria, March Violets.
Vipera, Tytus, a Tiper, or kind of Adder.
Virga Cerui, *Priapus Cerui*, the Pille of a Stag.
Virga aurea, *Solidago saracenicæ*.
Virga pastoris, Tassell.
Viride aris, *Erugo*, Clerdigrease.
Vishago Hispanorum, *Gingidum*, Spanish Thersmill.
Viscum, *Ixos*, *Athyris*, *Histletoe*, or *Histleeden*.
Viscum quercinum, *Histleeden* of the Oake.
Viscum viscus pro glutine Ancupum, *gluten Aniarium*, Birdlime.
Vitalis, *Sedum*, Houslecke.
Vitalis, lesser Kopewæde.
Vitex, *Agnus*, Chast tree.
Vitis, *sive Vitis vinifera*, a Vine.
Vitigo, *Morphea alba Barbarorum*, a foulesse of the body with spots of diuers colours.
Vitis alba, *Bryonia*, white Bryony.
Vitis chironia, *Vitis nigra*, a black Vine, or black Bryony.
Vitis Idea, *Vaccinium*, a Blackberry.
Vitis Veneris.
Vitis sylvestris, a wild Vine.
Vitis sylvestris flos, the blossomes of the wilde Vine.
Vitriola, *Parietaria*, Pellitory of the wall.
Vitriolum, *Chalchantium*, blew Vitriol.
Vitriolum Romanum, Romish Vitrioll.
Vitriolum vitum, burned Vitrioll.
Vitulipes, *Arum*, Cuckoopit.
Vlcus, an vlcer, or Syle.
Vlmus, an Elme.
Vlmus campestris, a wild Elme.
Vlmus Montanus, *Montiumlmus*, a kinde of Elme.
Vlophonum, *Chameleon niger*, a kinde of Thistle.
Vmbilicus veneris, *Cyclaminus*, Solwes bread.
Vndimia Chirurgorum, *Oedema*, an impostume so called.
Vnefera, *sive vnephera*, Centory the great, *Rapontica*.

Vngula alces,
Vngula caballina, *Bechium*, Sole fote, or Coltes fote.
Vngula odorata, *Blatta byzantia*, vide *Blacca Byzantia*.
Vnguis muris, *Polygonum*, Knotgrasse.
Vnguis Aromaticus, the same that *Vngula odorata* is.
Vincordia, *Clematis daphnoides*, Perwinckle.
Unicornium, *Cornu monocerotis*, the Unicorne.
Unguentum Aegyptiacum, a Egyptian salue.
Unguentum Agrippæ, *Agrippæ* salue.
Unguentum Alibæ, a salue of marsh Malloves.
Unguentum album, *unguentum de Cerusa*, a salue of white leade or Ceruse.
Unguentum album Camphoratum, a salue of white Lead and Camfere.
Unguentum Anodinum, a salue which easeth any paine.
Unguentum Apostolorum, a salue so called.
Unguentum Aragon, a salue so called.
Unguentum Aurantiorum, a salue of Oranges.
Unguentum Alabastrinum, a salue of Alabaster.
Unguentum mundificatum de Apio, a salue of Smallage.
Unguentum æ Atrhanita, *unguentum de Cyclamine*, a salue of Solwes bread.
Unguentum basilicon, a salue of Basil.
Unguentum de Cerussa, vide *unguentum album*.
Unguentum de Cerussa Mesues, a salue of Ceruse after the description of Mesues.
Unguentum Cuminum, a salue of Citrons.
Unguentum Comitisse, a salue so called.
Unguentum infrigidans Galeni, a cooling salue.
Unguentum de Gallia, a salue so called.
Unguentum ex Gammaris, a salue of sea Trenchie.
Unguentum fuscum, a salue for wounds being yellow.
Unguentum marciatum, a salue so called.
Unguentum mercuriale, a salue for the Pore.
Unguentum neruinum officinarum, a salue for the sinewes.
Unguentum nihili officinarum, a salue so called, good for blearing eyes.
Unguentum de Pompholyge, a salue made of ashes which the Apothecaries call Nyl.
Unguentum pectorale, a salue for the breast.
Unguentum Populeum, a salue of Poplar.
Unguentum Rosatum, an ointment of Roses.
Unguentum Rhodinum, the same.
Unguentum Sandalinum, vel *Santalinum*, an ointment of Saunders.
Unguentum Sericinum, vel *Siricinum*, a salue so called.
Volubilis, Kopewæde, or Woodbind.

Volubi-

The third Index.

Volubilis Antiochena, sine volubilis Colophonica, an herbe so called.

Volubilis magna, Hops.

Volubilis media, Woodbinde.

Volubilis Mesues, Hops.

Volubilis Syriaca, an herbe so called.

Volucrum maius, Caprifolium, Woodbind.

Volulus, Iliacapassio, a paine in the guts, or a Colicke in the vppermost gut.

Vrania, Iris, the floure deluce.

Vrceolaris, Helxine, Pellitory of the wall.

Vreteres, the water pipes or conduits, by which the vzyne passeth from the rains to the bladder.

Urina profluvium, the ouerflowing of vzyne.

Vrsus, a Beare.

Vrtica, a Nettle.

Vrtica femina, vrtica Romana, Italica, the Rosmish Nettles.

Vrtica foetida, a stinking Nettles.

Vrtica Herculana, sine Herculea, a kind of dead Nettles.

Vrtica Italica, vide Vrtica femina.

Vrtica iners, Vrtica labeo, vrtica mortua, dead Nettles.

Vrtica lactea, Wormenettles.

Vrticalabeo, vide vrtica iners.

Vrtica mascula, vrtica maior, the great Sharpe and stinging nettles.

Vrtica minor, the lesser Nettles.

Vrtica mortua, vide vrtica iners.

Vrtica odorata, a kind of swete smelling Nettles.

Vrtica hortulana, Romaine Nettles.

Vrtica Romana, vide Vrtica femina.

Vrtica Scarlata, a kind of dead Nettles.

Vrtica syluatica, wild Nettles.

Vrtica syluestris, the same.

Vsnea, Muscus arborum, Hoose.

Vterus, the wombe of a woman.

Vulago, sine vuluago, Asarabacke.

Vulpes, a Fore.

Vulua, vterus, the wombe of a woman.

Vultur, a certaine greedy creature so called.

Vua, a grape.

Vua acerba, vna immatura, an vnrype grape.

Vua acerba condita, vnripe Grapes confited.

Vua anguina, vna serpentina, vitis alba, Wygnie.

Vuarum expressarum retrimenta, the huskes of pressed Grapes.

Vua immatura, vide vna acerba.

Vua Lupi, vna Vulpis, Nightshade.

Vua serpentina, vide vna anguina.

Vua Tamina, vitis nigra, blacke Bziony.

Vua Vlpis, vide vna Lupi.

Vua passa, Raisons,

Vua Damascena, Zibeben, great Raisons.

Vua passa Cilicia, sine Corinthiaca, seu minores, Currans.

Vua passa Corinthiaca, vide vna passa Cilicia.

Vua passa Damascena, vide Vua Damascena.

Vua passa maiores, great Raisons.

Vua passa Messibonica, a kinde of great Raisons.

Vua Zibeba, great Raisons.

Vua tunica, a certain part of the eye.

Vunla, a little peece of fleshy in the roose of the mouth.

Vunlaria, Horse tung.

X.

X *Anster Arabum, Tithymalus, a kinde of Spurge.*

Xerocollyrion, vide Collyrium.

Xylon, Gossipium, Cotton.

Xiphium, floure deluce.

Xyphium aquaticum, the small blew water flouwer deluce.

Xyphium Aruense, floure deluce.

Xyloaloe, Xyloaloes, Xylumaloes, Lignum Aloes, a kinde of swete wood so called.

Xyloaloes, vide Xyloaloe.

Xylobalsamum, the wood whereof Bauline naturally commeth.

Xylocassa, a kind of flower so called.

Xylocaratta officinarum, Xylocerata, S. Johns bread.

Xylocolla, a kind of Lyme.

Xylon, Santalon, Saunders.

Xylophyton, wild Comin.

Xylum aloes, vide Xyloaloe.

Z.

Z *Adnar, Zadnara, Zadura, Zadera, sine Zador, a kind of Seduary.*

Zadnara, vide Zadnar.

Zadera, vide Zadnar.

Zador, vide Zadnar.

Zaffranum Barbarorum, Saffron.

Zastranum fatuum, sine fatuorum, wilde Saffron.

Zapetium, Zibetum, Ciuet.

The third Index.

Zea Spelta, *Warebarly* or *Spelt*.

Zea Dicoecos, *Spelt*.

Zea deglubita, *Cozne*.

Zea monococos, *Semen*, *Spelt*.

Zea simplex, the same.

Zedoaria officinarum, *Zurumbetum*, *Sedus*
arpe.

Zeduar, the same.

Zelaurus, *Anagallis*, *Pimpernell*.

Zibeba, great *Raisons*.

Zibeta officinarum,

Zibethum, *Zibettum*, *Civet*.

Zibettum, vide *Zibethum*.

Zina officinarum, *Absinthium Seriphium*, a kinde
of *Moymewood*.

Zingiber, *Gingiber*, *Ginger*.

Zingiber conditum, comfited *Ginger*.

Zingiber coctum, sine *Tabulatum*, baked *Gin-*
ger.

Zingiber tabulatum, vide *Zingiber coctum*.

Zingiber viride, vide *Zingiber conditum*.

Zinziber officinarum, *Zingiber*, *Ginger*.

Zirbus Barbarorū, *Omentum* the *Caul* or *suet*
wherein the bowels are layd.

Zizypha, a kinde of fruit so called.

Zoophthalmon, *Sedum*, *Houslecke*.

Zopissa, *Pitch*.

Zuccarum, sine *Zuccharum*, *Saccharum*, *Su-*
gar.

Zuccarum penidium, a certayne kinde of *Su-*
gar.

Zuccarum candidum, *Sugar of Candy*.

Zuccharum, vide *Zuccarum*.

Zulapium Nymphaea, *Zulep* of the white water
Lilly.

Zulapium Rosarum, *Rose Zulep*.

Zulapium Violaceum, *Violet Zulep*.

Zurumbet, sine

Zurumbetum, *Anthoza*.

Zurumbetites, *Anthoza wine*.

Zyme, *fermentum*, *Leauen*.

Zythum, *Cernisa*, *Beere*.

F I N I S.